

The Condensed Bible

Old and New Testaments

Condensed by David Coory

ZEALAND PUBLISHING HOUSE
Private Bag 12029, Tauranga, New Zealand.

©2004 ZEALAND PUBLISHING HOUSE

Portions of this Condensed Bible can be reproduced for non-profit purposes provided acknowledgment of the source is clearly stated.

First published 2004 by Zealand Publishing House, New Zealand.

Printed in Australia.

Further copies of this Bible can be obtained by writing to:

Zealand Publishing House
Private Bag 12029,
Tauranga. New Zealand.

Or by phone, fax, email, or internet (credit card required).

Free Phone: 0800 140-141 (New Zealand only)

Free Fax: 0800 140-142 (New Zealand only)

International: Phone/Fax 0064-7-576-5575

Email: bible@zealandpublishing.co.nz

Internet www.zealandpublishing.co.nz

ISBN 0-908850-07-7 Soft cover edition.

ISBN 0-908850-08-5 Hard cover edition.

Cover: Modified painting of Jesus Christ '*Welcome*' by Del Parson. Also photographs from G. Eric Matson Photo Collection used with kind permission. Illustrations of prophetic visions are by Nathan Mora.

PUBLISHERS NOTE

No particular denominational or doctrinal viewpoint is intended in this Condensed Bible. The sole aim is to convey biblical truth clearly and succinctly while retaining the intent and style of the original inspired authors.

In the case of ambiguous or unclear passages, the overall biblical picture and wording of similar passages have been used as a guide along with common sense and prayer for divine guidance.

This Condensed Bible has not been published for profit. All surpluses are to be utilised in promoting further sales, translating the work into other languages, and maintaining a low selling price.

This book is dedicated with grateful thanks to the translators of the Bible versions listed below which have been used as a resource.

Main resource Bibles

Revised Standard Version
New International Version (NIV)
The New American Bible (Catholic)
King James Version.
New American Standard Version
New Revised Standard Version
Jerusalem Bible (Catholic)

Supplementary resource Bibles

Good News Bible
Knox Version (Catholic)
Living Bible
Contemporary English Version
New King James Version
New World Translation

Christian unity

By Thomas Scott, 1795 (abridged).

“I believe there are many things unscriptural among us all (referring to the different Christian denominations), things either redundant or erroneous, for human nature is very fallible.”

“There must therefore be differences of opinion.”

“The enemy will stir up our corrupt passions to magnify these differences into matters of importance, and urge us to contend about them. By his influence we are readily persuaded to think we are zealous for the Lord God and doing him service, whereas we are merely gratifying our pride.”

“If the different sects of Christians would but consider themselves as regiments in the same army, and stand up as it were, for the honour of their particular regiment, and only endeavour to outdo others in promoting the spread of true Christianity, thus fighting the common enemy, the divisions might be overruled for good.”

“But alas, too many say, *‘We saw a man driving out demons in your name and we tried to stop him, for he is not one of us’* (Matt-Mark-Luke 18:28).

“Perhaps not one fourth of mankind profess Christianity, and alas perhaps not one in a hundred of those named Christians are really such.”

“Therefore let us enlarge our views, our desires, and our prayers beyond the limits of a creed, according to the extensive meaning of the first words of the Lord’s Prayer.”

To the reader

This Condensed Bible is just over half the length of a traditional Bible, yet every effort has been made to retain all the essential details, features, stories, parables, prophecies, power, and spiritual upliftment of the full length Bible, and to do so in the most interesting and edifying manner possible.

Long genealogies unless essential to the narrative have been omitted, along with repeated passages and repetitious figures of speech. Descriptive passages have also been shortened when this could be done without sacrificing detail.

In the book of Psalms only the best examples of each type of psalm have been retained. The three gospels of Matthew, Mark and Luke have been combined into one comprehensive account.

The Condensed Bible has been compiled with the following readers in mind:

- The busy person with limited time for reading.
- The first-time Bible reader who wishes to understand the Bible quickly.
- The first-time reader who is daunted by the sheer length of the traditional Bible.
- The regular Bible reader who would like to experience reading the entire Bible cover to cover in a more readable, chronologically arranged, Genesis-like format, with additional features such as the Lord's words in bold, informative footnotes, and an approx running date on each page.
- The regular Bible reader who finds much of the traditional Old Testament obscure.
- The regular Bible reader who would like to read the life of Jesus in one vivid detailed account by the combining of the gospels of Matthew, Mark and Luke.

In trying to make this Condensed Bible as interesting and useful as possible the following innovations have been adopted:

Books in chronological order

In the traditional Bible the Old Testament 'prophet books' are located separately from the Israelite 'history books.' This makes it difficult to relate a prophet's words to what is happening historically and politically at the time.

To overcome this problem the 'prophet books' in this Condensed Bible have been arranged in chronological order and the Israelite history (mostly from the books of 1 and 2 Kings and Chronicles) has been inserted into the relevant places. This allows a prophet's message or prophecy to be more readily understood and for the eventual fulfilment of a prophecy to be clearly recognised.

Also in the traditional Bible, from the death of King Solomon, the histories of the divided Israelite kingdom – Northern Israel to the north and Judah to the south are combined in one narrative. This results in a continual see-sawing back and forth between the two kingdoms which can be highly confusing because of the differing kings and prophets. Therefore in this Condensed Bible the history of the short-lived kingdom of Northern Israel has been kept separate from that of the southern kingdom of Judah. In order to do this satisfactorily the accounts of the two great miracle-working prophets, Elijah and Elisha traditionally found in 1 and 2 Kings have been made into two separate books. Following biblical tradition these two additional books have been named after the prophets whose experiences they relate.

This chronological reordering of the Old Testament has been modelled after the book of Genesis which is strictly chronological and has always been one of the clearest, most readable and interesting books of the Old Testament.

Sub-headings, lists of contents and comprehensive concordance

Because of the condensing and restructuring of this Condensed Bible, traditional Bible chapter numbers and verses have necessarily been changed. To compensate for this and to speed up the locating of passages by the reader, there are numerous sub-headings throughout the text. In fact the Condensed Bible can be skim read using these sub-headings alone. However they are not intended to be read in normal reading

of the text. These sub-headings are also listed (sometimes in shortened form) in the contents section at the beginning of each book of the Bible.

There is also a comprehensive Concordance at the back of the Bible.

Commandments and Proverbs grouped by subject heading

For greater clarity, the approximately ninety commandments of God in the book of Exodus have been grouped under subject headings such as Marriage, Sexual Immorality, The Occult, etc.

The book of Proverbs has been treated in the same manner.

Words of God in bold

Whenever God or an angel speaks first hand, either directly or through a prophet, the words are written in **bold**. And whenever a prophet or prophetess speaks their own words, but under inspiration of the Holy Spirit, the words are written in ***bold italics***.

Running date on each page

An approximate running date is printed at the foot of each page.

Footnotes for added insight

Short footnotes are found at the bottom of most pages explaining customs and giving additional insight or information from other parts of the Bible.

Power, dignity and readability

Great care has been taken in this Condensed Bible to retain the full spiritual power of the best traditional Bibles, and to produce an accurate text that has power, dignity, clarity, elegance, interest and readability. This has been done by using the world's finest English translations as a resource, including the dignified and poetical King James Version.

The name of God

The name/title of God, Yahweh, or as it is commonly Anglicised Jehovah, is found numerous times in the original Hebrew texts of the Old Testament. However Jewish Rabbis of later generations, fearing to speak the name of God too frequently, began substituting the word 'Lord' for Jehovah when reading the scriptures aloud in the synagogue.

This custom was noted by the early translators of the Old Testament (Greek Septuagint and later Latin Vulgate) and as a result when they made their translations they substituted the word 'Lord' in place of the original 'Jehovah' in almost every instance. Most modern translators in order to retain familiarity with past versions have continued this same tradition.

Unfortunately this creates a certain remoteness of God, and a lack of colour and personality quite out of keeping with the original texts, and occasionally a distortion of true meaning. There is no doubt that the Lord used his name freely in the numerous revelations and messages he gave to his prophets of old. The proper name is still found in Jewish bibles.

Therefore in this Condensed Bible the Lord's name/title has been reinstated in many instances, especially when it enhances or clarifies the meaning of a passage, and more particularly when God himself uses his name when speaking through a prophet.

The importance of daily Bible reading and prayer

Bible reading Christians throughout history have always testified to the dramatically enhanced understanding of the Bible that comes about when a fixed time is set aside every day for reading the Bible, and more especially when that reading is commenced with a humble prayer to God for enlightenment from his Holy Spirit. This daily habit of a fixed time for reading and a preliminary prayer cannot be recommended too highly.

Your comments are welcome

The publisher welcomes written comments, corrections and suggestions from readers that may further clarify and enhance future editions of this Condensed Bible.

Please address correspondence to: **Condensed Bible, Zealand Publishing House, Private Bag 12029, Tauranga, New Zealand**, or forward by email to **bible@zealandpublishing.co.nz**.

NAMES AND ORDER OF BOOKS

OLD TESTAMENT

Genesis	11
Exodus	47
Leviticus	77
Numbers.....	90
Deuteronomy.....	108
Joshua.....	120
Judges.....	131
Ruth.....	151
Samuel	154
1 Kings	179
Song of Solomon.....	213
Ecclesiastes	216
Elijah.....	222
Elisha.....	235
Jonah.....	246
Hosea	249
Amos	253
2 Kings	259
Joel.....	269
Micah.....	274
Isaiah.....	278
Nahum.....	310
Zephaniah	314
Habakkuk	316
Jeremiah.....	318
Obadiah.....	351
Ezekiel.....	353
Lamentations.....	378
Daniel	381
Haggai.....	397
Zechariah	401
Esther	411
Ezra.....	418
Nehemiah	422
Malachi.....	429

Job.....	432
Psalms.....	443
Proverbs	464
Between the Testaments.....	475

NEW TESTAMENT

Matthew-Mark-Luke.....	477
John.....	539
Acts.....	566
James	597
1 Thessalonians	601
2 Thessalonians	604
1 Corinthians	606
2 Corinthians	617
Galatians	623
Romans	627
Colossians	635
Philemon.....	639
Ephesians.....	640
Philippians	645
Titus.....	648
1 Timothy.....	650
2 Timothy.....	654
1 Peter	657
2 Peter	661
Jude.....	664
Hebrews	666
1 John.....	673
2 John.....	677
3 John.....	678
Revelation.....	679
Concordance (Index).....	702

ALPHABETICAL LISTING OF ALL BOOKS

Acts.....	566	Jude.....	664
Amos.....	253	Judges.....	131
Colossians.....	635	1 Kings.....	179
1 Corinthians.....	606	2 Kings.....	259
2 Corinthians.....	617	Lamentations.....	378
Daniel.....	381	Leviticus.....	77
Deuteronomy.....	90	Malachi.....	429
Ecclesiastes.....	216	Matthew-Mark-Luke.....	477
Elijah.....	222	Micah.....	274
Elisha.....	235	Nahum.....	310
Ephesians.....	640	Nehemiah.....	422
Esther.....	411	Numbers.....	90
Exodus.....	47	Obadiah.....	351
Ezekiel.....	353	1 Peter.....	657
Ezra.....	418	2 Peter.....	661
Galatians.....	623	Philemon.....	639
Genesis.....	11	Philippians.....	645
Habakkuk.....	316	Proverbs.....	464
Haggai.....	397	Psalms.....	443
Hebrews.....	666	Revelation.....	679
Hosea.....	249	Romans.....	627
Isaiah.....	278	Ruth.....	151
James.....	597	Samuel.....	154
Jeremiah.....	318	Song of Solomon.....	213
Job.....	432	1 Thessalonians.....	601
Joel.....	269	2 Thessalonians.....	604
John.....	539	1 Timothy.....	650
1 John.....	673	2 Timothy.....	654
2 John.....	677	Titus.....	648
3 John.....	678	Zechariah.....	401
Jonah.....	246	Zephaniah.....	314
Joshua.....	120		

Photos and drawings

Milky Way, our galaxy	14	Donkeys, men riding	102
Noah's Ark, petrified hull of	18	Baal idol	104
Noah's Ark 'rivet'	19	Gold articles	106
Noah's Ark huge anchor stone	19	Jordan river	111
Tower of Babel, claimed ruins of in Iraq ...	20	Millstone used to grind grain	114
Tents, type used by Abraham	21	Tent dwellers, 'wandering Syrians'	115
Spring in desert	22	Altar of uncut stones	115
Ancient oak tree near Hebron	23	Mount Nebo	122
Pillars of salt near Dead Sea	25	Jordan river in flood	123
Water skins made from skin of goats	26	Collapsed walls of Jericho	125
Spring-fed well.....	27	Valley of Achor	125
Water jars of head carrying type	28	Valley of Ajalon	127
Well, dug by Isaac	30	Mount Hermon	128
Bethel, where Jacob had his dream	32	Negeb desert	130
Household god figurines	34	Tomb of Joseph in Shechem	133
Pillar of stones as a witness	34	Demon goddess Ashtoreth	134
Jabbok river	35	Mount Tabor	135
Shechem where Dinah was raped	36	Kishon river	136
Tomb of Rachael.....	37	Spring of Harod	138
Ishmaelite (Arab) traders	38	Shechem	140
Egypt, where Joseph was sold	39	Millstones used to grind grain	141
Cows on bank of Nile river	40	Zorah where Samson was raised	143
Egyptian carts	43	Cave where Samson stayed	145
Region of Goshen in Egypt	44	Gaza in land of Philistines	145
Women bathing on banks of Nile	50	Donkey powered millstone	146
Making mud and straw bricks in Egypt	52	Hill country of Ephraim	147
Throne of a Pharaoh	54	Beersheba	148
Swarm of locusts.....	56	Women harvesting barley in fields	152
Passover lamb symbolic of Messiah	57	Threshing floor	153
Applying Passover blood to doorway	57	Winnowing barley	153
Red Sea crossing-site beach	58	Old stone relief of Ark	159
Egyptian chariot	59	Middle East ox cart	160
Red Sea at night	59	Ramah, hill-top town of Samuel	161
Egyptian chariot wheel in Red Sea	60	Oxen plowing with near Jerusalem	163
Oasis on Exodus route to Mount Horeb ..	60	Geba	164
Rock at Horeb struck Moses	61	Michmash pass	165
Mount Horeb	63	Jewish harp	167
Reapers in the field	65	Weaver's beam	168
Acacia tree	69	Slinger	169
Altar of Incense and high priest	70	Method of slinging	169
Lampstand of Tabernacle.....	70	Cave where David lived	172
Replica of Aaron's breastplate	71	Cave where David hid from Saul	174
Fat-tailed sheep of Israel	73	Endor where Saul consulted medium	177
Calf idol	74	Hebron where David reigned as king	184
Tabernacle altar of burnt offering	80	Walls protecting fortress of Jerusalem ..	185
Pig, designated as unclean by Lord	81	Mule, offspring of a donkey and horse ...	192
Katydid, a clean insect	82	Pillar of Absalom at Jerusalem	193
Typical Israelite house of the period	84	Kidron brook at Jerusalem	193
Grain, a tithe (one tenth) was required	88	Jordan river	197
Tabernacle	89	Threshing floor.....	199
Silver trumpet	93	Exterior of David's tomb in Jerusalem ...	202
Quail	95	Interior of David's tomb	203
Desert near Edom	97	Extracting olive oil by crushing	204
pAlmond fruit	99	Solomon's Temple	206
Aaron's tomb on Mount Hor	100	Solomon's Temple, groundplan of.....	206
Viper, a highly poisonous snake	101	Bronze basin of Solomon's Temple	207

Cedars of Lebanon	209	Sidon	367
Ezion Geber on the Red Sea	210	Israel 'a land of unwall'd cities'	370
Pomegranate	215	Millennial Temple, plan of	373
Carpenter at work in Israel	218	Tomb of Ezekiel in Babylonia	377
Royal city of Samaria	226	Artist's view of Daniel visions	387
Kerith, the brook by which Elijah lived	226	Artist's view of Daniel visions	388
Mount Carmel	228	Antiochus IV, forceful Greek ruler	389
Mount Horeb showing two caves	229	Site of Daniel's lion's den	391
Ploughing with a yoke of oxen	229	Titus, Roman general and emperor	392
Desert Wadi	237	Herod's Temple complex	392
Land of Moab.....	237	Tigris river	393
Village of Shunem	238	Alexander the Great	394
Jordan river where axe head floated	240	Ptolemy I, one of Alexander's generals	395
Temple of a demon god	244	Beach at Joppa.....	398
Sperm whale.....	247	Samaritan	399
Samaria in Northern Israel	252	Fig trees	404
Interior of wealthy Middle East home	255	Artist's view of Zechariah's visions	405
Samaritans	258	Sheep market of Jerusalem	408
Asherah pole, a type of totem pole	261	Rolling plains near Nazareth	410
Stone worship pillars	262	Persian city, typical	413
Tomb of King Jehoshaphat.....	265	Persian street scene	414
Fig tree at Jerusalem	272	Persian city wall	415
Same fig tree after locust invasion	272	Jewish girl dressed for Purim.....	417
Zion Temple mount at Jerusalem	277	Palace of King Sennacherib	423
Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria	282	Disused Golden Gate of Jerusalem	424
Winged bull, symbol of Assyria	287	Section of Jerusalem city wall	426
Arnon river	290	Merchants at gates of Jerusalem	428
Damascus in Syria	291	Male clothing typical of ancient Israel	434
Lamb and shepherd.....	292	Pleiades star group.....	440
Jerusalem	295	Nile crocodile	441
Lion to eat grass during millennium	296	Sheep and shepherd in Israel	447
Euphrates river	296	Mount Hermon	447
Clay record of Sennacherib	299	Ten-stringed lyre	451
Globe thistle	302	Israelite tambourine	453
Ruins of Babylon	304	Ram's horn trumpet	476
Sea port of Tyre.....	305	Cleopatra queen of Egypt	476
Christ the Messiah	307	Julius Caesar Roman emperor	476
Water tunnel built by King Hezekiah	308	Model of Herod's Temple	483
Complete scroll of book of Isaiah	309	Caesar Augustus, Roman emperor	484
Site of ancient huge city of Nineveh	313	Stable in Israel showing a manger	484
Damascus Gate in Jerusalem	315	Shepherds watching flocks by night	485
Anathoth, birth place of Jeremiah	324	Bethlehem where Jesus was born	485
Grim reaper, imagery from Jeremiah	328	Travellers from east on camels.....	486
Wadi, a wet weather stream bed	329	Israelite travellers and donkey	486
Potter at his wheel in Israel	331	Baptising in the Jordan river	487
Valley of Hinnom	332	Nazareth where Jesus was raised	489
Ancient stocks	333	fishermen on Lake Galilee	489
Nebuchadnezzar, inscribed brick	333	Capernaum the base town of Jesus	491
Edom burial canyon	335	Valley of Hinnom	492
Artist's view of ancient Babylon	337	Mount of Beatitudes	493
Main street of Babylon today	337	Dry grass being burnt in oven	494
Old ink-written scroll found in Israel	338	Sudden storm on Lake Galilee	496
Underground water cistern	346	Fishing boats on Lake Galilee	501
Egyptian pyramid and Nile	349	Sower sowing seed	502
Ashtoreth, the Queen of Heaven	350	Tares and wheat	503
Ruggedness typical of Edom	352	Mustard tree of Israel	503
Artist's view of visions of Ezekiel.....	358	Jesus walking on water	505
Scale model of Solomon's Temple	359	Tyre	506
Egyptian pyramid	366	Town of Caesarea Philippi	507

Mount Hermon.....	508
Lake Galilee	510
Child, an example of humility	510
Talent measuring weight (34kg)	511
Samaritan	512
Inn on Jerusalem-Jericho road	512
Satan likened to snakes and scorpions..	513
Lame, poor and blind people	517
Donkey	521
Bethany where Jesus often stayed	522
Vineyard watchtower	523
A denarius, Roman silver coin.....	524
A lepton, the widow's coin.....	525
Wailing Wall (from Herod's Temple)	526
Israelite oil burning lamps.....	527
Floor plan of Herod's Temple	528
Jerusalem Temple area today.....	530
Olive grove of Gethsemane.....	531
Courtyard of high priest's palace	532
Potter's burial field	533
Roman soldiers	534
Jerusalem street.....	534
Calvary where Jesus died	535
Tomb with a rolling stone	536
Tomb in which Jesus resurrected	537
Road to village of Emmaus	537
Jerusalem from the Mount of Olives	538
Jordan river where Jesus was baptised	542
Water jars	543
Money changer in Jerusalem	543
Cana of Galilee	544
Samaritans celebrating Passover	545
Jacob's well	546
Jerusalem street	546
Lake Galilee	546
Old streets of Jerusalem	550
Pool of Siloam	552
Shepherd leading his sheep	553
Jerusalem in winter	553
Tomb of Lazarus	555
Crowd in Jerusalem waving palms	556
Jesus washing feet of apostles	557
Vine and fruitful branches	559
Courtyard of high priest's palace	561
Calvary or Golgotha	563
Tomb interior	564
Fish breakfast, shore of Lake Galilee	565
Mount of Olives	569
Solomon's Porch	572
St Stephen Gate in Jerusalem,	575
Straight Street in Damascus.....	576
Roof top of Simon the Tanner in Joppa..	577
Street of Simon the Tanner in Joppa	578
Antioch in Syria	579
Cyprus settlement	580
Zeus head of the Greek gods	582
Athens from Mars Hill	585
The multi-breasted goddess Diana	588
Military barracks in Jerusalem	590

Ship typical of type Paul sailed in	594
St Paul's Bay in Malta	595
Archway in Greek city of Thessalonica ..	602
Thessalonica city walls	603
Aphrodite, Greek goddess of love	610
Mary Magdalene at tomb with Jesus	622
Appian Way, road leading into Rome	630
Jesus, painting by Del Parson	638
Temple of goddess Diana at Ephesus	642
Crete where Paul left Titus	649
Roman prison where Paul confined	656
Shepherd and his flock	660
Aaron the first high priest of Israel	668
Island of Patmos where John exiled	683
The Four Horsemen John saw	688
Comet	689
Satan depicted as great red dragon	692
The evil Roman emperor Nero	693
Megiddo plain below Armageddon	695
Rome, traditional symbol of worldliness	697
Artist's view of New Jerusalem	700
Jesus, 'Welcome' by Del Parson.....	701

MAPS

Abram's travels	22
Canaan in days of Abraham	36
Exodus of Israelites from Egypt	62
Mount Horeb (or Sinai) in Arabia	63
Borders of the promised land	76
Travels of Israel since leaving Horeb	100
Gilead	106
Canaan during the time of Joshua	126
Inheritances of the twelve tribes	129
Israel in days of Judges	149
Travels of Ark of the Lord	160
Israel during reign of King Saul	170
Jerusalem during reign of Solomon	199
Solomon's kingdom	205
Elijah's journey to Mount Horeb	234
Route Israelites took to attack Moab	237
Location of city of Nineveh in Assyria	248
Nations surrounding Israel	254
Israel in days of prophet Amos	256
Assyria, Israel and Egypt	292
Nations prophesied against by Jeremiah	336
Borders of gathered Israel in latter days	376
Alexander the Great's divided empire	394
Persian empire	412
Towns mentioned in gospel of John	555
Key towns of the early church	580
Paul's first mission	582
Paul's second and third mission	586
Paul's sea voyage to Rome	595
Seven churches in Asia and Patmos	685

GENESIS

The book of Genesis outlines in broad detail the creation of the earth, the experiences of Adam and Eve, and the Flood of Noah. It then becomes more detailed and relates the interesting and very human story of Abraham and his son Isaac, and his grandson Jacob. Jacob's name was later changed by God to Israel and his twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.

Genesis is the first of the five books of Moses. The others are Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers and Deuteronomy. They are known to the Jews as the Torah (*'the Law'*), and to the Greeks as the Pentateuch (*'five books'*). The name Genesis is Greek and means *'origin.'* The Jews however, who name their books of scripture after the first word, call this book Bereshith, *'In the beginning'*.

AUTHOR

According to Jewish tradition the prophet Moses was the main author of Genesis, and also the other four books of the Torah. There is much evidence however that Moses drew on older writings for the early historic sections of the book of Genesis. There are duplicate accounts of some events and the writing style and names of God differ in certain passages.

Some of the five books of the Moses also contain clarifications by a later prophet, for example one such clarification that Moses was unlikely to have written himself is, *'Now Moses was a very humble man, more humble than anyone else on the face of the earth'* (Numbers 4:7). These later additions bear the style of Jeremiah. Inclusion of older writings and clarifications by later prophets are a feature of the Old Testament.

Then God said, **“Let us make man in our own image and likeness.”** So God formed Adam from the dust of the earth and breathed into his nostrils the spirit of life and the man became a living being. Genesis 1:14-15.

CONTENTS

Chapter

First day of creation – day and night	1	Cain cursed by Lord	4
Second day – atmosphere	1	Family of Cain	4
Third day – plant life	1	Lamech and his family	4
Fourth day – signs, seasons and times	1	Adam has other sons and daughters	5
Fifth day – birds and fish	1	Adam dies aged 930 years	5
Sixth day – animals and insects	1	Descendants of Adam's son Seth	5
Adam is created	1	Enoch translated	5
Seeds and fruit food for man	1	Birth of Noah	5
Green plants food for other living creatures	1	Noah's three sons	5
Seventh day – God rests	1	Tall race of Nephilim	5
God blesses the seventh day to be holy	1	World filled with violence	5
Garden of Eden	2	Mankind corrupt and to be destroyed in 120 years....	5
River of Eden	2	Noah commanded to build an ark	5
Adam placed in garden of Eden to care for it	2	Flood to come upon the earth	5
Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil	2	Birds and animals to be saved	6
Adam not to eat from tree or he will die	2	Noah 600 years old when he enters ark	6
Eve created	2	Rain falls for forty days	6
Eve deceived by the serpent	3	All mountains covered	6
Eve eats forbidden fruit and gives some to Adam	3	After 150 days water begins to recede	6
Jehovah visits Adam and Eve	3	Ark rests on mountains of Ararat	6
Serpent cursed to crawl and eat dust	3	Noah releases a raven and then a dove	6
Women cursed with agony in child birth	3	The earth finally dries	6
Women cursed to be ruled over by men	3	God commands Noah to come out of the ark	6
Men cursed to till ground for food	3	Noah builds an altar and offers sacrifice	6
Adam and his wife Eve clothed with skins	3	Man given dominion over all creatures on earth	6
Adam and Eve banished from the garden	3	Eating of flesh now permitted but not blood	6
Cain and Abel born	4	All shedding of blood to be accounted for	6
Cain and Abel make offerings to Lord	4	Never again will a flood destroy the earth	6
Lord rejects Cain's offering	4	God's covenant of the rainbow	6
Cain murders his brother Abel	4	Noah becomes drunk	7

GENESIS

Ham mocks his father's nakedness	7	Abraham sees dense smoke rising	13
Noah curses Ham's son Canaan	7	Lot lies with his two daughters	13
Canaan's descendants to be lowly servants	7	Moab and Ammon descended from Lot's sons	13
Noah blesses his sons Shem and Japheth	7	King Abimelech takes Sarah as his wife	14
Origins of the nations	7	God warns Abimelech in a dream	14
The sons of Japheth	7	Abimelech rebukes Abraham	14
The sons of Shem	7	Abimelech enriches Abraham and returns Sarah	14
The sons of Ham	7	Abraham's son Isaac born	14
Tower of Babel	7	Sarah rejects Ishmael	14
The confusing of languages	7	Hagar and her son Ishmael sent away	14
People scatter over the earth	7	Hagar distressed as Ishmael lies dying of thirst	14
Generations to Abram (later Abraham)	8	Angel reveals water to Hagar	14
Abram and his nephew Lot born in Ur	8	Ishmael grows up in the desert	14
Abram's father Terah moves to Haran	8	God greatly tests Abraham	15
God calls Abram and makes a covenant	8	Commands him to sacrifice his son Isaac	15
Abram and his people travel to Canaan	8	Abraham and his son travel to Mount Moriah	15
Abram's descendants to be given land of Canaan	8	Lord stays Abraham's knife at last second	15
Abram goes to live in Egypt	8	Ram caught in the thicket is sacrificed	15
Abram tells his wife Sarai to say she is his sister	8	Lord again reaffirms his covenant	15
Pharaoh takes Sarai to be his wife	8	Sarah dies	15
Serious diseases inflicted on Pharaoh's household	8	Abraham buys a field and cave as burial site	15
Sarai returned to Abram	8	Servant sent to Haran to obtain a wife for Isaac	16
Abram now a wealthy man returns to Canaan	9	Servant prays for guidance	16
Lot separates from Abram	9	Abraham's niece Rebekah comes to draw water	16
Lot chooses Jordan river valley near Sodom	9	Rebekah waters servant's camels	16
Lord renews his covenant with Abram	9	Abraham's servant gives Rebekah gifts	16
Abram's descendants to be numerous	9	Rebekah's brother Laban invites servant home	16
Land of Canaan to be their inheritance	9	Laban and Bethuel give Rebekah as Isaac's wife	16
Lot captured by kings from north	9	Servant gives costly gifts	16
Abram rescues Lot	9	Servant departs next day with Rebekah	16
Abram pays tithe to Melchizedek	9	Isaac marries Rebekah	16
Abram refuses to keep any spoil for himself	8	Abraham remarries and bears six more sons	16
Lord promises Abram a son	10	Abraham sends his six sons away	16
Abram given a covenant sign by Lord	10	Abraham dies aged 175	16
His descendants to be slaves in Egypt 400 years	10	Family of Ishmael	17
Promised land's borders	10	Isaac's twin sons Jacob and Esau	17
Sarai barren	11	Esau a hunter, Jacob a quiet stay-at-home man	17
Sarai gives Abram her maid Hagar as a wife	11	Isaac favours Esau and Rebekah favours Jacob	17
Hagar conceives and treats Sarai with contempt	11	Esau sells Jacob his birthright	17
Sarai ill-treats Hagar who flees into desert	11	Lord reaffirms his covenant with Isaac	17
Angel speaks to Hagar	11	Isaac goes to live among Philistines	17
Hagar's son to be named Ishmael	11	Isaac pretends his wife Rebekah his sister	17
Ishmael's descendants to be numerous	11	King Abimelech rebukes Isaac for his deception	17
Ishmael to be a wild ass of a man	11	Isaac becomes wealthy and arouses envy	17
Lord reconfirms his covenant with Abram	11	Quarrels over water	17
Abram's name changed to Abraham	11	Isaac moves to Beersheba	17
Sign of the covenant – circumcision	11	Abimelech makes peace treaty with Isaac	17
Sarai's name changed to Sarah	11	Esau's two wives	18
Birth of Isaac foretold	11	Jacob induced to steal Esau's blessing	18
Ishmael also to become a great nation	11	Jacob deceives his father Isaac	18
Abraham and all his household circumcised	11	Isaac blesses Jacob with Isaac's blessing	18
Abraham visited by Jehovah and two angels	12	Esau returns from hunting	18
Abraham prepares food for his visitors	12	Esau weeps loudly when he hears what happened	18
Abraham told that Sarah will bear a son next year	12	Isaac's lesser blessing of Esau	18
Sarah overhears and laughs in disbelief	12	Esau plans to kill his brother Jacob	18
Sodom and Gomorrah	12	Rebekah warns Jacob to flee to her brother Laban	18
Abraham pleads for Sodom	12	Rebekah plans a way for Jacob to escape	19
Sodom to be saved if ten righteous people found	12	Esau marries a cousin to please his father	19
Two angels visit Sodom and stay with Lot	13	Jacob departs for Haran	19
Sexual deviants surround Lot's house at night	13	Jacob's dream of a stairway to heaven	19
Demand he bring out the angels	13	Lord reaffirms his covenant with Jacob	19
Lot offers his daughters instead	13	Jacob vows to God to pay a tithe	19
Men near Lot's door struck with blindness	13	Jacob arrives in Haran	19
Lot's family disbelieve Sodom will be destroyed	13	Jacob meets Laban's daughter Rachel	19
The angels lead Lot's household out of Sodom	13	Laban greets his nephew	19
Lot flees to town of Zoar	13	Jacob works seven years for Rachel	19
Sodom and Gomorrah destroyed	13	Laban deceives Jacob	19
Lot's wife lags behind to watch and is destroyed	13	Jacob required to marry both Leah and Rachel	19

Jacob agrees to another seven years of work	19	Joseph sold to Ishmaelite traders	24
Leah bears Jacob four sons but Rachel is barren	20	Reuben distressed when he finds Joseph gone	24
Rachel gives Jacob her maid Bilhah as a wife	20	Joseph's brothers deceive their father Israel	24
Bilhah bears Jacob two sons	20	Israel mourns his son Joseph many days	24
Leah also gives her maid Zilpah as a wife	20	Judah and his daughter-in-law Tamar	25
Zilpah bears Jacob two sons	20	Judah fails to keep his promise to Tamar	25
The mandrakes	20	Tamar deceives Judah by pretending to be a harlot ..	25
Leah bears Jacob two more sons and a daughter.....	20	Tamar conceives and has twin boys	25
Rachel bears Joseph	20	Joseph sold to Potiphar in Egypt	26
Jacob bargains with Laban	20	Lord gives Joseph success in everything	26
Jacob to own all speckled animals and black lambs ..	20	Joseph resists temptation of Potiphar's wife	26
Laban deceives Jacob	20	Potiphar's wife falsely accuses Joseph	26
Jacob's breeding methods	20	Joseph cast into prison by Potiphar	26
Jacob prospers	20	Joseph interprets dreams of two fellow prisoners ..	26
Laban's sons become jealous of Jacob	21	Dreams come to pass as Joseph foretold	26
Jacob consults with his wives	21	Joseph interprets Pharaoh's dream	27
Jacob told by Lord to return to own land	21	Seven years of great abundance in Egypt	27
Jacob secretly departs without informing Laban	21	Seven years of famine to follow	27
Rachel steals her father's household gods	21	Joseph gives wise counsel to Pharaoh	27
Laban pursues Jacob	21	Joseph made vizier over all Egypt	27
God speaks to Laban in a dream	21	Joseph marries and fathers two sons	27
Laban rebukes his son-in-law Jacob	21	The seven abundant years	27
Jacob accused of stealing Laban's gods.....	21	Seven years of famine begin	27
Laban told to search for the gods	21	Joseph's brothers come to Egypt to buy grain	28
Rachel conceals the gods by sitting on them	21	They do not recognise Joseph	28
Jacob becomes angry with his father-in-law	21	Joseph pretends to be a stranger	28
Laban and Jacob agree to make a covenant	21	Treats his brothers harshly	28
They build a pillar of stones and eat together	21	Joseph imprisons his brothers	28
Laban swears the covenant	21	Orders Benjamin be brought to Egypt.....	28
Laban returns home	21	Joseph weeps in secret	28
Jacob sends messengers to his brother Esau	22	Simeon chosen to remain in prison	28
Hears that Esau is coming with 400 men	22	Joseph hides each brother's silver in grain sacks ..	28
Jacob fears and divides his people	22	Brothers sent home	28
Jacob prays for protection from Esau	22	One brother finds his silver and their hearts sink ..	28
Prepares a gift for Esau	22	Israel distressed by what has happened	28
Moves his wives and sons to safety	22	Grain soon all eaten	28
Jacob wrestles an angel until daybreak	22	Israel reluctant to let his son Benjamin go	28
Jacob's name changed to Israel	22	Judah urges his father to agree	28
Bows to his brother Esau	22	Israel relents	28
Jacob and Esau reconciled	22	Silver to be returned and a gift taken	28
Esau declines Jacob's gift but Jacob insists	22	Brothers return to Egypt with Benjamin	28
Jacob declines Esau's offer to accompany him	22	Joseph orders his brothers taken to his house	29
Jacob buys land near town of Shechem	22	Brothers fearfully await Joseph's coming	29
Dinah raped by son of ruler of Shechem	23	Joseph weeps again in private	29
Dinah's brothers burn with anger	23	Joseph seats his brothers in order of birth	29
Ruler of Shechem visits Israel	23	Benjamin's food portion five times greater	29
Asks that Dinah be given to his son as wife	23	Joseph's silver cup hidden in Benjamin's sack	29
Dinah's brothers deceive in order to take revenge.....	23	Brothers depart for home	29
Demand that men of Shechem be circumcised.....	23	Joseph's steward sent after them	29
Every male in Shechem is circumcised	23	Brothers accused of theft	29
Dinah's two brothers kill all men of Shechem	23	Joseph's cup found in Benjamin's sack	29
Sons of Israel plunder Shechem	23	Brothers return to Joseph's house	29
God commands Israel to return to Bethel	23	Judah offers himself in place of Benjamin	29
Israel buries false gods and amulets of people	23	Joseph weeps loudly and reveals his identity	29
Israel returns to Bethel	23	Joseph kisses his brothers	29
Israel returns home to his father Isaac	23	Joseph sends for his father's household	29
On way Rachel gives birth to Benjamin but dies	23	Pharaoh offers best land in Egypt	29
Reuben commits adultery	23	Brothers return home with carts and gifts	29
Israel arrives home to his father Isaac	23	Israel overwhelmed that Joseph alive	29
Isaac dies soon afterward aged 180	23	Israel and all his household set out for Egypt	30
The twelve sons of Israel	24	God appears to Israel	30
Joseph and his coat of many colours	24	Joseph reunited with his father Israel	30
Joseph's dreams increase brothers' jealousy	24	Joseph presents his family to Pharaoh	30
Joseph sent out to his brothers in the fields	24	Israel blesses Pharaoh	30
Some of Joseph's brothers propose killing him	24	The Israelites settle in Goshen	30
Reuben tries to save Joseph	24	Joseph buys up all of Egypt	30
Joseph stripped of his coat and thrown in a pit	24	Pharaoh's land rented back to the people	30
Judah suggests they sell Joseph	24	Israel adopts Joseph's two sons	31

GENESIS 1

Ephraim to be greater than Manasseh	31
Ephraim's descendants to become many nations ...	31
Ephraim and Manasseh's' blessing	31
Israel gives Joseph the town of Shechem	31
Israel blesses the twelve tribes of Israel	31
Reuben's blessing, loses birthright	31
Simeon and Levis' blessing	31
Judah's blessing	31
Zebulun's blessing	31
Issachar's blessing	31
Dan's blessing	31

Gad's blessing	31
Asher's blessing	31
Naphtali's blessing	31
Joseph's blessing	31
Benjamin's blessing	31
Israel dies and is embalmed	31
Israel taken back to Canaan for burial	31
Joseph's brothers fear him and ask forgiveness	31
Joseph weeps and consoles his brothers	31
Joseph dies aged 110 years and is embalmed	31

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

The first day of creation – day and night

¹In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. The earth was formless and empty and darkness was upon the surface of the deep waters.

²The Spirit of God watched over^{F*} the waters, then God said, **“Let there be light.”** God saw that the light was good, and divided the light from the darkness.

³God called the light day, and the darkness night, and there was an evening and morning. This was the first day.^{F*}

The second day – atmosphere

⁴Then God said, **“Let there be an expanse in the midst of the waters, to separate water from water.”**

⁵So God separated the waters below the expanse from the waters above it.^{F*} He called the expanse the heavens. This was the second day.

The third day – plant life

⁶Then God said, **“Let the waters under the heavens be gathered into one place and dry land appear.”** God called the dry land Earth, and the gathered waters he called Sea.

⁷Then God said, **“Let the earth produce vegetation; plants bearing seed, and trees bearing fruit, with seed according to their kind.”** This was the third day.

The fourth day – signs, seasons and times

⁸Then God said, **“Let the lights in the expanse of the heavens that separate night from day serve as signs, to mark seasons, days, and years, and give light upon the earth.”**

⁹(God had made two great lights, the sun to govern the day, and the moon to govern the night, as also the stars.) This was the fourth day.

*2 'Watched over' is the translation of the Hebrew word *'rachaph'* which describes a broody mother hen, patiently hatching her eggs.

*3 Not necessarily a 24 hour day at this stage, as years and seasons are not organised until the fourth day (verse 8).

*5 Some bible scholars believe that these *'waters above the expanse'* (ie above the atmosphere) may have been the source of much of the water of the flood (see Genesis 6:7).



Our galaxy the Milky Way. The earth appears to have been a dark, water-covered planet when Genesis begins, see verse 1.

The fifth day – birds and fish

¹⁰Then God said, **“Let the waters teem with living creatures and let birds fly above the earth.”**

¹¹So God created the great creatures of the sea and all the living things with which the waters teem, each according to their kind, and all winged birds, according to their kind.

¹²God blessed them and commanded them saying, **“Be fruitful and multiply. Fill the seas, and let the birds increase upon the earth.”** This was the fifth day.

The sixth day – animals and insects

¹³Then God said, **“Let the earth bring forth living creatures of every kind, beasts, wild animals, and creatures that move along the ground, each according to its kind.”**

Adam is created

¹⁴Then God said, **“Let us^{F*} make man in our own image and likeness.”** ¹⁵So God formed Adam^{F*} from the dust of the earth and breathed into his nostrils the spirit of life and the man became a living being.

*14 The use of the plural 'us' in this instance, also in Genesis 3:22, 7:16 and Micah 1:23 can be explained by the revelation of the apostle John, that God the Father created the earth through his son, the pre-mortal Jesus Christ (John 1:2, Hebrews 1:1).

*15 Adam is the Hebrew word for man, meaning *'to contain blood.'*

¹⁶God blessed Adam and commanded him saying, **“Be fruitful and multiply. Fill the earth and take control over it. Rule over the fishes of the sea, the birds of the air, and every living creature that moves upon the ground.”**

Seeds and fruit to be food for man

¹⁷**“For your food I give you plants bearing seed, and trees bearing fruit.**

Green plants as food for other living creatures

¹⁸**“As food for the birds of the air and living creatures that move on the ground I give every green plant.”**

¹⁹God saw that all he had made was very good. This was the sixth day.

The seventh day – God rests and blesses that day to be holy

²⁰By the seventh day God had finished his work. So he rested and blessed the seventh day and made it holy.

2

The garden of Eden

¹This is the account of the creation of the heavens and the earth, before any plant of the ground had grown. ²For God had not yet caused it to rain on the earth, but there went up a mist from the earth and moistened the whole face of the ground.

³God planted a garden, eastward in Eden. He made all kinds of trees to grow in the garden that were pleasing to the eye and good for food.

⁴In the centre of the garden grew the Tree of Life, also the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil.

The river of Eden

⁵A river from Eden watered the garden. It flowed from four headwaters; the Pishon which wound through the land of Havilah where there was gold, aromatic resin, and onyx.^{F*} ⁶The Gihon which wound through the land of Cush. The Tigris which ran along the east side of Asshur, and the Euphrates.^{F*}

Adam placed in the garden of Eden to take care of it

⁷God took Adam and placed him in the garden of Eden to take care of it.

Adam commanded not to eat from the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil or he will die

⁸Then he commanded him saying, **“You may eat fruit from any tree in the garden, but from the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil^{F*} you must not eat, for when you eat of it you will surely die.”** ^{F*}

^{*5} Onyx is a translation of the Hebrew *‘shoham,’* which is believed to be a pale green gemstone or marble.

^{*6} Not the post-flood rivers that now bear these names.

^{*8} The name of this tree can also be translated ‘knowledge of Joy and Sorrow’ or ‘knowledge of Pleasure and Pain.’

^{*8} ie, they would become mortal.

Eve is created

⁹Now Jehovah^{F*} had brought all the animals of the field and birds of the air to the man to be named, but for Adam no suitable companion was found.

¹⁰Then God said, **“It is not good for the man to be alone. I will make a companion for him.”**

¹¹So God caused the man to fall into a deep sleep and he took one of the man’s ribs and closed up the place with flesh. From the rib God created a woman and brought her to the man.

¹²The man said, “This is now bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh. She shall be called woman, for she was taken out of man.”

¹³For this reason a man leaves his father and mother and joins to his wife and they become one flesh.

¹⁴The man and his wife were both naked but felt no shame.

3

Eve is deceived by the serpent

¹Now the serpent was the most cunning of all the creatures God had made. He spoke to the woman saying, “Did God say, ‘You must not eat from any tree in the garden?’”

²The woman replied, “We may eat fruit from any tree in the garden, except from the tree in the midst of the garden. If we do so we will surely die.”

³The serpent said, “You will not surely die. God knows that when you eat of that fruit your eyes will be opened, and you will become like God, knowing good and evil.”

Eve eats the forbidden fruit and gives some to Adam

⁴When the woman saw that the fruit of the tree was good for food and pleasing to the eye, and desirable for gaining knowledge, she took some and ate.

⁵Then she gave some to her husband and he also ate.^{F*}

⁶Then their eyes were opened and they became aware of their nakedness.^{F*} So they sewed fig leaves together and made themselves aprons.

^{*9} ‘Jehovah’ which means ‘Eternal’ is the english translation of ‘Yahweh’ (generally pronounced ‘ya-ha-wa’) which is the Hebrew name or title of God the Father. The name is normally written as ‘Lord’, ‘LORD’ or ‘LORD’ in most bibles, continuing the tradition of later Jewish teachers who believed the name too holy for frequent use. However the name ‘Yahweh’ appears frequently in the original Hebrew manuscripts. The name/title is also used by the Son of God, Jesus Christ who ‘comes in the name of Jehovah’ (Matt-Mark-Luke 25:22). Jesus Christ in his pre-mortal existence was the Old Testament God who appeared to Moses and spoke with the Old Testament prophets in the name of Jehovah. See also note on John 1:8.

^{*5} Paul the apostle in 1 Timothy 1:21 reveals that Adam was not deceived but ate knowing the consequences.

^{*6} Some bible scholars believe that it may have been necessary for Adam to ‘fall’ and lose his child-like innocence in order to obey the commandment to ‘multiply and fill the earth’ (Genesis 1:16). The reason for this would be that he, and we his descendants could only come to know real joy and goodness by first experiencing the opposite, ie by gaining knowledge of both good and evil (or joy and sorrow) as the name of the forbidden tree implies.

Jehovah visits Adam and Eve

⁷Then the man and his wife heard the voice of the Lord God Jehovah, walking in the garden in the cool of the evening, and they hid from him among the trees.

⁸The Lord God called to the man, “**Adam, where are you?**”

⁹Adam answered, “I heard you in the garden, and was afraid and hid, because I was naked.”

¹⁰God said, “**Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten of the tree from which I commanded you not to eat?**”

¹¹Adam said, “The woman you gave to be with me, she gave me fruit from the tree, and I did eat.”

¹²God said to the woman, “**What is this you have done?**”

¹³The woman said, “The serpent deceived me, and I did eat.”

The serpent cursed to crawl and eat dust

¹⁴Jehovah said to the serpent, “**Because you have done this, cursed are you above all the creatures of the earth. On your belly you shall crawl, and eat dust all the days of your life.**”

¹⁵“**And I will place enmity between you and the woman, and between your offspring and hers. He shall bruise your head, and you shall strike his heel.**”

Women cursed with agony in child birth and to be ruled over by men

¹⁶To the woman he said, “**I will greatly increase your pain in child bearing. In agony you shall give birth to children. And your desire shall be to your husband, and he will rule over you.**”

Men cursed to till the ground for food

¹⁸To Adam he said, “**Because you heeded the voice of your wife and ate from the tree of which I commanded you not to, cursed is the ground for your sake. In toil you will eat of it, all the days of your life.**”

¹⁹“**Thorns and thistles it shall bring forth, and by the sweat of your brow you shall obtain your food, until you return to the ground from which you were taken.**”

²⁰“**For dust you are, and to dust you shall return.**”

Adam and Eve his wife clothed with skins then banished from the garden

²¹The Lord made garments of skin for Adam and his wife to clothe them.

²²Then he said, “**The man has become as one of us, knowing good and evil. He must not be allowed to eat from the Tree of Life and live forever.**”

²³Therefore God banished Adam from the garden of Eden to till the ground from which he had been taken. ²⁴God set cherubim^{F*} and a flaming sword, flashing back and forth, to guard the way to the Tree of Life.

^{*24} Cherubim are winged angels having varying facial features depicting human, animal and bird life. See Ezekiel 1:4-9 for a fuller description.

Cain and Abel are born

¹Adam named his wife Eve,^{F*} for she would be the mother of all living.

²Adam lay with Eve and she conceived and gave birth to Cain. Later she gave birth to his brother Abel.^{F*}

Cain and Abel make offerings to the Lord

³Cain tilled the ground and Abel kept flocks. In time Cain brought fruits of the soil as an offering to Jehovah, and Abel brought the fat portions of the firstborn of his flock.

The Lord rejects Cain's offering

⁴The Lord accepted Abel and his offering but Cain and his offering he did not accept. Therefore Cain became angry.

⁵The Lord said to Cain, “**Why are you angry and your face downcast? If you do what is right you will be accepted. Sin is lurking at your door and desires you, but you must master it.**”

Cain murders his brother Abel

⁶Cain however said to his brother Abel, “Let us go into the field.” While they were in the field Cain turned on Abel and killed him.

Cain is cursed by the Lord to be a fugitive and a wanderer

⁷The Lord said to Cain, “**Where is your brother Abel?**”

⁸Cain answered, “I do not know. Am I my brother's keeper?”

⁹The Lord said, “**Your brother's blood cries to me from the ground.**”

¹⁰“**Now you are cursed and driven from the ground which received your brother's blood at your hand. When you till the earth it will no longer yield its strength for you. A fugitive and a wanderer you will be.**”

¹¹Cain said to the Lord, “My punishment is more than I can bear. I will be cut off from your presence, and whoever finds me may kill me.”

¹²The Lord said, “**If anyone kills you, he will suffer vengeance sevenfold.**” Then he put a mark on Cain so that anyone who came upon him would not kill him.

¹³Cain then went away from the Lord's presence and lived in the land of Nod,^{F*} east of Eden.

The family of Cain

¹⁴Cain lay with his wife^{F*} and she conceived, and gave birth to Enoch. Cain built a town and named it after his son.

¹⁵Enoch became the father of Irad. Irad was father of Mehujael. Mehujael was father of Methushael, and Methushael was father of Lamech.

Lamech and his family

¹⁶Lamech married two women, Adah and

^{*1} Eve means 'life-giver.'

^{*2} Not necessarily their first two children. Hebrew history tends to mention only historically significant persons.

^{*13} Nod means 'wandering.'

^{*14} It is generally accepted that the children of Adam and Eve intermarried.

Zillah. ¹⁷Adah gave birth to Jabal and Jubal. Jabal was father of those who live in tents and raise livestock. Jubal was the father of all who play the harp and flute. ¹⁸Zillah also bore Tubal- Cain, who forged tools out of bronze and iron.

¹⁹Lamech one day said to his wives, "I have killed a young man to my hurt. If Cain was to be avenged sevenfold then Lamech seventy-sevenfold."

5

Adam has other sons and daughters and then dies aged 930 years

¹When Adam had lived 130 years he had a son in his own likeness, and named him Seth.

²At that time men began to call on the name of the Lord Jehovah.

³After the birth of Seth, Adam lived 800 years and had other sons and daughters, and then died aged 930.

The descendants of Adam's son Seth

⁴Seth became father of Enosh at 105 years.^{F*} He also had other sons and daughters, and died aged 912.

⁵Enosh was father of Kenan, and died aged 905. Kenan was father of Mahalalel, and died aged 910.

⁶Mahalalel was father of Jared, and died aged 895.

⁷Jared was father of Enoch, and died aged 962.

Enoch is translated

⁸Enoch^{F*} was father of Methuselah. Enoch walked with God 300 years, and when he had lived to the age of 365, God took him away.^{F*}

⁹Methuselah was father of Lamech, and died aged 969 years.

The birth of Noah

¹⁰Lamech became father of Noah and said, "He will comfort us in the toil of the ground that Jehovah has cursed." Lamech died aged 777.

Noah's three sons

¹¹When Noah was 500 years old, he had become the father of Japheth, Shem, and Ham.

Righteous 'sons of God' marry wives outside godly line

¹²Now when men began to multiply upon the earth, the sons of God^{F*} saw how fair the daughters of men^{F*} were and chose wives from among them. ¹³They bore children to them. These were the mighty men of old, men of renown.

The tall race of Nephilim

¹⁴The Nephilim^{F*} were on the earth in those

*3 Not necessarily his first son. Hebrew genealogy is usually taken through the most prominent son.

*8 Not the Enoch of the line of Cain.

*8 Enoch was translated, a state where a righteous person is removed bodily from the earth. Moses and Elijah were also translated.

*12 The term 'sons of God' refers to male descendants of the righteous line of Seth.

*12 The term 'daughters of men' is believed to refer to women from other than the righteous line of Seth.

*14 The Nephilim were an exceptionally tall people, with heights of up to 9 feet. They were evidently preserved through Noah's

days, when the sons of God took wives of the daughters of men, and also afterward.

The world filled with violence

¹⁵Now the earth had become corrupt in God's sight and was filled with violence, and the hearts of the people were inclined toward evil continually.

¹⁶But Noah was a righteous man and walked with God.

Mankind corrupt and to be destroyed in 120 years time

¹⁷The Lord said, "My Spirit will not strive with man forever, for he is corrupt. His remaining days will be 120 years,^{F*} then I will destroy from the face of the earth mankind whom I have created. ¹⁸Also all the creatures that move on the surface of the ground and the birds of the air, for I am grieved that I have made them."

¹⁹But Noah found favour in the eyes of the Lord, so God said to Noah, "I am going to put an end to all mankind, for the earth is filled with violence."

Noah commanded to build an ark

²⁰"Therefore make for yourself an ark^{F*} of gopher wood,^{F*} 300 cubits long, 50 cubits wide, and 30 cubits high."^{F*}

²¹"Make rooms in it, and lower, middle and upper decks, and coat it with tar inside and out. Make a door in the side and a gap for daylight, one cubit above the walls."

A flood to come upon the earth

²²"I am going to bring floodwaters upon the earth to destroy every creature that has the breath of life, but with you I will make a covenant."

²³"You and your sons will enter the ark with your wives, And also with pairs of every kind of bird, animal, and creature that will come to you to be kept alive. ²⁴Take every kind of food and store it away."

family as they continue to be mentioned after the flood. They were later known as the Anakim 'long necks.' (Deuteronomy 2:2). Goliath and his brothers were of the Anakim.

*17 ie, until the flood.

*20 An ark is a lidded box or chest, therefore Noah's ark has traditionally been thought of as a large, rectangular, roofed barge. However petrified remains which are almost certainly those of the ark have been discovered at an altitude of 6200 feet on the mountain of Ararat and these reveal a typical ocean-going ship design with a prow and stern (see photo) and also a keel with heavy ballast. This is understandable as ship builders maintain that an unpowered, rectangular, fully laden flat-bottomed barge would not survive an ocean storm. Huge 350kg anchor stones, all identical, have been found in the vicinity of the ark and it has been conjectured that these were used as drogue anchors and trailed from the bow in the water to create drag and keep the ark facing into the wind and waves. Interestingly these anchor stones are hewn from a type of rock not found in the mountains of Ararat but on the American continent.

*20 There is no known tree called gopher. Hebrew scholars believe it is not a variety of tree but a laminating process using natural resins to greatly increase the strength of wood. This view is supported by the appearance of the petrified remains of the ark.

*20 Approx 156m by 26m and 16m high (512ft by 85ft and 51ft high) assuming that the longer royal Egyptian cubit of 520mm (20½") was used by Moses. The petrified remains of the ark on the mountain in Turkey measure 515ft in length. The ark was huge, half as long again as a typical football field which is 100m long, and about as wide as three average suburban streets. The height was about that of a modern six storey building.

GENESIS 6

²⁵So Noah built the ark as God had commanded him.^{F*}

6

Seven pairs each of birds and clean animals to be saved

¹Then God said to Noah, “Enter into the ark, you and your family, for I have found you righteous in this generation.”

²“Take with you seven pairs of all birds, and seven pairs of every kind of clean animal,^{F*} male and female, and one pair each of every unclean animal.”

³“Seven days from now I will send rain upon the earth for forty days and nights, and destroy from the surface of the earth every living creature I have made.”

Noah 600 years old when he enters the ark

⁴Noah was 600 years old when the floodwaters came upon the earth.

⁵Pairs of all creatures that move on the surface of the earth came to Noah and entered the ark.

⁶Then Noah and his three sons, Japheth, Shem, and Ham, together with their wives, entered the ark and the Lord shut them in.

Rain falls for forty days

⁷On the seventeenth day of the second month, the springs of the sea burst forth and the floodgates of the heavens were opened and rain fell for forty days and forty nights.

⁸The waters rose greatly and the ark floated on the surface of the waters, high above the earth.

All the mountains covered

⁹All of the mountains under the entire heavens were covered to a depth of more than fifteen cubits, and every living creature that moved upon the surface of the earth perished.

After 150 days the water begins to recede

¹⁰The waters flooded the earth for 150 days, then God sent a wind over the earth and the waters began to recede.

The ark rests on the mountains of Ararat

¹¹The ark came to rest on the mountains of Ararat.^{F*}

¹²The waters continued to recede, and on the first day of the tenth month the tops of the mountains could be seen.

Noah releases a raven and then a dove

¹³After forty more days, Noah opened the window he had made in the ark and released a raven. But it kept flying back and forth. ¹⁴Then Noah sent out a dove, but the dove returned to him so he reached out his hand and took it back inside the ark.

¹⁵Noah waited seven more days and again sent out the dove. The dove returned to him at evening with a freshly plucked olive leaf in its beak. Then Noah knew that the water was receding from the ground.

¹⁶Noah waited seven more days and sent the dove out again. This time it did not return.

The earth finally dries

¹⁷On the first day of the first month, Noah removed the door from the ark and saw that the surface of the earth was almost dry. On the twenty-seventh day of the second month the earth was dry.^{F*}



The petrified hull of Noah's ark on the mountains of Ararat at 6200ft. The remains of the keel and ballast are further up the mountain.

God commands Noah to come out of the ark

¹⁸God said to Noah, “Come out of the ark, you and your sons and your wives, and bring out every living creature that is with you so they can again multiply upon the earth.”

Noah builds an altar and offers sacrifice

¹⁹Then Noah built an altar to the Lord and taking some of the clean animals and birds he offered them as a burnt sacrifice.

Man given dominion over all creatures on earth

²⁰The Lord was pleased with the aroma and he blessed Noah and his sons saying, “Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the earth.”

²¹“I give you dominion over all creatures.”

Eating of flesh now permitted but not blood

²²“All that lives and moves will now be food for you. Just as I gave you plant life, I now give you everything, but you must not eat meat without first draining the blood.”

All shedding of blood to be accounted for

²³“I shall also demand an accounting for your own blood, and from every animal.”

²⁴“From every man I will demand an accounting for the life of his fellow man.

²⁵Whoever sheds the blood of man, by man shall his own blood be shed, for in the image of God was man made.”

*25 Noah had a period of time as long as 120 years in which to build the ark (Genesis 5:17).

*2 Clean and unclean animals are explained in Leviticus chapter 3.

*11 Mount Ararat itself is a comparatively recent snow capped volcano in Armenia 17,000 feet high. The keel of the ark was discovered on a nearby mountain at 6500 feet and the hull 300 feet lower where it had been swept and buried in a lava flow.

*17 Noah spent just over a year in the ark.

Never again will a flood destroy the earth

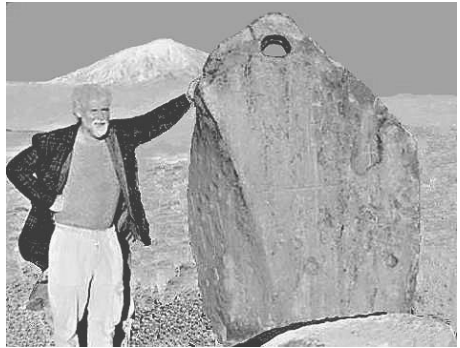
²⁶“I now make my covenant with you and your descendants, and with every living creature on earth. Never again shall there be a flood to destroy the earth.”

God’s covenant of the rainbow

²⁷“As a sign of the covenant I now make, I have set my rainbow in the cloud.^{F*} Whenever the rainbow appears I will see it, and remember my covenant.”



^F* ‘Rivet’ found near the remains of Noah’s Ark.



One of several huge anchor stones found in the vicinity of the petrified ark. The stone is not native to the area. Mount Ararat is in the background.

The origins of the nations

⁶After the flood Noah lived 350 years, and then died at the age of 950.

⁷These are the descendants of Noah’s sons. From them the whole world was peopled after the flood:

The sons of Japheth

⁸The sons of Japheth: Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras.

The sons of Shem

⁹The sons of Shem: Elam, Asshur, Arphaxad, Lud, and Syria.^{F*}

The sons of Ham

¹⁰The sons of Ham: Cush, Egypt, Put, and Canaan. ¹¹(Cush was the father of Nimrod who grew to be a mighty warrior on the earth. His first kingdom was Babylon and from there he built Nineveh.)

The tower of Babel

¹²Now the whole world had one language, and as men moved eastward they settled on a plain in Babylonia.

¹³Then they said, “Let us make bricks, (they used bricks for stone and tar for mortar) and build ourselves a city with a tower that reaches high to the heavens, and make a name for ourselves, otherwise we shall be scattered over the face of the earth.”

God confuses the language of the people and scatters them over the earth

¹⁴Jehovah came down to see the city and the tower that the men were building.

¹⁵Then he said, “If as one people speaking the same language they have begun to do this, nothing they plan to do will be impossible for them.”

¹⁶“Come, let us^{F*} go down and confuse their language so they will not understand each other.”

¹⁷So Jehovah did so, and scattered the people from there to all over the earth, and they stopped building the city.

7

Noah becomes drunk

¹Now Noah was a man of the soil and he planted a vineyard. In time he drank of its wine and became drunk and lay uncovered in his tent.

Ham mocks his father’s nakedness

²Ham saw his father’s nakedness and went and told his two brothers. But Shem, with Japheth, took a garment and walked into the tent backwards so they would not see, and covered their father’s nakedness.

Noah curses the descendants of Ham’s son Canaan to be the lowest of servants

³When Noah awoke from his wine and heard what his youngest son Ham had done, he said, “Cursed be Canaan, son of Ham, the lowest of servants will he be to his brethren.”^{F*}

Noah blesses his sons Shem and Japheth

⁴He also said, “Blessed be my son Shem by Jehovah my God, let Canaan be his slave.”

⁵“May God enlarge my son Japheth and let him dwell in the tents of Shem. Canaan shall be his slave also.”

^{F*} There was probably no rainbow seen prior to the flood due to the absence of rain (Genesis 2:2) and perhaps the influence of the ‘waters above the expanse’ (Genesis 1:4-5).

^{F*} Noah evidently showed disapproval of his youngest son Ham’s dishonourable behaviour by in turn dishonouring Ham’s own youngest son, Canaan.

^{F*} The descendants of Shem were also called Shemites, later modified to Semites.

^{F*} Jehovah (God the Father) speaking to his Son the pre-mortal Jesus Christ who created the earth. See note on Genesis 1:14.

GENESIS 8

¹⁸The city was called Babel, because there the Lord confused the language of the whole world.



Claimed ruins of the Tower of Babel in Iraq.

8

The generations to Abram (later Abraham)

¹Shem lived 502 years after the flood, and died at the age of 600.

²His son Arphaxad lived 35 years and became father of Shelah, and died aged 438.

³Shelah lived 30 years and became father of Eber, and died aged 433.

⁴Eber was father of Peleg. ⁵He was named Peleg because in his days the nations were divided. ^{F*} Eber died aged 464.

⁶Peleg was father of Reu, and died aged 239.

⁷Reu was father of Serug, and died aged 437.

⁸Serug was father of Nahor, and died aged 230.

⁹Nahor was father of Terah, and died aged 148.

Abram and his nephew Lot are born in Ur

¹⁰Terah was father of three sons, Abram, ^{F*} Nahor, and Haran.

¹¹Haran became the father of Lot, but while his father Terah was still alive, Haran died in Ur of Babylonia, the land of his birth.

¹²Abram married Sarai, and Nahor married Milcah the daughter of Haran.

Abram's father Terah leaves Ur and settles in Haran

¹³Then Terah took his son Abram and his grandson Lot, and left Ur to go and live in Canaan. ^{F*} ¹⁴But when they came to the city of Haran they settled there instead, and Terah died there aged 205.

God calls Abram and makes a covenant

¹⁵Then Jehovah spoke to Abram saying, **“Leave your country, your people, and your father's household and go to the land I will show you.”**

¹⁶**“I will bless you and make you a great**

nation, and make your name great. ¹⁷I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you, and all nations on earth shall be blessed through you.”

Abram and his people travel to Canaan

¹⁸So Abram took his possessions, his nephew Lot, and all the people he had acquired, and set out for the land of Canaan.

¹⁹Abram was now 75 years old. He travelled through Canaan as far as the great oaks near Hebron. At that time the Canaanites dwelt in the land.

The descendants of Abram to be given the land of Canaan

²⁰There Jehovah appeared to him and said, **“To your offspring I will give this land.”** So Abram built an altar there to the Lord.

²¹Then he moved on and pitched his tent among the hills near Bethel, ^{F*} and built another altar and called on the name of the Lord.

Abram goes to live in Egypt

²²Abram continued travelling south toward the desert, but there was a famine in the land so he journeyed down to Egypt to live.

Abram instructs his wife Sarai to tell the Egyptians that she is his sister

²³As he was about to enter Egypt he said to his wife Sarai, “You are a fine looking woman. When the Egyptians see you, they may kill me for you. ²⁴Therefore say to them that you are my sister, so my life will be spared and I will be treated well for your sake.”

Pharaoh takes Sarai to be his wife

²⁵The Egyptians saw that Sarai was indeed a fine looking woman, and praised her to Pharaoh. So Pharaoh took her into his palace to be his wife.

²⁶Pharaoh treated Abram well for Sarai's sake, and Abram acquired sheep, cattle, donkeys, servants, and camels.

The Lord inflicts serious diseases on Pharaoh and his household

²⁷But the Lord inflicted serious diseases on Pharaoh and his household because of Sarai.

²⁸Pharaoh summoned Abram and said to him, “Why did you not tell me she was your wife? Why did you say that she was your sister so that I took her to be my wife?”

Sarai returned to Abram

²⁹“Here is your wife. Take her and go!”

9

Abram now a wealthy man returns to Canaan

¹So Abram returned to Bethel where he had built an altar and Lot went with him. ²Abram had now become very wealthy in flocks and herds, and silver and gold.

*5 Peleg means ‘to divide.’

*10 The Lord later changed Abram's name to Abraham (Genesis 11:15). Noah died about two years before Abraham's birth.

*13 The land of Canaan became the future land of Israel.

*21 Bethel was known as Luz at this time. It was later renamed Bethel by Abram's grandson Jacob (Genesis 19:11).

Lot separates from Abram

³Lot also had flocks and herds. The land could not support them both and quarrelling arose between their herdsmen.

⁴Abram said to Lot, "Let us not quarrel, for we are kin. The whole land is before you. If you go left I will go right, if you go right I will go left."

Lot chooses the Jordan valley near Sodom

⁵So Lot chose the Jordan river valley which was well watered, and went down to live among the cities of the valley, near Sodom. ⁶(Now the men of Sodom were wicked and sinning greatly against the Lord.) ⁷Abram remained in the hills near Bethel.

The Lord renews his covenant with Abram – his descendants to be numerous and the land of Canaan to be theirs

⁸After Lot had departed, the Lord said to Abram, "Look north, south, east, and west. All the land you see I will give to you and your descendants."

⁹"I will make your descendants like the dust of the earth. Only if one could count the dust could your offspring be counted. ¹⁰Now go, walk throughout the length and breadth of the land I am giving to you."

¹¹So Abram moved his tents back to the oaks at Hebron and there he built an altar to Jehovah.

Lot captured by kings from the north

¹²At that time four kings from the north attacked the five kings of the Jordan valley, defeating them. ¹³Men fled to the hills and some fell into the tar pits.

¹⁴The four kings from the north seized captives, plunder, and food from the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah. They also carried off Lot and his possessions.

Abram rescues Lot

¹⁵When Abram heard that Lot had been taken captive, he called out the 318 men born in his household and along with others who joined him he set out in pursuit.

¹⁶During the night Abram divided his men and attacked the enemy and routed them. ¹⁷He recovered all the plunder and brought back Lot and his possessions together with the other captives.

Abram pays a tithe to Melchizedek

¹⁸When Abram returned, the king of Sodom came out to meet him, also Melchizedek king of Salem,^{F*} bringing bread and wine.

¹⁹Melchizedek was priest of God Most High, and he blessed Abram saying, "**Blessed be Abram by God Most High, creator of the heavens and earth.** ²⁰**And blessed be God Most High, who delivered your enemies into your hand.**"

²¹Then Abram gave Melchizedek a tenth of all the plunder he had recovered.

Abram refuses to keep any spoil for himself

²²The king of Sodom said to Abram, "Give me my people, but keep the rest of the spoil for yourself."

²³But Abram said, "I raise my hand to Jehovah, God Most High, creator of the heavens and earth, and take an oath that I will accept nothing belonging to you, not even a thong of a sandal, so that you can never say, 'I made Abram rich.'"

²⁴"I will accept only what my men have eaten, and the share that belongs to the allies who went with me; Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre.^{F*}"



Nomadic goat-hair tents, typical of the type used by Abraham.

10

The Lord promises Abram a son

¹After this, the word of the Lord came to Abram in a vision saying, "**Fear not Abram, for I will always be your shield and your reward shall be great.**"

²But Abram said, "O Lord, what will you give me, for I remain childless? My servant Eliezer of Damascus will be my heir."

³The Lord replied, "**He will not be your heir. Your own son will be your heir. Look toward the heavens and number the stars if you can. So shall your offspring be.**"

⁴Abram believed the Lord, and it was credited to him as righteousness.

Abram asks the Lord for a sign that the land of Canaan will be his

⁵Then the Lord said to Abram, "**I am Jehovah who brought you out of Ur of Babylonia to give you this land.**"

⁶Abram asked, "O Lord, what assurance may I have that this land will be mine?"

The Lord gives Abram a covenant sign

⁷The Lord said to him, "**Bring to me a heifer,^{F*} a goat, and a ram, each three years old, and a dove and a young pigeon.**"

⁸So Abram did so and slaughtered them. All except the birds he cut in half and arranged the halves opposite each other. ⁹Birds of prey

*18 Jewish scholars believe that Salem was the original name of Jerusalem.

*24 Probably local Canaanite chieftains who assisted Abram.

*7 A heifer is a young female cow.

GENESIS 11

swooped down on the carcasses, but Abram drove them away.

¹⁰As the sun was setting Abram fell into a deep sleep, and a terrifying darkness descended upon him.

Abram's descendants to be slaves in Egypt 400 years

¹¹Then the Lord said to Abram, “Your descendants will be strangers in a country not their own,^{F*} and will serve them as slaves and be afflicted 400 years.”

¹²“But I will punish the nation they serve, and in the fourth generation they will come out with great possessions.”

¹³“Only then will your descendants return here, for the wickedness of the Canaanites has not yet reached full measure.”

¹⁴“You however, will be gathered to your fathers in peace^{F*} and be buried at a good old age.”

The promised land's borders

¹⁵When night had fully fallen, a blazing torch appeared and passed between the pieces of the sacrifice.^{F*} ¹⁶Then the Lord made his covenant with Abram saying, “I give this land to your descendants, from the river of Egypt^{F*} to the great river Euphrates.” ¹⁷The land of the Kenites, Kenizzites, Kadmonites, Hittites, Perizzites, Rephaites, Amorites, Canaanites, Girgashites, and Jebusites.”^{F*}

11

A barren Sarai gives Abram her maid Hagar as a wife

¹Now Sarai, Abram's wife was barren. After Abram had lived in Canaan ten years, Sarai said to him, “The Lord has kept me from having children. Lie with my maidservant Hagar. Perhaps I can obtain children through her.”

²So she gave Hagar, her Egyptian maidservant to her husband to be his wife.

Hagar conceives and treats Sarai with contempt

³Abram lay with Hagar and she conceived. But after she conceived Hagar began to treat her mistress Sarai with contempt.

Sarai ill-treats Hagar who flees into the desert

⁴Sarai said to Abram, “You are responsible for the wrong I am suffering. I placed my servant in your arms and now she despises me. May the Lord judge between you and me.”

⁵Abram said, “Your servant is in your hands. Do with her as you think best.”

*11 Egypt (Genesis chapter 30).

*14 Israelite belief was that after death, a person's spirit descended to Sheol (the spirit world of the dead) and dwelt with their ancestors (their fathers) while awaiting the resurrection of the body.

*15 In ancient times both parties to a covenant (or contract) walked between halves of a dead animal and called down upon themselves the fate of the victim should they break the covenant. In this case the blazing torch represented the Lord.

*16 The Wadi-el-arish, not the Nile.

*17 These ten tribes, then living in the land of Canaan, are usually referred to by the collective term Canaanites.

⁶So Sarai ill-treated Hagar and she fled from her into the desert.



Abram's travels.

An angel speaks to Hagar

⁷The angel of the Lord found Hagar near a spring and said to her, “Hagar, servant of Sarai, where are you going?”

⁸“I am fleeing from my mistress Sarai,” she answered.



Desert spring.

Hagar's son to be named Ishmael and his descendants to be numerous

⁹The angel said, “Return to your mistress and submit to her. I will^{F*} so increase your descendants that they will be too numerous to number.”

¹⁰“You will bear a son and name him Ishmael, for Jehovah has heard of your misery.”

Ishmael to be a wild ass of a man

¹¹“He will be a wild ass of a man.^{F*} His hand will be against everyone, and everyone's hand against him, yet he will live near his kinsmen.”

¹²So Hagar returned and bore Abram a son and he named him Ishmael. Abram was now 86 years old.

Lord reconfirms his covenant with Abram

¹³When Abram was 99 years old, the Lord appeared to him again. Abram fell face down

*9 Angels often speak as if the Lord himself were speaking.

*11 ie Freedom-loving and untameable.

and God said, “I am God Almighty.^{F*} Walk before me and be blameless.”

¹⁴“I now reconfirm my covenant with you and your descendants. I will greatly increase your numbers. You will be the father of many nations and kings shall come from you.”

Abram’s name changed to Abraham

¹⁵“No longer will you be called Abram, your name shall now be Abraham.” ^{F*}

¹⁶“I will give to you and your descendants the whole land of Canaan as an everlasting possession, and I shall be your God. However, you must keep my covenant.”

The sign of the covenant – circumcision

¹⁷“This will be a sign of the covenant between us: For generations to come every male among you must be circumcised when eight days old, including those bought with money from foreigners, who are not your offspring.”

¹⁸“Any male not circumcised will be cut off from his people for he will have broken my covenant.”

Sarai’s name changed to Sarah

¹⁹“As for Sarai your wife, her name will now be Sarah.^{F*} She will become the mother of nations, and kings shall come from her.”

The birth of Isaac foretold

²⁰“I will bless her and she will bear you a son.”

²¹Abraham fell on his face and rejoiced and said to himself, “A son is to be born to a man aged a 100 years old, and Sarah is to bear a child at the age of 90!”

²²Then he said to God, “O that Ishmael might also live under your blessing.”

²³God said, “Sarah will bear you a son and you shall call him Isaac.^{F*} I will keep my covenant with him and his descendants after him.”

Ishmael also to become a great nation

²⁴“As for Ishmael, I will bless him also and make him fruitful. He will become the father of twelve princes, and I will make him into a great nation. ²⁵But my covenant I will establish with Isaac, whom Sarah shall bear to you at this time next year.”

Abraham and all the males in his household are circumcised

²⁶That same day Abraham was himself circumcised, and he took his son Ishmael and all the males in his household and circumcised them as God had commanded.

Abraham visited by Jehovah and two angels

¹The Lord appeared again to Abraham, near the oaks of Hebron while he was sitting at the entrance of his tent in the heat of the day. ²Abraham looked up and saw three men^{F*} standing nearby.



Ancient oak near Hebron.

Abraham prepares food for the men

³He hurried to greet them and bowed to the ground before them and said, “If I have found favour in your eyes my lords, do not pass your servant by. ⁴Let a little water be brought to wash your feet, then rest under this tree and let me bring you something to eat, so you can be refreshed and then go on your way.”

⁵They answered, “Very well, do as you say.” So Abraham hurried into the tent to Sarah and said to her “Quick, take three measures of fine flour and bake some bread!” ⁶Then he ran to the herd and selected a choice calf and gave it to a servant who hurried to prepare it.

⁷He brought cheese, milk, and the calf that had been prepared and set these before the men. While they ate he stood nearby under a tree.

Abraham told that Sarah will bear a son next year

⁸Then they said to him, “Where is your wife Sarah?”

Abraham replied, “She is in the tent.”

⁹Then Jehovah spoke and said, “I will return to you about this time next year, and Sarah your wife shall bear a son.”

Sarah overhears and laughs in disbelief

¹⁰Now Sarah was listening inside the tent. She laughed and said to herself, “I am old and my husband is old, how can I now have this pleasure?”

*13 The name God Almighty is ‘*El Shaddai*’ in Hebrew.

*15 Abraham means ‘father of multitudes.’ Abram meant ‘father of high status.’

*19 Sarah means ‘noble lady.’ Sarai meant ‘dominant.’

*23 Isaac means ‘to laugh.’

*2 Jehovah and the two angels (see following verses).

¹¹Jehovah said to Abraham, “Why did Sarah laugh and say, ‘How can I have a child now that I am old?’ Is anything too hard for the Lord?”

¹²Sarah feared and called out, “I did not laugh.”

The Lord replied, “You did laugh.”

Sodom and Gomorrah

¹³Then the men arose to go down to Sodom. Abraham walked along with them to see them on their way. ¹⁴Jehovah said, “Shall I hide from Abraham what I am about to do? ¹⁵Abraham will surely become a great and powerful nation, and all nations on earth shall be blessed through him. ¹⁶For I have chosen him, and he will direct his children after him to keep the way of Jehovah by doing what is right and just.”

¹⁷Then he said to Abraham, “The outcry against Sodom and Gomorrah is so great and their sin so grievous that I must go down to see if what they have done is as bad as the outcry that has reached me. If not I will know.”

¹⁸The two men^{F*} continued toward Sodom but Abraham stood with the Lord.

Abraham pleads for Sodom

¹⁹Then Abraham said to the Lord, “Will you destroy the righteous with the wicked? What if there are fifty righteous people found in the city? Will you not spare the place for their sake. ²⁰Far be it from you to destroy the righteous with the wicked. Will not the judge of all the earth do right?”

²¹Jehovah said, “If I find fifty righteous people in the city of Sodom, I will spare the whole city for their sake.”

Sodom will not be destroyed if ten righteous people can be found there

²²Then Abraham spoke up again saying, “Now that I have been so bold as to speak to the Lord, though I am nothing but dust and ashes, what if the number of the righteous is five less than fifty? Will you destroy the whole city because of five people?”

²³“If I find forty-five righteous people there, I will not destroy it.” the Lord replied.

²⁴“What if only forty are found?”

“For the sake of forty I will not do it.”

²⁵“What if only twenty can be found there?”

“For the sake of twenty I will not destroy it.”

²⁶Then Abraham said, “May Jehovah not be angry. Let me speak just once more. What if only ten righteous people be found there?”

²⁷He answered, “For the sake of ten righteous people I will not destroy it.”

²⁸Then the Lord went his way and Abraham returned to his tent.

The two angels visit Sodom and stay with Lot

¹The two angels came to Sodom in the evening as Lot was sitting in the gateway of the city.

²When Lot saw them he arose and bowed before them with his face to the ground and said, “My lords, turn aside to your servant’s house. Wash your feet and spend the night with me, and then go your way early in the morning.”

³They answered, “No, we will spend the night in the square.”

⁴But Lot insisted so strongly, that they went with him. He prepared a meal for them, baking bread without yeast and they ate.

Sexual deviants surround Lot’s house and demand he bring out the angels

⁵But that night, before they lay down, men from every part of Sodom, both young and old surrounded the house and shouted to Lot, “Bring out the men who came to you tonight, so we can have sex with them!”

Lot offers his daughters instead

⁶Lot went out to them and shut the door behind him and said, “No my brothers, do not do this wicked thing. ⁷I have two daughters who have never lain with a man, let me bring them out to you, and you can do what you like with them, but do not do anything to these men, for they have come under the protection of my roof.”^{F*}

The men near Lot’s door struck with blindness

⁸But they said to him, “Out of our way!” and then said among themselves, “This fellow came here to live among us and now would be our judge. We will treat him worse than them.” And they moved forward to break down the door. ⁹But the angels inside reached out and pulled Lot back into the house and shut the door.

¹⁰Then they struck the men who were near the door of the house with a blindness so that they could not find the door.^{F*}

Lot’s family do not believe that Sodom is to be destroyed

¹¹The angels said to Lot, “If you have anyone else in the city who belongs to you, get them out. The outcry to Jehovah against this city is so great that he has sent us to destroy it.”

¹²So Lot went out to warn his sons-in-law who had married his other daughters. He said to them, “Flee the city now! The Lord is about to destroy it!”

¹³But they did not believe him.

The angels lead Lot’s household out of Sodom

¹⁴At dawn the angels urged Lot saying,

*7 To permit a male guest in your home to be dishonoured is an unforgivable offence in Middle-East culture.

*10 Probably a hallucinatory blindness such as that induced by a stage hypnotist. A similar blindness was inflicted on an entire Syrian army at the prayer of the prophet Elijah.

*18 These two men are referred to as angels from the time they arrive at Sodom. See verse 1 of the following chapter.

“Hurry. Take your wife and your two daughters who are here with you or you too will be destroyed when the city is punished.”

¹⁵Lot hesitated, but the angels grasped his hand and the hands of his wife and daughters and led them out of the city and said, **“Flee to the mountains. Do not look back, nor stop anywhere in the valley.”**

Lot flees to the town of Zoar

¹⁶Lot said, “You have shown kindness to me in sparing my life, but I cannot flee to the mountains lest the disaster overtake me and I die. ¹⁷Look, there is a town near enough to run to, and it is small. Let me flee there, then my life will be spared.”

¹⁸One of the angels replied, **“Very well, I will grant this request. We shall not destroy the town you speak of. But flee there quickly. We can do nothing until you reach it.”** The town was called Zoar.

Sodom and Gomorrah destroyed

¹⁹Then the Lord rained down burning sulphur on Sodom and Gomorrah, destroying the cities and all who lived in them, along with the entire plain and the vegetation in the land.

Lot’s wife lags behind to watch and is also destroyed

²⁰Lot’s wife was also destroyed, for she had lagged behind him to watch. She became a pillar of salt.^{F*}

Abraham sees the dense smoke rising

²¹Early next morning Abraham looked down toward Sodom and Gomorrah and saw dense smoke arising from the land.

Lot lies with his two daughters

²²Lot and his two daughters soon left Zoar, for Lot was afraid to stay there. They lived in a cave in the mountains.

²³One day the older daughter said to the younger, “Our father is old and there is no man around here to marry us as is the custom of the earth. ²⁴Let us get our father to drink wine and then lie with him, and so preserve our family through our father.”

²⁵So that night they made their father Lot drunk on wine, and the older daughter lay with him. He was not aware of when she lay down or when she got up. ²⁶The next night they again got their father drunk on wine, and the younger daughter lay with him.

The Moabites and the Ammonites descended from Lot’s sons

²⁷Both Lot’s daughters conceived by their father. The older daughter had a son named Moab, the father of the Moabites. ²⁸The younger daughter also had a son, Ben-Ammi, the father of the Ammonites.



One of many pillars of rock salt on the salt hills along the shore of the Dead Sea, near the original location of the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.

14

King Abimelech takes Sarah as his wife

¹Now Abraham moved on from Hebron, to Gerar, and there again said of his wife Sarah, “She is my sister.” So Abimelech, king of Gerar took her to be his wife.

God warns Abimelech in a dream

²But God appeared to Abimelech in a dream and said to him, **“You and all that belong to you are about to die, for the woman you have taken is another man’s wife.”**

³Now Abimelech had not lain with Sarah, so he said, “Lord, will you destroy an innocent people? Did he not say to me, ‘She is my sister,’ and did she not also say, ‘He is my brother?’ ⁴I have done this with a clear conscience and clean hands.”

⁵God replied, **“I know that You have done this with a clear conscience, that is why I did not let you touch her, and kept you from sinning against me. ⁶Now return the man’s wife, for he is a prophet, and he will pray for you and you will live. ⁷Otherwise, you and all that belong to you will die.”**

Abimelech rebukes Abraham

⁸So early the next morning Abimelech summoned his officials and told them all that had happened, and they feared.

⁹Abimelech sent for Abraham and said to him, “What wrong have I done to you that you have brought such great guilt upon me and my kingdom? What was your reason for doing this?”

¹⁰Abraham replied, “I said to myself, ‘There is no fear of God in this place. They may kill me because of my wife.’ ¹¹Besides, she really is my sister, the daughter of my father, though not of my mother.”

*20 ie She was buried alive by the falling sulphur.

GENESIS 15

Abimelech enriches Abraham and returns Sarah

¹²Abimelech gave Abraham sheep, cattle, and servants, and returned Sarah to him saying, "My land is before you, live wherever you choose."

¹³To Sarah he said, "I am giving your brother a thousand shekels of silver^{F*} to cover the offence against you."

¹⁴Then Abraham prayed and God healed the household of Abimelech, for God had closed every womb because of Sarah.

Isaac is born

¹⁵Now the Lord did for Sarah as he had promised and she conceived, and bore a son to Abraham in his old age. He named him Isaac.

¹⁶When Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him as God had commanded.

¹⁷Abraham was now a 100 years old.

Sarah rejects Ishmael

¹⁸The child grew and on the day he was weaned^{F*} Abraham held a feast. ¹⁹But Sarah saw Ishmael the son of Hagar teasing Isaac, so she said to Abraham, "Get rid of that slave woman and her son. He is not to share the inheritance with my son Isaac."

²⁰This distressed Abraham greatly, but God said to him, "**Be not distressed regarding Ishmael and your maidservant. Do as Sarah says. It will be through Isaac that your offspring will be named.**" ²¹However I will make Ishmael into a nation also, for he is your offspring."

Hagar and her son Ishmael sent away

²²So early next morning Abraham took food and a skin of water, and placing them on Hagar's shoulders sent her off with Ishmael. She went her way and wandered in the desert of Beersheba.

Hagar distressed as Ishmael lies dying of thirst in the desert

²³When the skin of water was all gone, Hagar left Ishmael lying under a bush and went off and sat down about a bow shot away saying to herself, "I cannot watch my son die."^{F*} Then she wailed and wept.

An angel speaks to Hagar from heaven and reveals water

²⁴But God heard the boy crying out and the angel of God called to Hagar from heaven and said to her, "**Be not distressed Hagar. God has heard your son as he lies there.**" ²⁵**Lift him up by the hand, for God will make him into a great nation.**"

²⁶Then God opened Hagar's eyes and she saw a well of water. So she went and filled the skin with water and took it to her son.

Ishmael grows up in the desert

²⁷God was with Ishmael as he grew. He lived

in the desert and became an archer, and his mother Hagar took a wife for him from Egypt.



Water skins, made from tightly sewn skin of goats.

15

God greatly tests Abraham by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac

¹Some time later, God greatly tested Abraham. He said to him, "**Abraham, take your son Isaac whom you love, and go to the region of Moriah. Sacrifice him there as a burnt offering on a mountain which I will show you.**"

Abraham and his son travel to Mount Moriah

²So early next morning, Abraham and his son Isaac cut wood for the burnt offering and then set out for Moriah.

³On the third day Abraham saw the mountain in the distance. He said to his two servants, "Remain here with the donkey while I and the boy go on to worship. Then we will return."

⁴Abraham loaded the wood for the burnt offering on his son Isaac's back. He himself carried the fire^{F*} and the knife.

⁵As they went up the mountain together Isaac said to Abraham, "Father, we have the fire and the wood, but where is the lamb for the offering?"

⁶Abraham answered, "God will provide the lamb my son."

Abraham prepares the sacrifice

⁷When they reached the spot that God had shown him,^{F*} Abraham built an altar and arranged the wood for the fire. ⁸Then he took his son Isaac and bound him, and laid him on top of the wood.

The Lord stays Abraham's knife at the last second

⁹But just as Abraham reached for the knife to slay his son the angel of the Lord called from

*13 One shekel of silver (about 9gms) was worth about a days wage for a labourer.

*18 Hebrew children were usually weaned between the age of two and three.

*23 Ishmael would have been about 14 years old.

*4 Live embers from a fire carried in an earthenware vessel.

*7 This spot is believed to be the later site of Solomon's Temple in Jerusalem and very near the present day Islamic mosque 'The Dome of the Rock.'

heaven and said, **“Abraham, lay not a hand on the boy. Now I know that you revere God, for you have not withheld from me^{F*} your only son.”**

A ram caught in the thicket is sacrificed

¹⁰Abraham then saw a ram caught in a thicket by its horns. He took the ram and sacrificed it as a burnt offering in place of his son.

The Lord again reaffirms his covenant with Abraham

¹¹The angel of the Lord called to Abraham again and said, **“Because you have not withheld your only son, I will bless you and make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the heavens, and as the sand on the seashore. ¹²Your descendants will possess the cities of their enemies, and through your offspring all nations on earth shall be blessed, for you have obeyed me.”**

Sarah dies

¹³Sarah lived to be 127 years old then she died, at Hebron in the land of Canaan.

Abraham buys a field and cave as a burial site

¹⁴Abraham wept over his wife. Then he arose from beside her and spoke to the Hittites saying, “I am a stranger among you. Sell me some land here so I can bury my dead.”

¹⁵The Hittites replied, “You are a prince of God among us. Bury your dead in the choicest of our tombs. None will refuse you.”

¹⁶Abraham bowed down before them and said, “Entreat for me Ephron, to sell me the cave at the end of his field.”

¹⁷Ephron who was sitting among his people replied to Abraham saying, “My lord, I will gift you the field and the cave that is in it. Bury your dead.”

¹⁸But Abraham said to Ephron, “I will pay the price of the field. Accept it from me.”

¹⁹Ephron answered, “The land is worth 400 shekels of silver,^{F*} but what is that between me and you? Bury your dead.”

²⁰Abraham weighed out for him the price he had named, then the field along with the cave and the trees was deeded in the presence of the Hittites who had assembled in the gate^{F*} of the city.

²¹Afterward Abraham buried his wife Sarah in the cave.

16

Abraham sends his servant back to Haran to obtain a wife for Isaac

¹Abraham was now well advanced in years and the Lord had blessed him in every way.

²He said to his chief servant,^{F*} “Put your hand under my thigh and swear by Jehovah, God of heaven and earth, that you will not take a wife for my son Isaac from among the daughters of the Canaanites, but will return to my own land, to my own people and there obtain a wife for him.”

³“The Lord will send his angel before you. If the girl is unwilling to come I release you from this oath, but do not take my son back there.”

⁴So the servant took ten camels and gifts from his master and set out for Haran where Abraham’s brother Nahor had lived.

The servant prays for guidance

⁵When the servant arrived in Haran^{F*} he knelt the camels down near the spring outside the town. It was toward evening, the time when women go out to draw water.

⁶Then he prayed, “O Jehovah, God of my master Abraham, give me success this day and show kindness to Abraham. ⁷See, I am standing beside this spring and the daughters of the town are coming out to draw water. ⁸May it be that when I say to a girl, ‘Please let down your jar that I may drink,’ and she replies, ‘Drink, and I will water your camels also,’ that she be the one you have chosen for Isaac.”



A typical middle east spring-fed well.

Abraham’s niece Rebekah comes out to draw water

⁹Before he had finished praying, Rebekah who was the grand-daughter of Abraham’s brother Nahor, came out with a jar on her shoulder. ¹⁰The girl was beautiful and a virgin. She went down to the spring and filled her jar.

¹¹When she came back up, the servant said to her, “Please give me a little water from your jar.”

¹²Rebekah replied, “Drink my lord,” and lowered the jar.

Rebekah waters the camels in answer to the servant’s prayer

¹³After he drank she said, “I will draw water for your camels also.” So she emptied her jar

*9 Angels, when conveying messages, often speak as if God himself were speaking.

*19 A shekel of silver was about one days wage for a labourer.

*20 The term gate refers to the courtyards and buildings constructed around the gateways of ancient middle east cities. They were commonly used as market places and for court hearings, business transactions and social gatherings.

*2 Probably Eliezer, see Genesis 10:2.

*5 About a month’s journey.

GENESIS 16

into the trough and hurried back down to the spring to draw more water for his camels.

The servant gives Rebekah gifts and asks to stay the night in her father's house

¹⁴While the camels were drinking, the servant took out a gold ring and two gold bracelets and said to the girl, "Whose daughter are you, and is there room in your father's house for us to spend the night?"

¹⁵She answered, "I am the daughter of Bethuel, the son of Nahor. We have plenty of straw and fodder and room for you to stay the night."

¹⁶The servant bowed to the ground and worshipped the Lord saying, "Praise be to Jehovah who has not abandoned his kindness to my master. He has led me to the house of my master's people."



Water jars similar to what Rachel would have carried,

Rebekah runs home and her brother Laban comes out and invites the servant home

¹⁷Then Rebekah ran home and told her family about these things.

¹⁸When her brother Laban saw the ring and bracelets on his sister and heard her tell what the servant had said, he went out to the spring and found the servant still standing by his camels.

¹⁹He said to him, "Come O blessed by Jehovah, why do you stand out here? I have prepared the house and a place for your camels."

²⁰So the servant went with Laban. The camels were unloaded and straw and fodder brought for them. Also water to wash the servant's feet and the feet of his men.

The servant refuses to eat until he has told his errand

²¹Then food was placed before the servant, but he said, "I will not eat until I have told my errand."

²²Laban replied, "Speak on."

²³The servant said, "I am Abraham's servant and the Lord has blessed my master abundantly. He has given him sheep, cattle, silver, gold, servants, camels, and donkeys."

²⁴"Sarah his wife has borne him a son in her old age and he is to inherit everything he owns."

²⁵My master made me swear an oath and said, 'Return to my father's people and obtain a wife for my son.'

²⁶Then he related all that had happened at the well.

Laban and Bethuel give Rebekah to be Isaac's wife

²⁷Laban and his father Bethuel replied, "This is from the Lord. Here is Rebekah. Take her. Let her become the wife of your master's son."

The servant gives costly gifts to Rebekah and her family

²⁸Then the servant brought out jewellery of gold and silver, and articles of clothing, and gave them to Rebekah. He also gave costly gifts to her brother and her mother.

²⁹Then the servant and the men who were with him ate and drank, and spent the night there.

The servant departs with Rebekah

³⁰The next morning the servant said, "Send me on my way to my master."

³¹Rebekah's brother and mother replied, "Let her remain about ten days, then you may go."

But he said, "Do not detain me."

³²They said, "Let us ask the girl." So they called Rebekah and asked her, "Will you go with this man?"

³³She said, "I will go." So they blessed her saying, "May you increase to thousands upon thousands and may your offspring possess the gates of their enemies."

³⁴Then Rebekah, along with her maids mounted their camels and departed with Abraham's servant and his men.

Isaac marries Rebekah

³⁵Now Isaac was out in the fields one evening when he looked up and saw the camels approaching. ³⁶Rebekah also saw him, and got down from her camel and said to the servant, "Who is that man coming to meet us?"

³⁷The servant answered, "He is my master's son." So Rebekah took her veil and covered herself.

³⁸The servant told Isaac all that he had done, then Isaac took Rebekah to be his wife and loved her, and thus Isaac was comforted after the death of his mother.

Abraham remarries and bears six more sons

³⁹Abraham also took another wife. Her name was Keturah, and she bore him six sons. But Abraham left all that he owned to Isaac.

Abraham sends his six sons away

⁴⁰Abraham gave gifts to his other sons and sent them away to the land of the east.

Abraham dies aged 175

⁴¹When Abraham had lived 175 years he breathed his last and died, an old man full of years, and was gathered to his fathers.^{F*} ⁴²His sons Isaac and Ishmael buried him with his wife Sarah in the cave in the field of Ephron.

The family of Ishmael

⁴³Ishmael had twelve sons, and they settled east of Egypt. Ishmael lived 137 years then died in the presence of all his family and was gathered to his fathers.

17

Isaac fathers twin sons

Jacob (later renamed Israel) and Esau

¹Isaac was 40 years old when he married Rebekah. When he was 60 years old he prayed to the Lord on behalf of his wife, for she was barren. ²The Lord answered the prayer of Isaac and Rebekah conceived.

³Twin babies jostled each other within her womb. She said, "What is happening to me?" and inquired of the Lord.

⁴The Lord said to her, "**Two nations are within your womb. One will be stronger than the other. The elder will serve the younger.**"

⁵When Rebekah gave birth, the first boy to come out was red skinned and hairy, so they named him Esau.^{F*}

⁶When his brother came out, his hand was grasping Esau's heel, so he was named Jacob.^{F*}

Esau a hunter but Jacob a quiet, stay-at-home man

⁷The twin boys grew up. Esau became a skilful hunter, a man of the open country, but Jacob was a quiet man who stayed among the tents.

Isaac favours Esau and Rebekah favours Jacob

⁸Isaac, who had a taste for wild game favoured Esau, but his wife Rebekah favoured Jacob.

Esau sells Jacob his birthright

⁹One day Jacob was cooking lentil stew, when Esau came in from the open country famished. He said to Jacob, "Give me some of that red stew, I am starving!"

¹⁰Jacob replied, "First give me your birthright."^{F*}

¹¹Esau said, "I am about to die of hunger. What good is my birthright to me?"

¹²Jacob said, "Swear to me first." So Esau swore an oath to him, then Jacob gave him

some of the lentil stew and some bread. Esau therefore cared little for his birthright.

The Lord reaffirms his covenant with Isaac

¹³There arose a famine in the land and the Lord appeared to Isaac and said, "**Do not go down to Egypt. Remain in this land for a time. ¹⁴I shall be with you and will bless you, for I am giving you and your descendants all of this land to fulfil the oath I swore to your father Abraham to make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the heavens.**"

¹⁵"**By your descendants all nations on earth shall be blessed for Abraham obeyed me and kept my commandments.**"

Isaac goes to live among the Philistines and pretends his wife Rebekah is his sister

¹⁶So Isaac went to Abimelech king of the Philistines in Gerar and stayed there.

¹⁷When the men of that place asked him about Rebekah, he feared and said, "She is my sister," for he thought, "The men of this place may kill me to obtain her, for she is a beautiful woman."

King Abimelech rebukes Isaac for deception

¹⁸When Isaac had been there a long time, Abimelech looked down from a window and saw Isaac fondling Rebekah.

¹⁹He summoned Isaac and said to him, "She is your wife. Why then did you say she was your sister? One of the men may have lain with her and you would have brought guilt upon us."

²⁰So the king announced to the people, "Anyone who touches this man or his wife shall be put to death."

Isaac becomes wealthy and arouses the Philistines envy

²¹Isaac planted crops in that land and reaped a hundred fold, for the Lord blessed him.

²²His wealth continued to grow. Soon he had so many flocks, herds, and servants that the Philistines envied him, and filled up his wells with earth.

²³Then Abimelech said to Isaac, "Move away from us, you have become too powerful."

Quarrels over water

²⁴Isaac moved a little way off to the valley of Gerar. There his servants dug and found water. But the herdsmen of Gerar quarrelled with the herdsmen of Isaac and said, "The water is ours."

²⁵So Isaac's servants dug another well and they quarrelled over that one also. So he moved on from there and dug a third well. This time no one quarrelled over it.

²⁶Isaac said, "Now Jehovah has given us room. We will flourish in the land."

Isaac moves to Beersheba

²⁷From there Isaac went to Beersheba, and the Lord appeared to him again. So he built an altar there and called upon the name of the Lord.

*41 Israelite belief was that after death, a person's spirit descended to Sheol (the spirit world of the dead) and dwelt with their ancestors (fathers) while awaiting the resurrection of the body.

*5 Esau means 'rough (to the touch).'

*6 Jacob means 'supplanter.' Later the Lord renamed him Israel meaning, 'to rule as God' (Genesis 22:16).

*10 The birthright was the superior inheritance rights of a first born son. It included a double portion of inherited property and higher social status.

GENESIS 18

Abimelech makes a peace treaty with Isaac

²⁸Then King Abimelech came to him from Gerar with his officials.

²⁹Isaac said to them, "Why have you come? You were hostile to me and sent me away."

³⁰They answered, "We see clearly now that Jehovah is with you, so we said, 'There ought to be a treaty between us'. Therefore let us make a treaty that you will do us no harm, just as we did you no harm."

³¹So Isaac made a feast for them, and they ate and drank. Early the next morning they swore an oath to each other, then Isaac sent them on their way and they left him in peace.



One of the wells dug by Isaac in Gerar.

18

Esau's two wives

¹When Isaac's firstborn son Esau was 40 years old, he married two local Canaanite women, but they were a source of grief to his father Isaac and his mother Rebekah.

Rebekah induces her son Jacob to steal his brother's blessing

²Isaac was now old and had become blind. One day he summoned Esau and said to him, "My son, I am now an old man and near the day of my death. ³Take your bow and go hunt wild game for me. Prepare the savoury food I love and bring it to me to eat. Then I will give you my blessing before I die."

⁴Now Rebekah was listening and when Esau had gone out to hunt she went and told her son Jacob what she had overheard.

⁵Then she said to Jacob, "My son, do as I say. Go to the flock and bring me two young goats so that I can prepare savoury food for your father, just the way he likes it. ⁶Then take the food into your father to eat so that he will give you his blessing before he dies."

⁷Jacob said to his mother, "But my brother Esau is a hairy man, and I am a man with smooth skin, if my father touches me I would appear to be mocking him and would bring

down a curse on myself rather than a blessing."

⁸His mother replied, "My son, let the curse fall on me. Just do as I say."

⁹Then Rebekah took clothes belonging to Esau which she had in the house and put them on Jacob. ¹⁰She also covered Jacob's hands and neck with skin from the goat, and handed him the savoury food she had prepared.

Jacob deceives his father

¹¹Jacob took the food into Isaac his father, and said, "My father."

His father replied, "Yes my son, who is it?"

¹²Jacob said, "I am Esau, your firstborn. I have done as you told me. Sit up and eat of my game, then give me your blessing."

¹³Isaac said, "How did you find it so quickly my son?"

Jacob replied, "Jehovah your God gave me success."

¹⁴Isaac said to Jacob, "Come near so I can touch you my son, to know whether you really are Esau."

¹⁵Jacob went close to his father who touched him and said, "The voice is the voice of Jacob, but the hands are the hands of Esau. ¹⁶Are you really my son Esau?"

Jacob replied, "I am."

¹⁷Isaac said, "My son, give me your game to eat." So Jacob gave it to him and he ate, and he brought him wine and he drank.

Isaac blesses Jacob with Isaac's blessing

¹⁸Then his father Isaac said to Jacob, "Come here my son and kiss me." Jacob went to him and kissed him.

¹⁹When Isaac caught the smell of his clothes he blessed him saying, "***Ah, the smell of my son is like the fragrance of a field that Jehovah has blessed.*** ²⁰***May God give you heaven's rain and earth's richness, an abundance of grain and new wine.***"

²¹***"May nations serve you and bow down to you. Be lord over your brother's offspring and may they also bow down to you."***

²²***"May those who curse you be cursed, and those who bless you be blessed."***

Esau returns from hunting

²³Isaac finished his blessing and Jacob had scarcely left his father's presence when his brother Esau returned from hunting. He too prepared savoury food and brought it in to his father.

²⁴His father said to him, "Who are you?"

Esau replied, "I am Esau your firstborn."

²⁵Isaac trembled and said, "Who was it then that hunted game and brought it to me? I blessed him, and indeed he will be blessed." F*

Esau weeps loudly when he hears

²⁶When Esau heard his father's words he burst out with a loud and bitter cry and said to

*25 According to Hebrew belief a patriarchal blessing cannot be revoked.

his father, "Bless me too my father!"

²⁷But his father Isaac said, "Your brother came deceitfully and took your blessing."

²⁸Esau said, "Is he not rightly named Jacob? He has deceived me twice. He took my birthright and now he has taken my blessing!" Then he said, "Have you not a blessing for me too father?"

²⁹Isaac answered, "I have made him lord over you and your offspring. I have sustained him with grain and new wine. What then can I bless you with my son?"

³⁰Esau said, "Do you have only one blessing my father? Bless me too!" Then he wept loudly.

Isaac's lesser blessing of Esau

³¹So his father blessed Esau saying, "***Your dwelling shall be away from earth's richness, away from the rain of the heavens above.***"

³²***"You will live by the sword and serve your brother. But the day will come when you will throw off his yoke from your neck."***

Esau plans to kill his brother Jacob

³³Esau hated Jacob because of the blessing his father had given him, and he said to himself, "The days of mourning for my father are near. Then I will kill Jacob."

Rebekah warns Jacob to flee to her brother Laban

³⁴When Rebekah heard what Esau planned to do, she sent for Jacob and said to him, "Your brother Esau comforts himself with the thought of killing you. ³⁵Now then my son, flee at once to my brother Laban in Haran. Stay with him until your brother's anger subsides, then I will send for you to come back."

19

Rebekah plans a way for Jacob to escape

¹Then Rebekah said to her husband Isaac, "I am weary of life because of these Canaanite women. If Jacob also takes a wife from among the women of this land my life will not be worth living."

²So Isaac called for Jacob and commanded him saying, "Do not marry a Canaanite woman. Go at once to Haran and take a wife for yourself from among the daughters of Laban your uncle."

Esau marries a cousin to please his father

³When Esau realised that his Canaanite wives did not please his father, he married a daughter of his uncle Ishmael in addition to the two wives he already had.

Jacob departs for Haran

⁴So Jacob left Beersheba and set out for Haran. When the sun set he stopped for the night at the town of Luz, and placing a stone under his head he lay down to sleep.

Jacob's dream of a stairway to heaven

⁵That night he had a dream. He saw a stairway with its top reaching to heaven, and angels of

God ascending and descending upon it.

The Lord reaffirms his covenant with Jacob

⁶Above it stood the Lord who said to Jacob, "I am Jehovah, God of your fathers Abraham and Isaac. I am giving you and your descendants the land upon which you are lying. ⁷Your offspring will be as the dust of the earth, and will spread out to the west, east, north, and south."

⁸All peoples on earth shall be blessed through you and your offspring. ⁹I will be with you and watch over you and bring you back to this land."

¹⁰Jacob awoke and was afraid and thought, "How awesome is this place. Surely Jehovah is here. This is the house of God, the gate of heaven."

Jacob vows to God to pay a tithe and renames the town Bethel

¹¹The next morning Jacob took the stone he had placed under his head and set it up as a pillar. He poured oil upon it and renamed the town Bethel.^{F*}

¹²Then Jacob made a vow^{F*} saying, "O God, if you will be with me and watch over me on this journey, and give me food and clothing so that I can return safely to my father's house, Jehovah shall be my God. ¹³And where this stone is set up will be a place of God, and of all that you give me I will return to you a tenth."

Jacob arrives in Haran

¹⁴Jacob continued his journey and came to Haran in the land of the east. There he saw a well with a large stone over the mouth, and three flocks of sheep waiting near by. ¹⁵For only when all the flocks were gathered would the shepherds roll away the stone to water the sheep.

¹⁶Jacob said to the shepherds, "Where are you from my brothers?"

They replied, "From Haran."

¹⁷Jacob said, "Do you know Laban?"

They answered, "We do. His daughter Rachel comes now with his sheep."

Jacob meets Laban's daughter Rachel and tells her who he is

¹⁸When Jacob saw Rachel he went over and rolled away the stone from the well and watered her sheep. ¹⁹Then Jacob kissed Rachel and began to weep aloud. He told her that he was a nephew of her father Laban, the son of his sister Rebekah. So she ran home and told her father Laban.

Laban greets his nephew

²⁰When Laban heard, he hurried out to meet his nephew. He embraced Jacob and kissed him saying, "My own flesh and blood."

Jacob works seven years for Rachel

²¹After Jacob had stayed with him a month, Laban said to him, "Should you work for me for

*11 Bethel means 'house of God.'

*12 A vow is a favour asked of the Lord in return for which the asker agrees to make some kind of sacrifice.

GENESIS 20

nothing because you are a nephew of mine? Tell me what your wages should be.”

²²Now Laban had two daughters, Leah the elder had tender eyes, but Rachel was more shapely in body and beautiful. ²³Jacob loved Rachel so he replied, “I will work for you seven years in return for your daughter Rachel.”

²⁴So Jacob worked seven years for Rachel, but it seemed to him but a short time because of his love for her.



Bethel, where Jacob had his dream.

Laban deceives Jacob and he is required to marry both Leah and Rachel

²⁵Then Jacob said to Laban, “My time is completed. Give me my wife for I wish to lie with her.”

²⁶So Laban brought together all the people of the place and gave a wedding feast. ²⁷But when evening came, instead of Rachel he took his daughter Leah and gave her to Jacob, and Jacob lay with her.

²⁸When morning came and Jacob saw that it was Leah, he said to Laban, “What have you done? I served you for Rachel. You have deceived me.”

²⁹Laban replied, “It is not our custom to give the younger daughter in marriage before the elder. ³⁰Complete this week with Leah then I will give you Rachel also.

Jacob agrees to another seven years of work

³¹However you must agree to another seven years of work.” Jacob agreed to this, and he loved Rachel more than Leah.

20

Leah bears Jacob four sons but Rachel is barren

¹When the Lord saw that Leah was unloved he opened her womb, but Rachel was barren. ²Leah conceived and gave birth to a son and she named him Reuben^{F*} saying, “It is because the Lord has seen my misery. Surely my husband will love me now.”

³She conceived again and gave birth to Simeon, and said, “Because the Lord heard

that I am unloved he gave me this son also.”

⁴Again she conceived and gave birth to Levi and said, “Now at last my husband will love me, for I have borne him three sons.”

⁵Then she conceived again and gave birth to a fourth son and named him Judah.

Rachel gives Jacob her maid Bilhah as a wife

⁶Because Rachel was not bearing children, she envied her sister Leah and said to Jacob, “Give me children or I will die!”

⁷Jacob became angry with Rachel and said, “Am I God, who has kept you from having children?”

⁸Then Rachel said, “Here is Bilhah my maidservant, take her as a wife so she can bear children for me.”

Bilhah bears Jacob two sons

⁹Jacob did so,^{F*} and Bilhah conceived and bore a son. Rachel said, “God has vindicated me,” and she named him Dan.

¹⁰Bilhah conceived again and bore Jacob a second son, and Rachel named him Naphtali.

Leah also gives Jacob her maid Zilpah as a wife

¹¹When Leah saw that she had ceased bearing children, she also took her maidservant Zilpah, and gave her to Jacob as a wife.

Zilpah bears Jacob two sons

¹²Zilpah bore Jacob a son and Leah named him Gad. ¹³Then Zilpah bore Jacob a second son. Leah said, “How happy I am,” and she named him Asher.

The mandrakes

¹⁴During wheat harvest, Reuben found some mandrake plants out in the fields and brought them home to his mother Leah. ¹⁵When Rachel saw them she said to Leah, “May I have some of those mandrakes?”^{F*}

¹⁶But Leah replied, “You have taken my husband, will you also take my son’s mandrakes?”

¹⁷Rachel said, “Jacob can lie with you tonight if you give me your mandrakes.”

¹⁸So when Jacob came in from the fields that evening, Leah went out to meet him and said, “You are to lie with me tonight, for I have hired you with my son’s mandrakes.”

Bilhah bears Jacob two more sons and a daughter

¹⁹So Jacob lay with Leah and she conceived and bore him a fifth son. She named him Issachar saying, “God has rewarded me for giving my maidservant to my husband.”

²⁰Then Leah conceived again and bore a sixth son, and named him Zebulun saying, “Now my husband will treat me with honour, for I have borne him six sons.”

²¹Later she gave birth to a daughter and named her Dinah.

*9 When a man married either a maid, a slave girl, or a war captive under such arrangements as these, she was regarded as having a lower social status than his other wives and was called a concubine.

*15 Mandrake plants were believed to promote fertility.

*2 Reuben means ‘behold, a son.’

Rachel bears Joseph

²²Then God remembered Rachel and opened her womb. She conceived and gave birth to a son and named him Joseph saying, “God has taken away my disgrace. May the Lord add to me yet another son.”

Jacob bargains with Laban

²³After the birth of his son Joseph, Jacob said to Laban, “Send me away so that I can return to my own land.”

²⁴But Laban said to him, “Stay, for I have learned by divination that Jehovah has blessed me because of you. Name your wages and I will pay them.”

²⁵Jacob said to him, “The little you had before I came has increased greatly, for the Lord has blessed you since I have been with you, but when may I provide for my own family?”

²⁶Laban said, “What shall I give you?”

Laban agrees to let Jacob have all the speckled animals and black lambs

²⁷Jacob replied, “Do not give me anything. I will tend your flocks as before, but let me have every speckled sheep and goat and every black lamb. They will be my wages. ²⁸Any animal in my possession that is not speckled, or any lamb that is not black will be considered stolen.”

“Agreed,” said Laban.

Laban deceives Jacob

²⁹But that same day, Laban went through his flocks and removed every speckled animal and black lamb and placed them in the care of his sons. ³⁰Then he put a three day journey between himself and Jacob, leaving Jacob to look after the remainder of his flocks.

Jacob’s breeding methods

³¹Jacob however took fresh cut branches from trees and made white stripes on them by peeling the bark. ³²Then he placed the peeled branches in the watering troughs. When the flocks were in heat and came to drink, they mated in front of the branches and bore young that were speckled.^{F*}

³³But only when the stronger females were in heat did Jacob place the branches in the troughs. So the weak animals went to Laban and the strong ones to Jacob.

Jacob prospers

³⁴In time Jacob grew exceedingly prosperous and came to own large flocks. Also many servants, camels and donkeys.

21

Laban’s sons become jealous of Jacob

¹One day Jacob heard that Laban’s sons were saying, “Jacob has taken everything our father owned. He has gained all his wealth from that which belonged to our father.” ²Jacob also

*32 Genesis 21:8 reveals the real reason for Jacob’s breeding success.

noticed that Laban did not regard him as favourably as before.

Jacob consults with his wives Rachel and Leah

³So Jacob sent word for Rachel and Leah to meet him out in the fields.

⁴When they came to him he said, “Your father’s attitude toward me is not as it was before. ⁵You know that I have worked for you with all my strength, yet he has cheated me by changing my wages ten times. ⁶If he said, ‘The speckled ones will be your wages,’ then all the flocks gave birth to speckled young.”

⁷“If he said, ‘Only the streaked ones will be your wages,’ then all the flocks bore streaked young. So God has taken away your father’s livestock and given them to me.”

Jacob relates the message of an angel

⁸“An angel of God has appeared to me in a dream and said, ‘See, only the speckled male goats are mating with the flock, for I have seen all that Laban has been doing to you.’”

Jacob told by Lord to return to his own land

⁹“I am the God of Bethel where you anointed a pillar and where you made a vow to me.^{F*} Now leave this land and return to your own land.”

Jacob secretly departs without informing Laban

¹⁰Rachel and Leah replied, “All the wealth that God took from our father belongs to us, and our children. Do what God has told you.”

¹¹So Jacob put his children and his wives on camels, and taking all the goods he had accumulated, drove his livestock ahead of him and set out from Haran and crossed the river^{F*} to return to his father Isaac in the land of Canaan.

¹²Laban had gone to shear his sheep. Jacob did not inform him he was leaving.

Rachel steals her father’s household gods

¹³Before she left, Rachel stole her father’s household gods.^{F*}

Laban pursues Jacob

¹⁴On the third day Laban was told, “Jacob has fled.” So taking his kinsmen with him Laban pursued Jacob for seven days.

God speaks to Laban in a dream

¹⁵Jacob had already pitched his tent for the night when Laban caught up with him in the hill country of Gilead. So Laban and his men made camp also.

¹⁶That night God appeared to Laban in a dream and said to him, “Be careful how you speak to Jacob. Do not be harsh.”

Laban rebukes his son-in-law Jacob

¹⁷The next morning Laban said to Jacob, “What have you done? You carried off my daughters like captives in war. Why did you run

*9 Angels often speak as if the Lord himself were speaking.

*11 The Euphrates.

*13 Little statues that were used for divination. These were passed down from father to son and whoever possessed them was regarded as the legitimate heir.

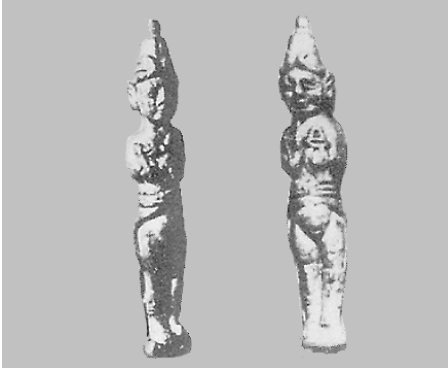
GENESIS 22

off secretly and deceive me? ¹⁸Why did you not tell me, so that I could send you away with joy, and singing to the music of tambourines and harps? ¹⁹You did not even let me kiss my grandchildren and daughters goodbye.”

²⁰“You have done a foolish thing. I have power to harm you, but last night the God of your father said to me, ‘Be careful how you speak to Jacob. Do not be harsh.’”

Laban accuses Jacob of stealing his household gods

²¹“You left because you longed to return to your father’s house, but why did you steal my household gods?”



Household god figurines of the type Rachel stole from her father.

Laban told to search for the gods

²²Now Jacob was unaware that Rachel had taken the gods. He answered Laban saying, “I feared that you would take your daughters away from me by force, but whoever you find with your gods shall die. ²³Search and see. If there is anything of yours here with me, take it.”

Rachel conceals her father’s gods by sitting on them

²⁴So Laban began to search the tents.

²⁵Now Rachel had hidden the gods inside her camel’s saddle and was sitting on them. Laban searched through her tent but found nothing. ²⁶Rachel said to her father, “Be not angry my lord that I cannot stand in your presence, for the way of women is upon me.”

²⁷So Laban did not find the gods.

Jacob becomes angry with his father-in-law

²⁸Then Jacob became angry with Laban and said to him, “What is my crime? What sin have I committed that you hunt me down? You have searched all my goods and what have you found that belongs to you? Put it here in front of your kinsmen and mine! Let them judge between us!”

²⁹“I have been with you for twenty years now. Your sheep and goats have not miscarried, nor have I eaten rams from your flocks. ³⁰I did not bring you animals torn by wild beasts, I bore

the loss myself. Yet you demanded payment from me for all that was stolen.”

³¹“Heat consumed me by day and cold by night. Sleep fled my eyes.”

³²“I worked fourteen years for your two daughters, and six years for your flocks, and you changed my wages ten times! ³³If the God of my father Abraham had not been with me you would have sent me away empty-handed. But God has seen my hardship and last night he rebuked you.”

Laban and Jacob agree to make a covenant

³⁴Laban answered Jacob, “The women are my daughters, the children are my children, the flocks are my flocks. All you see is mine, yet what can I do. Come now, let us make a covenant, you and I.”

They build a pillar of stones and eat together

³⁵So Jacob took a stone and set it up as a pillar. Then they gathered more stones and afterward they ate together by the pillar of stones.



Pillar of stones as a witness.

Laban swears the covenant

³⁶Laban said, “Today this pillar of stones is a witness between you and I. May Jehovah watch over us. ³⁷If you mistreat my daughters or take other wives, remember that God is a witness between you and me. ³⁸I will not pass beyond this pillar to your side to harm you, and you will not pass to my side to harm me. May the God of Abraham judge between us.”

³⁹Then Jacob offered sacrifice there.

Laban returns home

⁴⁰Early next morning, Laban kissed his grandchildren and his daughters and blessed them, then he left and returned home and Jacob resumed his journey.

22

Jacob sends messengers to his brother Esau

¹When Jacob reached the river Jordan he sent messengers ahead of him to the land of Edom to say to his brother Esau, “Your servant Jacob

says, 'I have been staying with Laban, and now have cattle, donkeys, sheep, goats, and servants. ²I send this message to my lord that I might find favour in your eyes.'

Jacob hears that Esau is coming with 400 men

³When the messengers returned they said to Jacob, "We went to your brother Esau and now he is coming to you with 400 men."

Jacob fears and divides his people

⁴When Jacob heard this he feared greatly. So he divided his people and his flocks and herds into two groups thinking, "If Esau attacks one group, the second group may escape."

Jacob prays for protection from Esau

⁵Then he prayed saying, "O God of my fathers Abraham and Isaac, who said to me, 'Return to your own land,' I am unworthy of all the kindness you have shown your servant. I had only my staff with me when I first crossed this Jordan, but now I have become two companies."

⁶"Save me from the hand of my brother Esau, for I fear he is coming to kill me and also the mothers with their children, but you have said, 'I will prosper you and make your descendants like the sand of the sea.'"

Jacob prepares a gift for Esau

⁷The next day Jacob prepared a gift for his brother Esau; 220 goats, 220 sheep, 30 female camels with their young, 50 cattle and 30 donkeys.

⁸He put each herd by itself and said to his servants, "Go on ahead and keep a space between the herds. When my brother Esau meets you and asks, 'To whom do these animals belong?' you are to say, 'They belong to your servant Jacob and are a gift sent to my lord Esau.'"

⁹For Jacob thought, "I will pacify Esau with this gift I am sending on ahead. Later when I see him, perhaps he will receive me."

Jacob moves his wives and sons for safety

¹⁰His servants set out with the gift while Jacob remained in the camp. However, during the night he arose and sent his wives and eleven sons across the ford of the Jabbok^{F*} for safety.

Jacob wrestles an angel until daybreak

¹¹When Jacob was alone an angel appeared, and wrestled with him until daybreak.

¹²When the angel saw that he could not overpower Jacob, he struck the socket of his hip, dislocating it. ¹³Then the angel said to Jacob, "Let me go, for it is daybreak."

Jacob's name is changed to Israel

¹⁴Jacob replied, "I will not let you go, unless you bless me."

¹⁵The angel said, "What is your name?"

"Jacob," he answered.

¹⁶The angel said, "Your name shall no

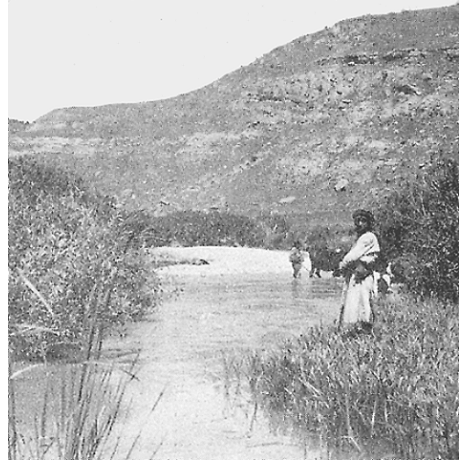
longer be Jacob, but Israel,^{F*} for you have striven with an angel, and with men, and have prevailed."

¹⁷Jacob said, "Tell me your name."

The angel replied, "Why do you ask my name?" Then he blessed him.

¹⁸Jacob called that place Peniel saying, "I have seen an angel face to face and my life was spared."

¹⁹Jacob limped because of his hip. That is why the Israelites do not eat the sinew of the hip.



The Jabbok river, a tributary of the Jordan.

Jacob bows to his brother Esau

²⁰The next day the sun had risen high when Jacob and his family crossed the Jordan river.

²¹When Jacob saw Esau coming with his 400 men, he divided his children. He put his maid-servant wives and their children in front, Leah and her children next, and Rachel and Joseph at the rear.

²²He himself went on ahead and bowed down to the ground seven times as he approached his brother.

Jacob and Esau are reconciled

²³But Esau ran to meet Jacob and embraced him. He threw his arms around his neck and kissed him and they wept together.

²⁴Then Esau saw the women and children and said, "Who are these with you?"

²⁵Jacob answered, "They are the children God has graciously given your servant." Then Jacob's wives and children approached Esau and bowed down.

Esau declines Jacob's gift but Jacob insists

²⁶Esau said, "What do you mean by all these herds I met?"

²⁷Jacob answered, "To find favour in your eyes my lord."

²⁸Esau said, "I already have plenty my

*10 The Jabbok is a tributary river flowing into the Jordan.

*16 Israel means 'to rule as God.'

GENESIS 23

brother, keep what you have for yourself.”

²⁹Jacob replied, “No, please. Accept this gift from me, for to see your face is like seeing the face of God now that you have received me favourably.” ³⁰And because Jacob insisted, Esau accepted the gift.

Jacob declines Esau’s offer to accompany him

³¹Then Esau said, “Let us be on our way. I will accompany you.”

³²Jacob said to him, “Let my lord go on ahead while I move slowly at the pace of the herds before me, and that of the children, until I come to my lord in Edom.”

³³Esau said, “Then let me leave some of my men with you.”

³⁴Jacob answered, “Why do that? Just let me find favour in your eyes.” So that day Esau returned on his way back to Edom.^{F*}

Jacob buys land near Shechem

³⁵Jacob however journeyed to Succoth.

³⁶Then he moved near Shechem in Canaan and camped within sight of the town. For 100 shekels of silver^{F*} he bought a plot of land where he pitched his tent and set up an altar. He named the altar Almighty God of Israel.



The land of Canaan in the days of Abraham.

23

Dinah is raped by the ruler of Shechem’s son

¹Now Dinah the daughter of Leah went to visit the women of Shechem.

²When the son of Hamor, the ruler of the town

saw her, he seized her and raped her, yet his heart was drawn to Dinah and he spoke tenderly to her.

³Afterward he said to his father, “Get me this girl as my wife.”

Dinah’s brothers are angry

⁴When Israel^{F*} heard that his daughter had been defiled, he held his peace until his sons came in from the fields. ⁵When they heard what had happened they were indignant, and burned with anger.

Dinah’s brothers demand that all the men of Shechem be circumcised, to take revenge

⁸Because Dinah had been defiled, Israel’s sons replied deceitfully and said, “We cannot give our sister to a man who is uncircumcised. We will only give our consent if you become like us and circumcise all your males.”

The ruler of Shechem asks for Dinah to be given to his son as a wife

⁶Hamor came out with his son. He said to Israel, “My son longs for your daughter. Please give her to him as his wife. Intermarry with us and settle here. The land is open to you.”

⁷Then the son of Hamor spoke and said to Israel and his sons, “Let me find favour in your eyes and I will give you whatever you ask. Make the price for the bride and the gift as great as you like. I will pay whatever you ask.”

Every male in Shechem circumcised

⁹This proposal seemed good to Hamor and his son. So Hamor returned to speak to the men of Shechem.

¹⁰He said to them, “These men are friendly toward us. Let them live here and trade with us, and we can marry their daughters and they can marry ours. Then will not their livestock and property become ours?”

¹¹“But they will only consent to live with us on the condition that our males be circumcised, as they are themselves.”

¹²The men agreed with Hamor, so every male in Shechem was circumcised.



Shechem, where Dinah was raped.

*³⁴ Edom is a dry, rugged region south of the Dead Sea.

*³⁶ About four months wages for a labourer.

*⁴ From this point on in the Bible, Jacob is mostly referred to by his new name of Israel.

Dinah's brothers Simeon and Levi kill all the men of Shechem

¹³However three days later, while all the men of Shechem were sore, Simeon and Levi the brothers of Dinah took their swords and fell upon the town unawares. They killed every male, and took Dinah and left.

The sons of Israel plunder Shechem

¹⁴Then the sons of Israel plundered Shechem, seizing the flocks, herds, and donkeys. They carried off all the wealth, including the women and children.

¹⁵Israel said to Simeon and Levi, "You have brought trouble on me by making me odious to the people living in this land. We are few in number. If they join forces against us we will be destroyed."

¹⁶But they replied, "Should our sister be treated like a harlot?"

God commands Israel to return to Bethel

¹⁷Then God said to Israel, "Return to Bethel. There build an altar to God, who appeared to you when you were fleeing from Esau."

Israel purifies his people and buries their false gods and amulets

¹⁸So Israel said to all the people who had joined him, "Put away the foreign gods you have among you. Purify yourselves and change your clothes. We are going to Bethel. There I will build an altar to the God who answered me in the day of my distress."

¹⁹The people with Israel gave him their gods and also the amulets from their ears and Israel buried them under the oak tree at Shechem.

Israel returns to Bethel

²⁰As they set out for Bethel a fear of God fell upon the towns all around, therefore no one pursued them.

²¹So Israel camped at Bethel and there built an altar.

Israel returns home to his father Isaac

²²After a time, Israel left Bethel to return home to his father Isaac in Hebron.

Rachel gives birth to Benjamin but dies

²³On the journey, Rachel his wife began to give birth and had great difficulty.

²⁴As she breathed her last, for she was dying, she named her son Ben-oni, but Israel renamed him Benjamin.^{F*}

²⁵Rachel died and was buried there, near Bethlehem. Israel set up a pillar over her tomb then continued his journey.

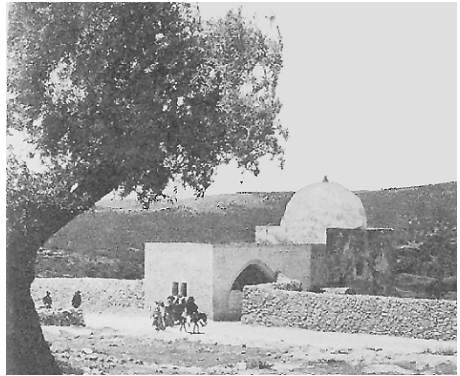
Reuben commits adultery

²⁶At a camp on the way, Reuben lay with Bilhah^{F*} his father's concubine, and Israel got to hear of it.

Jacob comes home to his father Isaac who dies soon afterward aged 180

²⁷So Jacob came home to his father Isaac in Hebron. His father was now 180 years old.

²⁸Soon afterward his father Isaac died, and was gathered to his forefathers. He was old and full of years and his sons Esau and Jacob buried him.



Tomb of Rachael near Bethlehem.

24

The twelve sons of Israel

¹These are the twelve sons of Israel: ²Born of Leah: Reuben (the firstborn), Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.

³Born of Rachel: Joseph and Benjamin.

⁴Born of Bilhah: Dan and Naphtali.

⁵Born of Zilpah: Gad and Asher.

Joseph and his coat of many colours

⁶Now Israel loved Joseph more than his other sons because he had been born to him in his old age. And he made him a coat of many colours.

⁷When the older brothers of Joseph saw that their father loved him more than them, they hated Joseph and could not say a kind word to him.

Joseph's dreams arouse great jealousy in his brothers

⁸One night when Joseph was seventeen years of age, he had a dream and told it to his brothers. ⁹He said to them, "Hear this dream I had. We were binding sheaves of grain in the field when suddenly my sheaf arose and stood upright, while your sheaves gathered around mine and bowed down to it."

¹⁰His brothers replied, "So you think to rule over us?" And they hated him all the more.

¹¹Then Joseph had another dream and again told it to his brothers. He said, "I have had another dream. This time the sun, moon, and eleven stars were bowing down to me."

¹²When Joseph told the dream to his father Israel, he rebuked him and said, "What is this

^{*24} Ben-oni means 'son of my sorrow,' but Benjamin means 'son of the right hand,' (the right hand was a symbol of superior strength).

^{*26} Bilhah had been Rachel's maidservant (Genesis 20:8). A concubine was a wife of secondary rank. Reuben lost his superior status as 'first born son' because of this incident (Genesis 31:17-18).

GENESIS 25

dream you had? Shall your mother and I and your brothers indeed bow down before you?"

¹³Joseph's brothers were highly jealous of him, but his father pondered the dream in his mind.

Israel sends Joseph out to his brothers who are tending the flocks

¹⁴Now one day, when Joseph's brothers had gone to graze their father's flocks near Shechem, Israel said to Joseph, "Go and see if all is well with your brothers and with the flocks and bring back word to me."

¹⁵So Joseph went to Shechem. A man found him wandering there in the fields and asked him, "What are you looking for?"

¹⁶He replied, "I am looking for my brothers."

¹⁷The man answered, "They have moved on from here to Dothan." So Joseph went there.

Some of Joseph's brothers propose killing him

¹⁸When his brothers saw Joseph coming in the distance they said to one another, "Here comes the dreamer. Let us kill him and throw him into one of the pits and say that a wild animal has devoured him. Then we will see what becomes of his dreams."

Reuben tries to save Joseph

¹⁹But Reuben said, "Let us not shed blood, but just throw him into a pit." ²⁰He said this that he might later rescue Joseph and restore him to his father.

Joseph stripped of his coat and thrown in a pit

²¹So they stripped Joseph of his coat of many colours and threw him into a pit and left him there.

Judah suggests they sell Joseph to Ishmaelite traders

²²Later as the brothers were sitting down to eat, they saw a caravan of Ishmaelite traders approaching on their way down to Egypt, their camels laden with spices.

²³Judah said to his brothers, "What will we gain by killing our brother? Let us sell him to these Ishmaelites. After all he is our own flesh and blood." His brothers agreed.

Joseph is pulled out of the pit and sold to the Ishmaelites

²⁴So Joseph was pulled up out of the pit and sold to the Ishmaelites for twenty shekels of silver.^{F*}

Reuben distressed when he finds Joseph gone

²⁵When Reuben, who had been absent went to the pit and found that Joseph was not there, he tore his clothes^{F*} and returned to his brothers and said, "The boy is not there! Where can I turn now?"

Joseph's brothers deceive their father Israel

²⁶So they took a goat and killed it and dipped Joseph's coat in the blood. ²⁷Then they took

the coat back to their father and said, "We found this."

²⁸Israel said, "It is my son's coat! A wild animal has devoured him! Joseph has been torn to pieces!"



A caravan of Ishmaelite (Arab) traders.
Joseph was sold to a similar group.

Israel mourns his son Joseph many days

²⁹Then Israel tore his clothes and put on sackcloth and mourned Joseph for many days.

³⁰His sons and daughters^{F*} tried to comfort him, but he refused to be comforted and said, "In mourning I shall go down to Sheol,^{F*} to my son."

25

Judah and his daughter-in-law Tamar

¹Soon after this, Judah left his brothers and went to live near Adullam.^{F*} There he married a Canaanite woman who bore him three sons, Er, Onan, and Shelah.

²His eldest son Er married a girl whose name was Tamar. But Er was wicked so the Lord took his life.

³Judah said to his second son Onan, "Marry your brother's wife and fulfil your duty to her as a brother-in-law to produce offspring for your brother."^{F*} ⁴But Onan knew that the children would not be his, so whenever he lay with Tamar he spilled his semen to keep from producing offspring for his brother.

⁵This displeased the Lord so he took the life of Onan also.

⁶Judah then said to his daughter-in-law Tamar, "Live as a widow until my youngest son Shelah grows up." But Judah thought, "He may die also."

Judah fails to keep his promise to Tamar

⁷So Tamar returned to live with her father in Timnah.

*30 Israel apparently had other daughters besides Dinah. She was only mentioned because of the shameful rape that occurred in Shechem. Genesis 30:1 also states that Israel had daughters and granddaughters.

*30 Sheol is the Hebrew name for the spirit world of the dead.

*1 Adullam was about 20 kms northwest of Hebron where Judah's father and brothers lived.

*3 This was the custom at that time and also later became a requirement of the Law of Moses (Deuteronomy 5:32).

*24 The price of a young slave.

*25 An Israelite expression of extreme grief or anger. Reuben being the eldest son knew his father would hold him responsible for the safety of Joseph.

⁸After many years, Judah's wife died. When Judah had recovered from his grief, he journeyed to Timnah to be with the men who were shearing his sheep. His friend Hirah went with him.

Tamar deceives Judah by pretending to be a harlot

⁹Tamar was told, "Your father-in-law is coming to Timnah to shear his sheep." ¹⁰So Tamar changed her widow's clothes, and covering herself with a veil to disguise herself she sat down at a place on the road leading to Timnah.

¹¹For although Judah's son Shelah was now grown up, Judah had not given Tamar to him as his wife.

¹²When Judah saw Tamar he did not recognise her, and thought she was a harlot for she had covered her face. So he went over to her and said, "Come, let me lie with you."

¹³She said, "What will you pay me?"

He replied, "I will send you a young goat."

¹⁴She said, "Then give me your sealing ring and its cord and the staff in your hand as a pledge until you send it." ¹⁵So Judah gave them to her and then lay with her, and she became pregnant by him.

¹⁶Later Judah sent a young goat by his friend Hirah to obtain his pledge back from the woman, but Hirah could not find her.

Tamar conceives and has twin boys

¹⁷About three months later Judah was told, "Your daughter-in-law Tamar is guilty of harlotry, for she is with child."

¹⁸Judah said, "Have her burned to death."

¹⁹But Tamar sent a message to her father-in-law Judah saying, "I am with child by the man who owns this sealing ring, cord, and staff.

²⁰Judah recognised them and said, "She is more righteous than I, since I did not give her to my son Shelah."

²¹When Tamar gave birth there were twin boys in her womb. One of them put out his hand, so the midwife took a scarlet thread and tied it on his wrist saying, "This one came out first." ²²But then he drew back his hand and his brother came out before him.

26

Joseph sold to Potiphar in Egypt

¹Meanwhile the Ishmaelites had sold Joseph in Egypt, to Potiphar, one of Pharaoh's officials, the captain of the guard.

The Lord gives Joseph success in everything he does

²The Lord was with Joseph and gave him success in everything he did. So Potiphar put him in charge of his household and all that he owned. ³The Lord blessed the Egyptian because of Joseph, both in house and field.

Joseph resists the temptations of Potiphar's wife

⁴Now Joseph was well-built and handsome, and after a time Potiphar's wife said, "Come lie with me."

⁵But Joseph refused saying, "How can I do such a wicked thing and sin against God?"

⁶And although she tempted Joseph day after day, he refused to lie with her, or even to be with her.

⁷One day when none of the other servants were around, she caught Joseph by his outer garment and said, "Come lie with me." But he left his garment in her hand and fled out of the house.

Potiphar's wife falsely accuses Joseph

⁸At this Potiphar's wife called the other household servants and said to them, "My husband has brought this Hebrew* here to insult us. Look. He came in here to lie with me but I screamed for help, and he left his garment beside me and ran from the house."

⁹And she kept the garment beside her until her husband came home.



Egypt, where Joseph was sold as a slave. A dominant and wealthy nation in Joseph's day.

Joseph is cast into prison by Potiphar

¹⁰When Potiphar heard the story his wife told him, he was angry with Joseph and cast him into prison.

¹¹However the Lord was still with Joseph and granted him favour in the eyes of the prison warden. The warden put Joseph in charge of all the other prisoners.

Joseph interprets the dreams of two fellow prisoners

¹²Some time later, the chief cupbearer and the chief baker of Pharaoh king of Egypt offended their master. So he cast them both into prison, the same prison where Joseph was confined.

¹³After they had been there for some time, both men had a dream the same night. When Joseph came to them next morning he said, "Why are your faces dejected today?"

*8 Hebrew means 'from beyond' (the Euphrates river).

GENESIS 27

¹⁴They answered, “We both had dreams, but there is no one to interpret them.”

¹⁵Joseph said “Do not interpretations belong to God? Tell me your dreams.”

¹⁶The cupbearer said, “In my dream I saw three clusters of grapes. I took the grapes and squeezed them into Pharaoh’s cup and put the cup in his hand.”

¹⁷Joseph said, ***“This is what it means: The three clusters are three days. Within three days Pharaoh will restore you to your position and you will put his cup in his hand as you did before.”***

¹⁸When all goes well with you, remember me. Mention me to Pharaoh and get me out of this prison, for I have done nothing to deserve it.”

¹⁹Then the chief baker said to Joseph, “I too had a dream. On my head were three baskets of bread for Pharaoh. But the birds were eating them out of the top basket on my head.”

²⁰Joseph said, ***“The three baskets are also three days. Within three days Pharaoh will remove your head and hang you on a tree and the birds will eat your flesh.”***

The dreams come to pass as Joseph foretold

²¹Now the third day was Pharaoh’s birthday and he gave a feast for all of his officials. He restored the cupbearer to his former position, but hanged the baker just as Joseph had foretold.

²²The cupbearer however did not remember Joseph.

27

Joseph brought from prison to interpret Pharaoh’s dream

¹Two years passed, then Pharaoh also had a dream. In the morning his mind was troubled, so he sent for the magicians and wise men of Egypt, but none of them could interpret the dream for him.

²Then the chief cupbearer said to Pharaoh, “Today I am reminded of my guilt. Pharaoh was once angry with his servants and imprisoned myself and the chief baker. ³Both of us had a dream the same night. A young Hebrew was there with us and we told him our dreams. He interpreted them for us and everything came to pass exactly as he said. I was restored to my position and the other man was hanged.”

⁴So Pharaoh sent for Joseph and he was quickly brought from the prison. When he had shaved and changed his clothes he stood before Pharaoh.

⁵Pharaoh said to Joseph, “I had a dream and no one can interpret it. I am told that you can interpret dreams.”

⁶Joseph replied, “I myself cannot, but God can give Pharaoh the answer.”

⁷Pharaoh said to Joseph, “In my dream I was standing on the bank of the Nile, when up out of the river came seven cows, fat and sleek, and grazed among the reeds. ⁸After them,

seven other cows came up, scrawny and lean, and ate up the fat cows, but they looked just as lean as before.”

⁹“In my dream I also saw seven heads of grain, full and good, growing on a single stalk. After them, seven other heads of grain sprouted, but withered and thin, and swallowed up the seven good heads.”



Egyptian cows on the banks of the Nile.

Seven years of great abundance in Egypt followed by seven years of famine

¹⁰Joseph said to Pharaoh, ***“The dreams are one and the same. God has revealed to Pharaoh what he is about to do.”***

¹¹***“The seven good cows and the seven good heads of grain are seven years. The seven lean cows that came up afterward and the seven withered heads of grain are seven years also, seven years of famine.”***

¹²***“Seven years of great abundance are coming throughout Egypt, but seven years of severe famine will follow, and the abundance will be forgotten. Famine will ravage the land.”***

¹³***“The dream being given in two forms signifies that the matter has been firmly decided by God and will soon come to pass.”***

Joseph gives wise counsel to Pharaoh

¹⁴***“Now let Pharaoh search for a wise man and put him in charge of Egypt. And let him appoint overseers to store a fifth of the harvest during the seven years of abundance to be used under the authority of Pharaoh during the seven years of famine.”***

Joseph made vizier over all Egypt

¹⁵This plan seemed good to Pharaoh and his officials and Pharaoh said to them, “Could we find anyone like this man, in whom is the Spirit of God?”

¹⁶So Pharaoh said to Joseph, “Since God has made all this known to you, I hereby place you in charge of the whole land of Egypt. ¹⁷All my

people are to submit to your authority. Only I will be greater than you.”

¹⁸Then Pharaoh took a ring from his own finger and put it on Joseph’s finger. ¹⁹He afterward arrayed him in a robe of fine linen and placing a gold chain around his neck had him ride in a chariot as his second in command. Men ran before him shouting, “Bow down!”

²⁰Joseph was now 30 years old, and he travelled throughout the land of Egypt.

Joseph marries and fathers two sons

²¹Pharaoh also gave him Asenath, daughter of Potiphera the priest to be his wife.

²²Before the years of famine came, two sons were born to Joseph. His firstborn he named Manasseh and the second Ephraim.

The seven abundant years

²³During the seven years of abundance the land produced plentifully, and Joseph stored up huge amounts of grain, like the sand of the sea.

²⁴There was so much that he stopped keeping records for it was beyond measure.

The seven years of famine begin

²⁵Then the seven years of famine began.

²⁶When Egypt began to feel the famine, Joseph opened his storehouses and sold grain to the Egyptians. ²⁷Other nations also came to Egypt to buy grain from Joseph for the famine was severe all over the world.

28

Joseph’s brothers come to Egypt to buy grain

¹When Israel heard that there was grain in Egypt he said to his sons, “Go down to Egypt and buy grain for us lest we die.”

²So ten of Joseph’s brothers went to buy grain. Israel did not send Benjamin, Joseph’s younger brother for he was afraid that harm might come to him.

The brothers do not recognise Joseph

³Now Joseph was vizier* of Egypt and sold to all the people. Therefore when his brothers arrived they bowed down before him and did not recognise him.

Joseph pretends to be a stranger and treats his brothers harshly

⁴Joseph however recognised them and remembered his dreams about them. But he pretended to be a stranger and spoke harshly to them. ⁵“Where do you come from?” he demanded.

They replied, “From the land of Canaan, to buy food.”

⁶Joseph said, “You are spies!”

⁷They answered, “No my lord. Your servants have come to buy food. We are honest men not spies. We are twelve brothers, the youngest is still with our father, and one is no more.”

Joseph imprisons his brothers

⁸But Joseph said to them, “You will remain in prison until your words are tested for truth.” And he imprisoned them all.

⁹After three days he came to them and said, “Do this and you will live. Let one of your brothers remain here in prison while the rest of you take grain back to your households.”

Joseph orders that his younger brother Benjamin be brought to Egypt

¹⁰“But you must bring your youngest brother to me that your words may be verified, and you not die.”

Joseph weeps in secret

¹¹His brothers said to one another, “Surely we are being punished because of our brother. We saw how distressed he was when he pleaded with us for his life, but we did not listen.”

¹²Reuben said, “I told you not to sin against the boy. Now we must give an accounting for his blood.”

¹³They did not realise that Joseph could understand them, for he was using an interpreter. On hearing these words he turned away from them and wept, but soon turned back and spoke again.

Simeon chosen to remain in prison

¹⁴Joseph chose Simeon to remain behind in prison, and had him bound before their eyes.

Joseph hides each brother’s silver in his grain sack and then sends them home

¹⁵Then Joseph gave orders to fill their sacks with grain and to put each man’s silver back in his sack. After this was done the brothers loaded the grain on their donkeys and departed.

One brother finds his silver and all their hearts sink

¹⁶When they stopped for the night, one of them opened his sack to get feed for his donkey and discovered his silver in the mouth of the sack.

¹⁷Their hearts sank and they looked at each other trembling and said, “What is this that God has done to us?”

The brothers return home and are dismayed to find all of the silver in their sacks

¹⁸They returned to their father and emptied their sacks, and there in each man’s sack was his pouch of silver. They were all dismayed and told their father all that had happened in Egypt.

Israel is distressed over what has happened

¹⁹Israel said to them, “You have deprived me of my children. Joseph is no more, Simeon is no more, and now you want to take Benjamin. Everything is against me.”

²⁰Reuben said to his father, “You may put both my sons to death if I do not bring Benjamin back to you.”

²¹But Israel said, “My son will not go with you. His brother is dead and he is the only one left. If harm should come to him on the journey you

*3 The position of vizier is similar to that of Prime Minister under a Monarchy.

GENESIS 29

would send my grey head down to Sheol in sorrow.”

The grain is soon all eaten

²²Now the famine was still severe. When they had eaten the grain their father said to them, “Go back and buy more.”

Israel reluctant to let his son Benjamin go

²³But Judah replied, “The man said, ‘You shall not see my face unless your brother is with you.’”

²⁴His father said, “Why did you bring this trouble on me by telling the man you had another brother?”

²⁵They replied, “The man questioned us closely about our family. How were we to know he would say, ‘Bring your brother down here?’”

Judah urges his father to agree

²⁶Judah said to his father, “Send the boy with me and we will go at once, that we not all die. I will guarantee his safety. ²⁷As it is, if we had not delayed we could have gone and returned twice.”

Israel relents and instructs his sons to return the silver and also to take gifts

²⁸Israel said to them, “If it must be so then do this. Take some of the best products of the land in your bags and give them to the man as gifts. ²⁹A little balm, honey, spices and myrrh, some pistachio nuts and almonds. ³⁰Take double the amount of silver with you, for you must return the silver that was put back into your sacks.

³¹Take Benjamin also and go at once. May God Almighty grant you mercy before the man so that he will let Simeon and Benjamin come back with you. ³²As for me, if I am bereaved I am bereaved.”

The brothers return to Egypt with Benjamin

³³So the brothers quickly returned to Egypt and presented themselves before Joseph.

29

Joseph orders his brothers taken to his house

¹When Joseph saw that Benjamin was with them, he said to his steward, “Take these men to my house. I will eat with them at noon.”

The brothers fearfully await Joseph’s coming at noon

²Now the brothers feared when they were taken to Joseph’s house. They thought, “We were brought here because of the silver that was put back into our sacks. He wants to seize us as slaves and steal our donkeys.”

³They said to Joseph’s steward, “We do not know who put the silver back in our sacks.”

⁴The steward replied, “I received your silver,” and he brought Simeon out to them. Then he gave them water to wash their feet and fodder for their donkeys.

⁵So they prepared their gifts and anxiously awaited Joseph’s arrival at noon.

Joseph weeps again in private then seats his brothers in order of birth

⁶When Joseph came they presented him the gifts they had brought and bowed down to the ground.

⁷Joseph asked, “How is your aged father?”

They replied, “Your servant our father is still alive and well,” and bowed again to pay him honour.

⁸Deeply moved at the sight of his brother Benjamin, Joseph hastened to his private room and wept. After composing himself, he washed his face and came back out again. ⁹“Serve the food,” he ordered. Then he seated his brothers by age, from firstborn to youngest.

Benjamin’s food portion five times greater

¹⁰The brothers looked at each other in astonishment. And when the food was served, Benjamin’s portion was five times as much as anyone else.

¹¹Joseph ate alone for Egyptians do not eat with Hebrews.

Joseph’s silver cup is hidden in Benjamin’s sack

¹²Afterwards Joseph said to his steward, “Fill the men’s sacks with as much grain as they can carry and put each man’s silver in the mouth of his sack. ¹³Also put my silver cup in the sack of the youngest.”

The brothers depart for home but Joseph’s steward is sent after them to accuse them of theft

¹⁴The next morning the brothers were sent on their way with their donkeys.

¹⁵They had not gone far from the city when Joseph said to his steward, “Go after those men at once and say to them, ‘Why have you repaid good with evil? Why have you stolen the cup my master drinks from and uses for divination?’”

¹⁶When the steward caught up with the brothers he repeated these words to them. But they said to him, “Why does my lord speak such words? ¹⁷Far be it from your servants to do such a thing. Did we not return the silver we found inside our sacks. Why would we steal from your master’s house?”

¹⁸“If one of us is found with the cup he shall die and the rest of us will become my lord’s slaves.”

The cup is found in Benjamin’s sack and the brothers return to Joseph’s house

¹⁹So the steward proceeded to search, beginning with the oldest and the cup was found in Benjamin’s sack. ²⁰At this the brothers tore their clothes in anguish. Then they reloaded their donkeys and returned to the city.

Judah offers himself in place of Benjamin

²¹Joseph was still in his house when they came. They threw themselves to the ground before him.

²²Judah pleaded with him saying, “What can we say my lord? How can we prove our innocence? God has uncovered our guilt. We are now your slaves.”

²³Joseph said, “Only the man who was found to have the cup will become my slave. The rest of you return to your father in peace.”

²⁴But Judah went up to him and said, “Please my lord, if the boy is not with us when we return, my father will die. Your servant guaranteed the boy’s safety. ²⁵Let me remain here as my lord’s slave in place of the boy. Let me not see the misery that would come upon my father.”

Joseph weeps out loud and reveals his identity

²⁶At these words Joseph could no longer control himself. “Leave my presence!” he commanded his Egyptian attendants. But he wept so loudly that the Egyptians heard him.

²⁷Then Joseph cried out to his brothers, “I am Joseph!”

²⁸His brothers could not say a word, so fearful were they in his presence.

²⁹But Joseph said to them, “Come close to me.” When they had done so he said, “Be not distressed for selling me here. It was not you who sent me, but God. ³⁰He has made me vizier of all Egypt to save lives.”

Joseph weeps with and kisses all his brothers

³¹Then he threw his arms around Benjamin and wept, and Benjamin embraced him weeping also. Joseph kissed all his brothers and wept over them.

Joseph sends a message for his father’s household to come and live in Egypt

³²Then he said, “Now return and say to my father, ‘Your son Joseph says, “God has made me vizier of all Egypt. Come down to me. You, your children, your grandchildren, your flocks and herds, all that are with you. ³³I will provide for you here, for five more years of famine are still to come.”’

Pharaoh offers the best land in Egypt for Joseph’s father’s family

³⁴When the news reached Pharaoh’s palace that Joseph’s brothers had come, Pharaoh and his officials were pleased. ³⁵Pharaoh said to Joseph, “Bring your father’s family to me and I will give them the best land of Egypt.”

Joseph’s brothers return home with donkeys, carts and gifts

³⁶Joseph gave his brothers carts and provisions for their journey. He also gave them each a set of clothes. But to Benjamin he gave 300 shekels of silver and five sets of clothes.

³⁷To his father he sent 20 donkeys loaded with the best things of Egypt.

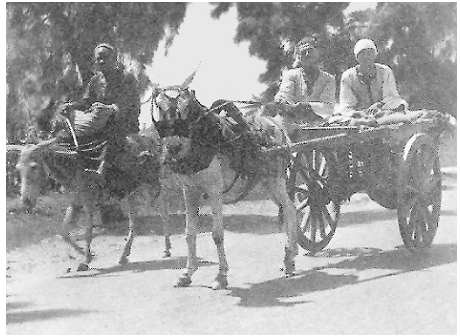
³⁸As his brothers were leaving he said to them, “Do not quarrel on the way.”

³⁹So Joseph’s brothers left Egypt and returned to their father in the land of Canaan.

Israel is overwhelmed at the news that Joseph is alive

⁴⁰When their father Israel was told, “Joseph is alive! He is vizier of all Egypt!” he was overwhelmed and could not believe them.

⁴¹But when he saw the carts that Joseph had sent to carry him back he said, “I believe! My son Joseph is alive! I will go and see him before I die.”



Egyptian carts.

30

Israel and all his household set out for Egypt

¹So Israel set out for Egypt with all his sons and grandsons, and his daughters and granddaughters. He and the women and children rode in the wagons that Pharaoh had provided.

²The number of his direct descendants, not counting the wives of his sons, and with Joseph’s two sons was 70.

God appears to Israel

³When Israel reached Beersheba he offered a sacrifice. Then God appeared to him in a vision at night and said, “**Fear not to go down to Egypt, for I shall make you into a great nation there and will bring you back again.**

⁴**Joseph’s own hand will close your eyes in death.**”

Joseph is reunited with his father Israel

⁵When Joseph heard that his father was coming he ordered his chariot made ready and went out to meet him. He threw his arms around his father and wept for a long time.

⁶Israel said to his son, “Now I am ready to die.”

Joseph presents his family to Pharaoh

⁷Then Joseph said to his family, “I will now go before Pharaoh and say to him, ‘My father’s family have come to me.’”

⁸“When Pharaoh calls you in and asks, ‘What is your occupation?’ you should answer, ‘Your servants are shepherds, just as our fathers were.’ ⁹He will then allow you to settle in the district of Goshen, for shepherds work is disliked by the Egyptians.”

¹⁰Joseph chose five of his brothers and presented them before Pharaoh.

¹¹When Pharaoh heard that they were shepherds he said to Joseph, “The land of Egypt is before you. Settle your family in the best part of the land, in the district of Goshen.

GENESIS 31

¹²If there are any especially able among them, put them in charge of my own flocks.”

Israel blesses Pharaoh

¹³Then Joseph brought in his father Israel and presented him before Pharaoh. Pharaoh said to him, “What is your age?”

¹⁴Israel answered, “The years of my life have been 130. Difficult they have been and they do not equal the years of my fathers.”^{F*}

¹⁵Israel then blessed Pharaoh and went out from his presence.

The Israelites settle in Goshen

¹⁶So Joseph gave to his father and brothers land from among the best in Goshen.

Joseph buys up all of Egypt

¹⁷Now there was little food in the whole region because of the severity of the famine, and Egypt and Canaan wasted away.

¹⁸Joseph eventually collected all the silver that was to be found in Egypt and Canaan, in payment for grain and brought it to Pharaoh.

¹⁹When their silver was gone the people of Egypt came to Joseph and said, “Our silver is all gone.”

²⁰Joseph said, “Then bring your livestock. I will exchange food for your animals.” So Joseph exchanged food for their horses, cattle, donkeys, sheep and goats.

²¹They came to him the following year and said, “There is nothing left for our lord except our bodies and our land.

²²So Joseph bought up all the land in Egypt and the land became Pharaoh’s. ²³However he did not buy the land of the priests for they received a regular allowance of food from Pharaoh.

Pharaoh’s land rented back to the people in return for a fifth of the crops

²⁴Joseph then said to the people, “Now that I have bought you and your land for Pharaoh, here is seed for you to plant. But when the crop is harvested you must give one fifth of it to Pharaoh.

31

Israel asks Joseph to bury him back in Canaan

¹Meanwhile the Israelites in Goshen were fruitful and increased greatly in number.

²Israel lived in Egypt seventeen years and the time drew near for him to die.

³He called for his son Joseph and said to him, “Put your hand under my thigh and swear to me, that when I am gathered to my fathers you will carry me up out of Egypt and bury me in the cave in the field of Ephron the Hittite, where Abraham and his wife Sarah, and Isaac and his wife Rebekah are buried, and where I buried my wife Leah.”

⁴Joseph said, “I will do as you say.”

Israel adopts Joseph’s two eldest sons Manasseh and Ephraim

⁵Israel was 147 years old when Joseph was told, “Your father is dying.” So he went to him taking with him his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim.



Goshen in Egypt where Joseph settled his family.

⁶Israel gathered his strength and sat up on his bed and said to Joseph, “God Almighty appeared to me at Bethel and blessed me, and said, ‘I will make of you many nations, and will give this land to your descendants forever.’ ⁷Now then, your two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are to be mine, just as Reuben and Simeon are mine. Any children born to you after them will be yours. Bring them to me that I may bless them.”^{F*}

Israel crosses his arms and blesses Ephraim to be greater than Manasseh

⁸Now Israel’s eyes were failing because of old age. Joseph brought his sons close to him and his father kissed them and embraced them.

⁹Then as Joseph bowed down, Israel reached out his right hand and put it on Ephraim’s head, though he was the younger, and crossing his arms put his left hand on Manasseh’s head.

¹⁰Seeing this, Joseph took hold of his father’s right hand to move it and said, “No father, Manasseh is the firstborn, put your right hand on his head.”

¹¹But his father refused saying, “I know my son, I know. He too will become a great nation, but his younger brother Ephraim will be greater than he. His descendants will become many nations.”^{F*}

Ephraim and Manasseh’s blessing

¹²Then Israel blessed them saying: “*May the God before whom Abraham and Isaac walked, the God who has been my shepherd all the days of my life, bless these boys.*”

^{*}7 Reuben and Simeon were Israel’s first born sons. The first born son normally inherited a double share of his father’s inheritance and other privileges, however, because Reuben committed adultery he lost his superior rights as first born, as also did Israel’s second and third born sons because of their violent natures (see following verses 17-20). The birthright privilege was therefore bestowed instead upon Joseph and his son Ephraim (verses 10-11, 30-34), and also in this instance, a blessing of royalty upon Judah and his descendants (verses 21-22).

^{*}11 Ephraim’s descendants became one of the two dominant tribes of Israel, (the other being Judah) and made up a large portion of the so called lost tribes of Israel, who are believed to have populated northern European countries after being exiled from northern Israel by the Assyrians in 722 BC.

^{*}14 Israel’s father Isaac lived to the age of 180, and his grand-father Abraham to 175. Israel himself eventually died aged 147.

13 *“May they be called after my name and the names of my fathers. May they increase greatly upon the earth, and my descendants pronounce this blessing: ‘May God make you as Ephraim and Manasseh.’”*

Israel gives Joseph the town of Shechem

14 Then Israel said to Joseph, “I am about to die, but God will be with you, and will return you again to the land of your fathers.”

15 “Now to you as one who is over your brothers, I give you Shechem, which was taken from the Canaanites by sword.”

Israel blesses the twelve tribes of Israel

16 Then Israel called for his other sons and said to them, “Gather together that I may tell you what shall befall you in days to come. Listen O sons of Jacob, hear your father Israel.

Reuben’s blessing, loses birthright

17 *“Reuben, my firstborn, my might, first fruit of my strength, excelling in honour, excelling in power, yet unstable as the sea.”*

18 *“No longer will you excel, for you defiled your father’s bed.”*^{F*}

Simeon and Levi’s blessing

19 *“Simeon and Levi are brothers of violence. My spirit will not unite with them, for they have killed men in their anger,^{F*} and hamstrung^{F*} oxen as they pleased.”*

20 *“Cursed be their fierce anger and cruelty. I will disperse them in Israel.”*

Judah’s blessing

21 *“Judah, your brothers will honour you and bow down to you. You will control your enemies. Judah is a lion, who dares arouse him?”*

22 *“The sceptre will not depart from Judah until Messiah^{F*} comes, to whom it belongs.”*

23 *“Judah will tether his donkeys to choice vines and wash his clothes in the juice of grapes. His eyes shall be darkened by wine and his teeth made white by milk.”*

Zebulun’s blessing

24 *“Zebulun shall dwell by the sea and become a haven for ships, with his border at Sidon.”*

Issachar’s blessing

25 *“Issachar is a strong donkey, lying down between two saddlebags. When he sees how pleasant is the land of his resting place, he will bend his back to the burden and willingly serve his masters.”*

Dan’s blessing

26 *“Dan will provide justice for his people, as one of the tribes of Israel. He shall be like a serpent by the roadside that bites the*

horse’s heels, so that its rider tumbles backward.”

God’s blessing

27 *“Gad shall be attacked by raiders, but he will attack them at their heels.”*

Asher’s blessing

28 *“Asher’s land will be rich in food. He will provide delicacies fit for a king.”*

Naphtali’s blessing

29 *“Naphtali is a doe set free, that bears beautiful fawns.”*

Joseph’s blessing

30 *“Joseph is a fruitful vine, near a spring, whose branches climb over a wall.”*

31 *“Fierce enemies attack him, but his arm is made strong by the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel.”*

32 *“God Almighty will bless him with the blessings of the heavens above and the earth beneath, blessings of the breast and womb.”*

33 *“My blessing is added to the blessings of my fathers before me, and shall not cease, until He comes whom the everlasting hills await.”*

34 *“Let all these blessings rest upon the head of Joseph, the prince among his brothers.”*

Benjamin’s blessing

35 *“Benjamin is a ravenous wolf, who devours his prey.”*

Israel dies and is embalmed

36 Then Israel breathed his last and was gathered to his fathers. Joseph threw himself upon his father and wept over him, and kissed him. **37** Then he directed the physicians in his service to embalm his father.

Israel taken back to Canaan for burial

38 When the days of mourning had passed Pharaoh said to Joseph, “Go bury your father in the land of Canaan as he made you swear an oath to do.”

39 So Joseph and his brothers journeyed to Canaan to bury their father. All of Pharaoh’s officials accompanied them, with chariots and horsemen.

Joseph’s brothers fear him and ask forgiveness

40 After they had returned, Joseph’s brothers said among themselves, “What if Joseph now punishes us for all the wrong we did to him?”

41 So they sent word to Joseph saying, “Your father gave us this instruction before he died. ‘Say to Joseph, ‘Forgive your brothers their wrong in treating you so badly.’”

Joseph weeps and consoles his brothers

42 When this message came to him, Joseph wept. Then his brothers came and threw themselves down before him and said, “We are your servants.”

43 But Joseph said to them, “Am I God? You intended to harm me, but God intended it for

*18 Reuben committed adultery with Bilhah, one of his father’s concubines. See Genesis 23:26.

*19 Simeon and Levi killed all the men of Shechem. See Genesis 23:13.

*19 To hamstring an animal is to cripple it by cutting the leg tendons so that it can walk only slowly and with difficulty.

*22 Messiah (or Shiloh) is the Hebrew term for the Christ.

GENESIS 31

good. So fear not, I will provide for you and your children,” and he spoke kindly to them.

Joseph dies aged 110 years and is embalmed

⁴⁴Joseph remained in Egypt, and saw the third generation of his children.

⁴⁵Then Joseph said to his people, “I am about to die, but God will come to your aid, and shall lead you up out of this land to the land he

promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.”

⁶Joseph made them swear an oath and said, “When that time comes, you must carry my bones up with you.”

⁴⁷Then Joseph died, aged 110 years. They embalmed his body and kept it in a coffin in Egypt.

EXODUS

This book continues the story of Jacob's descendants who settled in Egypt while Joseph was vizier. They now refer to themselves as Israelites, following Jacob's name change (Genesis 22:16), but are known to the Egyptians as Hebrews, meaning 'from beyond' (the Euphrates river).

It is now about 400 years since Jacob moved his family to Egypt and the Israelites have increased rapidly to a nation of over two million people, and as prophesied by the Lord to Abraham (Genesis 10:11) they have become slaves to the Egyptians.

However an 80 year old Israelite fugitive named Moses, raised by Pharaoh's daughter is called by the Lord from a burning bush to lead the enslaved Israelites out of Egypt back to the promised land of Canaan, hence the name of the book Exodus which is a Greek word meaning 'going out.'

This book is full of interest and drama. There are confrontations with the hard-hearted Pharaoh, ten plagues, the parting of the sea, miraculous manna from heaven, the mighty voice of Jehovah thundering ten commandments from the heights of Mount Horeb or Sinai, the building of a transportable Temple known as the Tabernacle and the ordaining of Aaron and his four sons as priests.

In addition to the ten commandments spoken by the voice of Lord, which were more of an overview, Moses received about a hundred more detailed commandments. These are listed in chapters 12 through to 14 and have been grouped under appropriate subject headings such as love, marriage, sexual immorality, the occult, etc. These commandments, along with many others covering sacrifices and feast days became known as the Law.

In the following book of Deuteronomy, Moses clarified many of these commandments and added several more.

AUTHOR

Moses (see Deuteronomy 9:1), but with clarifications by later Israelite prophets.

"Moses stretched his staff over the sea and all that night the Lord drove the sea back with a strong east wind, and turned the sea bed into dry land as the Israelites passed through." Exodus 7:23.

CONTENTS

	Chapter		
Egyptians begin to fear the Israelites	1	Moses asks Lord his name	2
Israelites made slaves in Egypt	1	Moses told what to say to Pharaoh	2
Midwives told to kill Israelite boy babies	1	Egyptians to be struck with wonders	2
Midwives fear God and do not do so	1	Pharaoh's firstborn son to die	2
Midwives blessed with families of their own	1	Israelites will not leave Egypt empty-handed	2
Pharaoh orders Israelite baby boys drowned at birth... 1	1	Miraculous signs given Moses to prove authority	2
Moses born and hidden among the Nile weeds	1	Moses complains he lacks eloquence	2
Pharaoh's daughter discovers Moses	1	Lord becomes angry with Moses	2
Moses adopted by Pharaoh's daughter	1	Moses' brother Aaron can speak for him	2
Moses natural mother paid to nurse him	1	Moses meets his brother Aaron	2
Moses returned to Pharaoh's daughter when weaned 1	1	Moses now eighty years old	2
Moses sees Egyptian beating an Israelite	1	Moses returns to Egypt with his wife and two sons ... 3	
Moses kills the Egyptian	1	Zipporah circumcises her son to save Moses' life ... 3	
Flees to Midian	1	Moses and Aaron meet with the elders of Israel	3
Moses assists daughters of Jethro a priest	1	First meeting with Pharaoh	3
Moses marries Zipporah daughter of Jethro	1	Pharaoh rejects Moses and Aaron	3
Israelites begin to groan in their slavery	2	Israelites ordered to gather own straw	3
Lord appears to Moses in a burning bush	2	Israelite foremen appeal to Pharaoh	3
Moses called to lead Israelites out of Egypt	2	Moses complains to the Lord	3
Moses feels inadequate	2	Lord reaffirms he will free the Israelites	3
Lord reassures Moses	2	Aaron's staff turns into a snake	4
Moses to bring Israelites to Mount Horeb.....	2	Egyptian sorcerers also turn staffs into snakes	4

EXODUS 31

First plague – water turned to blood	4	Jehovah the Lord who heals diseases	9
Egyptian sorcerers also turn water to blood	4	Israelites camp at Elim oasis	9
Egyptians dig for their drinking water	4	Israelites set out and enter desert of Sin	9
Second plague – frogs	4	People complain for food	9
Pharaoh agrees to free Israel if the frogs die	4	Quail fly into camp that evening	9
Frogs die but Pharaoh hardens his heart	4	Next morning thin flakes cover the ground	9
Third plague – biting lice	4	Bread not to be kept overnight	9
Sorcerers fail to produce lice	4	No bread to be found on Sabbath day	9
Fourth plague – dense swarms of flies	4	Some go out to gather on Sabbath	9
Pharaoh agrees to let Israelites go to sacrifice	4	Bread called manna	9
Flies depart but Pharaoh hardens his heart	4	Taste and appearance of manna described	9
Fifth plague – Egyptian animals die	4	Some manna to be kept to show future generations	9
Sixth plague – festering boils	4	People complain for water	10
Sorcerers also afflicted with boils	4	Water flows from a rock at Horeb	10
Pharaoh warned of full force plagues to come	4	The place of rebellion called Massah	10
Pharaoh's life preserved to show Jehovah's power	4	Amalekites attack Israel	10
Seventh plague – heavy hail to fall	4	Israelites go to battle	10
Egyptians warned to shelter all animals	4	Israel prevails as long as Moses holds up staff	10
Severe hail storms destroy men, animals, crops	4	Israelites defeat Amalekites	10
Pharaoh again hardens his heart	4	Amalekites to be blotted out	10
Purpose of plagues	5	Lord spoke with Moses face to face	10
Eighth plague – locusts to come	5	Moses' assistant Joshua did not leave tent	10
Pharaoh's officials plead with him	5	Moses' father-in-law Jethro comes to visit	10
Israelite men only permitted to go	5	Jethro praises Jehovah and offers sacrifice	10
Severe plague of locusts invade Egypt	5	Jethro advises Moses to delegate	10
Pharaoh repents but hardens heart again	5	Israelites arrive at Mount Horeb/Sinai.....	11
Ninth plague – three days of thick darkness	5	Israelites will be a chosen people if obedient	11
Israelites can go but not their animals	5	Israelites to purify themselves	11
Pharaoh orders Moses out of his sight	5	Access boundary to mountain to be marked out	11
Tenth plague – first born males to die	5	Smoke, thunder, lightning and quaking from Horeb	11
Moses prophesies Pharaoh's officials will bow to him	5	Very loud trumpet blast sounds	11
Moses angrily leaves Pharaoh's presence	5	Moses leads people to foot of mountain	11
Passover feast and lamb	6	Lord speaks in voice of thunder	11
Lamb to be slaughtered at twilight	6	People warned not to break through boundary.....	11
Blood to be sprinkled on door frames	6	Ten Commandments spoken by Lord	11
Meat to be roasted with bitter herbs	6	All Israelites hear voice of Jehovah	11
None of lamb's bones to be broken	6	The Ten Commandments	11
Passover meal to be eaten in haste	6	The people tremble in fear at the Lord's voice	12
Meal also to be eaten in readiness for travel	6	People afraid they will die	12
Every firstborn male in Egypt to die	6	They ask Moses to relay commandments	12
Lord to pass over houses with lamb's blood on door	6	Moses receives other commandments	12
At midnight all firstborn males of Egypt die	6	Commandments on love	12
Loud wailing heard during night	6	Commandments on altars	12
Pharaoh commands Israelites to leave	6	Commandments on idolatry	12
Egyptians give silver, gold and clothing	6	Commandments on offerings, first fruits and tithes	12
Exodus of the Israelites	6	Commandments on the occult	12
They take with them the bones of Joseph	6	Commandments on the Sabbath	12
Passover to be celebrated each year	7	Commandments on festivals	12
Feast of Unleavened Bread	7	Commandments on age and authority	13
No uncircumcised male permitted to eat the bread	7	Commandments on physical injury	13
No yeast to be eaten during Passover week	7	Commandments on marriage	13
No work on first and last day of Passover week	7	Commandments on sexual immorality	13
All Israel must celebrate Passover	7	Sexual immorality defiles the land	13
All firstborn males now belong to Lord	7	Commandments on animals and property	14
Firstborn donkeys and men to be redeemed	7	Commandments on restitution	14
Jehovah leads Israelites in a pillar of cloud	7	Commandments on justice	14
Israelites told to turn aside to deceive Pharaoh	7	Commandments on slavery	14
Pharaoh pursues Israelites with his army	7	Commandments on food	14
Israelites are terrified	7	Commandments on breeding and sowing	14
Moses tells Israelites to stand firm	7	Commandment on clothing	14
The Red Sea parts	7	Moses to take Aaron and two sons up to Lord.....	15
Israelites pass through during the night	7	70 elders of Israel also to be taken up	15
Egyptians follow but chariot wheels get clogged	7	Moses writes down all commandments	15
Sea flows back over Egyptian army	7	Moses builds an altar and offers sacrifice	15
Drowned Egyptians washed up on shore	8	Moses reads out all commandments	15
Israelites sing and dance to the Lord	8	The Israelites covenant to obey them	15
Miriam leads women in singing and dancing	8	Aaron and his sons and 70 elders see Lord	15
Bitter water at Marah purified by a tree	9	Moses and Joshua go back up mountain	15

Lord to give Law on tablets of stone.....	15	If daily offerings made Lord will dwell among Israel ...	18
How the mountain looked to people below	16	The Sabbath sacrifice	18
Moses and Joshua stay 40 days with Lord	15	The monthly sacrifice	18
Materials to be donated to make a Tabernacle	16	Priest's prayer of blessing	18
The Tabernacle frame	16	Tax for care of Tabernacle	18
Interior curtains of fine linen	16	Craftsmen given skill to make Tabernacle	18
Outer curtains of woven goat hair	16	Moses given Law on two tablets of stone	18
Exterior to be covered with tanned skins	16	Israelites below ask Aaron to make them a god	19
The entrance curtain	16	Aaron makes a golden calf	19
The Ark	16	Israelites offer idolatrous sacrifice	19
The carrying poles of the Ark	16	The people indulge in merriment	19
Solid gold lid with winged angels to cover Ark	16	Lord angry, to destroy Israelites	19
Stone tablets of the Law to be kept in Ark	16	Moses pleads for lives of his people	19
Lord to appear to Moses above the Ark	16	Lord relents	19
Veil to screen Most Holy Place	16	Moses and Joshua go back down mountain	19
Seven branched gold lampstand	16	Moses' anger burns hot when he sees the calf	19
Seven gold oil lamps for stand	16	Smashes stone tablets	19
Lamps to burn every night until morning	16	Moses grinds up calf and scatters it on water	19
Table and carrying poles	16	Israelites made to drink the water	19
Jugs and bowls of gold	16	Moses angry with Aaron	19
Altar of incense and its carrying poles	16	Moses summons all who will follow Jehovah	19
Incense to be burned as lamps are tended	16	His fellow Levites kill about 3000 rebellious men ...	19
Outer courtyard	16	Tribe of Levi now set apart to Lord	19
Bronze altar for burnt offerings	16	Moses attempts to atone for people's sin	20
Bronze altar utensils	16	Guilty to be punished on day of judgement	20
Bronze washing basin for the priests	16	Lord no longer to accompany Israel	20
Perfumed anointing oil	16	Angel of Lord to lead the people instead	20
Fragrant incense	16	Canaanites to be completely destroyed	20
Aaron and his four sons to be priests	17	Health and long life promised if Israelites obedient ...	20
Priestly garments to be made	17	Canaanites to be destroyed little by little	20
Ephod for high priest	17	Boundaries of the promised land	20
Engraved stones for shoulder pieces	17	Israel mourns that Lord will not go with them	20
Breastplate of precious stones	17	Moses pleads with Lord to accompany them	20
Urim and Thummim	17	Lord agrees to do so for Moses' sake	20
The high priest's robe	17	Moses asks to see full glory of Lord	21
Tunic, turban and sash	17	Moses only able to endure back view of Lord	21
Aaron's sons'-garments	17	Moses told to make two new stone tablets	21
Priests to be anointed and purified	18	Moses sees glory of Jehovah	21
The anointing of priests	18	Jehovah proclaims his name	21
The purification of priests	18	Face of Moses shines	21
Purification of priestly garments	18	Moses veils his face	21
Wave offering	18	Israelites bring materials for Tabernacle	21
Breast and thigh of offered rams belong to priests	18	Lord commands Tabernacle to be erected	21
Sacrificed food to be eaten at Tabernacle	18	Moses erects and anoints the Tabernacle	21
Ordaining of priests to last seven days	18	Aaron and his sons consecrated as priests	21
The daily sacrifice	18	Glory of Lord fills Tabernacle	21

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

The Egyptians begin to fear the rapidly increasing Israelites and make them slaves

¹A new Pharaoh who did not know Joseph came to power in Egypt. ²He said to his people, "The Israelites are becoming too numerous for us, we must deal shrewdly with them or in a time of war they may join our enemies and fight against us."

³So the Egyptians placed slave masters over

the Israelites and forced them to build cities. But the more the Israelites were oppressed the more they multiplied.

⁴At this the Egyptians began to fear the Israelites, and became ruthless and made their lives bitter with hard labour in bricks and mortar and in the fields.

EXODUS 1

Midwives ordered by Pharaoh to kill Israelite boy babies

⁵Then Pharaoh said to the two midwives who assisted the Israelite women, “When you attend the Hebrew^{F*} women in childbirth and see that it is a boy, kill him.

The midwives fear God and do not do so

⁶But the midwives feared God, and did not do as he asked. ⁷When the king summoned them and demanded, “Why have you let the boys live?” they answered, “Hebrew women are not like Egyptian women, they are vigorous and give birth before we arrive.”

The midwives blessed with families of their own

⁸So God blessed the midwives and gave them families of their own.

Pharaoh orders every Israelite baby boy to be drowned in the Nile at birth

⁹Then Pharaoh issued this decree, “Every boy born to the Hebrews is to be thrown in the Nile.”

Moses is born and hidden in a basket among the weeds

¹⁰Now an Israelite of the tribe of Levi married a Levite woman who bore a fine son. ¹¹She hid him for three months, but when she could not hide him any longer she laid him in a tar-coated papyrus basket and put it among the weeds along the bank of the Nile. ¹²The baby’s sister Miriam stood at a distance to see what would happen to him.

Pharaoh’s daughter discovers Moses

¹³Pharaoh’s daughter came down with her attendants to bathe in the Nile. She saw the basket as she walked along the bank and sent her slave girl to get it.

¹⁴When Pharaoh’s daughter opened it she saw the baby who was crying and felt sorry for him. She said, “This is one of the Hebrew babies.”

Pharaoh’s daughter adopts Moses and pays his natural mother to nurse him for her

¹⁵Then Miriam ran up to Pharaoh’s daughter and said, “Shall I get one of the Hebrew women to nurse the baby for you?”

¹⁶She answered, “Yes, go,” and the girl went and brought her mother.

¹⁷Pharaoh’s daughter said to her, “Take this baby and nurse him for me and I will pay you.”

¹⁸So the mother took back her baby and nursed him.

Moses given to Pharaoh’s daughter when weaned

¹⁹However when the child was weaned she gave him back to Pharaoh’s daughter and he became her son. She named him Moses.^{F*}

Moses grows up and one day sees an Egyptian beating an Israelite

²⁰One day when Moses had grown up,^{F*} he walked among his own people watching them at their hard labour and saw an Egyptian beating one of them.

Moses kills the Egyptian

²¹Seeing no one else around, Moses killed the Egyptian^{F*} and buried him in the sand.

²²The next day Moses came across two Israelites fighting, so he said to the one in the wrong, “Why are you striking your fellow Israelite?”

²³The man answered, “Who made you a judge over us? Are you intending to kill me like you killed the Egyptian yesterday?”

²⁴When Moses heard this he feared and thought, “What I did must be known.”

Moses flees from Pharaoh to Midian

²⁵Pharaoh heard what Moses had done and attempted to put him to death, but Moses fled to Midian.^{F*} When he arrived he rested by a well.



Women bathing on the banks of the Nile.

Moses assists the daughters of Jethro a priest of Midian to water their father’s flock

²⁶As he sat there, seven daughters of Jethro, a priest of Midian came to water their father’s flock, but some shepherds drove them away.

²⁷Moses rose to their defence and watered the flock for them.

²⁸When the girls returned to their father and told him what happened he said, “Why did you leave him out there? Invite him back here to eat.”

Moses marries Zipporah, a daughter of Jethro the priest

²⁹They did so and Moses agreed to stay with Jethro, who gave him his daughter Zipporah in marriage. ³⁰So Moses became a shepherd for his father-in-law Jethro the priest of Midian.

*20 Moses was now about 40 years old (Acts 6:28).

*21 According to Jewish historians Moses at this time served as a general in the Egyptian army. There is also an empty unfinished royal tomb in the 18th family dynasty (tomb 353) believed intended for Moses under the name Thutmose.

*25 A town and general region in Arabia on the eastern side of the Gulf of Aqaba arm of Red Sea.

*5 The Israelites were often referred to as Hebrews by non-Israelites meaning ‘from beyond’ (the Euphrates river).

*19 Moses is a common Egyptian name meaning ‘boy son.’ The Pharaoh at the time was named Ahmoses and the co-regent Thutmose. It was Thutmose’s daughter Neferu who adopted Moses. Thutmose became Pharaoh about 12 years later.

2

The Israelites in Egypt begin to groan in their slavery

¹After a long time, the Israelites in Egypt groaned in their slavery and cried out to God for help. God heard their pleading and remembered his covenant with Abraham.

The Lord appears to Moses in a burning bush near Mount Horeb (Sinai)

²One day when Moses had led his flock to the far side of the desert near Mount Horeb, he saw a bush that appeared to be blazing, but did not burn up. He thought, "I will go over and see this strange sight."

³When he got near, the angel of Jehovah called to him from within the bush and said, "**Moses! Moses! Do not come any closer. Take off your sandals, for you are standing on holy ground.**"

⁴Then he said, "**I am the God of your fathers, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob.**" ⁵At these words Moses hid his face, afraid to look at God.^{F*}

Moses called to lead the Israelites out of Egypt to the promised land

⁶"I have seen the misery of the Israelites in Egypt and have heard them crying out and I have come down to rescue them and bring them into a good and spacious land. ⁷Into a land flowing with milk and honey, the land of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites and Jebusites."

⁸"Now go, I am sending you to Pharaoh to bring my people out of Egypt. The men who wanted to kill you are dead."

Moses feels inadequate

⁹Moses said to God, "Who am I to go to Pharaoh and bring the Israelites out of Egypt?"

The Lord reassures Moses and tells him to bring the Israelites here to Mount Horeb

¹⁰God said, "**I will be with you. When you have brought the people out of Egypt, bring them here to worship God at this mountain.**"^{F*}

Moses asks the Lord his name

¹¹But Moses said to God, "If I say to the Israelites, 'The God of your fathers has sent me to you,' and they ask me, 'What is his name?' What do I tell them?"

¹²The Lord replied, "**I am to be Jehovah.**^{F*} ¹³**Therefore you shall say to the Israelites: Jehovah, the God of your fathers Abraham, Isaac and Jacob has sent me to you. This is the name by which I am to be remembered forever.**"

^{*5} The New Testament reveals that the angel who appeared to Moses in the bush, and also on numerous subsequent occasions was the pre-mortal Jesus Christ, speaking in the name and authority of Jehovah. See also Genesis 1:14 and note. For a fuller explanation see note on John 1:8.

^{*10} ie Mount Horeb also known as Mount Sinai.

^{*12} Jehovah means 'Eternal or 'Self-existent.' The Lord in the bush connected the verb 'hayay' ('to be') to the name Jehovah. The angel speaking is the pre-mortal Jesus Christ who was to come to earth in the name of his father Jehovah. Traditional Bibles usually translate verse 12 as "I Am who I Am."

Moses told what to say to Pharaoh

¹⁴"Now assemble the elders of Israel and repeat all the words I have spoken to you. ¹⁵Then you are to go before Pharaoh king of Egypt and say to him, 'Jehovah the God of the Hebrews has met with us. Allow us to take a three-day journey into the desert to offer sacrifices to our God.'

The Egyptians to be struck with wonders

¹⁶"But he will not let you go unless a mighty hand compels him. ¹⁷Therefore I will stretch out my hand and strike the Egyptians with wonders. ¹⁸See that you perform before Pharaoh all the miracles I will give you power to do."

¹⁹"However I will harden his heart so that he will not let the people go."

Pharaoh's firstborn son to die

²⁰"Then say to Pharaoh, 'Thus says Jehovah: Israel is my firstborn son. I commanded you, 'Let my son go to worship me,' but you refused. Therefore I will take the life of your firstborn son.'

The Israelites will not leave Egypt empty-handed

²¹"After that he will let you go, and I will give the Israelites favour in the sight of the Egyptians. When you leave you will not leave empty-handed. ²²Every woman is to ask her Egyptian neighbour for articles of silver, gold and clothing, and so you will despoil the Egyptians."

Miraculous signs given Moses to prove his authority

²³Moses said, "What if they do not believe me?"

²⁴The Lord said, "**Throw down your staff on the ground.**" Moses did so, and immediately it turned into a snake and he drew back from it.

²⁵Then the Lord commanded Moses, "**Take it up by the tail.**" Moses grasped the snake by the tail and it turned back into a staff in his hand.

²⁶The Lord said, "**Now place your hand inside your cloak.**" Moses did so and when he took it out it was leprous, like snow. ²⁷The Lord said, "**Put it back into your cloak.**" Moses did this and it was restored again.

²⁸Then the Lord said, "**If they do not believe these two signs, take water from the Nile and pour it on the ground and it will turn to blood.**"

Moses complains to the Lord that he lacks eloquence

²⁹Moses said, "O Lord, I have never been eloquent. I am slow to find speech."

³⁰The Lord answered, "**Who gave man his mouth? Who makes him deaf, dumb, seeing or blind? Is it not I? Now go! I will help you speak, and teach you what to say.**"

EXODUS 3

The Lord becomes angry with Moses and tells him his brother Aaron can speak for him

³¹But Moses said, “O Lord, please send someone else.”

³²At these words the Lord began to be angry with Moses. He said, “**Your brother Aaron can speak well. He is coming out to meet you. He will speak to the people for you. He shall be your mouth and you shall be as God to him. I will help both of you speak and teach you what to do.**”

Moses meets his brother Aaron

³³Now the Lord had said to Aaron the brother of Moses, “**Go out into the desert to meet Moses.**”

³⁴So Aaron met Moses at Mount Horeb and kissed him, then Moses told his brother all that the Lord had said.

Moses now eighty years old

³⁵Moses was now eighty years old, and Aaron was eighty-three.

3

Moses returns to Egypt with his wife and two sons

¹Moses returned to Jethro his father-in-law and said, “Let me return to Egypt to see if my people are still alive.”

²Jethro said, “Go in peace.” So Moses put his wife and two sons on a donkey and started back for Egypt.

Zipporah circumcises her son to save Moses' life

³At an inn on the way, the Lord appeared again to Moses and threatened to take his life. But his wife Zipporah took a flint knife and circumcised her son's foreskin and cast it at his feet and said to him, “Truly you are a husband of blood to me.” So the Lord spared Moses.^{F*}

Moses and Aaron meet with the elders of Israel

⁴When Moses arrived back in Egypt he and Aaron assembled the elders of Israel.

⁵Aaron repeated to them all that the Lord had said and Moses performed the miraculous signs. ⁶The elders believed and bowed down and worshipped Jehovah.

The first meeting with Pharaoh

⁷Then Moses and Aaron went and stood before Pharaoh the king of Egypt and said to him, “Jehovah the God of Israel says, **‘Let my people go, that they may sacrifice to me in the desert.’**”

Pharaoh rejects Moses and Aaron

⁸Pharaoh said, “Who is Jehovah that I should obey him? I will not let Israel go.”

⁹They said to him, “The God of the Hebrews has appeared to us. Therefore allow us to take a three-day journey into the desert to offer

sacrifices, lest he strike us with plagues or the sword.”

¹⁰But the king said, “Moses and Aaron, why are you taking the people away from their work? Get back to your labour!”

Pharaoh orders the Israelites to gather their own straw to work them harder

¹¹That same day Pharaoh said to his slave drivers, “You are no longer to supply the Hebrews with straw for making bricks. Let them gather their own straw, but require the same number of bricks as before. ¹²They are lazy, that is why they cry out, ‘Let us go and sacrifice to our God.’ Make them work harder so that they are too busy working to pay attention to lies.”

¹³So the Israelites scattered all over Egypt to gather straw, but the slave drivers kept pressing them saying, “Complete the required work each day, just as you did when you were supplied straw.”

The Israelite foremen appeal to Pharaoh

¹⁴The Israelite foremen went and appealed to Pharaoh but he said, “Get back to work! You will not be given straw!”

¹⁵When the foremen left Pharaoh's presence they found Moses and Aaron waiting to meet them. They said to them, “You have made us as a stench to Pharaoh.”



Making bricks from mud and straw in Egypt.

Moses complains to the Lord

¹⁶So Moses prayed to the Lord and said, “O Lord, why did you ever send me? ¹⁷Ever since I spoke to Pharaoh in your name he has brought trouble upon us. You have not rescued your people at all.”

The Lord reaffirms that he will free the Israelites and bring them to the promised land

¹⁸The Lord said to Moses, “**Now you will see what I will do to Pharaoh. Because of my mighty hand he will drive this people out of Egypt.**”

*3 Evidently Moses had neglected to obey the commandment concerning his youngest son that all males be circumcised when 8 days old (Genesis 11:17).

19^a“I am Jehovah, I appeared to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob as God Almighty and did I not also make myself known to them by my name Jehovah?”

20^a“Therefore say to the Israelites, ‘I am Jehovah. I will free you from being slaves to the Egyptians. I will redeem you with outstretched arm and mighty acts of judgement.’”

21^a“I will take you as my own people and will be your God, and I will bring you to the land I promised Abraham, Isaac and Jacob.”

22^aMoses repeated these words to the Israelites, but they were too discouraged to listen.

4

Aaron's staff turns into a snake in Pharaoh's presence

1^aThe Lord said to Moses, F* “Go again and command Pharaoh to let the Israelites go.”

2^aMoses said, “If the Israelites will not listen to me why should Pharaoh listen to me, and I speak falteringly?”

3^aThe Lord said, “This time Pharaoh will say to you, ‘Prove yourselves by a miraculous sign.’ Then say to Aaron, ‘Throw down your staff.’ It will turn into a snake.”

4^aSo Moses and Aaron went before Pharaoh as the Lord commanded and Aaron threw down the staff in front of Pharaoh and his officials, and it turned into a snake.

Egyptian sorcerers also turn staffs into snakes

5^aPharaoh however summoned Egyptian sorcerers who did the same thing by their secret arts. Each sorcerer threw down his staff and it turned into a snake, but Aaron's staff swallowed up the staffs of the sorcerers.F*

6^aYet Pharaoh hardened his heart and would not listen, just as the Lord had said.

The first plague – water turned to blood

7^aThen the Lord said to Moses, “Wait on the bank of the Nile to meet Pharaoh in the morning. 8^aSay to him, ‘Jehovah the God of the Hebrews sent me to say to you, ‘Let my people go,’ but you did not obey. Therefore the Lord says, ‘By this you will know that I am Jehovah. The fish in the Nile will die and the river will stink. The Egyptians will not be able to drink its water.’”

9^a“Then command Aaron to take his staff and stretch it over all the waters of Egypt; the streams, canals, ponds and reservoirs, and they will all turn to blood, even the water in wooden buckets and stone jars.”

10^aMoses and Aaron did as the Lord

*1 It is generally understood that seer-prophets such as Moses, Isaiah, Jeremiah and Ezekiel hear the words of the Lord speaking to them audibly within their head, probably similar to the modern effect of wearing headphones.

*5 The apostle Paul reveals that there were two Egyptian sorcerers, named Jannes and Jambres (2 Timothy 2:11). Sorcerers obtain their power from evil occult forces.

commanded and in the presence of Pharaoh and his officials all the water of Egypt was changed to blood.

11^aThe fish in the Nile died and the river stank so much that the Egyptians could not drink its water. Blood was everywhere in Egypt.

The Egyptian sorcerers also turn water to blood

12^aYet the Egyptian sorcerers did the same thing by their secret arts, so Pharaoh would not listen to Moses and Aaron, instead he turned and went back into his palace.

The Egyptians dig for their drinking water

13^aThe Egyptians dug along the Nile to get drinking water because they could not drink the water of the river.

The second plague – frogs

14^aSeven days passed, then the Lord said to Moses, “Return to Pharaoh and say, ‘Jehovah says, Let my people go. If you refuse I will plague your whole land with frogs. 15^aThe Nile will teem with frogs. They will come up into your palace, into your bedroom and leap on to your bed, and into the houses of your people, and into your ovens and kneading bowls.’”

16^aBut Pharaoh would not listen.

17^aThen the Lord said to Moses, “Command Aaron to stretch out his staff over the streams, canals and ponds and frogs shall come up on the land of Egypt.”

18^aAaron did so and frogs came up and covered the land. But the sorcerers also made frogs come up on the land of Egypt.

Pharaoh agrees to let the people go if the frogs are taken away

19^aHowever Pharaoh summoned Moses and Aaron and said, “Pray to Jehovah to take the frogs away and I will let your people go to offer sacrifices to him.”

20^aMoses replied, “Set a time for me to pray that your houses be rid of the frogs.”

Pharaoh said, “Tomorrow.”

21^aMoses replied, “It will be as you say. Then you will know there is no one like Jehovah our God.”

The frogs die but Pharaoh hardens his heart

22^aThe Lord did as Moses asked. The frogs died in the houses, in the courtyards and out in the fields. They were piled into heaps and the land stank. 23^aBut when Pharaoh gained relief he hardened his heart again.

The third plague – biting lice

24^aThen the Lord said to Moses, “Command Aaron to stretch out his staff and strike the ground. Lice will come throughout Egypt.”

25^aAaron did as the Lord said and lice^{F*} came upon men and animals throughout the land of Egypt.

*25 From the Hebrew ‘kane’ meaning to ‘fasten on,’ describing a bloodsucking insect such as a flea or tick.

EXODUS 4

The sorcerers fail to produce lice

²⁶The sorcerers tried to produce lice by their secret arts but could not. They said to Pharaoh, "This is the hand of God."

²⁷But Pharaoh's heart was hard and he did not listen.

The fourth plague – dense swarms of flies

²⁸Then the Lord said to Moses, "Arise early in the morning and confront Pharaoh as he goes to the river and say to him, 'Jehovah says, "Let my people go. ²⁹If you do not obey I will send swarms of flies on you and your people. Your houses will be full of them and the land around them."

³⁰"But in the land of Goshen where my people live, no swarms of flies will be found. Thus I will make a distinction between my people and your people. This sign will occur tomorrow."

³¹The next day dense swarms of flies poured into Pharaoh's palace and the houses of Egypt.

Pharaoh agrees to let the Israelites sacrifice in the desert

³²Pharaoh summoned Moses and Aaron and said, "You may sacrifice to your God, but do it here in the land."

³³Moses replied, "The sacrifices we offer to our God are detestable to the Egyptians. ^{F*} Will they not stone us? We must take a three-day journey into the desert as Jehovah commands us."

³⁴Pharaoh said, "I will let you go into the desert, but you must not go far. Now pray for me."

³⁵Moses answered, "I will pray to the Lord and tomorrow the flies will leave Pharaoh and his people, only be sure that Pharaoh does not act deceitfully again."

The flies depart but Pharaoh again hardens his heart

³⁶Then Moses left Pharaoh and prayed to the Lord and the Lord did as Moses asked. The flies left Pharaoh and his people. Not one remained. ³⁷But again Pharaoh hardened his heart and would not let the people go.

The fifth plague – Egyptian animals die

³⁸The Lord said to Moses, "Say to Pharaoh, 'As you refuse to let the people go, tomorrow Jehovah will bring a plague on your livestock in the fields. ³⁹But he will make a distinction between the livestock of Israel and that of Egypt. No animal belonging to the Israelites will die."

⁴⁰The next day many animals out in the fields all over Egypt died, but not one animal belonging to the Israelites died. Yet Pharaoh's heart was unyielding and he would still not let the people go.

The sixth plague – festering boils

⁴¹Then the Lord said to Moses, "Take

handfuls of soot from a furnace and toss it into the air in the presence of Pharaoh. ⁴²It will become a fine dust over the land of Egypt and festering boils will break out on men and animals throughout the land."

⁴³So Moses took soot and standing before Pharaoh he tossed it into the air and festering boils broke out on men and household animals.

The sorcerers also afflicted with boils

⁴⁴The sorcerers could not stand before Moses because of the boils that were on them.

⁴⁵But Pharaoh would still not listen to Moses and Aaron.



Throne of Pharaoh.

Pharaoh warned of full force plagues to come

⁴⁶The Lord said to Moses, "Arise early in the morning to confront Pharaoh. Say to him, 'Thus says Jehovah, Let my people go or this time I will send the full force of my plagues against you and your people. That you may know there is no one like me in all the earth."

Pharaoh's life preserved for the purpose of displaying Jehovah's power

⁴⁷"By now I could have struck you and your people with a plague that would have wiped you off the land. ⁴⁸But I have preserved you for the purpose of displaying my power, that my name may be proclaimed throughout the earth."

The seventh plague – heavy hail to fall the next day

⁴⁹"You continue to set yourself against my

*³³ Certain animals were held by the Egyptians to be sacred, especially bull-calves.

people and will not let them go. Therefore at this time tomorrow I will send the heaviest hailstorms that have ever fallen on Egypt.”

The Egyptians warned to shelter all animals

⁵⁰“Give orders to bring in all animals out in the fields to shelter. The hail will fall on every man and animal still left out in the field and they will die.”

⁵¹The officials of Pharaoh who feared the Lord hurried to bring their slaves and livestock inside, but others did not.

Severe hail storms destroy men, animals and crops

⁵²The next day when Moses stretched his staff toward the sky, the Lord sent thunder and hail and lightning flashed back and forth.

⁵³Throughout Egypt hail storms struck every thing in the fields, both men and animals, and beat down everything growing and stripped every tree, and the flax and barley were destroyed.

⁵⁴The only place it did not hail was in the land of Goshen where the Israelites were.

Pharaoh agrees to let the people go but again hardens his heart

⁵⁵Pharaoh sent for Moses and Aaron and said, “This time I have sinned, Jehovah is in the right. We have had enough thunder and hail. I will let you go.”

⁵⁶Moses replied, “When I have gone out of the city I will lift up my hands in prayer to the Lord and the thunder will stop and it will hail no more. ⁵⁷But I perceive that you and your officials still do not fear God.”

⁵⁸When the rain, hail and thunder stopped, Pharaoh sinned again. He would not let the Israelites go.

5

The purpose of the plagues

¹Then the Lord said to Moses, “I have hardened Pharaoh’s heart and the hearts of his officials that I may perform these miraculous signs of mine among them. I did so that you may tell your children how I dealt harshly with the Egyptians and that you may know that I am Jehovah. Now return again to Pharaoh.”

The eighth plague – locusts if Pharaoh refuses to let the Israelites go

²So Moses returned to Pharaoh and said to him, “Jehovah the God of the Hebrews says, ‘How long will you refuse to humble yourself before me? If you refuse to let my people go I will bring locusts into your land tomorrow.’”

³“They will cover the face of the ground so that it cannot be seen. They will devour what little you have left after the hail including every tree that is growing in your fields.”

⁴“They will even fill your houses, something your forefathers never saw from the day they settled in Egypt.” Then Moses turned and left Pharaoh.

Pharaoh’s officials plead with him to let the people go

⁵Pharaoh’s officials said to him, “How long will you let this man torment us? Let the people go to worship their God. Do you not realise that Egypt is being ruined?”

Moses and Aaron brought back to Pharaoh

⁶So Moses and Aaron were brought back to Pharaoh and he said, “If I let you go to worship your God, who will you take with you?”

⁷Moses answered, “We will take our young and our old, our flocks and our herds, for we are to celebrate a festival to the Lord.”

Only the Israelite men permitted to go

⁸Pharaoh said, “I will not let you take your women and children. Clearly you are bent on mischief. Only the men shall go and worship the Lord. That is what you have been asking.”

⁹Then Moses and Aaron were driven out of Pharaoh’s presence.

A severe plague of locusts invade Egypt

¹⁰The Lord said to Moses, “Stretch out your hand over Egypt and locusts will swarm over the land.”

¹¹So Moses stretched out his staff and the Lord made an east wind blow all that day and night, and in the morning came the locusts. They invaded all Egypt in great numbers.

¹²There had never been such a plague of locusts before. They covered the ground until it was black. ¹³They devoured everything growing in the fields and the fruit on the trees. Nothing green remained in all of Egypt.

Pharaoh repents but then hardens his heart again when the locusts are blown into the sea

¹⁴Pharaoh quickly called for Moses and Aaron and said, “I have sinned against Jehovah your God and against you. Now forgive my sin once more and take this deadly plague away from me.”

¹⁵So Moses prayed and the Lord changed the wind to a strong westerly, which caught up the locusts and carried them into the Red Sea.

¹⁶But the Lord again hardened Pharaoh’s heart and he would not let the Israelites go.

The ninth plague – three days of thick darkness

¹⁷The Lord said to Moses, “Stretch out your hand toward the sky and darkness will spread over Egypt, darkness that can be felt.”

¹⁸So Moses stretched out his hand and thick darkness covered Egypt for three days. No one could see anyone else or move about for three days. Yet the Israelites had light.

Pharaoh agrees to the Israelites going but not their animals

¹⁹Afterward Pharaoh summoned Moses and said, “Go worship the Lord. Your women and

EXODUS 6

children may go with you, but leave your flocks and herds behind.”

²⁰Moses said, “Our livestock must go with us to offer as sacrifice in worshipping Jehovah.”

Pharaoh orders Moses out of his sight

²¹But Pharaoh was not willing to let the livestock go. He said to Moses, “Get out of my sight! Do not appear before me again or you will die!”

The tenth plague – first born males to die

²²However this word of the Lord came to Moses while he was still in the presence of Pharaoh, “I will bring one more plague on Pharaoh and on Egypt. After that he will drive you out. ²³About midnight I will pass throughout Egypt. Every firstborn male in Egypt will die, from the firstborn son of Pharaoh to the firstborn son of the slave girl at her hand mill, and the firstborn of all livestock as well. ²⁴There will be loud wailing throughout Egypt such as there has never been, nor ever will be again.”

²⁵“But among the Israelites not a dog will bark. Then you will know that Jehovah makes a distinction between Egypt and Israel. ²⁶Now go instruct the people to ask their neighbours for articles of silver and gold.”

Moses prophesies that Pharaoh’s officials will bow to him and say ‘go’ then he angrily leaves

²⁷Moses repeated to Pharaoh all that the Lord had said and then said to him, “As you have said, I will not come before you again, but the Lord has told me that all your officials will come to me bowing down and saying, ‘Go! You and all the people who follow you!’ After that I will leave.”

²⁸Then Moses, hot with anger left Pharaoh’s presence.



Swarm of locusts ‘blackening the ground.’

6

The Passover feast and lamb

¹The Lord said to Moses, “This month is to be the first month of your year.^{F*} Command all Israel that every year on the tenth day of this month, each man is to take a lamb for his family, one for each household. ²If any household is too small for a whole lamb they can share one with their nearest neighbour. Determine this by the amount each person will eat.”

The Passover lamb to be a year old male without defect

³“The lamb he chooses must be a year old male without defect, or he may use a young male goat.”

The lamb to be slaughtered at twilight and some blood sprinkled on door frames

⁴“He is to keep it until the fourteenth day of this month, when he must slaughter it at twilight and take some of the blood and apply it to the sides and tops of the door frame of the house where the lamb will be eaten.”

The lamb’s meat to be roasted with bitter herbs

⁵“That same night they are to eat the meat after roasting it over a fire, along with bitter herbs and bread made without yeast. ⁶Do not eat the meat raw or boiled in water but roast it over a fire, head, legs and inner parts.”

None of the lamb’s bones to be broken

⁷“Not one of its bones is to be broken.^{F*} Take none of the meat outside the house and do not leave any of it until morning. If some is left it must be burnt.”

The Passover meal to be eaten in haste and in readiness for travel

⁸“You are to eat it with your cloak tucked into your belt, your sandals on your feet, and your staff in your hand. Eat it in haste, it is the Passover of Jehovah.”

Every firstborn male in Egypt to die

⁹“For on that night I will pass throughout Egypt and strike down every firstborn male, both men and livestock. I will bring judgement on the gods of Egypt.”

The Lord to pass over the houses with the lambs blood on the door frame

¹⁰“The blood will be a sign on the houses where you are. When I see the blood I will pass over you and not allow the destroyer to enter that house.”

Moses instructs the elders of Israel regarding the Passover

¹¹So Moses summoned all the elders of Israel and said to them, “Go at once and select a

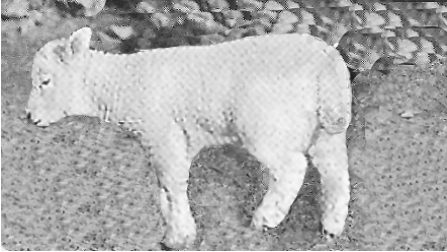
*1 The month of Nisan (Mar-April).

*7 The lamb symbolised Jesus Christ who was to die on the feast of a future Passover and who had none of his bones broken.

Passover lamb for your families and slaughter it. ¹²Take a bunch of hyssop^{F*} and dip it into the blood in a basin. Put blood on the top and both sides of the door frame of your house and do not go outside until morning.”

¹³“This will be a lasting ordinance for you and your descendants.”

¹⁴All the Israelites did exactly as the Lord had commanded.



The Passover lamb was symbolic of the Messiah or Christ.

At midnight all the firstborn males of Egypt die

¹⁵At midnight, the Lord struck down all the firstborn in Egypt, from the firstborn of Pharaoh to the firstborn of the prisoners in the dungeon, and the firstborn of all livestock.

Loud wailing heard during the night

¹⁶Pharaoh and his officials and all the Egyptians arose during the night and loud wailing was heard, for there was not a house where one was not dead.

Pharaoh commands the Israelites to leave

¹⁷While it was still dark, Pharaoh summoned Moses and Aaron and said to them, “Leave my people, you and the Israelites. Take your flocks and herds and go, and also bless me.”

The Egyptians urge the Israelites to leave and give them silver, gold and clothing

¹⁸And when morning came the Egyptians also urged the Israelites to hurry and leave, for they said, “We may all die.”

¹⁹Before leaving, the Israelites did as the Lord commanded and asked the Egyptians for articles of silver and gold, and for clothing.

²⁰The Lord gave the people favour in the sight of the Egyptians, and Moses himself was highly respected by the people of Egypt so they gave the Israelites what they asked.

The exodus of the Israelites

²¹Then the Israelites set out from Rameses for Succoth. There were about 600,000 men on foot, besides women and children.^{F*}

²²A great crowd of mixed ancestry also went

*12 Hyssop is a tall cane-like plant with edible seed, also known as Jerusalem corn.

*21 Some find difficulty in believing that such a vast number of people were involved in the exodus from Egypt. However the numbers remain consistently large throughout the Exodus account and also in the Bible books that follow, which span many generations.

with them, as well as numerous flocks and herds of livestock.

²³The time the Israelites had stayed in Egypt and Canaan was 430 years, to the very day.^{F*}

²⁴The people took their bread dough without yeast and carried it on their shoulders in kneading troughs wrapped in clothing.

The Israelites take with them the bones of Joseph

²⁵They also took the bones of Joseph with them as their forefathers had sworn to do.

²⁶God led the people in battle array along the desert road leading toward the Red Sea.^{F*} He did not lead them by way of the shorter road through the Philistine country for he thought, “If they face war they may return to Egypt.”



Applying blood to the top and sides of a doorway in accordance with Passover requirements.

7

This day to be remembered forever by celebrating the Passover each year

¹The Lord said to Moses, “This is a day you are to remember forever. All generations to come must celebrate the Passover as a festival to Jehovah.”^{F*}

*23 The 430 years appears to date back to the day Israel, the first of the Israelites, was commanded to be sacrificed by his father Abraham on Mount Moriah (Genesis 15:1-12) and God reaffirmed his covenant with Abraham.

*26 The name Red Sea is taken from the Septuagint translation of the Hebrew Old Testament into Greek, about 280 BC, in Egypt. The Hebrew term for this sea is ‘Yam Suph’ meaning ‘Sea of Seaweed sometimes translated Sea of Reeds.’ The word ‘suph’ refers to plants that grow in water and was used to describe the Nile river weed where Moses was laid as a baby and also the seaweed that draped around Jonah when he was cast overboard at sea. The non-Israelite term Red Sea includes the present Red Sea and both the Gulfs of Suez and Aqaba. The name comes from the reddish brown bloom that sometimes discolours its waters. Solomon’s ship building took place in the Gulf of Aqaba and his ocean voyages departed from there and that sea is also called ‘Yam Suph’ in the original Hebrew and translated Red Sea in most English bibles (1 Kings 21:20). The Red Sea is also designated by the Lord as the southernmost boundary of Israel (Exodus 20:14).

*1 The celebration of the Passover corresponds with the Christian Easter. Jesus the Christ died during the feast of the Passover. Christ is the Greek translation of the Hebrew word Messiah, (Jesus Christ translates literally as ‘Joshua the Messiah’). The slaughtering of the lamb was intended to

EXODUS 7

The feast of Unleavened Bread

²“Celebrate at the same time the feast of Unleavened Bread. For seven days in this first month you are to eat bread made without yeast, from the evening of the fourteenth day until the evening of the twenty-first day.”

No uncircumcised male permitted to eat the unleavened bread

³“No uncircumcised person is to eat of it, but a slave you have bought may eat of it after you have circumcised him.”

No yeast to be eaten during Passover week

⁴“Remove all yeast from your houses, for whoever eats anything with yeast during this time must be cut off from Israel.”

No work on first and last day of Passover week

⁵“On the first day hold a sacred assembly, and another on the seventh day. Do no work at all on these days except to prepare food.”

Every Israelite must celebrate the Passover

⁶“All the Israelites must celebrate. If a foreigner living among you wishes to celebrate the Passover he must have all the males in his household circumcised.”

All firstborn males, both men and animals from now on belong to the Lord

⁷The Lord said to Moses, “Consecrate to me every firstborn son among the Israelites. They will belong to me, also the firstborn of your animals.”

Every firstborn son and donkey to be redeemed

⁸“However you are to redeem the firstborn of your sons,^{F*} and every firstborn donkey is to be redeemed with a sheep.^{F*} If you do not redeem a donkey you must break its neck.”

⁹“In days to come when your son says to you, ‘What does this mean?’ say to him, ‘With a mighty hand Jehovah brought us out of Egypt. When Pharaoh refused to let us go, the Lord slew all the firstborn in Egypt, both man and animal.’”

Jehovah leads the Israelites day and night in a pillar of cloud

¹⁰From Succoth the Israelites journeyed to Etham and camped at the edge of the desert.^{F*}

foreshadow the death of Messiah. Most Israelites however do not believe that Jesus was the Messiah and still await the coming of another.

*8 To redeem means to ‘buy back’ and was normally done with silver, however the entire tribe of Levites were later substituted for the firstborn sons of the other tribes (Numbers 1:30).

*8 A donkey being an unclean animal could not be offered for sacrifice.

*10 This journey took longer than is generally realised. The distance to Etham on the Egyptian side of the Gulf of Aqaba arm of the Red Sea is about 200 miles. A large group with livestock can generally expect to cover only six miles a day, although as the next verse indicates, the Israelites probably travelled at night also. The Jewish Talmud reports that after the Egyptians had spent three days burying their dead they waited two more days expecting the Israelites to return. They then sent a delegation after them asking when they would return. When it became apparent to the delegation that the Israelites had no

¹¹By day Jehovah went ahead of them in a pillar of cloud and by night in a pillar of fire to guide them on their journey, so that they might travel by day or by night.^{F*}

The Lord commands the Israelites to change direction to deceive Pharaoh into pursuing them

¹²Then the Lord said to Moses, “Command the Israelites to turn and camp between Migdol^{F*} and the sea opposite Baal Zephon.^{F*} Pharaoh will think, ‘The Israelites are wandering about in confusion, hemmed in by the desert.’”

¹³“I will harden his heart and he will pursue you. I will gain glory for myself through Pharaoh and all his army, and the Egyptians shall know that I am the Lord.”

Pharaoh pursues the Israelites with his army of charioteers

¹⁴When Pharaoh was told that the Israelites were not returning, his heart was again hardened and he said, “What have we done? Why have we let them go and lost their labour.”

¹⁵So Pharaoh commanded that his chariot be made ready and gathered his army. He took his 600 best chariots, all his horsemen, and all the other chariots of Egypt.^{F*} ¹⁶They set out in pursuit of the Israelites who were marching out boldly and caught up with them as they camped by the Red Sea, opposite Baal Zephon.



Red Sea crossing-site beach at Migdol. The Egyptian army would have approached down the valley or wadi in the centre left of the photo.

The Israelites are terrified when they see the Egyptians coming

¹⁷When the Israelites saw the Egyptians in the

intention of coming back, they returned and reported this fact to Pharaoh who then proceeded to gather his armies together to pursue the Israelites. Exodus 9:1-6 indicates that the Israelites had travelled about three weeks before Pharaoh’s army caught up with them at the Red Sea. This would mean the Israelites had covered a rapid ten miles a day. The Lord may have been alluding to this speed in Exodus 11:2 when he says, “I carried you on the wings of eagles.”

*11 The appearance of fire from within the cloud at night would probably be the glory of the Lord shining through. It would not be so apparent in daylight.

*12 A double mountain range with a valley (wadi) between. The Jewish historian Josephus writes that the Israelites were ‘trapped between inaccessible precipices and the sea, for there was on each side mountains that terminated at the sea.’

*12 Believed to be temple shrine visible across the sea.

*15 Josephus reports that Pharaoh marched out after the Israelites with about 600 chariots, 50,000 horsemen and 200,000 foot soldiers. *Antiquities* 2:324

distance they were terrified and cried out to Moses saying, "What have you done to us? Was it because there were no burial places in Egypt that you brought us out here to die?"¹⁸Did we not say to you in Egypt, 'Leave us alone, let us serve the Egyptians?'"

Moses tells the Israelites to stand firm

¹⁹Moses answered, "**Fear not! Stand firm, and today you will see the deliverance of the Lord. You will not see these Egyptians again.**"

The Red Sea parts, and the Israelites pass through during the night

²⁰Then the Lord said to Moses, "**Why are you crying out to me? Tell the people to go forward. ²¹Stretch out your staff over the sea to divide the water so the Israelites can go through on dry ground.**"

²²"**Afterward I will harden the hearts of the Egyptians and they will go in after them, and I will gain glory through Pharaoh and all his army.**"

²³The angel of God withdrew from in front of Israel and went behind them. The pillar of cloud stood between Israel and the armies of Egypt. ²⁴(The cloud brought darkness to one side and light to the other so that neither came any closer to the other all night long.)

²⁵Then Moses stretched his staff over the sea and all that night the Lord drove the sea back with a strong east wind, and turned the sea bed into dry land as the Israelites passed through. The waters were a wall to them on their left and right. F*

The sea flows back over the Egyptian army

²⁸Then the Lord said to Moses, "**Stretch out your hand over the sea so that the waters flow back over the Egyptians.**"

²⁹Moses stretched out his hand over the sea, and at dawn the sea flowed back to its place and met the retreating Egyptians. ³⁰They tried to flee from it but it covered the chariots, horses and drivers. Pharaoh's whole army who had followed the Israelites into the sea drowned. Not one survived.



Red Sea at night where the Israelites crossed.

8

Drowned Egyptians washed up on the shore

¹Later that day when the Israelites saw Egyptians lying dead on the shore, they revered the Lord and put their trust in him and in Moses his servant.

The Israelites sing and dance to the Lord

²Then Moses and the Israelites sang this song to the Lord:

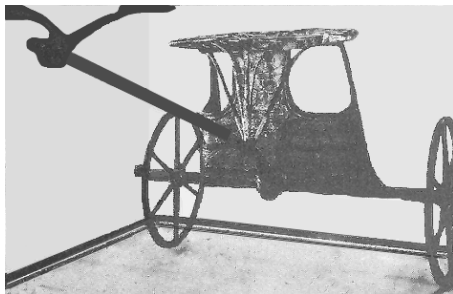
³"I will sing to Jehovah,
he is highly exalted.
The horse and its rider
he drove into the sea."

⁴"The Lord is a warrior,
his name is Jehovah.
Pharaoh's chariots and army
were drowned in the sea."

⁵"The waters covered them,
like a stone in the deep.
Your right hand O Jehovah,
is majestic in power."

⁶"Your right hand O Lord,
did destroy the enemy.
The waters rose up,
like a wall either side."

⁷"The enemy did boast
'I will pursue.'
But you sank them like lead



Egyptian chariot.

Egyptians follow but chariot wheels get clogged

²⁶Pharaoh's horses, chariots and chariot drivers pursued them into the midst of the sea. But just before dawn the Lord threw the Egyptian army into confusion. He caused the wheels of their chariots to become clogged so they had difficulty driving.

²⁷The Egyptians began shouting, "Let us get away from the Israelites! Jehovah is fighting for them!"

*²⁵ The Red Sea reaches a maximum depth of 250m at this comparatively shallow point of the Gulf of Aqaba. Surveys also show an unusual smoothness of gradient and absence of obstacles on the seabed. The distance across is about eight miles.

EXODUS 9

in the mighty sea.”
8“Who among gods
is like Jehovah?
Majestic in holiness,
wondrous in glory.”

9“Nations will hear,
all peoples will tremble.
The hearts of the Canaanites
will melt away.”

10“Sing to Jehovah,
he is highly exalted.
The Lord will reign
for evermore.”

Miriam leads the women in singing and dancing

11Then Miriam the prophetess, the sister of Moses and Aaron took a tambourine in her hand and sang the same song, and all the women followed her with tambourines and dancing.



One of numerous coral-encrusted remains of Egyptian chariot wheels on the bed of the Red Sea at crossing site.

9

The bitter water at Marah oasis purified by a tree

1Then Moses ordered Israel to set out from the Red Sea into the desert of Shur. 2For three days they travelled without finding water and when they came to Marah they could not drink the water for it was bitter. The people complained to Moses saying, “What are we to drink?”

3Moses enquired of the Lord and the Lord showed him a tree. He threw the tree into the water and the water was healed and purified.

Jehovah the Lord who heals diseases

4Then the Lord said to Moses, “Say to the people, ‘If you heed the voice of Jehovah your God, I will not bring upon you any of the diseases I brought upon the Egyptians, for I am the Lord who heals you.’”

The Israelites camp at Elim oasis

5Then they came to Elim where there were twelve springs and seventy palm trees and they camped there by the water.

The Israelites set out again and enter the desert of Sin

6Then the Israelites set out again and camped

on the shores of the Red Sea.^{F*} From there they entered the desert of Sin, 31 days after leaving Egypt.



Oasis on Exodus route to Mount Horeb.

The people complain for food in desert of Sin

7In the desert the people complained again to Moses and Aaron saying, “Would that we had died in Egypt. At least there we had all the food we wanted, but you have brought us out into this desert to die by starvation.”^{F*}

8While Aaron was speaking with the people, they looked toward the desert and saw the glory of the Lord appearing in the cloud.

The Israelites to eat meat that evening

9The Lord said to Moses, “I have heard the complaining of the Israelites. Tell them, ‘At twilight you will eat meat.’”

Bread to rain down from heaven the next morning

10“**And in the morning you will be filled with bread. I will rain down bread from heaven.** 11Then you will know that I am Jehovah your God. 12The people are to go out each day and gather only enough bread for that day, but on the sixth day they are to gather twice as much. In this manner I will test them.”

13Moses and Aaron said to the people, “Who are we? You are not complaining against us, but against the Lord. 14Nevertheless you will see the glory of the Lord. Because he has heard your complaining against him he will give you meat to eat this evening, and all the bread you want in the morning.”

Quail fly into the camp that evening

15That evening quail came and covered the ground.

Next morning thin flakes cover the ground

16And in the morning there was a layer of dew around the camp. When the dew was gone, thin flakes appeared on the desert floor. The Israelites said to one another, “What is it?”

17Moses said to them, “It is the bread the Lord has given you to eat. Each one is to gather as much as he needs.”

*6 Because of the mountains that extend into the Red Sea from Arabia the Israelites after crossing the Red Sea followed wadis or valleys within the mountains which led them again out onto the Red Sea shore (Gulf of Aqaba) further south. From there they followed another wadi heading inland to the desert of Sinai and Rephidim.

*7 The Jewish Talmud reports that the Israelites only took 28 days of food with them.

¹⁸The Israelites did so, and each gathered as much as he wanted.

The bread not to be kept overnight

¹⁹Then Moses said to them, “No one is to keep any bread overnight.”

²⁰However some of them did and it became full of maggots and stank. Moses was angry with them.

²¹Each morning they gathered as much as they needed, and when the sun grew hot it melted away.

No bread to be found on the Sabbath day

²²On the sixth day they gathered twice as much. Moses said to the elders, “The Lord says, ‘Tomorrow is to be a day of rest, a holy Sabbath. Bake and boil what you want today but save what is left for tomorrow, for you will not find any on the ground in the morning.’”

²³So they saved it until morning and it did not stink or get maggots in it.

Some go out to gather on the Sabbath and are rebuked by the Lord

²⁴Nevertheless some of the people did go out to gather on the seventh day but found none.

²⁵The Lord said to Moses, “Say to the people, ‘How long will you refuse to keep my commands? I have given you the Sabbath, that is why on the sixth day I give you bread for two days. No one is to go out on the seventh day.’”

²⁶So the people rested on the seventh day.

The bread called manna

²⁷The people called the bread manna.^{F*} They ground it in a mill or crushed it in a mortar, then cooked it in a pot or made it into cakes.

The taste and appearance of manna described

²⁸It was white like coriander seed and tasted like wafers made with honey and olive oil.

Some manna to be kept to show future generations

²⁹The Lord said to Moses, “Take an omer^{F*} of manna and keep it for generations to come, so they too can see the bread I gave you to eat in the desert when I brought you out of Egypt.”

10

The people complain for water

¹The Israelites then moved on in stages from the desert of Sin and camped at Rephidim. But there was no water there. ²So they complained again to Moses saying, “Give us water to drink. Why did you bring us out of Egypt to have us and our children and livestock die of thirst?”

³Moses said to the people, “Why do you test the Lord?” Then he cried out to the Lord saying, “What am I to do with these people,

*27 Manna means ‘is it food?’ The Israelites were supplied with manna every day except the Sabbaths for the next 40 years.

*29 About 2 litres.

they are almost ready to stone me?”

Water flows out of a rock at Horeb

⁴The Lord answered Moses and said, “Walk on ahead of the people and take with you some of the elders of Israel. I will stand before you by the rock at Horeb.^{F*} ⁵Strike the rock with your staff and water will flow out of it.”

⁶Moses did this and water flowed out of the rock in the sight of the elders of Israel.



A large rock at Horeb, believed to be the one Moses struck with his staff and water flowed out.

The place of rebellion called Massah

⁷Moses called the place Massah^{F*} where the people tested the Lord by saying, “Is Jehovah among us or not?”

Amalekites attack Israel

⁸Then Amalekites^{F*} attacked the Israelites.

⁹Moses said to Joshua,^{F*} “Choose men to fight the Amalekites, and tomorrow I will stand on top of the hill with the staff of God in my hands.”

As long as Moses holds up his staff the Israelites prevail in battle

¹⁰So the next day Joshua fought the Amalekites while Moses, Aaron and Hur stood on top of the hill.

¹¹As long as Moses held up his hands the Israelites prevailed, but whenever he lowered the staff the Amalekites prevailed.

The Israelites defeat the Amalekites

¹²However the hands of Moses grew tired, so they took a stone and Moses sat on it while Aaron and Hur held his hands up, one on either side of him until sunset, when Joshua defeated the Amalekites with the sword.

The Amalekites to be blotted out

¹³Then the Lord said to Moses, “Write this on a scroll to be remembered and make sure

*4 Horeb was the name of the mountain to which Moses had been instructed to bring the Israelites, however the Israelites were at this stage on the other side of the mountain from where they were headed.

*7 Massah means ‘testing.’

*8 The Amalekites were a fierce, nomadic, marauding people of the Arabian desert.

*9 Joshua was of the tribe of Ephraim. He eventually succeeded Moses as leader of the Israelites.

EXODUS 11

Joshua hears it: 'I will completely blot out the memory of Amalek from under heaven.'^{F*}

The Lord spoke with Moses face to face

¹⁴Now Moses had pitched a tent outside the camp, some distance away. Anyone wishing to inquire of the Lord would go out to the tent.

¹⁵Whenever Moses went out to the tent, all the people would rise and stand by their tents watching him.

¹⁶As Moses entered the tent, the pillar of cloud would descend to the entrance and Jehovah would speak with Moses face to face, as a man speaks with his friend.

Moses' assistant Joshua did not leave the tent

¹⁷Afterward Moses would return to the camp, but his assistant Joshua remained at the tent.

Moses' father-in-law Jethro comes to visit

¹⁸Now Jethro, the priest of Midian and father-in-law of Moses heard what God had done for Israel and came out to Moses in the desert, bringing with him Moses' two sons and his wife Zipporah.^{F*}

¹⁹Moses went out to meet Jethro and bowed down to him and kissed him. After greeting each other they went into the tent.

²⁰Moses told his father-in-law of all that the Lord had done to Pharaoh and the Egyptians, and about the hardships they had met along the way.

Jethro praises Jehovah and offers sacrifice

²¹Jethro said, "Praise Jehovah. Now I know Jehovah is greater than all other gods."

²²Then he offered a burnt offering and other sacrifices to God. Aaron also came out with the elders of Israel to eat with Jethro.

Jethro advises Moses to delegate

²³The next day Moses took his seat as judge for the people. They stood around him from morning until night.

²⁴When his father-in-law saw what Moses was doing he said, "Why do you sit alone as judge while all these people stand around you from morning till night?"

²⁵Moses answered, "The people come to me to seek God's will. Whenever they have a dispute I decide between them and inform them of God's laws."

²⁶Jethro replied, "What you are doing is not wise, surely you will wear yourself out. ²⁷Hear my counsel. You must continue to represent the people before God and teach them his laws, but select able men who revere God, trustworthy men who hate dishonest gain and appoint them as officers over thousands, hundreds, fifties and tens. ²⁸Let them serve as judges for the people, and have them bring you

only the very difficult cases."

²⁹"If you do this, and if God so commands, it will lighten your load. You will stand the strain and the people will go home satisfied."

³⁰Moses heeded his father-in-law's advice and did everything he said. Then Jethro returned to his own land.



Map of exodus of Israelites from Egypt to Mount Horeb.

11

The Israelites arrive at Mount Horeb

¹In the third month after they left Egypt, to the very day, the Israelites entered the desert of Sinai and camped in front of Mount Horeb.^{F*}

The Israelites are to be a chosen people if they obey the Lord

²Moses went up the mountain. There the Lord spoke to him and said, "Say to the people of Israel, 'You have seen what I did to Egypt and how I carried you on the wings of eagles and brought you to myself.'"

³"Now if you will obey me fully, out of all the nations, you shall be my chosen people. Even though the whole earth is mine, you will be a kingdom of priests, a holy nation."

⁴So Moses went back down the mountain and summoned the elders of the people and repeated to them the words that the Lord had said.

⁵They in turn went away and spoke to the people, and the people responded, "We will do all that the Lord has said."

The Lord promises to speak to Moses in the hearing of the people

⁶Moses took their answer back to the Lord. Then the Lord said to Moses, "I will stand before you in a dense cloud. The people will hear my voice speak to you, then they will trust in you."

*13 The Lord many years later ordered king Saul to destroy the Amalekites for this unprovoked attack on Israel (Samuel 8:20). However Saul failed and is reported to have been eventually killed himself by an Amalekite (1 Kings 1:5-6). The Amalekites were finally annihilated during the reign of King Hezekiah (Isaiah 27:3).

*18 Although Zipporah and her sons had accompanied Moses to Egypt, they had evidently returned to Midian.

*1 This was the place the Lord appeared to Moses in the burning bush, and to where he commanded Moses to bring the Israelites (Exodus 2:2,10).

The Israelites to purify themselves in readiness for the third day

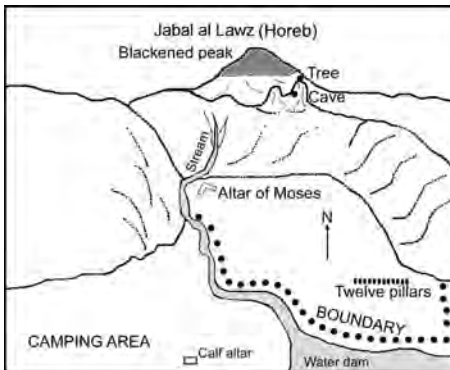
⁷“Now return to the people and purify them, today and tomorrow. Have them wash their clothes and be ready by the third day. ⁸On that day I will come down upon this mountain in the sight of all the people.”

Boundary to the mountain to be marked out

⁹“You are to erect a boundary for the people at the base of the mountain and warn them, ‘Do not go up the mountain or touch the foot of it. ¹⁰Whoever touches the mountain is to be put to death. He shall be stoned, or shot with arrows. No hand is to touch him. Whether man or animal he must die.”

¹¹“Only when the ram’s horn sounds a long blast may they touch the mountain.”

¹²Moses went back down to purify the people. He said to them, “Prepare yourselves for the third day by washing your clothes and abstaining from sexual relations.”



Mt Horeb (or Sinai) in Arabia where Moses led the Israelites and the Lord gave the commandments.

Smoke, thunder, lightning, and quaking from Mount Sinai and a very loud trumpet blast

¹³On the morning of the third day there came a dense cloud over the mountain. Then came thunder and lightning, and a long trumpet blast, so loud that all in the camp trembled.

Moses leads the Israelites to the foot of the mountain

¹⁴Then Moses led the people out to stand before God. They all stood at the foot of the mountain.

¹⁵Smoke billowed up from Mount Sinai ^{F*} like

^{*15} From this point on Mount Horeb is also referred to as Mount Sinai, named after the surrounding area called the Desert of Sinai (Exodus 11:1). The traditional Mount Sinai is located in a rugged location in the Egyptian peninsula, now called Sinai and is said to have been revealed to Empress Helena the mother of Constantine in 330 AD. This barren site has long been seriously doubted by scholars as it does not fit the Biblical description of the site in any way, and is completely devoid of evidence of habitation and ancient traditions. There are also numerous other major problems, such as it being still within the borders of Egypt, virtually inaccessible by foot, not being the 'the highest of the mountains in the region of the city of Madiene (Midian)' (Josephus *Antiquities of the Jews*), no stream flowing down the

smoke from a furnace, for the Lord had descended on it in fire, and the mountain trembled violently. ^{F*} The sound of the trumpet grew louder and louder.

The Lord speaks in a voice of thunder and calls Moses up the mountain

¹⁶Then Moses spoke to the Lord, and the voice of God answered him in thunder, and commanded him to come to the top of the mountain. So Moses left the people below and went up to the Lord.



Mount Horeb (Arabic 'Huraa') near Midian, Arabia where the Lord descended and gave the commandments to Moses and the Israelites. The blackened and charred top has the appearance of coal.

The people warned not to break through boundary to see the Lord

¹⁷The Lord said to him, “Return down again and warn the people not to break through the boundary to see Jehovah or many of them will die. After I have spoken to the people, come back up again and bring Aaron up with you.”

The Ten Commandments spoken by the Lord in the hearing of the Israelites

¹⁸Moses returned back down and again warned the people. Then God spoke these words in the hearing of all Israel:

¹⁹“I am Jehovah your God who brought you out of Egypt. You shall have no other gods before me.”

²⁰“You shall not make for yourself an idol in the form of anything in heaven above, or on the earth beneath, or in the waters below and bow down and worship it. For I Jehovah am a jealous God, punishing the descendants of those who sin to the third and fourth generation of those who hate me, but showing

mountain (Exodus 19:16), no cave (Elijah 4:15), no way to fence off access (Exodus 11:9), sheer rugged sides difficult for any but an experienced climber to climb (Exodus 15:8), and serious lack of camping space, water and pasture. It is also separated by the Red Sea and hundreds of miles of deserts and mountain ranges from Midian in Arabia where the Bible clearly states Moses lived and pastured his sheep, and received the message from the Lord in a burning bush at Horeb to bring the Israelites to that very spot (Exodus chapter 2). Jewish historians have always located Mount Horeb in Arabia rather than Egypt, as also does Paul in Galatians 4:25 (traditional Bible).

^{*15} Although some of the phenomena experienced by the Israelites is similar to that of a volcanic eruption, Mount Horeb is not volcanically active.

love to a thousand generations of those who love me and keep my commandments.”

21“**You shall not take the name of the Lord your God in vain.**”

22“**Remember to keep holy the Sabbath day. Six days you shall labour and do your work, but on the seventh day you shall do no work, neither you, nor your children, your servants, your animals, nor the stranger living among you. For in six days the Lord made the heavens and the earth, but he rested on the seventh day and made it holy.**”

23“**Honour your father and your mother, that you may live long in the land the Lord your God is giving you.**”

24“**You shall not murder.**”

25“**You shall not commit adultery.**”

26“**You shall not steal.**”

27“**You shall not bear false witness against your neighbour.**”

28“**You shall not covet your neighbour’s house, his wife, his servant, his ox, or donkey, or anything that belongs to your neighbour.**”

12

The people tremble in fear at the Lord’s voice

¹The people trembled with fear at the sound of Jehovah’s voice and stayed at a distance.

The Israelites ask Moses to relay the commandments from the Lord to them himself lest they die

²Then they said to Moses, “You go near and hear all that God says, and then speak to us yourself and we will listen and obey. But do not have God speak to us any more lest we die.”

Moses receives other commandments

³So the people remained at a distance while Moses approached the thick cloud to speak with the Lord.

⁴The Lord said to Moses, “I have heard what the people said to you. O that there were such a heart in them that they would keep my commandments always, then it would go well with them and their children always.”

⁵“Now say to the people, ‘I am Jehovah your God. You must keep all my decrees and laws and follow them. You must not do as they do in Egypt and in the land of Canaan where I am bringing you.’”

⁶“Be careful to do everything I have commanded, for whoever obeys my laws will Live.” F*

⁷“These commandments you are also to give them:”

Commandments on love

⁸“**Love the Lord your God, and have reverence for my Tabernacle.**” F*

⁹“**Do not seek revenge or bear grudges against one another, but love your neighbour as yourself.**”

¹⁰“**Do not mistreat a foreigner or oppress him, you must love him as yourself, for you were once foreigners in Egypt.**”

¹¹“**Do not hate your brother in your heart.**”

¹²“**Do not mock the deaf, or put a stumbling block in front of the blind.**”

¹³“**Do not do anything that endangers your neighbour’s life.**”

¹⁴“**Do not take advantage of a widow or an orphan, for I will hear their cry. My anger will be aroused and I will take your life.** ¹⁵Your own wife will become a widow and your own children fatherless.”

¹⁶“**When you lend money to the poor among you, do not charge them interest.**”

¹⁷“**If you take your neighbour’s cloak as security, return it to him at sunset. His cloak may be the only covering he has to sleep in.** ¹⁸If he cries out to me I will hear him, for I am compassionate.”

¹⁹“**When you harvest your land, do not reap to the very edges of your field or gather the gleanings. Do not go over your vineyard a second time, leave what remains for the poor.**”

²⁰“**If you find the beast of your enemy wandering, return it to him, and if you see the donkey of someone who hates you fallen down under its load, help him with it.**”

Commandments on altars

²¹“**Make for me an altar of earth, on which to sacrifice your burnt offerings and I will come and bless you.**”

²²“**You may also make an altar of stones but do not build it with chiselled stones, for you defile it if you use a tool upon it.**”

²³“**Do not go up to my altar on steps lest your nakedness be exposed.**”

Commandments on idolatry

²⁴“**Do not invoke the names of other gods.**”

²⁵“**Do not turn to idols or make gods of metal for yourselves. You must not profane the name of your God.**”

²⁶“**Do not give any of your children to be sacrificed to Molech.** F* Anyone who sacrifices his child to Molech must

*6 The terms ‘will Live’ or ‘have Life’ or ‘have Eternal Life’ are used frequently throughout the Bible whenever God speaks to man, and mean to live forever after death in the presence of God the Father. See note on Revelation 2:13 for a fuller explanation.

*8 The Tabernacle was the transportable temple that would soon be constructed (see Exodus chapter 16).

*26 Molech was a demon god of the Canaanites whose worship involved gruesome orgies and child sacrifice.

be stoned to death by the people.”

- 27“Do not sacrifice to any other god. Whoever sacrifices to any god other than Jehovah must be destroyed.”

Commandments on offerings, first fruits and tithes

- 28“Do not offer a blood sacrifice with anything containing yeast, and do not keep the fat until morning.”

- 29“You must give to me the firstborn of your sons, also the firstborn of your cattle and sheep. Let them stay with their mothers seven days, but bring them to me on the eighth day.” F*

- 30“Also bring to me the best of the first fruits of your ground.”

- 31“When you plant a fruit tree, the fruit must not be eaten for three years, and in the fourth year all its fruit is to be regarded as holy, an offering of praise to Jehovah. 32In the fifth year you may eat the fruit. In this way your harvest will be increased.”

- 33 “Do not hold back from Jehovah your God the tithes^{F*} of your crops.”

Commandments on the occult

- 34“Do not consult a medium or fortune teller for you will be defiled by them. I will set my face against you and put you to death.”

- 35“Do not practice divination or sorcery. Any sorcerer, sorceress, medium or fortune teller among you must be put to death. You are to stone them.”

- 36“Do not cut your hair at the sides of your temples or shape the edges of your beard, or cut or tattoo your bodies.”^{F*}

Commandments on the Sabbath

- 37“Observe my Sabbath day as a sign between me and you forever. Whoever does work on that day must be put to death. 38For six days work is to be done, but the seventh day is a holy day of rest, so that your ox, your donkey, and all your household may rest and be refreshed. 39Do not even light a fire in your dwellings.”

- 40“For six years you are to sow your fields and harvest your crops, but during the seventh year let the land lie fallow and unharvested, a Sabbath for Jehovah. Also your vineyard and olive grove so that the poor among

you may eat of it. What they leave, the wild animals may eat. 41I will send you such a blessing in the sixth year that the land will yield enough for three years.”

- 42“When you plant during the eighth year you will eat from the old crop and will continue to eat from it until the harvest of the ninth year comes in.”



“Do not reap to the very edges of your field ... leave what remains for the poor,” Exodus 12:19.

Commandments on festivals

- 43“Three times a year you are to celebrate a feast to the Lord. All the men are to appear before me, and no one is to come empty-handed.”

- 44“Celebrate the Passover and the feast of Unleavened Bread at the appointed time. For seven days eat bread without yeast.”

- 45“Celebrate the feast of Harvest^{F*} when you gather in the first fruits of your crops.”

- 46“Celebrate the feast of Tabernacles^{F*} when you have completed gathering your crops at the end of the season.”

13

Commandments on age and authority

- 1“Anyone who curses his father or mother is to be put to death.”

- 2“Show respect for the elderly and rise up in their presence.”

- 3“Do not scorn or curse the ruler of your people.”

Commandments on physical injury

- 4“Anyone who strikes his father or mother must be put to death.”

- 5“Anyone who deliberately strikes a man and kills him, shall be put to death. But if he has not done it deliberately

*29 The Lord later substituted the tribe of the Levites and their livestock, for the firstborn sons and livestock of the other eleven tribes. See Numbers 1:30.

*33 To tithe is to pay a tenth of one’s annual increase in wealth (see Leviticus 8:33) to the priests of God as an offering. It was not a new law for the Israelites as Abraham paid a tithe to the priest Melchizedek (Genesis 9:21) and Jacob also vowed to pay God a tithe (Genesis 19:13).

*36 Unusual hairstyles and tattooing were common customs among peoples who followed occult practices.

*45 The Feast of Harvest was celebrated in June, seven weeks after the Passover and was later known as Pentecost.

*46 The Feast of Tabernacles was held in October. It was also called The feast of Booths or Ingathering. For more details see Leviticus 7:5-6.

EXODUS 13

he is to flee to a place I will designate.”

6“Anyone who deliberately injures another must have the same done to him. An eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth, a limb for a limb.”

7“Anyone who kidnaps another must be put to death.”

8“If men quarrel and one injures the other, he must pay the injured man for the loss of his time and see that he is completely healed.”

9“If a man strikes a slave and destroys an eye or a tooth, he must let the slave go free to compensate for the loss.”

10“If a man beats his slave with a rod and the slave dies, he must be punished. But he is not to be punished if the slave recovers since the slave is his own property.”

11“If men are fighting and injure a pregnant woman and cause a miscarriage but no further injury, the offender must be fined whatever the woman’s husband demands and the court allows. ¹²But if there is serious injury you are to take life for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth.”

13“If a bull gores a person to death, the bull must be stoned and its meat not eaten. The owner will not be held responsible unless the bull was known to have a habit of goring and he had not kept it penned up. ¹⁴Then the owner must also be put to death. However he may redeem his life by paying whatever is demanded.”

15“If a bull gores a slave, the owner must pay thirty shekels of silver^{F*} to the master of the slave, and the bull must be stoned.”

16“If a man kills an animal belonging to another he must make full restitution.”

17“If a man fails to cover a pit and an ox or a donkey fall into it, he must pay for the loss. The dead animal will be his.”

18“If a bull kills the bull of another, the owners are to sell the live one and divide the money and the dead animal equally. ¹⁹But if it was known that the bull had a habit of goring and the owner had not kept it penned up, he must pay for the loss, and the dead animal will be his.”

Commandments on marriage

20“Do not marry any close relative.”

21“Do not marry your sister or step-sister, whether she was born in the same home or elsewhere. If a man marries his sister and lies with her they must

both be put to death. It is shameful.”

22“Do not marry your grand-daughter.”

23“Do not marry your daughter-in-law.”

24“Do not marry your father or your mother’s sister.”

25“Do not marry your wife’s sister and lie with her while your wife is still living.”

26“Do not marry both a woman and her daughter, or her grand-daughter. It is shameful. If a man marries both a woman and her daughter both he and they must be burned in fire.”

27“Do not marry your brother’s wife. If a man marries his brother’s wife he has dishonoured his brother. They will be childless.” ^{F*}

28“Do not lie with or uncover the nakedness of a woman during the uncleanness of her menstruation. ²⁹If a man lies with or uncovers the nakedness of a woman during her monthly menstruation he has exposed the source of her flow and she also has uncovered it. Both shall be cut off from Israel.”

Commandments on sexual immorality

30“Do not uncover the nakedness of any close relative.

31“Do not dishonour your father by lying with or uncovering the nakedness of your mother or step-mother.”

32“Do not dishonour your uncle by lying with or uncovering the nakedness of his wife.”

33“Do not uncover the nakedness of your father or mother’s sister.

34“Do not uncover the nakedness of your sister, the daughter of your father or of your mother, whether born in the same home or elsewhere.

35“Do not uncover the nakedness of your grand-daughter.

36“Do not uncover the nakedness of your daughter-in-law.

37“Do not uncover the nakedness of your brother’s wife.

38“Do not uncover the nakedness of both a woman and her daughter, nor her son’s daughter or her daughter’s daughter. It is wickedness.

39“^{If} a man seduces a virgin and lies with her, he must pay the bride price and she shall be his wife. If her father refuses to give her to him, he must still pay the bride price.”

40“Do not degrade your daughter by making her a harlot. The land will become full of wickedness.”

41“Do not lie with another man’s wife and defile yourself with her. If a man

^{*27} There is an exception to this commandment when a man dies without having fathered a son and his widow is still of child bearing age. A living brother has a duty to marry his brother’s widow for the purpose of raising up a son to inherit his brother’s name and estate (Deuteronomy 5:32).

^{*15} The price of a slave, about five weeks wages.

commits adultery with another man's wife, both the adulterer and the adulteress must be put to death. Their blood will be on their own heads."

42"Do not lie with a man as one lies with a woman. That is an abomination. If a man lies with a man as one lies with a woman, both men must be put to death."

43"Do not defile yourself sexually with an animal. Any man or woman who defiles himself by having sexual relations with an animal, must be put to death, and you must kill the animal. It is an abomination."

Sexual immorality defiles the land

44"Do not defile yourselves in any of these ways in the land which I am giving you. For that is how the nations that I am going to drive out before you became defiled.

45If you defile the land it will vomit you out just as it is to vomit out the nations before you. Anybody who does any of these detestable things must die."

14

Commandments on animals and property

1"If a man steals an ox or a sheep, and the animal is found alive in his possession, he must pay back double. 9If he slaughters it or sells it he must pay back five oxen for the ox, and four sheep for the sheep."

2"If a thief is caught breaking in at night and is struck so that he dies, the defender is not guilty of bloodshed, but if it happens during daylight he is guilty of bloodshed."

3A thief must make restitution. If he has nothing to give he must be sold to pay for his theft."

4If a man lets his livestock stray and they graze in another man's field, he must make restitution from the best of his own field."

5If a fire breaks out and burns grain in a field, the one who started the fire must make restitution."

6If a man gives his neighbour goods for safekeeping and they are stolen from the neighbour's house, the thief if caught must pay back double. 7But if the thief is not caught, the owner of the house must appear before the judges to determine whether he himself has stolen the other man's goods."

8In all cases of disputed property where two say, 'This is mine,' both parties are to bring their case before the judges. The one whom the judges

declare guilty must pay back double to his neighbour."

9If a man gives an animal to his neighbour for safekeeping and it is injured or dies, any dispute between them is to be settled by the taking of an oath before Jehovah that the neighbour did not harm the other person's animal. 10The owner is to accept this and no restitution is required. 11If it was destroyed by a wild animal he must bring in the remains as evidence. 12But if the animal was stolen from him he must make restitution."

13If a man borrows an animal and it is injured or dies while the owner is not present, he must make restitution. But if the owner is with the animal the borrower will not have to pay. 14If the animal was hired the money paid for the hire covers the loss."

Commandments on restitution

15When a person wrongs another, that person is to confess his sin and make full restitution to the person he has wronged, adding one fifth to it."

16If the person who has been wronged has died and has no close relative to whom restitution can be made, the restitution belongs to the Lord and is to be given to the priests for their support."

Commandments on justice

17Do not swear falsely in my name."

18Do not lie or deceive one another in any way, and do not spread false rumours."

19Do not defraud one another or use dishonest scales and weights."

20Do not hold back overnight the wages of a hired man."

21Do not assist a wicked man by being a dishonest witness."

22Do not accept a bribe, for a bribe can blind the wise and twist the words of the honest."

23When you give testimony at law do not pervert justice by siding with a majority in doing wrong."

24Have nothing to do with a false charge, and do not put an innocent person to death."

25Do not deny justice at law to the poor, and do not be lenient with a man just because he is poor."

26Rebuke your neighbour frankly when he sins so you will not share in his guilt."

Commandments on slavery

27If you buy an Israelite slave he is to

EXODUS

serve you for six years, but in the seventh year he is to go free.”

28“**If he has a wife when he comes to you, she is to go free with him. But if you as his master give him a wife and she bears him children, the woman and her children shall belong to you and only the man shall go free.**”

29“**If a slave declares, ‘I love my master and my wife and children and I do not want to go free,’ then his master must take him to the door or door post, and there, before the judges, pierce his ear with an awl, and he will be his slave for life.**”

30“**If an Israelite sells his daughter as a slave, she is not to go free as male slaves do. If she does not please her master he must sell her back to her father. He is not to sell her to foreigners.**”

31“**If a man chooses a slave as a wife for his son, he must grant her the rights of a daughter. If his son marries another woman he is not to deprive his first wife of food, clothing and marital rights. If he does not provide her with these things she is to go free without any payment of money.**”

32“**If a man lies with a slave woman who is promised to another man, but has not been given her freedom, there must be due punishment, but they are not to be put to death because she had not been freed. 33The man however must bring a ram to the altar as a guilt offering to make atonement for the sin committed.**”

Commandments on food

34“**You are to be my holy people, therefore do not eat the meat of an animal torn by wild beasts. Throw it to the dogs.**”

35“**Do not eat meat without first draining the blood.**”

36“**Do not cook a young goat in its mother’s milk.**”

Commandments on breeding and sowing

37“**Do not interbreed different kinds of animals.**”

38“**Do not plant your field with two kinds of seed.**”

Commandment on clothing

39“**Do not wear clothing woven of two kinds of material.**”

15

Moses to bring Aaron and his sons and seventy elders up the mountain

1Then the Lord said to Moses, “Go down and bring up Aaron and his sons Nadab and Abihu, and seventy elders of Israel, but only

you alone are to approach me. The others must not come near.”

Moses writes down all the commandments

2Moses then went back down the mountain and wrote down all the commandments the Lord had given him.

Moses builds an altar and offers sacrifice

3Early next morning Moses arose and built an altar at the foot of the mountain, and set up twelve stone pillars representing the twelve tribes of Israel.

4He directed young men to offer burnt offerings and to sacrifice young bulls to the Lord. 5Moses took half of the blood and put it in bowls, and the other half he sprinkled on the altar.

Moses reads out all the commandments and the Israelites covenant with blood to obey them

6Moses read out to the people the commandments he had written and the people responded, “We will obey everything Jehovah has said.”

7Moses took the blood that was in the bowls and sprinkled it on the people saying, “This is the blood of the covenant that the Lord has made with you.”

Aaron and his sons and seventy elders of Israel see the God of Israel

8Moses then took Aaron with his two eldest sons Nadab and Abihu, and seventy elders of Israel up the mountain.

9There they saw the God of Israel, and under his feet was what looked like a pavement of blue sapphire, clear as the sky.

10They saw God and yet they lived.

Moses and Joshua go back up the mountain to receive the tablets of stone

11After they had gone back down the mountain, the word of the Lord came again to Moses saying, “Come up to me on the mountain and remain here, and I will give you tablets of stone on which I have written the Law.”

12So Moses took Joshua his aide and said to the elders of Israel, “Aaron and Hur are with you. Anyone with a dispute can go to them.”

13Then Moses and Joshua entered the cloud on Mount Sinai.

How the Lord’s glory on the mountain looked to the people below

14The cloud of the Lord had covered the mountain for six days now. To the people below, the glory of Jehovah looked like a fire on top of the mountain.

16

Moses and Joshua remain forty days with the Lord on the mountain

1Moses and Joshua remained forty days and nights with the Lord on the mountain.

The people to donate materials to make a Tabernacle for the Lord

²There the Lord instructed Moses saying, "Receive these offerings from each person whose heart prompts him to give. Gold, silver, bronze, blue, purple and scarlet thread, fine linen, goat hair, tanned ram and goat skins, acacia wood, olive oil for lamps, spices for anointing oil and incense, onyx stones and other gems."

³"Then have the people make a Tabernacle as a sanctuary for me, and I will dwell among them."

The Tabernacle frame

⁴"Make 48 frames of acacia wood for the sides of the Tabernacle; 20 for each side, 6 for the western end and 1 each for the corners of the entrance at the eastern end. These are to be held in place by crossbars and also a centre bar, running end to end."

⁵"Make each frame 10 cubits^{F*} high and 1½ cubits wide and make silver bases for them to stand in; 2 bases for each frame."

⁶"Cover the frames and crossbars with gold overlay, and make gold clasps to hold the crossbars."

Interior curtains of fine linen

⁷"Make 10 curtains of fine linen, embroidered with cherubim^{F*} in blue, purple and scarlet thread by a skilled craftsman. All the curtains are to be 28 cubits long and 4 cubits wide."

⁸"Join the curtains together to make two sets of 5, and sew 50 loops of blue material along one side of each set, and make 50 gold clasps to fasten the other two sides together."

Outer curtains of woven goat hair

⁹"Make 11 outer curtains of goat hair the same width, with bronze clasps for a tent over the Tabernacle, but a cubit longer on both sides to cover it completely."

Exterior to be protected by tanned skins

¹⁰"Make an exterior tent covering of tanned skins."

The entrance curtain

¹¹"To screen the entrance to the tent, make another embroidered curtain and hang it by gold hooks from five posts of acacia wood overlaid with gold and standing in bronze bases."

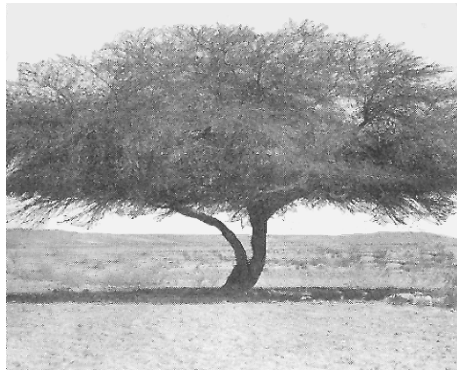
The Ark

¹²"Then make an Ark^{F*} of acacia wood, 2½ cubits long, 1½ wide and 1½ high. Overlay it with gold inside and out with a gold edging around it, and a gold clasp on each of the four feet."

*5 A cubit is the length of a man's forearm from the elbow to the outstretched fingers, generally found to be 450mm or 17½". There was also a longer cubit, the Egyptian royal cubit which was 520mm or 20½". The common shorter cubit is mostly used throughout the Old Testament.

*7 Cherubim are winged heavenly creatures and are described in Ezekiel 1:4-12.

*12 An ark is a wooden chest.



The Acacia tree. The beautiful wood of which was used in the construction of the Tabernacle.

The carrying poles of the Ark

¹³"Make two poles of acacia wood, overlaid with gold and insert them into the clasps on the feet to carry it by. The poles are to remain in place."

A solid gold lid with winged angels

¹⁴"Make a lid for the Ark, of solid gold with two cherubim of one piece with the lid, and facing each other at either end, their wings spreading upward."

The stone tablets of the Law to be kept in the Ark

¹⁵"Place the lid on the Ark, and place within the Ark the stone tablets of the Law which I will give you."

The Lord to appear to Moses above the Ark

¹⁶"There above the Ark, between the two cherubim, I will meet with you and give you my commandments for the Israelites."

A veil to screen the Most Holy Place

¹⁷"Make a veil of fine linen, embroidered with cherubim, and hung by gold hooks on four posts of acacia wood overlaid with gold, and standing in silver bases."

¹⁸"Place the Ark behind the veil. The veil will separate the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place."

The seven branched gold lampstand

¹⁹"Make a lampstand of solid gold with a base and shaft. Six branches are to extend out and upward from the main shaft, three on either side with cups like almond flowers atop each branch, all of one piece with the lampstand."

The seven gold oil lamps for the stand

²⁰"Then make seven oil lamps, with wick trimmers and trays of pure gold, and set them on the cups so that they throw light to the front. ²¹A talent^{F*} of gold is to be used for the lampstand."

*21 A talent weighed approx 34kg (75lbs).

EXODUS 16

The lamps to burn every night until morning

22“Command the Israelites to bring you clear olive oil to burn in the lamps. 23Aaron and his sons are to keep the lamps burning before me every evening until morning. This is to be a lasting ordinance for the generations to come.”

The table and carrying poles

24“Make a table of acacia wood, 2 cubits long, 1 cubit wide, and 1½ cubits high. Overlay it with gold and make a rim around the edge a handbreadth wide, with gold edging.”

25“Attach gold clasps to the four corners, for the poles used to carry the table. Make the poles of acacia wood overlaid with gold.”

Jugs and bowls of gold

26“Also make jugs and bowls of gold for the pouring out of offerings.”

The altar of incense and carrying poles

27“Make an altar of acacia wood overlaid with gold, for burning incense. It is to be 1 cubit square and 2 cubits high, with a gold edging around it and horns of one piece with it.”

28“Make gold clasps to hold the poles to carry it. Make the poles of acacia wood overlaid with gold.”



Artist's view of Aaron the high priest and Altar of Incense .

Incense to be burned as the lamps are tended every morning and evening

29“Place the altar in front of the veil that conceals the Ark. 30Aaron is to burn fragrant incense on this altar every morning when he tends the lamps, and again when he lights the lamps at twilight.”

The outer courtyard

31“Make a courtyard around the outside of the Tabernacle, 100 cubits long by 50 cubits wide. 32Use curtains of fine linen 5 cubits high, and support the curtains with silver hooks on 60 bronze posts standing in bronze bases.”

33“To screen the entrance to the courtyard,

make a curtain 20 cubits long embroidered with blue, purple and scarlet thread, supported on four bronze posts standing in bronze bases.”

All tent pegs to be bronze

34“All the tent pegs used to support the Tabernacle and courtyard are to be of bronze.”

The bronze altar for burnt offerings

35“Build an altar, 5 cubits square and 3 cubits high. Make it of acacia wood and carve a horn at each corner of one piece with the altar, and overlay the altar with bronze. 38Make the altar hollow as you were shown on the mountain.”

36“Make the fire grating of bronze, with a clasp at each corner. Two poles of acacia wood overlaid with bronze are to be inserted into the clasps when the altar is carried.”

The bronze altar utensils

37“All the altar utensils are to be made of bronze; the shovels to remove ashes, the sprinkling bowls, meat forks and firepans.”



An old stone relief of the seven branched lampstand or Menorah specified for the Tabernacle.

The bronze washing basin for the priests

38“Make a bronze basin and stand for washing, and place it at the entrance to the Tabernacle. 39Aaron and his sons are to wash their hands and feet with water from it whenever they enter the Tabernacle or approach the altar, so they will not die.”

The perfumed anointing oil

40“Have a perfumer take 500 shekels^{F*} of liquid myrrh, 250 shekels of cinnamon, 250 shekels of sweet cane, 500 shekels of cassia, and a hin^{F*} of olive oil and blend it into a fragrant anointing oil. 41Use it to anoint the Tabernacle, the Ark, the table and its articles, the lampstand, the altar of incense, the altar of burnt offering and its utensils, and the washing basin and its stand. 42Also anoint Aaron and his sons.”

43“Do not use the anointing oil for any

*40 A shekel weighed approx 12 gms (½ oz).

*40 One hin is approx 4 litres.

other purpose, it is sacred. Whoever makes a perfume like it and anoints anyone other than a priest, must die.”

The fragrant incense

44“Have a perfumer take fragrant spices; gum resin, onycha, galbanum and frankincense in equal amounts, and make incense to be burned in the Tabernacle.”

45“Do not make incense of this mixture for yourselves, it is holy to Jehovah.”

17

Aaron and his four sons to be priests

1“Aaron your brother and his four sons Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar are to serve me as priests.” F*

Priestly garments to be made

2“You are to make sacred garments for Aaron and his sons that they may serve me with dignity and honour. Choose men to whom I have given skill in such matters.”

3“For Aaron they are to make an ephod, F* a breastplate, a robe, a tunic, a turban and a sash.”

The ephod for the high priest

4“Make the ephod of fine linen with two shoulder pieces to fasten it, and a woven waistband of one piece with the ephod.”

5“Embroider the waistband with gold and with blue, purple and scarlet thread.”

Engraved stones for the shoulder pieces

6“Engrave on two onyx stones F* in order of birth, the names of the sons of Israel; six on each stone, then mount the two stones in gold on the shoulder pieces.”

The breastplate of precious stones

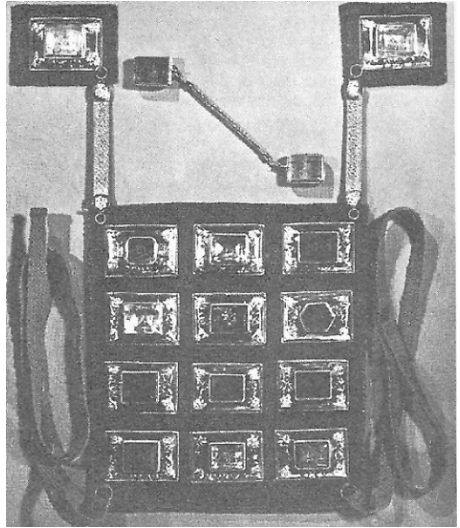
7“Make a breastplate for revelations. It is to be made like the ephod, of fine linen embroidered with gold, and with blue, purple and scarlet thread. 8Make it a span F* square and folded to form a pocket.”

9“Mount on it four rows of precious stones, in gold settings. The first row; a ruby, a topaz and a beryl. The second row; a turquoise, a sapphire and an emerald. 10The third row; a jacinth, an agate and an amethyst. The fourth row; a chrysolite, an onyx and a jasper.”

11“Each of the twelve stones to be engraved with the name of one of the tribes of Israel.”

12“Then make two braided chains with clasps of gold to join the upper corners of the breastplate to the shoulder pieces of the ephod.”

13“Tie the bottom corners of the breastplate to the waistband of the ephod with blue cord and gold rings, so that it will not swing out from the ephod.”



A replica of Aaron's breastplate in which the Urim and Thummim was kept.

The Urim and Thummim

14“Place the Urim and Thummim F* inside the pocket of the breastplate, so that Aaron will always bear the means of receiving revelation over his heart.”

The high priest's robe

15“Make for Aaron a robe of blue cloth with an opening for his head in the centre. Weave a collar around this opening so that it will not tear.”

16“Around the lower hem, embroider pomegranates of blue, purple and scarlet thread, with gold bells between them. 17The sound of the bells will be heard when Aaron enters the Holy Place before Jehovah so that he will not die.”

The tunic, turban, sash and plate of gold

18“Also make for Aaron, a tunic, turban and sash of fine linen, and embroider the sash.”

19“Engrave on a plate of pure gold the words HOLY TO JEHOVAH, and tie it to the front of the turban with a blue cord. It will be on Aaron's forehead and he will bear any guilt incurred in the sacred gifts that the people consecrate.”

Aaron's sons' garments and under-garments

20“For Aaron's sons, make tunics, sashes and headbands.”

*1 The senior priest, (in this first instance Aaron) was known as the high priest (Leviticus 6:1).

*3 An ephod was the priestly upper garment, with an attached breastplate of precious stones and a pouch containing the Urim and Thummim, which was used to obtain revelations from the Lord.

*6 Onyx is a high grade of quartz crystal.

*8 A hand span – about 230mm (9”).

*13 The Urim and Thummim (*Lights and Perfections*) was used by Aaron and subsequent high priests to inquire of and receive revelations from the Lord. It is no longer in existence and its origin and exact nature have long mystified scholars. It is generally understood to be a pair of transparent crystals.

EXODUS 18

21“For both Aaron and his sons, also make linen under-garments to cover their loins and thighs. These must be worn whenever they enter the Tabernacle.”

18

The priests to be anointed and purified

1“When you have clothed Aaron and his sons, anoint and purify them to serve me as priests.”

The anointing

2“Bring Aaron and his sons to the entrance of the Tabernacle. Wash them with water and clothe them in their sacred garments.”

3“Anoint Aaron first by pouring oil on his head, and then anoint his sons. The priesthood is to be theirs by an everlasting law.”

The purification

4“To purify them, take a young bull and two rams without defect. Also make bread and cakes of fine wheat flour and olive oil without yeast, and wafers spread with oil, and place them in a basket.”

5“Bring the bull to the entrance of the Tabernacle and have Aaron and his sons lay their hands on its head as it is slaughtered.”

6“Take some of the blood and put it on the horns of the altar with your finger. Pour out the rest at the base of the altar.”

7“Then take the fat from around the liver and both kidneys and burn it on the altar. 8Burn the rest of the bull outside the camp. It is a sin offering.”

A ram to be slaughtered and burnt as an offering

9“Take one of the rams and have Aaron and his sons lay their hands on its head as it is slaughtered. 10Sprinkle the blood against the altar on all sides and then cut the ram into pieces. 11After washing the pieces, burn the entire ram on the altar, an offering made to Jehovah by fire.”

A second ram to be slaughtered to purify the priests with blood

12“Take the other ram and slaughter it in the same manner. 13Put some of its blood on the right ear lobes of Aaron and his sons, and their right thumbs and large toes of their right feet. 14Then again sprinkle the blood against the altar on all sides.”

The purification of the priestly garments

15“Take some of the blood from the altar, and some anointing oil, and sprinkle it on the garments of Aaron and his sons. Then he and his sons and their garments will be purified.”

16“**The sacred garments are to be handed down to their descendants so they too can be anointed and ordained in them.**”

The wave offering

17“Then take the fat from the tail of the ram, and also the inner parts, the kidneys, and the right thigh, and from the basket take a loaf, a cake made with oil, and a wafer. 18Put all these in the hands of Aaron and his sons to wave before me as a wave offering.”

19“Afterward take them from their hands and burn them on the altar as a burnt offering, a pleasing aroma to Jehovah.”

The breast and thigh of animals offered in sacrifice to be given to the priests for food

20“**The breast and thigh of the ordination ram belong to Aaron and his sons.** F* It is the contribution the Israelites are always to make from their peace offerings.”

Sacrificed food to be eaten at the Tabernacle

21“**The meat is to be boiled in a sacred place, then Aaron and his sons are to eat the meat and also the bread from the basket at the entrance to the Tabernacle.**”

22“**No one else may eat of it, for it is sacred. If any is left over until morning it must be burnt.**”

The ordaining of priests to last seven days

23“**Do for Aaron and his sons all that I have commanded you, taking seven days to ordain them.** 24Sacrifice a bull each day to atone for sin and to purify the altar, then the altar and all that touches it will be holy.”

The daily sacrifice

25“**From then on, every day you are to offer on the altar two lambs, each a year old. One in the morning and the other at twilight.**”

26“**With each lamb also offer an omer F* of fine flour mixed with a quarter hin F* of olive oil, and a quarter hin of wine for a drink offering.**”

If offerings made every day the Lord promises to dwell among and speak to the Israelites

27“**For generations to come, these burnt offerings are to be made every day at the entrance to the Tabernacle.** 28Then will I dwell among you and be your God and will meet with you there and speak to you. The Tabernacle shall be made holy by my glory.”

The Sabbath sacrifice

29“**On the Sabbath you are to offer a double sacrifice, identical to the daily sacrifice.**”

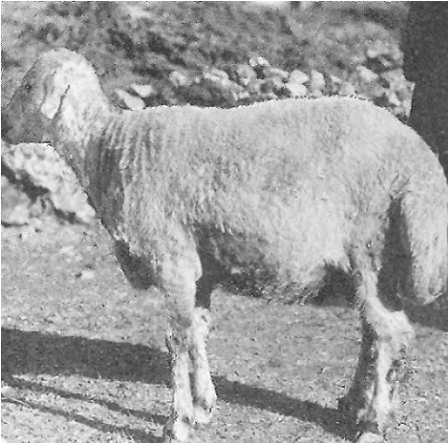
The monthly sacrifice

30“**On the first of every month, at each new moon you are also to present a burnt offering of two young bulls, one ram and seven male lambs, together with their grain and drink offering, and a male goat as a sin offering.**”

*20 To eat as their food.

*26 An omer is approx 2 litres.

*26 One hin is approx 4 litres.



The fat-tailed sheep of Israel. The fat from the tail was offered in sacrifice.

The priest's prayer of blessing

³¹“Afterward the priests are to bless the Israelites saying:

‘Jehovah bless you and keep you.’

‘May his face shine upon you.’

‘May he be gracious to you and give you peace.’

³²“So the priests will put my name upon the Israelites and I will bless them.”

The half shekel census tax for the care of the Tabernacle

³³The Lord said to Moses, “When you take a census of the Israelites, everyone 20 years old or more must pay a ransom of half a shekel of silver,^{F*} then no plague will come upon them when they are numbered.” ^{F*}

³⁴“Use the money for the care of the Tabernacle.”

Craftsmen have been given skill by the Lord to make everything for the Tabernacle

³⁵The Lord said to Moses, “I have chosen Bezalel of the tribe of Judah and have filled him with the Spirit of God and with skill in craftsmanship, to work designs in gold, silver, bronze and wood and to cut and set stones. ³⁶I have also appointed Oholiab of the tribe of Dan to assist him and have given skill to other craftsmen to make everything I have commanded.”

The Lord gives Moses the Law inscribed on two tablets of stone

³⁷When the Lord had finished speaking to Moses on Mount Sinai, he gave him a copy of the Law, inscribed on both sides of two tablets of stone.

*33 A shekel of silver was worth about one days wages.

*33 The decision of an Israelite leader to take a census appears to have been regarded as a sin of pride by the Lord. A plague came upon Israel when King David took a census in later times (1 Kings chapter 14).

19

The Israelites below ask Aaron to make them a god

¹Meanwhile, the Israelites below saw that Moses was delayed many days in coming down from the mountain.^{F*} They gathered around Aaron and said to him, “Come, make us a god who will go before us, as for this Moses we do not know what has happened to him.”

Aaron makes a golden calf to represent Jehovah

²Aaron said to them, “Bring me your gold earrings.”

³So the people brought their gold earrings to Aaron and he melted them with fire and cast the gold into the form of a calf, and shaped it with a tool.

⁴Then the people said, “This is our God who brought us out of Egypt.”

The Israelites build an altar and offer idolatrous sacrifice and then indulge in merriment

⁵When Aaron heard this, he built an altar in front of the calf and announced, “Tomorrow will be a festival to Jehovah.” ^{F*}

⁶The next day the people arose early and offered peace offerings and sacrifice by fire on the altar. Afterward they sat down to eat and drink and then rose up to indulge in merriment.^{F*}

The Lord is angry and tells Moses he will destroy the Israelites

⁷The Lord said to Moses, “Go down, for your people are corrupting themselves. They have been quick to turn aside from what I commanded them and have made themselves an idol in the shape of a calf, and have bowed down and sacrificed to it and have said, ‘This is our God who brought us out of Egypt.’”

⁸“I see that these are an obstinate people. Now leave me alone that my anger may burn against them. I will destroy them and then I will make you into a great nation.”

Moses pleads with the Lord for the lives of his people

⁹But Moses pleaded with the Lord saying, “O Jehovah, do not let your anger burn against your people? Why should the Egyptians say, ‘It was with evil intent that he brought them out to kill them in the mountains.’ ¹⁰Turn from your fierce anger. Do not bring disaster on your people.”

¹¹“Remember Abraham, Isaac and Israel to whom you swore, ‘I will make you as numerous

*1 Moses and Joshua spent 40 days on the mountain.

*5 The calf evidently represented Jehovah and not a pagan god, nevertheless it was in direct violation of the second commandment (Exodus 11:20) spoken by the voice of Jehovah in the hearing of all the people just a few weeks earlier.

*6 The Israelites were apparently adapting the religious customs of the Egyptians to the worship of Jehovah.

EXODUS 20

as the stars in the sky, and will give your descendants all this land.”

The Lord relents

¹²So the Lord relented and did not bring on his people the disaster he had spoken.

Moses and Joshua go back down the mountain

¹³Moses picked up the tablets of the Law then he and Joshua went back down the mountain.

Moses' anger burns hot when he sees the calf and he smashes the stone tablets

¹⁴When they heard the noise of people shouting Joshua said, “There is the sound of war in the camp.” Moses replied, “No, it is the sound of singing that I hear.”

¹⁵When Moses neared the camp and saw the calf and the dancing, his anger burned hot and he threw down the tablets, breaking them to pieces at the foot of the mountain.

Moses grinds up the golden calf and scatters it on the drinking water

¹⁶Moses seized the calf, and after burning it with fire, ground it to powder and scattered it on the water of the stream that ran down the mountain and made the Israelites drink it.



An Egyptian bull-calf idol, traditionally a symbol of God-like strength and vigour.

Moses angry with Aaron

¹⁷He said to Aaron, “What did the people do to you that you allowed such a great sin?”

¹⁸Aaron answered, “Be not angry my lord. You know how prone these people are to evil. They gave me gold which I cast with fire, and this calf is the result.”

Moses summons all who will follow Jehovah to come to him outside the camp

¹⁹Moses saw that Aaron had lost control of

the people and they were running wild, to the derision of their enemies. ²⁰So he stood at the entrance of the camp and sent word to all the people saying, “Whoever is for Jehovah come out to me.”

The Levites kill 3000 rebellious men who remain in the camp

²¹Then he said to the Levites who rallied to him,^{F*} “Jehovah the God of Israel says, ‘Each man strap a sword to his side. Go through the camp from one end to the other and kill those who will not come out, brother, friend and neighbour.’”

²²The Levites did as the Lord commanded, and that day about 3000 men died.

The tribe of Levi now blessed and set apart to the Lord

²³Moses said to the Levites, “Today you have been blessed and set apart to the Lord.”

20

Moses attempts to atone for the Israelites sin

¹The next day Moses said to the Israelites, “You have committed a great sin, but I will go before the Lord. Perhaps I can make atonement.”

²So Moses returned back up the mountain and said to the Lord, “The people have committed a great sin in making themselves a god of gold, but please forgive them their sin. But if not, then blot me out of the Book of the Lord.”

The guilty to be punished on the day of judgement

³The Lord replied to Moses, “Only those who have sinned against me will I blot out of my Book.^{F*} When the day of judgement comes I will punish them for their sin.”

The Lord no longer to accompany Israel to the promised land

⁴“Now go, lead the people up to the land flowing with milk and honey, but I will not go with you.”

⁵“Say to the Israelites, Jehovah says, ‘You are an obstinate people. If I should go with you I may destroy you on the way, now remove your ornaments while I decide what to do to you.’”

An angel of Lord to lead the people instead

⁶“My angel will go with you instead. Obey what he says and do not rebel against him, for he will not forgive your rebellion, for my name is in him.”

⁷“If you do what he says, and all that I say, I will oppose all who oppose you. My angel will take you into the land of the Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Canaanites, Hivites and Jebusites and I will completely destroy them.”

*²¹ The Levites were Moses' own tribe.

*³ The Book of Life. See note on Revelation 2:36.

The Canaanites to be completely destroyed along with their idols

⁸“Do not make a treaty with them or follow their practices. Do not allow them to live in the land or they will cause you to sin against me.”

⁹“Do not worship their gods, you must demolish them and smash their altars and sacred stones to pieces, and cut down their Asherah poles.” F*

Health and long life promised if Israelites obedient to Jehovah

¹⁰“Worship Jehovah your God and my blessing will be upon your food and water. I will take away sickness from among you, and no woman will miscarry or be barren, and I will give you a full life span.”

The Canaanites to be destroyed little by little

¹¹“I will send terror ahead of you, and your enemies will turn their backs and run. ¹²But I will not destroy them in a single year or the land would become ruined and the wild animals too numerous for you. ¹³Little by little I will destroy them, until you have increased enough to take possession of the land.”

The boundaries of the promised land

¹⁴“I will establish your borders from the Red Sea to the Great Sea, F* and from the Desert to the River.” F*

The people mourn when they hear that the Lord will not go with them to the promised land

¹⁵When Moses went down and repeated these words to the people they mourned, for the Lord had said, “I will not go with you,” and no one wore ornaments from that time on.

Moses pleads with the Lord to accompany them to the promised land

¹⁶Moses returned to the Lord and said, “I do not know the angel you wish to send with us. You said you were pleased with me, therefore let your own presence come with us. Are we not your people?”

¹⁷“If your presence does not go with us, do not send us. How will anyone know you are pleased with me and your people unless you go with us? ¹⁸What else will distinguish your people from all the other people on the face of the earth?”

The Lord relents and agrees to accompany the Israelites for Moses' sake

¹⁹The Lord answered Moses, “Very well, I will do the thing you ask, for I am pleased with you and know you by name.”

21

Moses asks to see the full glory of the Lord

¹Then Moses said to the Lord, “Now I ask of

you, please show me your full glory.”

Moses only able to endure the back view of the Lord's full splendour

²The Lord replied, “I will cause my full splendour to pass in front of you and I will proclaim my name in your presence, but you cannot see my face, for no man can see the full glory of my face and live.” F*

³“I will place you in a cleft in the rock and cover you with my hand until I have passed by in my glory. Then I will remove my hand and you will see my back, but my face must not be seen.”

Moses told to make two new stone tablets

⁴“But first, make two more stone tablets, and I will write on them the words that were on the first which you broke. ⁵Have them ready in the morning then come up again to me on top of the mountain.”

⁶“No one is to come with you or be seen anywhere on the mountain. Not even the flocks and herds may graze in front of the mountain.”

Moses sees the glory of Jehovah and hears him proclaim his name

⁷So that day Moses made two more stone tablets. Early next morning he went back up Mount Sinai.

⁸There the Lord passed by in front of Moses and revealed to him his full glory and proclaimed his name saying:

⁹“Jehovah, Jehovah, compassionate and gracious God, slow to anger. Abounding in love and faithfulness, maintaining love to thousands.”

¹⁰“Forgiving wickedness, rebellion and sin. Yet punishing the unrepentant and their children to the third and fourth generation.”

¹¹Moses bowed to the ground and worshipped.

The face of Moses shines

¹²Moses stayed there with the Lord on the mountain another forty days and nights, neither eating nor drinking.

¹³When he came down with the two tablets of Law in his hands, his face shone, but he was unaware of it.

¹⁴When Aaron and the Israelites saw the face of Moses shining, they were afraid to go near him. ¹⁵But afterward they came to him and Moses repeated to the Israelites all the commandments that the Lord had given him on the mountain.

Moses veils his face

¹⁶When Moses had finished speaking to them he put a veil over his face.

¹⁷(Thereafter, whenever Moses entered the Lord's presence in the Tabernacle he would remove the veil until he came out and repeated

*9 A type of totem pole in honour of Asherah, a goddess whose worship involved immoral sexual acts.

*14 The Mediterranean.

*14 The Euphrates.

*2 Moses had seen the face of Jehovah previously (Exodus 10:16), probably many times, but the Lord had apparently withheld his full glory or brightness.

EXODUS 21

to the Israelites what the Lord had commanded, then he would put the veil back over his face.)

The Israelites bring Moses materials for the Tabernacle

¹⁸Now all the Israelites whose hearts were stirred and whose spirits were willing, brought to Moses offerings to be used for the Tabernacle; brooches, earrings, rings, gold, silver, bronze, yarn, fine linen, goats hair and tanned skins.

¹⁹They brought so much that the craftsmen said to Moses, "The people have brought much more than enough for all the work the Lord has commanded."

²⁰So Moses sent word throughout the camp that no man or woman need donate any more.

²¹When the Israelites had done all the work that the Lord had commanded for the Tabernacle, Moses inspected the workmanship and was well pleased, so he blessed them.

The Lord commands the Tabernacle to be erected and anointed

²²Then the Lord said to Moses, "Set up the Tabernacle on the first day of the first month according to the plan shown you on the mountain."

²³"Place the Ark behind the veil, and bring in the table and lay out what belongs on it. Then set up the lampstand and the gold altar of incense."

²⁴"Locate the bronze altar outside the entrance of the Tabernacle. Place the washing basin between the altar and the entrance, then erect the courtyard."

²⁵"Afterward take the anointing oil and anoint everything, and it will be holy."

²⁶"Then wash and dress Aaron and his sons in the sacred garments and anoint them to serve me as priests."

Moses erects and anoints the Tabernacle and consecrates Aaron and his sons as priests

²⁷Moses did everything the Lord commanded. In the first month of the second year he erected

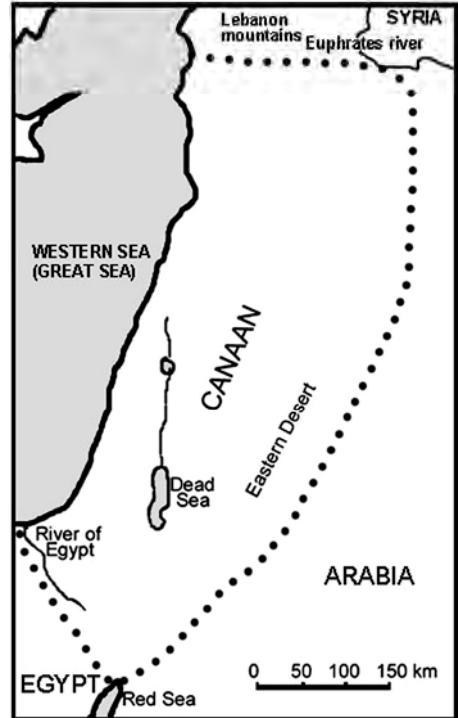
the Tabernacle and consecrated Aaron and his sons as priests and dressed them in the sacred garments.

²⁸The bull for the sin offering was sacrificed at the entrance and the Tabernacle was purified, and for twelve days the leaders of the tribes brought gifts for the dedication.

The glory of the Lord fills the Tabernacle

²⁹Then the cloud descended and the glory of Jehovah filled the Tabernacle.

³⁰The cloud of the Lord was over the Tabernacle by day, and fire was seen in the cloud by night.



The borders of the promised land.

LEVITICUS

The Israelites are still camped at Mount Sinai (they stayed there a whole year). The Tabernacle has been completed and dedicated, and Aaron has been ordained as the high priest and his four sons as priests. Aaron was a Levite, ie, from the tribe of Levi, hence the name of this book Leviticus, which means *‘relating to the Levites.’*

Aaron’s family was the only one from whom priests were to be ordained (Numbers 1:23). The duty of the other Levites was to assist the Aaronic priests and the ordinary people to offer sacrifices at the Tabernacle, and also to act as musicians. In return the tribe of Levi were to be supported by the tithes and offerings of the other eleven tribes.

Most of the book of Leviticus concerns the Lord’s laws on Sacrifices, health rules, and feast cycles. These God-given laws offered a comforting and wholesome way of life, well suited to a pastoral society. They provided a stable rhythm of daily, weekly, yearly, seven-yearly, and fifty-yearly cycles of celebrations, festivals and events, including leaving crop land lying fallow every seventh year, and all rural land reverting to its original family owners every fiftieth year.

This book also includes a spectacular and awe inspiring display of Jehovah’s glory to all of the Israelites, but with tragic results for Aaron whose two eldest sons died.

The book ends with the Lord promising the Israelites great blessings if his commandments are kept, but horrific curses if they are not. Later books in the Bible show that the Lord’s commandments were not kept faithfully and these horrific curses were eventually poured out in full measure upon the Israelites.

However, the Lord in his love and constant willingness to forgive has given this promise to his chosen people: *“But if you will humble your hearts and confess your sins and the sins of your fathers, and your treachery toward me, and make amends for your sins, I will again remember my covenant with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob”* (Leviticus 9:30).

AUTHOR

Moses, (Deuteronomy 9:1) with clarifications by later Israelite prophets.

Suddenly the glorious splendour of the Lord emerged from the Tabernacle and appeared to all the Israelites. Leviticus 2:3.

CONTENTS

	Chapter	
Sacrifice animals to be without defect	1	Aaron and surviving sons not permitted to mourn 2
Animals to be over seven days old	1	Priests not to enter Tabernacle after drinking wine.... 2
Offerer to lay hand on animal’s head as slaughtered .. 1		Priests to die if they do so
Animals to be skinned and washed	1	Moses angry with Aaron and his sons
Priests to burn pieces on altar	1	Jehovah would speak to Moses from above Ark
Bird offerings	1	Aaron not to go behind the veil unless commanded . 2
Grain offerings	1	Day of Atonement
Only a portion of grain offerings to be burnt	1	Atonement for high priest and his household
Rest of offering to be given to priests	1	Atonement for Ark
No yeast or honey to be added to grain offerings	1	Atonement for the people
Altar fire to be always kept burning	1	Atonement for the Most Holy Place
Offerings for unintentional sins	1	Atonement for the Tabernacle
Occurrences when a sin offering must be made	1	The scapegoat
Vow and peace offerings	1	Day of Atonement a day of fasting and no work
Animal fat not to be eaten	1	The Holy Bread
Blood not to be consumed	1	Clean and unclean animals
Sacrifices only to be offered at the Tabernacle	1	Clean and unclean fish
Sacrifices no longer to be offered to demons	1	Unclean birds
Jehovah to show himself to the Israelites	2	Clean and unclean insects
Jehovah appears in his glory	2	Eating of clean creatures found dead
The Israelites cry out and fall on their faces	2	Contamination by unclean creatures
Aaron’s two eldest sons offer unlawful incense	2	Uncleaness from touching a dead person
Aaron’s two eldest sons die	2	Uncleaness after birth of a son

LEVITICUS 1

Uncleanness after birth of a daughter	3	Land not to be sold permanently	7
Male discharge uncleanness	3	Houses in walled cities can be sold permanently	7
Sexual uncleanness	3	Poor to be assisted	7
Menstrual uncleanness	3	Israelite slaves to be treated kindly	7
Leprous skin infections	4	Israelite slaves to be freed in Jubilee year	7
Infectious sores	4	Non-Israelite slaves can be kept for life	7
Infectious persons to live outside camp	4	Non-Israelites slaves can be willed to children	7
Cleansing an infectious diseased person	4	Vows	8
Sin atonement to be made	4	Redeeming a person dedicated as a vow	8
Cleansing of contaminated clothing	5	Vowed animals not to be substituted	8
Cleansing of contaminated houses	5	Vowed houses and land	8
Preparing Water of Cleansing	5	Irrevocable vows	8
Cleansing a tent in which a person has died	5	The Nazirite vow	8
Cleansing a person who has become unclean	5	When a Nazirite vow is accidentally broken	8
He who will not purify himself to be cut off	5	At completion of Nazirite vow	8
Laws pertaining to a high priest	6	A test for suspected adultery	8
High priest must marry a Levite virgin	6	Law of tithing	8
Laws pertaining to priests	6	Blessings if Lord's commandments kept	9
Aaronic Levites with defects not to serve as priests	6	Curses if Lord's commandments not kept	9
Priests who become unclean not to eat holy food	6	Curses seven times over if disobedience continues	9
Feast of First fruits	7	Further seven times over if hostility to Lord remains	9
Feast of Trumpets	7	Israelites to be exiled	9
Feast of Tabernacles	7	Land to enjoy its Sabbath years	9
A case of blasphemy	7	Covenant remembered if Israelites become humble	9
Year of Jubilee every fiftieth year	7	Israelites must confess sins and make amends	9
Jubilee a time of rejoicing and rest	7	These commandments given to Moses on Mt Sinai	9
Family land to be reclaimed	7		

Bold The Lord speaking.

1

Sacrifice animals to be without defect

¹The Lord called Moses and spoke to him from the Tabernacle saying, "**Command the Israelites: Any animal you offer as a burnt offering to Jehovah is to be without defect.**"

Animals to be over seven days old

²"When a calf, lamb or goat is born it is to remain with its mother for seven days, and on the eighth day it will be acceptable as an offering to the Lord, but do not kill a mother and her young on the same day."

The offerer's hand to be laid on animal's head as he slaughters it

³"Bring the animal to be offered to the altar at the entrance of the Tabernacle. Lay your hand on the head of the animal and slaughter it."

Only the priests to sprinkle the blood

⁴"Aaron's sons the priests shall sprinkle the blood for you against the altar."

The animal to be skinned and washed and the priests to burn the pieces on the altar

⁵"Then skin the animal and cut it into pieces. Wash the inner parts and legs with water. ⁶The priests are to burn all the pieces on the altar with wood as an entire burnt offering, a pleasing aroma to the Lord."

Bird offerings

⁷"If the offering is a bird it is to be a dove or a young pigeon. The priest is to wring off its head and burn it on the altar and drain

the blood out on the side of the altar."

⁸"He is to remove the crop^{F*} with its contents and throw it into the ashes by the side of the altar. Then he is to cut the bird open with its wings still attached and burn it on the altar."

Grain offerings

⁹"A grain offering is to be of fine flour with olive oil poured upon it, and then incense laid on top. ¹⁰The priest shall take a handful of the offering together with all of the incense and burn it on the altar."

¹¹"If you bring a grain offering already baked, it shall be cakes made without yeast and mixed with oil, or wafers spread with oil."

¹²"A grain offering of first fruits is to be new grain, crushed and roasted, and offered with oil and incense."

Only a portion of grain offerings to be burnt, the rest to be given to the priests

¹³"The priest is to take a portion of any grain offering and burn it on the altar."

¹⁴"The rest of the grain offering belongs to the priests, and is to be eaten in a holy place, the courtyard of the Tabernacle."

No yeast or honey to be added to grain offerings

¹⁵"Add salt to all your grain offerings by fire, but do not add yeast or honey."

*8 The crop is a pouch inside the lower throat of a bird where food is temporarily stored and predigested.

The altar fire to be always kept burning

¹⁶The Lord said to Moses, "Give Aaron and his sons this command: The evening burnt offering is to remain on the altar throughout the night and the fire must be kept burning."

¹⁷"Every morning the priest is to put on his linen garments and remove the ashes of the burnt offering and place them beside the altar. ¹⁸Then he is to remove his sacred garments and put on his regular clothes to carry the ashes outside the camp."

¹⁹"Afterward he is to add more wood and prepare the morning offering. The fire must never go out."

The sin offering for a priest who sins unintentionally

²⁰"If a priest sins unintentionally, bringing guilt upon the people, he must offer to the Lord a young bull without defect as a sin offering for the sin he has committed."

The sin offering for a leader who sins unintentionally

²¹"If a leader sins unintentionally, and is made aware of his sin, he must offer a male goat without defect as atonement, and he will be forgiven."

The sin offering for an individual who sins unintentionally

²²"If any one in the community sins unintentionally, he must bring as his sin offering a female goat or lamb without defect."

The sin offering for a whole community which sins unintentionally

²³"If the whole Israelite community sins unintentionally, even though they be unaware of the matter, they are guilty."

²⁴"When they become aware of their sin, the whole assembly must bring a young bull as a sin offering, and the elders are to lay their hands on the bull's head as it is slaughtered."

Other occasions for a sin offering

²⁵"A person must also make a sin offering if he fails to speak up when he hears a public request to testify regarding something he is aware of. Also if he has made a rash oath, or has touched something unclean, whether the carcass of a dead creature or human uncleanness. ²⁶In all such matters he must first confess the manner in which he has defiled himself."

²⁷"If a person sins by cheating his neighbour, or by swearing falsely, or any other such sin, he must make restitution in full adding a fifth value to it and give it to his neighbour on the day that he presents his sin offering, a male lamb without defect."

²⁸"If he cannot afford a lamb, he is to offer two doves or young pigeons for his sin. If he cannot afford these, he is to offer an omer ^{F*} of fine flour."

Vow and peace offerings

²⁹"If anyone offers an animal to be sacrificed to Jehovah, either to fulfil a vow^{F*} or as a peace offering,^{F*} it must be a male without defect or blemish. ³⁰Do not offer a blind or injured animal, or one with warts or sores, or damaged testicles, it will not be accepted."

³¹"You may present an animal that is poorly proportioned, or stunted in growth as a peace offering, but it will not be accepted in fulfilment of a vow."

³²"When a peace offering is made, you must also bring a cake of fine flour mixed with oil. This is to be well-kneaded and without yeast. Also a cake of bread made with yeast. These will belong to the priest who makes the peace offering."

³³"The meat of the peace offering must be eaten on the same day it is offered. However if the offering is the result of a vow, anything left over may be eaten the next day. But on the third day it will not be accepted or credited to the one who offers it, the meat must be burned."

³⁴"Any meat that touches an unclean thing must also be burned. It is not to be eaten."

³⁵"And if anyone who is unclean eats the meat of a peace offering belonging to the Lord, he shall be cut off from his people."

Animal fat not to be consumed

³⁶"Do not eat the fat of cattle, sheep or goats, the fat is the Lord's. Anyone who eats the fat of an animal that can be offered in sacrifice, shall be cut off from his people."

³⁷"The fat of such an animal found dead may be used for other purposes, but you must not eat it."

Blood not to be eaten

³⁸"Anyone who kills any clean animal or bird to eat its meat, must first drain out its blood and cover it with earth, for the life of every creature is its blood."

³⁹"You must not consume the blood of any bird or animal. Anyone who consumes blood shall be cut off from his people."

⁴⁰"This shall be a law for all generations, wherever you live you shall not eat fat or blood."

Sacrifices only to be offered at the Tabernacle

⁴¹The Lord said to Moses, "Any Israelite who sacrifices an ox, lamb or goat in or outside the camp instead of bringing it to the priests at the Tabernacle for an offering to Jehovah, must die."

Sacrifices no longer to be offered to demons

⁴²"You must no longer offer sacrifices to demons and prostitute yourselves to them. This is a lasting ordinance for generations to come."

*29 A vow offering was made to obtain a special favour of the Lord.

*29 A peace offering was generally offered out of gratitude for a blessing or to ensure continued prosperity.

*28 An omer is about 2 litres.

Jehovah to show himself to the Israelites

¹On the eighth day after the ordaining of Aaron and his sons as priests, Moses summoned the elders of Israel and said, “Today Jehovah will appear to you.”

²So all of the Israelites gathered and stood before the Tabernacle. Aaron offered a sacrifice then he and Moses entered the Tabernacle. When they came back out they blessed the people.

Jehovah appears before the Israelites in glory

³As they did so, the glorious splendour of Jehovah suddenly emerged from the Tabernacle and was seen by all of the Israelites.^{F*}

⁴Fire flared from the Lord’s presence and consumed the burnt offering on the altar.

The Israelites cry out and fall on their faces

⁵All the Israelites cried out, and fell face down on the ground.

Aaron’s two eldest sons die when they offer unlawful incense

⁶Then two of Aaron’s sons, Nadab and Abihu put fire in their censers and offered incense before the Lord which he had not commanded.

⁷Therefore fire flared out from Jehovah and consumed them. They died there in his presence.

Aaron remains silent

⁸Moses said to Aaron, “This is what the Lord meant when he said, “**Through those who approach me I will show my holiness. In the sight of all the people I will be revered.**” So Aaron remained silent.

Aaron and his two surviving sons not permitted to mourn

⁹Moses summoned Mishael and Elzaphan and said to them, “Carry your cousins outside the camp.”

¹⁰Moses said to Aaron and his two remaining sons Eleazar and Ithamar, “Do not mourn or leave the entrance to the Tabernacle, or you will die, for Jehovah’s anointing oil is upon you and he will be angry with the whole community. However the rest of Israel may mourn for those whom the Lord has destroyed by fire.”

Priests will die if they drink wine before entering the Tabernacle

¹¹The Lord said to Aaron, “**You and your sons are not to drink wine or other fermented drink before you enter the Tabernacle, or you will die.**”

Priests to teach Israelites the commandments

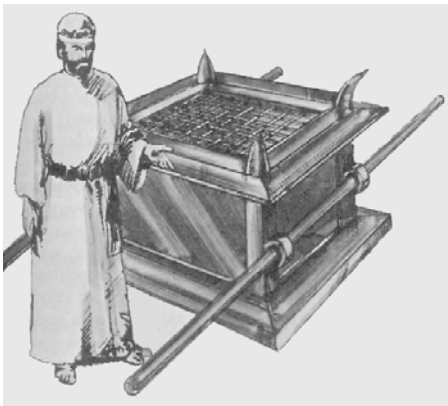
¹²“**You must distinguish between the holy and the common, between the clean and unclean. And you must teach the Israelites all the commandments I have given them through Moses.**”

*3 The glory revealed to the Israelites on this occasion was unlikely to have been the full glory of Jehovah, as they would not have survived, see Exodus 21:1-14. The glory of the Lord was normally shielded from the Israelites by a cloud.

Moses becomes angry with Aaron and his sons for violating a commandment

¹³Later that day, when Moses inquired about the goat of the sin offering, he was angry to find that it had all been burned up. He said to Aaron’s sons, “You should have eaten the sin offering in the sanctuary as I commanded.”

¹⁴But Aaron replied, “With such things as have happened to me today, would the Lord have been pleased if we had eaten the sin offering?” When Moses heard this he was satisfied.



An artist’s view of the altar of burnt offering of the portable Tabernacle.

Jehovah would speak to Moses from between the two cherubim on the Ark

¹⁵Now whenever Moses entered the Tabernacle to speak with the Lord, he would hear the voice of Jehovah speaking to him from between the two cherubim on the Ark.

Aaron not to go behind the veil unless commanded or he will die

¹⁶The Lord said to Moses, “**Aaron is not to come behind the veil into the Most Holy Place in the Tabernacle whenever he chooses, or he will die, for I appear in the cloud over the Ark.**”

The Day of Atonement for sin

¹⁷The Lord said to Moses, “**Each year on the tenth day of the seventh month^{F*} there is to be a Day of Atonement^{F*} for sin.**”

Atonement for the high priest and his household

¹⁸“**Aaron is to sacrifice a young bull as a sin offering for himself and his household, and a ram for a burnt offering.** ¹⁹Afterward he is to bathe himself with water and put on the sacred garments.”

Atonement for the Ark

²⁰“**Aaron is then to fill a censer with burning embers from the altar fire and take fragrant incense with him into the Most Holy**

*17 Our October.

*17 The Day of Atonement is also known as ‘Yom Kippur.’

Place. There he is to burn the incense before me. ²¹The smoke of the incense will conceal the top of the Ark and he will not die.”

²²“He is then to take some of the blood of the bull and with his finger sprinkle it seven times on the top of the Ark.”

Atonement for the people, the Most Holy Place and the Tabernacle

²³“Next he is to take from the people two male goats and cast lots over them. One is to be sacrificed to Jehovah, the other is to be the scapegoat.”

²⁴“Aaron is to slaughter the goat whose lot fell to Jehovah as a sin offering for the people. He is to take its blood behind the veil and sprinkle it on the Ark as he did the blood of the bull. ²⁵In this way he will purify and make atonement for the Most Holy Place and for the uncleanness and sins of the people. ²⁶He is to do the same for the Tabernacle and the altar.”

The scapegoat

²⁷“Aaron is then to bring forward the goat on whom the scapegoat lot fell. He is to lay both hands on the head of the goat and confess over it all the sins of the people and put them on the goat’s head.”

²⁸“Afterward he shall appoint a man to lead the goat to a lonely place and there release it. ²⁹The goat will carry away the sins of the people.”

The high priest and the man who released the scapegoat to bathe afterward

³⁰“Aaron is then to go back into the Tabernacle and remove the sacred garments and bathe himself with water and put on his regular clothes. ³¹The man who released the scapegoat must also wash his clothes and bathe himself.”

³²“High priests who succeed Aaron are also to make the atonement for you and wear the sacred garments.”

The Day of Atonement to be a day of fasting and no work

³³“The Day of Atonement is to be a lasting ordinance for you. On this day you must fast and not do any work.”

Holy Bread to be set out on the Tabernacle table

³⁴The Lord said to Moses, “Take fine flour and bake twelve loaves of bread. Place them in two rows on the table of gold in the Tabernacle.”

³⁵“Alongside each row place incense to represent the bread and to be offered to Jehovah by fire.”

³⁶“This bread is to be set out every Sabbath. It belongs to Aaron and his sons. They are to eat it in a holy place.”

³⁷Moses did all that the Lord commanded.

Clean and unclean animals

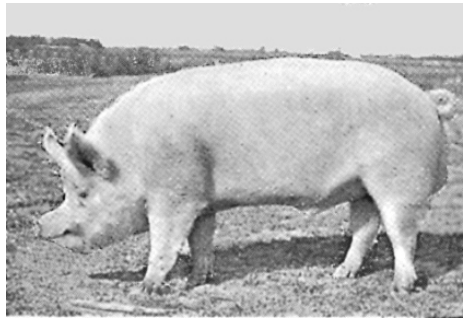
¹Then the Lord said to Moses and Aaron, “Say to the Israelites, ‘I am Jehovah your God, purify yourselves and be holy, for I am holy. ²You must distinguish between the clean and the unclean, between living creatures that may be eaten and those that may not be eaten.’”

³“Of all the animals that move on land these are the ones you may eat. Those that have a divided hoof and chew the cud.”

⁴“You must not eat those that have a divided hoof only, or chew the cud only.”

⁵“The camel and the rabbit chew the cud, but do not have a divided hoof, they are unclean for you.”

⁶“The pig, though it has a divided hoof does not chew the cud. It too is unclean. You must not eat its meat.”



The pig is one of the many animals designated as unclean by the Lord and not to be eaten.

Clean and unclean fish

⁷“Of all the creatures living in the seas and rivers, you may only eat those that have fins and scales.”

⁸“You must not eat those that do not have fins and scales. They are to be loathsome to you and you must loath their carcasses.”

Unclean birds

⁹“These are the unclean birds you must not eat. The eagle, the vulture, all kinds of hawks and other birds of prey, all kinds of owls, ravens and gulls, the cormorant, the stork, the heron and the bat.”

Clean and unclean insects

¹⁰“All creatures and insects that swarm or move on their belly or legs are to be loathsome to you. ¹¹However you may eat winged insects that have jointed legs for hopping on the ground, any kind of locust, katydid, cricket or grasshopper.”

Eating of clean creatures, found dead

¹²“Anyone who eats a clean creature found dead or torn by wild animals, must wash his clothes and bathe and will be unclean until

LEVITICUS 3

evening. ¹³If he fails to do so he will be held accountable.”

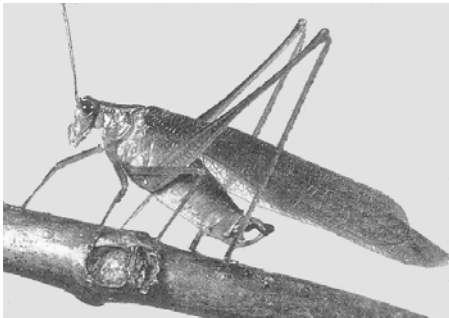
Contamination by unclean creatures

¹⁴“All reptiles and small animals are unclean for you. If one of them dies and falls onto something, that article will be unclean whether it be made of wood, cloth or hide. Immerse it in water and it will be clean by evening.”

¹⁵“If a reptile or small animal falls into a clay pot or oven, the pot or oven must be broken up and everything that was in it will be unclean. However a spring or a cistern for collecting water remains clean.”

¹⁶“Whoever touches the dead carcass of any clean or unclean creature will be unclean until evening. Whoever picks up a carcass must also wash their clothes and be unclean until evening.”

¹⁷“If a carcass falls on to seed that is to be planted, the seed remains clean, but if water has been put on the seed, it is unclean.”



The katydid, one of the few clean insects that could be eaten.

Uncleanness from touching a dead person

¹⁸“Whoever touches the body of a dead person will be unclean for seven days.”

¹⁹“When a person dies in a tent, anyone in the tent at the time or who enters it afterward, will be unclean for seven days, and every open container will be unclean.”

²⁰“Anyone out in the open who touches a person who has been killed or who has died a natural death, or anyone who touches a human bone or a tomb will be unclean for seven days.”

Uncleanness after the birth of a son

²¹“A woman who gives birth to a son will be unclean for seven days, just as she is unclean during her menstruation.”

²²“On the eighth day the boy is to be circumcised, then the woman must wait 33 days to be purified from her bleeding. ²³She must not touch anything holy or go near the Tabernacle until she is purified.”

Uncleanness after the birth of a daughter

²⁴“If a woman gives birth to a daughter she will be unclean for 14 days and must wait 66

days to be purified from her bleeding.”

²⁵“When the days of her purification are over she is to bring to the priest at the Tabernacle a year-old lamb for a burnt offering, and a young pigeon or dove for a sin offering.”

²⁶“If she cannot afford a lamb she is to bring two doves, or two young pigeons.

²⁷The priest is to offer them before the Lord to make atonement for her and then she will be purified.”

Male discharge uncleanness

²⁸“When a man has a discharge from his penis, whether it continues to flow or becomes blocked, it will make him unclean.

²⁹Any bed he lies on, or anything he sits on will be unclean. ³⁰Anyone who touches him or these things must wash his clothes and bathe with water and be unclean until evening.”

³¹“Anyone he touches without first washing his hands, or anyone he spits on must also wash his clothes and bathe with water and be unclean until evening.”

³²“Any clay pot the man touches must be broken, and any wooden article is to be rinsed with water.”

³³“When a man is healed from his discharge he must wash his clothes and bathe himself, and on the eighth day he is to take two doves or two young pigeons to the priest who will offer them and make atonement for him.”

Sexual uncleanness

³⁴“When a man has an emission of semen he must bathe his whole body with water and will be unclean until evening.”

³⁵“Any clothing or leather that the semen has touched must be washed with water and will be unclean until evening.”

³⁶“When a man lies with a woman and there is an emission of semen, both must bathe with water and will be unclean until evening.”

Menstrual uncleanness

³⁷“When a woman menstruates, her impurity will last seven days and anyone who touches her or anything she lies on or sits on during that time will be unclean.”

³⁸“If a man sleeps with her and her monthly flow touches him, he will be unclean for seven days, and any bed he lies on will be unclean.”

³⁹“If a woman has a discharge of blood at a time other than her monthly menstruation, or a menstruation that continues beyond her normal time, she will be unclean for as long as she has the discharge and for seven days afterward.”

⁴⁰“On the eighth day she must take two doves or young pigeons to the priest at the Tabernacle who will offer them before the Lord and make atonement for her.”

4

Leprous skin infections

¹The Lord said to Moses, "When anyone has a swelling or shiny sore on his skin that appears to be infectious, he must be brought to the priest who will examine the sore."

²"If the sore is white, but does not appear to be deep, and the hair in it has not turned white, the priest is to isolate that person for seven days. On the seventh day the priest is to examine him again."

³"If he sees that the sore is unchanged and has not spread, he is to isolate him a further seven days. Then if the sore has faded or has not spread the priest shall pronounce him clean."

⁴"The person must wash his clothes and will be clean. ⁴But if the sore spreads afterwards he must appear before the priest again."

⁵"When a person appears before the priest and the hair in the sore has turned white, or there is raw flesh in the swelling and it appears to be more than skin deep, it is leprous, he shall pronounce him unclean."

⁶"When the leprosy has finally broken out and has turned all white, the priest shall pronounce him clean. But if ever raw flesh appears on him, he will again be unclean."

Infectious sores

⁷"If a man or woman has a sore on the head or chin, the priest is to examine the sore. If it does not appear to be deep and there is no yellow hair in it, the person is to be isolated seven days."

⁸"If on the seventh day the sore has not spread and there is no yellow hair in it, the person is to be shaved except for the diseased area, and isolated a further seven days. ⁹Then if it has not spread the priest shall pronounce that person clean."

¹⁰"However if a sore appears to be deep and the hair in it is yellow and thin, the priest shall pronounce that person unclean, it is infectious."

¹¹"If a man has lost his hair and has a reddish-white sore on his bald head or forehead, it is infectious, the man is unclean."

¹²"He must wear torn clothes, let his hair be dishevelled, cover his mouth and cry out 'Unclean! Unclean!' when approached."

Infectious persons to live outside the camp

¹³"As long as he has the infection he must live alone outside the camp."

¹⁴"Command the Israelites to send outside the camp anyone who has an infectious skin disease or a discharge of any kind, or anyone who is unclean because of a dead body."

¹⁵"Send away male and female alike so they will not defile the camp where I dwell among them."

Cleansing a person who has been infectious

¹⁶"To cleanse a person who has been infectious, the priest is to go outside the camp and examine him."

¹⁷"If he is found to be healed of his disease, the priest shall order that two clean birds, some cedar wood, scarlet thread and hyssop be brought out."

¹⁸"The priest is to have one of the birds killed over a clay pot of fresh water, then the priest is to dip the live bird, the cedar wood, the scarlet thread and the hyssop in the blood of the first bird and sprinkle the person to be cleansed seven times and pronounce him clean. ¹⁹He is then to release the live bird in the open fields."

²⁰"The person being cleansed must wash his clothes, shave off his hair, and bathe with water. After this he may come into the camp but he must remain outside his tent for seven days."

²¹"On the seventh day he must shave his entire head; hair, eyebrows and beard and when he has washed his clothes and bathed himself with water he will be clean."

Sin atonement to be made

²²"On the eighth day he is to bring to the Tabernacle two male lambs and one ewe lamb without defect, three omers of fine flour mixed with oil and one log^F of oil."

²³"If he is poor and cannot afford these, he may take just one male lamb and one omer of fine flour, and two doves or young pigeons. ²⁴The priest is to take these and make a sin offering of atonement before the Lord."

5

Cleansing of contaminated clothing

¹"If any garment becomes contaminated with green or red mould, it must be shown to the priest, who is to isolate the garment for seven days."

²"If after seven days the mould has spread, the garment is unclean and must be burned. But if the mould has not spread, he shall order the garment washed and isolate it a further seven days."

⁴"If the mould has not changed, the garment is unclean and must be burned. But if the mould has faded, he is to cut out the contaminated part, wash it again and it will be clean."

Cleansing of contaminated houses

⁵"When you enter the land of Canaan which I am giving you, and find a spreading mould on the walls inside a house, the owner of the house must tell the priest."

*22 A log is about a third of a litre.

LEVITICUS 6

6⁶“The priest is to order the house emptied before he examines the mould. If he finds the mould has green or red depressions that appear to be deeper than the surface of the wall, he shall close up the house for seven days.”

7⁷“Anyone who enters the house while it is closed up will be unclean until evening. And anyone who sleeps or eats there must also wash his clothes.”

8⁸“If after seven days the mould has spread he is to order the contaminated stones torn out and all the inside walls of the house scraped. The contaminated material is to be dumped at an unclean place outside the town.”

9⁹“Then replace the stones that have been removed with new stones, and replaster the house with new clay.”

10¹⁰“If the mould reappears, the house must be torn down, but if it does not reappear the priest shall purify the house by sprinkling it seven times with the blood of a bird, as for the cleansing of a person.”



A typical house of the period.

Preparing Water of Cleansing

11¹¹The Lord said to Moses, “Have the Israelites bring you a red heifer without blemish that has never been under a yoke. 12¹²Give it to Eleazar the priest to take outside the camp and have it slaughtered.”

13¹³“He is to take some of the blood on his finger and sprinkle it seven times toward the Tabernacle.”

14¹⁴“Then while he watches, the entire heifer is to be burned with fire. He is also to take some cedar wood, hyssop, and scarlet material and throw them onto the burning heifer.”

15¹⁵“Afterwards the priest must wash his clothes and bathe himself, then he may return to the camp but will be unclean until evening.”

16¹⁶“A man who is clean shall gather up the ashes of the heifer and store them in a clean place outside the camp. 17¹⁷They are to be kept for use in Water of Cleansing.”

Cleansing a tent in which a person has died

18¹⁸“To cleanse a tent in which a person has died, place some of the ashes of the heifer in a jar and pour fresh water over them.”

19¹⁹“Then a man who is clean is to take some hyssop, dip it in the water and sprinkle the tent and furnishings and all the people who were there when the person died.”

Cleansing a person who has become unclean

20²⁰“The Water of Cleansing is also to be sprinkled on anyone who has touched any dead person, a human bone or a tomb.”

21²¹“The unclean person is to be sprinkled on the third and seventh days. On the seventh day he must also wash his clothes and bathe with water and that evening he will be clean.”

22²²“The man who sprinkles the Water of Cleansing must also wash his clothes, and anyone who touches the Water of Cleansing will be unclean until evening.”

Any person who becomes unclean must purify himself or be cut off

23²³“If a person becomes unclean and does not purify himself, he shall be cut off from the people. He has defiled the Tabernacle of Jehovah.”

24²⁴“Everything an unclean person touches becomes unclean.”

6

Laws pertaining to a high priest

1¹“The Lord said to Moses, “Say to Aaron and his sons, ‘A high priest,^{f*} the one anointed and ordained to wear the sacred robe, must not let his hair become dishevelled, or tear his clothes. 2²Nor must he enter a place where there is a dead body not even if it be his own father or mother.”

3³“He is to remain close to the Tabernacle for he has been dedicated by the anointing oil of his God.”

The high priest must marry a Levite virgin

4⁴“The woman he marries must be a virgin from his own tribe of Levi so that he will not defile his offspring.”

Laws pertaining to priests

5⁵“Nor is a regular priest to defile himself by touching the dead, except for his immediate family. He must remain holy for he presents the offerings made to Jehovah.”

6⁶“He must not marry a harlot or a divorced woman.”

7⁷“If the daughter of a priest defiles herself

*1 There was normally only one high priest at any given time and he was required to be a direct descendant of Aaron.

by becoming a harlot, she disgraces her father and must be burned to death by fire.”

Descendants of Aaron with bodily defects not to serve as priests

8“**No man of a priest’s family who has a defect may make offerings to God. Nor one who is blind, lame, disfigured, deformed, crippled in foot or hand, hunch-backed, dwarfed, has defective eyesight, or who has festering or running sores, or damaged testicles.**”

9“**He may eat the holy food, but because of his defect he must not approach the altar or go near the veil and so defile my Tabernacle.**”

A priest who becomes unclean not to eat the holy food until cleansed

10“**A priest who has become unclean may not eat the holy food until he is cleansed. Nor may a person who does not belong to the family of a priest. 11However, a slave whom a priest has bought, or who was born into his household may eat the holy food.**”

12“**If the daughter of a priest marries a man who is not a priest, she may no longer eat the holy food, but if she becomes a widow or divorced and has no children and returns to live in her father’s house, then she may eat her father’s food.**”

13“**If anyone should eat the holy food by mistake he must make restitution to the priest, plus one fifth of its value.**”

7

The Feast of First Fruits

1The Lord said to Moses, “**On the sixth day of the third month, when you offer the first fruits of your new grain, hold a sacred assembly and do no regular work.**” F*

2“**Present a burnt offering of two young bulls, one ram, and seven male lambs together with their grain and drink offerings, and a male goat to make atonement.**”

The Feast of Trumpets

3“**On the first day of the seventh month, hold a sacred assembly and do no regular work. It is a day for you to sound trumpets throughout the land.**” F*

4“**Prepare a burnt offering of one young bull, one ram, and seven male lambs along with their grain and drink offerings, and a male goat to make atonement.**”

The Feast of Tabernacles

5“**On the fifteenth day of the seventh month, after you have gathered in the crops from your land, the Feast of Tabernacles is to begin. It is to last for seven days.**”

*1 This was called the Feast of First Fruits, and was held in June, fifty days after the Passover. It was later known as Pentecost.

*3 This was known as the Feast of Trumpets, or New Year’s Day. It marked the end of the agricultural year in October.

6“**During this time you are to live in booths^{F*} made from palm fronds, leafy branches, and poplars so your descendants will know that I had you live in booths when I brought you out of Egypt.**” F*

7“**The first day of the feast you are to do no work, but call a sacred assembly and rejoice before the Lord your God. Then for seven days rejoice and present offerings to Jehovah by fire.**”

8“**On the eighth day hold a closing sacred assembly and present another offering by fire. This day is also a day of rest. 9Celebrate this festival each year.**”

A case of blasphemy

10About this time, a man born of an Israelite mother but an Egyptian father quarrelled with another Israelite and blasphemed the Lord’s name in a curse. 11So they brought him to Moses who ordered him held in custody until the will of the Lord was made known.

12The Lord said to Moses, “**Take the man who has blasphemed, outside the camp. All who heard him blaspheme are to lay their hands on his head. Then the whole community is to stone him.**”

13“**Whoever blasphemes the name of Jehovah must be put to death.**”

14So Moses commanded the Israelites and they took the blasphemer outside the camp and stoned him to death.

A year of Jubilee every 50th year

15The Lord said to Moses, “**When you enter the land I am giving you, count off seven Sabbath years^{F*} to a period of 49 years, then on the Day of Atonement sound the trumpet everywhere throughout the land. 16Consecrate the fiftieth year and proclaim freedom. It shall be a Jubilee^{F*} for you.**”

Jubilee a time of rejoicing and rest

17“**The fiftieth year is to be a time of rejoicing for you. Do not sow or harvest, for the land is to have a year of rest.^{F*} 18Food for you and your animals is to be whatever grows of itself in the fields.**”

Family land to be reclaimed

19“**In this year of Jubilee, everyone is to return and reclaim his family land.**”

20“**When you buy or sell land to each other you are to do so on the basis of the number of years remaining to the Jubilee.**”

21“**When the years are many, you are to increase the price, and when the years are**

*6 Crude shelters made of branches, also called tabernacles.

*6 It is generally assumed that the Israelites lived in tents during the exodus from Egypt, but it is unlikely that many families of the house-dwelling Israelites would have possessed a tent, hence the need for booths until tents could be constructed, typically from goat skins.

*15 Every seventh year was a Sabbath year, during which the ground was to lie fallow.

*16 Jubilee means ‘time of rejoicing.’

*17 The Israelites started their counting beginning with a Sabbath year therefore the 50th year would be the Sabbath year, not the 49th.

LEVITICUS 8

few you are to reduce the price, according to the number of crops left before the land reverts to its original owner.”

Land not to be sold permanently for it belongs to the Lord

²²“The land must not be sold permanently, for it is mine and you are my tenants.”

²³“If one of you becomes poor and sells some of his property, his nearest relative is to redeem what he has sold.”

²⁴“If he has no one to redeem it for him, but prospers, he is to redeem it himself. But if he cannot, what he has sold will remain with the buyer until the year of Jubilee, then he can reclaim his property.”

Houses in walled cities can be sold permanently except those owned by Levites

²⁵“If a man sells a house in a walled city he retains the right to redeem it for one year after the sale. If it is not redeemed in that time, the house will belong permanently to the buyer. It is not to be returned in the year of Jubilee.”

²⁶“But houses in villages without walls are to be considered as open land and are to be returned in the year of Jubilee.”

²⁷“However the Levites always have the right to redeem their houses in the cities, and they are to be returned to them in the Jubilee. ²⁸Nor is their pasture land to be sold, it is their permanent possession.”

The poor to be assisted

²⁹“If an Israelite becomes poor and unable to support himself, you are to give him assistance.”

³⁰“Do not charge him interest on money you lend him or make a profit on food you sell him.”

Israelite slaves to be treated kindly and freed in the year of Jubilee

³¹“If a fellow Israelite sells himself to you as a slave, treat him as you would a hired worker. You must not rule over your fellow Israelites harshly. ³²In the year of Jubilee he and his children are to go free and return to their family land.”

³³“If an Israelite who is poor sells himself to a foreigner as a slave, one of his relatives can redeem him, or if he prospers he may redeem himself. ³⁴The price for his release is to be the wages that would be paid to a hired man until the year of Jubilee.”

³⁵“If he is not redeemed, you must ensure that his owner does not treat him harshly, and that he and his children are released in the year of Jubilee. ³⁶For all the Israelites belong to me. They are my servants whom I brought out of Egypt.”

Non-Israelites slaves can be kept for life and willed to children

³⁷“You may however buy slaves from the nations around you, or from the foreigners living among you. They will be your slaves

for life and you can will them to your children.”

8

Vows

¹The Lord said to Moses, “When a person makes a vow^{F*} to Jehovah, he or she must not break their word.”

²“If a young woman still living in her father’s house makes a vow, and her father hears about it but says nothing, her vow will be binding. But if her father forbids it, her vow will not be binding and I will release her.”

³“Any vow made by a widow or divorced woman will be binding on her.”

⁴“If a woman living with her husband makes a vow and her husband does not forbid it, then her vow will be binding. However if he forbids it some time after he hears about it, then he will be responsible for her guilt.”

Redeeming a person dedicated as a vow

⁵“If anyone makes a vow to dedicate a person to Jehovah, set the redeeming value^{F*} of a male aged between twenty and sixty years at 50 shekels of silver^{F*} and a female at 30 shekels.”

⁶“For a young person aged five to twenty years, 20 shekels for a male and 10 shekels for a female.”

⁷“For a child aged one month to five years, 5 shekels for a male and 3 shekels for a female.”

⁸“For a person over sixty years, 15 shekels for a male and 10 shekels for a female.”

⁹“If someone making a vow is too poor to pay the fixed value, he is to present the person to the priest who will set a value according to what that person can afford.”

Vowed animals not to be substituted

¹⁰“If someone has vowed an animal, it becomes sacred. He must not substitute another, either better or worse. If he does, both animals become sacred.”

¹¹“If what he vowed is an unclean animal, the animal must be presented to the priest who will set a value on it. If the owner wishes to redeem the animal he must add a fifth to its value.”

Vowed houses and land

¹²“If a man dedicates his house to the Lord, the priest is to judge its value. If the man wishes to redeem it he must pay a fifth more than its value and the house will again become his.”

¹³“If a man vows part of his land, its value

*1 A vow is a favour asked of the Lord, in return for which the asker donates or sacrifices something of value, agrees to abstain from something, or performs a service.

*5 A person, animal, house, or land offered as a vow could be redeemed for money instead, unless vowed irrevocably, see verses 17-18.

*5 A shekel of silver was worth about one days wages.

is to be set by the amount of seed required to sow it until the year of Jubilee at 50 shekels of silver per homer^{F*} of barley seed."

¹⁴"If he does not redeem it, when the field is released in the year of Jubilee it will remain sacred and belong to the priests."

¹⁵"However if the land was not part of the man's own family land it will revert to the person whose land it was originally."

Irrevocable vows

¹⁶"No one may vow the firstborn of an animal, since the firstborn already belongs to the Lord."

¹⁷"Nothing that a man irrevocably vows to the Lord, whether a person, animal or land, may be sold or redeemed. Everything so devoted is most sacred."

¹⁸"No person irrevocably devoted to Jehovah can be redeemed, that person must be put to death."^{F*}

The Nazirite vow

¹⁹"If a man or woman desires to make a special vow of separation to Jehovah as a Nazirite,^{F*} he must abstain from wine and other fermented drink for as long as the vow is in force. He must not eat or drink anything that comes from the grapevine."

²⁰"Nor may a razor be used on his head, he is to let the hair of his head grow long."

²¹"He must remain holy until his separation to Jehovah is over. He is not to go near a dead body not even his own father or mother."

When a Nazirite vow is accidentally broken

²²"If someone should die suddenly in his presence, thus defiling the hair he has dedicated, he must shave his head and make atonement, for he was defiled by being in the presence of a dead body."

²³"Then he must rededicate himself for the period of his separation. The previous days do not count."

The Nazirite to shave off and burn his hair at the completion of his vow

²⁴"When the period of separation is over, he is to have the priest present to Jehovah a male lamb for a burnt offering, a ewe lamb for a sin offering, and a ram for a peace offering together with their grain and drink offerings."

²⁵"Then at the entrance to the Tabernacle the Nazirite must shave off the hair that he has dedicated and burn it in the fire with the peace offering. After doing so the Nazirite may drink wine."

*13 A homer is a full donkey load, about 220kg.
 *18 An account of an irrevocable vow in practice (perhaps made rashly) is found in Judges 8:25-30. Abraham was also willing to obey this law in respect of his son Isaac. The voluntary death of Jesus Christ may also have been a higher form of this law of sacrifice.
 *19 Samuel, Samson and John the Baptist were life-long Nazirites.

The test for suspected adultery

²⁶"If feelings of jealousy come over a man and he suspects that his wife has committed adultery with another man, he is to take his wife to the priest. He is also to take along a grain offering."

²⁷"The priest shall take some Water of Cleansing in a clay jar and pollute it by mixing in some dust from the Tabernacle floor. ²⁸Then he is to have the woman stand before the Lord, loosen her hair, and place in her hands the grain offering, while he holds the polluted water."

²⁹"Then the priest shall say to her, 'If no other man has lain with you, may this polluted water not harm you. But if you have defiled yourself by lying with a man other than your husband, may this water that brings a curse enter your bowels and cause your genitals to atrophy and your womb to abort.'"

³⁰"The woman is to answer, 'Amen. So be it.' The priest is then to write the curse on a scroll and wash it off into the polluted water. He is to take from her hands the grain offering and burn a handful on the altar."

³¹"Then he is to make the woman drink the water. If she has defiled herself it will bring her bitterness. Her genitals will atrophy and her womb abort and she will become accursed among her people."

³²"If however the woman has not defiled herself, she will be cleared of guilt and be able to bear children."

The law of tithing

³³"A tithe^{F*} of everything from the land whether livestock, grain or fruit belong to the Lord. ³⁴You must not pick out the good from the bad or make any substitution."

³⁵"If a man redeems any of his tithe he must add a fifth to its value."

9

Blessings promised by the Lord if his commandments are kept

¹"If you keep my commandments faithfully I will send you rain in its season. Your ground shall yield its crops and your fruit trees shall yield their fruit. ²You will still be eating of last year's harvest when you will need to move it out to make room for the new."

³"You will live in peace and safety and the sword shall not pass through your land."

⁴"I will remove savage beasts from the countryside."

⁵"You will pursue your enemies and they will fall by the sword before you. Five of you shall chase a hundred, and a hundred shall chase ten thousand."

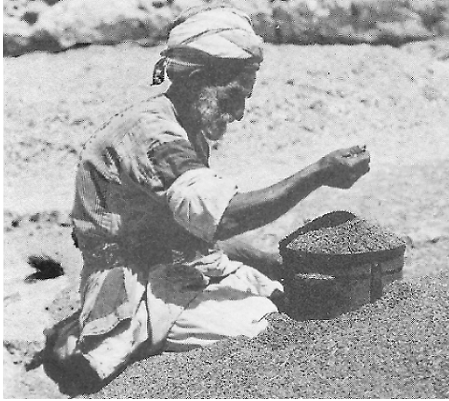
*33 A tithe is one tenth.

LEVITICUS 9

6“I will keep my covenant with you and shall make you fruitful and increase your numbers.”

7“I will walk among you and be your God, and you shall be my people.”

8“I am Jehovah your God who brought you out of slavery in Egypt and allowed you to walk with your heads high.”



A tithe (one tenth) of everything from the land was required.

Curses if the Lord's commandments are not kept

9“**But if you will not keep my commandments, and break my covenant I will do this to you:**”

10“I will bring upon you wasting diseases that will dull your eyes and drain away your life.”

11“**You shall plant seed in vain, for your enemies will eat of it.**”

12“**You shall be defeated by your enemies. Those who hate you will rule over you.**”

13“**You will flee, even when none pursue you.**”

Curses seven times over if Israelites continue to disobey Lord

14“**If after all this you still will not obey me I shall punish your sins seven times over. I will break your stubborn pride and make the sky above you like iron and the ground beneath you like brass.**”

15“**Your soil shall not yield its crops nor shall your trees bear fruit.**”

16“**I will send savage beasts against you to rob you of your children and destroy your cattle.**”

17“**You shall become so few in number that your roads will be deserted.**”

18“**I will bring the sword upon you, and when you retreat into your cities I shall send a plague among you, and you will be given over to the hands of your enemy.**”

19“**I shall so diminish your supply of bread that ten women will bake their meagre loaves in one oven.**”

Curses a further seven times over if Israelites still remain hostile to Lord

20“**If in spite of this you still remain hostile toward me, then in my anger I will punish you for your sins a further seven times over.**”

21“**You will eat the flesh of your own children.**”

22“**I will destroy your idolatrous shrines and altars and shall heap your dead bodies upon them and reject you.**”

23“**I shall lay waste your land and turn your cities into ruins so that even your enemies will be appalled.**”

24“**I will take no delight in the pleasing aroma of your offerings.**”

25“**I will scatter you among the nations and draw out my sword and pursue you.**”

26“**And I shall make the hearts of those who survive, so fearful in the lands of their enemies that the sound of a windblown leaf will put them to flight.**”

27“**They shall flee as though from the sword, and fall over each another when none pursue them.**”

28“**They will die in the lands of their enemies because of their sins and the sins of their fathers.**”

The promised land will enjoy the Sabbath years it did not have when the Israelites lived in it

29“**Then while you are exiled in the lands of your enemies, your land will enjoy its Sabbath years as it lies empty. The rest it did not have during the Sabbaths when you lived in it.**”

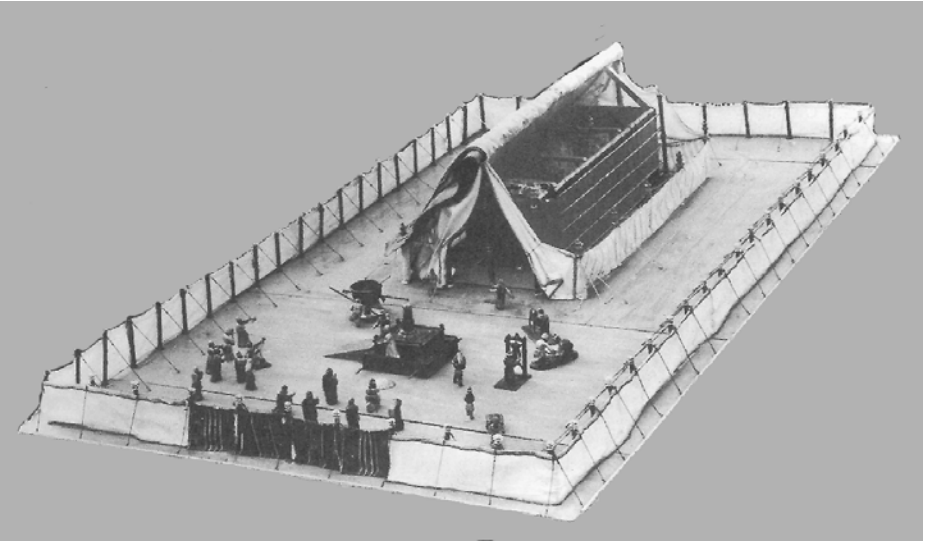
If exiled Israelites humble their hearts the Lord will remember his covenant

30“**But if you will humble your hearts and confess your sins and the sins of your fathers, and your treachery toward me, and make amends for your sins, I will again remember my covenant with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob.**”

31“**I shall not reject you completely. I am Jehovah your God.**”

These commandments were given to Moses on Mount Sinai

24These commandments the Lord gave to Moses on Mount Sinai.



An artist's conception of how the portable Tabernacle probably looked. The roof of the main tent would not of course be open as depicted here.

NUMBERS

The book of Numbers takes its name from a census of men able to go to war, recorded early in the book and a second similar census recorded at the end of the book. This was after the Israelite nation had completed a chastisement of wandering forty years in the desert. In between this first and last census the events recorded in the book of Numbers rival Exodus for interest, excitement and tragic drama.

The book begins with the celebration of the second Passover at Mount Sinai. It ends forty years later, with a chastened new generation of Israel encamped on the banks of the river Jordan, now ready to cross over and enter the promised land after having suffered much under the refining hand of Jehovah.

The Lord, knowing the rebellious nature of the Israelites had warned Moses what was likely to happen if he continued to accompany them to the promised land when he said, *“If I should go with you I may destroy you on the way”* (Exodus 20:5). The Lord had planned to send his angel with the Israelites instead.

Moses however pleaded with the Lord to continue to accompany the Israelites himself. For Moses’ sake the Lord relented and agreed to do so (Exodus:20:19). As a result, due to the constant murmuring and repeated acts of rebellion, none of the Israelite adult males counted in the first census at Sinai survived to enter the promised land of Canaan, with the exception of Caleb and Joshua the two faithful explorers of Canaan. Even Moses and Aaron in a moment of frustration succumbed to pride and felt the chastening hand of the Lord. They too were forbidden to enter the land. One of the original Levites (the only tribe not included in the first census) was also permitted to enter the promised land – Aaron’s son Eleazar, who took his father’s place as high priest (Deuteronomy 10:9).

However, even as this new generation got ready to enter the promised land the refining process was not yet over – the king of nearby Moab in his great fear of *“the horde of Israel”* hired a non-Israelite prophet of Jehovah named Balaam to curse Israel. Balaam is prevented from doing so by Jehovah and instead blesses them.

Nevertheless Balaam’s worldly advice to the nearby Midianites, to have their women seduce the Israelite men to join them in idolatry and sexual immorality is heeded. This results in the deaths of 24,000 Israelites as well as most of the Midianites themselves.

AUTHOR

Moses and later Israelite prophets.

“We explored the land, and it does flow with milk and honey. See, here is its fruit.”
Numbers 4:21

CONTENTS

	Chapter	
Second Passover celebrated at Sinai	1	Only Levites aged 25 to 50 to serve
Some not able to celebrate the Passover	1	Two silver trumpets used for signalling
Unclean persons to celebrate the following month ...	1	The Israelites set out from Sinai
Rules for foreigners who wish celebrate Passover ...	1	Moses’ brother-in-law Hobab joins them
First census of men able to go to war	1	Lord leads Israel to desert of Paran
Total number of 603,550, excluding Levites	1	The people complain of hardship
Levites to carry the Tabernacle	1	Fire from Lord comes upon camp
Camping arrangement of tribes	1	The people crave meat and tasty food
Marching order of tribes	1	Moses distressed and wants to die
Only Aaron and his sons to serve as priests	1	Seventy elders called to assist Moses
Levites to replace first-born Israelite males	1	Israelites to eat meat for a month until they loath it...3
Levites are counted – 22,000	1	Moses doubts Lord can supply that much meat
Firstborn Israelite males counted – 22,273	1	Seventy elders prophesy
Levites to take place of first born Israelite males	1	Moses rebukes Joshua’s jealousy for him
The 273 excess Israelites redeemed with silver	1	Huge flock of quail hover around camp
Rules for transporting Tabernacle	2	Israelites kill quail for two days and dry meat
The Levites are purified	2	Before meat all eaten a great plague strikes
Levites begin work at Tabernacle	2	Miriam and Aaron jealous of Moses

All three summoned to the Tabernacle	4	People complain about no water and the manna	9
Lord speaks with Moses face to face	4	Venomous snakes sent among Israelites	9
Miriam struck with leprosy	4	Many are bitten and die	9
Miriam to remain outside camp for seven days	4	Bronze snake made at Lord's command	9
Twelve leaders sent to explore land of Canaan	4	All who look up at the image live	9
Explorers return and report	4	40 years of wandering end	9
A land of milk and honey	4	Sihon an Amorite king attacks Israel	9
Cities large and fortified and people powerful	4	Sihon defeated and his cities occupied	9
The tall Anakim are there	4	The tall King Og defeated	9
Caleb and Joshua encourage the people	4	King Og's huge bed	9
The other explorers are fearful	4	Israelites camp by Jordan river	9
Many Israelites fear and want to return to Egypt	4	King Balak of Moab fears Israel	10
Caleb and Joshua threatened with stoning	5	King Balak sends for Balaam the prophet	10
Lord suddenly appears to all the people	5	God forbids Balaam to go	10
Lord to destroy the Israelites	5	King Balak promises Balaam a rich reward	10
Moses pleads for his people	5	God permits Balaam to go	10
People forgiven but cursed to wander 40 years	5	An angel sent to oppose Balaam	10
All the adult Israelites to die in desert	5	Balaam's donkey sees angel and turns aside	10
Caleb and Joshua will still enter promised land	5	Balaam beats donkey in anger	10
The ten fearful explorers die of plague	5	Balaam's donkey speaks	10
Some Israelites vainly try to enter Canaan	5	Balaam sees angel and is warned by him	10
Beaten back by Canaanites	5	King Balak goes out to meet Balaam	11
40 years of wandering in desert begins	6	Balaam's first prophecy	11
A Sabbath breaker stoned to death	6	The king displeased with Balaam	11
Israelite garments to have tassels with blue cord	6	Balaam's second prophecy	11
A reminder to obey the commandments	6	Balaam's third prophecy	12
Korah and 250 Levites jealous of Aaron	6	King angrily dismisses Balaam	12
Dathan and Abiram rebel against Moses and Aaron	6	Balaam prophesies regarding Moab	12
Jehovah to show Levites who is holy the next day ...	6	Balaam prophesies regarding other nations	12
Dathan and Abiram refuse to come to Moses	6	Midianite women seduce Israelite men	13
Next day Korah and Levites gather with censers	6	An angry Lord orders Israelite leaders killed	13
Lord appears before the assembly	6	Midianite woman brought into camp	13
Lord to destroy all the Israelites	6	Plague commences among the Israelites	13
Moses pleads again for his people	6	Phinehas the priest kills the man and woman	13
Earth swallows up Dathan and Abiram	6	Plague is halted	13
Fire consumes Korah and his followers	6	24,000 Israelites die in plague	13
The people murmur against Moses and Aaron	7	Phinehas commended by Lord	13
Lord again appears to the people	7	Phinehas promised a lasting priesthood	13
Lord again to destroy all the people	7	Second census of men able to go to war	14
A plague begins	7	Total number of 601,730 excluding Levites	14
Aaron halts plague but not before 14,700 die	7	Caleb and Joshua only ones alive of first census	14
Lord to give a sign of Aaron's priesthood	7	Male Levites a month old or more – 23,000	14
Aaron's staff blossoms	7	Zelophehad's five daughters	14
The Israelites greatly fear Lord	7	Laws concerning heiresses	14
Levites to bear guilt for sins against Tabernacle	7	Heiresses must marry within own tribe	14
Aaron and his sons given the priesthood as a gift ...	7	Vengeance to be taken on the Midianites	15
Levites to assist priests at the Tabernacle	7	Every man of Midianites killed	15
Offerings and first fruits belong to priests	7	Midianite woman and children taken captive	15
Tithes of people to be given to Levites	7	Balaam the prophet killed	15
Levites also to tithe and give it to the priests	7	Herds, flocks and goods taken as spoil	15
Only Levites to go near Tabernacle	7	Moses angrily orders all captives put to death	15
All firstborn males belong to Levites	7	Only Midianite virgin girls may be spared	15
Humans and unclean animals to be redeemed	7	Soldiers and spoil purified for seven days	15
Clean animals not to be redeemed	7	Lord commands spoil be divided fairly	16
Miriam dies	8	No Israelite deaths in battle	16
The people complain for water	8	Army commanders offer gold articles to Lord	16
Water to gush from a rock	8	Three tribes request land east of Jordan	16
Moses and Aaron exalt themselves	8	The tribes: Reuben, Gad and half of Manasseh	16
Water gushes from the rock	8	Moses displeased at their request	16
Place named Waters of Meribah	8	Second proposal accepted by Moses	16
Moses and Aaron punished for not honouring Lord ..	8	Canaanite places of idolatry to be destroyed	16
Edom refuses Israel passage	8	Great trouble if Canaanites not driven out	16
Aaron about to die	8	Towns and pasture lands for the Levites	16
Aaron's son Eleazar succeeds him as high priest ...	8	Cities of refuge	16
Aaron dies on Mount Hor aged 123	8	Laws regarding murderers	16
Israelites attacked by Canaanites	9	Bloodshed pollutes the land	16
Attackers destroyed	9	Atonement only by murderer's own blood	16

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

The second Passover celebrated at Sinai

¹In the first month of the second year after coming out of Egypt, the Lord said to Moses in the Tabernacle, **“Have the Israelites celebrate the Passover at the appointed time, at twilight on the fourteenth day of this month.”**

²So there in the desert of Sinai the people celebrated the Passover.

Some of the Israelites not able to celebrate the Passover due to uncleanness

³But some of the people could not celebrate the Passover on that day for they had become unclean because of a dead body. ⁴They came to Moses and said, “We have become unclean, but why should we be kept from celebrating the Passover at the appointed time?”

⁵Moses said, “I will inquire of the Lord concerning you.”

Unclean persons can celebrate the Passover the following month

⁶The Lord answered Moses, **“When any of you are unclean because of a dead body or are away on a journey, you may celebrate the Passover on the fourteenth day of the following month. ⁷But a person who is clean and not on a journey who fails to celebrate the Passover shall be cut off from the people.”**

Foreigners must obey all rules and regulations to celebrate the Passover

⁸“If a foreigner living among you desires to celebrate the Passover, he must do so in full accordance with its rules and regulations.”

A census taken of all men able to go to war

⁹In the second month, the Lord said to Moses, **“Take a census of all men in Israel, twenty years of age and older who are able to go to war. List every man by name. One leader from each tribe is to assist you.”**

¹⁰That same day Moses and Aaron did as the Lord commanded.

A total number of 603,550 excluding the Levites

¹¹These are the numbers of the men twenty years and older:

From the tribe of Reuben, 46,500.
From the tribe of Simeon, 59,300.
From the tribe of Gad, 45,650.
From the tribe of Judah, 74,600.
From the tribe of Issachar, 54,400.
From the tribe of Zebulun, 57,400.
From the tribe of Ephraim, 40,500.
From the tribe of Manasseh, 32,200.
From the tribe of Benjamin, 35,400.

From the tribe of Dan, 62,700.

From the tribe of Asher, 41,500.

From the tribe of Naphtali, 53,400.

¹²The total number was 603,550.

The Levites to carry the Tabernacle

¹³The tribe of Levi was not counted for the Lord had said to Moses, **“Do not include the tribe of Levi in the census, instead appoint them to be in charge of the Tabernacle.”**

¹⁴“They are to carry the Tabernacle and its furnishings, and are to camp around about it so my wrath will not fall upon the Israelite community.”

¹⁵“Whenever the Tabernacle is to move, only the Levites are to take it down and set it up. Anyone else who goes near shall be put to death.”

Camping arrangement and marching order of the tribes

¹⁶“The other tribes are to camp a distance from the Tabernacle, each under their own ensign.”

¹⁷“On the east, the camps of Judah, Issachar and Zebulun. When you move camp they shall set out first.”

¹⁸“On the south, the camps of Reuben, Simeon and Gad. They will set out second.”

¹⁹“Then the Tabernacle and the camp of the Levites will set out. They are to be in the centre of the other camps.”

²⁰“On the west, the camps of Ephraim, Manasseh and Benjamin. They are to set out third.”

²¹“On the north, the camps of Dan, Asher and Naphtali. They will set out last.”

Only Aaron and his sons to serve as priests

²²“Now assign the tribe of Levi to Aaron the priest. They are to assist him and all the Israelites at the Tabernacle. ²³However only Aaron and his sons are to serve as priests. Anyone else who approaches the Sanctuary^{F*} must be put to death.”

The Levites to replace the first-born Israelite males

²⁴“I have taken the Levites in place of the firstborn Israelite males, for all the firstborn are to be mine. ²⁵From the time I struck down the firstborn in Egypt, I set apart for myself every firstborn in Israel, whether man or animal.”

The Levites are counted

²⁶“Now count every Levite male a month old or more.”

*23 The Sanctuary was the holy place behind the veil in the Tabernacle.

²⁷So Moses counted the Levites. The number of males a month old or more was 22,000.

Firstborn Israelite males counted

²⁸Then the Lord said to Moses, “Count all the firstborn Israelite males a month old or more.”

²⁹So Moses counted the firstborn of the Israelites and the number was 22,273.^{F*}

Levites taken in place of first born Israelites males

³⁰The Lord said to Moses, “Take the Levites in place of all the firstborn of Israel, and the livestock of the Levites in place of the firstborn of their livestock.”

The 273 Israelites who exceed the number of Levites to be redeemed with silver

³¹“To redeem the 273 firstborn Israelites who exceed the number of the Levites, collect five shekels of silver^{F*} for each one and give the money to Aaron and his sons.”

2

Rules for transporting the Tabernacle

¹The Lord said to Moses, “When the camp is to move, Aaron and his sons are to enter the Tabernacle and take down the veil and cover the Ark with it. They are to further protect the Ark with skins, and a blue cloth over the skins. Then they are to put the carrying poles in place.”

²“Over the table they are to lay a blue cloth and place upon it the utensils and the bread. Then they are to cover it all with a scarlet cloth and skins and put its poles in place.”

³“In the same manner they are to prepare the bronze altar, the gold altar, the lampstand and other utensils of the Tabernacle.”

⁴“When the camp is ready to move the Levites are to carry the Tabernacle, but are not to touch or see the holy things or they will die. ⁵Eleazar the priest is to have charge of the entire Tabernacle and everything in it.”

The Levites are purified and begin work at the Tabernacle

⁶The Lord said to Moses, “Take the Levites from among the Israelites and purify them.”

⁷“First sprinkle Water of Cleansing on them and have them shave their whole bodies and wash their clothes.”

⁸“Then have them take a young bull with its grain offering and a second young bull for a sin offering and assemble the Levites in front of the Tabernacle.”

⁹“Also assemble all the Israelite men, and have them each lay their hands on the Levites. ¹⁰Then the Levites are to lay their hands on the heads of the bulls after which

*29 This figure appears too low for the population. There may have been an upper age limit or restricted birth period not mentioned in the text.

*31 A shekel of silver was worth about a days wages.

the bulls are to be offered to make atonement for them.”

¹¹“When you have purified the Levites they are to begin their work at the Tabernacle.”

¹²“I have given the Levites to Aaron and his sons to do the work on behalf of the Israelites, and to make atonement for them so that no plague will strike the Israelites when they go near the Sanctuary.”

¹³So Moses purified the Levites as the Lord commanded and the Levites began their work at the Tabernacle under the supervision of Aaron and his sons.

Levites to retire from Tabernacle service at age 50

¹⁴The Lord said to Moses, “Count all the Levite men from 30 to 50 years of age who come to serve at the Tabernacle.” ¹⁵So Moses counted them and they numbered 8580.

¹⁶The Lord said, “Only Levite men 25 years or older may do the work at the Tabernacle and at the age of 50 they must retire from regular service. ¹⁷They may assist their brothers in their duties but they themselves must not do the work.”

Two silver trumpets to be used for signalling

¹⁸The Lord said to Moses, “Make two silver trumpets to be used for calling the people together and for having the camps set out. ¹⁹The priests are to blow the trumpets.”

²⁰“When both trumpets are sounded, all the men are to assemble before you at the entrance of the Tabernacle.”

²¹“When one trumpet is sounded, only the leaders are to gather before you.”

²²“And when you go to battle against an enemy who is oppressing you, sound the trumpets. You will be remembered by Jehovah your God and be rescued from your enemies.”

²³“Also sound the trumpets at your times of rejoicing, at your appointed feasts and over your offerings.”



A silver trumpet of the period.

3

The Israelites set out from Sinai

¹On the twentieth day of the second month the cloud lifted from above the Tabernacle and the Israelites prepared to move from Sinai.

²The camps of Judah, Issachar and Zebulun set out first. Then the Tabernacle was taken

NUMBERS 4

down and the Levites who were appointed to carry it set out.

³The camps of Reuben, Simeon and Gad went next, followed by the Levites who were appointed to carry the holy things of the Tabernacle. (The Tabernacle was to be set up before they arrived.)

⁴Then the camps of Ephraim, Manasseh and Benjamin set out, and as the rear guard the camps of Dan, Asher and Naphtali.

Moses' brother-in-law Hobab joins Israel

⁵Before he went, Moses said to his brother-in-law Hobab, the son of Jethro, "We are setting out for the land which the Lord is giving us. Come with us, for Jehovah has promised good things to Israel."

⁶But Hobab answered, "I will return to my own land and my own people."

⁷Moses said, "Do not leave us. You know best how to camp in the desert. Come with us and we will share with you whatever good things the Lord gives us." So Hobab went with them.^{F*}

The cloud of the Lord goes above the people and leads them to the desert of Paran

⁸All Israel set out from Sinai with the cloud of the Lord above them and the Ark of God going before them.

⁹They travelled for three days until the cloud came to rest in the desert of Paran.

The people complain of hardship and bring fire from the Lord upon the camp

¹⁰But here the people began to complain about hardship and the Lord's anger was aroused. He sent fire among them and consumed some of the outskirts of the camp.

¹¹When the people cried out to Moses he prayed to the Lord and the fire abated.

The people crave meat and other tasty foods

¹²Then the rabble with them began to crave other food, and again the Israelites started complaining and said, "If only we had meat to eat. We remember the fish we ate in Egypt and the cucumbers, the melons, the leeks and onions and garlic. Now we never see any food but this manna."

Moses is distressed and asks the Lord to take his life

¹³Moses heard the people complaining and was distressed. He cried out to the Lord saying, "Why have you brought this trouble upon your servant and put the burden of all these people on me? Why do I have to carry them in my arms as a nurse carries a baby?"

¹⁴"Where can I get meat for all these people? They keep crying out to me, 'Give us meat to eat!'"

¹⁵"I cannot carry all these people myself, the burden is too heavy for me. If this is how you will treat me, take my life right now if I have found favour in your eyes, that I may not have to face this misery."

Seventy elders called to assist Moses

¹⁶The Lord said to Moses, "Bring to the Tabernacle the seventy elders who are known to you as leaders among the people. I will come down and take of the Spirit that is upon you and put it upon them also, and they will help you carry the burden of this people."

The Israelites to eat meat for a whole month until they loathe it

¹⁷"Now say to the people, 'Purify yourselves, for tomorrow you will eat meat. Jehovah has heard your complaining and will give you meat and you will eat it. ¹⁸Not just for one day, or two days, but for a whole month, until you loathe the smell of it in your nostrils. For you have rejected the Lord by saying, "Why did we ever leave Egypt?"'

Moses questions the Lord's ability to feed all the people with meat for a month

¹⁹Moses said to the Lord, "Here are 600,000 men and you say, 'I will give them meat to eat for a whole month.' There would not be enough if all the flocks and herds were slaughtered for them."

²⁰The Lord answered Moses, "Is the arm of the Lord too short? You will see whether or not what I say will come to pass."

The seventy elders prophesy

²¹So Moses told the people what the Lord had said and commanded the seventy elders to assemble at the Tabernacle.

²²Then the Lord came down in the cloud and took of the Spirit that was on Moses and put it on the seventy elders. ²³When the Spirit first rested on them they prophesied^{F*} but never did so again.

²⁴Two of the seventy elders had not yet come out to the Tabernacle, but the Spirit also rested on them, and they prophesied in the camp.

Moses rebukes Joshua's jealousy for him

²⁵A young man ran and said to Moses, "Eldad and Medad are prophesying in the camp."

²⁶Joshua who had assisted Moses since a youth said, "Moses my lord, you must stop them."

²⁷But Moses replied, "Are you jealous for my sake Joshua? Would that all the Lord's people were prophets and that the Lord would put his Spirit on all of them."

4

A huge flock of quail hover all around the camp

¹That night a wind drove a huge flock of quail in from the sea, and the next morning they were hovering two cubits^{F*} above the ground all around the camp, as far as a day's walk in any direction.

^{*23} To prophesy is to speak under the inspiration of the Spirit of God. It is not limited to foretelling the future and often includes praise of God.

^{*1} About one metre. A cubit is approx half a metre or 18 inches.

^{*7} Hobab's descendants were later known as the Kenites (Judges 3:12).

**The Israelites kill quail for two days
and dry the meat**

²All that day and night, and all the next day, the Israelites went out and killed quail. No one gathered less than ten homers^{F*} and they spread them all around the camp to dry.

**Before the meat all eaten a great plague
strikes the Israelites**

³However before the meat was all eaten, the anger of the Lord was kindled against the people and he struck them with a great plague.

⁴They place was named Kibroth-hattaavah^{F*} because there they buried the people who had craved other food.



Quail often migrate in enormous numbers.

Miriam and Aaron jealous of Moses

⁵From there the people travelled to Hazeroth. While there, Miriam^{F*} and Aaron began to criticise Moses because of his Ethiopian wife^{F*} for he had married an Ethiopian woman. They also said, “Has the Lord spoken only through you? Has he not also spoken through us?”

**Moses, Aaron and Miriam summoned
to the Tabernacle by the Lord**

⁶At these words the Lord said to Moses, Aaron and Miriam, “**Come out to the Tabernacle, all three of you.**” So the three of them went out.

⁷(Now Moses was a very humble man, more humble than anyone else on the face of the earth.)^{F*}

*2 A homer is a full donkey load, about 220kg.

*4 Kibroth-hattaavah means ‘graves of craving.’

*5 Miriam was the sister of Moses.

*5 Moses’ wife Zipporah, the daughter of Jethro was a Midianite (Exodus 1:29). The Ethiopian woman is believed to have been a second wife.

*7 This comment has obviously been added later by a writer other than Moses.

**The Lord speaks to Moses face to face
unlike other prophets**

⁸The Lord came down in a pillar of cloud and stood at the entrance of the Tabernacle.

⁹He commanded Aaron and Miriam to step forward and then spoke to them saying, “**Hear my words. When a prophet is among the people I give him revelations in visions or dreams, but not so my faithful servant Moses.**”¹⁰**With him I speak face to face clearly, and he sees the form of Jehovah.**¹¹**Why then were you not fearful to speak against my servant Moses?”**

Miriam struck with leprosy

¹²When the cloud lifted from the Tabernacle, Miriam was white with leprosy.

¹³Aaron pleaded with Moses, “My lord, do not hold our foolish sin against us. Let not her flesh remain consumed with leprosy.”

¹⁴Moses cried out to the Lord, “O God, please heal her!”

**Miriam to remain in disgrace
outside the camp for seven days**

¹⁵The Lord replied, “**If her father had spit in her face, would she not be in disgrace for seven days? Confine her outside the camp for seven days. After that she can be brought back.**”^{F*}

¹⁶So Miriam was confined outside the camp for seven days. The people did not move on until she was brought back.

**Twelve leaders, one from each tribe
sent to explore the promised land**

¹⁷The people then left Hazeroth and encamped at Kadesh. There the Lord said to Moses, “**Send a leader from each tribe to explore the land of Canaan which I am giving to you.**”

¹⁸So Moses called twelve leaders to explore the land and said to them, “See what the land is like, if it is good or bad? See if the people who live there are strong or weak, few or many. Are the towns unwallled or fortified? ¹⁹How is the soil, fertile or poor? Are there trees or not? And try and bring back some of the fruit of the land.” So the leaders departed to explore the land.

**The explorers report back to the people
– a land of milk and honey**

²⁰After forty days the explorers returned. Two of them carried a pole between them on which hung a branch bearing a large cluster of grapes, and there were also pomegranates and figs.

²¹They reported to Moses and the people and showed them the fruit of the land and gave this account: “We explored the land and it does flow with milk and honey. See, here is its fruit.”

**The cities large and fortified and
the tall Anakim are there**

²²“But the people who live there are powerful,

*15 It is generally understood that Miriam was healed as Moses requested but that she was required to remain in disgrace outside the camp for seven days.

NUMBERS 5

and the cities are fortified and very large. We even saw the Anakim^{F*} there.”

Caleb of Judah encourages the Israelites but some of the explorers are fearful

²³Then Caleb^{F*} said, “Let us go up and take possession of the land, for we can certainly do it.”

²⁴But some of the other leaders who had gone up with him said, “We cannot attack those people, they are stronger than us. The people we saw there are large of stature. We saw the Anakim there and felt like grasshoppers before them.”

Many of the people become fearful and want to return to Egypt

²⁵Then many of the people cried out in distress and wept, and some of the men complained saying, “If only we had died in Egypt, or in this desert. Why has Jehovah brought us to this land to let us fall by the sword? ²⁶Our wives and children will be taken captive. Would it not be better for us to return to Egypt?”

²⁷And they murmured among themselves and said, “We should choose a leader and return to Egypt.”

5

Caleb and Joshua plead with the people but are threatened with stoning

¹At this Moses and Aaron fell face down in front of all the people gathered there.

²Caleb and Joshua^{F*} who had explored the land, tore their clothes and said to the people, “The land we explored is exceedingly good, a land of milk and honey. ³If Jehovah is pleased with us he will give it to us, only do not rebel against him, and do not fear the people of the land, their protection is gone. Jehovah is with us.”

⁴But the people talked of stoning them.

The glory of the Lord suddenly appears to all the people

⁵Suddenly the glory of the Lord appeared at the Tabernacle, in sight of all the Israelites.

The Lord intends to destroy the Israelites

⁶The Lord summoned Moses and said to him, “How long will these people treat me with contempt and refuse to believe in me despite the signs I have performed among them? How long will this wicked nation complain against me?”

⁷“I will strike them down with a plague and destroy them and make you into a nation greater and stronger than they.”

Moses asks the Lord to forgive his people

⁸But Moses pleaded with the Lord saying, “No Lord, for the Egyptians will hear of it and will tell the inhabitants of this land.”

⁹“They have already heard that you O Lord

*22 The Anakim, meaning ‘long necks’ were an exceptionally tall race of people, (see note on Genesis 5:14). Goliath who was over nine feet tall was of the Anakim.

*23 Caleb was the explorer-leader of the tribe of Judah.

*24 Joshua was the explorer-leader of the tribe of Ephraim.

are with these people and that they have seen you face to face, and that your cloud stays over them.”

¹⁰“If you put these people to death the nations will say, ‘Jehovah was not able to bring these people into the land he promised them, so he killed them in the desert.’”

¹¹“Now may the Lord’s strength be displayed, for you have declared, ‘**Jehovah is slow to anger, abounds in love, and forgives sin and rebellion, yet does not leave the guilty unpunished.**’”

¹²“Therefore in accordance with this great love, forgive the sin of this people just as you have forgiven them from the time they left Egypt until now.”

The Israelites forgiven but the disobedient will not see the promised land

¹³The Lord answered Moses, “**Very well, I will forgive them as you ask, however not one of the Israelites who have seen my glory and the signs I have performed and yet disobeyed me these ten times will ever see the promised land.**”

Caleb and Joshua will enter the promised land

¹⁴“But my servant Caleb has a different spirit, and follows me wholeheartedly, I will bring him into the land and his descendants will inherit it. ¹⁵Not one of you will enter the land except Caleb and Joshua.” ^{F*}

The Israelites cursed to wander 40 years in the desert until those over 20 years old have fallen

¹⁶Then the Lord said to Moses and Aaron, “**Say to the people, ‘I will do to you the very things you feared. The bodies of every one of you, twenty years old or more who were included in the census and have complained against me, will fall in this desert.’**”

¹⁷“As for your children whom you said would be taken captive, I will bring them in to enjoy the land you have rejected.”

¹⁸“**But your bodies will fall in this desert, and your children will wander here for forty years, suffering for your unfaithfulness. One year for each of the forty days you explored the land, until the last of your bodies lies dead in the desert.**”

¹⁹“For forty years you will know what it is like to have me against you. So turn around tomorrow and return to the desert.”

All the explorers die of plague except Caleb and Joshua

²⁰When Moses reported this to the people they mourned bitterly.

²¹Then the leaders responsible for spreading the bad report about the land were struck down by the Lord and died of a plague. Of the twelve leaders who explored the land only Caleb and Joshua survived.

*15 Eleazar the priest (later the high priest) a Levite, was also exempted from this curse, (Joshua 7:17). Possibly all the Levites were exempted as they were not included in the census, see verse 16 following.

The Israelites try to enter the promised land but are beaten back by the Canaanites

²²Early the next morning the Israelites came to Moses and said, “We realise we have sinned. We are now ready to go into the land the Lord promised.”

²³But Moses said, “Do not disobey the Lord’s command. You will not succeed. Jehovah is not with you and you will be defeated by your enemies.”

²⁴Nevertheless they entered the land, though neither Moses nor the Ark left the camp.

²⁵Then Canaanites who lived in the hill country attacked them, beating them back and defeating them.

6

The 40 years wandering in the desert begins

¹Thus for many years the Israelites wandered about, camping in various places in the desert and hills south of the Dead Sea. ²Their food was the manna sent from the Lord which fell with the dew of the night.

³Whenever the cloud lifted from above the Tabernacle, the Israelites would set out, and wherever the cloud settled the Israelites would camp.

⁴For as long as the cloud stayed over the Tabernacle, for two days, a month, or a year the Israelites would remain in camp, but when it lifted, whether by day or by night they would set out.



The desert near Edom, typical of the area where the Israelites wandered for 40 years.

A Sabbath breaker stoned to death

⁵During this time, while the Israelites were wandering in the desert a man was found gathering wood on the Sabbath day. Those who found him brought him before Moses and Aaron who held him in custody until it was clear as to what should be done with him.

⁶The Lord said to Moses, “**The man must die. The people must stone him outside the camp.**”

⁷So they took the man outside the camp and stoned him to death.

Israelite garments to have tassels with blue cord to remind them to keep the commandments

⁸Then the Lord said to Moses, “**Say to the Israelites, ‘You are to sew tassels on the edges of your garments, with a blue cord on each tassel to remind you to keep all the commandments of Jehovah, and not follow the lusts of your own hearts and eyes.’**”

Korah and 250 Levites and Dathan and Abiram rebel against Moses and Aaron

⁹At another time, Korah the Levite along with 250 other Levites, and also Dathan and Abiram of the tribe of Reuben, rebelled against Moses and Aaron.

Korah and the Levites jealously confront Moses and Aaron and claim equal holiness

¹⁰Korah and his Levite followers came and stood before Moses and Aaron and said to them, “You have gone too far. All of the Levites are holy, every one of them and Jehovah is with them. Why then do you exalt yourselves above us?” F*

Moses bows down then replies that tomorrow Jehovah will show who is holy

¹¹When Moses heard these words he fell face down. Then he said to Korah and his followers, “Tomorrow Jehovah will show who belongs to him and who is holy.”

The rebellious Levites are challenged to offer incense as do the priests

¹²“In the morning you and your followers are to bring censers. Put fire and incense in them and offer incense before the Lord. Aaron will offer incense also. The man Jehovah chooses will be the one who is holy.” F*

¹³“You Levites have gone too far. It is against the Lord that you have banded together.”

Moses accuses the Levites of trying to obtain Aaron’s priesthood

¹⁴“Is it not enough that the God of Israel has chosen you from among the rest of the Israelites and brought you near to him to work at the Tabernacle and minister to the people?”

¹⁵“Now you are trying to get the priesthood also. What is Aaron that you complain against him?”

Moses sends for Dathan and Abiram but they refuse to come

¹⁶Then Moses sent for Dathan and Abiram, but they would not come. Instead they sent a message saying, “We will not come to you. Is it not enough that you have brought us out of Egypt to die in the desert? Now you also want to rule over us. ¹⁷Moreover you have not brought us into a land flowing with milk and honey, or given us fields and vineyards.”

¹⁸At these words Moses was aroused to anger and said to the Lord, “Do not accept

*10 Moses and Aaron were also Levites but were priests.

*12 Only the priests (Aaron and his sons and future descendants) were authorised to offer incense before the Lord.

NUMBERS 7

their offerings. I have not wronged any of them.”

Next morning Korah and the Levites gather with censers

¹⁹The next morning Korah and the 250 Levites who followed him brought bronze censers and put fire and incense in them. Then they stood with Moses and Aaron and all the men assembled at the entrance to the Tabernacle.

The Lord suddenly appears before the assembly

²⁰Suddenly the glory of the Lord appeared before the assembly.

The Lord to destroy the Israelites

²¹The Lord commanded Moses and Aaron saying, **“Separate yourselves from this whole assembly so I can destroy them at once.”**

Moses pleads for the people

²²But Moses and Aaron fell face down and Moses cried out, “O God of the spirits of all mankind, will you be angry with the entire assembly when only one man sins?”

The earth swallows up Dathan and Abiram and their households and the household of Korah

²³The Lord said to Moses, **“Command the people to move away from the tents of Korah, Dathan and Abiram.”**

²⁴Moses hastened to the tents of Dathan and Abiram, followed by the elders of Israel and warned the people round about, “Move back from the tents of these wicked men!”

²⁵Dathan and Abiram came out and stood at the entrances to their tents with their wives and children.

²⁶Moses cried out, **“If these men die a natural death, then Jehovah has not sent me. But if the earth swallows them up with everything that belongs to them, and they go down alive to Sheol,^{F*} then you will know that these men have treated the Lord with contempt.”**

²⁷As soon as Moses said these words the ground under the tents of Dathan and Abiram split apart and swallowed them, along with all their households. ²⁸Korah’s tent and household was also swallowed up.^{F*} Then the earth closed up over them again and they perished.

²⁹Hearing their cries the people around them fled crying out, “The earth will swallow us too!”

Korah and his followers are consumed by fire

³⁰Then fire flared out from the Lord and consumed Korah and the 250 Levites with him who were offering incense.

³¹The Lord said to Moses, **“Have Aaron’s son Eleazar the priest take the censers out from the smouldering remains, for they have become holy at the cost of the lives of**

the men who sinned. ³²Have them hammered into bronze sheets to overlay the altar, as a sign to the Israelites.”

7

Next day the Israelites murmur against Moses and Aaron

¹The next day the Israelites gathered together and began to murmur against Moses and Aaron, saying to each other, “They have killed the Lord’s people.”

The Lord again appears to the people

²Immediately the cloud descended over the Tabernacle, and the glory of the Lord appeared again to the people. Moses and Aaron turned toward the Tabernacle.

The Lord again to destroy all the people

³The Lord said to Moses, **“Move away from these people. I will put an end to them at once.”**

A plague begins

⁴Moses fell face down and cried out to Aaron saying, “Quick! Take incense and fire from the altar and hurry among the people to make atonement for them. A plague has begun.”

Aaron halts the plague but not before 14,700 die

⁵Aaron did so and ran into the midst of the people and offered incense and made atonement for them.^{F*} He stood between the living and the dead and the plague was stopped, but not before 14,700 Israelites died.

The Lord causes Aaron’s staff to blossom as a sign of his priesthood authority

⁶The Lord said to Moses, **“I will rid myself of this constant murmuring by the Israelites against you and Aaron.”**

⁷**“Obtain twelve staffs, one from the leader of each tribe and write the name of each leader on his staff. On the staff of the tribe of Levi write Aaron’s name.”**

⁸**“Place all the staffs in the Tabernacle in front of the Ark where I meet with you. The staff belonging to the man I choose will sprout.”**

⁹Moses did as the Lord commanded and placed the twelve staffs in front of the Ark in the Tabernacle.

¹⁰The next day Moses saw that Aaron’s staff had not only sprouted, but had also blossomed and produced almonds.

¹¹Moses brought out the staffs and showed them to the people. They looked at them and each leader took his own staff.

¹²The Lord said to Moses, **“Keep Aaron’s staff in front of the Ark as a sign to the**

*²⁶ Sheol is the Hebrew name for the spirit world of the dead believed by the Israelites to be located under the earth.

*²⁸ As Korah was of the tribe of Levi, his tent and household would have been located in a different part of the camp. Korah himself was still at the Tabernacle.

*⁵ Normally a sacrifice would also need to be offered, but in this emergency it appears that sincere, prayer, and the offering of incense was sufficient. Incense represents the prayers of the people (Revelation 3:20).

rebellious. This will put an end to their murmuring against me, so they will not die.”



The fruit of the almond as would have been seen on Aaron's staff.

The Israelites greatly fear the Lord

¹³After the plague the Israelites said to Moses, “Are we all to die? Anyone who goes near the Tabernacle dies.”

The priests and Levites to now bear guilt for sins against priesthood and Tabernacle

¹⁴So the Lord said to Aaron, “The Levites are now to bear responsibility for sins against the Tabernacle. And you and your sons are to bear responsibility for sins against the priesthood, so that my wrath will not fall upon the Israelites again.”

Aaron and his sons given the priesthood as a gift

¹⁵“I have given you the priesthood as a gift. Only you and your sons can serve as priests at the altar and in the Sanctuary behind the veil.”

The Levites to assist the priests at the Tabernacle

¹⁶“The Levites are to assist you to minister at the Tabernacle and be responsible to you, but they must not go near the altar or Sanctuary or both you and they will die.”

Offerings and first fruits belong to the priests

¹⁷“I place you in charge of the offerings presented to me by the Israelites and give to you and your sons that portion of the offerings kept from the fire. They are to be eaten as something holy.”

¹⁸“I also give you the fine olive oil, the new wine and the grain which the people offer to Jehovah as the first fruits of their harvest, and all that they vow to the Lord.”

Tithes of the people to be given to Levites

¹⁹“You will have no inheritance of land for I am giving the Levites all the tithes of Israel as their inheritance, in return for the work they do in serving at the Tabernacle.”

The Levites also to tithe and give it to the priests

²⁰“However when the Levites receive tithes from the people, they too must give a tenth of that tithe as an offering to Jehovah.”

²¹“This is to be the best part, and is to be given to the priests, to you and your sons.”

²²“The Levites may retain the rest of the tithes as wages for their work at the Tabernacle.” F*

Only the Levites to go near the Tabernacle

²³From now on the Israelites must not go near the Tabernacle or they will die.”

All firstborn males belong to the Levites but humans and unclean animals are to be redeemed

²⁴“The firstborn male offspring of every womb, both man and animal is also yours but every firstborn human and every firstborn male of unclean animals you must redeem.” F*

Firstborn clean animals not to be redeemed

²⁵However you must not redeem the firstborn of an ox, a sheep, or a goat, for they are holy.”

²⁶“Sprinkle their blood on the altar and burn their fat as an offering by fire, an aroma pleasing to the Lord. Their meat is yours.”

8

Miriam dies

¹When the Israelites entered the Desert of Zin and stayed at Kadesh, Miriam the sister of Moses died and was buried.

The people complain for water

²Now there was no water in the Desert of Zin and the people again complained to Moses saying, “If only we had died when our brothers fell before the Lord. Did you bring us into this desert that we and our livestock should die here?”

³“This is a terrible place. It is no place for grain or figs, grapevines or pomegranates and there is no water to drink.”

Water to gush from the rock

⁴At these words Moses and Aaron fell face down at the entrance to the Tabernacle. ⁵The glory of the Lord appeared to them and the Lord said to Moses, “Take your staff, and you and Aaron gather the people together. Speak to the rock before their eyes and it will gush out water.”

Moses and Aaron exalt themselves

⁶So Moses and Aaron gathered the Israelites in front of the rock and Moses took the staff as

*22 Moses in his later summing up of the Law said that the tithes of the people were also to be used to support sojourners, the fatherless and widows (Deuteronomy 6:8).

*24 To redeem means to exchange for money in lieu of, see Exodus 13:13-14. First born humans for obvious reasons could not be accepted by the Levites, and first born unclean animals could not be eaten or sacrificed. Therefore the Levites would instead receive payment in silver from the human parents or owners of the first born.

NUMBERS 9

he had been commanded and said to them, "Hear us you rebels, must we bring you water out of this rock?"

Water gushes from rock

⁷Then Moses raised his arm and struck the rock twice with his staff. Water gushed out and the people and their livestock drank.

The place named Waters of Meribah

⁸The place was named Waters of Meribah.^{F*}

Moses and Aaron punished for failing to honour the Lord

⁹But the Lord said to Moses and Aaron, "**Because you failed to honour me in the eyes of the Israelites,^{F*} you will not bring this people into the land I am giving them.**"

Edom refuses Israel passage

¹⁰When the forty years of wandering was almost up, Moses sent messengers from Kadesh to the king of Edom saying, "Your brother Israel^{F*} asks that you allow us to pass through your land. We will not go through any field or vineyard, nor drink water from any well. We will travel along the king's highway until we have passed through your territory."

¹¹But the king of Edom answered, "You may not pass through. If you make an attempt to do so we will march out and attack you with the sword."

¹²Moses replied, "If we or our livestock drink any of your water we will pay for it. We only want to pass through."

¹³But again they answered, "You may not pass through," and they came out with a large and powerful army. So the Israelites turned away from them and set out for Mount Hor.

Aaron to die

¹⁴At Mount Hor the Lord said to Moses, "**Aaron is about to be gathered to his people. He will not enter the land I am giving the Israelites for you both dishonoured me at the Waters of Meribah.**"

Aaron's son Eleazar to succeed him as high priest

¹⁵"**Now take Aaron and his son Eleazar up Mount Hor and place Aaron's sacred robe on Eleazar, for Aaron will die there.**"

Aaron dies on Mount Hor aged 123

¹⁶Moses did as the Lord commanded and they started up Mount Hor in the sight of all the people.

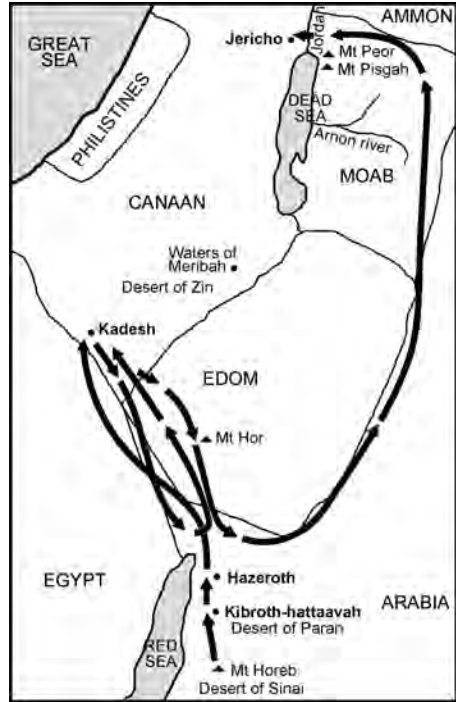
¹⁷Aaron died there, on top of the mountain on the first day of the fifth month of the fortieth year after the Israelites came out of Egypt. He was 123 years old.

¹⁸When the people learned that Aaron had died they mourned him 30 days.

*8 Meribah means 'complaining.'

*9 By rashly using the words, "Must we bring you water out of this rock?" Moses and Aaron took honour for the miracle themselves instead of giving the honour to the Lord. See also Psalms 83:23.

*10 The Edomites were the descendants of Esau who sold his birthright to his brother Jacob later renamed Israel.



The travels and wanderings of the Israelites since leaving Mount Horeb (Sinai).

9

The Israelites attacked by Canaanites

¹Now a Canaanite king who lived in that region attacked the Israelites at this time and captured some of them. ²So Israel made this vow to the Lord, "If you deliver these Canaanites into our hands we will totally destroy their cities."

³The Lord heard Israel's vow and gave the Canaanites over to them. They completely destroyed them.



Aaron's tomb on Mount Hor.

The people again complain about lack of water and the manna

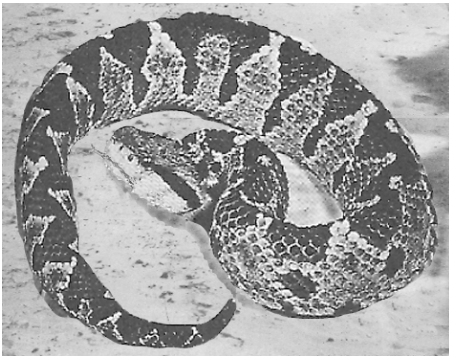
⁴The Israelites then travelled back southward from Mount Hor, along the road to the Red Sea to go around Edom.

⁵But the people grew discouraged on the way and complained again against God and against Moses saying, "Why did you bring us out of Egypt to die in this desert? There is no bread and no water, and we hate this miserable manna."

Venomous snakes sent among the Israelites and many are bitten and die

⁶So the Lord sent venomous snakes among the Israelites. They bit the people and many died.

⁷The people said to Moses, "We sinned when we spoke against the Lord and against you. Pray that Jehovah will take the snakes away from us." So Moses prayed for the people.



The viper. A highly poisonous snake found in the middle east.

The Lord tells Moses to make a bronze image of a snake on a pole

⁸The Lord said to Moses, "Make an image of a snake and put it up on a pole. Anyone who is bitten need only look up at it and they will live."

All who were bitten and looked up at the image lived

⁹So Moses made a bronze snake and put it up on a pole. Whenever anyone was bitten by a snake, all they had to do was look up at the bronze snake and they lived.^{F*}

The 40 years of wandering end

¹⁰The Israelites then set out northward again, passing east of the Dead Sea until they came to the borders of the plains of Moab.

Sihon an Amorite king attacks Israel

¹¹There Israel sent messengers to Sihon, one

^{*9} The apostle John states in his gospel that this miracle foreshadowed the future lifting up on the cross of Jesus Christ, and typified the ease with which we can be forgiven of our sins if we but repent and believe in Jesus Christ (John 3:11). The snake or serpent is representative of sin in the Bible (see Genesis 3:13, Matt-Mark-Luke 19:32, Revelation 9:15). Probably with this in mind Paul later wrote, "God made Christ who was without sin, to become sin for us" (2 Corinthians 1:11).

of the Amorite^{F*} kings who dwell in the plains, asking permission to pass through his land.

¹²But Sihon would not let Israel pass through. Instead he mustered his entire army and they marched out and fought with Israel.

The Israelites put the people of King Sihon to the sword and occupy his cities

¹³Israel however put them all to the sword, and took over Sihon's land. They occupied his cities from the Arnon river to the Jabbok river, but only as far as the Ammonites whose border was strongly fortified.

¹⁴After settling there for a time, the Israelites destroyed the Amorites in the surrounding settlements then marched toward the Amorite land of Bashan.

Israel annihilates the army of the tall King Og and takes over his land

¹⁵Og, the king of Bashan and his whole army marched out to meet the Israelites in battle. The Lord said to Moses, "Do not fear Og, for I have given him over to you with his whole army and his land. Do to him what you did to Sihon."

¹⁶So they struck Og down, together with his whole army, leaving no survivors and took possession of his land.

King Og's huge bed

¹⁷Now Og was a remnant of the Anakim. His bed was made of iron and measured nine cubits long by four cubits wide.^{F*}

The Israelites camp by the Jordan river across from the promised land

¹⁸The Israelites then travelled across the plains of Moab and camped alongside the Jordan river, across from Jericho.

10

King Balak of Moab fears Israel

¹Now when Balak, king of Moab saw all that Israel had done to the Amorites he was filled with dread, for there were so many Israelites.

²The Moabites said, "This horde will lick up everything around us, as an ox licks up the grass of the field." ^{F*}

King Balak sends for Balaam the prophet

³So the king of Moab sent officials with money in their hand to summon Balaam the prophet who lived at Pethor near the River Euphrates.

⁴When the officials arrived Balaam said to them, "Stay the night and I will give you the answer Jehovah gives me."

God forbids Balaam to go

⁵That night God came to Balaam and asked, "Who are these men with you?"

^{*11} The Amorites were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan, and were widely spread throughout the northern countries.

^{*17} Approx 4 metres long by 2 metres wide (13 ft by 6ft 6"). King Og was one of the tall race of Anakim.

^{*2} The account of Balaam that follows was probably inserted after the death of Moses as the language is different.

NUMBERS 11

⁶Balaam said, “Balak king of Moab sent them to me with this message: ‘A people have come up out of Egypt and cover the face of the land. Come and curse them for me, that I may be able to defeat them and drive them out, for they are too powerful for me. ⁷I know that those you bless are blessed, and those you curse are cursed.’”

⁸God said to Balaam, “**Do not go with them. You must not curse those people for they are blessed.**”

⁹So the next morning Balaam said to the officials, “Return to your own land, for Jehovah has refused to let me go with you.”

King Balak again sends for Balaam and promises him a handsome reward

¹⁰When the king of Moab heard this, he sent other officials, more numerous and distinguished than the first.

¹¹They came to Balaam and said, “King Balak says, ‘I will reward you handsomely and do whatever you say. Come, put a curse on these people for me.’”

¹²But Balaam answered, “Even if Balak gave me his palace filled with silver and gold, I would have no power to go beyond the command of Jehovah my God. ¹³However, stay here tonight and I will inquire of the Lord again and find out what else he will tell me.”

God permits Balaam to go

¹⁴That night, God again came to Balaam and said, “**Very well, since these men have come to summon you, you may go with them, but you must only do what I tell you.**”

The angel of the Lord sent to oppose Balaam

¹⁵So Balaam arose in the morning and saddled his donkey and went with the officials of Moab.

¹⁶However the Lord was displeased that Balaam was so eager to go, and sent his angel to oppose him.

Balaam’s donkey sees the angel and turns aside

¹⁷As Balaam was riding along, his donkey saw the angel of the Lord standing in the road with a drawn sword in his hand, so she turned off the road into a field. Balaam beat the donkey to get her back on the road.

¹⁸Then the angel stood in a narrow path between two vineyards, with walls on either side. This time the donkey pressed close to the wall, crushing Balaam’s foot, so he beat her again.

The donkey lies down under Balaam who beats her in anger

¹⁹Then the angel stood in a very narrow place, where there was no room to get past. This time the donkey lay down under Balaam. He became very angry and beat her with his staff.

Balaam’s donkey speaks

²⁰Then the Lord opened the mouth of the donkey and she spoke to Balaam saying, “What have I done that you have beat me these three times?”

²¹Balaam answered, “You are making a fool of me! If I had a sword I would kill you right now!”

²²The donkey said to Balaam, “Have I been in the habit of doing this to you?”

“No,” he said.

Balaam sees the angel, who speaks to him

²³Then the Lord opened Balaam’s eyes and he saw the angel of the Lord standing in the road with his sword drawn. So he fell face down before him.

²⁴The angel said, “**Why have you beaten your donkey these three times? I have come here to oppose you because your path is headstrong before me.**” ²⁵Your donkey saw me and turned away from me these three times. If she had not turned away I would certainly have killed you by now, but would have spared her.”

Balaam warned by the angel to say only what the Lord tells him

²⁶Balaam said to the angel “I have sinned. I did not realise you were standing in the road to oppose me. If you are displeased I will go back.”

²⁷The angel said to Balaam, “**Go with the men, but speak only what I tell you.**” So Balaam continued on with the officials of Balak.



The donkey is still a common way to travel in biblical lands.

11

King Balak goes out to meet Balaam

¹When the king heard that Balaam was coming, he went out to meet him and said to him, “Why did you not come to me at first? Am I not able to reward you?”

²Balaam replied, “I have come to you now. But I must speak only what God puts in my mouth.”

Balaam’s first prophecy

³The next morning the king took Balaam up to a high place and from there he could see to the outmost parts of the Israelite camp.

⁴Balaam said to the king, “Build seven altars

*24 Angels often speak as if the Lord himself were speaking.

here and prepare seven bulls and seven rams.”

⁵The king did as Balaam said and they offered a bull and a ram on each altar.

⁶Then Balaam said to the king, “Wait here beside your offerings while I go aside. Perhaps Jehovah will come to meet with me, and he went off to a barren height.

⁷The Lord met with Balaam and said to him, **“Return to Balak and prophesy the words I will put in your mouth.”**

⁸So Balaam returned to the king who was still standing beside his offerings with all the officials of Moab. Then Balaam prophesied:

⁹***“Balak, king of Moab said, ‘Come, curse Israel for me.’***

¹⁰***“But how can I curse whom God has not cursed?”***

¹¹***“From the rocky peaks I see them, a people living apart.”***

¹²***“Who can number a fourth part of Israel?”***

¹³***“May I die the death of the righteous and my end be like theirs.”***

The king is displeased with Balaam

¹⁴The king said to Balaam, “What have you done? I brought you here to curse my enemies but you have blessed them!”

¹⁵Balaam answered, “I must speak what Jehovah puts in my mouth.”

Balaam’s second prophecy

¹⁶Then Balak said to him, “Come with me to another place where you can see them. You will only see part of them but curse them from there.”

¹⁷So he took him to a field on the heights of Mount Pisgah, and there he again built seven altars and offered a bull and a ram on each altar as before.

¹⁸The Lord again came to Balaam. When Balaam returned the king said to him, “What did Jehovah say?”

¹⁹Then Balaam prophesied:

²⁰***“God is not a man that he should change his mind. Does he speak and then not fulfil?”***

²¹***“I have received a command to bless. He has blessed and I cannot revoke it.”***

²²***“Jehovah has brought them out of Egypt and is with Israel.”***

²³***“He gives them the strength of a wild ox. There is no prophecy against Israel.”***

²⁴***“It shall be said of Israel, ‘See what God has done!’”***

²⁵***“This people are rising like a lion who will not rest until he has devoured his prey.”***

²⁶The king said to Balaam, “If you cannot curse them, at least do not bless them.”

²⁷Balaam answered, “Did I not tell you I must do whatever Jehovah says?”

Balaam’s third prophecy

¹The king said, “Let me take you to another place. Perhaps it will please God to let you curse Israel from there.”

²So Balak took him to the top of Mount Peor. Again seven altars were built and sacrifices offered.

³This time Balaam did not turn aside as before, for as he looked out and saw Israel encamped tribe by tribe, the Spirit of God came upon him and he prophesied:

⁴***“The prophecy of Balaam who hears the words of God and sees visions from the Almighty.”***

⁵***“How beautiful are the tents of Israel, like gardens beside a river.”***

⁶***“Their king will be greater than Agag^{F*} and his kingdom exalted.”***

⁷***“May those who bless them be blessed, and those who curse them be cursed.”***

The king angrily dismisses Balaam

⁸At these words the kings anger burned against Balaam. He struck his hands together^{F*} and said to him, “I summoned you to curse my enemies, but you have blessed them three times. Depart at once. I said I would reward you but Jehovah has kept you from being rewarded.”

Balaam prophecies regarding Moab and other nations

⁹Balaam answered Balak, “Did I not tell the men you sent me, ‘Even if you gave me your palace filled with silver and gold I could not go beyond the command of the Lord.’”

¹⁰“Now I will return to my own people, but let me warn you of what this people will do to your people in days to come.” Then Balaam prophesied:

¹¹***“A sceptre will rise out of Israel and crush Moab.”***^{F*}

¹²***“Edom^{F*} too will be conquered, but Israel will grow strong.”***

¹³Then Balaam looked toward the Amalekites and prophesied:

¹⁴***“Amalek^{F*} was first among the nations, but he will come to ruin at last.”***

¹⁵Then he looked toward the Kenites^{F*} and prophesied:

¹⁶***“Your dwelling place is secure, set high in the rock. Yet you will be destroyed***

^{*6} Agag is believed to have been a great king among the Amalekites of that day.

^{*8} Striking the hands together was a sign of annulling an agreement.

^{*11} Balak was king of Moab.

^{*12} Edom had denied passage of the Israelites through their land.

^{*14} Amalekites had attacked Israel soon after they left Egypt.

^{*15} The Kenites were a Canaanite tribe who lived in a mountain stronghold.

NUMBERS 13

when Assyria takes you captive.”

¹⁷“*Then ships will come from Cyprus and subdue Assyria and Eber,^{F*} but Cyprus too shall come to ruin.*”

¹⁸Then Balaam returned home.^{F*}

13

Israelite men seduced into idolatry and sexual immorality by Midianite women

¹While Israel was encamped there, in the plains of Moab, Midianite women of Moab^{F*} invited some of the Israelite men to attend sacrifices to their god Baal.^{F*}

²So the Israelite men began to indulge in idolatry and sexual immorality with the Midianite women and ate and bowed down before Baal.

The Lord angrily commands that the guilty Israelite leaders be killed

³At this the Lord’s anger burned against Israel. He said to Moses, “**Take the leaders of the people and kill them. Hang them in broad daylight before Jehovah that my fierce anger may turn away from Israel.**”

⁴But Moses said to the judges of Israel, “Each of you quickly put to death those of your people who have joined in worshipping Baal.”

A Midianite woman brought into the camp

⁵Then Zimri, an Israelite man of the tribe of Simeon brought a Midianite woman into the camp, right before the eyes of Moses and the leaders of Israel who were weeping at the entrance to the Tabernacle.

Phinehas the priest kills the man and woman

⁶When Phinehas the priest, son of Eleazar the high priest saw this, he took a spear in his hand and followed Zimri into his tent and drove the spear through the man and the belly of the woman, killing them both.

⁷The name of the Midianite woman who was killed was Cozbi, the daughter of Zur a Midianite leader.

24,000 Israelites die from plague

⁸Then a plague which had commenced among the Israelites because of Baal, was halted.

⁹However the number of Israelites who died in the plague was 24,000.*^F

*17 Eber, which means ‘*beyond (the river Euphrates)*’ is thought to be the general Mesopotamian region of Babylon and Assyria, nowadays Iraq.

*18 Shortly afterward, Balaam evidently counseled the Midianites who lived among the Moabites, that the only way to defeat Israel was to seduce them into idolatry and sexual immorality (see Numbers 15:8). His advice was followed, as seen in the next chapter, eventually resulting in the deaths of 24,000 Israelites, along with most of the Midianites and also Balaam himself.

*1 The Midianites were a widespread people from the south. Moses’ wife Zipporah was a Midianite. Evidently several tribes of Midianites lived among the Moabites.

*1 Baal, which means ‘*master*’ is a general term for local demon gods, whose worship usually involved sexual immorality.

*9 Perhaps mostly from Zimri’s tribe of Simeon, for their second census total is less than half that of the first (Numbers 1:11 and 14:4).



A Baal idol.

Phinehas commended by the Lord

¹⁰The Lord said to Moses, “**Phinehas the priest has turned my anger away from the Israelites, for he was as zealous as I am for my honour among them.**”

Phinehas and his descendants promised a lasting priesthood

¹¹“**Therefore Phinehas and his descendants shall have a lasting priesthood, for he was zealous for the honour of his God and made atonement for the Israelites.**”

14

The second census of men able to go to war

¹The Lord said to Moses, “**Take a census of all Israelites twenty years of age or more who are able to go to war.** ²For the land I am bringing you into is to be allotted according to numbers. To a larger tribe is to be given a larger inheritance, and to a smaller tribe a smaller one. The land is to be divided by lot.”

³So on the plains of Moab, by the Jordan river across from Jericho, Moses and Eleazar the high priest took the census as the Lord commanded.

A total number of 601,730 excluding the Levites

⁴These are the numbers of the men twenty years and older:

From the tribe of Reuben, 43,730.

From the tribe of Simeon, 22,200.

From the tribe of Gad, 40,500.

From the tribe of Judah, 76,500.
 From the tribe of Issachar, 64,300.
 From the tribe of Zebulun, 60,500.
 From the tribe of Ephraim, 32,500.
 From the tribe of Manasseh, 52,700.
 From the tribe of Benjamin, 45,600.
 From the tribe of Dan, 64,400.
 From the tribe of Asher, 53,400.
 From the tribe of Naphtali, 45,400.
⁵The total number, excluding the Levites was 601,730.

None of the Israelites of the original census left alive except Caleb and Joshua

⁶Not one of the men counted was among those counted by Moses in the desert of Sinai, for the Lord had told those Israelites they would surely die in the desert. Not one of them was left except Caleb and Joshua.

The number of male Levites a month old or more – 23,000

⁷All the male Levites a month old or more numbered 23,000. They were not counted with the other Israelites because they inherited no land among them.

Zelophehad's five daughters seek an inheritance

⁸Then five daughters of Zelophehad of the tribe of Manasseh came to Moses and said, "Our father died in the desert and left no sons. Why should our father's name disappear from his tribe because he had no son? Give us property among our father's relatives."

The law concerning heiresses

⁹Moses took their case to the Lord and the Lord said to him, "**Zelophehad's daughters are in the right. Give their father's inheritance to them.**"

¹⁰"**If ever a man dies and leaves no son, his inheritance is to be given to his daughter. If he has no daughter, give his inheritance to his nearest relative.**"

Heiresses must marry within their own tribe

¹¹But the elders of the tribe of Manasseh came to Moses and said, "If the daughters of Zelophehad marry men from other tribes, part of our inheritance will be taken away."

¹²The Lord said to Moses, "**What the elders of Manasseh say is valid. Zelophehad's daughters must marry within the tribe of their father.**"

¹³"**No inheritance in Israel is to pass from tribe to tribe. Every daughter who inherits land must marry within her father's tribe.**"

15

The Lord commands Moses to take vengeance on the Midianites

¹Then the Lord said to Moses, "**Take vengeance on the Midianites for what they**

did to the Israelites. After that, you will be gathered to your people." ^{F*}

²So Moses commanded the Israelites saying, "Arm one thousand men from each tribe to go to war against the Midianites."

The Israelites kill every man of the Midianite army and also Balaam the prophet

³12,000 men armed themselves and marched off to fight against the Midianites. Phinehas the priest went also, taking with him articles from the Sanctuary and the trumpets for signalling.

⁴The Israelite army fought against the armies of the five Midianite kings and killed every man.

⁵They burned the Midianite towns and camps, captured their women and children and took all their herds, flocks and goods as spoil.

⁶They also killed Balaam the prophet.

Moses angrily orders all the Midianite captives put to death

⁷Moses, Eleazar the high priest and the elders of the people went out to meet the army as they returned from battle.

⁸When Moses saw the captive Midianite women he was angry with the officers of the army and demanded, "Why have you allowed the women to live? They were the ones who followed Balaam's advice and turned the Israelites away from Jehovah to Baal so that a plague struck the people."

⁹"You must put to death every male child and every woman who has lain with a man. You may however save for yourselves any girl who has never lain with a man."

The Israelite soldiers and their spoil to be purified for seven days

¹⁰"Now all of you who have killed anyone or touched a dead body must remain outside the camp for seven days, to purify yourselves and your captives."

¹¹Then Eleazar the high priest spoke to the soldiers saying, "Everything you have must be purified with Water of Cleansing, and anything that can withstand fire must also be put through fire."

¹²"On the seventh day wash your clothes and you will be clean and may enter the camp."

16

The Lord commands the spoil be divided fairly

¹The Lord said to Moses, "**Count the people and animals that were captured and divide the spoils evenly between the men who took part in the battle and the rest of the people.**"

²"**From the fighting mens' share of the spoil, set apart one out of every 500,**

^{*1} To be gathered to your people or fathers is an Israelite expression for death. Israelite belief was that the spirits of the dead were gathered to their extended families in Sheol, the spirit world of the dead where they await the resurrection of their physical bodies to live on earth again when the Messiah comes.

NUMBERS 16

whether persons, cattle, donkeys, sheep or goats, and give it to Eleazar the high priest as Jehovah's tribute."

³"From the peoples share of the spoil, set apart one out of every 50 and give it to the Levites."

⁴So Moses and Eleazar did as the Lord commanded. The total spoil that the Israelites took from the Midianites was, 1,012,500 sheep, 108,000 cattle, 91,000 donkeys, and 48,000 young women who had never lain with a man.

No Israelite deaths in the battle

⁵The army commanders came to Moses and said, "We have counted the men under our command and not one is missing."

The army commanders offer gold articles as tribute to the Lord

⁶Then the commanders said, "We have brought as an offering to Jehovah, the gold articles each of us acquired; armlets, bracelets, rings, earrings and necklaces to make atonement for ourselves."

⁷Moses and Eleazar accepted the gold from the commanders and placed it in the Tabernacle as a memorial before the Lord. The gold weighed 16,750 shekels.^{F*}

The tribes of Reuben and Gad request the lands east of the Jordan

⁸Now the tribes of Reuben and Gad had large herds and flocks. They came to Moses and said, "The lands of the Amorites that the Lord has subdued are suitable for livestock. ⁹Let this land be given to your servants as our possession. Do not take us across the Jordan."



Gold articles of the period.

Moses is displeased at their request

¹⁰Moses was displeased at this request and rebuked them saying, "You expect your countrymen to go to war while you sit here? You are discouraging them. ¹¹That is what your fathers did when I sent them to explore the land. They so aroused the Lord's anger against Israel that he made them wander in the desert for forty years until that whole generation was gone."

¹²"Now here you are, a brood of sinners standing in the place of your fathers to make the Lord even more angry with Israel. ¹³He will

again leave all this people in the desert and you will be the cause of their destruction."

A second proposal is accepted by Moses

¹⁴Later the men returned again to Moses and said, "We are ready to arm ourselves and cross the Jordan ahead of our fellow Israelites, but allow us first to build pens here for our livestock and fortified towns for our women and children."

¹⁵"We will not return until every other Israelite has received his inheritance on the other side of the Jordan."

Reuben, Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh allocated land east of the Jordan

¹⁶Moses said to them, "Very well, if all of you will go armed over the Jordan, then when the land is subdued you may return, and this land will be your possession. But if you fail to do this, you will be sinning against Jehovah."

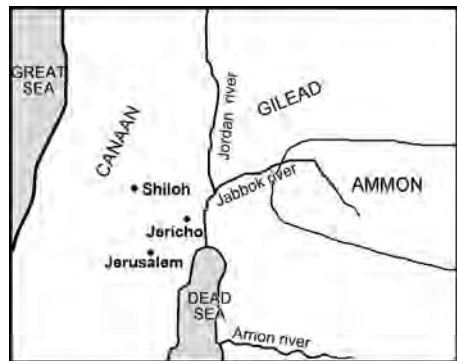
¹⁷So Moses gave to the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and also half the tribe of Manasseh, the lands and cities won from Sihon and Og, kings of the Amorites.^{F*}

Canaanite places of idolatry to be destroyed

¹⁸The Lord said to Moses, "Say to the Israelites, 'When you cross the Jordan into Canaan you must drive out all the inhabitants of the land. You must destroy all their engraved stones and idols and demolish all their high places of worship.'

What will occur if the Canaanites are not driven out of land

¹⁹"If you do not drive out all the inhabitants of the land, those you allow to remain will torment you. They will become like barbs in your eyes and thorns in your sides and I will punish you the same way I plan to punish them."



Map showing Gilead, the land that the tribes of Reuben, Gad and half of Manasseh inherited.

Towns and pasture lands for the Levites

²⁰"Now command the Israelites to assign the Levites 48 towns to live in, and pasture

*7 About 190kg (420lbs).

*17 This land was later known as Gilead.

lands around about their towns extending 1000 cubits^{F*} out from the town walls.”

²¹“Apportion many towns from a tribe that has many and few towns from a tribe that has few.”^{F*}

Cities of refuge

²²“Six of the Levite towns are to be cities of refuge, three on this side of the Jordan and three in Canaan.”

²³“These towns will be those to which a man who has unintentionally caused the death of another may flee, that he may not die before he is tried before his people.”

²⁴“The assembly of the people^{F*} must judge between him and the avenger of blood.^{F*} If he is innocent they are to protect him and after the trial return him to the city of refuge to which he fled.”

²⁵“He must remain there until the death of the high priest. ²⁶Do not accept a ransom for him and allow him to return and live on his own land before that time.”

²⁷“If the accused ever goes outside the city of refuge and the avenger of blood finds him

outside the city, the avenger of blood may kill him without being guilty of murder.”

Laws regarding murderers

²⁸“If a man deliberately strikes another with an object so that he dies, he is a murderer and shall be put to death. The avenger of blood may take his life.”

²⁹“However he is only to be put to death as a murderer on the testimony of two or more witnesses.”

³⁰“Do not accept a ransom for the life of a murderer. He must be put to death.”

Bloodshed pollutes the land and can only be atoned for by the blood of the murderer

³¹“You must not pollute the land where you are going, for bloodshed pollutes the land.”

³²“Atonement must be made for the land on which blood has been shed, by the blood of the person who shed it.”

*20 Approx half a kilometre.

*21 These would be towns formerly belonging to Canaanites.

*24 An assembly of the people was a formal gathering of the men of a community to decide important matters.

*24 The avenger of blood was usually the nearest male relative of the one killed.

DEUTERONOMY

After wandering for forty years the Israelites are now camped east of the river Jordan, preparing to enter the promised land of Canaan. Moses who has been forbidden to enter the promised land addresses the Israelites for the last time. In doing so he repeats and clarifies the commandments that the Israelites have received from the Lord and also introduces some new ones.

Deuteronomy means *'repetition of the Law.'* The Jews refer to the five books of Moses of which this book Deuteronomy is the last, as the Law or the Torah.

The book ends with the Lord choosing Joshua, the faithful assistant of Moses to succeed him as leader of the Israelites, and the death or translation of Moses (see note on Deuteronomy 10:30) on Mount Nebo, still in full vigour and health at 120 years of age.

AUTHOR

Moses (see Deuteronomy 9:1) with some clarifications by later Israelite prophets.

“Your clothes and sandals have not worn out, and your feet did not swell during those forty years.” Deuteronomy 1:32

CONTENTS

Chapter

Moses repeats Lord's commandments	1	Faint hearted men not to go into battle	4
Long life and increase if all commandments kept	1	Peace terms to be offered to non-Canaanite cities	4
Commandments to be taught to children	1	All that breathes in Canaanite cities to die	4
Reminders to be made	1	Fruit trees not to be cut down	4
Promised land described	1	Military camp hygiene	4
Houses, wells, vineyards, olive groves	1	Laws regarding captive women as wives	4
Streams, grains, fruit, milk, honey, iron, copper	1	Atoning for unsolved murder	4
Remember to praise Jehovah when settled	1	Rights of a firstborn son	5
Warning on pride	1	A rebellious son to be stoned to death	5
Destruction if God forgotten or tested	1	An executed man not to remain hanging overnight	5
Canaanites must be totally destroyed	1	Protective railing to be built around roofs	5
Treaties and intermarriage forbidden	1	Proof of virginity of a bride	5
Canaanites to be destroyed little by little	1	Remarrying a divorced wife forbidden	5
All Canaanite idols to be destroyed	1	Newly married men exempt from military one year	5
Israelites a chosen people	1	Penalties for rape	5
Health and prosperity if Lord's laws kept	1	Emasculated men excluded from assembly	5
40 years in the desert a time of humbling	1	Those born out of wedlock excluded from assembly	5
Food supplied and clothing did not wear out	1	Laws regarding foreigners	5
Canaanites strong and tall	2	A slave seeking refuge not to be handed over	5
Canaanites to be destroyed because of wickedness	2	Vows to Lord to be paid promptly	5
Israel a rebellious people	2	Mother birds not to be taken with young	5
Boundaries of promised land defined	2	Neighbour's produce can be eaten on spot	5
Promised land well watered by rain	2	Privacy of a man's home to be respected	5
Rain to cease if Israel worship other gods	2	Widow's millstone or cloak not to be taken	5
False prophets will arise to test the people	3	Women not to seize men by private parts	5
All Israelite idolaters to be put to death	3	A person to die for own crime only	5
Idolatrous Israelite towns to be put to sword	3	Forty lashes maximum for a crime	5
Priests and chief judge to decide difficult cases	3	Brother-in-law to marry a sonless widow	5
Kings to be chosen by Jehovah	3	Declaration when offering first fruits	6
A king not to acquire many horses	3	Tithes to be given to Levites and needy for food	6
A king not to take many wives	3	Israel to be exalted if Lord's laws obeyed	6
A king not to accumulate much silver and gold	3	Not to add or take from Moses' words	6
A king to write out the Law and read it often	3	Law to be inscribed on a monument	7
Levites can minister anywhere in Israel	3	Altar of uncut stones to be built	7
Child sacrifice and sorcery an abomination	3	Curses if commandments not obeyed	7
Consulting spirits of dead an abomination	3	Blessings if commandments obeyed	7
Prostitution forbidden	3	More curses if commandments not obeyed	7
Prophet like Moses to be raised up	4	Moses prophesies Israel's destruction	8
A false prophet must be put to death	4	Cannibalism during sieges prophesied	8
A sign of a true prophet	4	Exile among all nations prophesied	8

Future regathering of Israel prophesied	8	Moses permitted to view promised land	10
Moses summarises his address	8	Joshua chosen by Lord to succeed Moses	10
Moses writes down all the commandments	9	Moses instructs Joshua	10
Commandments to be kept with the Ark	9	Moses lays his hands on Joshua	10
Law to be read to the people every 7 years	9	Moses blesses the twelve tribes of Israel	10
Unfaithfulness of Israel foreseen by Lord	9	Moses disappears on Mount Nebo aged 120 years ..	10
The people taught a song from the Lord	9	No prophet has since arisen in Israel like Moses ...	10

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Moses repeats all the Lord's commandments to the Israelites

¹In the fortieth year after leaving Egypt, on the first day of the eleventh month in the desert east of the Jordan, Moses repeated to the Israelites all the commandments that the Lord had given them.

Long life and great increase promised if Lord's commandments kept

²Then Moses said to them, "These are the laws that Jehovah your God has directed me to teach you. Do not add or subtract from them. ³See that you keep them all in the land you are crossing the Jordan to possess, that you may enjoy a long life and increase greatly and that all may go well with you."

Speak of the commandments and teach them to your children

⁴"Hear O Israel, Jehovah alone is our God. Love him with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your might."

⁵"Write his commandments upon your hearts, and teach them to your children. Speak of them when you sit at home and when you walk together along the road, and when you lie down and when you rise."

Reminders of commandments to be made

⁶"Tie reminders on your wrists and on your foreheads. Write them on the door frames of your houses and on your gates."

The promised land described - houses, wells, vineyards and olive groves

⁷"The Lord is bringing you into the land he swore to give your fathers, a land of large cities which you did not build, of houses filled with good things that you did not provide, with wells that you did not dig, and vineyards and olive groves that you did not plant."

Streams, springs grain, fruit, milk, honey, iron and copper

⁸"A land of streams and pools, with springs flowing in the valleys and hills. A land of wheat, barley, vines, fig trees and pomegranates, of olive oil, milk and honey. A land where bread is not scarce and you will lack for nothing. ⁹A land where the rocks contain iron ore and you can dig copper out of the hills."

Jehovah to be praised when people have prospered and settled down

¹⁰"When you have eaten and are satisfied, and have built fine houses and settled down, and your herds and flocks have grown large and your silver and gold has increased, then remember to praise the Lord for the good land he has given you."

Warning on pride

¹¹"Do not say to yourself, 'The strength of my own hand has produced this wealth for me,' but remember the Lord your God, for it is he who gives you the ability to produce wealth."

¹²"Be careful that your hearts do not become proud and you forget Jehovah and fail to observe his commandments. Revere him and serve him only."

Do not forget God or try him - you will surely be destroyed

¹³"If you ever forget your God and worship other gods, I testify to you today that you will surely be destroyed just as the nations before you were destroyed."

¹⁴"Do not follow the gods of the nations around you, for Jehovah is a jealous God and his anger will burn against you. He will destroy you from the face of the land."

¹⁵"Do not try Jehovah your God as you did at Massah." F*

The Canaanite nations must be totally destroyed

¹⁶"When the Lord brings you into the land you are entering, he will drive before you, the Canaanites, Hittites, Girgashites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites and Jebusites. Seven nations larger and stronger than you. You must destroy them totally."

Treaties and intermarriage forbidden

¹⁷"Make no treaty with them, nor show them any mercy. Do not intermarry with them or they will turn your children away to serve other gods. Then the anger of the Lord will burn against you and he will destroy you.

Israelites to destroy Canaanites little by little

¹⁸"You may say to yourselves, 'These

*15 The Israelites complained bitterly about lack of water and questioned whether Jehovah was with them or not. (Exodus 10:1-7.)

DEUTERONOMY 2

nations are stronger than we are. How can we destroy them?' But remember what the Lord did to Pharaoh and to all Egypt, he will do the same to the people you now fear."

¹⁹"Moreover he will send the hornet among them until even the survivors who hide from you have perished."

²⁰"So do not be terrified by them. Jehovah your God is a great and awesome God. He will allow you to destroy these nations little by little. You will not destroy them all at once for then the wild animals would multiply in the land."

All Canaanite idols to be destroyed

²¹"You must destroy by fire the idols of their gods. Do not covet the silver and gold of them for they are abominable to the Lord your God, and do not take them into your houses or you too will be destroyed."

Israelites a chosen people

²²"You are a people holy to Jehovah. He has chosen you out of all the nations on earth. ²³He did not choose you because you were more numerous than other peoples, for you were the fewest of peoples. But it was because he loved you and kept the covenant he swore to your forefathers."

Jehovah a faithful God

²⁴"Know therefore that Jehovah is a faithful God who will keep his covenant of love to a thousand generations of those who love him and keep his commandments. But those who hate him, he will destroy."

No disease or barrenness and great prosperity if the Lord's laws kept

²⁵"If you follow all his laws the Lord your God will love you and bless you and increase your numbers. ²⁶He will keep you free from disease. He will bless the fruit of your womb, the crops of your land, your grain, your new wine and oil, and your livestock."

²⁷"None of you will be childless, nor any of your livestock be without young. You will be blessed above all other nations."

The forty years of wandering in desert a time of humbling testing and disciplining

²⁸"Jehovah your God led you in the vast and dreadful desert forty years. To humble you and test you, to see whether or not you would keep his commandments."

²⁹"As a man disciplines his son so your God has disciplined you."

Your food and water was supplied and your clothing and sandals did not wear out

³⁰"He led you through waterless lands of venomous snakes and scorpions, and brought you water out of solid rock."

³¹"He caused you to hunger and then fed you with manna, to teach you that man does not live by bread alone but by every word that comes from the mouth of God."

³²"Your clothes and sandals have not worn out,^F * and your feet did not swell during those forty years."

2

The Canaanites strong and tall

¹"You are now about to cross the Jordan and dispossess nations greater and stronger than you. Nations of large cities, and walls to the sky."

²"Their people are strong and tall and the Anakim^F * are among them. You have heard it said, 'Who can stand against the Anakim?'"

³Be assured that Jehovah is going ahead of you. He will subdue them, and you will be able to drive them before you and annihilate them quickly."

The promised land given to Israel only because of the wickedness of the inhabitants

⁴"Do not say to yourselves, 'The Lord has brought us here because of our righteousness.' No, it is because of the wickedness of these nations that he is going to destroy them."

Israel a rebellious people

⁵"For you are a rebellious people. Remember this, and never forget how you provoked the Lord to anger in the desert."

⁶"From the day you left Egypt until the day you arrived here you have rebelled against him."

⁷"Therefore keep all the commandments I am giving you today, that you will have strength to take over the land you are crossing the Jordan to possess."

The boundaries of the promised land defined

⁸"Your territory will extend from the Lebanon down to the Desert, and from the Euphrates River to the Western Sea."^F *

The promised land well watered by rain

⁹"The land you are taking over is not like Egypt, where you planted your seed and irrigated by foot. This land is a land of mountains and valleys that drink rain from heaven. ¹⁰It is a land the Lord your God cares for. His eyes are continually on it from the beginning of the year to its end."

¹¹"If you faithfully obey his commandments and love him and serve him with all your heart, he will send the rains in their seasons, both the autumn and spring rains so that you may gather in your grain and your new wine and oil. ¹²He will provide grass in the fields for your livestock and you too will eat and be satisfied."

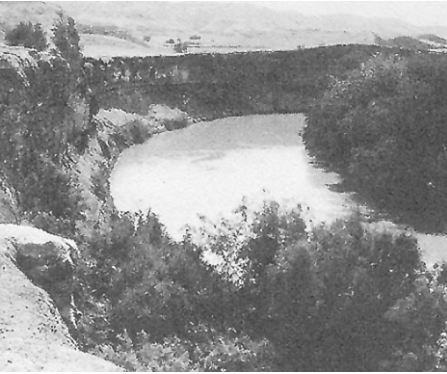
*32 The respected Jewish historian-scholar Rashi also claims that the clothes of the Israelite children grew along with them, keeping pace with their growth.

*2 The Anakim, meaning 'long necks' were an exceptionally tall race of people (see note on Genesis 5:14). Goliath who was over nine feet tall was an Anakim.

*8 The Mediterranean or Great Sea. See map in Exodus Chapter 21.

Rain to cease if Israelites worship other gods

¹³*"But if you are enticed to worship other gods, then Jehovah's anger will burn against you. ¹⁴He will shut up the heavens and it will not rain and you will soon perish from the good land he is giving you."*



Jordan river near where the Israelites were camped. The promised land of Canaan is on the horizon.

3

False prophets will arise to test the people

¹*"If a prophet or one who dreams arises among you and announces a miraculous sign and the sign takes place, and then he says, 'Let us follow other gods,' you must not listen to his words. ²The Lord your God is testing you to find out whether you love him with all your heart and soul."*

³*"That prophet or dreamer must be put to death for he has preached rebellion against the Lord. You must purge evil from among you."*

All idolaters, even family and close friends to be put to death

⁴*"If your own brother or your son or daughter, or the wife you love, or your closest friend secretly entices you saying, 'Let us go and worship other gods,' Show no pity. Do not spare them."*

⁵*"Your hand must be the first in putting them to death. Then all Israel will hear and be afraid and no one among you will do such an evil thing again."*

Any Israelite town practising idolatry to be put to the sword and burnt

⁶*"If you hear it said about one of your towns that wicked men have arisen and led the people of that town to worship other gods, you must investigate it thoroughly."*

⁷*"If it be true, you must put to the sword all who live in that town, both its people and its livestock. ⁸Then you are to gather all the possessions of that town into a heap in the middle of the square and burn them. A burnt offering to Jehovah."*

⁹*"That town is to remain a ruin forever, never to be rebuilt."*

The priests and chief judge to decide difficult cases

¹⁰*"If a case comes before your court that is too difficult for you to decide, you are to take it before the priests and the chief judge who rules at that time^F * and they will give you a verdict. You must act according to the decision they give you."*

¹¹*"If a man shows contempt for the priests or the judge he must be put to death. All the people will hear and be afraid and no one will dare act that way again."*

Kings to be chosen by Jehovah

¹²*"When you have settled in the land the Lord is giving you and you say, 'Let us set a king over us like the nations around us,' be sure to appoint a king Jehovah chooses from among your own people. ¹³Do not place a foreigner over you."*

A king not to acquire many horses

¹⁴*"Your king must not acquire great numbers of horses for himself, or have the people return to Egypt to buy horses, for the Lord has said, 'You are not to return to Egypt.'"*

A king not to take many wives or accumulate much silver and gold

¹⁵*"Nor must your king take many wives for his heart will be led astray. Nor must he accumulate large amounts of silver and gold."*

A newly throned king to write out a copy of the Law and read it often

¹⁶*"When the king takes the throne he is to write for himself a copy of the entire Law which he will obtain from the priests. ¹⁷He is to read it all the days of his life so that he will learn to honour Jehovah his God and follow carefully all his commandments, and not consider himself better than his fellow men. ¹⁸Then he and his descendants will reign long in Israel."*

Levites can minister anywhere in Israel

¹⁹*"If a Levite moves anywhere in Israel that the Lord chooses, he may minister alongside his fellow Levites who serve there. ²⁰He is to share equally in their benefits, even if he has received money from the sale of family possessions."*

Child sacrifice, divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and consulting spirits of the dead are abominations

²¹*"When you enter the land the Lord is giving you, do not follow the abominable practices of those nations."*

²²*"Let no one among you burn his son or daughter in fire, or practice divination or sorcery, or interpret omens, engage in witchcraft, cast spells or become a medium*

*10 The Israelites were ruled by judges prior to the reign of kings which began with Saul. Moses was the first judge followed by Joshua.

DEUTERONOMY 4

or spiritist who consults the dead.”

²³*“It is because of these abominable practices that the Lord is destroying these nations.”*

Prostitution forbidden

²⁴*“No woman is to become a harlot, nor a man a sodomite, nor must you bring the earnings of a harlot or a dog^F * to the Tabernacle of the Lord in payment of a vow.”*

4

Another prophet like Moses to be raised up

¹⁴*“Jehovah your God will raise up for you a prophet like me, from among your own people. You must listen to him.”^F **

²*“This is what you asked for at Sinai when you said, ‘Let us not hear the voice of Jehovah nor see this great fire any more, lest we die.’”*

³*“The Lord said to me, “What the people say is right. I will raise up a prophet like you from among them and I will put my words in his mouth and he will speak what I command him.”*

⁴*“Whoever does not heed the words that prophet speaks in my name, I myself will hold accountable.”*

A false prophet must be put to death

⁵*“And if any prophet speaks words in my name that I have not commanded, or speaks in the name of another god, he must be put to death.”*

A sign of a true prophet

⁶*“You may say to yourselves, ‘How can we know when a message has not been spoken by the Lord?’”*

⁷*“If what a prophet proclaims in the name of the Lord does not come to pass, that is a message that the Lord has not spoken.”^F **

Faint hearted men not to go into battle

⁸*“Whenever you go to war and see an army greater than your own, do not fear for Jehovah will be with you.”*

⁹*“Before you go into battle the high priest shall come forward and say to the army, ‘Hear O Israel, today you are going into battle against your enemies. Be not faint hearted or fearful, nor give way to panic, for the Lord goes with you to fight your enemies and give you victory.’”*

¹⁰*“Then the officers shall say to their men, ‘Has anyone built a new house and not yet dedicated it? Has anyone planted a vineyard and not yet begun to enjoy it? Has anyone become betrothed to a woman and not yet married her? Let him return home.’”*

¹¹*“Is any man fearful or faint hearted? Let him return home that his comrades not become faint hearted also.”*

Peace terms to be first offered to distant cities that are not part of the promised land

¹²*“Before you attack a city that is afar off, one that is not part of the land the Lord is giving you, offer terms of peace to its people. If they accept and open their gates they shall be forced to labour for you. If they refuse to make peace, lay siege to that city.”*

¹³*“When the Lord delivers a city into your hand, put all the men to the sword but the women, children, livestock and everything else in the city you may take as spoil.”*

Every person must be put to death in cities within the promised land

¹⁴*“However in the cities of the land that Jehovah is giving you as an inheritance, you must not leave alive anyone who breathes, or they will eventually lead you to do the abominable things they do in worshipping their gods.”*

Fruit trees not to be cut down

¹⁵*“When you lay siege to a city, do not cut down fruit trees to build siege works, only cut down trees that do not bear fruit.”*

Military camp hygiene

¹⁶*“When you are encamped against your enemies you must keep yourselves pure. ¹⁷If a man becomes unclean due to an emission of semen during sleep, he is to go outside the camp and wash himself, and remain there until evening. After sunset he may return to camp.”*

¹⁸*“Designate a place outside the camp where you can go to relieve yourself and carry a stick with your weapons so that when you crouch to relieve yourself, you can dig a hole to cover your excrement.”*

¹⁹*“For Jehovah your God moves about in your camp to protect you, therefore your camp must be holy so that he will not see anything indecent among you.”*

Laws regarding captive women as wives

²⁰*“If when you go to war you see among the captives an attractive woman, and you desire her as a wife, bring her into your home and have her shave her head and pare her nails and put aside the clothes she was wearing when captured.”*

²¹*“Then when she has lived in your house and mourned her parents a full month, you may lie with her and be her husband.”^F **

²²*“If you become displeased with her, let her go free. You must not sell her or treat her as a slave.”*

*24 A dog is a male prostitute.

*1 The apostle Peter quoted this scripture with reference to Jesus Christ (Acts 3:15).

*7 Correctly predicting future events was not sufficient proof alone of a true prophet, what he said must also agree with the commandments, see first two verses of chapter 3.

*21 This would only apply to a non-Canaanite woman as all the women of Canaan were to be destroyed (see Deuteronomy 4:14).

Atoning for unsolved murder

²³“If a person is found slain in a field and it is not known who killed him, the elders of the nearest town shall take a heifer that has never been yoked and lead her to a valley that has never been plowed or planted and in which there is a flowing stream. ²⁴There they shall break the heifer’s neck, and the elders of the town shall wash their hands over the heifer in front of the priests and declare:”

²⁵“Our hands did not shed this blood nor did our eyes see it shed. Accept this atonement O Jehovah and do not hold us guilty for the blood of an innocent man.”

²⁶“And thus the bloodshed shall be atoned for. You will purge yourselves from the guilt of innocent blood.”

5

The rights of a firstborn son

¹“If a man has two wives and both bear him sons, when he wills his property he must not give the rights of the firstborn to the son of the wife he loves more, in preference to his actual firstborn.”

²“He must acknowledge the right of the firstborn by giving him a double share of all he has. ³A firstborn son is the first fruit of his father’s strength.”

A rebellious son to be stoned to death

⁴“If a man has a rebellious son who will not obey him or his mother, though they discipline him, they shall take him before the elders at the town gate and say to them, ‘This son of ours is stubborn and rebellious, he will not obey us and he is a glutton and a drunkard.’”

⁵“Then all the men of the town shall stone him to death. You must purge evil from among you. All Israel will hear of it and be afraid.”

An executed person not to remain hanging overnight

⁶“If a man convicted of a serious crime is put to death and hung on a tree, you must not leave his body on the tree overnight. Bury him that same day, for a hanging body is offensive to God.”

A protective railing to be built around the roofs of houses

⁷“When you build a house, also build a railing around your roof so that you will not incur the guilt of bloodshed on your house should someone fall from it.”^{F *}

Proof of virginity of a bride

⁸“If a man takes a wife and after lying with her rejects her and slanders her saying, ‘I married this woman but when I lay with her I did not find proof of her virginity.’”

⁹“Then the girl’s father and mother shall display the cloth^{F *} to the elders at the town gate as proof that she was a virgin and the elders shall fine the man a 100 shekels of silver^{F *} and give it to the girl’s father.”

¹⁰“She shall continue to be his wife, and he may not divorce her as long as he lives.”

¹¹“If however the charge is true and no proof of her virginity can be found, she shall be brought to the door of her father’s house, and there the men of her town are to stone her to death for being promiscuous while living in her father’s house.”

A man cannot remarry his divorced wife after she has been married to another man

¹²“If a man marries a woman who becomes displeasing to him because of some indecency in her and he writes her a certificate of divorce and sends her from his house, and she then remarries and her second husband also dislikes her and divorces her, or dies, then her first husband is not to marry her again, for she has been defiled. It is offensive in the eyes of the Lord.”

Newly married men exempt from military and other duty for one year

¹³“If a man has recently married, he must not be sent to war or have any other duty laid upon him. For one year he is to be free to stay at home and bring joy to his wife.”

Penalties for the rape of a betrothed woman

¹⁴“If a man seizes a betrothed virgin and lies with her, you shall take them both to the town gate and stone them to death. The girl because she did not scream for help, and the man because he violated another man’s betrothed wife.”

¹⁵“However if it happened out in the countryside only the man shall die, for although the betrothed girl may have screamed, there was no one to rescue her.”

A man who rapes an unbetrothed girl must marry her

¹⁶“If a man seizes a virgin who is not pledged to be married and lies with her, he shall pay the girl’s father 50 shekels of silver and he must marry the girl, for he has violated her and can never divorce her.”

Emasculated men excluded from the assembly

¹⁷“No man who has been emasculated may enter an assembly of the Lord.”^{F *}

Men born out of wedlock excluded from the assembly

¹⁸“No man born out of wedlock, nor any of his descendants may enter an assembly of the Lord, even down to the tenth generation.”

*9 A blood-marked bed sheet from the wedding week.

*9 One shekel of silver was worth about a days pay.

*17 The assembly was a formal gathering of the men of a community to decide important matters.

*7 The flat roofs of Middle East homes are often used as social gathering places of an evening.

DEUTERONOMY 6

Laws regarding foreign men

19 "No Ammonite or Moabite may enter an assembly of the Lord, even down to the tenth generation for they did not meet you with bread and water on your way when you came out of Egypt, and they hired Balaam to pronounce a curse on you. Do not seek a treaty of friendship with them."

20 "Do not despise an Edomite,^F for he is your brother, and do not despise an Egyptian for you lived as foreigners in his country. 21 The third generation of their children born among you may enter an assembly of the Lord."

A slave seeking refuge not to be handed over to his master

22 "If a slave has taken refuge among you, do not hand him over to his master or oppress him."

Vows to the Lord to be paid promptly

23 "Do not be slow to pay a vow to the Lord^F or you will be guilty of sin. Whatever vow your lips utter you must be sure to do."

A mother bird not to be killed with her young

24 "If you find a bird's nest and the mother sitting on the young or the eggs, do not take the mother with the young. You may take the young but let the mother go free."

A neighbour's produce can be eaten freely on his land but none to be carried away without payment
25 "If you enter your neighbour's vineyard or field, you may eat all you want, but do not put any in your basket."

Privacy of a neighbour's home to be respected

26 "When you make a loan to your neighbour do not go into his house to get his security. Let him bring it out to you."

A widow's millstone or cloak not to be taken as security

27 "Do not take a millstone or the cloak of a widow as security for a debt."

A woman not to aid a fighting husband by seizing his assailant by his private parts

28 "If two men are fighting and the wife of one comes to rescue her husband and seizes his assailant by his private parts, you shall cut off her hand. Show no mercy."

A person to die for his own crime only

29 "Fathers shall not be put to death for the crimes of their children, nor children for the crimes of their fathers, each person is to die for his own crime."

Forty lashes maximum for a crime

30 "If a man is guilty of a crime and deserves to be beaten, the judge shall have him flogged in his presence with the number of lashes his crime deserves, but

no more than forty. 31 If he is flogged more than forty times your brother will be degraded in your eyes."

Brother-in-law to marry a sonless widow

32 "When brothers live near to one another and a man dies without fathering a son, his brother shall marry his widow and fulfil the duty of a brother-in-law to her. 33 The first son she bears shall carry on the name of the dead brother so that his name will not be blotted out from Israel."

34 "If he refuses to marry her, she shall protest to the elders at the town gate. Then the elders shall reason with the man."

35 "If he persists in saying, 'I do not want to marry her,' she shall go up to him in the presence of the elders and pull off one of his sandals^F and spit in his face saying, 'This is what is done to a man who will not build up his brother's family.'"



A millstone (see Deuteronomy 5:27) was used to grind grain and was an essential household item.

6

Declaration when offering first fruits

1 "When you have settled in the land the Lord is giving you, place some of the first fruits of your ground in a basket and take them to the Tabernacle. Then you shall say to the priest:

2 "Today I acknowledge to Jehovah that I have come to the land he swore to give our forefathers."

3 "The priest shall take the basket from your hands and set it down in front of the altar and you shall declare before the Lord:"

4 "My father was a wandering Syrian.^F He went down into Egypt with a few people and became a great nation, powerful and

*20 The Edomites were the descendants of Esau who sold his birthright to his brother Jacob.

*23 A vow is a favour asked of the Lord in return for which the asker agrees to make some kind of sacrifice.

*35 Removing a sandal was a sign of transference, usually involving property (see Ruth 3:6), in this case however the man's honour is being taken or transferred from him by the woman spitting in his face.

*4 Abraham was originally of Syrian descent.

numerous, but the Egyptians made us suffer putting us to hard labour.”

⁵“We cried out to Jehovah the God of our fathers and he heard our voice and saw our misery. He brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand and miraculous signs and wonders. ⁶He brought us to this land, a land flowing with milk and honey. Now I bring the first fruits of the ground that you O Jehovah have given me.”

⁷“Then bow down before the Lord your God and rejoice in the good things he has given you.”



My father (Abraham) was a wandering Syrian (Deuteronomy 6:4).

Tithes to be given to Levites and needy for food

⁸“When you have set aside your tithe, a tenth of all you produce, you shall give it to the Levite, the sojourner,^{F*} the fatherless and the widow, that they may eat in your towns and be satisfied. Then declare before Jehovah:

⁹“I have set aside the sacred portion and have given it to the Levite, the sojourner, the fatherless and the widow, according to your command.”

¹⁰“Now may you look down from your holy dwelling place and bless your people Israel and the land you have given us.”

Israel to be exalted if laws of the Lord obeyed

¹¹Then Moses said, “The Lord commands you this day to follow these laws with all your heart and with all your soul. ¹²He has declared that he will exalt you in fame and honour high above all other nations. You will be a holy people.”

Israel not to add or take away from Moses' words

¹³“You shall not add to the word which I have commanded you, nor take away from it.”

7

The Law to be inscribed in plaster on a monument

¹“When you have crossed the Jordan into the land the Lord is giving you, set up large rocks on Mount Ebal^{F*} and coat them with plaster. Write upon them every word of the Law.”

An altar of uncut stones to be built

²“Build there also an altar of stones, but do not use an iron tool on the stones. Offer burnt offerings on the altar to Jehovah your God.”



An altar of uncut stones like the one the Israelites were commanded to erect on Mount Ebal.

Curses if the commandments are not obeyed

³“Then the Levites shall recite these curses to all the people of Israel in a loud voice, and all the people shall respond, ‘Amen:’”

⁴“Cursed is the person who makes an idol.”

⁵“Cursed is the person who dishonours their father or mother.”

⁶“Cursed is he who moves a boundary stone.”

⁷“Cursed is the person who leads the blind astray on the road.”

⁸“Cursed is the person who withholds justice from the sojourner, the fatherless or the widow.”

⁹“Cursed is the man who lies with his father's wife.”

¹⁰“Cursed is the man who lies with his sister, the daughter of either his father or his mother.”

¹¹“Cursed is the man who lies with his mother-in-law.”

¹²“Cursed is the person who lies with any kind of animal.”

¹³“Cursed is the person who murders.”

¹⁴“Cursed is the man who accepts payment to kill an innocent person.”

*8 A sojourner is a person residing in an area temporarily.

*1 Mount Ebal is a 1025m high centrally located mountain near Shechem.

Blessings if all the commandments are obeyed

15 *"Then the tribes of Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Joseph and Benjamin shall face Mount Gerizim^F * and pronounce these blessings upon the people, if they fully obey the Lord's commandments:"*

16 *"You will be raised high above all other nations on the earth."*

17 *"You will be blessed in the city and in the country."*

18 *"You will be blessed in the fruit of your womb."*

19 *"You will be blessed in your crops for the Lord shall send rain in season."*

20 *"You will be blessed in the calves of your herds and the lambs of your flocks."*

21 *"You will be blessed when you come in and blessed when you go out."*

22 *"You will lend to many nations and borrow from none."*

23 *"You will defeat those who rise up against you. They will come at you from one direction and flee in seven."*

24 *"All peoples on earth shall know that you are called by the name of Jehovah and will fear you."*

25 *"You will be the head and not the tail."*

More curses if commandments are not obeyed

26 *"Then the tribes of Reuben, Gad, Asher, Zebulun, Dan and Naphtali are to face Mount Ebal and pronounce these curses that will come upon you if you do not obey Jehovah and keep his commandments."*

27 *"You will be cursed in the city and cursed in the countryside."*

28 *"You will be cursed in the fruit of your womb."*

29 *"You will be cursed in the crops of your land."*

30 *"You will be cursed in the calves of your herds and the lambs of your flocks."*

31 *"You will be cursed when you come in and cursed when you go out."*

32 *"The Lord will send confusion on all that you do."*

33 *"You will suffer diseases; fever and inflammation, the boils of Egypt, tumours, festering sores and the itch that cannot be cured."*

34 *"Your knees and legs will swell with painful boils that cannot be cured. They shall spread to the soles of your feet and the top of your head."*

35 *"You will be cursed with scorching heat and drought. The sky above you will be bronze and the ground beneath you iron, and the rain shall turn to dust."*

36 *"Your food will be cursed with blight and mildew until you perish."*

37 *"You will sow much seed but harvest little, for locusts shall devour it."*

38 *"You will plant vineyards but not drink the wine or gather the grapes, for worms shall eat them."*

39 *"You will have olive trees but not use the oil, for the olives will drop off."*

40 *"The foreigner who lives among you shall rise above you higher and higher, and you shall sink lower and lower."*

41 *"He will lend to you but you shall not lend to him. He will be the head and you shall be the tail."*

42 *"You will be defeated by your enemies. You shall attack them from one direction but flee in seven."*

43 *"Your corpses shall be food for the birds and animals."*

44 *"A people you know not shall eat what your toil produces, and you will be cruelly oppressed all your days."*

45 *"Your donkey will be taken from you and never returned."*

46 *"Your sheep will be driven off by your enemies and your ox slaughtered before your eyes."*

47 *"You will be betrothed to a woman but another will lie with her."*

48 *"You will build a house but not live in it, and plant a vineyard but not enjoy its fruit."*

49 *"You will be afflicted with madness, blindness and confusion of mind, for the sights you see will drive you mad."*

50 *"At midday you will grope about like a blind man in the dark, and day after day you shall be oppressed and robbed."*

51 *"Your sons and daughters shall be carried off to another nation and you will wear out your eyes watching for them, day after day."*

52 *"Then the Lord will drive you and your king to a foreign nation. There you shall worship gods of wood and stone."*

53 *"You shall become an object of horror and scorn in all nations where the Lord will drive you."*

8

Moses prophesies Israel's destruction by a nation from afar

¹Then Moses prophesied: *"All these curses will overtake you until you are destroyed, because you did not keep the commandments Jehovah gave you."*

²*"Because you did not serve him joyfully and gladly in the time of your prosperity, in hunger and thirst and nakedness and poverty you shall serve the enemies he sends against you. He will put an iron yoke*

*15 Mount Gerizim is a peak directly opposite Mount Ebal.

on your neck until he has destroyed you.”

³“The Lord will bring a nation against you from afar, from the ends of the earth like an eagle swooping down. A nation whose language you will not understand. A nation of fierce appearance, without pity for old or young.”

⁴“They will besiege your cities until the high walls in which you trust are broken down.”

Cannibalism during sieges prophesied

⁵“And because of your suffering during the siege you will eat the flesh of your own sons and daughters.”

⁶“Even the most sensitive man among you will refuse to share with the rest of his family the flesh of his child he is eating.”

⁷“Even the most gentle woman among you will begrudge her husband and children the afterbirth from her own womb, that she intends eating secretly. Such is the distress your enemy will inflict upon you during the siege of your cities.”

⁸“If you do not carefully obey all the words of the Law and honour the glorious and awesome name of Jehovah your God, he will send these fearful plagues and these harsh and prolonged disasters and severe and lingering diseases upon you and your descendants.”

Exile among all nations prophesied

⁹“You who were as numerous as the stars in the sky shall be but few in number. You will be uprooted from the land you are entering to possess and shall be scattered among all nations, from one end of the earth to the other.”

¹⁰“Among those nations you will find no ease and no rest, you will have an anxious mind and eyes weary with longing and a despairing heart.”

¹¹“You will live in constant suspense and dread, both night and day.”

¹²“In the morning you will say, ‘If only it were evening’ and in the evening you will say, ‘If only it were morning’ because of the fear that will fill your hearts and the sights your eyes will see.”

¹³“Some of you will be sent back in ships to Egypt and be there offered for sale to your enemies as slaves, but no one will buy you.”

The future regathering of Israel prophesied

¹⁴“When these curses come upon you and Jehovah disperses you among the nations, and you and your children return to him and obey him with all your heart, then the Lord your God will have compassion on you. He will gather you again and restore your fortunes.”

¹⁵“Even if you have been banished to the most distant land under the heavens, from there he will gather you and bring you back and make you more prosperous and

numerous than before.”

¹⁶“You will again obey Jehovah and follow his commandments and he will again delight in you.”

Moses summarises his address

¹⁷“See, I set before you today life and prosperity, or death and destruction.”

¹⁸“Love the Lord and keep his commandments and he will bless you in the land you are entering to possess.”

¹⁹“Turn away and rebel and bow down to other gods and you will be destroyed. You will not live long in the land you are crossing the Jordan to possess.”

9

Moses writes all the commandments on a scroll

¹Moses wrote down on a scroll all the commandments the Lord had given him and gave it to the priests.

The book of the Law to be kept with the Ark

²Then Moses commanded the priests saying, “Take this book of the Law^F * and place it beside the Ark of Jehovah as a witness against you, for I know how rebellious and stiff-necked you are.”

³“If you have rebelled against the Lord while I have been with you, how much more will you rebel after I am gone.”

The Law to be read to the people every seven years

⁴“You shall read this Law to all the people at the end of each seven years, in the year of cancelling debts, during the Feast of Tabernacles when all Israel come to stand before the Lord.”

⁵“Assemble all the men, women and children and the foreigners living in your towns so they can listen and learn to revere Jehovah, and obey fully all the words of his Law.”

The unfaithfulness of Israel foreseen by the Lord

⁶Then the Lord said to Moses, “You are going to rest with your fathers, and this people will soon prostitute themselves to the foreign gods of the land they are entering.”

⁷“I know what they are disposed to do even before I bring them into the land I promised them.”

⁸“They will forsake me and break the covenant I made with them, so I will hide my face from them and they shall be destroyed.”

⁹Disasters and difficulties will befall them and they will say, ‘Have not these disasters come upon us because our God is not with us?’

¹⁰“Now, write down this song and teach it to the Israelites so that when disasters and difficulties come upon them this song will testify against them.”

*2 Although referred to as a book, the Law was in fact a scroll.

DEUTERONOMY 10

The people taught a song from the Lord

¹¹So Moses wrote down this song of the Lord that day and taught it to the Israelites:

¹²“Hear the words of my mouth O heavens and earth, let my words descend like abundant rain on tender grass.”

¹³“Proclaim the name of Jehovah. Praise the greatness of your God. He is your Rock, a faithful and just God who does no wrong. Upright and righteous is he.”

¹⁴“But you have acted corruptly toward him and are no longer his children, but a crooked generation. ¹⁵Is this the way you repay Jehovah O foolish and unwise people? Is he not your Father, your Creator, he who made and formed you?”

¹⁶“Remember the days of old when the Most High^{F*} divided mankind according to the numbers of the sons of God.^{F*} Jehovah’s choice portion was his people Israel.”

¹⁷“In a desert land he found them and shielded them, and cared for them like an eagle hovering over its young.”

¹⁸“Jehovah alone led Israel, no foreign god was with them. He nourished them with the fruit of the fields, with curds and milk, with fattened lambs and goats, with the finest kernels of wheat and the wine of the grape.”

¹⁹“But Israel grew fat and kicked. Filled with food he became heavy and sleek and abandoned the God who made him. He rejected his Rock and Saviour and made him jealous and angry by foreign gods and abominable idols. ²⁰Israel sacrificed to demons, gods that recently appeared, gods his fathers knew not. He deserted the Rock who fathered him.”

²¹“I will hide my face from them and see what their end becomes, for they are a perverse generation. They made me jealous by gods who were not gods, therefore I will stir them to jealousy by a people who are not a people, by a nation that has no understanding.”

²²“A fire has been kindled by my wrath. I will heap calamities upon them. I

shall send wasting famine against them and deadly plague. I will send the fangs of wild beasts and the venom of vipers that glide in the dust. ²³In the street the sword shall make them childless. In their homes terror will reign. Young men and women will perish, infants and grey-haired men.”

²⁴“I said, ‘I will scatter them and blot out their memory from mankind,’ but I dreaded the taunt of the enemy lest they boast and say, ‘Our hand has destroyed Israel. Jehovah has not done this.’”

²⁵“But the enemy is a nation without discernment. If they were wise they would understand. How can one man chase a thousand and two put ten thousand to flight, unless their Rock had sold them, unless Jehovah had given them up?”

²⁶“It is mine to avenge the enemy, I will repay. In due time the foot of the enemy will slip and their doom will rush in upon them.”

²⁷“Yet Jehovah will have compassion on his own when he sees their strength is gone. ²⁸I will say to them, ‘Now where are your gods, the rock you took refuge in, the gods who ate the fat of your sacrifices and drank the wine of your drink offerings?’ ²⁹See now, there is no God besides me. I put to death and I bring to life. I wound and I heal.”

³⁰“I lift my hand and declare, ‘As surely as I live forever, when my hand grasps my sword in judgement I will take vengeance on my enemies and repay those who hate me.’”

³¹“Honour Israel O nations, for Jehovah will avenge their blood and make atonement for his land and for his people.”

10

Moses permitted to view the promised land

¹When Moses had taught the words of this song to the people the Lord said to him, “The day of your death is near. Ascend Mount Nebo in Moab, across from Jericho and view the land I am giving the Israelites.

²There on the mountain you will be gathered to your people^{F*} as was your brother Aaron. ³For when the people rebelled at the Waters of Meribah both of you failed to honour me in their sight.”

*16 The term Most High is used interchangeably for Jehovah throughout the Old Testament.

*16 Traditional Israelite belief is that the spirits of all mankind had an existence prior to this mortal life as the offspring of God. These sons of God therefore may represent the spirits of all men born and also those yet to be born. See also Job 1:5, 7:4, Jeremiah 1:3, John 9:1 and 19:16.

*2 ‘Gathered to your people’ is an Israelite term for death.

Moses asks Jehovah to appoint a new leader

⁴Moses said to the Lord, "May Jehovah, the God of the spirits of all mankind appoint a man over this people who will lead them so they will not be like sheep without a shepherd."

Joshua chosen by Lord to succeed Moses

⁵The Lord said to Moses, "Bring Joshua, a man in whom is the Spirit, to the Tabernacle where I will commission him. ⁶Have him stand before Eleazar the high priest and all the people. Then lay your hands upon him and appoint him in their presence."

⁷"Eleazar the high priest will obtain revelations for him by inquiring of the Urim^F before Jehovah."

Moses instructs Joshua to lead the Israelites into the land

⁸So Moses said to all the Israelites, "I am no longer to lead you for the Lord has said to me, 'You shall not cross the Jordan.'"

⁹Then Moses called forth Joshua and said to him, "Be strong and courageous, for you must go with this people into the land and divide it among them. ¹⁰Jehovah himself will go before you and be with you and will not forsake you, so do not be fearful or discouraged."

Moses lays his hands on Joshua in the presence of the Lord and all the people

¹¹Then the Lord appeared in a pillar of cloud at the Tabernacle. ¹²Moses did as the Lord had commanded and laid his hands on Joshua and appointed him before all the people.

Moses blesses the tribes of Israel

¹³Afterward Moses blessed the tribes of Israel^F saying:

¹⁴"*Let Reuben live and his men increase.*"

¹⁵"*Hear O Lord the cry of Judah. Restore him to his place among the people.*"

¹⁶"*To Levi the tribe you favoured belongs the Urim and Thummim. You have proven him.*"

¹⁷*Levi watches over your word and guards your covenant and teaches your Law to Israel. He offers incense before you and burnt offerings on your altar.*

¹⁸*Bless all that Levi has O Jehovah and accept the work of his hands. Smite those who rise against him.*"

¹⁹"*Benjamin is loved of the Lord and rests secure, for he shields him all day long.*"

²⁰"*May the land of Joseph^F be blessed by Jehovah with the precious dew from the heavens above, with the best the sun and moon bring forth. With the finest yield of the earth and its fullness, and the favour of him who dwelt in the burning bush.*"

²¹"*Let all these rest upon the head of Joseph, the prince among his brothers.*"

²²"*In majesty he is like a firstborn bull. With his horns he will gore the nations, even those at the ends of the earth. Such are the ten thousands of Ephraim, such are the thousands of Manasseh.*"

²³"*Zebulun rejoices in his going out, and Issachar in his tents. They will summon peoples to the mountain and there offer sacrifices of righteousness. ²⁴They will feast on the abundance of the seas.*"

²⁵"*Blessed is he who enlarges Gad's domain. Gad lives there as a lion. He chose the best land for himself. The commanders portion is his, for he carried out the will of Jehovah.*"

²⁶"*Dan is a lion's cub.*"

²⁷"*Naphtali is abounding with plenty and the favour of the Lord. He will inherit southward to the lake.*"^F*

²⁸"*Most blessed of sons is Asher, let his brothers bathe his feet in oil. His strength will endure throughout his days.*"

Moses disappears on Mount Nebo aged 120 years

²⁹Then Moses climbed Mount Nebo and the Lord showed him all of the promised land.

³⁰Moses the servant of the Lord died there but to this day no one has found his tomb.^F*

³¹Moses was a 120 years old when he died, yet his eyes were not weak nor was his strength gone. The Israelites mourned him thirty days.

No prophet has since arisen in Israel like Moses

³²Since then no prophet has arisen in Israel like Moses, whom the Lord knew face to face.

³³No one has ever performed the awesome miracles that Moses did in the sight of all Israel.

*²⁰ The tribe of Joseph comprised the two tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh who were descended from the two sons of Joseph and adopted by their grandfather Israel (Genesis 31:4-7). These two dominant tribes and the eight other tribes associated with them were eventually lost to history after northern Israel was conquered and exiled by the Assyrians in 722 BC. They became the so called 'ten lost tribes of Israel.'

*²⁷ Naphtali's inheritance included the Lake of Galilee.

*³⁰ Moses is believed to have been translated, that is taken bodily from the earth as was Enoch and Elijah. This belief is reinforced by the appearance of Moses and Elijah hundreds of years later to Jesus and his three apostles, Peter, James and John at the time of the Transfiguration (Matt-Mark-Luke 17:23-25).

*⁷ The Urim and Thummim, a device used by the high priest to obtain revelations from the Lord. See note on Exodus 17:14.

*¹³ The tribe of Simeon is not mentioned. See note on Numbers 13:9 for a possible reason.

JOSHUA

In the Hebrew language of the Old Testament, Joshua means ‘*Jehovah saves*’ – the same name that is translated Jesus in the Greek of the New Testament.

Joshua was a faithful and worthy successor to Moses and had been his assistant for over forty years. He was a man of strong character and a warrior, and he had unwavering faith in the power of God.

He was with Moses upon the mountain when the Israelites built the golden calf. Had he remained below among the people it is difficult to imagine him allowing such a thing to happen.

This is an interesting book, full of action and impressive miracles. The Israelites under Joshua’s leadership are finally permitted by the Lord to enter the promised land. As they do so there immediately occurs a miracle – the Jordan river in full flood stops flowing the moment the feet of the priests carrying the Ark enter the water, and begins to flow again as soon as all Israel had crossed over.

More miracles follow in quick succession. The day following the Passover, manna from heaven ceases to fall. Shortly afterward the walls of the city of Jericho collapse at a mighty shout from the Israelite army. Later, giant hailstones destroy most of the men of a large combined Canaanite army, and the sun stands still for a whole day to allow the Israelites to complete the slaughter. The next seven years are spent under Joshua’s strong leadership, subduing and annihilating the Canaanites and then the promised land is divided up and allocated to the various tribes of Israel.

Some readers may regard the Lord’s command to annihilate all the men, women and children of Canaan as harsh and cruel, but when viewed from God’s eternal perspective it becomes an act of mercy. For death here on earth is only temporary and all who die will eventually be resurrected with a new body (Revelation 16:7), and then after facing judgement, will live forever in varying degrees of glory according to individual worthiness (see 1 Corinthians 8:24, Hebrews 4:27 and Revelation 18:10-11). The Lord ordered the Canaanites destroyed because of their great wickedness (Deuteronomy 2:4). For this very same reason he destroyed the people of Sodom and Gomorrah, otherwise future children born into such a corrupt and deviant society would grow up seriously contaminated and have a lesser hope of a glorious resurrection.

The idolatrous customs of the Canaanites which appealed strongly to the lusts of the flesh were contagious. Indeed, as forewarned by the Lord in Exodus 20:8 the surviving Canaanites who were never entirely destroyed, influenced later generations of Israel to widespread idolatry, bringing about their eventual destruction and the exile of survivors. It was an act of mercy for God to command an end to such a wicked society. A similar situation led to the destruction of virtually the entire population of the earth by the flood of Noah.

AUTHOR

Joshua and Eleazar (according to Jewish tradition), with clarifications by a later Israelite prophet.

“At the sound of the trumpet blast the armed men gave a mighty shout and immediately the walls of Jericho collapsed.” Joshua 3:15

CONTENTS

	Chapter		
Lord to be with Joshua as with Moses	1	Spies agree to her request	1
Joshua commanded to always study the Law	1	Spies report back to Joshua	1
Joshua told to prepare to cross the Jordan	1	Israelites move camp to banks of the Jordan	2
Two men sent to spy out the land	1	Priests carrying the Ark lead out.....	2
The spies stay with Rahab a harlot of Jericho	1	Lord to exalt Joshua in the eyes of all Israel	2
King of Jericho sends guards to arrest spies	1	Jordan stops flowing as Israel crosses	2
Rahab saves lives of spies	1	Memorial of twelve stones to be set up	2
Rahab asks that her family be spared	1	River runs in flood as before	2

Memorial stones set up at Gilgal	2	Galilean kings combine against Israel	7
Uncircumcised Israelite males circumcised	2	Joshua defeats the Galilean kings	7
Passover celebrated	2	Galilean cities put to sword	7
Manna from heaven stops	2	All Anakim destroyed except among Philistines	7
An angel appears to instruct Joshua	3	Still large areas of land to be taken over	7
Army marches around Jericho for seven days	3	Land assigned by lot	7
Walls of Jericho collapse at mighty shout	3	Tribe of Judah's inheritance	7
Rahab and her family rescued	3	Caleb claims his inheritance	7
Jericho burned	3	Land inheritances assigned by lot	7
Curse on man who rebuilds Jericho	3	Ephraim and Manasseh's inheritance	7
Anger of Lord aroused by theft	4	Ephraim and Manasseh ask for more land	7
Israelites beaten back by men of Ai	4	Tabernacle set up at Shiloh	8
Joshua mourns then prays to Lord	4	Remaining land surveyed	8
Lord replies that Israel has sinned	4	Joshua allocates remaining land by lot	8
Some devoted spoil of Jericho stolen	4	Benjamin's inheritance	8
Lord identifies Achan of Judah as guilty man	4	Simeon's inheritance	8
Achan confesses	4	Zebulun's inheritance	8
Stolen spoil recovered	4	Issachar's inheritance	8
Achan and all his household stoned to death	4	Asher's inheritance	8
City of Ai captured and burned	5	Naphtali's inheritance	8
Entire population of Ai put to sword	5	Dan's inheritance	8
Altar of uncut stones built on Mount Ebal	6	Joshua receives a town as his inheritance	8
Copy of Law inscribed on plastered rocks	6	Cities of refuge appointed	8
Joshua reads aloud entire Law on Mount Ebal	6	Levites receive their towns	8
Gibeonites deceive leaders of Israel	6	Eastern tribes return home to Gilead	9
Leaders do not bother to enquire of Lord	6	Eastern tribes erect a great altar at the Jordan	9
Peace covenant made with Gibeonites	6	Western tribes think it a sign of rebellion	9
Gibeonites found to be a Canaanite people	6	Western tribes prepare for war	9
Israelites march on Gibeon	6	Phinehas the priest speaks with eastern tribes	9
Joshua curses Gibeonites to be slaves	6	Altar built as a memorial only	9
Other kings combine to attack Gibeonites	6	Western tribes prepare for war	9
Gibeonites call on Joshua for protection	6	Joshua summons all Israel for his final address	10
Joshua attacks Gibeon by surprise	6	Israel not to associate with remaining Canaanites ..	10
Armies of the hill country kings flee in panic	6	Joshua and his family will serve the Lord	10
Large hailstones fall and kill many	6	Joshua repeats the laws and commandments	10
Joshua prays and the sun stands still	6	Joshua writes in book of Law	10
Hill country armies destroyed	6	Joshua sets up a stone as a witness	10
The five kings hide in a cave	6	Joshua dies and is buried	10
Joshua personally executes the five kings	6	Joseph's bones buried at Shechem	10
Seven more Canaanite cities destroyed	6	Eleazar the high priest dies	10

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

The Lord to be with Joshua as with Moses

¹After the death of Moses the Lord said to Joshua, **"Moses my servant has died. As I was with Moses so shall I be with you. I will never leave you or forsake you."**

²**"Now be strong and courageous for you will be leading these people to inherit the land I swore to give their forefathers."**

Joshua commanded to study the Law day and night, then he will be successful in all he does

³**"Be careful to obey all the laws my servant Moses gave you. Let the book of the Law govern your speech. Study it day and night so you will be sure to do everything written in it. ⁴Then you will prosper and have success in all you do. No one will be able to stand against you all the days of your life."**

Joshua told to prepare to cross the Jordan

⁵**"Now then, you and all these people, prepare to cross the Jordan river into the land I am about to give you."**

Two men sent to spy out the land

⁶So Joshua sent out two men as spies to look over the land and the city of Jericho.^{F*}

The spies stay with Rahab a harlot of Jericho

⁷The spies crossed the Jordan and entered Jericho and went to stay the night at the house of a harlot named Rahab.

The king of Jericho is warned and sends guards to Rahab to arrest the spies

⁸However the king of Jericho was told, "Some Israelites have come here tonight to spy out the land." So the king sent guards to Rahab

*6 Jericho was the nearest Canaanite city across the Jordan.

JOSHUA 2

saying, “Bring out the men who came to you. They are spies.”

Rahab deceives the guards and saves the lives of the spies

⁹Now Rahab had hidden the two spies among stalks of flax on her roof, so she said to the guards, “The men did come to me, but at sunset when it was time to close the city gate they left. I do not know which way they went. Go after them quickly and you may overtake them.”

¹⁰So the guards set out in pursuit along the road that led to the ford of the Jordan.

Rahab informs the spies that the Israelites are held in dread by the Canaanites

¹¹Rahab then went up on the roof and said to the Israelite spies, “I know that your God Jehovah has given this land to you. A great dread of you has fallen on us. For we heard how Jehovah dried up the sea for you when you came out of Egypt and how you completely destroyed Sihon and Og the two kings of the Amorites.”

¹²“When we heard of it our courage failed us, for Jehovah your God is indeed God in heaven above and on earth below.”

Rahab asks that the Israelites spare her family

¹³“Now then, please swear to me that you will show kindness to my family and spare the lives of my father and mother and brothers and sisters, and all who belong to them, for I have shown kindness to you.”

The spies agree to her request if the red escape rope is tied in her window and her family gathered

¹⁴The men replied, “Our lives for your lives.”

¹⁵So she let them down by a rope through the window of her house, which was built into the city wall.

¹⁶Then she said to them, “Flee to the hills so that your pursuers will not find you. Hide yourselves there three days until they return and then go on your way.”

¹⁷The men said to her, “The oath you made us swear will not be binding upon us unless when we enter the city you have tied this crimson rope in the same window through which you let us down, and you have brought all of your family into your house. ¹⁸If any of them go outside your house into the street their blood will be upon their own heads.”

¹⁹Rahab said, “Agreed.” And as they departed she tied the crimson rope in the window.

The spies report back to Joshua

²⁰When the two men left they went up into the hills and hid. After three days they forded the Jordan and returned to Joshua and told him all that had happened. ²¹They said, “The Lord has surely given the whole land into our hands. The hearts of the people are melting in fear because of us.”

Joshua orders the leaders to have the people prepare to enter the promised land

²²So Joshua commanded the leaders of the Israelites saying, “Go through the camp and have the people get ready. Three days from now we will cross the Jordan and take possession of the land the Lord our God is giving us.”



Mount Nebo (in distance) from where Moses viewed the promised land, and where he was last seen.

2

The Israelites move camp to banks of the Jordan

¹Early next morning, on the seventh day of the first month the Israelites moved to the bank of the Jordan and camped there before crossing over.

The priests carrying the Ark lead out

²On the third day leaders went through the Israelite camp instructing the people saying, “Tomorrow when you see the priests carrying the Ark of the Lord you are to move out and follow it, but keep a distance of about 2000 cubits* between you and the Ark. Do not go near it.”

³Joshua warned the people saying, “Purify yourselves, for tomorrow the Lord will do wonderful things among you.”

⁴The next morning Joshua commanded the priests, “Take up the Ark of the Covenant and lead out ahead of the people.”

The Lord to exalt Joshua in the eyes of all Israel

⁵Then the Lord said to Joshua, “Today I will begin to exalt you in the eyes of all Israel. They will know that I am with you as I was with Moses. ⁶Now command the priests who carry the Ark to go and stand in the river. As soon as they set foot in the Jordan its waters will stop flowing.”

The Jordan stops flowing as the priests enter the water

⁷Now the Jordan was in flood as it always is during harvest season, yet as soon as the feet

*2 About 1 km.

of the priests who carried the Ark touched the water's edge, the water upstream stopped flowing. It piled up in a heap a great distance away at a town called Adam.^{F*}



The river Jordan in flood.

All Israel pass over the Jordan

⁸So the people crossed over opposite Jericho. The priests who carried the Ark stood firm on the river bed in the middle of the Jordan while all Israel passed by, until the whole nation had completed the crossing.

A memorial of twelve stones to be set up to commemorate the miracle

⁹Then the Lord said to Joshua, “Choose twelve men, one from each tribe. Have each man lift a large stone from the middle of the Jordan where the priests stood and carry it on his shoulder to be set up at the place where you will camp this night.”

¹⁰“In days to come when your children say to you, ‘What do these stones mean?’ Answer them that the flow of the Jordan was cut off from before the Ark of Jehovah. These stones are to be a memorial to the people of Israel forever.”

¹¹Joshua chose men to do as the Lord commanded. He also set up twelve stones on the bed of the Jordan where the priests stood. Then he said to the priests, “Come up out of the Jordan.”

The river runs in flood as before

¹²As soon as the priests came up, the waters of the Jordan ran in flood as before.

¹³That day the Lord exalted Joshua in the sight of all Israel and they honoured him all the days of his life just as they had honoured Moses.

¹⁴The people marched up from the Jordan and camped at Gilgal^{F*} on the east of Jericho.

The memorial stones set up at Gilgal

¹⁵That evening, when Joshua set up the twelve stones from the Jordan he said to the people, “When your children say, ‘What do these stones mean?’” answer them, “Jehovah our God did to the Jordan what he did to the Red Sea. He dried it up until we had crossed over.”

*7 Adam was about 30 km upstream. Blockages of the Jordan have been recorded in this area due to slumping of the steep high banks of the river.

*14 Gilgal was about 15 km from the Jordan and about 3 km from Jericho.

Uncircumcised Israelite males are circumcised

¹⁶Then the Lord said to Joshua, “Make flint knives and circumcise the Israelites.”

¹⁷For although all the males that came out of Egypt had been circumcised, those born in the desert had not.

¹⁸After the whole nation had been circumcised they remained at Gilgal until they were healed.

The Passover is celebrated

¹⁹On the evening of the fourteenth day of the month, while camped at Gilgal on the plains of Jericho, the Israelites celebrated the Passover.^{F*}

The manna from heaven stops

²⁰The day after the Passover the Israelites ate food from the land of Canaan, unleavened bread and roasted grain. ²¹The manna stopped that day and from that day forward there was never any more. The Israelites ate the food of Canaan.

3

An angel appears to instruct Joshua

¹Now Joshua was standing near Jericho when he looked up and saw an angel standing in front of him with a drawn sword in his hand. ²Joshua approached him and said, “Are you for us or for our enemies?”

³The angel answered, “I have come as a commander of the army of Jehovah.”

⁴Joshua fell face down to the ground in reverence, then he said to the angel, “What message does my lord have for his servant?”

⁵The angel replied, “Remove your sandals for the ground on which you stand is holy.” So Joshua did so.

⁶Then the angel said to Joshua, “I have delivered Jericho into your hands. Now march around the city with all the armed men and have seven priests sounding ram’s horn trumpets march in front of the Ark. Do this once a day for the next six days.”

⁷“On the seventh day you are to march around the city seven times. Then the priests blowing the trumpets are to sound a long blast and all the men are to give a great shout. ⁸The walls of Jericho will collapse and every man will go straight in.”

The army march around Jericho for seven days

⁹So Joshua commanded the Israelites and seven priests went forth sounding trumpets with the Ark followed them. All the armed men marched with the priests, both in front of them and behind them, and the trumpets were sounded continually.

¹⁰Now Jericho was tightly shut up because of the Israelites. No one went in or out. ¹¹That first day the armed men and the priests circled the city once and then returned to camp.

*19 There is no mention of the Passover being celebrated since the Israelites left Sinai 40 years ago. It is unlikely that it had been observed as uncircumcised males were forbidden to eat the unleavened bread (Exodus 7:6).

JOSHUA 4

¹²Early the next morning the priests again took up the Ark of the Lord and with the armed men marched around the city once more. They did this for six days.

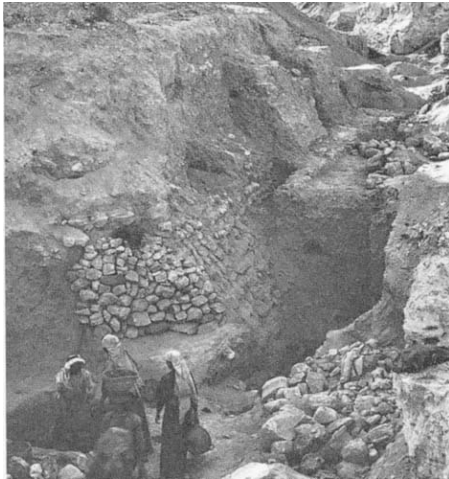
¹³On the seventh day they rose again at day break to march around the city, but this time they circled the city seven times.

The walls of Jericho collapse at the mighty shout of Israel

¹⁴The seventh time round the priests sounded a long trumpet blast. Now Joshua had commanded the men, "When you hear the long trumpet blast, shout! The Lord has given you the city."

¹⁵So at the sound of the trumpet blast the armed men gave a mighty shout and immediately the walls of Jericho collapsed and every man charged straight in.

¹⁶Then they began to put every living thing in the city to the sword, men and women, young and old, cattle, sheep and donkeys.



The excavated ruins of the collapsed walls of old Jericho.

Rahab and her family rescued

¹⁷Joshua said to the two young men who had spied out the land, "Go into Rahab the harlot's house and bring her out and all who belong to her, in accordance with your oath to her."

¹⁸So the two men went in and brought out Rahab along with her father and mother and brothers and all who belonged to her.

Jericho is burned

¹⁹Then the Israelites burned the entire city and everything in it, except the silver and gold and articles of bronze and iron which they put into the treasury of the Tabernacle of the Lord.

Joshua pronounces a curse on the man who rebuilds the walls of Jericho

²⁰Then Joshua pronounced this curse. ***"Cursed be the man who rebuilds the walls of Jericho. At the cost of his firstborn son***

will he lay the foundations. At the cost of his youngest son will he set up the gates."^{F*}

4

The anger of the Lord aroused by theft

¹Now one of the Israelite men had been unfaithful and kept some of the spoil of Jericho for himself, so the anger of the Lord was kindled against Israel.

The men of Ai beat back the Israelites causing fear to come upon the Israelites

²Joshua next sent men to spy out the city of Ai east of Jericho.

³When the spies returned to Joshua they said, "Send 2000 or 3000 men to take it, for only a few men are there."

⁴So about 3000 men went up. But they were put to flight by the men of Ai and thirty-six Israelites were killed. At this the hearts of the Israelites became full of fear.

Joshua mourns then prays to the Lord

⁵Joshua tore his clothes and fell face down before the Ark and lay there until evening. The elders of Israel did the same with dust on their heads.^{F*}

⁶Then Joshua prayed saying, "O Lord what can I say, Israel has been put to flight by her enemies. Now the Canaanites will hear of this and will surround us and wipe us out. What then will you do for your great name?"

The Lord replies that Israel has sinned by stealing some of the devoted spoil of Jericho

⁷The Lord said to Joshua, "**Stand up. Why are you down on your face? Israel has sinned. They have violated my commandment and stolen some of the devoted^{F*} spoil of Jericho. They have lied and put devoted spoil among their own possessions. That is why they cannot stand against their enemies."**

⁸"**Now command the people and say to them, 'Purify yourselves, and in the morning present yourselves before the Lord tribe by tribe. Whoever is found with the devoted things shall be destroyed by fire along with all that belongs to him. He has violated the covenant of the Lord.'**"

The guilty man, Achan of Judah is identified by the Lord

⁹Therefore early next morning Joshua had the men of Israel come forward tribe by tribe. Achan of the tribe of Judah was identified by the Lord as the guilty one.

Achan confesses

¹⁰Joshua said to Achan, "Give glory to the

^{*20} This curse fell upon a man by the name of Hiel during the time of King Ahab (Elijah 2:20).

^{*5} Sprinkling dust on the head was a sign of grief.

^{*7} Devoted means to be irrevocably given over to the Lord, either by destruction, or in the case of valuable metals, put into the Tabernacle treasury.

God of Israel and make confession to him. Tell me what you have done.”

¹¹Achan answered, “It is true. It is I who have sinned against the God of Israel. I saw among the spoil of Jericho a beautiful robe and 200 shekels^{F*} of silver and 50 shekels of gold. I coveted them and took them and buried them in the ground inside my tent.”

The stolen spoil is recovered

¹²Joshua sent messengers who ran to the tent of Achan and unearthed the buried items and brought them back and spread them out before Joshua.

¹³Joshua said to Achan, “Why have you brought this trouble upon us? The Lord will bring trouble on you today.”

Achan and all his household stoned and his possessions burned

¹⁴So they took Achan, the robe, the silver and gold, his sons and daughters, his cattle, donkeys and sheep, his tent and all that he had to the Valley of Achor. There all Israel stoned them and burned them with fire.

¹⁵Over the remains they heaped a large pile of rocks which remain to this day.^{F*} Then the Lord turned from his anger.



The Valley of Achor where Achan and his family were stoned to death.

5

The city of Ai taken by ambush

¹The Lord said to Joshua, “Take the whole army with you and go up and attack Ai. You shall do to Ai as you did to Jericho, except you may carry off the spoil and livestock for yourselves. Set an ambush behind the city.”

²So Joshua and the whole army went up to attack Ai. Joshua chose 30,000 of his best men and sent them out by night to conceal themselves behind the city. ³He said to them,

*11 A shekel is approx 12gms. A shekel of silver was worth about a day's wages for a labourer.

*15 The phrase 'which remain to this day' is found several times in the book of Joshua. It refers to the day in which the book of Joshua was written.

“Tomorrow I and those with me will advance on the city. When the men of Ai come against us we will flee from them. They will say, ‘The Israelites are running from us as before’ and will pursue us.”

⁴“When we have drawn them away, rise up from your ambush and take the city and set it on fire.”

⁵So early next morning Joshua mustered his men and marched on the city. When the king of Ai saw them he and men of the city came out to meet them in battle.

⁶Joshua and his men pretended to flee before them toward the desert.

⁷At this all the men of Ai were called out to pursue them. Not one man remained behind in the city. They left the city open and went in pursuit of Israel.

⁸Then the Lord said to Joshua, “Hold out your sword toward Ai and I will deliver the city into your hands.” So Joshua held out his sword.

Ai burned

⁹As soon as he did this, the men concealed in ambush arose and entered the city. They captured it and set it on fire.

¹⁰The men of Ai saw the smoke rising in the sky but could not escape, for when Joshua saw the smoke he turned his men around to attack them.

¹¹The men of the ambush also came out of the city to assist them, so the men of Ai were caught in the middle with Israelites front and rear. Israel cut them down leaving no survivors except the king of Ai whom they brought to Joshua.

The entire population of 12,000 put to the sword

¹²Then they returned to the city and killed all who were in it. 12,000 fell that day, all the people of Ai. ¹³However Israel carried off the livestock and spoil of the city.

¹⁴Joshua killed the king of Ai and hung him on a tree, but at sunset he ordered his body taken down and thrown at the city gate. ¹⁵There they raised a large pile of rocks over him which remain to this day.

6

An altar of uncut stones built on Mount Ebal and a burnt offering made to the Lord

¹After this, Joshua built an altar of uncut stones on Mount Ebal as Moses had commanded and offered burnt offerings to the Lord.

A copy of the Law inscribed on plastered rocks

²There in the presence of all Israel, Joshua inscribed in plaster on large rocks a copy of the Law that Moses had written.

Joshua reads aloud the entire Law

³All of Israel, foreigners and citizens alike were standing on either side of the Ark. Half

JOSHUA 6

faced away to Mount Gerizim and half faced Mount Ebal, just as Moses had commanded. ⁴Then in the presence of all the people Joshua read out every word of the Law, including the blessings and the curses.

The Gibeonites deceive the leaders of Israel

⁵When the kings of Canaan heard what had happened to Jericho and Ai, they agreed to join together to war against Israel. But the people of the city of Gibeon resorted to cunning.

⁶Officials of Gibeon went as a delegation to Joshua with donkeys carrying worn-out sacks and old wineskins that were cracked and mended. ⁷They themselves wore old clothes and worn sandals on their feet and took with them bread that had gone dry and mouldy.

⁸They entered the Israelite camp at Gilgal and said to Joshua, "We have travelled from a very distant city to make a peace treaty with you."

⁹The men of Israel said to the Gibeonites, "You may be living in the land that has been given to us, how then can we make a peace treaty with you?"

¹⁰Joshua said to them, "Who are you and where do you come from?"

¹¹They answered, "Your servants have come from a very distant city because of the fame of Jehovah your God. We heard reports of him and all that he did in Egypt and to the two kings of the Amorites east of the Jordan. ¹²Our elders said to us, 'Take provisions for your journey and go and meet them and say to them, 'We are your servants. Make a peace treaty with us.' ¹³This bread of ours was still warm on the day we left, but see now how dry and mouldy it is. And these wineskins were new, but see how cracked they are. And our clothes and sandals are worn out by our long journey."*F*

The leaders of Israel do not bother to enquire of the Lord

¹⁴When the leaders of Israel saw how old their provisions were they did not bother to inquire of the Lord.

Joshua makes a peace covenant with the Gibeonites

¹⁵So Joshua made a peace covenant with the Gibeonites and the elders of Israel sealed the covenant with an oath.

The Israelites learn that the Gibeonites are a Canaanite people

¹⁶Three days later however the Israelites heard that the Gibeonites were nearby neighbours.

The Israelites march on Gibeon

¹⁷The Israelites set out and after two days came to the city of Gibeon and the towns round about it, but they did not attack for they had sworn a peace treaty with them.

¹⁸The Israelites murmured against their leaders but the leaders answered, "We have sworn an oath by Jehovah the God of Israel.

We cannot touch them or wrath will fall upon us for breaking the oath."

Joshua rebukes the Gibeonites and curses them to be slaves to Israel

¹⁹Joshua summoned the Gibeonite officials and said to them, "Why did you deceive us by saying, 'We live a long distance from you,' when you lived close by? You are now under a curse. You will never cease to serve as cutters of wood and carriers of water for all Israel and for the house of my God."

²⁰The Gibeonites answered Joshua, "We feared for our lives. Do with us whatever seems right to you."



Canaan during the time of Joshua.

Hill country kings combine to attack the Gibeonites

²¹When the king of Jerusalem heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with Israel he feared greatly, for Gibeon was a notable city, larger than Ai and their men were warriors.

²²So the king of Jerusalem sent to the king of Hebron and other kings of the hill country and said, "Combine with me to attack Gibeon, for they have made a peace treaty with the Israelites."

The Gibeonites call on Joshua for protection

²³When the men of Gibeon saw the armies of the other kings gathering against them they sent word to Joshua saying, "Come quickly and save us. The kings of the hill country have joined forces against us."

*13 The city of the Gibeonites was only about 30 km away from the Israelite camp at Gilgal, a two day journey.

Joshua marches his army all night to surprise the hill country kings

²⁴Joshua marched up from Gilgal that very night with his entire army to take them by surprise.

²⁵The Lord said to Joshua, “Do not fear them. I have given them into your hand.”

The hill country armies flee in panic and are slaughtered greatly

²⁶That day Joshua defeated the hill country armies in a great victory. They fled in panic before Israel and a great slaughter was inflicted upon them.

Large hailstones fall and kill many

²⁷As they fled, the Lord hurled large hailstones down on them from the sky. More died from the hailstones than were killed by the swords of the Israelites.

The sun and moon stand still in answer to Joshua’s prayer

²⁸That same day Joshua prayed to the Lord saying, “May the sun stand still over Gibeon, and the moon over the Valley of Ajalon.”

²⁹And the sun stood still and the moon stopped until the Israelites had destroyed their enemies.

³⁰The sun stopped in the middle of the sky and delayed going down about a full day. There has never been a day like it before or since, a day when the Lord listened to a man.

The five kings hide in a cave

³¹Now the five kings had fled and hidden together in a cave. When Joshua was told this he said, “Roll large rocks against the mouth of the cave and post men to guard it, but do not stop pursuing your enemies. Do not let them reach their cities.”

³²So the Israelites destroyed the armies of the five kings, almost to a man, but some reached their cities.



The Valley of Ajalon near the city of Gibeon where the sun and moon stood still to enable Joshua and the Israelites to defeat the hill country kings.

Joshua personally executes the five kings

³³Then Joshua said, “Go open the cave and bring out the five kings.” So they brought out

the kings of Jerusalem, Hebron, Jarmuth, Lachish and Eglon.

³⁴Joshua said to his army commanders, “Put your feet on the necks of these kings.” So they came forward and placed their feet on their necks.

³⁵Joshua said to them, “Fear not. Be strong and courageous. This is what the Lord will do to all the enemies you are going to fight.”

³⁶Then Joshua struck and killed the kings and hung them on five trees until evening.

³⁷At sunset they took them down from the trees and threw their bodies back into the cave, and blocked the entrance with large rocks which remain to this day.

Seven more cities destroyed

³⁸After this Joshua attacked and defeated the cities of Hebron, Lachish, Eglon, Libnah, Makkedah, Gezer and Debir leaving no survivors, then he returned with all Israel to the camp at Gilgal.

7

The northern Galilean kings combine against Israel

¹When the king of Hazor^{F*} heard what had happened he called on the other kings in the lake of Galilee region and they all combined forces to fight Israel. They came with a huge number of horses and chariots, a vast army as numerous as sand on the seashore.

²The Lord said to Joshua, “Do not fear them. By this time tomorrow I will hand them over to Israel slain. You are to hamstring^{F*} their horses and burn their chariots.”

Joshua defeats the Galilean kings

³Joshua and his whole army took them by surprise at the Waters of Merom,^{F*} defeating them and pursuing them until no survivors were left.

The cities of Galilee put to the sword

⁴Then Joshua took the cities of these kings, putting everyone to the sword, not sparing anything that breathed.

⁵Joshua waged war against these Galilean cities for a long time.

All Anakim destroyed except among Philistines

⁶So Joshua took all the southern and central hill country, all the Negeb,^{F*} the Arabah^{F*} and the mountains as far north as Mount Hermon.

⁷Nor were any Anakim^{F*} left in Israelite territory, only in the Philistine cities of Gaza, Gath and Ashdod. ⁸Joshua left nothing undone

*1 Hazor was the largest city of Canaan with an estimated population of 40,000. It was located north of the lake of Galilee.

*2 To hamstring an animal is to render it useless for work by cutting the main tendons in the back ankles.

*3 A marshy area along the Jordan river.

*6 The Negeb is the semi-desert, hilly, southern region that extends from the Dead Sea westward to the Mediterranean sea.

*6 The Arabah is the Jordan river valley that runs the full length of Israel, from the far north, down through the Dead Sea to the Red Sea in the distant south.

*7 The Anakim, meaning ‘long necks’ were an exceptionally tall race of people (see note on Genesis 5:14). Goliath who was over nine feet tall was of the Anakim.

JOSHUA 8

of all the Lord had commanded. ⁹Then the land had rest from war.^{F*}



Mount Hermon, in distance, the northernmost boundary of the land taken by Joshua.

Still large areas of land to be taken over

¹⁰Joshua was now well advanced in years and the Lord said to him, “**You are old and there still remains a large area of land to be taken over. The regions of the Philistines to the west and Lebanon to the north.** ¹¹**I will drive the inhabitants of the hill country of Lebanon before the Israelites. Be sure to allocate this land to Israel.**”

The land assigned by lot

¹²Joshua and the leaders of the tribes now began to assign the land by lot to the nine and a half tribes. ¹³Moses had already granted the tribes of Reuben, Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh land on the east of the Jordan.

¹⁴The Levites were to receive no share of the land but only towns to live in, with pasture lands for their livestock.

The tribe of Judah's inheritance

¹⁵The inheritance of the tribe of Judah was 29 towns in the Negeb, 39 towns in the western foothills, the fortified Philistine cities on the coastal plain with their surrounding settlements, 44 towns in the hill country including Hebron and 6 towns in the southern desert.

Caleb claims his inheritance

¹⁶Now Caleb of Judah had approached Joshua at the time they were camped at Gilgal and said to him, “I was forty years old when Moses sent me to explore this land, and I brought him back a good report. ¹⁷But my brethren who went up with me made the hearts of the people fearful. So on that day Moses swore to me, **‘The land on which your feet have walked will be your children's inheritance forever, for you have followed Jehovah wholeheartedly.**”

¹⁸“So here I am today, eighty-five years old and still as strong as the day Moses sent me out.”

¹⁹“Now, allot me the hill country that the Lord promised me. ²⁰You have heard that the Anakim are there and their cities are large and

fortified, but with the Lord helping me I will drive them out just as he said.”^{F*}

²¹So Joshua blessed Caleb that day and gave him the city of Hebron as his inheritance.

Ephraim and Manasseh's inheritance

²²The inheritance of the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh: Besides Manasseh's land east of the Jordan their territory began at the Jordan near Jericho and included the central hill country and all the towns as far as the Great Sea to the west. ²³There were towns belonging to Ephraim lying among the towns of Manasseh.^{F*}

Ephraim and Manasseh ask for more land

²⁴The men of Ephraim and half the tribe of Manasseh said to Joshua, “Why have you given us only one lot? We are a numerous people.”^{F*}

²⁵Joshua answered, “If you are so numerous and the hill country is not enough for you, go up into the forested country and clear land for yourselves.”

²⁶The men replied, “The hill country is not enough for us, but the Philistines who live on the coastal plain alongside the forested country have iron chariots.”

²⁷Joshua replied, “You are numerous and powerful. Take the forested hill country, clear it and its farthest limits will be yours. ²⁸Although the Philistines on the plains are strong and have iron chariots you can destroy them.”

²⁹(The tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh were not able to occupy all the towns allotted to them. However when they grew stronger they subjected the Canaanites to forced labour but did not destroy them completely.)

8

The Tabernacle set up at Shiloh

¹The Israelites had now gathered at Shiloh and set up the Tabernacle there.

²However there were still seven tribes who had not yet received their inheritances.

The remaining land is surveyed

³Joshua said to the Israelites, “How long will you wait before you take possession of the land Jehovah has given you? Appoint three men from each tribe and send them out to survey the land and write a description of it. ⁴Divide the land into seven parts and I will cast lots for you in the presence of the Lord.”

Joshua casts lots to allocate the land for the last seven tribes

⁵So the surveyors departed and travelled throughout the land and returned with written

*20 This conversation took place at Gilgal about seven years earlier, before Joshua's conquest of the land.

*23 It appears that the land was held in common at first but was later divided among these two tribes of Joseph.

*24 The total land area allotted Ephraim and Manasseh was in fact larger than that of any other tribe (see map), but it appears that the populated and developed portions of the land were comparatively less.

*9 Joshua's conquest of the land had taken about seven years.

descriptions of the land. Joshua then cast lots to allocate the land among the seven tribes.

Benjamin's inheritance

⁶The first lot fell to Benjamin. Their territory lay between the tribes of Judah, and Ephraim and Manasseh; 26 towns including Jericho and Jerusalem.

Simeon's inheritance

⁷The second lot fell to Simeon. Their inheritance lay inside the territory of Judah; 17 towns including Beersheba. ⁸The inheritance of Simeon was taken from the share of Judah for Judah's portion was more than they needed.

Zebulun, Issachar, Asher, Naphtali and Dan's inheritances

⁹The third lot fell to Zebulun; 12 towns.

¹⁰The fourth lot fell to Issachar; 16 towns.

¹¹The fifth lot fell to Asher; 15 towns and the fortified city of Tyre.

¹²The sixth lot fell to Naphtali; 19 towns and fortified cities.

¹³The seventh lot fell to Dan; 18 districts and the seaport city of Joppa.

Joshua receives a town as an inheritance

¹⁴When they had finished dividing the land the Israelites gave Joshua the town he asked for, Timnath Serah in the hill country of Ephraim.

Cities of refuge appointed

¹⁵Then the Lord said to Joshua, **"Have the Israelites appoint cities of refuge as I instructed Moses, so that anyone who kills unintentionally may flee there and find protection from the avenger of blood."**

¹⁶So they set apart Kedesh in Galilee, Shechem in the hill country of Ephraim, and Hebron in the hill country of Judah.

¹⁷On the east side of the Jordan they set apart Bezer among the tribe of Reuben, Ramoth among the tribe of Gad, and Golan among the tribe of Manasseh.

The Levites receive their towns

¹⁸Then the Levites approached Eleazar the high priest and Joshua and said to them, "The Lord commanded Moses that you give us towns to live in with pasture lands for our livestock."

¹⁹So they gave the Levites who were descendants of Aaron 13 towns from among the tribes of Judah, Simeon and Benjamin.

²⁰The rest of the Levites were allotted towns among the other tribes. The total number of cities allotted to the Levites was 48, along with their pasture lands.

²¹So the Lord gave Israel all the land he had sworn to give their forefathers.

Manasseh and blessed them and said to them, "You have done all that Moses commanded and have not deserted your brothers."

²⁴"Now return to your homes in Gilead on the east side of the Jordan with your great wealth, the spoil from your enemies, your large herds of livestock, your silver, gold, bronze and iron, and great quantity of clothing and divide it equally among yourselves."

³⁴"But be very careful to keep all the commandments that Moses gave you. Love the Lord your God and serve him with all your heart and all your soul."

Eastern tribes erect a great altar at the Jordan

⁴So the men of Reuben, Gad and Manasseh left the Israelites in Shiloh in Canaan to return to Gilead their own land east of the Jordan.

⁵On the way they stopped and erected a large altar by the Jordan river.



The inheritances of the twelve tribes.

Western tribes think the altar a sign of rebellion and prepare for war

⁶When the Israelites in Canaan heard that the tribes of Reuben, Gad and Manasseh had erected an altar, they were angered^{F*} and gathered at Shiloh to war against them.

⁶ Large altars were normally used to offer burnt sacrifices, but sacrifices were only to be offered on the Tabernacle altar unless otherwise commanded by the Lord (Deuteronomy 1:39).

The eastern tribes return home to Gilead

¹Then Joshua summoned the tribes of Reuben and Gad and half the tribe of

JOSHUA 10

Phinehas the priest and other leaders first sent to speak with the Gilead tribes

⁷But first they sent Phinehas, son of Eleazar the high priest, and ten other leaders to the land of Gilead to speak with the eastern tribes.

The altar built as a memorial only

⁸When they reached Gilead they said, "How could you break faith with the God of Israel like this? How could you turn away from him and build an altar in rebellion against him?"

⁹But the leaders of Reuben, Gad and Manasseh answered, "Jehovah, God of gods, he knows. And let Israel know, if this was done in rebellion do not spare us. If we have built an altar to offer sacrifice to turn away from Jehovah, may he himself call us to account."

¹⁰"But no, we did it for fear that some day your descendants might say to ours, "What do you have to do with the God of Israel? Jehovah has made the Jordan a boundary between you and us. You have no share in the Lord."

¹¹So your descendants may cause ours to stop worshipping Jehovah. ¹²That is why we said, "Let us build an altar, not for burnt offerings or sacrifices, but as a witness between you and us, and the generations that follow that we will worship the Lord at his Tabernacle."

The western tribes are glad and talk no more of war

¹³When Phinehas the priest and the leaders of the Israelites heard what Reuben, Gad and Manasseh said, they were pleased and returned to Canaan and reported to the people.

¹⁴The men of Israel too, were glad to hear their report and spoke no more of going to war against their brothers.



Negev desert in the southern border of the land.

10

Joshua summons all Israel and gives them his final address

¹Now after the Lord had given Israel rest from their enemies for many days, Joshua summoned all Israel to the town of Shechem.

There he gathered the leaders of the people around him and said to them, "I am old and well advanced in years and am about to go the way of all the earth."

²"You have seen everything the Lord has done to these nations for your sake, and you have been allotted all the land of the nations that still remain. ³The Lord will drive them before you and you will be able to take possession of the whole land."

⁴"He has driven before you great and powerful nations. No one has been able to withstand you. One of you puts to flight a thousand because your God fights for you."

Israelites not to associate or intermarry with remaining Canaanites

⁵"Now be very careful to love Jehovah your God and to obey all that is written in the book of the Law of Moses. Do not associate or intermarry with the nations that remain among you. Do not invoke the names of their gods or bow down to them."

⁶"If you do, you may be sure that Jehovah your God will no longer drive them before you. Instead they will become whips to your backs and thorns in your sides until you perish."

Joshua declares that he and his family will serve the Lord

⁷"If you are unwilling to serve the Lord then choose this day whom you will serve. ⁸As for me and my family, we will serve the Lord."

⁹The people answered, "We too will serve the Lord."

Joshua repeats the laws and commandments and writes in the book of the Law

¹⁰On that day there at Shechem, Joshua made a covenant with the people. ¹¹He repeated all the laws and commandments they were to follow and wrote in the book of the Law all that took place.

Joshua sets up a stone as a witness

¹²Then he took a large stone and set it up under the oak tree at Shechem and said to all the people, "This stone will be a witness for it has heard the words that the Lord has given us. It will be a witness against you if you are unfaithful."

Joshua dies and is buried

¹³After these things, Joshua the servant of the Lord died at the age of 110. They buried him in the land of his inheritance at Timnath Serah.

Joseph's bones buried at Shechem

¹⁴Joseph's bones which the Israelites had brought up from Egypt were also buried at Shechem, in the same tract of land that Jacob bought for 100 pieces of silver from Hamor.

Eleazar the high priest dies

¹⁵Eleazar the high priest also died and was buried at Gibeah which had been allotted to his son Phinehas in the hill country of Ephraim.

JUDGES

Leaders of the Israelites from the time of Moses down to the time of the kings were called Judges, hence the name of this book.

Judges is a most interesting book but it covers a long 350 years of unsettled Israelite history in just a few pages and is therefore densely packed with detail, so it can be a little difficult to follow on first reading.

The book contains many colourful and heroic characters and also some tragic ones. There is the faithful Gideon, the ambitious and murderous king Abimelech, the brave Kenite woman Jael, the social outcast Jephthah, and the mighty Samson and his deceitful lover Delilah.

The book commences with the Israelite tribes attempting to destroy the remaining Canaanites, to complete the takeover of all their allotted inheritances. However in the absence of a strong leader of the calibre of Moses or Joshua, their faith and courage fail them.

The final blow to their hopes occurs when an angel appears with a message from the Lord stating that because they had been disobedient and not broken down the Canaanite altars as commanded, the Lord would no longer assist them to destroy the remaining Canaanites. At this dismaying news the Israelites wept aloud.

To make matters worse, the next generation of Israelites, in blatant disregard of the Law of Moses begin to intermarry with the Canaanites. This begins a continuing cycle of idolatry, defeat, suffering, repentance and eventual deliverance by a compassionate God. Later generations fail to learn the lessons of the past and the cycle reoccurs at approx 40 or 80 year intervals.

Judges ends tragically with a sordid case of sexual abuse of a concubine. This eventually leads to civil war and the almost complete annihilation of the tribe of Benjamin.

AUTHOR Samuel, with clarifications by later Israelite prophets.

The Lord said to Gideon, **“There are still too many men. Take them down to the spring to drink and I will sort them there.”** Judges 5:9.

CONTENTS

	Chapter		
Western tribes go to occupy their lands	1	Israelites again do evil	2
Judah and Simeon combine to destroy Canaanites ..	1	Israel oppressed 20 years by Jabin and Sisera	2
Jerusalem set on fire	1	Deborah the prophetess judges Israel	3
Caleb given city of Hebron	1	Lord calls Barak to defeat Sisera	3
Othniel wins Caleb's daughter Acsah	1	Barak refuses to go without Deborah	3
Israelites unable to destroy the Philistines	1	Deborah rebukes Barak's lack of faith	3
City of Bethel taken by strategy	1	Lord gives Sisera's army into Barak's hands	3
Israel fails to destroy all of the Canaanites	1	Sisera flees to tent of Jael a Kenite woman	3
An angel rebukes Israel for disobedience	1	Jael kills Sisera with a tent peg	3
Lord to no longer drive out the Canaanites	1	Song of victory by Deborah and Barak	3
The Israelites weep aloud	1	Forty years of peace	3
Israelites begin to intermarry with Canaanites	2	Israelites again do evil	4
Israelites begin to worship Canaanite gods	2	Israel oppressed by Midianites for seven years	4
Israel plundered and defeated	2	Midianites ravage the land	4
Israel in bondage eight years	2	Prophet sent to rebuke Israel for idolatry	4
Othniel becomes judge of Israel	2	Lord calls Gideon to save Israel	4
Forty years of peace	2	Gideon asks angel for a sign	4
Israelites again do evil	2	Fire consumes Gideon's food offering	4
Israel subject to Moab for eighteen years	2	Gideon destroys altar of Baal	4
Ehud assassinates king of Moab	2	Men of the town demand Gideon's life	4
Ehud leads the Israelites and subdues Moab	2	Gideon's father protects him	4
Eighty years of peace	2	Midianites again invade Israel	5
Shamgar judges Israel	2	Gideon gathers a 32,000 strong army	5

JUDGES

Gideon tests God with a wool fleece	5	Samson desires a Philistine girl for his wife	9
Lord reduces Gideon's army to 300	5	Samson kills a lion with his bare hands	9
Gideon's courage boosted by an enemy's dream	5	Finds honey in lion carcass	9
Gideon surrounds Midianite army at midnight	5	The wedding feast and the riddle	10
Gideon and his 300 men sound trumpets	5	Philistines threaten Samson's betrothed wife	10
Gideon's men hold up flaming torches and shout	5	Samson's betrothed wife pleads with him	10
The Midianites panic and fight one another	5	He finally reveals riddle to her	10
The Midianites flee into the darkness	5	Betrothed wife tells her people	10
Other Israelites called out to help	5	Samson angry with the Philistines	10
Ephraimites told to guard the Jordan fords	5	Strikes down thirty Philistines	10
Ephraimites angry they were not called at first	5	Samson later returns to claim his wife	10
Gideon placates Ephraimites anger	5	Finds she has been given to another	10
Succoth and Peniel refuse food to Gideon's men	5	Samson sets fire to crops of Philistines	10
Gideon captures the two remaining kings	5	Philistines burn Samson's wife to death	10
Gideon punishes men of Succoth and Peniel	5	Samson slaughters Philistines to avenge wife	10
Gideon executes the Midianite kings	5	The Philistines go to Judah to capture Samson	10
Gideon becomes judge of Israel	6	Men of Judah go out to Samson's cave	10
Gold earrings Gideon's share of spoil	6	Samson tied with new ropes and led out	10
Gideon makes a gold medallion	6	Samson snaps ropes	10
Forty years of peace	6	Samson kills a 1000 Philistines with a jaw bone	10
Gideon's wives bear him seventy sons	6	Samson cries to Lord for water	10
Israelites again turn to idolatry	6	A new spring flows	10
Gideon's son Abimelech desires to rule	6	Samson becomes judge of Israel	10
Abimelech murders all but one of his 70 brothers	6	Samson stays with a Philistine harlot in Gaza	11
Abimelech crowned ruler of Israel	6	Men of the city lie in wait to kill him	11
Abimelech's brother Jotham shouts a bitter fable	6	Samson uproots city gates at midnight	11
Jotham curses Abimelech and city Shechem	6	Samson falls in love with Delilah	11
Abimelech rules Israel for three years	7	Philistine rulers offer a bribe to Delilah	11
Ill feeling between men of Shechem and Abimelech	7	Delilah asks Samson to tell her his secret	11
Gaal brags he could destroy Abimelech	7	Samson snaps seven fresh bowstrings	11
Ruler of Shechem informs Abimelech	7	Samson snaps new ropes like threads	11
Abimelech sets an ambush	7	Delilah weaves Samson's hair into her loom	11
Abimelech puts Gaal and his followers to flight	7	Samson wearies of Delilah's nagging	11
Abimelech attacks Shechem	7	Samson reveals to Delilah that he is a Nazirite	11
1000 survivors burned alive in temple	7	Delilah sends word to Philistine rulers	11
City of Shechem razed and the crop land ruined	7	Delilah has Samson's hair cut off while he sleeps	11
Abimelech attacks nearby town of Thebez	7	Samson overcome and blinded by the Philistines	11
Abimelech tries to burn inhabitants alive	7	Samson put to work grinding at prison mill	11
Abimelech's skull crushed by a woman	7	Philistines celebrate in their temple	11
Abimelech has his armour-bearer kill him	7	Samson brought in to entertain Philistines	11
Tola judges Israel twenty three years	8	Samson prays for his strength to be restored	11
Jair judges Israel twenty-two years	8	Samson collapses the Philistine temple	11
Israelites again turn to idolatry	8	Samson and thousands of Philistines die	11
Ammonites oppress Israel eighteen years	8	Micah's silver plated image	12
Israelites repent	8	Micah appoints a young Levite to act as his priest	12
Jephthah called to lead Israelites of Gilead	8	Tribe of Dan search for a place to settle	12
Jephthah's message to Ammonite king	8	Five Danite explorers spend night with Micah	12
Jephthah makes a vow to the Lord	8	Explorers discover people of Laish	12
Ammonites defeated by Jephthah	8	600 armed men of Dan set out for Laish	12
Jephthah's daughter first to greet him	8	The explorers steal Micah's image and his priest	12
Jephthah's daughter weeps with her friends	8	Micah pursues Danites	12
Jephthah's daughter sacrificed	8	Danites too strong for Micah	12
Men of Ephraim threaten Jephthah	8	Danites put town of Laish to sword	12
Ephraimites mock men of Gilead	8	The Levite and his sons act as their priests	12
A battle begins and Ephraimites defeated	8	A Levite's concubine unfaithful to him	13
Survivors identified at Jordan by their speech	8	She returns to live with her father	13
42,000 Ephraimites fall	8	Her husband goes to see her to forgive her	13
Jephthah judges Israel six years	8	The man and his concubine depart for home	13
Ibzan judges Israel seven years	8	They spend night at town of Gibeah	13
Elon judges Israel ten years	8	An old man takes them into his house	13
Abdon judges Israel eight years	8	Evil men come to house that night	13
Philistines oppress Israel forty years	8	Demand sex with the Levite man	13
Angel appears to the barren wife of Manoah	9	The old man offers his virgin daughter	13
A son to be born and be a Nazirite	9	The Levite pushes his concubine outside to them	13
Angel appears a second time	9	The men rape concubine all night	13
Manoah offers a burnt sacrifice	9	Concubine dies in doorway	13
The angel ascends in the flame	9	The Levite dismembers his wife's body	13
Samson is born	9	Sends the parts throughout Israel	13

All Israel gather against men of Gibeah 13
 Benjamites support the men of Gibeah 13
 The Israelites enquire of the Lord 13
 Benjamites twice overpower the Israelites 13
 The Israelites fast and offer sacrifice 13
 The Israelites ambush Gibeah 13
 Benjamites are surrounded and 25,000 die 13
 600 Benjamites flee into desert 13
 People and towns of Benjamin destroyed 13
 Great sorrow for loss of tribe of Benjamin 14

Offerings presented to Lord 14
 Daughters forbidden by oath to marry Benjamites . 14
 Town of Jabesh had not assisted the Israelites 14
 Town of Jabesh to be put to sword 14
 400 virgin girls of Jabesh spared 14
 Held as wives for surviving Benjamites 14
 Peace offered to 600 Benjamites who fled 14
 Still insufficient wives for Benjamite survivors 14
 Benjamites permitted to capture girls from Shiloh .. 14
 Surviving Benjamites rebuild their towns 14

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

The Lord is asked which of the western tribes should occupy their lands first

¹After the death of Joshua, the Israelites inquired of the Lord,^{F*} “Which tribe shall go first into their allotted territory to fight against the Canaanites?”

Judah and Simeon combine

²The Lord answered, “**Judah shall go first.**”

³The men of Judah said to the men of Simeon, “Come up with us into our allotted territory to destroy the Canaanites, and then we in turn will go with you into yours.”

⁴So the Simeonites went up with the men of Judah and the Lord gave the Canaanites into their hands.

Jerusalem set on fire

⁵They struck down 10,000 men at Bezek and attacked Jerusalem and took it, putting the city to the sword and setting it on fire.

⁶(However later on the Jebusites re-occupied the fortified part of the city and the Benjamites^{F*} were unable to dislodge them.)

Caleb given the city of Hebron

⁷After this they went down and fought the Canaanites who remained in the hill country and the Negev.

Othniel wins Caleb’s daughter Acsah

⁸From there they advanced against Debir. Caleb said, “I will give my daughter in marriage to the man who attacks and captures Debir.”

⁹Othniel, the son of his younger brother took the city, so Caleb gave his daughter Acsah to him in marriage.

Judah and Simeon unable to destroy all the Philistines from the coastal plain

¹⁰The men of Judah and Simeon took possession of all the hill country and also the Philistine cities of Gaza, Ashkelon and Ekron.
¹¹But they were unable to destroy all the Philistines from the plains as they had iron chariots.

*1 Inquiries of the Lord were made by the high priest using the Urim and Thummim (Deuteronomy 10:7).

*6 Jerusalem belonged to Benjamin but was located on the border of Judah’s allotment. Part of Jerusalem (Zion) was a natural fortress, built on a mountain ridge with sheer cliffs on three sides and very difficult to attack. It was not until the reign of King David that this part of the city was finally taken from the Jebusites who were one of the Canaanite tribes.

Ephraim and Manasseh take Bethel by strategy

¹²The house of Joseph (the tribe of Ephraim and half the tribe of Manasseh) prepared to attack the Canaanite city of Bethel.

¹³They first sent spies, who saw a Canaanite man coming out of the city and said to him, “Show us a way to get into the city and we will see that you are treated well.” So he showed them.

¹⁴They put all Bethel to the sword, but spared the man and his family. ¹⁵He went north among the Hittites and built a town and named it Luz.



Tomb of Joseph in Shechem.

Ephraim and Manasseh unable to destroy all the Canaanites from the lands of their inheritance

¹⁶But Ephraim and Manasseh could not destroy all the Canaanites from the lands of their inheritance. ¹⁷(However when Israel became strong^{F*} they put the Canaanites to forced labour.)

Other tribes also fail to destroy the Canaanites

¹⁸Neither were the tribes of Zebulun, Asher and Naphtali able to drive out all the Canaanites, but later on they also put them to forced labour.

¹⁹The tribe of Dan were confined by the Canaanites to the hill country. They would not allow them to occupy the plain. ²⁰Later the Danites attacked Laish in the far north and put the city to the sword and also settled there. They renamed it Dan.^{F*}

*17 ie, in the days of King David and his son Solomon.

*20 An account of this conquest by Dan is found in Judges 12:8-24. Dan was the northern-most city of Israel.

JUDGES 2

An angel sent to rebuke the Israelites for their disobedience

²¹Then the angel of Jehovah appeared at Bochim and said, "I brought you out of Egypt and led you into this land that I swore to give your forefathers. I commanded you not to make a covenant with the people of this land but to break down their altars. ²²Why have you disobeyed me?" ^{F*}

The Lord will not now drive the Canaanites before Israel

²³"Now I will not drive them before you. They will be thorns in your sides and their gods will be a snare to you."

The Israelites weep aloud

²⁴When the Israelites heard what the angel of the Lord had spoken at Bochim, they wept aloud and offered sacrifices to the Lord.

The nations that the Lord left to test the Israelites

²⁵These are the nations that the Lord left to test the Israelites, besides the Canaanites who had not been destroyed, the Philistines, the Sidonians and the Hivites living in the Lebanon mountains.^{F*}

2

A new generation of Israelites begin to intermarry with the Canaanites

¹After that generation of Israelites had been gathered to their fathers^{F*}, another generation grew up who had no regard for Jehovah, nor for what he had done for Israel.

²This generation did evil and took the sons and daughters of the Canaanites in marriage.

Israelites begin to worship the gods of the Canaanites

³They provoked the Lord to anger, for they forsook the God of their fathers who had brought them out of Egypt, and instead worshipped Baal and Ashtoreth.^{F*}

Israel plundered and defeated

⁴In his anger against Israel, the Lord handed them over to plunderers who ruined them. Whenever Israel went out to fight, the hand of Jehovah was against them to defeat them.

Israel in bondage eight years

⁵He also sold them into the hands of the king of Babylonia^{F*} to whom the Israelites were in bondage for eight years. They were in great distress.

*22 Angels when delivering messages often speak as if the Lord himself were speaking.

*25 These three nations occupied the Mediterranean coastal areas of Israel, and Lebanon to the north.

*1 Israelite belief was that after death, a person's spirit descended to Sheol (the spirit world of the dead) and dwelt with their ancestors (their fathers) while awaiting the resurrection of the body.

*3 Baal (male) and Ashtoreth (female) were demon gods of the Canaanites and Philistines and were worshipped with immoral rites.

*5 The area between the Euphrates and the Tigris rivers, to the far east of Israel, nowadays known as Iraq.

Caleb's nephew Othniel becomes judge of Israel

⁶Finally the Israelites cried out to the Lord and he raised up a deliverer for them, Othniel the son of Caleb's younger brother.

⁷The Spirit of the Lord came upon Othniel and he became Israel's judge and went to war. The Lord gave the king of Babylonia into his hands.



Ashtoreth the female demon moon goddess of the Canaanites who was worshipped with immoral rites.

Forty years of peace

⁸So the land had forty years of peace, until Othniel died.

The Israelites again do evil and are subject to Moab for eighteen years

⁹Once again the Israelites did evil and the Lord gave the king of Moab^{F*} power over Israel. He took possession of the City of Palms^{F*} near Jericho.

¹⁰The Israelites were subject to the king of Moab for eighteen years.

The left handed Ehud assassinates the king of Moab

¹¹Again the Israelites cried out to the Lord in their distress and he gave them a deliverer, Ehud a left-handed man of the tribe of Benjamin.

¹²The Israelites would send tribute by Ehud to the king of Moab. One day Ehud made a short, two-edged sword and strapped it to his right thigh under his clothing.

*9 The Moabites were descendants of Lot. Their land was east of the Dead Sea.

*9 A city built close to the ruins of Jericho and eventually called Jericho.

¹³When he next took tribute to the king of Moab, Ehud afterward dismissed the men who had carried it for him and returned to the king's palace and said, "I have a secret message for the king." So the king dismissed his attendants.

¹⁴Now the king of Moab was a very fat man, and he was sitting in the cool upper room of his summer palace at the City of Palms.

¹⁵Ehud went up to him and said, "I have a message from God for you." As the king arose from his seat, Ehud reached with his left hand and drew the sword from his right thigh and plunged it into the king's belly.

¹⁶Even the hilt went in after the blade, which came out his back. Then Ehud closed the door of the upper room behind him and locked it.

¹⁷After he had gone, the king's attendants returned and found the door locked. They said, "He must be relieving himself." ¹⁸They waited a long time, and when he still did not open the door they took a key and unlocked it and found their king lying dead on the floor.

Ehud leads the Israelites and subdues the Moabites

¹⁹When Ehud arrived back he blew a trumpet in the hill country of Ephraim and the Israelites gathered to him. He said, "Follow me, for Jehovah has given Moab into our hands."

²⁰So they followed Ehud and took control of the fords of the Jordan that led to Moab so that no Moabites could escape. ²¹That day they struck down about 10,000 Moabites. Not a man escaped.

Eighty years of peace

²²So Moab was subdued that day and the land had peace for eighty years.

Shamgar judges Israel

²³After Ehud came Shamgar, who killed 600 Philistines with an ox goad.^{F*} He too saved Israel.

3

The Israelites again do evil and are oppressed for twenty years by King Jabin and Sisera

¹The Israelites once again did evil, so the Lord sold them into the hands of Jabin, a Canaanite king who reigned in the city of Hazor.^{F*}

²The commander of Jabin's army was Sisera. He had 900 iron chariots and cruelly oppressed the Israelites for twenty years until they cried to the Lord for help.

Deborah the prophetess, the judge of Israel

³Deborah the prophetess, wife of Lappidoth was judging Israel at that time. She held court in the hill country of Ephraim and the Israelites came to her to have their disputes settled.

The Lord calls Barak to defeat Sisera

⁴She sent for Barak from the tribe of Naphtali

and said to him, "Jehovah, the God of Israel commands you, **'Take with you 10,000 men of Naphtali and Zebulun and assemble on Mount Tabor. 5¹ will lure Sisera with his chariots and his men to the Kishon River and give him into your hands.'**"

Barak refuses to go without Deborah

⁶But Barak said to her, "I will only go if you go with me."

Deborah rebukes Barak's lack of faith

⁷Deborah replied, "**Very well then, I will go with you, but this path you are following will not lead to your honour, the Lord will hand Sisera over to a woman.'**"

The Lord gives Sisera's army into Barak's hands

⁸When Sisera was told that Barak had gathered on Mount Tabor with 10,000 men, he mustered his 900 iron chariots and all his army.

⁹Then Deborah said to Barak, "**This day the Lord has given Sisera into your hands.'**"

¹⁰So Barak and his men marched down from Mount Tabor and the Lord threw Sisera's chariots and army into a panic before them.

¹¹Barak and his men pursued them and all the troops of Sisera fell by the sword. Not a man escaped.^{F*}



Mount Tabor.

Sisera flees on foot to the tent of Jael a Kenite woman

¹²Sisera abandoned his chariot and fled on foot to the tent of Jael the wife of Heber the Kenite for there were friendly relations between the king of Hazor and the Kenites.^{F*}

¹³Jael went out to greet Sisera and said to him, "Come in my lord." So he entered her tent and lay down and she put a rug over him.

¹⁴Sisera said, "I thirst. Please give me some water." Jael opened a skin of milk and gave him a drink and then covered him back up again.

^{*11} From the words of the victory song that follows it would appear that the Lord sent a sudden storm to hinder Sisera's chariots by flooding the Kishon river.

^{*12} The tent-dwelling Kenites, a branch of the Midianites were descendants of Moses' brother-in-law Hobab (Numbers 3:7).

^{*23} An ox goad was a pole about two metres long tipped with an iron spike.

^{*1} Hazor was a large city north of the Lake of Galilee in the territory of Naphtali.

JUDGES 4

¹⁵Sisera said to Jael, "Remain in the doorway of the tent and if anyone comes by and asks you, 'Is anyone here?'" say 'No.'"

Jael kills Sisera with a tent peg

¹⁶But later, while Sisera lay in an exhausted sleep, Jael picked up a hammer and drove a tent peg into his temple until it went through into the ground below and he died.

¹⁷Then Barak came by in pursuit of Sisera. Jael went out to him and said, "Come and I will show you the man you are looking for."

A song of victory by Deborah and Barak

¹⁸That day Deborah and Barak sang this song:

¹⁹"I will sing to Jehovah I will sing and make music, to the Lord the God of all Israel."

²⁰"The earth did tremble and the Lord poured down water from the clouds upon high."

²¹"The heavens did fight Sisera's vast army. The river of Kishon swept them away."

²²"Most blessed of women is Jael wife of Heber, most blessed of all who dwell in tents."

²³"As Sisera slept she took up a tent peg. Her right hand reached for the workman's hammer."

²⁴"She struck Sisera and pierced his temple. He lay at her feet on the tent floor slain."

²⁵"Through a window watches Sisera's mother, 'Why is his chariot so long delayed?'"

²⁶"Her wise lady answers, 'Are they not still dividing the spoil?'"

²⁷"A girl or two for each of his warriors, and colourful garments embroidered and dyed."

²⁸"O Lord may all your enemies perish as Sisera."

²⁹"But those who love you be like the sun in its strength."



The Kishon river that flooded and swept away Sisera's chariots.

Forty years of peace

³⁰So that day God subdued Jabin the Canaanite king and the hand of the Israelites grew steadily stronger until they destroyed him.

³¹Then the land had peace for forty years.

4

The Israelites again do evil and are oppressed seven years by the Midianites

¹Again the Israelites did evil in the eyes of the Lord, and for seven years he gave them into the hands of the Midianites and other peoples of the east. ²Their power was so oppressive, that the Israelites built hiding places for themselves in the mountains.

Midianites ravage the land and destroy crops

³Whenever the Israelites sowed crops the Midianites would invade and camp on the land, ruining the crops.

⁴They would not leave a living thing for Israel, neither sheep, cattle or donkey. They came up like swarms of locusts. It was impossible to count the men and camels as they invaded the land to ravage it.

⁵Midian so impoverished the Israelites that they cried out to the Lord for help.

A prophet sent to rebuke Israel for idolatry

⁶The Lord sent them a prophet with this message, "Jehovah the God of Israel says, 'I brought you up out of Egypt, out of the land of slavery. I drove your enemies before you and gave you their land. I said to you, 'I am the Lord your God, do not worship the gods of the people in whose land you live.' But you have not heeded my voice.'"

Gideon to save Israel by an angel of the Lord

⁷Then the angel of Jehovah came and sat down under the oak in Ophrah. Gideon was threshing wheat there, in a winepress to hide it from the Midianites. The angel said to Gideon, "**Jehovah is with you, mighty warrior.**"

⁸Gideon said, "O my lord, if Jehovah is with us, why has all this happened to my people? Where are all his wonders that our fathers told us about? The Lord has abandoned us into the hand of the Midianites."

⁹The angel said, "**Go in your strength and save Israel from Midian's hand.**"

¹⁰Gideon replied, "But my lord, how can I save Israel? My clan is the weakest in Manasseh and I am least in my family."

¹¹The angel answered, "**I will be with you. You shall strike down the Midianites.**"

Gideon asks the angel for a sign that it is the word of the Lord he speaks

¹²Gideon said, "If I have found favour in your eyes, give me a sign that it is the word of the Lord you speak, and please remain until I bring an offering and set it before you."

¹³The angel said, "**I will wait.**"

¹⁴Gideon quickly prepared a young goat, and made bread without yeast and offered them to the angel under the oak.

¹⁵The angel of God said to him, **“Place the food on this rock.”** Gideon did so.

The angel causes fire to consume Gideon’s food offering

¹⁶Then with the tip of a staff he held in his hand the angel touched the food. Immediately fire flared up from the rock and consumed it and the angel vanished.

¹⁷When Gideon realised that it was the angel of the Lord he had seen, he feared and prayed saying, **“O Jehovah God, I have seen the angel of Jehovah face to face!”**

¹⁸Then the word of the Lord came to him saying, **“Peace. Fear not. You shall not die.”**

¹⁹So Gideon built an altar to the Lord there.

Gideon destroys the altar of Baal

²⁰That same night, the word of the Lord came to Gideon again saying, **“Take your father’s bull, the one seven years old, and tear down your father’s altar to Baal, and cut down the Asherah pole^{F*} beside it. ²¹Build a stone altar to Jehovah your God in its place and then use the wood of the Asherah pole to offer the bull as a burnt offering.”**

²²So late that night Gideon took ten servants and did as the Lord commanded. He did it at night for he feared his family and the men of the town.

The men of the town demand Gideon’s life

²³In the morning the men of the town saw Baal’s altar demolished and the Asherah pole cut down and the remains of a bull sacrificed on a newly built altar.

²⁴When they were told, **“Gideon did it.”** The men of the town gathered and demanded of Gideon’s father, **“Bring out your son. He must die.”**

Gideon’s father protects him saying, ‘Let Baal take his own vengeance’

²⁵But Gideon’s father Joash replied, **“If my son has offended Baal, let Baal strike him dead by tomorrow morning. If Baal is a god he can take his own vengeance on any man who breaks down his altar.”**

5

The Midianites again invade Israel

¹Now at that time the Midianites and other eastern peoples had combined forces and crossed over the Jordan into Israel, and camped in the Valley of Jezreel.

Gideon gathers a 32,000 strong army

²Then the Spirit of the Lord came upon Gideon and he blew a trumpet to summon his clan to follow him. He also sent messengers throughout Manasseh and to the tribes of Asher, Zebulun and Naphtali, calling them to arms. 32,000 men gathered to him.

Gideon tests God with a wool fleece

³Then Gideon prayed to God saying, **“I will place a wool fleece on the threshing floor. If in the morning there is dew only on the fleece and all around the ground is dry, then I will know that you will save Israel by my hand as you have said.”**

⁴Gideon arose early next morning and the ground was dry, but he squeezed the fleece and wrung out a bowlful of water. But he prayed again to God saying, **“Be not angry with me, but allow me one more test with the fleece. This time may the fleece be dry and the ground all around be covered with dew.”**

⁵That night God did as Gideon asked, the fleece was dry and all the ground was covered with dew.

Gideon leads his men out near the valley where the Midianite army is camped

⁶So that morning Gideon led his men to the spring of Harod, which overlooks the valley where the Midianite army was camped.

The Lord reduces Gideon’s army from 32,000 to 300

⁷But the Lord said to Gideon, **“You have too many men for me to deliver Midian into their hands. Israel may boast that her own strength has saved her. Say now to the men, ‘Anyone who fears may turn back.’”**

⁸So 22,000 men left, while 10,000 remained.

⁹The Lord said to Gideon, **“There are still too many men. Take them down to the spring to drink and I will sort them there.”**

¹⁰So Gideon took the men down to the spring. There the Lord said to him, **“Separate those who take up water in their hands and lap like a dog, from those who kneel down to drink.”**

¹¹Only 300 men took up water with their hands and lapped, all the rest got down on their knees to drink.

¹²The Lord said, **“With the 300 men that took up water in their hands I will deliver you from the Midianites. Let all the other men return to camp.”**

¹³Gideon took jars and trumpets from the rest of the men and sent them back to their tents, but he kept the 300 men with him.

Gideon’s courage boosted by overhearing an account of a Midianite soldier’s dream

¹⁴Now the camp of the Midianites lay below them in the valley. During the night the Lord said to Gideon, **“Arise and attack the Midianite camp. I will give it into your hands. If you fear to attack, go down to the camp with your servant and hear what they are saying.”**

¹⁵So Gideon and his servant crept down to the outskirts of the camp. The Midianites and other eastern peoples were camped in the valley as thick as locusts and their camels were as numerous as the sand on the seashore.

¹⁶Just as Gideon arrived he overheard one man telling a friend his dream. He was saying,

*20 An Asherah pole was similar to a totem pole and was believed to have been a phallic symbol. It was associated with the immoral worship of the fertility goddess Asherah.

JUDGES 5

"I had a dream. A small loaf of barley bread^{F*} came tumbling into the camp and struck our tent with such force that the tent overturned and collapsed."

¹⁷His friend replied, "That can only be the sword of Gideon the Israelite. God has given the camp into his hands."



The spring of Harod from which Gideon's men drank.

Gideon surrounds the Midianite army at midnight

¹⁸When Gideon heard this, he worshipped the Lord and returned and roused his 300 men. He said, "Arise, Jehovah has given the Midianite camp into our hands."

¹⁹Gideon divided the 300 men into three groups and placed in the hands of each man a trumpet and an empty jar with a lighted torch burning inside.

²⁰Then he said to them, "When we get to the edge of the camp you are to surround it and do exactly as I do. When I and my group sound our trumpets, you are to sound yours too from all around the camp and shout, 'A sword for Jehovah and for Gideon!'"

Gideon and his 300 men sound trumpets, hold up flaming torches and shout

²¹So Gideon and his men surrounded the camp at the beginning of the middle watch,^{F*} just after they had changed the guard. ²²When Gideon gave the signal, the 300 men sounded their trumpets and smashed the jars and held up the flaming torches in their left hands shouting, "A sword for Jehovah and for Gideon!"

The Midianites panic and begin to fight one another and then flee

²³Gideon's men held their positions surrounding the camp, but the Midianites ran about in confusion crying out.

²⁴Then the 300 Israelites sounded their trumpets again and in the confusion the Lord caused men throughout the camp to turn on

each other with their swords. Then the whole army fled in the darkness.

Other Israelites called out to pursue the Midianites

²⁵Israelites from Naphtali, Asher and all Manasseh were called out to pursue the Midianites.

The men of Ephraim told to seize the fords of the Jordan

²⁶Gideon also sent messengers throughout the hill country of Ephraim saying, "Come against the Midianites. Seize the fords of the Jordan ahead of them."

²⁷So the men of Ephraim took the fords of the Jordan. They captured and killed two of the Midianite kings and showed their heads to Gideon when he arrived at the Jordan.

The Ephraimites angry that they were not called out at first

²⁸But the men of Ephraim were angry with Gideon and said, "Why have you treated us like this? Why did you not call on us when you first went to fight Midian?"

Gideon placates the Ephraimite's anger

²⁹Gideon answered them, "What have I accomplished compared to you? God gave these two Midianite kings into your hands. What have I done compared to you?" At these words their anger subsided.

The men of Succoth and Peniel refuse food to Gideon's men

³⁰Gideon and his 300 men were exhausted, but they continued to pursue the Midianites and crossed the Jordan to Succoth.

³¹Gideon said to the men of Succoth,^{F*} "Give my men some bread, for they are weak with hunger and we are pursuing two of the kings of Midian."

³²But the men of Succoth said, "Do you already have these kings in your power that we should risk giving bread to your men?"

³³So Gideon went to the nearby town of Peniel and made the same request, but they answered as the men of Succoth had. ³⁴Therefore he said to the men of Peniel, "When I return in triumph I will tear down your tower."

Gideon captures the two remaining kings

³⁵Now the two Midianite kings had camped at Karkor with about 15,000 men, all that were left of their armies, for 120,000 had fallen.

³⁶Gideon went up by the route of the nomads and took the unsuspecting army by surprise. The two kings fled, but Gideon pursued them and captured them, routing their entire army.

Gideon punishes the men of Succoth and Peniel

³⁷On his return from battle Gideon saw a young man of Succoth and made him write down the names of seventy-seven leading men of Succoth.

³⁸When Gideon returned to Succoth he said

*16 Barley bread was a staple food of the Israelites.

*21 About midnight.

*31 Succoth was an Israelite town of the tribe of Gad.

to the men of that town, "Here are the two kings about whom you taunted me and refused to give bread to my men."

³⁹Then he took the leading men of the town and punished them by threshing their flesh with desert thorns. He also pulled down the tower of Peniel and killed all the men of that town.

Gideon executes the two Midianite kings

⁴⁰Afterward Gideon asked the two Midianite kings, "What kind of men did you kill at Tabor?"

⁴¹They answered, "Men like yourself, with the bearing of princes."

⁴²Gideon replied, "They were my brothers. If you had spared their lives I would not kill you."

⁴³Turning to Jether his eldest son he said, "Kill them." But Jether did not draw his sword, for he was only a boy and was afraid.

⁴⁴The two kings said, "Do it yourself." So Gideon killed them there and took the crescents off the necks of their camels.

6

Gideon becomes judge of Israel

¹After the victory the Israelites gathered around Gideon and said to him, "Rule over us, you and your sons, for you have saved us out of the hand of Midian."

²Gideon replied, "Very well, but I will not rule over you, nor will my sons rule over you, Jehovah will rule over you."

Gideon takes his share of the spoil as gold earrings and makes a medallion

³Then Gideon said, "I have a request. Each of you give me a gold earring from your share of the spoil." For it was the custom of eastern peoples to wear gold earrings.

⁴So they spread out a garment and each man threw an earring from his spoil onto it. The weight of the gold earrings came to 1700 shekels.^{F*}

⁵Gideon used the gold to make a large medallion which he placed in his home town. (Later Israel prostituted themselves by worshipping it, therefore it became a snare to Gideon and his family.)

Forty years of peace

⁶Thus Midian was subdued by the Israelites and during Gideon's lifetime the land enjoyed peace for forty years.

Gideon's wives bear him seventy sons

⁷Gideon returned home to Ophrah to live. He had seventy sons for he had many wives. ⁸His concubine in Shechem also bore him a son Abimelech, then he died at a good old age.

The Israelites again turn to idolatry

⁹After the death of Gideon, the Israelites again acted the harlot. They set up Baal as their god and forgot Jehovah who had rescued them from the hands of all their enemies.

Abimelech, Gideon's son to his concubine stirs up the leading men of Shechem to make him ruler

¹⁰The Israelites also failed to show kindness to the family of Gideon for all that he had done for them.

¹¹One day Abimelech, the son of Gideon's concubine went to his mother's family in Shechem and said to his kinsmen, "Go say to all the leading men of Shechem, 'Which is better for you, to have all seventy of Gideon's sons rule over you, or just myself? Remember I am your own flesh and blood.'"

¹²When his kinsmen repeated this to the leading men of Shechem, their hearts inclined to support Abimelech for they said, "He is our kin."

Abimelech murders all of his 70 brothers but one

¹³So they gave Abimelech seventy shekels of silver^{F*} from the temple of Baal and he used it to hire worthless men. With them he returned to Ophrah and murdered his seventy brothers on one stone. However Jotham the youngest escaped by hiding.

Abimelech is made ruler of Israel

¹⁴Then the people of Shechem gathered beside the great tree in Shechem and made Abimelech ruler of Israel.

Abimelech's surviving brother shouts a bitter tale to the citizens of Shechem

¹⁵When Jotham, the surviving brother was told of this, he stood on Mount Gerizim which overlooks Shechem and shouted these words down to the people:^{F*}

¹⁶"Hear me O citizens of Shechem. One day the trees went to anoint a king for themselves. They said to the olive tree, 'Be our king!'"

¹⁷"But the olive tree answered, 'Should I give up my oil by which gods and men are honoured, to rule over trees?'"

¹⁸"Next the trees said to the fig tree, 'Be our king!' But the fig tree replied, 'Should I give up my fruit, so sweet and delicious, to rule over trees?'"

¹⁹"Then the trees said to the grape vine, 'Be our king!' But the grape vine answered, 'Should I give up my wine which cheers great and small, to rule over trees?'"

²⁰"Finally the trees said to the thorn bush, 'Be our king!'"

²¹"The thorn bush said to the trees, 'If you want me to be your king, come and take refuge in my shade. But if not, then let fire come out from me and consume the cedars of Lebanon!'"^{F*}

Jotham curses Abimelech and the citizens of Shechem

²²"Now, if you acted honourably when you killed the sons of my father Gideon, who rescued you from the Midianites. And if you

*13 A shekel of silver was worth about a days wages.

*15 A crag over the town of Shechem acts as a natural pulpit.

*21 The fruit trees represented noble men and the thorn bush Abimelech.

*4 About 20kg (43 lbs).

JUDGES 7

acted honourably when you made Abimelech, the son of my father's slave woman your ruler, may Abimelech be your joy!"

²³"But if not, let fire come out from Abimelech and consume you O citizens of Shechem, and let fire come out from you and consume Abimelech!" F*

²⁴Then Jotham fled, for he was afraid of his brother Abimelech.



Shechem with Mount Gerizim in the background.

7

Abimelech rules Israel for three years but ill feeling arises between the citizens of Shechem and Abimelech

¹Abimelech ruled Israel for three years, but God sent an evil spirit between the citizens of Shechem and Abimelech, to avenge the crime against Gideon's seventy sons.

Gaal brags that he could destroy Abimelech

²A man by the name of Gaal moved with his brothers into Shechem and gained the confidence of the leading men.

³After the grape harvest the leading men held a festival in the temple of their god, and while they were eating and drinking they mocked Abimelech. ⁴Then Gaal said, "If this city were under my command I would depose Abimelech and destroy his army."

The ruler of Shechem informs Abimelech

⁵When the ruler of Shechem heard this he became angry and sent messengers to Abimelech who was living at Arumah saying, "Gaal and his brothers are stirring up Shechem against you. ⁶Now then, during the night you and your army should conceal yourselves outside the city in the fields. At sunrise, advance against the city. When Gaal and his men come out against you, do what is necessary."

Abimelech sets an ambush

⁷So Abimelech did as the ruler of Shechem suggested. Gaal was standing at the entrance to the city gate when Abimelech and his army came out from hiding. ⁸Gaal saw them and shouted to the ruler, "Companies of men are coming towards us!"

Abimelech puts Gaal and his followers to flight

⁹The ruler of Shechem replied, "Where is your mouth now? Are not these the men for whom you expressed contempt? Go out now and fight them!"

¹⁰So Gaal and his followers went out and fought Abimelech. But Abimelech put them to flight and many fell wounded all the way back to the gate of the city.

¹¹Abimelech then returned to the town of Arumah and the ruler drove Gaal and his brothers out of Shechem.

Abimelech attacks Shechem and kills most of the citizens

¹²The next day the men of Shechem went out to work the fields. This was reported to Abimelech, so during the night he again took his army and divided them into three companies and hid in the fields.

¹³In the morning when the men again came out of the city, Abimelech and his company rushed forward to capture the city gate. ¹⁴His other two companies fell upon the men in the fields and killed them all. ¹⁵Abimelech continued his attack on the city until he had captured it and killed most of the citizens.

1000 survivors burned alive in the temple

¹⁶The survivors gathered into the stronghold of the temple of El-Berith. But Abimelech led his men to the hills, and taking an axe he cut tree branches. Then he lifted them to his shoulders and said to his men, "Do as I do."

¹⁷So his men cut branches and carried them to the temple. They heaped them up against it and set it on fire. All the people in the temple, about a thousand men and women died.

Shechem razed and the crop land ruined

¹⁸Then Abimelech razed the city and sowed salt over the crop land.F*

Abimelech next attacks and captures Thebez

¹⁹Next Abimelech attacked the nearby city of Thebez and captured it. But the people fled into a strong tower in the city and locked themselves in, and gathered behind the battlements on the roof.

Abimelech's skull crushed by a millstone dropped by a woman as he tries to burn the people alive

²⁰Abimelech planned to burn the tower, but as he was at the door trying to set it on fire, a woman dropped a heavy millstone^{F*} on his head, which crushed his skull.

*18 Salt kills plant life and destroys the fertility of the soil.

*20 A millstone was a heavy circular stone used for grinding grain.

*23 This curse came to pass, see the following chapter.

Abimelech has his armour-bearer kill him

²¹As he lay there dying, he called to his armour-bearer and said, "Draw your sword and kill me, so they cannot say, "He died by the hand of a woman." So his servant ran him through with a sword and he died.

²²When his men saw that Abimelech was dead they returned home.

Abimelech's wickedness repaid

²³Thus God repaid the wickedness that Abimelech had done to his father by murdering his brothers. God also made the men of Shechem pay for their wickedness. The curse of Jotham, son of Gideon came upon them.



Millstones were heavy circular stones used to grind grain.

8

Tola judges Israel twenty three years

¹After Abimelech, Tola of the tribe of Issachar rose to save Israel. He lived in the hill country of Ephraim and judged Israel twenty-three years, then died.

Jair judges Israel twenty-two years

²He was followed by Jair of Gilead who judged Israel twenty-two years, then died. He had thirty sons who rode thirty donkeys.

The Israelites again turn to idolatry and the Ammonites oppress Israel eighteen years

³After Jair, the Israelites again did evil and served the gods of the nations around them. Because they forsook the Lord he sold them into the hands of the Ammonites^{F*} from the east.

⁴For eighteen years they oppressed the Israelites on the east side of the Jordan in Gilead, and often crossed the Jordan to raid Judah, Benjamin and Ephraim.

⁵Israel was in great distress and finally cried out to the Lord saying, "We have sinned against you."

⁶The Lord replied, "When nations oppressed you in the past and you cried to me for help, did I not save you? But you have

forsaken me and served other gods so I will no longer save you. ⁷Cry out to the gods you have chosen. Let them save you."

The Israelites repent of serving foreign gods

⁸The Israelites said to the Lord, "We have sinned. Do with us whatever you think best, but please rescue us now."

⁹Then they got rid of the foreign gods among them and served the Lord and he could bear Israel's misery no longer.

Jephthah called to lead the Israelites of Gilead

¹⁰The Ammonites again gathered for war and camped in Gilead, east of the Jordan. The Israelites in Gilead also assembled and camped close by.

¹¹The leaders of Gilead said, "Whoever leads the attack against the Ammonites will become ruler of all Israel living in Gilead."

¹²Now Jephthah of Gilead was a mighty warrior but his mother was a harlot, and his stepbrothers had driven him away from Gilead saying, "You will receive no inheritance in our family for you are the son of another woman."

¹³So Jephthah had settled in Syria^{F*} where a band of renegades had gathered around him.

¹⁴The elders of Gilead journeyed to Syria and said to Jephthah, "Come back and be our commander. Lead us to fight the Ammonites, then you will be ruler over all who live in Gilead."

¹⁵Jephthah said to them, "Did you not hate me and drive me from my father's house? Now you come to me when you are in trouble. If I lead you to fight the Ammonites, and Jehovah gives them to me, will I truly be your ruler?"

¹⁶The elders of Gilead replied, "The Lord is our witness." So Jephthah went with the elders of Gilead and became commander of the fighting men.

Jephthah's message to the Ammonite king

¹⁷Then Jephthah sent a message to the Ammonite king saying, "Why have you come against us?"

¹⁸The king of the Ammonites answered, "When Israel came up out of Egypt they took away my land. Now give it back peaceably."

¹⁹Jephthah sent back saying, "Israel did not take the land of the Ammonites when they came up out of Egypt. Jehovah the God of Israel gave Sihon king of the Amorites into Israel's hands and they took over all the land of the Amorites, the land you now claim."

²⁰"Possess what your god Chemosh has given you and we will possess what Jehovah our God has given us. ²¹For 300 years we have occupied this land, why did you not seek to retake it during that time?"

Jephthah vows to the Lord the first person who comes out of his house to greet his return

²²Then the Spirit of the Lord came upon

*3 The Ammonites were descendants of Lot (Genesis 13:27).

*13 Syria was to the north of Israel.

JUDGES 9

Jephthah and he advanced against the Ammonites.

²³At that time Jephthah made a vow^{F*} to the Lord saying, "If you give the Ammonites into my hands, then whoever first comes out of the door of my house to greet me when I return in triumph shall be the Lord's, and I will sacrifice him to you as a burnt offering."

The Lord gives the Ammonites into Jephthah's hands

²⁴The Lord gave the Ammonites into Jephthah's hands and he devastated twenty towns. Thus Israel subdued Ammon.

Jephthah's daughter the first to greet him

²⁵When Jephthah returned to his home in Gilead, his daughter was the first one to come out to greet him, dancing to the sound of tambourines. She was his only child.

Jephthah tears his clothes in grief

²⁶When he saw her, he tore his clothes with grief and cried out in anguish, "O my daughter! You have stricken me! I have made a vow to the Lord that I cannot break!"

Jephthah's daughter asks for two months to weep with her friends

²⁷She replied, "My father, if you have given your word to the Lord, do to me as you vowed, but grant me one request. Allow me two months to roam the hills and weep with my friends, for I will never marry."

²⁸Jephthah let her go for two months. She and her friends went into the hills and wept because she would never bear children.

Jephthah's daughter is sacrificed

²⁹After the two months she returned to her father and he did to her as he had vowed.

The young women of Israel mourn the daughter of Jephthah four days each year

³⁰From this comes the Israelite custom that each year, young women of Israel go out for four days to mourn the daughter of Jephthah.

Jephthah is threatened by the men of Ephraim

³¹Now when the men of Ephraim heard of the defeat of the Ammonites they called out their forces and crossed the Jordan and said to Jephthah, "Why did you not call on us to go and fight the Ammonites with you? We will burn your house over your head."

³²Jephthah answered, "I did call on you, but you did not come. When I saw that you would not help, I took my life in my hands and fought the Ammonites and Jehovah gave me the victory over them. Why then have you come today to fight me?"

The Ephraimites mock the men of Gilead and a battle begins

³³Then Jephthah called together the men of Gilead to fight against the Ephraimites, for the

men of Ephraim had mocked them saying, "You men of Gilead are refugees, living in territory that belongs to Ephraim and Manasseh."

The Ephraimites defeated and survivors identified at the Jordan by their speech

³⁴The Gileadites struck down the Ephraimites and captured the fords of the Jordan leading back to Ephraim ³⁵Whenever a survivor of Ephraim said, "Let me cross over," the men of Gilead would ask him, "Are you an Ephraimite?" If he replied, "No," they would say, "Say Shibboleth."

³⁶If he said Sibboleth, for Ephraimites could not pronounce the word correctly, they killed him.

42,000 Ephraimites fall

³⁷At that time 42,000 Ephraimites fell.

Jephthah judges Israel six years

³⁸Jephthah judged Israel six years then died.

Ibzan judges Israel seven years

³⁹Next, Ibzan judged Israel for seven years and then died. He had thirty sons and thirty daughters.

Elon judges Israel ten years

⁴⁰After him Elon from Zebulun judged Israel ten years and then died.

Abdon judges Israel for eight years

⁴¹After Elon, Abdon judged Israel for eight years and then died. He had forty sons and thirty grandsons who rode on seventy donkeys.

The Philistines oppress Israel for forty years

⁴²Then the Israelites again did evil, so the Lord delivered them into the hands of the Philistines^{F*} for forty years. ^{F*}

9

An angel appears to the barren wife of Manoah – a son to be born and he is to be a Nazirite

¹Now a man named Manoah of the tribe of Dan had a wife who was childless. One day the angel of the Lord appeared to her at Zorah and said, "You are about to conceive and bear a son. ²See that you drink no wine or other fermented drink and eat nothing that is unclean, for the boy is to be a Nazirite.^{F*} ³He is to be set apart to God from the day of his birth until the day of his death. No razor is ever to be used on his head."

⁴"He will begin the deliverance of Israel from the hands of the Philistines."

*42 The Philistines were the relatively advanced inhabitants of the five cities in the Mediterranean coastal plain region of Israel; Ashdod, Gaza, Ashkelon, Gath and Ekron. They were believed to have originally come from Crete. The modern term Palestine comes from the word Philistine.

*42 Eli the High Priest appears to have been judge of Israel during this 40 year period (see Samuel 3:16).

*2 A Nazirite is a man temporarily or permanently dedicated to the Lord. During the period of his dedication he must give up all grape products and fermented drink, strictly avoid any kind of uncleanness and never cut the hair of his head. See Leviticus 8:19-25.

*23 A vow is a favour asked of the Lord, in return for which the asker gives something of value, agrees to abstain from something or performs a service.

Manoah prays that the angel will return

⁵The woman told her husband Manoah of the angels appearance and the words that the angel had said. ⁶Then Manoah prayed to the Lord saying, “O Jehovah let the messenger you sent come again to instruct us further on how to raise the boy who is to be born.”

The angel appears a second time

⁷God heard Manoah’s prayer and the angel appeared again to his wife while she was out in the fields. She hurried to her husband and said, “He is here!”

⁸Manoah arose and followed his wife. When he came to the angel he said to him, “Are you the one who spoke to my wife?”

The angel replied, “**I am.**”

⁹Manoah asked, “What are we to do for the boy?”

¹⁰The angel answered, “**Your wife must do all that I commanded her. She must not eat anything that comes from the grapevine, nor drink any wine or other fermented drink, nor eat anything unclean.**”

Manoah offers a burnt sacrifice to Jehovah and the angel ascends in the flame

¹¹Manoah said to the angel, “Please remain here until we prepare a young goat for you.”

¹²The angel of the Lord replied, “**I will remain, but I will not eat of your food. If you desire to prepare a burnt offering, offer it to Jehovah.**”

¹³Manoah asked, “What is your name so that we may honour you when your word comes to pass?”

¹⁴The angel replied, “**Do not ask my name, it is beyond your understanding.**”

¹⁵Then Manoah took a young goat and together with a grain offering, sacrificed it on a rock to the Lord as a burnt offering. As the flame blazed up from the fire the angel ascended upward in the flame.

Manoah fears he will die

¹⁶Seeing this, Manoah and his wife fell with their faces to the ground, for they now knew for certain that the man who appeared was the angel of the Lord.

¹⁷Manoah said to his wife, “We will surely die for we have seen a god!”

¹⁸But his wife answered, “If Jehovah had intended to kill us, he would not have accepted our offering, nor have told us all these things.”

Samson is born

¹⁹In due course Manoah’s wife gave birth to a boy and she named him Samson. He grew to manhood and the Spirit of the Lord began to stir him.

Samson desires a Philistine girl for his wife

²⁰One day Samson visited the town of Timnah^{F*} and saw there a young Philistine woman. When he returned home to Zorah he said to his father and mother, “I have seen a

Philistine woman in Timnah. Get her for me as my wife.”

²¹But they replied, “Is there not a woman among our own people? Must you go to the uncircumcised Philistines to get a wife?”

²²But Samson insisted saying, “She is the right one for me.”

²³This was from the Lord, who was seeking an occasion to confront the Philistines for at that time they ruled over Israel.



Zorah, where Samson was raised.

Samson and his parents travel to Timnah

²⁴So his father and mother went with Samson to Timnah.

Samson kills a lion with his bare hands

²⁵While they were there, Samson was alone near the vineyards of Timnah when a young lion suddenly came roaring toward him. ²⁶The Spirit of the Lord came upon Samson with great power and he tore the lion apart with his bare hands, but he told no one what he had done.

Before the wedding Samson goes to look at the lion carcass and finds bees and honey

²⁷Some time later when they had returned again to Timnah for the marriage feast, Samson went off alone to look at the lion’s carcass and found a nest of bees inside it and some honey.

²⁸He scooped out the honey with his hands and ate some as he went along. When he rejoined his parents he gave them some also.

10

The wedding feast and the riddle

¹Now as was the custom for young men to do, Samson arranged a seven day wedding feast as part of the marriage ceremony. He was assigned thirty companions by the Philistines.

²Samson said to his companions, “I will put to you a riddle. If you can solve it within the seven days of the feast I will give each of you a full set of clothes, but if you fail to solve it you must each give me a full set of clothes.”

*20 Timnah was a Philistine town on the border of Judah.

JUDGES 10

³They answered, “Tell us your riddle.”

⁴Samson said,

“Out of the eater, something to eat.
Out of the strong, something sweet.”

The Philistines threaten Samson’s betrothed wife to find out the answer to the riddle

⁵For three days they could not give the answer. So on the fourth day they said to Samson’s betrothed wife,^{F*} “Coax him into explaining the riddle for us, or we will burn you and all in your father’s household to death. Did you invite us here to rob us?”

Samson’s betrothed wife pleads with him

⁶So Samson’s wife wept in front of him and said, “You must hate me. You do not love me. You have given my people a riddle and have not told me the answer.”

⁷Samson replied, “I have not even told my father or mother. Why then should I tell you?”

⁸But she wept beside him all the remaining days of the feast and continued to press him.

Samson finally reveals the answer to his betrothed wife and she tells her people

⁹Finally on the seventh day he told her the answer and she revealed it to her people.

¹⁰Before sunset on the seventh day the companions came to Samson and said, “What is sweeter than honey? What is stronger than a lion?”

Samson is angry with the Philistines

¹¹Samson burned with anger and said to them, “If you had not plowed with my heifer^{F*} you would not have solved my riddle.”

Samson strikes down thirty Philistines to obtain the clothes, then returns home in anger

¹²The Spirit of the Lord then came upon Samson in power and he went to Ashkelon^{F*} and struck down thirty Philistines. He took their possessions as spoil and gave clothes to those who had explained the riddle.

¹³Still burning with anger he returned to his home town Zorah, leaving his wife in the house of her father.

Samson later returns to claim his wife but finds she has been given to another

¹⁴Later at the time of the wheat harvest, Samson took a young goat and returned to Timnah to visit his wife in the house of her father.

¹⁵But her father would not let him into her room saying, “I thought you did not want her, so I gave her to the companion who attended you at the wedding. ¹⁶Is not her younger sister more attractive? Marry her instead.”

Samson uses 300 jackals to destroy crops of the Philistines by fire

¹⁷Samson replied, “This time I have a right to afflict the Philistines.”

¹⁸He went out and caught 300 jackals, and tying them tail to tail in pairs, he attached a flaming torch to each pair of tails and let them loose in the standing corn of the Philistines. ¹⁹He burned up corn, vineyards and olive groves.

The Philistines burn Samson’s wife and her father to death

²⁰When the Philistines asked, “Who did this?” they were told, “Samson, for his wife was given to another.” So the Philistines went and burned her and her father to death.

Samson slaughters Philistines greatly to avenge death of wife

²¹Then Samson said to the Philistines, “Since you have done this, I will not stop until I avenge you fully.” And he struck them down hip and thigh with great slaughter.

The Philistines march to Judah to capture Samson

²²After this, Samson went and stayed in a cave near Lehi in Judah. So the Philistines gathered and marched up to Judah and camped at Lehi.

²³The men of Judah came out and asked, “Why have you come against us?”

²⁴They answered, “We have come for Samson, to do to him as he did to us.”

3000 men from Judah go out to Samson’s cave to hand him over

²⁵So 3000 men from Judah went out to the cave and said to Samson, “Do you not realise that the Philistines rule over us?”

²⁶He answered, “I did to them what they did to me.”

²⁷The men from Judah said, “We have come to hand you over to the Philistines.”

Samson is tied with new ropes and led out to the Philistines

²⁸Samson said, “Swear to me that you will not kill me yourselves.” So they swore to him, and he allowed them to bind him with two new ropes, and they led him from the cave.

Samson snaps the ropes and then kills a thousand Philistines with a jaw bone

²⁹When the Philistines saw Samson they set up a loud roar and ran towards him.

³⁰Then the Spirit of the Lord came upon Samson. He snapped the ropes on his arms as if they were charred flax. ³¹And seeing the jawbone of a donkey lying on the ground, he picked it up and struck down 1000 Philistines.

Samson cries to the Lord for water and a new spring flows

³²Afterwards he thirsted greatly and called out to the Lord saying, “You have given your servant this great victory, must I now die of thirst and fall into the hands of the uncircumcised?”

³³Then God split the rock near the cave at Lehi, and a spring of water flowed forth.

³⁴When Samson drank, his spirit revived and his strength returned. So the spring was called

*5 The actual marriage was not consummated until sunset on the final day of the feast.

*11 A heifer is a young female cow, a euphemism for Samson’s wife.

*12 A major Philistine coastal city about 40 km distant.

En-Hakkore^{F*} and is still there in Lehi.

Samson becomes judge of Israel

³⁵Samson became judge of Israel in the days of the Philistines.



The cave near Lehi where Samson stayed.

11

Samson stays with a Philistine harlot in Gaza

¹Once Samson went to Gaza,^{F*} where he saw a harlot and went in to stay with her.

Men of the city lie in wait to kill him

²The people of Gaza were told, “Samson is here.” So men lay in wait that night saying, “At the light of dawn we will kill him.”

Samson arises at midnight and uproots the city gates of Gaza

³But Samson arose to leave at midnight, and taking hold of the locked city gates, he tore them loose, bar and all, uprooting the posts, and carried them on his shoulders to the top of a nearby hill.



Gaza, a city in the land of the Philistines.

Samson falls in love with Delilah a Philistine woman

⁴Some time later, Samson fell in love with a Philistine woman whose name was Delilah.

The Philistine rulers offer a bribe to Delilah if she can find out the secret of Samson’s strength

⁵The rulers of the Philistines went to her and

said, “See if you can coax him into revealing the secret of his great strength, and how we can overpower him. If you do so, each one of us will give you 1100 shekels of silver.”

Delilah asks Samson to tell her the secret of his great strength

⁶So Delilah said to Samson, “Tell me the secret of your great strength, and how you could be tied up and subdued.”

⁷Samson answered her, “If anyone ties me with seven fresh bowstrings I will be as weak as any other man.”

Samson snaps seven fresh bowstrings

⁸So the rulers of the Philistines brought Delilah seven fresh bowstrings and she tied him up with them, then with men hiding in an inner room, she said to him, “Samson the Philistines are upon you!”

⁹But he snapped the bowstrings as easily as string snaps when it comes to a flame.

¹⁰Then Delilah said to Samson, “You are teasing me. Come now, tell me how you can be tied.”

Samson snaps new ropes like threads

¹¹Samson said, “If anyone ties me with new ropes that have never been used, I will become as weak as any other man.” ¹²So Delilah took new ropes and tied him up with them. But Samson snapped the ropes off his arms as if they were threads.

Delilah weaves Samson’s seven locks of hair into her loom

¹³Delilah then said to Samson, “You are still teasing me and telling lies. Tell me how you can be tied.”

¹⁴He replied, “If you weave the seven locks of my hair^{F*} into the web of your loom, I will become as weak as any other man.”

¹⁵So while Samson was sleeping, Delilah wove the seven locks of his hair into her loom. Again she said to him, “Samson, the Philistines are upon you!” ¹⁶But he awoke from his sleep and pulled up the whole loom.

Samson finally wearies and reveals to Delilah that he is a Nazirite

¹⁷Then Delilah said to him, “How can you say you love me when you will not confide in me? This is the third time you have mocked me.”

¹⁸And she nagged Samson continually, day after day, until he was weary to death. Finally he told her, “No razor has ever been used on my head, for I have been a Nazirite set apart to God since birth. ¹⁹If my head were shaved, my strength would leave me and I would become as any other man.”

Delilah sends word to the Philistine rulers and they come with their silver

²⁰When Delilah realised he had told her the truth, she sent word to the rulers of the Philistines, “Return once more. He has told me

*34 En-Hakkore means Caller’s Spring.

*1 Gaza was a major Philistine city near the coast.

*14 Being a Nazirite, Samson’s hair had never been cut from his birth and was woven into seven long locks.

JUDGES 12

everything.” So the rulers returned, with their silver in their hands.

Delilah has Samson’s braided hair locks cut off while he is asleep, breaking his Nazirite vow

²¹Delilah lulled Samson to sleep on her lap and had a man come in and cut off the seven braided locks of his hair. Then she said, “Samson, the Philistines are upon you!”

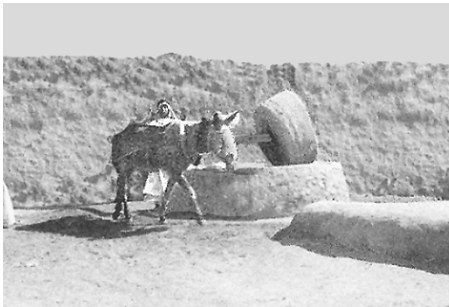
Samson is overpowered and blinded by the Philistines

²²Samson awoke from his sleep and the Philistines seized him. He tried to free himself as before, but his strength was gone, for the Lord had left him.^{F*}

²³The Philistines held him fast and gouged out his eyes.

Samson put to grinding at the prison mill

²⁴Then they took him to Gaza and secured him with bronze shackles and set him grinding at the mill in the prison.



An old style donkey powered wheat mill, probably similar to the type that Samson was forced to turn.

The Philistines celebrate in the temple of their god Dagon

²⁵Then the rulers of the Philistines assembled to offer a sacrifice to Dagon their god and to celebrate saying, “Our god has delivered Samson into our hands.”

Samson brought in to entertain the Philistines

²⁶When they were in high spirits they shouted, “Bring in Samson to entertain us.” So they brought Samson from the prison to mock him.

²⁷When the people saw Samson, they again praised their god saying, “Our god has delivered the enemy into our hands, the one who wasted our land and multiplied our slain.”

Samson prays to the Lord for his strength to be restored once more

²⁸Samson said to the servant who led him in, “Stand me where I can feel the pillars that support the temple, so I can lean against them.”

²⁹Now the temple was crowded with men and women. All the rulers of the Philistines were there and up on the balcony were about 3000 men and women watching Samson for entertainment.

*²² Samson had broken his Nazirite vow.

³⁰Samson prayed, “O Jehovah God, remember me. Please strengthen me just once more, and let me avenge the Philistines for my eyes.”

³¹Then Samson braced himself against the two central pillars which supported the temple, his right hand on one and his left hand on the other, and cried out, “Let me die with the Philistines!”

Samson collapses the temple killing himself and thousands of Philistines

³²Then he pushed with such force that the whole temple collapsed upon him, and upon the rulers and all the people in it. ³³The number of Philistines he killed at his death were more than Samson had killed during his whole lifetime.

Samson had judged Israel twenty years

³⁴Then his family went down and brought him back to Zorah and buried him in the tomb of his father.

³⁵Samson had judged Israel twenty years.

12

Micah’s silver plated image

¹There was a man named Micah, an Ephraimite, who confessed to his mother, “It was I who stole the 1100 shekels of silver from you and about which I heard you utter a curse. I will return it.”

²When Micah returned the silver to his mother she took 200 shekels of it and gave it to a maker of idols who made her a carved wooden image and overlaid it with the silver. ³Then she gave it to her son saying, “The Lord bless you my son. I have consecrated my silver to Jehovah as a gift for you and have made this carved image.^{F*} I now give it to you.”

⁴The image remained in Micah’s house as part of a shrine to God. He also made a medallion and some figurines as household gods and appointed one of his sons to be his priest.^{F*} For in those days every man did what was right in his own eyes.

Micah appoints Jonathan a young Levite to act as his priest

⁵Now a young Levite named Jonathan, descended from Moses, left Bethlehem in Judah in search of another place to live, and came to the house of Micah in the hill country of Ephraim.

⁶Micah said to him, “Stay and live with me and be my priest and I will give you ten shekels of silver a year, your clothes and your food.” So the Levite agreed.

⁷Micah said, “Now I know that Jehovah will bless me, since this Levite has become my priest.” ^{F*}

*³ The image probably represented Jehovah, nevertheless the making of images was forbidden by the Law.

*⁴ Only ordained Levites, directly descended from Aaron could legally act as priests. Micah’s son was descended from Ephraim.

*⁷ Even though Jonathan was a Levite, he could not become a legally ordained priest as he was not a direct descendant of Aaron.

The tribe of Dan search for a place to settle

⁸In those days the tribe of Dan were seeking a place to settle, for they had not been able to occupy the territory that had been allotted to them.

Five Danite explorers spend the night with Micah

⁹Five valiant men were sent out to explore the land. These men entered the hill country of Ephraim and came to the house of Micah and spent the night there.

¹⁰The men said to the young Levite, "Inquire of God as to whether our journey will be successful."

¹¹The priest answered them, "Your journey has the approval of Jehovah."



Hill country of Ephraim.

The explorers discover the people of Laish

¹²The explorers continued their journey northward and in time came to the Sidonian town of Laish. They saw that this town and its surrounding land lacked for nothing and that the people were prosperous. ¹³The people of Laish also lived a long distance from other Sidonians and had no ties with Syria.

The explorers return and again set out for Laish with 600 armed men of Dan

¹⁴So the explorers returned to their people to report. Then taking 600 men of Dan armed for battle they set out again for Laish.

The five explorers steal Micah's image and take the young Levite to be priest to the tribe of Dan

¹⁵On their way the five explorers entered Micah's house while the other 600 armed Danites waited at the town gate. ¹⁶They stole his silver image and the other household gods and the medallion.

¹⁷The young Levite said to them, "What are you doing?"

¹⁸They answered him, "Be silent. Come with us and be our priest. Is it not better for you to serve a whole tribe in Israel than just one man's household?" ¹⁹So the Levite went with them.

Micah pursues the Danites

²⁰When Micah discovered what had happened he gathered men who lived around him and pursued the Danites. ²¹He caught up with them and shouted at them saying, "You stole the gods I made and my priest!"

²²The Danites answered, "Do not argue with us or some of our hot-tempered men will kill you and your men." Then the Danites continued on their way.

The Danites too strong for Micah

²³Micah saw that they were too strong for him, so he turned around and went back home.

The Danites put the town of Laish to the sword and settle there

²⁴When the Danites reached the town of Laish they put it to the sword and burned it down, a peaceful and unsuspecting people. ²⁵Then they rebuilt the city and settled there, renaming it Dan.

The Danites set up Micah's image and the Levite and his sons act as priests

²⁶They also set up for themselves the image they had stolen from Micah.

²⁷Jonathan and his sons acted as priests for the tribe of Dan all the time the Ark of the Lord was at Shiloh^{F*} until the time of the captivity of the land.

13

A Levite's concubine is unfaithful to him and returns to live with her father

¹Now a Levite who lived in the hill country of Ephraim, married a concubine,^{F*} but she committed adultery against him and eventually returned to her father's house in Bethlehem, Judah.

Her husband goes to see her to forgive her

²After she had been there four months her husband went to see her to forgive her and take her back. Her father gladly welcomed him so he stayed there four days.

³On the morning of the fifth day when he arose to go the girl's father said, "Wait until afternoon." So the two men ate together.

The man and his concubine depart for home

⁴When the man and his concubine again arose to leave, the girl's father said, "It is almost evening. Spend the night here." But the man was unwilling to stay another night and departed on his journey with his concubine, along with his servant and two saddled donkeys.

They stop to spend the night at the Benjamite town of Gibeah

⁵When they neared Jerusalem the servant said to his master, "Let us stop at this city of the Jebusites^{F*} and spend the night."

⁶But his master replied, "No, we will not stay in a city whose people are not Israelites, we will continue on." ⁷So they continued on and as the sun was setting they arrived at Gibeah, a Benjamite town and stopped there to spend the night.

^{*27} Shiloh was an Ephraimite town about 30 km north of Jerusalem where Joshua had set up the Tabernacle.

^{*1} A concubine was a legal wife, but of inferior social status, often an ex-slave or war captive.

^{*5} The Israelites had not yet recaptured the well fortified city of Jerusalem from the Canaanite tribe of the Jebusites.

JUDGES 13

An old man takes them into his house

⁸They waited in the town square but no man offered to take them into his home for the night. ⁹But when it was dark an old man from the hill country of Ephraim who was living in Gibeah came in from his work out in the fields. He saw the travellers in the square and said to them, "Where are you going and where have you come from?"

¹⁰The Levite answered, "We are on our way from Bethlehem to the hill country of Ephraim where I live. No one has taken us into his house. We have fodder for our donkeys and bread and wine for ourselves."

¹¹The old man said, "You are welcome at my house. Do not spend the night in the square," and he took them to his house.

Evil men come to the house and demand sex with the Levite man

¹²After they had fed the donkeys they washed their feet and ate and drank. While they were thus refreshing themselves, some evil men of the town came to the house. ¹³They pounded on the door and shouted to the old man, "Bring out the man who came to your house, so we can have sex with him."

The old man offers his virgin daughter instead

¹⁴The old man went outside and said to them, "No my brothers, do not be so vile. This man is my guest. Do not do this vile thing. ¹⁵Here is my virgin daughter and the man's concubine. I will bring them out to you and you can do to them as you wish, but to this man do not do such a vile thing."F*

The Levite pushes his concubine outside to them

¹⁶But the evil men would not listen to him. So the Levite seized his concubine and pushed her outside to them.

The men rape and abuse the concubine throughout the night

¹⁷The men took the young woman and raped her and abused her throughout the night, until just before dawn when they let her go.

The concubine falls down and dies in the old man's doorway

¹⁸The young woman made her way back to the house where her husband was staying but fell down at the door and died, and lay there until daylight.

¹⁹When her husband opened the door that morning, there lay his concubine fallen in the doorway, with her hands on the step.

²⁰He said to her, "Arise. Let us go." But there was no answer. So he put her body on his donkey and set out for home.

The Levite dismembers his wife's body and sends the parts throughout Israel

²¹When the Levite reached home he took a knife and cut up his concubine, limb by limb

*15 To permit a male guest in your home to be dishonoured is an unforgivable offence in Middle-East culture. See also Genesis 13:1-7 for a similar situation.

into twelve parts and sent them throughout all Israel, with an account of what had happened.

²²All who saw and heard said, "Such a thing has never been done in Israel."

All Israel gathers against the men of Gibeah

²³Then all of the Israelites from Dan to BeershebaF* and from Gilead in the east came out and assembled at Mizpah,F* 400,000 warriors armed with swords.

²⁴They sent messengers throughout the tribe of Benjamin saying, "Surrender those evil men of Gibeah that we may put them to death and purge this outrage from Israel."



Beersheba, the southernmost town of Israel.

The Benjamites support the men of Gibeah

²⁵But the Benjamites would not listen to their fellow Israelites. Instead they mustered 26,000 men from their own towns and joined the 700 men of Gibeah.

The Israelites enquire of the Lord

²⁶So the Israelites went to BethelF* and inquired of the Lord as to who should be first to fight against the Benjamites? ²⁷At that time the high priest was Phinehas, the grandson of Aaron, and the Ark of God was at Bethel.F*

²⁸The Lord replied, "Judah shall go first."

The Benjamites twice overpower the Israelites

²⁹The next morning the men of Israel went out to fight the Benjamites but the Benjamites came out of Gibeah and cut down 22,000 Israelites on the battlefield.

³⁰The Israelites returned to Bethel and wept until evening and then again inquired of the Lord saying, "Shall we go up again to battle against the Benjamites our brothers?"

³¹The Lord answered, "Go up against them."

The second day the Benjamites cut down another 18,000 Israelites.

The Israelites fast and offer sacrifice

³²The Israelites again returned to Bethel and sat weeping. They fasted all that day until evening and presented burnt offerings to Jehovah. ³³Then they again inquired of the

*23 Dan and Beersheba were the northern and southernmost towns of Israel.

*23 Mizpah was a town near Gibeah.

*26 Bethel was about 4 km from Mizpah.

*27 Phinehas the high priest would normally be at Shiloh, 15 km north of Bethel (Judges 12:27) where the Tabernacle and the Ark were normally located. Phinehas probably journeyed to Bethel with the Ark for this occasion. The inquiry of the Lord would have been done by Phinehas using the Urim and Thummim.

Lord asking, "Shall we go again to battle with Benjamin our brother or not?"

³⁴The Lord responded, "Go, for tomorrow I will give them into your hands."

The Israelites ambush Gibeah

³⁵This time the Israelites set an ambush behind Gibeah. The Benjamites came out as before and began to inflict casualties on the Israelites but they were drawn away from the town. ³⁶About thirty men fell and the Benjamites said, "We are defeating them as before."

³⁷Then the Israelite ambush arose from hiding and 10,000 of Israel's finest men attacked Gibeah and put the whole town to the sword.

The Benjamites are surrounded and 25,000 die

³⁸The men of the ambush had arranged to send up a cloud of smoke from the town as a signal for the men of Israel to turn in battle. When the column of smoke began to rise the men of Israel turned on the men of Benjamin.

³⁹The Benjamites were terrified for they realised that disaster had come upon them. They fled before the Israelites in the direction of the desert but could not escape for the men of Israel had surrounded them.

⁴⁰On that day 25,000 Benjamites died, all of them valiant fighters.

600 Benjamites flee into the desert

⁴¹But 600 Benjamites fled into the desert, to the rock of Rimmon where they stayed four months.

The inhabitants and towns of Benjamin are destroyed

⁴²The men of Israel then put all the inhabitants of the towns of the Benjamites to the sword, including the animals, then they burnt the towns.

14

Great sorrow for the loss of the tribe of Benjamin

¹The Israelites again assembled at Bethel where they sat before God until evening.

²Then weeping bitterly they cried out in their grief saying, "O Jehovah, God of Israel why has this happened? Why should one tribe be missing from Israel today?"

Offerings presented to the Lord

³Early the next day the people built an altar and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings to the Lord.

An oath made previously forbade the giving of daughters in marriage to Benjamites

⁴Now the Israelites had taken this oath at Mizpah, "Cursed be anyone who gives his daughter in marriage to a Benjamite."

⁵However the Israelites now grieved for their brothers the Benjamites and said, "How can we provide wives for those who are left, for we have taken an oath by the Lord not to give them our daughters in marriage?"



Israel in the days of the Judges.

The town of Jabesh to be put to the sword for not assisting the Israelites

⁶Then the Israelites asked, "Who from all the tribes of Israel has failed to assemble before the Lord?" For they had also taken this solemn oath, "Anyone who fails to assemble at Mizpah will be put to death."

⁷They discovered that no man from the town of Jabesh in Gilead^F had come to assist. So according to their oath, they sent 12,000 fighting men to put to the sword all those living in Jabesh.

The virgin girls of Jabesh spared as wives for the surviving Benjamites

⁸But they said, "Spare every woman who has never lain with a man." So they put Jabesh to the sword but spared the 400 virgin girls of Jabesh and brought them to the camp.

^F7 Jabesh was a town belonging to the tribe of Manasseh.

JUDGES 14

An offer of peace sent to the 600 Benjamites who fled

⁹Then the whole assembly sent an offer of peace to the 600 Benjamites who had fled to the rock of Rimmon.

Insufficient wives for the 600 Benjamite survivors

¹⁰The Benjamites returned and were given the young women of Jabesh who had been spared, but there were not enough for all of them.

¹¹The elders of the assembly said, "How shall we provide wives for the men who are left? The Benjamite survivors must have heirs so that a tribe of Israel will not be wiped out.

Benjamites permitted to capture girls

¹²So they instructed the Benjamites saying, "Go hide in the vineyards of Shiloh. When the girls of Shiloh^{F*} come out to dance during the Festival to the Lord,^{F*} each of you seize a wife from among them and return to the land of Benjamin. ¹³When their fathers complain to us we will say to them, 'Do us a kindness by helping the Benjamites. You will be innocent since you did not give your daughters to them.'"

The surviving Benjamites rebuild their towns

¹⁴So that is what the Benjamites did. They returned and rebuilt their towns and settled in them.^{F*}

*12 Shiloh was predominantly of the tribe of Ephraim.

*12 Probably the Feast of Tabernacles (Exodus 12:46).

*14 Israel's first king Saul was a Benjamite from the rebuilt town of Gibeah (Samuel chapter 5).

RUTH

The book of Ruth is a delightful love story that gives an intriguing glimpse into the everyday customs of Israel during the rule of the judges. It concerns Ruth, a non-Israelite widow from Moab, who because of her good character and humility wins the heart of Boaz, a middle-aged, wealthy and kindly Israelite of Bethlehem.

Boaz appears to be an uncle of Ruth's deceased husband. He marries Ruth and a son is born to their union – Obed, the grandfather of King David.

AUTHOR Samuel with clarifications by a later prophet.

“Now my daughter, be not afraid, I will do for you all you ask. The men of the town know that you are a woman of noble character.” Ruth 2:25

CONTENTS

	Chapter
A famine in Israel	1
Elimelech and Naomi go to live in Moab	1
Elimelech and his two sons die	1
Naomi decides to return home to Israel	1
Ruth, her son's widow, begs to go with her	1
Naomi returns to Bethlehem with Ruth	1
Ruth gleanes in the barley field of Boaz	2
Boaz shows kindness to Ruth	2
Naomi sends Ruth to Boaz at night	2
Ruth asks Boaz to marry her	2
Boaz is pleased	2
The brother of Boaz has a greater right to Ruth	2
Boaz negotiates for Ruth at the town gate	3
Boaz marries Ruth	3
Ruth the great grandmother of David	3

1

A famine drives Elimelech and his wife Naomi from Bethlehem to Moab

¹In the days when the judges ruled Israel, there came a famine in the land, and a man named Elimelech from Bethlehem took his wife Naomi and his two sons and went to live in the land of Moab.^{F*}

Elimelech and his two sons die

²While living there, Elimelech died leaving his widow Naomi and his two sons. Both sons married Moabite women, however after about ten years his sons died also.

Naomi decides to return home to Israel

³Naomi heard that the famine had ended in Israel so she prepared to return home again.

Naomi sends her two Moabite daughters-in-law away

⁴She said to her two daughters-in-law, Orpah and Ruth who lived with her, “Return to your own families and may Jehovah bless you as you have blessed me, and may he find each of you another husband.” Then she kissed them.

⁵But they wept aloud and said, “Let us return with you to your people.”

⁶Naomi said, “Why come with me? Am I going to have more sons who could become your husbands? Return home my daughters, I am too old to take another husband.”

Ruth refuses to leave Naomi

⁷At this they wept again and Orpah kissed her mother-in-law good-bye, but Ruth clung to Naomi and said, “Where you go I will go. Your people will be my people and your God my God. ⁸May Jehovah deal with me severely if anything but death separates us.”

Naomi takes Ruth with her and returns to Bethlehem

⁹So Naomi took Ruth with her and departed to return to Bethlehem in Judah. They arrived just as the barley harvest was beginning.

The whole town is stirred at their coming

¹⁰The whole town was stirred because of them and the women exclaimed, “Can this be Naomi?”

¹¹But she told them, “Do not call me Naomi,^{F*} call me Bitter, for the Almighty has made my life bitter. I went away full but I have come back empty. Why call me Naomi?”

2

Ruth gleanes in the barley field of Boaz

¹Later, Ruth said to Naomi, “Let me go out to the fields and pick up the leftover grain.”

²Naomi said to her, “Go my daughter.” So Ruth went out and began to glean in a field behind the harvesters.

³Now Naomi had a relative on her husband's

*1 Moab was to the east of the Dead Sea. The Moabites were descendants of Lot and generally hostile towards Israel.

*11 Naomi means ‘my sweet one.’

RUTH 2

side, a man of standing whose name was Boaz, of the tribe of Judah. As it happened Ruth chose a field belonging to Boaz.

Boaz asks to whom the young woman belongs

⁴Soon afterward, Boaz arrived from Bethlehem and greeted his harvesters saying “Jehovah be with you!”

“May Jehovah bless you!” they called back.

⁵Then Boaz said to the foreman of his harvesters, “Whose young woman is that?”

⁶The foreman replied, “She is the Moabitess who came back with Naomi. She came to me and said, ‘Please let me glean behind the harvesters,’ and has worked steadily from morning until now except for a short rest in the shelter.”

Boaz shows kindness to Ruth

⁷Boaz went over to Ruth and said to her, “My daughter, do not glean in any other field. Stay here with my servant girls. I have commanded the young men not to touch you. When you are thirsty, drink from the water jars the men have filled.”

⁸At this Ruth bowed with her face to the ground and said, “Why have I found such favour in your eyes that you notice me, a foreigner?”

⁹Boaz replied, “I have been told of all that you have done for your mother-in-law since the death of your husband, and how you left your homeland and came to live with a people you did not know. ¹⁰May you be richly rewarded by the God of Israel under whose wings you have taken refuge.”

¹¹When it came time to eat, Boaz said to her, “Come over here and have some bread and dip it in the vinegar.” When she went to sit with the harvesters he gave her roasted grain to eat and she saved some for Naomi.

¹²As Ruth arose again to glean, Boaz gave orders to his men saying, “Pull out stalks from the gathered bundles and leave them for her to pick up.”

Ruth returns home to Naomi with her barley

¹³Ruth gleaned until evening and then threshed the barley she had gathered. It amounted to about an ephah.^{F*}

¹⁴When she took the barley home and showed it to her mother-in-law, Naomi asked, “Where did you glean today?”

¹⁵“The name of the man with whom I worked today was Boaz,” Ruth replied.

¹⁶Naomi said, “The Lord bless him. He has never stopped showing kindness to the living and the dead. ¹⁷That man is a close relative of ours. It will be good for you to stay with his girls, for in someone else’s field you might be harmed.”

Naomi sends Ruth to Boaz at night

¹⁸After the harvest Naomi said to Ruth, “My daughter, should I not try to find a home for you where you will be well provided for? Is not Boaz

a relative of ours? ¹⁹Tonight he will be winnowing barley. Wash and perfume yourself and put on your best clothes, then go down to the threshing floor.^{F*} But do not let Boaz see you until he has finished eating and drinking. ²⁰When he lies to sleep, go and uncover his feet and lie down. He will tell you what to do.”

²¹When Boaz had finished eating and drinking and was in good spirits, he went over to sleep at the far end of the grain pile.^{F*} When he was asleep Ruth approached quietly, and uncovered his feet and lay down.



Women harvesting barley in the fields near Bethlehem.

Ruth asks Boaz to marry her

²²In the middle of the night Boaz awoke and discovered her lying at his feet. “Who are you?” he asked.

²³She answered, “I am your servant Ruth. Spread the corner of your garment over me, since you are my next of kin.”^{F*}

Boaz is pleased with Ruth

²⁴Boaz said, “The Lord bless you my daughter. This kindness is greater than that which you showed earlier. You have not run after the younger men, whether rich or poor.”

The brother of Boaz has a greater right to Ruth

²⁵“Now my daughter, be not afraid, I will do for you all you ask. The men of the town know that you are a woman of noble character.”

²⁶“However, although it is true that I am your near kin, there is a brother nearer to you than I. If he wishes to claim you, well and good, let him do so. ²⁷But if he is not willing, as surely as Jehovah lives I will do it. Lie here until morning.”

Boaz sends Ruth home with a gift and then goes into town

²⁸So Ruth lay at his feet until morning. Boaz arose while it was still dark and said, “It must

*19 A threshing floor was an area of ground in a windy area, packed hard and smooth, where grain was first threshed and then winnowed.

*21 It was necessary to guard grain piles against thieves.

*23 Ruth’s action and words were a customary way of asking a man to fulfill his obligation to his brother who has died sonless, by marrying his widow and raising up a son to inherit his land. See Deuteronomy 5:32.

*13 An ephah is about 22 litres.

not be known that this woman came to the threshing floor.”

²⁹Then he said to Ruth, “Bring me the shawl you are wearing and hold it out.” When she did so he poured into it six measures of barley. Then Boaz went into town.

³⁰Ruth carried the barley back to her mother-in-law and told her everything Boaz had said.

³¹Naomi said, “That man will not rest until the matter is settled today.”



Barley threshing floor near Bethlehem.

3

Boaz negotiates for Ruth at the town gate

¹Meanwhile, Boaz went and sat at the town gate. When the brother who was nearer to Ruth came along, Boaz called to him saying, “Come over here and sit down.” ²Boaz also took ten of the elders of the town and said, “Sit here.” and they did so.

³Then he said to his brother, “Naomi who has returned from Moab has sold the piece of land that belonged to her husband, our brother Elimelech. I thought I should bring the matter to your attention and suggest that you redeem it,^{F*} for you have the first right and I am next in line.”

⁴“Very well, I will redeem it,” he said. ⁵Then Boaz said, “When you redeem the land that

belonged to Naomi, you also acquire our dead brother’s widow, Ruth the Moabitess in order to raise up an heir to the property.”

⁶At this his brother said, “Then I cannot redeem it as I might endanger my own estate. You redeem it yourself,” and he took off his sandal.^{F*}

Boaz agrees to redeem Naomi’s land and to marry Ruth

⁷Then Boaz said to the elders, “Today you are witnesses that I have acquired from Naomi all the property of Elimelech. I have also acquired Ruth the Moabitess, his son’s widow as my wife in order to maintain the name of the dead man with his property, so that his name will not disappear from among his family.”

⁸The elders said, “We are your witnesses. May Jehovah make this woman who is coming into your home be like Rachel and Leah who built up the house of Israel.”

Boaz marries Ruth

⁹So Boaz took Ruth and she became his wife, and she conceived and gave birth to a son and Naomi cared for him.

Ruth becomes the great grandmother of King David

¹⁰They named the son Obed. He was the father of Jesse, who was the father of David.



Winnowing barley.

*3 Rural land could not be permanently sold in Israel. If it was not redeemed (purchased back by a relative) it reverted back to the original family owners in the year of Jubilee (Leviticus 7:19-24).

*6 Removing a sandal and handing it to another signified transference and was a traditional method of legalising property transactions.

SAMUEL

The book of Samuel like many in the Old Testament is named after the dominant prophet of the period. Samuel was one of Israel's greatest and most respected prophets. He was also their last judge.

This book spans Samuel's lifetime and is a masterpiece of literature. It is also an excellent study in human nature and rivals any book ever written for sheer human interest and drama. The personalities of Samuel, Saul, and David are vividly portrayed.

Within its pages are found the inspiring story of David and Goliath, the account of the deadly bubonic plague that afflicted the Philistines when they captured the Ark of the Lord, the two tests of obedience for King Saul both of which he failed, and the king's consequent jealousy toward David and his attempts to murder him.

Also found in the book are the accounts of the bravery of Saul's son Jonathan and his great love for David, the story of Abigail whose wisdom, beauty and humility win David's heart, and finally the account of the medium (or 'witch' as she is sometimes described) of Endor, who at King Saul's desperate urging, calls up the spirit of the dead prophet Samuel and receives a message that causes the king to fall to the floor in fear.

AUTHOR

The final compiler of this book is unnamed, but according to Jewish tradition it was written mostly by the prophet Samuel himself in a book called *The Record of Samuel the Seer*. However as this present version of the book transcends Samuel's lifetime, other historical records such as *The Annals of King David*, and *The Record of Gad the Seer* are thought to have been drawn on by a later prophet.

When Samuel saw Jesse's eldest son Eliab, he thought, "Surely he is the one." But the word of the Lord came to Samuel saying, "**Do not consider his appearance or height, for I have rejected him. Jehovah does not see as a man sees. Man looks upon the outward appearance, but the Lord looks upon the heart.**"

Samuel 9:8-9.

CONTENTS

	Chapter
Hannah the barren wife of Elkanah	1
Hannah makes a vow to the Lord	1
Hannah conceives and Samuel is born	1
Samuel left in the care of Eli the high priest	1
Hannah rewarded with more children	1
Eli's two sons wicked priests	1
Eli's sons take no notice of their father's rebuke	1
A prophet sent by the Lord to rebuke Eli	2
Descendants of Eli cursed to die young	2
A faithful priest to be raised up	2
Lord speaks to Samuel	2
Lord about to punish Israel and Eli's family	2
Samuel's reputation as a prophet grows	2
Israelites defeated by the Philistines	3
The Israelite army send for the Ark	3
Philistine army fear Ark	3
Philistine commanders encourage their men	3
Philistines slaughter 30,000 Israelites	3
Ark captured by the Philistines	3
Eli's two sons die in the battle	3
Eli the high priest dies when he hears the news	3
Eli's daughter-in-law dies giving birth	3
Ark put into temple of god Dagon	3
Next day Dagon found fallen to the ground	3
Dagon's head and hands broken off	3
Philistines suffer from severe plague	3
Philistine priests and diviners consulted	3
Ark to be returned to Israel	3
Gold images made of the tumours and rats	3
Ark to be returned on a cart pulled by cows	3
Cows pull Ark directly to Israel	4
Cart stops in a Levite field	4
Levites sacrifice the cows	4
Seventy Levites die for looking into Ark	4
Ark kept at Kiriath Jearim	4
The Israelites repent of idolatry	4
Samuel intercedes with the Lord	4
The people fast and confess their sins	4
The Philistines prepare to attack Israel again	4
Samuel cries to Lord for help	4
Philistines panicked by thunder from Lord	4
Israel pursues and slaughters the Philistines	4
Samuel judged Israel all his life	5
Samuel's two sons dishonest judges	5
The Israelites ask Samuel for a king	5
Samuel inquirers of the Lord	5
Samuel prophesies the disadvantages of a king	5
Elders persist in asking for a king	5
Lord tells Samuel to give Israel a king	5
Saul sent to search for his father's donkeys	5

Saul and his servant visit Samuel	5	David the youngest anointed to become king	9
Samuel tells Saul he is to be king of Israel	5	Spirit of Lord comes upon David	9
Saul anointed king by Samuel	5	King Saul tormented by an evil spirit	9
Samuel prophesies three signs for Saul	5	Saul's servants suggest a harpist be found	9
Signs are fulfilled and Saul prophesies	5	David enters Saul's service	9
Samuel gathers Israel to Mizpah	6	The Philistines again invade Israel	9
Israel rebuked by Lord for asking for king	6	Philistine warrior Goliath	9
Lord chooses Saul from among the people	6	Goliath's challenge	9
Saul hides in fear of people.....	6	David takes food to his older brothers in camp	10
Samuel explains rights and duties of a king	6	David hears Goliath's challenge	10
Some men support Saul but others despise him	6	King to reward slayer of Goliath	10
The Ammonites besiege city of Jabesh	6	David offers to fight Goliath	10
Messengers from Jabesh reach Saul in Gibeah	6	Saul gives David his own armour and sword	10
Saul cuts his oxen into pieces to summon men	6	David not used to armour and takes it off	10
Saul leads 370,000 men of Israel into battle	6	David goes out to fight Goliath with a sling	10
Saul slaughters the Ammonites	6	Goliath mocks David	10
Some want to kill those who despised Saul	6	David prophesies to Goliath	10
The people celebrate and reaffirm Saul as king	6	David's sling stone knocks Goliath unconscious	10
Samuel testifies of his own honesty	6	David kills and beheads Goliath	10
Samuel warns the people to follow Jehovah	6	Philistines flee and are pursued by Israel	10
Miracle of rain in dry season	6	Israelites plunder Philistine camp	10
Samuel warns people against idolatry	6	David and Jonathan become close friends	11
Saul chooses 3000 men for his standing army	7	Women of Israel sing David's praises	11
Jonathan provokes Philistines to attack	7	King Saul becomes jealous of David	11
All Israelite men again called out to fight	7	Saul hurls his spear at David	11
Philistine forces enormous	7	Saul plans to have David killed by Philistines	11
Israelite men flee and hide in fear	7	Saul's younger daughter Michal loves David	11
King Saul's obedience tested by the Lord	7	Michal's dowry – 100 Philistine foreskins	11
Saul in great anxiety offers unlawful sacrifice	7	David brings back 200 Philistine foreskins	11
Saul failed test – his kingship not to endure	7	David marries Michal	11
No steel weapons among Israelites	7	David the most successful commander in army	11
Jonathan and his armour bearer plan an attack	7	Saul finally orders David killed outright	11
Jonathan asks Lord for a sign	7	Jonathan intercedes for David	11
The sign is given	7	Saul vows to Jonathan he will not kill David	11
Jonathan and his armour-bearer kill 20 men	7	Saul again hurls his spear at David	11
Earthquake panics the Philistines	7	Michal assists David's escape	11
Saul and his men go out to battle	7	David flees to prophet Samuel	12
Israelites who had hid join the battle	7	Saul's men prophesy in Samuel's presence	12
Jonathan inadvertently violates Saul's oath	7	Saul also prophesies in Samuel's presence	12
Jonathan critical of his father's oath	7	David returns to his friend Jonathan	12
Exhausted soldiers eat meat with the blood	8	Jonathan agrees to test his father	12
Saul tells men to kill the animals properly	8	David to hide in fields and wait	12
Saul desires to pursue Philistines by night	8	Saul displays his true feelings to Jonathan	12
Saul first inquirers of Lord	8	Jonathan signals to David with an arrow	12
Lord does not answer Saul's inquiry	8	Jonathan and David weep together	12
Jonathan revealed as guilty person	8	Jonathan and David say farewell	12
Jonathan admits what he did	8	David flees to high priest at Nob	13
Saul vows to kill Jonathan	8	High priest gives David holy bread	13
The men save Jonathan from death	8	David is given Goliath's sword	13
Saul defeats all Israel's enemies	8	David flees to Philistines	13
Saul's mission to destroy the Amalekites	8	Philistines recognise David	13
Saul destroys the city of Amalek	8	David feigns madness to escape	13
In disobedience Saul spares best livestock	8	David returns to Israel and lives in a cave	13
Lord grieved with Saul's disobedience	8	David takes his parents to Moab for safety	13
Samuel pleads with the Lord for Saul	8	About 400 men gather to David	13
Saul tries to excuse his disobedience	8	David warned by a prophet to leave caves	13
To obey better than to sacrifice	8	Saul accuses his officials of conspiracy	13
Lord rejects Saul as king	8	Doeg tells how high priest helped David	13
Saul admits his sin and pleads for forgiveness	8	Saul summons the priests	13
Saul's kingdom given to a better man	8	High priest defends David	13
Samuel consents to honour Saul before elders	8	Saul orders his guards to kill all the priests	13
Samuel executes Agag, king of Amalekites	8	Saul's guards refuse	13
Samuel mourns for Saul	8	Doeg kills the priests	13
Samuel sent to anoint a son of Jesse king	9	Doeg puts the priest's town of Nob to sword	13
Samuel fears Saul's reaction	9	Abiathar flees to David with the ephod	13
Samuel goes to Bethlehem as commanded	9	Philistines attack Keilah	14
Lord does not look on outward appearance	9	David told by Lord to save Keilah	14
Seven of Jesse's sons rejected	9	David saves town of Keilah	14

SAMUEL 1

Saul goes to Keilah to besiege David	14
David and his 600 men flee to Ziph	14
Jonathan finds David	14
Philistine raid saves David from Saul	14
Saul again pursues David	14
Saul enters cave where David is hiding	14
David secretly cuts off part of Saul's robe	14
David feels guilty about what he has done	14
David prevents his men from killing Saul	14
David speaks to king outside cave	14
Saul weeps and admits David will be king	14
David promises not to wipe out Saul's family	14
Samuel the prophet dies	15
David and his men move to desert of Maon	15
The wealthy Nabal	15
Nabal's intelligent and beautiful wife Abigail	15
Nabal rejects David's men's request for food	15
David sets out to punish Nabal's family	15
Abigail warned of the approaching disaster	15
Abigail meets David and his men with food	15
Abigail appeases David's anger	15
Nabal drunk when Abigail returns home	15
Nabal's heart fails him	15
Nabal dies ten days later	15
David marries Abigail	15
David's other wife	15
Saul again pursues David	16
David sneaks into Saul's camp by night	16
David again spares Saul's life	16
Saul's spear and water jug taken	16
David taunts Saul's commander Abner	16
Saul confesses his sin and blesses David	16

David and his men live among the Philistines	16
Achish the Philistine king gives Ziklag to David	16
David survives by raiding non-Israelite tribes	16
David deceives the Philistine king	16
David ordered by Achish to fight against Israel	17
Philistine army commanders reject David	17
David and his men return home to Ziklag	17
Philistine army set up camp in Israel	17
Lord does not answer Saul's inquiry	17
Saul in desperation consults a woman medium	17
Saul asks the woman to bring up Samuel	17
Samuel prophesies defeat and Saul's death	17
The woman prepares food for Saul	17
David and his men find Ziklag burned	18
Their wives and children captured	18
David inquirers of the Lord	18
Lord answers – pursue and rescue	18
David and his men set out immediately	18
200 of David's men too exhausted to cross a river ..	18
David and his men assist a young Egyptian	18
Egyptian leads David to raider's camp	18
David defeats raiders	18
David recovers all that was taken and more	18
Spoil divided equally	18
David sends spoil to his friends in Judah	18
The Philistines attack and Israelites flee	19
Saul's three sons die in battle	19
Saul severely wounded by Philistine archers	19
Saul decides to take own life	19
Philistines occupy surrounding towns	19
Saul and his son's bodies hung on a city wall	19
Men of Jabesh bury Saul and his sons	19

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Hannah the barren wife of Elkanah

¹There was a man whose name was Elkanah, a Levite, who year after year went up to worship and sacrifice to the Lord at the Tabernacle at Shiloh.

²He had two wives, Peninnah who had children and Hannah who had none.

³Whenever Elkanah sacrificed at Shiloh he would give his barren wife Hannah a double portion of meat, for he loved her greatly.

⁴Peninnah his other wife however would tease and provoke Hannah because of her barrenness until she would weep and not eat. This went on year after year.

⁵Elkanah her husband would say to her, "Hannah why are you weeping? Why do you not eat? Am I not worth more to you than ten sons?"

Hannah makes a vow to the Lord that if given a son she will give him back to him as a Nazirite

⁶One year at Shiloh when they had finished eating and drinking, Hannah again wept much.

⁷Then she prayed before the Lord at the Tabernacle and made a vow^{F*} saying,

"Jehovah Almighty, if you will look upon my misery and grant me a son, then I will give him back to you all the days of his life. No razor will ever be used on his head." ^{F*}

Eli the high priest accuses Hannah of drunkenness

⁸As she prayed, Eli who was high priest at that time was watching her. He saw her lips moving but did not hear her voice and thought she was drunk.

⁹He said to her, "How long will you be drunken? Get rid of your wine."

¹⁰Hannah replied, "No my lord, I have not been drinking, I am a woman deeply troubled with great anguish and grief. I was pouring out my soul to the Lord."

Eli blesses Hannah that her prayer be answered

¹¹Eli answered, "Then go in peace, and may the God of Israel grant what you have asked of him."

¹²So Hannah rejoined her family and ate, and felt sorrowful no more.

*7 A vow is a favour asked of the Lord in return for which the asker agrees to make some kind of sacrifice.

*7 ie He would become a Nazirite (see Leviticus 8:19) as was Samson.

¹³Early next morning they arose, and after worshipping, returned to their home at Ramah.

Hannah conceives and a son Samuel is born

¹⁴Elkanah lay with Hannah his wife and the Lord remembered her vow and she conceived. In the course of time she gave birth to a son and named him Samuel."

When weaned Samuel is taken to Eli the high priest and left in his care

¹⁵After he was weaned, the parents took the boy, young as he was,^{F*} along with a bull, flour and a skin of wine, to the Tabernacle at Shiloh.

¹⁶When they had slaughtered the bull they brought the boy to Eli the high priest and Hannah said to him, "I am the woman who stood here in your presence, praying to the Lord. ¹⁷He has granted me what I asked. Now to fulfil my vow I give him to Jehovah. For his whole life he is to be given over to the Lord."

¹⁸Then Elkanah took his wife Hannah home and the boy Samuel remained under the care of Eli the high priest.

Hannah is rewarded with more children

¹⁹As Samuel grew he began ministering before the Lord, a young boy wearing a priest's tunic. Each year his mother would make him another little tunic and take it to him when she went up with her husband to offer the annual sacrifice.

²⁰Eli blessed Elkanah and his wife Hannah saying, "May Jehovah give you children by this woman because of the gift she gave to the Lord."

²¹The Lord was gracious to Hannah and she conceived and bore three more sons and two daughters.

Eli's two sons are wicked priests

²²Now Eli himself had two sons, Hophni and Phinehas who were priests, but they were wicked men and had no regard for the Lord.

Eli's sons would treat the Lord's offerings with contempt

²³It was the normal practice of priests that whenever the meat of a sacrifice was being boiled, a servant of the priest would plunge a three-pronged fork into the pot and whatever the fork brought up, the priest would keep for himself. ²⁴But with Eli's sons, even before the fat was burned, their servant would say to the man who was sacrificing, "Give the priest some raw meat to roast, he will not accept boiled meat."

²⁵If the man rightly replied, "Let the fat be burned first, then take whatever you want," the servant would answer, "Hand it over now, or I will take it by force."

²⁶This sin of Eli's sons was great in the Lord's eyes, for they were treating his offerings with contempt.

Sexual immorality with the women who served at the Tabernacle

²⁷Eli's sons also lay with the women who served at the entrance to the Tabernacle.

Eli rebukes his sons

²⁸Eli heard about the evil things his sons were doing, so he said to them, "Why do you do such things? If a man sins against a man, the Lord may intercede for him, but if a man sins against the Lord, who can intercede?"

Eli sons take no notice of their father's rebuke

²⁹Eli's sons took no notice of their father's rebuke. ³⁰But the boy Samuel continued to grow in stature, and in favour with the Lord and with men.

2

A prophet sent by the Lord to rebuke Eli

¹Now Eli was very old and one day a prophet came to him and said, "Jehovah says, 'I chose your forefather Aaron out of all the tribes of Israel to be my priest, to attend my altar, to burn incense, and to wear an ephod^{F*} in my presence.'

²"I also gave your father's house all the offerings made with fire by the Israelites. Why then do you scorn my sacrifices and offerings and honour your sons more than me, by fattening yourselves on the choicest parts of the offerings made by my people?"

Descendants of Eli cursed to die young

³"I promised that your father's house would minister before me forever, but now, no more. I honour those who honour me but those who dishonour me are cursed."

⁴"I am breaking the strength of your house so that no man of your family will reach old age. The few I do not cut off from my altar will be spared only to weep out their eyes with tears and grief, for your descendants will die by the sword at a young age."

Eli's sons Hophni and Phinehas to both die on the same day

⁵"What befalls your two sons Hophni and Phinehas will be a sign of what is to come. They will both die on the same day."

A faithful priest to be raised up

⁶"I will raise up a faithful priest who will do what is in my heart and mind. I will firmly establish his house, and he will minister before my anointed king forever."

Eli's descendants to beg for a priestly office

⁷"Then whoever is left of your family will come and beg him for a piece of silver and a loaf of bread, and plead with him saying, 'Appoint me to some priestly office so I can have food to eat.'

The Lord speaks to Samuel

⁸Now in those days the word of the Lord was

*15 The time of weaning was normally around three years of age.

*1 The ephod was a priestly garment normally only worn by the high priest.

SAMUEL 3

rare, there were not many visions. ⁹One night while Eli was asleep in his usual place and Samuel was sleeping in the Tabernacle, the voice of the Lord called to Samuel. **“Samuel!”**

¹⁰Samuel ran to Eli and said, “You called me?” Eli said, “No I did not call you. Go back to sleep.” So Samuel went and lay down again.

¹¹Again the Lord called and Samuel got up and went to Eli, but he said, “My son I did not call you.”

¹²The Lord called Samuel a third time, and again Samuel went to Eli. Then Eli realised that the Lord was calling the boy so he said to Samuel, “Go and lie down. If he calls you again say, ‘Speak Lord, for your servant is listening.’”

¹³So Samuel went and lay down in his place. This time Lord came and stood before him, calling as before, **“Samuel! Samuel!”**

¹⁴Samuel said, “Speak, for your servant is listening.”

The Lord about to punish Israel and Eli’s family

¹⁵The Lord said to Samuel, **“I am about to do something in Israel that will cause all ears to tingle. I will also carry out against the family of Eli everything I spoke, for his sons did evil and he failed to restrain them. ¹⁶The guilt of Eli’s house will never be atoned for by sacrifice or offering.”**

Samuel tells Eli everything the Lord said

¹⁷Samuel lay until morning and then opened the doors of the Tabernacle. He was afraid to tell Eli the vision, but Eli called him and said, “What did the Lord say to you? Do not hide it from me.”

¹⁸So Samuel told him everything. Then Eli said, “Let Jehovah do what is good in his eyes.”

Samuel’s reputation as a prophet grows

¹⁹The Lord was with Samuel as he grew up, and he continued to reveal himself to Samuel at Shiloh, allowing none of his words to fail. All Israel knew that Samuel was a prophet of the Lord.

3

The Israelites are defeated by the Philistines

¹Now the Philistines mustered for war and the Israelites went out to fight them, but they were defeated. About 4000 Israelites died on the battlefield.

The Israelite army send for the Ark

²When the army returned to camp the elders of Israel asked, “Why has the Lord brought defeat upon us today? Let us bring the Ark from Shiloh so that it may go with us into battle and save us from our enemies.”

³So they sent to Shiloh, and Eli’s two sons came with the Ark.

The Philistines fear the Ark

⁴When the Ark was brought into the camp, the Israelites raised a shout so loud that the ground shook. The Philistines asked, “What does this

great shouting in the Israelite camp mean?”

⁵When they learned that the Ark of the Lord had come, the Philistines feared and said, “Who will deliver us from the hand of this mighty God? This is the God who struck the Egyptians with all kinds of plagues.”

The Philistine commanders encourage their men

⁶But their commanders said to them, “Be strong Philistines! Be men, or you will be subject to the Israelites as they have been subject to you. Be men and fight!”

The Philistines slaughter 30,000 Israelites and capture the Ark

⁷So the Philistines fought strongly and the Israelites were again defeated. Every man fled to his home. ⁸The slaughter was very great. Israel lost 30,000 men and the Ark of God was captured.

Eli’s two sons die in the battle

⁹Eli’s two sons Hophni and Phinehas who had carried the Ark also died in the battle.

Eli the high priest dies when he hears the news

¹⁰That same day a man ran from the battlefield to carry the news to Shiloh. His clothes were torn and there was dust on his head.^{F*} ¹¹The man entered the city and told what had happened and the whole city began to cry out.

¹²Eli was sitting on his chair out in the street waiting, for he feared greatly for the Ark of God. When he heard the outcry he called out, “What has happened?”

¹³The messenger hurried over to Eli who was now ninety-eight years old and blind and said, “Israel fled before the Philistines! There has been a great slaughter! ¹⁴Your two sons Hophni and Phinehas are dead and the Ark has been captured!”

¹⁵When he mentioned the Ark, Eli fell backward off his chair and broke his neck and died, for he was an old man and heavy.

¹⁶He had judged Israel forty years.

Eli’s daughter-in-law dies giving birth

¹⁷Eli’s daughter-in-law, the wife of Phinehas was pregnant and near the time of her delivery. When she too heard the news she went into labour and gave birth, but was overcome by her labour pains.

¹⁸As she lay dying, the women attending her said, “You have given birth to a son.” ¹⁹Before she died she named the boy Ichabod^{F*} saying, “The glory has departed from Israel, for the Ark of God has been captured.”

The Ark is put into the temple of the Philistine god Dagon

²⁰The Philistines took the Ark to their city of Ashdod, and carried it into the temple and set it beside the image of Dagon their god.

*10 Torn clothing and dust on the head are signs of extreme grief.

*19 Ichabod means ‘no glory.’

Next day Dagon found fallen to the ground

²¹However when the people of Ashdod arose the next morning, they found the image of Dagon fallen to the ground on his face before the Ark.

Dagon's head and hands broken off

²²They took Dagon and put him back in his place but the following morning they again found him fallen on his face. This time his head and hands had been broken off.

The Philistines suffer from severe plague because of the Ark

²³Jehovah's hand was heavy upon the people of Ashdod. He sent rats among them and brought plague upon them, afflicting them with tumours in the groin.^{F*} There was death and destruction throughout the city.

²⁴When the men of Ashdod saw what was happening, they called together the kings of the Philistines and said to them, "What shall we do with the Ark of the God of Israel?"

²⁵They answered, "Move the Ark to Gath."^{F*} But when they moved it to Gath, the Lord also afflicted the people of that city with an outbreak of tumours in the groin.

²⁶So they sent the Ark to Ekron, but as the Ark was entering that city the people of Ekron cried out, "They have brought the Ark of the God of Israel here to kill us."

²⁷They said to the kings of the Philistines, "Send the Ark back to Israel or it will kill us all." For the plague had started there also and the city was filled with panic.²⁸Those who did not die of the plague were afflicted with the tumours.

The Philistine priests and diviners are consulted

²⁹So the Philistine kings called for their priests and diviners and said, "How shall we send back the Ark of Jehovah?"

The Ark to be returned to Israel with a guilt offering

³⁰They answered, "Do not send away the Ark of the God of Israel empty, send with it a guilt offering and you may be healed."

Gold images of the tumours and the rats

³¹The kings asked, "What guilt offering should we send?"

³²They replied, "Make gold images of the tumours, and of the rats that are destroying the land and thus pay honour to Israel's God. Five gold tumours and five gold rats, according to the number of the Philistine kings.³³Perhaps he will lift his hand from you. Why harden your hearts as the Egyptians did?"

The Ark to be sent back on a cart pulled by two newly calved ox cows

³⁴"Then prepare a new cart and take two ox cows that have never been yoked and have just calved. Take their calves away from them

and pen them up. Hitch the cows to the cart and place the Ark of Jehovah on the cart.³⁵Put the gold objects you are sending as a guilt offering in a chest beside it. Then send the cart on its way."

³⁶"If the cows pull the cart toward Israel, then Jehovah has brought this great disaster on us. But if not, then it was just chance and not his hand that struck us."



An old stone relief of the Ark of the Lord found in Israel.

4

The cows pull the Ark directly to Israel

¹The Philistine kings did as their priests and diviners advised. They put the Ark on the cart along with a chest containing the gold objects and yoked the cows to the cart.

²The cows immediately started pulling the cart along the road leading toward Israel. They did not turn to the right or to the left and lowed all the way.

³The kings of the Philistines followed as far as Beth Shemesh, a Levite^{F*} town of Judah on the border of Israel.

⁴The Ark of the Lord had been in Philistine territory for seven months.

The cart stops in a Levite field

⁵The Levites of Beth Shemesh were harvesting their wheat when they looked up and saw the Ark coming toward them. They rejoiced at the sight. The cart stopped in the field of Joshua, beside a large rock.

The Levites sacrifice the cows

⁶The Levites lifted the Ark and the chest containing the gold objects off the cart and placed them on the rock.⁷Then they chopped

*23 Bubonic plague, which is spread by rat fleas.

*24 Gath was another of the five main cities of the Philistines.

*3 The priestly tribe of Levi had been allotted towns throughout Israel.

SAMUEL 5

up the wood of the cart and sacrificed the two ox cows as a burnt offering to the Lord.



Ox cart of the Middle East.

Seventy Levites die for looking into the Ark

⁸But God killed seventy of the men of Beth Shemesh because they looked inside the Ark.

⁹The people mourned because of the heavy blow the Lord had dealt them and sent messengers up to the people of the nearby town of Kiriath Jearim saying, "The Philistines have returned the Ark of the Lord. Come down and take it."

The Ark kept at Kiriath Jearim

¹⁰So the men of Kiriath Jearim came and took the Ark of the Lord up to Abinadab's house on the hill and consecrated Eleazar his son to guard it.

The Israelites mourn and repent of idolatry

¹¹The Ark remained at Kiriath Jearim twenty years, and all the people of Israel mourned and sought the Lord.

¹²Samuel said to the people, "If you are returning to the Lord with all your hearts, then rid yourselves of all foreign gods and serve Jehovah only and he will deliver you from the Philistines." So the Israelites put away their Baals and Ashtoreths.*

Samuel calls all Israel together at Mizpah to intercede with the Lord for them

¹³Then Samuel commanded all Israel saying, "Assemble at Mizpah and I will intercede with the Lord for you."

The people fast and confess their sins

¹⁴So all Israel assembled at Mizpah, fasting and confessing, "We have sinned against the Lord."

The Philistines prepare to attack Israel again

¹⁵When the Philistines heard that all Israel had gathered at Mizpah they came up to attack them.

¹⁶The Israelites heard that the Philistines were coming and were afraid. They said to Samuel, "Cry out to the Lord for us, so he will save us from the Philistines."

Samuel sacrifices a lamb and cries to the Lord for help

¹⁷So Samuel took a lamb and offered it up as a whole burnt offering to the Lord, then he cried out on Israel's behalf and the Lord answered him.

The Philistines are thrown into a panic by loud thunder from the Lord

¹⁸As the Philistines drew near to fight, the Lord thundered with a loud thunder against them, which terrified them and threw them into a panic, and they fled.

The Israelites pursue and slaughter the Philistines

¹⁹Then the men of Israel arose and pursued them, slaughtering them all the way to the border.

²⁰Afterward Samuel set up a stone and named it Ebenezer* saying, "Jehovah has helped us."

²¹So the Philistines were subdued at that time and did not renew their attack and the towns they had formerly taken from Israel were recaptured again.



The travels of the Ark of the Lord.

5

Samuel judged Israel all his life

¹Samuel judged Israel all the days of his life. He went on a circuit year by year to Bethel, Gilgal and Mizpah and judged Israel in all these places. Then he would return to his home town of Ramah where he built an altar to the Lord.

Samuel appoints his two sons as judges but they are dishonest

²When Samuel grew old he appointed his two sons as judges. But his sons did not walk in his ways, they were dishonest and accepted bribes.

The Israelites ask Samuel for a king

³So the elders of Israel gathered together and came to Samuel at Ramah and said to him, "You are old and your sons do not walk in your ways. Appoint a king to lead us, such as the other nations have."

*12 Baal and Ashtoreth were demon gods, whose worship usually involved sexual immorality.

*20 Ebenezer means 'Stone of Help.'

Samuel enquires of the Lord

4This displeased Samuel, so he enquired of the Lord and the Lord answered, **“Do as the people ask, they have not rejected you but have rejected me as their king, as they have done from the day I brought them up out of Egypt. 5But warn them solemnly what the king who will reign over them will do.”**

Samuel prophesies of the disadvantages of a king

6So Samuel said to the elders who had asked him for a king, **“This is what the king who will reign over you will do: He will take your sons and make them serve in his army with his chariots and horses. He will assign others to make weapons of war and chariots. 7Still others he will have plough his ground and reap his harvest. He will take your daughters to be perfumers and cooks and bakers.”**

8**“He will take the best of your fields and vineyards and olive groves and give them to his officials. The best of your servants and your cattle and donkeys he will take for his own use, and he will also tax a tenth of your flocks and grain and wine to support his officials.”**

9**“Even you yourselves will become his servants, and when that day comes you will cry out to the Lord for relief from the king you have chosen, but Jehovah will not answer you.”**

The elders persist in asking for a king

10But the elders answered Samuel, “We want to be like the other nations and have a king to rule us and go out before us to fight our battles.”

The Lord tells Samuel to give Israel a king

11When Samuel heard this he again took it to the Lord. The Lord answered, **“Give them a king.”**

Saul sent to search for his father’s donkeys

12There was a Benjamite, a man of standing whose name was Kish. He had a son named Saul, a man of handsome appearance without equal among the Israelites and a head taller than any other man.

13Now some donkeys belonging to Kish became lost, so he sent his son Saul and a servant to search for them. They searched widely throughout the hill country of Ephraim but did not find them.

14Finally Saul said to the servant, “Let us return home or my father will cease worrying about the donkeys and begin to worry about us.”

Saul and his servant visit Samuel the prophet

15The servant replied, “A prophet of God lives in a nearby town. Everything he says comes to pass. Perhaps he will tell us where to find the donkeys.”

16Saul said, “But what have we to give the man? The food in our sacks is gone?”

17The servant answered, “I have a quarter of

a shekel of silver.^{F*} We can give that to the man of God.”

“Very well then, let us go,” Saul said.

18So they went to Ramah where Samuel the prophet lived. As they were going up the hill to the town they met some girls coming down to draw water, so they asked them, “Is the seer in the town?”

19They answered, “He is, if you hurry you will find him before he goes up to the high place to bless the sacrifice and eat.”

20So they hurried up the hill to the town. Just as they entered they saw the prophet Samuel coming toward them, on his way to the high place.



Ramah, the hill-top home town of the prophet Samuel.

Samuel tells Saul he is to become king of Israel

21Now the previous day the Lord had said to Samuel, **“About this time tomorrow I will send you a man of Benjamin. Anoint him king. He will deliver my people Israel from the hand of the Philistines for their cry has reached me.”**

22When Samuel saw Saul, the word of the Lord came to him again saying, **“This is the man of whom I spoke. He will rule my people.”**

23So Samuel said to Saul. **“Go up ahead of me to the high place. Today you will eat with me and tomorrow I will tell you whatever you wish to know. 24As for the donkeys you lost three days ago, they have been found. 25On whom is all the desire of Israel fixed, if not you and your family?”**

26Saul answered, “Am I not a Benjamite, the smallest tribe of Israel and my clan the least of the clans of Benjamin? Why then do you speak such words to me?”

Saul eats with Samuel and sleeps at his house

27When Samuel had blessed the sacrifice at the high place^{F*} he took Saul and his servant into the eating hall and seated them at the head of those who were invited, about thirty in number and they ate with him.

28After they had returned back down to the

*17 A shekel of silver was worth about a days wages.

*27 Sacrifice was normally only offered at the Tabernacle, but the town of Shiloh where the Tabernacle was located had recently been destroyed by the Philistines.

SAMUEL 6

town Samuel spoke with Saul on the roof of his house and Saul slept there that night.

Saul is anointed king by Samuel

²⁹Early next morning Saul left to return home. Samuel escorted him to the edge of the town and said to him, "Command your servant to go on ahead." And the servant did so.

³⁰Then Samuel took a flask of oil and poured it on Saul's head and kissed him saying, "**Jehovah has anointed you king over Israel. You will reign over the people of the Lord and save them from their enemies.**"

Samuel prophesies three signs for Saul

³¹"**Now this shall be a sign to you: Today on your way home you will meet two men near Rachel's tomb. They will say to you, 'The donkeys you set out to look for have been found and now your father is worried about you.'**"

³²"**When you reach the great oak of Tabor, three men going to Bethel will meet you there. One will be carrying three young goats, another three loaves of bread and another a skin of wine.** ³³**They will greet you and offer you two loaves of bread which you shall accept from them.**"

The Spirit of the Lord to come upon Saul

³⁴"**As you approach your home town of Gibeah you will meet a company of prophets coming down from the high place, with lyres, tambourines, flutes and harps being played before them.**"

³⁵"**They will be prophesying^{F*} and the Spirit of the Lord will come upon you in power and you will prophesy with them.** ³⁶**You will be changed into a different person.**"

³⁷"**Once these signs are fulfilled, do whatever you feel is right, for God will be with you.**"

The signs are fulfilled and Saul prophesies

³⁸Saul left Samuel and that day all the signs were fulfilled. When he arrived at his home town of Gibeah a company of prophets met him and the Spirit of God came upon Saul and he joined in their prophesying.

³⁹When those who knew him, saw him prophesying with the prophets they said to each other, "What has happened to the son of Kish? Is Saul also a prophet?"

Saul is silent about his anointing

⁴⁰Saul's uncle said to him, "What did the prophet Samuel say to you?"

⁴¹Saul replied, "He told us that the donkeys had been found." He did not tell his uncle what Samuel had said about the kingship.

6

Samuel gathers Israel to Mizpah

¹Now the prophet Samuel sent a command

throughout the land, for all the Israelites to assemble at Mizpah.

Israel rebuked by the Lord for asking for a king

²When all Israel had gathered^{F*} Samuel said to the people, "Jehovah the God of Israel says, **'I brought Israel up out of Egypt and delivered you from the power of all the kingdoms that oppressed you. But you have now rejected your God who saves you and have said, 'Set a king over us.'**"

³"**Now, present yourselves before me, tribe by tribe.**"

The Lord chooses Saul from among the people

⁴The tribes of Israel presented themselves before the Lord and the tribe of Benjamin was chosen.

⁵Then Samuel had the tribe of Benjamin come forward clan by clan, and Saul the son of Kish was chosen.

Saul hides in fear of people

⁶But afterwards Saul could not be found. Samuel inquired of the Lord and was told, "**He has hidden himself among the baggage.**"

⁷So they ran and brought him out. As he stood among the people he was a head taller than any other man.

Samuel explains the rights and duties of a king

⁸Samuel said to the people, "Here is the man the Lord has chosen as king. There is no one like him in all Israel."

⁹The people shouted, "Long live the king!"

¹⁰Samuel then explained to the people the rights and duties of the kingship,^{F*} and wrote them in a book. Then he dismissed the people.

Some support Saul but others despise him

¹¹Saul also returned home to Gibeah, accompanied by valiant men whose hearts God had touched.

¹²But some troublemakers said, "How can this fellow save us?" and they despised Saul and brought him no gifts.

The Ammonites besiege the city of Jabesh

¹³Now the Ammonites had been seriously oppressing the Israelites in Gilead, east of the Jordan. They had gouged out the right eye of each one of them. ¹⁴No one was left whose right eye had not been gouged out, except the 7000 men of the city of Jabesh, and now the Ammonites had laid siege to the city of Jabesh.

¹⁵The men of Jabesh said to the Ammonites, "Make a treaty with us and we will be subject to you."

¹⁶But the Ammonites replied, "We will only make a treaty with you on the condition that we gouge out the right eye of each one of you."

¹⁷The elders of Jabesh said, "Allow us seven days, if no one comes to rescue us we will surrender to you."

*35 To prophesy is to speak under the inspiration of the Spirit of God. It is not limited to foretelling the future and often includes praise of God.

*2 The Israelites east of the Jordan probably did not come due to war with the Ammonites. See verse 13.

*10 See also Deuteronomy 3:12-18 for Moses' commandments regarding the choosing of and the personal conduct of a king.

Messengers from Jabesh reach Saul in Gibeah

¹⁸When messengers from Jabesh reached Gibeah, Saul was returning home from the fields, walking behind his oxen. He asked, "Why are you weeping?" Then they told him what the messengers from Jabesh had said.

Saul cuts his oxen into pieces and sends them throughout Israel to summon men to fight

¹⁹When Saul heard these words, the Spirit of God came upon him in power and he burned with anger. ²⁰He took two of his oxen and cut them into pieces and sent the pieces throughout Israel proclaiming, "This is what will be done to the oxen of any man who does not follow Saul and Samuel."



Plowing with oxen near Jerusalem.

Saul leads 370,000 men of Israel into battle

²¹300,000 men of Israel turned out, and 70,000 men of Judah, all prepared for battle. ²²Then Saul, accompanied by Samuel the prophet led the men of Israel toward Gilead and crossed the Jordan.

Saul slaughters the Ammonites

²³The next day Saul separated the men into three divisions, and during the last watch of the night^{F*} they attacked the camp of the Ammonites and slaughtered them until the heat of the day. ²⁴Those who survived were so scattered that no two of them were left together.

Some want to kill those who despised Saul

²⁵Then some said to Samuel, "Bring the men who said, 'How can this fellow Saul save us?' We will put them to death."

²⁶But Saul said, "No one shall be put to death this day, for Jehovah has rescued Israel."

The people celebrate and reaffirm Saul as king

²⁷Samuel the prophet said to the men of Israel, "Come, let us go to Gilgal and there reaffirm the kingship." So all the people went to Gilgal and confirmed Saul as king. ²⁸They sacrificed offerings before the Lord and held a great celebration.

Samuel the prophet testifies of his own honesty as judge

²⁹Then Samuel said to the people, "Now you have a king as your leader. As for me, I am old and grey and have been your judge from my youth until this day."

³⁰"Here I stand. Testify against me in the presence of the Lord and his anointed king. Whose ox or donkey have I taken? Whom have I cheated? From whose hand have I accepted a bribe? If I have done any of these things I will make it right."

³¹The people replied, "You have not cheated or oppressed us in any way."

Samuel warns the people and the king to follow Jehovah

³²Samuel said to them, "Very well then, hear me while I recount all the good things done by Jehovah for you and your fathers."

³³Samuel then repeated all that the Lord had done for Israel since he brought them up out of Egypt.

³⁴Then he said, "Here is the king the Lord has set over you. If both you and your king follow Jehovah, it will be well. But if you do not, his hand will be against you, as it was against your fathers."

The miracle of rain in the dry season

³⁵"Now watch this great sign that the Lord is about to do before your eyes. Is it not the season of wheat harvest? I will call upon Jehovah to send thunder and rain^{F*} as a sign that it was an evil thing you did in his eyes when you asked for a king."

³⁶Samuel then called upon the Lord and that same day the Lord sent thunder and rain. All the people stood in awe of the Lord and of Samuel.

Samuel comforts the Israelites but warns against idolatry

³⁷Then the people said to Samuel, "Pray for us that we will not die, for we have added to all our other sins by asking for a king."

³⁸Samuel replied, "Far be it from me that I should sin by failing to pray for you, or by not teaching you what is right. But fear not, for the sake of his great name Jehovah will not reject his people. ³⁹Only do not turn away from him to useless idols which cannot save you, but serve him with all your heart. If you persist in doing evil, both you and your king will be swept away."

7

King Saul chooses 3000 men for his standing army

¹Saul was forty years old when he began to reign. He chose 3000 men for his standing army. 2000 remained with him at Gilgal and 1000 went with his son Jonathan. ²The rest of the men he sent back to their homes.

*23 Between 2am and 6am.

*35 Rain is unheard of in Israel at wheat harvest time.

SAMUEL 7

Jonathan provokes the Philistines to attack Israel

³Jonathan took his men and attacked and destroyed a Philistine outpost at Geba, so the Philistines gathered to fight Israel.

⁴They camped near Gilgal at Michmash with 3000 chariots, 6000 charioteers, and soldiers as numerous as sand on the seashore.



Geba in Benjamin where Jonathan provoked the Philistines by destroying their outpost.

All the Israelite men again called out to fight

⁵So the men of Israel were again called out by Saul to join him at Gilgal to fight the Philistines.

The Israelite men flee and hide when they see the enormity of the Philistine forces

⁶However when the men of Israel came and saw the enormity of the Philistine forces, they fled, hiding in caves and thickets and among the rocks. Others crossed the Jordan to the land of Gilead.

King Saul's obedience tested by the Lord

⁷Saul remained at Gilgal with his army of 2000 who were also seized with fear. ⁸He waited there seven days, for Samuel the prophet had commanded him of the Lord saying, ***"After seven days I will surely come to you, to offer sacrifice and instruct you as to what you are to do."***

Saul's men begin deserting him

⁹Saul waited seven days and Samuel did not come and his men began to desert him.

Saul in great anxiety offers an unlawful sacrifice

¹⁰Finally Saul said, "Bring me the burnt offering," and he offered the sacrifice himself.*

¹¹Just as he finished, Samuel arrived and said to Saul, "What have you done?"

¹²Saul replied, "When I saw that the men were deserting me, and that you had not come at the appointed time, I thought, 'The Philistines will attack any time and I have not sought the Lord's favour.' I felt such anguish that I offered the burnt offering myself."

Because Saul failed his test his kingship not to endure

¹³Samuel said, ***"You have acted very foolishly. You did not keep my commandment from the Lord. If you had kept it, he would have established your kingdom over Israel for all time, but now your kingdom will not***

endure. ¹⁴***The Lord has chosen another man after his own heart to rule his people, for you did not obey his commandment."*** Then Samuel departed.

Only 600 men have not deserted Saul

¹⁵Saul counted the men who were still with him and they numbered about 600. Then he led his men to join his son Jonathan.

No steel weapons among the Israelites

¹⁶Now the Philistines had forbidden blacksmiths in the whole land of Israel for they did not want the Israelites to make swords and spears. The men of Israel had to go to the Philistines to have their ploughs, axes and other tools sharpened.

¹⁷Therefore as they prepared for battle, not one Israelite soldier had a sword or spear in his hand, only Saul and his son Jonathan.

Jonathan and his armour bearer plan an attack on the Philistine outpost

¹⁸Raiding parties were being sent out from the Philistine camp at Michmash, and an outpost of Philistines had pushed forward and secured the high pass at Michmash.

¹⁹Jonathan said to the young man who bore his armour, "Let us cross over to the Philistine outpost on the other side of the valley. Perhaps Jehovah will act for us."

²⁰His armour bearer replied, "I am with you heart and soul."

Jonathan asks the Lord for a sign

²¹Then Jonathan said, "As we cross the valley we will let the Philistines see us. If they call out to us, 'Stay there until we come down to you,' we will go no further. But if they say, 'Come up here,' we will climb up to them, for that will be a sign that the Lord has given them into our hands."

²²So the two young men crossed the valley and showed themselves to the men at the outpost. The Philistines said, "Look, the Israelites are crawling out of the holes they were hiding in."

The sign is given

²³And they shouted down to Jonathan and his armour-bearer, "Come up to us and we will teach you a lesson."

²⁴Jonathan said to his armour-bearer, "Climb up after me. The Lord has given them into our hands."

Jonathan and his armour-bearer kill about twenty men

²⁵So Jonathan climbed up the cliff face using his hands and feet, with his armour-bearer right behind him. ²⁶He immediately attacked the Philistines who fell before him, and his armour bearer slew behind him. Together they killed about twenty men.

An earthquake panics the Philistines

²⁷Then came an earthquake that shook the ground, and a great panic struck the whole Philistine army. It was a panic sent by God.

*10 Only priests were allowed to offer sacrifices.

²⁸Saul's lookouts saw the Philistine army fleeing in all directions. Saul said to his men, "Muster the forces. See who has left us."

²⁹They did so and found Jonathan and his armour-bearer missing.

Saul and his men go out to battle

³⁰Saul said to Ahijah the high priest, "Bring the ephod^{F*} of God here." But while Saul was still speaking to him the uproar in the Philistine camp increased more and more.

³¹Saul said to the priest, "Stay your hand."

³²Then Saul and all his men went out to battle. They found the Philistines in total confusion, striking each other with their swords.



The pass at Michmash showing the cliffs that Jonathan and his armour-bearer climbed to attack the Philistines.

Israelites who had defected or hid also join the battle

³³The Israelites who had defected to the Philistines rejoined the Israelites, and those who had hidden in the hills also joined the battle in hot pursuit.

Jonathan inadvertently violates Saul's fast

³⁴Now Saul had bound the army under an oath that day saying, "Cursed be any man who eats food before evening comes and I have avenged myself on my enemies." So none of the men tasted food.

³⁵When the army entered the woods they saw honey on the ground, but no man put his hand to his mouth for they feared the oath.

³⁶But Jonathan had not heard the oath of his father so he dipped his staff into the honeycomb and ate and his eyes brightened.

Jonathan critical of his father's oath

³⁷One of the soldiers said to him, "Your father bound us under an oath saying, 'Cursed be any man who eats food today.' That is why the men are weak."

³⁸Jonathan said, "My father has troubled the men. My strength was renewed by this honey. It would have been better if the men had eaten some of the spoil of their enemies. ³⁹Would not the slaughter of the Philistines have been even greater?"

8

The exhausted soldiers eat meat without first draining the blood

¹That evening, after the Israelites had struck down the Philistines, they were exhausted and hungry. They pounced on the spoil, and taking sheep, cattle and calves they slaughtered them on the ground and ate the meat without first draining the blood.

Saul orders the men to slaughter the animals properly

²Somebody told Saul, "The men are sinning against the Lord by eating meat with the blood still in it."

³Saul replied, "Roll a large stone over here at once. Now order the men to slaughter the animals properly on this stone before eating them. ⁴They must not sin against the Lord by eating meat without first draining out the blood."

Saul desires to pursue the Philistines by night

⁵Then Saul built an altar to the Lord. It was the first time he had done this.

⁶Afterward he said, "Let us go after the Philistines again this night and plunder them until dawn and leave not one of them alive."

Saul first enquires of the Lord

⁷But the high priest said, "Should we not first inquire of the Lord?"

⁸So Saul inquired of the Lord, saying, "Shall I go down after the Philistines? Will you give them into Israel's hand?"

The Lord does not answer Saul's inquiry

⁹But the priest received no answer from the Lord. So Saul called the leaders of the army together and said, "Let us discover what sin has been committed today. That man must die, even if it is my son Jonathan." Not one of the men said a word.

Jonathan revealed as the guilty person

¹⁰Then Saul prayed unto the Lord saying, "Reveal to me by lot whether the guilt lies with me or my son, or with the men of Israel."

¹¹Lots were cast and Jonathan and Saul were chosen and the men cleared. Then Saul said, "Cast a lot between me and Jonathan." And Jonathan was chosen.

Jonathan admits what he did

¹²Saul said to Jonathan, "Tell me what you have done." So Jonathan said, "I only tasted a little honey with the end of my staff. Must I now die?"

Saul vows to kill Jonathan

¹³Saul said, "May God deal with me severely if you do not die Jonathan."

*30 The ephod was the priestly garment with a breastplate of precious stones and a pouch containing the Urim and Thummim which was used to obtain revelations from the Lord.

SAMUEL 8

The men save Jonathan from death

¹⁴But the men said to Saul, "Shall Jonathan die? He who has brought about this great deliverance in Israel? Never! Not a hair of his head will fall to the ground, for he did this today with God's help."

¹⁵So the men saved Jonathan and he was not put to death.

The Philistines withdraw to their own land

¹⁶Saul did not pursue the Philistines and they withdrew to their own land.

Saul defeats all of Israel's enemies

¹⁷(After that victory, Saul fought valiantly against Israel's enemies on every side. Wherever he turned, he defeated them. ¹⁸All the days of Saul there was bitter war with the Philistines, and whenever Saul saw a mighty or brave man he took him into his army.)

Saul given a mission from the Lord to destroy the Amalekites

¹⁹The prophet Samuel came to Saul and commanded him saying, Jehovah Almighty says, "**I will punish the Amalekites for their attack against Israel when they came up from Egypt.** ²⁰Now go and totally destroy the city of the Amalekites and everything that belongs to them. Do not spare them, but put to death men, women, children, cattle, sheep, camels and donkeys."

Saul musters 210,000 men and destroys the city of Amalek

²¹So Saul mustered 210,000 men and marched to the city of Amalek. He set an ambush in the ravine and then attacked and destroyed the city.

In disobedience Saul spares the king and the best livestock

²²Saul put all the Amalekites in the city to the sword, but spared Agag the king of the Amalekites and the best of the livestock.

The Lord is grieved with Saul's disobedience

²³Then came the word of the Lord to Samuel, "**I am grieved that I have made Saul king, for he has again disobeyed my commandment.**"

Samuel pleads with the Lord for Saul

²⁴Samuel was troubled and pleaded with the Lord all that night. Early next morning he arose and went out to meet the king but was told, "Saul has gone to Carmel to set up a monument in his own honour."

Saul tries to excuse his disobedience

²⁵Samuel found Saul as he was returning from Carmel on his way to Gilgal. The king said to him, "Jehovah bless you. I have carried out the Lord's commandment."

²⁶But Samuel said, "What then is this bleating of sheep in my ears? What is this lowing of cattle I hear?"

²⁷Saul answered, "The soldiers spared the best of the sheep and cattle to sacrifice to Jehovah your God, but we totally destroyed the rest."

To obey is better than to sacrifice

²⁸Samuel said, "Cease this talk! Jehovah anointed you king over Israel, then sent you on a mission commanding you to completely destroy the wicked Amalekites. Why then did you disobey the Lord? Why did you keep the spoil?"

²⁹Saul answered, "But I did obey him, I completely destroyed the Amalekites* and brought back Agag their king. The soldiers took the best sheep and cattle to sacrifice to Jehovah your God at Gilgal."

³⁰Samuel replied, "Does the Lord delight in sacrifices as much as obedience to his word? ³¹To obey is better than to sacrifice. ³²"Rebellion is like the sin of sorcery, and arrogance like the evil of idolatry."

The Lord rejects Saul as king

³³"Because you have rejected the word of the Lord, he has rejected you as king."

Saul admits his sin and pleads for forgiveness

³⁴Then Saul admitted, "I have sinned. I did disobey the command of the Lord, for I feared the men and gave in to their wishes. ³⁵Now I beg you, please forgive my sin and return with me to Gilgal that I may worship the Lord."

No forgiveness for Saul – his kingdom given to a better man

³⁶Samuel said, "I will not return with you, for you have rejected the word of the Lord, and he has rejected you as king over Israel. ³⁷He who is the glory of Israel does not change his mind, for he is not a man."

³⁸Samuel turned to leave but Saul grabbed his robe and it tore. Samuel said to him, "The Lord has likewise torn the kingdom of Israel from you today, and given it to a better man."

Samuel consents to honour Saul before the elders

³⁹Saul replied, "I have sinned, but at least honour me before the elders of my people." So Samuel returned with Saul to Gilgal, and Saul worshipped the Lord.

Samuel executes Agag, king of the Amalekites

⁴⁰Then Samuel said, "Bring me Agag, king of the Amalekites."

⁴¹Agag stood before Samuel and spoke in a pleasing manner saying, "Surely the bitterness of death is past."

⁴²But Samuel said, "As your sword has made women childless, so will your mother be childless." And Samuel cut Agag to pieces at Gilgal.

Samuel mourns for Saul

⁴³Then Samuel returned to his home in Ramah, and Saul to his home in Gibeah.

⁴⁴Samuel did not go to see Saul again but mourned for him.

*29 Only the chief city of the Amalekites was destroyed. The smaller settlements were not wiped out until the time of king Hezekiah (Samuel 18:1, Isaiah 27:3).

9

Samuel is sent to Bethlehem to anoint a son of Jesse king

¹The Lord said to Samuel the prophet, “How long will you mourn for Saul. I have rejected him as king over Israel. ²Now fill your horn with oil and be on your way, I am sending you to Jesse of Bethlehem, for I have chosen one of his sons to be king.” ^{F*}

Samuel fears Saul’s reaction

³Samuel said, “How can I go? Saul will kill me if he hears of it.”

⁴The Lord said, “Take a heifer^{F*} with you, and say that you have come to offer sacrifice to Jehovah. Invite Jesse to the sacrifice and I will tell you what to do.”

Samuel goes to Bethlehem as commanded

⁵Samuel did as the Lord commanded, he took a heifer with him and arrived at Bethlehem in Judah. The elders of the town came out to meet him.

⁶Samuel said to them, “Today I have come to offer sacrifice to the Lord. Purify yourselves and attend the sacrifice with me.” ⁷Then he invited Jesse and his sons to the sacrifice.

The Lord does not look upon the outward appearance of a man but upon the heart

⁸When Samuel saw Jesse’s eldest son Eliab, he thought, “Surely he is the one.” But the word of the Lord came to Samuel^{F*} saying, “Do not consider his appearance or height, for I have rejected him. ⁹Jehovah does not see as a man sees. Man looks upon the outward appearance, but the Lord looks upon the heart.”

Seven of Jesse’s sons rejected

¹⁰Jesse had seven of his sons pass before Samuel, but the prophet said, “The Lord has not chosen any of these. Are they all the sons you have?”

¹¹“There is still David the youngest, but he is tending the sheep,” Jesse answered.

Samuel said, “Send for him.”

David the youngest anointed to become king and Spirit of Lord comes upon him

¹²So Jesse sent for David and had him brought in. David was rosy cheeked with clear eyes and handsome features.

¹³The Lord said to Samuel, “Anoint him. He is the one.”

¹⁴So Samuel took the horn of oil and anointed David in the presence of his brothers, and from that day on the Spirit of the Lord came upon David in power.

King Saul tormented by an evil spirit

¹⁵Now the Spirit of the Lord had departed

*2 Jesse was of the tribe of Judah.

*4 A heifer is a young cow.

*8 It would appear in such instances as this that a prophet hears the voice of the Lord speak audibly within his mind.

from Saul, and Jehovah permitted an evil spirit to torment him.

Saul’s servants suggest a harpist be found

¹⁶Saul’s servants said to him, “Let us find one who can play the harp in your presence when the evil spirit comes upon you. Then you will feel better.”

¹⁷Saul replied, “Find someone who plays well and bring him to me.”

¹⁸One of his servants said, “David the son of Jesse of Bethlehem plays the harp. He is a brave man and a warrior. He speaks well and is fine-looking and the Lord is with him.”



The Jewish harp. David probably played a similar instrument.

David enters Saul’s service

¹⁹So the king sent for David and he entered his service. Saul liked David very much and made him one of his armour-bearers. ²⁰Whenever God permitted the evil spirit to come upon the king, David would play his harp and Saul would be soothed, and the evil spirit would depart.

The Philistines again invade Israel

²¹Now the Philistines again mustered their forces for war. Saul took his army and camped in the Valley of Elah and drew up a battle line to meet the Philistines. ²²The Philistines occupied one hill and the Israelites another, with a valley between them.

SAMUEL 10

The tall Philistine warrior Goliath

²³Then a warrior named Goliath came forth out of the Philistine ranks. He was six cubits and a hand span tall.^{F*}

²⁴He wore a bronze helmet and a bronze coat of mail armour weighing 5000 shekels.^{F*} ²⁵On his legs he wore bronze shin guards, and a bronze javelin was slung on his back. ²⁶The shaft of his spear was as thick as a weaver's beam^{F*} and its iron point weighed 600 shekels.^{F*} His shield bearer went before him.



A weaver's beam, the thickness of Goliath's spear.

Goliath's challenge

²⁷Goliath stood down in the valley and shouted to the men of Israel, "Choose a man and have him come down to me. If he is able to kill me, we will serve you, but if I kill him, you will serve us. ²⁸This day I challenge the ranks of Israel! Give me a man and let us fight each other."

²⁹On hearing these words Saul and all of his men were dismayed and fearful.

³⁰The Philistine came forth morning and evening and took his stand.

10

David takes food to his older brothers in camp

¹Now Jesse's three eldest sons had followed Saul to war but David went back and forth from Saul's service to tend his father's sheep.

²About this time Jesse said to David, "Take this roasted grain and these ten loaves of bread to your brothers out at the camp. Also give these ten cheeses to the commander of their unit, and bring back word as to how your brothers fare."

³So early the next morning David took the

*23 Approx 9 feet 6 inches tall (just under 3 metres). Goliath was a descendant of the tall race of Anakim (*long necks*) that had struck terror into the hearts of the Israelites when they spied out the promised land.

*24 About 57kg (125 lbs).

*26 A weaver's beam was about 75mm (3 inches) in diameter.

*26 About 7kg (15lbs).

food and set out. He reached the camp just as the army was again going out to form battle lines to face the Philistines.

David hears Goliath's challenge

⁴David left the food with the keeper of supplies and then ran out to the battle lines and greeted his brothers. ⁵As he was speaking with them, Goliath stepped out from his lines and shouted his usual defiance.

The king to reward the slayer of Goliath

⁶Now the Israelite soldiers had been saying, "The king will give great wealth to the man who kills Goliath. He will also give him his daughter in marriage, and exempt his father's family from taxes."

David offers to fight Goliath

⁷David said to the men standing near him, "Who is this uncircumcised Philistine that he should defy the armies of the living God?"

⁸Eliab, David's oldest brother heard him speaking this way and became angry with him and said, "Why have you come down here? Who is looking after the sheep? You only came down to watch the battle."

⁹David replied, "What have I done now? Can I not even speak?"

¹⁰However what David had said was reported to the king and Saul sent for him.

¹¹David said to the king, "Let no one fear this Philistine, your servant will go and fight him."

¹²But Saul replied, "You cannot defeat this Philistine. You are still a young man and he has been a warrior all his life."

¹³David said, "Your servant has killed both a lion and a bear while keeping his father's sheep. This uncircumcised Philistine will be as one of them, for he has defied the armies of the living God. ¹⁴Jehovah who delivered me from the lion and the bear will deliver me from the hand of this Philistine."

Saul gives David his own armour and sword

¹⁵Saul said to David, "Go then, and may the Lord be with you." ¹⁶Then he dressed David in his own armour and placed a bronze helmet on his head. David also fastened on Saul's sword and tried walking around.

David is not used to armour and takes it off

¹⁷David said, "I cannot go in these. I am not used to them." So he took them off.

David goes out to fight Goliath with a sling

¹⁸David then chose five smooth stones^{F*} from the dry river bed and put them in his shepherd's bag. ¹⁹Then with his shepherd's staff in one hand and his sling in the other, he went down to meet the Philistine.

Goliath mocks David

²⁰Goliath moved closer to David to look him over. When he saw that he was only a young

*18 The stones used in slings ranged from the size of a billiard ball up to a tennis ball in diameter 50 to 125mm. They were effective up to 200 metres. The stone was normally directed at the head.

man and rosy cheeked and handsome, he despised him.

²¹He shouted to David, "Am I a dog that you come at me with a stick?" And he cursed David by his gods, then he said, "Come here! Let me give your flesh to the birds!"

David prophesies to Goliath

²²David shouted back to the Philistine, "*You come against me with sword, spear and javelin, but I come against you in the name of Jehovah Almighty, the God of the armies of Israel whom you have defied.*"

²³"*This day Jehovah will hand you over to me and I will strike you down and take off your head.*"

²⁴"*This day Jehovah will give the carcasses of the Philistine army to the birds of the air, and the whole world will know there is a God in Israel.*"

David's sling stone knocks Goliath unconscious

²⁵Goliath moved closer to attack and David ran toward him. Then reaching into his bag David took out a stone and slung it. ²⁶The stone struck the Philistine on the forehead and embedded itself into his brow, and he fell face down on the ground.

David kills and beheads Goliath

²⁷David ran quickly to him and standing over him took the Philistine's sword from his scabbard and killed him and cut off his head.



A slinger in Israel.

The Philistines flee and are pursued by the Israelites

²⁸When the Philistines saw that their champion was dead they turned and ran. Then the army of Israel surged forward with a mighty roar and pursued the Philistines. ²⁹Their dead were strewn all along the road to Gath and Ekron.

The Israelites plunder the Philistine camp

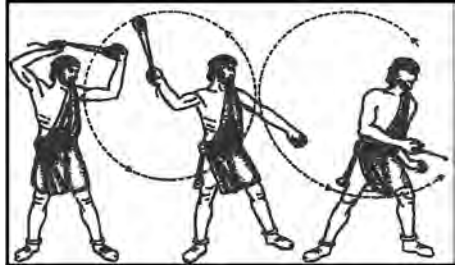
³⁰When the Israelites returned from pursuing the Philistines they plundered their camp.

³¹David kept the head and armour of Goliath.

11

Saul's son Jonathan and David become close friends

¹That day, Jonathan the son of Saul made a covenant of friendship with David for he loved him as himself. ²He gave David his robe and tunic and also his sword, bow and belt.



The method of slinging.

The women of Israel sing David's praises

³As the army was returning home, women came out from the towns of Israel to greet Saul with joyful songs and dancing and with tambourines and lutes.

⁴As they danced they sang:

"By Saul's hand, a thousand fell."

"By David's hand, ten thousand fell."

Saul is angry and becomes jealous of David

⁵Saul became angry when he heard this and thought, "What more can David get but the kingdom?"

⁶From that day on Saul kept a jealous eye on David and did not let him return any more to his father's house.

Saul hurls his spear at David

⁷The next day the evil spirit came forcefully upon Saul and he raved within his house with his spear in his hand. ⁸David was playing the harp when suddenly Saul hurled his spear at David, but he eluded it.

Saul plans to have David killed by the Philistines

⁹Saul feared David, for the Spirit of the Lord was with David but had departed from himself. So he gave him command of a 1000 men and sent him away on campaigns.

¹⁰But in everything David did, he had great success and Saul feared him all the more.

¹¹All Israel loved David, so Saul said to himself, "I shall not kill him, I will let the Philistines do it."

Saul promises his daughter Merab to David but then gives her to another man

¹²He said to David, "Here is my elder daughter Merab. I will give her to you in marriage if you serve me bravely and fight my battles."

¹³David said to the king, "Who am I and what is my family that I should become the king's

SAMUEL 12

son-in-law?"^{F*} But when the time came she was given in marriage to another man.

Saul's younger daughter Michal loves David

¹⁴Now it happened that Saul's younger daughter Michal loved David. When Saul heard about this he was pleased, and his servants said to David, "You have a second opportunity to become the king's son-in-law."

¹⁵David replied, "I am a poor man and insignificant."

Saul offers David his daughter Michal for a dowry of 100 Philistine foreskins

¹⁶Saul told his servants to say to David, "The king wants no other price for the bride than 100 Philistine foreskins."¹⁷Saul's plan was to have David killed by the hands of the Philistines.

David brings back 200 Philistine foreskins

¹⁸However before the allotted time was up, David and his men went out and killed 200 Philistines and David brought their foreskins and presented them to the king.

David marries Michal

¹⁹So Saul gave David his daughter Michal in marriage, but he remained David's enemy the rest of his days.



Israel during reign of King Saul.

David the most successful commander in Saul's army

²⁰The Philistines continued to come out to battle and as often as they did, David met with more success than the rest of Saul's

*13 A modest reply when an honour is about to be conferred is customary in middle-eastern society. See also verse 15.

commanders, and his name became well known throughout Israel.

Saul finally orders David killed outright

²¹Finally Saul ordered his son Jonathan and all of his officials to kill David. But Jonathan warned David, so he went into hiding.

Jonathan intercedes for David

²²Jonathan then went to Saul his father and spoke well of David saying, "Let not the king do wrong to his servant, for he has not wronged you and has benefited you greatly. Why do you want to do an innocent man?"

Saul listens to Jonathan and promises on oath not to kill David

²³Saul listened to his son Jonathan and then made this oath, "David will not be put to death." So Jonathan brought David back to Saul and he served him as before.

Saul again hurls his spear at David

²⁴Once more war broke out and David went out and fought the Philistines. He struck them with such force that they fled before him.

²⁵Afterward the evil spirit came again upon Saul. He was sitting in his house with his spear in his hand and as usual David was playing the harp. ²⁶Once more Saul hurled his spear at David. But David again eluded it and the spear drove into the wall.

Michal assists David's escape by putting an image in his bed

²⁷That night Saul sent men to watch David's house, to kill him in the morning, but David's wife Michal warned him and let him down through a window and he escaped. ²⁸Then Michal took an image and laid it on David's bed. She covered it and put some goat's hair at the head.

²⁹The next morning, when the men entered the house to capture David, Michal said, "He is ill." So they departed.

³⁰But Saul sent the men back saying, "Bring him to me in his bed if necessary, that I may kill him." But when the men entered the bedroom, there was the image on the bed.

³¹Saul said to his daughter Michal, "Why did you deceive me like this?"

³²Michal answered, "He said to me, 'Help me get away or I will kill you.'"

12

David flees to the prophet Samuel

¹David fled to the prophet Samuel at Ramah and told him all that Saul had done. But word came to Saul, "David is at Ramah," so he sent men to capture him.

Saul and his men prophesy in Samuel's presence

²Saul's men met a company of prophets at Ramah, with Samuel as their leader and they were prophesying. Then the Spirit of God fell upon Saul's men and they began to prophesy also.

³So Saul sent more men, but they prophesied too. Finally he himself went to Ramah, and the Spirit of God came even upon him. He walked along prophesying until he came to where Samuel was. ⁴Then he laid aside his weapons and prophesied in Samuel's presence all that day and night.

David returns to his friend Jonathan

⁵David left Ramah and returned to Jonathan and asked, "How have I wronged your father that he is trying to kill me?"

⁶Jonathan replied, "He is not trying to kill you. My father does nothing without first confiding in me."

⁷David said, "Your father knows that I am your close friend. He has said to himself, 'Jonathan must not know of this, or he will be grieved.' But truly there is but a step between me and death."

Jonathan agrees to test his father

⁸Jonathan replied, "Whatever you want me to do I will do."

⁹David said, "Tomorrow is the New Moon festival and I would normally dine with the king. But I will hide out in the fields until the third evening of the festival. If your father asks about me, say to him, 'David asked my permission to go to Bethlehem for a sacrifice with his family.'"

¹⁰"If he says, 'Very well,' then I am safe, but if he becomes angry you can be sure that he is determined to harm me."

¹¹Jonathan said, "Come, let us walk in the fields." So they went out together.

¹²Then Jonathan said, "I will test my father at the festival. If he is favourably disposed toward you, I will send you word. If however he is inclined to harm you, I will see that you escape safely."

David to hide in the fields and await a sign from Jonathan with arrows

¹³"Now do this, during the second evening of the festival, hide by the mound of rocks in the field where you hid before, and wait there."

¹⁴"The next day I will come to you and shoot arrows to the side of it, as if I were shooting at a target. Then I will send a boy to find the arrows. If I call out to him, 'The arrows are on this near side of the rocks,' then come out of hiding, you are safe. ¹⁵But if I call to the boy, 'The arrows are on the far side of the rocks,' then you must leave here, for Jehovah has sent you away."

Saul's anger flares displaying his true feelings

¹⁶When the day of the New Moon festival came, the king sat down to eat in his customary place by the wall, opposite Jonathan. Abner the commander of his army sat next to him, but David's place was empty.

¹⁷Saul said nothing all that day thinking, "Perhaps he is not clean."

¹⁸The second day, David's place was again empty. Saul said to his son Jonathan, "Why has the son of Jesse not come to the meal

either yesterday or today?"

¹⁹Jonathan answered, "David asked my permission to go to Bethlehem to attend a sacrifice with his family."

²⁰At these words Saul's anger flared up at Jonathan and he said to him, "You son of a perverse and rebellious woman! Do I not know that you have sided with the son of Jesse? ²¹As long as he lives on this earth you will never be king! Now, bring him to me for he must die!"

²²Jonathan replied, "But why? What has he done?" At these words Saul brandished his spear at Jonathan, as if to kill him.

²³Jonathan rose from the table in fierce anger and did not eat all that day, for he was grieved at his father's shameful treatment of David.

Jonathan signals with an arrow to David hiding in the field

²⁴The next morning Jonathan went out to the mound of rocks for his meeting with David. He had a young boy with him and said to the boy, "Run and find the arrows I shoot." ²⁵As the boy ran he shot one arrow far ahead of him. Jonathan called out after him, "That arrow is on the far side of the rocks."

²⁶When the boy returned with the arrows Jonathan handed him his weapons and said, "Take them back to the town."

Jonathan and David weep together and say farewell

²⁷After the boy had gone, David emerged from his hiding place on the south side of the rocks and bowed down before Jonathan with his face to the ground. ²⁸Then they kissed each other and wept together.

²⁹Jonathan said to David, "Go in peace, for we have sworn friendship with each other in the name of the Lord."

13

David flees to the high priest at Nob and asks for food

¹David then fled to Nob,^{F*} to Ahimelech who was high priest at that time. Ahimelech feared when he saw David and asked, "Why is no one with you?"

²David answered, "The king has sent me on secret business and my men are waiting for me at a certain place.^{F*} Give me five loaves of bread or whatever you can find."

The high priest gives David and his men holy bread from the Tabernacle to eat

³The high priest answered David, "I do not have any ordinary bread on hand, but there is Holy Bread in the Tabernacle. You can have that, provided your men have kept themselves from women."

*1 Nob was a town not far away, near Jerusalem. The Tabernacle was located there at this time, although the Ark was still at Kirjath-Jearim.

*2 Jesus confirmed that David did have men with him (Matt-Mark-Luke 13:3).

SAMUEL 13

⁴David replied, “Even on ordinary missions, let alone one such as this we keep ourselves broad from women.” So the priest gave him the holy bread from the Tabernacle.

David is given Goliath’s sword

⁵David then asked, “Do you have a spear or a sword here? I did not bring my own as the king’s business was urgent.”

⁶The priest replied, “The sword of Goliath, the Philistine whom you slew is here.”

David said, “There is none like it, give it to me.”

⁷Now Doeg, Saul’s head shepherd was at the Tabernacle that day and saw and heard all that took place.

David flees to the Philistines but is recognised

⁸That same day David fled Israel and went to live at Gath in the land of the Philistines.

⁹But servants of Achish the king of Gath recognised David. They took him before the king at the city gate saying, “Is this not David the commander of the Israelites, the one they sing about in their dances?”

David feigns madness to escape

¹⁰David feared when he heard these words so he pretended to be insane and acted like a madman. He scratched marks on the doors of the gate and let saliva run down his beard.

¹¹Achish said to his servants, “Look at the man. He is insane. Why bring him to me? Am I so short of madmen that you have to bring this fellow here to carry on like this?”

David returns to Israel and lives in a cave

¹²So David escaped from Gath and returned to Israel, and lived in the caves near Adullam.^{F*}



One of the caves near Adullam where David and his 400 men lived.

David takes his parents to the king of Moab for safety

¹³When David’s father and mother and brothers heard where he was staying, they

went to him to stay with him. ¹⁴But David took his parents to the king of Moab and said, “Would you allow my father and mother to stay with you until I learn what God has in mind for me?”

¹⁵The king agreed so David left his parents in the king of Moab’s care^{F*} and returned to the caves.

About 400 men gather to David

¹⁶In time, all who were in distress or in debt or discontented gathered to David at his stronghold and he became their leader. About 400 men gathered to him.

Gad the prophet warns David to leave the caves

¹⁷Then the prophet Gad came to David and said to him, “**Do not stay any longer in the caves. Go into the forest land of Judah.**” So David left the caves and went to live in the forest of Hereth.

Saul accuses his officials of conspiring against him

¹⁸One day when Saul was seated under the tamarisk tree at Gibeah, with his spear in his hand and his officials around him, he said to his officials, “Men of Benjamin, will the son of Jesse give you fields and vineyards? Will he make you commanders? ¹⁹Why then do you conspire against me and not tell me when my son makes a covenant with the son of Jesse. Are none of you concerned about me?”

Doeg tells Saul how the high priest helped David

²⁰Doeg the king’s head shepherd who was standing with Saul’s officials said, “I saw the son of Jesse come to the high priest Ahimelech at Nob. Ahimelech enquired of the Lord for him, and gave him food and the sword of Goliath.”

Saul summons the priests

²¹So the king sent for Ahimelech the high priest and his extended family who were priests at Nob, and they all came to the king.

²²Saul said to them, “Why did you conspire against me by giving the son of Jesse bread and a sword, and inquiring of God for him so that he might rebel against me and lie in wait, as he is today?”

The high priest defends David

²³Ahimelech answered the king, “Who of all your servants is as loyal as David your son-in-law, captain of your bodyguard and honoured in your household?”

²⁴“That day was not the first time I inquired of God for him. Let not the king accuse your servant or any of his family of wrong doing, for we know nothing at all about this whole affair.”

Saul orders his guards to kill all the priests

²⁵But Saul said, “You will surely die Ahimelech, you and your father’s house.”

²⁶Then he said to the guards at his side, “Kill these priests for they too have sided with David. They knew he was fleeing yet did not tell me.”

*12 Adullam was a town of Judah about 20 kms west of Bethlehem.

*15 David’s family was related to the Moabites through his great grandmother Ruth.

Saul's guards refuse

²⁷But the king's guards refused to strike down the priests of the Lord.

Doeg kills 85 priests and puts the entire town of Nob to the sword

²⁸The king then turned to his head shepherd Doeg and said, "You kill the priests!" So Doeg who was an Edomite^{F*} struck them down.

²⁹That day he killed 85 priests, and later, on Saul's orders he put to the sword the entire town of Nob, its men, women and children and its cattle, donkeys and sheep.

Abiathar a son of the high priest flees to David with the ephod

³⁰But Abiathar the priest, a son of Ahimelech escaped and fled to join David. He also took the ephod with him.

³¹When he told David what Saul had done, David said, "I knew that day when Doeg was there that he would tell Saul. I am responsible for the death of your father's family. ³²Stay with me and fear not, the man who is seeking your life is seeking mine also."

14

The Philistines attack Keilah

¹Now David was told, "The Philistines have attacked the town of Keilah and are plundering the grain."

David enquires of the Lord and is told to attack the Philistines

²So David inquired of the Lord^{F*} asking, "Shall I go and attack these Philistines?"

³The Lord answered, "**Attack the Philistines and save Keilah.**"

⁴But David's men said to him, "Here in Judah we are afraid, how much more if we go to Keilah against the Philistines."

⁵Once again David inquired of the Lord and he answered him, "**Go down to Keilah. I will give the Philistines into your hands.**"

David saves the town of Keilah

⁶So David and his men went to Keilah and defeated the Philistines. They inflicted heavy losses and carried off their livestock.

Saul goes to Keilah to besiege David

⁷When Saul was told that David was at Keilah he said, "God has handed him over to me. David has imprisoned himself by entering a town with gates and bars." So he called out his army and set out for Keilah to besiege David and his men.

⁸But David learned that Saul was coming and said to Abiathar the priest, "Bring the ephod."

⁹David inquired of the Lord saying, "O Jehovah, God of Israel, your servant has heard that Saul plans to come to Keilah and destroy

the town on account of me. Will Saul come down as your servant has heard?"

The Lord said, "**He will.**"

¹⁰Again David asked, "Will the citizens of Keilah surrender me and my men to Saul?"

The Lord answered, "**They will.**"

David and his 600 men flee to the Desert of Ziph

¹¹So David and his men, now about 600 in number fled from Keilah and kept moving from place to place among the hills of the Desert of Ziph. For days Saul searched but was unsuccessful.

Jonathan finds David

¹²However Saul's son Jonathan found David in the forest in the hills of Ziph and said to him, "Fear not, my father will not be able to harm you. You will yet be king over Israel and I will be second to you."

¹³Then Jonathan returned home but David remained in the hills of Ziph.

A Philistine raid saves David from Saul

¹⁴But the men of Ziph went to Saul at Gibeah and said, "David is hiding in the hills near us. Now O king come down and we will hand him over to you."

¹⁵Saul replied, "May Jehovah bless you for your concern for me. Now go and discover all the hiding places he uses so that when I come I will have definite information, for he is cunning. So the men returned to Ziph ahead of Saul.

¹⁶Saul and his men went to Ziph but David was warned in time and fled to the Desert of Maon. Saul heard of this and pursued David.

¹⁷Saul and his forces were closing in on David when a messenger came to Saul saying, "Come quickly! The Philistines are raiding the land." So Saul stopped his pursuit of David and went to fight the Philistines.

Saul again pursues David

¹⁸When Saul returned from pursuing the Philistines he was told, "David is in the Desert of En Gedi." So the king took his 3000 men and set out to look for David and his men near the Crags of the Wild Goats.

Saul enters the cave where David and his men are hiding to relieve himself

¹⁹While there, Saul went into a cave to relieve himself not knowing that David and his men were hiding far in the back of the cave.

David secretly cuts off part of Saul's robe

²⁰David's men said to him, "This day Jehovah has given your enemy into your hands. Do to him as you see fit." So David crept up unnoticed and cut off a corner of Saul's robe.

David feels guilty about what he has done

²¹But David felt guilty when he had done this and he returned to his men and said, "I should not have done such a thing to my master, for he is the Lord's anointed."

David prevents his men from killing Saul

²²With these words David held back his men

*28 The Edomites were descendants of Esau, the brother of Jacob, (later renamed Israel). Doeg was therefore not an Israelite.

*2 Through Abiathar the priest, using the ephod. See verse 8.

SAMUEL 15

and would not allow them to attack Saul, and the king left the cave to go his way.

David speaks to the king outside cave

²³David then arose, and went and stood outside the cave and called after him, “My lord the king!”

²⁴Saul turned around and David bowed down with his face to the ground. Then he said to Saul, “Why do you listen when men say, ‘David seeks to harm you?’” ²⁵This very day you have seen with your own eyes how Jehovah delivered you into my hands in the cave.”

²⁶“Some urged me to kill you, but I spared you. See my father, see this piece of your robe in my hand. I cut off the corner of your robe, but I did not kill you.”

²⁷“I have not wronged you, but you are hunting me down to take my life. May Jehovah judge between you and me, and avenge the wrongs you have done to me, but my hand will not touch you.”

Saul weeps aloud and admits David will be king

²⁸Saul replied, “Is that you David my son?” and he wept aloud. Then he said, “You are more righteous than I. May Jehovah reward you for the way you have treated me today. ²⁹Now I know that you will surely be king.”

David promises Saul that he will not wipe out his family

³⁰“Swear to me by Jehovah that you will not wipe out my family.” So David gave his oath to the king. Then Saul returned home.



Cave where David hid from Saul.

15

Samuel the prophet dies

¹Now the prophet Samuel died, and all Israel assembled and mourned for him and they buried him at his home in Ramah.

David and his men move to the desert of Maon

²After the death of Samuel, David and his men moved to the desert of Maon and lived there.

The wealthy Nabal and his intelligent and beautiful wife Abigail

³There was a certain man who owned land near by, a descendant of Caleb who was very wealthy. He had 1000 goats and 3000 sheep.

⁴His name was Nabal, and his wife was Abigail. She was intelligent and beautiful but Nabal was surly and mean.

Nabal rejects David's request for food

⁵One day David heard that Nabal was shearing his sheep at Carmel, so he sent ten of his young men to greet Nabal and say to him, “David says, ‘Long life and good health to you and your household. When your shepherds were among us we did not mistreat them and nothing of theirs went missing. Ask your servants and they will tell you.’” ⁶Therefore be favourable toward my young men, since they come at a festive time, and give your servants and your son David whatever you can find for them.”

⁷But Nabal answered, “Who is this David? Many servants are breaking away from their masters these days. Why should I take my bread and water and the meat I have slaughtered for my shearers and give it to men I do not know?”

David sets out to punish Nabal and his family

⁸When the young men reported to David what Nabal had said, David said to his men, “Strap on your swords! I watched over this fellow's property in the desert so that nothing of his went missing and now he repays me evil for good. ⁹May God deal with me severely if by morning I leave alive one male who belongs to him.”

¹⁰About 400 men went with David while 200 remained behind with the supplies.

Nabal's wife Abigail is warned of the approaching disaster

¹¹Now one of the shepherds had said to Nabal's wife Abigail, “David sent messengers from the desert to give our master his greetings, but he insulted them. ¹²Yet his men were good to us. Night and day they protected us while we were herding our sheep near by. ¹³You must do something, for disaster is hanging over our master and his whole household. He is so stubborn that no one can talk to him.”

Abigail goes to meet David and his men with food

¹⁴So Abigail hastened and took 200 loaves of bread, two skins of wine, five dressed sheep, five measures of roasted grain, 100 clusters of raisins and 200 cakes of pressed figs and loaded them on donkeys. ¹⁵Then she instructed her menservants, “Go ahead of me and I will follow behind you.” But she did not tell her husband Nabal.

¹⁶As Abigail and her menservants were passing through a mountain ravine, they saw David and his men coming down towards them.

Abigail appeases David's anger

¹⁷Abigail quickly got off her donkey and bowed to the ground before David and said to him, "My lord, let the blame rest on me alone. Please hear what your servant has to say. ¹⁸Pay no attention to that stupid man Nabal. He is just like his name.^{F*} But as for me your servant, I did not see the men you sent."

¹⁹"Now Jehovah has kept you my master, from bloodshed and from avenging yourself with your own hands."

²⁰"Let this food which your servant has brought to you, be given to your men. ²¹Please forgive my offence, and when Jehovah has appointed you king over Israel you will not have the burden of needless bloodshed on your conscience."

²²David said to Abigail, "Praise the Lord the God of Israel who has sent you today to meet me. May you be blessed for your good judgement and for keeping me from blood guilt, and from avenging myself with my own hands. ²³If you had not come to meet me, not one male belonging to Nabal would have been left alive by daybreak."

²⁴Then David accepted what she had brought him.

Nabal drunk when Abigail returns home

²⁵When Abigail returned home, Nabal was holding a feast like that of a king. He was in high spirits and very drunk so she told him nothing until daybreak.

Nabal's heart fails him when he is told what happened and he later dies

²⁶In the morning light, when the wine had gone from Nabal she told him all these things and his heart failed him. ²⁷He lay like a stone and about ten days later he died.

²⁸When David heard that Nabal was dead he said, "Praise Jehovah who has upheld my cause against Nabal for treating me with contempt. ²⁹He has kept me from doing wrong and has brought Nabal's wrongdoing down on his own head."

David marries Abigail

³⁰Then David sent messengers to Abigail asking her to become his wife. They went to her and said, "David has sent us to take you to him as his wife."

³¹Abigail bowed to the ground and said, "Your maidservant is ready to wash the feet of my master's servants."

³²Then she quickly got on a donkey and accompanied by her five maids, went with David's messengers and became his wife.

David's other wife

³³David had also married Ahinoam, for Saul had given his wife Michal to another man.

16

Saul again pursues David

¹One day the men of Ziph went again to Saul

and said, "David is hiding in the desert near Ziph."

²So Saul went with his 3000 men to search for David and made camp beside the road on the hill of Hakilah.

³David watched the camp and saw where Saul and Abner the commander of his army lay down to sleep.

David and Abishai sneak into Saul's camp by night

⁴Late that night, David and Abishai sneaked into the army camp, and there was Saul lying asleep with his spear stuck in the ground near his head. Abner and other soldiers were lying around him.

David again spares Saul's life

⁵Abishai said to David, "Today God has given your enemy into your hands. Let me pin him to the ground with one thrust of his spear."

⁶But David said to Abishai, "No, do not kill him. Who can lay a hand on the Lord's anointed and be guiltless? The Lord himself will strike him. Either his time will come naturally or he will go into battle and die."

Saul's spear and water jug taken

⁷"Take the spear and water jug that are near his head and let us go."

⁸No one awoke, for a deep sleep from the Lord had come upon them.

David taunts Saul's commander Abner

⁹Then David stood on a hilltop some distance away and shouted loudly in the hearing of all the camp, calling for Abner the commander. David cried out, "Are you going to answer me Abner?"

¹⁰Abner awoke and shouted back, "Who is it that calls me?"

¹¹David answered, "Who is like you in all Israel Abner? Why did you not guard your lord the king? Someone came to destroy him. ¹²You and your men deserve to die, for you did not guard the Lord's anointed. Where is the king's spear and the water jug that was near his head?"

Saul confesses his sin and blesses David

¹³Saul recognised David's voice and called out, "Is that you David my son?"

¹⁴David replied, "Yes it is my lord the king. Why is my lord pursuing his servant? What wrong have I done? The king of Israel has come out to look for a flea as one hunts a partridge in the mountains."

¹⁵Saul said, "I have sinned. Come back David my son, for you considered my life precious. I will not try to harm you again. Surely I have acted as a fool and have erred greatly."

¹⁶David answered, "The king's spear is here. Let one of your young men come over and get it."

¹⁷Then Saul said to David, "May you be blessed my son David. You will do great things and surely triumph."

¹⁸So David went on his way and Saul returned home.

*18 Nabal means 'stupid.'

David takes his men to live among the Philistines

¹⁹But David thought to himself, "One of these days I will be destroyed by the hand of Saul. The best thing I can do is escape to the land of the Philistines, then Saul will give up searching for me in Israel."

²⁰So David took his 600 men and left Israel and went again to Achish, king of Gath and stayed with him. ²¹Each of his men had his family with him and David had his two wives.

Achish the Philistine king gives Ziklag to David and his men

²²Then David said to Achish, "If I have found favour in your eyes, let a place be assigned to us in one of your country towns that we may live there. Why should your servant live here in the royal city with you?"

²³So Achish gave him Ziklag, and David and his men lived there. They stayed in Philistine territory for a year and four months.

David survives by raiding non-Israelite tribes

²⁴Now David and his men would go up and raid the Amalekites and other desert peoples that lived in the southern desert. ²⁵Whenever they raided an area they did not leave a man or woman alive, but took sheep, cattle, donkeys, camels and clothes.^{F*}

David deceives the Philistine king

²⁶When Achish would ask, "Where did you go raiding today?" David would say, "Against the towns of Israel."

²⁷Achish therefore trusted David and said to himself, "He has become so hated by his own people that he will be my servant forever."

17

David and his men ordered by Achish to accompany his army to fight against Israel

¹Now the Philistines again mustered their forces to attack Israel. Achish said to David, "You and your men will accompany my army."

²David replied, "Now you will see what your servant can do."

³Achish said, "If you do well, I will make you my bodyguard for life."

The Philistine army commanders reject David

⁴But as the Philistine army marched with their kings, the army commanders saw David and his men marching with Achish and asked, "Who are these Israelites?"

⁵Achish replied, "This is David who was a commander of Saul king of Israel. He has deserted and been with me for over a year. I have found no fault in him."

⁶But the Philistine commanders were angry with Achish and said, "Send him back. He may turn against us during the fighting. ⁷How better

could he regain his master's favour than by taking the heads of our own men. Is not this the David they sing about in their dances?"

David and his men return home to Ziklag

⁸So Achish called David and told what his men the commanders had said and then said to him, "Turn back and go in peace. Do nothing to displease the Philistine kings."

⁹David said, "But what have I done? Why can I not go and fight against the enemies of my lord the king?"

¹⁰Achish answered, "I know that you have been blameless in my sight, but the army commanders have said, 'He must not go with us into battle.'" So David and his men arose early next morning to return to Ziklag.

The Philistine army set up camp in Israel

¹¹The Philistine army then entered Israel and set up camp.

The Lord does not answer Saul's inquiry for guidance

¹²Saul in turn mustered the Israelites and set up camp at Gilboa. However when he saw the huge Philistine army he began to fear and inquired of the Lord for guidance.

¹³But no answer came to him, neither by dream nor by the high priest and Urim and Thummim, nor by a prophet.

Saul in desperation consults a woman medium

¹⁴Saul finally said to his officials, "Find me a woman who is a medium, that I may inquire of her."

¹⁵They replied, "There is a woman in Endor who is a medium."

¹⁶So Saul disguised himself by putting on other clothes and by night he and two officials went to the woman.

¹⁷Saul said to her, "Consult a spirit for me. Bring up the one I name."

The woman fears to act, but Saul promises her protection

¹⁸The woman replied, "Surely you know that Saul has forbidden all mediums in the land. Do not lay a snare to bring about my death."

¹⁹But Saul swore to her, "As surely as Jehovah lives you will not be punished for this."

Saul asks the woman to bring up the spirit of Samuel

²⁰The woman asked, "Whom shall I bring up for you?"

Saul said to her, "Bring up Samuel."

The medium discerns that Saul is the king

²¹When the woman saw Samuel she shrieked and cried out, "You have deceived me! You are Saul!"^{F*}

²²The king said to her, "Fear not. What did you see?" The woman said, "I saw a spirit like a god come up out of the earth."^{F*}

*25 The Amalekites were an idolatrous people, hostile to Israel. The Lord had originally commanded they be completely wiped out when Israel first settled in Canaan. See also Samuel 17:27.

*21 Samuel probably revealed this fact to the medium.

*22 The Israelites believed that Sheol, the spirit world of the dead was located under the earth.

²³Saul asked, "What does he look like?"

She replied, "He is an elderly man clothed in a robe."

²⁴Then Saul knew it was Samuel, and he bowed down with his face to the ground.

Samuel prophesies Israel's defeat and Saul's death

²⁵Samuel said to Saul,^{F*} "Why have you disturbed me by bringing me up?"

²⁶Saul said, "I am in great distress. The Philistines have come to war against me and God has turned away from me. He no longer answers me by prophet or by dream. So I have called on you to tell me what to do."

²⁷Samuel said, "***Why do you consult me? The Lord has done what he predicted through me. He has torn the kingdom out of your hands and given it to David, for you did not obey him in carrying out his fierce wrath against the Amalekites.***"

²⁸"***Jehovah will hand over both Israel and you to the Philistines. Tomorrow you and your sons will be with me.***"

Saul collapses on the floor in fear

²⁹Immediately Saul fell full length on the floor, filled with fear at Samuel's words. His strength was gone for he had eaten nothing all that day.

The woman prepares food for Saul

³⁰When the woman saw that Saul was greatly distressed she said to him, "Let me prepare food that you will have strength to go your way."

³¹Saul refused and said, "I will not eat." But his officials urged him and he got up from the floor and sat on the couch.

³²The woman had a fattened calf at the house which she slaughtered, and baked bread without yeast.

³³Then she set the food before Saul and his officials and they ate. Then they arose and left.



The village of Endor where Saul consulted the medium.

David and his men find Ziklag burned and their wives and children captured

¹When David and his men arrived back at Ziklag they discovered that Amalekites had raided the town and burned it, and taken their wives and children as captives.

David finds strength in the Lord and enquires of him

²David and his men wept aloud until they had no more strength to weep.

³Then the men became bitter and talked of stoning David because of the loss of their sons and daughters, but David found strength in the Lord his God.

⁴He said to Abiathar the priest, "Bring the ephod." Abiathar did so and David inquired of the Lord, and asked, "Shall I pursue this raiding party?"

The Lord answers, 'pursue and rescue' so they set out immediately

⁵The Lord answered, "Pursue them. You will overtake them and succeed in the rescue."

⁶So David and his 600 men set out immediately in pursuit.

200 of David's men too exhausted to cross a river

⁷When they came to the river Besor^{F*} 200 of his men remained behind, for they were too exhausted to cross. But David and 400 men crossed the river and continued in pursuit.

David and his men assist a young Egyptian

⁸They came across a young Egyptian in a field and gave him water to drink and figs and raisins to eat, for he had not eaten or drunk for three days.

⁹David asked him, "To whom do you belong and where do you come from?"

¹⁰He answered, "I am an Egyptian, the slave of an Amalekite. My master abandoned me when I became ill three days ago. We raided Judah and the Negev and burned Ziklag."

The Egyptian leads David to the raider's camp

¹¹David said to him, "Can you lead me to this raiding party?"

¹²The young man answered, "Swear to me before God that you will not kill me or hand me over to my master and I will lead you to them."

¹³David did so and the Egyptian led them to the raider's camp. They found them spread out widely, eating, drinking and revelling because of the great amount of spoil they had taken.

David defeats the raiders and recovers all that was taken and more

¹⁴David and his men fought the Amalekites from twilight until the evening of the next day. None escaped except 400 young men who fled on camels.

¹⁵David recovered everything the Amalekites

*25 Samuel would have spoken through the medium.

*7 Besor is a wadi, a river that dries up during the dry seasons of the year.

SAMUEL 19

had taken, including his two wives.

¹⁶He also kept all the flocks and herds as spoil and drove them before them as they returned.

David divides the spoil equally

¹⁷When they came to the 200 men waiting at the river who had been too exhausted to follow them, some worthless men among David's followers said, "Because they did not go with us we will not share with them the spoil we recovered. Each man may take his wife and children and go."

¹⁸But David replied, "No my brothers, we must not withhold what the Lord has given us. He has protected us and handed over to us the forces that came against us. All of us shall share alike."

¹⁹David made this a law of Israel from that day to this.

David sends some of the spoil to his friends in Judah

²⁰When they arrived back in Ziklag, David sent some of the spoil to his friends the elders of Judah who had befriended him in the places where he and his men had stayed.

19

The Philistines attack and the Israelites flee

¹Meanwhile the Philistines made their attack on Mount Gilboa, and the Israelites fled before them, and many fell slain.

Saul three sons die in battle

²The Philistines pressed hard after Saul and killed his three sons including Jonathan.

Saul is severely wounded by Philistine archers

³The fighting grew fierce around the king, then

the Philistine archers caught up with Saul and severely wounded him.

Saul decides to take his own life

⁴Saul said to his armour-bearer, "Run me through with your sword lest these uncircumcised Philistines make sport of me." But his armour-bearer would not do it. So Saul took his own sword and fell on it. ⁵When the armour-bearer saw that Saul was dead he too fell on his sword and died with him.^{F*} ⁶So Saul and his three sons and his armour-bearer died together that day.

The Philistines occupy the surrounding towns

⁷When the Israelites in the towns round about saw that the Israelite army had fled, and heard that Saul and his sons were dead they abandoned their towns and fled, and the Philistines occupied them.

Saul and his son's bodies hung on a city wall

⁸The next day when the Philistines came to strip the dead, they found Saul and cut off his head and sent messengers throughout the land of the Philistines to proclaim the news.

⁹They put Saul's armour in the temple of the goddess Astoreth, and hung his body and those of his sons on the wall of the city of Bethshan.^{F*}

The men of Jabesh bury Saul and his sons

¹⁰However when the people of Jabesh in Gilead heard what the Philistines had done to Saul and his sons, their valiant men crossed the Jordan and journeyed through the night to Bethshan. ¹¹They took down the bodies of Saul and his sons from the wall and carried them back across the Jordan to Jabesh and burned them there. Then they fasted seven days.

*5 If an account told to David in 1 Kings 1:4-6 is true, Saul did not die immediately but was put to death later by an Amalekite.

*9 A nearby city still controlled by Canaanites.

1 KINGS

This most interesting book covers the reigns of King David and his son King Solomon – a period of about 80 years. Under these two great kings, Israel reached her greatest height of fame, power and wealth – a golden age in which Solomon’s famous Temple was erected on the heights of Jerusalem, and distinguished visitors from all over the world came to hear King Solomon’s wisdom.

Solomon was a highly capable ruler by any standard, but his weakness for women led him into the serious sin of idolatry in later life, which eventually resulted in a divided kingdom. This tragedy highlights the great importance of studying and obeying the law of God, for despite Solomon’s great wisdom he offended God by condoning idolatry to please his foreign wives. The Law of Moses plainly forbade Israelites to marry foreigners for this very reason.

Had Solomon been more familiar with the Law (a king was supposed to write himself a copy and read it often, see Deuteronomy 3:16-18) and fully obeyed it, he no doubt would have been an even more illustrious king, and would have reaped the Lord’s conditional promise of a long reign (1 Kings 17:11), instead he appears to have died about age 60. Also his son Rehoboam and following descendants may have reigned for generations over an undivided Israel instead of suffering the ignominy of having all the tribes except Judah wrenched from their hands.

King David, the father of Solomon, also sinned seriously when he committed adultery with Bathsheba and then murdered her husband. David suffered intensely for this transgression, nevertheless, because of his basic underlying faithfulness to the Lord, plus his sincere repentance, he is still held up as the standard by which all kings of Israel are judged.

NOTE Additional details from the book of 1 Chronicles in the traditional Bible, written by Ezra, which contains a duplicate overview of this period have been incorporated in this Condensed Bible version of 1 Kings.

AUTHOR

According to Jewish tradition the compiler of this book was the prophet Jeremiah who lived 300 years after the death of Solomon. He appears to have drawn on many sources. Among those known to have been available in his day and covering this period are, *The Annals of King David*, *The Records of Gad the Seer*, *The Records of Samuel the Seer*, *The Records of Nathan the Prophet*, *The Acts of Solomon* and *The Annals of the Kings of Judah*.

“I will give you a wise and discerning mind, beyond all who have gone before you, or shall ever come after you.” 1 Kings 17:9.

(Lord speaking to Solomon, the newly crowned king.)

CONTENTS

	Chapter
A young man brings David news of death of Saul.....	1
The Amalekite claims he personally killed Saul	1
David mourns for Saul and Jonathan	1
The young news bearer put to death	1
David composes ‘Lament of the Bow’	1
David and his men return to Israel	1
David anointed king of Judah	1
David blesses Jabeshites for burying Saul	1
Saul’s son Ish-Bosheth made king of Israel	1
Armies of Ish-Bosheth and David battle	1
David’s men defeat Ish-Bosheth’s men	1
Abner kills younger brother of Joab	1
Joab and his men pursue Abner and his men	1
Abner calls for peace	1
Both armies return home	1
David grows stronger	2
Six sons born to David in Hebron	2
Abner lies with Saul’s concubine	2
King Ish-Bosheth rebukes Abner	2
Abner vows to hand kingdom over to David	2
Abner sends messengers to David	2
David asks for return of his wife Michal	2
Michal returned to David	2
Abner prepares to hand over the kingdom	2
David puts on a feast for Abner and his men	2
Joab angry at David making peace with Abner	2

1 KINGS 19

Joab murders Abner	2	David marries Bathsheba and a son is born	7
David curses Joab's family	2	The Lord is angered with David	7
David mourns Abner	2	Nathan the prophet sent to David	7
David admits his weakness regarding Joab	2	Parable of rich man and poor man's lamb	7
King Ish-Bosheth stabbed to death	2	Lord charges David with adultery and murder	7
The assassins take Ish-Bosheth's head to David	2	Lord curses David and his family	7
David has assassins of Ish-Bosheth killed	2	David's son to Bathsheba will die	7
David made king of all Israel	2	David pleads with God and lies on floor	7
David marches to Jebusite-held Jerusalem	3	David fasts seven days for his son	7
Jebusites taunt David	3	David's son dies	7
David challenges his men	3	David arises and worships the Lord	7
Joab successful at capturing the fortress	3	David explains his actions to his servants	7
David settles in Jerusalem	3	Solomon born to Bathsheba	7
Fortress area renamed The City of David	3	David captures royal city of the Ammonites	7
David becomes more and more powerful	3	David enslaves Ammonites	7
Hiram king of Tyre builds David a cedar palace	3	The Lord's curse on David's family begins	8
David marries more wives and concubines	3	Amnon lusts after his step-sister Tamar	8
David defeats the Philistines	3	Amnon advised by his shrewd cousin Jonadab	8
David defeats Philistines a second time	3	Amnon pretends to be ill and sends for Tamar	8
David prepares to bring the Ark to Jerusalem	3	Tamar prepares food in Amnon's house	8
The Ark transported by cart	3	Amnon has Tamar bring food to his room	8
Uzzah steadies the Ark and is struck dead	3	Amnon rapes Tamar	8
David afraid to take Ark into City of David	3	Amnon seized with intense loathing for Tamar	8
Obed-Edom's household blessed by the Ark	3	Tamar sent away weeping	8
David prepares a tent for the Ark	3	Tamar stays with her brother Absalom	8
All Israel invited to Jerusalem	3	Absalom plots to kill his brother Amnon	8
David assigns the Levites to carry the Ark	3	Amnon killed by Absalom's men	8
David dances before the Lord	3	David hears that all his sons have been killed	8
David's wife Michal disapproves of his dancing	3	David's sons come to him wailing loudly	8
Ark set up in tent in City of David	3	Absalom flees to his mother's family in Geshur	8
David blesses all present and gives each a gift	3	David longs for Absalom	8
Michal accuses David of undignified dancing	3	Joab uses guile to get Absalom home	8
David rebukes his wife Michal	3	David allows Absalom to return	8
Levites carry out their appointed roles	3	Absalom not to see king's face	8
Daily sacrifices at the Tabernacle in Gibeon	3	Absalom wants Joab to reconcile him to David	8
David subdues Philistines, Moab and Edom	4	Joab refuses to come to Absalom	8
Much gold and silver obtained	4	Absalom sets Joab's barley field on fire	8
The principle men of Israel	4	Joab reconciles David and Absalom	8
A three year famine in the land	4	Absalom a very handsome man	9
David inquires of Lord as to reason	4	Absalom conspires to be king of Israel	9
Saul had broken Joshua's covenant to Gibeonites	4	David's adviser Ahithophel joins the conspiracy	9
Saul's descendants killed as atonement	4	Absalom made king at Hebron	9
Saul's concubine protects her son's bodies	4	Messenger informs David	9
Jonathan's son Mephibosheth	4	David and all his supporters flee Jerusalem	9
David shows kindness to Mephibosheth	4	David watches his supporters march past him	9
Saul's servant Ziba to serve Mephibosheth	4	Ittai the Philistine and his men loyal to David	9
David desires to build a Temple to the Lord	4	Whole countryside weeps aloud	9
Nathan the prophet sent to David	4	David sends the priests and Ark back	9
David's name to be made great	4	David meets his friend Hushai	9
David's son to build the Temple	4	Hushai to remain and counter Ahithophel's advice	9
David prays in thanksgiving before Lord	4	Ziba provides donkeys and provisions	9
Ammonite king humiliates David's officials	5	Ziba accuses Mephibosheth of rebellion	9
Ammonites prepare for battle	5	Ziba rewarded for his support	9
Ammonites hire Syrians to assist them	5	Shimei a relative of Saul curses David	9
Both Ammonites and Syrians flee Israel	5	David prevents Abishai from killing Shimei	9
Syrians gather reinforcements	5	The king and his supporters reach the Jordan	9
Syrians again flee and are defeated	5	Hushai offers to advise Absalom	10
Syrians become subject to David	5	Absalom lies with David's concubines	10
Gold and bronze captured from Syrians	5	Ahithophel's counsel like that of a prophet	10
King of Hamath sends gifts to David	5	Ahithophel wants to destroy David that night	10
David commits adultery with Bathsheba	6	Hushai counters Ahithophel's counsel	10
Bathsheba conceives	6	Hushai sends warning message to David	10
David sends for Uriah husband of Bathsheba	6	Welcome provisions from David's friends	10
David tries to get Uriah to go home to his wife	6	Ahithophel returns home and takes own life	10
Uriah refuses to go to his house	6	Absalom and army set out to destroy David	10
David gets Uriah drunk but he will still not go home	6	David organises his men	10
David arranges for Uriah to be killed in battle	6	David's men march out to battle	10
Uriah shot dead by Ammonite archers	6	David gives orders that Absalom be unharmed	10

Absalom's army defeated by David's men	11	Exploits of David's mighty 'Three'	15
Absalom found wedged in large oak tree	11	The 'Three' risk their lives getting David water	15
Joab rebukes the finder for not killing Absalom	11	David pours the water out to Lord	15
Absalom killed by Joab and his men	11	Abishai's and Benaiah's exploits	15
Absalom's body thrown into a pit	11	Last psalm of David	15
Runners sent to David with the news	11	David becomes old and cannot keep warm	16
David grieves greatly for Absalom	11	Beautiful Abishag to warm and attend David	16
David's men shamed by the kings grief	11	David's son Adonijah conspires to be king	16
Joab threatens David with desertion	11	Adonijah proclaims himself king	16
David takes his seat to encourage his men	11	Nathan has Bathsheba inform David	16
The Israelites talk of having David back as king	12	Nathan confirms all Bathsheba has said	16
David suggests that Judah invite him back first	12	David orders that Solomon be anointed king	16
David replaces Joab with Amasa	12	Solomon rides to anointing on David's mule	16
People of Judah invite David back	12	Zadok anoints Solomon king of Israel	16
Men of Judah meet David at the Jordan	12	All Jerusalem rejoice and follow Solomon	16
Shimei begs for forgiveness	12	Adonijah and his guests hear the news and flee	16
Abishai again wants to put Shimei to death	12	Adonijah clings hold of horns of altar	16
David spares Shimei	12	Adonijah's life spared by Solomon	16
Mephibosheth tells his version of events	12	Lord's conditional covenant with David	16
David divides Saul's property between them	12	Always a descendant on throne of Israel	16
Barzillai invited to live with the king	12	David's last instructions to Solomon	16
Barzillai says he is too old	12	Joab to be put to death	16
Barzillai blessed by David	12	Kindness to be shown to the sons of Barzillai	16
The men of Israel jealous of Judah	12	Shimei to be put to death	16
Sheba a Benjamite incites rebellion	12	King David dies	16
The men of Israel desert David	12	Adonijah asks Solomon for Abishag as his wife	17
David's defiled concubines kept in confinement	13	Solomon angry at Adonijah's request	17
Amasa ordered to gather all the men of Judah	13	Adonijah put to death	17
Amasa delayed three days	13	Abiathar removed from his priesthood office	17
David sends Abishai to pursue Sheba	13	Joab takes refuge at altar	17
Joab and his warriors go with Abishai	13	Joab put to death at altar	17
Amasa and the men of Judah meet them	13	Shimei ordered never to leave Jerusalem	17
Joab murders Amasa	13	Shimei disobeys and is put to death	17
Men of Judah follow Joab	13	Solomon offers 1000 sacrifices at Gibeon	18
Sheba besieged in town of Abel	13	Lord appears to Solomon in a dream	18
A wise woman of Abel pleads with Joab	13	Solomon asked to choose whatever he wants	18
Joab asks that Sheba be handed over	13	Solomon asks wisdom in governing his people	18
Sheba beheaded by the citizens of Abel	13	Lord blesses Solomon with wisdom	18
Lord is angry with Israel	14	Solomon also blessed with riches and honour	18
Lord incites Satan to tempt David	14	Solomon blessed above all other kings	18
David tempted with pride	14	The two harlots and disputed baby	18
David orders Joab to count the fighting men	14	Solomon's wise judgement	18
Joab tries to dissuade David	14	All Israel hold Solomon in awe	18
1,300,000 fighting men counted	14	Solomon wiser than any other man	18
David is conscience-stricken	14	Solomon's proverbs, music and knowledge	18
David asks the Lord to forgive him	14	Solomon's vast kingdom	18
David to choose from three penalties	14	Solomon marries daughter of Pharaoh	18
David chooses three days plague	14	Solomon's daily household provisions	18
Plague begins and 70,000 die in Israel	14	King Hiram provides timber for Temple	19
Jerusalem spared the plague	14	Hiram also sends Huram a man of great skill	19
David sees the destroying angel	14	Wheat and olive oil from Israel as payment	19
David prays that his family suffer instead	14	Canaanites used as labourers for Temple	19
Gad the prophet sent to David	14	Solomon begins to build the Temple	19
David commanded to build an altar	14	Dimensions of the Temple	19
David goes out and buys the threshing floor	14	Stone blocks of the Temple	19
David builds an altar and offers sacrifice	14	Steps and entrance to the Temple	19
Lord answers with fire from heaven	14	Side rooms on three floors of the Temple	19
Temple to be built on that site	14	Floors of the Temple	19
David's son Solomon to build the Temple	14	Roof of the Temple	19
David summons leaders of Israel	14	The inner Sanctuary	19
Leaders of Israel provide materials for Temple	14	The two cherubim	19
The people rejoice and offer sacrifices	14	Doors and veil of the Sanctuary	19
David gives Solomon plans for the Temple	14	Inner and outer courtyards of the Temple	19
David instructs Solomon regarding the Temple	14	A conditional covenant from the Lord	19
How priests and Levites are to serve	14	If Solomon faithful Jehovah will dwell in Temple	19
David almost killed in battle due to exhaustion	15	Two bronze pillars either side of entrance	19
David no longer to go into battle	15	The bronze altar for sacrifices	19
Exploits of David's thirty mighty warriors	15	Large bronze basin on backs of twelve oxen	19

1 KINGS 1

Wheeled bronze basins	19	Solomon rebuilds and settles the towns	21
Smaller bronze objects also made	19	King Solomon builds ships	21
Gold altar, table, lamps, bowls etc	19	Treasures brought back from distant lands	21
Treasures of David placed in the Temple	19	Solomon's trade in chariots and horses	21
All Israel attend dedication of Temple	20	Solomon's magnificent throne	21
The Ark carried up to Temple	20	Solomon's annual gold revenues	21
Tabernacle brought from Gibeon	20	Silver considered of little value	21
Thousands of sheep and cattle sacrificed	20	Visitors with gifts from all over the world	21
Ark put beneath wings of Cherubim	20	Queen of Sheba visits Solomon to test him	21
Music and singing by priests and Levites	20	Queen of Sheba is overwhelmed	21
Temple filled with the glory of the Lord	20	King Solomon's many wives and concubines	22
Solomon kneels and prays before the people	20	Solomon's foreign wives lead him into idolatry	22
Solomon prays for his successors to the throne	20	Solomon builds shrines to foreign gods	22
A temple cannot contain the Lord	20	Lord angry with Solomon's idolatry	22
May Lord answer Israel's prayers	20	Kingdom to be torn away from Solomon	22
May justice always be done	20	David's descendants still to rule over Judah	22
May Israel's sins be forgiven when they repent	20	Lord raises two enemies against Solomon	22
May afflictions be removed from the land	20	Hadad of Edom and Rezon of Syria	22
May the foreigner's prayer also be answered	20	Solomon's capable official Jeroboam	22
Hear prayers of Israel in war and in exile	20	Ahijah the prophet sent to Jeroboam	22
King Solomon ends his prayer	20	Jeroboam chosen to be king over ten tribes	22
Fire from heaven consumes the burnt offering	20	Solomon's son still to rule over Judah	22
The people see Lord's glory on Temple	20	Jeroboam promised a long dynasty if faithful	22
Glory too bright for priests to enter	20	Solomon tries to kill Jeroboam	22
Soloboam blesses the people	20	Jeroboam flees to Egypt	22
14 days of peace offerings and celebration	20	Solomon dies	22
142,000 animals sacrificed	20	Solomon's son Rehoboam becomes king	22
Solomon builds his palace	21	Leaders of Israel visit Rehoboam	22
Solomon's other buildings	21	Ask for their heavy yoke to be lightened	22
Pharaoh's daughter's palace	21	Rehoboam's older officials advise kind words	22
All buildings constructed from high-grade stone	21	Rehoboam's younger men advise harshness	22
Lord again appears to Solomon in a dream	21	Rehoboam answers leaders harshly	22
David's covenant confirmed to Solomon	21	Rehoboam rejected as king by other tribes	22
Solomon warned against idolatry	21	Jeroboam made king over Israel except Judah	22
Temple to become a ruin if other gods served	21	Rehoboam prepares to fight for the kingdom	22
Solomon rebuilds many towns	21	Lord forbids Rehoboam to fight	22
Solomon gives Hiram twenty towns in Galilee	21	Rehoboam obeys the word of the Lord	22
King Hiram displeased with the towns	21		

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

A young man brings David news of the death of Saul

¹On the third day after the death of Saul, a young man arrived in Ziklag with his clothes torn and dust on his head. He came to David and bowed to pay him honour.

²David asked, "Where have you come from?"

³He answered, "I escaped from the Israelite camp. The men fled from the battle and many of them died. Saul and his son Jonathan are dead."

The Amalekite claims that he personally killed Saul

⁴"How do you know they are dead?" David said.

⁵The young man replied, "I was on Mount Gilboa when I saw Saul leaning on his spear with the chariots and riders closing in on him. He saw me and called out, 'Who are you?' I answered, 'An Amalekite.'"

⁶Then he said to me, "Kill me! I am in the throes of death but still alive.' So I killed him for I could see that he would not survive, and I took the crown from his head and the band from his arm and brought them here to my lord."

David mourns for Saul and Jonathan

⁷Then David and all the men with him tore their clothes and wept and fasted until evening for Saul and Jonathan, and for the army of Israel.

The news bearer put to death

⁸Then David said to the young Amalekite who brought him the report, "Why were you not afraid to kill the Lord's anointed? Your blood be upon your own head for your own mouth has testified against you."

⁹David called one of his men and said, "Strike him down!" So he struck him down and he died.

David composes the 'Lament of the Bow' in honour of Saul and Jonathan

¹⁰Then David composed this Lament of the Bow over Saul and his son Jonathan, and ordered that it be taught to the men of Judah.

¹¹"Your glory O Israel, lies slain on your heights. O how the mighty have fallen."

¹²"Tell it not in Gath or Ashkelon, lest the daughters of the Philistines rejoice."

¹³"O mountain of Gilboa, may you have neither dew nor rain, for there the shield of Saul was defiled."

¹⁴"There Jonathan lay slain on your heights."

¹⁵"Saul and Jonathan, in life you were gracious and loved, swifter than eagles, stronger than lions.

¹⁶"And in death you were not parted."

¹⁷"O how the mighty have fallen."

¹⁸"I grieve for you Jonathan my brother, your love for me was surpassing."

¹⁹"More surpassing than the love of women."

David and his men return to Israel

²⁰In time David inquired of the Lord, "Shall I return to Judah?"

²¹The Lord answered, "**Go up to Hebron.**" So David took his two wives, and the men with him took their families and they settled in Hebron.

David anointed king of Judah at Hebron

²²Then the men of Judah came to Hebron and anointed David king over the tribe of Judah.^{F*} David was thirty years old when he became king.

David blesses the men of Jabesh for burying Saul

²³David then sent messengers to the men of Jabesh of Gilead saying, "Jehovah bless you for showing kindness to Saul your king by burying him. For this I too will show you kindness. ²⁴Now then, be strong and brave, for Saul is dead and the tribe of Judah have anointed me king over them."

Saul's remaining son Ish-Bosheth made king of all Israel except Judah

²⁵Meanwhile Abner the commander of Saul's army had taken Ish-Bosheth, the remaining son of Saul, to Gilead and made him king over all Israel.

²⁶Ish-Bosheth was forty years old and reigned two years. The house of Judah however, followed David.

Chosen young men of Ish-Bosheth and David fight hand to hand

²⁷In time, Abner assembled an army of Benjamites^{F*} and crossed the Jordan and marched to Gibeon.

²⁸Joab, the commander of David's men also marched his men out and they met at the pool of Gibeon. The two armies sat down, one on each side of the pool.

²⁹Abner said to Joab, "Let us choose young men to arise and fight this battle^{F*} hand to hand, in front of us."

³⁰So they counted off twelve young men of Benjamin for King Ish-Bosheth, and twelve for King David, and they closed in to fight. ³¹Each young man grabbed his opponent by the head and thrust his dagger into his opponent's side, and they all fell down together.

David's men defeat Ish-Bosheth's men

³²At this a fierce battle erupted as both companies of men arose and fought. But David's men defeated Abner and the men of Ish-Bosheth and they fled before him.

Abner kills the younger brother of Joab

³³All three sons of Zeruah^{F*} were among David's men that day; Joab, Abishai and Asahel.

³⁴Now Asahel, the younger brother of Joab was as fleet-footed as a gazelle and he chased Abner the commander of Ish-Bosheth's forces.

³⁵Abner looked behind him as he ran and called out, "Is that you Asahel?"

He answered, "It is!"

³⁶Abner cried out, "Turn aside and take on one of the young men." But Asahel kept on chasing him.

³⁷Again Abner called out to Asahel, "Cease chasing me! I do not want to kill you! How could I face your brother Joab?"

³⁸But Asahel refused to stop his pursuit, so Abner thrust the rear end of his spear backwards into Asahel's stomach as he ran, and it came out through his back. Asahel fell and died on the spot.

Joab and his men pursue Abner and his men

³⁹Joab and Abishai pursued Abner and his men and caught up with him just as the sun was setting. Abner rallied the men of Benjamin around him and took his stand on the top of a hill.

Abner calls for peace

⁴⁰He called out to Joab, "Must the sword devour forever? When will you order your men to stop pursuing their brothers?"

⁴¹Joab answered, "Had you not spoken my men would have pursued their brothers until morning."

Both armies return home

⁴²So Joab sounded the trumpet and David's men no longer pursued their fellow Israelites and that same night Abner and his men returned to Gilead.

⁴³When Joab numbered David's men, nineteen were found missing besides Asahel, but they had killed 360 of the Benjamites who were with Abner.

⁴⁴They buried Asahel in his father's tomb at Bethlehem, then marched all night and arrived back in Hebron at daybreak.

*²⁹ The army of Abner represented king Ish-Bosheth, and the army of Joab, king David. Both kings were contending for power over all Israel.

*³³ Zeruah was David's step-sister. Her three sons were notable warriors.

*²² David was of the tribe of Judah.

*²⁷ Saul's family were Benjamites.

2

David grows stronger

¹The war between the house of Saul and the house of David lasted a long time, but David grew stronger while the house of Saul grew weaker.

David marries again and six sons are born in Hebron

²During this time David took more wives, and six sons were born to him in Hebron. They were Amnon (his first born) the son of his wife Ahinoam. Daniel the son of Abigail. Absalom the son of Maacah, daughter of the king of Geshur of Syria. Adonijah the son of Haggith. Shephatiah the son of Abital, and Ithream the son of Eglah.



The city of Hebron where David first reigned as king.

To strengthen his position Abner lies with a concubine who had belonged to Saul

³Now Abner had been strengthening his own position in the house of Saul and Ish-Bosheth heard that he had lain with a concubine who had belonged to his father Saul.

King Ish-Bosheth rebukes Abner

⁴Ish-Bosheth rebuked Abner saying, "Why did you lie with my father's concubine?"

Abner becomes angry and vows to hand the kingdom over to David

⁵Abner became angry at these words and answered, "I have become a dog in the eyes of Judah by remaining loyal to the house of your father, and now you charge me with an offence involving this woman! ⁶May God deal with me severely if I do not do what Jehovah promised David on oath, and transfer the kingdom to him."

⁷Ish-Bosheth did not reply for he feared Abner.

Abner sends messengers to David

⁸Abner then sent messengers to David

saying, "Make an agreement with me and I will bring all Israel over to you."

David requires the return of his wife Michal before negotiating with Abner

⁹David replied, "I will make an agreement but before I speak with you face to face I require the return of my wife Michal, daughter of Saul."

¹⁰Then David sent messengers to King Ish-Bosheth saying, "Return my wife Michal."

Ish-Bosheth returns Michal

¹¹So Ish-Bosheth had Michal taken away from her husband Paltiel and sent to David. Paltiel followed her weeping, but Abner commanded him saying "Go back home!" So he went back.

Abner prepares to hand the kingdom over to David

¹²Then Abner spoke with the Benjamites and the other elders of Israel saying, "For some time now you have wanted David to be your king, so do it, for Jehovah approved him when he said, '**By my servant David I will rescue my people Israel from the hand of the Philistines.**'" ¹³Then Abner travelled to Hebron to meet with David.

David puts on a feast for Abner and his men

¹⁴David prepared a feast for Abner and his men and after the feast Abner said to David, "I will go at once and assemble all Israel for my lord the king that you may rule over them." Then he left in peace.

Joab is angry at David making peace with Abner

¹⁵However soon afterward, Joab the commander of David's men returned from a raid. When Joab was told that Abner had come to the king and had been sent away in peace he went to the king and said, "Why did you let Abner escape? He came only to deceive you and as a spy!"

Joab calls Abner back and murders him

¹⁶Joab then secretly sent messengers after Abner asking him to return.

¹⁷When Abner returned, Joab took him aside into the gateway as though to speak with him privately, and there, to avenge the blood of his younger brother Asahel, Joab stabbed him in the stomach and he died.

David curses Joab's family

¹⁸When David heard of it he cursed Joab and said, "I and my kingdom are innocent of the blood of Abner. His blood be upon the head of Joab. ¹⁹May Joab's house never be without one who has a running sore, or leprosy, or leans on a crutch, or falls by the sword, or lacks food."

David mourns Abner

²⁰David then summoned Joab and the men he had command over and said to them, "Tear your clothes and put on sackcloth and walk in mourning in front of Abner at his funeral."

²¹David himself walked behind the bier and wept aloud at Abner's tomb and sang a lament.

He also fasted that day until sunset.

²²All the people took note of what David did and were pleased. Indeed everything the king did pleased them.

²³So all Israel knew that David had no part in the murder of Abner.

**David admits his weakness
in face of ruthlessness of Joab**

²⁴Then the king said to his officials, "A great man has fallen in Israel this day. Today I am weak, even though I am the anointed king. These sons of Zeruiah^{F*} are too ruthless for me. May the Lord repay Joab according to his deeds."

²⁵When Ish-Bosheth the son of Saul heard that Abner had been killed in Hebron, he lost courage and all Israel became alarmed.

King Ish-Bosheth is stabbed to death

²⁶Now Ish-Bosheth had two men who were commanders of raiding bands, Baanah and his brother Recab. ²⁷They went to the house of Ish-Bosheth in the heat of the day while he was taking his noonday rest and entered the inner part of his house pretending to get some wheat. There they stabbed the king in the stomach as he was lying on his bed in his bedroom.

The assassins take the king's head to David

²⁸They then cut off his head and taking it with them travelled all night to Hebron.

²⁹The next day they took the head of Ish-Bosheth to David and said to the king, "Here is the head of Ish-Bosheth, the son of Saul your enemy who tried to take your life. This day Jehovah has avenged you against Saul and his offspring."

David has the assassins of Ish-Bosheth killed

³⁰David answered Recab and Baanah saying, "When a man told me, 'Saul is dead,' and thought he was bringing me good news, I put him to death in Ziklag. That was the reward I gave him for his news. ³¹How much more now, when wicked men have killed an innocent man in his own house and on his own bed. I shall require his blood from your hands, and rid the earth of you!"

³²David commanded his men and they killed them both, and cut off their hands and feet and hung the bodies by the pool in Hebron.

³³They took the head of Ish-Bosheth and buried it in Abner's tomb at Hebron.

David made king of all Israel

³⁴Then all the elders of Israel came to David at Hebron and anointed him king over all Israel.

3

**David marches to take the Jebusites-controlled
fortress area of Jerusalem**

¹Soon afterward, David and his men marched to Jerusalem, to attack the Jebusites who still controlled the fortified part of the city.

The Jebusites taunt David

²When they arrived at the fortress the Jebusites taunted David, calling down to him saying, "You will not get in here! Even the blind and the lame will ward you off!"

David challenges his men

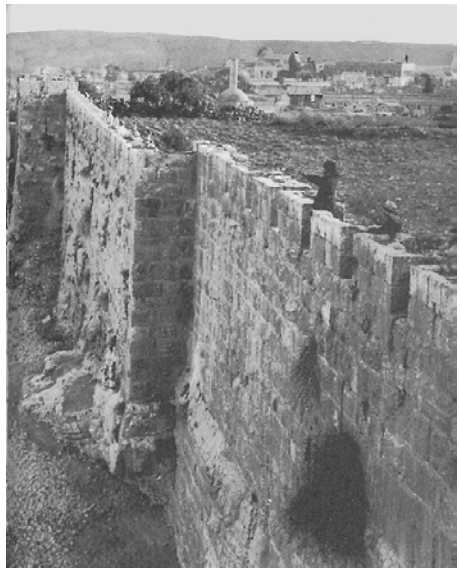
³David said to his men, "The only way to conquer these 'blind and the lame' Jebusites, is to go up through the water tunnel. Whoever leads a successful assault will become army commander of all Israel."

Joab successful at capturing the fortress

⁴Joab was successful, therefore David made him commander-in-chief, and he captured the fortress of Zion.

**David moves into the fortress area of Jerusalem
and renames it the City of David**

⁵The king then moved his residence to the fortress of Zion and it was called the City of David. He built up the city within the fortress while Joab restored the rest of Jerusalem.



Walls protecting the fortress area of Jerusalem.

David becomes more and more powerful

⁶As time went on David became more and more powerful because the Lord God Almighty was with him, for the sake of his people Israel.

Hiram king of Tyre builds David a cedar palace

⁷In time, Hiram king of Tyre^{F*} sent cedar logs and carpenters and stonemasons, who built a palace for David in Jerusalem.

**David marries more wives and concubines and
eleven more sons born to him in Jerusalem**

⁸David also took more wives and concubines in Jerusalem and more sons and daughters

*24 Joab and Abishai.

*7 A Phoenician coastal city in southern Lebanon.

1 KINGS 3

were born to him. ⁹These are the names of the eleven sons born to David in Jerusalem, Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, Solomon, Ibhaz, Elishua, Nephthi, Japhia, Elishama, Eliada and Eliphelet.

David defeats the Philistines

¹⁰When the Philistines heard that David had been anointed king over all Israel, they went up in full force to search for him and camped in the Valley of the Giants.

¹¹David inquired of the Lord^{F*} and asked, "Shall I go and attack the Philistines?"

The Lord answered him, "**Go! I will hand the Philistines over to you.**"

¹²So David attacked and defeated them and the Philistines fled, abandoning their idols. David and his men carried them off.

David defeats the Philistines a second time

¹³But again the Philistines came up and camped in the Valley of the Giants.

¹⁴David once more inquired of the Lord and the Lord answered, "**Circle around behind them and attack them in front of the Balsam trees. When you hear the sound of marching in the tops of the trees, move quickly, for that will mean Jehovah has gone out in front of you to strike the Philistine army.**"

¹⁵David did as the Lord said, and again the Philistines were defeated.

David prepares to bring the Ark to Jerusalem

¹⁶After the battle David conferred with his commanders and then said to the army of Israel, "If it seems good to you, and if it is the will of the Lord our God, let us send for the rest of our brethren throughout Israel and bring the Ark of our God to Jerusalem, for we did not inquire of it during the reign of Saul."

¹⁷The army agreed to this so David summoned all Israel, and choosing 30,000 men set out for Kiriath Jearim, to the house of Abinadab on the hill.

The Ark is transported by cart

¹⁸They set the Ark of God on a new cart and started on the road to Jerusalem. Two of the sons of Abinadab, Uzzah and Ahio were guiding the cart. Ahio was walking in front of it.

The people celebrate with music

¹⁹David and the other Israelites followed, celebrating with songs and with harps, lyres, tambourines, castanets and cymbals.

Uzzah steadies the Ark and is struck dead

²⁰When they neared the threshing floor of Nacon, one of the oxen stumbled and Uzzah reached out his hand to steady the Ark of God.

²¹But the anger of the Lord burned against Uzzah for putting his hand to the Ark. He struck him down and he died there beside the Ark.^{F*}

*11 Probably through the high priest and the Urim and Thummim.

*21 The main reason for the Lord's anger was that the Ark was being transported in a way contrary to commandment, see verse 30.

David afraid to take the Ark into the City of David

²²David was angry, and afraid of the Lord that day and said, "How can the Ark of Jehovah come into my care?" ²³He was not willing to take the Ark into the City of David, instead he took it aside to the house of Obed-Edom in Jerusalem, who was a Levite.

Obed-Edom's household blessed by the Ark

²⁴The Ark of the Lord remained in the house of Obed-Edom for three months and the Lord blessed him and his entire household.

²⁵The king was told, "The Lord has blessed the household of Obed-Edom because of the Ark of God."

David prepares a tent for the Ark

²⁶So David prepared a tent for the Ark in the City of David.

All Israel invited to Jerusalem

²⁷Then he invited all Israel to Jerusalem, to witness the bringing up of the Ark of the Lord to the place he had prepared for it.

David assigns the Levites to carry the Ark the way the Lord commanded

²⁸David said, "No one but the Levites are to carry the Ark, for the Lord has chosen them to minister before him forever."

²⁹He summoned Zadok and Abiathar the high priests^{F*} and said to them, "You and your fellow Levites are to purify yourselves and bring up the Ark to the place I have prepared. ³⁰It was because the Levites did not bring it up first time that Jehovah broke out in anger against us. We did not inquire of him as to the proper way."

³¹David also had the priests appoint Levite singers to sing joyful songs accompanied by musical instruments, lyres, harps and cymbals.

³²When the priests and Levites had purified themselves they began to carry the Ark of God with the poles on their shoulders, as Moses had instructed. ³³When they had taken six steps David sacrificed a bull and a fattened calf.

David dances before the Lord

³⁴So David and the entire house of Israel brought up the Ark from the house of Obed-Edom into the City of David, with shouts and rejoicing, dancing, and the sound of trumpets.

³⁵David wore a short sleeveless tunic of linen and danced before the Lord with all his might.

David's wife Michal disapproves of his dancing

³⁶As the Ark was entering the city, David's wife Michal, the daughter of Saul was watching from a window. When she saw David leaping and dancing she despised him.

The Ark set up inside a tent in the City of David

³⁷They set the Ark inside the tent that David had prepared and David offered sacrifices to the Lord.

*29 Normally there was only one high priest, but Zadok served at the Tabernacle in Gibeon, and Abiathar before the Ark in Jerusalem (1 Kings 3:42-43).

David blesses all present and gives each a gift

³⁸Afterward David blessed the people and gave all who were present a loaf of bread, a cake of dates and a cake of raisins. Then all the people returned home.

Michal accuses David of undignified dancing

³⁹As David returned to the palace to bless his family, Michal came out to meet him and said, "How the king of Israel distinguished himself today, exposing his body in the sight of the slave girls, as a common man might do!"

David rebukes his wife Michal

⁴⁰David said to Michal, "It was before Jehovah that I danced, who chose me rather than your father. For his sake I am prepared to be even more undignified in your eyes, but in the eyes of these slave girls you spoke of I will be held in honour."

⁴¹Michal bore no child to David to the day of her death.

The Levite priests carry out their appointed roles

⁴²David appointed Abiathar the high priest, and Asaph and his fellow Levite priests to prophesy, and minister before the Ark in Jerusalem, according to each day's requirements.

Daily sacrifice still offered to the Lord at the Tabernacle in Gibeon

⁴³Zadok the high priest and his fellow priests were appointed to the Tabernacle, which was at that time located at the high place in Gibeon.

⁴⁴There they presented burnt offerings to the Lord on the altar, morning and evening in accordance with the Law.

4

David subdues the Philistines, Moab and Edom

¹In the course of time David defeated the Philistines and subdued them.

²He also defeated the Moabites. He made them lie down on the ground and measured them off with a length of cord. Every two lengths were put to death, but those of the third length were allowed to live. So the Moabites became subject to David and brought tribute.

³David struck down 18,000 Edomites in the Valley of Salt, and put garrisons throughout Edom. So the Edomites also became subject to him.

Much gold and silver obtained

⁴The Lord gave David victory wherever he turned and he obtained much gold and silver from the nations he subdued; the Edomites, the Moabites, the Ammonites, the Philistines and the Amalekites. All nations feared David.

The principle men of Israel

⁵David reigned over all Israel, doing what was just for his people. Joab was commander over the army and Benaiah commander over the king's bodyguards. ⁶Jehoshaphat was keeper of the records, Seraiah was secretary, Zadok

and Abiathar were the high priests and David's sons were the royal ministers.

David inquires of the Lord as to the reason for a three year famine

⁷Then there came a famine in the land. It lasted for three years, so David inquired of the Lord as to the reason.

Saul had broken Joshua's covenant to the Gibeonites

⁸The Lord replied, "It is on account of Saul. He put the Gibeonites to death."

⁹Now the Gibeonites were not a part of Israel but were survivors of the Canaanites. Joshua had sworn by the Lord to spare them, but King Saul in his zeal had tried to annihilate them.

Seven of Saul's descendants put to death by the Gibeonites as atonement

¹⁰David summoned the Gibeonite elders and said to them, "How can I make amends so that you will bless the Lord's people?"

¹¹The Gibeonites answered, "We have no claim to silver or gold from Saul's family, but as for this man who tried to destroy us, let seven of his male descendants be given to us to be put to death and exposed before Jehovah at Gibeah, the home town of Saul."

¹²The king said, "I will give them to you." So he took the two sons of Saul's concubine Rizpah, and the five sons of Saul's daughter Merab and handed them over to the Gibeonites, who put them to death and exposed them on a hill at Gibeah, during the first days of the barley harvest.

Saul's concubine protects the bodies of her sons

¹³Saul's concubine Rizpah took sackcloth and spread it out for herself on a rock, and from the beginning of the harvest until the rains poured down on the bodies, she did not let the birds touch them by day, or the wild animals by night.

¹⁴When David was told what Saul's concubine had done, he had the bones of Saul and his son Jonathan brought from Jabesh in Gilead, and also took the bones of those who had been killed and exposed, and buried them all in the tomb of Saul's father Kish.

¹⁵After that God again answered prayers on behalf of the land.

David shows kindness to Jonathan's son Mephibosheth

¹⁶David then asked, "Is there anyone left of the family of Saul to whom I can show kindness, for Jonathan's sake?"

¹⁷Ziba, a former servant of Saul's household answered the king and said, "There is Mephibosheth, the son of Jonathan, who is lame in both feet."

¹⁸(Now Mephibosheth was about five years old when news came about the death of Jonathan his father. His nurse picked him up and fled, but they both fell together and he became crippled in both feet.)

¹⁹So David ordered Mephibosheth brought to

1 KINGS 5

him and he came and bowed down to the king to pay him honour.

²⁰“David said to him, Fear not, I intend to show you kindness for the sake of your father Jonathan. I will restore to you all the land that belonged to your grandfather Saul, and you will always eat at my table.”

²¹Mephibosheth bowed again and said, “What is your servant that you should care about a dead dog such as I?”

Saul’s servant Ziba to serve Mephibosheth

²²Then the king summoned Ziba and said to him, “I have given Mephibosheth everything that belonged to your master Saul. You and your sons and your servants are to work the land for Mephibosheth and bring in the crops that he may be well provided for.”

²³Now Ziba had fifteen sons and twenty servants. He said to the king, “Your servant will do as my lord the king commands.”

²⁴So Mephibosheth lived in Jerusalem and ate at the king’s table like one of the king’s sons. He also had a young son named Mica.

David desires to build a Temple to the Lord

²⁵When the Lord had given David rest from all his enemies, David said to Nathan the prophet, “Here I am living in a palace of cedar while the Ark of God stays in a tent.”

Nathan the prophet tells David to go ahead

²⁶Nathan replied to the king, “Whatever you have in mind, go ahead and do it, for Jehovah is with you.”

The word of the Lord comes to David through Nathan the prophet

²⁷But that night the word of the Lord came to Nathan saying, “**Say to my servant David, Jehovah says, ‘I have not dwelt in a house from the day I brought the Israelites up out of Egypt. To this day I have been moving from place to place with a tent as my dwelling.**”²⁸Yet I have never said to any of the rulers who shepherded my people, “Why have you not built me a house of cedar?”

²⁹“I took you from pasturing sheep to be ruler over my people Israel and have been with you wherever you have gone, and have cut off all your enemies.”

David’s name to be made great

³⁰“Now I will make your name great, like the names of the great men of the earth. And I will provide a place for my people so they can have a homeland of their own and no longer be oppressed by wicked men.”

One of David’s sons to build a Temple

³¹“When your days are over and you rest with your fathers, I will raise up one of your sons to succeed you. ³²He is the one who will build a house for my name and I will establish his throne forever.”

³³“I will be his father and when he does wrong I will punish him with the rod of men, but my love for him will never be taken

away as it was from Saul. ³⁴Your house and throne will endure forever.”

David prays in thanksgiving before the Lord

³⁵When Nathan reported these words to the king, David went into the tent of the Ark and prayed before the Lord saying, “Who am I, O Lord Jehovah and what is my family that you have brought me this far? ³⁶And as if this were not enough you have also spoken of the future of the house of your servant. Is this your usual way of dealing with men O Lord?”

³⁷“How great you are O Lord! There is none like you, and no God but you as we have heard with our own ears. ³⁸And who is like your people Israel, the only nation on earth that you redeemed, to make a name for yourself. And in so doing you performed awesome wonders by driving out nations and their gods from before your people.”

³⁹“And now O Lord God, keep forever the covenant you have made concerning your servant and his house. Do as you have promised that your name will be great forever.”

5

A new king of the Ammonites humiliates David’s officials

¹In time, Nahash the king of the Ammonites died and his son Hanun became king.

²David thought, “I will show kindness to Hanun just as his father showed kindness to me.” So David sent officials to express his sympathy to Hanun concerning his father.

³But some Ammonite officials said to the new king, “Is David really honouring your father by sending these men to express sympathy? Has he not rather sent them to spy out the city to overthrow it?”

⁴So Hanun seized David’s officials and shaved off each man’s beard and cut off their garments in the middle exposing their buttocks, and sent them home.

⁵When David was told, he sent messengers to meet his officials who were greatly humiliated and to say to them, “Stay at Jericho until your beards have grown and then return home.”

The Ammonites prepare for battle and hire Syrians to assist them

⁶When the Ammonites realised they had offended David, they hired 33,000 Syrians to assist them and prepared for battle.

⁷On hearing this, David sent Joab out with his entire army.

⁸The Ammonites drew up in battle formation outside the gate to their city, while the Syrians waited out in the open country.

The Ammonites and Syrians flee before Israel

⁹When Joab saw the battle lines both in front and behind him, he selected the best troops to go with him against the Syrians, and placed the rest of the men under the command of Abishai his brother to go against the Ammonites.

¹⁰Joab said, "If the Syrians are too strong for me, come to my rescue, and if the Ammonites are too strong for you I will come to your rescue. ¹¹Be strong and let us fight bravely for our families and the cities of our God. The Lord will do what is good in his sight."

¹²Then Joab advanced against the Syrians and they fled before him. When the Ammonites saw the Syrians flee, they too fled before Abishai and retreated inside their city. ¹³So Joab and Abishai returned to Jerusalem.

The Syrians gather reinforcements

¹⁴However the Syrians gathered reinforcements and regrouped and the king of Syria brought even more men from the northern kingdoms beyond the River^{F*} and they all mustered at Helam on the border of Gilead.

The Syrians again flee and are defeated

¹⁵When David was told of this, he gathered all the men of Israel, and crossed the Jordan and marched to Helam. ¹⁶The Syrians formed their battle lines and began to fight, but again they fled before Israel and David killed 700 charioteers and 40,000 horsemen.

The Syrians become subject to David

¹⁷When the Syrians saw that they had been defeated by Israel they made peace and became subject to David.

Gold shields and bronze captured from the Syrians

¹⁸David captured gold shields from the Syrians and brought them to Jerusalem with great quantities of bronze.

The king of Hamath sends silver, gold and bronze to David in gratitude

¹⁹When the king of Hamath in the far north heard that David had defeated the Syrians, he sent his son to David with articles of silver, gold and bronze to congratulate him on his victory, for Hamath had been at war with the Syrians.

²⁰David dedicated these articles to the Lord as he had done with all the other silver and gold.

6

David commits adultery with Bathsheba

¹In the spring, at the time when kings go out to war, David sent Joab out with the army to lay waste the land of the Ammonites and to besiege their royal city, but David remained behind in Jerusalem.

²Late one afternoon, David arose from his couch and walked around on the roof of his palace. As he did so he saw a beautiful woman bathing herself. David inquired about her and was told, "She is Bathsheba, the wife of Uriah the Hittite."

³David sent for her and she came to him and he lay with her. Then she returned home.

Bathsheba conceives

⁴However she conceived and sent word to David saying, "I am with child."

David sends for Uriah, Bathsheba's husband who is away with the army

⁵So David sent a message to Joab saying, "Send me Uriah the Hittite."^{F*}

David tries to get Uriah to go home to his wife but he refuses

⁶When Uriah was sent to him, David asked him how the soldiers were and how the campaign was going. ⁷Then David said to Uriah, "Go down to your house and wash your feet." So Uriah left the palace and a gift of food from the king's table was sent after him. ⁸But Uriah did not go home but slept at the entrance to the palace with the king's servants.

⁹When David was told this, he said to Uriah, "Why did you not go down to your house after your journey?"

¹⁰Uriah answered saying, "The Ark and my commander Joab and the king's men are camped out in the open fields. How can I go to my house to eat and drink and lie with my wife? I will not do such a thing."

¹¹David said to him, "Remain one more day and tomorrow I will send you back."

David gets Uriah drunk but he still does not go to his house

¹²Later that day at David's invitation, Uriah ate and drank with him and David made him drunk. But that evening Uriah again slept on his mat among the servants and would not go to his house.

David arranges for Uriah to be killed in battle

¹³In the morning David wrote a letter to Joab and sent it with Uriah. In it he wrote:

"Put Uriah in the front where the fighting is fiercest, then withdraw from him so that he will be struck down and die."

Uriah shot dead by Ammonite archers

¹⁴Therefore, while Joab was besieging the Ammonite city he placed Uriah at a place where he knew the strongest defenders were.

¹⁵When the archers of the city shot at them, some of the Israelites fell, including Uriah the Hittite.

¹⁶Joab sent David a full account of the battle and instructed the messenger, "When you have finished giving the king this account, his anger may rise and he may ask you, 'Why did you get so close to the city to fight? Did you not know they would shoot arrows from the wall?'

¹⁷Then say to him, 'Also your servant Uriah the Hittite is dead.'

¹⁸The messenger returned and told David everything Joab had sent him to say. David said to the messenger, "Say to Joab, 'Let not this matter trouble you, the sword devours one

*²⁵ Uriah was a soldier in David's army who were away fighting the Ammonites. Uriah was not an Israelite but a Hittite, a race that originated from the far north in present day Turkey and noted as warriors.

*¹⁴ The Euphrates.

1 KINGS 7

as well as another. Press the attack against the city and destroy it.”

7

David marries Bathsheba and a son is born

¹When Bathsheba heard that her husband was dead, she mourned for him.

²After the time of mourning was over, David had her brought to his house and she became his wife and bore him a son.

The Lord angered with David sends Nathan the prophet to him

³But what David had done angered the Lord, and he sent the prophet Nathan to him.

The parable of the rich man and the poor man's lamb

⁴Nathan said to David, *“There were two men in a certain town, one very rich and the other poor. ⁵The rich man had great flocks of sheep but the poor man had none, except one little ewe lamb he had bought. He raised it and it grew up with him and his children. ⁶It shared his food, drank from his cup and even slept in his arms. It was like a daughter to him.”*

⁷“Now there came a traveller to the rich man, but the rich man would not take one of his own sheep to prepare a meal for the traveller, instead he stole the little lamb that belonged to the poor man and prepared that for the guest who had come to him.”

⁸When David heard this, his anger arose and he said, “That man deserves to die!”

The Lord charges David with adultery and murder

⁹Nathan said to David, *“You are that man.”*

¹⁰*“Jehovah, God of Israel says, ‘I anointed you king over Israel and delivered you from the hand of Saul. I gave his house to you and put his wives into your arms.’”*

¹¹*“I gave you all the house of Israel, and if that had not been enough I would have given you even more. ¹²So why did you despise the word of Jehovah by doing what is evil in his eyes? You put Uriah to death by the Ammonites and took his wife to be your own.”*

The Lord curses David and his family

¹³*“Now therefore the sword will never depart from your house, because you despised me and took the wife of Uriah to be your own.”*

¹⁴*“Out of your own household I will bring distress upon you. Before your very eyes I will take your wives and give them to one who is close to you, and he will lie with them in broad daylight. ¹⁵You did this in secret, but I will do it in broad daylight before all Israel.”*

David's son to Bathsheba to die

¹⁶David said to Nathan, “I have sinned against the Lord.”

¹⁷Nathan replied, *“Jehovah has been provoked to anger by your sin. However you will not die, but as you have utterly scorned Jehovah, the son born to you will die.”*

¹⁸Nathan returned to his house and the Lord struck the child that Bathsheba had borne to David and he became ill.

David pleads with God and lies on the floor and fasts seven days for his son

¹⁹David pleaded with God for the child. He fasted and spent the nights lying on the floor.

²⁰His servants tried to get him up off the floor but he refused and would not eat any food.

David's son dies

²¹On the seventh day the child died. The king's servants were afraid to tell him for they thought, “How can we tell him the child is dead? He may do something desperate.”

²²David noticed his servants whispering among themselves and asked, “Is he dead?”

“He is dead,” they replied.

David arises and worships the Lord and eats again

²³David arose from the floor, washed, applied scented oil, changed his clothes and went to the tent of the Lord and worshipped. Then he returned to his palace and ate.

David explains his actions to his servants

²⁴His servants said to him, “Why are you acting this way? While the child was alive you fasted and wept, but now that he is dead you arise and eat.”

²⁵David answered, “While the child was still alive I fasted and wept, for I thought, ‘Perhaps the Lord may be gracious to me and let my son live. But now that he is dead, why should I fast? Can I bring him back again?’”

²⁶“I will go to him, but he cannot return to me.”

Solomon is born to Bathsheba

²⁷David comforted his wife Bathsheba. (In time she gave birth to another son and they named him Solomon.)

David captures the royal city of the Ammonites

²⁸Meanwhile Joab sent messengers to David saying, “I have captured the water supply of the royal city of the Ammonites. Now muster the rest of the men and come and capture it, otherwise I will take the city myself and receive the glory.”

²⁹So David mustered the rest of the men and they marched out and attacked and captured the city.

³⁰David took a great quantity of spoil and kept the gold crown of the king for himself. It weighed a talent of gold^{F*} and was set with precious stones.

David enslaves the Ammonites

³¹David also enslaved the people, consigning them to labour with saws, iron picks and axes,

*30 An enormously heavy crown, a talent weighed about 34kg (75lbs).

and to make bricks. He did this to all the Ammonite towns round about.

8

The Lord's curse on David's family begins – David's son Amnon lusts after his sister Tamar

¹Time passed, and then Amnon the firstborn son of David lusted after Tamar, the beautiful sister of his half-brother Absalom. ²Amnon became frustrated to the point of ill health because of his lust for Tamar, for she was a virgin and it seemed impossible for him to do anything to her.

Amnon is advised by his shrewd cousin Jonadab

³Now Amnon had a cousin named Jonadab, who was very shrewd. When he saw how haggard Amnon was every morning, he said to him, "Lie on your bed and pretend to be ill and then ask your father to send your sister Tamar to prepare food for you in your house. Have her feed it to you with her hand."

Amnon pretends to be ill and sends for Tamar to prepare food for him

⁴So Amnon lay down and then sent word to his father as his cousin had suggested. ⁵David sent a message to Tamar saying, "Go to the house of your brother Amnon and prepare food for him."

Tamar prepares food in Amnon's house

⁶So Tamar went to the house of Amnon and baked cakes. When she served the cakes, Amnon refused to arise from his bed and eat, instead he said, "Send everyone out of the house." So everyone left.

Amnon has Tamar bring the food to his room

⁷Then he called to Tamar, "Bring the food here into my room that I may eat it from your hand." So Tamar took the cakes to her brother in his bedroom.

Amnon rapes Tamar

⁸But Amnon immediately seized her and said, "Lie with me my sister."

⁹But she said to him. "No my brother! Such a thing is not done in Israel! Do not do this vile thing. How could I ever rid myself of shame? ¹⁰And what of you? You would be seen as a wicked man in Israel. Speak to the king, he will not keep me from marrying you." ^{F*}

¹¹But Amnon would not listen to her and forcibly raped her.

Amnon is seized with intense loathing for Tamar and orders her out of his house

¹²Immediately afterward, Amnon was seized with an intense loathing for Tamar, even greater than the lust he had felt for her. He said to her, "Up, and get out!"

¹³She said to him, "No! Sending me away would be a greater wrong than what you have already done to me."

¹⁴But Amnon called his personal servant and said to him, "Get this woman out of my house and bolt the door after her." So his servant put her out and bolted the door.

Tamar goes away weeping and stays thereafter with her brother Absalom

¹⁵Tamar put ashes on her head and tore the long ornamented robe that the virgin daughters of the king wear, and went away weeping aloud with her hand on her head.

¹⁶Thereafter she stayed in her brother Absalom's house, a grief-stricken and forlorn woman.

Absalom plots to kill his brother Amnon

¹⁷When David heard what had happened, he was greatly distressed, for Amnon was his firstborn son. ^{F*}

¹⁸Absalom never spoke to his brother Amnon again. He hated him for disgracing his sister Tamar.

¹⁹Two years later, at sheep shearing time Absalom invited his father David and his officials, and all his brothers to a feast.

²⁰But the king replied, "No my son, all of us would be a burden to you." Absalom urged him, but he still refused to go.

²¹Then Absalom said, "At least allow Amnon to come."

²²David said, "Why would you want him to come?" Nevertheless at his urging he sent Amnon and the rest of his sons.

²³Then Absalom said to his men, "When Amnon is drunk with wine, and I command you, 'Strike him down. Kill him. Do not fear.'"

Amnon is killed by Absalom's men

²⁴So when Absalom gave the order his men killed Amnon. Then all the king's sons mounted their mules and fled.

David hears that all his sons have been killed

²⁵The report came to David, "Absalom has struck down all the king's sons!" The king tore his clothes and lay on the floor and all his officials stood by with their clothes torn.

²⁶But David's nephew Jonadab said, "My lord should not think that Absalom has killed all your sons. Only Amnon will be dead, for that has been Absalom's intention ever since the day Amnon forced his sister Tamar."

David's sons come to him wailing loudly

²⁷Soon afterward the king's sons came in, wailing loudly, and the king and all his officials wept bitterly.

Absalom flees to his mother's family in Geshur

²⁸Absalom fled to his grandfather, the king of Geshur ^{F*} and stayed there three years. David mourned for his sons Amnon and Absalom.

David longs for Absalom

²⁹After David was consoled concerning Amnon's death, he longed for Absalom.

*¹⁷The firstborn son was natural heir to the throne.

*²⁸Absalom's mother was the daughter of the king of Geshur, a Syrian kingdom north of Israel.

*¹⁰Tamar's statement may have been a ploy, the Law of Moses clearly prohibited such a marriage (Exodus 13:21).



A mule, the offspring of a donkey and a horse. These animals were ridden by king's sons from the time of David.

Joab uses guile and a wise woman to persuade the king to allow Absalom to return

³⁰Joab knew of the king's desire, so he sent for a wise woman and said to her, "Pretend you are in mourning, then we will go in to the king and you are to speak these words I will tell you."

³¹When the woman went before David she bowed to pay him honour and said, "Help me O king. My husband died, leaving me two sons, but they fought with each other in a field and one killed the other. ³²Now my people want me to hand over my surviving son to put him to death for the life of his brother. ³³They would quench the only live ember I have left, leaving my husband no descendant upon the face of the earth."

³⁴David said to the woman, "Return home and I will issue an order on your behalf."

³⁵The woman asked, "Is the king able to prevent the avenger of blood^{F*} from destroying my son?"

³⁶David replied, "Not a hair of your son's head will be harmed."

³⁷The wise woman said, "When the king says this, does he not convict himself? For the king has not brought back his banished son."

David discerns Joab's hand behind all this

³⁸David said, "Is not the hand of Joab behind all this?"

³⁹The woman answered, "It was indeed your servant Joab that put these words into my mouth. My lord the king has wisdom like that of an angel of God."

David allows Absalom to return

⁴⁰David then turned to Joab and said to him, "Very well, I will do it. Go and bring back my son Absalom."

⁴¹Joab bowed with his face to the ground to pay the king honour. Then he went to Geshur and brought Absalom back to Jerusalem.

Absalom not to see the king's face

⁴²But David said, "He must go to his own house and not see my face."

⁴³So Absalom lived two years in Jerusalem without seeing his father's face.

Absalom tries in vain to get Joab to reconcile him to David

⁴⁴Absalom sent for Joab twice to have him take a message to the king, but Joab refused to come.

Absalom finally sets Joab's barley field on fire

⁴⁵Then Absalom said to his servants, "Go set the barley field of Joab on fire."

⁴⁶Joab came to Absalom's house and demanded, "Why did your servants set my field on fire?"

⁴⁷Absalom said to Joab, "I sent for you to ask the king, 'Why have you brought me from Geshur? It would be better for me if I were still there. ⁴⁸I want to see the king's face. If I am guilty of anything let him put me to death."

Joab speaks to the king and David is reconciled to his son Absalom

⁴⁹So Joab went to the king and told him this. David sent for Absalom and he came in and bowed to the ground before the king, and David kissed his son Absalom.

9

David's son Absalom a very handsome man

¹Now in all Israel there was no man so handsome in appearance as Absalom. From the top of his head to the sole of his foot there was no blemish in him, and when he cut his hair at the end of each year when it became too heavy, its weight was about 200 shekels.^{F*}

Absalom conspires to be king

²In time Absalom provided for himself a chariot and horses, and fifty men to run ahead of him.

³He would arise early in the morning and stand by the road leading to the city gate. Whenever anyone came with a matter to be decided by the king, Absalom would speak with him and say, "Your claims are just, but there is no judge appointed by the king to hear you." Then he would add, "If I were appointed judge in the land I would see that everybody gets justice."

⁴If any man went to bow before him, Absalom would reach out his arms and embrace him, and kiss him. So in this manner Absalom stole the hearts of the men of Israel.

⁵Absalom also erected a pillar in the King's Valley as a monument to himself.

Absalom made king at Hebron

⁶At the end of four years Absalom said to his father David, "Allow me to go to Hebron to fulfil a vow I made to Jehovah."

The king said, "Go in peace."

⁷Then Absalom sent secret messengers throughout the tribes of Israel to say, "As soon

*³⁵ Under the Mosaic law of a life for a life, if a man was killed, the avenger of blood (any near relative) was expected to take the life of the man responsible for the killing.

*¹ About 2.5kg (5 lbs).

as you hear the sound of the trumpets, cry out, 'Absalom is king in Hebron.'

⁸And so Absalom was made king by the men of Israel.

Ahithophel, David's adviser joins the conspiracy

⁹Absalom also sent for Ahithophel, David's adviser to come from his home town Giloh, and so the conspiracy gained strength. The followers of Absalom kept increasing.



The pillar of Absalom at Jerusalem

A messenger informs David

¹⁰Then a messenger came and said to David, "The men of Israel have made Absalom king."

David and all his supporters flee Jerusalem

¹¹David said to his officials, "We must leave Jerusalem immediately or Absalom will attack the city and put it to the sword, and none of us will escape."

¹²So the king set out with his entire household, and all of his men, but left ten concubines* to take care of the palace.

David stops at the last house and watches as his supporters march past him

¹³David halted at the last house of the city and watched as his officials and people marched past him.

David tells Ittai the Philistine and his 600 men to return to Jerusalem

¹⁴The king saw Ittai the Philistine with his 600 men and said to him, "Why should you come with us? Return with your men and their families and stay with King Absalom. ¹⁵You are an exile from your homeland and came from Gath only yesterday. Why should I make you wander with us, when I do not know where I am going?"

Ittai pledges his loyalty to David

¹⁶Ittai replied, "Wherever my lord the king may be, in life or death, there will your servant be."

¹⁷David said to Ittai, "March on!" So Ittai marched on with his men and their families and all the other men and their families that had followed David.

The whole countryside weeps aloud

¹⁸The whole countryside wept aloud as the people of Jerusalem passed by. They crossed the Kidron brook and moved toward the desert.



The Kidron brook near Jerusalem which David and his people crossed fleeing from Absalom.

The high priests and Levites sent back to Jerusalem with the Ark

¹⁹Zadok and Abiathar, the high priests also come out along with the Levites, carrying the Ark of God. ²⁰They set down the Ark and Abiathar offered sacrifices until all the people had finished leaving the city.

²¹Then David said to Zadok and Abiathar, "Return the Ark of God to the city. If I find favour in the Lord's eyes he will bring me back and let me see it again. But if he is not pleased with me, let him do whatever seems good to him. ²²I will wait at the ford in the desert until I receive word from you."

²³So Zadok and Abiathar took the Ark of God back to Jerusalem and stayed there. But David continued up the Mount of Olives, weeping as he went. ²⁴His head was covered and he walked barefoot, and all the people with him also covered their heads and wept.

David's adviser Hushai to remain in Jerusalem to counter Ahithophel's advice

²⁵Now David had been told, "Ahithophel your adviser is among the conspirators with Absalom." So David prayed saying, "O Lord, turn Ahithophel's counsel into foolishness."

²⁶When David reached the summit of the Mount of Olives, Hushai his friend and adviser was there to meet him. His robe was torn and there was dust on his head.

²⁷David said to him, "If you go with me you will be a burden to me, but if you return to the city and say to Absalom, 'I will be your servant O king, as I was your father's servant,' then you can help me by frustrating Ahithophel's advice. ²⁸Zadok and Abiathar the high priests will be there with you. Tell them what you hear in the palace and have them send their two sons to me at the ford with anything you hear."

*12 A concubine was a wife of inferior social status.

1 KINGS 10

²⁹So Hushai returned to Jerusalem, arriving just as Absalom was entering the city.

Ziba provides donkeys and provisions

³⁰When David had gone a short distance beyond the summit, there was Ziba the steward of Jonathan's son Mephibosheth waiting to meet him. ³¹He had a string of donkeys saddled and loaded with 200 loaves of bread, 100 cakes of raisins, 100 cakes of figs and a skin of wine.

³²Ziba said to David, "The donkeys are for the king's household to ride on. The bread and fruit are for the men to eat, and the wine is to revive those who become weary in the desert."

Ziba accuses Jonathan's son Mephibosheth of rebellion against David

³³David asked, "Where is Mephibosheth?"

Ziba replied, "He is remaining in Jerusalem, for he thinks, 'Today I may get back my grandfather's kingdom.'"

Ziba rewarded for his support

³⁴The king said to Ziba, "All that belonged to Mephibosheth is now yours."

Shimei a relative of Saul curses David

³⁵A little further on, a man named Shimei, a Benjamite from the same clan as Saul, came out from the town of Bahurim. Cursing he pelted David and his officials with stones, even though the troops and the special guard surrounded the king.

³⁶As he cursed David he shouted, "Get out, get out, you man of blood! You scoundrel! Jehovah has repaid you for the blood shed in the house of Saul in whose place you have reigned. ³⁷He has handed the kingdom over to your son Absalom and you have come to ruin, for you are a man of blood!"

David prevents Abishai from killing Shimei

³⁸Abishai said to David, "Why should this dog curse my lord the king! Let me go over there and take off his head!"

³⁹But the king said, "Will you never cease you sons of Zeruiah? He may be cursing me because the Lord said to him, 'Curse David! Who can know?'"

⁴⁰David then said to all the men of his bodyguard, "My son who is my own flesh is trying to take my life. How much more then this Benjamite. Leave him alone and let him curse. ⁴¹It may be that Jehovah will see my distress and repay me with good for the cursing I am receiving today."

⁴²So David and his men continued along the road, while Shimei walked along the hillside opposite, cursing the king and throwing stones at him and showering him with dirt.

The king and his supporters reach the Jordan

⁴³Later that day the king and all the people with him arrived at the ford of the Jordan, exhausted, and there refreshed themselves.^{F*}

10

Hushai offers to act as adviser to Absalom

¹Meanwhile Absalom and his men occupied Jerusalem, and Ahithophel was with him as adviser.

²David's friend and adviser Hushai went to Absalom and said to him, "Long live the king!"

³Absalom replied, "Is this the loyalty you show to my father, who is your friend? Why did you not go with him?"

⁴Hushai said, "I belong to the one chosen by Jehovah and by all the men of Israel. Should I not serve the son as I served the father?"

On Ahithophel's counsel Absalom lies with David's concubines in a tent on the roof of the palace

⁵Then Absalom turned to Ahithophel and said, "Give us your counsel. What should we do next?"

⁶Ahithophel answered, "Lie with your father's concubines whom he left to take care of the palace. When all Israel hears how offensive you have made yourself to your father, the hand of everyone with you will be strengthened."

⁷So they pitched a tent for Absalom on the roof of the palace, and he lay with his father David's concubines, in broad daylight in the sight of all Israel.^{F*}

Ahithophel's counsel like that of a prophet of God

⁸Now in those days the counsel that Ahithophel gave was like that of a prophet of God and was esteemed both by David and by his son Absalom.

Ahithophel wants to take 12,000 men and destroy David that night

⁹Later that day Ahithophel said to Absalom, "Let me choose 12,000 men and set out tonight in pursuit of David. I will attack him while he is weary and weak. I will strike him with terror and all the people with him will flee. ¹⁰But I will only strike down the king and bring all the other people back to you, as a bride comes to her husband."

¹¹This plan seemed good to Absalom and to the elders of Israel with him. But Absalom said, "Call Hushai and let us hear his advice."

Hushai counters Ahithophel's counsel

¹²When Hushai came to him Absalom said, "Should we do as Ahithophel counsels? If not, give us your opinion."

¹³Hushai replied, "The counsel Ahithophel has given is not good this time. You know your father and his men, they are warriors and as fierce as a wild bear robbed of her cubs. ¹⁴Besides, your father is skilled in warfare and will not spend the night in the open with his army. Even now he is hidden in a cave or some other place."

¹⁵"And when some of our men fall at the first attack, whoever hears about it will say, 'There

*7 This was in fulfilment of the curse of the Lord through Nathan the prophet (1 Kings 7:14-15).

*43 The distance travelled would have been about 35 km.

has been a slaughter among the men who follow Absalom.' Then even the heart of the bravest soldier will melt with fear, for all Israel knows that your father and his men are mighty warriors."

Hushai counsels Absalom to raise a vast army and personally lead an attack on David

¹⁶"My counsel is this, 'Let all Israel from Dan to Beersheba, as numerous as the sand on the seashore, be gathered to you with you yourself leading them into battle. ¹⁷Then we will attack him wherever he may be found and fall on him as dew settles on the ground."

¹⁸"Neither he nor any of his men will be left alive. If he withdraws into a city then all Israel will bring ropes to that city and demolish it."

¹⁹Absalom and the men of Israel said, "The advice of Hushai is better than that of Ahithophel."

Hushai sends a warning message to David

²⁰Then Hushai went and informed the high priests of what had taken place and said to them, "Have your sons take this message quickly to David and warn him, 'Do not spend the night at the ford in the desert. Cross over without fail or the king and all the people with him may be destroyed."

²¹So the two young sons of the priests departed to warn David. When they arrived late that night they said to him, "Cross the river at once, for Ahithophel has counselled such and such against you."

David and his people cross the Jordan that night and next day travel on to Mahanaim

²²So that night David and all the people with him crossed the Jordan, and by daybreak they had all crossed over.

²³The next day David and his people travelled to Mahanaim in Gilead,^{F*} a Levite town of refuge. They were exhausted when they arrived.

Welcome provisions from David's friends

²⁴However David's friends Barzillai, Shobi and Makir met them there with bedding, basins, earthen vessels, wheat, barley, flour, roasted grain, beans, lentils, honey, curds, sheep and cheese made from cow's milk for David and his people to eat. ²⁵For they said, "The people have become hungry, tired and thirsty in the desert."

Ahithophel returns home and takes his own life

²⁶Meanwhile, when Ahithophel saw that his advice had not been followed, he saddled his donkey and set out for his home town. He put his house in order and then hanged himself.

Absalom musters an army and crosses the Jordan to destroy David

²⁷Absalom appointed Amasa, a cousin of Joab as commander over his army. ²⁸Then Absalom mustered men from all over Israel and crossed the Jordan to destroy David.

David organises his men but does not go with them

²⁹David in turn mustered all the men who had followed him, and appointed commanders of thousands and hundreds and sent them out. One third under the command of Joab, one third under his brother Abishai, and one third under Ittai the Philistine.

³⁰David had said to his men, "I will march out with you." But his men replied, "You must not do so. If we are forced to flee they will not care about us. Your life to them is worth ten thousand of us. Give us support from the town."

David's men march out to battle

³¹So David stood by the gate of Mahanaim while his men marched out to the battle in units of hundreds and thousands.

David gives orders that Absalom be unharmed

³²The king commanded Joab, Abishai and Ittai saying, "Be gentle with young Absalom for my sake."

³³All the troops heard the king giving this instruction concerning Absalom to each of his commanders.

11

David's men defeat Absalom's army

¹The battle took place in the forest of Ephraim. There the army of Absalom was defeated by David's men and the slaughter was great, 20,000 men fell that day.

²The battle spread out over the whole countryside and more men became lost in the forest than fell by the sword.

Absalom found hanging alive with his head wedged in a large oak tree

³Now as Absalom was riding his mule through the forest, his head got wedged in the branches of a large oak tree and he was left hanging in mid-air when his mule ran off.

⁴One of David's men found him and told Joab, "Absalom is hanging alive in an oak tree!"

Joab rebukes the finder for not killing Absalom

⁵Joab said, "Why did you not strike him to the ground? I would have given you ten shekels^{F*} of silver and a warrior's belt."

⁶But the man replied, "Even for a thousand shekels I would not lift my hand against the king's son, for I heard the king say to you, 'Protect young Absalom for my sake.' ⁷If I had killed him the king would learn of it, and you would not support me."

Absalom is killed by Joab and his men

⁸Joab said, "I will not waste time like this with you." So he took three spears in his hand and went and hurled them at Absalom's heart while he was still hanging alive in the oak tree. ⁹Then ten of his men surrounded Absalom and struck him and killed him.

¹⁰Then Joab sounded the trumpet and

*23 Mahanaim was about 35 kms north-east of the Jordan.

*5 A shekel of silver was worth about a days wages.

1 KINGS 12

David's army stopped pursuing the army of Absalom.

Absalom's body thrown into a pit

¹¹They threw Absalom's body into a pit in the forest and piled rocks over him. Meanwhile all the Israelites who had followed Absalom fled to their homes.

An Ethiopian and the high priest's son run with the news to David

¹²Then Ahimaaz, the young son of Zadok the high priest said to Joab, "Let me run and take the news to the king."

¹³Joab replied, "You are not the one to take this news. The king's son is dead." ¹⁴Then Joab turned to an Ethiopian and said, "Go tell the king what you have seen." The Ethiopian bowed before Joab and ran off.

¹⁵The son of Zadok came again to Joab and said, "Come what may, let me run behind the Ethiopian."

¹⁶Joab replied, "My son, why do you want to go? You have no news that will bring you a reward."

¹⁷"Come what may, I want to run." he said.

¹⁸"Very well then, run!" said Joab, and the son of Zadok ran by way of the plain and outran the Ethiopian.

The watchman sees the runners at a distance

¹⁹David was sitting in the gateway of Mahanaim when the watchman on the wall reported a man running alone. Then the watchman reported another man running, and said, "The first one runs like young Ahimaaz, son of Zadok the priest."

²⁰David said, "He is a good man, he must bring good news."

David hears the news

²¹As Ahimaaz neared he called out to the king, "All is well!" Then he ran up and bowed down and said, "Praise be to Jehovah who has delivered my lord the king from the men who lifted their hands against him."

²²David asked, "Is young Absalom safe?"

Ahimaaz answered, "I saw great confusion but I do not know what it was."

²³Then the Ethiopian arrived and said, "My lord the king, hear the good news. Jehovah has delivered you today from all who rose up against you."

²⁴David asked the Ethiopian, "Is young Absalom safe?"

²⁵He replied, "May all who rise up to harm you be like that young man."

David grieves greatly for Absalom

²⁶David was deeply shaken and went immediately up to the room over the gateway, covering his face and sobbing loudly as he went and crying out, "O my son Absalom! My son! My son Absalom! If only I had died instead of you! O Absalom, my son, my son!"^{F*}

David's men shamed by the kings grief

²⁷When Joab arrived he was told, "The king is weeping and mourning for Absalom." So the victory that day was turned into mourning. David's army stole into the city like men shamed after fleeing from battle.

Joab rebukes David harshly

²⁸Joab went into the room where David was and said to him, "Today you have humiliated the men who saved your life and the lives of your family. You love those who hate you and hate those who love you. ²⁹You have made it clear today that the commanders and men mean nothing to you. I see that you would be pleased if Absalom were alive and all of us were dead."

Joab threatens David with desertion

³⁰"Now go out and encourage your men. I swear by Jehovah if you do not go out, not a man will be left with you by nightfall, and it will be worse for you than all the calamities that have come upon you from your youth until now!"

David again takes his seat in the gateway to encourage his men

³¹So David arose to encourage his men and took his seat in the gateway, and the men were told, "The king is sitting in the gateway." Then they all came and stood before him.

12

All Israel talk of accepting David back as king

¹Meanwhile, throughout all Israel the people were debating with one another saying, "King David was the one who rescued us from the Philistines, and Absalom whom we anointed to rule over us has died in battle. So what do you think? Should we bring David back?"

David suggests the elders of Judah be the first to invite him back

²When David heard what was being said he sent this message to Zadok and Abiathar the high priests in Jerusalem, "Say to the elders of Judah, 'You are my brothers, my own flesh and bone, why should you be the last tribe to bring the king back to his palace. The talk of all Israel has reached my ears.'"

David appoints Amasa his army commander in place of Joab

³"Say to Amasa, 'Are you not also my own flesh and bone? From now on you will be commander of my army in place of Joab.'"

⁴When Amasa heard this, he swayed the hearts of the people so the elders of Judah sent word to the king, "Return, you and all your men."

The men of Judah meet David at the Jordan

⁵So David set out and travelled to the ford of the Jordan. The men of Judah went down to meet the king and bring him over the river.

*26 David's grief was no doubt greatly intensified by the knowledge that it was punishment for his own sin that led to the death of his son (1 Kings 7:13).



The river Jordan

Shimei begs for forgiveness

⁶Shimei the Benjamite who had cursed and thrown stones at David was also there to meet the king, along with a thousand Benjamites.

⁷Shimei crossed the Jordan and fell prostrate before David and said, "May my lord not remember how your servant did wrong on the day the king left Jerusalem. For I know that I have sinned."

Abishai again wants to put Shimei to death but David spares Shimei

⁸Abishai said, "Should not Shimei be put to death, for he cursed the Lord's anointed?"

⁹David replied, "What do you and I have in common you sons of Zeruiah? * You have become my enemies. Should anyone be put to death in Israel today?"

¹⁰The king said to Shimei, "You shall not die."

Mephibosheth tells his version of events

¹¹Mephibosheth the son of Jonathan also went down to meet the king. He had not washed, or trimmed his beard from the day the king left.

¹²David asked him, "Why did you not go with me Mephibosheth?"

¹³He replied, "My lord, since I your servant am lame I gave the order, 'Have my donkey saddled and I will ride on it and go with the king.' But Ziba my servant betrayed me and lied about me. ¹⁴My lord the king is like an angel of God, so do whatever pleases you. All my grandfather Saul's descendants deserved nothing but death, but you gave your servant a place among those who sat at your table, so what right do I have to make any more appeals to the king?"

David divides Saul's property between Ziba and Mephibosheth

¹⁵The king said to him, "I have decided that you and Ziba are to divide the property."

¹⁶Mephibosheth said, "Let him take everything, now that my lord the king has arrived home safely."

Barzillai invited to live with the king

¹⁷Barzillai, David's friend had accompanied him to the Jordan to send him on his way. He had provided for the king during his stay in Mahanaim, for he was very wealthy.

¹⁸David said to Barzillai, "Stay with me in Jerusalem and I will provide for you."

Barzillai says he is too old at 80 to enjoy the king's pleasures

¹⁹But Barzillai was an old man and he answered, "How many more years will I live? I am now eighty years old. Can I taste what I eat and drink? Can I still hear the voices of men and women singers? Why should your servant be an added burden to my lord the king?"

²⁰"I will cross the Jordan with the king for a short distance, but let me return to die in my own town, near the tomb of my father and mother."

Barzillai is blessed by David

²¹The king said, "Anything you desire from me I will do for you," and he kissed Barzillai and gave him his blessing.

The men of Israel are jealous of Judah

²²Then the king crossed over the Jordan, led by the elders of Judah.

²³However the other men of Israel started asking, "Why did the men of Judah bring the king across the Jordan?"

²⁴The men of Judah answered, "We did this because the king is closely related to us. Why are you angry about it?"

²⁵They answered, "We have ten shares in the king and therefore a greater claim on David than you. Why do you treat us with contempt? Were we not the first to speak of bringing back our king?"

²⁶But the men Judah of responded fiercely.

The men of Israel follow Sheba and desert David

²⁷Then a troublemaker named Sheba, a Benjamite sounded a trumpet and shouted:

"We have no share in David!"

"Every man to his tent O Israel!"

²⁸So all the men of Israel except the men of Judah deserted David.

13

David's defiled concubines kept in confinement

¹When David arrived back at his palace, he took the ten concubines that Absalom had lain with and put them in a house under guard. ²He provided for them but did not lie with them again. They were kept in confinement until the day of their death, living as widows.

Amasa ordered to gather all the men of Judah within three days

³Then the king said to Amasa, "Gather all the men of Judah to me within three days."

*9 Zeruiah was David's older sister and mother of his two aggressive army commanders Joab and Abishai.

Amasa delayed so David sends Abishai and his men to pursue Sheba

⁴But Amasa had not returned after three days, so David said to Abishai, “Sheba the Benjamite may do us more harm than Absalom did. Take your men and pursue him, or he will escape from us.”

Joab and his warriors go with Abishai

⁵So Abishai and his men went out to pursue Sheba. Joab and his men followed after him, all the mighty warriors.

Amasa and the men of Judah meet them

⁶When they reached the great rock in Gibeon they met Amasa and the men of Judah.

Joab murders Amasa

⁷Now Joab was wearing a belt with a dagger in its sheath. He stepped forward and said to Amasa, “How are you my brother?” Then he took Amasa by the beard with his right hand to kiss him. ⁸Amasa was not aware of the dagger in Joab’s left hand and Joab plunged it into Amasa’s belly and he died.

⁹Amasa lay in his blood in the middle of the road and all the men stopped to look at him, so one of Joab’s men dragged him off the road into a field and threw a garment over him.

The men of Judah follow Joab

¹⁰Then all the men of Judah followed Joab and Abishai to pursue Sheba.

Sheba besieged in the town of Abel

¹¹Now Sheba had passed northward through Israel to the fortified town of Abel, gathering men as he went.

¹²Then Joab and his army came and besieged Abel. They built a mound against the town wall and began battering it down.

A wise woman of Abel pleads with Joab

¹³But a wise woman called down to Joab from the wall and said, “We are a peaceful and faithful people. Why are you trying to destroy a town that is a mother in Israel?”

Joab asks that Sheba be handed over

¹⁴Joab replied, “That is not the case. A Benjamite named Sheba has rebelled against the king. Hand over this one man and I will withdraw from the town.”

¹⁵The woman said to Joab, “His head shall be thrown to you from the wall.”

Sheba is beheaded by the citizens of Abel

¹⁶Then the woman went to the people with her wise advice and they seized Sheba and cut off his head and threw it down to Joab. ¹⁷So Joab sounded the trumpet and his men withdrew and returned to their homes, and Joab returned to the king in Jerusalem.

14

The Lord is angry with Israel and permits Satan to tempt David

¹Now the anger of the Lord was again kindled

against Israel^{F*} and he permitted Satan to tempt David by saying, “Take a census of all the men of Israel and Judah.”

David is tempted to pride and orders Joab to count all his nation’s fighting men

²David said to Joab, “Go throughout all the tribes of Israel and register the fighting men, that I may know their number.”

Joab tries to dissuade David but is unsuccessful

³But Joab replied, “May Jehovah your God multiply your troops a hundred times over. Why does my lord the king want to do such a thing?”

⁴But David’s will prevailed, so Joab and the army commanders departed to register all the fighting men of Israel.

1,300,000 fighting men excluding the Levites and Benjaminites

⁵After ten months they had gone throughout the entire land and returned to Jerusalem.

⁶Joab reported to the king that there were 800,000 able-bodied men in Israel who could handle a sword, and in Judah, 500,000.

⁷However Joab did not include the tribe of Benjamin or the Levites in the numbering, for the command of the king displeased him.

David is conscience-stricken and asks the Lord to forgive his sin

⁸David was conscience-stricken after he had numbered the fighting men and he prayed to the Lord saying, “O Jehovah, I have sinned greatly in what I have done. Please forgive your servant, I have done a very foolish thing.”^{F*}

David asked to choose from three penalties to come upon Israel

⁹That same evening this word of the Lord came to Gad the prophet, David’s seer, “**Say to David, ‘Jehovah says, I give you three choices. Choose one of them. ‘10** Shall there come three years of famine in your land? Or three months of fleeing from your enemies while they pursue you? Or three days of plague?”

David chooses the three day plague

¹¹David said to Gad, “I am in deep distress, nevertheless let us fall into the hands of the Lord, for his mercy is great, do not let us fall into the hands of men.”

The plague begins and 70,000 die in Israel

¹²So the Lord sent a plague on Israel, beginning that morning and 70,000 people died, from Dan to Beersheba.

The Lord stays the hand of the destroying angel and Jerusalem is spared the plague

¹³However when the angel of the Lord who

*1 Probably because of the widespread acceptance of Absalom as king and the rejection of the divinely anointed David. This view is further strengthened by the fact that David’s family and Jerusalem were spared the plague, see verses 13-15.

*8 By taking a census to determine the size of his fighting forces, presumably to compare his glory with that of other great kings, David was guilty of pride. However it appears that the Lord’s intention was to create an opportunity to purge Israel of the rebellious elements, possibly to ensure a peaceful reign for Solomon as he promises David in the following verse 28.

was striking down the people came to afflict Jerusalem, the Lord relented and said to the angel, **“Enough! Stay your hand!”**

David sees the destroying angel

¹⁴David, who was wearing sackcloth and ashes looked up toward the threshing floor of Araunah on Mount Moriah and saw the destroying angel standing between earth and heaven, with a drawn sword in his hand stretched over Jerusalem.

David prays that the people of Jerusalem be spared and that he and his family suffer instead

¹⁵Then David prayed to the Lord saying, “I am the one who has sinned and done wrong. The people are but sheep, what have they done? ¹⁶Let your hand fall upon me and my family.”

David commanded by Gad the prophet to build an altar on the threshing floor

¹⁷Then the angel commanded Gad the prophet to go to David and say to him, **“Go up and build an altar to Jehovah on the threshing floor of Araunah the Jesubite on Mount Moriah.”** F*



Threshing floor where grain is separated from the sheaves by yoked oxen dragging a heavy wooden sled.

David goes out and buys the threshing floor

¹⁸Now Araunah the Jesubite had been threshing wheat and had seen the angel of the Lord. His four sons had hidden themselves but Araunah continued to thresh wheat.

¹⁹When he saw the king and his men coming up to him, Araunah went out and bowed before the king and said, “Why has my lord the king come to his servant?”

²⁰David answered, “I have come to buy your threshing floor to build an altar to the Lord, that the plague will cease upon the people.”

²¹Araunah said to David, “Let my lord the king take whatever pleases him and offer it up. Here are oxen for the burnt offering, and here are threshing sledges and yokes for the wood.”

²²David replied, “I shall pay full price. I will not sacrifice to the Lord that which cost me nothing.”

*17 Mount Moriah was within the confines of Jerusalem and later became the site of the temple. It was also the place where the Lord had commanded Abraham to sacrifice his son Isaac over 1000 years earlier (Genesis 15:1-10).

²³So David bought the threshing floor for 600 shekels of gold^{F*} and the oxen for 50 shekels of silver.

David builds an altar and sacrifices

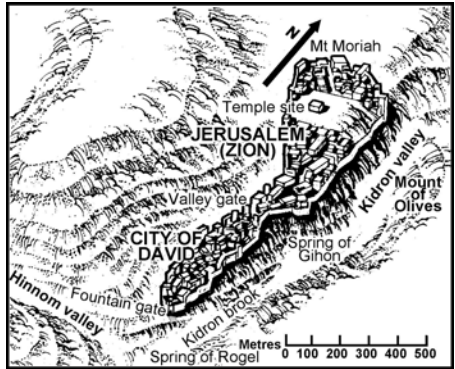
²⁴Then David built an altar to the Lord there and sacrificed burnt offerings.

The Lord answers with fire from heaven

²⁵The Lord answered with fire from heaven, and commanded the angel to put his sword back into its sheath.

The future Temple to be built on that site

²⁶David said, **“The house of the Lord is to be built here.”**



Jerusalem during the reign of David and Solomon. The city later expanded out westward to the left.

David's son Solomon to build the Temple

²⁷After this David summoned to Jerusalem all the officials, commanders, warriors, and mighty men of Israel.

²⁸In their presence he said to his son Solomon, “My son, I had it in my heart to build a house for the name of Jehovah my God, but the word of the Lord came to me saying, **“You are not to build a house for my name, for you have shed much blood on the earth and have fought many wars. ²⁹But you shall have a son who will be a man of peace. His name is to be Solomon and I will grant Israel peace during his reign. He is the one to build a house for my name. ³⁰He shall be my son and I shall be his father, and I will establish his throne in Israel forever.”**

³¹“Now my son, the Lord be with you and may you have success and build the house of Jehovah your God. ³²May he give you discretion and understanding when he places you in command over Israel, so that you may keep all his commandments. Be strong and courageous.”

David challenges the leaders of Israel to provide materials for the Temple

³³David then addressed those assembled and said, “My son Solomon is young and inexperienced, and the house to be built for the

*23 About 7kg.

1 KINGS 15

Lord must be of great magnificence and fame and splendour in the sight of all nations. Therefore I have made preparations for it.”

³⁴“From my own treasure I have provided for the Temple of the Lord, 3000 talents of gold and 7000 talents of silver. Who else will also offer willingly to the Lord?”

³⁵Then the leaders present agreed to give willingly toward the Temple of God; 5000 talents of gold, 10,000 talents of silver, 10,000 talents of bronze, and 100,000 talents of iron.

³⁶The people rejoiced at the willing response of their leaders. David the king rejoiced also and praised the Lord, and all the people bowed low before Jehovah and the king.

The people rejoice and offer sacrifices

³⁷The next day the people offered sacrifices, 1000 bulls, 1000 rams, 1000 male lambs and other sacrifices in abundance. They ate and drank with great joy that day.

David gives Solomon the plans for the Temple

³⁸Then David gave Solomon the plans for the Temple, its side rooms, courts and the inner sanctuary, all that the Spirit had put in his mind.

David instructs Solomon regarding the Temple

³⁹He said to Solomon, “I have taken great pains to provide for the Temple of the Lord. 100,000 talents^{F*} of gold, 1,000,000 talents^{F*} of silver, and quantities of bronze and iron too great to be weighed, and wood and stone. You may add to them.”

⁴⁰“You have craftsmen beyond number; stone-cutters, masons, carpenters, and men skilled in working gold, silver, bronze and iron. ⁴¹Now begin the work and may the Lord be with you.”

⁴²David also provided more cedar logs than could be counted, for the Sidonians and men of Tyre had brought large numbers of them to David.

Solomon also instructed regarding the priests and Levites

⁴³He also gave Solomon instructions as to how the priests and Levites were to serve in the Temple, and the articles that were to be used in its service.

15

David almost killed in battle due to exhaustion

¹Once again the Philistines came to war against Israel, and David went out with his men to fight. But during the battle he became exhausted and Ishbi-benob, a descendant of the Anakim^{F*} who was of great height and whose bronze spearhead weighed 300 shekels^{F*} was about to kill him.

David no longer to go into battle

²Abishai came to David's rescue and struck the Philistine down and killed him. ³David's

*39 About 3,500 tonnes.

*39 About 34,000 tonnes.

*1 A very tall race now extinct. Goliath was an Anakim.

*1 About 3.5kg (8lbs).

men said to him, “Never again must you go out with us to battle. The lamp of Israel must not be extinguished.”

The exploits of David's thirty mighty warriors

⁴During other battles with the Philistines, David's warrior Sibbecai killed Saph, and Elhanan killed the brother of Goliath. Both were descendants of the Anakim.

⁵In another battle at Gath, there was a huge man with six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot. He too was descended from the Anakim. ⁶When he taunted Israel, Jonathan the brother of David killed him.

The names and exploits of David's mighty 'Three'

⁷The names of David's three mightiest warriors were, Jashobeam who was chief of the three. He raised his spear against 800 men whom he killed in one encounter.

⁸Next to him was Eleazar. He was with David when they taunted the Philistines and then retreated. But he stood his ground and struck down the Philistines until his hand could not unclasp his sword. David's men returned to Eleazar, but only to strip the dead.

⁹Next was Shammah. When the Philistines banded together in a field of lentils, Israel's troops fled, but Shammah took his stand in the middle of the field and struck the Philistines down, and the Lord brought about a great victory.”

How the 'Three' risked their lives getting water for David

¹⁰Once during harvest time, these three of David's thirty chief warriors were with him at the stronghold in the caves near Adullam. The Philistines were encamped in the Valley of the Giants near Bethlehem.

¹¹David longed for water and said, “O that I could drink water from the well near the gate of Bethlehem.”

¹²So these three mighty men broke through the Philistine lines and drew water from the well and carried it back to David.

David refused to drink the water and poured it out to the Lord

¹³But David refused to drink it. Instead he poured it out to the Lord saying, “Far be it from me O Jehovah to drink this water. Is it not the blood of these men who went at the peril of their lives? Far be it from me to drink it.”

¹⁴Such were the exploits of David's three mightiest men.

Abishai's exploits

¹⁵Abishai the brother of Joab was commander of David's men. He raised his spear against 300 men whom he killed at one time, and so became as famous as the three.

Benaiah's exploits

¹⁶Benaiah was also a valiant warrior who performed great exploits. He struck down two of Moab's best men, and once he went down into a pit on a snowy day and killed a lion.

¹⁷He also struck down an Egyptian of great height, five cubits tall.^{F*} The Egyptian had a spear in his hand and Benaiah had only a club.
¹⁸He wrested the Egyptian's own spear from his hand and killed him with it.

¹⁹Benaiah too was as famous as the three mighty men. He was held in more honour than any of the thirty, but was not included among the three. David later put him in charge of his bodyguard.

The last psalm of David

²⁰This is the last psalm^{F*} of David. Hear the words of David son of Jesse, a man exalted by the Most High, a man anointed by the God of Israel, a composer of sweet psalms.

²¹*"The Spirit of Jehovah came upon me, the God of Israel spoke:"*

²²*"When one rules over men with justice and reverence for God, he is like the light of sunrise on a cloudless morning."*

²³*"He is like the freshness of rain that brings forth grass from the earth."*

²⁴*"But godless men are cast aside like thorns, and are burned up where they lie."*

16

King David becomes old and cannot keep warm

¹Now David became old and could not keep warm, even with covers over him.

A beautiful girl Abishag found to warm and attend the king

²His officials said, "Let us find a young virgin to nurse and attend the king and lie beside him to keep him warm."

³So they searched Israel for a beautiful girl and found Abishag. She attended and served the king, but he did not know her sexually.

David's son Adonijah conspires to be king

⁴Now Adonijah was David's fourth son. He was born after Absalom and was also very handsome.

⁵He said to himself, "I will be king."^{F*} So he prepared for himself a chariot and horsemen and fifty men to run ahead of him.

⁶Joab, the commander of the army and Abiathar the high priest supported him, but Zadok the high priest, Benaiah the commander of the king's bodyguard and Nathan the prophet remained loyal to David.

Adonijah proclaims himself king

⁷Adonijah offered sacrifice on a stone at the Spring of Rogel, just outside Jerusalem and held a feast. He invited all of his brothers except Solomon and many of the royal officials to the feast, and there he proclaimed himself king of Israel.

*18 About 7ft 6" tall.

*20 A psalm is a sacred song. Most of the psalms in the book of Psalms were composed by David.

*5 David's second born son Daniel, (to Abigail) is not mentioned again after his birth and may have died. The eldest surviving son was normally heir to the throne. Adonijah was about 35 years old at this time.

Nathan the prophet has Solomon's mother Bathsheba inform David

⁸While this was happening, Nathan the prophet went to Bathsheba the mother of Solomon and said, "Adonijah has been proclaimed king of Israel without David knowing it. ⁹To save your own life and the life of your son Solomon, go in at once to David and speak the words I tell you."

¹⁰So Bathsheba went into the aged king in his room where his nurse Abishag was attending him and bowed low before him. David said, "What do you wish?"

¹¹Bathsheba answered, "My lord, you swore to me that Solomon would be king after you, but now Adonijah has become king and my lord does not know about it. The eyes of all Israel are upon you to hear who will sit on the throne of my lord the king after him."

Nathan enters and confirms all that Bathsheba has said

¹²While she was still speaking, Nathan the prophet entered the room and bowed with his face to the floor and confirmed what Bathsheba had said.

David orders that Solomon be anointed king

¹³David immediately summoned Benaiah the commander of his bodyguard and said to him, "Set Solomon my son on my own mule and take him out to the Spring of Gihon.^{F*} ¹⁴There Zadok the high priest and Nathan the prophet are to anoint him king over Israel. Sound a trumpet and shout, 'Long live King Solomon!' ¹⁵Then you are to bring him back to sit on my throne and reign in my place."

¹⁶Benaiah said, "As Jehovah was with my lord the king may he also be with your son Solomon. May he make his throne even greater than the throne of David."

Solomon escorted to the Spring of Gihon on David's mule and there anointed king of Israel

¹⁷So Benaiah and all of the king's bodyguard along with Zadok the high priest and Nathan the prophet, put Solomon on David's mule and escorted him to the Spring of Gihon. There Zadok the high priest took the horn of oil from the sacred tent and anointed Solomon king over Israel.

¹⁸Then they sounded a trumpet and shouted, "Long live King Solomon!"

All Jerusalem gather and rejoice and follow Solomon back to the palace

¹⁹All of Jerusalem gathered, and followed them back up to the palace, playing flutes and rejoicing so greatly that the ground shook with the sound.

Adonijah and his guests hear the news and flee

²⁰Adonijah and the guests who were with him heard the noise just as they were finishing their feast. Joab asked, "What is the meaning of the noise in the city?"

*13 The Spring of Gihon was located just outside Jerusalem.

1 KINGS 17

²¹Even as he spoke, Jonathan son of Abiathar the high priest arrived and announced, "King David has made Solomon king! That is the noise you hear!"

²²At these words all of Adonijah's guests arose trembling and fled.

Adonijah clings hold of the horns of the altar in fear of Solomon

²³Adonijah also was in great fear of his brother Solomon and went to the tent of the Lord and took hold of the horns of the altar.^{F*}

²⁴Solomon was told, "Adonijah fears you and is clinging to the horns of the altar saying, 'Let King Solomon swear to me that he will not put his servant to death.'"

²⁵Solomon replied, "If he proves himself to be a righteous man he will not be harmed, but if evil is found in him he will die."

Adonijah's life spared by Solomon

²⁶So Adonijah was brought before Solomon and bowed down to him. Solomon said, "Return to your house."

The Lord's conditional covenant to David to always have a descendant on the throne of Israel

²⁷When the time drew near for David to die, he called for Solomon and said, "I am about to go the way of all the earth, so be strong and show yourself a man. ²⁸Do what Jehovah your God requires. Walk in all his ways and keep his commandments, so that you will prosper in all you do."

²⁹"Then the Lord will keep his covenant to me for he has said, '**If your descendants walk faithfully before me with all their heart and soul, you will never fail to have a man on the throne of Israel.**'"

David's last instructions to Solomon Joab to be put to death

³⁰"Now you are aware how Joab murdered Abner and Amasa, two commanders of Israel's armies. Deal with him according to your wisdom. Let not his grey head go down to Sheol^{F*} in peace."

Kindness to be shown to the sons of Barzillai

³¹"But show kindness to the sons of Barzillai of Gilead. Let them be among those who eat at your table, for he stood by me when I fled from your brother Absalom."

Shimei to be put to death

³²"Remember Shimei the Benjamite, who called down terrible curses on me the day I left Jerusalem. I swore that I would not put him to death, but do not hold him guiltless. ³³You are a man of wisdom and will know what to do with him. Send his grey head down to Sheol in blood."

King David dies

³⁴Then David died and was buried in the City

of David.^{F*} He had reigned forty years over Israel.^{F*}



Exterior of David's tomb in Jerusalem.

17

Adonijah has Bathsheba ask Solomon to give him Abishag as his wife

¹After the death of David, Adonijah went to Bathsheba, the mother of Solomon and said to her, "As you know, the kingdom was mine. All Israel looked to me as their king, but the kingdom has gone to my brother, for it came to him from the Lord. ²Now, I have a request to make of you, please ask King Solomon to give Abishag to me as my wife."

³Bathsheba replied, "I will speak to the king for you." So she went in to speak to the king.

⁴Solomon stood from the throne and bowed down to his mother, then he ordered a seat brought in for her and she sat at his right hand.

⁵She said, "I have a small request to make of you."

⁶Solomon replied, "Ask it my mother. I will not refuse you."

⁷So she said, "Let Abishag be given in marriage to your brother Adonijah."

Solomon is angry at Adonijah's request

⁸Solomon answered, "You request Abishag for Adonijah? You may as well request the kingdom for him also, and for Abiathar and

*23 The altar was a place of refuge affording protection until a person could be tried for an alleged crime.

*30 Sheol is the Hebrew name for the spirit world of the dead.

*34 The City of David was the fortress area of Jerusalem.

*34 As David was aged 30 when he became king, he would have been about 70 when he died (1 Kings 1:22).

Joab. He is after all my older brother.” F*

Adonijah is put to death

⁹Then Solomon made a vow saying, “May God deal with me severely if Adonijah does not pay with his life for this scheme he has devised.” So the king gave the order and Benaiah went out and struck down Adonijah and he died.



Interior of David's tomb.

Abiathar the high priest is removed from his priesthood office

¹⁰The king then summoned Abiathar the high priest and said to him, “Return to your fields in Anathoth. You deserve to die but I will not put you to death, for you carried the Ark of Jehovah and shared in my father’s hardships.”

¹¹So Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood, fulfilling the word the Lord spoke regarding the house of Eli, and Zadok was put in his place.

Joab takes refuge at the altar

¹²When the news of all this reached Joab, he fled to the tent of the Lord and took hold of the horns of the altar, but Solomon ordered Benaiah saying, “Take him outside and strike him down.”

¹³Benaiah entered the tent of the Lord and said to Joab, “The king says, ‘Come out!’”

Joab answered, “I will die here!”

¹⁴Benaiah reported to Solomon what Joab had said and the king replied, “Very well, do as he says. Strike him down there and clear my father’s house of the guilt of innocent blood. Both Abner and Amasa whom he murdered were more upright men than he.”

Joab is put to death at the altar

¹⁵So Benaiah killed Joab at the altar and buried him on his land in the desert. ¹⁶Solomon appointed Benaiah as commander of the army in his place.

Shimei the Benjamite ordered never to leave Jerusalem

¹⁷Then Solomon sent for Shimei the Benjamite and said to him, “Build yourself a house and live here in Jerusalem. The day you cross the Kidron brook and leave Jerusalem you die. Your blood will be upon your own head.”

*8 Marrying David’s wife Abishag, combined with his seniority and popularity, would greatly strengthen Adonijah’s claim to the throne.

¹⁸“Your servant will do as my lord has said,” Shimei answered the king.

Shimei leaves Jerusalem and is put to death

¹⁹However three years later, two of Shimei’s slaves ran off to Gath. Shimei saddled his donkey and went after them and brought them back.

²⁰Solomon summoned Shimei and said to him, “Did I not have you swear by the Lord and warn you, ‘On the day you leave Jerusalem you will die?’ Why then did you not keep your oath to the Lord?”

²¹So the king gave the order and Benaiah took him out and put him to death.

18

Solomon offers 1000 sacrifices near the Tabernacle in Gibeon

¹Solomon’s kingdom was now firmly established, for the Lord was with him and made him very great.

²Then the king went up to Gibeon with all the leaders of Israel to offer sacrifices at the Tabernacle. Solomon offered a thousand burnt offerings on the bronze altar that Bezalel son of Uri had made which was near the Tabernacle.

The Lord appears to Solomon in a dream and asks him to choose what he wants

³While Solomon was at Gibeon the Lord appeared to him in a dream and said, “Ask what I should give you.”

Solomon asks for wisdom in governing his people

⁴Solomon answered the Lord, “You have shown great kindness to my father David for he was faithful to you and upright in heart. ⁵Now O Jehovah my God, you have made me king in place of my father David, but I am like a little child and do not know how to carry out my duties. ⁶Your servant is king of a great people, too numerous to number, so give me a discerning heart to govern them well and to distinguish between right and wrong. For who is able to govern this great people of yours?”

The Lord blesses Solomon with wisdom, riches and honour above all other kings

⁷The Lord was pleased that Solomon had asked for this and said to him, “Because you have not asked for long life or wealth, nor for the death of your enemies, but for understanding to discern what is right, I will do what you have asked.”

⁸“I will give you a wise and discerning mind, beyond all who have gone before you, or shall ever come after you.”

⁹“I will also give you what you did not ask for, riches and honour all your life, no other king will compare with you. ¹⁰And if you walk in my ways and obey my commandments, as did David your father, I will lengthen your life.”

1 KINGS 19

¹¹After this Solomon returned to Jerusalem and sacrificed burnt offerings before the Ark.

The two harlots and the disputed baby— Solomon's wise judgement

¹²Now two harlots were brought before Solomon and one of them said, "My lord, this woman and I live in the same house. I had a son while she was there with me, and three days later this woman also had a son. There was no one else in the house."

¹³"During the night this woman's son died, because she lay on him. So she arose in the middle of the night and took my baby from my side while I slept, and put her dead son in his place. The next morning when I looked at him closely, I saw that it was not my son."

¹⁴The other woman said, "No, the living baby is my son, the dead baby is yours."

¹⁵But the first insisted, "No! The dead one is yours. The living one is mine." And so they argued before the king.

¹⁶Solomon said, "This one says, 'My son is alive and your son is dead,' while the other one says, 'Your son is dead and mine is alive. Bring me a sword!'" So they brought a sword to the king.

¹⁷Then he gave an order, "Cut the living child in two. Give half to one, and half to the other."

¹⁸But the woman whose baby was alive was filled with compassion for her son and said to the king, "No my lord, give her the living baby! Do not kill him!"

¹⁹But the other woman said, "Neither I nor you shall have him. Cut him in two!"

²⁰Then Solomon gave his ruling, "Give the living child to the first woman. She is his mother."

All Israel hold Solomon in awe

²¹When all Israel heard the decision, they held the king in awe, for they saw that he had been given wisdom from God.

Solomon wiser than any other man

²²God gave Solomon great wisdom and insight, and breadth of understanding as vast as the sand on the seashore. ²³Solomon's wisdom was greater than the wisdom of the men of the East, and greater than all the wisdom of Egypt. He was wiser than any other man and his fame spread to the surrounding nations.

Solomon's proverbs, music and knowledge

²⁴Solomon spoke 3000 proverbs and composed 1005 songs. He would speak of trees, from the cedars of Lebanon to the hyssop that grows out of walls, and of animals, birds, reptiles and fish. ²⁵Men of all nations came to listen to Solomon's wisdom.

Solomon's vast kingdom

²⁶King Solomon ruled over all Israel and all his people were happy and lived in safety, every man under his vine, and his fig tree.

²⁷Furthermore he ruled over all the kings west of the Euphrates River and as far south as the

border of Egypt (except for the land of Sidon and the Philistines) and these kingdoms brought tribute and served Solomon all his life.

²⁸He also made an alliance with Pharaoh king of Egypt and married his daughter and brought her to Jerusalem to live.

Solomon's daily household provisions

²⁹Solomon's daily household provisions were thirty homers^{F*} of fine flour, sixty homers of meal, ten head of stall-fed cattle, twenty head of pasture-fed cattle, and a hundred sheep and goats, as well as deer, gazelles, roebucks and choice fowl.

³⁰Solomon had twelve officials appointed, who each in his month, supplied provisions for his table and barley and straw for his horses. They saw to it that nothing was lacking.

19

King Hiram asked to provide timber for the Temple

¹When Hiram, king of Tyre heard that Solomon had succeeded his father David, he sent envoys to him, for he had always been a friend of David.

²Solomon sent back this message to Hiram, "Because of wars my father David could not build a Temple for Jehovah his God. But now Jehovah has given me rest on every side and I intend to build a Temple for his name in Jerusalem."

³"Now we all know there are none so skilled at cutting timber as you Sidonians, so give orders that cedars of Lebanon be cut for me. My men will work with yours and I will pay your woodcutters 20,000 homers of ground wheat, 20,000 homers of barley, 20,000 baths^{F*} of wine, and 20,000 baths of olive oil, or whatever wages you set."



Extracting olive oil by crushing with a stone.

Hiram pleased to provide timber to Solomon

⁴When Hiram heard Solomon's message he

*29 A homer is a full donkey load, about 220kg.

*3 A bath was approx 22 litres.

was greatly pleased and said, “Jehovah be praised, for he has given David a wise son to rule over this great nation.”

⁵Hiram sent word back to Solomon saying, “I will do all you want in providing cedar and pine. My men will also haul them down from Lebanon and float them in rafts by sea to Joppa where you can take them up to Jerusalem. In return, you can provide food for my royal household.”

Hiram also sending Hiram, a man of great skill

⁶“I am also sending you Hiram, the son of a Danite woman whose father is a Tyrian. He is a man of great skill, trained to work in gold, silver, bronze, iron, stone and wood, and with purple, blue, and crimson yarn and fine linen. He is experienced in all kinds of engraving and can execute any design given to him. He will work with your craftsmen.”

Wheat and olive oil from Israel as payment

⁷So Hiram supplied Solomon with all the cedar and pine he wanted, and each year Solomon gave Hiram 20,000 homers of wheat and 20,000 baths of pressed olive oil for his household, and the two of them made a treaty.

Canaanites conscripted as labourers

⁸Solomon then took a census of all the Canaanite men whom the Israelites had been unable to destroy completely from the land, and they numbered 153,600. ⁹From among these he conscripted 30,000 labourers and sent them off to Lebanon in shifts of 10,000 a month. They spent one month in Lebanon and two months at home.

¹⁰From among them Solomon also conscripted 80,000 stonecutters to cut and dress large blocks of high grade stone in the quarry up in the hills. These were for the foundation and walls of the Temple. ¹¹He also conscripted 70,000 carriers to transport the stone to the city and assigned 3300 foremen to direct the work force.

Solomon begins to build the Temple

¹²480 years after Israel had come out of Egypt, in the fourth year of his reign, Solomon began to build the Temple of the Lord in Jerusalem. It took seven years to complete.

The dimensions of the Temple

¹³The size of the Temple was 60 cubits long, 20 cubits wide, and 30 cubits high.^{F*}

The stone blocks of the Temple

¹⁴During the building of the Temple, only blocks of stone dressed at the quarry were used. No hammer, chisel or any other iron tool was heard at the Temple site.

¹⁵The foundation was laid with large stones of high quality, some measuring ten cubits across.

The steps and entrance to the Temple

¹⁶The entrance to the Temple was at the southern end. Ten steps led up to a covered porch in which were double pine doors, overlaid with gold.



Solomon's kingdom.

*¹³ About 28 metres long by 9 metres wide and 13.5 metres high (90ft by 30ft by 45ft). A cubit is approx half a metre (18 inches). The temple did not need to be large as only the priests were permitted to enter the temple proper and the walled inner courtyard around it. The people were restricted to the outer courtyard which was vast in comparison to the size of the temple.

1 KINGS 19

The interior of the Temple – side rooms on all three floors

¹⁷Inside the entrance to the Temple a stairway led up to the second and third floors. ¹⁸And on all three floors, along the side and rear walls, were rooms, with narrow windows for light. The height of each room was five cubits.

The floors of the Temple

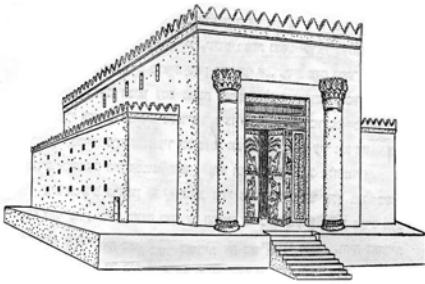
¹⁹The floors of the Temple were made of pine, overlaid with gold. No stone was seen anywhere.

The roof of the Temple

²⁰The roof was constructed with wooden beams and covered in cedar planking.

The inner Sanctuary

²¹The rear part of the Temple was the inner Sanctuary, the Most Holy Place for the Ark of the Lord. ²²This room was a cube, 20 cubits long, wide and high. It was panelled with cedar from floor to ceiling and carved with cherubim,^{F*} palm trees, open flowers and overlaid in gold.



An artist's view of Solomon's Temple.

The hall of the Temple

²³The hall leading to the Sanctuary was forty cubits long. The walls of the hall were also panelled in cedar and carved with cherubim, palm trees, open flowers and overlaid with gold.

²⁴Solomon used 600 talents^{F*} of gold inside the Temple, even the nails were gold.

The two cherubim

²⁵Solomon made two cherubim for the inner Sanctuary, from olive wood overlaid with gold. Each cherubim was ten cubits high and ten cubits wide, from wing tip to wing tip.

²⁶They stood inside the Sanctuary side by side, facing the entrance with their wings spread out. Their inner wings touched each other and their outer wings touched the walls on both sides of the Sanctuary.

The doors and veil of the Sanctuary

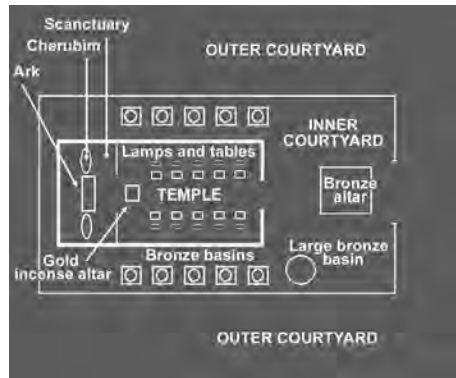
²⁷Solomon made two doors of olive wood for the entrance to the Sanctuary, each with carved designs and overlaid with gold.

²⁸He also made a veil of fine linen,

*22 Cherubim are winged angels, having varying facial features depicting human, animal and bird life. See Ezekiel chapter 1 for a fuller description.

*24 Approx 21 tonnes.

embroidered with cherubim in blue, purple and crimson thread to conceal the Sanctuary from view. He hung the veil across the entrance on a gold chain.



Groundplan of Solomon's Temple.
The rooms on the two upper floors are not shown.

The inner and outer courts of the Temple

²⁹Around the exterior of the Temple, Solomon built inner and outer walled courtyards, using dressed stones. He covered the stones in both courts with cedar planking.

A conditional promise from the Lord – if Solomon is faithful the Lord will dwell among the people

³⁰During the building of the Temple, this word of the Lord came to Solomon, “As for this Temple you are building, if you keep all my commandments and obey them, I will fulfil the covenant I made with David your father^{F*} and will dwell among the Israelites and not abandon my people.”

The two bronze pillars either side of the entrance to the Temple

³¹Now Hiram, whom the king of Tyre had sent was highly skilled in all kinds of bronze work. He cast two bronze pillars to stand either side of the entrance to the Temple, each eighteen cubits high and twelve cubits around.

³²He also cast two capitals,^{F*} each in the likeness of a lily, five cubits high, to sit on top of each pillar. A hundred clusters of flower garlands decorated the base of each capital.

The bronze altar for sacrifices

³³He made a bronze altar twenty cubits long twenty cubits wide and ten cubits high.

A large bronze basin on the backs of twelve oxen

³⁴Hiram then cast a large basin, measuring ten cubits from rim to rim, and five cubits deep, with the likeness of a flower wreath in two rows encircling the rim. ³⁵The walls of the basin were a hand-width in thickness and its rim curved out

*30 To have a descendant of David on the throne of Israel forever (1 Kings 14:29).

*32 A capital is the decorative headpiece of a column or pillar.

like the rim of a cup. It held 2000 baths^{F*} and was used by the priests to wash in.

³⁶The basin stood on the backs of twelve bronze oxen, three facing north, three facing west, three facing south and three facing east, their hindquarters toward the centre.



A replica of the large bronze basin. It had a capacity of about 44,000 litres of water.

Wheeled bronze basins

³⁷Huram also made ten bronze basins, four cubits in diameter, with a capacity of forty baths. ³⁸These basins were supported in bronze stands, three cubits high, with a handle on each corner and four bronze wheels like chariot wheels, each a cubit and a half in diameter.

³⁹Huram engraved cherubim, lions, wreaths, and palm trees on every available space.

⁴⁰These basins were to rinse the meat for the burnt offerings.^{F*}

Smaller bronze objects also made

⁴¹All the objects Huram made were of burnished bronze, cast in clay moulds. He also made many smaller objects; basins, shovels, and sprinkling bowls.

Gold altar, table, lamps, bowls etc

⁴²Solomon made the following out of pure gold: The altar, the table for the holy bread, ten lampstands and their lamps (five for each side of the hall leading to the Sanctuary), gold basins, sprinkling bowls, plates, censers and gold sockets for the doors of the Sanctuary.

All the treasures of David placed in the Temple

⁴³When the Temple was completed, Solomon placed in it all the treasures his father David had dedicated.

20

All Israel invited to Jerusalem for the dedication of the Temple

¹When it came time for the Feast of Tabernacles, Solomon invited all Israel to Jerusalem to witness the bringing up of the Ark from the City of David. ²All Israel came to Jerusalem, a vast assembly of people.

The Ark and Tabernacle carried up to the Temple

³The priests and Levites took the Ark from the tent in the City of David and carried it by its poles up to the Temple.

⁴They also brought the Tabernacle from Gibeon and all its sacred furnishings, and carried them up to the Temple of the Lord.

Thousands of sheep and cattle sacrificed

⁵King Solomon and the men of Israel sacrificed so many sheep and cattle that day they could not be counted.

The priests place the Ark in the Sanctuary beneath the wings of the Cherubim

⁶Then the priests who had purified themselves carried the Ark into its place in the Sanctuary of the Temple, beneath the wings of the cherubim.

⁷There was nothing in the Ark except the two tablets of stone that Moses had placed there.

Music and singing by the priests and Levites

⁸Asaph and his kinsmen who were Levite singers and musicians, stood by the Temple dressed in fine linen and playing cymbals, harps and lyres.

⁹They were accompanied by 120 priests sounding trumpets. The singers and trumpeters joined as one voice to give praise and thanks to the Lord.

¹⁰They raised their voices in praise to Jehovah singing:

“Give thanks to the Lord, he is good.”
“His love endures forever.”

The Temple filled with the glory of the Lord

¹¹When the song was raised, the glory of Jehovah descended and filled the house of God.

Solomon kneels and prays before the people

¹²Then Solomon knelt on a bronze platform before the altar of the Lord and in the presence of all the men of Israel lifted his hands to heaven and prayed these words:

The king prays that his descendants will continue to sit on the throne of Israel

¹³“O Jehovah, God of Israel, there is no God like you in heaven or on earth. You honour your covenant of love with those who keep your commandments. ¹⁴Keep now for your servant the covenant you made to David my father when you promised him he would never lack a successor to sit on the throne of Israel, if his children walked before you as he did.”

Solomon acknowledges that the Temple cannot contain the Lord

¹⁵“But will God really dwell with man on earth? All the heavens, even the highest heaven cannot contain you, how much less this Temple I have built. ¹⁶Yet hear your servant’s prayer and his plea O Lord. May your eyes be turned toward this Temple night and day, this house which bears your name.”

*³⁴ About 44,000 litres.

*⁴⁰ All the bronze items, the altar for sacrifices, the large bronze basin (or sea as it is traditionally known) and the ten bronze basins on wheels were located outside the temple in the inner courtyard.

May the prayers of your people Israel be heard and answered and justice be done

¹⁷“Hear the prayers of your people Israel, when they pray toward this house. Hear from heaven your dwelling place and when you hear, forgive them.”

¹⁸“However, if a man has wronged his neighbour and swears his innocence falsely before your altar at this Temple, hear from heaven and act. Condemn that guilty man and bring down on his head the guilt of his deeds.”

¹⁹“But when an innocent man comes before your altar, declare him not guilty and prove his innocence.”

May the sins of Israel be forgiven when they repent

²⁰“And when your people Israel have been defeated by an enemy because they have sinned against you, and they turn back to you, praying and pleading with you in this Temple, then hear from heaven and forgive the sin of your people. Restore them again to the inheritance you gave their fathers.”

May afflictions be removed from the land

²¹“When the heavens are closed and there is no rain because your people have sinned against you, and they pray toward this Temple and turn from their sins, then forgive your people Israel and send rain again on the land.”

²²“When famine or plague afflict the land, or blight or locusts, or caterpillar, or an enemy besieges them, and a plea is made by your people, lifting their hands toward this Temple, each aware of the suffering of his own heart, then hear from heaven and forgive them O Lord. Deal with each man according to his actions and his heart.”

May the foreigner's prayer also be answered

²³“Also heed the prayer of the foreigner who comes from a distant land to this Temple, for men will hear of your great name. Do whatever he asks of you so that all the peoples of the earth may honour you, as do your own people Israel. Then they will know that this house I have built bears your name.”

Hear the prayers of Israel in war and in exile

²⁴“When your people go to war against their enemies and pray to Jehovah toward Jerusalem and this Temple, uphold their cause O Lord.”

²⁵“And when your people sin against you, for we all sin, and you become angry with them and hand them over to an enemy who takes them captive to his own land, and there they repent with all their heart and soul, and pray to you toward the land you gave their fathers, then forgive them, and cause their conquerors to show them mercy.”

²⁶“O Lord, may you heed your servant's plea and the pleas of your people and hear them when they cry out to you.”

Fire from heaven consumes the burnt offering

²⁷When Solomon finished his prayer, fire

came down from heaven and consumed the burnt offering on the altar.

All the Israelites see the fire come down and the glory of Jehovah on the Temple

²⁸When the Israelites saw the fire come down and saw the glory of the Lord on the Temple, they fell down and knelt with their faces to the ground and worshipped and gave thanks to the Lord saying, “The Lord is good, his love endures forever.”

The priests unable to enter the Temple because of the brightness of the glory

²⁹The priests were unable to enter the Temple because of the brightness of the glory of the Lord that filled it.

Solomon blesses the people

³⁰Then Solomon stood and blessed the people in a loud voice saying, “Praise to the Lord who has given rest to his people Israel, just as he promised. Not one word has failed of all the good promises he gave through his servant Moses.”

³¹“May Jehovah be with us as he was with our fathers. May he never leave us or forsake us. May our hearts be sure to walk in his ways and keep all of the commandments he gave to our fathers.”

Fourteen days of peace offerings and celebration

³²Then the king and all Israel offered more peace offerings^{F*} and continued to celebrate before the Lord for fourteen days.

142,000 animals sacrificed

³³Altogether they offered 22,000 cattle and 120,000 sheep and goats.

³⁴Solomon consecrated the centre area of the inner courtyard in front of the Temple for burnt offerings, for the bronze altar was too small to hold them all.

³⁵On the fifteenth day the king sent the people home. They blessed their king and went away joyful and glad in heart.

21

Solomon builds his palace and other buildings

¹Solomon then built his own palace and other buildings. These took thirteen years to complete.

Solomon's other buildings

²He built a large hall, 100 cubits long, 50 cubits wide and 30 cubits high^{F*} and named it, The House of the Forest of Lebanon. ³The roof of this hall was supported internally by cedar rafters, on four rows of cedar columns. The windows were placed high, in sets of three.

⁴He built the Hall of Pillars. This hall was 50 cubits long and 30 cubits wide, with a row of columns in front, supporting an overhanging roof.

*32 A peace offering was generally offered in thanksgiving for a blessing or to ensure continued prosperity.

*2 About 46 metres long by 23 metres wide and 13.5 metres high (150ft by 75ft by 45ft).

⁵He built the Hall of the Throne where he sat in judgement. The walls of this hall were panelled in cedar from floor to ceiling.

⁶Solomon's palace, in the courtyard at the back of this hall was also panelled floor to ceiling in cedar.



Cedars of Lebanon, used in the construction of Solomon's Temple and other buildings.

Pharaoh's daughter's palace

⁷Solomon also built a palace like this hall for Pharaoh's daughter, for he said, "This wife of mine shall not live in the palace of King David, for the places to which the Ark of the Lord have come are holy."

All buildings constructed from blocks of high-grade stone

⁸All of these buildings were constructed from blocks of high-grade stone, cut to size and trimmed with a saw on the inner and outer faces, and they were located within the outer courtyard of the Temple.

The Lord again appears to Solomon in a dream

⁹When Solomon had finished building all that he desired, the Lord appeared to him a second time in a dream and said to him, "I have heard the prayer you made before me, and have consecrated the Temple which you have built. My name, my eyes and my heart will always be there."

David's conditional covenant confirmed to Solomon

¹⁰"As for you, if you walk before me in integrity of heart and uprightness as did David your father, and obey all my commandments and observe my laws, I will establish your royal throne over Israel forever. ¹¹You will never fail to have a descendant on the throne of Israel."

Solomon warned that if he or his descendants serve other gods Israel will be cut off

¹²"But if you or your descendants turn away from me and serve other gods, then I

will cut off Israel from the land I have given them and will reject this Temple."

The Temple will become a ruin

¹³"Israel will become a hiss and a byword among all nations, and this Temple will be a ruin. ¹⁴All who pass by will be appalled and say, 'Why has Jehovah done such a thing to this Temple and this land?'"

¹⁵"Others will answer, 'It is because they forsook Jehovah their God and served other gods. That is why all this disaster is upon them.'"

Solomon rebuilds many towns

¹⁶When Solomon had finished building the Temple and his own house, he gave twenty towns in Galilee to Hiram, king of Tyre, for Hiram had supplied him with all the cedar and pine and gold he wanted.

King Hiram displeased with towns Solomon gave him

¹⁷Hiram went to inspect the towns, but he was displeased with them and pronounced them worthless.

Solomon rebuilds the towns

¹⁸So Solomon rebuilt the towns and settled his own people in them. He also rebuilt Gezer.^{F*}

¹⁹Now Pharaoh, king of Egypt had attacked Gezer and put to death its Canaanite inhabitants, and set it on fire. He then gave the town as a wedding gift to his daughter, Solomon's wife.

King Solomon builds ships

²⁰Solomon built ships at Ezion Geber on the tip of the Red Sea, and Hiram king of Tyre sent sailors who knew the sea, to man the fleet with Solomon's men.

Treasures brought back from distant lands

²¹Every three years the fleet returned, carrying gold, silver, ivory, monkeys and peacocks.

²²They also sailed to Ophir^{F*} and brought back almuq wood,^{F*} precious stones, and 420 talents of gold^{F*} which they delivered to King Solomon.

²³The king used the almuq wood to make pedestals for use in the Temple and in his royal palace, and to make harps and lyres for the musicians.

²⁴He used the gold to make 200 large shields and 300 smaller shields of hammered gold, and put them in his palace.

Solomon's trade in chariots and horses

²⁵Solomon would import chariots from Egypt and horses from Cilicia,^{F*} and then export them to the northern kings. ²⁶He received 600 shekels of silver^{F*} for a chariot, and 150 shekels for a horse.

*18 A Canaanite town west of Jerusalem near the land of the Philistines.

*22 Saudi Arabia at the southern tip of the Red Sea.

*22 Scented, ruby red wood that takes a high polish.

*22 About 14.5 tonnes.

*25 Cilicia is now part of Turkey.

*26 A shekel of silver was worth about a days wages.

1 KINGS 21

²⁶Solomon himself had 1400 chariots, 4000 stalls for his chariot horses, and 12,000 horses.



The region of Ezion Geber on the Red Sea where Solomon built ships.

Solomon's magnificent throne

²⁷Solomon also made a great throne, inlaid with ivory and overlaid with fine gold. It had six steps leading up to it. ²⁸Two lions stood on each step, one either side, twelve lions in all. A lion also stood either side of the throne. The back was circular. ²⁹Nothing like it had ever been made for any other king.

Solomon's gold revenues

³⁰The weight of gold that Solomon received each year was 666 talents,^{F*} not including the revenues from merchants and traders and from all the Arabian kings and the governors of the land.

Silver considered of little value in Solomon's day

³¹All the king's drinking goblets and all the household articles in the palace were of pure gold. ³²Nothing was made of silver for it was considered of little value in Solomon's day.

³³King Solomon was greater in riches and wisdom than all the other kings of the earth.

Visitors with gifts from all over the world

³⁴The whole world sought audience with Solomon to hear the wisdom God had put in his heart. ³⁵Year after year, all who came brought gifts. Articles of gold and silver, robes, weapons, spices, horses, and mules.

³⁶The king made silver and gold as common in Jerusalem as stones, and cedar as plentiful as sycamore.

The queen of Sheba visits Solomon to test him

³⁷The queen of Sheba^{F*} heard of the fame of Solomon and came to test him with hard questions.

³⁸She arrived at Jerusalem with a great caravan of camels carrying spices, 120 talents of gold,^{F*} and many precious stones.

³⁹She spoke with Solomon about all that she had on her mind and he answered all her questions. No question was too hard for him to answer.

The queen of Sheba is overwhelmed

⁴⁰When the queen of Sheba heard the wisdom of Solomon, and saw the palace he

had built, the food on his table, his officials and attending servants in their robes, his cup-bearers, and the sacrifices he made at the Temple of the Lord, she was overwhelmed.

⁴¹She said to the king, "The report I heard in my own land about you is true, but I did not believe it until I came and saw with my own eyes. Not even half was told me. ⁴²In wisdom and wealth you far exceed the report I heard. How fortunate are your officials to continually stand before you and hear your wisdom. ⁴³I praise Jehovah your God who has placed you on the throne of Israel."

⁴⁴King Solomon gave the queen of Sheba all she desired, even more than she had brought to him, and she returned with her retinue to her own country.

21

King Solomon's many wives and concubines

¹King Solomon however married many foreign women besides Pharaoh's daughter. Women from nations about which the Lord had said, "**You must not intermarry with them, for they will surely turn your hearts after their gods.**"

²Solomon had 700 wives of royal status and 300 concubines.^{F*}

Solomon's foreign wives lead him into idolatry

³But as Solomon grew older, his wives turned his heart toward other gods. He was not as faithful to Jehovah his God as was his father David.

Solomon builds his wives hilltop shrines to foreign gods

⁴On a hilltop near Jerusalem, Solomon built a shrine for Chemosh, the detestable god of Moab, and for Molech, the abominable god of the Ammonites. ⁵He also did the same for his other foreign wives who burned incense and offered sacrifices to their gods.

The Lord becomes angry with Solomon's idolatry and decides to tear the kingdom away from him

⁶The Lord therefore became angry with Solomon, for his heart had turned away from him, yet he had appeared to him twice.

⁷He sent this word to Solomon: "**Since you have not kept my commandments, I will tear the kingdom away from you and give it to one of your officials. ⁸Nevertheless for the sake of David your father I will not do it during your lifetime. However I will tear it out of the hand of your son.**"

David's descendants still to rule over Judah

⁹"**Yet I will not tear the whole kingdom from your son. He will rule over one tribe for the sake of David and for the sake of Jerusalem which I have chosen.**"

The Lord raises up two enemies against Solomon

¹⁰Then the Lord raised up two enemies

*30 Approx 23 tonnes.

*37 Modern day Yemen.

*38 About 4 tonnes.

*2 A concubine was a wife of inferior social status.

against Solomon; Hadad of Edom and Rezon of Syria.

Hadad of Edom

¹¹In earlier years, when David was fighting with Edom, Joab had struck down all the men in Edom, but Hadad who was still only a young man fled to Egypt. Pharaoh was pleased with Hadad and gave him a sister of his own wife in marriage. ¹²When Hadad heard of the deaths of David and Joab he left Egypt and returned to Edom.

Rezon of Syria

¹³Rezon had fled from his master, the king of Syria and become leader of a band of rebels. When David destroyed the forces of Syria, he and the rebels went to Damascus and took control of Syria.

¹⁴Rezon was Israel's enemy as long as Solomon lived. He reigned over Syria and despised Israel, adding to the trouble caused by Hadad.

Solomon's capable official Jeroboam

¹⁵Now Jeroboam, an Ephraimite was a very capable young man. When Solomon was building terraces to fill in the gap in the wall of the city, he saw how well the young man worked and made him one of his officials. He put Jeroboam in charge of the labour force of the northern tribes.

Ahijah the prophet sent to Jeroboam

¹⁶One day when Jeroboam was walking alone out in the country, he met Ahijah the prophet who was wearing a new cloak. Ahijah took off the new cloak and tore it into twelve pieces.

Jeroboam to be king over ten tribes

¹⁷Then Ahijah said to Jeroboam, "Take ten pieces for yourself, for Jehovah the God of Israel says, 'I am about to tear the kingdom out of Solomon's hand and give you ten tribes.'^{F*} ¹⁸I will do this because he has forsaken me and worshipped Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians, and Chemosh the god of the Moabites, and Molech the god of the Ammonites. He has not walked in my ways and kept my commandments."

Solomon's son still to rule over Judah

¹⁹"But for the sake of my servant David, and the city of Jerusalem, a son of Solomon will still rule over one tribe, that the house of David may always have a lamp before me in Jerusalem, the city where I chose to put my name."

Jeroboam promised a long dynasty if faithful

²⁰"As for yourself, you will rule over all that your heart desires and be king over Israel. ²¹If you keep my commandments and walk in my ways as David my servant did, I will be with you and will build you a dynasty as enduring as the one I promised David, and I will give Israel to you."

²²"I will punish David's descendants, but not forever."

Solomon tries to kill Jeroboam who flees to Egypt

²³When Jeroboam rebelled against the king, Solomon tried to kill him, so Jeroboam fled to Egypt.

King Solomon dies and his son Rehoboam becomes king

²⁴Solomon reigned over all Israel for forty years, then he rested with his fathers and was buried in Jerusalem and Rehoboam his son became king.

²⁵When Jeroboam heard of this, he returned from Egypt.

The leaders of Israel visit Rehoboam and ask for their heavy yoke to be lightened

²⁶The leaders of Israel visited King Rehoboam and said to him, "Your father Solomon put a heavy yoke upon us,^{F*} now lighten the heavy yoke he put upon us and we will serve you."

²⁷Rehoboam answered, "Return in three days for my answer." So the leaders went away.

Rehoboam consults his older officials who advise kind words

²⁸Rehoboam consulted with the older officials who had served his father Solomon and said to them, "How would you advise me to answer these people?"

²⁹They replied, "If you will serve these people, and speak kind words when you answer them, they will always be your servants."

Rehoboam's consults his younger officials

³⁰Rehoboam then consulted with the younger men who had grown up with him^{F*} and said to them, "What is your advice?"

Rehoboam's younger men advise harshness

³¹The younger men replied, "Say to these people, 'My little finger is thicker than my father's waist. My father made your yoke heavy, I will make it even heavier. My father scourged you with whips, I will scourge you with scorpions.'^{F*}

Rehoboam answers the leaders of Israel harshly

³²Three days later when the leaders of Israel returned, Rehoboam answered them harshly. He followed the advice of the younger men and said, "My father made your yoke heavy, I will make it even heavier. My father scourged you with whips, I will scourge you with scorpions."

Rehoboam rejected as king by other tribes

³³When the leaders of Israel heard this they answered:

"What share do we have in David?"

"To your tents, O Israel!"

"Rule over your own house Rehoboam!"

³⁴So the Israelites rejected Rehoboam as king and returned home. This was from the Lord to

*17 There were twelve tribes in Israel. Solomon was to retain one and Jeroboam have ten. The unassigned tribe would be the Levites who belonged to the Lord and were dispersed throughout Israel.

*26 Probably taxes on food and wealth.

*30 Rehoboam was about 40 years old at this time.

*31 A scorpion is believed to have been a leather lash containing metal spikes.

1 KINGS 21

fulfil the word he had spoken through Ahijah the prophet.

Jeroboam made king over all Israel except Judah

³⁵The leaders of Israel heard that Jeroboam had returned from Egypt, so they sent for him and made him king over all Israel. ³⁶Only the tribe of Judah remained loyal to the house of David.

Rehoboam prepares to fight for the kingdom

³⁷When Rehoboam the king went out with his official who was in charge of forced labour, the Israelites stoned his official to death. However the king managed to get into his chariot and escape back to Jerusalem.

³⁸Then Rehoboam mustered all the men of Judah and the Benjamites living in the region, 180,000 fighting men, to war against the house of Israel and regain the kingdom.

The Lord forbids Rehoboam to fight

³⁹But the word of the Lord came to Shemaiah the prophet saying, “**Say to Rehoboam and the house of Judah and the Benjamites, ‘Do not fight against your brothers. Return home every one of you, for this is my doing.’**”

Rehoboam obeys the word of the Lord

⁴⁰So they obeyed the word of the Lord and returned home as the Lord commanded.

SONG OF SOLOMON

King Solomon is said to have composed 1005 songs (1 Kings 18:24) and this beautiful, sensuous and mildly erotic love song is held by the Jews to be the finest of all. It tells the Cinderella type story of the courtship of a lovely country girl to whom Solomon is betrothed.

There was evidently some controversy among Jewish Rabbis in 100 AD when the Hebrew Bible (our Old Testament) was being compiled, as to whether this song was suitable for inclusion. However some scholars argued successfully that the song was an allegory of God's love for his people and should therefore be included.

This allegory view is not widely held nowadays, in fact the book does not mention God at all. However the song is truly beautiful and edifying in the way it captures the wonder and beauty of young love.

AUTHOR Solomon, king of Israel.

"Arise my dearest, my beautiful one. Come with me. The rains have ended and the flowers are appearing. The season of singing has begun." Song of Solomon 2:3

1

Betrothed Maiden ¹"Kiss me with the kisses of your mouth, for your love is more delightful than wine. ²Oh how pleasing is your fragrance. No wonder the maidens love you. Take me away with you, let us hurry!"

³"The king has brought me into his palace. I am dark yet lovely, dark like the tents of the Arabians. ⁴Do not stare at me O daughters of Jerusalem because I am darkened by the sun. My brothers forced me to take care of the vineyards and I have not cared for my own vineyard." F*

King Solomon ⁵"You attract me my love, as a mare harnessed to a chariot of Pharaoh." F*

⁶"How lovely is your hair upon your cheeks, falling softly around your neck like strings of jewels. I will make for you ornaments of gold, inlaid with silver."

Maiden ⁷"While the king reclined upon his couch, his perfume spread its fragrance. O my beloved, you are to me like a sachet of myrrh, resting between my breasts, like a cluster of henna blossoms from the vineyards of En Gedi."

King Solomon ⁸"How beautiful you are my love. How lovely, and your eyes are gentle like doves."

Maiden ⁹"And how handsome you are my

beloved, and how charming. ¹⁰Will you look upon me as a rose of Sharon, as a lily of the valley?"

King Solomon ¹¹"Like a lily among thorns is my dearest among the maidens."

Maiden ¹²"Like an apple tree among the trees of the forest, is my lover among the young men. How I delight to sit in your shade. And your fruit is sweet to my taste. Refresh me with apples for I am faint with love."

2

Maiden ¹"Listen! It is my beloved! He is coming. Bounding over the hills. My beloved is like a young stag. ²There he stands behind our wall, gazing through the lattice. My beloved speaks. He calls to me."

King Solomon ³"Arise my dearest, my beautiful one. Come with me. The rains have ended and the flowers are appearing. The season of singing has begun. The song of the dove is heard. ⁴The fig trees are forming their fruit and blossoming vines are spreading their fragrance. Arise my beautiful one, come with me."

Maiden ⁵"My beloved is mine and I am his. We roam among the flowers until the shadows lengthen in the cool of the day. ⁶Time to depart my beloved. Be like a young stag on the hills."

*3 ie Her own body.

*5 Normally only stallions were used to pull Egyptian chariots.

SONG OF SOLOMON 3

- ⁷"All night long on my bed, my heart desired the one I loved. So I said, 'I will arise and search for him in the streets and squares of the city.'"
- ⁸"I searched, but did not find him. The watchmen found me as they made their rounds in the city. 'Have you seen the one my heart loves?'"
- ⁹"Then I found the one I loved. I held him and would not let him go until I had brought him to my mother's house, to the room of her who conceived me."

3

- Maiden** ¹"Here he comes, up from the desert, fragrant with incense from the spices of the merchant. It is Solomon in his carriage, escorted by sixty warriors, the noblest of Israel, all experienced in battle and each with his sword at his side."
- ²"King Solomon made his carriage of wood from Lebanon. Its posts he made of silver, the roof of gold, the seat of ivory, upholstered in purple cloth."
- ³"Come you daughters of Jerusalem, look upon King Solomon, wearing the crown with which his mother crowned him on the day of our betrothal, the day his heart rejoiced."
- King Solomon** ⁴"How beautiful you are my true love. O how beautiful."
- ⁵"Your eyes behind your veil are like doves. Your hair is like a flock of goats descending from Mount Gilead."
- ⁶"Your teeth are white, and evenly matched, like a flock of sheep just shorn."
- ⁷"Your mouth is lovely, and your shapely lips red, like scarlet ribbon."
- ⁸"Your cheeks glow within your veil, like two halves of a pomegranate."
- ⁹"Your neck is like the tower of David, smooth and elegant, bejewelled with a thousand shields."
- ¹⁰"Your breasts are like two graceful fawns, that browse among the lilies."
- ¹¹"All beautiful you are my dearest, there is no flaw in you."
- ¹²"You have captured my heart my bride, you have stolen my heart with one glance of your eyes. How delightful is your love. More pleasing is your love than wine, and the fragrance of your perfume than any spice."
- ¹³"Your lips are sweet as the honeycomb. Milk and honey is on your tongue."
- ¹⁴"The fragrance of your clothing is like the fragrance of Mount Lebanon."
- ¹⁵"You are a hedged garden, with its own spring my bride. Your plants are pomegranates with choice fruits, henna, spikenard, saffron, calamus and cinnamon and every kind of incense

tree, with myrrh, aloes and all the finest spices."

Maiden ¹⁶"Awaken O wind. Send a breeze upon my garden. Let the fragrance be wafted to my beloved. Let him come to his garden and taste its choice fruits."

King Solomon ¹⁷"I have come into my garden my bride. I have gathered my myrrh and my spice. I have eaten my honeycomb. I have drunk my wine and my milk."

4

- Maiden** ¹"I slept, but my heart dreamed that my beloved was knocking."
- King Solomon** ²"Open to me my darling, my dove, my flawless one. My hair is wet with the dew of the night."
- Maiden** ³"I have removed my robe. Must I put it on again? I have washed my feet. Must I soil them again?"
- ⁴"My beloved thrust his hand through the latch-opening. My heart began to pound for him. I arose to open the door for my lover. I opened the door but he was not there."
- ⁵"My heart sank. I called him but he did not answer. I went to find him. The watchmen found me as they made their rounds in the city. They hit me and bruised me and took away my cloak."

5

- Maiden** ¹"My beloved is radiant and rosy cheeked, outstanding among ten thousand men."
- ²"His countenance is golden brown, his hair is wavy and black as a raven."
- ³"His eyes are like doves, washed in milk and mounted like jewels."
- ⁴"His lips are like lilies dripping with myrrh."
- ⁵"His arms are rods of gold and his body polished ivory."
- ⁶"His legs are pillars of marble with feet of gold."
- ⁷"His appearance is like Mount Lebanon, and choice as the cedars. He is altogether delightful. He is my beloved. He is my friend."
- ⁸"My beloved has gone down to his garden to gather flowers. I belong to my beloved and he is mine."
- King Solomon** ⁹"You are beautiful my dearest, as lovely as Jerusalem, as majestic as troops with banners. Avert your gaze for your eyes overwhelm me."
- ¹⁰"Sixty queens there be, and eighty concubines, but you my dove, my perfect one, are unique."

6

Maiden ¹"I went down to the nut orchard, to look at the blossoms and to see whether the vines had budded, and if the pomegranates were in bloom. ²Before I knew it my beloved had set me in his royal chariot."

King Solomon ³"Your sandalled feet are beautiful, O queenly maiden."

⁴"Your curvaceous thighs are like the work of a craftsman's hands."

⁵"Your navel is a delicately shaped wine goblet."

⁶"Your waist, a mound of wheat, encircled by lilies."

⁷"Your breasts are twin fawns."

⁸"Your neck is an ivory tower."

⁹"Your eyes are deep and clear, like the pools of Heshbon."

¹⁰"Your nose is noble, as a peak of Mount Lebanon."

¹¹"Your head crowns you, like Mount Carmel."

¹²"Your flowing hair is like royal tapestry. The king is held captive by its tresses."

¹³"How graceful and fair and full of delights you are."

¹⁴"Your stature is stately, like the palm. How I desire to climb the palm tree and take hold of its fruit."

¹⁵"Your breasts are full, like clustered grapes."

¹⁶"Your breath is fragrant, like apple nectar."

¹⁷"Your lips are sweet, like fine wine and soft to the caress of my kiss."

Maiden ¹⁸"Come my beloved, let us go out to the countryside and lodge the night in a village. We will rise early and stroll among the vineyards, and see whether the blossoms have opened and if the pomegranates are in bloom. There I will give you the love I have stored up for you."

¹⁹"O if only you were my brother. Then I could kiss you openly and nobody would tease me. Then I would take you home to my mother's house and give you my spiced pomegranate wine to drink."

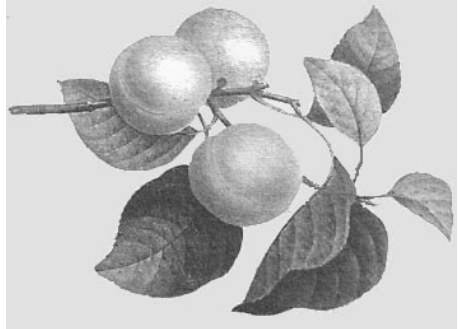
²⁰"O my apple tree, you awakened my love, there in the palace where your mother conceived you and gave you birth.

²¹Seal me to your heart, for love is as strong as death. Many waters cannot quench love, rivers cannot wash it away. If one offered all the wealth of his house for love it would be scorned."

²²"My brothers once said of me, 'We have a young sister and her breasts are ripening. What shall we do when a man comes to claim her? If she be a wall we will build towers of silver on her. If she be a door we will bar her with planks of cedar.'"

²³"Now I am a wall, and my breasts are like the towers, and I have brought contentment to your eyes."

²⁴"You O Solomon have vineyards in Baal Hamon and let them out to tenants for a thousand shekels of silver. ²⁵My own vineyard is also mine to give, and you O Solomon may have the thousand shekels. Come away my beloved, be like a young stag on the spice-laden mountains."



Pomegranate. A shapely, apple-sized fruit with a sweet juice.

ECCLESIASTES

Ecclesiastes means ‘The Teacher’ a title by which King Solomon was apparently known.

With his life largely behind him the famous king takes stock of his great achievements and life in general. He comes to the disenchanted conclusion that all man’s achievements during his mortal life on earth are vanity (in the sense of being futile and worthless) and that life has many sorrows, especially for sinners. He concludes that the best a man can do is to be content with his lot in life, to do good, enjoy his food and drink, love his wife, love his work, and obey God.

The book of Ecclesiastes is occasionally negative in tone and many scholars have questioned its place in the Bible, however it should be remembered that Solomon, though blessed with wisdom from God to govern well, was not a prophet. He did not see the glorious visions of the future such as the golden age of the future millennium (Isaiah chapter 11) or the eventual new earth and ultimate glory of the New Jerusalem (Revelation chapter 17) as did the prophet Isaiah and the apostle John. Nor do Solomon’s words reveal a personal intimacy with God as do the Psalms of his father David. Therefore the book of Ecclesiastes like the book of Proverbs is classed by Jewish Rabbis as wisdom literature, not sacred inspired writing.

Nevertheless, Ecclesiastes is full of wise advice and encourages a godly way of life. It is widely quoted from and is a rich addition to the world’s classical literature.

AUTHOR King Solomon.

Naked a man came from his mother’s womb and naked he will depart.

Ecclesiastes 3:17

CONTENTS

Chapter

Man’s labour on earth vanity	1	Hoarded wealth often lost	3
Nothing new under the sun	1	Wealth and honour cannot always be enjoyed	3
Man’s lot not a happy one	1	A stillborn child better off than a dishonoured man ...	3
With much knowledge comes much sorrow	1	Fools sometimes put in high positions	3
Pleasures and worldly possessions all vanity	1	Sorrow good for the heart	3
Wisdom better than foolishness	1	Righteousness no guarantee of long life	4
Eat, drink and find satisfaction in work	1	Solomon unable to find true wisdom	4
Sinners gather wealth for the upright	1	Only one upright man in a thousand	4
A time and a season for every purpose	2	Hypocrites praised by men	4
Everything beautiful in its time	2	The righteous rewarded on the day of judgement	4
Nothing better than to be content and do good	2	Eat, drink, be content and enjoy your work	4
God to judge every person at the appointed time	2	No man able to comprehend all things	4
Men die the same as the animals	2	Both righteous and wicked join the dead	4
Nothing better than for a man to enjoy his work	2	The dead soon forgotten	4
Happier are those not yet born	3	It pleases God that you enjoy your food and wine	4
All achievement springs from male rivalry	3	Enjoy life with your wife whom you love	4
Better one handful with peace than two with trouble .	3	Work with all your might	4
Two people better than one	3	The race is not to the swift	4
Words need only be few when praying to God	3	A poor man’s wisdom is despised	4
Fulfil a vow without delay	3	Proverbs of Solomon on wisdom	5
God will eventually right all injustice	3	Solomon’s advice to young men	5
Riches permit no restful sleep	3	Solomon was wise and wrote many proverbs	6
Naked we come and naked we depart	3	No end to the making of books	6
Enjoyment of wealth a gift of God	3	Conclusion	6

1

The words of Solomon

¹The words of Solomon son of David, king in Jerusalem.

Man's labour on earth vanity

²Vanity! Vanity! All is vanity!^{F*}

³What does a man gain from his labour as he toils under the sun?

Nothing new under the sun

⁴Generations come and generations go, but the earth remains forever.

⁵The sun rises, the sun sets, then hastens back to rise again.

⁶The wind blows to the south and turns to the north. Round and round it goes, ever returning on its course.

⁷All streams flow to the sea, yet the sea is never full. The water returns again to the streams.

⁸What has been will be again, there is nothing new under the sun.

Man's lot not a happy one

⁹I was king over Israel in Jerusalem. I devoted myself to study, and to explore by wisdom all that is done under heaven, and it is an unhappy lot that God has laid on men.

With much knowledge comes much sorrow

¹⁰I have seen the things men do under the sun. They are vanity, a chasing after the wind.

¹¹I said to myself, "I have acquired great knowledge, more than any man who ruled over Jerusalem before me." But I learned that this too, is chasing after wind, for with much knowledge comes much sorrow.

Pleasures and worldly possessions all vanity

¹²So I said in my heart, "I will test pleasure to find out if that is good."

¹³But that also proved to be vanity. Laughter is foolish, and what does pleasure accomplish?

¹⁴I tried cheering myself with wine and embracing folly, my mind still guiding me with wisdom.

¹⁵I undertook great projects. I built houses for myself, and planted vineyards.

¹⁶I made gardens and parks and planted all kinds of fruit trees in them, and created ponds to water them.

¹⁷I acquired many male and female slaves.

¹⁸I owned more herds and flocks than anyone in Jerusalem before me.

¹⁹I amassed silver and gold.

²⁰I acquired singers and a harem, the delights of a man's heart.

²¹I denied myself nothing my eyes desired. I refused myself no pleasure. I became greater by far than any man in Jerusalem before me. In all this my wisdom stayed with me.

²²Yet when I surveyed all that my hands had done and what I had toiled to achieve, everything was vanity, a futile chasing after the

*2 Vanity is used in the sense of being 'futile and worthless.'

wind. ²³Nothing was gained under the sun. What more can my successor do?

Wisdom better than foolishness

²⁴Then I pondered wisdom, and also foolishness. I concluded that wisdom is better than foolishness, as light is better than darkness. For the wise man has eyes that see, while the fool walks in darkness. But I saw that the same fate overtakes both.

²⁵Then I thought in my heart, "The fate of the fool will overtake me also. What then have I gained by being wise? For the wise man like the fool will be forgotten in days to come."

²⁶So I wearied of life. All the things I had toiled for under the sun became meaningless to me, for I must leave them to another who comes after me, and who knows whether he will be a wise man or a fool? This too is vanity.

Nothing better than to eat and drink and find satisfaction in work

²⁷What then does a man gain for all his toil and anxious striving under the sun?

²⁸There is nothing better for a man, than to eat and drink and find satisfaction in his work.

²⁹This I see is from the hand of God, and without him, who can eat or find enjoyment?

Sinners gather wealth for the upright

³⁰To the man who pleases him, God gives wisdom, knowledge and joy.

³¹But to the sinner, God gives the task of gathering wealth to hand over to the man who pleases him. This too is a chasing after the wind.

2

A time and a season for every purpose

¹There is a time and a season for every purpose under heaven.

²A time to be born and a time to die.

³A time to plant and a time to uproot.

⁴A time to destroy and a time to heal.

⁵A time to break down and a time to build up.

⁶A time to weep and a time to laugh.

⁷A time to mourn and a time to dance.

⁸A time to scatter and a time to gather.

⁹A time to embrace and a time to refrain.

¹⁰A time to find and a time to lose.

¹¹A time to keep and a time to discard.

¹²A time to rend and a time to sew.

¹³A time to be silent and a time to speak.

¹⁴A time to love and a time to hate.

¹⁵A time for war and a time for peace.

Everything beautiful in its time

¹⁶I have seen the burden God has laid on men, yet he has made everything beautiful in its time.

God has placed eternity in the heart of man

¹⁷God has also placed eternity in the heart of man.

Nothing better than to be content and do good

¹⁸Therefore, there is nothing better for a man than to be content, and do good while he lives,

ECCLESIASTES 3

that he may eat and drink and find satisfaction in his work. ¹⁹This is the gift of God, and all that God does will endure forever, and nothing can be added or taken from it.

God to judge every person at the appointed time

²⁰I saw something else under the sun, in the place of judgement, wickedness. But I thought, 'God will judge both the righteous and the wicked, for he has appointed a time for every purpose.'

Men die the same as animals

²¹I also thought, 'God's purpose is to test men,' but I also saw that men are like the animals, for the same fate awaits them both; from the dust they come, and to dust they return. ²²And who knows if the spirit of man rises upward, and if the spirit of the animal goes down into the earth.

Nothing better than for a man to enjoy his work

²³So I saw that there is nothing better for a man to do than to enjoy his work, for he cannot see ahead and know what will happen to him after he dies.



Carpenter at work in Israel. "There is nothing better for a man to do than to enjoy his work" (Ecclesiastes 2:23).

3

Happier are those not yet born

¹Again I looked, and saw oppression under the sun. I saw the tears of the oppressed, and that they had no comforter. Power was on the side of the oppressor. ²And I declared, "The dead are happier than the living, but happier are they who are not yet born, who have not yet seen the evil that is done under the sun."

All achievement springs from male rivalry

³I also saw that all achievement springs from man's rivalry with his neighbour. This too is vanity, a chasing after the wind.

Better one handful with peace than two handfuls with trouble

⁴Better one handful with peace than two handfuls with trouble and chasing after wind.

Two people better than one

⁵Again I saw something vain under the sun, a man all alone. He had neither son nor brother, yet there was no end to his toil. He was not content with his wealth.

⁶For whom was he toiling, and why was he depriving himself of pleasure?

⁷Two are better than one, for they obtain a better wage for their labour, and if one falls down, his friend can help him up. Also, if two lie down together they can keep warm, but how can one keep warm alone?

⁸Though one may be overpowered, two can defend themselves. A cord of multiple strands is not easily broken.

Words need only be few when praying

⁹Guard your steps when you go to the house of God. Go to listen, rather than to offer the sacrifice of fools who know not they do wrong.

¹⁰Do not rashly pour out all that is in your heart. God sees all from heaven, so your words need only be few. Many words are vanity, rather revere God.

Fulfil a vow without delay

¹¹When you make a vow to God, fulfil it without delay. He has no pleasure in foolish men who make false promises.

¹²It is better not to vow than to make a vow and not fulfil it. Why let your mouth lead you into sin?

¹³Would you say to the angel of God, "My vow was a mistake?" God would be angry at your words and may destroy your possessions.

God will eventually right all injustice

¹⁴If you see the poor oppressed and justice denied, be not over troubled by such things, for as one official is ruled over by a higher one, and another higher still, so above them all rules the King of the whole earth.

Riches permit no restful sleep

¹⁵Whoever loves money never has enough. This too is vanity. As your possessions increase, so do those who seek to devour them. So of what benefit are they to you, except to look upon?

¹⁶The sleep of a labourer is sweet, whether he eats little or much, but the abundance of a rich man allows him no restful sleep.

Naked we come from the womb and naked we depart

¹⁷Naked a man came from his mother's womb and naked he will depart.

¹⁸He will take nothing from his labour that he can carry in his hand.

¹⁹How then does it profit a man to toil for the wind, with frustration and troubles?

Enjoyment of wealth a gift of God

²⁰It is best therefore, that a man eat and drink and enjoy satisfaction in his work under the sun during the few days of life God has given him, for this is his lot. ²¹If God should give a man wealth and possessions, and allow him to enjoy them, he should accept this as a gift of God.

Hoarded wealth often lost

²²I have seen an evil under the sun; wealth hoarded to the harm of its owner and then lost through misfortune. There was nothing left for his son.

Wealth and honour cannot always be enjoyed

²³I have seen another evil under the sun; God gives a man both wealth and honour, but does not allow him to enjoy them. A stranger enjoys them instead.

A stillborn child better off than a long-lived man who has many children but is poor and dishonoured

²⁴A man may have a hundred children and live a long life, yet if he cannot enjoy life's good things, and receives not an honourable burial, I say that a stillborn child is better off than he. ²⁵Though the child never saw the sun or knew anything, it has more rest than does that man. Do not all go to the same place?

Fools sometimes put in high positions

²⁶There are other evils I have seen under the sun. Fools are put in high positions while the noble occupy low ones. I have seen slaves on horseback while princes go on foot.

Sorrow good for the heart

²⁷A good name is better than fine perfume, and the day of death better than the day of birth.

²⁸It is better for a man to go to the house of mourning than to go to the house of feasting, for death is the destiny of every man, and the living should take this to heart.

²⁹Sorrow is better than laughter, for sadness is good for the heart.

³⁰The heart of the wise will be found in the house of mourning, but the heart of fools will be found in the house of pleasure.

4

Righteousness no guarantee of long life

¹In this vain life of mine I have seen both of these: A righteous man perishing in his righteousness, and a wicked man living long in his wickedness.

²Therefore, put not your trust in being over-righteous, neither be over-wise. Neither be wicked or foolish, why die before your time?

³The man who reveres God will come forth in the end.

Solomon unable to find true wisdom

⁴I desired to test all things by wisdom, so I said, "I will acquire wisdom," but I could not acquire true wisdom. Wherever wisdom may

be, it is far off and very deep. Who can find it?

⁵So I turned my mind to knowledge, to search out the truth of things, and I saw the stupidity of wickedness. ⁶I also saw that a wicked woman is more bitter than death. Her heart is a snare and her hands are chains. A man of God will avoid her.

Only one upright man in a thousand

⁷While I was searching, I found only one upright man among a thousand, and not one upright woman among them all. ⁸This also I found; God made mankind upright, but they have gone astray along many paths.

Hypocrites praised by men

⁹I saw wicked men buried, yet they were men who had regularly attended the Temple and received praise in the city. This too is vanity.

The righteous rewarded on the day of judgement

¹⁰There is another vanity that occurs on earth; righteous men who get what the wicked deserve, and wicked men who get what the righteous deserve.

¹¹Although a wicked man commit a hundred crimes and still live a long life, I know it will go better with men who revere God, on the day of judgement.

Eat, drink, be content and enjoy your work

¹²So I commend the enjoyment of life, for nothing is better for a man than to eat and drink and be content. Then joy will accompany him in his work all the days God has given him under the sun.

No man able to comprehend all that goes on under the sun

¹³When I applied my mind to know truth I saw that no one can comprehend all that goes on under the sun. Despite his efforts to search it out a man cannot discover its meaning.

Both the righteous and the wicked destined to join the dead

¹⁴Even if a wise man claims he knows, he cannot truly comprehend it. So I reflected on this and concluded that both the righteous and the wicked, those who offer sacrifice and those who do not, have the same destiny, they join the dead.

The dead soon forgotten

¹⁵But he who is among the living has hope, for he knows that he will die, but the dead know nothing of what lies ahead. Even the memory of them is soon forgotten. They no longer have a part in anything that happens under the sun.

It pleases God that you enjoy your food and wine

¹⁶So eat your food with gladness, and drink your wine with a joyful heart, for it pleases God that you do this. Be clothed in white and anoint your head with oil.

Enjoy life with your wife whom you love

¹⁷Enjoy life with your wife whom you love all the days of this vain life that God has given you, for this is your lot.

ECCLESIASTES 5

Work with all your might

¹⁸And whatever your hand finds to do, do it with all your might, for in Sheol^{F*} where you are going there is no work, nor planning, nor wisdom.

The race is not to the swift

¹⁹Again I saw under the sun that the race is not to the swift, nor the battle to the strong, neither food to the wise, nor riches to men of understanding, nor favour to the learned, but time and chance happen to all.

²⁰No man knows what time will bring. As fish are caught in a net, so are men trapped by evil times that fall unexpectedly upon them.

A poor man's wisdom is despised

²¹I also saw under the sun this example of wisdom that impressed me: There was once a small city, and a powerful king came against it. He surrounded it and built siege works against it.

²²Now there lived in that city a poor but wise man, and he saved the city by his wisdom. Yet nobody remembered that poor man.

²³So I said, "Wisdom is better than strength. The quiet words of the wise are more to be heeded than the shouts of a foolish ruler. But a poor man's wisdom is despised."

Remember the days of darkness to come

²⁴Light is sweet and it pleases the eyes to see the sun. So let a man enjoy his years under the sun, but let him remember the vain days of darkness that lie ahead, for they will be many.^{F*}

5

Proverbs of Solomon on wisdom

¹It is better to hear a wise man's rebuke than to hear the laughter of fools. Like the crackling of thorns under the pot is the laughter of fools.

²Wisdom is good, and benefits those who live under the sun. Wisdom is a shelter, like money and preserves the life of its possessor.

³Wisdom can make one man more powerful than ten princes in a city.

⁴Wisdom brightens a man's face and softens its hard appearance.

⁵Wisdom is better than weapons of war, but one sinner destroys much good.

⁶As dead flies give fine perfume a bad smell, so a little foolishness spoils wisdom and honour.

⁷The heart of the wise inclines to the right, but the heart of the fool to the left.^{F*}

⁸Do not ask, "Why were the old days better than these?" It is foolish to ask such a question.

⁹When times are good, be happy. When times are bad, remember that God has made the one as well as the other.

¹⁰There is not a righteous man on earth who always does good and never sins.

¹¹Do not listen to every word people say, you may hear your servant speak ill of you. For you know in your heart that many times you yourself have spoken ill of others.

¹²When sentencing for a crime is not quickly carried out, the hearts of the people are filled with schemes to do wrong.

¹³If a ruler's anger rises against you, do not leave your post, calmness can lay great errors to rest.

¹⁴Whoever quarries stones or splits logs may be injured by them.

¹⁵If the axe is dull, more strength is needed, but skill will bring success.

¹⁶At the beginning a fool's words are mere foolishness, at the end they are wicked madness.

¹⁷A fool's work wearies him, he can hardly find his way back to town.

¹⁸Woe to you O nation, whose king was once a servant and whose princes feast in the morning.

¹⁹Blessed are you O nation, whose king is of noble birth, and whose princes eat at the proper time, for strength and not with drunkenness.

²⁰If a man is lazy the rafters sag and his house leaks.

²¹Food is made to cheer, and wine to gladden, but money answers every need.

²²Do not curse the king, even in your bedroom, for a bird of the air may carry your words and report what you say.

²³Cast your bread upon the waters and after many days you will find it again. Give portions to others, for you know not when disaster may befall you.

²⁴Whoever awaits the wind will not sow. Whoever observes the clouds will not reap.

²⁵As you know not how the spirit enters the child being formed in a mother's womb, so you cannot understand the works of God.

*18 The spirit world of the dead. Sheol was believed to be located under the earth and therefore hidden from the sun. The Hebrew conception of the afterlife was that of a restless but shadowy existence in the spirit realm of Sheol, awaiting the time of the resurrection and judgement when the righteous spirits would again reunite with their physical body and live again on earth under the reign of the Messiah.

*24 See note on verse 18 above regarding the Israelite concept of Sheol, the spirit world of the dead (Hades in the new Testament). However compare the parable of the rich man and Lazarus told by Jesus in Matt-Mark-Luke 21:26-36 and also Revelation 5:5-12 and 12:2.

*7 In Israelite tradition the right hand often symbolises good and the left hand evil. See also Elijah 7:21 and Matt-Mark-Luke 29:23-29.

²⁶Sow your seed in the morning, and at evening let not your hands be idle, for you do not know what will succeed, whether this or that, or whether both will do equally well.

Solomon's advice to young men

²⁷Be happy young man, and let your heart give you joy in the days of your youth. Follow the ways of your heart, but remember that in all things you do, God will judge you.

²⁸Banish anxiety from your heart, for youth and vigour are fleeting.

²⁹Remember your Creator before the years come when you will say, "I have no pleasure in them." The years when men arise to the sound of birds but hear their songs only faintly. When they are afraid of heights and dangers in the streets, and desire is no longer stirred. ³⁰For all must go to their eternal home and their mourners walk the streets.

³¹So remember God, before the silver cord is severed and your body returns to the dust from whence it came, and your spirit returns to God who gave it.

Solomon was wise and wrote many proverbs

¹The teacher said, "All man's labour is vanity." He was wise and imparted knowledge to the people. ²He pondered and searched out and wrote many proverbs. He searched to find the right words and wrote what was upright and true.

³The sayings of the wise are like goads,^{F*} like firmly embedded nails.

No end to the making of books

⁴Think not of adding to these sayings, for of the making of many books there is no end and much study wears the body.

Conclusion

⁵Now all has been heard and here is the conclusion of the matter: Revere God and keep his commandments, for this is the whole duty of man.

⁶God will judge you for every deed and nothing is hidden from him, whether good or evil.

*3 Goads are sharp pointed sticks used to urge on cattle.

ELIJAH

This book begins the history of the newly separated northern kingdom of Israel (later known as Samaria) and in particular the reign of the wicked but very human King Ahab, and his evil wife Jezebel. It also covers the life of Elijah, a great prophet after whom the book is named (see note below).

Elijah performed spectacular miracles and was eventually, like Moses, taken up bodily into heaven. This is known as being translated and appears to be necessary when a future appearance on earth is required. For 900 years later both Elijah and Moses appeared to Jesus and his apostles Peter, James and John on a mountain near Galilee. This appearance took place during what is traditionally known as ‘The Transfiguration of Jesus’ (Matt-Mark-Luke 17:23-31).

NOTE In order to maintain continuity in this Condensed Bible, the history of the short-lived kingdom of northern Israel has been separated out from that of the southern kingdom of Judah. The history of both kingdoms is combined in traditional Bibles (in the books 1st and 2nd Kings) and there is a continuous shifting back and forth between the two kingdoms which can be very confusing due to the differing kings and prophets.

The separate history of northern Israel is followed for 250 years until the nation is exiled by the Assyrians and disappears in history. It was this disappearance that gave rise to the expression ‘The Lost Tribes of Israel.’ The history of Judah is then picked up again, in 2 Kings beginning with the reign of Solomon’s son Rehoboam.

This separating out of the history of northern Israel has necessitated two additional books in this Condensed Bible and in accordance with biblical tradition they have been named after the two dominant prophets of the period, Elijah and Elisha.

AUTHOR

According to Jewish tradition the prophet Jeremiah was the compiler of this material. As Jeremiah lived about 250 years after the events described he would have needed to have drawn on previously written records. Two records known to have been available in his day and covering this period were “*The Annals of the Kings of Israel*” and “*The Annals of Jehu* (a prophet) *son of Hanani.*”

So the widow went home and did as Elijah had told her. Thereafter there was food every day for a year for Elijah and the woman and her son. The jar of flour never emptied and the jug of oil never ran dry, as the Lord had spoken by Elijah.

Elijah 2:29-30

CONTENTS

Chapter

King Jeroboam reigns over Israel from Shechem1	The king cursed for his idolatry1
He fears his people will revert to Judah1	King Jeroboam’s family to die unburied1
Jeroboam sins by setting up golden calf idols1	Jeroboam’s ill son to die1
The people forbidden to worship in Jerusalem1	Northern Israel’s eventual exile foretold1
King Jeroboam appoints non-Levite priests1	King Jeroboam’s son dies1
Jeroboam prepares to offer incense himself1	Jeroboam dies1
A prophet from Judah curses the false priests1	Nadab son of Jeroboam becomes king2
Jeroboam’s raised hand freezes in place1	Baasha kills Nadab and all Jeroboam’s family2
The Lord heals the king’s hand1	King Baasha angers the Lord2
Judean prophet’s obedience tested.....1	War between Judah and Israel2
The prophet from Judah disobeys the Lord1	Lord curses Baasha by Jehu the prophet2
Lord curses the prophet from Judah1	King Baasha dies and Elah his son reigns2
Prophet from Judah killed by a lion1	King Elah killed by Zimri the chariot commander2
The old prophet buries the Judean prophet1	Zimri kills Baasha’s entire family2
Old prophet mourns deeply1	Army make their commander Omri king2
Jeroboam does not change his sinful ways1	Zimri burns palace around himself2
King Jeroboam’s son becomes ill1	Half of Israel want Tibni as king2
Jeroboam sends his wife to enquire of a prophet1	Tibni killed and Omri made sole king2
Jeroboam’s wife goes in disguise1	Omri builds royal city of Samaria2
The prophet Ahijah is not deceived1	Omri dies and Ahab his son reigns2

Ahab the most wicked king yet	2	Over 100,000 Syrian casualties	5
Marries Jezebel a Sidonian woman	2	Ben-Hadad hides and pleads for mercy	5
Jericho rebuilt and the curse falls	2	Ahab spares Ben-Hadad's life	5
Elijah prophesies no rain for next few years	2	Prophet's attendant destroyed for disobedience	5
Elijah hides and is fed by ravens	2	Ahab's life to be taken for sparing Ben-Hadad	5
Elijah sent to a non-Israelite widow in Sidon	2	Ahab sullen and resentful at message	5
Miracle of the never failing flour and oil	2	Naboth refuses to sell Ahab his vineyard	6
The widow's young son dies	2	Ahab returns to Samaria depressed	6
Elijah prays and widow's son restored to life	2	Jezebel arranges murder of Naboth	6
In third year of drought Elijah sent again to Ahab	3	Naboth stoned to death	6
Faithful Obadiah who hid 100 prophets	3	Ahab goes to take possession of vineyard	6
King Ahab and Obadiah search for pasture	3	Elijah sent by Lord to meet Ahab in vineyard	6
Elijah asks Obadiah to bring Ahab to him	3	Ahab and Jezebel cursed for murder of Naboth	6
Elijah tells Ahab to gather all Israel to Mount Carmel	3	King Ahab's character	6
Elijah challenges the 450 prophets of Baal	3	Ahab humbles himself	6
Prophets of Baal fail to call down fire	3	Lord postpones Ahab's curse	6
Elijah taunts prophets of Baal	3	King of Judah comes to visit Ahab	7
Prophets of Baal shout and cut themselves	3	Ahab plans to recapture Ramoth	7
Elijah builds up Jehovah's ruined altar	3	Ahab's 400 prophets predict success	7
Offering, wood and altar drenched with water	3	King Jehoshaphat feels uneasy	7
Elijah prays for fire from Lord	3	Micaiah the prophet is summoned	7
Fire blazes down from heaven	3	Micaiah at first speaks sarcastically	7
The people acknowledge Jehovah as God	3	Micaiah prophesies death of Ahab	7
Prophets of Baal put to the sword	3	Lying spirit has deceived the other prophets	7
Elijah predicts rain that very day	4	Zedekiah the prophet angered by Micaiah's words	7
Heavy rain falls	4	Micaiah put in prison	7
Elijah outruns Ahab's chariot	4	Both kings go into battle	7
Jezebel swears to kill Elijah within 24 hours	4	King Jehoshaphat at first mistaken for Ahab	7
Elijah flees into desert	4	King Ahab shot at random by an archer	7
Elijah fed bread and water by an angel	4	Ahab bleeds all day and dies at sunset	7
Elijah travels 40 days to Mount Horeb (Sinai)	4	Dogs lick up king's blood	7
Elijah complains of persecution to the Lord	4	Ahab's achievements	7
Lord reveals his peaceful voice to Elijah	4	Ahab's son Ahaziah becomes king	8
Elijah sent to anoint two kings	4	Ahaziah falls through a lattice and injures himself	8
Elisha to succeed him as prophet	4	Ahaziah sends to consult Philistine god Zebub	8
Still 7000 in Israel who have not bowed to Baal	4	Lord rebukes king through Elijah	8
Elijah calls Elisha to succeed him	4	Elijah calls down fire on captains and fifty men	8
Elisha gives a feast then follows Elijah	4	Third captain humbles himself before Elijah	8
King Ben-Hadad of Syria attacks Samaria	5	Elijah goes to Ahaziah and prophesies his death	8
Ahab's agrees to Ben-Hadad's first demand	5	Ahaziah dies and his brother Joram becomes king	8
Ben-Hadad demands more	5	Joram gets rid of his father's image of Baal	8
Ahab refuses second demand	5	Elijah the prophet to be taken to heaven	8
Ben-Hadad swears to destroy Samaria	5	Elisha refuses to leave Elijah's side	8
Lord promises to defeat Ben-Hadad	5	Elijah and Elisha go to Jericho	8
Syrians flee before Ahab's young men	5	Waters of Jordan divide for Elijah	8
Heavy losses inflicted on Syrians	5	Elisha asks for a double portion of Elijah's power	8
Syrians to re-attack next spring	5	Chariot of fire separates Elijah and Elisha	8
Ben-Hadad plans next attack	5	Elijah carried upward in whirlwind	8
Ben-Hadad invades Israel with vast army	5	Jordan divides for Elisha	8
Lord to defeat the Syrians	5	Spirit of Elijah upon Elisha	8

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

King Jeroboam reigns over Israel from Shechem

¹King Jeroboam fortified the city of Shechem, in the northern hill country of Ephraim and reigned over Israel from there.

Jeroboam fears that his people will revert to Judah if they continue to offer sacrifice at Jerusalem

²However Jeroboam thought to himself, "If the Israelites from the northern tribes continue to offer sacrifices at the Temple in Jerusalem, the kingdom shall again revert to Rehoboam

king of Judah. They will kill me and return to the house of David."

Jeroboam sins by setting up two golden calf idols to represent Jehovah

³So after seeking counsel, the king made two golden calves, one he set up in Bethel and the other in Dan.

The people forbidden to worship in Jerusalem

⁴Then he commanded his people saying,

ELIJAH 1

"You are no longer to go to Jerusalem to worship. These are your gods O Israel, the same God who brought you up out of Egypt."^{F*}

⁵This thing became a sin to the people as they began to worship the calves.

Jeroboam appoints non-Levite priests

⁶Jeroboam also made shrines on hilltops and appointed priests who were not Levites.

Jeroboam calls a festival and prepares to offer incense himself

⁷On the fifteenth day of the eighth month, a time of his own choosing, Jeroboam called a festival for the Israelites and went up to the altar he had built at Bethel to offer incense.

A prophet comes from Judah and curses the false priests

⁸But a prophet of God from Judah came to Jeroboam as he was standing by the altar at Bethel and cried out saying, "O altar, altar! Hear what Jehovah says, 'A son named Josiah will be born to the house of David.^{F*} On you he will sacrifice and burn the bones of the priests of the high places who now make offerings here.'"

⁹"As a sign, this altar will now split apart and the ashes upon it will be poured out."

Jeroboam's raised hand freezes in place

¹⁰When the king heard these words he raised his hand and pointed toward the prophet and said, "Seize him!"

¹¹But the hand of Jeroboam froze in place so that he could not bring it back to his side. ¹²At the same time the altar split apart as spoken by the prophet and its ashes poured out on the ground.

The Lord heals the king's hand

¹³Jeroboam pleaded with the prophet saying, "Pray for me that the use of my hand be restored." So the prophet prayed and the king's hand was restored.

The king invites the prophet home but he refuses

¹⁴Then Jeroboam said to the prophet, "Come home with me and eat and I will give you a gift."

¹⁵But the prophet answered the king, "Even if you give me half your possessions I cannot go with you, for the Lord commanded me saying, 'You must not eat bread or drink water nor return the way you came.'"

An old prophet tests the obedience of the prophet from Judah

¹⁶Now there was an old prophet living in Bethel whose sons told him all that the prophet from Judah had done that day.

¹⁷He said to his sons, "Saddle the donkey for me." So they saddled the donkey for him and he rode off after the prophet.

¹⁸He found him resting under an oak tree and said to him, "Are you the prophet who came from Judah?"

He answered, "I am."

¹⁹The old prophet said, "Come home with me and eat."

²⁰The prophet from Judah said, "I cannot, for I was commanded by the Lord 'You must not eat bread or drink water, nor return the way you came.'"

²¹The old prophet said, "I too am a prophet as you are. An angel spoke the word of the Lord to me saying, 'Bring him back with you to your house that he may eat bread and drink water.'" (But he was deceiving him.)

The prophet from Judah disobeys the Lord

²²So the prophet from Judah returned to Bethel with the old prophet and ate and drank in his house.

The Lord curses the prophet from Judah with a dishonourable death

²³While they were sitting at the table, the word of the Lord came to the old prophet and he cried out against the prophet from Judah saying, "Hear what Jehovah says: 'You have defied the word of the Lord your God and have not kept the command I gave you.'

²⁴You ate bread and drank water in the place where Jehovah told you not to. Therefore your body will not be buried in the tomb of your fathers.'"

The prophet of Judah is killed by a lion

²⁵When the prophet from Judah finished eating and drinking he went on his way, but a lion met him on the road and killed him. ²⁶His body lay there on the road, with his donkey and the lion standing beside it.

The old prophet buries the Judean prophet in his own tomb and mourns him deeply

²⁷Some people who passed by reported it in Bethel. When the old prophet heard he said to his sons, "It is the prophet who defied the word of the Lord. Saddle the donkey for me."

²⁸He went out and found the body of the prophet still lying on the road, with the donkey and lion standing beside it. The lion had neither eaten the body nor mauled the donkey.

²⁹So he picked up the prophet's body and laid it on the donkey and brought him back to Bethel to bury him. He laid him in his own tomb and mourned him saying, "O my brother."

³⁰Then he said to his sons, "When I die lay my bones beside his bones."

Jeroboam does not change his sinful ways

³¹Even after all this, Jeroboam did not change his sinful ways. He continued to appoint priests who were not Levites, and anyone who wished to become a priest he would consecrate for the hilltop shrines.

Jeroboam sends his wife in disguise to enquire of the prophet Ahijah regarding their ill son

³²Now a son of Jeroboam became ill, so the

*4 The calves represented Jehovah, nevertheless this type of worship was forbidden by the second of the Ten Commandments (Exodus 11:20).

*8 Josiah did not reign until many generations later. He was a righteous king of Judah who emptied the tombs and burned the bones of the false priests on that same altar (Nahum 1:11-12).

king said to his wife, "Disguise yourself so as to not be recognised as the queen and go to Ahijah the prophet in Shiloh, the one who told me I would become king. ³³Take ten loaves of bread with you and some cakes and a jar of honey and inquire of him as to what will happen to our son."

The prophet Ahijah is not deceived

³⁴Now the prophet Ahijah could no longer see clearly as his eyes were dimmed from old age. The Lord said to him, "**The wife of Jeroboam is on her way to you to enquire about her son for he is ill. When she arrives she will pretend to be somebody else.**"

³⁵When Jeroboam's wife arrived she pretended to be another woman, but when Ahijah heard her footsteps at his door he called out, "Come in wife of Jeroboam. Why this pretence?"

Lord curses Jeroboam's family to die unburied because of his idolatry

³⁶Jeroboam's wife entered and sat down. Ahijah said to her, "I have bitter news. Tell Jeroboam, the God of Israel says, '**I raised you up and made you king over my people Israel. I tore the kingdom away from the house of David and gave it to you.**' ³⁷**But you have not been like my servant David who kept my commandments and followed me with all his heart.**"

³⁸"You have done more wrong than all who were before you. You have made gods of metal and provoked me to anger and turned your back on me."

³⁹"Because of this I will bring disaster on your family. I will cut off from your house every last male and burn up the house of Jeroboam as one burns up dung until it is all gone. ⁴⁰**Dogs will eat those of your family who die in the city, and the birds of the air will feed on those who die in the country. Jehovah has spoken.**"

Jeroboam's ill son to die

⁴¹Then Ahijah prophesied, "**As for you wife of Jeroboam, when you set foot in your house your son will die and all Israel will mourn for him.**" ⁴²**He is the only one belonging to Jeroboam who will be buried, for he is the only one in whom the Lord has found anything good."**

Northern Israel's eventual exile foretold

⁴³"**The Lord will raise up for himself a new king over Israel, one who will cut off the family of Jeroboam.**" ⁴⁴**And in time the Lord will uproot Israel from this good land and scatter them beyond the River,^{F*} for they will provoke the Lord to anger by making Asherah poles.**"^{F*}

⁴⁵"**He will give Israel up because of the sins Jeroboam has committed and will cause Israel to commit.**"

*44 The Euphrates.

*44 A type of totem pole. Asherah was a goddess whose worship involved sexual acts.

Jeroboam's son dies

⁴⁶Jeroboam's wife arose and returned home. As soon as she entered the palace her son died.

Jeroboam dies and his son Nadab becomes king

⁴⁷Then Jeroboam died and his son Nadab became king. Jeroboam had reigned over Israel for twenty-two years.

⁴⁸The other events of Jeroboam's reign, his wars and how he ruled are written in the Annals of the Kings of Israel.

2

Baasha kills Nadab and the rest of Jeroboam's family

¹Nadab the son of Jeroboam reigned over Israel two years. He did evil in the eyes of the Lord just as his father had done.

²Then Baasha of the tribe of Issachar plotted against Nadab and killed him while he was besieging a town of the Philistines, and became king in his place.

³As soon as Baasha began to reign he killed Jeroboam's entire family, as prophesied by the word of the Lord.

King Baasha also angers the Lord

⁴But Baasha also did wrong in the eyes of the Lord, walking in the ways of Jeroboam.

War between Judah and Israel during Baasha's reign

⁵There was war between Judah and Israel during the years of Baasha's reign.

Lord curses Baasha through prophet Jehu

⁶Then the word of the Lord came to the prophet Jehu, against Baasha saying, "**I lifted you up from the dust and made you king over my people Israel, but you walked in the ways of Jeroboam and caused my people Israel to sin and to provoke me to anger.**"

⁷**So I am about to consume you and your family. I will make your house like that of Jeroboam."**

Baasha dies and Elah his son becomes king

⁸So Baasha died, and his son Elah became king. Baasha had reigned over Israel twenty-four years.

Elah killed by Zimri his chariot commander

⁹Elah reigned in Tirzah two years, then Zimri who had command over half his chariots, plotted against him and killed him when he was drunk. Then Zimri succeeded him as king.

Zimri kills Baasha's entire family but only reigns seven days

¹⁰As soon as Zimri began to reign he killed Baasha's entire family as prophesied by the Lord.

¹¹Zimri reigned in Tirzah only seven days. The army was at that time encamped near a Philistine town.

The army make their commander Omri king

¹²When the army heard that Zimri had

ELIJAH 2

murdered the king, they made Omri the commander of the army king over Israel, right there in the camp.

Zimri burns the palace around himself

¹³Then Omri and all the army with him came and took the city Tirzah. When Zimri saw that the city was taken he set the palace on fire around himself and died.

Half of Israel want Tibni as king

¹⁴Then the people of Israel split into two factions. Half wanted Tibni for king, and half wanted Omri.

Tibni killed and Omri made sole king

¹⁵But Omri's followers proved stronger, so Tibni was killed and Omri became the sole king.

Omri builds the royal city of Samaria

¹⁶Omri reigned six years in Tirzah then purchased the hill of Samaria for two talents of silver. He built a city on the hill and called it Samaria.

Omri dies and Ahab his son reigns

¹⁷But Omri sinned more than all those before him. He reigned twelve years and then died and was buried in Samaria and Ahab his son became king.

Ahab the most wicked king yet marries Jezebel a Sidonian woman

¹⁸Ahab did more evil than any of the kings before him. He also married Jezebel, daughter of the king of the Sidonians and began to worship Baal. He even built a temple to Baal in the city of Samaria.

¹⁹Ahab also made an Asherah pole and provoked the God of Israel to more anger than did all the kings of Israel before him.



The royal city of Samaria (in distance) built by Omri.

Jericho rebuilt and the curse falls

²⁰In Ahab's reign a man by the name of Hiel rebuilt the walls of Jericho. He laid the foundations at the cost of his firstborn son Abiram, and set up its gates at the cost of his youngest son Segub, in accordance with the word of the Lord as spoken by Joshua.^{F*}

Elijah prophesies to Ahab no rain for next few years

²¹Then Elijah the prophet came from Gilead and prophesied these words to Ahab, "**As Jehovah the God of Israel lives whom I serve, there will be no rain during the next few years except at my word.**"

Elijah hides and is fed by ravens

²²Then this word of the Lord came to Elijah: "**Leave here and go hide at the brook Kerith east of the Jordan. You are to drink from the brook and I have commanded the ravens to feed you there.**"

²³So Elijah did as the Lord commanded and the ravens brought him bread and meat morning and evening.



The brook Kerith by which Elijah lived.

Elijah sent to a non-Israelite widow in Sidon

²⁴After a time the brook dried up, for there was no rain in the land. Then the word of the Lord came to Elijah again saying, "**Go at once to Zarephath in the land of Sidon. There a widow will feed you.**"

²⁵So Elijah journeyed to Zarephath. When he arrived at the town gate he saw a widow gathering sticks. He called to her and said, "Would you please bring me a little water and a piece of bread."

²⁶She replied, "As surely as Jehovah your God lives I do not have any bread, only a handful of flour in a jar and a little oil in a jug. I am gathering sticks to take home to make a last meal for myself and my young son that we may eat and then die."

The miracle of the never failing flour and oil

²⁷Elijah said to the widow, "Do not fear, return home and do as you have said, but first bake a small cake of bread from what you have and bring it here to me. Then make something for yourself and your son. ²⁸For the God of Israel says, '**The jar of flour will not empty and the jug of oil will not run dry until the day**

*20 This prophecy is found in Joshua 3:20.

Jehovah brings rain again on the land.”

²⁹So the widow went home and did as Elijah said. Thereafter there was food every day for a year for Elijah and the woman and her son.
³⁰The jar of flour never emptied and the jug of oil never ran dry as the Lord had spoken by Elijah.

The widow’s young son dies

³¹Some time later the widow’s young son became ill and grew steadily worse, then he died.

³²The widow said to Elijah, “What have you against me man of God? Did you come just to remind me of my sin and to kill my son?”

Elijah prays and the widow’s son is brought back to life

³³Elijah said to her, “Give me your son.” He took the boy from her arms and carried him to the upper room where he slept and laid the boy on his bed.

³⁴Then he prayed crying out, “O Jehovah my God, must you bring tragedy upon this widow I am staying with by causing her son to die?”

³⁵Then he stretched himself out on the boy three times and cried out, “O Lord, let this boy’s life return to him!” And the boy’s life returned.

³⁶Elijah carried the boy back down to his mother and said to her, “Your son lives.”

³⁷The woman said to Elijah, “Now I know for sure you are a man of God.”

3

**In third year of drought
Elijah sent again to Ahab**

¹In the third year of the drought the Lord said to Elijah, “**Go present yourself again to King Ahab in Samaria and I will send rain upon the land.**”

The faithful Obadiah who hid 100 prophets

²Now a man named Obadiah who was a devout believer in the Lord was in charge of Ahab’s palace. While Jezebel the wife of Ahab was killing off the Lord’s prophets, Obadiah had hidden a hundred prophets in two caves and supplied them with food and water.

King Ahab and Obadiah search for pasture to keep the horses alive

³The famine was severe in Samaria and Ahab had said to Obadiah, “Let us go through the land and check all the springs and valleys. Maybe we can find enough grass to keep the horses alive.” F*

⁴So they divided the land they were to search, Ahab went in one direction and Obadiah the other.

Elijah meets Obadiah and asks him to bring Ahab to him

⁵As Obadiah was searching, Elijah met him. Obadiah recognised him and bowed down and said, “Is it really you my lord?”

⁶Elijah replied, “It is, now go say to your master ‘Elijah is here.’”

Obadiah fears that Elijah will disappear again

⁷Obadiah answered, “There is no place my master has not sent to look for you. I know not where the Spirit of the Lord may carry you when I leave you. If Ahab comes and finds you gone he may kill me.”

⁸Elijah said, “As the Lord lives I will present myself to Ahab today.” So Obadiah went and found Ahab and brought him to Elijah.

Elijah tells Ahab to gather all Israel and the prophets of Baal to Mount Carmel

⁹When Ahab saw Elijah he said to him, “Is that you, troubler of Israel?”

¹⁰Elijah replied, “It is not I who trouble Israel, but you and your father’s family. You have abandoned Jehovah and followed Baal.”

¹¹“Now, go summon all Israel to come to me on Mount Carmel. Also bring with you the 450 prophets of Baal and the 400 prophets of Asherah who eat at Jezebel’s table.”

¹²So Ahab sent word throughout Israel and all the people assembled on Mount Carmel.

Elijah challenges the 450 prophets of Baal

¹³Elijah stood before the people and cried out, “How long will you waver between two opinions? If Jehovah is God, follow him! If Baal is God, follow him!”

¹⁴The people remained silent. Elijah continued, “I am the only one of Jehovah’s prophets among you, but Baal has 450 prophets here today. ¹⁵Therefore, obtain two bulls for us. Let the prophets of Baal choose one for themselves and cut it into pieces. Let them lay the pieces on wood but not set fire to it. I will do the same with the other bull.

¹⁶Then have them call on the name of Baal and I will call on the name of Jehovah. The god who answers by fire will be the true God.”

¹⁷The people replied, “Well spoken.”

The prophets of Baal fail to call down fire

¹⁸So the prophets of Baal took the bull given them and prepared it that morning.

¹⁹Then they called on the name of Baal crying out, “O Baal, answer us!” But there was no response. So they danced around the altar they had made.

Elijah taunts the prophets of Baal

²⁰At noon Elijah began to taunt them. He called out to them, “Shout louder! Perhaps Baal is deep in thought, or busy, or travelling! Maybe he is sleeping and must be awakened!”

The prophets of Baal shout louder and cut themselves but still no response

²¹So they shouted louder and cut themselves with knives and swords as was their custom, until their blood flowed.

²²All afternoon they continued their raving until the time for the evening sacrifice drew near, but there was no response.

*3 King Ahab had a large force of chariots.



Mount Carmel where Elijah challenged the prophets of Baal.

Elijah builds up Jehovah's ruined altar

²³Then Elijah called to the people saying, "Come here to me." So they gathered to where he stood by the altar of the Lord which was in ruins.

²⁴Elijah took twelve stones and built up the altar, and then he dug a trench around it. He arranged wood on the altar and cut the bull into pieces and laid the pieces on top of the wood.

The offering, wood and altar drenched with water

²⁵He said to the people, "Fill four large jars with water and pour it over the offering and the wood." And they did so.^{F*}

²⁶Then he said, "Do it again," and they did it again. "Do it a third time," he ordered, and they did it a third time. The water ran down the altar and filled the trench.

Elijah prays for fire from the Lord

²⁷Now the time of the evening sacrifice had come. Elijah prayed saying, "O Jehovah, God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, let it be known today that you are God in Israel, and that I am your servant and have done all these things at your command."

²⁸"Answer me O Lord, that these people will know that you O Jehovah are God, and that you are turning their hearts back again."

Fire blazes down from heaven

²⁹At these words fire from the Lord blazed down from heaven and burnt up the sacrifice. Also the wood, the stones, the soil and even the water in the trench.

The people acknowledge Jehovah as God

³⁰When the people saw the fire they fell face down on the ground crying out, "Jehovah, he is God! Jehovah, he is God!"

The prophets of Baal put to the sword

³¹Elijah commanded the people, "Seize the prophets of Baal. Do not let any escape!"

³²The people seized them and Elijah had them taken down to the Kishon river in the valley and put to the sword.

Elijah predicts rain that very day

¹Then Elijah said to Ahab, "Go back up, eat and drink now for there is a storm of rain coming."

²So the king went up to eat and drink while Elijah and his attendant climbed to the top of Mount Carmel. Elijah bowed on the ground with his face between his knees.

³He commanded his servant saying, "Go and look toward the sea." So his servant went and looked and came back and said, "I see nothing."

⁴Seven times Elijah said, "Go back." The seventh time the servant reported, "A cloud as small as a man's hand is rising from the sea."

⁵Elijah said, "Go say to Ahab, 'Prepare your chariot and return home before the rain stops you.'"

Heavy rain falls

⁶Meanwhile the sky grew black with clouds and the wind rose and a heavy rain began to fall. Ahab rode off to Jezreel in his chariot.

Elijah outruns Ahab's chariot

⁷Then the power of the Lord came upon Elijah and tucking his garment into his belt he ran ahead of Ahab, all the way to Jezreel.^{F*}

Jezebel swears to kill Elijah within 24 hours

⁸When Ahab arrived home he told Jezebel his wife everything Elijah had done and how he had put all the prophets of Baal to the sword.

⁹Jezebel sent a messenger to Elijah to say, "May the gods deal with me severely if by this time tomorrow I do not take your life also."

Elijah flees into the desert

¹⁰Elijah feared when he heard this and fled from Jezreel. He went to Beersheba in Judah and then travelled a day's journey into the desert alone.

Elijah fed bread and water by an angel

¹¹Elijah came to a broom tree and sat under it and prayed to die saying, "I cannot take any more Lord. Take my life. Is it not better for me to be with my fathers," and he lay down and fell asleep.

¹²Then an angel touched him, awakening him and said, "**Arise and eat.**" Elijah looked around and saw by his head a loaf of bread baked over hot stones, and a jar of water.

¹³He ate some of the bread and drank and lay down again.

¹⁴The angel of the Lord returned a second time and touched him and said, "**Sit up and eat more or your journey will be too much for you.**"

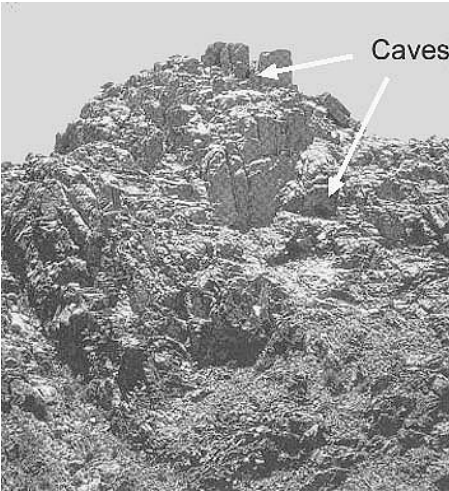
Elijah walks 40 days to Mount Horeb (Sinai)

¹⁵So Elijah ate and drank, and strengthened by that food he walked forty days until he reached Mount Horeb, the mountain of God^{F*} and went into a cave to spend the night.

*7 A distance of about 30 kms (18 miles).

*15 Mount Horeb or Sinai was the place where the Lord spoke to the Israelites and gave Moses the commandments. It would have been a journey of about 400 km (250 miles).

*25 The Kishon river runs by Mount Carmel.



The two caves on Mount Horeb (or Sinai) in one of which Elijah spent the night. Note also the shattered rocks, see verse 18.

Elijah complains of persecution to the Lord

¹⁶There the word of the Lord came to him saying, “**What are you doing here Elijah?**”

¹⁷Elijah replied, “I have been zealous for Jehovah God Almighty but the Israelites have rejected your covenant and broken down your altars and put your prophets to death with the sword. I am the only one left and now they are trying to kill me too.”

The Lord reveals his still, quiet voice to Elijah

¹⁸The Lord said, “**Go out and stand on the mountain in the presence of Jehovah for I am about to pass by.**” ¹⁹Immediately there came a powerful wind on the mountain that shattered rocks, but the Lord was not in the wind.

²⁰Then came an earthquake, but the Lord was not in the earthquake.

²¹Then came fire, but the Lord was not in the fire.

²²Then came the still quiet voice of the Lord. Elijah covered his face with his cloak and went outside the cave and stood on the mountain.

Elijah sent to appoint two kings and to call Elisha to succeed him as prophet

²³The voice of the Lord asked him again, “**What are you doing here Elijah?**” Elijah answered the same as before.

²⁴Then the Lord said, “**Return the way you came back through the desert and go to Damascus in Syria. There appoint Hazael to be king over Syria. ²⁵Also anoint Jehu to be king over Israel, and anoint Elisha to succeed you as prophet.**” F*

*²⁵ Elijah anointed Elisha to be his successor, but it was Elisha who eventually appointed Hazael king over Syria and anointed Jehu king over Israel (see Elisha chapter 6).

Still 7000 in Israel who have not bowed to Baal

²⁶“**Jehu will put to death any who escape the sword of Hazael. Yet I will spare the 7000 in Israel whose knees have not bowed to Baal.**”

Elijah calls Elisha to succeed him

²⁷Elijah returned to Israel and found Elisha helping men plough a field. He was driving the twelfth yoke of oxen. Elijah went up to him and threw his mantle^{F*} around him.

²⁸Elisha left his oxen and ran after Elijah and said to him, “Let me first kiss my father and mother good-bye, then I will come with you.”

²⁹Elijah replied, “Go back, I have completed my errand.”

Elisha gives a feast then follows Elijah

³⁰Elisha left him and went back. He took his yoke of oxen and slaughtered them and burned the wooden plough to cook the meat and gave a feast for the people there.

³¹After that he set out to follow Elijah and become his assistant.



Ploughing with a yoke of oxen.

5

King Ben-Hadad of Syria and 32 other kings attack the city of Samaria

¹Now Ben-Hadad king of Syria, along with 32 other kings mustered their armies and with horses and chariots invaded the land of Israel to attack the city of Samaria.

Ahab's agrees to Ben-Hadad's demand for his silver and gold and wives and children

²Ben-Hadad sent messengers into the city to say to Ahab, “Ben-Hadad says, ‘Your silver and gold are mine and the fairest of your wives and children.’”

³Ahab answered them, “Say to Ben-Hadad, ‘As you demand my lord.’” And the messengers left.

Ben-Hadad next demands the possessions of Ahab and his officials

⁴However they returned again to Ahab and said, “Ben-Hadad says, ‘About this time tomorrow I will also send my officials to search your palace and the houses of your officials and take whatever they please.’”

*²⁷ A type of cloak.

Ahab refuses the second demand

⁵At this Ahab summoned the elders of Samaria and said to them, "See how this man seeks trouble. I have already consented to him taking my wives and children and my silver and gold."

⁶The elders replied, "Do not agree to his demands."

⁷So Ahab said to the messengers, "Say to Ben-Hadad, 'Your servant will do as you first demanded, but this second demand I will not meet.'"

Ben-Hadad swears to destroy Samaria

⁸Then Ben-Hadad sent this message, "May the gods deal with me severely if I do not thrash Samaria to dust. I have enough warriors to carry it away a handful each."

⁹Ahab answered, "One who puts on armour should not boast as one who takes it off."

¹⁰Ben-Hadad received this message as he and the kings with him were drinking in his royal tent. He immediately issued the order, "Take your positions!"

The Lord promises to defeat Ben-Hadad

¹¹Then a prophet came to Ahab and announced, "Jehovah says, 'You see this vast army, today I will give it into your hand, then you will know I am the Lord.'"

¹²Ahab said, "But who will do it?"

The prophet replied, "The Lord says, 'Your young officials will do it, and you are to begin the battle.'"

The Syrians flee before Ahab's young men

¹³So Ahab summoned his young officials, 232 men and then assembled the rest of the men, 7,000 in all. ¹⁴And at noon, while Ben-Hadad and the 32 kings with him were in their tents getting drunk, the young officials marched out of the city with the army of Ahab behind them.

¹⁵Ben-Hadad's scouts reported, "Men are advancing from Samaria."

Ben-Hadad replied, "Take them alive!"

¹⁶However each young Israelite official struck down his opponent. Then the Syrians began to flee before them with the Israelites in pursuit.

Ahab's men inflict heavy losses on the Syrians

¹⁷Ahab's men overpowered the horses and chariots of the Syrians and inflicted heavy losses, but Ben-Hadad escaped on horseback with some of his horsemen.

The Syrians to re-attack next spring

¹⁸After the victory the prophet came again to Ahab and warned him by the word of the Lord saying, "Strengthen your positions. Next spring the king of Syria will attack you again."

Ben-Hadad plans his next attack

¹⁹Meanwhile the officials of Ben-Hadad advised him saying, "Israel's gods are gods of the hills, that is why they were too strong for us. If we fight them on the plains we will be stronger than them. ²⁰Also, remove the kings from their commands and replace them with

army officers. Raise another army like the one you lost, horse for horse, chariot for chariot, then surely we will be stronger than they." Ben-Hadad agreed and acted accordingly.

Ben-Hadad again invades Israel with a vast army

²¹The next spring Ben-Hadad again invaded Israel and camped at Aphek.^{F*}

²²The Israelites marched out to meet them. The Israelite army looked like two small flocks of goats, while the Syrians covered the countryside.

The Lord to defeat the Syrians for saying that he was not a God of the plains

²³The prophet of the Lord came and said to Ahab, "Jehovah says, 'Because the Syrians have said, 'Jehovah is a god of the hills not of the plains,' I will deliver this vast army into your hands and you will know that I am the Lord.'"

Over 100,000 Syrian casualties

²⁴On the seventh day the battle began. The Israelites inflicted 100,000 casualties on the Syrian foot soldiers that day. ²⁵The rest of the Syrians, 27,000 of them fled into the city of Aphek, but the walls collapsed on them.

Ben-Hadad hides and pleads for mercy

²⁶Ben-Hadad also fled into the city and hid. His officials said to him, "The kings of Israel are merciful. Let us go to Ahab, perhaps he will spare your life."

²⁷So wearing sackcloth around their waists, and ropes around their heads, the officials went to the king of Israel and said, "Your servant Ben-Hadad says, 'Please let me live.'"

²⁸Ahab replied, "Bring him to me."

Ahab spares Ben-Hadad's life and makes a treaty with him

²⁹When Ben-Hadad came out of hiding, Ahab had him come up into his chariot.

³⁰Ben-Hadad said to Ahab, "I will return the cities my father captured from your father and will allow you to set up markets in Damascus."

³¹So Ahab made a treaty with Ben-Hadad and set him free. However this displeased the Lord.

A prophet's attendant is destroyed for disobeying an instruction in the name of the Lord

³²One of the prophets said to his assistant, "In the name of the Lord, strike me with your weapon," but his assistant refused.

³³The prophet said, "Because you have not obeyed the Lord a lion will take your life." Shortly afterward a lion killed him.

³⁴The prophet found another man and said, "In the name of the Lord, strike me with your weapon." So the man struck him and wounded him.

The prophet gives the Lord's message to Ahab

³⁵Then the prophet disguised himself with a head band over his eyes and stood by the road waiting for Ahab. ³⁶As the king passed by the

*21 A city on the coastal plain, suited to chariot warfare.

prophet called out to him saying, “Your servant went into the thick of battle, and one came to me with a captive and said, ‘Guard this man. If he escapes it will cost you your life or you must pay a talent of silver.’ But while I was busy the man escaped.”

³⁷Ahab said, “Then you know your sentence.”

**King Ahab's own life to be taken
for sparing Ben-Hadad's life**

³⁸The prophet snatched the head band from his eyes and Ahab recognised him as one of the prophets. ³⁹The prophet said to the king, “Jehovah says, ‘You have set free a man I had determined should die. Therefore it is your life for his life, your people for his people.’”

Ahab is sullen and resentful at the message

⁴⁰So Ahab returned to his palace in Samaria, sullen and resentful.

6

Naboth refuses to sell Ahab his vineyard

¹Some time later, Ahab went to a man named Naboth in Jezreel and said to him, “Let me have your vineyard to use as a vegetable garden since it is close to my palace here in Jezreel. I will give you a better vineyard or pay you for it.”

²But Naboth replied, “Jehovah forbids that I should give you an inheritance of my fathers.”

Ahab returns to Samaria sullen and angry

³Ahab returned home to his palace in Samaria, sullen and angry and lay on his bed with his face to the wall and refused to eat.

⁴His wife Jezebel came in and said to him, “Why will you not eat?”

⁵He answered her, “Naboth refuses to sell me his vineyard.”

⁶Jezebel replied, “Is this how the king of Israel should act? Arise and eat. I will obtain for you the vineyard of Naboth.”

Jezebel arranges the murder of Naboth

⁷So Jezebel wrote letters in Ahab's name, and placing his seal upon them sent them to the elders who lived in Jezreel.

⁸This is what she wrote:

“Call a day of fasting and seat Naboth in a prominent place among the people. Seat two scoundrels opposite him and have them testify that he cursed both God and king. Then take him out and stone him to death.”

**The elders of Jezreel stone Naboth
and his sons to death**

⁹The elders who lived in Naboth's city did as Jezebel had written. They sent word to Jezebel saying, “Naboth has been stoned and is dead and his sons with him.”

**Ahab goes to Jezreel to
take possession of the vineyard**

¹⁰Jezebel said to Ahab, “Go to Jezreel and

take possession of Naboth's vineyard for he is no longer alive.” So the king arose and went to Jezreel.

**Elijah sent by the Lord to meet Ahab
in the vineyard**

¹¹While he was taking possession of Naboth's vineyard Elijah the prophet came to him.

¹²Ahab said to him, “So you have found me my enemy.”

**Ahab and Jezebel cursed by the Lord
for the murder of Naboth and his sons**

¹³Elijah replied, “I have found you, and Jehovah says, ‘Yesterday I saw the blood of Naboth and his sons. Have you not murdered a man and seized his property?’”

¹⁴“I will surely make you pay for this. On this plot of ground and in the place where the dogs licked up Naboth's blood, dogs will lick up your blood also. ¹⁵I shall bring disaster on you and cut off from your family every last male. I will make your house like that of Jeroboam and of Baasha, for you have provoked me to anger and have caused Israel to sin.”

¹⁶“As for your wife Jezebel, dogs will devour her in Jezreel.”

King Ahab's character

¹⁷There never was a man like Ahab who did so much evil in the eyes of the Lord, and he was urged on by Jezebel his wife. ¹⁸He also behaved abominably in going after idols, just like the Canaanites whom the Lord destroyed in the land.

Ahab humbles himself

¹⁹Nevertheless when Ahab heard these words of the Lord, he tore his clothes and put on sackcloth and fasted. He even slept in sackcloth and went around meekly.

**The Lord sees Ahab's repentance
and postpones the curse**

²⁰Then the word of the Lord came to Elijah, “Have you seen how Ahab has humbled himself before me. Because he has humbled himself I will not bring this disaster on his house in his days, but will bring it in the days of his son.”

7

**Jehoshaphat king of Judah
comes to visit Ahab**

¹For three years there was no war between Syria and Israel. In the third year Jehoshaphat, king of Judah came to visit Ahab king of Israel.

Ahab plans to recapture Ramoth

²Now Ahab had said to his officials, “Does not Ramoth in Gilead belong to us and yet we are doing nothing to retake it from the king of Syria.”

³So Ahab said to Jehoshaphat, “Will you join with me to fight against the Syrians who hold Ramoth?”

⁴Jehoshaphat agreed to do so but said to Ahab, “Let us first inquire of the Lord.”

King Ahab's 400 prophets predict success

⁵So Ahab brought together the prophets, about 400 men^{F*} and enquired of them, "Shall I go to war against Ramoth or shall I refrain?"

⁶They answered, "Go! Jehovah will give the city into the king's hand."

King Jehoshaphat feels uneasy

⁷But Jehoshaphat king of Judah was uneasy and asked, "Is there not a prophet of Jehovah here of whom we can inquire?"

⁸Ahab answered, "There is Micaiah, but I dislike him. He never prophesies anything good about me."

⁹Jehoshaphat replied, "A king should not speak that way."

Micaiah the prophet is summoned

¹⁰So Ahab called one of his officials and said, "Bring Micaiah at once."

¹¹Both kings were dressed in their royal robes and sitting on thrones by the gate of Samaria. The prophets were prophesying before them.

¹²The prophet Zedekiah had made iron horns and was declaring, "Jehovah says, 'With these you will gore the Syrians until they are destroyed.'"

¹³All the other prophets were prophesying the same thing, "Attack Ramoth and be victorious. The Lord will give it into the king's hand."

Micaiah advised to prophesy the same as the other prophets

¹⁴The messenger who had gone to summon Micaiah said to him, "All the other prophets are prophesying success for the king. Let your word agree with theirs and speak favourably to the king."

¹⁵Micaiah said, "I can only prophesy what Jehovah tells me."

Micaiah at first speaks sarcastically

¹⁶When Micaiah arrived, Ahab said to him, "Micaiah, shall I go to war against Ramoth or shall I refrain?"

¹⁷Micaiah answered sarcastically and said, "Attack and be victorious. The Lord will give it into the king's hand."

¹⁸The king said to him, "How many times must I make you swear to tell me nothing but the truth in the name of the Lord?"

Micaiah prophesies the death of Ahab

¹⁹Then Micaiah prophesied, "*I saw all Israel scattered on the hills like sheep without a shepherd. Then the word of the Lord came to me, saying, 'These people have no master. Let each one go home in peace.'*"

²⁰Ahab said to Jehoshaphat, "Did I not tell you he never prophesies anything good about me?"

A lying spirit permitted to deceive the other prophets

²¹Micaiah continued his prophesy, "*I saw Jehovah sitting on his throne with all the*

host of the heavens standing around, those to his right and those to his left."^{F*}

²²*Jehovah said, 'Who will entice Ahab into attacking Ramoth, and going to his death there?'*

²³*"One suggested this and another that. Finally a spirit stood before the Lord and said, 'I will entice him by being a lying spirit in the mouths of his prophets.'*"^{F*}

²⁴*"Jehovah said, 'You will succeed in enticing him, go do it.'*"

²⁵*"So Jehovah has permitted a lying spirit to influence all these prophets of yours. He has decreed disaster for you."*

Zedekiah the prophet angered by Micaiah's words

²⁶At these words, Zedekiah the prophet went up and slapped Micaiah on the cheek and said, "Who did the lying spirit go to when he left me? To you?"

²⁷Micaiah replied, "*You will find out on the day you hide in an inner room.*"

Micaiah put in prison

²⁸Then Ahab ordered, "Put Micaiah in prison and feed him on reduced rations of bread and water until I return safely."

²⁹Micaiah declared, "If you return safely the Lord has not spoken through me."

Both kings go into battle

³⁰So the king of Israel and the king of Judah went to Ramoth. Ahab said to Jehoshaphat, "I will go to battle in disguise, but you wear your royal robes." So the king of Israel disguised himself and went into battle.

Syrian chariot commanders ordered to kill Ahab

³¹Now the king of Syria had ordered his chariot commanders who were defending the city, "Do not fight with anyone except Ahab the king of Israel."

King Jehoshaphat at first mistaken for Ahab

³²When the chariot commanders saw Jehoshaphat they thought, "Surely this is the king of Israel." So they turned to attack him, but when Jehoshaphat shouted out, they realised he was not the king of Israel and stopped pursuing him.

King Ahab shot at random by an archer

³³But an archer drew his bow at random and his arrow hit Ahab the king of Israel between the sections of his armour.

³⁴Ahab ordered his chariot driver, "Wheel around and get me out of the fighting. I have been wounded."

Ahab bleeds all day and dies at sunset

³⁵All day the battle raged while Ahab stood

*21 Those to the left of the Lord are generally regarded as being Satan and his spirit followers.

*23 The lying spirit may have been one of Satan's spirit followers, probably one of the host to the left of Jehovah (see verse 21 above). The book of Job reveals that Satan has access to the Lord, at least in the heavenly realms above the earth and is more than willing to carry out any assignment that afflicts mankind.

*5 Probably the 400 prophets of Asherah mentioned in Elijah 3:11. These prophets would prophesy by occult powers.

propped up in his chariot facing the Syrians. The blood from his wound ran down into his chariot and as the sun set he died.³⁶At this a cry spread throughout the army, "Every man to his home!"

³⁷So Ahab died and was brought to Samaria and buried there.

Dogs lick up the king's blood

³⁸They washed his chariot at a pool in Samaria where harlots bathed and the dogs licked up his blood as the Lord had spoken.^{F*}

Ahab's achievements

³⁹As for the other events of Ahab's reign including all he did, the palace he built inlaid with ivory, and the cities he fortified,^{F*} they are written in the book, The Annals of the Kings of Israel.

8

Ahab's son Ahaziah becomes king

¹After Ahab died in battle, Ahaziah his son became king. He also did evil, walking in the ways of his father and mother.

Ahaziah falls through a lattice and injures himself

²One day Ahaziah fell through the latticework of an upper room in his palace in Samaria and injured himself.

Ahaziah sends to consult the Philistine god Zebub

³He sent messengers to Ekron in the land of the Philistines to consult the god Zebub, to see if he would recover from his injury.

The Lord rebukes the king through Elijah the prophet for consulting a foreign god

⁴The angel of the Lord said to Elijah the prophet, "**Go meet the messengers of Ahaziah and say to them, 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are going to consult Zebub?'** ⁵**Therefore say to Ahaziah, 'Jehovah says you will not leave the bed you are lying on and will surely die.'**"

⁶Elijah met the messengers and told them what the Lord had said. They immediately returned to the king and gave him the message from the Lord.

Elijah wore a hair garment and a leather belt around his waist

⁷Ahaziah asked, "What kind of man told you this?"

⁸They replied, "He was a man wearing a hair garment^{F*} and a leather belt around his waist." The king said, "That was Elijah the prophet."

Elijah twice calls down fire on a captain and fifty men

⁹So the king sent a captain and fifty men to

bring Elijah to him. The captain went to Elijah who was sitting on the top of a hill and said to him, "Man of God, the king says, 'Come down.'"

¹⁰Elijah answered, "***If I am a man of God, may fire come down from heaven and consume you and your fifty men.***" Then fire blazed down from heaven and consumed the captain and his men.

¹¹At this Ahaziah sent another captain with his fifty men. The captain said to Elijah, "Man of God, the king says, 'Come down at once!'"

¹²But fire again fell from heaven and consumed both him and his fifty men.

A third captain humbles himself before Elijah

¹³The king sent a third captain with his fifty men. This captain fell on his knees before Elijah and pleaded, "Man of God, please have respect for my life and the lives of these fifty men, your servants."

¹⁴The angel of the Lord said to Elijah, "**Go down with him.**"

Elijah again prophesies Ahaziah death

¹⁵So Elijah went with him and said to the king, "Jehovah says, '**Because you sent messengers to consult Zebub you will surely die.**'"

Ahaziah dies and his brother Joram becomes king

¹⁶So Ahaziah son of Ahab died. He had reigned over Israel two years.

¹⁷Ahaziah had no son so Joram his younger brother became king. Now Joram did evil in the eyes of the Lord, but not as his father Ahab and mother Jezebel had done.

Joram gets rid of his father's image of Baal

¹⁸He got rid of the image of Baal that his father had made, nevertheless he clung to the sin Jeroboam had caused Israel to commit.^{F*}

Elijah the prophet to be taken to heaven

¹⁹Now the Lord was about to take Elijah the prophet to heaven in a whirlwind. Elijah said to his assistant Elisha, "Remain here at Gilgal, for the Lord has sent me to Bethel."

Elisha refuses to leave Elijah's side

²⁰But Elisha said, "I will not leave you." So they went together to Bethel.

²¹At Bethel, prophets from the school of the prophets came out and said to Elisha, "Do you know that the Lord is going to take your master today?"

²²Elisha replied, "Yes I do know, be silent."

²³Then Elijah said, "Remain here Elisha, the Lord has sent me to Jericho."

²⁴But he replied, "I will not leave you."

Elijah and Elisha go to Jericho

²⁵At Jericho, prophets from the school there also said to Elisha, "Do you know that the Lord is going to take your master from you today?"

²⁶Then Elijah said, "Remain here Elisha, the Lord has sent me to the Jordan."

²⁷Again Elisha replied, "I will not leave you."

*38 The original curse was that Ahab's blood also be licked up by dogs in the vineyard of Naboth in Jezreel (Elijah 6:14), however, because of Ahab's repentance the curse was postponed and fell on his son Joram whose body was thrown into the vineyard of Naboth (see Elisha 6:41).

*39 Politically Ahab was one of the strongest kings of Israel. During his reign northern Israel was recognised as a major power in that part of the world.

*8 Probably woven camel or goats hair.

*18 The worshipping of calves at Bethel and Dan.

ELIJAH 8

So the two of them walked out to the Jordan. Fifty men of the school of the prophets watched from a distance.

The waters of the Jordan divide for Elijah

²⁸When they reached the Jordan, Elijah took his mantle, rolled it up and struck the water with it. The water divided to the right and to the left, and the two men crossed over and walked on.

Elisha asks for a double portion of Elijah's power

²⁹Then Elijah said to Elisha, "What can I do for you, before I am taken from you?"

³⁰Elisha replied, "Let me inherit a double portion of your spirit."

³¹Elijah said, "You have asked a difficult thing. However, if you see me when I am taken from you, it will be granted you."

A chariot of fire separates Elijah and Elisha

³²They continued walking and talking when suddenly a chariot and horses of fire appeared, and separated them.

Elijah is carried upward in a whirlwind

³³Then Elijah was carried upward in a whirlwind.

³⁴Elisha saw him taken up and cried out, "My father! My father! The chariot and horsemen of Israel!" until he could see him no longer.

³⁵Then Elisha tore his garments in grief.

The Jordan divides for Elisha

³⁶Elisha picked up the mantle that had fallen from Elijah and returned to the banks of the Jordan.

³⁷He took the mantle and struck the water saying, "Where is Jehovah the God of Elijah?" The water divided to the right and to the left and he crossed over.

The spirit of Elijah upon Elisha

³⁸The prophets from Jericho who were watching said, "The spirit of Elijah is upon Elisha," and they went to meet him and bowed to the ground before him.

Elijah not found

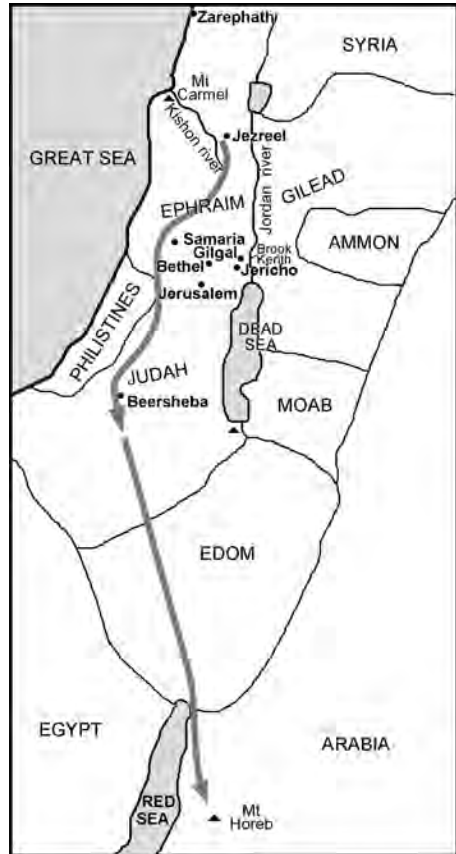
³⁹Then they said to him, "We have fifty able men, let us send them to look for your master.

Perhaps the Spirit of the Lord has set him down on some mountain or in some valley."

⁴⁰Elisha replied, "Do not send them."

⁴¹But they persisted so he finally said, "Very well, send them."

⁴²The fifty men searched for three days but did not find Elijah.



Elijah's journey to Mount Horeb.

ELISHA

The miracles of the prophet Elisha are the most spectacular of any prophet in the Old Testament. Elisha boldly asked of his mentor Elijah a double portion of his spirit (Elijah 8:30) and apparently received it.

Elisha raised a boy from the dead, healed a leper, fed a hundred men with a few small loaves of bread, multiplied a jar of olive oil, saw and heard events at distant locations, mass hypnotised an entire army, caused an axe head to float in water, purified poisoned soup, and permanently healed bad water. Even after his death, his bones brought a man back to life. Elisha's curses also came to pass immediately and dramatically.

Elisha appears to have been a somewhat gruff but caring person and would go out of his way to help people. He could speak his mind strongly when the occasion demanded. At one time Elisha strongly rebuked the king of Israel in front of two other kings (Elisha 2:12-13). Afterwards he called for a harpist to play music to soothe his mind so that he could receive revelation from the Lord.

AUTHOR The prophet Jeremiah, (see introduction to Elijah).

So Naaman went down and immersed himself in the Jordan seven times as Elisha had said, and his flesh became clear like that of a young boy. Elisha 4:14

CONTENTS

	Chapter	
Elisha heals the bad water of Jericho	1	Elisha summons Naaman to his house
Elisha mocked by young boys	1	Elisha sends out a message to him by Gehazi
Boys clawed by two she bears	1	Naaman walks away angry at message
Moab rebels at paying tribute to Israel	2	Naaman's servants reason with him
Israel prepares to attack Moab	2	Naaman dips himself in the Jordan and is healed
Israel invites Judah to join with them	2	Naaman proclaims Jehovah as only true God
Edom also joins Israel and Judah	2	Elisha refuses a gift from Naaman
Armies run out of water in desert	2	Naaman asks for some soil of Israel to worship on
Jehoshaphat asks if there is a prophet among them	2	Naaman asks approval to bow to the god Rimmon
Elisha harshly rebukes king Joram	2	Gehazi greedy for gain runs after Naaman
Elisha calls for a harpist to soothe him	2	Gehazi lies to Naaman
Elisha obtains revelation from the Lord	2	Naaman gives Gehazi silver and clothing
Lord promises that water will fill the wadi	2	Gehazi lies to Elisha
Moab to be spoiled	2	Elisha punishes Gehazi with Naaman's leprosy
Water flows into the wadi	2	The floating axe head
Moabites think the water is stained with blood	2	Elisha would warn Israel's king of Syria's plans
Moabites come out to plunder the camp	2	King of Syria sends an army to capture Elisha
Moabites flee and their towns are destroyed	2	Elisha's servant sees the hills full of chariots of fire
Royal city of Moab is besieged	2	Lord blinds Syrian army to reality
King of Moab sacrifices his son	2	Elisha leads Syrian army to the royal city
Great fury comes upon Israel	2	Elisha tells the king to feed the Syrian army
Miracle of the widow's oil	3	Syria later besieges the city of Samaria
Elisha shown hospitality by a woman of Shunem	3	Great famine in the city
Room built on their roof for Elisha	3	Report of cannibalism horrifies and angers king
Woman blessed by conceiving a son	3	King orders Elisha beheaded
The woman's son dies	3	Elisha aware of execution order
The woman sets off to find Elisha	3	King angry at Lord's lack of deliverance
Elisha sees her coming and sends Gehazi	3	Elisha prophesies abundant food tomorrow
The woman reveals her sorrow only to Elisha	3	King's officer skeptical
Gehazi sent ahead to try and revive boy	3	Four lepers find Syrian camp deserted
Elisha restores boy to life	3	Syrians had heard sound of a vast army
Elisha heals poisonous soup	3	The lepers begin to loot the camp
Miracle of 20 small loaves feeding 100 men	3	Lepers decide to report news to city
Naaman the Syrian army commander	4	The king is suspicious
Naaman goes to Israel to be healed of leprosy	4	Men sent to investigate
Naaman comes with gifts and letter from his king	4	Road strewn with discarded clothing
King of Israel angry at the letter	4	The people go out and plunder Syrian camp

ELISHA 1

Doubling king's officer trampled to death	5	Heads of Ahab's 70 sons sent to Jezreel	7
Elisha goes to Syria to appoint Hazael king	6	Jehu has them placed overnight by the city gate	7
Ben-Hadad the king of Syria ill	6	Jehu addresses people of Jezreel	7
Sends Hazael to Elisha to ask if he will recover	6	Jehu kills all Ahab's family in Jezreel	7
Elisha reveals that Ben-Hadad will be murdered	6	Ahab's officials, friends and priests also killed	7
Hazael will be king of Syria	6	Visiting relatives from Judah also put to death	7
Hazael murders the king	6	Jehu deceives the ministers of Baal	7
Hazael becomes king of Syria	6	Temple of Baal packed full	7
Jehu the army commander to be king of Israel	6	Eighty guards wait outside	7
Elisha sends a young prophet to anoint Jehu	6	All ministers of Baal put to death	7
Jehu reveals his anointing to his officers	6	Baal idol burned	7
The officers rejoice and sound a trumpet	6	Baal temple turned into a latrine	7
Jehu departs for Jezreel to kill Joram	6	Lord rewards Jehu	7
King Joram recovering from battle wounds	6	Land of Gilead lost to Syria	8
Ahaziah, king of Judah visiting Joram	6	King Jehu dies	8
Lookout at Jezreel sees Jehu coming	6	His son Jehoahaz becomes king	8
Joram sends out horsemen who do not return	6	Israel under the power of Syria	8
King Joram and Ahaziah go out in their chariots	6	Israel delivered from Syria	8
Jehu kills Joram with an arrow	6	Israel's army almost totally destroyed	8
Joram's body thrown on Naboth's field	6	Calf worship still practiced	8
King Ahaziah of Judah also killed	6	King Jehoahaz dies	8
Jezebel thrown from a window	7	His son Jehoash becomes king	8
Jezebel trampled to death	7	King Jehoash visits Elisha who is dying	8
Jezebel's body eaten by dogs	7	Elisha prophesies using a bow and arrows	8
Jehu writes challenging the elders of Samaria	7	Syria to be partially defeated	8
Elders of Samaria terrified of Jehu	7	Elisha's bones bring a man back to life	8
Jehu asks elders to behead Ahab's sons	7	Jehoash defeats king of Syria three times	8

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Elisha heals the bad water of Jericho

¹After the Lord took Elijah, the prophet Elisha stayed in Jericho. The men of that city came to him and said, "Our lord, this town is well located as you can see, but the water is bad and our women miscarry."

²Elisha said, "Bring me a new bowl with salt in it." So they did as he asked.

³Elisha went out to the spring and threw the salt into it saying, "Jehovah says, ***'I have healed this water. Never again will it cause death or miscarriage.'***"

⁴The water has remained wholesome to this day.

Elisha is mocked by young boys

⁵After this Elisha went up to Bethel. As he was walking along the road leading into the city, a large group of young boys from the city began to jeer at him shouting, "Go away baldhead! Go away baldhead!"

The boys clawed by two she-bears

⁶Elisha turned round and cursed them in the name of the Lord. Then two she-bears came out of the forest and clawed forty-two of the boys.

2

Moab rebels at paying tribute to Israel

¹Now the land of Moab raised sheep, and each year the king of Moab paid tribute to Israel of 100,000 lambs, and the wool of

100,000 rams. ²However after Ahab died the king of Moab rebelled against Israel.

³Therefore Joram who succeeded his father Ahab as king, mustered the army of Israel to attack and subdue Moab.

Israel invites Judah to join them in the attack on Moab

⁴Joram also sent this message to Jehoshaphat, king of Judah: "The king of Moab has rebelled against me. Will you join with me to fight against Moab?"

He replied, "We will go with you."

⁵Joram said, "By what route should we attack?"

Jehoshaphat answered, "From the south through the desert of Edom."

Edom also joins Israel and Judah

⁶So the armies of Israel and Judah set out. They were also joined on the way by the army of the king of Edom.^{F*}

The armies run out of water in the desert

⁷However after marching for seven days through the desert, the three armies and the animals with them ran out of water.

⁸Joram the king of Israel said, "Has Jehovah brought we three kings together only to hand us over to Moab?"

*6 Edom was subject to Israel at this time.



Route the Israelites took to attack Moab.

Jehoshaphat asks if there is a prophet among them to enquire of the Lord

⁹King Jehoshaphat of Judah replied, "Is there a prophet among us by whom we can inquire of the Lord?"

An officer answered, "Elisha is with us."

Elisha harshly rebukes Joram

¹⁰So the three kings went to Elisha. But Elisha spoke harshly to Joram, king of Israel saying, "Go to the prophets of your father and mother."

¹¹Joram answered, "I will not! Now inquire from Jehovah as to why he has brought we three kings together only to allow us to fall into the hands of Moab."

¹²Elisha replied, "Were it not for my respect for Jehoshaphat king of Judah I would not even look at you."

Elisha calls for a harpist to soothe him in order to obtain revelation from the Lord

¹³Then Elisha called for a harpist, and as the harpist played, the word of the Lord came to him.

The Lord promises that water will fill the wadi

¹⁴Elisha said, "Jehovah says, 'You will see neither wind nor rain, yet this wadi* will fill with water and you and your animals will drink.'"

Moab to be spoiled

¹⁵Then Elisha prophesied, "*This is an easy thing in the eyes of the Lord. He will also hand Moab over to you. You shall cut down every good tree, stop up all the springs, and spoil every good field with stones.*"

Water flows into the wadi

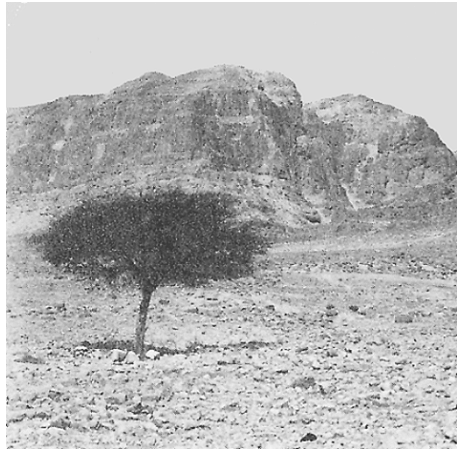
¹⁶The next morning the wadi filled with water. It came flowing through the desert from the direction of Edom.

The Moabites think the water stained with blood from infighting and come to plunder the camp

¹⁷Now the Moabites had heard that the kings were marching to fight against them. Therefore all their men, young and old who could bear weapons were encamped on the border waiting. ¹⁸When they arose early that morning the sun was shining on the water down in the

valley. To the Moabites at a distance the water looked red, like blood.

¹⁹They said, "There is blood in the water. The kings must have fought and slaughtered each other. To the spoils Moab!"



Dry wadi in the desert.

The Moabites flee and their towns are destroyed

²⁰But when the Moabites reached the camp of Israel, the Israelites rose up and fought them until they fled.

²¹Then they invaded the towns of Moab and slaughtered the Moabites. Whenever they destroyed a town, each man would throw stones on every good field until it was covered. They also stopped up the springs and cut down every good tree.



The land of Moab, looking eastward across the northern tip of the Dead Sea

The royal city of Moab is besieged

²²Soon only the royal city of Kir Hareseth remained to be taken. Men armed with slings surrounded the walls and attacked it.

The king of Moab sacrifices his son

²³However when the king of Moab saw that the battle was going against him, he took his firstborn son who was to succeed him as king and offered him as a sacrifice* on the city wall.

*14 A wadi is a river bed that is dry most of the time.

*23 Probably to the Moabite demon god Chemosh.

ELISHA 3

Great fury comes upon Israel and they return home

²⁴Then great fury came against Israel. They abandoned their siege and returned to their own land. F*

3

The miracle of the widow's oil

¹One day a widow whose husband had belonged to the school of the prophets came to Elisha in great distress and cried out, "My husband has died, and now a creditor is coming to take my two young sons as his slaves."

²Elisha said to her, "What do you have of value in your house?"

She answered, "Nothing, except a jar of oil."

³Elisha said, "Go and gather empty jars from all your neighbours. Obtain as many as you can. Then go inside your house and shut the door behind you and pour oil into all the jars."

⁴The widow did as Elisha said. Her young sons brought the jars to her and the oil kept pouring. When all the jars were full, the flow of oil stopped.

⁵Then she went out and told Elisha what had happened. He said to her, "Go sell the oil and pay your debts. You and your sons can live on what is left."

Elisha shown hospitality by a woman of Shunem

⁶On another day, when Elisha was in the town of Shunem, a wealthy woman urged him to stop at her home for a meal. From that day, whenever Elisha went to Shunem he stopped there to eat.

The woman and her husband build a room on their roof for Elisha

⁷The woman said to her husband, "This man who comes often, is a holy man of God. Let us build him a small room on the roof and put into it a bed, a table, a chair and a lamp. Then he can stay there whenever he comes to us." So they did so.

Elisha rewards the woman by blessing her to conceive a son

⁸One day when Elisha came, he went up to his room and lay down. Then he said to his servant Gehazi, "This woman has gone to all this trouble for us. What can we do for her?"

⁹Gehazi said, "She has no son, and her husband is elderly."

¹⁰Elisha said, "Call her." So Gehazi called the woman and she came and stood in the doorway.

¹¹Elisha said to her, "**About this time next year you will hold a son in your arms.**"

¹²She said, "O man of God, do not raise my hopes." But she conceived, and the next year gave birth to a son just as Elisha had foretold.

The woman's son dies

¹³The child grew, but one day he went out to his father who was with the reapers in the fields

and said to him, "My head! My head!"

¹⁴His father called a servant and said, "Carry him home to his mother." The servant carried the boy home to his mother who nursed him on her lap until noon, and then he died.



The village of Shunem where Elisha often stayed.

The woman lays her dead son on Elisha's bed and sets off on a donkey to find Elisha

¹⁵The woman carried the boy up to Elisha's room and laid him on the bed and closed the door. Then she had a donkey saddled and set out to find Elisha who was at Mount Carmel. ¹⁶She said to her servant who was with her, "Urge the donkey on. Do not slow down unless I tell you." F*

Elisha sees her coming and sends Gehazi to find out the problem

¹⁷Elisha saw her coming in the distance and said to his servant Gehazi, "Run to meet her. Ask her if everything is all right."

¹⁸The woman said to Gehazi, "Everything is all right."

The woman reveals her sorrow only to Elisha

¹⁹But when she reached the prophet Elisha, she fell down and took hold of his feet. Gehazi came to push her away but Elisha said, "Leave her alone. She is in great distress and the Lord has hidden the reason from me."

²⁰She said to Elisha, "My lord, did I ask you for a son? Did I not say 'Do not raise my hopes?'"

Gehazi sent ahead to try and revive the boy

²¹Elisha said to Gehazi, "Quickly! Tuck your garment into your belt. Take my staff in your hand and run and lay my staff on the boy's face."

²²But the woman said to Elisha, "I will not leave here without you." So Elisha went with her.

²³Gehazi ran on ahead and laid Elisha's staff on the boy's face, but there was no response. He went back to meet Elisha and said, "The boy has not awakened."

*24 This 'great fury' is generally attributed to the power of the demon god Chemosh. There appears to be a law of sacrifice at work here that we do not fully understand.

*16 From Shunem to Mount Carmel was about 40 kms (25 miles).

Elisha restores the boy to life

²⁴When Elisha reached the house he saw the boy lying dead on his bed. He went in to the room alone and closed the door and prayed to the Lord. ²⁵Then he lay upon the boy, mouth to mouth, eyes to eyes, hands to hands, and as he stretched himself out upon him the boy's body grew warm.

²⁶Elisha arose, paced back and forth in the room and then again stretched himself upon the boy. ²⁷The boy sneezed seven times then opened his eyes.

The woman gratefully receives her son

²⁸Elisha summoned Gehazi and said, "Call the woman." When the boy's mother came in he said to her, "Take your son."

²⁹She bowed to the ground at his feet, then took up her son and went out.

The poisonous soup

³⁰When Elisha returned to Gilgal there was a famine in the region. As he sat with the school of the prophets he said to his servant, "Put the large pot on and make some soup for these men."

³¹While the soup was cooking one of the prophets went out into the fields to gather herbs. He found a wild vine and gathered some of its fruit in the fold of his garment. ³²When he returned, he cut them up into the pot of soup. Nobody knew what they were.

³³The soup was poured out for the prophets, but as soon as they tasted it they cried out, "There is death in the pot!" and they could not eat it.

Elisha heals the soup

³⁴Elisha said, "Bring some flour." He stirred the flour into the pot of soup and said to his servant, "Serve it to the men to eat." And the bitter taste was gone.

The miracle of 20 small loaves feeding 100 men

³⁵Later a man brought twenty small loaves of barley bread to Elisha. Elisha said to his servant, "Give them to the men to eat."

³⁶His servant replied, "How can these feed a 100 men?"

³⁷Elisha answered, "Jehovah says, 'They will eat and have some left over.'"

³⁸So his servant set the loaves before them and they all ate and had some left over, according to the word of the Lord.

4

Naaman the Syrian army commander desires to go to Israel to be healed of his leprosy

¹Now Naaman the commander of the armies of the king of Syria was a valiant soldier and highly regarded by his master, but he had leprosy.

²The Syrians had taken captive a young girl from Israel and she served Naaman's wife. One day she said to her mistress, "If my

master went to the prophet Elisha in Israel, he could cure him of his leprosy."

³Naaman's wife told her husband what the girl had said, so Naaman went to the king and asked permission to go to Israel.

⁴The king of Syria replied, "Go then. I will write a letter for you to give to the king of Israel."

Naaman sets out with gifts and a letter from his king

⁵So Naaman set out with horses and chariots taking with him ten talents of silver,^{F*} 6000 shekels of gold,^{F*} and ten sets of clothing.

⁶The letter he took from the king of Syria said:

"I am sending my servant Naaman to you to be cured of his leprosy."

The king of Israel is angered by the letter

⁷When Joram the king of Israel read the letter he tore his robes and said, "Am I God? Why does this fellow send me a man to be cured of leprosy? He is trying to provoke a quarrel with me."

Elisha the prophet summons Naaman to his house

⁸When Elisha heard that the king had torn his robes he sent him this message, "Have the man come to me and he will know there is a prophet in Israel."

⁹So Naaman went with his horses and chariots and stopped outside Elisha's house.

Elisha sends out a message to him by Gehazi

¹⁰Elisha sent his servant out to him with this message: "**Go immerse yourself seven times in the Jordan and your flesh will be restored.**"

Naaman walks away angry at the message and Elisha's refusal to come out to him

¹¹Naaman became angry at this and said, "I thought he would at least come out to me and call on the name of Jehovah his God, and pass his hand over the spot and cure me of my leprosy. ¹²Are not the rivers of Damascus better than the rivers of Israel? Could I not immerse myself in them and be cured?" And he turned and walked off in anger.

Naaman's servants reason with him

¹³But his servants said to him, "My lord, if the prophet had told you to perform some great feat, would you not have done it? How much more then, when all he tells you to do is 'Immerse yourself in the Jordan.'"

Naaman dips himself in the Jordan and is healed

¹⁴So Naaman went down and immersed himself in the Jordan seven times as Elisha had said, and his flesh became clear like that of a young boy.

Naaman returns to Elisha and proclaims Jehovah as the only true God

¹⁵Then Naaman returned with all his

*5 About 340kg. (750 lbs)

*5 About 70kg. (150 lbs)

ELISHA 5

attendants to Elisha's house and stood before Elisha. ¹⁶He said, "Now I know there is no God in all the world except in Israel. Please accept a gift."

Elisha refuses a gift from Naaman

¹⁷Elisha answered, "As surely as Jehovah lives whom I serve, I will not accept a thing." And even though Naaman urged him, he refused.

Naaman asks for two mule loads of Israelite soil to worship Jehovah on

¹⁸So Naaman said, "Well then, please let me have two mules loads of soil. I will never again make offerings to any other god but Jehovah."^{F*}

Naaman receives approval to bow to the god Rimmon in the course of duty

¹⁹"But may Jehovah forgive me this one thing: When my master the king enters the temple of Rimmon to bow down to his god, and he is leaning on my arm and I bow down with him, may Jehovah forgive your servant for this?"

²⁰Elisha replied, "Go in peace."

Gehazi is greedy for gain and runs after Naaman

²¹After Naaman had left, Gehazi the servant of Elisha said to himself, "My master was too easy on this Syrian. I will run after him and get something from him."

²²So Gehazi hurried after Naaman. When Naaman saw him running toward him he stepped down from his chariot to meet him and asked, "Is everything all right?"

Gehazi lies to Naaman

²³Gehazi answered, "Everything is all right, but my master sent me to say, 'Two young men from the school of the prophets have just arrived. Please give them a talent of silver and two sets of clothing.'"

Naaman gives Gehazi silver and clothing

²⁴Naaman said, "Certainly, take two talents." And he tied up the talents of silver in two bags along with the sets of clothing and gave them to two of his servants and they carried them back for Gehazi.^{F*}

²⁵When they neared Elisha's house, Gehazi took the load from the servants and sent them on their way. Then he hid the silver and clothing in the house and went in and stood before his master Elisha.

Gehazi lies to Elisha

²⁶Elisha said to him, "Where have you been Gehazi?"

He answered, "I have not been anywhere."

Gehazi and his descendants punished with Naaman's leprosy

²⁷Elisha said to Gehazi, "*I was present in spirit when Naaman got down from his chariot to meet you. Is this a time to take money or accept clothes? Naaman's leprosy*

*18 Idolatrous belief was that the god of a land could only be worshipped on the soil of that land.

*24 A talent of silver weighed about 34kg (75lbs) and was worth about 10 years wages of a labourer.

will cling to you and your descendants forever."²⁸And Gehazi went out from Elisha's presence white with leprosy.

The floating axe head

²⁹One day the prophets said to Elisha, "The place where we meet with you is too small for us. Allow us to go down to the Jordan and cut timber to build a bigger place."

Elisha said, "Go!"

³⁰He also went with them, and they began to cut down trees. As one of them did so, an iron axe head flew off and landed in the river.

³¹He cried out, "O my lord! It was borrowed!"

Elisha said, "Where did it land?"

³²When they showed him the place in the river, Elisha cut a stick and threw it into the water. The iron axe head floated to the surface and they took it up again.

5

Elisha would warn Israel's king of Syria's plans

¹Once when the king of Syria was at war with Israel, he conferred with his officers and said, "We will set up camp in such and such a place."

²But Elisha the prophet warned the king of Israel of the plans of the Syrian king so that he was prepared for him. This happened time and time again.

³The king of Syria became enraged at this and summoned his officers and demanded of them, "Which one of you is a spy for the king of Israel?"

⁴One of his officers replied, "None of us my lord the king. It is Elisha the prophet in Israel. He knows every word you speak in private and reveals your plans to the king of Israel."



The river Jordan where Elisha caused the axe head to float to the surface.

The king of Syria sends an army to capture Elisha

⁵The king commanded his officers saying, "Find out where he is and I will send men and capture him." The report came back. "He is in Dothan."

⁶So the king of Syria sent a strong army to Dothan by night, and they surrounded the town.

**Servant of Elisha sees the hills
full of chariots of fire**

⁷When the servant of Elisha arose early in the morning he saw the Syrian army with horses and chariots surrounding the town. He cried out to Elisha and said, "My lord, what shall we do?"

⁸Elisha answered, "Fear not. Those who are with us are more than those who are with them."

⁹Then Elisha prayed saying, "O Jehovah, open his eyes so he may see." Then the Lord opened the eyes of Elisha's servant and he saw the hills round about full of horses and chariots of fire.

The Lord blinds the Syrian army to reality

¹⁰As the Syrian army entered the town Elisha prayed, "O Lord strike these men with blindness of understanding."

¹¹So the Lord closed the eyes of their understanding as Elisha had asked.

Elisha leads the Syrian army to the royal city

¹²Then Elisha said to the Syrian officers, "You are not in the right town. Follow me and I will lead you to the man you are looking for." And he led them to the royal city of Samaria.^{F*}

¹³When they entered the gates of the city, Elisha prayed, "Lord, open the understanding of these men again, so they can see." ¹⁴Then the Syrian army realised they were inside the walls of Samaria.^{F*}

Elisha tells the king to feed the Syrian army

¹⁵When the king of Israel^{F*} saw them he said to Elisha, "Shall I kill them my father?"

¹⁶He answered, "Should you kill men you did not capture with your own sword or bow? Rather, set food and water before them so they can eat and drink and then allow them to return to their master."

¹⁷So the king prepared a feast for them and sent them home. So the Syrians ceased to raid Israel for a time.

Syria later besieges the city of Samaria

¹⁸However some time later Ben-Hadad the king of Syria mobilised his entire army and marched into Israel and laid siege to the city of Samaria.

Great famine in the city

¹⁹The siege lasted so long it caused a great famine in the city. A donkey's head sold for eighty shekels of silver,^{F*} and a quarter of a cab^{F*} of dove droppings for five shekels.

**A report of cannibalism horrifies
and angers the king**

²⁰One day as the king of Israel was walking along the top of the wall, a woman cried out to him, "Help me my lord the king!" ²¹This woman said to me, 'Give up your son that we may eat him today, and tomorrow we will eat my son.'

²²So we cooked my son and ate him and the next day I said to her, 'Now give up your son so we may eat him,' but she has hidden him."

²³When the king heard these words he tore his robes in anguish. The people of the city saw that beneath his robes he wore sackcloth on his body.

The king orders Elisha beheaded

²⁴Then he swore an oath, "May God deal with me severely if the head of Elisha remains on his shoulders today!" So the king sent an executioner to kill Elisha.

Elisha aware of the execution order

²⁵Now Elisha was sitting in his house and some elders of the city were with him. Elisha said to the elders, "The murderer is sending someone to cut off my head. ²⁶When the executioner comes, hold the door shut against him, for the sound of his master's footsteps are close behind him."

**The king angry at the
Lord's lack of deliverance**

²⁷Even as he spoke the executioner arrived, and shortly afterward the king.

²⁸The king said to Elisha, "This disaster is from the Lord. Why should I wait on him any longer for deliverance?"

Elisha prophesies abundant food tomorrow

²⁹Elisha said, "Hear the word of Jehovah, 'This time tomorrow a seah^{F*} of flour or two seahs of barley will sell for one shekel in the market place.'

The king's officer is sceptical

³⁰The officer on whose arm the king was leaning said to Elisha, "Even if Jehovah should open the windows of heaven, this could not happen."

³¹Elisha prophesied to him saying, "*You will see it with your own eyes but will not eat any of it.*"

Four lepers find the Syrian camp deserted

³²Now there were four men with leprosy living outside the city gates. That same day they said to each other, "Why should we sit here until we die? Let us go over to the camp of the Syrians and surrender. If they spare us we live, if they kill us then we die."

³³The lepers arrived at the Syrian camp that night but found it deserted, not a man was to be seen anywhere.

**The Syrians were caused by the Lord to hear
the sound of a vast army and had fled**

³⁴For at sunset the Lord had caused the Syrians to hear the sound of chariots and

*12 Samaria was about 20 km (12 miles) from Dothan.

*14 This miracle is believed to have been achieved by a divine means of mass hypnosis.

*15 The king of Israel is not named in this account, nor in the account of the famine which follows, but is believed to be Joram.

*19 About 13 weeks wages. The flesh of a donkey being an unclean animal would not normally be eaten by Israelites, especially not its head.

*19 A cab is approx one litre.

*29 A seah is about 7 litres.

ELISHA 6

horses of a vast army, so that they shouted out to one another, "The king of Israel has hired the Hittite and Egyptian kings to attack us!"³⁵And they all fled for their lives in the darkness, abandoning their tents and their animals.

The lepers begin to loot the camp but then decide to report the news to the city

³⁶The lepers entered two of the tents and ate and drank and took some of the silver and gold and clothes and hid them.

³⁷But then they said to one another, "We are not doing right. This is a time of good news and we are keeping it to ourselves. If we wait until morning, punishment may overtake us. Let us report this now in the city."

The king hears the news that night

³⁸So they went and cried out to the city watchmen saying, "We went into the Syrian camp but not a man was there, only the tents, tethered horses and donkeys."

³⁹The watchmen relayed the news and it was reported to the palace.

The king is suspicious

⁴⁰The king arose in the night and said to his officers, "The Syrians are hiding in the countryside thinking to lure us out and get into the city."

Men sent to investigate

⁴¹One of his officers answered, "We are all about to die anyway. Have men take two of the five horses we have left and go find out what happened."

The road to the Jordan strewn with discarded clothing

⁴²So the king sent out men in two chariots. They followed the trail of the Syrians as far as the Jordan and found the whole road strewn with clothing and equipment the Syrians had discarded in their flight.

The people go out and plunder the Syrian camp for food

⁴³When the people of Samaria heard, they rushed out and plundered the camp of the Syrians. So a seah of flour, or two seahs of barley sold for a shekel as the Lord had foretold.

The doubting officer trampled to death

⁴⁴The officer who had doubted the word of the Lord was put in charge of the gate, but the people trampled him to death in their rush through the gateway, fulfilling the prophecy of Elisha.

6

Elisha goes to Syria to appoint Hazael king

¹Elisha went to Damascus to appoint Hazael king of Syria, as the Lord had commanded Elijah. Ben-Hadad the king of Syria was ill at the time.

King Ben-Hadad sends Hazael to Elisha to enquire if he will recover from his illness

²When Ben-Hadad was told, "Elisha is in the

land," he said to Hazael who was one of his officials, "Go to meet this man of God. Take a gift with you and enquire of Jehovah through him to see if I will recover from my illness."

³So Hazael went to meet Elisha and took as a gift 40 camel loads of the finest products of Damascus.

⁴He said to Elisha, "Ben-Hadad king of Syria has sent me to ask if he will recover from his illness."

Elisha reveals that the king Ben-Hadad will be murdered and Hazael become king

⁵Elisha answered, "Say to him, '*You would certainly recover.*' Then he said, '*However Jehovah has revealed to me that he shall certainly die.*'"

⁶Elisha looked upon Hazael with a fixed gaze until Hazael was embarrassed then Elisha wept.

⁷Hazael asked, "Why is my lord weeping?"

Elisha answered, "*I see in vision the harm you will do to Israel. You will burn their towns, kill their young men with the sword, dash their little children to the ground and rip open their pregnant women.*"

⁸Hazael replied, "What is your servant but a mere dog, that he should do such great things."

⁹Elisha said, "*Jehovah has shown me that you will become king of Syria.*"

Hazael suffocates Ben-Hadad and becomes king of Syria

¹⁰Hazael left Elisha and returned to the king.

¹¹Ben-Hadad asked him, "What did Elisha say?"

Hazael replied, "He said, 'You would certainly recover.'"

¹²But the next day Hazael took the bed cover, dipped it in water and held it over the king's face until he suffocated and died. Then Hazael became king in his place.

Elisha sends a young prophet to anoint Jehu the army commander king of Israel

¹³When Elisha returned to Israel he called a young prophet from the school and said to him, "Take this flask of oil and go to Ramoth in Gilead, to Jehu the army commander. ¹⁴Take him into an inner room away from his men and pour this oil on his head and declare, 'Jehovah says, '*I anoint you king over Israel.*'" Then depart quickly."

¹⁵When the young prophet arrived in Ramoth he found the army officers sitting together. He said to Jehu, "I have a message for you commander."

¹⁶Jehu arose and went with the prophet into an inner room. There the young prophet poured the oil on Jehu's head and declared, "Jehovah the God of Israel says, '*I anoint you king over Israel.*'" ¹⁷*You are to destroy the whole house of Ahab to avenge the blood of my prophets and servants shed by Jezebel.* ¹⁸*As for Jezebel, dogs will devour her in Jezreel and no one shall bury her.*" Then the young prophet departed.

Jehu reveals his anointing to his officers

¹⁹When Jehu returned to his officers one of them asked, "What did that madman want?"

²⁰Jehu replied, "You know his type and the way they talk."

²¹But they said, "That will not do. Tell us what he said."

Jehu said, "He anointed me king over Israel."

The officers rejoice and sound a trumpet

²²At once the officers took their cloaks and spread them under Jehu on the bare steps. Then they sounded a trumpet and shouted, "Jehu is king!"

Jehu departs for Jezreel to kill Joram the king

²³Jehu said, "Allow no one to leave here to tell the news in Jezreel." Then he prepared chariots, and taking men with him he crossed the Jordan and drove furiously to Jezreel.

The lookout at Jezreel sees Jehu coming

²⁴The lookout on the tower at Jezreel saw Jehu and his men approaching and cried out to Joram the king, "I see chariots coming."

King Joram sends out horsemen who do not return

²⁵Joram ordered, "Send a horseman to ask if they bring news of peace."

²⁶So a horseman rode out to meet Jehu and said to him "The king asks, 'Is it peace?'"

²⁷Jehu replied, "What does he have to do with peace? Fall in behind me."

²⁸The lookout reported to Joram, "The horseman has reached them but he is not coming back."

²⁹So the king sent out a second horseman and the same thing happened.

³⁰The lookout reported to Joram, "He also has reached them and is not returning either."

³¹The driving is like that of Jehu. He drives like a madman."

Ahaziah, king of Judah had come to visit Joram

³²Now Joram the king was recovering from wounds he had received in battle, and Ahaziah king of Judah had come to Jezreel to visit him.

The two kings Joram and Ahaziah go out in their chariots to meet Jehu

³³Joram ordered, "Hitch up my chariot!" When it was hitched up, both he and Ahaziah the king of Judah rode out to meet Jehu, each in his own chariot.

³⁴The two kings met Jehu and his men near the plot of ground that had belonged to Naboth, whom Jezebel had ordered stoned to death.

³⁵King Joram asked, "Have you brought news of peace Jehu?"

³⁶Jehu answered, "How can there be peace while the idolatry and witchcraft of your mother Jezebel abound?"

Jehu kills Joram with an arrow

³⁷At these words Joram reined his chariot about and began to flee crying out to Ahaziah, "Treachery Ahaziah!"

³⁸But Jehu drew his bow and shot Joram in the back between his shoulders. The arrow pierced his heart and the king slumped down in his chariot and died.

³⁹Joram had ruled Israel eleven years.

Joram's body thrown on Naboth's field

⁴⁰Jehu said to his chariot officer, "Do you not recall how when we were with Ahab his father the Lord made this prophecy about him through Elijah: **'Yesterday I saw the blood of Naboth and his sons. I will surely make you pay for it on this plot of ground.'**"

⁴¹"Throw Ahab's son on the field that belonged to Naboth, in accordance with the word of the Lord."

King Ahaziah of Judah also killed

⁴²Now Ahaziah king of Judah had fled also, but Jehu chased after him shouting, "Kill him too!"^{F*}

⁴³They severely wounded Ahaziah in his chariot, however he escaped to nearby Megiddo but he died there. ⁴⁴His servants took him back to Jerusalem and buried him in the City of David. He had reigned one year in Judah.

7

Jezebel thrown from a window and trampled to death

¹Jehu next entered the city of Jezreel. When Jezebel heard what had happened she shadowed her eyes, adorned her hair and sat in an upper window of the palace.

²As Jehu drove by she shouted down to him, "Is it peace, murderer of your master?"

³Jehu looked up and called out, "Who is on my side?" Two eunuchs looked down at him.

⁴Jehu ordered, "Throw her down!"

⁵So the eunuchs picked up Jezebel and threw her down, and her blood spattered the wall as the chariot horses trampled her to death.

Jezebel's body eaten by dogs

⁶Jehu then went into the palace and ate and drank. Afterward he said, "Go and bury that accursed woman, she is after all a king's daughter."

⁷But when they went out to bury Jezebel they found nothing except her skull, hands and feet, for the dogs had devoured her.

Jehu writes to the elders of Samaria asking them to choose a descendant of Ahab as king and fight

⁸There were seventy sons^{F*} of the house of Ahab living in the royal city of Samaria, so Jehu wrote letters to the elders of that city saying, "Choose the most fitting of Ahab's sons and set him on his father's throne, then fight for your master's house."

*⁴² Although Ahaziah was a king of Judah he was related to Ahab. His mother Athaliah was Ahab's daughter and it was Athaliah who had introduced idolatrous practices into Judah (2 Kings 4:17-38).

*⁸ The Hebrew word used here for sons 'ben' includes grandsons.

ELISHA 8

The elders are terrified of Jehu

⁹But the elders greatly feared Jehu and said, "If two kings could not resist him, how can we?" So they wrote back saying, "We are your servants. We will not appoint anyone else as king. Do what you think is best."

Jehu asks the elders to heed the descendants of Ahab

¹⁰Jehu wrote them a second letter saying, "If you will obey me, bring the heads of Ahab's sons to me in Jezreel by this time tomorrow."

The heads of Ahab's 70 sons are sent to Jezreel and placed overnight by the gate

¹¹When the letter arrived the elders took Ahab's sons and slaughtered all seventy of them. They put their heads in baskets and sent them to Jehu in Jezreel.

¹²Jehu said, "Put them in two piles at the city gate until tomorrow morning."

Jehu addresses the people of Jezreel

¹³The next morning Jehu went out to the gate and stood before the people of Jezreel and said, "It was I who conspired against my master and killed him, but who killed all these?"

¹⁴Know then, that not a word the Lord has spoken against the house of Ahab will fail."

Jehu kills all Ahab's family, officials, friends and priests in Jezreel

¹⁵Then Jehu put to death all in Jezreel who remained of the family of Ahab. He also put to death all those who had been his officials, his close friends and his priests. F*

Relatives of Ahab from Judah also put to death

¹⁶Jehu then set out for the city of Samaria. On the way he met a group of forty-two men travelling from Judah and said to them, "Who are you?"

¹⁷They replied, "We are relatives of Ahaziah the king and have come to greet Joram king of Israel and the queen mother Jezebel."

¹⁸Jehu ordered, "Take them alive." So they took them alive and then slaughtered them by a well. F*

¹⁹When Jehu arrived in Samaria, he put to death all who were left there of Ahab's family.

Jehu deceives the ministers of Baal

²⁰Then Jehu called all the people of Samaria together and said to them, "Ahab served Baal a little, but Jehu will serve him much.

²¹Now summon all the prophets and priests of Baal to his temple. See that none of them are missing. I am about to hold a great sacrifice to Baal. Any who fail to come will die." ²²(But Jehu was acting deceptively in order to destroy the ministers of Baal.)

The temple of Baal packed full

²³Jehu also sent the same word throughout Israel, and all the ministers of Baal came, not one stayed away. They crowded into the temple of Baal until it was full from one end to the other.

Eighty guards wait outside

²⁴Now Jehu had posted eighty guards outside the temple with this warning, "If any of you let one of these men escape, it will be your life for his."

²⁵Then Jehu entered the temple and said to the keeper of the wardrobe, "Bring out robes for all the priests of Baal." ²⁶He also said, "Search to see that no worshippers of Jehovah are in here with you."

All the ministers of Baal put to death

²⁷When the sacrifice had been offered, Jehu went out and ordered the guards, "Go in now! Kill them all! Let not one escape!"

²⁸So all who were in the temple were put to the sword, and they dragged their bodies outside.

The Baal idol burned and the temple turned into a latrine

²⁹They entered the inner shrine of the temple and brought out the idol and burned it. ³⁰Then they tore down the temple of Baal and turned it into a latrine.

³¹So Jehu destroyed Baal worship in Israel, but he did not turn away from the sin of Jeroboam, the worship of the golden calves at Bethel and Dan.

The Lord rewards Jehu

³²The Lord said to Jehu, "Because you have done well in carrying out all that I had in mind to do to the house of Ahab your descendants will sit on the throne of Israel to the fourth generation."



Typical ancient temple of a demon god such as Baal.

8

The land of Gilead lost to Syria

¹In those days the Lord reduced the size of Israel. Hazael king of Syria overpowered the Israelites east of the Jordan in the land of Gilead.

*15 Jehu evidently went beyond the commandment of the Lord in killing those who were not of Ahab's family, nor idolaters (see Hosea 1:3).

*18 By being related to king Ahaziah of Judah, who was Ahab's grandson, this group also came under the edict of the Lord to destroy Ahab's entire family.

Jehu dies and his son Jehoahaz becomes king

²Then Jehu rested with his fathers and was buried in Samaria. He had reigned over Israel twenty-eight years. ³The rest of the acts of Jehu are written in the book The Annals of the Kings of Israel.

⁴Jehoahaz his son became king. He also did wrong in the eyes of the Lord by continuing the calf worship of Jeroboam.

Israel under the power of Syria

⁵So the Lord's anger burned against Israel, and for a long time he kept them under the power of Hazael, king of Syria.

Israel delivered from Syria

⁶But Jehoahaz pleaded with the Lord and the Lord listened to him, for Syria was severely oppressing Israel.

⁷So the Lord provided a deliverer for Israel^{F*} and they escaped from the power of Syria. The Israelites dwelt again in their own homes.

Israel's army almost totally destroyed by war

⁸However the army of Jehoahaz had been destroyed by Syria. All that was left were 50 horsemen, 10 chariots^{F*} and 10,000 foot soldiers.

Calf worship still practised

⁹However the people still did not turn away from the calf worship, and an Asherah pole^{F*} remained standing in Samaria.

Jehoahaz dies and his son Jehoash becomes king

¹⁰Then Jehoahaz rested with his fathers and was buried in Samaria. He had reigned over Israel seventeen years.

¹¹Jehoash his son became king. He also continued the calf worship.

King Jehoash visits dying Elisha

¹²Now at this time Elisha the prophet was suffering from the illness from which he was to die.

¹³Jehoash the king went to see him and wept over him crying, "My father. My father."

Elisha prophesies three defeats of Syria using a bow and arrows

¹⁴Elisha said to the king, "Bring a bow and some arrows," and Jehoash did so.

¹⁵Then Elisha commanded him, "Take the bow in your hands." As the king did so Elisha put his hands on the king's hands and said, "Open the east window." ^{F*}

¹⁶The king opened it. Elisha ordered "Shoot!" and Jehoash shot.

¹⁷Elisha prophesied, "***Jehovah's arrow of victory over Syria! You will defeat the Syrians at Aphek.***"

¹⁸Then Elisha said, "Strike the floor with the arrows." The king struck the floor three times.

¹⁹Elisha was angry with him and said, "***You should have struck the floor five or six times, then you would have completely destroyed Syria. Now you will only defeat Syria three times.***"

Elisha dies

²⁰After this Elisha died and was buried in a tomb.

Elisha's bones bring a man back to life

²¹Once, when some Israelites were burying a man, they saw a band of raiders from Moab coming, so they quickly threw the man's body into Elisha's tomb. ²²When the man's body touched Elisha's bones, the man came back to life and stood on his feet.

Jehoash defeats Syria three times as prophesied

²³Hazael the king of Syria died and his son Ben-Hadad became king.

²⁴Jehoash recaptured from Ben-Hadad the towns that had been taken in battle from his father Jehoahaz.

²⁵Three times Jehoash defeated Ben-Hadad, as predicted by the prophet Elisha.

*7 Probably the Assyrian ruler Adadnirari, who attacked Syria in 806BC and again in 804BC.

*8 Ahab originally had 2000 chariots according to ancient inscriptions.

*9 A type of totem pole in honour of Asherah, a goddess whose worship involved sexual acts.

*15 ie, toward Gilead which was in the power of Syria.

JONAH

This interesting book tells of the experiences of Jonah the prophet, including him being swallowed by a huge fish or whale.

The book has two important messages – first, we cannot run away from the Lord, second, the Lord is compassionate and cares for all of his children whether they be Israelite or non-Israelite.

Another message of the book of Jonah is the willingness of the non-Israelite people of Nineveh to repent. This along with other biblical accounts of the faith of non-Israelites show that great faith can be found among all peoples.

Two sea creatures are found in the Mediterranean Sea large enough to swallow a man. They are the sperm whale and the white shark. The one that swallowed Jonah would most likely be the air-breathing sperm whale which has a throat diameter of up to 2½ metres (8 feet). Jonah would nevertheless have almost certainly required divine protection to survive.

Jesus vouched for the truth of this story when he said, *“For as Jonah was three days and nights in the belly of a huge fish, so the Son of Man will be three days and nights in the heart of the earth.”* (Matt-Mark-Luke 13:23).

NOTE Jonah is one of the twelve ‘Minor Prophets.’ They are so termed by the Jews because their books are short, not because they lack importance. The others are Hosea, Joel, Amos, Obadiah, Micah, Nahum, Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechariah and Malachi. In traditional Bibles the books of these twelve prophets are grouped together at the end of the Old Testament. However in this Condensed Bible they have been relocated to the chronological periods in which they prophesied.

AUTHOR

According to Jewish tradition the story was originally recorded by Jonah himself, however the biblical account is told in the third person and is highly condensed. The style of the book is similar to that of the accounts of Elijah and Elisha which are believed to have been compiled, condensed, and rewritten in their present form by the prophet Jeremiah and his scribe Buruch. Jeremiah would have had access to the writings of the earlier prophets and was known to have written extensively.

Now the sea was raging higher and higher, so they cried out to Jonah, “What can we do to make the sea calm down for us?” Jonah 1:13.

CONTENTS

Chapter

King Jehoash dies	1	A huge fish swallows Jonah	1
His son Jeroboam becomes king	1	Jonah prays to Lord in gratitude	1
Israel’s former boundaries restored	1	Jonah vomited onto dry land	1
The prophet Jonah called to warn the city Nineveh ..	1	Lord again calls Jonah to preach to Nineveh	2
Jonah is fearful and flees to Tarshish	1	Nineveh a very large city	2
A terrible storm arises at sea	1	Jonah begins to prophesy destruction of Nineveh	2
Jonah admits he is running away from Jehovah	1	Ninevites believe and repent	2
Sailors ask Jonah what they should do	1	Lord decides not to destroy Nineveh	2
Jonah tells sailors to cast him into the sea	1	Jonah angry at Lord’s compassion	2
Sailors finally throw Jonah overboard	1	God gives Jonah a lesson in love	2

Bold The Lord speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Jeroboam becomes king

¹Jehoash reigned over Israel sixteen years then was gathered to his fathers and his son

Jeroboam became king in Samaria.

²Jeroboam also did wrong in the eyes of the

Lord, just like the kings before him by not turning away from the calf worship.

Israel's former boundaries restored

³However Jeroboam F* regained the towns captured by the Syrians and restored again the original boundaries of Israel.F* ⁴This was in accordance with the word of the Lord to the prophet Jonah.F*

The prophet Jonah called by the Lord to warn the city of Nineveh

⁵Now the word of the Lord came to the prophet Jonah saying, **“Go to the great city of NinevehF* and preach against it, for its wickedness has come up before me.”**

Jonah is fearful and flees to Tarshish

⁶But Jonah feared and fled to Joppa where he boarded a ship and sailed for Tarshish.F*

A terrible storm arises at sea

⁷But a terrible storm arose at sea and the sailors feared greatly. Each one cried out to his god and they threw the cargo into the sea to lighten the ship.

⁸Jonah had gone below deck and fallen into a deep sleep, but the captain awoke him and said, “How can you sleep? Up and call on your god that we not perish.”

⁹Then the sailors said to one another, “Let us cast lots and find out who is responsible for this calamity.” So they cast lots and the lot fell on Jonah.

¹⁰They asked him, “What have you done to bring this trouble upon us?”

Jonah admits to the sailors he is running away from Jehovah

¹¹Jonah answered, “I am an Israelite and worship Jehovah the God of heaven who made the sea and the land. I am running away from him.”

¹²This made the sailors even more fearful.

The sailors ask Jonah what they should do

¹³Now the sea was raging higher and higher so they cried out to Jonah, “What can we do to make the sea calm down?”

Jonah tells the sailors to cast him into the sea

¹⁴Jonah answered, “Cast me into the sea and it will become calm. I am the cause of this great storm.”

¹⁵However the men rowed hard to try and bring the ship back to land, but they could not and the sea grew even wilder.

The sailors finally throw Jonah overboard

¹⁶So they cried out, “O Jehovah do not hold

us guilty for drowning an innocent man.” Then they picked up Jonah and threw him overboard and the huge seas at once ceased raging. ¹⁷At this the men greatly feared Jehovah and they offered a sacrifice and made vows to him.

A huge fish swallows Jonah

¹⁸Meanwhile Jonah in his distress in the water called upon the Lord and the Lord provided a huge fish to swallow him.

Jonah prays to Lord in gratitude

¹⁹Inside the fish, Jonah prayed in gratitude saying:

²⁰“In my distress I called to the Lord. From the depths of SheolF* I called and you heard my cry.”

²¹“I was hurled into the heart of the sea. The currents swirled about and the waves swept over me.”

²²“The engulfing waters buried me and seaweed wrapped around my head.”

²³“I said, ‘I have been banished from your sight, will I ever look again toward your holy Temple?’”

²⁴“To Sheol I sank down, but you brought my life back up from the Pit.”

²⁵“With a song of thanksgiving I will sacrifice to you O Jehovah. What I have vowed I will do.”

Jonah vomited onto dry land

²⁶Jonah was inside the fish for three days and nights, then the Lord commanded the fish and it vomited Jonah onto dry land.



The sperm whale is easily large enough to swallow a man.

2

The Lord again calls Jonah to preach to Nineveh

¹The word of the Lord came to Jonah a second time saying, **“Go to the great city of Nineveh and proclaim the message I will give you.”** ²This time Jonah obeyed the Lord and went to Nineveh.

Nineveh a very large city

³Now Nineveh was a very large city. To walk through it took three days.

Jonah begins to prophesy destruction of Nineveh

⁴On his first day in the city Jonah began to

*3 Jeroboam was also the name of the first king of the northern tribes of Israel.

*3 This restoration of lost territory was mainly due to the Assyrian defeat of Syria. The growing empire of Assyria was to play a major role in the region during coming years.

*4 This revelation is not recorded in the Bible.

*5 Nineveh was the ancient and great capital city of Assyria (modern Iraq) to the far north east of Israel, on the banks of the Tigris River. A journey for Jonah of about 900 km (550 miles).

*6 Tarshish was a coastal city of Spain, in the opposite direction of Nineveh.

*19 Sheol is the Hebrew name for the spirit world of the dead.

JONAH 2

preach saying, **“Forty more days and Nineveh will be destroyed.”**

The Ninevites believe and fast and repent

⁵The Ninevites believed God and declared a fast. All of them from the greatest to the least began to put on sackcloth. ⁶And when the news reached the king of Nineveh, he also arose from his throne, took off his royal robes, clothed himself with sackcloth and sat in the dust.

⁷Then the king of Nineveh issued this proclamation: “No man or beast is to eat or drink, but every man and beast is to be covered with sackcloth. Let all call on God and give up their evil ways and their violence. ⁸God may yet turn from his fierce anger so that we will not perish.”

The Lord decides not to destroy Nineveh

⁹When God saw how the Ninevites turned from their evil ways he had compassion on them. He did not bring upon them the destruction he had threatened.

Jonah is angry at the Lord’s compassion

¹⁰But Jonah was displeased at this^{F*} and became angry. He prayed to the Lord saying, “O Jehovah, is this not what I feared in the beginning? Is this not why I fled? ¹¹I knew that you were a gracious and loving God, slow to anger. A God who relents from sending calamity. ¹²Now take away my life, for it is better for me to die than to live.”

¹³But the Lord said, **“Have you reason for your anger?”**

God gives Jonah a lesson in love

¹⁴Now Jonah had made a camp outside of Nineveh waiting to see what would happen to the city.

¹⁵That day the Lord made a vine grow up over Jonah to give shade for his head and ease his discomfort. Jonah was very pleased with the vine.

¹⁶But at dawn the next day a worm chewed through the vine so that it withered away. And when the sun arose there came a hot east wind and the sun blazed down on Jonah’s head so that he grew faint. He said, “It would be better for me to die.”

¹⁷Then God said to Jonah, **“Have you reason to be angry about the vine?”**

¹⁸Jonah replied, “I am angry enough to die.”

¹⁹The Lord said, **“You loved and felt concern for this vine, though you did not tend it or make it grow. It sprang up overnight and died overnight.”**

²⁰**“Nineveh has more than a 120,000 children,^{F*} and many cattle as well. How much more do I feel love and concern for them?”**



Location of the city of Nineveh in Assyria (modern Iraq).

*10 Jonah’s ego was deflated because his prophesied destruction did not occur.

*20 The population of Nineveh may well have approached a million people. An inscription of one of the city’s kings, Ashur-Nasir-Pal II tells of 70,000 guests attending his palace dedication banquet.

HOSEA

During the days of the prophet Hosea, idolatry was widespread in the northern kingdom of Israel. Worship of the demon fertility god Baal and his female consort Asherah involved drunkenness and ritual fornication. Crime and adultery were rampant and even the worship of Jehovah was corrupted by calf worship. The people were rapidly ripening for destruction and the end of the kingdom by the hand of the Assyrians was only about thirty years away.

Through Hosea the Lord likens Israel to an unfaithful wife and his angry words spoken through the prophet are vivid and powerful. Yet underlying them as always is the glorious vision of the millennium when Israel will again be gathered and enjoy peace and splendour.

AUTHOR Hosea the prophet.

“There is no faithfulness, no love, no knowledge of God in the land, only cursing, lying, murder, stealing and adultery. Bloodshed follows bloodshed.”

Hosea 2:1

CONTENTS

	Chapter		
Hosea commanded to marry an unfaithful woman ...	1	Israel's leaders inflamed with wine	2
Hosea marries Gomer who bears him a son	1	Men of intrigue and anger	2
Lord to punish the house of Jehu	1	Israel's days of punishment at hand	2
Lord to put an end to the kingdom of Israel	1	No respect for prophets	2
Israel to be unloved by the Lord	1	Harlotry, wine and idolatry	2
Lord still to show love for Judah	1	Lord desires mercy and knowledge not sacrifice	2
Judah and Israel to be reunited in the latter days	1	Lord's anger burns against the calf idols	2
Israel like an unfaithful wife	1	Samaria's calf idol to be carried to Assyria	2
Israel to suffer until she returns to the Lord	1	Israel to be destroyed by sword and fire	3
Days of peace and happiness in the millennium	1	Survivors to wander among the nations	3
Hosea to take back his adulterous wife	1	Punishment to continue in exile	3
Israel to return to Lord and David in millennium	1	A promise to those who sow righteousness	3
Sins of Israel causing wasting of the land	2	Judah also to be punished	3
Israel's priests reject knowledge	2	Israelites like stubborn heifers	3
Priests and the people to be punished	2	Lord's anger will not last forever	3
Israel's sins recorded	2	Israel to be gathered again in latter days	3
The abominable sins of Israel – robbery, murder	2	Israel must also return to Lord in heart	3
Deception, burglary, adultery, lust, harlotry, idolatry	2	The wise shall understand these things	3

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Hosea the prophet commanded to marry an unfaithful woman

¹The word of the Lord came to the prophet Hosea during the reign of Jeroboam king of Israel saying, **“Go take for yourself an adulterous wife, for Israel is guilty of the vilest adultery in departing from Jehovah.”**

Hosea marries Gomer who bears him a son

²So the prophet Hosea took to wife Gomer, and she conceived and bore him a son.

The Lord to punish the house of Jehu

³The Lord said to Hosea, **“Call your son Jezreel, for I will soon punish the house**

of Jehu for the massacre at Jezreel.^{F*}

The Lord to put an end to the kingdom of Israel

⁴**“I will also put an end to the kingdom of Israel, in the valley of Jezreel.”**

Israel to be unloved by the Lord

⁵Gomer conceived again and gave birth to a daughter.

⁶The Lord said to Hosea, **“Call her Unloved, for no longer will I show love to the house of Israel and forgive them.”**

^{*}3 Jehu went beyond the bounds of the Lord's commandment to destroy the family of Ahab when he also put to death his friends and officials in Jezreel (Elisha 7:15).

HOSEA 2

Lord still to show love for Judah

7“Yet I will still show love to the house of Judah, and save them.”

Judah and Israel to be reunited in the millennium

8After Gomer had weaned Unloved, she bore another son.

9The Lord said to Hosea, “Call him Not My People, for you are not my people and I am not your God.”

10“Yet the day will come when Israel will become like the sand on the seashore, here in the place where I said to you, ‘You are not my people.’”

11“*In that day you will be called the sons of the living God. For Judah and Israel will be gathered together under one leader and take possession of the land and great will be that day for your son Jezreel.*”

12“*He will rename his brother, ‘My people,’ and his sister, ‘My loved one.’*”

Israel like an unfaithful wife

13“*But for now Jezreel must plead with his mother, who is Israel, for she is unfaithful to me and I will no longer be her husband.*”

14“*Let her remove the adulterous look from her face and the harlot’s heart from between her breasts, otherwise I will strip her naked and make her like a desert.*”

15“*Nor will I love her children, for they are children of adultery and harlotry and have been conceived in disgrace.*”

16“*She has said, ‘I will go after my lovers who give me my food and drink, my wool and linen and oil.’ Yet it was I who gave Israel her grain, her new wine and oil and lavished on her silver and gold. The silver and gold which she used for Baal.*”

Israel to suffer until she returns to the Lord

17“*I will block her way with thorn bushes. She will chase after her lovers but not find them. I will put an end to all her yearly festivals, all her feasts and her Sabbath days.*”

18“*I will ruin her vines and her fig trees and make them a thicket. Wild animals will devour them.*”

19“*Israel will be punished for the days she burned incense to the Baals, and decked herself with jewellery and went after her lovers.* 20Then she will say, ‘I will return to my husband for I was better off then than now.’”

Days of peace and happiness to come in the millennium

21“*In that day I will allure her and speak tenderly to her. Her despair will change to hope. Then she will sing, as in the days of her youth, as in the days when she came up out of Egypt.* 22Then she will call me ‘my husband’ and no longer go after Baal.”

23“*In that day I will make peace between my people and the beasts of the field and*

the birds of the air, all living creatures. 24I will abolish war from the land so that all may live in safety, and I will take you for my wife forever.”

25“*And the soil of the earth will respond with abundant grain, and new wine and oil.*”

Hosea to take back his adulterous wife

26The Lord then said to Hosea, “*Go show love to your wife again, even though she has taken another lover and is an adulteress. Love her as Jehovah loves the Israelites, even though they have turned to other gods.*”

27So I bought Gomer back from her lover for fifteen shekels of silver^{F*} and a homer of barley. Then I said to her, “You are to live with me from now on. No longer are you to play the harlot with another man.”

Israel will return trembling to the Lord and to David their king in the millennium

28“*For the Israelites will live many days without a king, without sacrifice or sacred stones, without ephod or idol.*”

29“*But afterward they will return and again seek the Lord their God and David their king. In the latter days they will come trembling to Jehovah and his blessings.*”

2

The sins of Israel causing the wasting of the land

1Hear the word of Jehovah you Israelites, “There is no faithfulness, no love, no knowledge of God in the land, only cursing, lying, murder, stealing and adultery. Bloodshed follows bloodshed.”

2“Because of this the land mourns and all who live in it are wasting away, the beasts of the field and the birds of the air. Even the fish are dying.”

Israel’s priests reject knowledge

3“You stumble day and night and the priests stumble with you. My people are being destroyed through lack of knowledge for the priests have rejected knowledge.”

The priests and the people to be punished

4“Therefore I reject the priests, for they have ignored my laws.

They have exchanged their glory for that which is disgraceful and they love wickedness. For this I will punish both priests and people and repay them for their deeds.”

5“Hear my words you priests! Hear my words you Israelites! Listen O royal house! This judgement is against you. Israel is corrupt. I will discipline all of you.”

Your sins are recorded

6“*I wrote for you my commandments, but*

*27 About half the cost of a slave (Exodus 13:14).

you regard them as something alien. The guilt of Ephraim^{F*} is stored up. Your sins are recorded.”

The abominable sins of Israel – robbery, murder, deception, burglary, adultery, harlotry, idolatry

⁷“I would restore the fortunes of my people but their sins keep coming up before me.”

⁸“Gilead is full of wicked men, stained with blood. Robbers lie in ambush, so do bands of priests. They murder on the road, committing shameful crimes.”

⁹“I have seen abominable things in the house of Israel. They lie and practice deception. The merchant uses dishonest scales. ¹⁰Thieves break into houses, bandits rob in the streets.”

¹¹“There are adulterers, burning with lust. I will no longer punish your daughters when they turn to harlotry or commit adultery, for the men themselves consort with harlots and shrine prostitutes.”

Leaders of Israel inflamed with wine, men of intrigue and anger

¹²“On the days of festivals the leaders of the people become inflamed with wine and mock. And the king joins hands with the mockers.”

¹³“Men approach the king with intrigue. Their anger smoulders all night and in the morning it blazes like a flaming fire. The people devour their rulers. Their kings fall, and none of them calls upon me.”

¹⁴“They set up kings without my approval.”

Israel’s days of punishment at hand

¹⁵“The days of Israel’s punishment are at hand, for your sins are so many.”

No respect for prophets

¹⁶“The prophet is considered a fool. The man with the Spirit of God is called a madman. ¹⁷The prophet is my watchman over Israel, yet hostility awaits him wherever he goes.”

Harlotry, wine and idolatry

¹⁸“You have deserted Jehovah your God to give yourselves to harlotry and to wine. A spirit of harlotry leads you astray.”

¹⁹“You consult wooden idols and are unfaithful to your God. You sacrifice on hilltops and under trees where the shade is pleasant. With silver and gold you have made idols for yourselves, to your own destruction. ²⁰You have built altars for sin offerings, but they have become altars for sinning.”

The Lord desires mercy and knowledge of God not sacrifice

²¹“You offer sacrifices to me and eat the meat, but I the Lord am not pleased with them.”

²²“I desire mercy not sacrifice, knowledge of God rather than burnt offerings.”

The Lord’s anger burns against the calf idols

²³“You offer human sacrifice, and kiss the calf-idols. Throw out your calf-idol Samaria! My anger burns against it! It is not God, a craftsman has made it.”

Samaria’s calf idol to be carried to Assyria

²⁴“It will be carried to Assyria as tribute for the great king. You will mourn over it and so will its idolatrous priests.”

²⁵“Your high places of wickedness will be destroyed. Thorns and thistles will grow up and cover your altars.”

3

Israel to be destroyed by sword and fire

¹“I will punish your sins O Israel. The roar of battle is coming against you. Swords will flash and I shall burn your cities! I will destroy your fortresses!”

²“The people of Samaria will bear their guilt for they have rebelled against their God. They will fall by the sword. Their little ones will be dashed to the ground and their pregnant women ripped open. ³On that day the king of Israel shall be completely destroyed.”

Survivors to be exiled and wander among the nations

⁴“Ephraim’s glory will fly away like a bird. Samaria and its king will float away, like a twig on the waters.”

⁵“You will not remain in the Lord’s land. You will become wanderers among the nations. You shall return to Egypt. You shall eat unclean food in Assyria.”

⁶“What then will you do on the days of your appointed feasts to the Lord?”

Punishment to continue in exile

⁷“I will give your women wombs that miscarry and breasts that are dry. And if they do rear children I will bereave them. Woe to Ephraim when I turn away!”

⁸“Destruction to Israel! They have rebelled against me!”

⁹“I long to redeem them, but they speak lies against me. They cry not to me from their hearts but wail upon their beds.”

A promise to those who sow righteousness

¹⁰“They sow the wind and reap the whirlwind. ¹¹Sow righteousness and you shall reap the fruit of unfailing love. ¹²Seek the Lord and he shall come and shower righteousness upon you.”

Judah also to be punished

¹³“Judah also stumbles with you. When Judah goes to seek Jehovah they shall not find him. ¹⁴Their leaders are like those who move boundary stones. In time I will pour out my wrath upon them also.”

*6 The ten northern tribes of Israel were sometimes referred to as Ephraim, after the dominant tribe.

HOSEA 3

¹⁵“I shall be like a lion to both Ephraim and Judah. I will tear them to pieces and carry them off with no one to rescue them.”

¹⁶“Then shall I return to my own place until they admit their guilt, until in their misery they earnestly seek after me.”



Samaria in Northern Israel.

Ephraim and Judah like stubborn heifers

¹⁷“What can I do with you Ephraim? What can I do with you Judah? Your love is like the morning dew that soon disappears.”

¹⁸“How can I pasture you like lambs in a meadow when you are like stubborn heifers?”

The Lord’s anger will not last forever

¹⁹“But I will not give you up forever Israel. For it was I who taught you to walk, taking

you by the arms. I led you with kindness and with love.”

²⁰“My heart will soon change within me. My compassion will be aroused and I shall no longer execute my fierce anger.”

Israel to be gathered again in the latter days

²¹“Jehovah will roar like a lion and his children will come trembling from the west, like birds from Egypt, like doves from the lands of the north and I will again settle them in their homes.”

Israel must also return to the Lord in heart

²²“But you must return to me in your hearts, and maintain love and justice, then I will heal you and love you freely.”

²³“I will be like the dew of the morning to Ephraim and he shall blossom as the rose. ²⁴He shall send down roots and young shoots will grow and flourish. His splendour will be like an olive tree and his fragrance like a cedar of Lebanon. Men will again dwell in his shade.”

The wise shall understand these things

²⁵“Who is wise? Who is discerning? He shall understand these things. ²⁶The ways of the Lord are right and the righteous walk in them.”

AMOS

The prophet Amos prophesied in the northern kingdom of Israel, but was originally from the southern kingdom of Judah where he had worked as a shepherd before being called as a prophet.

Amos prophesied against eight different nations but was called more particularly to prophesy against northern Israel.

Northern Israel was decadent at this time. There was idolatrous worship involving prostitution, oppression of the poor, excessive drinking, unstable government with frequent assassinations, injustice in court, bribes, lying, stealing. Prophets were even forbidden to prophesy. Amos tells of one of the false priests saying to him, “Go away you seer! Return to the land of Judah. Do your prophesying there” (Amos 2:17).

The prophecies of Amos and his fellow prophet Hosea (see previous book) eventually came to pass. Assyria first conquered and exiled the far north and east of Israel, and then about 20 years later they returned and besieged the royal city of Samaria. The city fell after a three year siege and the survivors were taken into exile.

These exiles of northern Israel were eventually lost to history and became the so called ‘Lost Tribes of Israel’ fulfilling the word of the Lord “I will sift Israel among all nations” (Amos 2:29). Nevertheless the Lord has promised that lost Israel will be gathered again in the latter days.

The people of the southern kingdom of Judah (later known as the Jews) whose history is picked up again in the following book (2 Kings) were also exiled, but not until about 150 years later, this time by the Babylonians. Unlike the northern Israelites the Jews were given a second chance and many of their descendants returned to their homeland after 70 years of exile.

However about 600 years later, in 70 AD the Jews were exiled again, this time by the Romans and like the northern Israelites before them, they were scattered among all nations. They also are to be gathered again in the latter days, especially following the return of Jesus Christ (see the visions and revelations of Isaiah chapters 11-13).

AUTHOR

Chapters one and two – Amos the prophet with some clarifications by a later Israelite prophet.

Chapter three is taken from the book of 2 Kings in the traditional Bible, which is believed to have been written by the prophet Jeremiah. It covers the destruction and exile of Israel by the Assyrians and concludes the history of the northern kingdom.

“Hate evil and love good, maintain justice in your courts. Perhaps then I will have mercy on the remnant of Israel.” Amos 2:8.

CONTENTS

	Chapter
Prophecies of Amos the prophet	1
Prophecy regarding Syria	1
Prophecy regarding the Philistines	1
Prophecy regarding Tyre	1
Prophecy regarding Edom	1
Prophecy regarding Ammon	1
Prophecy regarding Moab	1
Prophecy regarding Judah	1
Prophecy regarding Israel	1
Lord does nothing without revealing it to a prophet ..	1
An enemy to overrun Israel	1
The sins of Israel – lies, stealing, bribes, injustice	1
Prophets forbidden to prophesy	1
Israel's offerings and festivals detestable to Lord	1
Sinful women of Samaria to be led away by hooks ..	1
Rich men of Samaria to be first to go into exile	1
Lord warned Israel with famine, drought and blight ..	2
Also locusts, plagues and sword	2
Lament of the Lord	2
Plea from the Lord	2
Visions of Amos	2
Vision of a locust swarm	2
Vision of judgement by fire	2
Vision of Lord with plumb line in his hand	2
Israel to be spared no longer	2
A priest of Bethel complains about Amos	2
Amos prophesies regarding the priest	2
Bodies to be strewn everywhere	2
Dishonest merchants condemned	2
A powerful earthquake coming	2
Famine of the word of the Lord coming	2
Bethel altar worshippers to be destroyed	2

AMOS 1

Israel no different from other peoples	2
Survivors of Israel to be sifted among all nations	2
Israel to one day be restored again	2
Fertility and abundance of the land in millennium	2
Israel never again to be uprooted	2
Jeroboam dies, his son Zechariah becomes king	3
Zechariah assassinated by Shallum	3
Shallum becomes king	3
Shallum assassinated by Menahem	3
Menahem becomes king	3
King of Assyria invades the land	3
Assyria appeased with a huge amount of silver	3
The silver exacted from the wealthy men of Israel	3
Menahem dies and Pekahiah his son becomes king	3
Pekahiah killed by Pekah who becomes king	3

North and east Israel conquered by the Assyrians	3
North and east Israel taken into exile	3
Pekah remains as king in Samaria but pays tribute	3
Pekah assassinated by Hoshea who becomes king	3
Hoshea stops paying tribute to Assyria	3
City of Samaria besieged three years by Assyria	3
Samaria captured by Assyria	3
Survivors of Israel taken into exile	3
Why Israel was exiled	3
Other peoples settled in Israel	3
Lions begin to kill the new settlers	3
An Israelite priest sent from exile	3
Teaches new settlers how to worship Jehovah	3
Idolatry also practiced by new settlers	3

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Prophecies and visions of Amos the prophet

¹The word of the Lord and the visions that came to the prophet Amos, a shepherd of Tekoa^{F*} two years before the earthquake,^{F*} during the reign of Jeroboam king of Israel.

A prophecy regarding Syria

²Jehovah says, "I will punish the sins of Syria, for she threatened the land of Gilead. I will burn the fortresses of Damascus and the house of Hazael the king."

³"The people of Syria will go into exile to Kir."^{F*}

A prophecy regarding the Philistines

⁴"I will punish the sins of the Philistines, for they took captive whole towns and sold them to Edom. I will send fire upon their fortresses and destroy their cities until the last of the Philistines is dead, says the Lord."

A prophecy regarding Tyre

⁵"I will punish the sins of Tyre, for she too sold whole towns of captives to Edom. I will consume her fortresses."

A prophecy regarding Edom

⁶"I will punish the sins of Edom, for he pursued his brother^{F*} with a sword and his anger raged continually. I will send fire on his fortresses."

A prophecy regarding Ammon

⁷"I will punish the sins of Ammon, for she ripped open the pregnant women of Gilead in order to extend her borders. ⁸I will consume her fortresses. Amid war cries on a day of battle her king and officials will go into exile."

A prophecy regarding Moab

⁹"I will punish the sins of Moab, for she

burned to lime the bones of Edom's king. I will send fire upon Moab and destroy her ruler and all her leading men with him."

A prophecy regarding Judah

¹⁰"I will punish the sins of Judah, for they have rejected the law of Jehovah and have not kept my commandments. They have gone astray after false gods, so I will burn the fortress of Jerusalem."

A prophecy regarding Israel

¹¹"I will punish the sins of Israel, for they trample on the poor and deny justice to the oppressed."

¹²"Father and son lie with the same woman beside every altar, on garments taken in pledge from the poor. And in the house of their god they drink wine bought with fines they have imposed."

¹³"So I will crush you to the ground, as a cart wheel crushes when loaded with grain. The swift will not escape nor will the warrior save his life."



Nations surrounding Israel in the days of Amos.

*1 A town about 15 km south of Jerusalem. Amos was therefore a Judean prophet.

*1 This earthquake is prophesied in Amos 2:23.

*3 Kir is believed to be part of Assyria near Elam. The Syrians originally came from Kir (Amos 2:28).

*6 The Edomites were descendants of Esau the brother of Jacob and were therefore related to the Israelites.

The Lord does nothing without first revealing it to his prophets

¹⁴"Hear the word Jehovah has spoken O people of Israel that I brought up out of

Egypt, for the Lord God does nothing without first revealing it to his servants the prophets.”

An enemy to overrun Israel

15“An enemy will overrun this land and pull down your strongholds. As a shepherd saves from the lion’s mouth only two bones, or a piece of an ear, so only will Israel be saved.”

16“On that day when I punish Israel for her sins, I will destroy the altars of Bethel, and your fine houses adorned with ivory will also be destroyed.”



“...your fine houses adorned with ivory will also be destroyed.” Wealthy home interior in Samaria.

The sins of Israel – lies, stealing from poor, bribes, injustice in court

17“**You despise him who tells the truth. You trample on the poor man and force him to give you grain. You take bribes and deprive the poor of justice in the courts. Therefore the prudent man holds his tongue for the times are evil.**”

18“**Hear the word I have spoken against you Israel. I brought you up out of Egypt and destroyed the Canaanite before you, though he was tall as the cedars.**”

Nazirites defiled and prophets forbidden to prophesy

19“**I raised up prophets and Nazirites from among your young men, but you made the Nazirites drink wine and forbade the prophets to prophesy.**”

Israel’s offerings and festivals detestable to the Lord because of sin

20“**You bring me offerings but I accept them not. I hate and despise your religious festivals. I cannot stand your assemblies.** 21**Away with the noise of your songs! I will not listen to the music of your harps.**”

The sinful women of Samaria to be led away by hooks

22“**Hear this you women of Samaria, who**

oppress the poor and say to your husbands, ‘Bring us wine.’ 23**The time will come when you will be led away by hooks, through breaks in the city wall.**”

24“**Go to Bethel and sin. Go to Gilgal and sin yet more, for this is what you love to do.**”

The complacent rich men of Samaria

first to go into exile because of their many sins

25“**Woe to you, leading men of Samaria, who are complacent and feel secure, to whom the people of Israel come. You lie on beds inlaid with ivory and lounge on your couches. You dine on choice lambs and fattened calves.**”

26“**You strum and play on your harps like David, and improvise on musical instruments. You drink wine from bowls and use the finest lotions, but you do not grieve over the wickedness of Israel.**”

27“**Therefore you will be among the first to go into exile. Your feasting and lounging will end.**”

28“**Though you have built mansions you will not live in them. Though you have planted lush vineyards you will not drink their wine.** 29**For I know how many are your sins. I will stir up a nation against you.**”

2

Lord warned Israel with famine, drought, blight, locusts, plagues and sword

1“**I gave you empty stomachs and lack of bread in every city and town, yet you did not return to me. I withheld the rain and people went from town to town for water, but did not get enough to drink, yet you did not return to me.**”

2“**I struck your gardens and vineyards with blight and mildew. Locusts devoured your trees. I sent plagues among you as I did to Egypt. I killed your young men with the sword, yet you did not return to me.**”

A lament of the Lord

3“**Hear this lament concerning you O house of Israel:**

4“**Fallen is virgin Israel, unable to rise again, deserted in her own land with no one to lift her up.**”

5“**The city that marched out a thousand strong will have only a hundred left. The town that marched out a hundred strong will have only ten left.**”

A plea from the Lord

6“**Turn to me and live. Do not turn to Gilgal or Bethel. For Gilgal will go into exile and Bethel be reduced to nothing. Seek Jehovah your God and live, or he will sweep through you like a fire.**”

7“**Let justice roll on like a river, a never-failing stream. Seek good, not evil. Then the**

AMOS 2

Lord will be with you, just as you now say he is.”

⁸“Hate evil and love good, maintain justice in your courts. Perhaps then I will have mercy on the remnant of Israel.”



Israel in the days of the prophet Amos

Amos sees a vision of a locust swarm

⁹The Lord showed me in vision swarms of locusts as the main crop was to be harvested. They stripped the land clean.

¹⁰I cried out, “O Lord, forgive! How can Israel survive?”

¹¹So the Lord relented and said, “This shall not be.”

Amos sees a vision of judgement by fire

¹²Then the Lord showed me judgement by fire. It dried up the underground water and burned the land. But again I cried out, “O Lord I beg you, stop! How can Israel survive?” So again the Lord relented.

A vision of the Lord with a plumb line in his hand

¹³Then I saw the Lord standing by a wall that had been built true, with a plumb line in his hand. ¹⁴The Lord said to me, “What do you see Amos?”

I replied, “A plumb line.”

Israel to be spared no longer

¹⁵The Lord said, “I am setting a plumb line to my people Israel and will spare them no longer. The high places and shrines of Israel will be destroyed. My sword will rise up against the house of Jeroboam.”

A priest of Bethel complains about Amos

¹⁶Then a priest of Bethel sent this message about me to Jeroboam king of Israel, “Amos is raising a conspiracy against you. He is prophesying ‘*Jeroboam will die by the sword and Israel will surely go into exile.*’”

¹⁷Then the priest said to me, “Go away you seer! Return to the land of Judah to earn your bread. Do your prophesying there and do not prophesy any more at Bethel.”

Amos formerly a shepherd

¹⁸I answered him, “I was neither a prophet nor the son of a prophet, but was a shepherd. The Lord took me from tending the flock and said to me, ‘Go prophesy to my people Israel.’”

Amos prophesies about the priest of Bethel

¹⁹“Now then, hear the word of Jehovah. You say to me, ‘Do not prophesy any more against Israel,’ therefore the Lord says to you, ‘Your wife will become a harlot in the city and your sons and daughters will fall by the sword. You yourself will die in a foreign land and Israel will certainly go into exile.’”

Bodies to be strewn everywhere

²⁰The Lord showed me a basket of ripe fruit and said, “What do you see Amos?”

I answered, “A basket of ripe fruit.”

²¹The Lord said, “My people Israel are ripe for destruction. I will spare them no longer. The day is coming when the songs in the palace will turn to shrieking. There will be bodies strewn everywhere, then silence.”

Dishonest merchants condemned

²²“Hear this you merchants who oppress the poor and say, ‘When will the Sabbath be over that we may again sell grain, skimping the measure, boosting the price, and cheating with dishonest scales, selling even the sweepings with the wheat.’”

A powerful earthquake coming

²³“I will not forget what you have done. An earthquake will come upon the land for this and all will mourn. The whole land will rise and be shaken and then sink. On that day I will bring darkness over the earth at noon.”

A famine of the word of the Lord coming upon the earth

²⁴“The days are also coming when I will send a famine throughout the land, not a famine of food or water, but a famine of hearing the word of the Lord. ²⁵Men will travel from sea to sea, and wander from north to east searching for the word of Jehovah, but will not find it.”

All Bethel altar worshippers to be destroyed

²⁶I saw in vision the Lord standing by the altar at Bethel, and he said, “**Strike the pillars! Bring them down on the heads of the people! Those who survive I will kill with the sword! None will escape!**” ²⁷“**Though they hide I will hunt them down. Though they go into exile my sword will slay them there.**”

Israel no different from other peoples

²⁸“**Are not you Israelites the same to me as the Ethiopians? Did I not bring Israel up from Egypt as I brought the Philistines from Crete and the Syrians from Kir?**”

Survivors of Israel to be sifted among all nations

²⁹“**The eyes of Jehovah are upon this sinful kingdom and I will destroy it. Yet not totally, for I will sift Israel among all nations.**”

³⁰“**However the sinners among my people will all die by the sword.**”

Israel to one day be restored again

³¹“**But the day will come when I will restore David’s fallen tent, and build it as it used to be. Israel will again rule over Edom and all the nations that bear my name.**”

Fertility and abundance of the land during millennium

³²“**In those days the reaper will be overtaken by the ploughman, and the planter by the one treading grapes.**” ³³“**The hills will drip with new wine, and I will bring back my exiled people Israel and they will rebuild the ruined cities and live in them. They will plant gardens and orchards and eat their fruit.**”

Israel never again to be uprooted

³⁴“**I will restore Israel to their own land never again to be uprooted says Jehovah your God.**”

EXILE OF NORTHERN ISRAEL

3

Jeroboam dies and his son Zechariah becomes king

¹Jeroboam, king of Israel reigned forty-one years and then rested with his fathers and Zechariah his son became king. ²This fulfilled the word of the Lord spoken to Jehu, “**Your descendants will sit on the throne of Israel to the fourth generation.**”

Zechariah assassinated by Shallum who becomes king

³Zechariah did wrong in the eyes of the Lord, just as his fathers had done. When he had reigned for six months Shallum conspired against him. He attacked him in front of the people and assassinated him and became king.

Shallum assassinated by Menahem who becomes king

⁴Shallum reigned in Samaria one month then Menahem assassinated him and became king.

⁵Menahem brought destruction on the town of

Tiphshah^{F*} because they refused to let him enter. He attacked the city and ripped open all the pregnant women. ⁶He also did evil in the eyes of the Lord and did not turn away from the calf worship.

The king of Assyria invades the land and is appeased with a huge amount of silver

⁷Then Tiglath-Pileser, king of Assyria invaded the land, but Menahem gave him a thousand talents of silver^{F*} to buy his protection, and to strengthen his own hold on the kingdom.

The silver exacted from the wealthy men of Israel

⁸Menahem exacted this money from the wealthy men of Israel. Each had to contribute fifty shekels of silver.^{F*} So the king of Assyria withdrew from Israel.

King Menahem dies and Pekahiah his son becomes king

⁹Menahem reigned ten years then rested with his fathers and Pekahiah his son became king. He also continued the sin of calf worship.

Pekahiah assassinated by Pekah who becomes king

¹⁰After two years Pekah, one of Pekahiah’s chief officers conspired against him and assassinated him in the royal palace at Samaria and became king. ¹¹He also continued the calf worship, the sin that Jeroboam caused Israel to commit.

The north and east of Israel conquered by the Assyrians and taken into exile

¹²During Pekah’s reign, Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria again invaded the land and captured all of Gilead east of the Jordan and Galilee to the north^{F*} and exiled the Israelites from these regions to Assyria.

Pekah remains as king in Samaria but pays tribute

¹³Pekah continued to rule over Samaria and the cities round about, but paid tribute to the king of Assyria each year.

Pekah assassinated by Hoshea who becomes king

¹⁴Then Hoshea assassinated Pekah and became king. Pekah had reigned for twenty years. The other events of Pekah’s reign are written in the Annals of the Kings of Israel.

¹⁵Hoshea did evil in the eyes of the Lord, but not like the kings of Israel before him.

Hoshea stops paying tribute to Assyria

¹⁶Assyria again invaded Israel during his reign, for the king of Assyria heard that Hoshea had sent messengers to seek help from Egypt and Israel had stopped paying tribute to Assyria.

*5 A town of northern Israel.

*7 About 34 tonnes.

*8 About 60,000 men would have needed to contribute the equivalent of about eight weeks wages for a labourer.

*12 The brutal Assyrians at this time 701 BC also conquered all of Syria, and the Sidonian cities of Tyre and Sidon.

AMOS 3

Samaria besieged for three years then captured by Assyria and the survivors taken into exile

¹⁷Assyria besieged the royal city of Samaria for three years.

¹⁸The city fell In the ninth year of Hoshea's reign and the Assyrians took him captive and exiled the survivors of Israel to Assyria.^{F*}

Why Israel was exiled

¹⁹All this took place because the Israelites had sinned against the Lord their God. They worshipped other gods and followed the practices of the nations the Lord had driven out before them.

²⁰The Lord warned Israel through his prophets but they would not listen. They forsook the commandments of God and made for themselves two calf idols and an Asherah pole. They bowed down to the sun, moon and stars, and worshipped Baal. They sacrificed their children in fire and practiced divination and sorcery.

²¹Therefore the Lord was angry with Israel and removed them from his presence as he had warned through his prophets. The people of Israel were exiled into Assyria and have never returned.^{F*}

²²Only the people of Judah were left in the land, and even they were not keeping the commandments of the Lord their God. Judah was following the practices that Israel had introduced.

Other peoples settled in Israel

²³The king of Assyria brought people from Babylon and other Mesopotamian cities he had conquered and settled them in Samaria and in the other cities and towns round about to replace the exiled Israelites.^{F*}

Lions begin to kill the new settlers

²⁴At first these people did not worship Jehovah, however lions increased among them and killed some of them.

An Israelite priest sent from exile to teach the new settlers how to worship Jehovah

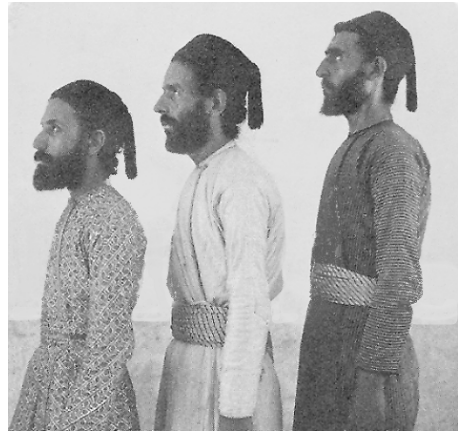
²⁵This was reported to the king of Assyria, so he gave this order, "Have one of the priests you took captive go back to live in Israel and teach the people what the god of the land requires."

²⁶So one of the priests returned to live in Bethel and taught the people how to worship the Lord.

Idolatry also practised by new settlers

²⁷Nevertheless these people also made idols according to the gods and customs of the nations from which they had been brought and set them up in the shrines the Israelites had made at the high places.

²⁸But they also feared Jehovah and appointed priests from among themselves to sacrifice to the Lord.



Samaritans, conquered Mesopotamians exiled to Northern Israel by the king of Assyria. These peoples interbred with the remaining poor Israelite land workers of the countryside.

*18 Assyrian records report that 27,290 inhabitants of Samaria were taken captive at this time.

*21 These exiles and those of the earlier exile from Gilead and Galilee comprise what is known as the 'Ten Lost Tribes of Israel' and have been the subject of much speculation. It is generally believed that after the fall of Assyria the majority migrated northward into Europe.

*23 The poorer agricultural workers of the countryside were not normally taken into exile by Assyrians. These remaining Israelites interbred with the new settlers and became the Samaritans of the New Testament, a people despised by the Jews.

2 KINGS

This book of 2 Kings goes back and picks up the history of the people of the southern kingdom of Judah (later known as the Jews) soon after they split from the northern kingdom of Israel. It begins with the reign of King Rehoboam, son of Solomon.

The reigns of eight Judean kings are covered, and it can be clearly seen how the degree of personal righteousness of each king, along with his courage to do what the Law of God requires, largely determines the welfare of his people.

Righteous kings who trusted in the Lord brought about prosperity and protection for Judah despite the tendency of the people to lapse into idolatry, whereas unrighteous kings brought war and poverty on their people.

Jehoshaphat was an example of a righteous king. When he heard that three vast armies were on their way to invade Judah he called a nation-wide fast. Then, although he had an army of over a million men, he offered a humble prayer to the Lord asking for his protection. In response to this prayer the Lord caused the three invading armies to turn on each other and annihilate themselves. The Judean army marched out only to see the bodies of hundreds of thousands (perhaps more than a million) enemy soldiers lying dead on the desert floor. It took three days to gather all the spoil, more than all the men could carry home (see 2 Kings chapter 3).

Unfortunately however the people of Judah had tasted the forbidden pleasures of idolatrous worship, and despite the efforts of several righteous kings and the high priest Jehoiada, their hearts were never fully faithful to the Lord for long. Ultimately only a 70 year exile would cure them.

AUTHOR

According to Jewish tradition the compiler of this book was the prophet Jeremiah, who lived 300 years after Solomon. He appears to have drawn on many sources. Some of those sources known to have been available in his day and covering this period are: 'The Records of Jehu son of Hanani' 'The Annals of the Kings of Judah' 'The Annals of the Kings of Israel' 'The Records of the Prophet Shemaiah' and 'The Records of the Seer Iddo.'

NOTE: The books of 1 and 2 Chronicles in the traditional Bible, which were authored by Ezra contain an overview of the history of both the peoples of Israel and Judah up until just before the return of Judah from exile. As these two books duplicate material already in the Bible they are not included in this Condensed Version, however any additional facts found in these two books have been incorporated into the text.

When the men of Judah arrived at a place that overlooked the desert they looked for the invading armies but saw only vast numbers of dead men lying on the ground, not one of them left alive. 2 Kings 3:28.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Rehoboam son of Solomon, king of Judah	1	The records of Judah	1
Rehoboam 41 years old when made king	1	Battle between Judah and Israel	1
Priests and Levites from Israel gather to Judah	1	King Abijah addresses Israel before the battle	1
Faithful northern Israelites also move to Judah	1	Abijah accuses Israel of rebellion	1
Judah abandons the Law of God after three years ...	1	Judah still observe requirements of the Lord	1
Judah turns to idolatry	1	Abijah warns Israel they will not succeed if they fight	1
Egypt invades Judah	1	Israel flees before Judah	1
Lord abandons Judah to Egyptians	1	500,000 men of Israel slain	1
King and elders of Judah humble themselves	1	Abijah dies and his son Asa becomes king	1
Lord grants some deliverance	1	Asa a righteous king	2
Treasures of Temple and palace taken to Egypt	1	Asa removes foreign altars Solomon erected	2
Bronze shields made to replace gold ones	1	Peace and prosperity	2
Rehoboam dies and his son Abijah becomes king ...	1	A million strong Ethiopian army invades Judah	2

2 KINGS 1

King Asa prays to the Lord for help	2	Edom rebels and puts army of Judah to flight	4
1,000,000 Ethiopians killed by Asa's army	2	Jehoram receives a letter from Elijah the prophet	4
Huge amount of spoil captured	2	Jehoram and his family cursed by Lord	4
Prophecy of the prophet Azariah	2	Raiders carry off Jehoram's family and possessions	4
King Asa removes all idols from Judah	2	Jehoram dies in agony from bowel disease	4
Asa deposes queen mother because of idolatry	2	The people do not honour Jehoram in death	4
Silver and gold Temple articles replaced	2	Ahaziah his son made king	4
Asa summons all Judah to Jerusalem to sacrifice	2	Ahaziah follows evil ways of his mother Athaliah	4
All Judah joyfully make a covenant to serve Lord	2	Ahaziah's mother a daughter of Ahab	4
Baasha king of Israel declares war on Judah	2	Ahaziah put to death by Jehu in Israel	4
Asa goes to Syria for help instead of to Lord	2	Athaliah kills her grandsons	4
Syria attacks Israel as Asa the king asked	2	Ahaziah's son Joash saved and hidden	4
Baasha withdraws from Ramah	2	Athaliah rules Judah as queen mother	4
Lord rebukes Asa by Hanani the prophet	2	Jehoiada the priest prepares to make Joash king	4
Asa casts the prophet Hanani into prison	2	Joash anointed king in Temple court	4
Asa afflicted with a foot disorder	2	Athaliah hears the noise and goes to the Temple	4
Asa does not seek help from the Lord	2	Athaliah put to death	4
Asa dies and Jehoshaphat his son becomes king	2	Temple of Baal torn down and its priest killed	4
Jehoshaphat given wealth and honour	3	Joash a righteous king while Jehoiada alive	5
Jehoshaphat rids Judah of male shrine prostitutes	3	Joash decides to restore Temple	5
Jehoshaphat teaches people the Law	3	Levites sent out to collect the Temple tax	5
Jehoshaphat grows in power, wealth and honour	3	The Levites slow to act	5
Jehoshaphat's great army of 1,160,000 men	3	Joash questions Jehoiada	5
Jehoshaphat allies himself with Ahab	3	The people pay tax into a chest at the Temple	5
Jehoshaphat later visits Ahab	3	The Temple restored as before	5
Jehoshaphat agrees to go into battle with Ahab	3	Burnt offerings again offered regularly	5
King Ahab killed in the battle	3	Jehoiada the high priest dies aged 130	5
Jehoshaphat rebuked by Jehu the prophet	3	Judah again goes astray after other gods	5
Vast army on the way to invade Judah	3	Officials stone son of Jehoiada to death	5
Jehoshaphat calls a nation-wide fast	3	Syrians attack Jerusalem and kill officials	5
King and people pray to Lord for help	3	King Joash killed by his servants	5
Jahaziel the Levite speaks by the Spirit of God	3	His son Amaziah becomes king	5
Lord promises to save Judah	3	Amaziah hires 100,000 soldiers from Israel	5
The people bow in worship	3	A prophet warns Amaziah not to use these soldiers	5
The Levites loudly praise the Lord	3	The hired soldiers from Israel are sent home	5
Men of Judah march out next day	3	In anger the soldiers raid Judean towns on the way	5
Invading armies turn and destroy each other	3	Amaziah kills 20,000 Edomites	5
Vast numbers of men found lying dead	3	Brings back Edomite idols and worships them	5
Immense amount of spoil gathered over three days	3	Lord angry with Amaziah's idolatry	5
Men of Judah return joyfully to praise the Lord	3	King orders the prophet to cease speaking	5
Fear of God comes upon surrounding nations	3	Amaziah to be destroyed for silencing prophet	5
Hearts of Judah still not set fully on Lord	3	Amaziah challenges Israel to battle	5
An alliance with the king of Israel condemned	4	Amaziah accused of pride and arrogance by Israel	5
A fleet of trading ships destroyed	4	Judah defeated by Israel	5
Jehoshaphat dies and son Jehoram becomes king	4	Israel take treasures of the Temple and palace	5
Jehoram an evil king, kills his six brothers	4	King Amaziah killed by his own officials	5

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Rehoboam son of Solomon 41 years old when he became king of Judah

¹Rehoboam the son of Solomon was forty-one years old when he became king of Judah.

The priests and Levites from northern Israel gather to live in Judah

²After the kingdoms of Judah and Israel divided, the priests and Levites living in the northern kingdom of Israel abandoned their pasture lands and property and came to live in Judah.

³This was because Jeroboam the king of Israel rejected them as servants of the Lord. He

appointed his own priests for the high places and calf idols he had made.

Faithful northern Israelites also move to Judah

⁴Israelites from other tribes in Israel who set their heart on seeking Jehovah also followed the Levites to Jerusalem in order to offer sacrifices to the Lord. ⁵They strengthened the kingdom of Judah and supported Rehoboam son of Solomon for the three years he walked in the ways of David and Solomon.

After three years Judah abandons the Law of the Lord and turns to idolatry

⁶However in the fourth year of Rehoboam's reign, when his position as king became strong, he and all Judah abandoned the Law of the Lord.

⁷They built high places and pillars and Asherah poles on every high hill and under every green tree.^{F*} There were also male shrine prostitutes in the land.

⁸Judah committed the abominations of the nations who were in the land before them.



An Asherah pole is believed to be a type of totem pole. Worship of the god Asherah involved lewd and unnatural sexual practices.

Egypt invades Judah

⁹Therefore, because Judah had been unfaithful, in the fifth year Shishak the king of Egypt attacked Jerusalem. He came with 1200 chariots, 60,000 horsemen and innumerable troops of Libyans and Ethiopians.

¹⁰He captured the fortified cities of Judah and came as far as Jerusalem.

The Lord abandons Judah to the Egyptians

¹¹Then the prophet Shemaiah came to Rehoboam and said, "Jehovah says, 'As you have abandoned me, I now abandon you to Shishak.'"

The king and elders of Judah humble themselves

¹²At these words the king and elders of Judah humbled themselves and said, "The Lord is just."

*7 The stone pillars were called 'sun pillars' and the wooden Asherah poles were a kind of totem pole in honour of Asherah, a fertility goddess whose worship involved deviant sexual acts.

The Lord grants some deliverance

¹³When the Lord saw this, he said to the prophet Shemaiah, "Since they have humbled themselves I will grant them some deliverance. ¹⁴They will however still become subject to Shishak so they may learn the difference between serving me and serving the kings of other lands."

Treasures of the Temple and palace taken to Egypt

¹⁵Then Shishak king of Egypt entered Jerusalem and carried off the treasures of the Temple and the royal palace. He took everything including the gold shields Solomon had made and carried it all back to Egypt.

Rehoboam makes bronze shields to replace the gold ones that were taken

¹⁶King Rehoboam made bronze shields to replace those that were taken. Thereafter whenever he went to the Temple his guards went with him, carrying the shields. Afterwards they returned them to the guardroom.

Rehoboam dies and his son Abijah becomes king

¹⁷Rehoboam reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem. He had eighteen wives and sixty concubines, twenty-eight sons and sixty daughters.

¹⁸Then he rested with his fathers and was buried in the City of David^{F*} and Abijah his son became king.

The records of Judah

¹⁹The events of Rehoboam's reign and his warfare with Jeroboam king of Israel are written in the Annals of the Kings of Judah and in the records of the prophet Shemaiah and the seer Iddo.

A battle between Judah and Israel

²⁰The hostility between Judah and Israel continued during the reign of Abijah, son of Rehoboam. He marched against King Jeroboam of Israel with a force of 400,000 men, but Jeroboam mustered 800,000 men.

King Abijah addresses Israel before the battle accusing them of rebellion

²¹However before the battle began, Abijah the king stood on a hilltop and cried out to the opposing army, "Jeroboam and all Israel, hear me! As you well know, the Lord has given the kingship of Israel to David and his descendants forever by covenant. Yet Jeroboam has rebelled against his master. ²²Worthless men opposed my father Rehoboam, son of Solomon when he was young and not strong enough to resist them."

²³"Now you again plan to resist the kingdom of Jehovah which is in the hands of David's descendants. You are indeed a vast army, and have with you the two golden calves that Jeroboam has made to be your gods. But did you not drive out the sons of Aaron and the Levites and appoint priests of your own?"

*18 The City of David was the fortress area of Jerusalem where the temple and king's palace were located.

2 KINGS 2

Abijah claims the priests of Judah still observe the requirements of the Lord

²⁴“As for us, Jehovah is our God and we have not forsaken him. The priests who serve him at the Temple in Jerusalem are the sons of Aaron, and the Levites assist them. ²⁵Every morning and evening they present offerings and fragrant incense to the Lord. They set out the holy bread and light the lamps on the gold lampstand every evening. ²⁶We are observing the requirements of the Lord our God but you have forsaken him.”

Abijah warns Israel they will not succeed if they fight

²⁷“God is with us, and his priests will soon sound their trumpets to battle against you. Men of Israel do not fight against Jehovah for you will not succeed.”

Israel flees before Judah

²⁸Now the king of Israel had sent troops around to the rear of Judah. When Judah turned and saw they were about to be attacked both front and rear, they cried out to the Lord and the priests blew their trumpets. ²⁹Then the men of Judah raised the battle cry. At the sound of the battle cry God struck fear into the Israelites and they fled before Judah.

500,000 men of Israel slain

³⁰Judah inflicted huge losses on Israel, so that 500,000 men were slain. They also captured the towns of Bethel and Ephron.

³¹The men of Judah were victorious because they relied on Jehovah, the God of their fathers.

Abijah dies and his son Asa becomes king

³²King Abijah of Judah had fourteen wives, twenty-two sons and sixteen daughters, but his heart was not devoted to the Lord as the heart of his forefather David had been.

³³Then Abijah rested with his fathers. He had reigned three years in Jerusalem, and Asa his son became king.

2

Asa a righteous king, removes the idolatrous altars, pillars and poles

¹Asa did what was right in the eyes of the Lord, he put away the male shrine prostitutes and removed the foreign altars that Solomon had erected in the high places. He smashed the stone pillars and cut down the Asherah poles.

²He also commanded the people to seek Jehovah the God of their fathers and to obey his commandments.

Peace and prosperity

³No one was at war with Judah during Asa's early years. The whole kingdom was at peace. He rebuilt the fortified cities of Judah and put walls around them. He built and prospered.

⁴Asa had an army of 300,000 men equipped with large shields and spears, and 280,000 Benjamites armed with small shields and bows. All these were brave fighting men.



Stone worship pillars (2 Kings 2:1).

A million strong Ethiopian army invades Judah

⁵Then Zerah the Ethiopian invaded Judah with a vast army of 1,000,000 men and 300 chariots.

King Asa prays to the Lord for help

⁶Asa king of Judah marched out with his army to meet him. Then he prayed to the Lord saying, “Help us O Jehovah our God, for we trust in you. In your name we have come against this vast army.”

1,000,000 Ethiopians killed by Asa's army

⁷When Asa had said this prayer the Ethiopians began to flee from Judah. Asa and his army pursued them as far as Gerar.* The Ethiopians fell before them until there were no survivors.

Huge amount of spoil captured

⁸Then the men of Judah carried off a huge amount of spoil. They also destroyed the towns around Gerar and obtained more spoil, and from the camps of the herdsmen they captured herds of sheep, goats and camels. Then they started back to Jerusalem.

The prophecy of the prophet Azariah

⁹As they neared the city the Spirit of God came upon the prophet Azariah and he went out to meet Asa. He prophesied to the king and the men with him saying, “*Hear me Asa and all you men of Judah and Benjamin. Jehovah is with you when you are with him. If you seek him you will find him. But if you forsake him he will forsake you.*” ¹⁰Now take courage, be strong and endure and your works will be rewarded.”

King Asa removes all idols from Judah

¹¹When Asa heard this prophecy he took courage and removed the loathsome idols from the whole land of Judah and from the towns he had captured from Israel.

Asa deposes the queen mother because of her idolatry

¹²He also deposed his grandmother Maacah as queen mother, for she had made an Asherah

*7 Gerar was the southernmost city of the Philistines.

pole. Asa cut the pole down and broke it up and burned it in the Kidron Valley.

The silver, gold and articles of the Temple replaced and the altar renovated

¹³Asa replaced the silver and gold and the articles that had been taken from the Temple and renovated the altar in front of the Temple.

Asa summons all Judah to Jerusalem to offer sacrifice

¹⁴Then he summoned all Judah to Jerusalem, and also those of Israel who had settled among them for large numbers had come to him from all over Israel when they heard that the Lord was with him.

¹⁵They gathered at Jerusalem in the fifteenth year of his reign and sacrificed to the Lord 700 head of cattle and 7000 sheep and goats from the spoils they had captured.

All Judah joyfully make a covenant to serve the Lord

¹⁶Then they took an oath with loud acclamation, shouting and trumpet blasts and entered into a covenant to serve Jehovah the God of their fathers with all their heart and soul. ¹⁷And if any did not continue to serve the Lord they were to be put to death, whether small or great, man or woman.

¹⁸All Judah rejoiced over the oath they had made, because they had sworn it with all their hearts. So the Lord gave them rest on every side.

Baasha king of Israel declares war on Judah

¹⁹However in the sixteenth year of Asa's reign, Baasha king of Israel declared war against Judah and began fortifying the town of Ramah* to prevent anyone from leaving or entering Judah.

Asa goes to Syria for help instead of to the Lord

²⁰Asa took all the silver and gold from the Lord's house and also from his own palace and sent it to Ben-Hadad, king of Syria who was ruling in Damascus, with this message, "Let there be a treaty between us as there was between my father and your father."

²¹"I am sending you silver and gold, therefore attack Baasha king of Israel so he will withdraw from me."

Syria attacks Israel as Asa asked and King Baasha withdraws from Ramah

²²Ben-Hadad did as Asa asked and sent his forces against the towns of Israel. When Baasha heard of this he stopped fortifying Ramah and withdrew his forces.

²³So Asa brought the men of Judah to Ramah and they carried away the stones and timber Baasha had been using and used them to build up other towns.

The Lord rebukes Asa by Hanani the prophet

²⁴Then Hanani the prophet came to Asa and said to him, "**Had you trusted in Jehovah**

your God, instead of the king of Syria the army of Syria would have been in your hands."

²⁵"Were not the Ethiopians a mighty army? Yet when you trusted in Jehovah he delivered them into your hands. ²⁶For the eyes of Jehovah range throughout the earth to strengthen those whose hearts are committed to him."

²⁷"You have done a foolish thing, from now on you will be at war."

Asa casts the prophet Hanani into prison

²⁸Asa was angry with Hanani the prophet because of these words and cast him into prison. At the same time he inflicted cruelty on some of the people.

Asa afflicted with severe foot disorder, does not seek help from the Lord

²⁹In the thirty-ninth year of his reign Asa was afflicted with a disease in his feet. The disorder was severe, but he did not seek help from the Lord, only from his physicians.

Asa dies and Jehoshaphat his son becomes king

³⁰Two years later Asa died and rested with his fathers. They buried him in a tomb he had cut out for himself in the City of David in Jerusalem. ³¹They laid him on a bier covered with spices and blended perfumes and burned a huge fire in his honour.

³²His son Jehoshaphat became king.

3

Jehoshaphat given wealth and honour

¹Jehoshaphat was thirty five years old when he became king and the Lord was with him, for he walked in the ways of the early years of his forefather David. ²Therefore the Lord strengthened his hold on the kingdom and all Judah brought gifts to him so that he had great wealth and honour.

Jehoshaphat rids all Judah of male shrine prostitutes

³Jehoshaphat's heart was courageous in the ways of the Lord, he removed every Asherah pole from the high places throughout Judah and rid the whole land of male shrine prostitutes.

Jehoshaphat teaches the people the Law

⁴In the third year of his reign Jehoshaphat sent priests and Levites out to teach in the towns of Judah. They took with them the book of the Law and taught the people.

Jehoshaphat grows in power, wealth and honour

⁵All of the surrounding kingdoms feared Jehovah, so they did not dare make war with Jehoshaphat. ⁶Some of the Philistines brought gifts and silver as tribute and the Arabs brought him flocks, 7700 rams and 7700 goats.

⁷Jehoshaphat became more and more powerful and gained great wealth and honour.

*19 Ramah was a strategic town on the border of Judah and the northern kingdom of Israel.

2 KINGS 3

Jehoshaphat's great army of 1,160,000 men

⁸Jehoshaphat also had an army of mighty warriors numbering 1,160,000 soldiers stationed in Jerusalem, besides those in the fortified cities throughout Judah.

Jehoshaphat allies himself with Ahab king of Israel by marriage

⁹However Jehoshaphat allied himself with the wicked Ahab, king of Israel, by marriage.

Jehoshaphat later visits Ahab and agrees to go into battle with him

¹⁰Some years later he went to visit Ahab in Samaria. Ahab slaughtered many sheep and oxen for him and those who had come up with him.

¹¹Then Ahab asked Jehoshaphat, "Will you go with me to recover the city of Ramoth in Gilead?"

¹²Jehoshaphat replied, "I will go with you."

King Ahab killed in the battle

¹³So Ahab the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went to battle the Syrian defenders to recover Ramoth. ¹⁴But a Syrian archer drew his bow at random and pierced Ahab between sections of his armour. At sunset that day the king died in his chariot.

When Jehoshaphat returns he is rebuked by Jehu the prophet for helping the wicked

¹⁵King Jehoshaphat returned to Jerusalem. The prophet Jehu, son of Hanani the prophet went out to meet him and prophesied to the king saying, "*Should you help the wicked and make alliances with those who hate Jehovah?* ¹⁶*Because of this the wrath of the Lord is upon you. However some good is in you for you have rid the land of all the Asherah poles and have set your heart to seek God.*"

A vast army on the way to invade Judah

¹⁷Soon after this, Jehoshaphat was told, "A vast army is coming toward us from the other side of the Dead Sea. They have reached En Gedi." ^{F*}

Jehoshaphat calls a nation-wide fast

¹⁸Jehoshaphat was greatly alarmed at this report. He called on all Judah to fast and resolved to inquire of the Lord. People from all over Judah gathered at the Temple to seek the help of the Lord.

King and people pray to the Lord for help

¹⁹As the men of Judah stood with their wives and children in the courtyard of the Temple, Jehoshaphat stood before them and prayed these words:

²⁰"O Jehovah, God of our fathers who rules over all the kingdoms on earth, we have built this Temple for your name saying, 'If calamity comes upon us, whether by sword, plague or famine, we will stand in your presence before this Temple and cry out to you in our distress, and you will hear us and save us.'"

²¹"Now we hear that there are armies from Ammon, Moab and Edom coming to drive us out of the land you have given us. O our God, we are powerless to face this vast army. We look to you to help us for we know not what to do."

The Spirit comes upon the Levite Jahaziel and the Lord promises to save Judah

²²When the king had prayed these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon Jahaziel, a Levite, as he stood in the assembly and he said, "Hear what Jehovah says: **Do not fear this vast army, for the battle is not yours but mine. Tomorrow march out against them, you will find them at the end of the gorge in the desert of Jeruel.** ²³**Stand firm and you will see the deliverance Jehovah will give you.**"

The people bow in worship

²⁴At these words Jehoshaphat and all the people bowed down in worship before the Lord. Then some of the Levites stood and praised Jehovah with very loud voices.

The men of Judah march out next morning led by Levites singing praises to the Lord

²⁵Early next morning the men of Judah prepared to set out, but before they did so Jehoshaphat the king stood and said, "Hear me Judah, have faith in Jehovah your God and in his prophets and you will be successful."

²⁶Jehoshaphat then appointed Levites to march at the head of the army and sing praises to the Lord. As they marched they sang:

"Give thanks to the Lord.
His love endures forever."

The Lord causes the invading armies to turn and destroy each other

²⁷While the men of Judah were marching out to the desert of Jeruel with singing and praising, the Lord caused the armies of Ammon and Moab to turn on the army of Edom and kill them all. Then the armies of Ammon and Moab began to kill each other.

The men of Judah see vast numbers of dead men lying on the ground

²⁸When the men of Judah arrived at a place that overlooked the desert they looked for the invading armies but saw only vast numbers of dead men lying on the ground, not one of them left alive.

Immense amount of spoil gathered

²⁹So Jehoshaphat and his men went down to gather the spoil. They found livestock in great numbers and immense amounts of equipment, clothing and articles of value.

³⁰It took them three days to collect it all and there was more than they could carry away.

The men of Judah return joyfully and praise the Lord

³¹The men of Judah then returned joyfully to Jerusalem and assembled at the Temple with harps and lutes and trumpets to give praise to the Lord.

*17 En-Gedi was a town of Judah on the west shore of the Dead Sea.

Fear of God comes upon surrounding nations

³²Fear of God came upon all the nations round about when they heard what had happened.

³³Then the kingdom of Jehoshaphat was at peace, for God gave him rest on every side because he did what was right in his eyes.

The hearts of the people of Judah still not set fully on the Lord

³⁴However the people of Judah had still not set their hearts fully on the God of their fathers. The high places were not removed and the people continued to offer sacrifices and burn incense there.

4

A fleet of trading ships destroyed

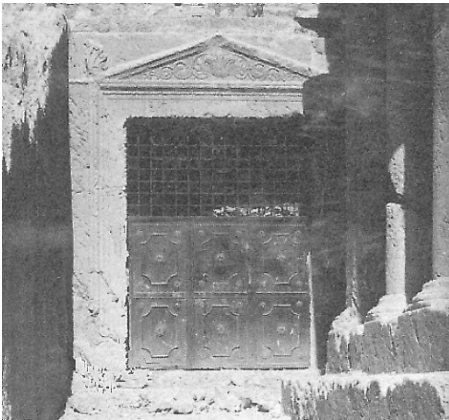
¹Later Jehoshaphat king of Judah made an alliance with Ahaziah, king of Israel who was the son of Ahab and also guilty of wickedness. He agreed with him to build a fleet of trading ships to sail to Ophir^{F*} for gold.

²However after these were built at Ezion Geber on the tip of the Red Sea, the prophet Eliezer came to Jehoshaphat and prophesied against him saying, **“Because you have made an alliance with Ahaziah, the Lord will destroy what you have made.”**

³And the ships were wrecked at Ezion Geber and unable to set sail.

Jehoshaphat dies and his son Jehoram becomes king

⁴When he had reigned twenty-five years, Jehoshaphat rested with his fathers and Jehoram his son became king.



The tomb of Jehoshaphat in the Kidron Valley

Jehoram, an evil king, kills his six brothers

⁵Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he became king and he walked in the evil ways of the kings of Israel, for he had married a daughter of Ahab.

⁶When he had firmly established himself as king, he put his six brothers to the sword and some of the princes also.

⁷But the Lord did not destroy his royal house, for he had promised to maintain a lamp for David and his descendants forever.

Edom rebels and puts the army of Judah to flight

⁸However Edom rebelled against Judah and set up its own king.^{F*}

⁹So Jehoram went against them with all his chariots, however the Edomites surrounded his army but he managed to break out by night and fled back to Jerusalem.

¹⁰The city of Libnah^{F*} also rebelled at the same time, for Jehoram had forsaken the Lord.

Jehoram and his family cursed by the Lord in a letter from Elijah the prophet

¹¹Then a letter came to Jehoram from Elijah the prophet^{F*} which said:

“Jehovah the God of your forefather David says, **‘You have not walked in the ways of your father Jehoshaphat but have walked in the ways of the kings of Israel. You have led Judah to be unfaithful to me, just as the house of Ahab did. ¹²You have also murdered your own brothers, men who were better than you.’**

¹³**‘So now Jehovah is about to strike your sons, also your wives and your possessions, and you yourself will suffer a lingering disease of the bowels until your bowels fall out.’**

Raiders carry off Jehoram’s family and possessions

¹⁴The Lord then aroused the hostility of the Philistines and the Arabs of the south. They raided Judah and carried off all the possessions of Jehoram’s palace. They also took his sons and wives, only Ahaziah his youngest son was left to him.

Jehoram dies in agony from an incurable bowel disease

¹⁵After all this the Lord afflicted Jehoram with an incurable disease of the bowels. At the end of the second year his bowels fell out because of the disease and he died in great agony.

The people do not honour Jehoram in death

¹⁶No one regretted his death and the people made no fire in his honour as they had for his father.

¹⁷Jehoram had reigned in Jerusalem eight years and was buried in the City of David, but not in the tombs of the kings.

Ahaziah his son made king

¹⁸The people of Jerusalem then made Ahaziah, Jehoram’s youngest son, king in his

*8 Edom had been under Judah’s rule since the time of David.

*10 Libnah was a Canaanite city on the Philistine border, also previously under Judah’s rule

*11 Elijah was a prophet of the northern kingdom of Israel.

*1 Saudia Arabia.

2 KINGS 5

place. He was twenty-two years old when he became king.

¹⁹His mother was Athaliah who was a daughter of Ahab and Jezebel of Israel.

Ahaziah follows the evil ways of his mother Athaliah a daughter of Ahab

²⁰But Ahaziah also did evil. He walked in the ways of the house of Ahab, for his mother Athaliah encouraged him in doing wrong, and men from the house of Ahab were his advisers.

²¹He also followed their advice when he supported Joram king of Israel, a son of Ahab, to war against Syria at Ramoth.

Kings Ahaziah put to death by Jehu in Israel

²²The Syrians wounded Joram king of Israel, so he returned to Jezreel to recover from his wounds, and sometime later Ahaziah the king of Judah travelled to Jezreel to visit him.

²³While he was there he went out in his chariot with Joram, the king of Israel to meet Jehu, whom the Lord had anointed to destroy the house of Ahab, and he was put to death by Jehu along with Joram.

Ahaziah's mother Athaliah kills her grandsons

²⁴When Athaliah his mother saw that her son Ahaziah was dead, she set about to kill the entire royal family of the house of Judah.

Ahaziah's newly born son Joash saved and kept hidden in the Temple

²⁵But Joash, the newly born son of Ahaziah was stolen away from among his brothers who were about to be murdered and hidden with his nurse in a bedroom.

Athaliah rules Judah as queen mother

²⁶This was done by Ahaziah's sister who was the wife of Jehoiada the high priest.

²⁷Jehoiada kept Joash hidden in the house of the Lord for six years while Athaliah ruled Judah as queen mother.

After six years Jehoiada the priest executes a plan to make the child Joash king of Judah

²⁸In the seventh year, Jehoiada the high priest took courage and made a plan with five of the army commanders. They went out and gathered the Levites and elders of Judah from all the towns and returned and assembled them at the Temple in Jerusalem.

²⁹Jehoiada said to them, "The young son of the king must reign, for he is a descendant of David. Now this is what you must do: A third of you Levites who are due to go on duty on the Sabbath are to keep watch outside the Temple gates, a third of you keep watch at the royal palace, and a third at the Foundation Gate. ³⁰All the other men are to remain here in the courtyard of the Temple."

Joash anointed king in the Temple court

³¹"No one is to come into the inner Temple court except the priests and Levites who minister here. They are to position themselves around the young boy, each man with a weapon in his hand. ³²They are to put to death anyone

who enters the Temple and must stay close to the king wherever he goes."

³³Jehoiada issued the army commanders spears and shields that belonged to the Temple then he and his sons brought out Joash.

³⁴They anointed him and placed the crown on his head and a copy of the Law in his hand and shouted, "Long live the king!"

Athaliah the queen mother hears the noise and goes out to the Temple

³⁵When Athaliah the queen mother heard the noise of people running and cheering, she went up to the Temple of the Lord to see what was happening.

³⁶She saw the young king standing by his pillar at the entrance and all the people rejoicing and sounding trumpets, and singers with musical instruments leading the praises.

³⁷Athaliah tore her robes and shouted, "Treason! Treason!" and fled back to the palace.

Athaliah put to death

³⁸Now Jehoiada the high priest had said to the army commanders, "Do not put her to death in the house of the Lord." So they waited until she reached the Horse Gate on the palace grounds and there they seized her and put her to death.

³⁹All the people of Judah rejoiced because Athaliah had been slain with the sword.

The temple of Baal torn down and its priest killed

⁴⁰Jehoiada then made a covenant with the new king and the people, that they would follow Jehovah.

⁴¹Afterward they went to the temple of Baal and tore it down. The people smashed the altars and idols and killed Mattan the priest of Baal.

5

Joash a righteous king while Jehoiada alive

¹Joash was seven years old when he became king of Judah, and for as long as Jehoiada the high priest was alive he did what was right in the eyes of the Lord.

²In time Jehoiada chose two wives for him and he had sons and daughters.

Joash decides to restore the Temple

³Now the children of the evil queen mother Athaliah had broken into the Temple of the Lord and taken its sacred objects for use in the temple of Baal, therefore Joash the king decided to renovate and restore the Temple.

The Levites sent out to collect the Temple tax but are slow to act

⁴He called together the priests and Levites and said to them, "Go immediately among the people of Judah and collect the tax money due annually to repair the Temple."

The king questions Jehoiada

⁵But the Levites were slow to act, so the king summoned Jehoiada and said to him, “Why have you not required the Levites to collect the tax imposed by Moses for the upkeep of the house of the Lord?”

The people pay the Temple upkeep tax into a chest at the Temple

⁶Finally, at the king’s command, a chest was made and placed outside the Temple. A proclamation was then issued throughout Judah that the people should bring to the Lord the tax that Moses had required of Israel for the upkeep of the Lord’s house.

⁷The people brought their tax gladly, dropping the silver into the chest until it was full. Then the royal secretary and the assistant to the high priest would empty the chest and carry it back to its place. ⁸They did this regularly and collected a great amount of money.

The Temple restored as before

⁹The king and the high priest then used the money to pay workmen to renovate the Temple. They hired masons and carpenters, and also workers in iron and bronze.

¹⁰They restored the Temple of God according to its original design and when they had finished, the rest of the money was used to make dishes and other objects of gold and silver.

Burnt offerings again offered regularly

¹¹Burnt offerings were offered regularly all the days of Jehoiada the high priest.

Jehoiada the high priest dies aged 130

¹²Now Jehoiada became very old and full of years and died at the age of 130. He was buried with the kings in the City of David because of all the good he had done.

Judah again goes astray after other gods

¹³After the death of Jehoiada, the officials of Joash began to advise him and he listened to them.

¹⁴As a result, Judah abandoned the Temple of the Lord and again worshipped Asherah poles and idols,^{F*} bringing God’s anger upon Judah.

The officials stone the son of Jehoiada to death

¹⁵Then the Spirit of God came upon Zechariah, son of Jehoiada the high priest and he proclaimed to the people, “The Lord says, **‘Why do you disobey my commandments? You will not prosper in this. Because you have forsaken Jehovah, he has forsaken you.’**”

¹⁶However the officials by order of Joash the king stoned Zechariah to death in the courtyard of the Temple. Joash did not remember the kindness of Jehoiada but killed his son.

¹⁷As Zechariah lay dying he said, “May the Lord see this and call you to account.”

A small Syrian army attacks Jerusalem and kills the officials

¹⁸At the end of that year an army from Syria invaded Jerusalem. They killed the officials of the city and took spoil back to Damascus.

¹⁹Although this Syrian army had few men, the Lord delivered Judah into their hands because they had forsaken him.

King Joash is killed by his servants and his son Amaziah becomes king

²⁰When the Syrians withdrew they left Joash the king severely wounded. Then two servants of Joash conspired against him for murdering the son of Jehoiada and killed him on his bed.

²¹He was buried in the City of David in Jerusalem, but not in the tombs of the kings. He had reigned forty years.

⁹Amaziah his son succeeded him as king.

Amaziah hires 100,000 soldiers from Israel

²²Amaziah was twenty-five years old when he became king. He did right in the eyes of the Lord but not wholeheartedly.

²³When Amaziah the king had control of the kingdom he decided to attack Edom, so he mustered all the men twenty years and older who were skilled in battle, 300,000 men and also hired 100,000 soldiers from Israel at the cost of 100 talents of silver.

A prophet warns Amaziah not to use the soldiers from Israel

²⁴But a prophet of God came to him and said, **“O king, these Ephraimites from Israel must not march with you, for Jehovah is not with Israel. Even if you fight courageously in battle, God will overthrow you.”**

²⁵Amaziah said to the prophet, “But I have paid 100 talents for these fighting men!”^{F*}

²⁶The prophet replied, **“The Lord can give you much more than that.”**

The hired soldiers from Israel are sent home and in anger raid Judean towns on the way

²⁷So Amaziah dismissed the men he had hired from Israel. ²⁷They were furious because of this and left in a great rage. On the way home they raided Judean towns and killed 3000 people and carried off a great quantity of spoil.

Amaziah kills 20,000 Edomites

²⁸Meanwhile Amaziah led his army to the Valley of Salt where he killed 10,000 men of Edom. He threw a further 10,000 off a high cliff so that they were dashed to pieces.

Amaziah brings back Edomite idols and worships them

²⁹However when Amaziah returned from slaughtering the Edomites he brought back idols of Edom and set them up as his own gods, bowing down to them and burning sacrifices to them.

*14 The worship of the fertility goddess Asherah involved sexual practices and a freedom from restrictions that would have contrasted sharply with the discipline of the Law of Moses.

*13 100 talents (3½ tonnes) of silver was a large sum of money. One talent comprised about 3000 shekels of silver and each shekel was worth about a four days wage for a foot soldier.

2 KINGS 5

The Lord is angry with Amaziah's idolatry

³⁰The Lord was angry with Amaziah for this and sent a prophet to him who said, "***Why do you worship Edom's gods who could not save their own people?***"

The prophet ordered by the king to cease speaking

³¹While the prophet was still speaking the king interrupted him and said, "Who appointed you a royal counsellor? Cease now or you will be struck down."

The king to be destroyed for not hearing the prophet's words

³²The prophet ceased speaking but said, "***God will destroy you for not hearing my words.***"

Amaziah challenges Israel to battle

³³After this, Amaziah sent a challenge to the king of Israel saying, "Come meet me face to face in battle."

Amaziah accused of pride and arrogance

³⁴But the king of Israel replied, "A thistle sent a message to a cedar in Lebanon saying, 'Give your daughter to my son in marriage.' Then a wild beast happened along and trampled the thistle underfoot."

³⁵"You have defeated Edom and are now arrogant and proud. But stay at home. Why provoke trouble and bring about your own downfall and that of Judah also."

Judah defeated by Israel

³⁶Amaziah however would not listen, so Jehoash king of Israel came against him and Judah was defeated by Israel. Every man fled to his home.

Israel takes the treasures from the Temple and palace as spoil

³⁷Jehoash then broke down a 400 cubit^{F*} section of the wall of Jerusalem and took the gold, silver and articles from the treasury of the Temple. He also took the palace treasures and some hostages and returned to Samaria.

King Amaziah killed by his own officials

³⁸Amaziah reigned twenty-nine years as king in Jerusalem then his officials conspired against him and he fled to Lachish. But they sent men after him and killed him there. He was brought back by horse and buried with his fathers.

*23 400 cubits is about 200 metres.

JOEL

A severe locust invasion has just devastated the land of Judah. The Lord appropriately chooses this time to inform his people through the prophet Joel of the *'the great and dreadful day of the Lord'* (Joel 2:5), an event which is yet to occur and is also known as the second coming of Jesus Christ.

This dramatic event of the last days, or more correctly latter days, as the earth continues on afterward, and the events leading up to and following it are touched on by almost every prophet from this point on in the Bible. It is however dealt with more fully by Joel, Isaiah, Zephaniah, Jeremiah, Obadiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Zechariah and Malachi. Also by Jesus Christ in the gospels, Paul in some of his letters and the apostle John in the book of Revelation.

In this book of Joel, the Lord likens the sudden devastation of the locust invasion to that of a vast army that is to invade Israel in the latter days, just prior to the second coming of Jesus Christ (Isaiah chapter 7 and Ezekiel chapter 13). This event is also known as the battle of Armageddon.

The picture painted of this invasion and of all the other spectacular events of the last days are remarkably similar in all the prophetic books of the Bible.

Below is a brief overview of these events as best can be determined by Bible prophecy.

Overview of the events of the last days

The last days begin in earnest with a terrifying seven years known as the 'Great Tribulation' (Revelation chapter 5). The first three and a half years of this unpleasant period commence with what appears to be a cosmic collision, for the apostle John describes his first vision of these events as *"hail and fire falling on the earth and a huge blazing mountain being cast into the sea"* (Revelation 6:6-9).

Whatever the cause of this phenomena, it creates a great upheaval of the sea, the earth and the sky – ie, huge roaring waves, meteorite hail, burnt vegetation, famine, contaminated water, darkened sun, red moon,^{F*} etc. (Matt-Mark-Luke 28:24 and Revelation chapter 6).

These upheavals will result in the deaths of billions of people, for speaking of these days the Lord says to Isaiah, *"I shall make man scarcer than gold"* (Isaiah 8:5, also Micah 4:8 and Isaiah 7:4). Over one third of the world's population will die by war during the final months of this first period, perhaps fought over food resources (Revelation 6:32). Two prophets with great powers, including that of withholding rain and other plagues will prophesy from Jerusalem throughout this three and a half year period (Revelation 7:13-15).

The rule of the Beast or Antichrist

After the physical upheaval of the earth has settled down, then comes the second half of the tribulation, a harsh three and half year rule by a Satan-controlled, world dictator known scripturally as the Beast or Antichrist.

This ruler, along with a false prophet who performs miraculous signs, will persecute *'the saints'* who are the faithful followers of Jesus Christ. He will also prevent anyone from buying and selling unless his mark or number is in their right hand or forehead^{F*} (see Revelation chapter 10). He will put to death the two prophets in Jerusalem, and *'people from all nations will gaze upon their bodies'* lying dead in the street for three days (probably through the power of television) to much rejoicing. However terror strikes the hearts of the people when in full view they come back to life and rise up into the sky in a cloud (Revelation 7:16-21), just as Jesus did. Earthquakes, horrific plagues, massive 30kg hailstones, a dying sea, and a scorching sun torment the wicked during this second three and a half year period. Faithful followers of Jesus Christ appear to be offered a place of refuge *'in the wilderness'* (Revelation 8:13, 20-21).

* The moon takes on a distinctive red hue when viewed through atmospheric smoke at night. (See Joel 2:5.)

* Perhaps a cashless financial system reliant on cellphone cash or credit cards with pin numbers (remembered in the head and entered by hand?). It is unlikely that entire populations would submit to an enforced chip implant as is sometimes conjectured.

The return of Jesus Christ in great glory

Finally, as depicted by Joel, there comes an invasion of Israel, now ‘a land of unwallied cities’ (Ezekiel 13:8) by a vast, multi-nation army, led by Gog who appears to be the Beast himself (Ezekiel chapter 13).

During the final attack and capture of Jerusalem (Zechariah 5:15) and after the death of two thirds of the population of Israel (Zechariah 5:8), Jesus returns in great glory ‘in the clouds of the heavens’ accompanied by his Father (see note on Matt-Mark-Luke 32:7) and all the armies and hosts of heaven, and loud music (Isaiah 7:26:289) and stands on the Mount of Olives near Jerusalem. The invading army then turn upon themselves and destroy each other ‘every man shall turn his sword against his brother’ as ‘torrential rain, hailstones and blazing sulphur’ rain down upon them (Ezekiel 13:14).

After this comes a massive earthquake which destroys the cities of the world, “The mountains shall be broken up and the cliffs will crumble, and every wall will fall to the ground” (Ezekiel 13:11, Revelation 12:28).

Just prior to this return of Jesus in his glory there takes place what appears to be a preliminary judgement (the final day of judgement is still over 1000 years in the future) by the ‘Ancient of Days’ (see Daniel 5:10-12 and 16-17) perhaps to decide who is worthy of taking part in the first resurrection.

The first resurrection

At the same time that Jesus appears in his glory, the righteous dead are to be resurrected. To be resurrected means that our spirit is again united with, and will give life to our former earthly body which will be reconstituted from the elements of the earth and be made perfect, see Ezekiel chapter 12.

Then all those who have been resurrected, plus all the righteous people worldwide who are still alive, are lifted up by the power of God to be with the Lord above the earth. This power to apparently defy gravity is well attested to in the Bible, Elijah was carried up in a whirlwind, Elisha made an axe head float, Jesus was carried to the highest point of the Temple and both Jesus and Peter walked on water. Later Jesus rose into the sky from the Mount of Olives in full view of his apostles, and Philip was carried away by the Spirit after baptising the eunuch.

While the righteous remain lifted above the earth the “birds gorge themselves on the flesh” of the fallen army (Revelation 15:20), then the rest of the wicked who remain alive on earth are burned (I Thessalonians 2:13-14). The earth at this time also becomes more level and fertile (Isaiah 13:2-3, Zechariah 5:23, Amos 2:32-33) and the heavens (or sky) as we know it will be changed, “I will create new heavens and a new earth” (Isaiah 11:16, 2 Peter 2:7).

The millennium

Following the burning, the righteous again descend to the earth where the wicked become ‘ashes under their feet’ (Malachi 3:22-23). Then begins the millennium, a time when Satan is bound for a thousand years and Jesus Christ reigns over the earth from a rebuilt, mountain-top Jerusalem as described in Ezekiel chapter 17.

Conditions on earth become like the garden of Eden, at least in Israel see Isaiah chapter 14, but probably elsewhere also. However some lands remain cursed with barrenness, and the sun is seven times brighter (Isaiah 13:7).

All Israel is then gathered and exalted as the world’s leading nation. A resurrected David again becomes their king (Jeremiah 18:5). Meat-eating animals now eat grass like the ox and formerly dangerous creatures become harmless, even to little children (Isaiah 11:22).

Satan freed again for a limited time

At the end of this 1000 year millennial period begins a time of testing, when Satan is set free to gather his angels and to tempt and try those who have been born during the millennium. It is unlikely that Jesus will continue to reign on earth during this testing period, the prophecy is that his reign will be only for a thousand years (Revelation 16:4). This freeing of the devil eventually results in great evil again on earth culminating in a second massive invasion of Israel which ends with the death of the invading army by fire from heaven (Revelation 16:8-11).

The final resurrection

Now occurs the final resurrection, this time including the unrighteous dead whose spirits have by now suffered for their sins (see parable of Jesus, Matt-Mark-Luke 21:29-30). These unrighteous spirits are those who had the opportunity to repent but did not do so during their lifetimes. They did not take advantage of the free forgiveness made available by the sacrifice of Jesus Christ.

Then comes the great and final day of judgement (Revelation 16:13-19). There is also a complete renewal of the earth and the heavens, and there is no longer any sea (Revelation 17:1).

The New Jerusalem

Following this final day of judgement, a glorious city referred to as the New Jerusalem, of colossal size – 2200 kms long and wide, and glowing clear as golden crystal, descends down from heaven to earth (Revelation 17:9-32).

In this city the resurrected righteous will live eternally in the presence of the Father and the Son, ie they will have Eternal Life and ‘*shine like the sun*’ (Matt-Mark-Luke 14:39) while the less faithful will dwell on a paradise earth outside the city, in varying degrees of glory (1 Corinthians 8:24) but deprived of the presence of God the Father which is termed the Second Death.

In effect heaven ultimately comes to us, rather than us going to heaven.

“Then after those days I will pour out my Spirit upon all mankind. Your sons and daughters will prophesy, your old men will dream dreams and your young men will see visions.” Joel 2:4.

AUTHOR The prophet Joel.

CONTENTS

	Chapter
Judah suffers a severe locust invasion	1
Word of the Lord comes to the prophet Joel	1
Lord reveals severity of the damage	1
people told to declare a holy fast	1
The locust invasion likened to last days	1
Vast army to invade Judah before coming of Lord	1
Fast and repent and return to Jehovah	1
Lord will take pity on his people in last days	1
The vast invading army to be destroyed	1
A great stench from the dead	1
Pleasant conditions after coming of the Lord	2
Spirit of God to be poured out upon all mankind	2
Signs of the last days	2
Blood, fire and columns of smoke	2
Sun will be darkened and the moon turn red	2
All who call on the name of the Lord will be saved	2
Nations to be punished in valley of Jehoshaphat	2
Wrongs of the surrounding nations	2
Surrounding nations challenged to invade Israel	2
Jehovah a refuge for his people Israel	2
Jerusalem never to be invaded again	2
Judah to be a land of wine, milk and flowing water	2
Water to flow out from under the new Temple	2
Egypt to be ruined and Edom become a desert	2

Bold The Lord speaking.

1

The word of the Lord to the prophet Joel following a severe locust invasion of Judah

¹The word of the Lord that came to the prophet Joel following a severe locust invasion of Judah.

²**Hear this you elders, has a locust invasion like this ever happened in your days, or in the days of your forefathers? Tell it to your children and to their children, and to the next generation.”**

³**“What the crawling locust left, the swarming locust has eaten, and what the swarming locust left, the hopping locust**

has eaten, and what the hopping locust left, the ravaging locust has eaten.”^{F*}

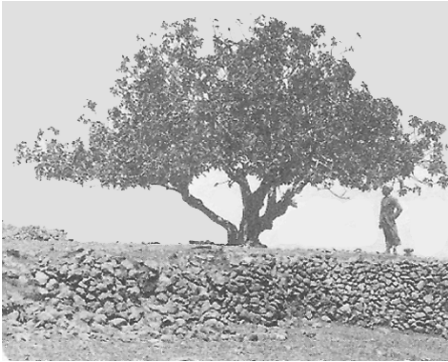
The Lord reveals the severity of the damage
⁴**“Wake up you drunkards and weep. Wail all you drinkers of wine, for the new wine has been snatched from your lips. ⁵A multitude without number has invaded my land. They have laid waste my vines and ruined my fig trees, stripping the bark and**

*3 These terms refer to the various stages the locust passes through before becoming a flying insect.

JOEL 1

leaving their branches white.”

6“Grain and drink offerings are cut off from the house of the Lord. The priests are in mourning. The fields are ruined, the grain is destroyed, the olive oil fails.”



A fig tree at Jerusalem.



The same fig tree fifteen minutes after a locust invasion.

7“Despair you farmers. Wail you vine growers. Grieve for the wheat and the barley. How the cattle moan. The herds mill about for they have no pasture. Even the flocks of sheep are suffering.”

8“**The pomegranate, the palm and the apple tree, all the trees of the field are stripped bare. Surely the joy of mankind is gone and gladness from the Temple.**”

The people told to declare a holy fast

9“Put on sackcloth O priests. Declare a holy fast. Call a sacred assembly. Summon all who live in the land to the Temple of your God and cry out to me.”

The locust invasion likened to the great army invasion of Israel before coming of Lord

10“**For the great day of the Lord is surely coming. It too will come as this destruction from the Almighty.**”

11“**Sound the alarm on Zion my holy hill. Let all who live in the land tremble, for the**

day of the Lord is coming, a day of darkness and gloom.”

A large and mighty army to come

12“**Like blackness spreading across the mountains, a large and mighty army will come,**^{F*} such as never was seen of old. 13**Before them fire devours, behind them a flame blazes. Ahead of them the land is like the garden of Eden, to their rear a desert waste.**”

14“**Like locusts they have the appearance of horses.**^{F*} With a roar like that of fire they fly over the mountains. At the sight of them, the people are in anguish and every face pales. 15**They burst through the defences and are not halted. They advance in line, unswerving in their course.**”

16“**They leap upon the city and run along walls and enter houses like thieves. The earth before them shakes, the sun and moon are darkened and the stars no longer shine.**”

The Lord to come with his own mighty army

17“**Then will the Lord thunder at the head of his own mighty army.**

18“**The day of the Lord will be great and dreadful. Who can endure it?**”

Fast and repent and return to Jehovah

19“**So return to me with all your heart, with fasting, weeping and mourning. Rend your hearts not your garments.** 20**Return to Jehovah your God for he is gracious and compassionate, slow to anger and abounding in love. He relents from sending calamity. Who can foresee? He may turn and have pity and leave behind a blessing.**”

21“**Declare a holy fast. Call a sacred assembly and purify the people. Let the priests weep and cry out to me saying, ‘Spare your people O Lord. Do not make your inheritance an object of scorn, a byword among the nations.’**”

The Lord to take pity on his people in the last days

22“**Then Jehovah will be jealous for his land and take pity on his people. Then I will say to them, ‘I am sending you grain, new wine and oil. Never again will I make you an object of scorn to the nations.’**”

The vast invading army of last days to be destroyed and create a great stench

23“**I will drive the vast northern army from you, pushing it into the desert with its front columns to the Dead Sea and the rear to the Western Sea,**^{F*} and the stench of their dead will arise.”

*12 See Ezekiel chapter 13 and Isaiah chapters 7 and 8 for a fuller description of this great invasion of the last days.

*14 See Revelation 6:21 where horse/locust-like creatures are to invade and torment Israel in latter days.

*23 The Mediterranean.

2

The pleasant conditions of Israel after the coming of the Lord

¹“Fear not O soil. Fear not O animals. Be glad and rejoice, for the Lord is doing great things. The open pastures are becoming green. The trees are bearing their fruit, the fig tree and vine are yielding their riches.”

²“Rejoice in the Lord your God O people of Jerusalem, for he is giving you both autumn and spring rains as before. The threshing floors shall be filled with grain and the vats will overflow with new wine and oil.”

³“I will repay you for the years the locusts ate. You will have plenty to eat until you are full, and you will praise the name of Jehovah your God who has dealt wondrously with you. Never again will my people be shamed.”

The Spirit of God to be poured out upon all mankind

⁴“Then after those days I will pour out my Spirit upon all mankind. Your sons and daughters will prophesy, your old men will dream dreams and your young men will see visions.”

Signs of the last days – smoke to darken the sun and redden the moon

⁵“But before those days I will show great signs in the heavens and on the earth, blood and fire and columns of smoke. The sun shall be darkened and the moon turn red as blood before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord.”

All who call on the name of the Lord shall be saved

⁶“But all who call on the name of the Lord will be saved, for in Jerusalem there will be deliverance.”

Surrounding nations to be punished in the valley of Jehoshaphat

⁷“In those days when I restore the fortunes of Judah, I will gather all the surrounding nations and bring them to the valley of Jehoshaphat.^{F*} ⁸There I will punish them on account of my people Israel, for they scattered my people among the nations and divided up my land. They cast lots for my people, and traded boys for harlots, and sold girls for wine.”

The wrongs of surrounding nations

⁹“Tyre, Sidon, and the regions of the Philistines, I will swiftly return on your own heads what you have done. You took my silver and gold and carried off my treasures to your temples. You sold the people of Judah to the Greeks. ¹⁰Therefore I will sell your sons and daughters to the people of Judah, and they will sell them to Sheba, a nation far away.”^{F*}

Surrounding nations challenged to invade Israel

¹¹“Say to the nations on every side, ‘Prepare for war! Rouse your warriors! Beat your plough blades into swords and your pruning hooks into spears. ¹²Come quickly and assemble in the valley of Jehoshaphat, for there shall I sit to punish the neighbouring nations.”

¹³“Swing the sickle, for the harvest is ripe. Come trample the grapes for the winepress is full and the vats overflow and great is their wickedness. ¹⁴Multitudes in the valley of Jehoshaphat, for the day of the Lord comes. The sun and moon are darkened and the stars can no longer be seen.”

Jehovah a refuge for his people Israel

¹⁵“The Lord thunders from Jerusalem and the earth and heavens shake, but Jehovah is a refuge for his people Israel.”

¹⁶“In that day you will know that I Jehovah your God dwell in Zion, my holy mountain.”

Jerusalem never to be invaded again

¹⁷“Jerusalem shall be holy and never again will foreigners invade her.”

Judah a land of wine, milk and flowing water after the coming of the Lord

¹⁸“In that day the hills shall drip sweet wine and flow with milk and all the stream beds of Judah will flow with water.”

Water to flow out from under the new Temple

¹⁹“A fountain will spring forth from under the Lord’s Temple^{F*} and water the valley of Acacia trees.”^{F*}

Egypt to be ruined in last days

²⁰“But Egypt will be ruined and Edom become a desert because of the violence done to the people of Judah in whose land they shed innocent blood.^{F*}

²¹“But Judah will be inhabited for all time, for I will pardon their blood guilt.”

*10 Sheba is modern day Yemen.

*19 For a fuller description of this new temple and the fountain see Ezekiel chapters 14 to 17.

*19 Believed to be the Kidron valley. See also Ezekiel 17:1-10.

*20 Despite the destruction of Egypt in the last days, the people of Egypt will eventually repent and worship Jehovah during the millennium, see Isaiah 10:5-18.

*7 The Valley of Jehoshaphat is not clearly identified in the Bible but is generally believed to be the Kidron valley east of Jerusalem. Jehoshaphat means ‘judgement.’

MICAH

Micah was a Judean prophet, but he also prophesied to the Israelites in Samaria the main city of northern Israel before it fell to Assyria.

Micah was a contemporary of the prophet Isaiah and an early vision and prophecy of Isaiah is included in this book.

Micah's prophecies follow the usual pattern of the Lord – first an exposing of the sins of his people, next the punishment to follow if they do not repent, and finally an encouraging but brief glimpse into Israel's future glorious destiny.

Micah is noted for his prophecy that the Messiah (or Christ of the New Testament) was to be born in Bethlehem (Micah 4:1). This prophecy was so familiar to the Pharisees of Jesus' day that when they heard Jesus was from the despised town of Nazareth in Galilee they assumed he was born there and immediately dismissed any further thought of him as being the Messiah. When Nicodemus, one of their number tried to defend Jesus they sneered at him and said, "Are you from Galilee too? Search the scriptures, you will find that no prophet is to rise from Galilee" (John 7:34). Such is the result of prejudice and superficial judgement.

NOTE In this book of Micah and some of the prophetic books that follow, a number of short, interrelated prophecies have occasionally been combined into one, in order to portray a clearer picture of the social evils of the day being condemned and the punishment to follow if the people do not repent.

AUTHOR

Chapter one provides the political background to Micah's prophecies and is taken from the book of 2 Chronicles written by Ezra and also part of the book of Isaiah written by Isaiah himself.

Chapters two and three are by Micah the prophet.

“And you Bethlehem, though you are little among the towns of Judah, out of you will come the one who is to rule over Israel, whose origins are from the very beginning, from ancient times.” Micah 4:1.

CONTENTS

Chapter

King Amaziah of Judah is killed by Jehu of Israel1	Israel will not listen to true prophets2
Uzziah his son made king of Judah1	False prophets lead the people astray2
King Uzziah becomes very powerful1	Visions and revelation soon to cease2
Uzziah loved the soil1	Widespread theft defiling the land2
Uzziah's army, fortifications and weapons1	Micah prophesies to corrupt leaders of Jerusalem ...3
Uzziah unlawfully enters the Temple1	Violence and bribery in Jerusalem3
Uzziah cursed with leprosy1	Distrust, rebellion and family breakdown3
Uzziah dies a leper1	A plea from the Lord for justice, mercy and humility ...3
Jotham his son becomes king1	Judah to be exiled3
Jotham a righteous king but the people disobedient .1	Jerusalem to become a heap of rubble3
Isaiah the prophet sees Lord1	Judah's exile will come to an end3
Winged cherubim in attendance with Lord1	Jerusalem eventually to rule the nations3
Isaiah's lips cleansed by live ember1	Messiah of Israel to be born in Bethlehem4
Hearts of people of Judah hardened1	Israel to be abandoned by Lord from Messiah's day ...4
People cursed with blindness of understanding1	Scattered Israel to be gathered in latter days4
Judah to be sent into exile1	Messiah to come again in last days4
Jotham becomes powerful because he is faithful1	Scattered Israelites to become like young lions4
The vision and prophecy of Micah2	All things of war and idolatry to be destroyed4
Micah prophesies of second coming of the Lord2	Earth to be almost empty of people in last days4
All Israel to be punished2	Israel's borders to expand during millennium4
Both Samaria and Jerusalem to be punished2	Nations will come to Israel trembling with fear4
The sins of Israel2	Micah's prayer of gratitude4

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

King Amaziah of Judah is killed and his sixteen year old son Uzziah made king

¹After the death of Amaziah king of Judah by the hand of Jehu of Israel, the people took his son Uzziah who was sixteen years old and made him king.

²Uzziah did what was right in the eyes of the Lord.

King Uzziah of Judah becomes very powerful

³He made war against the Philistines, breaking down the walls of their cities and building garrison towns close by. ⁴Also the Ammonites brought tribute to Uzziah king of Judah for his fame had spread and he became very powerful.

Uzziah loved the soil

⁵Uzziah dug many cisterns as he had much livestock, and his servants worked his fields and vineyards for he loved the soil.

Uzziah's army, fortifications and weapons

⁶Uzziah had an army of 307,500 men and provided them with shields, spears, helmets, breastplates, bows and slings.

⁷He built fortified towers in the walls of Jerusalem, and also out in the desert, and built machines in Jerusalem designed by skilful men for use on the towers to shoot arrows and hurl large stones.

Uzziah cursed with leprosy for unlawfully entering the Temple

⁸But pride led to Uzziah's downfall. One day he entered the sanctuary of the Lord's Temple to burn incense on the altar.

⁹Azariah the high priest and eighty other brave priests followed him in and confronted him and said to him, "It is not for you O King Uzziah to burn incense to Jehovah. ¹⁰Only those who are descended from Aaron and have been consecrated as priests may do that. Leave the sanctuary at once. You will not be honoured by the Lord."

¹¹At these words, the king who held a censer in his hand ready to burn incense, turned in anger on the priests. But as he did so, leprosy broke out on his forehead.

¹²When the priests saw the leprosy they hurried him out, and Uzziah himself was eager to leave.

Uzziah dies a leper

¹³Uzziah remained a leper until the day he died and lived in a separate house. Jotham his son had charge of the palace and governed the people.

¹⁴The other events of Uzziah's reign are recorded by the prophet Isaiah.

¹⁵Then Uzziah rested with his fathers and was buried near them, but not in the royal tombs, for they said, "He is a leper." He had reigned 52 years in Jerusalem.

Jotham his son becomes king and is righteous but the people are still disobedient

¹⁶Jotham his son became king. He was twenty-five years old and did what was right in the eyes of the Lord, but the people continued to offer sacrifice and burn incense at the hill top shrines.

Isaiah the prophet sees the Lord

¹⁷In that same year, a vision and the word of the Lord came to Isaiah the prophet in the Temple. ¹⁸He wrote, "In the year Uzziah the king died I saw Jehovah seated on a throne, high and exalted and his train^{F*} filled the Temple."

Winged cherubim in attendance with Lord

¹⁹"Above him were cherubim,^{F*} each with six wings. With two wings they covered their faces, with two they covered their feet, and with two they flew, and one called to another saying, 'Holy, holy, holy is Jehovah Almighty. The whole earth is full of his glory.'

²⁰"The Temple shook at the sound of their voices and was filled with smoke."

²¹I cried out "Woe is me! I am doomed! For I am a man of unclean lips and live among a people of unclean lips, and my eyes have seen the King, Jehovah Almighty."

Isaiah's lips cleansed by a live ember

²²"When I said these words, one of the cherubs flew to me with a live ember in his hand which he had taken with tongs from the altar and with it he touched my mouth and said, "Your guilt is taken away, your sin is atoned for."

The people of Judah are hard hearted and are to be cursed with blindness of understanding

²³"Then I heard the voice of Jehovah saying, "Whom shall I send? Who will go for us?"

"I said, 'Send me.'"

²⁴"The Lord said to me, 'Go to this people and say, "You will hear but never understand. You will see but never perceive."^{F*}

²⁵"For the hearts of this people are hardened and their ears are dull and their eyes unseeing, otherwise they would understand and repent and be healed."

Judah to be sent into exile

²⁶"Then I said, 'For how long O Lord?'"

"He answered, "Until their cities and fields lie deserted and ruined and I have sent them far away in exile. And though a tenth remain in the land it will again be laid waste. Yet the remnant will be as a holy seed in the land."

*18 Train, from the Hebrew 'shuwil' meaning 'that which hangs down.' Probably referring to the cherubim and their wheels below the throne. Ezekiel's described similar visions, see Ezekiel chapters 1 and 3.

*19 Cherubim are winged heavenly creatures, normally with human-like form but possessing variable facial features depicting human, animal or bird life. See Ezekiel 1:4-9 for a fuller description.

*24 Probably meaning that the people of Judah were now past being saved and were to be cursed with a total lack of understanding and eventual exile.

King Jotham becomes powerful because he is faithful to the Lord

²⁷King Jotham did extensive work on the city wall in Jerusalem and built towns in the Judean hills, and forts in the forested areas.

²⁸He also made war on the Ammonites and conquered them. For three years the Ammonites paid an annual tribute to Judah of 100 talents^{F*} of silver and 10,000 homers^{F*} of wheat and barley.

²⁹Jotham grew powerful because he was faithful to the Lord his God.

2

The vision and prophecy of Micah

¹During the reign of Jotham this word of the Lord came through the prophet Micah concerning both Samaria and Jerusalem: *“Hear O peoples of the earth, nations far and near, the Lord Jehovah witnesses against you from his holy Temple.”*

Micah prophesies second coming of Lord

²*“For he is coming down from his dwelling place, and will stand upon the high places of the earth. ³The mountains will melt beneath the Lord like wax before the fire. All this for the sins of the house of Israel.”*

Both Samaria and Jerusalem to be punished

⁴*“Now hear the word of Jehovah: ‘What is Israel’s sin? Is it not Samaria?^{F*} Is it not Jerusalem? Therefore I will make Samaria a heap of rubble. I will break her idols in pieces, idols built by the hire of harlots. ⁵Her wound will be incurable and will reach to Judah, even to Jerusalem itself.”*

The sins of Israel

⁶*“Woe to men who plan evil on their beds and at morning’s light carry it out. They covet fields and houses and by fraud take them from their fellow man.”*

⁷*“Therefore I am planning disaster against Israel from which you will be unable to save yourselves. You will no longer walk proudly for it will be a time of calamity.”*

Israel will not listen to true prophets

⁸*“You say, ‘Do not prophesy about such things. Disgrace will not overtake us. Jehovah is not so easily offended. He does not do such things.”*

⁹*“If a deceiver were to come and say ‘I will preach to you of wine and strong drink’ he would be the right preacher for this people!”*

False prophets lead the people astray

¹⁰*“As for the prophets who lead my people astray, if someone feeds them they prophesy ‘all is well,’ but if no one feeds them they prophesy harsh words.”*

*28 About 3½ tonnes. One talent weighs about 34kgs.

*28 A homer is a full donkey load, about 220 kgs.

*4 Samaria was the royal city of the northern kingdom of Israel, the equivalent of Jerusalem in Judah.

Visions and revelations soon to cease

¹¹*“Therefore the night is coming when you will be without visions and revelation. Your seers shall be ashamed and will cover their faces for there shall be no answer from God.”*

Widespread theft defiling the land

¹²*“My words are good to those whose ways are righteous, but you who are my people rise up against each other like enemies. ¹³You steal robes from those who pass by, without a thought, like men returning from battle. You drive women from their homes and dishonour their children forever.”*

¹⁴*“Up and away with you! This land is no longer your resting place for it is defiled, ruined beyond all remedy!”*

3

Micah prophesies to the corrupt leaders of Jerusalem

¹*“Now listen you rulers of Jerusalem, for I am filled with the Spirit of the Lord to declare all Israel’s sins. Hear the words of Jehovah:”*

²*“You despise justice. You distort all that is right. You build Jerusalem with bloodshed. Her priests teach for silver and her prophets prophesy for money. ³Yet you say, ‘The Lord is among us. Disaster will not come upon us.”*

⁴*“Jerusalem’s rich men are violent and her people are liars. Shall I acquit a man with dishonest scales, with a bag of false weights?”*

⁵*“Therefore I have begun to destroy you, to ruin you because of your sins. You will store up but save nothing. You will plant but not harvest. You will crush grapes but not drink the wine.”*

Violence and bribery in Jerusalem

⁶*“You have followed the evil of Ahab’s house,^{F*} therefore I will give you over to ruin. You will bear the scorn of the nations.”*

⁷*“The godly are no more in the land, not one upright man remains. Men lie in wait to shed blood. Each hunts his brother. ⁸The ruler demands gifts. The judge accepts bribes. The powerful conspire together.”*

Distrust, rebellion and family breakdown

⁹*“You cannot trust a neighbour, nor can you can put confidence in a friend. Even with the woman who lies in your embrace you are careful of your words.”*

¹⁰*“A son dishonours his father. A daughter rebels against her mother. A man’s enemies are those of his own household.”*

A plea from the Lord for justice, mercy and humility

¹¹*“My people what have I done to you?”*

*6 Ahab was a former evil king of northern Israel.

How have I burdened you? Answer me. I brought you up out of Egypt and redeemed you from the land of slavery.”

¹²“You say, ‘With what shall I come before the Lord? Shall I come with burnt offerings? Will he be pleased with thousands of rams, with ten thousand rivers of oil? Shall I offer my firstborn for my transgression?’”

¹³“This is what the Lord requires of you: To act justly, to love mercy, and to walk humbly with your God.”

Judah to be exiled and Jerusalem to become a heap of rubble

¹⁴“Because of your sins, Zion shall be plowed as a field,^{F*} Jerusalem will become a heap of rubble and the Temple hill a mound overgrown with thickets.”

¹⁵“Writhe in agony O Jerusalem, like a woman in labour, for you will be exiled to Babylon.”



Zion the Temple mount of Jerusalem. As prophesied in Micah 3:14 it was literally plowed up by the Romans in 134 AD.

Judah's exile will come to an end

¹⁶“But you will be rescued. The day will come when Jehovah will save you from the hand of your enemies.”

¹⁷“But for now, the nations are gathering against you. They say, ‘Let Jerusalem be defiled. Let us gloat over her.’”

¹⁸“But they know not the thoughts of the Lord. They understand not my plan.”

Jerusalem to eventually rule the nations

¹⁹“You will rise O daughter of Zion and break to pieces the nations, and devote their ill-gotten wealth to the Lord of all the earth.”

4

The Messiah of Israel to be born in Bethlehem

¹“And you Bethlehem, though you are little among the towns of Judah, out of you will come the one who is to rule over Israel, whose origins are from the very beginning, from ancient times.” ^{F*}

*14 Zion was the hill in Jerusalem where the temple and king's palace were located. It was literally plowed up by the Romans in 134 AD.

*1 This ruler is known to the Jews as 'Messiah' ('anointed of Jehovah'). Christians believe him to be Jesus Christ, who is to return again as prophesied in the verses that follow. Traditional Jews reject this belief and still await the birth of Messiah.

Israel to be abandoned by Lord from

Messiah's day until gathered in the latter days

²“But from the time of his birth Israel shall be abandoned, until the time when the rest of his brethren shall return to the land.”

Messiah to come again in last days and shepherd his flock

³“Then he shall come again and shepherd his flock in the strength of Jehovah, in the majesty of the name of his God. ⁴And Israel will live securely, for his fame will be great and reach to the ends of the earth. He shall be their peace.”

The scattered Israelites to become like young lions

⁵“In those days the remnants of Israel shall be among all nations, like dew from the Lord, as young lions among flocks of sheep.”

⁶“Then shall your hands be lifted up in triumph over your enemies and your foes be destroyed.”

All things of war and idolatry to be destroyed in that day

⁷“In that day I will demolish horses and chariots. I will destroy cities and tear down strongholds. I shall destroy witchcraft, images and idols and uproot Asherah poles.”

The earth to be almost empty of people in last days

⁸“I will take vengeance in anger upon the nations that have not obeyed me. The earth will become empty of its inhabitants because of their deeds.”

Israel's borders to expand in millennium

⁹“Yet it will be a day for extending your borders. People will come to you from Assyria and from Egypt, from sea to sea and I will show them my wonders as in the days when you came out of Egypt.”

Nations will come to Israel trembling with fear

¹⁰“Nations will see and be ashamed. They will lick the dust like a snake. Deprived of all their power they will come to you trembling.”

¹¹“They will turn in fear to Jehovah your God and will fear you also.”

Micah's prayer of gratitude

¹²“Who is a God like you O Lord, who pardons sin and ceases to remain angry forever but delights to show mercy?”

¹³“You will again have compassion on us and hurl our sins into the sea.”

¹⁴“You will be faithful to Israel as you promised Abraham in days long ago.”

ISAIAH

Isaiah's writings are recognised as the greatest of the Old Testament prophets, and with good reason, his prophecies are majestic and eloquent and full of rich imagery. Many of them still lie in the future and pertain to the Second Coming of Jesus Christ (the Messiah) and his one thousand year reign on earth which is to follow.

This thousand year period of peace, known as the millennium is a time during which *'The wolf and the lamb will feed together, and the lion will eat grass as the ox'* (Isaiah 11:22), and Jerusalem is to become a, *'peaceful city of broad rivers and streams'* (Isaiah 13:12-13).

For greater clarity in this Condensed Bible these 'latter days' prophecies of Isaiah have been grouped together in chapters 7 through to 17. They paint a vivid and stimulating picture of what awaits the earth.

Isaiah also prophesied the first coming of Jesus Christ. These prophecies are found in chapter 26 and were fulfilled to the letter, ie *'He will go like a lamb to the slaughter'* (Isaiah 26:13).

Little is known about Isaiah's background except that he prophesied during the reigns of five Judean kings, especially during the rule of the righteous King Hezekiah.

According to Jewish tradition Isaiah was put to death by being sawn in two during the early evil years of the young King Manasseh.

AUTHOR

Isaiah the prophet with some editing by a later prophet, possibly Jeremiah. The political background of the book has been taken from 2 Kings, believed to have been written by the prophet Jeremiah and 2 Chronicles which was written by Ezra.

"Who is this coming from the east with his garments stained crimson, robed in splendour and travelling in the greatness of his strength?" Isaiah 11:1.

CONTENTS

	Chapter
King Jotham dies and his son Ahaz becomes king ...1	Prayers of Judah not heeded by Lord2
Ahaz leads Judah back into idolatry1	Cease to do evil, care for the poor2
Ahaz even sacrificed his sons in fire1	Judah's scarlet sins can become white as snow2
Syria and Israel join forces to invade Judah1	Jerusalem like a harlot2
Isaiah and his son sent by Lord to speak to Ahaz1	Jerusalem will be purged of her impurity2
Ahaz will withstand invasion if he not lose courage ..1	Isaiah's song of the Lord's vineyard2
Isaiah tells Ahaz to ask the Lord for a sign1	Lord's vineyard to become a wasteland2
The two invading nations will soon be deserted1	Lord's vineyard is the whole house of Israel2
Judah to be afflicted by swarms of flies1	Nine sins of Judah2
Judah to be 'shaven' by Assyria1	Judah to suffer crop failure2
Ahaz unable to withstand the invasion1	Eventually all will die or go into exile2
Israel kill 120,000 men of Judah1	The haughty women of Jerusalem2
Israel take 200,000 women and children captive1	Fate of women of Jerusalem and their finery2
Oded the prophet orders the captives returned1	A shortage of men coming2
King Ahaz becomes even more unfaithful1	Isaiah's son to be named as a sign3
Ahaz bribes Assyria to attack Syria1	Assyria soon to invade Samaria3
Assyria conquers Syria and exiles Damascus1	Isaiah told not to fear his people3
Judah attacked by Edom and the Philistines1	Isaiah and his children trust in the Lord3
Assyria to invade Judah also1	Why consult the dead through mediums3
Ahaz travels to Syria to meet king from Assyria1	Ahaz dies and his son Hezekiah becomes king4
Ahaz sends back to Jerusalem plans of an altar1	Prophecy against the Philistines4
High priest told to build the altar1	Hezekiah a righteous king4
Ahaz replaces Lord's altar with the new one1	Hezekiah reopens the Temple and ends idol worship ..4
Ahaz removes Temple basins and furnishings1	Hezekiah the most faithful of all the kings of Judah ..4
Ahaz closes the Temple1	Priests and Levites instructed to purify the Temple ..4
Altars erected on street corners of Jerusalem1	Hezekiah to make a covenant with the Lord4
Judah afflicted for spurning Lord2	The Temple is purified4
Judah deserted from the invasions2	Sacrifices and singing to the Lord4
Judah's offerings meaningless to Lord2	3600 animals offered in sacrifice4

Too few priests purified so Levites help out	4	Moab's fugitives to flee in latter days	9
The people rejoice for it all happened so quickly	4	Judah the lion to come upon the fugitives	9
Hezekiah invites all Judah and Israel to Passover	4	Tribute to be paid to Jerusalem	9
Northern Israel mock Hezekiah's invitation	4	A king of the house of David to be enthroned	9
A very large assembly gather in Jerusalem	5	Moab's fate in Isaiah's day	9
People remove the idolatrous street altars	5	Edom doomed to total destruction in latter days	9
The Passover begins	5	Soil of Edom to be set ablaze	9
Levites kill Passover lambs for those not purified	5	Damascus to be a heap of ruins in latter days	9
Those still unpurified unlawfully eat the Passover	5	Some gleanings to remain and be glorified	9
King Hezekiah prays for their pardon	5	Survivors will turn to the Holy One of Israel	9
Passover celebrated another seven days	5	Multi-nation army to be destroyed in a night	9
More animals provided by king and officials	5	Prophecy concerning Ethiopia in latter days	10
People destroy the remaining idolatrous sites	5	Ethiopian destruction after the grapes blossom	10
The people begin to tithe again	5	A remnant to come to Jerusalem bearing gifts	10
Priests and Levites have enough to eat	5	Civil war in Egypt	10
Surplus tithes distributed to other towns	5	A fierce king to rule over Egypt in latter days	10
King Hezekiah prospers in all he undertakes	5	The Nile to dry up	10
Samaria soon to be thrown to the ground	5	Egyptians to fear Judah in latter days	10
Remnant of Israel to be saved in latter days	5	Egypt to turn to Lord after he delivers them	10
Assyria begins siege of Samaria	6	Egyptian cities to worship Lord during millennium ..	10
Word of the Lord to Samaria	6	Highway from Assyria to Egypt when Lord returns ..	10
The Lord spurring Samaria's enemies on	6	Egypt, Assyria and Israel to be centres of worship ..	10
Northern Israel to be cut off without pity	6	Wealth of Egypt and Ethiopia to come to Jerusalem ..	10
Woe also to the king of Assyria because of pride	6	Plea from the Lord to all idolatrous nations	10
Assyrian army to be eventually punished.....	6	Every knee shall bow to Jehovah	10
A plague to be sent on Assyrian warriors.....	6	Isaiah's vision of the coming of the Lord	11
Israel has continually provoked the Lord	6	Lord's garments to be red	11
People to pay for their sins	6	Isaiah's prayer of praise	11
Isaiah pleads with the house of Israel to repent	6	Israel to bud and blossom during millennium	11
Israel full of superstition and divination	6	Lost exiles will return to worship at Jerusalem	11
Treasures and no end of horses and chariots	6	The Lord Jehovah coming in power	11
Samaria falls after a three year siege	6	The Lord to tend his flock as a shepherd	11
Survivors exiled to Assyria	6	Jehovah to be seen by all when he comes	11
Isaiah prophesies stripped and barefoot	6	Lord has not rejected Israel	11
Assyria to take stripped captives from Egypt	6	New heavens and a new earth to be created	11
No deliverance of Judah from Assyria by Egypt	6	No more will weeping be heard in Jerusalem	11
Lord to devastate whole earth in latter days	7	People will again live long lives	11
Few people on earth will be left alive	7	Prayers to be answered immediately	11
Isaiah's vision of latter days	7	Meat-eating animals will eat grass	11
Dead bodies to be like refuse in streets	7	A great feast in Jerusalem when Lord returns	11
Faithful descendants of Israelites will sing for joy	7	All tears to be wiped away	11
Distant nations to invade Israel in latter days	7	A song to be sung in that day	11
Invaders will roar like the sea	7	The dead of the Lord resurrected in that day	11
Clouds will darken the light	7	All war will end when Lord returns.....	12
Jerusalem to be besieged and brought low	7	The humble and contrite esteemed by the Lord	12
The Lord to suddenly come and save Jerusalem	7	Those who despise the faithful to be put to shame	12
Pride of men to be brought low when Lord comes	7	Wine, milk freely given to those who come to Lord	12
Men will flee from brightness of the Lord	7	The Lord will make a covenant of love with you	12
Lord's majestic voice will be heard raging in anger ..	7	He will endow you with splendour	12
The armies besieging Jerusalem to be destroyed	7	Seek the Lord while he is near	12
The valley of Hinnom prepared for the battle	7	Lord will freely pardon	12
Lord to hover over Jerusalem like a bird	7	Lord's thoughts higher than man's thoughts	12
Armies to fall by a sword not of man	7	Blessed are those who keep the commandments ..	12
All armies on earth destroyed when Lord comes	7	Foreigners and eunuchs accepted by Lord	12
Stars to fall from sky in latter days	7	Jerusalem's day of joy coming	12
The great army of the latter days	8	Nations will come praising Jehovah	12
Men's hearts will melt with terror	8	Flocks will be gathered for offerings	12
Sinners of the world to be destroyed	8	Riches will be brought to Jerusalem	12
Darkness to come upon the earth	8	Lord to adorn his glorious Temple	12
Men to be scarcer than gold	8	Descendants of exiles to fly home in ships	12
Great floods and earthquakes in latter days	8	Foreigners to serve Israel	12
A day of reckoning for Satan and his angels	8	Israelites to be the pride and joy of world	12
A day of reckoning for the kings of the earth	8	Mountains to be made low	13
Satan to be punished and the Antichrist destroyed ..	8	All mankind will see glory of the Lord	13
Those left alive on earth will shout for joy	8	Food will be rich and plentiful	13
Israel in latter days will settle in their own land	8	Streams of water everywhere	13
Israel to be served by other nations	8	Sun and moon to be seven times brighter	13
Moab's cities to be destroyed in a night	9	Your eyes shall see the king in his beauty	13

ISAIAH

Abundant spoil from former enemies	13	Jerusalem's current warfare completed	19
Jerusalem to be a peaceful city of broad rivers	13	King Hezekiah's steward cursed	20
Desert will burst into bloom	13	Jerusalem soon to be a wasteland	20
The highway of Holiness	13	Exiles to eventually return from Babylon	20
All infirmity to be healed	13	King Hezekiah becomes ill	20
No more sickness	13	Hezekiah told by Isaiah he is about to die	20
A country will be born in a day when Lord comes ...	14	Hezekiah prays and weeps bitterly	20
Jerusalem to overflow with abundance	14	Lord to heal Hezekiah	20
Lord to come with fury and flames of fire	14	Hezekiah granted 15 more years of life	20
Survivors to be sent out to all nations to teach	14	Sun's shadow goes back ten degrees as a sign	20
Survivors to gather Israelites from all nations	14	Poultice of figs heals the king's tumour	20
All nations will stream to Temple of Lord	15	Hezekiah's writes in gratitude for his healing	20
All mankind will bow down to the Lord	15	King Hezekiah grows proud because of his riches ..	20
All animals to eat grass during the millennium	15	Messengers from Babylon visit Hezekiah	20
Peaceful conditions during the millennium	15	Lord prophesies exile of Judah to Babylon	20
Glory of Jehovah to replace the sun	15	Hezekiah and Jerusalem repent of pride	20
All who live in Israel will be righteous in that day ...	15	Jerusalem's leaders to flee before city captured.....	21
Israelites to be gathered and live in glory	15	Fruit harvests of Jerusalem to fail	21
Jealousy between Judah and Ephraim to vanish ...	15	Isaiah sees the Babylonian capture of Jerusalem ..	21
Euphrates to dry up into seven small streams	15	The people ignored Lord's warning to repent	21
The women of Jerusalem to be cleansed	15	Those who trust in the Lord will soar as eagles	21
A canopy of bright cloud to extend over Jerusalem....	15	Glory of man withers like grass	21
Judah to become like the garden of Eden	16	Fear not mortal men who are but grass	21
Bubbling springs and abundant trees	16	Who is the equal of the Lord?	21
Lord to reign over entire earth when he comes	16	Lost ones of Israel to eventually return	22
Before that day the heavens will vanish	16	Jehovah Israel's only Saviour	22
People will die like flies	16	Jehovah the Rock of Israel	22
Jerusalem's cup of wrath to be taken away	16	Lord's challenge to worthless Idols	22
Jerusalem's wrath to be given to her tormentors	16	He who chooses idols an abomination to Lord	22
Jerusalem to be redeemed	16	Those who make idols are blind and ignorant	22
Shouts of joy when Lord returns to save Jerusalem....	16	The foolishness of making and worshipping idols ...	22
All nations to witness saving of Jerusalem	16	All Israel to be consigned to scorn because of sin ..	22
Jerusalem likened to childless widow	16	Israel to be healed in latter days	22
Jerusalem to receive husband and many children....	16	Jehovah will redeem Israel	22
The Lord will not be angry with Israel again	16	Lord to stir up a servant from the north-east.....	22
The beautiful New Jerusalem of the future	16	This servant will restore justice to the nations	22
Isaiah's prophecies like a sealed book to Judah.....	17	Jehovah's former prophecies have come to pass ..	22
Hearts of the people far from the Lord	17	The Lord to do all he pleases through Cyrus	23
Isaiah's prophecies to be understood in latter days....	17	Lord will honour Cyrus for Israel's sake	23
Isaiah instructed to write his vision in a book	17	Yet Cyrus will not acknowledge the Lord	23
Isaiah's prophecies a witness for days to come.....	17	Cyrus to free Judean exiles to rebuild Jerusalem ...	23
Judah want only to hear pleasant prophecies	17	A prophecy against Babylon	23
Jerusalem's priests and rulers befuddled with wine ...	17	Babylon to show no mercy toward Judean exiles ...	23
Words of Isaiah scoffed at	17	Sorcerers and astrologers will not save her	23
God will therefore speak to Judah with foreign lips ...	17	Babylon to become a widow and lose her children ..	23
Messiah to be a cornerstone in Zion	17	Lord's past prophecies have come to pass	23
Judah's chains heavier if they not cease mocking....	17	A new prophecy from the Lord	23
Only repentance will bring help of Lord	17	Cyrus will overthrow Babylon	23
Lord longs to show Judah compassion	17	Peace and plenty if Judah had kept commandments..	23
Assyria captures many cities of Judah	18	No peace for the wicked	23
Jerusalem prepares to be attacked also	18	Isaiah's prophecy regarding Babylon	23
King Hezekiah encourages his people	18	Great brutality of the Medes toward Babylon	23
Hezekiah pays Assyrians a ransom to withdraw.....	18	A taunt against the king of Babylon	24
Assyrians come again against Jerusalem	19	Tyre soon to be a harbour no more	24
Assyrian commander taunts Hezekiah	19	Tyre will no longer be the food market of nations ...	24
Assyrians blaspheme Jehovah	19	Jehovah to humble the pride of Tyre and Sidon	24
Commander intimidates the men of Judah	19	Tyre to revive after seventy years	24
Men of Judah encouraged to surrender	19	Tyre's riches will go to Jerusalem in millennium ...	24
Men of Judah remain silent	19	Isaiah called as Lord's servant before he was born...25	25
Hezekiah seeks guidance from the Lord	19	Isaiah despised by his people	25
Lord to cause Assyrian king to return home	19	An eloquent tongue given to Isaiah	25
There he will be cut down with the sword	19	Isaiah mocked by his people	25
Assyrian king again blasphemes the Lord	19	Who but God can declare Isaiah a wrongdoer	25
Hezekiah prays to Lord for deliverance	19	None obey Isaiah's word	25
Lord rebukes Sennacherib king of Assyria	19	All walk in the light of their own lamps	25
185,000 Assyrian soldiers die during the night	19	Isaiah a light for the Gentiles also	25
Sennacherib returns home	19	Isaiah to apportion inheritances when Lord returns ...25	25
Sennacherib put to sword by his sons	19	The Lord to shepherd his returning people	25

Isaiah to act wisely in that day and be exalted	25	King Hezekiah dies	27
Israel to gather from the north, west and south	25	His twelve year old son Manasseh becomes king ..	27
Lord's love for Israel like a mother's love	25	Manasseh does much evil	27
Israel too small for her children during millennium ..	25	Lord rebukes Manasseh and the officials	27
Gentiles to assist in gathering Israel in latter days ..	25	The righteous die to be spared from evil	27
The Lord to come as the Messiah	25	A brood of rebels	27
The Messiah to preach good news on earth	25	Judah's idolatry likened to adultery	27
Foreigners to rebuild Israel during millennium	25	The Lord with those who are contrite and humble ..	27
Foreigners to work the fields and vineyards	25	No rest for the wicked	27
Isaiah greatly rejoices in the Lord	25	The sinful people seem eager to know Lord's ways...	27
Jerusalem to be a crown of splendour	25	Unrighteous fasting not acceptable to the Lord	27
Messiah (Christ) to come from Galilee	26	Fasting that pleases the Lord	27
Messiah to be descended of David	26	Blessings of righteous living	27
Messiah to be a man of sorrows	26	Disaster to come upon Manasseh and Judah	28
Messiah to be pierced	26	Jerusalem attacked by Assyria	28
Messiah to be arrested, tried and slaughtered	26	King Manasseh taken prisoner to Babylon	28
Messiah's tomb to be with the rich	26	Manasseh repents and is restored to his throne	28
Messiah to be resurrected	26	Manasseh abandons idolatry and worships Lord	28
Messiah to see the fruit of his suffering	26	Manasseh dies and Amon his son becomes king	28
Messiah to eventually slay the wicked on earth	26	Amon does evil and is assassinated	28
Messiah to pardon many and bear their sins	26	Josiah the son of Amon made king	28
Messiah to be given a place among the great.....	26		

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

King Jotham dies and his son Ahaz becomes king

¹Jotham, king of Judah reigned in Jerusalem sixteen years, then rested with his fathers and Ahaz his son became king.

Ahaz leads Judah back into idolatry

²Ahaz was twenty years old when he became king and did not do right in the eyes of the Lord. He walked in the ways of the kings of Israel and made idols to worship Baal.

Ahaz even sacrificed his sons in fire

³He even sacrificed his sons in fire, following the abominable ways of the nations that the Lord had driven out before the Israelites.

Syria and Israel join forces to invade Judah

⁴Then Pekah, king of Israel, and Rezin, king of Syria joined forces and marched on Judah.
⁵The hearts of Ahaz king of Judah and the people of Jerusalem feared greatly.

The Lord sends Isaiah with his son to speak to Ahaz

⁶Then the Lord said to the prophet Isaiah, "Go out with your son to meet Ahaz at the end of the aqueduct of the Upper Pool. Say to him, 'Do not fear these two smouldering stubs of firebrands Ephraim^{F*} and Syria."
⁷"They have plotted your ruin saying, 'We will invade Judah and divide it up among ourselves.' But this shall not happen. And within sixty-five years Ephraim shall be too scattered to be a people."

⁸"The Lord is also bringing on you and your people a time of distress, unlike any since Ephraim broke away from Judah."
⁹"In that day the Lord shall bring swarms

King Ahaz able to withstand the invasion if he does not lose courage

⁸"However if you lose courage now, you will be unable to withstand them and will be invaded."

Isaiah tells Ahaz to ask the Lord for a sign

⁹Isaiah went out and spoke these words to Ahaz, and then said to the king, "Ask the Lord for a sign."

¹⁰Ahaz replied, "I will not put Jehovah to the test."

¹¹Isaiah said, "It is enough that you try the patience of men, will you try the patience of God also?"

Within a few years the two invading nations will be deserted

¹²"Nevertheless, the Lord shall give you a sign, '*See, the young woman is with child, and will give birth to a son and shall name him Immanuel. When he is old enough to reject wrong and choose right,*^{F*} *he will be living on curds and honey.*^{F*} ¹³*But before he attains that age the lands of these two kings you dread will be deserted.*"^{F*}

Judah will also be afflicted, by swarms of flies and then 'shaven' by Assyria

¹⁴"The Lord is also bringing on you and your people a time of distress, unlike any since Ephraim broke away from Judah."

¹⁵"In that day the Lord shall bring swarms

*12 Generally regarded as 12 years of age.
*12 A diet associated with difficult times, such as when the land is not able to be farmed due to invasion or siege (see verse 17 following). Curd is coagulated milk, like cottage cheese.
*13 Within 12 years both Syria and northern Israel were defeated and exiled by the Assyrians (Isaiah 1:30 and 6:18).

*6 The northern kingdom of Israel was sometimes referred to as Ephraim, after the dominant tribe.

ISAIAH 1

of flies from the distant streams of Egypt, and bees from the land of Assyria. They will settle in the crevices of the rocks and on all the thorn bushes and at all the water holes."

¹⁶*"Then the Lord will shave you with a razor from beyond the Euphrates; the king of Assyria."*^{F*}

¹⁷*"In that day a man will only be able to keep alive a young cow or two goats, and will live on curds and wild honey."*¹⁸*Where once grew a thousand good vines there will grow briars and thorns."*

King Ahaz loses courage and is unable to withstand the invasion of Syria and Israel

¹⁹Despite the word of the Lord, the courage of Ahaz failed and he was not able to withstand the invasion.

Israel kill 120,000 men of Judah and take 200,000 women and children captive

²⁰The king of Syria took many people of Judah prisoner to Damascus, and Pekah the king of Israel killed 120,000 men of Judah and captured 200,000 women and children and took them back to Samaria along with a great amount of spoil.

Judean captives returned by Israel at the command of Oded the prophet

²¹But Oded, a prophet of the Lord in Samaria went out to meet Pekah's army as it returned. He said to them, *"Because Jehovah was angry with Judah he gave them into your hand."*²²*But you have slaughtered them in an outrage that reaches to heaven. Now you intend to make these captives of Judah your slaves."*

²³*"But are you not also guilty of sins against the Lord your God? Therefore send back these captives you have taken from your brothers, for the Lord's fierce anger is upon you."*

²⁴Some of the leading men of Samaria also said, "Do not bring those prisoners here. Our guilt is already great."

²⁵So the soldiers handed over the women and children to the leaders of Samaria who took charge of them and gave them clothes, sandals, and food and drink from the spoil.²⁶Then they put those who were weak on donkeys and returned them all to Judah.

King Ahaz does not repent and becomes even more unfaithful

²⁷So the Lord humbled Judah, for Ahaz the king had promoted wickedness and had been unfaithful to the Lord.

²⁸Yet in his time of trouble, Ahaz became even more unfaithful to the Lord. He offered sacrifices to the gods of Syria for he thought, "They may help me as they have helped the Syrians."

Ahaz bribes Assyria to attack Syria

²⁹During the invasion of Judah, Ahaz had taken treasures from the Temple of the Lord and from his royal palace, and from his officials and sent them to Tiglath-Pileser the king of Assyria saying, "Save me from the kings of Israel and Syria who are attacking me."

Assyria conquers Syria and exiles the people of Damascus

³⁰In due course Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria complied. He attacked Syria, killing Rezin the king and exiling the inhabitants of Damascus.

Judah attacked by Edom and the Philistines

³¹While this was happening, Judah was again attacked, this time by Edom who carried away more prisoners. Also the Philistines came and captured towns in the foothills and desert regions of Judah.



Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria.

Assyria to invade Judah also

³²Then the Lord said to Isaiah, *"Because the people of Judah rejoiced over the fate of Rezin the king of Syria, I will bring the king of Assyria against them also."*³³*Like the mighty floodwaters of the Euphrates, he will sweep on into Judah, swirling over her and reaching up to her neck."*

Ahaz travels to Syria to meet Tiglath-Pileser the conquering king from Assyria

³⁴Later Ahaz the king travelled to Syria to meet Tiglath-Pileser, the king of Assyria.

Ahaz sends back to Jerusalem plans of an altar for the high priest to build

³⁵While Ahaz was there he saw an altar in Damascus and sent a sketch of it back to Uriah the high priest in Jerusalem, with detailed plans for its construction.³⁶So Uriah built the altar and finished it before Ahaz returned.

*16 Judah paid a crippling ransom of silver and gold to have the Assyrians withdraw from attacking Jerusalem (Isaiah 18:9-10).

On arriving back Ahaz replaces the Lord's altar with the new one

³⁷When Ahaz arrived back in Jerusalem he removed the bronze altar of the Lord from its place in front of the Temple and put the new altar there instead.

³⁸Then he said to Uriah the high priest, "From now on offer the morning and evening sacrifice and the sacrifices of the people on the large new altar. I will use the bronze altar for divination." F*

Ahaz removes the basins and furnishings and closes the Temple and locks the door

³⁹At that time Ahaz also removed the great bronze basin from the bulls that supported it and set it on a stone base.

⁴⁰He also took the bronze basins off their wheeled stands. Finally the king removed the furnishings from the Lord's Temple and locked the doors.

Ahaz erects altars on the street corners of Jerusalem

⁴¹Ahaz then erected altars on the street corners of Jerusalem. He also built high places to burn sacrifices to other gods throughout the towns of Judah.

2

Judah afflicted because they have spurned the Lord

¹The word of the Lord concerning Judah received through the prophet Isaiah: "I reared children and raised them up, but they have rebelled against me. The ox knows his master and the donkey his manger, but Israel knows me not."

²"Ah, sinful nation, a people laden with guilt, a brood of evildoers. You have spurned the Holy One of Israel. Why do you persist in rebellion? ³Your whole body is afflicted. From the sole of your foot to the top of your head are wounds, welts and open sores."

Judah deserted from the invasions

⁴"Your land is deserted, your cities are burned with fire, your fields have been stripped by foreigners. Jerusalem the daughter of Zion^{F*} is left like a hut in a vineyard, like a city under siege."

Judah's offerings meaningless to Lord

⁵"The multitude of your sacrifices, what are they to me? I have more than enough. Cease bringing me meaningless offerings. New Moons! Sabbaths! I can no longer bear your evil assemblies. They have become a burden to me."

The prayers of Judah not heeded by the Lord

⁶"When you lift your hands in prayer I hide my eyes from you, even when you offer

*38 Possibly by the idolatrous method of seeking omens by examining the entrails of sacrificed animals.

*4 Zion is the hill in Jerusalem where the temple and palace of the king were located. Zion can also represent all of Jerusalem or all of the Jews.

many prayers, for your hands are full of blood."

Cease to do evil, care for the poor

⁷"Cleanse yourselves. Remove your evil deeds from my sight. Cease to do wrong. Learn to do right. Seek justice. Care for the oppressed and fatherless. Plead the case of the widow."

Judah's scarlet sins can become white as snow

⁸"Come now, let us reason together. Though your sins are red like scarlet, they can be white as snow."

⁹"If you are willing and obedient you will eat the best of the land. But if you resist and rebel you will be devoured by the sword, for the mouth of the Lord has spoken it."

Jerusalem has become a harlot but will be purged of her impurity

¹⁰"See how the Faithful City^{F*} has become a harlot. She who was once full of justice is now full of murderers. ¹¹Your rulers are rebels, friends of thieves. Everyone loves a bribe and runs after gifts. They care not for the fatherless and widows."

¹²"Therefore I Jehovah, the mighty one of Israel will thoroughly purge away your impurity. I will restore your judges as in days of old. You shall be called the City of Righteousness, the Faithful City."

Isaiah's song of the Lord's vineyard

¹³Then Isaiah said, "I will sing a song about the vineyard of him whom I love."

"His vineyard lay on a fertile hill."

"He dug it and cleared it of stones."

"Planted it with choice vines."

"And looked for an abundant crop."

"But it yielded for him wild grapes."

The Lord's vineyard to become a wasteland

¹⁴"Now hear the word of Jehovah, 'You dwellers in Jerusalem and men of Judah, judge between me and my vineyard. What more could have I have done for it? When I looked for good grapes, why did it yield only wild grapes?'"

¹⁵"Here is what I will do to my vineyard. I shall take away its hedge and break down its wall and allow it to be trampled. I will make it a wasteland of briars and thorns, and command the clouds not to rain on it."

The Lord's vineyard is the whole house of Israel

¹⁶Then Isaiah prophesied, "*The vineyard of Jehovah is the whole house of Israel, and the men of Judah are the garden of his delight. He looked for justice but saw bloodshed, for righteousness and heard cries of distress.*"

Nine sins of Judah

¹⁷"*Woe to you who accumulate house after house and field after field until nothing is left for others.*"

*10 Jerusalem.

ISAIAH 3

¹⁸“Woe to you who say, ‘Let God hasten his work that we might see it.’”

¹⁹“Woe to you who call evil good and good evil.”

²⁰“Woe to you who are wise in your own eyes.”

²¹“Woe to you who rise early in the morning to run after drink and stay up late at night inflamed with wine.”

²²“Woe to you who have harps and lyres at your banquets, tambourines and flutes, but no respect for the Lord.”

²³“Woe to you who are champions at drinking wine and mixing drinks.”

²⁴“Woe to you who acquit the guilty for a bribe and deny justice to the innocent.”

²⁵“Woe to you who reject the commandments of the Lord.”

Judah to suffer crop failure and eventually all will die or go into exile

²⁶“The Lord declares, ‘Your fine mansions will be left without occupants. A ten yoke vineyard^{F*} will produce only a little wine, and a homer^{F*} of seed only ten homers of grain.’”

²⁷“Then you will go into exile. Your men of rank will die of hunger and masses shall be parched with thirst. ²⁸Sheol^{F*} will open its mouth without limit and down will descend the nobles and multitudes, all the brawlers and revellers. ²⁹Sheep will graze among the ruined mansions of the rich.”

The haughty women of Jerusalem

³⁰“The Lord says, ‘The women of Jerusalem are haughty, walking along with their heads high, flirting with their eyes, tripping along with mincing steps, ornaments jingling on their ankles. ³¹Therefore I will bring sores on their heads and make their scalps bald.’”

Fate of the women of Jerusalem

³²Then Isaiah prophesied, “*The day is coming when the Lord will snatch away their finery, their bangles and headbands, their crescent necklaces, earrings and bracelets. Their veils, head-dresses, ankle chains and sashes. Their perfume bottles, charms, rings and fine robes. Their purses, mirrors, tiaras and shawls.*”

³³“*Instead of perfume there shall be a stench. Instead of well-set hair, baldness. Instead of fine clothing, sackcloth. Instead of beauty, shame.*”

A shortage of men coming

³⁴“*Your men will fall by the sword. Destitute you will sit on the ground and mourn. In that day seven women shall take hold of one man and say, ‘We will eat our own food and provide our own clothes, only let us be called by your name. Take away our shame!’*”

*26 The area ploughed by ten pair of oxen in one day, about ten acres.

*26 A homer is a full donkey load, about 220kg.

*28 Sheol is the Hebrew name for the spirit world of the dead.

3

Isaiah's son to be named as a sign of the forthcoming Assyrian invasion of northern Israel

¹Then Isaiah lay with his wife and she conceived and gave birth to a son, and the Lord said to Isaiah, “Name him ‘Quick to the Spoil.’ For before the boy knows how to say ‘My father’ or ‘My mother’ the wealth of Samaria^{F*} will be carried off by the king of Assyria.”

Isaiah told not to fear his people

²“The Lord spoke to me with his strong hand upon me, warning me not to fear or follow the ways of this people. ³He said, ‘Do not fear these people. Jehovah Almighty is the one you are to fear and to regard as holy. To you he will be a sanctuary, but for both houses of Israel he will be a rock that causes men to stumble.’”

Isaiah and his children trust in the Lord

⁴“Therefore I put my trust in the Lord, I and the children he has given me. We are signs and symbols from the Lord Almighty.”

Why consult the dead through mediums?

⁵“Other men say, ‘Consult mediums with familiar spirits who whisper and mutter,’ but should not a people inquire of their God? ⁶Why consult the dead on behalf of the living? Compare what they say to the written Law of God. There is no light in their words.”

4

King Ahaz dies and his son Hezekiah becomes king

¹Now Ahaz king of Judah died and was buried in the city of Jerusalem, but not in the tombs of the kings. He had reigned for sixteen years. Hezekiah his son became king.

A prophecy against the Philistines

²A prophecy of Isaiah the year Ahaz died: “Do not rejoice O Philistines that the rod which struck you is broken. From the broken rod will spring a viper.”

³“My poor will find food, and shall lie down in safety, but you Philistines I will destroy by famine and sword.”

⁴“Howl O Philistines! See! Invaders come from the north like a cloud, and not a straggler in the ranks.”^{F*}

Hezekiah a righteous king

⁵Hezekiah was twenty-five years old when he became king. He did what was right in the eyes of the Lord, just as his forefather David had done.

Hezekiah reopens the Temple and ends idol worship

⁶In the first year of his reign he reopened the

*1 Samaria was the royal city of northern Israel.

*4 The Philistines were soon to suffer at the hands of the Assyrians.

doors of the Temple. He removed the high places of worship, smashed the sacred stones, and cut down the Asherah poles.

⁷He also broke into pieces the bronze snake that Moses had made in the desert, for the people had been burning incense to it.

Hezekiah the most faithful of all the kings of Judah

⁸Hezekiah trusted in Jehovah the God of Israel. There was no one like him among all the kings of Judah, either before him or after him.

⁹He was faithful to the Lord and kept all the commandments the Lord had given Moses. And because the Lord was with him he was successful in whatever he undertook.

The priests and Levites instructed to purify the Temple

¹⁰Hezekiah assembled the priests and the Levites in the court of the Temple and said to them, "Purify yourselves, and then purify the Temple of the Lord. Remove all defilement from the Sanctuary."

¹¹"Our fathers were unfaithful and forsook the house of the Lord. Therefore his anger has fallen upon Judah and he has made us an object of horror and scorn as you can see with your own eyes. ¹²Our fathers have fallen by the sword and our wives and children are in captivity."

Hezekiah to make a covenant with the Lord

¹³"Now I intend to make a covenant with Jehovah so that his anger will turn away from us. My sons do not be negligent."

The Temple is purified

¹⁴So the Levites purified themselves and set to work. The priests went into the Temple and brought out into the court every unclean thing they found. The Levites carried it all away and threw it into the Kidron Valley. ¹⁵By the sixteenth day they had completed their work.

Sacrifices and singing to the Lord

¹⁶The following morning Hezekiah gathered the city officials together at an early hour. Then they, along with the people went up to the Temple of the Lord. There they sacrificed seven bulls, seven rams, seven male lambs and seven male goats, as a sin offering for the kingdom.

¹⁷As the offering began, the Levites sung to the Lord, accompanied by trumpets, cymbals, harps and lyres, in the manner prescribed by David. ¹⁸The whole assembly bowed in worship as the singers sang and the music played. This continued until the sacrifice of the burnt offering was completed.

¹⁹The king and everyone present then knelt down and worshipped and the Levites again sang praises to the Lord with gladness, the words of David and of Asaph the seer.

3600 animals offered in sacrifice

²⁰Then all whose hearts were willing offered

their own sacrifices and peace offerings.^{F*} 600 bulls and 3000 sheep and goats were offered as sacrifice.

Too few priests purified so the Levites help out

²¹The priests however were too few in number to skin all the offerings, so the Levites helped out until more priests had purified themselves. For the Levites had been more conscientious than the priests at purifying themselves.

The people rejoice for it all happened so quickly

²²So the service of the Temple of the Lord was once again established and Hezekiah and the people rejoiced, for it had all happened so quickly.

Hezekiah invites all of Judah and Israel to celebrate the Passover in Jerusalem

²³Then Hezekiah sent couriers with letters to all Israel and Judah from Dan to Beersheba,^{F*} inviting them to come to Jerusalem and celebrate the Passover. This is what he wrote:

²⁴"People of Israel, return to Jehovah, the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob that he may return to you who have escaped from the hand of Assyria."

²⁵"Be not like your fathers and brothers, who were unfaithful to the Lord so that he made them an object of horror. Submit to the Lord and come to the Temple which he has consecrated that his fierce anger turn away from you."

²⁶"If you return to the Lord, then your brothers and children in exile^{F*} will come back to this land, for Jehovah is a compassionate God. He will not turn his face from you if you return to him."

Northern Israel mock Hezekiah's invitation

²⁷The couriers went from town to town throughout Israel, but the people scorned and mocked them.

²⁸Nevertheless the men of Judah, and some of the men of Ephraim, Manasseh, Issachar, Asher and Zebulun humbled themselves and went to Jerusalem to celebrate the Passover.

5

A very large assembly gather in Jerusalem

¹Now the king had decided to celebrate the Passover in the second month, as not enough priests had purified themselves and the people had not yet assembled in Jerusalem.^{F*} ²So in the second month a very large assembly of people gathered in Jerusalem to celebrate the Passover. Also included were foreigners from throughout Israel and Judah.

*²⁰ A peace offering was a sacrifice offered out of gratitude for a blessing or to ensure continued prosperity.

*²³ Dan and Beersheba were the northern and southernmost cities of all Israel.

*²⁶ Not the main Assyrian exile of the northern kingdom of Israel, which was still to come.

*¹ Normally the Passover is celebrated on the 14th day of Nisan (early April), the first month of the Jewish religious year. It often coincides with the Christian Easter celebration.

ISAIAH 6

The people remove the idolatrous street altars

³The people first of all removed all the idolatrous altars in Jerusalem and threw them into the Kidron Valley.

The Passover begins

⁴On the fourteenth day, the priests and Levites, after having been shamed, purified themselves and took up their prescribed positions. The priests then began to sprinkle the blood of the slaughtered lambs that the Levites passed to them from the people.

The Levites kill the Passover lambs for those who are not purified

⁵However many men in the crowd had not purified themselves so the Levites had to kill the Passover lambs for them.^{F*}

Those still unpurified unlawfully eat the Passover

⁶Also those who were still unclean ate the Passover, contrary to what was written in the Law.

King Hezekiah prays for their pardon

⁷But Hezekiah the king prayed for them saying, "May Jehovah pardon every man who sets his heart on seeking the Lord."

⁸The Lord heard Hezekiah's prayer and no harm befell the people.

The Passover celebrated an extra seven days

⁹The Israelites celebrated the Passover for seven days, with great rejoicing and Hezekiah spoke encouragingly to all the Levites who showed good understanding of the service of the Lord.

¹⁰Then all the people agreed to celebrate the festival for seven more days.

Further sacrificial animals provided by the king and officials

¹¹The king provided for the people 1000 bulls and 7000 sheep and goats, and the officials provided a further 1000 bulls and 10,000 sheep and goats.

¹²There was great joy in Jerusalem for there had been nothing like this since the days of Solomon.

The people destroy the remaining idolatrous sites throughout Judah

¹³Afterwards all the people went out to the towns of Judah and destroyed the remaining sacred stones, Asherah poles, and altars.

The people begin to tithe again

¹⁴When all the assembly had returned to their homes, Hezekiah ordered the people living in Jerusalem to give the tenth due to the priests and Levites, so they could devote themselves fully to the Law of the Lord.

¹⁵The people gave generously; a tithe of everything, and the firstfruits of their grain, new wine, oil and honey. Those who lived in the towns of Judah also brought a tithe of their herds and flocks.

The priests and Levites have enough to eat and plenty to spare

¹⁶When Hezekiah and his officials saw the huge heap of tithes they praised the Lord and blessed the people. ¹⁷Azariah the high priest said to the king, "Since the people began bringing their tithes to the Temple, we have had enough to eat and plenty to spare. This great amount you see is left over."

Surplus tithes distributed to priests and Levites in other towns

¹⁸So Hezekiah gave orders to prepare storerooms in the Temple, and men were appointed to distribute the tithes to the Levites and priests who lived on the farmlands around the towns.

King Hezekiah prospers in everything he undertakes

¹⁹So Hezekiah did what was good and right before the Lord. In everything he undertook he sought guidance from his God, and then worked wholeheartedly and he prospered.

Samaria soon to be thrown to the ground

²⁰A prophecy of Isaiah concerning Samaria: "*Woe to Samaria, the proud wreath of Ephraim's ^{F*} drunkards, set on the heads of those bloated with rich food!*"

²¹"*The Lord has one who is powerful and strong who will throw you forcefully to the ground. Your drunkards will be trampled underfoot.*"

The remnant of northern Israel to be saved in latter days

²²"*But the day will come when Jehovah Almighty will be a glorious crown and a source of strength for the remnant of his people.*"

6

Assyria begins a siege of Samaria

¹In Hezekiah's fourth year, Shalmaneser king of Assyria marched against the northern kingdom of Israel and began a siege of the royal city of Samaria. For Hoshea king of Israel had ceased to pay him tribute.

The word of the Lord to Samaria during the three year siege by the Assyrians

²The word of the Lord through the prophet Isaiah against the people of Samaria and Israel. "*You say with arrogance, 'The bricks have fallen down but we shall rebuild with dressed stone. The fig trees have been felled but we shall replace them with cedars.'*"

The Lord is spurring Samaria's enemies on

³"*But I Jehovah have spurred your enemies on. Assyria is devouring Israel. Yet for all this my anger is not turned away, for the people have not returned to me.*"

^{*}20 Ephraim was the dominant tribe of the northern kingdom of Israel of which Samaria was the main city.

^{*}5 Normally the heads of families would kill the Passover lamb.

Northern Israel to be cut off without pity

⁴“So I will cut off both head and tail from Israel in a single day. The elders are the head, and the prophets who speak lies are the tail. Those who guide the people lead them astray.”

⁵“Nor will I pity the young men or the fatherless and widows, for everyone is ungodly, every mouth speaks vileness. Wickedness burns like a fire.”

⁶“Woe to those who make unjust laws to deprive the poor of their rights. What will you do on the day of reckoning when disaster comes? Where will you leave your riches? ⁷Nothing will remain but to cringe among the captives or fall among the slain.”

Woe also to the king of Assyria because of pride

⁸“Woe also to the king of Assyria, the rod of my anger. I have sent him against a godless nation to trample them down like mud in the streets, but that is not what he has in mind. ⁹His purpose is to put an end to many nations. He says, ‘I will deal next with Jerusalem, just as I have dealt with Samaria.’”

The Assyrian army to be eventually punished by a devastating plague

¹⁰“Therefore when I the Lord have finished my work against Jerusalem I will punish the king of Assyria for the pride of his heart, for he says, ‘By the strength of my own hand I have done this.’”

¹¹“Is the axe superior to him who swings it? Therefore I the Lord will send a devastating plague upon his sturdy warriors.^{F*} ¹²Under his pride a fire will be kindled and in a single day it shall burn and consume his splendour.”

Israel has continually provoked the Lord and is full of hypocrisy

¹³“To this nation Israel that did not call upon my name, I said, ‘Here am I.’ All day long I held out my hands to an obstinate people who walk in evil ways. A people who continually provoke me to my very face.”

¹⁴“A people who offer sacrifices in groves, who frequent tombs, and spend their nights in secret places, who eat the flesh of pigs^{F*} and then say to foreigners, “Do not come near me, I am too sacred for you.”

The people to pay for their sins

¹⁵“Such people are like smoke in my nostrils. I will not keep silent but will pay you back in full for both your sins and the sins of your fathers says the Lord.”

Israel full of superstition, divination, idolatry, treasures and no end of horses and chariots

¹⁶“O Lord, you have abandoned your

people for they are full of superstitions from the east, and practice divination. Their land is full of treasures and silver and gold. Horses are everywhere and there is no end to their chariots.”



The winged bull, a symbol of Assyria (modern day Northern Iraq).

¹⁷“*The land is full of idolatry, for they bow down to what their hands have made. Therefore all the people are debased. Do not forgive them O Lord.*”

Samaria falls after a three year siege and the survivors are exiled to Assyria

¹⁸At the end of three years Sargon^{F*} king of Assyria took the city of Samaria and exiled the survivors to Assyria.

¹⁹This happened because Israel had not kept the commandments of Jehovah their God and had followed the practices of the nations that the Lord had driven out before them.

Isaiah stripped and barefoot prophesies that Assyria will take stripped captives from Egypt

²⁰In the year that the Assyrians captured the Philistine city of Ashdod, the Lord spoke to Isaiah who was wearing sackcloth. ²¹He said to him, “Remove the sackcloth from your body and the sandals from your feet.” And Isaiah did so.

²²Then the Lord said, “Just as my servant Isaiah is stripped and barefoot, in three years from now the king of Assyria will lead away stripped and barefoot Egyptian and

*11 This prophecy was dramatically fulfilled when 185,000 Assyrian soldiers died overnight from a plague (see Isaiah 19:33).

*13 Pigs are among the forbidden unclean animals (see Leviticus 3:6).

*18 Sargon was successor to Shalmaneser king of Assyria (Isaiah 6:1) who died during the siege of Samaria.

ISAIAH 7

Ethiopian captives, young and old with buttocks bared to their shame.”

No deliverance of Judah from Assyria by Egypt

²³“In that day the people who live in Judah will say, ‘See what has happened to Egypt and Ethiopia to whom we looked for deliverance from Assyria? How then can we escape?’”

7

The Lord to come and devastate the whole earth in the last days

¹A prophecy of Isaiah concerning the last days: “*The day is coming when the Lord will come and devastate the earth. He will twist its surface and scatter its inhabitants, therefore hear the words of Jehovah.*”

²“The earth will mourn and wither and the proud and mighty shall be laid low. For the earth is defiled by its people. ³They have disobeyed my commandments and broken the everlasting covenant.”

Few people on earth will be left alive

⁴“Therefore a curse shall ravage the earth, and its people will suffer for their guilt, until few are left.”

⁵“The merrymakers will mourn. The gaiety of the tambourines will be stilled and the joyful harp be silenced. The noise of revellers shall cease.”

Isaiah’s vision of earth in last days

⁶“*The ruined cities lie empty, the doorways of houses are barred. In the streets people cry out for lack of wine. All joy has turned to gloom. Gaiety is banished from the earth. So will it be among the nations.*”

⁷“*Woe is me!*” the earth cries out, “*I waste away for I am full of treacherous betrayal!*”

Dead bodies like refuse in streets

⁸“*The Lord’s anger shall burn against his people, the mountains will shake and dead bodies will lie like refuse in the streets. Yet for all this, his anger is not turned away. His hand is still upraised.*”

Faithful descendants of Israelites will sing for joy in latter days

⁹“But I will not destroy you all, I shall bring forth descendants of Israel who will possess my mountain.^{F*} ¹⁰But as for you who forsake me, I will destine you for the sword, for I called but you did not answer. You chose what displeased me. ¹¹You shall cry out in anguish and I will put you to death.”

¹²“But my servants will sing for joy and be blessed, and the hardships of the past shall be forgotten.”

Distant nations to invade Israel in last days

¹³“*The Lord shall lift up a banner for distant nations. He shall whistle for those at*

the ends of the earth. Here they come, swiftly and speedily. ¹⁴Not one of them grows tired or stumbles. Not a belt is loosened nor a sandal thong broken.”

¹⁵*Their arrows are sharp, their bows are strung, their horses’ hoofs seem like flint, their chariot wheels like a whirlwind. They roar like young lions and growl as they seize their prey and carry it off with no one to rescue.*”

The invaders to roar like the sea and clouds darken the light

¹⁶“*In that day they shall roar over Israel like the roaring of the sea. Distress shall be everywhere. Even the light will be darkened by clouds.*”

Jerusalem to be besieged and brought low

¹⁷“Woe to you Jerusalem, the city where David lived. Your festivals continue, yet I will besiege you and bring you low. You will speak from the ground, out of the dust your speech will whisper.”

The Lord to suddenly come and save besieged Jerusalem

¹⁸“Yet the day is coming when your many enemies will be like chaff before the wind. Suddenly in an instant, Jehovah Almighty will come, with thunder and earthquake and storm of roaring wind, in a flame of devouring fire.”

¹⁹“Then for the hordes of the nations that have gathered against Jerusalem, their distress will be like that of a hungry man who dreams he is eating, but awakens and finds his hunger remains.”

The pride of men to be brought low when the Lord comes

²⁰“*Jehovah Almighty has a day in store for all the proud, for all those like the cedars of Lebanon, the high towers and stately ships.*”

²¹“*The pride of men shall be brought low. Jehovah alone will be exalted in that day, and all idols shall disappear.*”

Men will flee from the splendour and brightness of the Lord when he comes

²²“*Flee into caves, hide underground from the brightness of the splendour of the Lord!*”

²³“*Men will cast away their idols of silver and gold and flee to caves in the rocks and to overhanging crags, to hide from the brilliance of his glory, when the Lord comes to shake the earth.*”

Men to hear the Lord’s majestic voice raging in anger

²⁴“*See, the Lord comes from afar with burning anger and dense clouds of smoke, his tongue a consuming fire. He shakes the nations in the sieve of destruction.*”

²⁵“*Men will hear his majestic voice, with raging anger and consuming fire, with cloudburst, thunderstorm and hail.*”

*9 The city of Jerusalem, which is built on a mountain ridge.

**The armies besieging Jerusalem
to be destroyed**

²⁶“The voice of the Lord will shatter Assyria.^{F*} Every stroke the Lord lays on her shall be to the music of tambourines and harps.”

The valley of Hinnom prepared for the battle

²⁷“Topheth in the valley of Hinnom^{F*} has long been prepared. It has been made ready for the king. Its fire pit has been made deep and wide, with an abundance of fire and wood. The breath of Jehovah shall set it ablaze.”

**The Lord to hover over
Jerusalem like a bird**

²⁸“The Lord Almighty will come down to do battle on the heights of Mount Zion in Jerusalem. Like a bird hovering overhead he will shield the city and shall pass over and rescue it.”

The armies to fall by a sword not of man

²⁹“The Assyrians shall fall by a sword that is not of man and will flee, and their young men shall be distressed declares the Lord whose fire is in Zion.”

**All armies on earth to be
destroyed when the Lord comes**

³⁰“Hear you peoples of the earth. The Lord is enraged with all the nations. His wrath is upon all their armies and he has pronounced doom upon them. ³¹The day is coming when he will slaughter them. Their slain shall send up a stench and the mountains will be soaked with their blood.”

Stars to fall from the sky in the last days

³²“In that day the heavenly bodies will vanish and the sky roll up like a scroll and stars shall fall from the sky like withered leaves from a vine.”

8

The great army of the last days

¹“Listen, the roar of a great multitude! Jehovah Almighty is mustering an army for war. They come from faraway lands with the weapon of his wrath, to destroy the whole earth.”

Men’s hearts will melt with terror

²“Wail, for the day of the Lord is coming. All hands will go limp, men’s hearts shall fail them. Terror, pain, and anguish shall grip them. They will look aghast at each other.”

*²⁶ This prophecy would seem to indicate that a resurgent Assyria (modern day Iraq) will be foremost among the vast army of nations who will invade Jerusalem in the latter days (see following verses 27 and 29 and Ezekiel chapter 13. However it may be that the Assyria of Isaiah’s day, which suffered a sudden divine destruction of 185,000 soldiers (Isaiah 19:33) is a type, and therefore symbolic of the fate to befall the entire multi-nation army that is to invade Jerusalem in the latter days. Nevertheless a repentant Assyria appears to feature prominently during the peaceful millennium era following the destruction of Jerusalem (Isaiah 10:16-17, Micah 4:9.)

*²⁷ The Valley of Hinnom runs along the south of Jerusalem.

Sinners of the world to be destroyed

³“See, a cruel day of wrath is coming to empty the earth, to destroy the sinners upon it.

Darkness to come upon the earth

⁴The rising sun shall be darkened and the moon will not shed its light, and the stars of the heavens will not be seen.”

Men to be scarcer than gold

⁵Jehovah Almighty says, “I will punish the world for its evil. I will put an end to the pride of the arrogant. I shall make man scarcer than gold.”

⁶“I will make the heavens tremble and the earth shake in the day of my burning anger.”

Great floods and earthquakes in last days

⁷“Terror awaits you O people of the earth. Whoever flees will fall into a pit, whoever climbs out will be caught in a snare.”

⁸“The floodgates of the heavens will open in that day and the foundations of the earth shall shake and split asunder. The earth will reel like a drunkard and sway like a hut in the wind.”

**A day of reckoning for Satan and his
angels and the kings of the earth**

⁹“That day shall be a time of reckoning for the hosts of the heavens^{F*} and for the kings of the earth. They will be herded together like captives in a dungeon, for many days.”

**Satan to be punished and the
Antichrist to be destroyed**

¹⁰“In the days to come the Lord will punish with his sword the fleeing serpent, and slay the Beast of the sea.”^{F*}

Those left alive on earth will shout for joy

¹¹“Then those who are left alive on earth shall raise their voices and shout for joy. Looking from the west they will see the majesty of Jehovah.”

¹²“From the ends of the earth shall be heard singing, ‘Glory to the Righteous One’ for Jehovah Almighty is coming to reign gloriously on Mount Zion in Jerusalem.”

**Israel in the latter days will settle in their
own land and be served by other nations**

¹³“In that day the Lord shall have compassion on Jacob^{F*} and will once again settle Israel in their own land. ¹⁴Other nations will also unite with the house of Israel and shall serve them as menservants and maidservants.”

¹⁵“Israel will make captives of their captors and rule over their oppressors.”

*⁹ Probably Satan and his angels (see Revelation 15:27-30).

*¹⁰ The identities of the serpent and Beast are revealed in Revelation 8:9,15 and 9:1-9.

*¹³ Jacob is an alternative name for Israel. It was the name of the patriarch before the Lord changed it, see Genesis 22:16.

**Moab's cities to be destroyed in a night
in the last days**

¹A prophecy of Isaiah concerning Moab:^{F*} *"We have heard of Moab's pride and insolence, but her boasts are empty for Jehovah says: 'The cities of Moab shall be ruined, destroyed in a night. Every head shaved, every beard cut off.^{F*} ²In the streets they will wear sackcloth. On the roofs and in the public squares the people will wail and lie on the ground weeping. ³My heart laments for Moab like a harp."*

Moab's fugitives to flee

⁴"The armed men of Moab cry out. Their hearts are faint. Her fugitives flee, weeping as they go. Joy and gladness are taken away."

⁵"In the orchards no one sings or shouts for joy. In the vineyards no one treads wine at the presses, for I have put an end to their shouting."

Judah the lion to come upon the fugitives

⁶"The waters of Nimrim are dried up and the grass is withered. Nothing green is left. Dimon's waters are full of blood. ⁷But I will bring still more upon you. A lion^{F*} shall come upon the fugitives of Moab and those who remain in the land."

⁸"Like fluttering birds pushed from the nest will be the women of Moab at the fords of the Arnon river."



The Arnon river which runs through Moab and empties into the Dead Sea.

Tribute to be paid to Jerusalem

⁹"Therefore, send lambs as tribute to the ruler of the land, across the desert to the

*1 Modern day Jordan.

*1 Self-inflicted signs of mourning.

*7 Judah was called a lion in the ancient blessing given by the patriarch Israel to his sons (Genesis 31:21). Jesus is also called the Lion of Judah in Revelation 3:15.

mountain of Jerusalem. Say to them, 'Let our fugitives stay with you, shelter them from the destroyer.'

¹⁰"For your destroyer will come to an end and destruction will cease."

A king of the house of David to be enthroned

¹¹"Then, in steadfast love a throne shall be established, and a faithful one of the house of David shall sit upon it as king.^{F*} One who is swift to do right."

Moab's fate in Isaiah's day

¹²"*That was the word the Lord spoke concerning Moab in days to come. But now Jehovah says, 'Within three years Moab will be shorn of her splendour and her many people shall be despised. Her survivors will be few and feeble.'*"

**Edom doomed to total destruction
in the last days**

¹³"When my sword has drunk its fill in the heavens,^{F*} it will descend in judgement on Edom,^{F*} the people I have doomed to total destruction."

¹⁴"The sword of Jehovah will be bathed in blood for I have a great slaughter in Edom, and their cattle will fall with them. The land shall be drenched with blood and the dust soaked with fat."

The soil of Edom to be set ablaze

¹⁵"Edom's streams shall be turned to pitch and her soil to sulphur and her land set ablaze. From generation to generation it shall lie empty and none shall pass through it. ¹⁶Thorns and brambles will overrun her cities. Edom will become the haunt of jackals and wild goats, a home for owls and ravens."

**Damascus to become a heap of ruins
in the last days**

¹⁷A prophecy concerning Damascus:^{F*} *"The day will come when Damascus shall no longer be a city, but will become a heap of ruins. Animals will graze there with none to disturb them."*

Some gleanings to remain and be glorified

¹⁸"Yet the Lord Almighty declares, 'The survivors of Syria will be like the Israelites. ¹⁹For on the day when the glory of Israel is brought low, some gleanings will remain, as when an olive tree is beaten, leaving two or three olives on the topmost branches.'

Survivors will turn to the Holy One of Israel

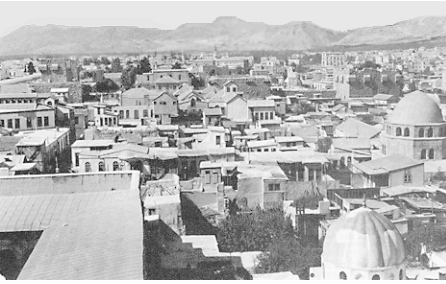
²⁰"*In that day they will turn their eyes to the Holy One of Israel and look no more to their altars and idols, the work of their own hands."*

*11 This prophecy must still relate to the future as the Judean monarchy ended soon afterward with the last king Zedekiah (Jeremiah chapter 22). There has not been another king of the house of David in Israel since.

*13 See Isaiah 8:9.

*13 Edom is part of modern day Jordan.

*17 Damascus is the principle city of Syria.



Damascus in Syria. One day to become a heap of deserted ruins.

The multi-nation invading army of the last days to be destroyed in a night

²¹“O the roaring of many nations. They will come with a roar like the raging sea. But when Jehovah rebukes them they shall flee like chaff before the wind. ²²In the evening will come a sudden terror and at dawn they shall be no more.”

10

A prophecy concerning Ethiopia in the last days

¹A prophecy concerning Ethiopia: “Ah, land of whirring wings, who send ambassadors down the Nile in papyrus boats to the sea. A people tall and bronzed, feared far and wide. A conquering nation of strange speech whose land is divided by the Nile.”

Ethiopians to be cut down after the grapes have blossomed

²“When the trumpet sounds, all the people of the earth will hear it.^{F*} And in that same year before the harvest, when the blossom is over and the flower becomes a ripening grape, this people will be cut down, as branches cut down with pruning knives. ³Their bodies will be food for the birds of prey through the summer and for wild animals in winter.”

A remnant to come to Jerusalem bearing gifts

⁴“Then a remnant of these tall, bronzed people will come to Jerusalem, bearing gifts for Jehovah Almighty.”

Civil war in Egypt

⁵A prophecy concerning Egypt: “The Lord Almighty declares, ‘I will stir up Egyptian to fight against Egyptian, every man against his brother.’”

A fierce king to rule over Egypt in last days

⁶“The spirit of the Egyptians shall be broken and I will bring their plans to nothing, though they consult with their idols and spirits of the dead. ⁷I will hand

them over to the power of a fierce king who will rule over them.”

The Nile to dry up

⁸“Then the waters of the Nile will dry up and the riverbed become dry. The canals will stink and dry up, and the reeds and rushes wither. The sown fields along the Nile shall blow away.”

⁹“Fishermen will mourn and weavers of linen from flax will despair. All the wage earners shall be sick at heart.”

The Egyptians to fear Judah in last days

¹⁰“The wise counsellors of Pharaoh will give senseless advice, for the Lord shall put into them a spirit of confusion. They will make Egypt stagger in all that she does, as a drunkard staggers around in his vomit.”

¹¹“In that day the Egyptians will be like women. They will shake with fear at the hand that Jehovah raises against them.”

¹²“The land of Judah will become a terror to the Egyptians. The very mention of Judah will strike fear in their hearts, because of what the Lord shall bring against them.”

Egypt to turn to the Lord after he delivers them from oppressors

¹³“The Lord will smite Egypt with oppressors, but then he shall respond to their pleas and send a great saviour and deliver them, and they will turn to the Lord.”

Five cities in Egypt to worship Jehovah during the millennium

¹⁴“In that day, five cities in Egypt will swear loyalty to Jehovah Almighty. One of these shall be called the City of the Sun.”

¹⁵“There will be an altar to Jehovah in the heart of Egypt and they shall worship with sacrifices and offerings. They will make vows to the Lord and keep them.”

A highway from Assyria to Egypt when the Lord returns

¹⁶“In that day there shall be a highway from Assyria to Egypt, and the Assyrians will go to Egypt and the Egyptians to Assyria and shall worship together.”

Egypt, Assyria and Israel to be centres of worship of Jehovah

¹⁷“In that day Israel will a blessing on the earth, along with Egypt and Assyria. Jehovah Almighty will bless all three saying, “Blessed be Egypt my people, Assyria the work of my hands, and Israel my inheritance.”

The wealth of Egypt and Ethiopia to come to Jerusalem

¹⁸The Lord says, “The day shall come when the wealth of Egypt and Ethiopia will be brought to Jerusalem by captives in chains, and they shall bow down before you saying, ‘Surely God is with you.’”

*2 Heavenly trumpet blasts are to herald the great destructions and other events of the last days (Revelation chapter 6, Isaiah 11:9).

A plea from the Lord to all idolatrous nations

19 "In that day, all makers of idols everywhere shall be put to shame, and Israel will be saved by Jehovah, never to be dishonoured again."

20 "I did not create the earth to be empty but to be inhabited. 21 So come you fugitives from the nations who have no knowledge and carry about wooden idols and pray to a god who cannot save. 22 Turn to me and be saved, for I am the only true God. There is no other."

Every knee shall bow to Jehovah

23 "Before me every knee shall bow and every tongue confess, 'In Jehovah alone is righteousness and strength.'"

24 "All who have opposed me will be dishonoured, but through me all Israel will be justified and honoured."



Assyria, Israel and Egypt are to become major centres of worship of the Lord during the millennium (Isaiah 10:14-17).

11

Isaiah's vision of the coming of the Lord

1 "Who is this coming from the east with his garments stained crimson, robed in splendour and travelling in the greatness of his strength?"

2 "It is I, who speak righteousness and am mighty to save," says the Lord."

The Lord's garments to be red

3 "Why are your garments red, like those of one treading the winepress?"

4 "I have trodden the winepress of the nations. I trampled them in my anger and their blood has stained my garments. For this day of vengeance was in my heart and has now come."

5 "I looked and there was no one to help me, but my wrath sustained me, so I trampled the nations alone in my anger and poured out their blood on the ground."

Isaiah's prayer of praise

6 "O Jehovah my God, I exalt and praise your holy name, for you have done marvellous things, things planned long ago. You

have turned cities into heaps of rubble, therefore strong and ruthless nations will honour you. 7 Yet you have been a refuge for the poor and the needy in their distress, a shelter from the storm."

Israel to bud and blossom during the millennium

8 "In that day Israel will bud and blossom and fill the world with fruit."

Lost exiles will return to worship at Jerusalem

9 "In that day a great trumpet will sound, and they who were lost in exile shall return, and worship the Lord on his holy mountain in Jerusalem."

The Lord Jehovah coming in power to tend his flock as a shepherd

10 "Good tidings to the towns of Judah and to Jerusalem. Lift up your voice with a shout! See, the Lord Jehovah is coming with power and his reward is with him."

11 "He will tend his flock as a shepherd and gather his lambs in his arms and carry them close to his heart."



"He will gather his lambs in his arms and carry them close to his heart" Isaiah 12:11.

Jehovah to be seen and heard by all when he comes

12 "Although Jehovah has given you the bread of adversity and the water of affliction, your teacher will hide himself no more."

13 "With your own eyes you shall see him, and with your own ears you will hear him."

14 "Then you will deface your idols of silver and gold and cast them away as you would a menstrual cloth."

The Lord has not rejected Israel

15 Hear the word of Jehovah: "O Israel whom I have chosen. Descendants of Abraham my friend. You whom I took from the ends of the earth, I have not rejected you."

16 "So fear not, for I am your God and will strengthen you and help you. All who rage against you shall surely be disgraced and

perish. Though you search for your enemies you will not find them.”

New heavens and a new earth to be created

16“*I will create new heavens and a new earth. The former things shall not be seen, nor will they come to mind.*”

No more will weeping be heard in Jerusalem

17“*I will create Jerusalem to be a delight, and its people a joy. The sound of weeping shall be heard in her no more.*”

People will again live long lives

18“*Never again will there be an infant who lives but a few days, or an old man who does not live out his years. He who dies at a hundred will be regarded as a young man. 19For as are the years of a tree^{F*} so will be the years of my people in that day.*”

Prayers to be answered immediately

20“*My chosen ones will long enjoy the works of their hands. They shall be a people blessed by the Lord. 21Before they call I shall answer. While they are still praying I will hear.*”

Meat-eating animals will eat grass

22“*The wolf and the lamb shall feed together and the lion will eat grass as the ox, but dust shall be the serpent’s food.^{F*} 23None will hurt or destroy on all my holy mountain says the Lord.*”

A great feast in Jerusalem when Lord returns

24“*On his holy mountain Jehovah will prepare a feast of rich food and choice wines, for all peoples.*”

All tears to be wiped away

25“*He will swallow up death forever and wipe away the tears from all faces. He shall remove the shame of his people. 26In that day they shall say, ‘This is our God. We trusted in him and he saved us.’*”

A song to be sung in Judah that day

27“*In that day this song will be sung in the land of Judah:*

28“*Lord, you have given us peace. All that we have has come from you.*”

29“*You have enlarged our nation and extended our borders.*”

30“*Other rulers have ruled us, but your name alone we honour.*”

31“*They are now dead, and their departed spirits have not risen.*”^{F*}

The dead of the Lord will be resurrected in that day

32“*But your dead O Lord will live, and together with my body shall they arise. Awake and shout for joy you who dwell in the dust, for the earth will give birth to her dead.*”

*19 Some trees live for more than a thousand years.

*22 Perhaps as the earthworm of today.

*31 The unrighteous are not resurrected until after the millennium (Revelation 16:7).

33“*Go my people, enter your rooms and shut your doors. Hide for a little while until the wrath is past. For the Lord is coming to punish the people of the earth for their sins. 34Then the earth will conceal her dead no longer.*”

12

All war will end when the Lord returns

1“*Jehovah will judge the nations and they shall beat their swords into plough blades and their spears into pruning hooks. 2Nation will never again take up the sword against nation, nor shall they prepare any more for war.*”

The humble and contrite esteemed by the Lord

3The Lord says, “Heaven is my throne and the earth is my footstool. My hand has made all these things.”

4“*This is the one I esteem, he who is humble and contrite in spirit and trembles at my word.*”

5“*But they who choose their own way, and whose souls delight in abominations will be punished. I will bring upon them what they dread.*”

Those who despise the faithful will be put to shame

6“*Hear the word of the Lord you who tremble at my word. Your brothers despise you and exclude you because of my name, yet they will be put to shame.*”

Wine and milk freely given to those who come to the Lord

7“*Come all you who are thirsty and have no money. Come, obtain wine and milk without cost. Why spend money on that which does not satisfy? Hear me and eat what is good, and your soul will delight in the richest of food.*”

The Lord will make a covenant of love if you come to him and endow you with splendour

8“*Come to me that your soul may live, and I will renew my everlasting covenant with you. Just as in my faithful love I covenanted with David, and made him a leader to the nations. 9Nations that you know not of shall hasten to you, for the Lord your God will endow you with splendour.*”

Seek the Lord while he is near and he will freely pardon

10“*Seek the Lord while he is near. Let the wicked forsake their evil thoughts and turn to the Lord. He will have mercy on them, for he freely pardons.*”

Lord’s thoughts higher than man’s thoughts

11“*As the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts,’ says the Lord.*”

**Blessed are those who keep
the commandments**

¹²“Maintain justice and do what is right, for my salvation is to be revealed. ¹³Blessed is the man who does this, who keeps the Sabbath day holy and stays his hand from doing wrong.”

**Foreigners and eunuchs who keep the
commandments will be accepted by Lord**

¹⁴“Let not any foreigner who has bound himself to Jehovah say, ‘The Lord will exclude me from his people,’ nor let any eunuch say, ‘I am just a dry tree.’”

¹⁵“For Jehovah says, ‘To foreigners and eunuchs who love me and keep my covenant, and bind themselves to serve me and worship me, and keep the Sabbath without profaning it, these I will bring to my holy city and give them joy in my Temple, and a name better than sons and daughters.’”

¹⁶“Their offerings shall be accepted on my altar, for my house shall be called a house of prayer for all nations.”

¹⁷“For I the Lord Jehovah declare, ‘I will gather others to Israel besides those already gathered.’”

Jerusalem’s day of joy is coming

¹⁸“Arise, shine Jerusalem, for the day of your light is coming. Darkness covers the earth, but the glory of Jehovah will appear above you. Then shall you be radiant, and your heart throb and swell with joy.”

Nations will come praising Jehovah

¹⁹“Nations will come to your light proclaiming the praise of Jehovah. Your sons and daughters will come from afar.”

Flocks will be gathered for offerings

²⁰“Flocks will be gathered to you for offerings on my holy altar.” ^F*

**Riches will be brought to Jerusalem
for the Lord to adorn his glorious Temple**

²¹“The riches of the nations shall come: silver, gold and incense, and I will adorn my glorious Temple.”

Descendants of exiles to fly home in ships

²²“Who are these that fly along like clouds, like doves to their nests? Ships bringing your sons from afar, with their silver and gold to the honour of the Lord your God.”

Foreigners to serve Israel

²³“Foreigners shall rebuild your walls and their rulers will serve you. Your gates shall be open day and night so that men may bring you the wealth of the nations. ²⁴For the nation that will not serve you shall perish.”

²⁵“The sons of your oppressors shall come, bowing before you and will call

Jerusalem the City of Jehovah, Zion of the Holy One of Israel.”

Israelites to be the pride and joy of world

²⁶“Although you have been forsaken and hated, I will make you the pride and joy of all generations forever. You shall drink the milk of nations and be nursed at royal breasts. Then you will know that I the Lord am your Saviour.”

²⁷“No longer will violence be in your land.”

13

Mountains to be made low

¹“A voice shall cry out in the desert, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord. Make straight the way of our God.’ ²For every valley shall be raised up, and every mountain and hill made low^F * and rugged places become a plain.”

All mankind will see the glory of the Lord

³“And the glory of the Lord shall be revealed and all mankind will see it together. The mouth of Jehovah has spoken it.”

Food will be rich and plentiful

⁴“Then shall he send you rain for the seed you sow in the ground, and the food that grows will be rich and plentiful. ⁵In that day your cattle will graze in broad meadows and your oxen and donkeys will eat plentiful grain.”

Streams of water everywhere

⁶“After the day of great slaughter when the dead lie in heaps, streams of water shall flow on every hill.”

Sun and moon to be seven times brighter

⁷“The moon will shine like the sun, and the sun will be seven times brighter as the Lord heals the wounds he inflicted. ⁸And you shall sing as on the night of a holy festival and your hearts will rejoice.”

Your eyes shall see the king in his beauty

⁹“Your eyes shall see the king in his beauty, and you shall view a land that stretches afar. Only in your mind will you recall the former terror.”

Abundant spoil from former enemies

¹⁰“Those arrogant people are no more, those people of obscure speech and strange tongue. ¹¹Now an abundance of spoil shall be divided. Even the lame will carry off plunder.”

**Jerusalem to be a peaceful city
of broad rivers and streams**

¹²“Look upon Jerusalem, the city of our festivals. Your eyes will see a peaceful

*2The word translated 'mountain' throughout the Old Testament means in Hebrew 'a range of hills' and the word translated 'hill' means 'convex' depicting a stand alone hill. They are however occasionally used interchangeably. Height is not indicated unless prefixed by an adjective such as 'high'.

*20 For a description of the millennial temple which contains provision for animal sacrifice, see Ezekiel chapter 14.

abode, like a tent with stakes never to be pulled up. ¹³A place of broad rivers and streams. For Jehovah is our judge, our lawgiver and our king."

The desert will burst into bloom

¹⁴"Streams will gush forth in the desert. The burning sands shall become pools of water and bubbling springs. ¹⁵The desert shall rejoice and blossom like the rose. It will burst into bloom and shout for joy."

¹⁶"All shall see the splendour of our God."



Jerusalem – to become a beautiful city of broad rivers and streams during the millennium (Isaiah 13:12-13).

The highway of Holiness

¹⁷"A new highway will be there and shall be called the Way of Holiness. The unclean shall not journey on it, only the redeemed will walk there."

¹⁸"On it the ransomed of the Lord shall return. They will enter Jerusalem with singing. Everlasting joy will crown their heads. ¹⁹Gladness shall overtake them and all sorrow shall flee away."

All infirmity to be healed

²⁰"Then will the eyes of the blind be opened and the ears of the deaf unstopped. Then shall the lame leap like a deer and the tongue of the dumb shout for joy."

No more sickness

²¹"In that day no one living in Zion will say, 'I am sick' and the sins of those who dwell there shall be forgiven."

14

A country will be born in a day when the Lord comes

¹"Listen! An uproar from the city. It is the sound of the Lord repaying his enemies all they deserve. Who has seen such things?"

²"Can a country be born in a day? Yet no sooner is Jerusalem in labour than she gives birth to her children."

Jerusalem to overflow with abundance

³The Lord says, "Rejoice with Jerusalem, all you who love her and mourn over her. For you will suck and be satisfied at her comforting breasts. You will delight in her overflowing abundance."

⁴"I will bring peace to her like a river. The

wealth of nations shall flow to her like a flooding stream."

⁵"As a mother comforts her child, so will I comfort Jerusalem."

The Lord to come with fury and flames of fire

⁶"See, the Lord is coming with fire. His chariots are like the whirlwind. He will bring down his anger with fury and flames of fire. ⁷For with fire and his sword Jehovah shall execute judgement upon all men and many will be slain."

⁸"For the Lord declares, 'Those who go into the groves^{F*} and those who eat the flesh of pigs and rats and other abominable things, will meet their end together.'

Survivors to be sent out to all nations to teach the people and gather Israelites

⁹"I will come and gather all nations and they shall see my glory."

¹⁰"I will set a sign among them and shall send survivors to the nations and to the distant islands that have not heard of my fame or seen my glory. ¹¹They will proclaim my glory and will bring your brothers from all the nations to my holy mountain in Jerusalem, in chariots and wagons and on horses and camels, says the Lord."

¹²"And I will select some of them also, to be priests and Levites."

15

All nations will stream to Jerusalem and bow down to Lord

¹What the prophet Isaiah saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem in days to come: "In the last days, the mountain of the Lord's house will be the highest of the mountains^{F*} and all nations shall stream unto it. ²People will say, 'Let us go up to the Temple of the God of Israel and he will teach us his ways, so that we can walk in his paths.' For the law will go out from Jerusalem."

³"O house of Israel, let us walk in the light of the Lord."

⁴"The Lord says, 'From one New Moon to another, from one Sabbath to another, all mankind will come and bow down before me, and they shall go out and look upon the loathsome dead bodies of those who rebelled against me.' ^{F*}

All animals to eat grass during the millennium

⁵"In that day the wolf shall live in peace with the lamb, and the leopard lie down with the kid. The lion will eat grass as the ox, and the calf and the lion shall browse together with a little child to lead them. ⁶The

* Groves were places of idolatrous prostitution and were usually located beneath oak trees.

¹ Although the land of Israel is to become a plain at the coming of the Lord (Isaiah chapter 13), the city of Jerusalem will be located on a high mountain (Ezekiel 14:2, Zechariah 5:23).

³ It is to take Israel more than seven months to bury all the dead (Ezekiel 13:22).

ISAIAH 16

cow will feed at pasture with the bear, and their young shall lie down together.”

Peaceful conditions during the millennial reign of Messiah

⁷“In that day the infant shall play safely near the hole of the cobra, and the young child will put his hand into the viper’s nest.”

⁸“They will not harm nor destroy on all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.”



Meat eating animals like the lion will eat grass during the millennium (Isaiah 15:5.)

Glory of Jehovah to replace the sun

⁹“The sun will no longer be your light by day, nor will the moon shine on you, for Jehovah will be your light.” F*

All who live in Israel shall be righteous in that day

¹⁰“Then shall all your people be righteous and they shall possess the land always. For you are the work of my hands for the display of my splendour.”

¹¹“The least of you will become a thousand, the smallest a mighty nation. In its time I will do this swiftly.”

Israelites to be gathered and live in glory

¹²“In that day the root of Jesse^{F*} shall stand as an ensign and nations shall gather to it and his place of abode will be glorious.”

¹³“And the Lord shall reach out his hand a second time to reclaim the scattered people of Judah and the remnant of the exiles of Israel from the four quarters of the earth.”

Jealousy between Judah and Ephraim to vanish

¹⁴“Ephraim’s jealousy will vanish. Ephraim will no longer be jealous of Judah, nor

*9 This may only apply to the city of Jerusalem during the millennium, see verses 19-20 of this chapter, or the prophecy may be looking ahead to the New Jerusalem which will descend to earth after the millennium (Revelation 17:23-24).

*12 Some scholars believe the ‘root of Jesse’ is the Messiah, others that he is a latter day prophet responsible for gathering and uniting both factions of Israel (Judah and Ephraim), see following verses. On the basis of Isaiah 25:10-12 he may be the resurrected Isaiah himself.

Judah hostile to Ephraim.” F*

¹⁵“Together they will take spoil from the people of the west and the east, and Ammon^{F*} will be subject to them.”

The Euphrates river to dry up into seven small streams

¹⁶“Jehovah will dry up the tongue of the Red Sea, and with a scorching wind break up the Euphrates river into seven small streams so that men can walk across in sandals. ¹⁷A path through the water for the remnant of his people from Assyria,^{F*} as there was a path through the water for Israel when they came up from Egypt.”

The women of Jerusalem to be cleansed

¹⁸“In that day the Lord will wash away the filth of the women of Jerusalem, and cleanse the bloodstains from the city by judgement and fire.”

A protective canopy of bright cloud to extend over Jerusalem

¹⁹“Then will he create over Jerusalem a cloud, as a shade from the heat of the day and a glow of flaming fire by night. ²⁰It will serve as a canopy, a shelter from storm and rain.”

²¹“Shout and sing for joy people of Jerusalem, for great is the Holy One of Israel among you.”



The Euphrates river which is to become seven small streams in the latter days (Isaiah 15:16).

16

Judah to become like the garden of Eden

¹“The time is coming when Jehovah will comfort Jerusalem and look with compassion on her ruins. ²He will make her deserts like the garden of Eden.”

Bubbling springs and abundant trees

³“For Jehovah says, ‘The day is coming when I will make streams flow on what were

*14 It appears that all Israel is to be gathered in the latter days under the heads of the two dominant tribes, Judah (the Jews), and Ephraim (the ten lost tribes). Many believe that the lost tribes are among the forbears of northern European peoples.

*15 Modern day Jordan.

*17 Modern day Iraq.

barren heights, and springs bubble up in the valleys, and I will turn the desert into pools of water.”

“Where there was once desert, trees will grow, the cedar, the acacia, the myrtle, the olive, the fir and the cypress. Nations will see and know that the hand of the Lord has done this.”

The Lord to reign over entire earth when he comes

“Hear me O my people says the Lord, the law will go out from me as a light to the nations. My salvation is coming. I will bring justice to the entire world.”

Before that day the heavens will vanish and people die like flies

“But before that day, the heavens will vanish like smoke, and the earth shall come apart like an old garment and its people will die like flies, but my salvation shall last forever.”

Jerusalem’s cup of wrath to be taken away and given to her tormentors

“Awake, awake! Rise up O Jerusalem you who have drunk the cup of the Lord’s wrath, you who have drained it to the dregs. Calamities, destruction, famine and sword have come upon you.”

“Your sons lie helpless at the head of every street, like antelope caught in a net.”

“Therefore hear this you afflicted one, I have taken out of your hand the cup of my wrath that made you stagger. You will never drink of it again. I shall put it into the hands of your tormentors.”

Jerusalem to be redeemed

“Awake, awake O Jerusalem, clothe yourself with strength. Put on your garments of splendour O Holy City. The defiled shall not enter you again.”

“Shake off your dust, free yourself from the chains of your neck O captive daughter of Zion. You were sold for naught, and without money you will be redeemed.”

“For the Lord says, ‘Assyria has oppressed them. Those who rule them mock and all day long my name is blasphemed. In that day they will know that it is I who foretold it.’”

Shouts for joy when the Lord returns to save Jerusalem

“How beautiful on the mountains are the feet of those who bring good tidings, who proclaim peace and say to Jerusalem, ‘Your God reigns.’”

“Your watchmen shall lift up their voices and shout for joy when Jehovah returns to Jerusalem. They will see it with their own eyes.”

“Burst into songs of joy you ruins of Jerusalem, for the Lord has comforted his people.”

All nations to witness the saving of Jerusalem

“The Lord will bare his holy arm in the sight of all nations. All the earth shall see the salvation of our God.”

Jerusalem likened to a childless widow who suddenly receives a husband and children

“The Lord says, ‘Sing O barren woman, you who never bore a child. Burst into song and shout for joy. For more are the children of the childless woman than of she who has a husband.’”

“Enlarge your tent, lengthen your cords, strengthen your stakes, for you will spread to the right and to the left. Your children shall dispossess nations and settle in their empty cities.”

“You will forget the shame of your youth and the disgrace of your widowhood. For your maker is your husband. Jehovah Almighty is his name, the Holy One of Israel, your Redeemer, the God of all the earth.”

The Lord will not be angry with Israel again

“In a surge of anger I hid my face from you. For a brief moment I abandoned you. But with everlasting kindness I will bring you back.”

“Like the days of Noah when I swore that the waters would never again cover the earth, now I swear not to be angry with you again. My covenant of peace will not be removed.”

The beautiful New Jerusalem of the future

“O afflicted city, I am going to replace your stones with turquoise, your foundations with sapphires. I will make your pinnacles of rubies, your gates of rounded gemstones, and your walls of precious jewels.”^{F*}

“Your sons shall be taught by the Lord and great shall be their prosperity.”

“This will be the heritage of the servants of the Lord.”

17

Isaiah’s prophecies like a sealed book to Judah

“The Lord has brought over you a spirit of deep sleep. He has blinded your eyes. This whole vision is to you like the words of a sealed book.”

The hearts of the people far from the Lord

“For the Lord says, ‘This people draw near to me with their lips but their hearts are far from me. Their fear toward me is taught by the traditions of men.’”

“Therefore I will astound these people with marvellous wonders and the wisdom of their wise shall vanish.”

^{*}22 This description fits the vast New Jerusalem, a beautiful, glowing, bejewelled city, 2200 kms long and wide that is to descend from heaven to the new earth following the millennium. The resurrected righteous will dwell there in the presence of the Father and the Son. See Revelation chapter 17.

ISAIAH 18

⁴“Woe to those who go to great lengths to hide their evil deeds, who sin in darkness and think, ‘Who will know?’”

⁵“You turn things upside down. You are like the clay saying to the potter, ‘You did not make me.’”

Isaiah’s prophecies will be understood when the great day of the Lord comes

⁶“Yet, when the great day of the Lord comes, the deaf shall hear the words of this sealed book and the eyes of the blind shall see.”

⁷“Once more the humble will rejoice in the Lord. The ruthless will vanish, the mockers will disappear and all who speak falsehoods or have an eye for evil shall be destroyed.”

⁸“Therefore the Lord says, ‘No longer in that day will Jacob be ashamed when he looks upon his children, the work of my hands. ⁹They will keep my name holy, and they who err in spirit will gain understanding and accept instruction.’”

Isaiah instructed to write this vision in a book as a witness for days to come

¹⁰“Go now, inscribe this vision in a book that it may be a witness for the days to come.”

Rebellious Judah want only to hear pleasant prophecies

¹¹“But woe to these obstinate children who carry out plans that are not mine. These are a rebellious people, unwilling to listen to instruction of the Lord. ¹²They say to the prophets, ‘Give us no more visions of what is right. Speak to us of pleasant things, prophesy illusions. Cease confronting us with the Holy One of Israel.’”

¹³“Therefore the Holy One of Israel says, ‘Because you have rejected my message and depend upon deceit, this sin will become for you like a high wall, cracked and bulging, that suddenly collapses upon you.’”

Jerusalem’s priests and rulers befuddled with wine

¹⁴“Woe to Jerusalem. Your priests and rulers stagger from strong drink and are befuddled with wine. All your tables are covered with vomit. There is not a spot without filth.”

Words of Isaiah scoffed at

¹⁵“You scoff and say to me, ‘Who is Isaiah trying to teach? Are we little children? Do this! Do that! Rule after rule!’”

God will therefore speak to Judah with foreign lips

¹⁶“Very well then, with foreign lips God shall speak to you. It shall still be, ‘Do this. Do that. Rule after rule. But it will not bring rest to the weary but will cause you to fall backward, to be injured and snared and captured.’”

¹⁷“When the overwhelming scourge comes

you shall be beaten down by it. As often as it comes it will carry you away. Morning after morning it will bring terror.”

The Messiah to be a cornerstone in Zion

¹⁸“Hear the word of Jehovah you scoffers who rule this people in Jerusalem: ‘I will lay a stone in Zion, a chosen cornerstone for a sure foundation. He who trusts in him shall never be put to shame.’”

Judah’s chains to become heavier if they do not cease mocking

¹⁹“Now cease your mocking or your chains will become heavier, for the Lord has revealed to me the destruction decreed against this whole land.”

Only repentance will bring the help of the Lord

²⁰“The Lord says, ‘In repentance is your salvation, in trust is your strength.’ But you would have none of it. You said, ‘No, we will flee on horses.’ ²¹Therefore you shall flee. But your pursuers will be swifter. And a thousand of you shall flee at the threat of one.”

The Lord longs to show Judah compassion

²²“Yet the Lord longs to show you compassion. For Jehovah is a God of justice. Blessed are all who wait for him.”

²³“O people of Jerusalem, how gracious he will be in that day when you cry for help. As soon as he hears he will answer you.”

18

Assyria captures many cities of Judah

¹In the fourteenth year of the reign of Hezekiah king of Judah, Sennacherib king of Assyria marched against Judah and attacked the fortified cities, capturing them.

Jerusalem prepares to be attacked also

²When Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib also intended to come against Jerusalem, he blocked off the springs and stream outside the city saying, “Why should the Assyrians come and find plenty of water?”

³He repaired the broken sections of the city wall and built towers upon it, and then built another wall outside that one and reinforced the terraces of the City of David. ⁴He also made many weapons and shields.

King Hezekiah encourages his people

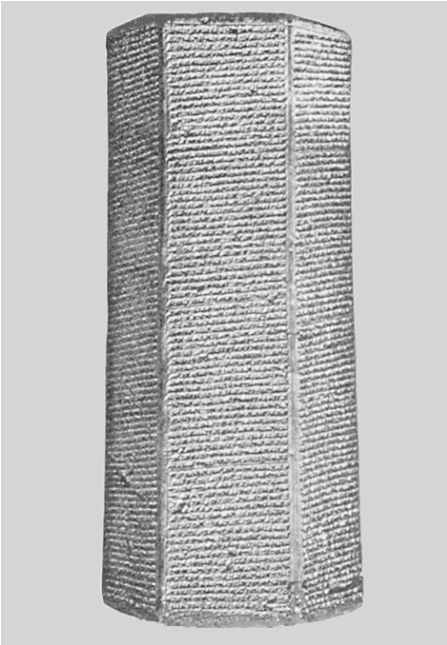
⁵The king appointed army officers over the people and assembled them in the square at the city gate and encouraged them with these words, “Be strong and courageous. Do not fear the king of Assyria and his vast army, for there is a greater power with us than with him. ⁶We have Jehovah our God to help us and to fight our battles.”

⁷The army officers gained confidence from the words spoken by Hezekiah the king of Judah.

Hezekiah pays the Assyrians a huge ransom of gold and silver to withdraw

⁸Hezekiah then sent a message to the king of Assyria saying, “I have done wrong. Withdraw from me and I will pay whatever you demand.”

⁹So Sennacherib, king of Assyria exacted from Hezekiah 300 talents of silver and 30 talents of gold.^{F*} All the silver and gold from the treasuries of the Temple and the royal palace. ¹⁰King Hezekiah even had to strip gold from the doors of the Temple. The king of Assyria took the gold and silver and withdrew from Jerusalem.



A clay record of Sennacherib in which he boasts of his victory over Hezekiah the Jew.

19

The Assyrians come again against Jerusalem

¹Later that same year, when the king of Assyria was besieging Lachish,^{F*} he sent his chief commander with a large army against Jerusalem a second time.

The Assyrian commander taunts Hezekiah

²The Assyrian commander led his army to the city gates and shouted for the king Hezekiah.

³Three of Hezekiah's officials went out to meet him. Then the commander cried out to them in a loud voice, “Tell Hezekiah, the great king of Assyria says, ‘On what are you basing this confidence of yours, that you remain in Jerusalem to rebel against me? ⁴You say you

have military strength, but you speak empty words. Come now, make a bargain with me. I will give you 2000 horses if you can put riders on them!”

The Assyrians blaspheme Jehovah

⁵“On whom then are you depending? Are you depending on Egypt, that splintered reed which pierces a man's hand if he leans on it!”

⁶“Are you depending on Jehovah your God? Is not he the one whose high places and altars you have removed? ⁷Furthermore, Jehovah himself told me to march against this land and destroy it.”

The Assyrian commander intimidates the men of Judah sitting on the wall

⁸Hezekiah's officials said to the Assyrian commander, “Speak in Assyrian since we understand it. Do not speak in Hebrew in the hearing of the men on the wall.”

⁹But the commander cried out, “Was it only to your king that I was sent to say these words, and not to the men sitting on the wall, who like you will have to eat their own dung and drink their own urine.”

¹⁰Then he again shouted in Hebrew, “Hear the words of the great king of Assyria! ‘Do not let Hezekiah deceive you! He cannot deliver you from my hand! ¹¹Do not let him persuade you to trust in Jehovah! You will die of hunger and thirst!”

The men of Judah encouraged to surrender

¹²“Come out to me! Then every one of you will continue to eat from your own vine and fig tree, and drink from your own cistern until I come and take you to a land like your own, a land of grain and new wine, a land of vineyards, olive trees and honey!”

¹³“Choose life, not death! Do not listen to Hezekiah when he says Jehovah will deliver you! ¹⁴Has the god of any nation delivered his people from the hand of the king of Assyria? Was Samaria delivered? How then can Jehovah deliver Jerusalem from my hand?”

The men of Judah remain silent

¹⁵But the men were silent, for Hezekiah the king had commanded them, “Do not answer him.”

Hezekiah seeks guidance from the Lord

¹⁶The officials went back to Hezekiah with their clothes torn^{F*} and told him what the Assyrian commander had said.

¹⁷The king tore his clothes also and put on sackcloth and went up to the Temple of the Lord. ¹⁸Then he sent his officials and priests to consult the prophet Isaiah.

The Lord to cause the Assyrian king to return home and be cut down with the sword

¹⁹Isaiah said to them, “The Lord says, ‘Do not fear the words with which the underlings of the king of Assyria have blasphemed me. I will put such a spirit into the

*23 About 10 tonnes of silver and one tonne of gold.

*1 A Canaanite city about 40 km south west of Jerusalem.

*16 A sign of grief or frustration.

ISAIAH 20

king of Assyria that when he hears a certain report he will return to his own land. There he shall be cut down by the sword.”

The king of Assyria sends another blasphemous message to Hezekiah

²⁰Soon after this the king of Assyria heard a report that the king of Egypt was marching against him. So he sent a letter to Hezekiah with these words:

²¹“Let not the God you depend on deceive you when he says, ‘Jerusalem will not be handed over to the king of Assyria.’ You have heard what the kings of Assyria have done to other nations, they destroyed them completely.”

²²“Where is the king of Hamath, the king of Arpad, the king of Sepharvaim, or of Hena, or Ivvah?”

Hezekiah prays to the Lord for deliverance

²³Hezekiah received the letter and read it. Then he went up to the Temple and spread it out before the Lord and prayed, “O Jehovah, God of Israel, you alone are God over all the kingdoms of the earth. ²⁴See the words that Sennacherib, king of Assyria has sent to insult the living God.”

²⁵“It is true O Lord that the Assyrian kings have laid waste other nations, and burnt their gods with fire. But they were not gods, only wood and stone fashioned by men’s hands.”

²⁶“Now O Lord deliver us from his hand, that all the kingdoms on earth may know that you alone are God.”

The Lord rebukes the king of Assyria

²⁷Then the Lord sent this message to Hezekiah by Isaiah the prophet: “The God of Israel says, ‘I have heard your prayer concerning Sennacherib, king of Assyria. He will not enter Jerusalem nor shoot an arrow here. ²⁸I will defend this city and save it for my sake and for the sake of David my servant.’”

²⁹“Now this is the word the Lord has spoken against Sennacherib, ‘The virgin daughter of Jerusalem mocks you. She tosses her head as you flee. Who is it you have insulted and blasphemed? Against whom have you lifted your eyes in pride? Against the Holy One of Israel.’”

³⁰“By your messengers you have heaped insults on Jehovah. You have said, ‘With my many chariots have I ascended the mountain heights to cut down its tallest cedars.’”

³¹“Have you not heard? Long ago I planned all this. That you turn fortified cities into piles of stone, and I have brought it to pass. ³²Now because you rage against me, and your insolence has reached my ears, I will put my hook in your nose and make you return the way you came.”

185,000 Assyrian soldiers die during the night

³³That night the angel of the Lord went out and put to death 185,000 men in the Assyrian camp. When those who were left alive arose the next morning there were dead bodies everywhere.

Sennacherib king of Assyria returns home and is put to the sword by his sons

³⁴So Sennacherib, king of Assyria returned to Nineveh,^{F*} and while he was worshipping in the temple of his god Nisroch, two of his sons killed him with the sword.

Jerusalem’s current warfare completed

³⁵Then the Lord said to the prophet Isaiah, “Comfort my people. Speak tenderly to Jerusalem and proclaim that her warfare has been completed. Her sin has been atoned for.”

20

King Hezekiah’s steward cursed

¹The Lord said to Isaiah, “Go say to Shebna, the steward of Hezekiah the king who is in charge of the palace, ‘Who gave you permission to chisel out a fine tomb for yourself in the rock?’”

²“Jehovah is about to take hold of you and hurl you into a large foreign country. There you will die, and they shall possess your splendid chariots, you disgrace to your master’s house.”

³“I will depose you from office and clothe my servant Eliakim with your robe and hand your authority over to him. ⁴He shall be a father to those who live in Jerusalem, and I shall give him the key to the house of David, and will drive him like a peg into a firm place.”

⁵“But the day will come when the peg shall give way and fall. The Lord has spoken.”

Jerusalem soon to be a wasteland

⁶“Mourn for this city of revelry, for the palace will be abandoned and the populous city deserted. It shall become a wasteland, a pasture for flocks, until the Spirit is again poured upon you from on high.”

Judean exiles to eventually return from Babylon

⁷“Then you my people shall return^{F*} and live again in secure homes. You will be blessed, sowing your seed by every stream and letting your cattle and donkeys range free.”

King Hezekiah becomes ill and is told by Isaiah he is about to die

⁸Now Hezekiah became ill and was at the point of death. The prophet Isaiah went to him and said, “The Lord says, ‘Put your house in order for you are about to die.’”

*34 Nineveh was the royal city of Assyria, the same large city to which Jonah was sent. It no longer exists.

*7 Descendants of the exiles of Jerusalem returned home from Babylonian exile after about 70 years.

Hezekiah prays and weeps bitterly

⁹But Hezekiah prayed saying, “Remember O Lord how I have walked before you faithfully and have done what is good in your eyes.” And he wept bitterly.^{F*}

The Lord to heal Hezekiah and grant him 15 more years of life

¹⁰Before Isaiah had left the middle court, the word of the Lord came to him again saying, “**Return to Hezekiah and say to him, ‘The Lord says, “I have heard your prayer and have seen your tears, so I will heal you. ¹¹On the third day from now you shall go up to the Temple of the Lord, and I will add fifteen years to your life.’**”

The sun’s shadow goes back ten degrees as a sign

¹²Hezekiah asked Isaiah, “What shall be the sign that the Lord will heal me?”

¹³Isaiah answered, “***Shall the shadow of the sun go forward ten degrees, or back ten degrees?***”

¹⁴Hezekiah replied, “It is a simple matter for the shadow to go forward. Rather have it return ten degrees.”

¹⁵So Isaiah called upon Jehovah and the Lord made the shadow cast by the sun return ten degrees on the sundial of Ahaz.

A poultice of figs heals the king’s tumour

¹⁶Then Isaiah said, “***Prepare a poultice of figs.***” They did so and applied it to the tumour and the king recovered.

Hezekiah’s writes in gratitude for his healing

¹⁷A writing of Hezekiah king of Judah after his illness and recovery:

“I said, ‘Why in the prime of my life must I go through the gates of Sheol^{F*} and be robbed of the rest of my years? I shall not see the Lord in the land of the living and will no longer look upon those who now dwell in this world.’”

¹⁸“I wept and moaned like a dove and I prayed, ‘O Jehovah, come to my aid.’”

¹⁹“Then Lord, you restored me to health. What can I say? I will walk humbly all my remaining years because of this anguish of my soul. Surely it was for my good that I suffered such anguish.”

²⁰“For Sheol does not thank you Lord. Those who go down to the Pit^{F*} do not receive your fellowship. It is the living that praise you, as I am doing today.”

King Hezekiah grows proud because of his riches

²¹But afterward, the heart of Hezekiah the king grew proud, for he had great riches; silver, gold,^{F*} jewels, spices, shields, all kinds of

valuables and great numbers of flocks and herds, for God had blessed him.

Messengers from Babylon visit Hezekiah

²²Now the prince of the king of Babylon^{F*} sent Hezekiah messengers with a letter and a gift, for he had heard of Hezekiah’s illness and the miraculous sign that had occurred in the land.^{F*} ²³Hezekiah entertained the messengers and showed them his great wealth. There was nothing in his palace and kingdom that he hid from them.

²⁴Then Isaiah the prophet went to the king and said, “Where did those men come from?”

Hezekiah replied, “They came from Babylon,”

²⁵The prophet asked, “What did they see?”

Hezekiah said, “They saw all. There was nothing among my treasures that I did not show them.”

Isaiah prophesies exile of Judah to Babylon

²⁶Then Isaiah said, “Hear the word of Jehovah, ‘**The time will come when everything in your palace will be carried off to Babylon. Nothing will be left. ²⁷Some of your own children shall also be taken away and become eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon.**”

²⁸Hezekiah replied, “Whatever the Lord says is good. At least there will be peace in my lifetime.”

Hezekiah and Jerusalem repent of pride

²⁹So Hezekiah repented of his pride and the people of Jerusalem did also, and the Lord’s anger did not come upon them during the days of Hezekiah.

21

Jerusalem’s leaders to flee before the Babylonian capture and exile of Jerusalem

¹A prophecy of the Lord concerning Jerusalem: “**What troubles you, that you have all gone up on the roofs?**”

²“**O city full of shouting and commotion, your slain did not die in battle, for your leaders fled from the enemy but they were captured even though they fled far away.^{F*}**

³**Now you who remain alive will be captured and sent into exile.**”

⁴“**Turn away from me and let me weep bitterly over the distress of my people.**”

The fruit harvests of Jerusalem to fail

⁵“**You women of Jerusalem, who are so secure and complacent, hear my words. In little more than a year the grape harvest will fail and the fruit harvest will not come.**”

⁶“**Tremble you complacent women, strip off your clothes and wear sackcloth around your waists. Beat your breasts for the pleasant fields and fruitful vines, for this**

*9 Hezekiah was only about 38 years old and appears to have had no male heir.

*17 Sheol is the Hebrew name for the spirit world of the dead.

*20 The Pit is an alternative name for Sheol.

*21 Hezekiah may have recovered the huge silver and gold ransom he paid the Assyrians (Isaiah 18:9-10) when the 185,000 soldiers died (Isaiah 19:33).

*22 Babylon was on the rise to becoming a major world power and would soon conquer Assyria.

*23 The sun’s shadow returning ten degrees.

*24 For an account of this fleeing by the king and his guards during the siege of Jerusalem by the Babylonians, see Jeremiah 22:3.

ISAIAH 22

land of my people will become a land overgrown with thorns and briars."

Isaiah's vision of the Babylonian capture and exile of Jerusalem

⁷"The Lord Almighty has a day of trampling and terror for Jerusalem, a day of battering down walls and crying out."

⁸"Your valleys are full of chariots, horsemen gather at the city gates. The defences of Judah are stripped away. The City of David has breaches in its defences. You have torn down houses to strengthen the wall."

⁹"You built a reservoir between the walls for the water of the Old Pool, but you looked not to the one who made it long ago."



Globe thistle, typical of the 'thorns and briars' that Isaiah prophesied would overgrow the cultivated land in Israel (Isaiah 21:6).

The people ignored the Lord's warning to repent

¹⁰"The Lord called you before that day, to weep and put on sackcloth, but rather there was joy and revelry, eating of meat and drinking of wine. You said, 'Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die.'"

¹¹"But the Lord Almighty says, 'Until your dying day this sin will not be atoned for.'"

Those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle

¹²"Why do you complain O Israel and say, 'My prayers are disregarded by my God'?"

¹³"Do you not know that Jehovah is the creator of the whole earth? He does not grow tired and his intelligence is beyond understanding."

¹⁴"He gives strength to the weary and empowers the weak. Even young men grow weary, but those who hope in the Lord will renew their strength. ¹⁵They shall soar on wings like eagles. They will run and not be weary, walk and not faint."

The glory of man withers like grass

¹⁶"A voice said to me, 'Cry out!'"

"I asked, 'What shall I cry?'"

¹⁷"All men are but grass, their glory withers and dies, but the word of God stands forever."

Fear not mortal men who are but grass

¹⁸"Hear me, you who know what is right. Fear not men nor their insults, for the worms will soon devour them, but my goodness shall last forever. I am he who comforts you."

¹⁹"Why should you fear mortal men who are but grass, and forget your maker who stretched out the heavens and laid the foundations of the earth."

Who is the equal of the Lord?

²⁰"Who is my equal? Lift up your eyes to the starry heavens. Who created all these, and calls each by name? Because of my great power not one of them is missing."

22

The lost ones of Israel to eventually return

¹The word of the Lord received through the prophet Isaiah: "Fear not O Israel, for I have redeemed you. You are mine. I am Jehovah your God, the Holy One of Israel your Saviour, and because I love you I will give other nations in exchange for you; Egypt, Ethiopia, and Sheba."

²"Be not afraid, I will return your children from the east, and gather you from the west. I will say to the north, 'Give them up' and to the south, 'Do not hold them back.' I shall bring my sons and daughters from the ends of the earth."

³"Who has foretold this, or former things? Let them bring their witnesses to prove they were right."

Jehovah is Israel's only Saviour

⁴"You are my witnesses that I am God. There was no foreign god before me, nor will there be in times to come. For I am Jehovah and apart from me you have no Saviour. ⁵It is I that have revealed and saved and not some foreign god among you. You are my witnesses that I am God."

Jehovah the Rock of Israel

⁶"Thus says Jehovah, the King of Israel and her redeemer, the Lord of Hosts. I am the first and the last, you have no God apart from me."

⁷"For who is like me? Let him proclaim it. Let him foretell what is to come. You are my witnesses. Do you have any God besides me? No, there is no other Rock."

The Lord's challenge to worthless idols

⁸"Present your case. Have your idols declare things to come. Have them predict what the future holds so we may know they are gods, or have them do something terrible, to fill us with fear."

**He who chooses idols is
an abomination to Lord**

⁹“But your idols are less than nothing. Their works are worthless. He who chooses them is an abomination to me.”

Those who make idols are blind and ignorant

¹⁰“Those who make idols are nothing, and the idols they make are worthless. Those who say otherwise are blind and ignorant, to their own shame.”

**The foolishness of making
and worshipping idols**

¹¹“The carpenter cuts down a tree. Half of the wood he burns to warm himself and prepare his meal. From the rest he makes a god, his idol. ¹²He measures and marks an outline. He roughs it out with a chisel and then carves it in the form of a man. Then he bows down and worships it. He prays to it and says, ‘Save me, you are my god.’”

¹³“My people know nothing. They lack understanding. Their eyes are plastered over so they cannot see. Their minds are closed so they cannot understand.”

**All Israel to be consigned to scorn
because of sin**

¹⁴“You have not called upon me O Israel. You have not honoured me with your sacrifices. But you have burdened me with your sins. ¹⁵I am ever blotting out Israel’s sins for my name’s sake. So now I will consign you to scorn.”

Israel to be healed in latter days

¹⁶“But hear O Israel whom I have chosen, hear the Lord who formed you in the womb.”

¹⁷“Fear not, for the day will come when I shall pour water on your thirsty land, and pour out my Spirit upon your descendants. Then will they spring up like grass in a meadow, like poplar trees by a flowing stream.”

Jehovah will redeem Israel

¹⁸“*Sing for joy O heavens! Shout aloud O earth! Burst into song you mountains and forests! For Jehovah has redeemed Israel.*”

**The Lord to stir up a servant
from the north-east**

¹⁹“I will stir up one from the north, a servant from the direction of the rising sun whom I shall summon by name. He shall tread on rulers, victory will meet his every step.” ^{F*}

²⁰“Who has told you of this before so you can say in that day, ‘He was right?’ No one has. I am the first to tell Jerusalem the good tidings.”

²¹“See, your idols are all false. Their deeds amount to nothing.”

*19 Cyrus the Great (see Isaiah 23:1-7), a righteous king who in about 150 years time would overthrow Babylon, create the Persian Empire and allow the exiled Jews to return to Jerusalem (Haggai 1:1-3). He was from the east (the rising sun) but because of the topography of the land, all invasions from that quarter approached Israel from the north.

This servant will restore justice to the nations

²²“I will put my Spirit on this servant in whom I am well pleased, and he shall restore justice to the nations. He shall not shout or cry out, but in quiet faithfulness will go forth and not be discouraged until he establishes justice on earth.”

Jehovah’s former prophecies have come to pass

²³“I am Jehovah. That is my name. I will not give my glory or praise to idols. My former prophecies have come to pass, and I shall declare new things before they spring into being.”

23

**The Lord to accomplish all he pleases
through his servant Cyrus**

¹“I am the Lord who made all things, who stretched out the heavens and spread out the earth. I foil the signs of false prophets and make fools of diviners. ²I overthrow the learning of the wise and turn it into nonsense. I fulfil the predictions of my prophets, and say to the waters, ‘Be dry’ and they dry up. ³I say of Cyrus, ^{F*} ‘He is my servant. He will accomplish all that I please.”

**The Lord will honour Cyrus for Israel’s sake yet
Cyrus will not acknowledge the Lord**

⁴“I the Lord say to my anointed servant Cyrus who shall subdue nations, ‘I will go before you and bring low the pride of the great. I will break down gates of bronze and cut through bars of iron.”

⁵“I shall give you treasures stored in secret places so that you will know it is I, Jehovah the God of Israel who calls you by name, and strengthens you and bestows honour upon you for the sake of Israel, though you acknowledge me not.”

⁶“I Jehovah bring prosperity, and I create disaster.”

**Cyrus to free Judean exiles
to rebuild Jerusalem**

⁷“I will raise up Cyrus in righteousness and will make his ways straight. He shall rebuild my city and set my exiles free.”

A prophecy against Babylon

⁸“Sit in the dust O city of Babylon. No more will you be called tender or delicate. Take millstones and grind flour. Remove your veil. ⁹Lift up your skirts and wade through streams so that your nakedness is exposed, for I shall take vengeance on you and will spare no one. ¹⁰No more will you be called Queen of the Kingdoms.”

**Babylon to show no mercy
toward Judean exiles**

¹¹“I was angry with my people and exiled

*3 Cyrus the Great was born over 100 years after this prophecy.

ISAIAH 24

them into your hands,^{F*} and you showed them no mercy. Even on the aged you laid a heavy yoke.”

Babylon's sorcerers and astrologers will not save her from widowhood

¹²You said, 'I will continue forever as the eternal queen. I will never be a widow, nor shall I suffer the loss of my children.'

¹³'Hear this you lover of pleasure, lounging in your security, both those tragedies shall overtake you in a single day.'

¹⁴'They shall come upon you in full measure, despite your many sorceries and spells. You trust in your wickedness. Your wisdom and knowledge mislead you.'

¹⁵'Carry on then with your magic spells and many sorceries. Perhaps you will succeed.'

¹⁶'Let your astrologers who divide the heavens and make predictions month by month, save you from what is coming. ¹⁷But then, they cannot even save themselves. Each one of them goes on in his error. Not one of them can save you.'

The Lord's past prophecies have come to pass

¹⁸'Hear this O house of Israel, who come from the line of Judah, who invoke the God of Israel but not in truth or righteousness, who call yourselves citizens of the Holy City. ¹⁹I foretold things long ago and they came to pass. Before they happened I announced them to you, so you could not say, 'My idols did them.' Is this not true?'

A new prophecy from the Lord

²⁰'Now I will tell you of a new thing to come. You have not heard it before, so you cannot say, 'I knew of it.'

²¹'But from old your ear has not been open. Well do I know your treachery for you were a rebel from birth. ²²But for my name's sake I have delayed my wrath and have refined you with affliction, for how can I let my name be defamed?'

Cyrus will overthrow Babylon

²³'Now hear this all of you, which of the idols has foretold this? Jehovah's chosen servant will capture Babylon.^{F*} I have called him and he shall succeed in his mission.'

Peace and plenty if only Judah had kept Lord's commandments

²⁴'I am Jehovah your God who teaches you what is best for you.'

²⁵'If only you had kept my commandments your peace would have been like a river. Your descendants would have been like the countless grains of sand and never would be cut off from before me.'

*11 The Lord is speaking prophetically. The exile of Judah to Babylon was still about 100 years away.

*23 Cyrus the Great. The defenders of Babylon were so displeased with their corrupt king Belshazzar (see Daniel chapter 7) that they opened the gates for Cyrus and his armies. The great city gradually dwindled and died about 200 years later, after the reign of Alexander the Great.

No peace for the wicked

²⁶'But there is no peace for the wicked, says the Lord.'

Isaiah's prophecy regarding Babylon

²⁷A vision that Isaiah saw concerning Babylon: "*Babylon, the jewel of kingdoms shall be overthrown by God, like Sodom and Gomorrah.*"

²⁸"*She will never be inhabited again. Jackals will roam her deserted houses and luxurious palaces. In them owls shall dwell and wild goats leap about.*"

²⁹"*Her time is near at hand. Her days will not be prolonged.*"



The ruins of ancient Babylon, destroyed as prophesied by the Lord through Isaiah.

Great brutality of the Medes toward Babylon

³⁰"*So announce this to the ends of the earth, 'Flee from Babylon!'*"

³¹"*Like sheep without a shepherd the foreign workers shall flee with their families, back to their native lands. Whoever is found shall be thrust through by the sword.*"

³²"*Their infants shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes, their wives will be raped and their possessions taken from them.*"

³³"*For the Lord says, 'I will stir up the Medes^{F*} who care not for silver and have no delight in gold. Their weapons will strike down the young men. They will have no mercy on infants or children.'*"

24

A taunt against the king of Babylon

¹"*On the day the Lord gives Judah relief from suffering and hard labour in serving the Babylonians, you will take up this taunt against the king of Babylon:*"

²"*How the oppressor has come to an end. How his fury has ended. Jehovah has broken the sceptre of the king who conquered nations with relentless aggression. ³Now all the earth is peacefully resting and is breaking into song.*"

*33 The Medes (of Media, formerly part of modern Iran) were a warlike people who lived north-east of Babylon. They afflicted the Babylonians for nearly half a century until they themselves were defeated by Cyrus, the king of Persia (modern Iran) who made them part of his Persian empire.

4“*Sheol*^{F*} below is all astir to meet you. At your coming the spirits of the dead rise to greet you. They who were also kings on the earth will arise from their thrones and say to you, ‘You too have lost your power as have we. ⁵All your pomp has been brought down to Sheol along with the music of your harps. Maggots are now the covering of your body.’”

6“*How you have fallen from heaven O morning star! You who once laid low the nations! Who said in your heart, ‘I will raise my throne above the tops of the clouds. I will make myself like the Most High God.’* ⁷*But you are brought down to Sheol, to the depths of the Pit.*”

8“*Those who see you, stare and say, ‘Is this the man who made kingdoms tremble and made the world like a desert, who overthrew cities and would not let his captives return home?’*”

Tyre soon to be a harbour no more

⁹A prophecy of Isaiah concerning the city of Tyre: “*Wail O ships of Tarshish, for Tyre will be left without house or harbour. Mourn you men of Cyprus who sail the seas, and you merchants of Sidon whom the sea has enriched.*”

Tyre will no longer be the food market of the nations

10“*From over the sea flows the grain harvest of the Nile. Tyre has become the food market of the nations, therefore Egypt will be in anguish at the report from Tyre.*”

11“*Wail and return home you men of Tarshish. Till your own soil, as does Egypt for you no longer have your harbour.*”

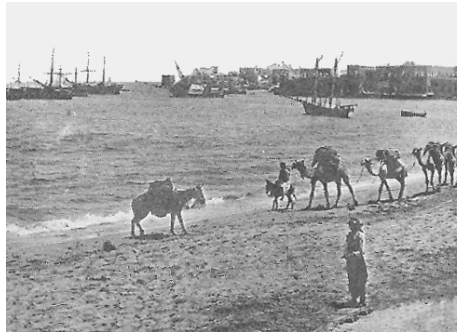
Jehovah to humble the pride of Tyre and Sidon by Babylon

12“*Who planned this against Tyre, the ancient city of revelry, whose traders are renowned in the world? Jehovah Almighty planned it, to humble those who are great upon the earth.* ¹³*The Lord has given an order concerning the whole land of the Phoenicians; her fortresses are to be destroyed.*”

14“*No more of your revelling O Sidon. Look not to the Assyrians for you are to be crushed by Babylon, and they shall turn Tyre into a ruin.*”

Tyre to revive after seventy years

15“*Tyre shall be forgotten for seventy years, the span of a king’s life. But at the end of seventy years she will return to play the harlot once more, and ply her trade with the kingdoms of the earth.*”



The seaport of Tyre, once afflicted by the Babylonians for 70 years (Isaiah 24:9-15).

Tyre’s riches will go to Jerusalem during the millennium

16“*Yet the day will come when Tyre’s riches shall be for the Lord. They shall not be stored up or hoarded. They will pay for abundant food and fine clothes for the people of Zion^{F*} who live faithful to the Lord.*”

25

Isaiah called to be the Lord’s servant before he was born

1“Hear this you distant nations, before I was born the Lord called me to be his servant,^{F*} to gather Israel back to him. He made my mouth like a sharpened sword.”

Isaiah despised by his people

2“He said to me, ‘You are my servant to Israel, in whom I will be glorified.’”

3“³But I said, ‘I have laboured in vain. I have spent my strength for nothing. I am despised by the nation. Yet my reward is with my God for I am honoured in your eyes.’”

Isaiah given an eloquent tongue with which to teach

4“⁴The Lord God has given me an eloquent tongue. He awakens me each morning to teach the words that sustain the weary, and I have not been rebellious, I have not withheld.”

Isaiah mocked by his people

5“⁵I give my back to those who beat me, my cheeks to those who pull out my beard. I hide not my face from the mocking and spitting.”

6“⁶Because the Lord God helps me, I have not been disgraced. I set my face like flint and know that I will not be put to shame.”

Who but God can declare Isaiah a wrongdoer

7“⁷Who will bring charges against me? Who are my accusers? Let them confront me. It is only the Lord God who can declare me guilty. All others will wear out like a garment.”

*16 Zion is sometimes used as an alternative name for Jerusalem.

*1 Traditional Jewish belief is that the spirits of all mankind existed before the creation of the earth (see Ecclesiastes 5:31, John 9:1, Job 1:5 and note, Job 7:4 and Jeremiah 1:3).

*4 The spirit world of the dead.

ISAIAH 25

None obey Isaiah's word but all walk in the light of their own lamps

⁸“Who among you reveres the Lord and obeys the word of his servant? Who relies on his God for light? None, for you all light your own lamps.”

⁹“Very well then, walk in the light of your own lamps, but this prophecy you shall have from me: *‘You will lie down in torment.’*”

Isaiah a light for the Gentiles also

¹⁰“Then the Lord said to me, ‘It is too light a thing that you be my servant to restore the survivors of Israel, I will also give you as a light to the Gentiles,^{F*} to bring my salvation to the ends of the earth.’”

Isaiah to be an apportioner of inheritances to gathered Israel when the Lord returns

¹¹“For thus says Jehovah, to he who is despised by his people, kings shall bow down to you because of the Holy One of Israel who has chosen you.”

¹²“In the great day of my salvation you will be a director for the people, to apportion the empty inheritances of Israel. You will say to the returning captives, ‘Be free!’ And they shall find pasture where there once was a barren hill.”

The Lord to comfort and shepherd his returning people

¹³“They shall neither hunger nor thirst, nor will scorching wind or sun afflict them. For I their shepherd will guide them and lead them beside springs of water, and I will level my mountains into pathways.”

Isaiah to act wisely and be exalted

¹⁴“Behold, in that day my servant will act wisely. He will be raised up and highly exalted.”

¹⁵“Just as many were once appalled at him, his appearance was so disfigured,^{F*} so he will startle many nations. Kings shall stand speechless because of him, for that which they had not heard they will see.”

Israel to gather from the north, west and south

¹⁶“*See, they come from afar, from the north, from the west, some from the south. Shout for joy, rejoice O heavens! Burst into song O earth, for the Lord will comfort his people!*”

The Lord's love for Israel like a mother's love

¹⁷“But Zion has said, ‘Jehovah has forsaken me. My Lord has forgotten me.’”

¹⁸“Can a mother forget the baby at her breast, the child of her womb? Though she may forget, I shall not forget you.”

Israel will be too small for her lost children during the millennium

¹⁹“Your sons shall return, and those who

laid you waste shall depart. You will lift up your eyes O Zion and rejoice as all your sons return to you.²⁰Though your land was devastated, now it will be too small for all your people. The children you had lost will say to you, ‘This place is too small for us. Give us more room to live in.’”

²¹“Then you will say in your heart, ‘I was exiled and rejected. I was left all alone. Where have all these people come from?’”

The Gentiles to assist with the gathering in the latter days

²²“See, I will beckon to the Gentiles, and they will bring your lost sons and daughters to you. Kings will be your foster fathers and queens your nursing mothers.²³They shall bow down before you with their faces to the ground. Then you will know that I am Jehovah. Those who trust in me will not be disappointed.”

²⁴“I shall make your oppressors eat their own flesh and be drunk with their own blood. Then all mankind will know that I am your Saviour and your Redeemer.”

The Lord to come as the Messiah to preach good news on earth

²⁵“The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me, for he has anointed me to preach good news to the poor, to heal the broken hearted, to proclaim release for the prisoners and to declare the year of Jehovah's^{F*} favour and the day of vengeance of our God.”

²⁶“To comfort all who mourn and bestow on Zion a crown of beauty instead of ashes, a garment of praise instead of a spirit of despair.”

Foreigners to rebuild Israel and work the fields and vineyards during the millennium

²⁷“In that day you shall rebuild the ancient ruins.”

²⁸“Foreigners will shepherd your flocks and work your fields and vineyards.”

²⁹“You shall be called priests of the Lord, and all who see you will acknowledge that you are a people the Lord has blessed. You will feed on the wealth of the nations.³⁰For I the Lord love justice and will faithfully recompense you.”

Isaiah greatly rejoices in the Lord

³¹“*I will greatly rejoice in Jehovah. I shall exult in my God, for he has clothed me in the garments of salvation.*³²*For Jerusalem's*

*25 This verse was quoted by Jesus and applied to himself (Matt-Mark-Luke 5:8). The name-title Jehovah (which means 'Eternal') applies to both the Father and the Son, (the Son also being known as the Messiah or Christ). Paul reveals that the God of the Old Testament who appeared face to face with Moses and others by the name of Jehovah, was the pre-mortal Christ, not God the Father (1 Corinthians 4:13). The pre-mortal Christ appeared and spoke as Jehovah because the Father had given him his name (John 5:29, 12:12, 15:22). Prophets such as Isaiah and Jeremiah who prophesied extensively, speaking in the first person of Jehovah, did so by direct revelation, ie they were told what to say by the Holy Spirit, who can speak on behalf of both God the Father and the Son (John 14:32, 41-42, 1 Corinthians 1:25-26).

*10 The term Gentiles normally refers to all non-Israelite peoples.

*15 Jewish tradition says that Isaiah was eventually sawn in two, down the middle, during the evil reign of the young King Manasseh.

sake I will not remain silent until her righteousness shines like the dawn.³³ Then all nations shall see her glory and she will be called by a new name, bestowed by the mouth of the Lord.”

Jerusalem to become a crown of splendour
³⁴“Jerusalem will be a crown of splendour in the Lord’s hand, a royal diadem.”

26

The Messiah^F* (Christ) to come from Galilee

¹“In times past the Lord has brought Galilee into contempt, but in a day to come he will honour the region of the lake.”

²“For a child shall be born and the power to rule shall rest upon his shoulders.”

³“He will be called Wonderful Counsellor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace.”

⁴“Of his increase in power and peace there shall be no end, and he will establish David’s throne in righteousness forever.”

The Messiah to be descended of David

⁵“For a shoot will spring up from the stump of Jesse.^{F*} A branch will blossom and one shall be born in whom is the Spirit of Jehovah, the Spirit of wisdom, knowledge, and power.”

⁶“With justice he will stand for the meek of the earth.”

The Messiah to be a man of sorrows

⁷“He shall grow like a tender shoot out of dry ground. He will have no beauty that we should desire him.⁸ He will be despised and rejected by men, a man of sorrows, familiar with suffering.”

⁹“He will heal our sicknesses and remove our pains, yet he will be considered as one stricken by God and afflicted.”

The Messiah to be pierced

¹⁰“He will be pierced for our sins, the punishment that brings peace will be borne by him.¹¹ By his wounds we shall be healed.”

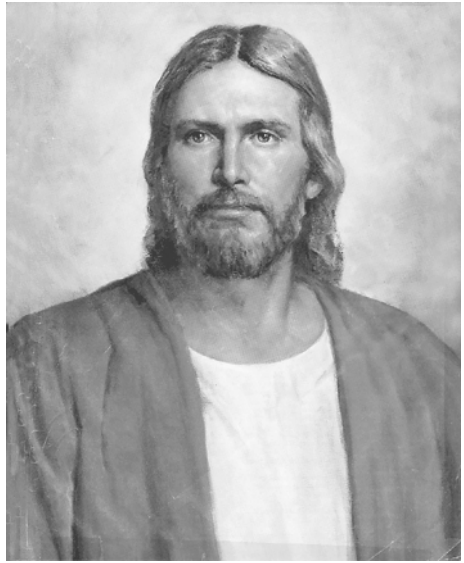
¹²“God will lay on him the guilt of us all.”

The Messiah to be arrested, judged and go like a lamb to the slaughter

¹³“He shall be oppressed and afflicted yet not open his mouth. He will go like a lamb to the slaughter.¹⁴ After arrest and judgement he shall be led away and no one will speak of his descendants, for he shall be cut off from the land of the living.¹⁵ He will pour out his life unto death, and be numbered among the transgressors.”

* HEADER CHAPTER 26. This future ruler is known as ‘the Messiah’ (‘anointed of Jehovah’) by the Jews, or ‘the Christ’ which is the New Testament Greek equivalent of the Hebrew word Messiah. Christians believe him to be Jesus. Traditional Jews reject this belief and still await the birth of Messiah.

⁵ The ‘stump of Jesse’ is the fallen, royal David-Judean line of which Zedekiah was the last king. Mary the mother of Jesus was descended of this line. Jesse was the father of David.



Isaiah prophesied of the coming of the Messiah, known as the Christ in the New Testament (Isaiah chapter 6). (Painting by Del Parson.)

The Messiah’s tomb to be with the rich

¹⁶“He will die in the midst of the wicked and his tomb will be with the rich, yet he shall have done no wrong nor spoken any falsehood.”

¹⁷“But it is God’s will that he suffer and offer his life as a guilt offering.”

The Messiah to be resurrected and see the fruit of his suffering

¹⁸“Yet shall he continue his days, and after the anguish of his soul he will see the fruit of the seed of his suffering and receive his reward.”

The Messiah to eventually slay the wicked on earth

¹⁹“He will strike the earth with the rod of his mouth. With the breath of his lips he shall slay the wicked.²⁰ Righteousness and faithfulness shall be his girdle.”

The Messiah to pardon many and bear their sins and be given a place among the great

²¹“For the Lord God says, ‘By his suffering, my Righteous One shall pardon many and bear their sins. Therefore I will give him a place among the great.’”

27

King Hezekiah dies and his twelve year old son Manasseh becomes king

¹King Hezekiah rested with his fathers and was buried on the hill among the tombs of David’s descendants, and Manasseh his son became king.

²Hezekiah had reigned twenty-nine years and all Judah honoured him when he died.

ISAIAH 27

³The other events of Hezekiah's reign, how he made the pool in Jerusalem and the tunnel by which water was brought to the pool, and how 500 men of Simeon wiped out the remaining Amalekites in the hill country of Seir and settled there, are written in the Annals of the Kings of Judah.

Manasseh does much evil

⁴Manasseh was twelve years old when he became king. He did much evil in the eyes of the Lord and provoked him to anger.

⁵He rebuilt the high places his father Hezekiah had destroyed and erected altars to Baal, and set up Asherah poles and idols.

⁶In both courts of the Temple he built altars to the sun and moon, and he erected a carved Asherah pole inside the Temple of the Lord. ⁷He even sacrificed his own sons by fire and practiced sorcery and consulted mediums.

⁸Manasseh also shed so much innocent blood that he filled Jerusalem from end to end.^{F*}

The Lord rebukes Manasseh and the officials of the people through the prophet Isaiah

⁹Through the prophet Isaiah the Lord spoke these words to Manasseh and the people, but they paid no attention: ¹⁰**“Israel’s watchmen are blind and lack knowledge. They are like dogs who cannot bark, who lie around and dream and love to sleep.”**

¹¹**“They are shepherds who lack understanding. Each one seeks his own gain. They cry, ‘Come, let us drink wine, for tomorrow will be like today or better.’”**

The righteous die to be spared from evil

¹²**“The righteous die and no one understands that they are taken away to be spared from evil. ¹³For those who walk uprightly enter into peace when they die.”**

A brood of rebels

¹⁴**“But as for you, you sons of a sorceress, you offspring of adulterers and harlots. Whom are you mocking? At whom do you sneer and stick out your tongue?”**

¹⁵**“Are you not a brood of rebels, the offspring of liars? You burn with lust among the oaks.^{F*} You sacrifice your children in the valleys.”**

¹⁶**“The idols in the valleys are your lot. To them you have made offerings. Why should I spare you?”**

Judah’s idolatry likened to adultery

¹⁷**“In your homes you place your evil symbols. Forsaking me you share your bed with the gods you love, and look upon their nakedness.”**

¹⁸**“Whom have you feared, that you have been false to me? Is it because I have been long silent that you do not revere me?”**

*8 Manasseh is also reputed to have eventually martyred the prophet Isaiah.

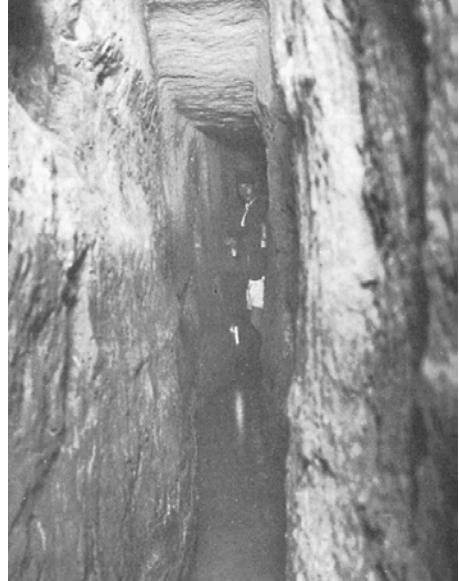
*15 Oak trees or ‘groves’ were often places of idolatrous worship involving prostitution.

¹⁹**When you cry out for help, let your idols save you. But a mere breath of wind will blow them away.”**

The Lord is with those who are contrite and humble in spirit

²⁰**“Yet, the man who makes me his refuge will inherit the land and possess my Holy City.”**

²¹**“I live in a high and holy place, but I am with him who is contrite and humble in spirit.”**



The half km long, water tunnel built by King Hezekiah to bring water to the Pool of Siloam in Jerusalem.

No rest for the wicked

²²**“But the wicked are like the tossing sea which cannot rest, whose waves cast up mire and mud. There is no rest for the wicked.”**

Despite their sins the people seem eager to know the Lord’s ways

²³The Lord said to the prophet Isaiah, **“Raise your voice like a trumpet and declare to my people their sins. ²⁴For day after day they seek me out. They seem eager to know my ways, as if they were a righteous nation that had not forsaken their God.”**

²⁵**“They say, ‘We humbled ourselves and fasted and the Lord did not notice.’”**

Unrighteous fasting not acceptable to the Lord

²⁶**“Yet on the day of your fasting you pursued your own business and exploited your workers. Your fasting ended in quarrelling and strife and in striking each other with fists. ²⁷Can you fast this way and expect your voice to be heard on high?”**

²⁸**“Or is the fasting that pleases me only a**

day when a man bows his head like a reed and lies on sackcloth and ashes? Is that what you call an acceptable fast to the Lord?"

Fasting that pleases the Lord

²⁹"This is the fasting I choose: To put right injustice, to free the oppressed, to do away with the pointed finger and malicious talk."

³⁰"To share your food with the hungry, to shelter the homeless, to clothe the naked, to turn not your back on your own kin."

³¹"To call the Sabbath a delight, a holy day of the Lord and to honour it, and not use it for your own pleasure, or for idle talk."

The blessings of righteous living

³²"Then will your light break forth like the dawn and your healing shall quickly appear."

³³"Then when you call, the Lord shall answer you. When you cry for help he will say, 'Here I am!'"

³⁴"You shall be like a well-watered garden, like a spring whose waters never fail."

³⁵"Then you shall find joy in Jehovah and shall ride on the heights of the land and feast on the inheritance of your fathers."

³⁶"The mouth of the Lord has spoken."

28

Disaster to come upon Manasseh and Judah

¹The Lord said through his prophet Isaiah, "Manasseh, king of Judah has done more evil in the land than the Canaanites who preceded him, and has led Judah into sin with his idols. ²Therefore I am going to bring such a disaster on Judah that the ears of all who hear will tingle."

³"I shall wipe out Jerusalem as one wipes a dish and turns it upside down. I will forsake my inheritance and they shall be plundered by their enemies. ⁴For they have done evil and provoked me to anger from the day their forefathers came out of Egypt, until this day."

Jerusalem attacked by Assyria and Manasseh taken prisoner to Babylon

⁵Then the Lord brought the army of Assyria against Jerusalem. They took Manasseh the king prisoner, put a hook in his nose, bound him with bronze shackles and took him to Babylon.^{F*}

King Manasseh repents and is restored to his throne in Jerusalem

⁶In his distress in captivity, Manasseh prayed to Jehovah his God and humbled himself greatly. ⁷The Lord was moved by his plea and brought him back to Jerusalem, and to his kingdom.

Manasseh abandons idolatry and worships the Lord

⁸Manasseh then got rid of the foreign gods and all the altars he had built in Jerusalem and removed the Asherah pole from the Temple.

⁹He restored the altar of the Lord and sacrificed peace offerings, and commanded all Judah to serve the God of Israel. Nevertheless the people still sacrificed at the high places but only to Jehovah their God.

¹⁰He also rebuilt and heightened the walls of the City of David in Jerusalem.

Manasseh dies and his son Amon becomes king

¹¹Manasseh reigned for fifty-five years in Jerusalem. Then he rested with his fathers and was buried in his palace and his son Amon became king.

Amon does evil and is assassinated

¹²Amon was twenty-two years old when he became king. He did evil in the eyes of the Lord as his father Manasseh had done. ¹³But unlike his father, he did not repent and humble himself before the Lord. Rather Amon increased his guilt.

¹⁴When he had reigned for two years, his officials conspired against him and killed him in his palace.

Josiah the son of Amon made king

¹⁵Then the people of Judah put to death all who had plotted against Amon and made his son Josiah king in his place.



A complete scroll of the book of Isaiah, seven metres long, found among the Dead Sea Scrolls.

*⁵ Babylon was still a vassal of Assyria at this stage, however Babylon's influence increased and about 50 years later they rebelled against Assyria and eventually burned Nineveh the Assyrian's royal city. Babylon then became the dominant power in the region with Nebuchadnezzar as king.

NAHUM

In this short but interesting book, the prophet Nahum prophesies the imminent destruction of the ancient city of Nineveh by the Medes and Babylonians. This vast city of Nineveh was the seat of the Assyrian empire and the same city that Jonah had called to repentance some 200 years before.

There was little love lost on the Assyrians by those who had suffered from their brutality, and there is therefore a degree of rejoicing by Nahum at his vision of their destruction.

Nothing is known of the prophet Nahum's background however his brief but inspired writing equals that of Isaiah. In fact the vividness and rush of his language is unsurpassed in the Bible as he describes his prophetic vision of the destruction of Nineveh – *“The crack of whips! The clatter of wheels! Galloping horses! Jolting chariots! Charging horsemen! Flashing swords and glittering spears! Dead bodies heaped up without number. Those who flee stumble over corpses”* (Nahum 2:14-15).

Nahum prophesied during the reign of the righteous young King Josiah. The reforms of Josiah were sweeping, especially after the Book of the Law was found in the Temple. Nevertheless the later writings of the prophet Jeremiah reveal that the king's righteousness and genuine zeal were not matched in sincerity by his people.

It would take seventy years of Babylonian exile to permanently purge the eagerness for idolatrous practices from the hearts of the people of Judah.

AUTHOR

Chapter one, which provides the political background has been relocated from the books of 2 Kings and 2 Chronicles. Chapter two is by the prophet Nahum.

“I Jehovah have decreed concerning you Nineveh, you will have no descendants to bear your name, and I will destroy your carved images and cast idols that are in the temples of your gods.” Nahum 2:8.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Josiah only eight years old when made king	1	Josiah reads Book of the Law to the people	1
Josiah at 20 begins to purge Judah of idolatry	1	Josiah and the people covenant to obey the Lord	1
Idolatrous articles removed from the Temple	1	Passover once again celebrated	1
Male prostitute quarters torn down	1	Josiah and his officials provide the people animals ..	1
King Manasseh's altars demolished	1	41,400 animals provided for sacrifice	1
The Valley of Hinnom defiled	1	Priests, Levites and musicians perform their roles	1
The land rid of mediums, sorcerers	1	No Passover like this since Samuel's day	1
The land rid of household gods and hilltop shrines ...	1	Word of the Lord comes to prophet Nahum	2
Calf altar at Bethel in Israel demolished	1	Lord punishes the guilty	2
Tombs of the prophets left undisturbed	1	Lord cares for those who trust in him	2
Towns of northern Israel also purged	1	The Assyrians will no longer afflict Judah	2
Book of the Law found in Temple	1	Assyrian capital Nineveh to be destroyed	2
The Law read to Josiah the king.....	1	Nahum's vision of invasion of Nineveh	2
Josiah tears his robes and weeps	1	Nineveh to be plundered and survivors exiled	2
Josiah asks high priest to enquire of the Lord	1	Dead bodies heaped up without number	2
High priest goes to the prophetess Huldah	1	Jehovah to shame Nineveh	2
Lord affirms the disaster coming upon Judah	1	Nineveh's wound fatal	2
Faithful Josiah to be spared the disaster	1	All nations to rejoice at Nineveh's fall	2

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Josiah only eight years old when made king

¹Josiah was eight years old when he became king. He did what was right in the eyes of the

Lord, walking in the ways of his forefather David.

When 20 years old Josiah begins to purge Judah of idolatry

²In the eighth year of his reign he began to seek God, and in the twelfth year he began to purge Judah of idolatry.

Idolatrous articles removed from the Temple

³He ordered Hilkiah the high priest to remove from the Temple all articles used to worship the gods Baal, Asherah, and the sun, moon and stars.

⁴Hilkiah and the other priests did so and burned them in the Kidron Valley. But the Asherah pole they ground to dust and scattered it over the graves of the common people.

Male prostitute quarters torn down

⁵The king also ordered the rooms of the male prostitutes that were in the Temple of the Lord to be torn down.

King Manasse's altars demolished

⁶Josiah demolished the altars that Manasse had built in the courtyards of the Temple and threw the rubble into the Kidron Valley.

⁷Then he removed from the entrance to the Temple the horse images that had been dedicated to the sun.

The Valley of Hinnom defiled

⁸He also defiled the Valley of Hinnom so that no man could use it to sacrifice his children by fire to the god Molech.

The land rid of mediums, sorcerers, household gods and hilltop shrines

⁹Josiah rid the land of mediums, sorcerers, household gods, and all other detestable things.

¹⁰He defiled the hilltop shrines that Solomon had built for his wives to worship their gods; Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians, Chemosh the god of Moab and Molech the god of Ammon. He covered the sites with human bones.

The calf altar at Bethel in Israel defiled then demolished

¹¹Josiah then went to Bethel to demolish the calf altar made by Jeroboam, who first caused Israel to sin.

¹²When he arrived he saw tombs on the hillside nearby, so he had the bones removed from them and burned on the altar to defile it, fulfilling the words of the prophet of God who had foretold these things.^{F*}

The tombs of the prophets left undisturbed

¹³Afterward the king asked, "Whose tomb is this I see?"

¹⁴The men of Bethel replied, "It is the tomb of the prophet of God who came from Judah and prophesied against the altar of Bethel the very things you have done to it."

¹⁵Josiah said, "Let no one disturb his bones." So they spared his bones and those of the prophet from Samaria.

Towns of northern Israel also purged

¹⁶Josiah also purged towns in Israel belonging to Manasseh, Ephraim and Simeon, as far north as Naphtali.^{F*}

The Book of the Law found by the high priest in the Temple

¹⁷In the eighteenth year of his reign Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to organise workmen to restore the Temple of the Lord, using money that had been collected by the Levites.

¹⁸While Hilkiah was doing this, he found a copy of the Book of the Law in the Temple and gave it to the Secretary to read.

The Law read to Josiah the king

¹⁹The Secretary read the book and then took it to the king and read from it in his presence.

King Josiah tears his robes and weeps

²⁰When Josiah the king heard the words of the Book of the Law he tore his robes and wept.

Josiah asks Hilkiah the high priest to enquire of the Lord

²¹Then he summoned Hilkiah the high priest and said to him, "Inquire of the Lord about what is written in this book. Great must be Jehovah's anger for our fathers have not obeyed all that is written here."

Hilkiah goes to the prophetess Huldah

²²So Hilkiah went to the prophetess Huldah, the wife of Shallum and she enquired of the Lord.^{F*}

The Lord affirms through Huldah the disaster coming upon Judah

²³Huldah declared, "Jehovah the God of Israel says, 'I am going to bring disaster on Judah and its people, according to all that is written in the book the king of Judah has read. ²⁴They have forsaken me and burned incense to other gods and provoked me to anger with idols. Therefore my anger will burn against this land.'

The faithful Josiah to be spared witnessing the disaster

²⁵"But say to the king of Judah, 'Because your heart was responsive and you tore your robes and wept when you heard what I had spoken against this nation, I will gather you to your fathers in peace. ²⁶Your eyes shall not see the disaster I am going to bring.'

Josiah reads the Book of the Law to the people

²⁷When the king heard the words of this prophecy he summoned all the people of Judah to the Temple. There in their hearing he read

^{*16} Most of the original Israelites of these towns would have been exiled by the Assyrians 70 years earlier. In due course exiles from other conquered lands were transplanted in their place by the Assyrians. These foreign peoples intermarried with the remaining Israelites (usually only the poorer land workers were left) and eventually became the despised (to the Jews) Samaritans.

^{*22} Normally it would be the high priest himself who enquired of the Lord, through the Urim and Thummim (Deuteronomy 10:7).

^{*12} This prophecy is found in Elijah 1:8.

NAHUM 2

all the words of the Book of the Law which had been found in the house of the Lord.

Josiah and the people make a covenant to obey the Lord's commandments

²⁸Afterward Josiah made a covenant that he would follow the Lord and obey his commandments with all his heart and soul. The people also covenanted with the Lord.^{F*}

The Passover once again celebrated

²⁹The king then commanded the people, "Celebrate the Passover as it is written in the Book of the Law."

³⁰To the Levites he said, "Place the holy Ark in the Temple. You do not need to carry it about on your shoulders any more. ³¹Then you are to purify yourselves and be ready to stand in the holy place and skin the Passover lambs for the people as the Lord commanded through Moses."

³²So in the eighteenth year of Josiah king of Judah, on the fourteenth day of the first month, the Passover was once again celebrated in Jerusalem.

Josiah and his officials provide the people 41,400 animals to be sacrificed

³³Josiah and his officials provided for the people 37,600 lambs and goats for the Passover offerings, and 3800 cattle for sacrifice.

The priests, Levites and musicians perform their roles

³⁴The lambs were slaughtered and the priests sprinkled the blood as it was handed to them, while the Levites skinned the animals.

³⁵They roasted the animals over a fire as prescribed, and boiled the holy offerings in pots, then served them to all the people.

³⁶The musicians were also in their places as prescribed by David.

No Passover like this since Samuel's day

³⁷The Israelites celebrated the Passover and Feast of Unleavened Bread for seven days.

³⁸The Passover had not been observed like this in Israel since the days of the prophet Samuel. None of the kings of Israel had ever celebrated such a Passover as did Josiah.

2

The word of the Lord comes to the prophet Nahum

¹During the reign of Josiah, this word of the Lord came to the prophet Nahum concerning the Assyrian city of Nineveh.^{F*}

*28 From subsequent events recorded in the book of Jeremiah, it appears that the reforms that followed were due more to the zeal of king Josiah than to a genuine change in the hearts of the people (Jeremiah 3:4).

*1 The city of Nineveh was the seat of the Assyrian empire and one of the largest and oldest cities in the world. It was founded by Nimrod (Genesis 7:11) the great-grandson of Noah and was located on the east bank of the Tigris river in what is today Iraq. The Assyrians were a war-like people, noted for their extreme cruelty in battle. By aggressive warfare they had recently amassed a considerable empire, but within a few years of Nahum's prophecy, their main city Nineveh was destroyed by the Babylonians and the Medes and most of their conquered

The Lord punishes the guilty but cares for those who trust in him

²"*Jehovah is slow to anger but great in power. He does not leave the guilty unpunished. The whole earth trembles at his presence. Who can endure his fierce anger?*"

³"*With an overwhelming flood he makes an end to his enemies. He pursues them into darkness.* ⁴*Whatever they plot against him he will bring to an end. They shall not do it a second time.*"

⁵"*Yet the Lord is good. He is a refuge in times of trouble. He cares for those who trust in him.*"

The Assyrians will no longer afflict Judah

⁶"*From the city of Nineveh came one who plotted evil against the Lord. Therefore Jehovah says, Though the Assyrians have allies and are numerous, they will be cut off and pass away.*"

⁷"*I have allowed them to afflict you O Judah, but now I will break their yoke from your neck.*"

The Assyrian capital Nineveh to be destroyed

⁸"*I Jehovah have decreed concerning you Nineveh, you will have no descendants to bear your name, and I will destroy your carved images and cast idols that are in the temples of your gods.*"

⁹"*Celebrate your festivals O Judah. No more will this wicked nation invade you. They will be completely destroyed.*"

Nahum's vision of the invasion of Nineveh

¹⁰"*The warriors invading Nineveh are clad in scarlet, their spears are brandished and their chariots flash as they race through the streets and squares. They dart about like lightning.*"

Nineveh to be plundered and the survivors exiled

¹¹"*I see the river gates thrown open. The palace collapses. The city is doomed to exile. Slave girls moan like doves and beat upon their breasts. Nineveh is like a pool with its water draining away.*"

¹²"*Cease! they cry, but no warrior turns back. Plunder the silver! Plunder the gold! The spoil is endless. Everywhere desolation and ruin.*"

¹³"*Hearts melt! Knees give way! Bodies tremble! Every face grows pale.*"

Dead bodies heaped up without number

¹⁴"*Woe to the city of blood, full of lies, full of captured spoil! The crack of whips! The clatter of wheels! Galloping horses! Jolting chariots! ¹⁵Charging horsemen! Flashing swords and glittering spears! Dead bodies*

land absorbed within the new Babylonian empire. The city of Nineveh was never rebuilt. The palace of Sennacherib, the king who lost 185,000 warriors by divine action when attacking Jerusalem (Isaiah chapters 18-19), has been located and excavated. This magnificent building contains more than 70 rooms and over 3 km of walls sculptured with elegant designs.

heaped up without number. Those who flee stumble over corpses."

¹⁶"All this because of the lust of a harlot. A mistress of sorceries who enslaved nations by her harlotry and witchcraft."

Jehovah to shame Nineveh

¹⁷"I Jehovah Almighty am against you Nineveh. I will lift your skirts over your face and let the nations see your nakedness to shame you. ¹⁸I shall treat you with contempt and make you a spectacle. All who see will shrink and say, 'Nineveh is in ruins. Who will mourn for her?'"

Nineveh's wound fatal

¹⁹"Save water for the siege O Nineveh. Strengthen your defences. Work your clay and repair your brick walls. But all in vain. Fire will devour you and the sword shall cut you down."

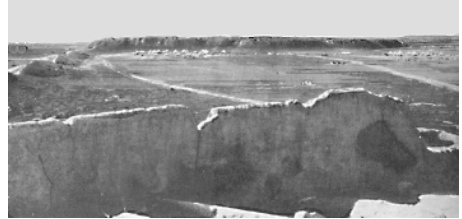
²⁰"You increased the number of your merchants more than the stars of the sky,

but now O king of Assyria your rulers are dead. Your nobles lie in the dust and your people are scattered with no one to gather them."

²¹"Nothing can heal your wound, your injury is fatal."

All nations to rejoice at Nineveh's fall

²²"All who hear about you rejoice, for who has not felt your cruelty?"



Site of ancient Nineveh, once one of the largest cities in the world.

ZEPHANIAH

The prophet Zephaniah was the great grandson of King Hezekiah and also a contemporary of the prophets Nahum, Habakkuk, and Jeremiah.

Zephaniah prophesied during the reign of King Josiah and warned Judah of the forthcoming Babylonian invasions that would soon lay waste the whole region. These invasions began four years after the death of Josiah.

Like the other prophets of his time, he also received revelations regarding ‘the great day of the Lord’ or the second coming of Jesus Christ.

AUTHOR The prophet Zephaniah.

“Therefore wait, for the day is coming when I shall rise up in judgement against all nations. In that day I will gather the nations of the world together and pour out my fierce anger upon them.” Zephaniah 2:1.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Lord to uproot land of Judah	1	Great day of the Lord coming in the last days	2
All the wicked to be cut off	1	A day of wrath, distress and anguish	2
Great distress coming on Jerusalem	1	Whole earth to be consumed	2
Land of the Philistines to be abandoned	1	A plea from Zephaniah for Judah to repent	2
Moab, Ammon and Ethiopia to be punished	1	Lips of survivors of last days to be purified	2
Assyria and Nineveh also to be destroyed	1	Only the meek and humble will be left	2
The sins of Jerusalem	1	Never again will Jerusalem fear	2
Jerusalem will not learn	1	Israel to be gathered and honoured in millennium	2

Bold The Lord speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

The Lord to uproot the land of Judah

¹The word of the Lord that came to the prophet Zephaniah during the reign of Josiah king of Judah.

²***I*** Jehovah will uproot everything from this land. I will uproot both men and their idols. Even animals, birds and fish will die when I cut off the wicked from this land.”

All the idolatrous and godless to be cut off from Judah

³“When I stretch out my hand against Judah and Jerusalem I will cut off every person who has worshipped Baal, and those who have bowed down on their roofs to the sun, the moon and the stars.”

⁴“Also they who swear by Jehovah, but also swear by Molech. And they who have turned away from Jehovah and neither seek nor inquire of me.”

⁵“The day is coming when I will punish the officials and the king’s sons who practice foreign customs and do violence and deceit.”

Great distress coming upon Jerusalem

⁶“On that day a great cry will go up from the Fish Gate. It shall be bitter and the shouting of warriors will be heard. ⁷Loud

wailing will arise from the New Quarter and echo from the hills. Wail also you market district. Your merchants will be wiped out.”

⁸“I will search Jerusalem and punish those who are complacent, and think to themselves ‘The Lord will do nothing.’ ⁹Their wealth will be plundered and their houses demolished. They will not drink the wine of vineyards they have planted.”

The land of the Philistines to be abandoned

¹⁰“*The land of the Philistines will also be uprooted. It too will be abandoned and left in ruins.* ¹¹*Woe to you Philistines who live by the sea, hear the word of the Lord against you. Jehovah declares, “I will destroy you and none will be left.”*

¹²“*The land of the Philistines will become a place for shepherds and sheep. The remnants of Judah shall find pasture there, and in the evenings they will sleep in the abandoned houses of the Philistines.* ¹³*For the Lord their God will remember them and restore their fortunes.”*

Moab, Ammon and Ethiopia to be punished

¹⁴“I have heard the insults of Moab and the

taunts of the Ammonites against my people. Therefore as surely as I Jehovah Almighty, the God of Israel live, Moab will become like Sodom, and the Ammonites like Gomorrah, a wasteland of weeds and salt pits.”

¹⁵“You too O Ethiopians will be slain by my sword.”^{F*}



The Damascus Gate of Jerusalem, believed to be the Fish Gate of Zephaniah's day.

Assyria and Nineveh also to be destroyed

¹⁶“The Lord will also destroy Assyria, leaving Nineveh deserted and barren. ¹⁷Desert owls will roost among her ruins. Rubble will be in doorways and roof beams exposed.”

The sins of Jerusalem

¹⁸“Woe to Jerusalem, the city of oppressors. Rebellious and defiled she obeys no one and accepts no correction. She trusts not in her Lord.”

¹⁹“Her rulers are ravening wolves. Her prophets are arrogant and her priests profane the Temple and violate the law.”

Jerusalem will not learn

²⁰“Jehovah says, ‘I have in times past cut off entire nations and left their cities destroyed and their streets deserted. Not one person has been left in them.’”

²¹“So I said to my city Jerusalem, ‘Surely now you will honour me and accept correction, that my punishments come not upon you.’ But they are still eager as ever to act corruptly.”

2

The great day of the Lord coming in the last days

¹“Therefore wait, for the day is coming when I will rise up in judgement against all

nations. In that day I shall gather the nations of the world together and pour out my fierce anger upon them.”

²“The whole earth shall be consumed by the fire of my jealous anger.”

A day of wrath, distress and anguish

³“The great day of the Lord approaches and is hastening fast. That day will be a day of wrath, distress and anguish, a day of trouble and ruin, darkness and gloom. A day of trumpet blasts and battle cry against fortified cities.”

⁴“I will bring distress upon all peoples, for they have sinned against the Lord. Their blood shall be poured out like dust and their flesh rot like dung on the ground.”

The whole earth to be consumed

⁵“Their silver and gold will not save them on the day of the Lord's wrath. The whole earth shall be consumed. He will make a terrible end for the inhabitants of the earth.”

A plea from Zephaniah for Judah to repent

⁶“Therefore seek the Lord O shameful nation. Seek Jehovah before the appointed time arrives. Seek righteousness and humility. Perhaps you will be saved on the day of his anger.”

Lips of the survivors of last days to be purified

⁷“Then will I purify the lips of the remnant peoples. All of them shall call on the name of the Lord and serve me shoulder to shoulder.”

Only the meek and humble will be left

⁸“Jerusalem no longer will be shamed for the wrongs done to me, for I will remove from her midst all the proud. But I shall leave the meek and the humble who trust in the name of the Lord.”

⁹“Those who remain of Israel will do no wrong. No deceit will be found in their mouths. They will eat and lie down and not fear.”

Never again will Jerusalem fear

¹⁰“Sing O Jerusalem. Shout aloud O Israel. Be glad. Rejoice with all your heart. Jehovah the King of Israel is with you. Never again will you fear.”

Israel to be gathered and honoured in the millennium

¹¹“In that day I shall deal with all who oppressed you, and bring home to you those who have been scattered. My dispersed people will bring me offerings, even from beyond the rivers of Ethiopia.”

¹²“I shall change your shame to honour. I will give you praise and renown among all the peoples of the earth O Israel, when I restore your fortunes says Jehovah.”

*¹⁵ The Babylonian invasion conquered all the surrounding nations.

HABAKKUK

The prophet Habakkuk was a contemporary of the prophets Nahum, Zephaniah and Jeremiah. All four prophesied during the thirty-one years of the reign of King Josiah.

In this very short book, Habakkuk questions the Lord about a matter that concerns him greatly. He asks the Lord why *“justice never prevails.”*

He is answered that the Babylonians will soon invade the land to punish Judah and the surrounding nations.

Habakkuk then inquires of the Lord as to how, in his purity he could *“allow a wicked nation (the Babylonians) to swallow up those more righteous than themselves.”*

Again the Lord answers Habakkuk.

AUTHOR Habakkuk the prophet.

Then the Lord answered me and said, **“Write down the former revelation and make it plain. Though it seem slow in coming it will surely come to pass.”**

Habakkuk 1:12.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Habakkuk complains to the Lord about injustice	1	Habakkuk asks Lord why he uses a wicked nation ...	1
The Lord answers Habakkuk	1	Babylonians will in time be punished themselves	1
The Babylonians soon to invade the land	1	Habakkuk waits for Babylonians to be punished	1
A fearsome, dreaded people gathering prisoners	1	Habakkuk’s song of his trust in the Lord	1

Bold The Lord speaking.

1

Habakkuk complains to the Lord about injustice

¹The words of the prophet Habakkuk. “I cried out to the Lord and said, ‘How long O Jehovah must I call for help and you not hear me? ²Why must I look upon injustice? Destruction and violence is all about me. The wicked oppress the righteous and justice never prevails.”

The Lord answers Habakkuk, the Babylonians soon to invade the land

³The Lord answered me, **“Watch and be amazed, for I will do something in your days you would not have believed. I am arousing the Babylonians, that ruthless and impetuous nation to sweep across the earth and seize lands not their own.”**

The Babylonians a fearsome and dreaded people gathering prisoners like sand

⁴**“A fearsome and dreaded people, with horses swift as leopards, more menacing than wolves at dusk. They come like the eagle, swooping to devour, and gather prisoners like sand.”**

⁵**“They scoff at kings and their fortified cities. They heap up earthen ramps and capture them, then sweep on like the wind.”**

⁶**“Unrighteous men whose god is their own might.”**

Habakkuk asks the Lord how he can allow a wicked nation to punish Judah

⁷“O Jehovah our rock, are you not everlasting? Shall we perish by the Babylonians to whom you have appointed judgement?”

⁸“Your eyes are too pure to behold evil. You cannot tolerate wrong. How then can you allow a wicked nation to swallow up those more righteous than themselves?”

⁹“Must these wicked men cast their net and rejoice. Surely they will worship their net, for by it they live in luxury.”

¹⁰“Shall they continue to destroy nations without mercy?”

¹¹“I await the answer my Lord gives to my complaint.”

The Lord answers that the Babylonians will in time be punished themselves

¹²“The Lord answered me and said, **‘Write down the former revelation and make it plain. Though it seem slow in coming it will surely come to pass.’**

¹³**“The Babylonians are puffed up with pride and will perish, but the righteous shall live by faith. As wine deceives the drinker, so shall all the proud be deceived.”**

¹⁴“The Chaldeans^{F*} are arrogant and greedy. Like death they are never satisfied. They take captive many nations.”

¹⁵“Yet these same nations shall reproach them saying, ‘Woe to him who gathers riches by extortion. How long can this continue? Will not enemies arise against you also?’”

¹⁶“Because you have plundered many nations, the nations who remain will plunder you.”

**Habakkuk waits quietly for
Babylonians to be punished**

¹⁷“My heart pounded and my legs trembled at these words. But now I shall wait quietly for the

day of calamity to come upon them who will attack us.”

Habakkuk’s song of his trust in the Lord

¹⁸Though the fig tree fail to bud
and the vine bear no grapes.

¹⁹Though the olive trees fail
and the fields are barren.

²⁰Though the sheep pen be empty
and no cattle in the stalls.

²¹Yet will I rejoice in my Saviour,
for the Lord is my strength.

²²He makes my feet sure,
like the foot of a deer.

* The Chaldeans is another name for the Babylonians.

JEREMIAH

Jeremiah was called to be a prophet by the Lord at a young age, perhaps as young as fourteen. He was born into a priestly family and would therefore have been a Levite and a direct descendant of Aaron.

Jeremiah prophesied faithfully to a rebellious Judah for over forty years, and also from time to time, to other nations. He had the thankless task of announcing the destruction of Judah and other surrounding nations by the Babylonians.

Jeremiah tried to get his own people to repent of their idolatry and immorality, but Judah had been hopelessly corrupted by the evil, early reign of King Manasseh. Reforms had been carried out by the righteous King Josiah, but the hearts of the people were not sincere.

The arrogant attitude of Judah's leaders in Jeremiah's day is vividly depicted in the scene of King Jehoiakim, sitting in his chamber on a winter's day, surrounded by his attendants and contemptuously cutting off sections of Jeremiah's scroll with a knife as they were read to him then throwing them into a fire pot burning before him (Jeremiah 13:17-18).

Jeremiah was therefore primarily a prophet of doom, and it was because of his mostly negative message that he suffered the constant rejection and mockery of his people. He aroused murderous hostility in his fellow priests and false prophets whom he denounced.

Judah in Jeremiah's day had been lulled into a false sense of security, firstly by the superficial religious reforms of Josiah, reinforced by the soothing words of false prophets. Secondly by the defence pacts made first with Babylon and then with Egypt, both of whom eventually turned on Judah.

Jeremiah witnessed the two part exile of Judah by the Babylonians. The first exile took the best of the people, including the soon to be called prophet Ezekiel, also King Jehoiachin and his officials and Judah's 7000 man army – about 10,000 persons in all. At this time the king of Babylon installed a vassal king of Judah – Zedekiah.

The second and final exile of Judah took place about twenty years later when King Zedekiah, after having negotiated a defence pact with Egypt, rebelled against Babylon. So the Babylonians came again, this time determined to stamp out this rebellious kingdom and began a siege of Jerusalem.

Egypt duly sent an army to help Judah, but it was repelled by the Babylonians and the siege of Jerusalem was again renewed.

During this siege, Jeremiah was arrested for treason because of his call for the people to surrender to the Babylonians. He was beaten and imprisoned by the city officials.

The year long siege resulted in scenes of horror in Jerusalem. Thousands died of plague and starvation, and some people resorted to cannibalism. Finally the Babylonians broke through the city wall and most of the survivors were put to the sword. Then the Temple, palace and houses were looted and burned by the Babylonian soldiers and the city walls broken down.

Only 832 survivors remained alive to be taken into exile (and most of these were defectors) from a kingdom that once boasted an army of 580,000 men (2 Kings 2:4).

Some of the poorest people were left to till the land, but even these soon fled to Egypt because of treachery from their own people. They took Jeremiah along with them and the land of Judah became entirely deserted as prophesied by the Lord.

Jeremiah was a frank and open man who did not hesitate to voice his human fears and frustrations to the Lord. His frank and honest writings clearly portray the reality of what it is like to be a genuine prophet and to be sent to call a rebellious people to repentance. His daily rejection, mocking, persecution and threats would have been intolerable without the support of the Lord.

With his usual vivid imagery, the Lord revealed to Jeremiah exactly what to say to the people, and sometimes instructed him to use symbols to dramatise his prophecies, ie, smashing a jar, wearing a wooden yoke, burying stones, etc.

Jeremiah's life must have been a lonely one, for even his own family turned on him. The Lord had commanded Jeremiah not to marry and have children as all the children of his generation were to die of plague, famine or sword. His closest companion appears to have been his scribe Baruch.

According to Jewish tradition, Jeremiah was stoned to death in Egypt by his own people. However later generations of Jews held him in high esteem and he is now regarded as one of their greatest prophets.

NOTE Although Jeremiah's material is clearly dated by the reigns of the kings of his day, it is not presented in chronological order in traditional Bibles. In this Condensed Bible it has been arranged chronologically for greater clarity.

AUTHOR

The prophet Jeremiah, however some sections of the book are written in the third person and were probably recorded by Jeremiah's scribe Baruch. In this Condensed Bible the political background has been enriched by additional detail from the parallel accounts in the books of 2 Kings and 2 Chronicles.

"If at any time I declare that a nation is to be uprooted or destroyed, and that nation repents of its evil, then I will relent and not inflict on it the disaster I had planned." Jeremiah 9:16.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Jeremiah a prophet during the reigns of five kings ... 1	Wicked men have become rich by evil deeds 4
Jeremiah set apart as prophet before he was born .. 1	Prophet and priest alike practice deception 4
Jeremiah feels inadequate because of his youth 1	They are not ashamed of their loathsome conduct ... 4
Lord orders Jeremiah to do as he commands 1	Beautiful and delicate Jerusalem to be destroyed 4
Jeremiah not to fear the people 1	Jeremiah complains to Lord that no one listens 4
Jeremiah a prophet to other nations besides Judah . 1	Jeremiah told to speak to the children 4
Jeremiah's vision of an almond tree branch 1	An army from the north will show no mercy 4
Jeremiah's vision of a cauldron of boiling water 1	King Josiah goes out to fight Neco king of Egypt 5
Cauldron a symbol of disaster from the north 1	Neco warns Josiah off but he does not listen 5
Jeremiah not to fear to speak Lord's words 1	Josiah dies of an archery wound 5
If so he will be humiliated before the people 1	Josiah one of the great kings of Judah 5
People of Judah will turn against Jeremiah 1	Jehoahaz made king 5
What fault did Israel find in the Lord? 2	Neco deposes Jehoahaz and makes Jehoiakim king . 5
The Lord charges Judah with idolatry 2	Neco paid a tribute of silver and gold 5
What other nation has ever changed its gods? 2	Jehoahaz taken in exile to Egypt 5
Judah bringing punishment upon themselves 2	Jehoiakim also an evil king 5
Judah like a lustful harlot 2	Lord willing to hold off disaster if people repent 6
Judah to be shamed by Egypt 2	Lord pleads for genuine reform 6
Spring rains withheld 2	Judah to suffer fate of Israel if they do not repent ... 6
Judah still has brazen look of a harlot 2	Jeremiah seized by the priests and false prophets ... 6
Northern kingdom of Israel divorced by the Lord 3	Jeremiah threatened with death 6
Judah her sister has also played the whore 3	Jeremiah defends himself before king's officials 6
Judah's apparent return to Lord only a pretence 3	Officials and people support Jeremiah 6
Lord asks exiled northern Israel to admit guilt 3	Uriah the prophet put to death by Jehoiakim 6
A few of Israel will return from exile with Judah 3	Jeremiah not to pray for the people any longer 6
No Ark in Israel in days to come 3	The idolatrous practices of Judah 6
Jerusalem to be renamed in millennium 3	Severe punishment coming upon Jerusalem 6
All nations will gather to her to honour the Lord 3	The written law changed by lying scribes 6
Judah and Israel to one day be reunited 3	Jeremiah's lament over a vision 6
Bitter disaster coming from the north 3	Dead bodies to lie like cut grain behind the reaper ... 6
Jeremiah sees a vision of destruction of Judah 3	Lord delights in kindness, justice and righteousness ... 6
Jeremiah distressed by the vision 3	The foolishness of worshipping man-made idols 6
Jeremiah sees the towns of Judah in ruins 3	Jehovah is the true God 6
Whole region to be ruined and deserted 3	Covenant of the forefathers has been broken 7
Judah's former lovers to destroy her 3	Judah once a thriving olive tree 7
Jeremiah unable to find one truth-seeking person 4	Judah has provoked the Lord to anger by idolatry 7
Why should Lord forgive the people of Judah? 4	Lord reveals plot against life of Jeremiah 7
Jeremiah's words to be like fire to wood 4	The plotters and their families soon to be destroyed ... 7
A distant nation to devour Judah 4	Jeremiah asks for the wicked to be punished now ... 7
Judah's sins keeping away the rains 4	Jeremiah asks Lord how long the drought will last ... 7

JEREMIAH

Jeremiah's weariness rebuked by the Lord	7	Judah also to return from exile	11
Sword soon coming to devour Judah	7	Babylon to destroy the Philistines	11
Assyrians who invaded Israel also to be uprooted	7	Babylon to lay waste and exile Moab	11
However they will return to their own lands	7	Moab to be ashamed of their god Chemosh	11
Nations who worship Lord share Israel's blessing	7	Moab's fortunes to be restored in the latter days	11
Jeremiah told to wear a linen belt	7	Babylon to scatter and exile the Ammonites	11
Jeremiah to hide the linen belt in a damp place	7	The Ammonites to return from exile	11
The belt ruined	7	Innocent Dedanites in Edom warned to flee	11
The belt symbolic of Judah's pride	7	Edom to become small and despised	11
Jeremiah sent to king and queen mother	7	Babylon to defeat Damascus of Syria	11
The leopard cannot change its spots	7	Arabian kingdoms to be attacked by Babylon	11
Neither can they who are always doing evil do good ...	7	Eventual capture of Babylon described	12
Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon invades the land	8	Babylon to be repaid as she did to others	12
King Jehoiakim pays him tribute for three years	8	City of Babylon to become uninhabited forever	12
Jeremiah prays for an end to the drought	8	Faithful exiles of Israel and Judah to return	12
Jeremiah told that the people are past praying for ...	8	Israel devoured like lost sheep	12
False prophets are lying to the people	8	A remnant of Israel to return	12
Jeremiah to prophesy a vision of sword and famine ..	8	Spared of Israel and Judah to have sins forgiven ...	12
Jeremiah makes a final plea to the Lord for mercy ...	8	Jeremiah told to write his prophecies on a scroll	13
Moses and Samuel could not change Lord's heart ...	8	Jeremiah's scribe Baruch writes the prophecies	13
Plague, starvation, sword and exile await Judah	8	Baruch told to read the words to the people	13
Judah to be a horror to all kingdoms of the earth	8	Jeremiah banned from speaking at the Temple	13
The Lord weary of relenting	8	Baruch becomes sorrowful and weary	13
The people have not changed their ways	8	Lord promises to protect Baruch's life	13
Widows to be as numerous as sands of the sea	8	Micaiah a city official hears the words of the scroll ..	13
Jeremiah complains of being cursed by the people ..	8	City officials have Baruch read the scroll to them ...	13
Jeremiah asks Lord for vengeance	8	Officials alarmed at the prophecies	13
Jeremiah ordered to repent of such talk	8	Officials take the scroll into Jehoiakim	13
The people will oppose Jeremiah but not prevail	8	The king listens but burns the scroll piece by piece ...	13
Jeremiah not to marry and have children	8	Baruch and Jeremiah ordered to be arrested	13
Jeremiah not to show sympathy or joy	8	Baruch and Jeremiah cannot be found	13
Why the Lord is bringing disaster on Judah	8	Jeremiah told by Lord to make another scroll	13
Cursed is he who trusts in man	9	King Jehoiakim and his sons cursed by the Lord	13
Blessed is he who trusts in the Lord	9	Many other words added to the new scroll	13
Unjustly obtained riches are lost in mid-life	9	King Jehoiakim given commands and a warning	14
Jeremiah asks Lord to hasten the disaster	9	Judean exiles will never see their native land again ...	14
People are mocking Jeremiah's words	9	Jehoiakim rebuked for building a larger palace	14
Jeremiah to teach keeping the Sabbath day holy	9	All went well with Josiah his father	14
Jerusalem to be inhabited forever if Sabbath kept	9	King Josiah defended the poor and needy	14
Israel like clay in hands of the potter to the Lord	9	Jehoiakim to suffer the shameful burial of a donkey ...	14
Lord will relent of a disaster if a nation repents	9	The Recabite family to be offered wine to drink	14
The people want to rid themselves of Jeremiah	9	The Recabites refuse to drink the wine	14
The people prefer to listen to their false prophets	9	Lord commends the faithfulness of the Recabites ...	14
The people plot against Jeremiah	9	Recabites blessed to serve the Lord for all time	14
Jeremiah pleads with Lord for vengeance	9	Jehoiakim rebels against king Nebuchadnezzar	15
Jeremiah told to buy a clay jar	9	Jerusalem besieged by the Babylonians	15
Jeremiah to take leaders out to valley of Hinnom	9	Jehoiakim dies during the siege	15
The valley a place of idolatry and child sacrifice	9	Jehoiachin made king but also does evil	15
The valley to be filled with the dead of Jerusalem ...	9	Jehoiachin and his mother cursed to die in Babylon ..	15
People to eat their children during the siege	9	Judah's uncaring shepherds to be punished	15
Jeremiah to smash the clay jar	9	Righteous shepherds to be appointed in future	15
The jar a symbol of the fate of Judah	9	The Messiah to be raised up from David's line	15
Pashhur the priest strikes Jeremiah	9	Jeremiah's heart broken by wickedness around him ..	15
Pashhur puts Jeremiah in the stocks	9	Judah still parched and more disaster to come	15
Jeremiah prophesies regarding fate of Pashhur	9	Jerusalem's false prophets worse than Samaritans ...	15
Jeremiah's sorrowful prayer	9	Jerusalem's false prophets spread ungodliness	15
Judah has not listened to Lord's prophets	10	The people warned not to listen to false prophets ...	15
Nebuchadnezzar coming to invade the land	10	Dreams and lies of false prophets not from Lord	15
Judah and surrounding nations to be ruined	10	True word of the Lord like fire	15
The nations to serve Babylon for seventy years	10	King Jehoiachin surrenders to king of Babylon	15
Afterward the Babylonians also to be ruined	10	Treasures taken from the Temple and palace	15
Jeremiah to warn other nations	10	Nobles, skilled craftsmen and army taken into exile ...	15
Disaster to come first upon Jerusalem as a sign	10	Nebuchadnezzar appoints Zedekiah king of Judah ...	15
In last days all the guilty on earth to be slain	10	Zedekiah an unrighteous king	16
Egyptian army defeated by Babylon	11	Jeremiah's vision of the good and bad figs	16
The Lord derides Egypt	11	Good figs are those who have gone into exile	16
Babylon to invade and exile Egypt	11	Bad figs are rest of people of Judah	16
Egypt to eventually return from exile	11	Soon no one will be left in Judah	16

The false prophets prophesy lies	16	Jeremiah confined in guard's quarters	20
Remaining Temple treasures also to be taken	16	Officials seek Jeremiah's death for treason	20
Jeremiah to wear a wooden yoke	16	King fears to oppose his officials	20
Yoke a sign when prophesying to visiting envoys ..	16	Jeremiah left to die in muddy water cistern	20
Jehovah made the earth and all on it	16	Ethiopian eunuch rescues Jeremiah	20
All surrounding nations handed over to Babylon ..	16	Lord rewards Ethiopian with his life	20
Surrounding nations can escape total exile	16	Babylonian armies return to the siege	21
But only if they serve the king of Babylon	16	Jeremiah buys a field off his cousin	21
False prophecy of the prophet Hananiah	16	The property deed a sign to the people	21
Predictions of a true prophet will come true	16	Daily life in Judah will one day return to normal	21
Hananiah breaks Jeremiah's wooden yoke	16	Babylonians to destroy homes of idolaters	21
Nebuchadnezzar to be like a yoke of iron	16	The abominations of Israel and Judah	21
Lord curses Hananiah the false prophet	16	Jerusalem to be surely gathered again	21
Hananiah dies	16	Judah to be restored again as it was before	21
Jeremiah writes to the exiles	17	Messiah to spring up from David's line	21
Build houses and settle down in Babylon	17	Great glory for Israel in the millennium	21
Pray for and help prosper Babylon	17	David's royal line to continue in millennium	21
Ahab and Zedekiah false prophets	17	Levite priesthood to continue in millennium	21
Ahab and Zedekiah will be burnt to death	17	David's descendants to be as numberless as sand ..	21
Fate of those remaining in Judah	17	Levites to be as numberless as sand	21
Exiles to return from Babylon in seventy years ..	17	Zedekiah summons Jeremiah privately	21
Returned exiles will find the Lord	17	King's surrender will save Jerusalem from fire	21
If they seek him with all their heart	17	King Zedekiah fears to surrender	21
Shemaiah a false prophet in exile	17	If Zedekiah refuses he and his family will suffer ..	21
Shemaiah sends a letter to Jerusalem	17	And Jerusalem shall burn	21
Shemaiah tries to have Jeremiah silenced	17	Jeremiah remains in prison	21
Shemaiah punished by Lord	17	Severe starvation in Jerusalem	22
Jeremiah sends a prophesy by Seraiah to Babylon ..	17	Babylonian army break through the city wall	22
Seraiah to read the prophesy in Babylon	17	Babylonians begin putting survivors to sword	22
Seraiah then to throw it into the Euphrates	17	Zedekiah and city guards escape by night	22
Jeremiah told to write all his words in a book	18	Babylonians pursue Zedekiah and capture him	22
The book for those of future generations	18	Zedekiah's sons slaughtered before his eyes	22
A message from the Lord to all nations of earth ..	18	Zedekiah blinded and taken to Babylon	22
The fearful day of the coming of the Lord	18	Babylonian army plunder Jerusalem	22
David to lead gathered Israel during millennium ..	18	Temple, palace and houses burned	22
All the wicked to be destroyed in last days	18	832 survivors taken into exile	22
Israel to be gathered from ends of the earth	18	Some of poorest people left to till the land	22
The people to shout for joy	18	Babylonian commander frees Jeremiah	22
Dancing and gladness in Israel	18	Gedaliah to govern the few poor who remain	22
People only to be punished for own sins	18	Jeremiah remains with Gedaliah in Judah	22
A new covenant to be made with house of Israel ..	18	Escaped guards return to Gedaliah	23
A message from the Lord to scattered Israel	18	Gedaliah assigns guards to harvesting	23
Israel to dance and sing with joy	18	Jews from other nations also come to Gedaliah ..	23
Israel no longer to be despised	18	Gedaliah disbelieves warning of plot on his life	23
Zedekiah rebels against Babylon	19	Gedaliah assassinated by Ishmael	23
People of Judah now even more unfaithful	19	Ishmael slaughters seventy others	23
Nebuchadnezzar's armies besiege Jerusalem	19	Ishmael takes captives and departs for Ammon	23
Zedekiah asks Jeremiah to inquire of Lord	19	Johanan the chief guard and his men pursue him ..	23
Only sword, famine and plague lie ahead	19	Johanan rescues the captives	23
Those who surrender will escape with their lives ..	19	Johanan and the people decide to flee to Egypt	23
Zedekiah told he shall die peacefully in Babylon ..	19	They ask Jeremiah for confirmation from Lord	23
Two other cities of Judah also being besieged	19	Lord counsels the people to stay in Judah	23
Egypt comes to help Judah	19	If they flee to Egypt they shall die	23
Babylonian army temporarily withdraw	19	The people disobey Lord and flee to Egypt	23
Babylonians to return and burn Jerusalem	19	Jeremiah and all living in Judah taken to Egypt ..	23
Zedekiah orders all Israelite slaves to be freed ..	19	Jeremiah buries stones in front of palace	23
The people free their slaves with a covenant	19	King Nebuchadnezzar to invade Egypt	23
The people later enslave them again	19	The king to set up his throne over these stones	23
Lord curses slave owners of Jerusalem	19	The temples of Egypt to be burned	23
Slave owners to become a horror to all nations ..	19	Empty land of Judah begins its Sabbath rest	23
Bodies of the slave owners to lie unburied	19	Jews in Egypt warned to repent of their idolatry ..	24
Babylonians coming to burn the cities of Judah ..	19	If they do not repent they will be destroyed	24
Jeremiah attempts to leave Jerusalem	20	Jewish women choose to continue their idolatry	24
Jeremiah arrested for treason	20	The Queen of Heaven worshipped	24
Jeremiah beaten and imprisoned in a dungeon	20	Troubles started when worship of her ceased	24
Jeremiah consulted by Zedekiah the king	20	Jeremiah corrects their belief	24
Jeremiah pleads with the king	20	Jews to perish by sword and famine in Egypt	24
Does not want to go back to dungeon	20	Pharaoh's overthrow will be a sign to Jews	24

Bold The Lord speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Jeremiah a prophet during the reigns of five kings of Judah

¹The words of Jeremiah the prophet, of the priests in Anathoth,^{F*} to whom the word of the Lord came in the thirteenth year of the reign of Josiah king of Judah. ²And also in the days of Jehoahaz, Jehoiakim, and Jehoiachin, kings of Judah, until the eleventh year of Zedekiah, son of Josiah when the people of Judah were exiled to Babylon.

Jeremiah set apart as a prophet before he was born

³“The word of the Lord came to me saying, ‘Before I formed you in the womb I knew you. Before you were born I set you apart and appointed you a prophet to the nations.’”

Jeremiah feels inadequate because of his youth

⁴“I said ‘O Lord God, I do not know how to speak to men, I am only a youth.’”^{F*}

Jeremiah ordered to do as the Lord commands and not to fear the people

⁵“But the Lord said to me, ‘Do not say, ‘I am only a youth.’ You shall go to whoever I send you, and speak to them whatever I command you. ⁶Fear them not for I will be with you and shall protect you.’”

Jeremiah set as a prophet over other nations besides Judah

⁷“Then the Lord put out his hand and touched my mouth and said, ‘Now I have put my words into your mouth. ⁸Today I set you over nations, to tear down and destroy, to build up and plant.’”

Jeremiah’s vision of an almond tree branch

⁹“The word of the Lord came to me again saying, ‘What do you see Jeremiah?’”

¹⁰“I replied, “I see the branch of an almond tree, with the buds open.”

¹¹“The Lord said, ‘You have seen correctly. My eyes too are open, watching to see that my word comes to pass.’”

Jeremiah’s vision of a cauldron of boiling water symbolising disaster from the north

¹²“Then the Lord asked, ‘What do you see now?’”

“I answered, ‘I see a cauldron of boiling water, tipping from the north.’”

¹³“The Lord said, ‘Yes, and from the north disaster will come and be poured out upon all who live in this land. Kingdoms from the north^{F*} shall attack and overthrow Jerusalem and all the towns of Judah.’”

¹⁴“This is my judgement upon my people for their wickedness in forsaking me and worshipping other gods.”

Jeremiah not to fear to speak the Lord’s words or he will be humiliated before the people

¹⁵“Now, prepare yourself to stand and speak to the people of Judah. Fear them not or I will humiliate you before them. You are to say the words I command you.”

The people of Judah will turn against Jeremiah but shall not overcome him

¹⁶“I will make you strong, like a bronze wall, to stand up to the kings and priests of Judah and the people of the land. ¹⁷They shall turn against you but not succeed, for I am with you.”

2

What fault did Israel find in the Lord?

¹“The word of the Lord came to me saying, ‘Proclaim these words in the hearing of Jerusalem: Jehovah says, ‘I remember the devotion of your youth, how as a bride you loved me and followed me through the desert.’”

²“Israel was holy to the Lord, the first fruits of his harvest. All who harmed her were held guilty and disaster overtook them.”

³“Therefore what fault did your fathers find in me that they strayed so far from me and followed worthless idols, and so became worthless themselves?”

The Lord charges Judah with idolatry

⁴“I brought you into a fertile land to eat fruit and rich food but you defiled it. ⁵Your priests did not ask, ‘Where is Jehovah?’ and your leaders rebelled against me. Your prophets prophesied by Baal and followed worthless idols.”

⁶“I bring charges against you, and will bring charges against your children’s children.”

What other nation has ever changed its gods?

⁷“Cross to the coasts of Cyprus. Look to the Arabs of the desert. Has anything like this ever happened before? Has a nation ever changed its gods, even though they are not gods at all?”

⁸“But my people have exchanged their Glory for worthless idols. Be appalled O heavens! Shudder with horror! My people have forsaken me!”

*1 Jeremiah was born into a priestly family in Anathoth, a town about 4 km north east of Jerusalem.

*4 Jeremiah may have been only about 14 years old at this time.

*13 The Babylonian empire.

Judah has brought the coming punishment upon themselves

⁹“Is Israel a slave by birth? Why then is he to be plundered! Why is his land to be wasted and his towns burned and deserted? ¹⁰Have you not brought this upon yourselves, by forsaking the Lord your God?”

Judah like a lustful harlot

¹¹“You said to me, ‘I shall not serve you!’ And on every high hill and under every spreading tree you lay down and played the harlot.”

¹²“I planted you like a choice vine, how then did you turn into a corrupt wild vine? ¹³Though you wash yourself with soap the stain of your guilt is still before me.”

¹⁴“You are like a wild she-donkey, sniffing the wind in her craving. In her heat who can restrain her lust? Any males that seek her need not tire themselves, for she will find them. ¹⁵For you have said, ‘I love foreign gods and must go after them.’”

¹⁶“How skilled you are at pursuing love. Even the worst harlot could learn from your ways. Look to the hill tops, where you have not been lain with?” ^{F*}

Judah to be shamed by Egypt

¹⁷“As a thief is shamed when caught, so shall the house of Israel be shamed. You have as many gods as you have towns O Judah.”

¹⁸“In vain I punished you, but you did not repent. Your sword devoured the prophets, and you have the blood of the innocent poor on your clothes, though you did not catch them breaking in.”

¹⁹“In spite of all this you say, ‘I am innocent. I have not sinned.’”

²⁰“Therefore you shall be put to shame by Egypt^{F*} as you were put to shame by Assyria.”

Spring rains withheld

²¹“If a man divorces his wife and she becomes another man’s, will he return to her again? Would she not be as land that is defiled? ²²You too have defiled the land, with your harlotry and unfaithfulness, therefore the spring rains have been withheld.”

Judah still has the brazen look of a harlot

²³“Yet you still have the brazen look of a harlot. You refuse to blush with shame.”

²⁴“You say to me, ‘O my father, my friend from my youth, will you always be angry with me?’ This is how you pray to me, but you continue to do all the evil you can.”

Northern Israel divorced by the Lord

¹“The Lord said to me in the days of Josiah, ‘Did you hear what faithless Israel did? She went up on every high hill and under every spreading tree and played the whore.’”

²“I thought she would return to me, but she did not. So I gave Israel a certificate of divorce and sent her away.” ^{F*}

Judah the unfaithful sister of Israel has also played the whore

³“Judah her unfaithful sister saw what I had done, yet she did not fear me. She too went out and played the whore. She too defiled the land and committed adultery with stone and wood.”

Judah’s apparent return to the Lord only a pretence

⁴“Judah has returned to me only in pretence, not with all her heart. Faithless Israel was less guilty than unfaithful Judah.”

Lord asks exiled northern Israel to admit guilt

⁵“So proclaim this message toward the north: ‘Return faithless Israel and I will frown on you no longer, for I am merciful and shall not be angry forever. Only acknowledge your guilt. Admit that you have rebelled against your God and given your favours to foreign gods.’”

A few of Israel will return from exile with Judah

⁶“Return O faithless people, for I am your husband, and will gather you, one from a town and two from a clan and bring you to Jerusalem.”

⁷“Then I shall give you shepherds after my own heart. Shepherds who will lead you with knowledge and understanding.”

No Ark in Israel in days to come

⁸“In those days when your numbers will increase greatly in the land, Israel shall no longer have the Ark of the Covenant, nor will it be missed or another made.” ^{F*}

Jerusalem to be renamed in the millennium and all nations will gather to her to honour the Lord

⁹“And in days to come they will call Jerusalem ‘The Throne of Jehovah’ and all nations shall gather to her to honour the name of the Lord. No longer will my people follow the stubbornness of their evil hearts.”

*2 The Lord is referring to the northern kingdom of Israel which had been exiled by the Assyrians about 90 years earlier.

*8 The Lord here appears to be speaking of the millennium (see following verses). The Ark may possibly be uncovered again before that time. It went missing prior to the Babylonian destruction of the temple in Jerusalem (Jeremiah 22:9-12) and has not been seen since. Jewish tradition is that it was hidden by Jeremiah and the priests in a sealed cave on Mount Nebo along with the Altar of Incense and the original tent Tabernacle (2 Maccabees 2:4-5 Catholic Bible). Another tradition claims that the sealed cave is within the city of Jerusalem.

*16 The hilltops of Judah were the sites of idolatrous shrines whose worship involved sexual immorality.

*20 This prophecy was soon fulfilled. See Jeremiah chapter 5.

JEREMIAH 4

The houses of Judah and Israel to one day be reunited

10[“]In those days the house of Judah will reunite with the house of Israel. Together they will return from northern lands to the land I gave their forefathers.”

Bitter disaster coming on Judah from the north

11[“]The word of the Lord came to me saying, ‘Announce in Jerusalem and throughout Judah: “Sound the trumpet throughout the land! Cry aloud! Flee to the fortified cities! Jehovah is bringing disaster from the north, even terrible destruction.”

12[“]A lion has come out of his lair. A destroyer of nations is marching toward you to lay waste your land. Your towns will become ruins without inhabitant. 13Put on sackcloth, lament and wail, for the fierce anger of the Lord is against you.”

14[“]In that day the king and his officials will lose heart, the priests will be horrified and the prophets shall be appalled.”

15[“]Your own actions are bringing this upon you. This is your punishment. How bitter it is. How it pierces to the heart.”

Jeremiah distressed by a vision of the destruction of Judah

16[“]*O my anguish, my anguish. O the agony of my heart. It pounds within me. I cannot keep silent. I have heard the sound of the trumpet. I have heard the battle cry. I have seen disaster follow disaster. The whole land lies in ruins.*”

17[“]*My people are fools. They do not know the Lord. They are senseless children. They have no understanding. They are skilled in doing evil and know not how to do good.*”

Jeremiah sees the towns of Judah in ruins

18[“]*I saw the land and it was empty and dark. I saw the mountains and they were quaking. I looked and there were no people. Even the birds had fled. The fruitful land was like a desert. All the towns of Judah lay in ruins before the fierce anger of the Lord.*”

The whole region to be ruined and deserted

19[“]The Lord declares, ‘The whole land shall be ruined, though I will not destroy it completely. The land will mourn and the sky above grow dark. For I have spoken and will not relent.’

20[“]At the sound of horsemen every town shall take flight. People will flee into thickets, some will hide among rocks. All the towns shall be deserted.”

Judah's former lovers to destroy her

21[“]What are you doing O devastated one? Why do you dress in scarlet and put on your gold and jewellery? Why do you shade your eyes with paint? You adorn yourself in vain. Your lovers now despise you and seek your life.”

22[“]I hear a cry, as of a woman in labour,

the cry of the Daughter of Zion,^{F*} gasping for breath and saying, ‘Alas! My life is being taken by murderers.’”



Anathoth, birth place of Jeremiah.

4

Jeremiah unable to find one honest, truth-seeking person in Jerusalem

1[“]The Lord said to me, ‘Go up and down the streets of Jerusalem. Search through her squares. If you can find one person who deals honestly and seeks the truth I shall forgive this city.’”

2[“]I thought to myself, ‘In the streets are only the poor, who lack knowledge and know not the way of the Lord, I shall go instead to the leaders of the city and speak to them. Surely they know the requirements of their God.’”

3[“]But I found that with one accord they too had broken off the yoke of the Lord.”

The Lord asks why he should forgive the people of Judah

4[“]The Lord said to me, ‘Why should I forgive them? They have forsaken me and sworn by gods that are not gods. I supplied all their needs, yet they committed adultery and thronged to the houses of harlots. 5They are like well-fed, lusty stallions each neighing for another man's wife. The house of Israel and the house of Judah have been utterly unfaithful to me.’”

Jeremiah's words to be like a fire to wood

6[“]They say, ‘Jehovah will do nothing. No harm shall come to us. We will not see sword or famine. The prophets speak only wind.’”

7[“]Because the people have said this, I will make my words a fire in your mouth and these people the wood it consumes.”

A distant nation to devour Judah

8[“]I am bringing a distant nation against Judah, a people whose language they know

*22 The daughter of Zion is the city of Jerusalem. Zion is the hill where the temple and king's palace were located.

not. All are mighty warriors who will devour their food, their sons and daughters, their flocks and herds, their vines and fig trees and destroy with the sword the fortified cities in which they trust.”

⁹“Yet I will not destroy them completely. Afterward survivors will ask, ‘Why has the Lord our God done all this to us?’ ¹⁰Say to them, ‘Because you served foreign gods in your own land you shall now serve foreigners in a land not your own.’”

Judah’s sins keeping away the rains

¹¹“Announce this to Judah: ‘Hear this you senseless people who have eyes but see not, who have ears but hear not. Jehovah says, You have stubborn and rebellious hearts and have turned away from me. ¹²You do not say to yourselves, ‘Let us honour Jehovah our God who gives us the rains in season and brings us the harvest.’ Your sins have kept these away.”

Wicked men have become rich by evil deeds

¹³“Among you are wicked men who lie in wait for people, like those who trap birds. Their houses are full of treachery and they have become rich. ¹⁴They have grown fat and sleek and their evil deeds know no limit. They defend not the rights of the needy.”

¹⁵“As a well keeps its water fresh, so Jerusalem keeps her wickedness fresh. Shall I not avenge myself on such a nation as this?”

Prophet and priest alike practice deception

¹⁶“The prophets prophesy lies, the priests rule by their own authority and my people want it this way. From the least to the greatest all are greedy for unjust gain.”

¹⁷“Prophet and priest alike deal falsely. They treat the wound of my people as though it were not serious. ‘Peace. Peace,’ they say, when there is no peace.”

Prophets and priests not ashamed of their loathsome conduct

¹⁸“They are not ashamed of their loathsome conduct. They do not even know how to blush.”

They will be among the fallen when I punish them. For disaster looms from the north even terrible destruction.”

Beautiful and delicate Jerusalem to be destroyed

¹⁹“I will destroy Jerusalem, so beautiful and delicate. Trees shall be cut down and siege ramps built against her. ²⁰This city is to be punished for it is filled with oppression and violence. Her sickness is ever before me.”

²¹“Take warning O Jerusalem and change your ways, or I will make your land so deserted that no one will live in it.”

Jeremiah complains to the Lord that no one listens to him any more

²²“I said to the Lord, ‘To whom can I speak and give warning? No one listens to me any more. Their ears are closed. The word of the Lord is offensive to them. ²³Yet I am so full of the words of your wrath I cannot hold them in.’”

Jeremiah told to speak to the children

²⁴“The Lord said to me, ‘Pour out my words upon the children in the street and upon the youth who gather together. Then their fathers and their mothers and the elderly shall get to hear of it.’”

²⁵“For houses, fields and wives will be turned over to others when I stretch out my hand against those who live in the land says Jehovah.”

An army from the north will show no mercy

²⁶“Say to the people, ‘Jehovah says, Ask for the ancient path. Ask where the righteous way is and walk in it, then you will find rest for your souls.’”

²⁷“But you have said, ‘We shall not walk in it.’ Therefore an army is coming from the north^{F*} armed with bow and spear. They are cruel and show no mercy. They roar like the sea as they ride their horses to attack you.”

²⁸“Go not out in the fields or walk on the roads when they come, for the enemy has a sword and there will be terror on every side.”

5

King Josiah goes out to fight Pharaoh Neco king of Egypt

¹Now at this time, Pharaoh Neco king of Egypt marched his army northward to assist the Assyrians against the Babylonians. So Josiah king of Judah marched out to meet him in battle.^{F*}

Neco warns Josiah off

²Neco sent messengers to Josiah saying, “It is not you I am at war with O king of Judah. Hinder me not or God who is with me and who has told me to hasten will destroy you.”

Josiah does not listen to Neco and dies of an archery wound

³Josiah however did not listen to what Neco said at God’s command, but disguised himself and engaged him in battle on the plain of Megiddo.

⁴Josiah was wounded by archers so they took him out of his war chariot and put him in his other chariot and took him back to Jerusalem.

⁵But he died and was buried in the tombs of his fathers and all Judah mourned him.

Josiah one of the great kings of Judah

⁶Jeremiah the prophet composed laments for Josiah and to this day singers remember him.

*27 Babylon was located north east of Jerusalem but would attack from the north.

*1 At this stage Judah was an ally of Babylon.

JEREMIAH 6

⁷Josiah had reigned thirty one years.^{F*} There was not a king like him, neither before nor after who turned so fully to the Lord with all his heart, soul, and strength, according to all the Law of Moses.

⁸Nevertheless the Lord did not revoke his anger against Judah because of all the evil that King Manasseh had done.

Jehoahaz made king

⁹The people of Judah took Jehoahaz, the twenty-three year old son of Josiah and made him king.

Pharaoh Neco deposes Jehoahaz and makes Jehoiakim king

¹⁰But Jehoahaz did evil in the eyes of the Lord as his forefathers had done, and after three months Pharaoh Neco came and dethroned him in Jerusalem and put him in chains.

¹¹Neco then chose Eliakim, another son of Josiah to be king and changed his name to Jehoiakim.^{F*}

Neco paid a tribute of silver and gold

¹²Pharaoh Neco also demanded tribute from Judah, 100 talents of silver and a talent of gold.^{F*} Jehoiakim paid Neco the silver and gold by taxing the people of Judah.

Jehoahaz taken in exile to Egypt

¹³Neco took Jehoahaz the dethroned king with him to his camp at Riblah in Syria, and then afterward back to Egypt where he died.

Jehoiakim also an evil king

¹⁴Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he became king. He also did evil in the eyes of the Lord his God.

6

The Lord willing to relent of bringing disaster on Judah if the people repent

¹Early in the reign of Jehoiakim, the word of the Lord came to the prophet Jeremiah saying, **“Stand in the courtyard of the Temple and speak to the people from the towns of Judah who come to worship.”**

²**“Tell them everything I command you. Do not omit a word. Perhaps they will repent of their evil ways, then I will relent and not bring upon them the disaster I am planning.”**

The Lord pleads for genuine reform

³**“Say to the people, ‘Hear the word of Jehovah you people of Judah who enter these gates to worship him.’”**

⁴**“Reform your ways and I will let you live in this land. Deal justly and oppress not the foreigner, the fatherless or the widow. Do not shed innocent blood or follow other gods. ⁵Then shall I let you live forever in this land that I gave your forefathers.”**

*7 Josiah was 39 years old when he died.

*11 Changing the name of a king demonstrated a conquering leader's authority over him.

*12 A talent was about 34kg (75lbs).

⁶**“Why do you continue stealing and murdering and committing adultery and lying, and worshipping Baal and other gods and then come and stand before me in my house and say, ‘We are safe!’”**

If Judah does not repent both the Temple and Jerusalem shall suffer the fate of Shiloh and Israel

⁷**“Go to Shiloh where I first established my house in this land. See what I did there because of the wickedness of my people.” ^{F*}**

⁸**“If you do not follow my law and heed the words of my prophets whom I have sent to you again and again, though you have not listened, I shall make this Temple a ruin like Shiloh. And this city will become deserted and an object of scorn among the nations of the earth.”**

⁹**“Then shall I thrust you from my presence, just as I did your brothers the people of Ephraim.” ^{F*}**

Jeremiah seized by the priests and false prophets and threatened with death

¹⁰However when the priests and false prophets heard Jeremiah speak these words of the Lord they seized him and said, **“You shall die! Why have you prophesied in Jehovah's name that this Temple shall be like Shiloh and this city become deserted?”** And all the people crowded around Jeremiah in the courtyard of the Temple.

The priests and false prophets condemn Jeremiah before the king's officials

¹¹When the king's officials heard these things they came up^{F*} from the royal palace to the Temple and took their seats at the New Gate.

¹²The priests and false prophets said to the officials and to the people, **“This man should be put to death. He has prophesied against the city.”**

Jeremiah defends himself before the king's officials

¹³But Jeremiah answered saying, **“*Jehovah sent me to prophesy against this Temple and this city. Therefore reform your ways and obey the Lord your God then he will relent and not bring the disaster he has pronounced upon you.*”**

¹⁴**“As for me, I am in your hands. Do with me whatever you think right. Only know for certain that if you put me to death you will bring the guilt of innocent blood upon yourselves and this city.”**

The officials and people support Jeremiah

¹⁵At these words the officials and people said to the priests and the prophets, **“This man should not be sentenced to death just because he has spoken to us in the name of the Lord our God.”**

*7 Shiloh was a town north of Jerusalem where Joshua first located the Tabernacle when the Israelites took possession of the promised land. It was a total ruin in the days of Jeremiah.

*9 The exiled northern kingdom of Israel was sometimes called Ephraim, after the dominant tribe.

*11 The temple was at a higher elevation than the palace.

¹⁶One of the elders also stepped forward and said, “Micah the prophet who prophesied in the days of King Hezekiah said, ‘*Jehovah says, “Jerusalem will become a heap of rubble and the Temple hill a mound overgrown with thickets.”*’

¹⁷Did Hezekiah put him to death? Did not Hezekiah revere the Lord and seek his favour? And did not the Lord relent so that he did not bring the disaster he pronounced against them? We may be about to bring a terrible disaster upon ourselves.”

¹⁸Ahikam the secretary also stood up for Jeremiah, so he was not handed over to be put to death.

Uriah the prophet put to death by Jehoiakim

¹⁹Now there had been another prophet of the Lord who prophesied the same things as Jeremiah. His name was Uriah. When Jehoiakim the king heard his words he had tried to put him to death, but Uriah fled to Egypt.

²⁰However Jehoiakim sent men after him and they brought Uriah back to the king who then had him struck down with a sword.

Jeremiah not to pray for the people any longer

²¹The word of the Lord that came to Jeremiah: “Pray no more for this people, nor plead for them for I will no longer listen to you.”

²²“From the time your forefathers left Egypt until now, again and again I sent my servants the prophets to warn them. But they did not listen and did more evil than their forefathers. Nor do they listen to you.”

The idolatrous practices of Judah

²³“Do you see what they are doing? The children gather wood, the fathers light the fire, and the mothers knead dough to make cakes for the Queen of Heaven.^F * They also offer drink offerings to other gods to provoke me to anger.”

²⁴“Shave your head and mourn O Judah for I Jehovah have rejected this generation. You have done evil in my eyes. You have set up abominable idols in the house that bears my name and defiled it. You have burned your sons and daughters in fire in the valley of Hinnom.”

Severe punishment coming upon Jerusalem

²⁵“I will bring an end to the sounds of joy, to the voice of bride and bridegroom in the towns of Judah and streets of Jerusalem.”

²⁶“The land will become empty and the bones of the kings, priests, false prophets and people of Jerusalem will lie unburied, like dung on the ground exposed to the sun and moon and stars of the heavens which

they loved and worshipped.”

²⁷“And the survivors of this evil nation whom I shall exile will prefer death to life.”

²⁸“Why does Jerusalem always turn away and refuse to return? They cling to deceit. I have listened attentively but they say not what is right. ²⁹No one repents of his wickedness. Each pursues his own course heedlessly, like a horse charging into battle.”

The written law changed by the lying pens of scribes

³⁰“Even the stork and the swift observe the time of their migration, but my people know not the requirements of their Lord. They say, ‘We are wise for we have the written law of Jehovah.’ ³¹But the lying pens of the scribes have even turned my words into falsehoods.”

Jeremiah laments over a vision he saw of the exile of Judah

³²“*Sorrow saddens my heart, for I hear my people weeping in a land of exile far away. They cry out, ‘Is the Lord no longer in Jerusalem?’*”

³³“*Why did they provoke him to anger with their worthless foreign idols? The harvest is past, the summer has ended and they are not saved.*”

³⁴“*Since my people are crushed, I too am crushed. I mourn and dismay has taken hold of me. Is there no balm in Gilead? Is there no physician there? Why then is there no healing for my people?*”

³⁵“*O that my head were a spring of water and my eyes a fountain of tears. I would weep day and night for the slain of my people. ³⁶I will weep and wail for the mountains and pastures, for they are deserted. The lowing of cattle is not heard and the birds have fled.*”

Dead bodies to lie like cut grain behind the reaper

³⁷“*For Jehovah has said, “I will punish and refine my people, for what else can I do? I will make Jerusalem a heap of ruins, a haunt of jackals and I shall lay waste the towns of Judah so that no one can live there.”*”

³⁸“The dead bodies of men will lie in the open fields, like cut grain behind the reaper, with no one to gather them.”

The Lord delights in kindness, justice and righteousness

³⁹“*The Lord has also said, “Let not the wise man boast of his wisdom or the strong man boast of his strength, nor the rich man of his riches. ⁴⁰But let him who boasts boast that he knows me and that he acts in kindness, justice and righteousness, for in these things I delight.”*”

*²³ The Queen of Heaven was the Babylonian name for Ashoreth (also known as Ishtar), a goddess of fertility and sometimes of war. She was worshipped throughout Mesopotamia, Egypt and Caran. Worship rites often involved prostitution. Women offered star-shaped cakes in her honour.

*³⁴ The lush region of Gilead, east of the river Jordan was famous for a tree resin used as a healing balm.

JEREMIAH 7

The foolishness of worshipping man-made idols

⁴¹“Hear what the Lord says to you O house of Israel: ‘Follow not the ways of other nations, for they are worthless. They cut a tree from the forest and a craftsman shapes an idol with his chisel. ⁴²He adorns it with silver and gold and then fastens it with a hammer and nails so it will not totter.”



The grim reaper – vivid imagery taken from Jeremiah 6:38.

⁴³“Like scarecrows in a field their idols cannot speak and they must be carried for they are unable to walk. Fear them not for they can do no harm, nor can they do any good.”

Jeremiah exalts Jehovah as the only true God

⁴⁴“No one is like you O Lord, your name is mighty in power. Among all the wise men of the nations there is none like you. All believe foolish doctrines and worship worthless wooden idols which have no life in them.”

⁴⁵“Jehovah is the true God, the Eternal King. When he is angry the earth trembles and nations cannot abide his wrath.”

7

Israel and Judah have broken the covenant of their forefathers

¹The word of the Lord that came to Jeremiah: “Say to the people of Judah and Jerusalem, ‘Cursed is the man who breaks the covenant I made with your forefathers when I brought them out of Egypt.”

²“I said to your forefathers, ‘If you obey my commandments you will be my people and I shall give you a land flowing with milk and honey, the land you possess today. But you returned to the sins of your forefathers.”

³“Both the house of Israel and the house of Judah have broken the covenant I made with their forefathers.”

Judah once a thriving olive tree

⁴“You were once a thriving olive tree with well formed fruit, but now with the roar of a mighty storm I am coming to break your branches off and burn them.”

Judah has provoked the Lord to anger by idolatry

⁵“I Jehovah Almighty who planted you has decreed disaster, for you have done evil and provoked me to anger by burning incense to Baal.”

The Lord reveals a plot against the life of Jeremiah

⁶“The Lord revealed to me a plot against my life by the men of my home town Anathoth. ⁷I had been going like a lamb to the slaughter and did not know they were plotting my death saying, “We will cut him off from the land of the living.”

⁸“O Lord, you who judge righteously, let me see your vengeance upon them for in your hands I have placed my life.”

The plotters and their families soon to be destroyed

⁹“The Lord said to me, ‘I will punish them in time. Their sons shall die by the sword and their son’s children by famine. Not a remnant of these men of Anathoth who seek your life saying, “Prophecy no more in the name of the Lord or you will die by our hands” will be left when I bring disaster in the year of punishment.”

Jeremiah asks the Lord to punish the wicked immediately

¹⁰“I said to the Lord, ‘You are always righteous O Lord when I bring a case before you, but why are you still allowing the wicked to prosper and live in ease? Your name is ever on their lips but far from their hearts. ¹¹Drag them off like sheep to be slaughtered”

Jeremiah asks the Lord how long the drought will last

¹²“And how long will the land lie parched and withered because of wickedness? The animals and birds are dying. Moreover the people are saying, ‘God does not care what happens to us.”

Jeremiah’s weariness is rebuked by the Lord

¹³“The Lord answered me saying, ‘If running against men has wearied you, how will you contend with horses? ^F* Even your own family will deal treacherously with you and be in full cry after you.”

*13 ie There is worse to come. Soon Jeremiah will be persecuted by his own family and by kings and their officials.

The sword is soon coming to devour Judah

14“I have given the beloved of my heart into the hands of her enemies, for my shepherds have destroyed my vineyard.”

15“My sword shall devour from one end of the land to the other. No one shall be safe from the fierce anger of the Lord.”

Assyrians who invaded Israel also to be uprooted

16“As for the evil neighbours who invaded Israel, I am about to uproot them also from their lands.”

However Judah’s neighbours will eventually return to their own lands

17“However after I have plucked Judah from among them I shall have compassion on them also, and return them again to their own lands.”

Nations who worship the Lord will share the future blessings of Israel

18“And if they learn the ways of my people and swear by my name saying, ‘As surely as Jehovah lives,’ even as they once taught my people to swear by their god Baal, they shall dwell in the midst of my people.”

19“**But if any nation heeds not my word I will completely uproot and destroy them.**”

Jeremiah told to wear a linen belt then hide it in a damp place

20“**The Lord said to me, ‘Buy a linen belt and wear it around your waist but do not get it wet.’** So I bought a belt and wore it around my waist.”

21“**Then the Lord spoke to me saying, ‘Hide the belt in a crevice of the rocks by the wadi at Parath.’** F* So I went and did as the Lord told me.”



Wadi, a stream bed that only contains water when it rains.

Jeremiah’s belt ruined

22“**Many days later the Lord said to me, ‘Go now and get the belt I told you to hide.’** So I went and took the belt from where I had hidden it, but it was ruined.”

The ruined belt a symbol of Judah’s soon to be ruined pride

23“**Then the word of the Lord came to me**

*21 This wadi (an intermittent stream) near Jeremiah’s home town of Anathoth was called Parath, a common alternative name for the Euphrates river which ran through Babylon, probably symbolising the place of Judah’s exile.

saying, ‘In this same way I shall ruin the pride of Judah and the great pride of Jerusalem.’”

24“**These evil people who go after other gods will be like this belt, completely ruined. For as a belt is bound around a man’s waist, so I bound the whole house of Israel to me that they might be my people, for my renown, praise and honour. But they have not listened.**”

Jeremiah sent to prophesy before Jehoiakim the king and the queen mother

25“**Go now before the king and queen mother and say, ‘Take lowly seats, for your crowns shall fall from your heads. Judah is to be carried into exile far away. Invaders are coming from the north.’**”

26“**Where then will your flock be? What then will you say when Jehovah sets as head over you those whom you looked to as allies? Shall not pain grip you like that of a woman in labour?**”

As the leopard cannot change its spots neither can those accustomed to doing evil do good

27“**If you ask, ‘Why has this happened?’ It is because of your many sins. Can the leopard change its spots? Neither can you do good who are accustomed to doing evil.**”

28“**I will scatter you like chaff driven by the desert wind, for you have forgotten me and trusted in false gods. I have seen your shameless harlotry on the hills.**”

8

Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon invades the land

1During the third year of Jehoiakim king of Judah, Nebuchadnezzar prince of Babylon invaded the land.F*

King Jehoiakim pays him tribute for three years

2Jehoiakim made a treaty with him and paid tribute to him for three years.

Jeremiah prays for an end to the drought

3A prayer to the Lord by Jeremiah concerning the drought: “O Lord, Judah mourns and Jerusalem wails. They go to the cisterns but find no water. They return in despair with their jars unfilled.”

4“**The ground is cracked. The farmers are dismayed. Even the doe in the wilderness abandons her new-born fawn for lack of grass. Wild donkeys stand on barren hills and pant, their eyesight failing for lack of pasture.**”

5“**Though our sins testify against us, act O Jehovah for your name’s sake. We are calling you by name, do not forsake us.**”

*1 Although not recorded here, during this invasion Nebuchadnezzar took into exile some of the Judean nobles, probably as hostages. Among these was Daniel (see Daniel 1:1). Nebuchadnezzar (sometimes spelled Nebuchadrezzar) was only a prince at the time but was crowned king of Babylon following the death of his father when he returned home in 605 BC.

JEREMIAH 8

The Lord tells Jeremiah the people are past praying for

⁶“The Lord said to me, ‘Truly this people love to go astray, therefore I do not accept them. I will remember their sins and punish them.’”

⁷“Do not pray for the welfare of this people. Though they fast I will not heed their cry. Though they offer sacrifice I shall not accept them. Instead I will destroy them with sword, famine and plague.”

False prophets are lying to the people

⁸“I said to the Lord, ‘O Lord Jehovah, the prophets are saying to the people, ‘You shall not see the sword or suffer famine. You will have lasting peace in this land.’”

⁹“The Lord replied, ‘The prophets are prophesying lies in my name. I have not appointed them nor spoken to them. They prophesy false visions and the imaginations of their mind.’”

¹⁰“The prophets shall perish by sword and famine. They and the people to whom they prophesy shall lie dead in the streets of Jerusalem, victims of sword and famine, and there will be no one to bury them. I shall pour out upon them the calamity they deserve.”

Jeremiah told to prophesy a vision of sword and famine to the people

¹¹“Now go speak this prophecy to the people: ‘Jehovah says, “My eyes overflow with tears night and day without ceasing, for my people are struck a crushing blow. ¹²In the fields I see those slain by the sword. In the city I see the ravages of famine. For both prophet and priest are without knowledge.’”

Jeremiah makes a final plea to the Lord for mercy

¹³“I said to the Lord, ‘Have you completely rejected Judah? Is there no healing for us? We acknowledge our wickedness O Lord, for we have sinned against you. ¹⁴Do not spurn us, for your name’s sake. Can idols bring rain? No, only you O Jehovah our God.’”

Even Moses and Samuel could not change the Lord’s heart

¹⁵“The Lord said to me, ‘Even if Moses and Samuel were to plead before me, my heart would not go out to this people. I am sending them away from my presence.’”

Plague, starvation, sword and exile await Judah

¹⁶“If the people say to you, ‘Where are we going?’ answer them, ‘Jehovah says, Those destined for plague, to plague, those for starvation, to starvation, those for the sword, to the sword, those for exile, to exile.’”

Judah to be a horror to all kingdoms of the earth

¹⁷“Those who are slain shall be devoured

by the birds of the air and the animals of the earth. I will make Judah a horror to all kingdoms of the earth because of what Manasseh did in Jerusalem.”

The Lord weary of relenting for the people have not changed their ways

¹⁸“I shall bring bereavement and destruction on my people, for they have not changed their ways. I am weary of relenting.”

Widows to be more numerous than the sands of the sea

¹⁹“I will make their widows as numerous as the sands of the sea. The mother of seven shall grow faint and die, her sun shall set while it is still day. She will be disgraced and humiliated and her children put to the sword.”

Jeremiah complains of being cursed by the people and asks for vengeance

²⁰“Woe is me my mother that you gave me birth, for I am a man with whom the whole land contends. I have neither lent nor borrowed yet all of them curse me.”

²¹“O Lord you understand, remember me and bring vengeance on the heads of my persecutors. It is for your sake that I suffer these insults. For when your words came I tasted them and they became a joy, a delight to my heart.”

²²“I never sat in company with revellers nor made merry with them, I sat alone, for your hand was upon me. Why then are my troubles unending? Do not be to me like a spring that fails.”

The Lord orders Jeremiah to repent of such talk

²³“The Lord replied, ‘Repent of such talk, and you may serve me still. Only if you speak worthy and not worthless words will you continue to be my spokesman.’”

The people will oppose Jeremiah but not prevail

²⁴“It is this people who must turn to you, not you who must turn to them. This people will oppose you but they shall not prevail, for I am with you. I shall save you from the hands of the cruel.”

Jeremiah not to marry nor have children

²⁵“This word of the Lord came to me: ‘You are not to take a wife nor have children in this land. For sons and daughters born in this land shall die of plague, famine and sword and will not be mourned or buried. ²⁶Their bodies will lie on the ground like dung and become food for the birds and animals of the earth.’”

Jeremiah not to show sympathy or joy

²⁷“Nor are you to enter a house where one has died to mourn or to show sympathy, for I have withdrawn my pity from this people.”

²⁸“And do not enter a house where there is feasting, for in your days I will bring an end to the sounds of joy and gladness.”

Why the Lord is bringing disaster on Judah

²⁹“When the people say to you, ‘Why has the Lord decreed such disaster against us? What wrong have we done?’ ³⁰Answer them, ‘Jehovah says it is because your fathers forsook me and worshipped other gods and did not keep my commandments, and you have acted even more wickedly than your fathers.’”

³¹“And here you are still following your stubborn will and refusing to listen to me. So I will hurl you out of this land into a land neither you nor your fathers have known. There you shall serve other gods day and night.”

9

Cursed is he who trusts in man

¹“The Lord says, ‘Cursed is he who trusts in man and makes flesh his strength. He shall be like a stunted shrub in the desert and will not see prosperity.’”

Blessed is he who trusts in the Lord

²“Blessed is he who trusts in the Lord. He shall be like a tree planted beside water, sending its roots into the stream. He will never fail to bear fruit.”

Unjustly obtained wealth will be lost in mid-life

³“Like a bird hatching eggs it did not lay is the man who gains wealth by unjust means. When his life is half gone his riches will desert him.”

⁴“For I Jehovah search the heart of a man and reward him according to what his deeds deserve.”

Jeremiah asks the Lord to intensify the coming disaster for the people are mocking his words

⁵“I said to the Lord, ‘O Jehovah, men keep mocking me saying, ‘What has happened to the word of the Lord? We are waiting for it to come to pass.’”

⁶“I have not run from being your shepherd, therefore keep me from humiliation. Let my persecutors be put to shame. Let them be terrified. Bring on them the day of disaster with double destruction.”

Jeremiah sent to call on the people to keep the Sabbath day holy

⁷“The Lord said to me, ‘Go and stand in the People’s Gate by which the kings of Judah go in and out, and also all the other gates of Jerusalem and proclaim these words to the people.’”

⁸“Hear the word of Jehovah O king of Judah, and all you people of Judah, ‘Carry no load through these gates nor do any work on the Sabbath day, but keep the Sabbath day holy. ⁹This commandment I gave to your forefathers but they obeyed it not.”

Jerusalem to be inhabited forever if Sabbath kept

¹⁰“If you obey me, then the kings who sit on David’s throne will pass through the gates of this city with their officials, riding in chariots and on horses and this city will continue to be inhabited.”

¹¹“People will continue to come from the towns of Judah and Benjamin bringing offerings and sacrifices to the house of the Lord.”

¹²“But if you do not keep the Sabbath day holy I will kindle an unquenchable fire that will devour Jerusalem.”

Israel like clay in the hands of the potter to the Lord

¹³“The word of the Lord came to me saying, ‘Go down to the potter and there I will give you my word.’”

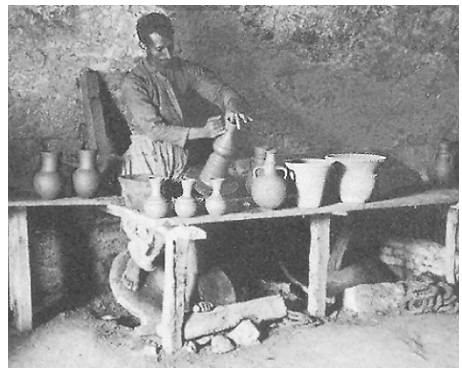
¹⁴“So I went down to the potter’s house and watched him working at his wheel. The pot he was shaping from clay turned out wrong so he formed it into a different kind of pot, as seemed best to him.”

¹⁵“Then the word of the Lord came to me, ‘O house of Israel, can I not do with you as this potter does? Like clay in the hand of the potter are you to me.’”

The Lord will relent of a threatened disaster if a nation repents

¹⁶“If at any time I declare that a nation is to be uprooted or destroyed, and that nation repents of its evil, then I will relent and not inflict on it the disaster I had planned.”

¹⁷“If at another time I announce that a nation is to be built up, and that nation does wrong in my eyes and obeys me not, then I will reconsider the good I had intended.”



A potter at his wheel in Israel.

¹⁸“O people of Judah, hear the word of Jehovah. I am preparing a disaster for you. So repent of your evil and reform your ways.”

¹⁹“But they will reply, ‘We shall continue with our own plans, according to the stubbornness of our evil hearts.’”

JEREMIAH 9

²⁰“Therefore their land will be laid waste, an object of horror. All who pass by shall be appalled and will shake their heads.”

The people want to rid themselves of Jeremiah and listen to their false prophets

²¹“Then the people said, ‘Let us rid ourselves of Jeremiah. We have our priests to teach us the Law and the wise to counsel us and the word from our prophets.’”

²²“Let us bring charges against this man and silence him. Then we will no longer have to hear his words.”

Jeremiah pleads with the Lord for vengeance on the people plotting against him

²³“Hear what my accusers are saying O Lord. They have dug a pit for me. Should good be repaid with evil? ²⁴Remember that I once prayed for you to turn your wrath away from them.”

²⁵“But now give their children over to famine, and hand them over to the sword. Let their wives be made widows and their sons be slain in battle.”

²⁶“You know of their plots to kill me. Do not forgive them O Lord. Deal with them in the day of your anger.”

Jeremiah told to buy a clay jar and take some leaders out to Valley of Hinnom

²⁷“The Lord said to me, ‘Go buy a clay jar from the potter. Then take some of the elders and priests with you and go out to the valley of Hinnom.’^{F*} There proclaim these words in their hearing:”

The valley of Hinnom a place of idolatry and child sacrifice

²⁸“Hear the word of Jehovah Almighty the God of Israel. I am going to bring such a disaster on this place that it shall make the ears of all who hear tingle.”

²⁹“For you have forsaken me and made this valley a place of foreign gods and have filled it with the blood of innocent children.

³⁰You have burned your children in fire to Molech, something I did not command nor did it ever enter my mind.”

The valley of Hinnom to be filled with the dead of Jerusalem

³¹“Therefore the days are coming when this valley will no longer be called the valley of Hinnom, but the valley of Slaughter.”

³²“For the bodies of the people who fall by the sword in Jerusalem shall be dragged here by their enemies and they will bury them until there is no more room. ³³Then they will leave the unburied carcasses to become food for the birds of the air and animals of the earth and there shall be no one to frighten them away.”^{F*}

*²⁷ The valley of Hinnom was just outside the walls of Jerusalem.

*³³ This prophecy came to pass during the Babylonian overthrow of Jerusalem. Years later the valley of Hinnom became a continually burning refuse dump of Jerusalem and was known during New Testament times as Gehenna,

Jeremiah to smash the jar a symbol of the fate of Judah

³⁶“Then you are to break the clay jar before the eyes of those who are with you and say to them, ‘Jehovah Almighty says, “As this jar is smashed beyond repair, so will I smash this city and nation.”’”

Pashhur the priest strikes Jeremiah and puts him in the stocks

³⁷So Jeremiah took some of the elders and priests and did all that the Lord commanded him. Afterward he returned to the courtyard of the Temple and began again to prophesy of the disaster to come upon Judah.

³⁸Pashhur the priest in charge of the Temple heard Jeremiah prophesying so he struck the prophet. Then he placed him in the stocks at the Upper Gate of the Temple.



The valley of Hinnom, later known as Gehenna (Hell) and used by Jesus to symbolise the emotional torment of the wicked after death.

Jeremiah prophesies regarding Pashhur

³⁹The next day when Pashhur released him from the stocks, Jeremiah said to him, “Jehovah has a new name for you Pashhur, it is ‘Man of Terror.’ ⁴⁰For he says, ‘I will send terror on you and all your friends. With your own eyes you will see them fall by the sword.’”

⁴¹“I will hand all Judah over to the king of Babylon and he shall put them to the sword or carry them into exile.”

⁴²“All the wealth of this city will also be carried away as spoil to Babylon, and you Pashhur and all your household will go there into exile and shall die there and be buried, along with those to whom you have prophesied falsely.”

Jeremiah’s sorrowful prayer

⁴³“O Lord, you persuaded me to prophesy and prevailed, but I am ridiculed all day long. They mock me saying, ‘Terror all around! Terror all around!’ And I hear threats. ‘Report him! Report him!’”

(translated Hell in some Bibles). Jesus used the burning dump, with its horrific history to symbolise the emotional torment of the wicked after death.

44“Even my former friends wait for me to slip saying, “Perhaps he will trip himself in his words then we can take our revenge on him.”

45“All I prophesy is violence and destruction. Therefore your words bring me insults and reproach all day long. 46But if I say to myself, ‘I will no longer speak in the name of the Lord,’ your word becomes like fire in my bones and I cannot hold it in.”

47“*But you O Lord are with me, like a mighty warrior, so my persecutors will not succeed. They will be eternally dishonoured.*”

48“O Lord Almighty, you who see and test the hearts and minds of the righteous, let me see your vengeance upon them.”

49“Sing to the Lord! Praise the Lord, for he delivers the needy from evildoers.”

50“O cursed be the day I was born. Cursed be the man who brought my father the glad news saying, ‘A son is born to you.’

51“Why did I ever come out of the womb only to see trouble and sorrow and to spend my days in shame?”



Ancient stocks

10

Judah has not listened to Jeremiah and others of the Lord’s prophets

1In the fourth year of Jehoiakim king of Judah, and the first year of Nebuchadnezzar^{F*} king of Babylon, Jeremiah the prophet proclaimed these words to the people of Judah: 2“For twenty-three years from the thirteenth year of King Josiah until this very day, I have prophesied the word of the Lord to you, but you have not listened.”

3“*The Lord has also sent other prophets to you but you have not heeded them.*”

Therefore Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon is coming to invade the land

4“*Therefore Jehovah Almighty says this to you: ‘Because you have not listened to my words I will summon the people of the north, even my servant Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and bring him against this land and all the surrounding nations.’*”

*1 Nebuchadnezzar was a brilliant king who reigned over the Babylonian empire for 43 years. He was noted for his military exploits and the splendour of his buildings and gardens in the city of Babylon.

5“*I shall ruin them and make them an object of horror and scorn, never to be forgotten.*”

Judah and surrounding nations to be ruined and to serve Babylon for seventy years

6“*I shall banish from them the sounds of joy and gladness, the voice of bride and bridegroom, the sound of millstones and the light of the lamp.*”

7“*This whole region shall become an empty wasteland, and the nations of this land will serve the king of Babylon seventy years.*”

Afterward the Babylonians also to be ruined

8“*Then when the seventy years are fulfilled, I will punish the king of Babylon and his people for their guilt, and will turn his city into a desert for all time.*”

9“*The Babylonians shall be enslaved by other nations, for I will repay them according to their deeds.*”

Jeremiah to warn the other nations

10“*Then the Lord said to me, ‘Take from my hand this winecup of my anger^{F*} and have the nations to which I command you to send my word, drink of it.’*”

11“*First to Judah, to make them a ruin and an object of horror and scorn.*”

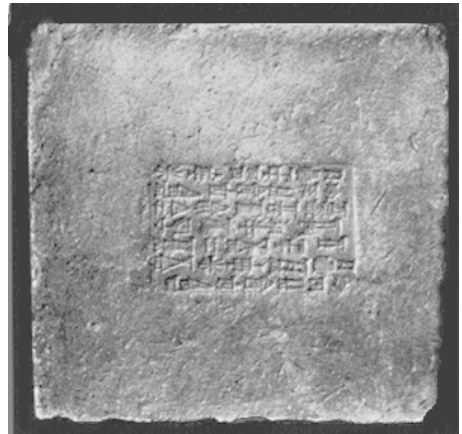
12“*Then to Pharaoh king of Egypt and all his people.*”

13“*Then to the kings of the east, to Edom, Moab and Ammon.*”

14“*Then to the kings of the Philistines and the kings of Tyre and Sidon and those of the coastal lands across the sea.*”

15“*Then to the kings of Arabia and the kings of Media, Elam, and Zimri and all the kings of the north, both near and far, one after the other.*”

16“*And after them you shall give it to the king of Babylon to drink.*”



A brick from Babylon inscribed with the name and titles of Nebuchadnezzar.

*10 ‘this winecup of my anger’ is a symbolic figure of speech for the prophecies Jeremiah was about to receive.

JEREMIAH 11

Disaster to come first upon Jerusalem as a sign

¹⁷“Say to them all, ‘Jehovah the God of Israel says, You will drink from the winecup of my anger. You shall become drunk, vomit, and fall helpless to the ground for I am sending a sword among you.’”

¹⁸“If they reject your words say to them, ‘Jehovah says, You shall indeed drink of it. See, I am about to bring disaster on the city that bears my name, so will you go unpunished?’”

¹⁹“You shall not go unpunished for I am sending a sword among all the nations.”

The guilty of the whole earth to be slain by Lord in the last days

²⁰“Then prophesy these words against them: ‘The day is coming when Jehovah will thunder mightily from his holy dwelling against all the inhabitants of earth. He shall judge all mankind and the guilty will be put to the sword.’”

²¹“A mighty tempest will stir from the distant parts of the earth and spread from nation to nation. Those slain by Jehovah on that day will extend from one end of the earth to the other.”

²²“They shall not be mourned or buried but lie as dung on the ground.”

11

Egyptian army defeated at Carchemish when attacking Babylon

¹The word of the Lord against the army of Pharaoh Neco, king of Egypt, who was defeated at Carchemish in the north near the Euphrates, by Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon in the fourth year of Jehoiaquim king of Judah.

The Lord derides Egypt

²“Prepare your shields for battle! Mount your steeds! Take your battle positions! Sharpen your spears! Put on your helmets and armour!”

³“But what do I see? They are retreating, fleeing in terror without looking back. In the north by the Euphrates they fall.”

⁴“Who was it that rose up like the Nile and said ‘I shall go out and conquer the earth! I shall destroy cities!’”

⁵“This day belongs to Jehovah Almighty. It is my day of vengeance. The sword will devour until it is satisfied, until it has quenched its thirst with blood. For I Jehovah shall offer sacrifice in the land of the north by the river Euphrates.”

⁶“Go to Gilead and get balm^{F*} O Egypt, but in vain for there is no healing for you. The whole earth will hear of your shame.”

Babylon to invade and exile Egypt

⁷The word of the Lord concerning the invasion

of Egypt by Babylon. “Get ready O Egypt, for the sword is coming to devour you. Apis^{F*} your bull shall not stand for I Jehovah will push him down.”

⁸“Pack your belongings for exile, for Memphis will be laid waste and lie in ruins without inhabitant. Egypt is a beautiful heifer, but a gadfly is coming against her from the north.”

⁹“The enemy advances in force. They come against you with axes, like men who cut down trees. More numerous than locusts they cannot be counted. ¹⁰Egypt shall be put to shame and handed over to the king of Babylon.”

Egypt to eventually return from exile

¹¹“I shall punish Egypt and her gods and her king, but after a time Egypt will again be inhabited as in times past declares Jehovah.”

Judah also to return from exile

¹²“And you too O Judah, I am going to save your descendants from the land of their exile. You shall return and again enjoy peace and security. Fear no more, for I am with you.”

¹³“I shall make an end of all the peoples among whom I have banished you, but I shall not make an end of you. However I will not leave you unpunished.”

Babylon to destroy the Philistines

¹⁴The word of the Lord concerning the Philistines. “See how the waters are rising in the north. They shall soon become an overflowing torrent and flood the nations.”

¹⁵“All who dwell in the land of the Philistines will wail. Soon will come the sound of galloping hooves of stallions and the rumble of chariot wheels. ¹⁶Parents hands will hang limp, unable to help their children. For the day has come to destroy all the Philistines, to cut off all who could help Tyre and Sidon.”

Babylon to lay waste and exile Moab

¹⁷The word of the Lord concerning Moab.^{F*} “Moab will be broken. Her little ones shall cry out. Anguished cries will be heard. Flee! Run for your lives!”

¹⁸“Your countryside will be laid waste and your towns become deserted. No one will live in them.”

¹⁹“Your finest young men shall be slaughtered. A curse on him who is lax in doing the work of the Lord and keeps his sword from blood.”

²⁰“They who flee will fall into a pit. Whoever escapes the pit will be caught in a snare.”

²¹“Since you trusted in your own might and your riches, you will be captured and go into exile, along with your god Chemosh

*7 Apis was an Egyptian god worshipped in the form of a bull.

*17 Moab is now part of modern day Jordan.

*6 See note on Jeremiah 6:34.

and his priests. ²²I shall put an end to those who burn incense to their gods declares Jehovah.”

Moab to be ashamed of their god Chemosh

²³“Joy and gladness shall flee from Moab’s orchards and fields. The flow of wine will cease from her presses. ²⁴Moab will be cut down and become ashamed of her god Chemosh as Israel became ashamed of Bethel.” F*

²⁵“Moab will become an object of ridicule, for was not Israel an object of your ridicule?”

Moab’s fortunes to be restored in the latter days

²⁶“Moab will be destroyed as a nation in the year of her punishment, for she defied Jehovah. Yet I shall restore the fortunes of Moab in the latter days.”

Babylon to scatter and exile the Ammonites

²⁷The word of the Lord concerning the Ammonites. “The days are coming when I shall sound a battle cry against Rabbah the city of the Ammonites. It shall become a ruin and its surrounding towns will be burned with fire.”

²⁸“Wail O citizens of Rabbah. Put on sackcloth and mourn. Rush here and there inside your walls.”

²⁹“Your god Molech shall go into exile, along with his priests and attendants and every one of you will be scattered.”

The Ammonites to return from exile

³⁰“You boast of your fruitful valleys and trust in your riches and say, ‘Who will attack me?’ I shall bring terror on you, declares Jehovah Almighty. ³¹Yet afterward I will restore the fortunes of the Ammonites.”

Innocent Dedanites living in Edom warned to flee

³²The word of the Lord concerning Edom. “Flee and hide in deep caves you Dedanites, F* for I am bringing disaster on Esau F* to punish him. ³³When thieves come during the night they steal only as much as they want, but I will strip Edom bare.”

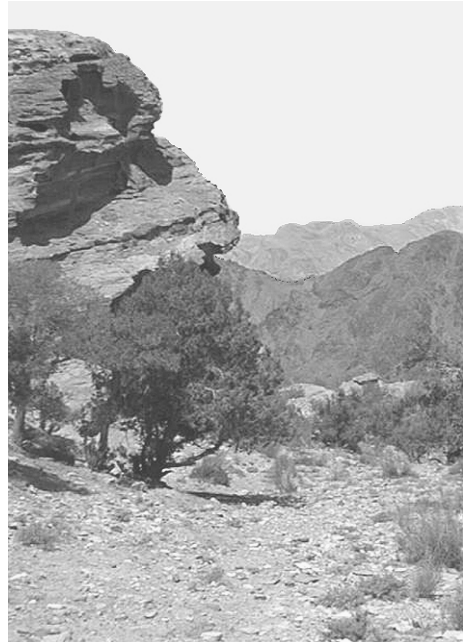
³⁴“Esau’s children shall perish and he will be no more, but I shall spare the lives of your orphans and widows. ³⁵For if others who do not deserve to drink of my winecup must drink it, should you go entirely unpunished? You shall not go entirely unpunished.”

Edom to become small and despised

³⁶“The city of Bozrah will become a ruin,

an object of cursing, and its surrounding towns shall be ruins forever. I shall make you small among the nations O Edom, and despised among men.”

³⁷“You who live high in the clefts of the rocks, your pride and the terror you inspire will be of no avail. ³⁸Though you have built your city as high as the eagles nest, I shall bring you down declares Jehovah. ³⁹In that day the hearts of your warriors shall be as the heart of a woman in labour.”



“You who live high in the clefts of the rock” (Jeremiah 11:37). The rugged kingdom of Edom.

The people of Jerusalem to eat the flesh of their children during the Babylonian siege

³⁴“I will devastate Jerusalem and make it an object of scorn. All who pass by shall be appalled. ³⁵During the siege by your enemies you will eat one another’s flesh and the flesh of your children.”

Babylon to defeat Damascus of Syria

⁴⁰The word of the Lord concerning Syria. “The cities of Hamath and Arpad are dismayed. They have heard dread news.”

⁴¹“Damascus has turned to flee. Panic, anguish and pain have seized her. Why has the famous city, this city of gaiety not been abandoned?”

⁴²“Therefore all her soldiers will fall in the squares, in the day when I kindle a fire at the walls of Damascus.”

Arabian kingdoms of the eastern desert to be attacked by Babylon

⁴³The word of the Lord concerning the eastern

*24 Bethel was the former site of calf worship by the exiled northern kingdom of Israel.

*32 The Dedanites were an Arabian tribe who lived among the Edomites.

*32 The Edomites were descendants of Esau, the twin brother of Jacob.



Nations prophesied against by Jeremiah

kingdoms of Kedar and Hazor. “Rise up O king of Babylon and attack Kedar. Destroy the people of the east. Their tents and flocks shall be spoil for you along with all their possessions and camels.”

⁴⁴“Flee quickly and hide in deep caves you who live in Hazor, for Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon plans to come against you too. Your camels and large herds shall become spoil.”

⁴⁵“Arise O king and attack this nation at ease, that lives secure without gates or bars.”

⁴⁶“Hazor will become a deserted place, a haunt of jackals. No one will live there again.”

12

Eventual capture of Babylon described

¹The word of the Lord concerning Babylon and the land of the Babylonians. “Announce to the nations, ‘Babylon shall be taken. Her gods Bel and Marduk shall be put to shame.’”

²“The Lord has stirred up the kings of the Medes,^{F*} for his purpose is to destroy Babylon in vengeance for his Temple.”

³“A mighty nation and many kings are stirring from the furthestmost parts of the earth. They are coming to plunder Babylon, armed with bows and spears and without mercy. ⁴They sound like the roar of the sea

*2 The Medes (of Media, formerly part of modern Iran) were a warlike people who lived north east of Babylon. They afflicted the Babylonians for nearly half a century until defeated by Cyrus the king of Persia (modern Iran) prior to his capturing Babylon.

as they ride their horses to attack.”^{F*}

⁵“The king of Babylon has received a report of their coming. His hands hang limp. Anguish grips him. Messengers follow one another saying ‘The city is taken at one end,’ ‘The river crossings are seized,’ ‘The marshes are set on fire.’ ⁶His soldiers are terrified, they have given up fighting.”

⁷“Raise a shout! She has surrendered! This is the vengeance of the Lord, to do to her as she has done to others. The workers of the fields shall flee to their own lands.”

Babylon to have done to her as she has done to others

⁸“For the Lord says:

‘A sword against the Babylonians!’

‘A sword against her officials and wise men!’

‘A sword against her false prophets!’

⁹‘A sword against her warriors!’

‘A sword against her horses and chariots!’

‘A sword against her treasures!’”

¹⁰“You who live by the river and are rich in treasures, your end has come. Your high gates are set on fire. ¹¹All who plunder the land of Babylon will have their fill. They will do to her as she has done to others.”

City of Babylon to become uninhabited forever

¹²“Wail over Babylon for she cannot be healed. Her guilt reaches to the skies. She

*4 The first invasion of Babylon was by the Persian emperor Cyrus the Great, who allowed Jews who wished to return to Judah to do so (Haggai 1:1-2). About 200 years later Babylon was invaded a second time, this time by the Greek emperor Alexander the Great, who occupied Babylon and made the city his empire headquarters. According to historic accounts, in both instances the Babylonians surrendered and opened the city gates to their conquerors. Babylon dwindled and died after the death of Alexander the Great who died of fever in the city.

shall be greatly ashamed and become the least of cities.”

¹³“Her canals shall dry up and she will become a dry desert, for she has sinned against Jehovah.”

¹⁴“No one will live in her, both men and animals shall flee away. Only desert creatures and hyenas will live there. The city shall never again be inhabited from generation to generation.”

¹⁵“All who pass by will be appalled and hiss because of her wounds.”



An artist's view of the splendour of old Babylon based on the ruins.



The main street of Babylon today.

Faithful exiles of Israel and Judah to return to Judah after the fall of Babylon

¹⁶“In those days exiles of Israel and Judah shall seek the Lord their God in tears. They shall ask the way to Jerusalem and will return and join themselves to me in an everlasting covenant.”

¹⁷“You of my people who have escaped the sword, leave, do not linger. Remember Jehovah in distant Jerusalem. Flee from Babylon!”

Israel devoured like lost sheep

¹⁸“My people have been as lost sheep. Their shepherds have led them astray and

caused them to wander. Whoever found them devoured them.”

¹⁹“The first to devour them was the king of Assyria, and now the king of Babylon is to gnaw on their bones. ²⁰He will say, ‘We are not guilty, for they sinned against Jehovah the God of their fathers.’”

²⁰“Therefore I will punish the king of Babylon and his land as I punished the king of Assyria.”

A remnant of Israel to return

²¹“But I will bring a remnant of Israel back to their own pasture and their appetite shall be satisfied on the hills of Ephraim and Gilead.”

The spared of Israel and Judah to have their sins forgiven

²²“There shall be no more guilt, for I will forgive the sins of the remnant of Israel and Judah that I have spared.”

13

Jeremiah told to write his prophecies on a scroll to remind Judah, who may repent

¹In the fourth year of Jehoiakim king of Judah this word of the Lord came to Jeremiah: “**Write on a scroll all the words I have spoken concerning Judah and the other nations, from the time I first began speaking to you.**”

²“Perhaps when the people of Judah are reminded of all the disasters I plan to inflict upon them, they will turn from their wicked ways so that I can forgive them.”

Jeremiah's scribe Baruch writes the words

³So Jeremiah called for his scribe Baruch and dictated all that the Lord had spoken to him and Baruch wrote the words on a scroll.

Jeremiah tells Baruch to read the words to the people as he is banned from speaking

⁴Then Jeremiah said to Baruch, “I am no longer permitted to speak at the Lord's Temple. You go there on the next fast day and read to the people from the scroll you wrote. ⁵Perhaps they will turn from their wicked ways, for the wrath pronounced against them by the Lord is great.”

⁶So Baruch did as Jeremiah asked.

Baruch becomes sorrowful and weary

⁷Afterward Baruch said to Jeremiah, “Woe is me. I have a heavy heart. Jehovah adds sorrow upon sorrow to me. I am weary and can find no rest.”

The Lord promises to protect Baruch's life

⁸Jeremiah replied, “**Jehovah says to you Baruch,** ‘I am about to uproot what I have planted in this land. Do not seek honour for yourself for distress is coming upon all people, nevertheless I will protect your life.’”

Micaiah a city official hears the words of the scroll

⁹In the ninth month of the fifth year of Jehoiakim a fast day was proclaimed for the

JEREMIAH 14

people in Jerusalem. So Baruch took the scroll and again went to read the words of Jeremiah to the people in the courtyard of the Temple.

¹⁰When Micaiah one of the city officials heard the words of the scroll he went down to the secretary and city officials at the palace and told them of the things he had heard from the scroll.

The city officials send for Baruch and have him read the scroll to them

¹¹The officials sent for Baruch saying, "Bring with you the scroll which you read to the people."

¹²When Baruch came they said to him, "Sit down and read it to us." So he read it to them.

The city officials are alarmed at the prophecies

¹³When the officials heard the prophecies they looked at one other in alarm and said, "We must report these words to the king."

¹⁴Then they said to Baruch, "How did you come to write all this?"

¹⁵Baruch replied, "Jeremiah dictated the words and I wrote them in ink on the scroll."

The officials take the scroll into the king

¹⁶The officials said to Baruch, "You and Jeremiah go into hiding." Then they took the scroll into the king.

King Jehoiakim listens but burns the scroll piece by piece

¹⁷King Jehoiakim ordered his aid Jehudi to read the words of the scroll to him in the presence of his attendants.

¹⁸The king was sitting in his winter apartment with a fire burning in a brazier before him. Whenever Jehudi read three or four columns of the scroll, the king would cut them off with a knife and throw them in the fire until the entire scroll was burned.

¹⁹The king and his attendants showed no fear, nor did they tear their clothes. Even though the secretary and the two officials with him urged the king not to burn the scroll he did not listen to them.

Baruch and Jeremiah ordered to be arrested but cannot be found

²⁰Instead the king ordered that Baruch the scribe and Jeremiah the prophet be arrested. But they could not be found.

Jeremiah told by the Lord to make another scroll

²¹Then this word of the Lord came to Jeremiah: "Take another scroll and write on it the words that were on the first which Jehoiakim king of Judah burned in the fire."

King Jehoiakim and his sons cursed by the Lord

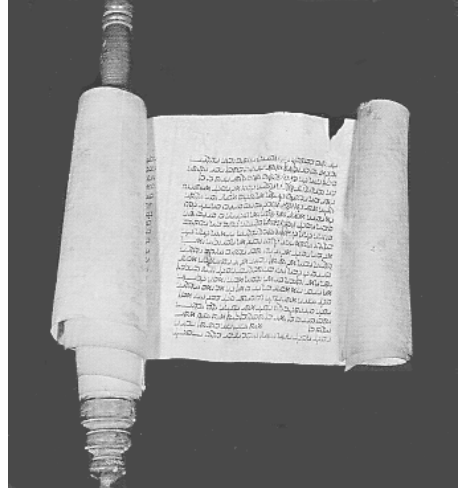
²²"Then go and say to Jehoiakim, 'Jehovah says, You have dared to burn this scroll, therefore you will not have a son to sit on the throne of David. Furthermore your dead body will be thrown out of Jerusalem and

exposed to the heat of the day and the frost of night.'"^{F*}

²³"I will punish you and your children and your attendants for their wickedness. I shall bring upon them and the people of Judah every disaster I threatened against them, for they have not listened to me."

Many other words added to the new scroll

²⁴So Jeremiah took another scroll and Baruch wrote on it all the words of the former scroll and many other words were also added.



An old ink-written scroll found in Israel.

14

Jeremiah sent to give Jehoiakim commandments and a warning

¹The Lord said to Jeremiah, "Go to the palace of Jehoiakim king of Judah and proclaim this message: 'Hear the word of Jehovah O king of Judah, you who sit on David's throne, you and your officials. ²"Do what is just and right. Defend the oppressed. Do no wrong to the foreigner, the fatherless, or the widow and do not shed innocent blood."

³"If you keep these commandments then kings who sit on David's throne will continue to pass through the gates of this palace, riding in chariots and on horses and accompanied by their officials."

⁴"But if you do not obey these commands destroyers will come and burn your fine cedar panelling and your palace and this city will become a ruin."

⁵"Travellers passing by will say to one another, 'Why has Jehovah done such a thing to this great city?'"

*22 See note on Jeremiah 15:3 for the fulfilment of this prophecy.

Judean exiles will never see their native land again

⁶“Weep not for the dead king O travellers, weep for those who have been exiled for they shall never see their native land again. F*
⁷“Jehoahaz king of Judah has already gone from this place and shall never return.” F*

King Jehoiakim rebuked for building a larger palace

⁸“Woe to you Jehoiakim, you who have built your palace in unrighteousness, making your countrymen work and not paying them for their labour.”

⁹“You said, ‘I shall build myself a larger palace with spacious upper rooms.’ So you built it with large windows and panelled it with cedar and decorated it in crimson.”

All went well with king Jehoiakim’s father Josiah because he defended the poor and needy

¹⁰“Does it make you a better king O Jehoiakim, to have more and more cedar? Did not your father Josiah have food and drink and do what was right and just?”

¹¹“He defended the poor and needy so all went well with him. Is that not what it means to know me?”

King Jehoiakim to suffer the shameful burial of a donkey

¹²“But your heart is set on dishonest gain, on shedding innocent blood and on oppression and extortion.”

¹³“I warned you when you felt secure, but you said, ‘I will not listen.’ This has been your way from your youth, you have not obeyed me.”

¹⁴“Therefore your people will not mourn you. You shall have the burial of a donkey, dragged away and thrown outside the gates of Jerusalem.”

The Recabite family to be offered wine

¹⁵“Then this word of the Lord came to Jeremiah: ‘Go to the Recabite family and invite them into one of the rooms of the Temple. There offer them wine to drink.’”

¹⁶“So I went to Jaazaniah and his brothers and all his sons, the whole family of the Recabites F* and took them into an upper room of the house of the Lord. F* There I set cups of wine before them and said to them, ‘Drink some wine.’”

The Recabite’s refuse to drink the wine

¹⁷“But they replied, ‘We do not drink wine. Our forefather Jonadab, son of Recab gave us

this command: ‘Neither you nor your descendants must ever drink wine. ¹⁸Also you must never build houses, sow seed, or plant vineyards, but must always live in tents. Then you will live many days in the land where you are staying.’”

¹⁹“We have obeyed all that our forefather commanded us. Neither we nor our wives, nor our children have ever drunk wine or built houses or had vineyards, fields or crops.”

²⁰“We have lived in tents. But when Nebuchadnezzar invaded the land we came here to Jerusalem to escape the Babylonian armies.”

The Lord commends the faithfulness of the Recabites

²¹Then the word of the Lord came to Jeremiah. “Go say to the people of Judah, ‘Jehovah says, Will you not learn a lesson from the Recabites? Jonadab son of Recab commanded his sons not to drink wine and this command has been kept to this day. ²²But I have commanded you again and again and you have not obeyed me.’”

²³“Therefore I am going to bring on Judah every disaster I pronounced against them, for I spoke to them but they did not listen.”

The Recabites blessed to serve the Lord for all time

²⁴“But the descendants of Jonadab son of Recab shall never lack a man in my service for all time.” F*

15

After three years Jehoiakim rebels against Nebuchadnezzar

¹After paying tribute for three years, Jehoiakim the king rebelled against Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon.

Jerusalem besieged by a Babylonian army

²So the king of Babylon sent an army to attack Judah and lay siege to Jerusalem.

King Jehoiakim dies during the siege

³During the siege Jehoiakim died. F* He had reigned eleven years in Jerusalem.

Jehoiachin becomes king but also does evil

⁴His eighteen year old son Jehoiachin became king. He also did evil in the eyes of the Lord, just as his father had done.

Jehoiachin and his mother

cursed by Lord to die in Babylon

⁵This word of the Lord came to Jeremiah: “Say to Jehoiachin king of Judah, ‘Jehovah says, As surely as I live, even if you were a ring on my right hand I would still pull you off.’”

*6 In Jeremiah 12:16 the Lord promised that the exiles should eventually return to Jerusalem, however 70 years were to elapse (Jeremiah 10:27 and all the adults he is addressing would die in exile and not see Jerusalem again, only their children would return.

*7 Jehoahaz was exiled to Egypt by Pharaoh Neco (Jeremiah 5:13).

*16 The Recabites, also known as Kenites were descendants of Moses’ brother-in-law Hobab (Numbers 3:5-7). They were therefore not full blooded Israelites.

*16 This room would have been located in the outer courtyard of the temple. Only priests were permitted to enter the temple proper, and then normally only to burn incense.

*24 According to Jewish tradition the Recabites were later given special duties in the rebuilt temple following the return from Babylonian exile.

*3 According to Jewish tradition the body of Jehoiakim was dragged outside the gates of Jerusalem and left unburied, perhaps to appease the besieging Babylonians. Such disrespectful treatment of a dead king was unheard of in Judah and indicates that he was hated by his people.

JEREMIAH 15

⁶“I will hurl you and your mother into another land and there you shall both die. You will never return here. I am handing you over to those whom you fear, even Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon.”

⁷“This man Jehoiachin is a despised broken pot, a man who shall not prosper in his days. Record him as childless for none of his sons will prosper and none will sit on the throne of David.”

The Lord to punish Judah’s uncaring and wicked shepherds

⁸“Woe to the shepherds who are scattering my sheep. I Jehovah the God of Israel say to the shepherds who tend my people, ‘Because you have scattered my flock and not cared for them, I shall punish you for your wickedness.’”

The Lord to appoint righteous shepherds when he restores his people

⁹“The days are coming when I will gather a remnant of my flock from the nations where I have driven them, and bring them back to their pasture.”

¹⁰“I will place shepherds over them who will tend them and they will no longer fear, nor shall any be lost.”

A righteous King (the Messiah) to be raised up from David’s line

¹¹“And the day will surely come when I shall raise up from David a righteous branch, a King who will reign wisely and do what is just and right in the earth.” F*

¹²“In his day Judah and Israel will be saved and live in safety. The name by which he will be called is Jehovah the Righteous.” F*

¹³“In that day people will no longer say, ‘As surely as Jehovah lives who brought the Israelites up out of Egypt’ but shall say ‘As surely as Jehovah lives who brought the descendants of Israel from the lands of the north and out of all the countries where he had banished them.’ F*

Jeremiah’s heart broken by the wickedness around him

¹⁴“My heart is broken within me and my bones tremble. The prophets follow an evil course and use their power unjustly and the land is full of adulterers.”

Judah still parched and more disaster to come

¹⁵“Because of the curse the land lies parched and withered. For the Lord says, ‘Both prophet and priest are godless. Even in my Temple I find wickedness. Therefore I shall bring disaster on them in the year they are punished.’”

*11 This prophecy is believed to refer to the Messiah (Jesus Christ) who was a descendant of David through Mary his mother. During the 1000 year millennium he will reign as ‘King of kings’ over the entire earth and a resurrected David will reign as king over a reunited Israel (Ezekiel 11:20).

*12 Both Jesus Christ and God the Father share the name/title Jehovah. See note on Genesis 2:9 for fuller explanation.

*13 The main gathering of Israel is to take place after the second coming of Jesus Christ (see introduction to Joel).

The false prophets of Jerusalem worse than those who were of Samaria

¹⁶“The prophets of Samaria prophesied by Baal and led my people Israel astray. But I see even worse wickedness in the prophets of Jerusalem. They commit adultery and live a lie, so that no one turns from his wickedness. All have become like Sodom and Gomorrah to me.”

Jerusalem’s false prophets have spread ungodliness throughout the land

¹⁷“Therefore I will punish the false prophets of Jerusalem, for from them ungodliness has spread throughout the land.”

The people warned not to listen to the dreams and lies of false prophets

¹⁸“Do not listen to what they prophesy to you. They fill you with false hope. They speak visions from their own minds, not from my mouth. They say ‘No harm will come to you.’”

¹⁹“But which of them has stood in the council of Jehovah to hear his word? If they had stood in my council they would have proclaimed my words to my people and would have turned them from their evil ways.”

²⁰“I have heard what these prophets say who prophesy lies in my name. ‘I had a dream. I had a dream.’ They plan to make my people forget my name by their dreams, just as their fathers forgot my name for Baal.”

The true word of the Lord like fire

²¹“Let the prophet who has a dream tell his dream, but let the one who has my word speak it faithfully. ²²For what has straw in common with wheat? Is not my word like fire. Is it not like a hammer that breaks a rock in pieces?”

²³“I am also against prophets who steal my words from another, or use their own words to declare falsely.”

²⁴“Therefore I will surely cast all of you and this city away from my presence and shall bring upon you lasting disgrace.”

Jehoiachin surrenders to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon

²⁵While the army officers of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon were besieging the city, King Nebuchadnezzar himself came up to Jerusalem.

²⁶Then Jehoiachin king of Judah surrendered to him and Nebuchadnezzar took him prisoner. He had reigned in Jerusalem three months and ten days.

Nebuchadnezzar takes treasures from the Temple and palace

²⁷Nebuchadnezzar removed treasures from the Temple of the Lord and afterward took them back to Babylon and put them in his Temple there. He also carried away treasures from the royal palace.

THE FIRST EXILE
The nobles, skilled craftsmen and
army taken into exile

²⁸Nebuchadnezzar then exiled to Babylon the king Jehoiachin and his mother, and his wives. Also his officials, the nobles of the land, 1000 skilled craftsmen and the entire army of 7000 fighting men, a total of 10,000 persons.

Nebuchadnezzar appoints Zedekiah king of Judah
²⁹Nebuchadnezzar chose the uncle of Jehoiachin to be king in his place. His name was Mattaniah but Nebuchadnezzar changed it to Zedekiah.^{F*}

16

Zedekiah an unrighteous king

¹Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he became king and he did wrong in the eyes of the Lord just as Jehoiakim had done. ²He did not humble himself before Jeremiah the prophet or heed the words the Lord spoke through him. Neither did his officials or the remaining people of the land.

³King Zedekiah did however send a priest to Jeremiah with this message: "Please pray to Jehovah our God for us."

Jeremiah's vision of the good and bad figs

⁴"After the king Jehoiachin and the nobles and craftsmen of Judah had been carried into exile to Babylon, the Lord showed me two baskets of figs. One basket had very good figs and the other basket had bad figs."

⁵"The Lord said to me, 'What do you see Jeremiah?'"

⁶"I answered. 'Figs. The good ones are very good but the bad ones are so rotten they cannot be eaten.'

The good figs represent those
who have gone into exile

⁷"Then the Lord said, 'The exiles from Judah whom I sent away to the land of the Babylonians are like these good figs.^{F*} My eyes shall watch over them for their good, and I shall bring them back to this land.'

⁸"I will give them a heart to know that I am the Lord. They shall be my people for they shall return to me with all their heart."

The bad figs are the rest of
the people of Judah

⁹"But Zedekiah and his officials and the people who remain in Judah, and those who live in Egypt^{F*} are like the bad figs which are so rotten they cannot be eaten."

Soon no one will be left in Judah

¹⁰"I will make them abhorrent to all the kingdoms of the earth, an object of ridicule and cursing wherever I banish them, and I will send the sword, famine and plague

against them until none are left in this land I gave to their fathers."

The false prophets prophesy lies

¹¹"So I went and declared to the priests and people of Jerusalem, 'Jehovah says, Heed not the false prophets who say, "Very soon now the treasures from the Temple will be brought back from Babylon." They prophesy lies to you. ¹²Serve the king of Babylon and you will live. Why should Jerusalem become a ruin?'"

Remaining Temple treasures
also to be taken to Babylon

¹³"Furthermore the bronze pillars, the large bronze basin and twelve oxen, the wheeled stands and other vessels that remain in the house of the Lord, which the king of Babylon did not take away, will also be taken to Babylon. ¹⁴They shall remain there until the day I restore them to this place."

Jeremiah to wear a wooden yoke and
prophesy to visiting envoys

¹⁵"Early in the reign of Zedekiah the Lord said to me, 'Make a yoke out of straps and wooden crossbars. Wear it on your neck as you give this message to the envoys of the kings of Edom, Moab, Ammon, Tyre and Sidon as they come to Jerusalem to visit Zedekiah king of Judah.'

Jehovah the God of Israel made the earth
and all that is on it

¹⁶"Jehovah Almighty the God of Israel says, Tell this to your masters: 'With my great power I made this earth and its people and the animals thereon, and I give it to whoever I please.'

Lord has handed over all
surrounding nations to Babylon

¹⁷"I have now handed over your land to my servant Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon. All the nations of this region shall serve him, and also his son and his grandson until the time of his own land is fulfilled. ¹⁸Then other nations and kings will overthrow Babylon."^{F*}

Surrounding nations can escape exile
if they serve the king of Babylon

¹⁹"If you refuse to serve Nebuchadnezzar, I will punish you with the sword, famine and plague until I destroy you by his hand."

²⁰"So heed not your prophets, your diviners, your interpreters of dreams, your mediums or your sorcerers when they say to you, 'You will not serve the king of Babylon.' ²¹They are prophesying lies that will only cause you to be exiled far from your lands, where you will perish."

*29 Zedekiah was the last king of David's line.

*7 The future prophet Ezekiel was among these exiles.

*9 Many Jews had fled to Egypt for safety.

*18 Babylon was overthrown by the combined armies of the Persian empire under the leadership of Cyrus the Great, about 55 years after this prophecy, and again about 200 years later by the combined armies of the Greek or Hellenistic empire under Alexander the Great.

JEREMIAH 17

²²“But if you will bow your neck under the yoke of the king of Babylon and serve him, I shall let you remain in your own land and till it.”

The false prophecy of the prophet Hananiah

²³In the fifth month of that same year, early in the reign of Zedekiah, as Jeremiah was wearing the wooden yoke, he heard the prophet Hananiah prophesy in the house of the Lord in the presence of the priests and the people.

²⁴Hananiah said, “Jehovah the God of Israel says, ‘I will break the yoke of the king of Babylon and within two years I will bring back to this Temple all the treasures that Nebuchadnezzar took to Babylon. ²⁵I shall also bring back Jehoiachin king of Judah and all the other exiles from Judah who went to Babylon.’”

Predictions of a true prophet come to pass

²⁶Jeremiah said to the prophet Hananiah, “May the Lord do so. Nevertheless, a prophet who prophesies peace will be known as one sent by the Lord only if his prediction comes to pass.”

Hananiah breaks Jeremiah’s wooden yoke

²⁷At these words Hananiah seized the wooden yoke from the neck of Jeremiah and broke it and said, “Jehovah says, ‘In this same way will I break the yoke of Nebuchadnezzar from the neck of the nations, within two years.’”

Nebuchadnezzar to be like a yoke of iron on the nations

²⁸Shortly after Hananiah had broken the wooden yoke this word of the Lord came to Jeremiah, “Go and say to Hananiah, ‘Jehovah says, You have broken a wooden yoke, but in its place shall come a yoke of iron. ²⁹I will put an iron yoke on the necks of the nations and make them serve Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon.’”

The Lord curses Hananiah the false prophet and he dies

³⁰Then Jeremiah said to Hananiah, “*Jehovah has not sent you. You have persuaded this nation to trust in lies. Therefore Jehovah says, ‘This very year you will die for you have preached rebellion against me.’*”

³¹In the following month Hananiah the prophet died.

17

Jeremiah writes to the exiles

^{1A} letter proclaiming the word of the Lord that Jeremiah sent to the exiles who had been carried into Babylon by Nebuchadnezzar:

Build houses and settle down in Babylon

²“Jehovah the God of Israel says to all whom I have sent into exile from Jerusalem to Babylon: ‘Build houses and settle down. Plant gardens and eat what they produce.’”

³“Marry and have children. Find wives for your sons and give your daughters in marriage so they too may have children. Increase in number, do not decrease.”

Pray for and help prosper Babylon

⁴“Seek for the peace and prosperity of the city to which I have exiled you. Pray to Jehovah for Babylon, for if Babylon prospers you too will prosper.”

The false prophets Ahab and Zedekiah will be burnt to death

⁵“Let not false prophets and diviners among you deceive you. Heed not their lies and their dreams. I have not sent them.”

⁶“Ahab and Zedekiah^{F*} are prophesying lies to you in my name.”

⁷“Therefore the king of Babylon will put them to death by fire before your very eyes.”

⁸“Moreover you will use this as a curse: ‘May the Lord treat you like Ahab and Zedekiah whom the king of Babylon burned in the fire.’”

⁹“For they are guilty of outrageous things. They have committed adultery with other men’s wives, and in my name they have spoken lies.”

The fate of those remaining in Judah

¹⁰“As for Zedekiah the king and all the people who did not go with you into exile, I will send famine and plague and the sword against them, and make them like rotten figs that are so bad they cannot be eaten.”

¹¹“I will make the remnant who survive, objects of cursing and horror among the nations where I drive them. For they did not listen to my words, and you exiles did not listen either.”

Exiles to return from Babylon in seventy years

¹²“Nevertheless when the seventy years are fulfilled for Babylon, I will bring you back to Jerusalem. For my plan is to prosper you and not to harm you. To give you hope and a future.”

Returned exiles will find the Lord if they seek him with all their heart

¹³“Then you will pray to me and I shall hear you. Then you will find me, if you seek me with all your heart.”

Shemaiah a false prophet in exile sends a letter to Jerusalem to have Jeremiah silenced

¹⁴When the prophet Shemaiah who was among the exiles in Babylon read the letter Jeremiah had sent, he wrote to Zephaniah the priest in charge of the Temple in Jerusalem, saying:

*6 Ahab and Zedekiah (not the king) were two false prophets among the exiles.

15“Jehovah has appointed you to be in charge of the Temple, and to put any madman who acts like a prophet into the stocks. Why then have you not punished Jeremiah who poses as a prophet among you?”

16“He has sent us a letter saying that we will be exiled here in Babylon a long time, and that we should build houses and settle down and plant gardens.”

Shemaiah cursed by the Lord to have no descendants

17Zephaniah however read the letter to Jeremiah.

18Then this word of the Lord came to Jeremiah: “Send a letter to the exiles saying, ‘Jehovah says, “Shemaiah has prophesied lies to you. I did not send him.”’

19“Therefore I will punish Shemaiah. Neither he nor his sons shall live to see the good things I will do for my people, for he has preached rebellion against me.”

Jeremiah sends his Babylonian prophecies to Babylon by Seraiah one of Zedekiah’s officials

20In the fourth year of the reign of Zedekiah, the prophet Jeremiah wrote on a scroll all the disasters recorded concerning Babylon. Then he gave the scroll to Seraiah, one of the king’s officials who was to accompany the king on a trip to Babylon.

Seraiah to read the prophesy in Babylon then throw it into the Euphrates

21Jeremiah said to him, “When you get to Babylon see that you read all these words aloud. 22Then you are to tie a stone to the scroll and throw it into the Euphrates and cry out, ‘So will Babylon sink, to rise no more.’”

18

Jeremiah commanded to write all his words in a book for future generations

1The word of the Lord came to Jeremiah: “Write in a book these words and all the other words I have spoken to you, for the day shall come when I will restore the fortunes of both Israel and Judah, and bring them back to the land I gave their forefathers to possess.”

A message from the Lord to all nations of the earth

2“Hear the word of Jehovah O nations of the earth. ‘The day shall come when I who scattered Israel will gather them again and watch over my flock like a shepherd. 3I will ransom Jacob^{F*} and redeem him from a hand stronger than his.”

The fearful day of the coming of the Lord

4“**In that day cries of fear shall be heard.**

Strong men shall be like women in labour, their faces a deathly pale.”

5“**How terrible that day will be. None will be like it. It shall also be a time of trouble for Israel, but Israel will be rescued.”**

David to be leader of gathered Israel during millennium

6“**In that day scattered Israel will no longer be servants to foreigners, instead they will serve Jehovah their God, and David whom I shall raise up for them. They shall be my people and I will be their God.”**

All the wicked to be destroyed from the earth in the last days

7“**In that day the storm of Jehovah shall burst upon the heads of the wicked of the earth. My fierce anger will not turn back until I fully accomplish the purposes of my heart. In those days you will understand this.”**

8“**Jerusalem shall be rebuilt on her ruins and the royal palace will stand in its rightful place.”**

Israel to be gathered from the very ends of the earth

9“**I will gather Israel from the lands of the north and from the very ends of the earth. The blind, the lame, women with children and expectant mothers. A great company shall return.”**

10“**They shall come weeping and praying and I will lead them beside streams of water on level paths where they will not stumble.**

11**For I am Israel’s father, and Ephraim^{F*} is my firstborn son, the child in whom I delight. Though I often speak against him my heart yearns for him.”**

The people to shout for joy

12“**They shall come and shout for joy on the heights of Zion.^{F*} They shall rejoice in the grain, the new wine and the oil, the young of the flocks and herds. 13Israel shall be like a well-watered garden and will sorrow no more.”**

Dancing and gladness in Israel

14“**Maidens will dance and be joyful, the young men and elderly as well. I will turn mourning into gladness. I shall give them comfort and joy instead of sorrow. 15Just as I watched over them to uproot and destroy, so shall I watch over them to build and to plant.”**

People to be punished only for own sins

16“**In those days people will no longer say, ‘The fathers have eaten sour grapes and the children’s teeth are set on edge.’ Instead each person will be punished for his own sins.”**

*11 Ephraim was the dominant tribe of the so called ‘lost tribes of Israel’ those exiled from the northern kingdom and lost to history. The vast majority of these Israelites will probably not be gathered until after the return of Christ. (See introduction to Joel.)

*12 Zion is the hill in Jerusalem where the Temple and king’s palace were located.

*3 Jacob was the original name of Israel, the father of the twelve tribes of Israel.

A new covenant to be made with the house of Israel

16“**For the time is coming when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel.**”

17“**It shall not be like the covenant of old that I made with their forefathers when I led them out of Egypt, for they broke that covenant.** 18**This time I will put my law in their minds and write it upon their hearts.**”

19“**No longer will it be needful for a man to teach another to know the Lord, for they shall all know me, from the least to the greatest.**”

A message from the Lord to scattered Israel

20“**O Israel, though I completely destroy all the nations among which I scatter you, I shall not completely destroy you, but will discipline you with justice.**”

21“**I will punish you as do the cruel, for your guilt is great, but all who devour you shall be devoured.** 22**Then I will at last heal your wounds, for you will have been called outcasts for whom no one cares.**”

Virgin Israel to dance and sing with joy

23“**O virgin Israel, again you shall take up your tambourines and go out to dance with joy. Songs of thanksgiving will be heard.**”

Israel no longer to be despised

24“**Again you shall plant vineyards on the hills of Samaria and enjoy their fruit. I will bring you honour. You will no longer be despised.**”

19

Zedekiah rebels against the king of Babylon

1In the ninth year of Zedekiah’s reign he hardened his heart and rebelled against Nebuchadnezzar,^{F*} even though the king of Babylon had made him take an oath in God’s name. Nor did he turn to Jehovah the God of Israel.

The people of Judah now even more unfaithful

2Furthermore the leaders of the priests and the people of Judah had become more and more unfaithful, following all the abominable practices of the nations and defiling the Temple of the Lord.^{F*}

3The Lord had sent word to them again and again through his prophet Jeremiah, but they mocked him until the wrath of the Lord was so aroused against his people there was no remedy.

Nebuchadnezzar’s armies come and besiege Jerusalem

4So on the tenth day of the tenth month, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon marched against Judah with his armies. They camped outside Jerusalem and built siege works all around the city.

*1 Zedekiah felt confident in doing so as he had negotiated a defence agreement with Egypt (see verse 16).

*2 Some of these idolatrous practices that took place in the temple were shown to Ezekiel the prophet who was at this time exiled in Babylon (see Ezekiel chapter 3).

King Zedekiah asks Jeremiah to inquire of the Lord

5Zedekiah sent Zephaniah the priest to Jeremiah to say, “Inquire of the Lord for us. Perhaps Jehovah will perform wonders for us as in times past so that Nebuchadnezzar will withdraw.”

Only sword, famine and plague lie ahead

6But Jeremiah answered, “Tell Zedekiah, ‘Jehovah the God of Israel says, “**I will turn against you the very swords you are using to fight the Babylonians who are outside the wall besieging you.**”

7“**I myself will fight against you in anger and fury. I shall strike both men and animals in this city and they will die of plague.**”

8“**After that I shall hand over Zedekiah and those who survive the sword, famine and plague, to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon. He shall put the people to the sword and show them no mercy.**”

Those who surrender to the Babylonians will escape with their lives

9“**However, even now I set before you a way of life and a way of death. Whoever stays in this city shall die by the sword, famine or plague. But whoever goes out and surrenders to the Babylonians will escape with his life.**”

10“**I have decreed this city harm. It shall be given into the hands of the king of Babylon and he will destroy it with fire.**”

Zedekiah told he will die peacefully in Babylon

11During the besieging of Jerusalem by the king of Babylon and the armies of the nations he ruled, this word of the Lord also came to Jeremiah: 12“**Go to Zedekiah king of Judah, and say to him, ‘Jehovah says, I have handed this city over to the king of Babylon and he will burn it down.’**”

13“**You shall not escape but will be captured and handed over to him. You shall see the king of Babylon face to face and he will speak with you, and you will go to Babylon.**”

14“**Yet hear this word O Zedekiah, ‘You shall not die by the sword but will die peacefully. As people made a funeral fire in honour of your father Josiah, so shall they make a fire in your honour.’**”

Two other cities of Judah also being besieged

15Two other cities of Judah were also holding out against the army of Babylon; Lachish and Azekah. These were the only fortified cities left in Judah.

Egypt comes to help Judah and the Babylonian army temporarily withdraw

16While the Babylonians were besieging Jerusalem, Pharaoh’s army marched out of Egypt to support Judah. The Babylonians heard the report and withdrew from Jerusalem.

The Lord reveals that the Babylonians will return and burn Jerusalem

¹⁷Then Zedekiah sent a message to Jeremiah the prophet to inquire of the Lord.

¹⁸Jeremiah sent back this reply: "Jehovah says, 'Pharaoh's army which set out to help you shall return to Egypt. Then the Babylonians will return and capture this city and burn it down.'"

¹⁹"Do not deceive yourselves thinking, 'The Babylonians will surely leave us.' For they shall not go away. ²⁰Even if you were to defeat the entire Babylonian army and only wounded men were left, they would still come and burn this city down."

Zedekiah orders all Israelite slaves to be freed

²¹Then Zedekiah made this proclamation to the people in Jerusalem: "Everyone is to free his Israelite slaves, both male and female. No one is to hold a fellow Israelite in slavery."

The people free their slaves with a covenant but later enslave them again

²²So the people agreed to free their slaves and even entered into a covenant in the Temple to do so.

²³But later they changed their minds and took their slaves back again.

The Lord curses the slave owners of Jerusalem to become a horror to all nations

²⁴This word of the Lord came to Jeremiah, "Say to the people, When I brought your forefathers out of Egypt I commanded them saying, 'Every seventh year you must free any fellow Israelite who has sold himself to you.'"

²⁵"Your fathers did not pay any attention to me. However recently you repented and did what was right in my sight. You even made a covenant before me in the house that bears my name."

²⁶"But now each of you have turned around and mocked my name. You have forced those you released to become your slaves again."

²⁷"As you have not obeyed me, I now proclaim a release for you. A release to fall by the sword, famine and plague. You will become a horror to all nations on earth."

The dead bodies of the slave owners who violated the covenant to lie unburied

²⁸"And the men who violated the covenant they made, I will hand over to the army of the king of Babylon who has withdrawn for a time. ²⁹Their dead bodies shall become food for the birds of the air and wild animals of the earth."

The Babylonians coming back to burn the cities of Judah

³⁰"I have given the order to bring the Babylonians back to this city. They shall fight against it and burn it down. I will lay waste the towns of Judah so that no one will live in them."

Jeremiah arrested for treason as he attempts to leave Jerusalem

¹During the time the Babylonian armies had withdrawn from Jerusalem because of Pharaoh's army, Jeremiah went to leave Jerusalem to go to his home town Anathoth to divide some property.

²But when he got to the Benjamin Gate the captain of the guard arrested him and said, "You are deserting to the Babylonians!"

³Jeremiah replied, "I am not deserting to the Babylonians." But the captain would not listen and took him before the officials.

Jeremiah beaten and imprisoned in a dungeon

⁴They too were angry with Jeremiah and had him beaten and imprisoned in a dungeon.

Jeremiah consulted by Zedekiah

⁵Zedekiah sent for him and had him brought to the palace and said to him privately, "Is there any word from the Lord?"

⁶Jeremiah replied, "There is, 'You will be handed over to the king of Babylon.'"

Jeremiah pleads with the king not to send him back to the dungeon

⁷Then Jeremiah said to the king, "What crime have I committed that you keep me in prison? Where are the prophets who prophesied that the king of Babylon would not come against you? ⁸Hear my plea O lord my king, do not send me back to the dungeon or I will die there." F*

Jeremiah removed from the dungeon and confined in the guard's quarters

⁹So Zedekiah gave orders for Jeremiah to be confined in the quarters of the guards and to be given a small loaf of bread from the bakers each day while the bread in the city lasted.

The king's officials seek Jeremiah's death for treason

¹⁰Now the king's officials had heard what Jeremiah had been telling the people when he said, "Jehovah says, 'Whoever stays in this city shall die by the sword, famine or plague, but whoever goes out to the Babylonians will escape with his life.'"

¹¹The officials said to the king, "This man should be put to death for he is discouraging the guards who are defending the city, as well as all the people."

The king fears to oppose his officials

¹²Zedekiah answered, "He is in your hands," for he feared to oppose them.

Jeremiah left to die in a muddy underground water cistern

¹³So they took Jeremiah and lowered him down by ropes into an underground water cistern near the quarters of the guard. It had no water in it, only mud and Jeremiah sank into the mud.

*8 Jeremiah was now about 55 years old.

JEREMIAH 21

An Ethiopian eunuch rescues Jeremiah

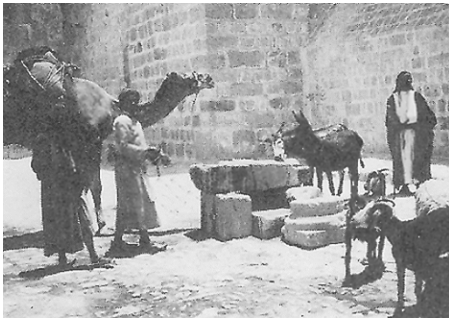
¹⁴But Ebed-Melech, an Ethiopian eunuch in the royal palace went to the king who was sitting at the Benjamin Gate and said to him, "My lord the king, these men have acted wickedly in what they have done to Jeremiah the prophet. They have put him into a cistern where he will starve to death."

¹⁵The king replied, "Very well, take three men from here and lift him out of the cistern before he dies."

¹⁶So Ebed-Melech took some men with him and they pulled Jeremiah up with ropes and he remained confined in the quarters of the guard.

The Lord rewards the Ethiopian with his life

¹⁷Then the word of the Lord came to Jeremiah, "Say to Ebed-Melech the Ethiopian: 'Jehovah says, I am about to fulfil my words against this city, but I shall rescue you on that day. ¹⁸You shall not fall by the sword but will escape with your life, because of your faithfulness.'"



The top view of a typical underground water cistern where Jeremiah was left to die.

21

The Babylonian armies return to the siege

¹In the tenth year of Zedekiah^{F*} the armies of the king of Babylon returned and again besieged Jerusalem.

Jeremiah buys a field off his cousin

²The word of the Lord came to Jeremiah the prophet who was still confined in the quarters of the guard in the royal palace of Judah, 'Hanamel your cousin is coming to you and will say, 'Buy my field at Anathoth, for as nearest kin it is your duty to buy it.'"

³"My cousin Hanamel came to me in the quarters of the guard and spoke these words as the Lord said, so I bought the field from my cousin. ⁴I signed the deed and had both copies witnessed and then weighed out for him seventeen shekels of silver^{F*} on the scales."

The property deed a sign to the people that daily life in Judah will one day return to normal

⁵"I gave the copies of the deed to Baruch in the presence of my cousin and of all the Jews^{F*} sitting in the quarters of the guard."

⁶"Then I gave Baruch these instructions: 'Jehovah the God of Israel says, "Take these deeds, both the sealed copy and the open copy and put them in a clay jar so they will last a long time. For houses, fields and vineyards shall again be bought in this land.'"

The Babylonians to destroy the homes of those who worshipped other gods

⁷"The Babylonians who are attacking this city shall break through and set it on fire. They will destroy the houses where the people provoked me to anger by worshipping other gods on their roofs."

The abominations of Israel and Judah

⁸"The people of Israel and the people of Judah have done nothing but evil in my sight, from their youth. And from the day it was built this city has so aroused my anger that I must remove it from my sight."

⁹"They even set up their abominable idols in the house that bears my name and defiled it. They offered up their sons and daughters to Molech in the valley of Hinnom."

Jerusalem to be surely gathered again

¹⁰"But I will surely gather the people of this city again from all the lands where I drove them in my great wrath. They shall be my people and I shall be their God."

Judah and Jerusalem will one day be restored as they were before

¹¹While Jeremiah was imprisoned this word of the Lord came to him: "I who made the earth and whose name is Jehovah say, 'The houses and royal palace of this city that are being torn down to defend against the siege ramps will soon be filled with the corpses of men I will slay in my anger.'"

¹²"Nevertheless, even though the towns of Judah and the streets of Jerusalem shall become a deserted wasteland empty of men and animals, the day will come when there shall be heard once more the sounds of joy and gladness. ¹³The voice of bride and bridegroom and the voices of those who bring offerings to the house of the Lord. For I shall restore the fortunes of this land as they were before."

The Messiah to spring up from David's line

¹⁴"The day shall also surely come when I will fulfil the promise I made to the house of Israel to cause a righteous branch to spring up from David's line.^{F*} He shall do what is just and right in the earth."

*1 The Babylonians had first arrived in the ninth year of Zedekiah.

*4 A shekel of silver was worth about a days wages.

*5 The term Jews at this stage referred to the people of Judah, later the term came to refer to Israelites of any tribe who returned to Israel after the Babylonian exile.

*14 The Messiah or Christ (see Isaiah 26:5-6 and note).

Great glory for Israel in the millennium

¹⁵“In those days Judah and Jerusalem will live in safety and the nation shall be called ‘The land of Jehovah the Righteous.’”

David’s royal line and the Levite priesthood to continue throughout the millennium

¹⁶“David shall never lack a man to sit on the throne of the house of Israel, nor will the Levite priests ever fail to have a man to stand before me to offer sacrifices.”^{F*}

Descendants of David and the Levites to become as numberless as sand on the seashore

¹⁷“I shall make the descendants of my servant David and the Levites who minister before me as countless as the stars of the sky and the sand on the seashore.”

Zedekiah summons Jeremiah privately and asks him for the word of the Lord

¹⁸At this time Zedekiah summoned Jeremiah privately to a room in the third gate of the Temple and said to him, “What message do you have for me from the Lord? Do not hide anything.”

¹⁹Jeremiah replied, “If I told you, you would put me to death, and you would not heed it.”

²⁰The king swore an oath to Jeremiah saying, “As Jehovah lives I shall neither kill you nor hand you over to those who are seeking your life.”

Zedekiah told that if he surrenders to Babylon he will save Jerusalem from fire

²¹Jeremiah said, “Jehovah the God of Israel says to you: ‘If you surrender to the officers of the king of Babylon your life and the lives of your family will be spared and this city shall not be burned.’”

King Zedekiah fears to surrender

²²Zedekiah replied, “I fear the Jews who have defected to the Babylonians. If I am handed over to them they will harm me.”

If Zedekiah refuses he and his family will suffer and the city will burn

²³Jeremiah prophesied, “*The Babylonians shall not hand you over. Obey Jehovah by doing what he says and it will go well with you.*”

²⁴“*But if you refuse to surrender, the Lord has shown me by vision that all your wives and children will be captured by the Babylonians. You too shall be seized by the king of Babylon and this city shall be burned.*”

²⁵The king said to Jeremiah, “Let no one know of this conversation or you may die.”

Jeremiah remains in prison until Jerusalem captured

²⁶Jeremiah remained imprisoned in the quarters of the guard until the day that Jerusalem was captured.

THE SECOND AND FINAL EXILE**22****Severe starvation in Jerusalem during siege**

¹Jerusalem withstood the siege until the eleventh year of King Zedekiah. By the fourth month of that year the famine in the city was severe. There was no food at all for the people to eat.^{F*}

The Babylonian army break through the city wall and begin putting the survivors to the sword

²That same month the city wall was broken through and the Babylonian army began putting the survivors of Jerusalem to the sword. They did not pity the young men or young women, nor the aged. God handed them all over to Nebuchadnezzar.

Zedekiah and the city guards escape by night

³However that same night, even though the Babylonians still surrounded the city, Zedekiah and the city guards fled. ⁴They escaped through a gate between the two walls near the king’s garden and fled toward the Jordan river valley.

The Babylonians pursue Zedekiah and capture him

⁵The Babylonians pursued Zedekiah and captured him near Jericho. The city guards had deserted him and scattered. The king and his sons and officials were taken to the king of Babylon who was then at Riblah in Syria.

Zedekiah’s sons slaughtered before his eyes

⁶There at Riblah, Nebuchadnezzar slaughtered the sons of Zedekiah before his very eyes, and killed all of his officials.

Zedekiah blinded and taken to Babylon

⁷Then Nebuchadnezzar blinded Zedekiah’s eyes and bound him with bronze shackles and took him to Babylon where he kept him in prison until the day of his death.

⁸He had reigned in Jerusalem eleven years.

The Babylonian army plunder Jerusalem

⁹The commander of the Babylonian army returned to Jerusalem and carried off to Babylon all the remaining gold, silver and bronze articles from the Temple; the censers, sprinkling bowls, wick trimmers and dishes. ^{F*}

¹⁰He broke up the bronze pillars that stood at the entrance to the Temple. Also the wheeled stands and the large bronze basin and the twelve bronze bulls under it.

¹¹The bronze was carried back to Babylon. It was more than could be weighed.

The Temple, palace and houses burned

¹²Then he burned the Temple. He also burned the royal palace and destroyed every important building and house in Jerusalem and broke down the city walls.

*1 This last siege lasted a whole year. In Jeremiah’s book of Lamentations he speaks of mothers eating their own children (Lamentations 2:4), this was also prophesied by the Lord (Jeremiah 9:34 and Leviticus 9:21).

*9 There is no mention of the Ark. See note on Jeremiah 3:8.

*16 See note on sacrifices in the future, Ezekiel 14:14.

JEREMIAH 23

The few survivors of Judah taken into exile

¹³Then the commander exiled to Babylon the people who had defected to him and those who were left in the city, 832 people.

Some of the poorest people left to till the land

¹⁴However he left behind some of the poorest people of the land who had nothing and gave them vineyards and fields.

The Babylonian commander frees Jeremiah

¹⁵Now during the siege of Jerusalem the king of Babylon had given this order to his commander: "Do not harm Jeremiah but do for him whatever he asks."

¹⁶The Babylonian commander found Jeremiah at Ramah^{F*} bound in chains among the captives from Judah who were being exiled to Babylon.

¹⁷The commander released Jeremiah and said to him, "Jehovah your God decreed disaster for this land and now he has done it. All this happened because your people did not obey him."

Gedaliah appointed to govern the few poor who remain in Judah

¹⁸"Today I am freeing you from the chains on your wrists. Come with me to Babylon and I will look after you, or go to Gedaliah^{F*} whom the king of Babylon has appointed to govern the few poor people who remain in Judah and live with him, or go anywhere else you please."

Jeremiah remains with Gedaliah in Judah

¹⁹Then the commander gave Jeremiah food and a gift and let him go. So Jeremiah went to Gedaliah and stayed with him at Mizpah^{F*} among the poor people who were left behind in the land.

23

The escaped guards return to Gedaliah

¹When the guards who had escaped from Jerusalem into the desert heard that the king of Babylon had appointed Gedaliah as governor over the land, they came to him at Mizpah.

The guards assigned to harvesting

²Gedaliah reassured them and then said, "Stay in the land and serve the king of Babylon and it shall go well with you. I will stay here at Mizpah to represent you before the Babylonians, but you go out and organise the summer harvesting and the storage of the wine, fruit and oil in the towns in which you choose to live."

Jews from surrounding nations also come to Gedaliah

³Jews who had been driven to Moab, Ammon, Edom and other surrounding nations also came to Gedaliah at Mizpah, and took part in harvesting the abundance of wine and summer fruit.

*16 A town about 8 kms north of Jerusalem.

*18 Gedaliah was a Judean official of high rank.

*19 A town about 10 kms north of Jerusalem.

Gedaliah disbelieves a warning of a plot on his life

⁴Then Johanan along with other captains of the men who had been guards in Jerusalem came to Gedaliah and said to him, "The king of the Ammonites has plotted with Ishmael to take your life. Therefore allow me to kill Ishmael. Why should he take your life and cause the remnant of Judah to perish?"

⁵Gedaliah replied, "You must not do such a thing. What you say about Ishmael is untrue."

Gedaliah assassinated by Ishmael a former royal official

⁶But in the seventh month, Ishmael who was of royal descent through David and had been one of Zedekiah's officials came with ten men to Gedaliah at Mizpah.

⁷While they were eating together they struck down Gedaliah with the sword. They also killed all the Jews and Babylonian soldiers who were with him.

Ishmael slaughters seventy others

⁸The next day before anyone knew of the deaths, eighty men arrived at Mizpah from the northern towns of Samaria. They were in mourning and on their way to Jerusalem with grain offerings and incense to present before the Lord at his Temple.^{F*}

⁹Ishmael went out to meet them weeping as he went. Then he said to them, "Come and greet Gedaliah." But when they entered the town, Ishmael and the men with him arose and began to slaughter them.

¹⁰But ten of them said to Ishmael, "Do not kill us! We have wheat, barley, oil and honey hidden in a field." So he did not kill them with the others.

¹¹They threw the bodies of the seventy who were slain into a large water cistern.

Ishmael takes captives with him and departs for Ammon

¹²Ishmael took captive all the rest of the people who were in Mizpah, including Jeremiah and the king's daughters whom the commander of the Babylonian army had left in Gedaliah's care. Then he set out for the land of the Ammonites.

Johanan the chief guard and his men pursue him and rescue the captives

¹³When Johanan and his men heard of the crimes Ishmael had committed, they pursued him and caught up with him near the pool in Gibeon and rescued the captives. But Ishmael and eight of his followers escaped to the Ammonites.

Johanan and the people decide to flee to Egypt but ask Jeremiah for confirmation from the Lord

¹⁴Johanan and his men thought it best to take the captives and flee to Egypt for they were afraid of the Babylonians after what Ishmael had done. ¹⁵However while stopped near

*8 The temple was now a burned out ruin but these men were probably unaware of the full extent of the damage.

Bethlehem they said to Jeremiah the prophet, "Pray to Jehovah your God that he will tell us what we should do. We will obey the Lord so that all will go well with us."

The Lord counsels the people to stay in Judah

¹⁶Jeremiah said to them, "Very well, I will pray to Jehovah your God as you request."

¹⁷Ten days later the word of the Lord came to Jeremiah. He called the people together and said to them, "Jehovah the God of Israel says, 'If you stay in Judah I shall build you up and not tear you down, for I am grieved over the disaster I have inflicted upon you.'

¹⁸"Do not fear the king of Babylon for I am with you and will deliver you from his hands. He shall have compassion on you and restore you to your land."

If they flee to Egypt they will die

¹⁹Then Jeremiah said, "If you disobey the Lord your God and say, 'We will go instead and live in Egypt where we shall not see war or be hungry for bread,' this is what the Lord says: 'If you are determined to go to Egypt, then the sword you fear and the famine you dread will follow you there, and you shall die.'

²⁰"All who go to Egypt shall die by the sword, famine and plague. No one who flees there will survive the disaster I am bringing upon them. You will never see Judah again."

The people disobey the Lord and flee to Egypt

²¹At these words, Johanan and the arrogant men with him said to Jeremiah, "You are lying. Jehovah our God has not sent you to say we must not go to Egypt to settle there. ²²Baruch^{F*} is inciting you against us to hand us over to the Babylonians so they will kill us, or carry us into exile to Babylon."

Jeremiah and all who remained in Judah also taken to Egypt

²³So Johanan and all the people disobeyed the Lord's command to stay in Judah.

²⁴They took with them to Egypt, Jeremiah the prophet, Baruch, the king's daughters and also all the Jews who had come back to live in the land of Judah from the surrounding nations.

²⁵They entered Egypt in disobedience and stayed at Tahpanhes.

Jeremiah told to bury stones at Pharaoh's palace entrance

²⁶While at Tahpanhes this word of the Lord came to Jeremiah: "While the Jews are watching you, take some large stones and bury them under the brick pavement at the entrance to Pharaoh's palace in Tahpanhes."

Nebuchadnezzar to invade Egypt and set up his throne over these stones

²⁷"Then proclaim these words, 'Jehovah the God of Israel says, I will send for my

servant Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and he shall set up his throne over these stones that are buried here."

²⁸"He shall come to attack Egypt, bringing the sword to those destined for the sword, and exile to those destined for exile."

The temples of Egypt to be burned

²⁹"He will demolish the sacred pillars in the temple of the sun and burn all the temples of Egypt and carry away their gods."



Egypt, also fell to the Babylonians.

Empty land of Judah begins its Sabbath rest

³⁰In the twenty-third year of his reign, Nebuchadnezzar sent the commander of his guard to the land of Judah and exiled the remaining 745 Jews. ^{F*}

³¹Then the empty land began its seventy year Sabbath rest, in fulfillment of the word of the Lord spoken by Jeremiah.

24

The Lord warns the Jews living in Egypt to repent of their idolatry or be destroyed

¹The word of the Lord that came to Jeremiah in Egypt concerning the Jews living in that land: "You saw the great disaster I brought upon Jerusalem and upon all the towns of Judah. ²Today they lie deserted and in ruins, for they provoked me to anger by worshipping other gods."

³"Again and again I sent my servants the prophets, but they would not listen and turn from their wickedness. ⁴Therefore my fierce anger was poured out against Jerusalem and the towns of Judah. I made them the empty ruins they are today."

⁵"Now why are you bringing further disaster upon yourselves by cutting off from Judah even the remnant? Why are you provoking me to anger by burning incense to the gods of Egypt, where you have come to live? ⁶You will destroy yourselves and

*22 Baruch was Jeremiah's scribe.

*30 Perhaps as a reprisal for the murder of Gedaliah and Babylonian soldiers, see Jeremiah 23:7.

JEREMIAH 24

become an object of cursing among the nations of the earth.”

⁷“All the remnant of Judah who were determined to go to Egypt will perish in Egypt. They shall fall by the sword or die from famine. None shall return to Judah except a few fugitives.”

The Jewish women choose to continue worshipping the Queen of Heaven

⁸Then all the men whose wives burnt incense to the Queen of Heaven^{F*} and all the women who were present said to Jeremiah, “We do not believe the message you have spoken to us in the name of Jehovah. ⁹We shall continue to burn incense to the Queen of Heaven, just as we and our fathers and our kings and officials did in Judah.”

The people blame their troubles on neglecting the worship of the Queen of Heaven

¹⁰“When we did so we had plenty of food and were prosperous and suffered no harm. But ever since we stopped worshipping the Queen of Heaven we have become poor and have been perishing by sword and famine.”

Jeremiah corrects the people’s belief

¹¹Jeremiah answered the people saying, “*It is because you worshipped the Queen of Heaven and obeyed not the law of Jehovah that this disaster has come upon you.*”

The Jews will perish by sword and famine if they continue worshipping the Queen of Heaven

¹²“*Now hear the word of the Lord all you men of Judah in Egypt: ‘You and your wives have made it clear that you intend to continue worshipping the Queen of Heaven. Very well then, do so.’*”

¹³“*But I swear by my great name that you Judeans living in Egypt will perish by the sword and famine until you are all destroyed.*”

¹⁴“*Those who escape the sword and return to Judah shall be very few. Then you shall*

know whose word will stand, mine or yours.”

Pharaoh Hophra’s overthrow will be a sign to the Jews

¹⁵“This shall be the sign to you that I will punish you in this place: I shall hand Pharaoh Hophra king of Egypt over to the king of Babylon, just as I handed over Zedekiah king of Judah.”



Ashtoreth also known as Ishtar and Astarte, the goddess worshipped widely as the Queen of Heaven.

*⁸ Ashtoreth, also known as Ishtar and Astarte. See note on Jeremiah 6:23.

OBADIAH

Obadiah the prophet was called by the Lord to strongly rebuke the nation of Edom. It seems that Judah's old enemy had gloated over and taken advantage of their destruction by the Babylonians.

The Edomites were descendants of Esau, the brother of Jacob and were therefore related to the Israelites. They lived in the high mountainous area south of the Dead sea (part of modern day Jordan).

Edom appears to have incurred a heavy curse of the Lord, dooming them to annihilation as a nation. They were eventually scattered and disappeared from history after the Roman destruction of Jerusalem in 70 AD. King Herod who tried to kill the infant Jesus was an Edomite (Idumean in Greek).

Nothing is known about the personal life of the prophet Obadiah.

AUTHOR The prophet Obadiah.

“You should not have looked down and gloated over your brother Judah on the day of his destruction.” Obadiah 1:6.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Obadiah prophesies the downfall of Edom	1	Both houses of Israel to be reunited in millennium ...	1
Edom rebuked for gloating over fall of Jerusalem	1	But Edom shall be annihilated	1
The great day of the Lord coming	1	Israel to possess Edom during millennium	1
Jerusalem shall become holy	1		

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Obadiah prophesies the downfall of Edom

¹The vision of Obadiah the prophet concerning Edom.

²**The Lord God says, I shall make you small and utterly despised among the nations. The pride of your heart has deceived you, you who live in the clefts of the rocks and make your home on the heights.** ³**You say to yourself, ‘Who can bring me down to the ground?’ I shall bring you down.”**

⁴**“In that day your warriors will be terrified. Every man of them in Esau’s mountains will be slain. You shall be shamed because of your slaughter and violence against your brother Israel.” F***

Edom rebuked for gloating over the fall of Jerusalem

⁵**“You stood aloof while strangers entered the gates of Jerusalem and carried off your brother’s wealth. You too were like them.”**

⁶**You should not have looked down and gloated over your brother Judah on the day of his destruction.”**

⁷**You should not have looted his goods,**

neither should you have waited at the cross-roads to cut down the fugitives and hand over survivors in his day of trouble.”

The great day of the Lord coming

⁸**“For the great day of the Lord is coming upon all nations of the earth. And as you have done, so shall it be done to you. Your deeds will return upon your own head.”**

Jerusalem shall become holy

⁹**“But in Jerusalem shall be deliverance. Jerusalem shall become holy and the house of Israel will possess its inheritance.”**

Both houses of Israel to be reunited during millennium but Edom shall be annihilated

¹⁰**“The house of Jacob shall be a fire, and the house of Joseph^{F*} a flame in that day, but the house of Esau shall be stubble.**

¹¹**There shall be no survivors from the house of Esau. I Jehovah have spoken.”**

*10 Joseph was the father of Ephraim and Manasseh, and from these two sons the two tribes of these names descended. Ephraim became the dominant tribe of the ten tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel (which included Manasseh). Consequently the ten are often referred to collectively under the name of Ephraim or the house of Joseph (see Ezekiel 12:12-16). These ten tribes, now exiled and lost to history are to be gathered again when the Lord returns and will reunite with the house of Judah.

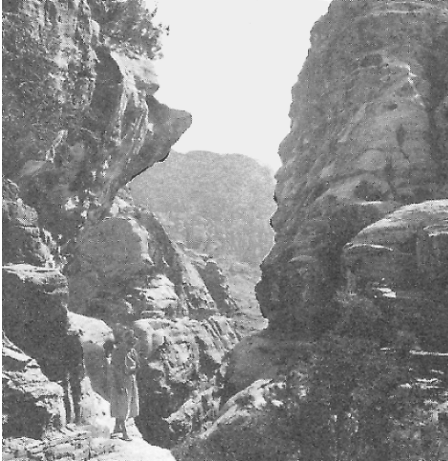
*4 The Edomites were descendants of Esau, the brother of Jacob and were therefore related to the Israelites.

OBADIAH 1

Israel to possess Edom during millennium

¹²“Israelites from the Negev^{F*} will take possession of the mountains of Esau. Benjamin shall possess Gilead, and those from the foothills will possess the land of the Philistines.”

¹³“Those who are saved on Mount Zion shall rule the mountains of Esau, and the whole kingdom shall be the Lord’s.”



Ruggedness typical of the land of Edom.

*11 The Negev was the dry region in southern Judah.

EZEKIEL

The prophet Ezekiel was a Levite priest who had been deported from Jerusalem to Babylon during the first exile. This was when King Jehoiachin and his officials and Judah's 7000 man army – about 10,000 persons in all, were exiled. Ezekiel was therefore a contemporary of Jeremiah.

Ezekiel was called to prophesy to his fellow exiles in Babylon about six years before the second exile and destruction of Jerusalem. Through him, the Lord prophesied vividly of the coming destruction of Judah and the surrounding nations, using graphic symbolism.

Like his contemporary Jeremiah, Ezekiel was not taken seriously as a prophet until he was proved right by the destruction of Jerusalem and the 'all is well' false prophets were proven wrong.

This is a most interesting book. Ezekiel was a highly gifted prophet, who like Moses saw the Lord in person and spoke with him face to face. His writings are noted for their clarity and orderliness. Typically he describes the appearance of the Lord in detail, ie *"Seated on the throne was a figure, in the likeness of a man. From his waist up he glowed like molten bronze as if full of fire. From his waist down he was enveloped in fire. A brilliant radiance surrounded him, with all the colours of a rainbow, in the likeness of the glory of Jehovah"* (Ezekiel 1:17-18).

Ezekiel also gives a detailed description of the Lord's mode of travel – a glorious, sapphire blue throne, supported by bright, winged cherubs.

Ezekiel wrote clear descriptions of all that he saw and experienced. On one occasion he was carried away in the spirit to Jerusalem 900 kms away to witness for himself scenes of idolatry taking place within the confines of the Temple.

Ezekiel's revelations add much to our understanding of the future conditions of Israel during the coming thousand year reign of Jesus Christ on the earth known as the millennium.

On one memorable occasion, Ezekiel was taken to a valley full of dry bones and watched in amazement as the bones were resurrected back into an army of living men. Later he was taken by an angel on a detailed tour of the yet to be built millennial Temple of Israel. The future millennial boundaries of the gathered tribes of Israel were also revealed to Ezekiel.

Ezekiel further prophesied of Gog, who is to lead a latter day, multi-nation invasion of Israel, bringing about the great battle commonly known as Armageddon just prior to the second coming of Jesus Christ.

AUTHOR The prophet Ezekiel.

"For seven months men of Israel shall be fully employed burying the dead in order to cleanse the land." Ezekiel 13:22. (Following the battle of Armageddon.)

CONTENTS

Chapter

Ezekiel a priest among the exiles in Babylonia	1	Ezekiel given scroll with words of woe to eat	1
Ezekiel called as a prophet	1	House of Israel will not be willing to listen	1
Ezekiel sees visions of God	1	Ezekiel transported by the Spirit	1
Heavenly cherubim described	1	Ezekiel sits overwhelmed for seven days	1
Each cherub had four faces	1	Word of Lord comes to Ezekiel	2
A man, a lion, an ox and an eagle	1	Ezekiel to be a watchman for Israel	2
The wings of the cherubs	1	Ezekiel accountable if he does not warn the wicked ..	2
Brightly glowing bodies full of eyes	1	Righteousness not remembered if a man sins	2
The sparkling intersecting wheels	1	The glory of Jehovah appears to Ezekiel again	2
Sapphire blue throne of God on a crystal expanse ...	1	Ezekiel's tongue to be bound for his protection	2
Ezekiel sees God as a man enveloped in fire	1	Ezekiel still able to speak messages from Lord	2
God speaks to Ezekiel	1	Ezekiel to enact coming siege of Jerusalem	2
Ezekiel to be a prophet to Israel	1	Ezekiel to lie in public on his left side for 390 days ...	2

EZEKIEL

Then on his right side for 40 days	2	Jerusalem to eventually be forgiven	5
Ezekiel to continually prophesy against Jerusalem ...	2	Sodom and Samaria to be given her as daughters ...	5
Ezekiel to eat starvation rations	2	Parable of two eagles	6
Human dung to be used as fuel	2	Parable concerns Babylon, Jerusalem and Egypt ...	6
Ezekiel objects and is allowed to use cow dung	2	Zedekiah broke a covenant by enlisting Egypt's aid ...	6
People to be appalled at one others appearance	2	Egyptian army will be of no help to Judah	6
The rations a sign of what is to come in Jerusalem ..	2	A righteous leader in Jerusalem during millennium ...	6
Ezekiel to shave his hair and divide it three ways.....	2	Persons will Die for own sins not those of parents ...	6
Ezekiel's hair to symbolise fate of people	2	A righteous man defined	6
Only a few people of Jerusalem to be spared	2	An unrighteous man defined	6
Jerusalem more rebellious than surrounding nations ...	2	The wicked son of a righteous man shall Die	6
Parents to eat own children during siege	2	A righteous son of a wicked man will be saved	6
People to die of plague, famine and sword	2	Past sins not remembered when a person repents ...	6
Faces to be covered with shame	2	Lord pleased when the wicked repent	6
Those in the countryside also to die	2	Righteousness not remembered if a man sins	6
Foreigners to take Judah's silver and gold as spoil ..	2	Lord to judge every person according to their ways...	6
Calamity upon calamity until Lord's anger appeased ...	2	Lord takes no pleasure in death of anyone	6
Ruin of Jerusalem to be a warning to the nations.....	2	Ezekiel told to draw on the ground a fork in the road...	7
Judah to suffer because of her idolatry	2	Nebuchadnezzar to seek an omen	7
Some survivors to be scattered among the nations ..	2	The king of Babylon to take the road to Jerusalem ...	7
Ezekiel taken in spirit to Temple in Jerusalem	3	Royal throne of David to be overturned	7
He sees an idol in a Temple gateway	3	Until Messiah comes in the last days	7
Ezekiel enters a closed room in the Temple	3	Sins of Jerusalem that anger the Lord	7
Sees the idolatry of seventy elders	3	Wicked Israelites to be cast into Jerusalem	7
Sees women mourning for the god Tammuz	3	There they will be melted as dross in a furnace	7
Sees men worshipping the sun	3	Ezekiel told that the siege of Jerusalem had begun ..	7
Lord calls for destroying angels	3	Ezekiel's wife to be suddenly taken from him	7
The righteous to be marked on their foreheads	3	Ezekiel not to show any sign of mourning.....	7
The wicked symbolically slaughtered	3	Ezekiel's wife dies	7
Ezekiel pleads for the people of Judah	3	Exiles likewise not to mourn loss of the Temple	7
Symbolic fire scattered over Jerusalem	3	Ezekiel to regain his speech when news arrives.....	7
Ezekiel told to prophesy against the leaders	3	Lord to pull Egypt the crocodile out of Nile	8
The Spirit comes upon Ezekiel and he prophesies ...	3	Egypt a staff that splinters like a reed	8
Descendants of exiled Judah to be gathered	3	Egypt to be put to sword and exiled	8
The Spirit returns Ezekiel to Babylon	3	Egypt to become an empty wasteland	8
Ezekiel tells exiles all that he saw	3	Egypt to be gathered again after forty years	8
Ezekiel to act out going into exile	4	Egypt to never again rule over the nations	8
Enactment concerns Zedekiah and his people	4	Ammonites rejoiced over Jerusalem's downfall	8
The king will flee Jerusalem	4	Therefore the Ammonites to be destroyed	8
He will be caught, blinded and brought to Babylon ...	4	Moab also to be punished	8
Zedekiah to die in Babylon	4	The people of Edom to fall by the sword	8
A few of Judah will be spared the sword	4	The Philistines to be destroyed	8
So that other nations will know of their abominations...	4	Tyre rejoiced over fate of Jerusalem	9
Ezekiel to tremble as if in fear when he eats	4	Therefore Tyre to be besieged by the Babylonians ..	9
Jerusalem to eat and drink in fear and despair	4	The people of Tyre to be put to the sword	9
Prophecies of Judah's destruction nearing fulfilment ...	4	The city to be demolished and cast into the sea	9
Destruction of Judah not in distant future	4	The people to dwell in Sheol	9
False prophets of Israel to be disinherited	4	Island of Tyre to become a bare rock	9
False prophecies like whitewash over a flimsy wall ..	4	Pride and wealth of the king of Tyre	9
Woe to women fortune-tellers	4	King of Tyre to die at hands of foreigners	9
Lord will not be enquired of by idolaters	4	A lament to the fall of king of Tyre	9
Both prophet and idolater will be destroyed	4	Tyre likened to a beautiful ship	9
Idolaters called upon to repent	4	Tyre to be shipwrecked	9
The righteous can only save themselves	5	Sidon to be punished by plague and sword	10
Four judgements to come upon Jerusalem	5	Egypt and her allies to be destroyed by Babylon ..	10
Conduct of survivors will justify the Lord's anger	5	Nile to no longer be muddied by hooves of cattle ...	10
Jerusalem likened to a baby girl abandoned at birth ..	5	The hordes of Egypt to go down to Sheol	10
The Lord takes Jerusalem as his bride	5	Word arrives in Babylon that Jerusalem has fallen ..	11
Jerusalem becomes beautiful and famous	5	Ezekiel recovers his full powers of speech	11
But later she becomes a harlot	5	Fugitives hiding in the land of Judah also to die ...	11
Jerusalem turns to idolatry	5	Judah to become an empty wasteland	11
Jerusalem slaughters her own children	5	Exiles listen to Ezekiel but do not heed his words ...	11
Her promiscuity worsens	5	Exiles greedy for unjust gain	11
Jerusalem to be stripped naked in front of her lovers...	5	Ezekiel like a singer of love songs to the people ...	11
Jerusalem's lovers to hack her to pieces	5	Shepherds of Israel only take care of themselves ...	11
Then Lord's anger will subside	5	Lord to remove Israel's shepherds	11
Jerusalem like her uncaring mother	5	The Lord himself to become Israel's shepherd	11
Jerusalem like her sisters Sodom and Samaria	5	The fat and strong sheep to be destroyed	11

The Lord to be a just shepherd	11	Ezekiel to describe Temple to house of Israel	15
David to again be king of Israel during millennium ..	11	The whole mountain top to be holy	15
Israel to be greatly blessed in millennium	11	Measurements of altar of sacrifice	15
Ezekiel taken by Spirit to a valley of dry bones	12	How the altar is to be purified	15
Ezekiel told to command the bones to come alive...	12	The daily sacrifice	15
Flesh and skin cover the bones	12	Outer east gate to remain shut	15
Spirits enter the bodies and they stand up alive	12	No unworthy foreigner to enter Temple area	15
Lord to resurrect the dead of Israel	12	Only Levites may serve at the Temple	15
Then return them to their own land	12	Only Levites descended of Zadok can be priests	15
Stick of Judah and stick of Ephraim	12	Only priests permitted to offer sacrifices	15
The two sticks to be joined as one	12	Priests to wear linen garments in inner court	15
A sign that all Israel will be reunited in millennium ..	12	Priests not to drink wine before entering inner court ..	15
David to be king over all Israel in millennium	12	Grooming and marriage laws for priests	15
Lord to put his Temple in Israel forever	12	Priests to remain undefiled	15
Gog to lead a mighty army of many nations	13	Priests to be supported by donations of the people ..	15
Gog's army to advance against Israel in last days ..	13	Priests to serve as judges	15
Israelites will have gathered from many nations	13	Israel to be allotted inheritances in millennium	16
Israel to be a land of unwalled towns	13	A sacred Temple district to be set aside.....	16
A great earthquake will break up Israel	13	The Levites to live around the Temple	16
Gog's armies will turn on each other	13	The Holy City	16
Hail and fire to be poured down on Gog's army	13	Borders of sacred district to be used to grow food ..	16
Gog armies to fall on the mountains of Israel	13	The food for those who serve in the Holy City	16
Fire to fall on the northern nations and coastlands ..	13	King to be also allocated land	16
Holy name of Jehovah to be vindicated at last	13	All people of Israel to give offerings	16
Abandoned weaponry to provide fuel for 7 years ..	13	Offerings to be of grain, oil and sheep	16
Seven months to bury the dead	13	Offerings to be given to the king	16
Birds and wild animals to eat flesh of slain	13	King to furnish offerings for appointed feasts	16
Lord to reveal his face to Israel	13	Passover to be observed	16
Lord to pour out his Spirit upon them	13	Inner east gate to be opened each Sabbath.....	16
Ezekiel taken to high mountain in Israel	14	Only the king permitted to worship in east gate.....	16
Ezekiel sees a future millennial city.....	14	The people to worship outside the gate	16
Ezekiel sees an angel with a measuring rod	14	King's Sabbath sacrifice, six lambs and a ram	16
Angel measures Temple walls and gates.....	14	People to use north and south gates alternately	16
Outer courtyard of the Temple	14	King to attend appointed feasts with the people.....	16
Animal sacrifices to continue	14	Water to flow eastward from Temple	17
Inner courtyard wall and gateways	14	River lakes to form	17
Inner courtyard of the Temple	14	River to flow into and freshen the Dead Sea	17
Other buildings around the Temple proper	14	Swarms of fish to live in the Dead Sea	17
Priests to wear holy garments	14	Fruit trees to grow along the river banks	17
The altar of sacrifice and the Temple proper	14	Trees to bear fruit every month	17
Ezekiel taken inside the Temple proper	14	The millennial borders of Israel	17
The outer sanctuary	14	Foreigners also to receive inheritances	17
The inner sanctuary	14	New tribal boundaries for Israel	17
The side rooms	14	The Holy City to have twelve gates	17
Paneled walls, engravings and veiled windows	14	Gates to be named after the twelve tribes of Israel ..	17
Ezekiel sees Lord approaching in glory	15	Holy City to be named City of Jehovah	17
Lord enters Temple through the east gates.....	15	Siege of Tyre exhausting for Babylonian armies	17
Temple to become place of the Lord's throne	15	Spoils of Egypt to be given to Nebuchadnezzar	17
Lord to dwell among a cleansed Israel for ever.....	15	Israel to begin to recover in that day	17

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Ezekiel, a priest in exile called as a prophet in Babylonia

1The word of the Lord that came to Ezekiel the priest who lived among the exiles by the Kebar River^{F*} in the land of the Babylonians.

Ezekiel sees visions of God

2^{"In my thirtieth year, which was the fifth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin,^{F*} the heavens}

were opened to me and I saw visions of God."

3^{"I looked up and saw coming from the north a large storm cloud, surrounded by a glow of light, and lightning flashing from within. The centre of the cloud shone brightly, like polished bronze."}

Heavenly cherubim described

4^{"In the midst of the brightness I saw four}

*1 The Kebar River is believed to have been a man-made canal, connecting the Euphrates and Tigris rivers south of Babylon.

*2 Approximately six years before the destruction of Jerusalem by the Babylonians.

EZEKIEL 1

cherubim,^{F*} in appearance like men but each had four faces and four wings.”

5“Their legs were straight and their feet were like those of a calf, and they shone like polished bronze.”

6“Under their wings I could see that they had the hands of a man.”

**Each cherub had four faces –
a man, a lion, an ox and an eagle**

7“Each cherub had the face of a man looking outward, the face of a lion looking to the right, the face of an ox looking to the left, and the face of an eagle looking rearward.”

8“Their human faces looked outward in all four directions, so they could go directly forward without turning as they went, wherever the Spirit of God chose to go.”

The wings of the cherubs

9“Each cherub had four wings. Two wings spread upward, touching the wings of the cherub on either side, and two wings covered their bodies.”

10“Whenever the cherubim moved I heard the sound of their wings, like the roar of rushing waters, as the voice of God Almighty when he speaks.”

Brightly glowing bodies full of eyes

11“Their bodies were full of eyes all over, and also on their hands and wings.”

12“The cherubim glowed like burning torches and bright fire flashed between them continually, like lightning. They also darted back and forth like flashes of lightning.”

The sparkling intersecting wheels

13“I saw beneath each cherub four intersecting wheels, sparkling like golden crystal.

14As the cherubim moved, the wheels would move with them, and when they arose from the ground the wheels arose also.”

15“The rims of the wheels were high and awesome and full of eyes all around. I heard them called, “the whirling wheels.”

**A sapphire blue throne of God
upon a crystal expanse**

16“Above the heads of the cherubim I saw an expanse of sparkling crystal, awesome in appearance, and upon the expanse I saw a throne of blue sapphire.”

**Ezekiel sees God as a glowing man seated
on the throne enveloped in fire**

17“Seated on the throne was a being, in the likeness of a man. From his waist up he glowed like molten bronze as if full of fire. From his waist down he was enveloped in fire.”

18“A brilliant radiance surrounded him, with all the colours of a rainbow, in the likeness of the glory of Jehovah.”

God speaks to Ezekiel

19“When I saw him I fell face down on the

ground. ²⁰Then I heard a voice speak to me saying, ‘**Son of man, stand on your feet and I will speak with you.**’”



An artist's view of what Ezekiel saw.

21“As he spoke, the Spirit of God entered into me and raised me to my feet.”

Ezekiel to be a prophet to Israel

22“**Son of man,**^{F*} I am sending you to the people of Israel, a nation that has rebelled against me. A people who are obstinate and stubborn. ²³Speak to them what I the Lord God speak to you, and fear them not for they shall soon know there has been a prophet among them.”

**The Lord gives Ezekiel a scroll containing
words of woe to eat**

24“**Now, open your mouth and eat what I give you.**”

25“I saw a hand stretched out to me and in it was a scroll, which was unrolled before me. On both sides of the scroll were written words of woe.”

26“**So I ate it and in my mouth it tasted sweet as honey.**”

**The house of Israel not willing
to listen to Lord's words**

27“Then the Lord said to me, ‘**Son of man, go now to the house of Israel and speak my words to them.**’”

28“**You are not being sent to foreigners whose language you do not understand. If I**

*4 Cherubim (plural of cherub) are an order of winged angels with human-like form and intelligence, but possessing facial features depicting human, animal, or bird life. They appear to be throne attendants of God.

*22 Literally 'son of Adam' (Hebrew 'ben adam').

sent you to foreigners they would listen to me, but the house of Israel is not willing to listen for they are hardened and obstinate. ²⁹But I will make you as unyielding as they are, harder than flint, so fear them not.”

³⁰“Go now to your exiled countrymen and prepare to speak my words to them saying, ‘Thus says the Lord God,’ whether they listen or not.”

Ezekiel transported by the Spirit

³¹“Then the Spirit lifted me up and bore me away. And as the glory of the Lord arose, I heard behind me the sound of a great rushing. It was the sound of the wings of the cherubim.”

³²“I felt wrath within my spirit, for the strong hand of the Lord was upon me.”^{F*}

Ezekiel sits overwhelmed for seven days

³³“I came to the exiles who lived at Tel Abib, near the Kebar River and there I sat among them for seven days, overwhelmed by my vision.”

2

The word of the Lord comes to Ezekiel

- he is to be a watchman for Israel

¹“At the end of seven days the word of the Lord came to me saying, ‘Son of man, I have made you a watchman for the house of Israel, so speak my words of warning to them.”

Ezekiel to be held accountable if he does not warn the wicked

²“When I say to you of a wicked man ‘He will die’ and you do not warn him to turn from his evil ways to save his life, that man will die in his sins, but I will hold you accountable for his blood.”

³“But if you warn the wicked man and he does not heed you, he will still die for his sins, but you will not be held accountable.”

If a righteous man turns to evil his righteous deeds will not be remembered

⁴“If a righteous man turns and does evil, he will die in his sins, and his righteous deeds shall not be remembered.”

⁵“And if you do not warn him I shall hold you accountable for his blood.”

The glory of Jehovah appears to Ezekiel again

⁶“Now arise, go out to the plain. There I will speak to you as I did before.”

⁷“So I went out to the plain and the glory of Jehovah appeared before me again and I fell face down.”

Ezekiel’s tongue to be bound for his protection except to speak messages from Lord

⁸“The Spirit raised me to my feet and the Lord said to me, ‘Go and shut yourself inside your house or the people will tie you with ropes to prevent you from going out among them.”

⁹“I shall make your tongue cleave to the

roof of your mouth so that you cannot rebuke them.”

¹⁰“However when I speak to you, I shall open your mouth and you will be able to speak my words to them.”

Ezekiel to enact the coming siege of Jerusalem

¹¹“Now son of man, take a clay brick and draw the city of Jerusalem upon it. Then erect siege works against it. Build a ramp and put battering rams in place and set up camps round about.”

¹²“Take an iron plate and place it as an iron wall between you and the city, and then set your face against the city, as if besieging it. This will be a sign to the house of Israel.”^{F*}

Ezekiel to lie on his left side in the sight of the people for 390 days

¹³“Then lie on your left side, in the sight of the people^{F*} and take upon you the sins of the house of Israel. Do this for 390 days, one day for each year they have sinned against me.”

Then on his right side for 40 days

¹⁴“When those days are completed, lie down again in their presence, this time on your right side and bear the sins of the house of Judah. ¹⁵Do this for 40 days, a day for each year they have sinned.”

Ezekiel to continually prophesy against Jerusalem

¹⁶“Continue to set your face toward the depicted siege of Jerusalem and with your arm bared prophesy against her.”

¹⁷“I will bind you so you cannot turn from one side to the other until you have finished the days of your siege.”

Ezekiel to eat starvation rations as a sign of what is to come in Jerusalem

¹⁸“During the 390 days that you lie on your left side, you are to make bread for yourself from a flour of wheat, barley, millet and beans.”

¹⁹“Store the flour in a jar and weigh out twenty shekels^{F*} each day and eat it at set times. Also measure out a sixth of a hin of water^{F*} and drink it at set times.”

Human dung to be used as fuel

²⁰“Bake the bread in the sight of the people using human dung for fuel, as a sign that Israel will eat defiled food among the nations where I will drive them.”

Ezekiel objects and is allowed to use cow dung

²¹“But I said, ‘O Lord, I have never defiled

*12 These symbols depicted the forthcoming siege of Jerusalem by the Babylonians, with Ezekiel representing the Lord. The iron plate probably symbolised the barrier between the Lord and the people of Jerusalem and his refusal to be moved by pleading (Jeremiah 8:15).

*13 This was probably done in a public place during the busy period of each day.

*19 The flour would be about 230 gms weight and would have an energy value of about 800 calories, typical of a severely rationed supply.

*19 About two thirds of a litre.

*32 See verse 29 above where the Lord said that he would make Ezekiel ‘unyielding and hard’ also verses 8-9 in the next chapter.

EZEKIEL 3

myself from my youth until now.”

²²“He replied, ‘Very well, I will allow you to bake your bread over cow dung.’”

The people of Jerusalem will be appalled at the gaunt appearance of one another

²³“Son of man, I am going to cut off the supply of food in Jerusalem. The people will eat rationed food in anxiety. ²⁴Because of their sins they shall waste away and be appalled at the appearance of one another.”

Ezekiel to shave his hair

²⁵“Now son of man, take a sharp sword and use it as a razor to shave off your hair and your beard. Then take a balance and weigh the hair into three equal parts.”

Ezekiel’s hair to symbolise the fate of the people in Jerusalem

²⁶“When the days of your enacted siege of Jerusalem come to an end, burn one third of the hair inside the city that you have drawn on the clay brick.”

²⁷“Strike another third of it with the sword, all around inside the city.”

²⁸“Then scatter a third to the wind and immediately pursue it with a drawn sword.”

Only a few people to be spared

²⁹“But keep some strands of hair aside and tuck them away in the folds of your garment.”

³⁰“Again take a few of these and throw them into a fire.”

Jerusalem more rebellious than the cities of the surrounding nations

³¹“Then say to the house of Israel, ‘Jehovah says, This is Jerusalem, which I set in the centre with nations all around her. But she has rebelled against my laws, more so than all the nations about her.’”

³²“Therefore I am against you O Jerusalem, and I will inflict punishment on you in the sight of all these nations.”

Parents to eat their own children during the siege

³³“Because of your abominable idols I will do to you what I have never done before and never shall do again. ³⁴In your midst parents shall eat their own children and children shall eat their own parents.”

The people to die of plague, famine and sword

³⁵“A third of your people shall die of plague or famine, a third shall fall by the sword, and a third I will scatter to the winds and pursue with a drawn sword.”

Faces to be covered with shame

³⁶“Every hand shall be limp and every knee as weak as water. Your faces shall be covered with shame and your heads shaved in grief.”

Those in the countryside also to die

³⁷“Those out in the countryside will also die by the sword, and they who escape shall

hide in the mountains, moaning like doves because of their sins.”

Foreigners to take Judah’s silver and gold as spoil

³⁸“Your silver and gold will not save you. It will not fill your stomachs. ³⁹You are proud of your beautiful jewellery and use it to make idols, but I will hand it over as spoil to foreigners.”

Calamity upon calamity until the Lord’s anger is appeased

⁴⁰“When the terror comes you shall seek peace, but there shall be none. Calamity upon calamity will come as I vent my fury upon you.”

⁴¹“Then my anger against you will be appeased. Then you shall know that I am the Lord.”

The ruin of Jerusalem to be a warning to the nations

⁴²“You shall be a ruin and a warning, an object of horror to the nations around you.”

Judah to suffer because of idolatry and defilement of Temple

⁴³“The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man, face the mountains of Judah and prophesy against them saying, ‘Jehovah says, I am about to bring a sword against you O mountains and valleys of Judah.’”

⁴⁴“I will destroy your high places and your spreading trees and leafy oaks where your people offered fragrant incense to their idols.”

⁴⁵“Your altars shall be smashed and I will slay your people in front of their idols and scatter their bones around your altars.”

⁴⁶“Because you have defiled my Temple with your abominations, I shall have no pity. I will inflict severe punishment on you O Jerusalem.”

Some survivors will escape and be scattered among the nations

⁴⁷“Those of you who escape the sword will be scattered among the nations. Then you will remember how I was grieved by your adulterous hearts which lusted after idols.”

⁴⁸“Then you will loathe yourselves for your abominable practices. Then you will know that I did not threaten in vain to bring this disaster upon you.”

3

Ezekiel taken in spirit to the Temple in Jerusalem

¹“In the sixth year, while I was sitting in my house with the exiled elders of Judah, the hand of Jehovah came upon me and he appeared before me. ²From his waist up he glowed as bright as molten bronze and from his waist down he was like fire.”

³“He stretched out his hand and took hold of the hair of my head and I was lifted above the

earth in the spirit, and taken to Jerusalem.” F*

⁴⁴“I was set down at the north gate entrance to the inner courtyard of the Temple.”

Ezekiel sees an idol in a Temple gateway

⁵⁴“I saw before me the glorified God of Israel as in the vision I had seen in the plain.”

⁶“He said to me, ‘**Son of man, do you see what they are doing? The abominations that the house of Israel is committing here that drive me far from my Temple?**’”

⁷⁴“I looked and saw standing in the entrance of the altar gateway the idol that provokes the Lord to jealousy.” F*

⁸The Lord said, ‘**You will see things that are even more abominable.**’”

Ezekiel sees idolatry by seventy elders taking place in a closed Temple room

⁹⁴“Then he took me into the gateway^{F*} and I saw an opening appear in the wall. The Lord said to me, ‘**Son of man, enter the wall.**’ So I entered the wall and saw a room there.”

¹⁰⁴“He said to me, ‘**Enter the room and see the wicked things they are doing.**’”

¹¹⁴“So I entered the room and saw portrayed on the wall all kinds of crawling things and unclean animals, and all the idols of the house of Israel.”

¹²⁴“Before them stood seventy elders of the people and I recognised Jaazaniah standing among them. ¹³Each had a censer in his hand and a cloud of incense was rising.” F*

¹⁴⁴“The Lord said to me, ‘**Have you seen what the elders of Israel do in secret? They say, “Jehovah does not see us, for he has forsaken the land.”**’

¹⁵⁴“Again he said, ‘**You will see them doing things that are even more abominable.**’”

Ezekiel sees women mourning for the god Tammuz

¹⁶⁴“Then he took me into the entrance of the north gate of the Temple. I saw women sitting there, mourning for Tammuz.” F*

¹⁷⁴“**Do you see this, son of man? You will see things that are even more detestable than this.**”

Ezekiel sees men worshipping the sun

¹⁸⁴“He then took me into the inner courtyard. There between the porch and the altar I saw about twenty-five men bowing down to the sun in the east, with their backs to the Temple.”

¹⁹⁴“The Lord said, ‘**Is it a trivial matter son of man for the house of Judah to do the**

*3 This visit took place about six years before the destruction of Jerusalem.

*7 Believed to be Asherah, the Canaanite god of fertility.

*9 The temple area gateways were long, wide passages with rooms on either side and were used as gathering places. The temple proper was a small, separate building located in the inner courtyard of the temple complex. Only the priests were normally permitted to enter the inner courtyard and temple.

*13 Ezekiel was in the spirit (the inner body that gives life to the outer physical) and therefore would not have been seen by those present. This also enabled him to pass through the wall.

*16 Tammuz was a Babylonian god of fertility. His mythical death was said to cause the onset of winter, hence the annual mourning by women.

detestable things they are doing here? Must they also fill the land with violence and continually provoke me to anger?”

²⁰⁴“**Look at them putting the branch to their nose!**” F*

²¹⁴“**Therefore I will act in wrath! I shall have no pity! Though they cry out to me I will not listen!**”

The Lord calls for the destroying angels

²²⁴“Then I heard the Lord cry out in a loud voice, ‘**Bring forth the destroyers of the city!**’”

²³⁴“I saw six angels approaching from the north, each with a weapon of slaughter in his hand. ²⁴With them was an angel clothed in white who had a writing kit at his side. They came and stood beside the bronze altar in front of the Temple.”

²⁵⁴“The Lord moved from the cherubim where he had been and stood at the doorway of the Temple. The courtyard was full of the radiance of the glory of Jehovah.”



Scale model of Solomon's Temple at Jerusalem to which Ezekiel was taken in spirit).

The righteous in Jerusalem to be marked on their foreheads

²⁶⁴“He commanded the angel with the writing kit saying, ‘**Go throughout the city of Jerusalem and mark a taw^{F*} on the foreheads of those who grieve over the abominable things that are done in the city.**’”

The wicked symbolically slaughtered

²⁷⁴“Then he said to the destroying angels, ‘**Follow him through the city and kill without pity. Defile the Temple and fill the courtyards with the slain.**’”

²⁸⁴“**Slaughter elderly men, young men, maidens, women and children, but do not touch any person who has the mark. Begin at my sanctuary. Go!**”

²⁹⁴“So they began by slaughtering the elders who were in front of the Temple.” F*

Ezekiel pleads for the people of Judah

³⁰⁴“While they were killing, I fell face down and

*20 Believed to be an act of nature worship.

*26 A taw is the last letter of the Hebrew alphabet. In Ezekiel's day it looked like an x.

*29 This action would have been symbolic, for at this stage the destruction of Jerusalem was still about six years away.

EZEKIEL 4

cried out, 'O Lord Jehovah are you going to destroy all of Judah in this outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem?'"

³¹"He answered me, 'The sin of the house of Judah is exceedingly great. The land abounds in bloodshed and the city is full of injustice.'

Symbolic fire scattered over Jerusalem

³²"Then the angel in white brought back word saying, 'I have done as you commanded.'

³³"The Lord said to the angel, 'Go in among the wheels beneath the cherubim. Take fire and scatter it over the city.'

³⁴"The angel went and stood beside a wheel and one of the cherubim took some of the fire that was among them and put it into the hands of the angel. He took it and went out."

³⁵"The sound of the wings of the cherubim could be heard, like the voice of God Almighty when he speaks."

Ezekiel told to prophesy against the leaders of Jerusalem

³⁶"Then the Spirit took me to the east gate of the Temple. There at the gate were twenty-five men and I recognised Jaazaniah and Pelatiah, leaders of the people."

³⁷"The Lord said to me, 'Son of man these are the men who plot evil and give wicked advice in this city, therefore prophesy against them.'

The Spirit comes upon Ezekiel and he prophesies

³⁸"Then the Spirit of God came upon me and I prophesied saying, 'Jehovah says, You have put to the sword many people in this city, therefore the sword is what I will bring against you. ³⁹I shall inflict punishment upon you and drive you out of Jerusalem and hand you over to foreigners. Then you will know that I am the Lord.'

Descendants of exiled Judah to be gathered

⁴⁰"As I was prophesying, Pelatiah died. I fell face down and cried out in a loud voice, 'O Lord, will you completely destroy Israel?'"

⁴¹"The Lord answered, 'Son of man, your brothers in exile, those of whom the people of Jerusalem have said, 'They are far away from the Lord,' these shall I gather from the nations where I have scattered them and bring them back the land of Israel again. ⁴²They shall return and remove all the vile images and idols.'

⁴³"I will put a new spirit in them and remove from them their hearts of stone and give them hearts of flesh. ⁴⁴Then they will keep my commandments and shall be my people and I shall be their God."

The Spirit returns Ezekiel to Babylon and he tells the exiles all that he saw

⁴⁵"The cherubim spread their wings and the glory of Jehovah went up from the city and hovered above the Mount of Olives to the east."

⁴⁶"Then the Spirit lifted me up and returned me to the exiles in Babylonia and I told them everything the Lord had shown me."

4

Ezekiel to act out going into exile

¹"The word of the Lord came to me, 'Son of man, you are living among a rebellious people. They have eyes to see but see not, ears to hear but hear not.'

²"Therefore, in the daytime as they watch, pack your baggage as if for exile, and then at dusk while they are still watching, dig through the wall of your house, lift the baggage to your shoulder and carry it out into the darkness, like those who are going into exile."

³"And cover your face so that you cannot see the land. Perhaps they will understand."

Ezekiel's acted out prophesy concerns Zedekiah and the people of Jerusalem

⁴"I did as I was commanded, and the next morning this word of the Lord came to me, 'Son of man, that rebellious house of Israel has said to you, "What are you doing?'"

⁵"Therefore say to them, 'This prophesy concerns the king in Jerusalem,^{F*} and the people there. As I have done, so shall they do. They will go into exile as captives.'

The king will flee Jerusalem but be caught and blinded and be brought to Babylon to die

⁶"Even the king himself will put his baggage on his shoulder at nightfall and leave through an opening in the wall, and shall cover his face so he cannot see the land."^{F*}

⁷"However I will spread a net for him and he shall be caught, and I will bring him here to the land of Babylon, but he shall not see it^{F*} and here he will die."

A few of Judah will be spared the sword so that other nations can know of their abominations

⁸"I shall scatter to the winds all those around him, his officials and all his guards and shall pursue them with a drawn sword."

⁹"But I shall spare from the plague, famine and sword, a few of Judah so that the nations where they go can know of all their abominable practices."

Ezekiel to tremble as if in fear when he eats

¹⁰"The word of the Lord came to me, 'Son of man, tremble as if in fear as you eat your food and drink your water.'

Jerusalem to eat and drink in fear and despair

¹¹"Then say to the exiles, 'Jehovah says, Those living in Judah and Jerusalem will

*5 King Zedekiah.

*6 Probably in order not to be recognised.

*7 King Zedekiah was blinded by Nebuchadnezzar before being taken to Babylon (Jeremiah 22:7).

eat their food and drink their water in fear and despair, for their land will be laid waste because of the violence of all who live there."

The prophecies of Judah's destruction nearing fulfilment

12⁴"The word of the Lord came to me, 'Son of man, this proverb is quoted concerning the land of Israel, 'The days go by and every warning prophecy comes to nothing.'

13⁴"Therefore say to the people, 'Jehovah says, I am going to put an end to this proverb. The days are near when every prophecy shall be fulfilled. There shall be no more false visions and prophecy among the people of Israel.'

Destruction of Judah not in distant future

14⁴"The word of the Lord came to me, 'Son of man, the people are saying about you, 'The visions he sees are for many years from now. He prophesies about the distant future.'

15⁴"Therefore say to them, 'Jehovah says, None of my words will be delayed any longer.'

False prophets to be disinherited

16⁴"The word of the Lord came to me, 'Son of man, prophesy against the false prophets of Israel who prophesy out of their own imagination.'

17⁴"Say to them, 'Jehovah says, Woe to the foolish prophets who follow their own spirit and have seen nothing. Their visions are false and their prophecies a lie.'

18⁴"They say, 'Jehovah says' when I have not sent them, yet they expect their words to be fulfilled.'

19⁴"My hand is against prophets who see false visions and utter lying prophecies. They will not be listed in the records of the house of Israel, nor will they have an inheritance in the land of Israel. 20⁴For they lead my people astray saying, 'Peace' when there is no peace."

False prophecies like whitewash over a flimsy wall

21⁴"They cover a flimsy wall with whitewash. But I am about to tear down that wall and level it to the ground. 22⁴When it falls, the false prophets of Israel will be destroyed with it. Then they will know that I am the Lord."

Woe to women fortune-tellers

23⁴"Now son of man, prophesy against the daughters of your people, those who prophesy falsely out of their own imagination."

24⁴"Say to them, 'Jehovah says, Woe to the women who sew magic amulets for their arms and wear long head veils to ensnare my people.'

25⁴"You ensnare the lives of my people and profane me, for a handful of barley and a piece of bread."

26⁴"You dishearten the righteous with your lies, and warn not the wicked to turn from their evil ways and save their lives. 27⁴By your lies, those who should die live, and those who should live die."

28⁴"I am against your magic amulets and veils and will tear them off you. 29⁴The people will no longer fall prey to your power. You shall no longer see false visions or practice divination."

The Lord will not be enquired of by idolaters

30⁴"Some of the elders of Israel came to me to enquire of the Lord, and this word of Jehovah came to me: 'Son of man, these men are idolaters at heart. Why should I let them inquire of me?'

31⁴"Therefore say to them, 'Jehovah says, When an Israelite who is an idolater at heart goes to enquire of a prophet, I Jehovah will answer him in keeping with his idolatry. 32⁴I shall set my face against that man and make him an example and cut him off from my people.'

If a prophet enticed to prophesy for an idolater both shall be destroyed

33⁴"And should he entice the prophet to utter a prophecy, I the Lord will destroy them both. The prophet shall be as guilty as the one who consults him."

Idolaters called upon to repent

34⁴"Therefore repent and turn from your idols. Renounce your abominable practices. 35⁴Then you will no longer defile yourselves with your sins. You shall be my people and I will be your God."

5

The righteous can only save themselves by their righteousness

1⁴"The word of the Lord came to me, 'Son of man, if a nation sins against me by being unfaithful and I cut off its food supply, or send a plague, or the sword to kill its men and their animals, even if these three men, Noah, Daniel,^{F*} and Job were in it, they could save only themselves by their righteousness.'

2⁴"They could not even save their own sons or daughters. They alone would be saved."

Four judgements to come upon Jerusalem

3⁴"Therefore how terrible shall it be when I send against Jerusalem four judgements; sword, famine, wild beasts and plague to kill its people and its animals?"

The conduct of the survivors will justify the Lord's anger

4⁴"Yet there will be a few survivors who shall be exiled out of her to you. When you see their conduct you will know that I have not done this without good reason."

*1 Daniel was a wise judge of the past whose Solomon-like judgements were glorified in the literature of Ezekiel's day.

EZEKIEL 5

Jerusalem likened to a baby Canaanite girl abandoned at birth

5⁴"The word of the Lord came to me, 'Son of man, confront Jerusalem with her abominable practices.'"

6⁴"Say to her, 'Jehovah says to the city of Jerusalem, "Your birth was in the land of the Canaanites. Your father was an Amorite and your mother a Hittite." F*

7⁴"On the day you were born, your cord was not cut, nor were you washed with water and rubbed with salt, nor were you wrapped in swaddling cloth. 8⁴No one loved you. Rather you were despised and thrown in a field."

9⁴"I passed by and saw you lying there kicking in your blood. I said to you, 'Live!' and I made you grow like a plant of the field."

10⁴"You grew up and your breasts began to form, yet you were still naked and bare."

The Lord takes Jerusalem as his bride and marries her

11⁴"Later I passed by and saw that you were old enough for love, so I entered into a marriage covenant with you, and you became mine."

12⁴"I washed the blood^{F*} from you and clothed you with fine embroidered clothing. I adorned you with gold and silver; rings, earrings, and bracelets on your arms, and a beautiful crown upon your head."

Jerusalem becomes beautiful and famous

13⁴"Your food was choice flour, honey, and olive oil. You became exceedingly beautiful, fit to be a queen. Your fame spread among the nations."

But later she becomes a harlot

14⁴"But then you used your beauty and fame to become a harlot. You lavished your favours on anyone who passed by and your beauty became theirs."

Jerusalem turns to idolatry

15⁴"You also took the fine jewellery I had given you and made yourself male idols, and engaged in prostitution with them and offered my oil and incense to them."

Jerusalem slaughters her own children

16⁴"You took the sons and daughters whom you bore to me and sacrificed them to idols. Was your harlotry not enough? Did you have to slaughter my children and sacrifice them to idols?"

17⁴"In all your abominable practices you did not remember the days of your youth, when you were naked and bare, kicking about in your blood."

Her promiscuity worsens

18⁴"Woe to you Jerusalem, for in addition to all your other wickedness you built shrines

in every public square and offered your body with increasing promiscuity to anyone who passed by."

19⁴"Then you engaged in prostitution with the Egyptians, so I reduced your territory and gave you over to the Philistines who were shocked by your lewd conduct."

20⁴"Then you engaged in prostitution with the Assyrians for you were insatiable. And even after that you increased your promiscuity to include Babylonia, the land of merchants, acting like a brazen harlot."

21⁴"But you were unlike a harlot for you scorned payment. Every harlot receives a fee, but you gave gifts to your lovers, bribing them to come to you from everywhere for your illicit favours."

22⁴"You adulterous wife! You prefer strangers to your own husband!"

Jerusalem to be stripped naked in front of her lovers

23⁴"Therefore O harlot, hear the word of Jehovah: 'Because you exposed your nakedness and poured out your wealth to your lovers. And because of your abominable idols, and because you gave them your children's blood, I am going to gather all your lovers with whom you found pleasure, and strip you naked in front of them. They will all see your nakedness together.'"

Jerusalem's lovers to hack her to pieces

24⁴"I will bring upon you the blood vengeance of my jealous anger. I shall hand you over to your lovers and they will tear down your shrines and strip you of your clothes and fine jewellery and leave you naked and bare."

25⁴"Then they shall stone you, and hack you to pieces with their swords. They shall burn down your houses and inflict punishment upon you in the sight of many women. I shall put a stop to your harlotry."

Then the Lord's anger will subside

26⁴"Then my wrath against you will subside. Then I will be calm and no longer angry."

Jerusalem like her uncaring mother and her sisters Sodom and Samaria

27⁴"All who quote proverbs will quote this about you: 'Like mother, like daughter.' You are a true daughter of your mother, who despised her husband and children, and you are a true sister of your sisters."

28⁴"Your older sister was Samaria who lived to the north of you, and your younger sister was Sodom who lived to the south. 29⁴You not only followed their abominable practices but soon became more depraved than they. Your sister Sodom never did what you have done."

30⁴"Your sister Sodom was arrogant, overfed and unconcerned. She did not help the poor and needy and did abominable

*6 The Amorites and Hittites were the former Canaanite inhabitants of Jerusalem.

*12 Generally believed to mean menstrual blood.

things, therefore I did away with her as you have seen.”

³¹“Samaria did not commit half the sins you did. You have made your sisters appear righteous by all the things you have done.”

Jerusalem to eventually be forgiven and be given Sodom and Samaria as daughters

³²“However I will restore the fortunes of Sodom and of Samaria, and your fortunes along with them. You will return to what you were before.”

³³“But first I will deal with you as you deserve, for you despised me by breaking the covenant I made with you in the days of your youth.”

³⁴“Yet I will remember the covenant I made, and will renew an everlasting covenant with you.”

³⁵“Then will you recall your ways and be ashamed when you receive your sisters, she who is older than you and she who is younger.”

³⁶“For I shall give them to you as daughters when I forgive you for what you have done, and you will know that I am the Lord.”

6

The parable of two eagles

¹“The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man repeat this parable to the house of Israel: ‘A great eagle with powerful wings flew to a mountain and with his talons broke off the top of a cedar and carried it away to a land of merchants.’”

²“Then he came back and took a seedling and planted it in fertile soil. It grew and became a spreading tree and its branches turned toward the eagle.”

³“But there was another great eagle with powerful wings who lived in the south, so the tree turned and stretched out its branches to him for water. Yet it had been planted in good soil by abundant water.”

⁴“Will it thrive? Or will not the first eagle return and pull it up by the roots? And even if it is transplanted, shall it not wither when the hot east wind strikes it?”

The parable concerns Babylon Jerusalem and Egypt

⁵“Say to this rebellious house, ‘Here is what the parable means: The king of Babylon^{F*} went to Jerusalem and carried off her king^{F*} and her nobles and leading men.”

King Zedekiah broke his covenant by enlisting Egypt’s aid

⁶“Then he enthroned a son of the royal family as king^{F*} and made a covenant with him, putting him under oath.”

*5 Nebuchadnezzar (Jeremiah 15:26).

*5 Jehoiachin (Jeremiah 15:26).

*6 Zedekiah (Jeremiah 15:29).

⁷“But the new king rebelled by sending envoys to Egypt to obtain horses and a large army.”

⁸“Will he who does such a thing succeed? Will he who broke his covenant yet escape?”

The Egyptian army will be of no help to Judah

⁹“As surely as I live declares Jehovah, he shall die in Babylon, in the land of the king who put him on the throne and whose covenant he broke.”

¹⁰“Pharaoh and his mighty army will be of no help to him.”

The Lord God to plant a righteous leader in Jerusalem during the millennium

¹¹“Yet the day will come when I the Lord God will take a shoot from the top of a cedar and plant it on a mountain height of Israel. ¹²It shall produce branches and bear fruit and become a splendid tree. Birds of every kind will nest in it and find shelter in the shade of its branches.”

¹³“For I Jehovah bring down the tall tree and make the low tree tall. I dry up the green tree and make the dry tree flourish. I the Lord have spoken and will surely do it.”

Persons will Die for own sins not those of parents

¹⁴“The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Why does the house of Israel quote this proverb? ‘The parents eat sour grapes and the children’s teeth are set on edge.’”

¹⁵“You are no longer to quote this proverb in Israel, for the life of every person belongs to me. Both the life of the parent and the life of the child.”

¹⁶“It is only the person who sins who will Die.”^{F*}

A righteous man defined

¹⁷“Suppose there is a man who does what is just and right, he does not eat at the shrines or worship idols. He does not lie with his neighbour’s wife, nor with his own wife during her monthly impurity.”

¹⁸“He does not oppress anyone, or steal, but gives his food to the hungry and clothes the poorly clad.”

¹⁹“He does not lend at excessive interest and judges fairly and faithfully keeps my commandments.”

²⁰“That man is righteous. He will surely Live.”^{F*}

*16 This discourse (verses 14-31) on the death of the wicked, and the living of the righteous, if taken literally may refer specifically to the coming punishment of Judah and other such similar periods in history when wickedness exceeds certain bounds (ie Noah’s day, and Sodom) and a cleansing is required. However the Hebrew words for ‘Die’ and ‘Live’ as used in this discourse are often used figuratively and can refer to the eternal state of a person after death. If this is the meaning as appears likely here, to Die means to be cut off from the presence of God, and to Live means to have Eternal Life, ie to live forever in the presence of God. (See also note on Revelation 2:13.) Under normal circumstances there appears to be little if any difference between the mortal life span of righteous and unrighteous persons, judgement being reserved for the second coming of Jesus Christ or the great Day of Judgement following the final resurrection (Revelation 16:14).

*20 Probably meaning Eternal Life. See note on verse 16.

An unrighteous man defined

21“However suppose he has a violent son who sheds blood. A son who eats at the mountain shrines, and worships idols, and lies with his neighbour’s wife. 22A son who oppresses the poor and commits robbery, and lends at excessive interest. Shall such a man Live?”

The wicked son of a righteous man shall Die

23“He shall not! Because he has done all these abominable things he shall surely Die, and his blood will be upon his own head.”

A righteous son of a wicked man will be saved

24“But suppose this son has a son who sees all the sins his father commits, yet he does not do such things and is careful to keep all my commandments. 25That righteous son will not die for his father’s sins, he will surely Live.”

26“**The soul who sins is the one who shall Die.** The son shall not share the guilt of the father nor the father share the guilt of the son.”

Past sins not remembered when a person fully repents

27“Should a wicked man turn away from all the sins he has committed and keep all my commandments and do what is just and right, he shall surely Live.”

28“None of the sins he has committed will be remembered against him.”

The Lord pleased when the wicked repent

29“Do I take pleasure in the Death of the wicked? Am I not pleased when they repent of their wicked ways and Live?”

Righteousness not remembered when a righteous man turns to sin

30“**But if a righteous man turns from his righteousness and commits sin, none of the righteous deeds he has done will be remembered.**”

31“Because of his unfaithfulness and the sins he has committed, he shall Die.”

The Lord’s ways are just and he will judge every person according to their ways

32“Yet the house of Israel says, ‘The way of the Lord is not just.’”

33“Are my ways unjust O house of Israel? Is it not your ways that are unjust? I will judge each one of you according to your ways.”

34“Therefore repent and turn away from all your sins. Get yourselves a new heart and a new spirit. Why should you Die?”

The Lord takes no pleasure in the spiritual death of anyone

35“**I take no pleasure in the Death of anyone. Repent and Live!**”

7

Ezekiel told to draw on the ground a fork in the road

1“**The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man, draw on the ground a fork in the road.’**”

2“**One road is for the king of Babylon to take to march against Rabbah of the Ammonites with his sword. The other road is for him to take to march against Jerusalem in Judah.**”

Nebuchadnezzar to seek an omen

3“**For Nebuchadnezzar will stop at the junction of two roads to seek an omen. He will cast lots with arrows, consult his idols, and examine the liver of an animal.**”

King of Babylon to take the road to Jerusalem

4“**The lot shall fall for Jerusalem and he shall raise the battle cry and give the command to set up battering rams against the gates, and to build a ramp and erect siege towers.**”

5“**It will seem like a false omen to those who are with him, but Nebuchadnezzar shall remind them of the guilt of Jerusalem.**”

Royal throne of David to be overturned until Messiah comes in last days

6“**O wicked king of Judah, your time of final punishment has come. Remove your crown. Things shall not remain as they are. 7The proud are to be brought low and the humble exalted.**”

8“**I shall overturn your throne and it will not be restored until he comes to whom it rightfully belongs.**”

Sins of Jerusalem that anger the Lord

9“**The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man, prophesy these words against Jerusalem, the city of bloodshed: ‘Jehovah says, O city that has brought upon herself doom, you have become guilty by the blood you have shed and the idols you have made.’**”

10“**In you, father and mother are treated with contempt. Foreigners and the fatherless and widows are oppressed and mistreated.**”

11“**In you my holy things are despised, and my Sabbaths desecrated.**”

12“**In you are lying men, eager to shed blood.**”

13“**In you are those who worship at mountain shrines and commit lewd acts.**”

14“**In you are those who dishonour their fathers’ bed.” F***

15“**In you are men who lie with women during their monthly impurity.**”

16“**In you are men who lie with their neighbour’s wives, and with their daughters-in-law, and with their own sisters.**”

* To commit adultery with a wife of their father, as did Reuben, see Genesis 31:18 and footnote.

17“In you are men who accept payment to shed blood.”

18“In you are those who take excessive interest and make gain by extortion.”

19“**And you have forgotten me, says the Lord God.**”

20“**I strike my hands together in anger at your dishonest gain and the blood you have shed!**”

All the wicked Israelites to be cast into Jerusalem and melted as dross in a furnace

21“**The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man, the house of Israel has become dross to me, all of them.’**”

22“**Therefore I the Lord God say to them, ‘Because you have all become dross I will gather you into the midst of Jerusalem as one casts metals into a furnace, and in my anger I will blast you with fire, and melt you as silver is melted in a furnace.’**”

23**You shall know that it is I Jehovah who have poured out my wrath upon you.”**

Ezekiel told that the siege of Jerusalem had begun

24“**In the ninth year, in the tenth month on the tenth day, the word of the Lord came to me saying, ‘Son of man record this date, for the king of Babylon has begun a siege of Jerusalem this very day.’**”

25“**The time has come for me to act. I shall not hold back nor have pity, nor will I relent.**”

Ezekiel’s wife to be suddenly taken from him

26“**The Lord also said to me, ‘Son of man, I am about to suddenly take away from you your wife, the delight of your eyes.’**”

Ezekiel not to show any sign of mourning

27“**You are not to lament or weep aloud, nor let your tears run down. Show no sign of mourning. Keep your head covered and your feet shod.**”

Ezekiel wife dies that evening

28“**So I prophesied as usual to the people in the morning and that evening my wife died.**”

29“**The next morning I acted as the Lord had commanded me.**”

The exiles likewise not to mourn the loss of the Temple and the destruction of Jerusalem

30“**The people said to me, ‘What has this to do with us?’**”

31“**Then this word of the Lord came to me, ‘Say to the people, ‘Jehovah says, I am about to desecrate my Temple, the delight of your eyes and object of your affection, the house in which you take so much pride.**”

32**And the sons and daughters you left behind in Jerusalem will fall by the sword.**”

33“**Ezekiel is a sign to you, and you must do just as he has done; you must not mourn nor weep, but languish silently in your sins and groan within yourselves.**”

34“**When you hear the report of it, you will know that I am the Lord.**”

Ezekiel to regain his speech when

a fugitive from Jerusalem arrives with the news

35“**And you, son of man, when I take from them their joy and glory, a fugitive from Jerusalem shall arrive and tell you the news.**”

36“**On that day your mouth will be opened again and you shall speak freely as before. No longer will you be restricted in your speech. So you too will be a sign to them.**”^{F*}

8

The Lord to pull Egypt the crocodile out of the Nile

1“**At the end of the tenth year the word of the Lord came to me saying, ‘Son of man, prophesy against Pharaoh king of Egypt.’**”

2“**Say to him, ‘The Lord Jehovah says, I am against you Pharaoh king of Egypt, you great crocodile lying in your river. You say, ‘The Nile is my own.’ But I shall put hooks in your jaws and pull you out with all your fish^{F*} attached to your scales.’**”

3“**I shall leave you aground in the desert as food for the animals and birds of the earth.**”

Egypt a staff that splinters like a reed

4“**For you proved to be a staff made of reed for the people of Israel. When they leaned on you, you splintered.**”

Egypt to be put to the sword and exiled and become an empty wasteland

5“**Therefore I will bring a sword against you and kill your men and their animals. Egypt will become an empty wasteland, as far as the border of Ethiopia. No human or animal foot shall pass through it.**”

6“**And I will disperse you among the nations. Your cities shall lie empty forty years. Then all Egypt will know that I am Jehovah.**”

Egypt to be gathered again after forty years

7“**Yet at the end of forty years I will gather you back from captivity and return you again to the land of your ancestry.**”

Egypt never again to rule over the nations

8“**But you shall remain a lowly kingdom. Egypt will never again rule over the nations.**”

9**You shall no longer be a source of strength for the people of Israel, but will be a reminder of their sin in turning to you for help.**”

The Ammonites to be destroyed for rejoicing over Jerusalem’s downfall

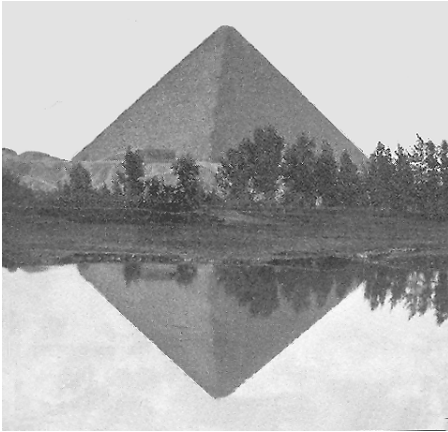
10“**The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man, prophesy against the Ammonites.’**”^{F*}

11“**Say to them, ‘Hear the word of the Lord God. Because you clapped your hands and**

*36 Ezekiel’s tongue had been bound so that he could only speak revelations from the Lord, see Ezekiel 2:8-10.

*2 Meaning perhaps the cities of Egypt or the three nations allied with Egypt, see Ezekiel 10:9.

*10 The Ammonites were descended from Lot (Genesis 13:28).



The once powerful Egypt has been cursed to "never again rule over the nations."

stamped your feet and rejoiced with malice when my house was desecrated and the land of Judah was laid waste, I am going to give you over to the people of the east."

¹²"They will pitch their tents among you and eat your fruit and drink your milk."

¹³"I shall turn your city Rabbah into a pasture for camels and Ammon into a resting place for sheep. I shall destroy you, then you will know that I am Jehovah."

Moab also to be punished

¹⁴"Because Moab said, 'Judah has now become like all the other nations,' I will also give Moab to the people of the east. ¹⁵I shall inflict punishment on Moab then they will know that I am Jehovah."

The people of Edom to fall by the sword

¹⁶"Edom has grievously sinned by taking revenge on the house of Judah. Therefore I will lay Edom waste and cut off from her all people and animals. They shall fall by the sword."

¹⁷"I shall take vengeance on Edom in my anger by the hand of my people Israel says Jehovah."

The Philistines to be destroyed

¹⁸"Because the Philistines acted in vengeance and have of old sought to destroy Judah, I am about to destroy the Philistines and those along the sea coast."

¹⁹"I will carry out great vengeance on them and punish them in my wrath. They shall know that I am Jehovah."

9

Tyre to be destroyed for rejoicing over the fate of Jerusalem

¹"The word of the Lord came to me, 'Son of man, the city of Tyre rejoiced and said of Jerusalem, 'The gateway to the south lies in

ruins, her wealth will now revert to me and I shall prosper."

²"Therefore the Lord God says to Tyre, 'I will hurl against you many nations, as the sea hurls its waves.'" F*

Tyre to be besieged by the Babylonians

³"I will bring against you Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, king of kings, with horses and chariots and a great army."

⁴"He shall ravage your daughter towns on the coastland and will set up a siege against you and build a causeway to your walls."

⁵"His war horses shall be so many they will cover you with dust. Your walls will tremble at the noise of the horses and chariots as they enter your gates."

The people of Tyre to be put to the sword and the city demolished and cast into the sea

⁶"The hooves of his horses shall trample your streets and he shall put your people to the sword. He will destroy your walls and towers and demolish your fine houses, and cast your stones and timber into the sea."

⁷"I shall put an end to your songs. The music of your harps will be heard no more."

The people to dwell in Sheol

⁸"You shall become an empty city when I cast you into the deep and send you down to those in Sheol. F* to people of long ago."

⁹"You shall dwell in the world below and will not again return to the land of the living."

The island of Tyre to become a bare rock

¹⁰"I shall scour the soil from your island and make you a bare rock in the midst of the sea, a place for spreading nets. ¹¹You will never be rebuilt. Then you will know that I am Jehovah."

The pride and wealth of the king of Tyre

¹²"The word of the Lord came to me, 'Son of man, prophesy against the king of Tyre, the gateway to the sea and merchant to the coastal nations.'"

¹³"Say to him, 'The Lord God says, In the pride of your heart you say, 'I am like a god for I sit on a throne in the heart of the sea.' ¹⁴But you are a mortal not a god, though you think you are as wise as a god."

¹⁴"You are indeed wiser than Danel, F* no secret is hidden from you. By your wisdom you have gained wealth for yourself and amassed gold and silver, but because of your wealth your heart has grown proud."

King of Tyre to die at hands of foreigners

¹⁵"Therefore you will die the death of the uncircumcised at the hands of foreigners. I Jehovah have spoken."

*2 The city of Tyre was built on an island a little way offshore.

*8 Sheol is the spirit world of the dead.

*14 Danel was a wise judge of the past whose Solomon-like judgements were glorified in the literature of Ezekiel's day.

A lament to the fall of the king of Tyre

16^a“The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man, take up this lament concerning the king of Tyre.’^{F*}”

17^a“Jehovah says, ‘You were the model of perfection, full of wisdom and beauty. You were in Eden, the garden of God and every precious stone adorned you.’”

18^a“I ordained and anointed you one of the guarding cherubim, for you were on the holy Mount of God and walked among the fiery stones.”

19^a“You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created, until iniquity was found in you. 20^aSo I drove you in disgrace from the Mount of God, for your heart had become proud on account of your beauty, and you had corrupted your wisdom because of your splendour. 21^aI cast you down to earth to make you a spectacle before kings.”

22^a“Now by your many sins and dishonest trade you have desecrated your city, so I will consume you and reduce you to ashes in the sight of all who are watching. All the nations who knew you shall be appalled.”

Tyre likened to a beautiful ship

23^a“The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man, take up this lament against the city of Tyre.’”

24^a“You are perfect in beauty O Tyre, like a ship of the ocean. Your builders have made your timbers of pine from Mount Hermon and your mast from cedar of Lebanon. 25^aYour oars are oak of Bashan and your decks fine cypress wood, inlaid with ivory.”

26^a“Your sail and banner are fine embroidered linen from Egypt and your cabin is upholstered with blue and purple fabric from Cyprus.”

27^a“Men of Sidon and Arvad^{F*} are your oarsmen, and your own skilled men O Tyre are your seamen.”

28^a“Craftsmen of Byblos caulk your seams, and all the ships of the sea come alongside to trade for your wares.”

29^a“Men of Persia, Lydia and Libya serve you as soldiers, bringing you wealth. Men of Arvad and Cilicia man your battlements, hanging their shields around your sides to bring your beauty to perfection.”

30^a“Tarshish trades with you, bringing silver, iron, tin and lead. Greece, Tubal and Meshech bring slaves and articles of bronze. Armenians trade horses and mules.”

31^a“Ivory tusks and ebony are brought to you from Rhodes. Syria brings turquoise, purple fabric, embroidered work, fine linen, coral and rubies. From Judah and Israel you obtain wheat, figs, honey, olive oil and balm.”

32^a“Damascus trades wine and Syrian wool.

*16 The King of Tyre (and Sidon) at this time was Ethbaal II, a descendant of Ethbaal I, father of the notorious Jezebel.

*27 Arvad was an island city off the north coast of Sidon,

Greeks bring wrought iron, cassia and calamus.^{F*} Dedan trades saddle blankets. Arabia does business with you in lambs, rams and goats.”

33^a“The merchants of Sheba and Raamah exchange the finest of spices and precious stones and gold. Haran, Canneh, Eden, Asshur and Kilmad trade beautiful garments, blue fabric, embroidered work and multi-coloured rugs.”

Tyre to be shipwrecked

34^a“You are filled with heavy cargo in the heart of the sea O Tyre, but your wealth, your merchandise, your seamen, your merchants, your soldiers and everyone else on board will be cast into the heart of the sea on the day of your shipwreck.”

All Tyre's traders will lament

35^a“The coastlands will quake when you cry out. All the seamen who traded with you will abandon their ships and stand on the shore.

36^aThey will weep over you with anguish of soul and take up this lament concerning you, ‘Who was ever destroyed like Tyre, surrounded by the sea?’”

10

Sidon to be punished by plague and sword

1^a“The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man prophesy against Sidon.’”

2^a“Say to her, ‘The Lord God says, I am against you O Sidon and shall gain glory from you. When I punish you, you will know that I am Jehovah.’”

3^a“I shall send plague and a sword upon you. Blood shall flow in your streets. No longer will the people of Israel have a piercing thorn for a neighbour.”



Sidon, “a piercing thorn” of Israel (verse 3) and prophesied against through Ezekiel.

Egypt and her allies to be destroyed by Babylon

4^a“The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man, prophesy against Egypt.’”

5^a“Say to her, ‘I have broken the arm of Pharaoh king of Egypt. Nor has it been bound in a splint to heal so that he can continue to wield a sword.’”

6^a“I am against the king of Egypt and shall

*32 Cassia and calamus were aromatic plants.

EZEKIEL 11

break both his arms and make his sword fall from his hands.”

⁷“Furthermore I shall put my sword in the hand of the king of Babylon. He and the armies with him, the most ruthless of nations shall destroy the land and fill Egypt with her slain, and they shall scatter the Egyptians among the nations. ⁸All Egypt’s wealth will be carried away.”

⁹“Her allies, Ethiopia, Libya and Arabia will also fall, all the people of the covenant land. The whole land will become empty and the cities shall lie in ruins.”

The Nile to be no longer muddied by hooves of cattle

¹⁰“I shall also destroy all the cattle. Egypt’s abundant water will no longer be stirred by the foot of man or muddied by the hooves of cattle. The river shall settle and flow clear.”

¹¹“I will dry up the canals of the Nile and lay waste the land and everything in it.”

¹²“I shall destroy their idols and there will no longer be a king in Egypt.”

¹³“I will put an end to the hordes of Egypt by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon. Then shall they know that it is I Jehovah who speak.”

The hordes of Egypt to go down to Sheol the spirit world of the dead

¹⁴“The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man, mourn for the hordes of Egypt and consign her and the other mighty nations to Sheol below. ¹⁵Say to them, ‘Are you more favoured than others? Go down and rest among the uncircumcised.’” F*

¹⁶“From within Sheol the mighty leaders shall say of Egypt and her allies, ‘They have come down to the uncircumcised and those killed by the sword. ¹⁷Assyria’s vast army is also here. All who spread terror in the land of the living have fallen by the sword.’”

11

Word arrives in Babylon that Jerusalem has fallen

¹“In the twelfth year of our exile a man who had escaped from Jerusalem came to me and said, ‘The city has fallen!’”

Ezekiel recovers his full powers of speech

²“Now the previous evening the hand of the Lord had come upon me and he had opened my mouth so I was able to speak.” F*

*1 Circumcision was originally a covenant sign (Genesis 11:17) and was practiced by the Israelites, Arabians, Edomites, Ammonites, Moabites, Egyptians and Phoenicians, but not by the Assyrians, Babylonians, Philistines, or Canaanites. These latter peoples were therefore sometimes referred to by the mildly derogatory term ‘the uncircumcised.’

*2 Ezekiel had formally been able only to speak revelations from the Lord. He had been struck dumb for normal speech, partly for his own protection and partly as a sign (Ezekiel 2:8-10 and 7:36).

The fugitives hiding in the land of Judah to die for their sins

³“The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man, the fugitives hiding among the ruins in the land of Judah are saying, ‘Surely the land has been left to us.’”

⁴“Therefore say to them, ‘The Lord Jehovah says, ‘Since you eat meat with the blood still in it, and worship your idols and shed blood, should you possess this land? ⁵You rely on your sword and do abominable things and lie with your neighbour’s wives.’”

⁶“As surely as I live, those who are hiding in the ruins shall fall by the sword, and those out in the country shall be devoured by wild animals, and those in the caves will die of disease.”

Judah to become an empty wasteland

⁷“I will make Judah an empty wasteland. Then they shall know that I am the Lord.”

The exiles listen to Ezekiel but are greedy for unjust gain and do not heed his words

⁸“As for you son of man, the people say to one another, ‘Come and hear the word of the Lord.’”

⁹“My people sit before you and listen to your words, but they do not heed them.

¹⁰“With their lips they draw near to me, but their hearts are set on unjust gain.”

Ezekiel like a singer of love songs

¹¹“To them you are like one who sings love songs with a beautiful voice and plays a musical instrument well.”

¹²“However when all my words have come to pass, they will know that a prophet has been in the midst of them.”

The shepherds of Israel only take care of themselves

¹³“The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man, prophesy against the shepherds of Israel.’”

¹⁴“Say to them, ‘The Lord Jehovah says, Woe to the shepherds of Israel who only take care of themselves. You eat the fat and clothe yourselves with the wool, and slaughter the choice animals but you do not take care of the flock. ¹⁵Should not shepherds care for their flock?’”

¹⁶“You do not strengthen the weak or heal the sick, nor bind up the injured. You do not bring back the strays or search for the lost. Rather you treat them all brutally.”

The Lord to remove Israel’s shepherds

¹⁷“So my flock have become scattered, for there are no caring shepherds. They have become food for wild animals.”

¹⁸“Therefore hear the word of Jehovah you shepherds of Israel. I will hold you accountable for my flock, and remove you as shepherds. You will no longer feed yourselves.”

The Lord himself to become Israel's shepherd

19^{"I myself will search for my sheep, to look after them and rescue them from all the places where they were scattered on a day of gloom."}

20^{"I shall gather them from the nations and bring them into their own land. There they will lie down and feed in rich pasture among streams on the hills of Israel."}

The fat and strong sheep to be destroyed

21^{"I shall search for the lost and bring back the strays. I will bind up the injured and strengthen the weak, but the fat and the strong I will destroy."}

The Lord to be a just shepherd

22^{"I will shepherd my flock with justice and judge between one sheep and another, and between the rams and the goats. 23For is it not enough that they feed on rich pasture? Must some of them also trample the rest of the pasture?"}

24^{"And is it not enough that they drink clear water? Must some of them muddy the water with their feet? 25Should the rest of my flock feed on what they have trampled and drink water they have muddied?"}

26^{"Therefore I shall judge between the fat and the lean sheep. For the fat rams butt the lean sheep with their horns and drive them away."}

27^{"I will save my flock and they shall no longer be oppressed. I shall judge between one sheep and another."}

David to be king of Israel during the millennium

28^{"I will place over them one shepherd, my servant David and he shall tend them. I Jehovah will be their God and my servant David shall be their king.^{F*} I the Lord have spoken."}

Israel to be greatly blessed during millennium

29^{"I will make a covenant of peace, and rid the land of wild animals that my people may live in the wilderness and sleep in the forests in safety."}

30^{"I shall bless them and all the land surrounding my holy mountain, and send down showers in season, and also showers of blessings."}

31^{"The trees shall yield them fruit and the land provide them abundant crops. And my people shall no longer bear the scorn of the nations nor be plundered by them, but will live secure in their land."}

32^{"They will know that I am the Lord when I rescue them. For you are my sheep and I am your God says the Lord God."}

Ezekiel taken by the Spirit to a valley of dry bones

1^{"The hand of the Lord came upon me and he transported me by the Spirit and set me down in the midst of a valley that was full of bones."}

2^{"He led me back and forth among the bones and I saw a great many on the floor of the valley and they were very dry."}

3^{"The Lord said to me, 'Son of man, can these bones live?'"}

"I said, 'O Lord God, you alone know.'"

Ezekiel told to command the bones to come alive

4^{"He said to me, 'Prophecy to these bones. Say to them, "Dry bones, hear the word of Jehovah. Let tendons attach to you and flesh come upon you and cover you with skin. Let spirits enter into you and come alive."}

Flesh and skin cover the bones

5^{"So I prophesied as I was commanded, and even as I spoke there came a rattling noise and the bones assembled together, bone to bone. And as I watched, flesh appeared upon them and skin covered them. But there was no life in them."}

Spirits enter the bodies and they stand up alive on their feet

6^{"Then the Lord said to me, 'Prophecy to the spirits son of man. Say, "The Lord Jehovah commands, Come from the four winds O spirits and enter into these slain, that they may live."}

7^{"So I prophesied as the Lord commanded me and their spirits came and entered into them, and they became alive and stood on their feet, a vast army."}

The Lord to resurrect all the dead of Israel from their graves and return them to their own land

8^{"The Lord said to me, 'Son of man, these bones represent the whole house of Israel. They say, "We are like dried up bones for all our hope is gone."}

9^{"Therefore prophecy to them saying, 'The Lord Jehovah says, O my people, I am going to open your graves and raise you up from them and bring you back to the land of Israel."}

10^{"Then my people shall know that I am Jehovah when I open your graves and raise you up."}

11^{"And I shall put my Spirit within you and you shall have Eternal Life."}

The stick of Judah and the stick of Ephraim

12^{"The word of the Lord came to me, 'Son of man, take a stick of wood and write upon it, 'Judah and the Israelites with him."}

13^{"Then take another stick of wood and}

*28 Three other prophecies in the Old Testament also testify of a resurrected David leading the reunited Israel as king during the millennium: Hosea 1:29, Jeremiah 18:6, and Ezekiel 12:17.

EZEKIEL 13

write upon it, 'Ephraim^{F*} and all the house of Israel with him.'

The two sticks to be joined as one – a sign that all Israel will be reunited in the millennium

14“Then join them together so they become one stick in your hand. When your countrymen say to you, ‘What is the meaning of this?’ answer them, “Jehovah says, The day will come when I shall take Ephraim and the tribes with him and join them to Judah and they shall become one in my hand.”

15“Then hold up the two sticks you have written on and joined together and say to them, ‘Jehovah says, In that day I will gather the Israelites out of all the nations where they have gone and bring them back to their own land.’”

16“I shall make them one nation on the hills of Israel and there shall be one king over them all, and they will never again be divided. I will save them from their sinful ways and cleanse them.”

David to be king over all Israel during millennium

17“They will be my people, and I shall be their God, and my servant David will be king over them. They will follow my laws and keep my commandments.”

18“They and their children and their children’s children shall live there forever,^{F*} and David my servant will be their prince forever.”

The Lord to put his Temple in Israel forever

19“**I will make an everlasting covenant of peace with them and will bless them and multiply their numbers, and I will put my Temple among them forever. My dwelling place shall be with them and I shall be their God.**”

13

Gog to lead a mighty army of many nations against Israel in last days

1“**The word of the Lord came to me, ‘Son of man, prophesy these words against Gog^{F*} of Magog, chief prince of the nations of Meshech and Tubal:^{F*}**

2“**The Lord God says, ‘I am against you O Gog, chief prince of Meshech and Tubal.**

*13 The combined tribes of the exiled northern kingdom of Israel were often referred to as Ephraim, after the dominant tribe.

*18 The Hebrew word *olam* here translated ‘forever’ (and in other places in the Old Testament) means ‘the concealed future’ or ‘as far into the future as can be seen’ not necessarily the whole of eternity. The utopian conditions depicted here and elsewhere in the Bible will last throughout the thousand year millennium (Revelation 15:29), but there will be further dramatic changes after the end of that period (Revelation chapter 17).

*1 There has never been an historic king by the name of Gog, neither before nor since this prophecy, and some believe him to be a demon. Moreover Gog and the Beast of the book of Revelation appear to be one and the same person (see Revelation chapters 9,10, and 12). Magog is also an obscure term but is believed to be a loosely defined region around and south of the Black Sea, nowadays south Russia and Turkey.

*1 Northern nations around the Black Sea.

3Be prepared to take command of all the nations about you, for in the last days you and the many other nations with you in the far north will advance against my people Israel like a cloud that covers the land. 4A great horde of horses and horsemen all in full armour, with shields and brandishing swords.”

5“**Persia,^{F*} Ethiopia and Libya shall join with you; a mighty army, for you are the one I have spoken of in former days by the prophets of Israel.**” ^{F*}

Israelites from many nations will have gathered to Israel in the last days

6“**In the last days you shall be called to invade a land that has recovered from war, a land whose people have gathered from many nations to the mountains of Israel, which had long been desolate. Now they live there in safety.**”

7“**You shall advance like a storm, like a cloud covering the ground.**”

Israel to be a land of unwallled towns

8“**For evil thoughts shall come into your mind and you will devise a plan saying, ‘I shall invade this land of unwallled cities, this peaceful people living without walls and gates. I will plunder the resettled wilderness and the people gathered from the nations, rich in livestock and goods and living in the heart of the land.’**

A great earthquake will break up Israel

10“**In the day Gog attacks Israel my hot anger will be aroused and there shall come a great earthquake in the land of Israel.**”



Modern Israel, ‘a land of unwallled cities.’

11“**The mountains shall be thrown down and the cliffs will crumble and every wall shall fall to the ground. 12Every person and living creature on the face of the earth will tremble.**” ^{F*}

*5 Persia geographically encompasses modern day Iraq and Iran bounded by the Caspian sea in the north and the Persian gulf in the south.

*5 See Isaiah chapters 7 and 8 for further prophesies of this great invasion of Israel in the last days.

*11 This massive earthquake which is world-wide (see verse 12) is also spoken of in Revelation 12:26.

Gog's armies will panic and turn on each other
 13^a“I will send a great panic upon the armies of Gog. Every man shall turn his sword against his brother.”

Hail and fire to be poured down on Gog's army
 14^a“I shall execute my judgement with plague and bloodshed. I will pour down torrential rain, hailstones and blazing sulphur on Gog and the armies of the many nations with him.”

Gog armies to fall on the mountains and fields of Israel
 15^a“On the mountains and open fields of Israel you shall fall O Gog, you and all your armies. I will give you as food to the birds and wild animals.”

Fire to fall on the northern nations and coastlands
 16^a“And I shall send fire on the land of Magog and on those in the coastlands, and so I will show my greatness in the sight of all nations.”

The holy name of Jehovah to be vindicated at last
 17^a“No longer will my holy name be profaned. All nations shall know that I am Jehovah, the Holy One of Israel.”

Abandoned weaponry to provide Israel fuel for seven years
 18^a“It is coming. It will surely take place. This is the great day of which I have spoken.”

19^a“After that day, those who live in the towns of Israel will go out and burn the weaponry.”

20^a“For seven years they shall not need to gather wood, for the weapons will provide them with fuel.”

Seven months to bury the dead
 21^a“In that day the burial place of Gog and all his hordes will be in a valley east of the Dead Sea. It shall be renamed the valley of the Hordes of Gog.”

22^a“For seven months men of Israel shall be fully employed burying the dead in order to cleanse the land. 23^aA town called Hordes will be built in the valley.”

24^a“At the end of seven months they shall begin a search throughout the land to bury those that still remain upon the ground. 25^aWhen a searcher sees a human bone he will set up a marker beside it until the grave diggers come to bury it in the valley of the Hordes of Gog.”

Birds and wild animals to eat the flesh of the slain
 26^a“Son of man, cry out to the birds and the wild animals saying, ‘Come together to the sacrifice I am preparing for you on the mountains of Israel.’”

27^a“There you will eat the flesh of mighty men and drink the blood of the leaders of the earth. 28^aYou shall eat fat until you are

gluttoned and drink blood until you are drunk.”

The Lord to reveal his face to Israel and pour out his Spirit upon them
 29^a“Then I shall no longer hide my face from the house of Israel and I will pour out my Spirit upon them.”

14

Ezekiel is taken to a high mountain in Israel and sees a future millennial city

1^a“At the beginning of the twenty-fifth year of our exile, fourteen years after the fall of Jerusalem, the hand of the Lord came upon me and I was taken in a vision of God to the land of Israel. 2^aI was set down on a high mountain which had on its south slope the appearance of a city.” F*

Ezekiel sees an angel with a measuring rod and cord

3^a“I saw an angel before me standing in the gateway of the city. He glowed like polished bronze and held a measuring rod and cord in his hand. The length of the rod was six long cubits.” F*

4^a“The angel said to me, ‘Son of man, pay attention to everything I am going to show you, and describe to the house of Israel all that you see.’”

The angel measures the Temple walls and gateways

5^a“I saw a wall surrounding the Temple area of the city and as I watched, the angel measured the wall. 6^aIt was 6 cubits thick, 6 cubits high, and 500 cubits long on each side.” F*

7^a“Then he went to the gateway facing east that led through the wall. He climbed the seven steps and measured the width of the gateway. It was 6 cubits wide.”

8^a“Inside the gate was a passageway, 13 cubits wide and 25 cubits deep, with three open guard rooms on either side, each 6 cubits square. 9^aEach room was separated by a column 5 cubits wide. In front of the guard rooms was a low wall, a cubit high.”

10^a“The passageway led to an entrance hall 25 cubits square, which opened into the outer courtyard of the Temple.”

11^a“The entrance hall had windows that narrowed inwards. The walls and columns of the hall were decorated with palm trees.”

The courtyard of the Temple
 12^a“The angel then led me out into the open courtyard in which the walled inner courtyard and the Temple itself stood.”

13^a“The distance across the large outer courtyard to the inner courtyard walls was 100 cubits on the east, north and south.”

*1 This city appears to be the future rebuilt Jerusalem or Holy City of the millennium (see Ezekiel 16:5 and 17:20 and note on 17:22).

*3 The long cubit, an older measure, was about 520mm (20½”).

*5 About 3m thick by 3m high by 270m along each side.

EZEKIEL 14

14¹⁴“I also saw a pavement around the outer edge of the courtyard, and there were thirty rooms built into the outside walls we had passed through.”

15¹⁵“There were two other gateways in the outside wall, on the north and the south. These were of the same dimensions as the eastern gate through which we had entered.”

Animal sacrifices to continue

16¹⁶“The angel led me around the outer courtyard and I saw in each corner, smaller enclosed courts, each 40 cubits long and 30 cubits wide, and around the inside of each one was a ledge of stone with fireplaces beneath.”

17¹⁷“The angel said to me, **“These are the kitchens where the Levites who minister at the Temple will cook the sacrifices of the people.”** F*

The inner courtyard wall and gateways

18¹⁸“Then he led me up eight steps to one of the three gateways that led through the inner wall into the inner courtyard of the Temple area, measuring as he went.”

19¹⁹“The passages and halls of the inner gates were of the same dimensions as those of the outer gates; 25 cubits wide and 50 cubits long, but faced the other way. The guard rooms were at the inner courtyard end.” F*

20²⁰“In each of the three inner gateways there was a room where burnt offerings were washed. In the passageways that opened into the inner courtyard and also outside the openings, were tables on which the animals to be offered were slaughtered.”

21²¹“The tables were of dressed stone, each a cubit and a half square and a cubit high. On them were laid the instruments for slaughtering. Double-pronged hooks were attached to the walls nearby.”

22²²“There were also rooms within the inner courtyard for the singers, by the gateway.”

The inner courtyard of the Temple area

23²³“The angel then measured the inner courtyard where the Temple was located. It was 100 cubits square, and at the western end stood the Temple.”

24²⁴“At the north and south entrances to the inner courtyard were two buildings. The angel said to me, **“The building facing south is for the priests who have charge of the Temple, and the one facing north is for the priests who have charge of the altar.”**

*17 It appears unlikely that this temple of the latter days will be built until after the second coming of Christ, for Ezekiel 17:1-10 speaks of a river of water to flow out from under the temple to bring life to the Dead Sea, and of fruit trees bearing fruit every month. The animal sacrifices mentioned in this verse (see also Zechariah 5:30) to be offered in this new temple during the millennium will probably be commemorative in nature, ie looking back to Jesus Christ's perfect sacrifice, rather than looking forward to it as in past temples. This is probably to allow the Levites the right to redeem themselves and do what they failed to do in earlier times (see Ezekiel 15:28 and Malachi 3:5). Animal sacrifice will not continue after the millennium as there is no temple in the glorious New Jerusalem nor is there any more physical death (Revelation chapter 17).

*19 Probably to ensure that the people did not enter the inner courtyard. Only ordained Levite priests were permitted to enter the inner courtyard of the temple.

25²⁵“**These are to be the descendants of Zadok who are the only Levites who may approach Jehovah to minister before him.**” F*

Other buildings around about the Temple

26²⁶“Behind the Temple was a building 70 cubits wide and 90 cubits long.” F*

27²⁷“To the right of the Temple (on the north) was a building 100 cubits long and 50 cubits wide, and three stories high, its side forming part of the northern wall of the courtyard. 28²⁸On the south side of the Temple was another identical building.”

29²⁹The angel said to me, **“The buildings on the north and south of the inner courtyard are holy. There the priests who approach the Lord will eat the most holy offerings.”**

Priests to wear holy garments

30³⁰“**Once the priests have entered the inner courtyard, they are not to go back out into the outer courtyard wearing the garments in which they minister, for these are holy.**

31³¹**They are to put on other clothes before they enter the area where the people gather.**”

The altar of sacrifice and the Temple proper

32³²“Before the Temple I saw a high altar, and beyond the altar, ten steps that led up to the Temple doors.”

33³³“Two pillars, each 5 cubits wide stood either side of the Temple doors.”

Ezekiel is taken inside the Temple proper

34³⁴“Then the angel led me up the steps to the entrance of the Temple. The main entrance porch was 14 cubits wide and the porch walls projected out 3 cubits on either side.”

35³⁵“The doors of the Temple opened into an entrance hall, 20 cubits wide and 12 cubits deep.”

36³⁶“At the rear of the entrance hall I saw double doors leading into the outer sanctuary.”

37³⁷“On either side of the double doors stood two columns, each measuring 6 cubits wide.”

The outer sanctuary

38³⁸“The angel led me through the doors into the outer sanctuary and measured it. It was 40 cubits long and 20 cubits wide.”

39³⁹“In front of the doors concealing the inner sanctuary was a wooden table, 2 cubits square and 3 cubits high.”

40⁴⁰“The angel said to me, **“This is the table that is before Jehovah.”**

The inner sanctuary

41⁴¹“The angel entered the inner sanctuary and measured it. It was twenty cubits square. He said to me, **“This is the Most Holy Place.”**

The side rooms

42⁴²“Then he measured the outside walls of the

*25 Zadok was a descendant of Aaron who served as a faithful high priest under David. He loyally upheld David's son Solomon to be king and did not rebel against David as did Abiathar his fellow high priest.

*26 The purpose of this rear building is not explained.

Temple. They were six cubits thick and contained many side rooms, four cubits wide.”

43“^FThe side rooms were on three levels, one above another, thirty on each level and deeper at each successive level.^F * And stairs went up from the lowest floor.”

44“^FThe Temple had a terrace around the outside providing the foundation for the side rooms.”^F *

Wood panelled walls, engravings and veiled windows

45“^FAll the walls inside the Temple were panelled with wood and engraved with cherubim and palm trees.”

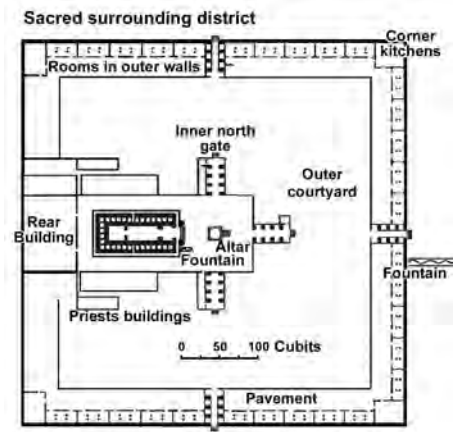
46“^FThe cherubim showed two faces, that of a man facing the palm tree on one side and that of a lion facing the palm tree on the other.”

47“^FThe narrow windows in the outer walls were veiled.”

15

Ezekiel sees the Lord approaching in glory

1“^FThe angel returned me to the outside east gate, and then I saw the glory of the God of Israel, approaching from the east.”



The plan of the millennial Temple as seen and described by Ezekiel.

2“^FHis voice was like the roar of rushing waters and the land shone with his glory. The vision was like the vision I had seen at the Kebar River and I fell face down.”

*43 These side rooms were all supported from beneath therefore less space was required for the supports of each succeeding floor, allowing the rooms on the next higher floor to be deeper. Traditionally temple side rooms have been used for storing treasure.

*44 No overall dimensions are given for the temple proper but it appears to have been about 83 cubits long and 32 cubits wide (45m x 26m), and therefore larger than Solomon’s temple which was 60 by 20 short cubits (28m x 9m). Both were three storied. There is no mention of a large basin on the backs of twelve oxen, an incense altar, lamp stands, or the Ark of the Covenant as with Solomon’s temple. The dimensions of the whole temple complex, including both the inner and outer courtyards was 500 cubits (270m) square.

The Lord enters the Temple complex through the east gates

3“^FThe glory of the Lord entered the Temple area through the east gates.”

The Temple to become the place of the Lord’s throne

4“^FThen the Spirit lifted me up and carried me again into the inner courtyard and the glory of the Lord filled the Temple area.”

5“^FThe angel stood beside me and I heard the voice of Jehovah speaking to me from inside the Temple.”

6“^FHe said, ‘Son of man, this is the place of my throne and for the soles of my feet. Here I will live among the Israelites in days to come.’”

The Lord to dwell among a cleansed Israel for ever

7“^FThe house of Israel shall never again defile my holy name with lifeless idols. Because they defiled my holy name by their abominable practices, I destroyed them in my anger.”

8“^FNow let them put away their idolatry, and put far away from the vicinity of my Temple the tombs of their dead kings, and I shall live among them always.”

Ezekiel to describe the Temple to the house of Israel

9“^FSon of man, describe the Temple to the house of Israel. Write down all the details so they will be faithful to its design and ordinances.”

The whole mountain top to be most holy

10“^FThe whole surrounding district on top of this mountain shall be most holy.”

Measurements of the altar of sacrifice

11“^FNow these are the measurements of the altar on which to offer burnt offerings and against which to sprinkle blood.”

12“^FIt shall stand 6 cubits high. The fireplace is to be 12 cubits square with four horns projecting upward a cubit at each corner. 13There is to be a ledge around the fire place 14 cubits square, with a raised rim around the edge. The steps of the altar shall face east.”

How the altar is to be purified

14“^FOn the day when it is erected, a young bull for a sin offering is to be given to the Levite priests who are descendants of Zadok.”

15“^FThey are to slaughter it and put some of its blood on the four horns of the altar and all around the edges, and so purify the altar.”

16“^FThe bull is then to be burned in the appointed part of the Temple, outside the sacred area.”

17“^FOn the second day you are to offer a male goat without blemish as you did the bull. Then you are to offer a young bull and ram without blemish. 18The priests are to

EZEKIEL 16

sprinkle salt on them and sacrifice them on the altar as a burnt offering to Jehovah.”

¹⁹“Do this for seven days to purify the altar.”

²⁰“From the eighth day, the priests may offer the offerings of the people on the altar, then I shall accept you, declares the Lord God.”

The daily sacrifice

²¹“Every morning you are to offer a year-old lamb without blemish, a burnt offering to Jehovah, and a grain offering with oil to moisten the flour.”

The outer east gate to remain closed

²²“Then the angel took me to the outer east gate of the Temple and I saw that it was closed.”

²³“The Lord said to me, ‘The inner and outer east gates are to remain closed. No one may pass through them for Jehovah the God of Israel has entered by way of them.’”

²⁴“Only the king himself because he is a prince may sit inside the inner gate, to eat in the presence of the Lord. But he is to enter and leave by way of the outer courtyard.”

No unworthy foreigners permitted to enter the Temple grounds

²⁵“Then the angel returned me by way of the north gate to the front of the Temple. I saw the glory of the Lord filling the Temple and I fell face down.”

²⁶“The Lord said to me, ‘Son of man, say to the rebellious house of Israel. “Jehovah says, Enough of your abominations O house of Israel. In addition to all your detestable practices you admitted foreigners, uncircumcised in heart and flesh to my Temple, defiling it and breaking my covenant.”’

²⁷“Therefore says the Lord God, no foreigner, uncircumcised in heart and flesh is to enter my Temple.^{F*} Not even those who live among you.”

Only Levites may serve at the Temple

²⁸“And only the Levites, who strayed far from me and so must bear the consequences of their sin, may serve at my Temple and have charge of the gateways. They are to serve the people and slaughter the sacrifices for them.”

Because of idolatry only Levites descended through Zadok may serve as priests

²⁹“But because the Levites served the people in their idolatry, they can no longer serve me as priests, or come near any of my holy things. Yet they may carry out their other Temple duties.”

³⁰“Only the Levites who are descendants of Zadok, who remained faithful when the Israelites went astray, may stand before me

as priests to offer sacrifices of fat and blood.”

Priests to wear linen garments

³¹“When the priests enter the inner courtyard they are to wear linen turbans on their heads and linen undergarments around their loins.”

³²“They must not wear any woollen garment or one that makes them perspire.”

Priests not to drink wine before they enter the inner courtyard

³³“Nor is a priest to drink wine before he enters the inner courtyard.”

Grooming and marriage laws for priests

³⁴“The priests are not to shave their heads nor let their hair grow long, but are to keep their hair trimmed.”

³⁵“They must not marry widows or divorced women, only virgins of Israelite descent, or widows of priests.”

Priests to remain undefiled

³⁶“A priest must not defile himself by going near a dead person. However if the dead person is his father or mother, son or daughter, brother or unmarried sister then he may defile himself.”

³⁷“However, after he is cleansed he must wait seven days.”

³⁸“The priests shall obey my laws and my appointed feasts and keep my Sabbaths holy.

The priests to be supported by the donations of the people

³⁹“I am to be the only inheritance the priests have. They are not to possess land in Israel. They are to eat the grain offerings and the first fruits and other offerings of the people to the Lord.”

⁴⁰“Everything in Israel offered to the Lord shall belong to them, but they must not eat flesh found dead or torn by wild animals.”

Priests to serve as judges

⁴¹“The priests shall teach my people how to distinguish between clean and unclean, and in any dispute they are to serve as judges and decide according to my laws.”

16

A sacred Temple district to be set aside when Israel's inheritances allotted in millennium

¹“When Israel is allotted her inheritance, a portion of the land 25,000 cubits square^{F*} is to be set aside as a sacred district.”

The Levites to live around the Temple

²“Within this district, a section 500 cubits square is to be for the Temple area with 50 cubits around it for open land.”

³“A division of the sacred district, 10,000 cubits wide by 25,000 cubits long contain-

*27 Meaning the outer courtyard and gateways of the temple complex, for even Israelites in good standing were not permitted into the inner courtyard areas unless ordained as priests.

*1 About 13.5 km square.

ing the Temple area, will be for the priests who minister before me. It shall be a place for their houses as well as for the Temple.”

⁴“A second division of the same size alongside of it, will belong to the rest of the Levites who serve at the Temple.”

The Holy City

⁵“Adjoining this is to be a third division, 5,000 cubits wide by 25,000 cubits long with the Holy City at the centre of it. The city shall be 4,500 cubits square^{F*} with a 250 cubit border around it.”

East and west borders of the sacred district for growing food

⁶“The remaining 10,000 cubits on the east and west shall supply food for those who serve in the Holy City. ⁷Those who serve will be from all the tribes of Israel.”

The king to be also allocated land

⁸“The land on either side of the sacred district extending as far as the east and west boundaries of Israel is to be given as an inheritance to the king.”

⁹“If the king should make a gift from his inheritance to one of his servants, that servant may keep it until the year of freedom^{F*} then it will revert to the king.”

¹⁰For the king's inheritance belongs to his sons only.”

¹¹“Nor must the king take any land off the people. He is to give his sons their inheritance out of his own property.”

All the people of Israel must give offerings of grain, oil and sheep

¹²“You shall have just balances. And this is the sacrifice offering which all the people of Israel shall make. A fifteenth part of all grain and a tenth part of all oil. ¹³Also one sheep from every flock of 200 from the well-watered pastures of Israel.”

The offerings to be given to the king who is in turn to furnish the offerings for appointed feasts

¹⁴“These offerings are to be given to the king of Israel. ¹⁵It shall be his duty to furnish all the offerings for the appointed feasts of the house of Israel and for the atonement of the people.”

The Passover to be observed

¹⁶“In the first month, on the fourteenth day you are to observe the Passover for seven days. During that time you are to eat bread made without yeast.”

¹⁷“Each day the king is to provide a bull, a ram without defect, and a male goat as a sin offering for himself and for all the people of the land.”

The inner east gate to be opened on each Sabbath and New Moon

¹⁸“On the Sabbath day and on the day of

the New Moon, the east gateway to the inner courtyard of the Temple is to be opened.”

Only the king permitted to worship inside the east gateway

¹⁹“The king shall enter and worship inside the gateway as the priests sacrifice his offerings in the inner court.”

The people to worship outside the gate in the outer courtyard

²⁰The people shall bow down and worship outside the gate in the outer courtyard.”

The king's Sabbath sacrifice – six lambs and a ram

²¹“The burnt offering the king is to offer every Sabbath is six lambs and a ram, all without blemish.”

²²“Then the king is to withdraw from inside the east gateway, but the gate shall not be closed until evening.”

²³“The gate is to remain closed on the six working days of each week.”

²⁴“However, should the king desire at other times to offer a freewill offering to Jehovah, the inner east gate can be opened for him and he may make his offering as he does on the Sabbath day.”

People to come and go to the Temple by the outer north and south gates alternately

²⁵“When the people come to the Temple to worship at the appointed feasts, whoever enters by the north gate is to go out by the south gate, and whoever enters by the south gate is to go out by the north gate.”

The king is to attend and depart appointed feasts with the people

²⁶“And when they come for the appointed feasts, the king is to come with them, and when they depart he is to depart with them.”

²⁷“No one is to return through the gate by which he entered.” ^{F*}

17

Water to flow eastward from the Temple

¹“Then the angel led me back to the Temple and I saw a fountain of water issuing from under the front of the Temple and flowing toward the east, for the Temple doors faced east.”

²“He then took me out through the north gate and led me around to the outer gate facing east. I saw that the water continued to flow as a river, eastward.”

³“Then the angel walked eastward with the measuring line in his hand and measured off 1000 cubits.^{F*} He led me across the water and it was ankle-deep.”

River lakes to form

⁴“He then measured off 2000 cubits and the

*²⁷ Probably to ensure that both gates are used equally to minimise crowd congestion at festival times. There was no west gate at the rear of the temple complex and the outer east gate remained closed permanently (Ezekiel 15:23).

*³ About half a kilometre.

*⁵ About 2.4 km square.

*⁹ Probably equivalent to the year of Jubilee. See Leviticus 7:15-21.

EZEKIEL 17

river was knee-deep. At 3000 cubits it was up to my waist. At 5000 cubits it was too deep to cross so he led me back to the bank."

The river to flow into and freshen the Dead Sea

5 "The angel said to me, 'This river will flow toward the east and go down into the Jordan river valley where it will enter the Dead Sea and the water in the Dead Sea shall become fresh.'

Swarms of fish to live in the Dead Sea

6 "Swarms of fish of many kinds will live there^{F*} as varied as in the Great Sea,^{F*} and fishermen will cast their nets along the shore."

7 "But the marshes shall not become fresh, they will be left for harvesting salt."

Fruit trees to grow along the river banks

8 "I saw growing on the banks a great number of trees, on both sides of the river."

9 "The angel said to me, 'Fruit trees of all kinds will grow along the banks of the river. Their leaves shall not wither, nor will their fruit fail.'

The trees to bear fruit every month

10 "Every month they shall bear fruit, for water from the Temple flows to them. Their fruit shall be for food and their leaves for healing."

The millennial borders of Israel

11 "The word of the Lord came to me, 'These are the boundaries by which the land is to be equally divided for an inheritance among the twelve tribes of Israel, with two portions for Joseph.'^{F*}

12 "The west border: The Great Sea."

13 "The north border: From the Great Sea at a point level with the Hethlon road to Lebo, and then eastward to the border of Syria."

14 "The east border: The Syrian border south to the upper Jordan at Bashan and then following the Jordan river as far south as Tamar, south of the Dead Sea."

15 "The south border: From Tamar, south west to the Wadi of Egypt then west to the Great Sea."

Foreigners also to receive inheritances

16 "You are to allot the land as an inheritance for yourselves and for the foreigners who will settle among you and who have children. You are to consider them as native-born Israelites."

17 "In whatever tribe the foreigner settles, there you are to give him his inheritance."

New tribal boundaries for Israel

18 "At the northern boundary Dan shall have his inheritance, from east to west."

19 "Next shall be Asher and then in turn, Naphtali, Manasseh, Ephraim, Reuben and Judah."

*6 No fish can survive in the Dead Sea at present.

*6 The Mediterranean.

*11 The tribe of Joseph consisted of the two tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh who were descended from Joseph's sons. This makes thirteen tribes in total, however the Levites had no land of their own.

20 "Bordering Judah will be the sacred district, 25,000 cubits square that you are to set aside for the Temple and the Holy City."

21 "The land extending to the east and west of the sacred district is to belong to the king."

22 "As for the rest of the tribes, Benjamin will have the next portion, then in turn, Simeon, Issachar, Zebulun and Gad."^{F*}



The new borders of gathered Israel in the latter days.

The twelve gates of the Holy City to be named after the twelve tribes of Israel

23 "The gates of the Holy City are to be named after the tribes of Israel."

24 "The three gates on the north side will be, Reuben, Judah, and Levi. On the east, Joseph, Benjamin, and Dan. On the south, Simeon, Issachar, and Zebulun, and on the west, Gad, Asher, and Naphtali."

The Holy City to be named The City of Jehovah

25 "The distance all around the city shall be 18,000 cubits.^{F*} 26 The name of the city from that time on will be The City of Jehovah."

*22 Present day Israel is mostly mountainous and these new boundaries would be impractical, however other prophecies speak of the mountains of the world being broken up and becoming plains and rolling fertile hills at the second coming of the Lord (Micah 2:3, Isaiah 13:2 and 25:13, Revelation 4:14). But the temple and Holy City area are seen in vision as being very elevated, on a mountain top (Isaiah 15:1). The whole land of Israel is also to become fertile, with bubbling springs and pools of water (Joel 2:18, Isaiah 13:14 and 16:3-4).

*25 About 9.7 kms.

18

**Siege of Tyre exhausting
for Nebuchadnezzar's armies**

¹“In the twenty-seventh year this word of the Lord came to me, ‘**Son of man, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon exhausted his armies in the campaign against Tyre. Every head was rubbed bare and every shoulder made raw.**’^{F*} ²And neither he nor his army got any spoil from Tyre as recompense for the labour expended.”^{F*}

**The spoils of Egypt to be
given to Nebuchadnezzar as recompense**

³“Therefore I am going to give Nebuchadnezzar the land of Egypt as a reward for what he and his army did for me. He shall plunder the land and carry off its wealth and obtain pay for his army.”

Israel to begin to recover in that day

⁴“On that day new life shall begin to grow from the stump of Israel, and you son of man will speak out in their midst. Then they shall know that I am the Lord.”



The tomb of Ezekiel in Babylonia (now Iraq).

*1 From carrying earth and rubble for siege works while attempting to build a causeway through the sea.

*2 The siege of Tyre lasted 13 years and appears to have failed. Alexander the Great finally fulfilled the prophecy of her destruction.

LAMENTATIONS

Lamentations is a collection of laments (grief poems) that paint a graphic picture of the horrors that occurred in the city of Jerusalem during the Babylonian siege.

Jeremiah who wrote them was present in Jerusalem throughout the siege, and although confined in the guards quarters toward the end, he was able to provide an eyewitness account. It is believed that he wrote the laments soon afterward while exiled in Egypt.

These laments were originally written in acrostic verse – ie, each verse beginning with a succeeding letter of the 22 character Hebrew alphabet.

AUTHOR The prophet Jeremiah.

“Our eyes failed, ever watching for help. We watched in vain for a nation (Egypt) that could not save.” Lamentations 1:21.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Jerusalem sits deserted weeping like a widow 1	Jehovah has done what he decreed 1
Jerusalem sinned greatly and became unclean 1	Jeremiah laments horrors of the siege 1
Jerusalem speaks of her suffering 1	False prophets and sinful priests to blame 1
Horrors of the Babylonian siege 1	False prophets and priests now suffering in exile 1
Children died of thirst and hunger 1	The daily shame of exile 1
Skin of the people shrivelled black on their bones 1	Lord shut out our prayers 1
Mothers boiled and ate their own children for food ... 1	Judah the laughing stock of nations 1
Eyes watched in vain for Egypt to come and help 1	Yet because of Lord's great love we have hope 1
No one to comfort Jerusalem 1	Shoulder your yoke from the Lord patiently 1
Lord has destroyed his city and holy house 1	Let us examine our ways and return to the Lord 1
Jeremiah the prophet speaks to Jerusalem 1	A prayer to the Lord for restoration 1

1

Jerusalem sits deserted weeping like a widow

¹How deserted sits Jerusalem, once so full of people. Like a widow has she become, she who was once great among the nations. The queen has become a slave.

²How bitterly she weeps at night, with tears upon her cheeks, for she has no one to comfort her.

³No one comes to her appointed feasts. All her gateways are empty. Her children have been exiled. ⁴The Lord has brought her to grief, because of her many sins.

Jerusalem sinned greatly and became unclean

⁵Jerusalem sinned greatly and became unclean. All who honoured her now despise her, for they have seen her nakedness.

⁶She herself groans and turns her face away, for filthiness clung to her skirts.

⁷All her treasures have been stolen. Foreign nations entered her Temple sanctuary.

Jerusalem speaks of her suffering

⁸“Look and see all you who pass by me, is there any sorrow like the sorrow Jehovah has inflicted upon me in the day of his fierce anger?”

⁹“My sins have been made into a yoke and put upon my neck. He handed me over to those

whom I could not withstand.”

¹⁰“The Lord has trodden the daughter of Judah as in a winepress.”

The horrors of the Babylonian siege

¹¹“Look upon my suffering all you peoples. My young men and maidens have been exiled. My priests and elders perished for lack of food.”

¹²“My eyes fail from weeping. My heart is in torment, for I have been most rebellious.

¹³My people are destroyed. In both streets and houses the sword brought death.”

¹⁴“My chastisement was greater than the punishment of Sodom, which was overthrown in a day.”

Children died of thirst and hunger

¹⁵“Because of thirst the infant's tongue clung to the roof of its mouth. Children begged for bread but no one gave them any.”

¹⁶“Their lives ebbed away in their mothers' arms as they cried out, ‘Where is my bread and drink?’”

The once fair skin of the people shrivelled on their bones like black dry wood

¹⁷“They who were raised in wealth and once feasted on delicacies, lay on ash heaps.”

18“Their skin, once whiter than milk, with cheeks as red as rubies, became dark as soot. Their skin shrivelled on their bones like dry wood.”

19“Those who died by the sword were better off than those racked with hunger who died of famine.”

Mothers boiled and ate own children for food

20“With their own hands mothers even boiled and ate their own children.”

Eyes watched in vain for Egypt to come and help

21“Our eyes failed, ever watching for help. We watched in vain for a nation that could not save us.”

No one to comfort Jerusalem

22“This is why I weep. My eyes flow rivers of tears. I stretch out my hands but no one comforts me.”

23“*I have become an unclean thing. Jehovah my Lord is righteous yet I rebelled against him.*”

24“O Lord, people hear my groaning but no one comforts me, they rejoice at what you have done.”

25“Hasten the day you have announced against the nations, that they too may become like me.”

The Lord has destroyed his city and his holy house

26“*My Lord Jehovah is like an enemy. He has swallowed up Israel.*”

27“*He has destroyed all her palaces and her strongholds. He has laid waste his city and destroyed his holy house.*”

28“*The enemy raised a shout in the Temple, as on the day of a feast.*”

Jeremiah the prophet speaks to Jerusalem

29“*What can I say to you O Jerusalem that I may comfort you? For your wound is as deep as the sea. Who can heal you?*”

30“*The visions of your prophets were false. They did not expose your sins to ward off your captivity.*”

31“*Now all who pass your way mock and shake their heads and say, ‘Is this the city that was once called the perfection of beauty, the joy of the whole earth?’*”

32“*Your enemies gloat and say, ‘We have devoured her. This was the day we longed for and now we have seen it.’*”

Jehovah has done what he decreed

33“*Jehovah has done what he decreed long ago. He has overthrown Jerusalem without pity.*”

34“*O daughter of Zion, let your tears flow like a river, night and day. Give yourself no relief. Give your eyes no rest.*”

35“*Arise and cry out in the night, pour out your heart like a river to the Lord.*”

36“*Lift up your hands to him for the lives of your children who died from hunger in every street.*”

Jeremiah laments the horrors of the siege of Jerusalem

37“O Lord whom have you ever treated like

this? Should women eat their own children?”

38“*Should priest and prophet be slaughtered in the house of the Lord?*”

39“*Should young men and maidens and the elderly lie together in the dust of the streets, slain by the sword.*”

40“*You have slaughtered us without pity. You summoned against us terror on every side. In the day of your anger no one escaped.*”

False prophets and sinful priests to blame

41The Lord gave full vent to his wrath. He kindled a fire in Jerusalem that consumed her foundations.

42The kings of the earth did not believe that enemies could enter the gates of Jerusalem, but it happened because of the sins of our prophets and priests.

False prophets and priests now suffering in exile

43Now these prophets and priests wander aimlessly through foreign streets, so defiled with blood that no one dare touch them.

44Men cry out to them, “Away with you! Touch us not! You are unclean!”

45When they flee elsewhere they are soon told, “You can stay here no longer.”

46Jehovah himself has scattered them and no longer watches over them. They are shown no honour.

The daily shame of exile

47“Remember O Lord what has happened to us. Look and see our disgrace.”

48“*Our women were ravished and defiled in Jerusalem and in the towns around. Princes were hung up by their hands.*”

49“*We now have become orphans. We must pay for our firewood and even the water we drink. Slaves rule over us.*”

50“*Elders are shown no respect. Young men toil at millstones and boys stagger under loads of wood.*”

51“*Joy is gone from our hearts. Our dancing has turned to mourning. Young men have ceased their music.*”

52“*Mount Zion^{F*} sits deserted. Wild jackals prowl over it.*”

Lord shut out our prayers

53Woe to us, for we have sinned. Because of these things our eyes grow dim.

54Even when we cried out for help, the Lord shut out our prayers.

55He drew his bow and pierced our hearts with arrows from his quiver.

Judah the laughing stock of the nations

56We have become the laughing stock of the nations. They mock us in song all day long.

57Jehovah has broken our teeth with gravel and trampled us in the dust.

58We have been deprived of peace and have forgotten what prosperity is.

*52 Mount Zion is the hill in Jerusalem where the temple and king's palace were located.

LAMENTATIONS 1

⁵⁹Our splendour is gone and all that we had hoped for from the Lord.

Yet because of the Lord's great love we have hope

⁶⁰Yet, because of the Lord's great love we have hope. For his compassion never fails. Great is his faithfulness.

⁶¹The Lord is good to those whose hope is in him and who seek him.

Shoulder your yoke from the Lord patiently

⁶²It is good to wait quietly for the salvation of the Lord. It is good for a man to bear a yoke in his youth.

⁶³Let him shoulder it patiently, for the Lord has laid it upon him.

⁶⁴Let him bow his face to the earth and offer his cheek to the one who would strike him.

⁶⁵There is yet hope. The Lord will not reject forever.

⁶⁶For although the Lord brings grief he is also compassionate.

⁶⁷Great is his unfailing love. He does not willingly afflict and bring grief to the children of men.

Let us examine our ways and return to the Lord

⁶⁸Why should we complain when punished for our sins? Rather let us examine our ways and return to the Lord.

⁶⁹Let us lift up our hearts and hands to God in heaven and say, "We have rebelled and sinned and you did not forgive us. Therefore we have suffered terror, ruin and destruction."

A prayer to the Lord for restoration

⁷⁰"O Lord who reigns forever, why have you forsaken us so long?"

⁷¹"Restore us to yourself O Jehovah, that we may return. Renew our days as of old."

⁷²"Have you totally rejected us? Is your anger that great toward us?"

DANIEL

The book of Daniel has long been one of the favourites of the Old Testament, and understandably so – its stirring stories are full of courage and faith.

These include the account of Daniel in the lion’s den, Nebuchadnezzar’s dream, Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego in the blazing furnace, the disembodied hand writing on the wall at King Belshazzar’s idolatrous banquet, also the stimulating visions and prophecies of the future as revealed to Daniel by angels.

Daniel was an exiled Jew who lived in Babylon. He was a man of strong character and great faith. His distinguished career in the royal courts of Babylonia spanned 66 years.

NOTE: For greater clarity some chapters of Daniel in this Condensed Bible have been re-ordered from those in the Traditional Bible to maintain chronological sequence.

AUTHOR

The third person accounts of Daniel’s life in the first part of this book were written by an unnamed author, probably one of the later Old Testament prophets. The second half of the book contains the writings of Daniel himself and includes the future prophecies revealed to Daniel by the angels who visited him.

Suddenly the fingers of a man’s hand appeared, and began writing on the plaster of the wall of the banquet room, next to the lampstand. Daniel 7:4.

CONTENTS

	Chapter
Daniel among those first exiled to Babylon	1
Daniel and three others chosen for special training ..	1
Daniel refuses to defile himself with unclean food	1
Daniel’s guard agrees to test him and companions ..	1
They eat only vegetarian food for ten days	1
They look healthier than those eating king’s food	1
God blesses the four young men with great wisdom ...	1
Daniel blessed with insight	1
After three years they enter the king’s service	1
Ten times wiser than other wise men	1
King Nebuchadnezzar has a dream	2
Wise men of Babylon summoned to interpret it	2
King decrees that they tell him the dream first	2
The wise men cannot do as king asks	2
King angrily orders all the wise men executed	2
Executioners sent to find Daniel and his friends	2
Daniel asks king for time	2
Daniel and his companions pray for revelation	2
That night God reveals the dream to Daniel	2
Daniel taken before the king	2
The king’s dream – a huge dazzling statue	2
A head of gold, chest of silver and thighs of bronze ..	2
Legs of iron and feet of iron and clay	2
Statue smashed by a rock cut out of a mountain	2
The rock grows and fills the whole earth	2
Daniel interprets the dream	2
Nebuchadnezzar the head of gold	2
Three more empires to arise	2
A strong fourth empire to arise and break the others ..	2
The fourth empire shall become divided	2
God to establish a kingdom during the fourth empire ..	2
Kingdom of God the rock that will fill the world	2
King Nebuchadnezzar bows down to Daniel	2
Daniel placed as head over all the wise men	2
Daniel’s companions made administrators	2
Daniel a counsellor to kings of Babylon 66 years	2
King Nebuchadnezzar makes a huge idol	3
All Babylonian officials invited to dedication	3
All present ordered to bow and worship the idol	3
Daniel’s three companions refuse to worship the idol ..	3
The king is informed	3
King threatens to throw them into a blazing furnace ..	3
Shadrach, Meshach, Abednego refuse to worship ...	3
The king becomes enraged	3
Orders the furnace heated seven times hotter	3
The heat kills the guards who carry the tied up men ..	3
Shadrach, Meshach, Abednego fall into the furnace ..	3
An angel protects the three men	3
Amazed king calls the three men out	3
No sign or smell of burning on the three men	3
King issues a decree honouring the God of Israel	3
Nebuchadnezzar’s letter explaining his insanity	4
Nebuchadnezzar’s second dream	4
Daniel asked to interpret the dream	4
Nebuchadnezzar’s dream – an enormous tree	4
The tree to be cut down and given mind of animal ...	4
Daniel distressed at meaning of the dream	4
King to become insane and eat grass like an animal ..	4
His kingdom to eventually be restored	4
Daniel’s advises king to repent and be kind to poor ..	4
Nebuchadnezzar’s moment of pride	4
Nebuchadnezzar’s insanity	4
King’s sanity is restored	4
Nebuchadnezzar acknowledges the power of God ..	4
Nebuchadnezzar restored as king	4
Becomes even greater than before	4
Daniel sees vision of four great beasts	5
A winged lion and a bear	5
A four-headed winged leopard	5
A powerful iron-toothed beast	5

DANIEL 1

Ten horns on the head of the beast	5	Jerusalem to be rebuilt for 434 years	9
New boastful horn arises	5	Messiah to be put to death	9
Court of judgement of millions by Ancient of Days	5	The Messiah to be disowned by the people	9
Boastful horn destroyed	5	Jerusalem and the Temple to be destroyed	9
Son of Man comes in the clouds of the heavens	5	Jews to suffer war until end of age	9
Son of Man given authority over all peoples	5	A Desolator to arise during last seven years	9
Daniel asks meaning of the visions	5	An abomination again set up in Jerusalem	9
The four beasts are four emperors of the earth	5	Daniel humbles himself for three weeks	10
Ten kingdoms to arise from fourth beast	5	A glorious being appears to Daniel	10
Blasphemous ruler to arise in the last days	5	Those with Daniel flee trembling	10
God's people to suffer much at his hands	5	Daniel overcome and faints	10
God's people to one day rule all kingdoms on earth ..	5	Daniel is awakened and stands trembling	10
Daniel deeply troubled by his thoughts	5	The being delayed by opposing angel of Persia	10
Daniel has another vision	6	Israel's future to be revealed	10
A two-horned ram	6	Daniel unable to speak	10
A single-horned goat	6	Daniel strengthened by an angel	10
Goat's power is divided four ways	6	Michael the protecting angel of Israel	10
Holy Land to be oppressed and Temple defiled	6	A warrior king to arise in Greece	10
Temple to be reconsecrated after 1150 days	6	His empire to be divided four ways	10
Gabriel helps Daniel understand the vision	6	The king of the south (Egypt) to become strong	10
Ram is the Persian empire	6	The king of the north (Syria) to become stronger	10
Goat is the Greek empire	6	Egypt and Syria to make a short lived alliance	10
A bold faced king to arise	6	Egypt to attack Syria in vengeance	10
He will cause great devastation	6	Later Syria to retaliate but unsuccessfully	10
Will prosper by deceit and destroy the Jews	6	Syria more successful a second time	10
Daniel exhausted by his vision	6	Syria to capture the city of Sidon	10
King Belshazzar gives a great banquet	7	A marriage plan to overthrow Egypt's king will fail ..	10
Goblets from Lord's Temple used to drink wine	7	Syria will invade Asia Minor but be rebuffed	10
Fingers appear and begin to write on the wall	7	A new Syrian king will tax Israel	10
The wise men cannot read the writing	7	A contemptible, deceitful Syrian king to arise	10
Queen mother tells the king to call in Daniel	7	Deceitful Syrian king to attack Egypt	10
Daniel brought in	7	Deceitful plots will bring down Egyptian king	10
Daniel rebukes Belshazzar for his arrogance	7	Both kings will sit and lie to each other	10
Daniel interprets the writing	7	Roman ships will foil a second invasion of Egypt	10
The Babylonian empire given over to the Persians ...	7	Syrian king to vent his fury on the Jews	10
Belshazzar slain and Babylon overthrown that night ...	7	Will send an army to occupy Jerusalem	10
Darius appoints Daniel an administrator	8	The Temple will be desecrated	10
Jealousy when Daniel to become sole administrator ...	8	Those who know God will firmly resist	10
Plan devised to destroy Daniel	8	The righteous who die will become spotless	10
The administrators beguile King Darius	8	The mighty king of the last days	11
He issues a decree forbidding prayer for 30 days	8	He will be successful until wrath is completed	11
Daniel's daily prayer habits	8	Power and wealth will be his god	11
Daniel reported to the king for praying	8	He will storm against Egypt from the north	11
King tries in vain to save Daniel	8	He will invade many lands en route like a flood	11
Daniel thrown into the lions' den	8	Egypt will not escape	11
King Darius fasts for Daniel	8	Reports will bring him back for destruction	11
An angel sent to protect Daniel from the lions	8	He and his armies to be destroyed near Jerusalem ..	11
Daniel's accusers thrown to the lions	8	A time of great tribulation for Israel and all nations ..	11
Darius issues a decree supporting God of Daniel	8	First resurrection at second coming of Christ	11
Daniel prospers during the reign of Darius	8	Rest of the truth sealed until the latter days	11
Daniel fasts and prays for Jerusalem	9	The great tribulation to last three and a half years ..	11
Angel Gabriel comes to answer Daniel's prayer	9	Only the wise will understand the prophecy	11
Messiah to come after 490 years	9	Tribulation to commence when sacrifice abolished ..	11
A high priest in Jerusalem after 49 years	9	Daniel to be resurrected at end of the age	11

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Daniel among those first exiled to Babylon

¹When Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon first came to Jerusalem and besieged it in the reign of Jehoiakim, the Lord delivered the city into his hands and he took captive some of the nobles and carried them back to Babylon.

Daniel and three other young men chosen for special training

²There the king ordered his chief official to choose from among the nobles, young men without defect who were handsome and showed aptitude for learning. Such as could serve in the king's palace.

2

³They were to be trained for three years in the language and literature of the Babylonians, and then afterward to enter the king's service.

⁴These young men were also to be assigned a daily portion of the royal meat and wine from the king's table.

⁵Among those chosen were four young men^{F*} of Judah; Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael and Azariah. But the king's official gave them new names; Belteshazzar,^{F*} Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego.

Daniel resolves not to defile himself with the king's unclean food

⁶However Daniel resolved not to defile himself with the royal meat and wine. So he asked the king's official for permission not to defile himself in this way.^{F*}

⁷The official refused saying, "If my lord the king should see you looking worse than the other young men he may remove my head."

Daniel's guard agrees to test he and his companions ten days with vegetarian food

⁸But Daniel said to the guard whom the king's official had appointed over them, "Test us for ten days. ⁹Give us nothing but sown food^{F*} to eat, and water to drink, then compare our appearance with that of the young men who eat the royal meat."

After ten days the four young men look healthier than those eating the king's food

¹⁰The guard agreed to this, and at the end of ten days the four young men looked healthier and better nourished than any of the young men who ate the royal food. ¹¹So the guard took away their meat and wine and gave them sown foods instead.

God blesses the four young men with great wisdom and Daniel with insight

¹²To these four young men God gave knowledge and skill in all kinds of learning and wisdom, and Daniel was given insight into visions and dreams.

After three years they enter the king's service

¹³At the end of the three years when the king's official presented all the young men before the king, he found none of them equal in wisdom to Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael and Azariah. So they entered his service.

The four young men ten times wiser than all the other wise men

¹⁴In every matter of wisdom in which Nebuchadnezzar the king enquired of these four young men, he found them ten times better than all the magicians and enchanters in his whole kingdom.

*5 Daniel was about 16 years old.

*5 Belteshazzar means 'Bel protect his life.' Bel (also known as Marduk) was an important Babylonian god. Daniel's original name meant 'my judge is God.'

*6 First portions of the king's meat and wine were usually offered to idols, also the meat would probably include the flesh of unclean animals such as the pig.

*9 ie Grains and vegetables.

King Nebuchadnezzar has a dream

¹Now during the second year of his reign^{F*} Nebuchadnezzar had a dream. It troubled his mind so much that he could not sleep.

The wise men of Babylon summoned to interpret the dream

²So he summoned his magicians, enchanters, sorcerers, and astrologers and said to them, "I have had a dream that troubles me and desire to know what it means."

³The wise men answered the king, "O king, live forever. tell us the dream and we will interpret it."

The king decrees that the wise men must tell him the dream before interpreting it

⁴The king answered, "This is my firm decree: First tell me what my dream was, and then interpret it. If you cannot do this I will have you all torn limb from limb and your houses turned into piles of rubble."

⁵"However if you first tell me the dream and then interpret it, I will give you gifts and great honour."

The wise men cannot do as the king asks

⁶But the wise men said a second time, "Let the king first tell his servants the dream then we can give him the interpretation."

⁷The king replied, "You will conspire to tell me lying and misleading words. First tell me the dream then I will know you can interpret it correctly."

⁸The wise men answered, "There is not a man on earth who can do what the king asks. No king, however great and mighty has ever asked such a thing. What the king asks is too difficult. No one could reveal it except the gods, and they do not live among men."

Nebuchadnezzar angrily orders all the wise men executed

⁹This answer greatly angered the king, therefore he issued a decree ordering the execution of all the wise men of Babylon.

Executioners sent to find Daniel and his companions

¹⁰Executioners were also sent to put Daniel and his companions to death. But Daniel spoke to Arioch the chief executioner of the king with tact and then said to him, "Why did the king issue such a harsh decree?" and the commander explained the matter to Daniel.

Daniel asks the king for time

¹¹So Daniel went and stood before the king and asked for time that he might interpret the dream for him.

*1 This would be the same year that Daniel and his companions entered his service. Although referred to as king, Nebuchadnezzar had only been a prince when he attacked Jerusalem and exiled the nobles. He was not crowned king until he arrived back home in Babylon, following his father's death. It was also an unusual Babylonian custom to count the number of years of a king's reign, beginning with the year after his accession year.

DANIEL 2

Daniel and his companions pray for revelation concerning the dream

¹²Then Daniel went to his three companions and urged them to pray for revelation from God concerning the dream so they would not be executed with the rest of the wise men of Babylon.

God reveals the dream to Daniel

¹³That same night the dream was revealed to Daniel in a vision.

¹⁴Daniel said, "Praise the name of God, for he gives wisdom to the discerning and reveals deep and hidden things. I thank you O God of my fathers for you have given me wisdom and power, and made known to me what we asked of you."

Daniel taken before the king

¹⁵Then Daniel went to Arioch and said to him, "Do not execute the wise men. Take me before the king and I will interpret the dream for him."

¹⁶Arioch took Daniel before the king at once and said, "I have brought the young man from among the exiles of Judah. He can tell the king what his dream means."

¹⁷The king said to Daniel, "Are you able to tell me what I saw in my dream, and interpret it?"

¹⁸Daniel replied, "*No wise man can explain to the king his dream, but there is a God in heaven who reveals mysteries.* ¹⁹*The dream has been revealed to me, not because I have greater wisdom than other living men, but that you O king may know what is to take place in days to come.*"

The king's dream – a huge dazzling statue

²⁰"*This is your dream. You saw before you O king an enormous, dazzling bright statue, awesome in appearance.*"

A head of gold, chest of silver, thighs of bronze, legs of iron and feet of iron and clay

²¹"*The head of the statue was of pure gold. Its chest and arms were of silver. Its waist and thighs of bronze, and its feet partly of iron, partly of clay.*"

The statue smashed by a rock cut out of a mountain

²²"*Then as you watched, a rock was cut out of a mountain, not by human hands. It rolled down and struck the statue on its feet of iron and clay, breaking them. Then the whole statue broke up into fine particles like chaff and a wind swept them away without a trace.*"

The rock grows and fills the whole earth

²³"*The rock then grew to become a huge mountain and filled the whole earth.*"

Daniel interprets the dream

²⁴"*That was your dream. Now we^{F*} will interpret it to the king.*"

Nebuchadnezzar the head of gold

²⁵"*You O king are a king of kings. God has given you great power and glory and has made you to rule over all the earth. You are the head of gold.*"

Three more empires to arise

²⁶"*After you a second empire shall arise inferior to yours,^{F*} and then a third empire, one of bronze will rule over the earth.*"^{F*}

A strong fourth empire to arise and break all the others

²⁷"*Then will come a fourth empire, strong as iron, for iron breaks everything and so it will crush and break all the others.*"^{F*}

The fourth empire shall become divided

²⁸"*As you saw, the feet and toes were partly of iron, partly of potter's clay, so this will be a divided empire. It will have some of the strength of iron in it, but the people will be a mixture and will not be united, just as iron does not mix with clay.*"

The kingdom of God to be established on earth during the fourth empire

²⁹"*During the days of this empire, the God of heaven will establish another kingdom that will endure for all time^{F*} and never be destroyed. It will eventually crush all kingdoms.*"

Kingdom of God the rock that will fill the world

³⁰"*This kingdom is the rock that was cut out of a mountain, not by human hands. The rock that broke the gold, silver, bronze, iron and clay to pieces.*"

³¹"*The great God has shown the king what is to take place in the future. The dream is true and the interpretation is correct.*"

King Nebuchadnezzar bows down to Daniel

³²At these words Nebuchadnezzar bowed face down before Daniel and paid him honour, and ordered that a grain offering and incense be offered to him. ³³He said to Daniel, "Surely your God is the God of gods, and a revealer of mysteries."

Daniel placed as head over all the wise men

³⁴Then the king lavished many gifts on Daniel and made him governor over the province of Babylon and placed him at the head of all the wise men.

Daniel's companions made administrators

³⁵Furthermore, at Daniel's request the king appointed Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego administrators over the affairs of the province.

Daniel a counsellor to the kings of Babylon for 66 years

³⁶Daniel (himself however remained at the royal court. (He was a counsellor to the kings of Babylon for 66 years.)

*26 The Persian empire.

*26 The Greek (or Hellenistic) empire.

*27 The Roman empire.

*29 The Kingdom of God established by Jesus Christ.

*24 'we' probably meaning Daniel and his friends. With characteristic humility Daniel did not take all the credit for the interpretation.

3

King Nebuchadnezzar makes a huge idol

¹In time, Nebuchadnezzar made a huge idol, overlaid with gold. It stood 60 cubits high and 6 cubits wide^{F*} and he set it up on a plain near Babylon.

All the Babylonian officials invited to the dedication

²Then the king summoned all the officials, judges and governors of the provinces of Babylonia to the dedication of the idol. On the appointed day a great crowd assembled on the plain.

All present ordered to bow and worship the idol

³Then a herald loudly proclaimed, "O peoples of every nation and language, as soon as you hear the sound of the music you are to bow down and worship the idol of gold that King Nebuchadnezzar has set up. ⁴Whoever does not bow down to the idol and worship will be thrown into a blazing furnace."

⁵Therefore when all the people heard the sound of the music, they bowed down and worshipped the idol of gold.

The king informed that Daniel's three companions refuse to worship the idol

⁶However some of the Babylonians came to Nebuchadnezzar and said to him, "O king, live forever. There are three Jews whom you have set over the affairs of Babylon who pay no heed to you. ⁷Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego do not serve your gods, and now they refuse to worship the golden idol you have set up." ^{F*}

The three men to be thrown into a blazing furnace if they do not worship

⁸Nebuchadnezzar angrily summoned the three men and said to them, "Is it true Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego that you refuse to worship the idol of gold I have set up? ⁹If you do not worship when the music begins again, you will be thrown immediately into a blazing furnace."

Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego refuse to worship the idol

¹⁰But they answered the king, "If we are thrown into a blazing furnace, the God we serve is able to deliver us O king. ¹¹But even if he does not, we will not serve your gods and we will not worship the idol of gold."

The enraged king orders the furnace heated seven times hotter than normal

¹²At these words the king became so enraged his face became contorted. He ordered the furnace heated seven times hotter than normal. ¹³Then he commanded his guards to tie up the three men and throw them into the blazing furnace.

*1 28m high by 3m wide.

*7 It would appear that Daniel wisely avoided attending the dedication.

The heat kills the guards who carry the three men into the furnace

¹⁴The king's command was so urgent and the furnace so hot, that the heat of the fire killed the guards who carried the three men into the furnace.

Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego fall tied into the furnace

¹⁵Nevertheless Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego fell firmly tied into the blazing furnace.

An angel protects Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego

¹⁶As he watched, Nebuchadnezzar leapt to his feet in amazement and cried out, "Were there not three men thrown into the furnace? I see four men walking around in the fire, unbound and unharmed, and the fourth looks like an angel of the gods."

The amazed king calls the men out

¹⁷The king approached the door of the blazing furnace and shouted, "Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego, servants of the Most High God, come out!" So they came out of the furnace.

No sign or smell of burning on the three men

¹⁸The king and his officials crowded around them and saw that the fire had not harmed their bodies. Not a hair was singed and their clothes were not scorched, nor was there even the smell of fire upon them.

Nebuchadnezzar issues a decree honouring the God of Israel

¹⁹Nebuchadnezzar said, "Praise be to the God of Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego, who sent his angel and rescued his servants! They trusted in him and were willing to give up their lives rather than worship any other god."

²⁰"Therefore I decree, that the people of any nation who say anything against the God of Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego shall be torn limb from limb and their houses turned into piles of rubble, for no other god can save in this way."

²¹Then the king promoted Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego.

4

Nebuchadnezzar's letter to his empire explaining his insanity

¹Some years later, Nebuchadnezzar sent this letter throughout his empire.

²"To the peoples of every nation and language in the world, may you prosper greatly. I thought it good to tell you of the miraculous wonders that the Most High God has performed for me."

Nebuchadnezzar's second alarming dream

³"I Nebuchadnezzar was at home in my palace, lying in my bed contented and prosperous, when I had a dream that alarmed me. ⁴I told the wise men of Babylon the dream but they could not interpret it for me."

Daniel asked to interpret the dream

⁵“At last Daniel who is called Belteshazzar came into my presence and I said to him, ‘Daniel, chief of the wise men, I know that the spirit of the Holy God is in you and no mystery is too difficult for you. This is my dream. Interpret it for me.”

Nebuchadnezzar’s dream – an enormous tree

⁶“I looked and saw before me a tree standing in the midst of the land. Its height was enormous and the top touched the sky. It could be seen from the ends of the earth.”

⁷“Its leaves were beautiful and its fruit abundant. Under it the animals of the field found shelter and the birds of the air lived in the branches. And from the tree all living creatures took their food.”

The tree to be cut down and its mind changed to that of an animal

⁸“Then I saw an angel, a Holy One coming down from heaven. He cried out in a loud voice, ‘Cut down the tree! Chop off his branches and scatter his fruit. Let the animals flee from beneath him and the birds from his branches.”

⁹“But let his roots and stump remain in the ground among the grass of the field.”

¹⁰“Let his mind be changed from that of a man to a beast and cause him to live with the animals of the field and be wet with the dews of the heavens until seven times have passed over him.”

¹¹“This decision is given by order of the Holy Ones, that the living may know that the Most High rules over the kingdoms of men and gives them to whomsoever he will, even to the lowliest of men.”

Daniel distressed at the meaning of the dream

¹²“Daniel became distressed, so I said to him, “Do not let the dream or its meaning alarm you.”

¹³“Daniel replied, ‘*O that the dream and its meaning applied to your enemies my lord. You O king are that great tree. You have become mighty and strong, and your dominion extends to the ends of the earth.*”

The king to become insane and eat grass like an animal of the field

¹⁴“*This is the decree that the Most High God has issued against my lord the king, ‘You will be driven away from people and will eat grass with the animals of the field and be wet with the dews of the heavens.*”

The king’s insanity to last seven times until he acknowledges that the Most High God is Lord

¹⁵“*Seven times^{F*} will pass over you until you acknowledge that the Most High God is Lord over the kingdoms of men and gives them to whoever he wishes.*”

Nebuchadnezzar’s kingdom to be eventually restored

¹⁶“*The command to leave the stump of the tree in the ground means that your kingdom will be restored to you when you learn that Heaven rules.*”

Daniel advice to the king – repent and be kind to the poor

¹⁷“*Now O king, condescend to accept my advice. Repent of your sins by being kind to the poor and the oppressed. It may be that your prosperity will be prolonged.*”

Nebuchadnezzar’s moment of pride

¹⁸“Twelve months later as I walked upon the roof of the royal palace of Babylon I said to myself, “Is not this the great Babylon I have built by my mighty power, for the glory of my own majesty?”^{F*}

¹⁹“The words were still on my lips when I heard a voice from heaven say, ‘King Nebuchadnezzar your royal authority has been taken from you.”

Nebuchadnezzar’s insanity

²⁰(At this point, what had been prophesied regarding Nebuchadnezzar the king was fulfilled. He was driven away from people and ate grass like an ox.^{F*} ²¹His body became wet with the dews of the heavens, and his hair grew long like the feathers of an eagle, and his nails became like the claws of a bird.)

The king’s sanity is restored

²²“At the end of the appointed time I Nebuchadnezzar lifted my eyes to heaven and my sanity was restored.”

Nebuchadnezzar acknowledges the power of God

²³“I praised the Most High God. I honoured and glorified him who lives for ever for his kingdom is eternal. He does as he chooses with the hosts of heaven and the inhabitants of earth.”

Nebuchadnezzar restored as king and becomes even greater than before

²⁴“At the same time my honour and

*15 Times, literally, ‘a set time’, which can mean a lunar month, a season, a year, or even a divinely set period. Most often it means one year, and for Nebuchadnezzar this was evidently the case. His favourite wife appears to have ruled as queen during the seven years.

*18 Babylon was indeed a great city, about 350 square km in area, and with walls 103 metres high and 42 metres thick. The city straddled the Euphrates river with impressive walls, gates, canals, buildings, temples, gardens, and parks.

*20 This mental disorder is known as Lycanthropy. The sufferer believes he is an animal. It has been reported from ancient times.

splendour were restored to me. My advisers and nobles sought me out. I was restored to my throne and became even greater than before.”

²⁵“Now I Nebuchadnezzar glorify the King of heaven, for all that he does is just and true, and he is able to humble the proud.”

5

Daniel sees a vision of four great beasts

¹“In the first year of Belshazzar, king of Babylon,^{F*} I Daniel saw a vision as I lay on my bed at night. Before me the winds of the heavens were churning up the Great Sea,^{F*} then four great beasts in turn, each different from the other came up out of the sea.”

The winged lion

²“The first was like a lion and it had the wings of an eagle. Then its wings were torn off and it stood on two feet and the mind of a man was given to it.”^{F*}

The bear

³“The second beast looked like a bear. It was raised up on one side and had three ribs between its teeth.^{F*} It was told, ‘**Arise and eat your fill of flesh!**’”

The four-headed, winged leopard

⁴“The third beast looked like a leopard and had four wings on its back like those of a bird. This beast had four heads and was given authority to rule.”^{F*}

The powerful iron toothed beast

⁵“The fourth beast was different from all the other beasts and was terrifying and very strong. It had great iron teeth and claws of bronze and had ten horns on its head.”^{F*}

⁶It crushed and devoured its victims and stamped underfoot whatever was left.”^{F*}

A new boastful horn arises

⁸“As I pondered the meaning of the horns there came up another horn and three of the first horns were uprooted before it.”

*1 Belshazzar was the last king of Babylonia. He co-reigned over the empire with his father Nabonidus. Nebuchadnezzar had died after reigning 42 years and was succeeded in rapid succession by three kings in six years, and then by Nabonidus who left his son Belshazzar to rule over Babylonia, and went to reside in Arabia presumably to consolidate the weakening empire.

*1 The Mediterranean.

*2 As subsequent verses make clear, this beast represents the Babylonian empire. The imagery of the wings being torn off may refer to the humbling effect of Nebuchadnezzar’s temporary insanity or perhaps to the less powerful rule of his successors.

*3 This second beast represents the soon to arise Persian empire which was partly shared with the Medes, which accounts for its lop-sidedness. The three ribs probably represent the three principle conquests, Babylon, Egypt and Asia Minor.

*4 This third beast represents the Greek empire of Alexander the Great which eventually split into four, each headed by one of his generals. The wings may symbolise the power and speed at which Alexander acquired the empire. See also Daniel 6:4-6, 15-16 for a further vision of this empire.

*5 The ten horns signify the many nations that were to arise after the decline of the empire and correspond with the toes of the statue in Nebuchadnezzar’s dream.

*6 The fourth beast represents the large and powerful Roman empire.

⁹“This horn had eyes like the eyes of a man and a mouth that spoke boastfully.”^{F*}

A court of judgement of millions by the Ancient of Days

¹⁰“Then I saw thrones being set in place, and one that was Ancient of Days^{F*} took his seat.”



Artist’s view of the beasts seen by Daniel in vision.

*9 This new small horn seems to be the Beast or Antichrist who is to arise in the last days. It appears that he will conquer three nations formerly ruled by Rome (see Revelation chapters 9 and 13).

*10 The identity of the ‘Ancient of Days’ has given rise to much speculation. Many assume him to be God the Father or Jesus Christ. However this is improbable for the name ‘Ancient of Days’ does not symbolise greatness, glory or Godhood as does a name such as ‘Most High’ which is commonly used throughout the book of Daniel. And although the ‘Ancient of Days’ is seen on a glorious throne, sitting on a glorious throne is not restricted to God the Father alone, for Jesus told his twelve apostles that both he and they would sit on thrones and judge Israel (Matt-Mark-Luke 24:53) when he returns in the last days, and John in his Revelation visions saw twenty-four elders seated on thrones (Revelation 3:3). Also the vision appears to be located within the spirit realms here on earth rather than in heaven, for in the same vision Daniel also sees, in verse 13 the horn ‘waging war against the saints.’ Most significantly however, verses 16-17 depict the ‘Ancient of Days’ yielding his authority to a ‘Son of Man’ who perfectly fits the description of Jesus Christ at his glorious second coming to earth. The ‘Ancient of Days’ would therefore appear to be a glorified being who has lived a very long time and who currently stands at the head of the human spirits in the righteous realms of the spirit world of the dead (sometimes called Paradise).



Artist's view of the beasts seen by Daniel in vision.

11“His clothing and hair were pure white like snow, and the throne on which he sat flamed with fire and its wheels were all ablaze. A river of fire flowed out from before him.”

12“Thousands upon thousands attended him, and ten thousand times 10,000 stood before him. The court was seated and the books were opened.”

13“As I watched, the horn was waging war against the saints^{F*} and defeating them until the Ancient of Days pronounced judgement^{F*} in favour of the saints of the Most High to possess the kingdom.”

The boastful horn destroyed

14“**The horn continued to speak great boastful words until the Beast was slain and its body destroyed and given to be burned with fire.**”

15“**The other three beasts had been stripped of their authority but were allowed to live for a period of time.**”)

*13 The term 'saints' as used in the Bible refers to any group of people who are living God's laws.

*13 This preliminary judgement by the 'Ancient of Days' may be to judge who is worthy to be resurrected and lifted up to meet Jesus Christ at his second coming, see following verses and also James 3:18. However the final day of judgement, under the personal direction of Jesus Christ will not take place until the end of Christ's thousand year Millennial reign on earth, when all the wicked will have been resurrected at the final resurrection (Revelation 16:7, 14-15).

A Son of Man comes in the clouds of the heavens

16“**And I saw one like a Son of Man,^{F*} coming in the clouds of the heavens. He came to the Ancient of Days and was presented before him.**”

The Son of Man given authority over all peoples

17“**To him was delivered authority, glory and kingship, that all peoples and nations of every language should serve him. His kingdom is an everlasting one and will never be destroyed.**”

Daniel asks the meaning of the visions

18“**I Daniel was troubled in spirit for the visions disturbed me. So I approached one of those standing there and asked him the meaning of the visions and he gave me this interpretation.**”

Four beasts are four emperors of the earth
19“**The four great beasts are four emperors of the earth but the saints of the Most High will eventually obtain the whole kingdom and possess it forever.**”

Ten kings to arise from the fourth beast

20“**Then I asked him the meaning of the fourth beast which was different from the others and most terrifying.**”

21“**I also asked about the ten horns on its head and the other more imposing horn that came up that seemed greater than the others, and had eyes and a mouth that spoke boastfully and before which three of the other horns fell.**”

22“**He said, ‘The fourth beast is a fourth empire that will appear on earth. It will be different from all the other empires and will devour the whole earth, trampling it down and crushing it. 23The ten horns are ten kings^{F*} that will arise from this empire.**”

A blasphemous oppressive ruler to arise in the last days

24“**And after these, another king will arise, different from the kings of the earlier kingdoms, and he will subdue three kings.**”

25“**He will blaspheme the Most High God and oppress the saints of the Most High, and try to change their calendar and their laws.**” ^{F*}

God's people to suffer much at his hands for three and a half years

26“**They will suffer much at his hands for three and a half years.^{F*} But then the court^{F*} will sit and his power will be destroyed.**”

*16 Jesus Christ often used the term 'Son of Man' to refer to himself, perhaps with this scripture in mind.

*23 No convincing identification of these ten kings has ever been made, however ten is used as an approximate large number earlier in the book (see Daniel 1:14) and in this particular case the ten kings and their kingdoms are probably meant to correspond with the number of toes on the statue in Nebuchadnezzar's dream and may not be meant to be taken too literally. Also it is unlikely that the number of kingdoms would remain constant for long.

*25 The Beast or Antichrist of the last days, see note on verse 9 of this chapter.

*26 Literally 'three and a half times,' in this instance the book of Revelation confirms that years are meant (Revelation 9:7).

*26 See note on the judgement by the 'Ancient of Days' verse 13 of this chapter.

God's people to eventually rule all the kingdoms of the whole earth

²⁷“Then the rulership of the kingdoms of the whole earth will be handed over to the people of the Most High. Their kingdom shall be an everlasting kingdom and all rulers will obey them.”

Daniel deeply troubled by his thoughts

²⁸“I was deeply troubled by my thoughts and my face turned pale, but I kept the matter to myself.”

6

Daniel has another vision

¹“In the third year of Belshazzar's reign, I Daniel had another vision.”

The two-horned ram

²“I saw myself in Susa the capital, by the Ulai canal. On the bank before me appeared a ram with two long horns, one longer than the other.”

³“He charged toward the west and the north and the south. No animal could stand against him. He did as he pleased and became very great.”^{F*}

The single-horned goat

⁴“Suddenly a male goat with a large horn between his eyes appeared from the west, crossing the whole earth without touching the ground. ⁵He charged at the ram with great savagery, striking him and shattering his two horns and trampling him into the ground.”

The goat's power is divided four ways

⁶“Then the goat magnified himself greatly. But at the height of his power the large horn was broken off, and in its place four horns grew, pointing toward the four corners of the earth.”^{F*}

The Holy Land to be oppressed and the Temple defiled

⁷“Then out of one of the four horns came a fifth horn, which grew southward to the holy land and as high as the heavens, and threw some of the stars down to the earth and trampled on them.”

⁸“The horn even defied the King of the heavens, and did away with the daily sacrifice and defiled his holy Temple. And because they rebelled, the people of the Holy Land were trampled underfoot. ⁹The horn prospered in everything it did and truth was trampled upon the ground.”^{F*}

The Temple in Jerusalem to be reconsecrated 1150 days after being defiled

¹⁰“Then I heard the voice of an angel saying,

*3 The ram was the Persian-Mede empire, the longer horn symbolising the dominance of Persia (Daniel 6:14).

*6 The goat who overthrew the ram was the Greek (Macedonian) empire and the large horn Alexander the Great. The four horns represent the breaking up of the empire into four divisions, each headed by one of Alexander's generals after his death at age 32.

*9 The fifth horn is Antiochus IV, a Greek king who ruled over the land of Israel from Antioch in Syria 175 BC to 163 BC. In an attempt to force Greek culture on the Jews (see footnote on Daniel 10:44).

‘How long will it be before the Temple is reconsecrated after this vision is fulfilled?’”

¹¹“A second voice replied, ‘After 1150 days.’”^{F*}



Antiochus IV (the fifth horn in Daniel's vision) a forceful Greek ruler (175 -163 BC) who defiled the Temple and tried to force the Jews to obey Greek customs.

Gabriel helps Daniel understand the vision

¹²“While I was trying to understand the vision, an angel stood before me and I heard a voice say to him, ‘Gabriel, help this man understand the meaning of the vision.’”

¹³“The angel approached me and I feared greatly and fainted with my face to the ground. He touched me and raised me to my feet, then he said, ‘Son of man, understand that the vision concerns an appointed time of wrath.’”

The ram is the Persian empire

¹⁴“The two-horned ram that you saw represents the empire of Persia.”

The goat is the Greek empire

¹⁵“The goat is the empire of Greece, and the large horn between his eyes is the first king.^{F*} ¹⁶The four horns that replaced the one that was broken off represent four kingdoms that will emerge from his empire, but will not have the same power.”

A bold faced king to arise

¹⁷“At the latter end of their reign, when wickedness has reached full measure, a bold faced king, a master of deceit will arise.”^{F*}

He will cause great devastation and destroy the Jews

¹⁸“He will grow strong and cause great devastation and will succeed in whatever he does. ¹⁹He will destroy the mighty, and also the holy people and will cause wickedness to prosper.”

*11 This prophecy was fulfilled.

*15 Alexander the Great.

*17 Antiochus IV, see note on verse 9 of this chapter.

DANIEL 7

He will prosper by deceit

²⁰“He will consider himself superior and by his deceitfulness he shall prosper. Without warning he shall destroy many, and rise up against the King of kings. Yet he will be broken, but not by human hand.”

²¹“This vision is true, but seal it up for it refers to many years from now.”

Daniel is exhausted by his vision

²²“I Daniel was exhausted by what I had seen and lay recovering for several days. Then I arose and went about the king’s business. ²³I was appalled by the vision and did not understand it.”

7

King Belshazzar gives a great banquet

¹In time, Belshazzar the king gave a great banquet in the royal palace for a thousand of his nobles and drank wine with them.

Goblets from the Lord’s Temple used to drink wine

²While under the influence of wine he gave orders to bring in the gold goblets that his forefather Nebuchadnezzar had taken from the Temple in Jerusalem. He did this so that he and his nobles, and his wives and concubines might drink from them.

³So they brought in the gold goblets and drank wine from them, praising their gods as they did so.

Fingers appear and begin to write on the wall

⁴Suddenly the fingers of a man’s hand appeared, and began writing on the plaster of the wall of the banquet room, next to the lampstand.

⁵The king’s face turned pale as he watched the hand write. He became so fearful that his legs lost their strength and his knees knocked together.

The wise men cannot read the writing

⁶The king cried out for the enchanters, astrologers and diviners to be brought in. He said to them, “Whoever interprets this writing will be made the third highest ruler in the empire.” ^{F*}

⁷But none of the wise men could read the writing. ⁸King Belshazzar became even more fearful and his face grew paler.

The queen mother tells the king to call in Daniel

⁹Then the queen mother entered the banquet hall and said, “O king, live forever. Do not look so pale. There is a man in your kingdom who has the spirit of the Holy God in him. Call for Daniel. He will tell you what the writing means.”

Daniel is brought in

¹⁰So Daniel was brought in and the king said to him, “If you can read this writing and interpret it for me you will be made the third

*6 King Belshazzar was only the second highest ruler of the Babylonian empire. He co-ruled with his father Nabonidus (see note on Daniel 5:1).

highest ruler in the empire.”

¹¹Daniel answered the king saying, “You may give that honour to another, nevertheless I will read the writing.”

Daniel rebukes Belshazzar for his arrogance

¹²“But first O king, the Most High God gave your forefather Nebuchadnezzar greatness, glory, and splendour. All the nations dreaded and feared him. ¹³But when his heart became arrogant with pride he was given the mind of an animal. He ate grass like an ox until he acknowledged that the Most High God is Lord over all the kingdoms of men.”

¹⁴“But you O Belshazzar, have not humbled yourself, though you knew of this. Instead you have set yourself against the Lord of Heaven and have drunk wine from the goblets of his Temple.”

¹⁵“You praised gods that cannot see, hear, nor understand but you did not honour the God who holds your life in his hand. Therefore he sent the hand that wrote this inscription.”

Daniel interprets the writing – the

Babylonian empire given over to the Persians

¹⁶“The writing says, ‘Mene, Mene, Tekel, Parsin,’ and the words mean, ‘God has brought your reign to an end. You have been weighed in the scales and found wanting. Your kingdom has been given over to the Persians.’”

Babylon overthrown that very night

¹⁷That very night Belshazzar king of the Babylonians was slain and Darius the Mede took over his kingdom. Darius was sixty-two years of age. ^{F*}

8

King Darius appoints Daniel one of three administrators over Babylonia

¹Darius appointed 120 governors to rule his kingdom with three administrators over them, one of whom was Daniel. ^{F*}

Jealousy when Daniel is to be made sole administrator

²But Daniel so distinguished himself that Darius the king decided to set him over the whole kingdom. On hearing this the other administrators and some of the governors tried to find grounds for charges against Daniel, but they were unable to do so as he was trustworthy and neither corrupt nor negligent.

*17 Darius of Media who was appointed the new king of Babylon was an officer in the conquering army of king Cyrus the Great. This Persian king took the city of Babylon that very day, the 29th of October, 539 BC as a liberator and met no resistance. Evidently the plan of Cyrus was to divert a portion of the Euphrates river which flowed through Babylon, into a disused canal, thereby lowering the level of the river sufficiently to enable his men to wade under the massive 103 metre high walls of the city. However, due to his benevolent reputation and the dissatisfaction of the Babylonian armed forces with the present king, the city surrendered and the gates were opened to king Cyrus and his army.

*1 Daniel would now have been about 80 years of age.

A plan is devised to destroy Daniel

³Finally they said, “We will never find a charge against this man Daniel unless it has to do with the law of his God.”

King Darius is beguiled into issuing a decree forbidding prayer for 30 days

⁴So the two administrators and some of the governors went as a group to Darius and said, “O King Darius, live forever. We have all agreed that you should issue this decree; that anyone who makes a petition to any god or man during the next thirty days, except to you O king, shall be thrown into the lions’ den.”

⁵So Darius put the decree in writing.

Daniel’s daily prayer habits

⁶Now Daniel knew that the decree had been issued, nevertheless he went home as usual to his upstairs room where the windows opened toward Jerusalem, and got down on his knees and prayed giving thanks to his God. Daniel did this three times every day.

Daniel is reported to the king for praying

⁷The men went and found Daniel praying so they returned to the king and said to him, “Daniel pays no attention to your decree O king. He still prays three times a day.”

The king tries in vain to save Daniel

⁸When he heard this, the king was distressed and made every effort to save Daniel. However at sundown the men came to Darius and said to him, “Remember O king that the law of the Persians does not allow a decree of the king to be changed.”

Daniel thrown into the lions’ den

⁹So the king gave the order and Daniel was cast into the lions’ den. The king said to Daniel, “May your God deliver you.”

¹⁰A great stone was placed over the mouth of the den and Darius sealed it with his own signet ring.



Site of the lion’s den in the ruins of Babylon.

Darius fasts for Daniel

¹¹The king returned to his palace and spent

the night fasting and without entertainment.

¹²He could not sleep, and at the first light of dawn he arose from his bed and hurried out to the lions’ den.

¹³When he came near he called out to Daniel in an anguished voice, “Daniel, servant of the living God, has your God been able to save you from the lions?”

An angel sent to protect Daniel from the lions

¹⁴From within the den Daniel answered, “O king, live forever. My God sent his angel to shut the mouths of the lions. They have not hurt me for I am innocent in his eyes.”

¹⁵The king was overjoyed at this, and gave orders to lift Daniel out of the den. When he was lifted up, no wound was found upon him.

Daniel’s accusers and their families thrown to the lions

¹⁶Then at the king’s command, the men who had accused Daniel were cast into the lions’ den, along with their wives and children. The lions immediately overpowered them and crushed their bones.

Darius issues a decree supporting the God of Daniel

¹⁷Afterward Darius sent this letter to all the people throughout his kingdom.

¹⁸“May you prosper greatly. I hereby issue a decree that in every part of my kingdom all must fear and reverence the God of Daniel. ¹⁹For he is the Living God and endures forever. He saves and rescues and performs wonders in the heavens and on the earth, and he rescued Daniel from the power of the lions.”

Daniel prospers during the reign of Darius

²⁰So Daniel prospered during the reign of King Darius, under the dominion of Cyrus the Persian.

9

Daniel fasts and prays for the restoration of Jerusalem and the Temple

¹“In the first year of Darius who was made king over Babylonia, I read in the book of Jeremiah the prophet that the desolation of Jerusalem should last seventy years.” ^{F*}

Daniel’s prayer

²“So I prayed and made confession unto the Lord my God with fasting and in sackcloth and ashes saying these words.”

³“O Jehovah, the great and awesome God who keeps his covenant of love with all who honour him and obey his commandments, we have sinned and done wrong. We have turned away from your laws and have not listened to the prophets who spoke in your name.”

⁴“We are covered with shame in all the lands

*1 About 67 years had now passed since Daniel was exiled from Jerusalem, and about 48 years since the destruction of Jerusalem.

DANIEL 9

where you have driven us and the curses written in the law of Moses have been poured out upon us. Under the whole heavens nothing has ever been done as was done to Jerusalem."

⁵"Now O Jehovah our God, in keeping with all your righteous acts, turn away your anger from Jerusalem your city and holy hill which our sins and those of our fathers have made an object of scorn. Hear the prayer of your servant and look with favour upon your ruined *Temple*."

⁶"We do not ask because we are righteous, but because of your great mercy O Lord. Listen and forgive, and for your own honour O Jehovah do not delay, for your city and we your people bear your name."

The angel Gabriel comes to answer Daniel's prayer

⁷"While I was still praying and confessing my sins and the sins of my people, Gabriel the angel whom I had seen in my vision came to me in swift flight. It was about the time of the evening sacrifice."

⁸"He said to me, 'Daniel, I have come to give you knowledge and understanding. As soon as you began to pray an answer was given out, which I have come to tell you, for you are highly esteemed.'

A Most Holy One (The Messiah) to come after 490 years

⁹"Seven times seventy years of tribulation are decreed for your people and for your holy city. To put an end to sin and to atone for wickedness and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to fulfil prophecy and anoint a Most Holy One." F*

A high priest in Jerusalem 49 years after word to rebuild the city

¹⁰"Understand therefore that from the issuing of the word to rebuild Jerusalem until the time of an anointed one there shall be 49 years." F*

Jerusalem to be rebuilt for 434 years

¹¹"Then for 434 years the city will be rebuilt with streets and a wall, but in troubled times,"

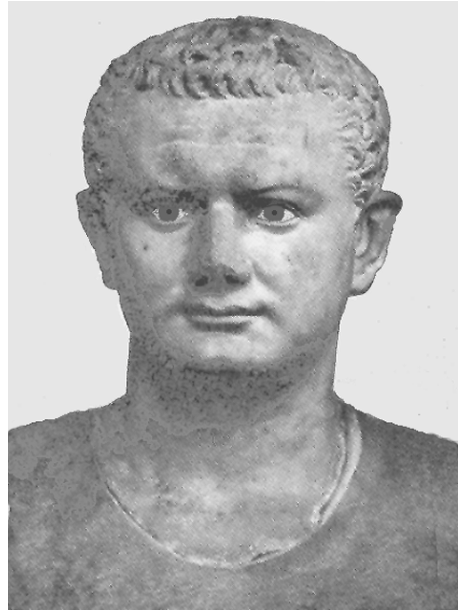
The Messiah to be put to death and disowned by the people

¹²"After the 434 years, Messiah^{F*} shall be put to death and be disowned by the people."

Jerusalem and the Temple to be destroyed soon after

¹³"Then the army of a king who shall arise

in those days will come and destroy Jerusalem and the Temple.^{F*} Its end shall come like a flood."



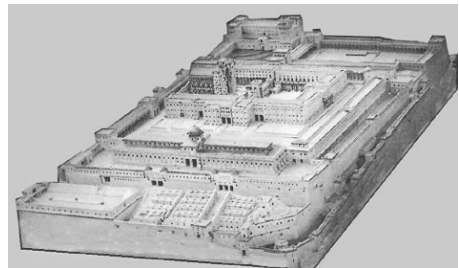
Titus, the Roman general and future emperor who would destroy Jerusalem and the Temple in 600 years time as prophesied by the angel Gabriel (Daniel 9:13).

Jews to suffer war until end of age

¹⁴"And then, until the end of the age there shall be war."

A Desolator to arise during last seven years

¹⁵"And it is decreed that a Desolator shall arise. He shall make a firm agreement with many for seven years. ¹⁶But half way through the seven years he will put an end to sacrifice and offerings."



Herod's magnificent Temple complex completed 26 AD and destroyed in 70 AD as prophesied through Daniel.

An abomination that causes defilement again to be set up in Jerusalem

¹⁷"Then shall come one who will set up in

*9 The Messiah. See verse 12 following.

*10 A decree to rebuild the temple was issued by Cyrus in 537 BC. After much difficulty the temple was completed 21 years later in 516 BC. However permission was not given to rebuild Jerusalem's walls until Ezra, an influential priest, arrived in 458 BC with a letter from Artaxerxes, who was at that time the emperor of Persia (Ezra 1:14-27). The city was finally enclosed by walls in 444 BC. The 'anointed one' in this instance probably refers to Ezra the priest.

*12 Literally 'The Anointed One' - Jesus Christ who was put to death 31 AD. This prophecy has been calculated by scholars to have been fulfilled on the exact day when Jesus rode a donkey into Jerusalem, just prior to his death.

*13 The army of Roman emperor Tiberius Caesar under the command of Titus. The temple and Jerusalem were destroyed in 70 AD.

Jerusalem an abomination that causes defilement, until the decreed end is poured out upon the Desolator.” F*

10

Daniel humbles himself for three weeks

1“**In the beginning of the third year of Cyrus, I Daniel humbled myself before God for three weeks. I ate no rich food, no meat or wine entered my mouth, and I did not anoint myself F* until the three weeks were over.**”

A glorious being appears to Daniel

2“**Then on the twenty-fourth day, as I stood on the bank of the Tigris river, I looked up and saw before me a man, clothed in white, with a belt of finest gold around his waist.**”

3“**His body glowed like a golden gem and his face shone bright as lightning. His eyes blazed like fire and his arms and legs had the appearance of polished bronze. His voice was like the roar of a great multitude.**” F*



The Tigris river where Daniel was visited by a glorious being.

Those with Daniel flee trembling

4“**I Daniel was the only one who saw the vision. The men with me did not see it, but a great trembling fell upon them and they fled and hid themselves.**”

Daniel is overcome by the presence of the being and faints

5“**As I was left alone gazing at this great**

*17 Verses 15 to 17 are obscure but seem to pertain to a seven year rule by a ‘Desolator’ in the last days (*end of the age*) and his eventual destruction. The second 3½ year period of the rule of this Desolator, after he breaks an agreement, appears to be similar to that of the Antichrist, the Beast, or Gog who is to invade Jerusalem as part of the battle of Armageddon just prior to the second coming of Jesus Christ (Daniel chapter 11 and Revelation chapter 9). It would also appear that the two previous invasions of Jerusalem, first by Antiochus IV in 168 BC, and Rome in 70 AD were a type for what is to come in the last days. However this time Messiah will intervene. See the introduction to Joel for an overview of this eventful period.

*1 Anointing is the common eastern custom of lightly oiling the skin, hair and beard with a scented oil.

*3 Although Daniel does not identify him, the description of this glorious being closely matches that of the pre-mortal Jesus Christ (or his Spirit see note on Revelation 1:12) who ‘comes in the name of Jehovah’ (see note on John 1:8). He also appeared to Moses, Isaiah, Ezekiel and others (Exodus 10:16, Ezekiel 1:17).

vision my strength left me and my face turned pale. When the being spoke I fainted with my face to the ground.”

Daniel is awakened and stands trembling

6“**A hand touched me and set me trembling on my hands and knees.**”

7“**The being said to me, ‘Daniel, you who are highly esteemed, arise and listen carefully to the words I am about to speak to you.’ So I stood up trembling.**”

The glorious being delayed by the opposing angel of Persia

8“**He said, ‘Fear not Daniel. Since the first day you humbled yourself before God to gain understanding, your words were heard and I have come in response to them.’**”

9“**But the angel of the Persian kingdom opposed me twenty-one days. Then Michael one of the chief angels came to assist me.**”

The being to reveal Israel’s future

10“**Now I will reveal to you what will happen to your people in the latter days, for there is a further vision for those times.**”

Daniel unable to speak but is strengthened by an angel

11“**While he was speaking I was staring at the ground, unable to speak. Then an angel in appearance like a man touched my lips and I was able to speak.**”

12“**I said, ‘I am overcome my lord, my strength is gone, I tremble and can hardly speak.’**”

13“**The angel touched me again and said, ‘Fear not O man highly esteemed. Peace, be strong now, be strong.’**”

14“**When he spoke to me I was strengthened and said, “Speak on my lord.”**”

Michael the protecting angel of Israel

15“**Then he continued, “Soon I will return to oppose the angel of Persia, and when I am through with him, the angel of Greece will come.”**”

16“**No one supports me against them except Michael, the angel of your people Israel. Yet it was I who supported and protected Darius in the first year of his reign.**”

A warrior king to arise in Greece

17“**But now I will tell you what is written in the Book of Truth. F* Three more kings shall arise in Persia, and then a fourth who will be far richer than all the others.**” F*

18“**When he has gained power by his wealth, he will stir up all against the kingdom of Greece. 19And there, a warrior king shall arise who will rule with great dominion and act as he pleases.**” F*

His empire to be divided four ways

20“**But while he is still rising in power, his**

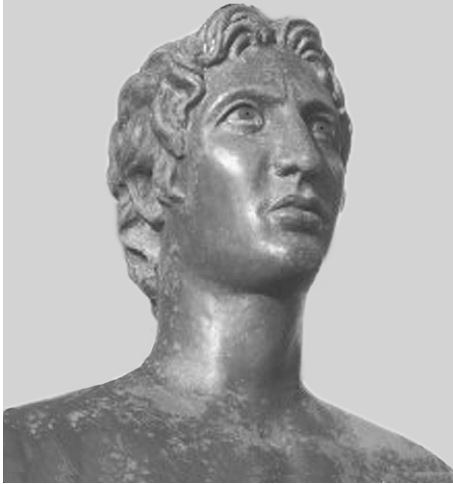
*17 Believed to be a divine record of the decreed destiny of the earth.

*17 Xerxes I who ruled 486-465 BC.

*18 Alexander the Great who ruled 336-323 BC.

DANIEL 10

empire shall be broken up and divided four ways; north, south, east, and west, but it will not be given to his descendants.” F*



Alexander the Great, the young Greek warrior who rapidly built a world empire before dying at age 32.

The king of the north (Syria) will become stronger than the king of the south (Egypt)

21“**The king of the south^{F*} shall become strong, but the king of the north^{F*} will become stronger and rule his kingdom with great power, but after some years they will reconcile.**”

Egypt and Syria will make a short lived alliance

22“**Then the daughter of the king of the south^{F*} shall be given to the king of the north to make an alliance, but she will not retain her influence.^{F*} Nor will her father live long.**”

Egypt to victoriously attack Syria in vengeance

23“**Then her brother will become king of the south and shall attack the king of the north^{F*} and be victorious. He will seize their idols and other treasures of silver and gold and carry them back to Egypt.**”

Later Syria to retaliate, but unsuccessfully

24“**Some years later a new king of the north shall invade the south, but he will be unsuccessful and will retreat to his own land. ²⁵Then one of his sons^{F*} will prepare for war, and assemble a great army which**

will sweep southward like a flood, but they shall be defeated.”



Alexander the Great's divided empire.

26“**The king of the south will slaughter many thousands and shall be filled with pride.**”

Syria more successful a second time

27“**Yet the king of the south will not remain triumphant, for after several years the king of the north will muster another army larger than the first and fully equipped.**”

28“**And in those days many will rebel against the king of the south. Violent men from among your own people will also join them, but without success.**”

Syria to capture the city of Sidon

29“**Then the king of the north will march south and capture a fortified city.^{F*} The forces of the south shall be powerless to resist him. ³⁰He shall establish himself in the Holy Land and will have power over it.**”

A marriage plan to overthrow Egypt's king will fail

31“**He will determine to conquer the entire kingdom of the south and shall give his daughter^{F*} in marriage to the king of the south in order to overthrow the kingdom, but his plan will fail.” ^{F*}**

Syria will invade Asia Minor but be rebuffed by a Roman commander

32“**Then he will turn his attention to the coastal nations,^{F*} and shall take many of them, but a Roman commander^{F*} will put an end to his insolence. After this he will retreat toward the security of his own lands, but shall die.”**

A new Syrian king will tax Israel

33“**His successor will tax the Holy Land to maintain the royal splendour, but he will soon be destroyed, but not in battle.” ^{F*}**

*20 Alexander died suddenly of fever in Babylon at age 32, and four of his generals became kings over his new empire which was divided four ways.

*21 Ptolemy II who ruled from Egypt.

*21 Antiochus II, who ruled over Syria, which included the land of Israel and her eastern neighbours. He was based in Antioch.

*22 Berenice.

*22 Berenice was murdered by Laodice, the former wife of her husband Antiochus II.

*23 Berenice's brother was Ptolemy III. He attacked the king of Syrian to avenge the murder of his sister.

*25 Antiochus III the Great.

*29 The Phoenician port city of Sidon.

*31 The famous Cleopatra, daughter of Antiochus the Great, whom he gave in marriage to Ptolemy V the king of Egypt in 194 BC hoping to gain control over Egypt.

*31 Cleopatra gave her loyalty to her husband Ptolemy rather than to her father Antiochus.

*32 Asia Minor (the nations of the Turkish peninsula) and Greece.

*32 Lucius Scipio who defeated Antiochus the Great at Magnesia in Asia Minor in 190 BC.

*33 Seleucus IV who died as the result of a conspiracy.

A contemptible, deceitful Syrian king to arise

³⁴“In his place shall arise a contemptible person on whom the honour of royalty will not be conferred.”^{F*}

³⁵“He shall seize the kingdom by deceit when the people feel secure, and will sweep away armies and the prince of the covenant^{F*} also.”

³⁶“By lies he will act deceitfully and with only a few supporters he shall rise in power.”

³⁷“When the richest parts of the provinces feel secure, he shall suddenly invade them and distribute the spoil among his followers.”

The deceitful Syrian king to attack Egypt

³⁸“Then he will stir up his courage and with a large army march against the king of the south.”

Deceitful plots bring down the Egyptian king

³⁹“The king of south shall wage war with a powerful army, but shall not succeed because of deceitful plots devised against him. For his own officers will try to destroy him. His army will desert him and many will fall slain.”



Ptolemy I, one of Alexander's four generals who ruled over the south from Egypt.

Both kings will sit and lie to each other

⁴⁰“Then these two kings, their minds bent upon evil will sit at the same table and lie to each other, but to no avail. Neither will get what he wants for the appointed time is not yet.”

⁴¹“Then the king of the north will return to his own land with great wealth.”

^{*34} Antiochus IV who seized power when the rightful heir to the throne Demetrius I was still very young. The prophecy that follows is a more detailed version of Daniel 6:17-21.

^{*35} Onias the high priest of Jerusalem who was deposed by Antiochus IV.

A second invasion of Egypt will be foiled by Roman ships

⁴²“At the appointed time he will again invade the south, but this time Roman ships will oppose him and he will lose heart and withdraw.”

The Syrian king to vent his fury on the Jews

⁴³“He shall turn back and vent his fury against the covenant people and will listen to those who have forsaken their holy covenant.”^{F*}

He will send an army to occupy Jerusalem and desecrate the Temple

⁴⁴“He will send an army to occupy and desecrate the Temple and abolish the daily sacrifice. Then he will set up an abomination that causes defilement.”^{F*}

Those who know God will firmly resist

⁴⁵“With flattery he will corrupt those who break their covenant, but the people who know their God will firmly resist him.”

⁴⁶“Those who are wise will instruct many, though for a time they will be imprisoned or fall by the sword, or be burned. ⁴⁸But when they fall, many who had not been sincere will join them.”

The righteous who die at that time will become spotless before God

⁴⁷“Some of the wise shall die, that they may be refined and become spotless, even until the end of the age, which will come at the appointed time.”

11

The mighty king of the last days

¹“And in those days there shall arise a mighty king who will act as he pleases.^{F*} He will not regard the god of his ancestors nor any god, nor the desire of women, but shall exalt himself above every god and will blaspheme the God of gods.”

He will be successful until the decreed wrath is completed

²“He will be successful until the time of wrath is completed, for what has been determined must take place.”

^{*43} Religiously corrupt Jews who sought political power.

^{*44} Because Antiochus IV wanted to force the Jews to adopt Greek forms of worship, he sent an army to plunder the temple and establish a garrison in Jerusalem. They destroyed the Scriptures, forbade circumcision, forced the Jews to eat pork and finally built a pagan altar dedicated to the Greek god Zeus over the top of the Lord's altar and sacrificed a pig on it. This outrage eventually led to a Jewish revolt in 168 BC led by the skilled guerrilla Judas Maccabeus and his brothers. Under their leadership the Jews eventually regained control of Jerusalem four years later and reconsecrated the temple (Daniel 6:10). They eventually freed Israel from Syrian rule entirely, 22 years later in 142 BC.

^{*1} This chapter of Daniel appears in parts to again prophesy the difficulties associated with the evil Antiochus IV as did the previous chapter with unerring accuracy. However the details in this chapter do not match known history at all, but they do match future prophecy found elsewhere in the Bible regarding Gog (or the Antichrist, or Beast) a world leader who is to arise in the latter days a few years prior to the second coming of Jesus Christ (see Ezekiel chapter 13 and Revelation chapters 9, 10, and 13).

DANIEL 11

Power and wealth will be his god

³“He shall honour power as his god, and will honour gold and silver, precious stones and costly gifts, and will overcome the strongest fortresses with the help of this god.”

⁴“He shall greatly honour and make wealthy those who acknowledge him and shall make them rulers over many peoples and will distribute land for a reward.”

He will storm against Egypt from the north

⁵“At the time of the end, a king of the south shall challenge him in battle, and he with his armies will storm down against him with chariots and cavalry and a great fleet of ships.”

He will invade many lands en route like a flood

⁶“He shall invade many lands and sweep through them like a flood. He will also invade the Holy Land, but Edom, Moab and Ammon will be delivered from his hand.”

Egypt will not escape

⁷“However Egypt shall not escape. He will gain control of all the riches of Egypt, and the Libyans and Ethiopians shall be with him.” ^{F*}

Reports from the east and the north will bring him back for destruction

⁸“But while in Egypt, reports from the east and the north will trouble him and bring him back, ready for destruction.”

He and his armies will be destroyed as they camp near Jerusalem

⁹“He will pitch his palatial tents between the sea and the holy mountain at Jerusalem. There he shall come to an end with no one to help him.”

A time of great tribulation for Israel and all nations

¹⁰“In those days Michael the angel who protects your people shall arise. It will be a time of great tribulation such as has never occurred since the beginning of nations. ¹¹“But every one of your people whose name is found written in the Book^{F*} shall be delivered.”

The first resurrection at the second coming of Christ

¹²“Many who sleep in the dust of the earth will awaken to Eternal Life, but the others shall awaken to Eternal Shame.” ^{F*}

¹³“Those who were wise, and led many to righteousness, shall shine like the splendour of the sun for all eternity.”

Rest of the truth sealed until the latter days

¹⁴“Now Daniel, the rest of the truth is sealed up until the latter days when many shall fall away and evil will increase.”

The great tribulation to last three and a half years

¹⁵“Then I saw two angels, one on either side of the river. One of them said to the being who had been speaking and who was now standing above the water of the river, ‘How long will the time of great tribulation last?’”

¹⁶“The being lifted his hands toward heaven and said, ‘For three and a half years, until the pride of the holy people has been finally broken.’”

Only the wise will understand the prophecy

¹⁷“I heard but did not understand. So I asked the being clothed in white, ‘My lord, what will be the outcome of all this?’”

¹⁸“He replied, ‘Go your way Daniel, the book of Truth will remain sealed until the latter days. Until then, many will be purified and made spotless, but the wicked will continue to be wicked.’”

¹⁹“None of the wicked will understand but those who are wise will understand.”

Three and half years of tribulation to commence when daily sacrifice abolished in Jerusalem

²⁰“From the time that the daily sacrifice is again abolished^{F*} and an abomination that causes defilement is set up, there shall be three and half years of tribulation. ²¹“Blessed are they who endure the further forty five days until the end.”

Daniel to be resurrected at the end of the age

²²“As for you Daniel, go your way and await the end. You will rest with your fathers and then at the end of the age you shall arise to receive your reward.”

*7 Ezekiel 13:5 prophesies that the Libyans and Ethiopians will ally themselves with Gog in the last days.

*11 The Book of Life. See note on Revelation 2:36.

*12 The first resurrection will take place at the second coming of Jesus Christ, but the second awakening, or resurrection of the unrighteous, known as the second resurrection will not take place until more than a thousand years later, following the Millennium (Revelation 16:7).

*20 It would appear from this verse that daily animal sacrifice will again be established in Jerusalem (and abolished) prior to the second coming of Jesus Christ.

HAGGAI

The decreed 70 year exile of the Jews has at last drawn to an end. Cyrus the new Persian emperor is divinely moved upon to permit the exiled Jews and their descendants, those who wish to do so, to return to Judah from Babylonia. He appoints Zerubbabel a descendant of David as their governor.

Of the 100,000 plus Jews who return immediately, most were of the tribes of Judah, Benjamin and Levi. However remnants from other tribes of Israel also joined them as prophesied by Jeremiah (Jeremiah 12:21-22). The journey from Babylon to Judah would have taken about four months.

It had been approx 67 years since the first exile from Judah, in 605 BC, so few of the exiles who returned would have remembered the Temple in Jerusalem, but many of the elderly did and they wept when the foundation for a modest new Temple was laid. Nevertheless most of the people shouted for joy.

The idolatrous Samaritans who had settled in the former northern Israel (themselves exiles from other lands) wanted to help the Jews rebuild the Temple but they were firmly rejected by the Israelite leaders. The Jews had learned their lesson about associating with idolatrous peoples and never did lapse back into idolatry.

However because of this rebuff, the Samaritans became their enemies and work on the Temple stopped for about 14 years. It took a long drought and a stern rebuke from the Lord through the prophet Haggai to stir the people back into activity again. The Temple was eventually finished and dedicated in 516 BC, 22 years after the exiles had returned to Judah.

Little is known about the prophet Haggai except that he and his companion prophet Zechariah were among the returning exiles.

AUTHOR Ezra up until chapter 2, verse 9, then Haggai the prophet.

“You expected much when you returned home, but see, it has turned out to be little. Why? Because my house has remained a ruin while each one of you have been busy with your own house.” Haggai 2:14.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Cyrus allows the exiles of Judah to return	1	The Samaritans want to help the Jews	2
Those returning assisted with gifts	1	Israelite leaders refuse outright	2
Cyrus returns the Temple articles	1	Samaritans become enemies	2
A large company return to Judah	1	Work on Temple comes to a standstill	2
They settle in their own towns	1	Lord displeased with slothfulness of his people	2
Some of the priests unable to prove their genealogy ..	1	Poor crops as a result of failing to build the Temple ..	2
People assemble at Jerusalem in seventh month	1	The people again commence work on the Temple ...	2
The altar rebuilt and daily sacrifice again offered	1	The Lord renews his covenant	2
Sacred feast and freewill offerings reinstated	1	Temple to be filled with glory in days to come	2
People prepare to build a new Temple	1	A defiled person defiles all they touch	2
Work on the Temple begins	2	Lord to begin blessing the crops of the people	2
Foundation is laid	2	Zerubbabel the governor chosen of the Lord	2
The people shout praise to the Lord	2	Zerubbabel will be raised up on the last day	2
But many of the elderly weep	2		

Bold The Lord speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Cyrus allows the exiles of Judah to return

¹In the first year of his reign, Cyrus king of Persia issued this proclamation throughout his vast empire.

²“Jehovah the God of heaven has

given me all the kingdoms of the earth, and he has charged me to build a Temple for him at Jerusalem in Judah. Therefore, any of his surviving people

HAGGAI 2

who live among you may now return to Jerusalem.”

³“Let the neighbours living around each survivor, assist with silver, gold, goods and livestock, and also with offerings for the Temple of God.”

Those returning assisted with gifts

⁴At this the family heads of Judah, Benjamin, and the Levites, all whose hearts God stirred, prepared to return and rebuild the house of the Lord in Jerusalem.

⁵Their neighbours assisted them with articles of silver and gold, goods and livestock, and with valuable gifts.

Cyrus returns the Temple articles

⁶Furthermore Cyrus the king returned the articles belonging to the Temple which Nebuchadnezzar had carried away from Jerusalem and placed in the temple of his own god.

⁷The king’s treasurer counted the articles in the presence of Zerubbabel who had been appointed governor of Judah.

⁸There were 30 gold dishes, 1,000 silver dishes, 29 silver pans, 30 gold bowls, 410 matching silver bowls, and 1,000 other articles.

⁹Zerubbabel and the returning exiles took all these with them when they went from Babylonia to Jerusalem.

A large company return to Judah and settle in their own towns

¹⁰The company numbered 42,360 men^{F*} of which 4,630 were priests and Levites.

¹¹They also took with them 7,337 male and female servants, 736 horses, 245 mules, 435 camels, and 6,720 donkeys.

¹²They returned to Judah^{F*} and settled in their own towns.

Some of the priests unable to prove their genealogy

¹³However some of the Levite priests could not find their family genealogical records, so the governor forbade them to eat any of the sacred food^{F*} until there was a priest ministering with the Urim and Thummim.^{F*}

The people assemble in Jerusalem in the seventh month

¹⁴After the people had established their homes, they all assembled in Jerusalem at the beginning of the seventh month.^{F*}

*10 Their wives and children would swell the total number much higher, probably well in excess of 100,000.

*12 Judah was about 1150 kms distant, a journey of about four months duration for a large company with livestock. They would also rest on the Sabbaths.

*13 The sacred food was the priest’s portion of the food offerings made to the Lord by the people.

*13 ie Until the high priest was able to verify their claim by revelation from the Lord through the Urim and Thummim (Lights and Perfections). This priestly item was kept in the chest pocket of the high priest’s robe (Exodus 17:14) and was used to receive revelations from the Lord. It appears to have disappeared at some stage during the troublesome times leading up to the destruction of the temple and has not been heard of since. It may have been hidden with the Ark, see note on Jeremiah 3:8. The exact nature of the Urim and Thummim has long mystified scholars but it is generally understood to consist of a pair of transparent crystals.

*14 About three months after their arrival. The festive seventh month which falls in late summer (Sept-Oct) begins with the

The altar is rebuilt and the daily sacrifice again offered

¹⁵Joshua the high priest and his fellow priests, and Zerubbabel the governor and his officials began to rebuild the altar of the Lord to sacrifice burnt offerings upon it.

¹⁶Despite their fear of the peoples around about them^{F*} they built the altar on its former foundation and sacrificed burnt offerings on it to the Lord. They did so as prescribed in the Law of Moses, both the morning and evening sacrifices.

Sacred feast and freewill offerings reinstated

¹⁷Later that month in accordance with what was written in the Law, they offered the appointed sacrifices for the Feast of Tabernacles.

¹⁸From that time forward they continued to offer the appointed sacrifices on the other sacred feasts. They also offered freewill offerings to the Lord.

The people prepare to build a new Temple

¹⁹However the foundation of the Lord’s Temple had not yet been laid. So the people gave money to pay for masons and carpenters.

²⁰They also sent food and drink and olive oil to the people of Sidon and Tyre, requesting that they send cedar logs by sea from Lebanon to Joppa.



The beach at Joppa where the Israelites took delivery of cedar logs from Lebanon.

2

Work on the Temple begins

¹In the second month of the second year, Zerubbabel the governor, Joshua the high priest and the rest of the people began work on the Temple of the Lord. They appointed Levites to supervise the builders.

The people shout praise to the Lord at the laying of the foundation

²When the builders had laid the foundation of the Temple, the priests in their garments with

Feast of Trumpets on the first day, the Day of Atonement on the 10th day, and the week long Feast of Tabernacles commencing on the 15th day.

*16 These would be mostly Samaritans, exiles from Assyrian-conquered lands in the north-east who had been deported to repopulate the exiled northern kingdom of Israel (Amos 3:23).

their trumpets, and the Levites with cymbals took their places to praise the Lord as prescribed by King David of old.

³With thanksgiving they sang to the Lord: “He is good. His love endures forever,” and all the people gave a great shout of praise to the Lord.

Many of the elderly weep

⁴Many of the elderly among them who had seen the former Temple, wept aloud, but others shouted for joy.

⁵No one could distinguish the shouts of joy from the weeping, for the people made so much noise and the sound was heard a long way off.

The Samaritans want to help the Jews build the Temple

⁶When the other people living in the land around about heard that the returned exiles were building a Temple for the Lord, they came to Zerubbabel and the leading men of Judah and Benjamin and said to them, “Let us help you build the Temple, for we also seek your God and have been sacrificing to him since the king of Assyria exiled us here.”

The Israelite leaders refuse outright

⁷But Zerubbabel, Joshua, and the rest of the heads of Israel answered, “You can have no part with us in building the Temple. We alone must build it as Cyrus the king of Persia commanded us.” ^F*



A Samaritan, formerly exiles from Assyrian-conquered lands in the north-east who had been deported to repopulate the exiled northern kingdom of Israel.

The Samaritans become enemies and work on the Temple comes to a standstill

⁸At this refusal the people in the land around about became their enemies and began to

*7 The real reason for the refusal would be that these people (the Samaritans) also worshipped their own gods. The Israelites had learned their lesson regarding idolatry.

harass the men of Judah, to the extent that all work on the Temple came to a standstill.

⁹This continued throughout the reign of Cyrus, even until the reign of his successor Darius. ^F*

The Lord is displeased with the slothfulness of his people

¹⁰In the sixth month of the second year of Darius this word of the Lord came through the prophet Haggai to Zerubbabel the governor and Joshua the high priest in Judah.

¹¹“*Jehovah Almighty says, ‘The people have been saying, ‘It is not yet time for the Lord’s house to be built.’ Is it then time for them to be living in panelled houses while my house remains a ruin?’*”

Poor crops as a result of failing to build the Temple

¹²“*Consider whether you have prospered. You plant much but harvest little. You eat and drink but have not enough. You are clothed but not warm. You earn wages but find your purses have holes in them.*”

¹³“*Go now up into the hills. Bring down timber and build my house that I may take pleasure in it and be honoured.*”

¹⁴“*You expected much when you returned home, but see, it has turned out to be little. Why? Because my house has remained a ruin while each one of you has been busy with your own house.*”

¹⁵“*Therefore I called for a drought on the grain and on the wine and on the oil, and on all that the soil produces. And on the animals and the people and all their labour. And the heavens have withheld their rain.*”

The people again commence work on the Temple

¹⁶Then Zerubbabel, Joshua and all the people obeyed the word of the prophet Haggai.

¹⁷Then came this second message from the Lord to the people. “*Jehovah declares, ‘I am with you.’*”

¹⁸So the Lord stirred up the spirits of the people and in that same month they again began work on the Temple.

The Lord renews his covenant

¹⁹The following month this word of the Lord came to the prophet Haggai.

²⁰“*Jehovah says to the people, ‘Who is left that saw this Temple in its former glory? How does it look to you now? Does it not look as nothing?’*”

²¹“*But now be strong O Zerubbabel. Be strong O Joshua. Be strong all you people of the land, and work.* ²²For I am with you according to the covenant I made with you when I brought you out of Egypt. ²³Fear not for my Spirit abides among you.”

The Lord’s Temple to be filled with glory and treasure in days to come

²⁴“*And in days to come I will shake the*

*9 Cyrus reigned as emperor of Persia for 18 years, his successor was not the same Darius he had appointed king over Babylonia.

HAGGAI 2

heavens and the earth and the sea. I will shake all nations and the treasures of all peoples will flow to my people. I will fill my house with glory, for the silver and gold of the earth is mine.”

²⁵“The glory of my Temple in those days will be greater than the glory of the former Temple, and in this place I will give you peace.”

A defiled person defiles all they touch

²⁶In the ninth month this word of the Lord came to the prophet Haggai.

²⁷“*Jehovah* says, ‘Ask the priests what the Law says. If a priest carries consecrated food in the fold of his garment and that fold touches some other food, does the other food become consecrated?’”

The priests answered, “No.”

²⁸The Lord said, “If a person defiled by a dead body touches consecrated food, does that food become defiled?”

The priests replied, “Yes, it becomes defiled.”

²⁹The Lord said, “So it is with this people. If they are defiled, whatever work they do with their hands or whatever they offer me will be defiled. So consider this from now on.”

The Lord to begin blessing the crops of the people

³⁰“Remember how things were before you again recommenced to build my Temple.

When you came to a store of twenty measures of grain you found only ten. When you went to a wine vat to draw fifty measures, there were only twenty.”

³¹“I struck all the work of your hands with blight, mildew and hail, yet you did not turn to me.”

³²“Even now there is no seed left in your barns. The vine, the fig tree, the pomegranate and the olive tree have not borne fruit. But from this day forward I will bless you.”

Zerubbabel the governor chosen of the Lord and will be raised up in the last days

³³This word of the Lord also came to Haggai that same day.

³⁴“*Jehovah Almighty* says, ‘Speak to Zerubbabel governor of Judah. Say to him, “The day is coming when I will shake the heavens and the earth and will overturn thrones and shatter the power of all foreign kingdoms. I will overthrow chariots and their drivers, horses and riders, and each man will fall by the sword of his brother.”’

³⁵“On that great day I will raise you up my servant Zerubbabel, and will make you like my signet ring, for I have chosen you.”

ZECHARIAH

The returned exiles have again commenced to rebuild the Temple in Jerusalem. The foundation was laid about 14 years ago but work came to a halt because of hindrance from Samaritans, until a revelation was received from the Lord through the prophet Haggai rebuking the people for their slothfulness.

However this time opposition again arises in the form of a hostile Samaritan provincial governor named Tattenai. He writes to the Persian emperor-King Darius hoping to put a stop to the work. To Tattenai's dismay, Darius writes back not only encouraging the work of rebuilding the Temple but ordering the governor to pay the cost out of royal revenues. Furthermore he also orders him to provide animals for sacrifice that the Jewish priests "*...pray for the well-being of the king and his sons*" (Zechariah 1:19).

Zechariah the prophet was a Levite priest and a returned exile who had been born in Babylonia. He prophesied throughout the rebuilding of the Temple, which took four years. His prophecies of the Messiah (Jesus Christ) both regarding his first coming and future second coming are particularly clear and vivid.

One of his prophecies (Zechariah 4:6) tells how the Messiah will ride into Jerusalem on the foal of a donkey. Matt-Mark-Luke 25:15-19 tells of its fulfilment. Another tells of a poignant scene to take place following the second coming of Jesus Christ when the Jews will weep bitterly when they see the pierce marks in their Messiah's body (Zechariah 5:10).

We also learn through Zechariah that the Mount of Olives at Jerusalem is to split in two when the feet of the returning Christ touch it. He also confirms Ezekiel's prophecy that a river of fresh water will flow from Jerusalem into the Dead Sea during the Millennium.

AUTHOR Zechariah the prophet, except for chapters one and six which are by Ezra.

**"Weapons of war shall be abolished, and I will command peace to the nations.
My dominion shall extend to the ends of the earth."** Zechariah 4:7.

CONTENTS

	Chapter
Returned exiles again begin to rebuild the Temple ...	1
Provincial governor challenges their authority	1
Sends a letter to king Darius	1
Work permitted to continue in meantime	1
Copy of the letter	1
King Darius locates the decree of Cyrus	1
His reply to the governor	1
Jews permitted to build Temple	1
Expenses to be paid from royal revenues	1
Animals for offerings also to be provided	1
Priests to pray for well being of king and his sons	1
Punishment if king's decree not obeyed	1
Governor obeys the king's decree	1
Warning from the Lord through Zechariah	2
Zechariah's vision of the four horsemen	2
Four horsemen sent to patrol the earth	2
Jerusalem to be rebuilt	2
Vision of four horns – four kings	2
Vision of four workmen with hammers	2
Vision of young man with a measuring line	2
Jerusalem to outgrow its walls	2
Jehovah sent by the Lord God Almighty	2
Jehovah coming to live among his people in future ...	2
Other nations also to become his people in that day 2	2
Joshua the high priest saved from Satan	2
Joshua symbolically clad in filthy clothes	2
Joshua dressed in clean clothes	2
A conditional promise to Joshua	2
Vision of golden lampstand and olive branches	2
Power comes from the Spirit of the Lord	2
Not by man's might or power	2
Zerubbabel to complete the Temple	2
Vision of a flying scroll	2
Vision of a woman in a container	2
Vision of four horses and chariots	2
A crown to be made for Zerubbabel	2
Zerubbabel is the Branch	2
Zerubbabel and Joshua to rule people in harmony ...	2
But only if they obey Lord	2
Men of Bethel come to enquire of the Lord	3
Should they still fast and mourn in fifth month?	3
Lord asks if their fasting was sincere	3
Judah scattered for not listening to earlier prophets .	3
The Lord still loves Jerusalem	3
He will once again fill the city with people	3
People to be blessed as they rebuild Temple	3
The people must speak truth and act with justice ...	3
The fasts to continue but as joyful times	3
Strong nations will seek Lord in Jerusalem	3
Tyre to be destroyed	4
Pride of Philistines to end	4
Judah to be protected during next invasion	4
Messiah to enter Jerusalem riding a donkey	4
Messiah-King to command peace	4

ZECHARIAH 1

Messiah to eventually rule whole earth	4	Jews to see pierce marks in Messiah's body	5
Messiah to set free prisoners in the spirit world	4	Jews will weep bitterly	5
Lord's people to be helped in battle on last day	4	Sin of the Jews to be forgiven	5
People of Israel to shine like jewels in Millennium	4	No more false prophets	5
Uncaring shepherds have led Israel astray	4	Zechariah's vision of the coming of the Lord	5
Great leaders to come from Judah	4	Mount of Olives to split in two	5
House of Joseph also to be saved	4	The day to be dark and cold yet light at evening	5
House of Joseph to be made mighty	4	Fresh water to flow from Jerusalem to Dead Sea	5
Nile to dry up to assist gathering	4	And also half to the Mediterranean	5
The sea also to be subdued	4	Jehovah to be king over the whole earth	5
Zechariah commanded to become a shepherd	4	The land around Jerusalem to become like a plain	5
A shepherd of sheep marked for slaughter	4	Jerusalem to be raised up	5
Two staffs named Favour and Union	4	Flesh of the invaders to rot as they stand	5
Zechariah resigns as shepherd	4	The armies to slay one another	5
Breaks the staff called Favour	4	Great amounts of spoil to be collected by Judah	5
Zechariah paid thirty pieces of silver	4	Survivors of the nations to worship at Jerusalem	5
The silver thrown into the Temple to the potter	4	Nations who refuse shall have no rain	5
Zechariah breaks the second staff called Union	4	'Holy to Jehovah' to be inscribed on bells	5
An uncaring shepherd about to be raised up	4	Sacrifices to be offered in the Millennial Temple	5
Nations to besiege Jerusalem in latter days	5	The Jews finish rebuilding the Temple	6
Those nations will suffer grievous hurt	5	The Temple is dedicated with joy	6
Cities of Judah to gain victory ahead of Jerusalem	5	Passover is celebrated	6
Two thirds of Israel to perish during that time	5		

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

The returned exiles again begin to rebuild the Temple

¹During the second year of Darius king of Persia, the returned exiles in Judah again began to rebuild the Temple in Jerusalem.

Tattenai the provincial governor challenges their authority

²However Tattenai, governor of the Trans-Euphrates province of the Persian empire^{F*} came to Zerubbabel in Jerusalem, along with his officials, and said to him, "Who authorised you to rebuild this Temple?"

Work permitted to continue while Tattenai sends a letter to King Darius

³But the Lord was watching over the Jews and they were permitted to continue building the Temple until a letter could be sent from Tattenai to Darius the king and his written reply be received.

A copy of the letter

⁴This is a copy of the letter that was sent to Darius.

⁵"To King Darius from Tattenai governor of Trans-Euphrates. Greeting."

⁶"The king should know that we visited the district of Judah and found the people there rebuilding the Temple of the great God."

⁷"We questioned the leaders and wrote down their names for your information."

⁸"They claim that in his first year, King

Cyrus issued a decree to rebuild this Temple and that he also returned the gold and silver articles which King Nebuchadnezzar had taken from the Temple and gave them to a man named Zerubbabel, whom he also appointed as governor of Judah."

⁹"So this Zerubbabel came and laid the foundations of the Temple in Jerusalem and from that day to the present it has been under construction, but is not yet finished."

¹⁰"Now if it pleases the king, let a search be made in the royal archives to see if King Cyrus did in fact issue a decree to rebuild this Temple, and then let the king send us his decision in this matter."

King Darius locates the decree of Cyrus

¹¹When Darius received the letter he ordered a search of the archives and the decree was found. So he wrote back this reply to Tattenai.

The king's reply to the governor

¹²"To Tattenai, governor of Trans-Euphrates, from King Darius."

¹³"In his first year King Cyrus issued this decree concerning the Temple of God in Jerusalem:"

¹⁴"Let the Temple be rebuilt as a place to present sacrifices. It is to be 60 cubits high and 60 cubits wide,^{F*} with three

^{*14} About 30 metres high by 30 metres wide. No length is mentioned. If these were the actual building dimensions it would have been much larger than Solomon's temple which was only about 13.5 metres high, 9 metres wide, and 28 metres long.

^{*2} The province of Trans-Euphrates included Judah.

courses of hewn stones and one of timber. The costs are to be paid from the royal treasury.”

¹⁵“Also the gold and silver articles which King Nebuchadnezzar took from the Temple are to be returned to their places in the house of God.”

Jews permitted to build Temple and expenses to be paid from royal revenues

¹⁶“Now then Tattenai, stay away from there. Do not interfere with the work on this Temple of God. Let the governor of the Jews and the Jewish elders rebuild this Temple on its site.”

¹⁷“Moreover, the expenses of these men are to be fully paid without delay from the royal revenues of Trans-Euphrates, so that the work will not stop.”

Animals for offerings to be provided

¹⁸“And whatever is needed for burnt offerings to the God of heaven; young bulls, rams, male lambs, wheat, salt, wine and oil, as requested by the priests in Jerusalem must be given them daily without fail.”

The priests to pray for the well being of the king and his sons

¹⁹“That they may offer sacrifices pleasing to the God of heaven and pray for the well-being of the king and his sons.”

Punishment if the king’s decree not obeyed

²⁰“Furthermore I decree that whoever changes this decree shall have a beam pulled from his house and he be impaled upon it, and his house turned into a pile of rubble.”

²¹“Also, may God overthrow any king or people who seek to change this decree or to destroy the Temple in Jerusalem.”

²²“I Darius have made this decree. Let it be carried out with diligence.”

Tattenai the governor obeys the king’s decree

²³So Tattenai governor of Trans-Euphrates did with all diligence what Darius had ordered.

2

A warning word to the Jews from the Lord through Zechariah the prophet

¹During the second year of Darius this word of the Lord came to the prophet Zechariah in Judah.

²“*Jehovah Almighty says, ‘Return to me and I will return to you. Be not like your forefathers who were commanded to turn from their evil ways but did not listen to me.’*”

³“*Did not my words which I spoke to the prophets overtake your forefathers? Then they repented and said, ‘Jehovah has done to us what our ways deserve, just as he said he would.’*”

Zechariah’s vision of the four horsemen sent to patrol the earth

⁴During the eleventh month of the same year, visions of the Lord came to the prophet Zechariah.

⁵“During the night I had a vision. I saw before me the Lord standing among the myrtle trees down in the valley. ⁶Behind him were a red, a brown, a white and a black horse, each with a rider.^{F*} I said to the angel of the Lord who stood by me, ‘Who are they my lord?’”

“He replied, ‘**It will be revealed to you who they are.**’”

⁷“Then the Lord who stood among the myrtle trees spoke saying, ‘**These are they whom Jehovah has sent to patrol the earth.**’”

⁸“At this the riders reported to the Lord saying, ‘**We have patrolled the earth and found the world at peace.**’”

Jerusalem to be rebuilt

⁹“Then the angel of the Lord who stood with me said, ‘**O Jehovah Almighty, how long will you withhold mercy from Jerusalem and the towns of Judah with whom you have been angry these seventy years?**’”

¹⁰“The Lord spoke comforting words to the angel who stood with me, then the angel said to me, ‘**Say to the people, ‘Jehovah says, I am exceedingly jealous for Jerusalem and Zion,^{F*} and I am very angry with the nations who are at ease, for I was only a little angry with my people but the nations added to their afflictions.**’”

¹¹“**Therefore I have returned to comfort Jerusalem. My Temple shall be rebuilt and the city also. Jerusalem and my other cities will again overflow with prosperity.**”

The vision of four horns – four kings

¹²“Then I saw before me four horns, and I said to the angel of the Lord, ‘What are these?’”

¹³“He answered me, ‘**These are the kings that scattered Judah and Jerusalem.**’”

The vision of four workmen with hammers

¹⁴“Then the Lord showed me four workmen with hammers. I asked, ‘What have they come to do?’”

¹⁵“He answered, ‘**They have come to terrify and strike down the nations that scattered Judah.**’”

The vision of the young man with a measuring line

¹⁶“Then I saw before me a young man with a measuring line in his hand. I said to him, ‘Where are you going?’”

¹⁷“He answered me, ‘**To measure the walls of Jerusalem.**’”

Jerusalem to outgrow its walls

¹⁸“Then the angel of the Lord left me and went to meet another angel who said to him,

*6 These four horsemen again appear in a later vision of Zechariah. Horsemen also feature in the apostle John’s vision in the book of Revelation (Zechariah 2:50, Revelation 4:1-6).

*10 Zion is the hill in Jerusalem where the Temple and king’s palace were located.

ZECHARIAH 2

'Run after that young man and say to him, "Jehovah says, Jerusalem will outgrow its walls because of the great number of people and livestock in it. ¹⁹And I myself will become a wall of fire around it and will be its glory within."

²⁰"Therefore come my people, return from the lands of the north where I have scattered you to the four winds. Come to Zion you who live among the daughters of Babylon."

Jehovah the Messiah sent by the Lord God Almighty

²¹"After the Lord God Almighty has glorified me, and sent me against the nations that have plundered you, for whoever afflicts you afflicts the apple of his eye, then you will know that he has sent me."

Jehovah coming to live among his people in future

²²"Shout and be glad O Jerusalem, for I Jehovah am coming and will live among you."

Many nations to also become Lord's people in that day

²³"Many nations will turn to me in that day and will also become my people. ²⁴I will live among you and then you shall know that the Lord God Almighty has sent me to you."^{F*}

Joshua the high priest saved from Satan

²⁵"Then the angel of the Lord showed me a vision of Joshua the high priest and Satan standing at his right hand to accuse him."

²⁶"The angel of the Lord said to Satan, 'Jehovah rebuke you O Satan. Is not this man a brand plucked from the fire?'

Joshua symbolically clad in filthy clothes

²⁷"Now Joshua was clad in filthy clothes as he stood before the angel of the Lord. The angel said to those who were standing before him, 'Remove his filthy clothes.'

Joshua dressed in clean clothes

²⁸"Then he said to Joshua, 'See, I have taken away your sin and will put clean clothes upon you.'

²⁹"I said to the angel, 'Let them also put a clean turban^{F*} on his head.' So they clothed him in new clothes while the angel of the Lord stood by."

A conditional promise to Joshua

³⁰"Then the angel gave this promise to Joshua, 'Jehovah Almighty says, If you will walk in my ways you shall govern my Temple, and I will give you a place among those who stand in my presence.'

³¹"Hear O high priest Joshua, you and the

priests associated with you, who are symbols of good things to come, I am going to utilise my servant the Branch."

³²"See the rock I have set in front of Joshua. There are seven facets on that rock, and I will also engrave an inscription on it, and remove the guilt of the land of Israel in a single day."

³³"In that day, each of you will enjoy peace with your neighbour, sitting amid your vines and fig trees."



"...each of you will enjoy peace... sitting amid your vines and fig trees," Zechariah 2:33.

The vision of a golden lampstand and olive branches

³⁴"Again that night, the angel of the Lord returned and awakened me and asked, 'What do you see?'

³⁵"I answered, 'I see a golden lampstand supporting seven oil lamps, with a bowl at the top feeding the lamps through seven pipes.'

³⁶"I also see two olive branches, one on either side of the lampstand, each feeding oil to the bowl on the top of the lamp-stand. What are these my Lord?'

³⁷"He said to me, 'The seven lamps are the eyes of the Lord which range throughout the earth.'^{F*} ³⁸The two olive branches either side of the lampstand are the two men who are anointed to serve the Lord.'^{F*}

Power comes by the Spirit of the Lord not by man's might or power

³⁹"Therefore hear the word of Jehovah to Zerubbabel, 'Not by might, nor by power, but by my Spirit.'

⁴⁰"Even if a great mountain be placed in your way, before you it will become a plain."

Zerubbabel to complete the Temple

⁴¹"The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this Temple, and his hands shall complete it. The people will rejoice when they see the plumb line in his hand."

⁴²"He shall place the capstone of the Temple to shouts of rejoicing. Then you will know that Jehovah has sent him to you."

*24 This verse and verse 22 above, are two of the clearest references in the Old Testament to Jehovah the God of the Old Testament, being the pre-mortal Jesus Christ, who was sent by the Lord God Almighty (God the Father) and who is to eventually return again in glory to rule the earth from Jerusalem. See also the note on John 1:8 regarding the Father and son both sharing the name/title Jehovah.

*29 A turban was a worn by the high priest during temple duty (Exodus 17:18).

*37 The apostle John speaks of the seven Spirits of God (Revelation 3:4).

*38 Zerubbabel and Joshua.



An artist's view of the olive branches and the lampstand vision .

The vision of a flying scroll

43⁴³Then he said, **‘What do you see now?’**

“I answered, ‘I see a large flying scroll.’”

44⁴⁴“He said to me, **‘This is a curse to go out over the whole land. On one side is written, ‘All who steal shall be cut off’ and on the other, ‘All who swear falsely shall be cut off.’**”

45⁴⁵“Jehovah says, I have sent it out and it shall enter the house of the thief and the house of him who swears falsely and will remain in their house and destroy it.”

The vision of a woman in a measuring container

46⁴⁶“Next I saw a box and said, ‘What is it?’”

“The angel replied, **‘It is a measuring container holding the guilt of this people.’**”

47⁴⁷“The heavy leaden cover was raised and there in the container sat a woman. The angel said **‘This is Wickedness’** and he pushed her back into the box and closed the heavy lid.”

48⁴⁸“Then I saw two women coming with wings like those of a stork and they flew off with the container. I asked, ‘Where are they taking it?’”

49⁴⁹“The angel replied, **‘To the land of Babylon to build a house for it. When the house is completed the basket will be set there.’**”



An artist's view of two visions of Zechariah – a flying scroll and two winged women bearing off a box to Babylon containing a woman, representing the wickedness of Jerusalem.

The vision of four horses and chariots

50⁵⁰“I looked again and saw four chariots coming from between two bronze mountains. The first chariot had red horses, the second black, the third white, and the fourth brown, all of them powerful. I said to the angel, ‘What are these my Lord?’”

51⁵¹“He answered, **‘These are the four spirits of heaven from the presence of Jehovah. The one with black horses is going to patrol the north, the one with white horses the west, and the one with brown horses the south.’** F*

52⁵²“The powerful horses were straining to go so he commanded, **‘Go patrol the earth!’** and they departed.”

53⁵³“Then the voice of the Lord called to me saying, **‘Those patrolling the north country have given my Spirit rest in that land.’** F*

A crown to be made for Zerubbabel

54⁵⁴The word of the Lord came to me. **“Take silver and gold from the exiles who have arrived from Babylon and make a crown.**

*51 The area patrolled by the red horses is not mentioned.

*53 Israel is included in the north country. The south refers to Egypt and the nations surrounding her (Daniel 10:20-43).

ZECHARIAH 3

Set it upon the head of Zerubbabel in the presence of Joshua the high priest.”

Zerubbabel is the Branch

55“Then say to Joshua, ‘Jehovah says, “Here is the man who is the Branch. He will branch forth and build the Temple of the Lord and those who are afar off will come to help. Then you will know that Jehovah has sent him to you.”’

If Zerubbabel and Joshua obedient they will rule the people in harmony

56“He shall be clothed with honour and will sit and rule on his throne and you shall be a priest at his right hand, and there shall be harmony between you.”

57“**This will happen if you diligently obey Jehovah your God.**”

3

Men of Bethel enquire of the Lord – should they still fast and mourn in the fifth month

1In the fourth year of Darius, the people living in Bethel^{F*} sent men to Jerusalem to make this inquiry of the Lord, “Should we continue to mourn and fast in the fifth month as we have done for so many years?”^{F*}

The Lord asks if the fasting was sincere

2Then this word of the Lord came to Zechariah the prophet. “Say to the people, When you fasted and mourned for these past seventy years, was it really for me that you fasted?”

Judah scattered for not listening to earlier prophets

3“Did I not proclaim these words through earlier prophets when Judah was at rest and prosperous: ‘Administer true justice. Show mercy to one another. Oppress not the widow and the fatherless, the foreigner or the poor. And in your hearts think not evil of one another.’”

4“**But my people did not heed the words I sent by my Spirit through the earlier prophets. So I Jehovah was angry and when they called on me I would not listen.**”

5“**Then I scattered them among nations they knew not and the pleasant land was left deserted behind them.**”

The Lord still loves Jerusalem and will once again fill the city with people

6“Yet I still burn with jealousy for Zion and will return to Jerusalem. She shall be called the ‘City of Truth’ and the mountain of the Lord shall be called the ‘Holy Mountain.’”

7“**Once again men and women of ripe old age will sit in the squares of Jerusalem, and the city streets shall be filled with children playing.**”

*1 A town about 10 km north of Jerusalem.

*1 This had been done throughout the exile years to commemorate the first exile from Jerusalem.

8“**For I will gather my people from the lands of the east and the west and bring them back to live in Jerusalem, and they shall be my people and I shall be their faithful God.**”

The people to be blessed now as they rebuild the Temple

9“**Now you who hear these words as the house of the Lord is being built, let your hands be strong so that the Temple may be completed.**”

10“**In past years there have been no wages, nor could you go about your business safely because of your enemies, for I had turned every man against his neighbour.**”

11“**But now your crops will grow well and your vine will yield its fruit and the heavens will drop their rain.**”

The people must however speak truth and act with justice

12“**But these things you must do: Speak truthfully to one another, administer honest judgement in your gates,^{F*} and do not plot evil against your neighbour or swear falsely, for these things I hate. Therefore love peace and truth.**”

The fasts to continue but as joyful times

13“**The fasts of the fourth, fifth, seventh and tenth months shall be joyful times and happy festivals for Judah.**”

One day people from strong nations will seek the Lord in Jerusalem

14“**For the days shall yet come when people from strong nations shall say to each other, ‘Come, let us go and seek Jehovah in Jerusalem and entreat him.’**”

15“**In those days ten men will take hold of one Jew by his clothing and say, ‘Let us go with you, for we have heard that God is with you.’**”

4

Tyre to be destroyed

1A prophecy of the prophet Zechariah. “Jehovah says, My word is against Damascus and Hamath and also against Tyre and Sidon, though they are very skilful.”

2“**Tyre has built herself a great stronghold and has heaped up silver and gold, but I will take away her possessions and destroy her power on the sea. She will be burnt by fire.**”

The pride of the Philistines to end

3“**The cities of the Philistines shall see it and fear. Gaza shall lose her king and Ashkelon will be deserted. Foreigners shall occupy Ashdod.**”

4“**I will end the pride of the Philistines. But some shall survive and belong to me and will become like the clans of Judah.**”

*12 Court hearings were held in the gateways of the city.

Judah to be protected during the next invasion

5⁴“When the invasion comes I will protect my Temple against the marauding force. This time the oppressor shall not overrun my people.” F*

The Messiah-King to enter**Jerusalem riding the foal of a donkey**

6⁴“Rejoice greatly O Jerusalem. Your King is coming to you, righteous and having salvation, humble and riding on the foal of a donkey.” F*

The Messiah-King to command peace and eventually have dominion over the whole earth

7⁴“Weapons of war shall be abolished, and I will command peace to the nations. My dominion shall extend to the ends of the earth.”

The Messiah to set free prisoners in the spirit world

8⁴“And because of the blood of my covenant I shall set free the prisoners from Sheol. F* Wait in your stronghold O prisoners of hope, for I will restore you double.” F*

The Lord's people to be helped in battle on the last day

9⁴“In that day I shall bend Judah as my bow and make Ephraim my arrow, for I will arouse your sons O Jerusalem and will make you like a warrior's sword against the sons of Greece.” F*

10⁴“Jehovah shall appear over them and his arrow shall flash forth like lightning. He shall sound the trumpet and go forth like a whirlwind of the south.”

11⁴“He will shield his people and they shall prevail and tread down their enemies. Their weapons shall drink blood as wine and shall be full, like the bowl of blood that is poured out upon the altar.”

The people of Israel to shine like jewels during Millennium

12⁴“Jehovah their God shall save his people on that day. Then they will shine in his land like jewels in a crown.”

13⁴“How beautiful they will be, and grain shall make the young men thrive, and new wine the young women.”

Uncaring shepherds have led Israel astray

14⁴The word of the Lord came to Zechariah. “Jehovah says, Ask me for the showers of rain in the springtime. It is I Jehovah who

give rain for the plants of the field. 15⁴For idols speak nonsense and diviners see false dreams. This is why my people have wandered like sheep, for they lack a caring shepherd.”

Great leaders to come from house of Judah

16⁴“My anger burns against the shepherds of my people and I shall punish them. For I care for my flock who are of the house of Judah and I will make them like a proud war horse in battle.”

17⁴“From out of Judah will come the cornerstone and the tent stakes, and the warrior's bow and every commander. They shall be like mighty men in battle for I Jehovah am with them.”

The house of Joseph also to be saved and to be made mighty

18⁴“I will also save the house of Joseph F* and restore them, for I love them.”

19⁴“They will be as though I had not rejected them, for I am Jehovah their God and will make them mighty warriors.”

20⁴“Their hearts and their children's hearts will exult in the Lord. Surely I will redeem them and they shall be numerous as before.”

The Nile to dry up and the sea to be subdued to assist the gathering

21⁴“Though I have scattered them in distant lands, yet they will return. I will gather them in from Egypt and from Assyria.”

22⁴“The waves of the sea will be subdued and the Nile will dry up.”

23⁴“I shall bring them to Gilead and to Lebanon, until there is no more room for them.”

Zechariah commanded to become a shepherd of sheep marked for slaughter

24⁴“The Lord my God said to me, ‘Zechariah, become a shepherd to a flock of sheep marked for slaughter.’ F*

25⁴“Those who buy them will slaughter them freely, and those who sell them shall say, ‘Praise the Lord, I am rich.’ Their own shepherds shall not spare them.”

26⁴“For I too shall no longer have pity on the people of this land. I will cause them to fall into the hands of their shepherds, and into the hands of a king who shall crush the earth, F* and I will rescue none from their hands.”

27⁴“So I Zechariah became a shepherd for the sheep merchants and pastured a flock of sheep marked for slaughter.”

Two staffs named Favour and Union

28⁴“I took two staffs and called one Favour and

*5 The oppressor in view is Alexander the Great (356-323 BC). He destroyed Tyre and soundly defeated Damascus, Hamath, Sidon and the coastal cities of the Philistines, but did not trouble Judah in his conquests.

*6 See Matt-Mark-Luke 25:15-22 for the literal fulfillment of this prophecy.

*8 Sheol is the spirit world of the dead.

*8 The pre-mortal Jesus Christ who is speaking (see note on Zechariah 2:24) fulfilled this prophecy when he visited and preached to the spirits of the dead in Sheol (aptly called a prison) immediately after his death on the cross (1 Peter 2:15).

*9 The use of the term ‘sons of Greece’ (the aggressive empire on the rise at the time) is probably symbolic of the combined enemy nations who will oppress Israel in the last days, for the prophecy that follows appears to clearly pertain to the time of the second coming of Christ.

*18 The tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh from Joseph's two sons, normally symbolic of all the lost northern tribes.

*24 It appears that Zechariah as a shepherd was to symbolise the Messiah Jesus Christ, and the flock doomed for slaughter the Jews of Christ's day, most of whom perished in the Roman destruction of Jerusalem in 70 AD.

*26 This prophecy appears to tie in with Daniel's vision of the mighty Roman empire founded by Julius Caesar (Daniel 5:5-6).

ZECHARIAH 5

the other Union. ²⁹In one month I got rid of three under-shepherds for they detested me and I grew weary of them.”

Zechariah resigns as shepherd and breaks the staff called Favour

³⁰“Then I said to the merchants, *“I will no longer be your shepherd. Let the dying sheep die, and those who are left can eat one another’s flesh.”* F*
³¹“I took my staff called Favour and broke it, revoking the covenant I had made with the merchants. ³²The sheep merchants who were watching knew it was the word of the Lord.”

Zechariah paid thirty pieces of silver

³³“Then I said to them, ‘Pay me what you consider I am worth.’ So they paid me thirty pieces of silver.” F*

The silver is thrown into the Temple to the potter

³⁴“The Lord said to me, ‘Throw this handsome price at which they valued me to the potter.’ So I took the thirty pieces of silver and threw them into the Temple to the potter.”

Zechariah breaks the second staff called Union

³⁵“Then I broke my second staff called Union, symbolising the broken unity between Judah and Israel.”

An uncaring shepherd about to be raised up over the land

³⁶“The Lord said to me, ‘Take up again the implements of a shepherd, an uncaring one, for I am about to raise up a shepherd over the land who will care not for the lost nor heal the injured, but will eat the meat of the choice sheep.’ F*
³⁷“Woe to the uncaring shepherd who deserts his flock. May the sword strike his arm and his right eye.”

5

Nations who besiege Jerusalem in latter days to suffer grievous hurt

¹The word of the Lord came to me. “The day is coming when I will make Jerusalem a cup that sends all the surrounding nations reeling.”

²“On that day, when the nations of the earth gather to invade Judah and Jerusalem, I will make Jerusalem an immovable rock. All who try to move her will suffer grievous hurt. ³On that day I will strike every war horse with panic and its rider with madness.”

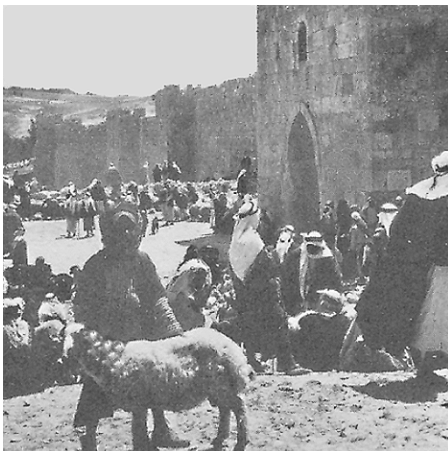
⁴“On that day I shall make the leaders of Judah as a flaming torch among dry sheaves. They shall consume right and left.

*30 Cannibalism was reported among the Jews during the Roman siege of Jerusalem in 70 AD.

*33 This verse and the one that follows, prophesy the betrayal of Jesus by Judas Iscariot who was also paid 30 pieces of silver. He too eventually cast the money onto the floor of the temple (see verse 34). It was used to buy a plot of ground known as Potter’s Field, a burial place for the poor (Matt-Mark-Luke 30:24-25 and 32:21-26).

*36 Probably the infamous Antiochus IV. See Daniel 6:7-9 and note.

I will destroy all the nations that attack Jerusalem.”



The sheep market of Jerusalem.

Cities of Judah to gain victory ahead of Jerusalem

⁵“I will give victory first to the cities of Judah, that the glory of the people of Jerusalem shall not be exalted over that of Judah.

⁶After those days the feeblest in Jerusalem shall be like David. ⁷And those of the house of David shall be like God.”

Two thirds of Israel to perish during that time of distress

⁸“But before that day, in the whole land, two-thirds shall perish. Yet one-third I will bring through the fire to refine them as silver and gold.”

⁹“They will call upon my name and I shall answer them saying, ‘You are my people’ and they shall say, ‘Jehovah is our God.’”

The Jews shall weep when they see the pierce marks in their Messiah’s body

¹⁰“Then I shall pour out my Spirit upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and they shall look upon me, the one they pierced, and will mourn bitterly as one mourns for an only child.”

¹¹“On that day the weeping in Jerusalem will be very great.”

The sin of the Jews to be forgiven

¹²“Then a fountain shall be opened up to cleanse the inhabitants of Jerusalem from their sin.” F*

No more false prophets

¹³“On that day I shall cut off the names of idols from the land and remove all prophets who prophesy by unclean spirits.”

¹⁴“And if any false prophet should arise again his father and mother will say to him,

*12 See verse 21.

‘You must die, for you have spoken lies in the name of Jehovah and they shall put him to death.’

Zechariah’s vision of the coming of the Lord in the latter days

¹⁵“See, the day of the Lord is coming, when plunder will be taken from you and be divided up in your midst. For Jehovah will gather the nations to Jerusalem to fight against her.”

¹⁶“The city shall be taken, the houses ransacked and the women raped. Half of the city shall be taken captive, but the rest of the people will be left.”

¹⁷“Then Jehovah will appear, to fight against the nations.”

The Mount of Olives to split in two

¹⁸“On that day his feet shall touch the Mount of Olives which will split in two, half of the mountain moving north and half moving south, forming a great valley from east to west, and the remnant in Jerusalem will flee by way of the mountain valley.”

¹⁹“When Jehovah your God comes all the Holy Ones will be with him.”

The day to be dark and cold yet light at evening

²⁰“On that day there shall be darkness, cold and frost. It will be a unique day, without daylight, but when evening comes there will be light.”^{F*}

Fresh water to flow from Jerusalem to the Dead Sea and the Mediterranean

²¹“On that day fresh water shall begin to flow from Jerusalem, half to the Dead Sea^{F*} and half to the Great Sea^{F*} all year round.”

Jehovah to be king over the whole earth

²²“In that day Jehovah will be King over the whole earth. There shall be only one Lord and his name the only name.”

The land around Jerusalem to become like a plain but Jerusalem to be raised up

²³“The land around Jerusalem shall become like a plain, but Jerusalem will be raised up in its place. It shall be inhabited and secure and never again be destroyed.”

The flesh of the invaders shall rot as they stand

²⁴“The Lord will strike the nations that gather to fight against Jerusalem with this plague: Their eyes shall rot in their sockets and their tongues rot away in their mouths while they are still standing on their feet.
²⁵And the plague shall also strike the animals in their camps.”

The invading armies to slay one another

²⁶“On that day men shall be stricken by the

Lord with great panic, and will slay one another.”^{F*}

Judah to collect great amounts of spoil

²⁷“Judah too will fight for Jerusalem, and the wealth of the surrounding nations shall be amassed. Great quantities of gold, silver and clothing.”

Survivors of the nations to worship at Jerusalem each year

²⁸“Then it will come to pass that all the survivors from the nations that came against Jerusalem, will go up to Jerusalem year after year to worship the King Jehovah Almighty and to celebrate the Feast of Tabernacles.”

Nations who refuse to worship at Jerusalem shall have no rain

²⁹“If any of the peoples of the earth do not go up to worship, they shall have no rain. And if the Egyptians do not go up they too shall have no rain.”^{F*}

‘Holy to Jehovah’ to be inscribed on bells

³⁰“In those days ‘Holy to Jehovah’ will be inscribed on the bells of the horses. Even the cooking pots in the house of the Lord shall be as the sacred bowls in front of the altar.”

Sacrifices again to be offered in the Millennial Temple

³¹“Every pot in Judah will be holy to the Lord, and all who come to sacrifice will boil the flesh of their sacrifice in them.”^{F*}

³²“And no longer shall merchants be found trading in the house of the Lord.”

6

The Jews finish rebuilding the Temple

¹The Jews continued to rebuild the Temple and prospered under the teaching of the prophets Haggai and Zechariah. ²The house of God was completed in the sixth year of the reign of Darius.

The Temple is dedicated with joy

³The returned exiles celebrated the dedication of the Temple with joy. They offered 100 bulls, 200 rams and 400 male lambs. Also 12 male goats as a sin offering for each of the tribes of Israel.

⁴Then they organised the priests and the Levites as written in the Law of Moses.

The Passover is celebrated

⁵On the fourteenth day of the first month the exiles celebrated the Passover. All of the Jews who had returned from the exile ate it, together with all who had separated themselves from the unclean practices of the Gentiles^{F*} to seek

*²⁶ This prophecy is also found in Ezekiel 13:13.

*²⁹ Egypt will evidently challenge the armies of Gog in the latter days and not join the nations who gather against Jerusalem (Daniel 11:5).

*³¹ See note on Ezekiel 14:17 about animal sacrifices being reinstated at the Jerusalem temple during the millennium.

*⁵ A Gentile is any person born to a non-Jewish mother.

*²⁰ Jerusalem is to be lit up at night by the glory of the Lord during the Millennium (Isaiah 15:19).

*²¹ This prophecy is covered in greater detail by the prophet Ezekiel (Ezekiel chapter 17).

*²¹ The Mediterranean. The way is blocked by the Mount of Olives at present but see verse 18 of this chapter.

ZECHARIAH 6

Jehovah the God of Israel.

⁶For seven days they celebrated with joy, because the Lord had softened the heart of Darius king of Persia so that he assisted them in the work on the house of God.



Rolling plains near Nazareth. When the Lord returns, mountainous southern Israel will also become like a plain except for the city of Jerusalem which shall remain elevated on a mountain (Zechariah 5:23). The present day height of Jerusalem is 800 m (2550 ft).

ESTHER

This unique true story, much loved by the Jews, is set in the royal courts of the Persian emperor-king, Xerxes. This emperor came to power in 485 BC, about fifty years after the first wave of Jewish exiles had returned to Judah.

The purpose of the book is to explain the origin of the feast of Purim, which is still celebrated by Jews today. The story is dramatic, well told, and provides fascinating details of Persian court life.

A beautiful young Jewish virgin Esther, is chosen by the emperor-King Xerxes to be his new queen, replacing the former Queen Vashti whom he deposed for disobedience.

All goes well until Mordecai, a Jew and older male cousin of Esther who had raised her from a child, incurs the wrath of Haman, the Grand Vizier by refusing to bow to him. Haman in his anger plots to kill Mordecai and furthermore to annihilate every Jew throughout the vast 175 nation Persian empire.

The story is in some ways similar to that of Joseph in Egypt, and reads like a Shakespearian play. It is so amazing in fact that some skeptical Bible scholars in the past regarded it as fiction. However Mordecai's name has since been found in Persian historical records.

The eventual actions of the Jews in the story might seem harsh to modern readers, but it should be remembered that the Christian gospel message of love and forgiveness of enemies had not yet been taught by Jesus Christ.

The book of Esther is unusual in that, although it is part of the Jewish Bible it does not once mention the Lord. Nor does it mention Jerusalem, or prayer. The reason for this was probably to enable the book to circulate freely throughout the Persian empire without upsetting other peoples. A later Greek version of the book inserts traditional Jewish religious commentary.

“If you remain silent at this time, deliverance for the Jews will arise from another source, but you and your father’s family will perish. And who knows but that you have come to your royal position for such a time as this.” Esther 4:10.

AUTHOR Unknown.

CONTENTS

	Chapter
Darius dies and Xerxes becomes king of Persia	1
King Xerxes gives two great feasts	1
Palace garden described	1
Unlimited wine served	1
Xerxes commands Vashti to display her beauty	1
Queen Vashti disobeys the king	1
The king consults his advisers	1
Memucan advises that Vashti be replaced as queen ..	1
Then all women will respect their husbands	1
This advice pleases the king and he issues a decree .	1
The king searches his empire for beautiful virgins	2
Esther a beautiful Jew among those selected	2
Esther pleases Hegai the harem eunuch	2
Esther does not reveal her nationality	2
Esther given twelve months of beauty treatment	2
Esther's time comes to go into the king	2
Esther wins the king's favour and is made queen	2
Esther continues to follow Mordecai's instructions ...	2
Mordecai appointed a royal official	2
Mordecai reveals a plot to assassinate the king	3
Haman, a royal official made Grand Vizier	3
Mordecai refuses to bow to Haman	3
Haman angry with Mordecai the Jew	3
Haman plans to exterminate all Jews	3
Haman casts a lot to select a date	3
Xerxes asked to issue a decree to destroy all Jews .	3
Xerxes gives Haman authority to issue the decree ...	3
Decree is sent out in Xerxes' name	3
Mordecai and the Jews mourn	3
Esther inquires why Mordecai is in mourning	4
Mordecai sends a copy of the decree to Esther	4
Mordecai urges Esther to plead with the king	4
Esther reminds Mordecai that her life is in danger	4
Death if king approached unsummoned	4
Mordecai insists that Esther approach the king	4
Esther calls for a three day fast	4
Esther approaches the king	4
The king receives Esther favourably	4
Esther invites the king and Haman to drink wine	4
She invites them to come again tomorrow	4
Haman again angered by Mordecai	4
Haman erects a gallows to hang Mordecai	4
King Xerxes learns how Mordecai had saved him	4
Haman ordered to honour Mordecai	4
Esther reveals her nationality to the king	4
Esther accuses Haman in his presence	4
King orders Haman hanged on his own gallows	4
Esther given Haman's estate	5

ESTHER 1

Mordecai made Grand Vizier in Haman's place5
Esther pleads with king to overrule the decree5
Mordecai permitted to issue an overruling decree5
Jews permitted to counter-attack their enemies5
The Jews celebrate5
Other nationalities also join with the Jews5
Appointed day arrives5

Fear of Mordecai protects the Jews5
Jews strike down their enemies5
Decree extended an extra day in Susa5
75,000 enemies of the Jews killed5
Day to be called Purim5
Purim to be celebrated for ever more5
Mordecai second in rank only to the king5

1

King Darius dies and his son Xerxes becomes king of the Persian empire

¹Darius, king of Persia reigned 35 years and died. His son Xerxes then became king and reigned from his royal throne in the city of Susa^{F*} in Babylonia. ²He ruled over 127 nations stretching from India to Ethiopia.

King Xerxes gives two great feasts

³In the third year of his reign, Xerxes gave a great feast for all of his nobles and officials and displayed the vast wealth of his kingdom for 180 days.

⁴When these days were completed he gave a second feast, lasting seven days, for all the men who lived in the city of Susa. This was held in the enclosed garden of the king's palace.

The palace garden described

⁵This garden had hangings of white and blue linen, attached with white and purple cords to silver rings on marble pillars.

⁶There were couches of gold and silver on a mosaic pavement of marble, porphyry,^{F*} mother-pearl and other costly stone.

Unlimited wine served

⁷Abundant wine was served in goblets of gold in keeping with the king's liberality. By the command of the king each guest was permitted to drink as much as he desired, for the king instructed the wine servers to serve each man whatever he wished.

⁸Queen Vashti also gave a banquet for all the women, inside the royal palace.

Xerxes commands Queen Vashti to come and display her beauty

⁹On the seventh day of the feast, when Xerxes the king was merry with wine, he commanded that Queen Vashti be brought before him wearing her royal crown. He wished to display her beauty to his guests, for she was lovely to behold.

Queen Vashti disobeys the king

¹⁰But Queen Vashti refused to come. At this the king burned with anger.

In anger the king consults his advisers regarding the queen

¹¹As was customary in matters of law, the king consulted with his wise men.

¹²He said to them, "According to law, what is to

be done to Queen Vashti? For she has not obeyed the command of the king."

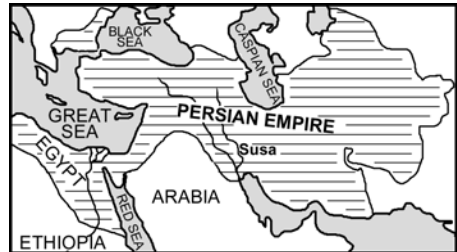
¹³Memucan replied, "Queen Vashti has not only wronged the king, she has wronged all the peoples of King Xerxes. For the queen's conduct will become known to all women and they will look with contempt upon the authority of their husbands. There will be no end of disrespect and discord."

Memucan advises Vashti be replaced as queen so that all women will respect their husbands

¹⁴"Therefore if it pleases the king, let him issue a royal decree which cannot be repealed, to the effect that Vashti is never again to enter the presence of the king, and that the king is to give her royal position to another woman who is better than she. ¹⁵When the king's decree is proclaimed throughout his vast empire, all the women will respect their husbands from the least to the greatest."

This advice pleases the king and he issues a decree

¹⁶The king and his nobles were pleased with this advice, so the king did as Memucan advised. He sent a decree to all parts of the empire, to every nation in their own language, and also proclaimed that every man was to be ruler over his own household.



The Persian empire (striped regions).

2

The king searches his realm for beautiful virgins

¹In time, when the anger of the king had abated, his attendants advised him saying, "Let the king appoint men to search throughout his realm for beautiful virgins and bring them here to Susa."

*1 Susa was a fertile city with a pleasant climate about 350 kms east of Babylon.

*6 Porphyry is a red stone with a white speckle.

²“Let them be placed under the care of the king’s eunuch Hegai who is in charge of the harem, and let beauty treatments be given. ³Then let the girl who most pleases the king be made queen in place of Vashti.” This advice appealed to the king so he followed it.

Esther, a beautiful Jewish virgin among those selected

⁴Now there was in Susa an exiled Jew named Mordecai, of the tribe of Benjamin.

⁵Mordecai had a cousin named Esther whom he had raised as his own daughter when her father and mother died. This girl was beautiful in form and face.

⁶Therefore Esther along with many other virgins was taken to the king’s palace and placed under the care of Hegai the eunuch.

Esther pleases Hegai the harem eunuch

⁷Esther pleased Hegai, so he provided her with beauty treatments, special food, and assigned her seven maids. Then he moved her and her maids into the best place in the harem.

Esther does not reveal her nationality

⁸Esther did not reveal her Jewish nationality for Mordecai had forbidden her to do so.

⁹Each day Mordecai would walk in the courtyard of the harem to find out how Esther was faring.

Esther given twelve months of beauty treatments

¹⁰Before a virgin’s turn came to be a bride to King Xerxes, she had to complete twelve months of beauty treatments with perfumes and cosmetics.

¹¹Then dressed in finery of her own choosing, she would leave the harem and spend the night in the king’s bed-chamber. In the morning she would return to a second harem, to the care of Shaashgaz the king’s eunuch in charge of the concubines.^{F*}

¹²She would not return again to the king unless he was pleased with her and summoned her by name.

Esther’s time comes to go into the king

¹³In the tenth month of the seventh year of Xerxes, it came Esther’s time to go into the king. She wore what Hegai the eunuch advised.

Esther wins the king’s favour and is made queen

¹⁴Now Esther won the king’s favour more than any of the other virgins. So Xerxes set a royal crown upon her head and made her queen in place of Vashti.

¹⁵Then he gave a great feast and proclaimed a holiday throughout the empire and distributed gifts.

Esther continues to follow Mordecai’s instructions

¹⁶Esther still kept secret her nationality and continued to follow Mordecai’s instructions as she had done when he was raising her.

Mordecai appointed a royal official

¹⁷Mordecai was also appointed one of the king’s officials and sat at the king’s gate.



Typical Persian city.

3

Mordecai reveals a plot to assassinate the king

¹During the time Mordecai sat at the king’s gate, two of the king’s officers who guarded the doorway became angry and plotted to assassinate the King Xerxes.

²Mordecai heard of the plot and told Esther, who reported it to the king, giving credit to Mordecai and the two men were hanged on a gallows.

Haman, a royal official made Grand Vizier

³After these events, Xerxes honoured a royal official named Haman, and set his seat higher than that of all the other officials. ^{F*}

Mordecai refuses to bow to Haman

⁴The royal officials who sat in the king’s gate would bow and pay honour to Haman for so the king had commanded. But Mordecai would not bow down or pay him honour.

⁵The other royal officials in the king’s gate said to Mordecai, “Why do you disobey the king’s command?” Day after day they spoke to Mordecai but he refused to comply.

Haman is angry with Mordecai the Jew

⁶When Haman saw that Mordecai refused to bow down or pay him honour, his anger burned toward him.

Haman plans to exterminate all Jews

⁷When he learned that Mordecai was a Jew, Haman scorned the idea of killing only Mordecai, instead he plotted to destroy all the Jews throughout the whole empire of Xerxes.

Haman casts a lot to select a date

⁸So in the first month of the twelfth year of Xerxes, Haman cast a lot to select a time to carry out his plan. The lot fell for the thirteenth day of the twelfth month.

Haman asks Xerxes to issue a decree to destroy all Jews

⁹Haman then said to the king, “There are a

*11 A concubine was a wife of secondary social status.

*3 Haman held the powerful position in the Persian court known as Grand Vizier.

certain people scattered among the nations of your empire whose customs are different from those of all other people, and who do not obey the king's laws. It is not in the king's best interest to tolerate them."

¹⁰"If it pleases the king, let a decree be issued to destroy them. I will put 10,000 talents of silver^{F*} into the royal treasury to pay the men who carry out this decree."

Xerxes gives Haman authority to issue the decree in his name

¹¹The king took his signet ring from his finger and gave it to Haman and said, "Keep your silver. Do with this people as you please."

¹²Haman then summoned the royal secretaries and commanded them to write out a decree in the language of each nation. It was written in the name of King Xerxes and sealed with his signet ring.

The decree is sent out

¹³The decree was sent out by couriers to all of the king's governors throughout the empire. It contained orders to kill and annihilate all Jews, young and old, women and children on a single day, the thirteenth day of the twelfth month^{F*} and to plunder their goods.

¹⁴Then the king and Haman sat down to drink, but the city of Susa was bewildered.

Mordecai and the Jews mourn

¹⁵When Mordecai learned what had been done, he tore his clothes and put on sackcloth and ashes and went out into the city wailing loudly and bitterly. But he went only as far as the king's gate, for no one clothed in sackcloth was permitted to enter.

¹⁶Also in every land to which the decree of the king was sent, there was great mourning among the Jews, with fasting, and weeping and wailing. Many lay in sackcloth and ashes.



Persian street scene.

*10 A huge sum of money, about 340 tonnes of silver, enough to pay two years wages for about 5000 men.

*13 The decree would not come into force until about 11 months time.

Queen Esther sends an eunuch to find out why Mordecai is in mourning

¹When Queen Esther was told that Mordecai was in mourning she was greatly troubled and sent clothes for him to wear instead of sackcloth, but he would not accept them.

²Then Esther asked one of the eunuchs assigned to her to go and find out what was troubling Mordecai. So the eunuch went out to Mordecai in the entrance of the king's gate.

Mordecai sends a copy of the decree to Esther

³Mordecai told the eunuch all that had happened, including the amount of silver Haman had offered to pay into the royal treasury for the destruction of the Jews. ⁴He also gave the eunuch a copy of the decree that had been issued for the annihilation of the Jews, to show Queen Esther.

Mordecai urges Esther to plead with the king for her people

⁵Mordecai told him to urge Esther to go into the king's presence and plead for her people.

Esther reminds Mordecai that the penalty for approaching the king unsummoned is death

⁶The eunuch reported back to the queen all that Mordecai had said.

⁷Then Esther sent this message to Mordecai, "Everybody knows it is the law of the Persians that any man or woman who approaches the king in the inner court without being summoned is put to death."

⁸"The only exception is when the king extends his gold sceptre and thus spares that person's life. Thirty days have passed since I was last summoned by the king."

Mordecai insists that Esther approach the king

⁹Mordecai sent back this answer: "Do not think because you are in the king's house you alone of all the Jews will survive. ¹⁰If you remain silent at this time, deliverance for the Jews will arise from another source, but you and your father's family will perish. And who knows but that you have come to your royal position for such a time as this."

Esther calls for a three day fast

¹¹Esther sent this reply to Mordecai: "Gather together all the Jews who are in Susa and fast for me. Do not eat or drink for three days and nights. I and my maids will fast as you do."

¹²"When this is done I will approach the king, and if I die, I die."

Esther approaches the king

¹³So on the third day, Esther put on her royal robes and stood in the inner court of the palace, in front of the king's hall.

The king receives Esther favourably

¹⁴The king was sitting on his throne inside the hall. When he saw Queen Esther standing out in the court he was pleased with her, and held out the gold sceptre that was in his hand. So

Esther came into him and touched the tip of the sceptre.

¹⁵The king said, “What is your request Queen Esther? Ask what you will, even up to half the kingdom and it shall be given you.”

Esther invites the king and Haman to drink wine

¹⁶Esther replied, “If it pleases the king, let the king together with Haman come now and drink wine that I have prepared for you.”

¹⁷The king at once gave orders saying, “Bring Haman now that we may do as Esther desires.”

¹⁸So the king and Haman went to the wine that Esther had prepared. ¹⁴As they were drinking, the king again said to Esther, “What is your request of me?”

Esther invites the king and Haman again tomorrow

¹⁹Esther replied, “If the king regards me with favour, let the king and Haman come again tomorrow to drink wine that I will prepare for you. Then I will answer the king’s question.”



Persian city wall.

Haman again angered by Mordecai

²⁰That day Haman went out in high spirits, but when he saw Mordecai at the king’s gate and observed that he neither rose nor showed fear in his presence, his anger burned again toward him.

²¹However he composed himself and went home and called together his friends and his wife.

Haman erects a gallows to hang Mordecai

²²Then Haman spoke to them of his vast wealth, his many sons, and how the king had honoured him above all the other officials, and he added, “I am the only person Queen Esther has invited to drink with the king, and she has invited me again tomorrow. ²³But all this gives me no satisfaction as long as I see Mordecai the Jew sitting at the king’s gate.”

²⁴His wife Zeresh and his friends advised him saying, “Why not erect a gallows, fifty cubits high and ask the king in the morning to have Mordecai hanged on it. Then you can drink with the king and be happy.”

²⁵This suggestion pleased Haman and he went out and had the gallows erected.

King Xerxes learns how Mordecai saved him from assassination

²⁶Late that night Xerxes could not sleep, so he ordered the record of his reign to be brought in by his attendants and read to him.

²⁷It was found written how Mordecai had exposed the two officials who had plotted to assassinate the king.

²⁸The king asked, “What honour and recognition has Mordecai received for this?”

²⁹His attendants answered, “Nothing has been done for him.”

Haman ordered to honour Mordecai

³⁰Now it was early morning and Haman had just entered the outer court of the palace to speak to the king about hanging Mordecai on the gallows he had erected for him.

³¹The king said, “Who is out in the court?”

His attendants answered, “It is Haman.”

“Bring him in,” the king ordered.

³²When Haman entered, the king said to him, “What should be done for a man the king delights to honour?”

³³Haman thought to himself, “Who is there that the king would rather honour than me?”

³⁴So he answered the king, “Clothe him in a royal robe that the king has worn. Have him sit on a horse that the king has ridden, one with a royal crest on its head, and then lead him through the city streets proclaiming before him, ‘This man the king delights to honour!’”

³⁵The king commanded Haman, “Go at once and do just as you have suggested for Mordecai the Jew.”

³⁶So Haman obtained a robe and a horse and did as the king commanded him, but afterward he hurried home in distress and told his wife and friends all that had happened.

³⁷His friends and wife said to him, “As Mordecai is a Jew you will surely come to ruin because of this.”

Esther reveals her nationality to the king and accuses Haman in his presence

³⁸While they were still talking, the king’s eunuchs arrived to escort Haman to the wine that Esther had prepared.

³⁹When they were drinking the wine the king again asked, “Queen Esther, what is your request?”

⁴⁰Esther answered, “If it pleases the king, grant me my life. That is my request, and the lives of my people. For I and all my people are to be killed and annihilated. ⁴¹If we were to be merely sold as slaves I would have remained silent, for no such distress would justify disturbing the king.”

⁴²The king said to Queen Esther, “Who is the man who would dare do such a thing?”

⁴³Esther replied, “The enemy is this wicked Haman.” Then Haman became terrified before the king.

**The king orders Haman hanged
on his own gallows**

⁴⁴The king arose in anger and went out to walk among the trees of the palace garden to collect his thoughts. But Haman remained behind to beg Queen Esther for his life.

⁴⁵As the king came back in from the palace garden he saw Haman fallen on the couch where Esther was reclining.

⁴⁶The king cried out, "Will he even molest the queen in my presence?" And immediately the eunuchs gagged and blindfolded Haman.

⁴⁷One of the eunuchs said, "A gallows stands by Haman's house. He had it erected to hang Mordecai who spoke up to save the king."

The king ordered, "Hang him on it!"

⁴⁸So they hanged Haman on the gallows he had prepared for Mordecai, then the anger of the king subsided.

5

**Esther given Haman's estate and Mordecai
made Grand Vizier in Haman's place**

¹That same day the king gave Esther the estate of Haman, and Mordecai entered into the presence of the king, and the king gave him his signet ring.^{F*} ²Esther appointed Mordecai over Haman's estate.

**Esther pleads with the king to
overrule Haman's decree**

³Later Queen Esther again appeared before the king. She fell at his feet weeping and begged him to put an end to the evil plan Haman had devised against the Jews.

⁴The king again extended the gold sceptre to Esther and she arose and said, "If it pleases the king and if you are pleased with me, let a decree be written overruling the order that Haman wrote to destroy the Jews in all the king's empire. ⁵How can I bear to see the destruction of my family and my people?"

**The king permits Mordecai to issue
an overruling decree**

⁶The king turned to Mordecai the Jew and said, "Write another decree in the king's name on behalf of the Jews, as seems best to you and seal it with my signet ring. But remember that no decree written in the king's name and sealed with his ring can be revoked."

⁷At once the royal secretaries were summoned and a decree was written in the language of each nation, and also in the language of the Jews and sealed with the king's signet ring.

⁸The decrees were then sent by mounted couriers who rode fast horses especially bred for the king. It was now the third month.

**The second decree allows
the Jews to counter-attack their enemies**

⁹This decree allowed the Jews in every city throughout the empire, on the thirteenth day of the twelfth month, the same time as the former

decree, the right of assembly to protect themselves. ¹⁰And to destroy any armed force that might attack them and also to plunder the property of their enemies.

The Jews celebrate

¹¹That day Mordecai left the king's presence wearing royal garments of blue and white, a large crown of gold upon his head and a purple robe of fine linen.

¹²Throughout the city of Susa there was celebration. It was a time of joy, gladness and honour for the Jews. ¹³And in every city throughout the world, wherever the decree of the king came, there was joy and gladness among the Jews with feasting and celebrating.

Other nationalities also join with the Jews

¹⁴Moreover many people of other nationalities also joined with the Jews, for fear of the Jews had come upon them.

**The appointed day arrives but fear of
Mordecai protects the Jews**

¹⁵The appointed day of the twelfth month arrived and the Jews assembled in their cities throughout the Persian empire to attack those seeking their destruction.

¹⁶But no one could make a stand against them for fear of Mordecai. For Mordecai was now great in the palace and his reputation had spread throughout the empire. He had become more and more powerful and the nobles and governors were now helping the Jews.

The Jews strike down their enemies

¹⁷So that day the Jews struck down all their enemies with the sword, and did whatever they pleased to those who hated them. In the city of Susa the Jews killed 500 men including the ten sons of Haman, but they did not take any plunder.

¹⁸The number of those slain in Susa was reported to the king that same day. The king said to Queen Esther, "If the Jews have killed 500 men and the ten sons of Haman here in Susa, what have they done in the rest of the provinces? What is your request in this matter? It shall be granted."

The decree extended an extra day in Susa

¹⁹Esther answered, "If it pleases the king, allow the Jews here in Susa permission to carry out today's decree tomorrow also, and have the bodies of Haman's ten sons hung on gallows."

²⁰So the king commanded that this be done, and the next day the Jews in Susa put to death a further 300 men.

75,000 enemies of the Jews killed

²¹Meanwhile throughout the empire of Persia the Jews who had assembled to protect themselves, killed 75,000 of their enemies but did not take any plunder.

**This day to be called Purim and
celebrated for ever more**

²²This happened on the thirteenth day of the

*1 ie Mordecai took over Haman's position as Grand Vizier.

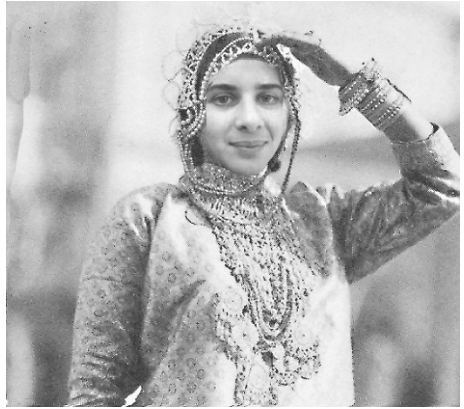
twelfth month, and on the fourteenth day the Jews rested and made it a day of feasting and joy.

²³Moreover Mordecai proclaimed that this day be observed for ever more. That is why the Jews observe the fourteenth day of the month of Adar as a day of feasting and for giving gifts to each other. They call the day Purim.^{F*}

Mordecai second in rank only to the king

²⁴King Xerxes imposed tribute upon the 127 nations of his empire, to its most distant shores, and Mordecai the Jew was second in rank only to the king.

²⁵Mordecai was held in high esteem by his fellow Jews for he worked for the good of his people and spoke up for the welfare and peace of all Jews.



Jewish girl dressed for Purim.

*23 Purim means 'lots' recalling that Haman cast lots to determine the day for the destruction of the Jews.

EZRA

Approx 70 years have passed since the first Jewish exiles returned from Babylonia to Judah. The Temple in Jerusalem has been rebuilt, but the city itself still lies in ruins. Now the Jews commence to rebuild the city walls.

But again, just as when they first began to rebuild the Temple, opposition arises from Samaritan officials. The Samaritans write to the new Persian emperor-king, Artaxerxes (son of Xerxes of the previous book of Esther) and obtain an injunction against the Jews, putting an immediate stop to the work.

However over the next few years the Lord causes Ezra, a strong-minded scholarly priest living in Babylonia, to influence the new king and persuade him of the benefits of supporting the Jewish cause. For by so doing he would avoid “*wrath against the empire of the king and his sons*” (Ezra 1:24).

The king is persuaded and sends Ezra the priest to Jerusalem at the head of a second group of returning exiles (about 1700 men and their families). He gives Ezra silver and gold to buy animals for sacrifices and instructs him to collect other gifts for the Temple and to ensure that all the Jews obey the word of God.

Soon after his arrival in Jerusalem, Ezra is appalled to learn that many of the Jewish leaders have disobeyed the Law of Moses and married non-Israelite women. Ezra takes bold and drastic action which atones for the sin of the Jews and prepares the way for Nehemiah (see next book) to rebuild the city walls.

AUTHOR Ezra the priest.

“You have been unfaithful and have married non-Israelite women, thereby increasing Israel’s guilt. Now confess to the Lord and separate yourselves from the peoples around you, and from your foreign wives.” Ezra 3:20.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Artaxerxes becomes king of Persia	1	Sacrifice offered at the Temple	2
The exiles begin to repair walls of Jerusalem	1	King’s letter delivered to the governor	2
Samaritans oppose the work	1	Some exiles married to foreign women	3
Samaritans write to king Artaxerxes	1	Ezra appalled and mourns bitterly	3
Artaxerxes’ reply – the work must stop	1	Ezra’s humble prayer to the Lord	3
The Jews made to stop work on the walls	1	The people around Ezra weep bitterly	3
Ezra the priest wins the support of Artaxerxes	1	Proposal that all foreign wives be sent away	3
Artaxerxes’ letter of support to Ezra	1	All the men summoned to Jerusalem	3
Ezra gathers 1496 men to go with him to Jerusalem ...	2	They gather in the Temple square in pouring rain ...	3
40 Levites and 220 Temple servants also join them ..	2	Men asked to separate from their foreign wives	3
Ezra calls a fast for protection on their journey	2	All the men agree to do so	3
Ezra sets apart twelve priests	2	The cases to be dealt with one by one at set times ..	3
Donated silver and gold weighed out	2	Judges appointed to investigate the cases	3
Exiles depart for Jerusalem	2	111 men send away their foreign wives and children ..	3
Exiles arrive at Jerusalem four months later	2		

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

1

Artaxerxes becomes king of Persia

¹King Xerxes reigned 21 years and died,^{F*} and his son Artaxerxes became king of Persia.

The exiles begin to repair the walls of Jerusalem

²About this time, the returned exiles who had finished rebuilding the Temple in Jerusalem^{F*}

began to rebuild the city wall, which was mostly rubble.

The Samaritans oppose the work and write to the king

³But the men of Samaria^{F*} opposed the work, and wrote this letter to King Artaxerxes:

*1 Xerxes was murdered in his bedroom by one of his officials.

*2 The temple had now been completed 50 years.

*3 The Samaritans were non-Israelite peoples that had been transplanted into the old northern kingdom of Israel (Samaria) by the Assyrians.

4“To King Artaxerxes, from your servants Rehum the commanding officer, Shimshai the secretary, and the men of Trans-Euphrates.” F*

5“⁵The king should know that the Jews who returned here from you are planning to rebuild that rebellious and wicked city Jerusalem. They are now beginning to restore the walls.”

6“⁶Furthermore the king should know that if this city is rebuilt and its walls are restored, no more taxes, tribute, or duty will be paid, and the royal revenues will suffer.”

7“⁷Now since it is not proper for us to see the king dishonoured, we are sending this message to inform the king so that a search may be made in the archives of your predecessors. In these records you will find that Jerusalem has been a rebellious city, troublesome to kings from ancient times. That is why it was destroyed.”

King Artaxerxes' reply – the work must stop

⁸The king sent this reply:

“To Rehum the commanding officer, and Shimshai the secretary living in Samaria in Trans-Euphrates, from King Artaxerxes. Greeting.”

9“⁹The letter you sent me has been translated and read in my presence.”

10“¹⁰I issued an order and a search was made and it was found that this city does indeed have a long history of revolt against kings, and has been a place of rebellion.”

11“¹¹Jerusalem once had strong kings ruling over the whole of Trans-Euphrates and taxes, tribute, and duty were paid to them.”

12“¹²Now issue an order to these men to stop work. This city is not to be rebuilt until I so order.”

The Jews made to stop work on the wall

¹³As soon as the letter from the king was received, Rehum, Shimshai and their associates went immediately to the Jews in Jerusalem and made them stop work.

Ezra the priest wins the support of Artaxerxes

¹⁴However during the seventh year of the reign of Artaxerxes king of Persia, the hand of the Lord moved upon Ezra the priest, an exile living in Persia and he came to Jerusalem.

¹⁵Ezra was a descendant of Aaron and a teacher well versed in the Law of Moses. King Artaxerxes granted him everything he asked.

Artaxerxes' letter of support to Ezra

¹⁶This is a copy of the letter Artaxerxes gave to him:

17“¹⁷Artaxerxes king of kings, to Ezra the priest, a teacher of the law of the God of heaven.”

18“¹⁸I hereby decree that any of the Israelites in my kingdom who wish to return to Jerusalem with you, may do so.”

19“¹⁹You are sent by the king and his seven counsellors to inquire as to whether Judah and Jerusalem are observing the Law of your God. ²⁰Also to deliver the silver and gold and articles that the king and his advisers and your fellow Jews have freely given to the God of Israel, whose Temple is in Jerusalem.”

21“²¹With the silver and gold be sure to buy bulls, rams, and male lambs to sacrifice on the altar of the Temple of your God. ²²Anything further required for the Temple of your God will be provided from the royal treasury.”

23“²³Therefore I hereby order the treasurers of Trans-Euphrates to provide whatever Ezra the priest may ask of you, up to 100 talents of silver, 100 homers of wheat, 100 baths of wine, 100 baths of olive oil and salt without limit.” F*

24“²⁴Whatever the God of heaven has prescribed for the Temple, let it be provided with diligence. Why should there be wrath against the empire of the king and his sons?”

25“²⁵Also it shall not be lawful to impose taxes upon any of the priests, Levites or other servants of this house of God.”

26“²⁶And you Ezra, in accordance with the wisdom of your God which you possess, are to appoint judges to administer justice to all the people of Trans-Euphrates who follow the laws of your God. And you are to teach any who do not understand them.”

27“²⁷Whoever does not obey the law of your God and the law of the king must be punished by death, exile, confiscation of property, or imprisonment.”

2

Ezra gathers 1496 men to go with him to Jerusalem

¹“Praise be to Jehovah the God of our fathers who put it into the king's heart to honour the house of the Lord in Jerusalem in this way. ²So I Ezra took courage and gathered 1496 leading men of Israel to return to Jerusalem with me.”

40 Levites and 220 Temple servants also join them

³“I assembled them at the Ahava canal and we camped there for three days. However

*4 Trans-Euphrates was the Persian name for the province covering the general area south of the Euphrates river which included Syria and Judah.

*23 A talent was about 34kg, a homer about 220 litres and a bath about 22 litres.

when I checked among the people I found there were no Levites.”

4“So I summoned men of learning and sent them to Casiphia, and they returned with 40 Levites, all registered by name, along with 220 Temple servants.” F*

Ezra calls a fast for the Lord's protection on their journey

5“Then I called a fast, that we might deny ourselves before our God for a safe journey.”

6“I was ashamed to ask the king for soldiers to protect us from enemies and ambushes along the way, for I had told the king, ‘The protection of our God is upon all who trust him.’”

Ezra sets apart twelve priests and weighs out the donated silver and gold

7“Before we departed I set apart twelve of the leading priests and in their presence weighed out the offerings of silver and gold and articles that had been donated for the house of our God.”

8“There were 650 talents^{F*} of silver, 100 talents^{F*} of silver articles, 100 talents of gold, 20 bowls of gold valued at 1,000 darics,^{F*} and two fine articles of polished bronze as precious as gold.”

9“I said to the priests, ‘You and these articles are consecrated to the Lord. Guard them carefully until you weigh them out in the Temple at Jerusalem.’”

The exiles depart for Jerusalem

10“On the twelfth day of the first month we set out from the Ahava Canal for Jerusalem. The protection of our God was with us all the way.”

The exiles arrive at Jerusalem four months later

11“‘We arrived at Jerusalem on the first day of the fifth month and rested three days.’”

12“On the fourth day, in the Temple of our God we weighed out the silver and gold and the sacred articles. Everything was accounted for.”

Sacrifice offered at the Temple

13“Then we sacrificed burnt offerings to the God of Israel. 12 bulls, 96 rams, 77 male lambs, and 12 male goats as a sin offering.”

The king's letter delivered to the governor

14“‘The king's letter was delivered to the governor of Trans-Euphrates who then gave assistance to the people and to the Temple.’”

3

Ezra informed that some of the exiles are married to foreign women

1“‘In the ninth month, some of the leaders of

the people came to me and said, ‘The returned exiles, including the priests and Levites have not kept themselves separate from neighbouring peoples with their abominable practices. They have taken some of their daughters as wives for themselves and have mingled the holy race with them.’”

2“‘The leaders and officials have led the way in this unfaithfulness.’”

Ezra is appalled and mourns bitterly

3“‘When I heard this I tore my clothes and pulled hair from my head and beard and sat down appalled. Those who revered the words of God gathered around me.’”

Ezra's humble prayer to the Lord

4“‘At the time of the evening sacrifice I arose, then knelt and with my hands spread out to the Lord my God I prayed these words: ‘O my God, I am too ashamed to lift my face to you, for our sins are heaped higher than the heavens. 5From the days of our forefathers until now, our guilt has been great, and because of our sins we have suffered the sword, captivity and humiliation by foreign kings, even as it is today.’”

6“‘But now for a brief moment you have been gracious in allowing a remnant of us to gather to your Temple and gain a little relief from our bondage. For although we are still slaves, you have shown us kindness in the sight of the kings of Persia, and they have allowed us to rebuild the Temple of our God.’”

7“‘But now O God what can we say after this? We have disregarded the commandment you gave to Moses when you said, **‘The land you are entering to possess is polluted by the corruption of its peoples. 8Therefore do not give your daughters in marriage to their sons, nor take their daughters for your sons. Do not seek a treaty of friendship with them at any time.’**”

9“‘Shall we again break your commandment and intermarry with peoples who commit abominable practices? Would you not be angry enough to destroy us completely?’”

10“‘Here we are before you in our guilt O Lord. Not one of us can stand in your presence.’”

The people around Ezra weep bitterly

11“While Ezra was praying and weeping, a large crowd of men, women and children gathered around him. They also wept bitterly.

Shecaniah proposes that all the foreign wives be sent away

12“Then Shecaniah said to Ezra, “‘We have been unfaithful to our God by marrying with the peoples around us, but in spite of this there is still hope for Israel. Let us make a covenant before our God to send away all these women and their children. 13This matter is in your hands. Take courage and do it. We will support you.’”

14“So Ezra arose and placed those present under a covenant to do as had been said

15“Then Ezra withdrew, but he ate no food and

*4 The temple servants were descendants of King David's slaves, whom Solomon had appointed to assist the Levites.

*8 About 21 tonnes.

*8 About 3½ tonnes.

*8 A daric was a Persian gold coin.

drank no water for he continued to mourn over the unfaithfulness of the exiles.

All the men summoned to Jerusalem

¹⁶A message was then sent throughout Judah, for all the exiles to assemble in Jerusalem.

¹⁷Any man who failed to appear within three days would have all his property taken from him and be expelled from the assembly of the people.

All the men gather in the Temple square, in pouring rain

¹⁸Within the three days, on the twentieth day of the ninth month all the men of Judah and Benjamin had gathered in Jerusalem and were sitting in the courtyard of the Temple.

¹⁹They were distressed by the reason for their gathering, and also because of the heavy rain that was falling.

The men are asked to separate from their foreign wives

²⁰Then Ezra arose and said to them, "You have been unfaithful and have married non-Israelite women, thereby increasing Israel's guilt. ²¹Now confess to the Lord and separate yourselves from the peoples around about you, and from your foreign wives."

All the men agree to do so

²²The assembly responded firmly, "We will do as you say."

A proposal to deal with the cases one by one at set times is accepted

²³Then some said, "There are many people here and it is raining, so we cannot long remain outside. Besides this matter cannot be dealt with quickly. Therefore let our leaders act for the whole people. ²⁴Whoever has married a foreign woman, let him come to Jerusalem at a set time along with the elders and judges of his town, until the anger of our God is turned away from us."

²⁵Only four men opposed this, so they did as was proposed.

Judges appointed to investigate the cases

²⁶So Ezra the priest chose family heads to act as judges and on the first day of the tenth month they sat down to investigate the cases.

111 men send away their foreign wives and children

²⁷By the first day of the first month they had finished dealing with all the 111 men who had married non-Israelite women. ²⁸These men all pledged to put away their wives and each provided a ram as a guilt offering.

²⁹Some of these wives had borne children to these men. They were also sent away with them.

NEHEMIAH

Nehemiah, the author and chief character of this book, is a singular personality, a forceful uncompromising man and a great organiser. He was a Jew and a cup-bearer to the emperor-king, Artaxerxes in Persia (formally Babylonia) but his heart was in Jerusalem. When he learned from his brother who had recently returned from Judah that Jerusalem still lay in ruins, he was distressed and fasted and prayed. Eventually he obtained permission from the king to return to Judah for a period as governor and to rebuild the city walls and gates.

Nehemiah was evidently just the man for the job. The lethargic returned exiles were galvanised into action, and despite increasing opposition from the Samaritans, they rebuilt the walls of Jerusalem in an impressive 52 days.

Years later, on a return trip to Jerusalem, Nehemiah discovered that the Jewish leaders had again become lackadaisical. Again he stirs them up in his usual formidable manner, even cursing and beating and pulling the hair out of some of them.

AUTHOR

Nehemiah, but with some third person commentary added by an unnamed author, probably Ezra.

“We worked on the wall and soon it was half completed, for the people worked with all their heart.” Nehemiah 2:12.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Nehemiah in Persia inquirers about the exiles	1	Nehemiah prays for strength	4
Told the walls of Jerusalem still broken down	1	Nehemiah's enemies bribe a priest	4
Nehemiah weeps, fasts and prays	1	Priest tries to lure Nehemiah unlawfully into Temple	4
Nehemiah a cupbearer to King Artaxerxes	1	Some Jewish nobles corresponding with enemy	4
Asks the king for permission to rebuild Jerusalem	1	Other prophets tried to intimidate Nehemiah	4
King appoints Nehemiah governor of Judah	1	Also a prophetess	4
Nehemiah departs for Jerusalem	1	Wall is completed in 52 days	4
Sanballat the governor in Samaria is displeased	1	Gate keepers appointed	4
Nehemiah inspects walls of Jerusalem by night	1	Gates not to be opened until sun up	4
Nehemiah inspires the Jews to rebuild the wall	1	Watchmen appointed	4
Samaritan officials mock the Jews	2	Wall is dedicated with sacrifices joy and songs	4
Task of rebuilding divided among the people	2	Few people living in Jerusalem	4
Gates of Jerusalem rebuilt	2	Feast of Trumpets celebrated	5
Samaritan officials ridicule their efforts	2	Ezra the priest reads the Law to the people	5
Nehemiah curses the Samaritan officials	2	The Levites also instruct the people	5
The people work with all their heart	2	Nehemiah dismisses the people to eat and drink	5
Their enemies plot to kill them	2	Instructs them to be joyful	5
Guards posted	2	The people learn of the Feast of Tabernacles	5
Some of the Jews begin to murmur	2	The Jews live in booths for a week	5
Nehemiah inspires the people	2	Prescribed burnt offerings offered each day	5
Half of the work force guard the other half	2	The people repent and enter a new covenant	5
Nehemiah sets up a warning system	2	Eight covenant promises of the people	5
All men to remain nights in Jerusalem for guard duty ..	2	Ammonites and Moabites excluded from assembly ..	5
Work continues from dawn until dark	2	Leaders and every tenth family to live in Jerusalem ..	5
Outcry by poor Jews	3	Nehemiah returns to King Artaxerxes	6
Oppression by Jewish nobles and officials	3	Nehemiah again visits Jerusalem	6
Charging interest and taking security forbidden	3	He finds an Ammonite given a room in the Temple ..	6
Nehemiah's kindness to poor an example	3	Food tithes had not been given to the Levites ..	6
Nobles ordered to return property of the poor	3	Nehemiah asks God to remember his faithfulness ..	6
The interest also to be returned	3	Sabbath breaking in Jerusalem	6
The people not taxed while Nehemiah governor	3	Nehemiah enforces Sabbath restrictions	6
Nehemiah feeds 150 people daily	3	Nehemiah threatens the merchants	6
Sanballat tries to lure Nehemiah away to harm him ..	4	Non-Israelite wives found among men of Judah	6
Sanballat invents a falsehood about Nehemiah	4	These men cursed and some beaten by Nehemiah ..	6

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

1

Nehemiah in Babylonia enquires about the exiles in Jerusalem

¹The words of Nehemiah: “In the twentieth year of King Artaxerxes, while I dwelt in the city of Susa in Persia, one of my brothers Hanani returned from Judah. I questioned him about the Jewish exiles who had returned and also about Jerusalem.”

The walls of Jerusalem still broken down

²“He said to me, ‘The exiles back in Judah are having great difficulties and are ashamed, for the walls of Jerusalem are still broken down and its gates have been destroyed by fire.’”

Nehemiah weeps, fasts and prays

³“When I heard these words I sat down and wept, and for some days I mourned and fasted and prayed before the God of heaven.”

⁴“Then I prayed, ‘O Jehovah, great and awesome God who keeps his covenant of love with those who obey his commandments, hear the prayer of your servant.’”

⁵“We have acted wickedly toward you in the past and have not obeyed the commandments you gave your servant Moses. ⁶Yet you have said, ‘**If you return to me and obey my commandments, then even if you have been banished to the most distant land under the heavens, from there I will gather you and bring you back.**’”

⁷“Therefore O Lord, give your servant success by granting him favour in the presence of King Artaxerxes.”

Nehemiah a cupbearer to King Artaxerxes

⁸“Now I was cupbearer to the king, and some weeks later I took wine into him. I had not been sad in his presence before, so he said to me, ‘Why does your face look so sad? This can only be sorrow of heart.’”

Nehemiah asks the king for permission to rebuild Jerusalem

⁹“I was very much afraid, but I said to the king, ‘O king, live forever, why should my face not look sad when the city where my fathers lie buried is in ruins and its gates have been destroyed by fire?’”

¹⁰“The king said to me, ‘What is it you want?’”

¹¹“I prayed in my heart to God and answered, ‘If it pleases the king, let him send me to the city in Judah where my fathers lie buried that I may rebuild it.’”

¹²“The king enquired of me, and the queen was sitting beside him, ‘How long will this take?’”

The king appoints Nehemiah governor of Judah

¹³“So I gave the king a time for my return^{F*} and it pleased him to send me.”

¹⁴“I also said to him, ‘If it pleases the king, may I have a letter to the governor of Trans-Euphrates^{F*} to ensure a safe passage, and to the keeper of the king’s forests in Judah that I may obtain timber for the gates and for the city wall and for the house I will occupy.’”

¹⁵“The king granted my requests and appointed me governor of Judah.”

¹⁶“He also provided army officers and cavalry for protection on my journey.”



Nehemiah would have served in the palace such as this one of King Sennacherib.

Nehemiah departs for Jerusalem

¹⁷“So we journeyed to Jerusalem, but I went first to Sanballat the governor of Trans-Euphrates in Samaria and gave him the king’s letter.”

Sanballat the governor in Samaria is displeased with Nehemiah

¹⁸“Sanballat and Tobiah the Ammonite, one of his officials, were greatly displeased that someone had come to assist the Jews rebuild Jerusalem.”

Nehemiah inspects the walls of Jerusalem by night

¹⁹“I continued my journey and arrived at Jerusalem. After resting for three days I set out with a few men by night to inspect the walls of the city which had been broken down, and the gates which had been destroyed by fire. ²⁰There were no mounts with us except the one I was riding. I went out through the Valley Gate.”

²¹“I had not yet told anyone what my God had put into my heart to do for Jerusalem.”

²²“I rode toward the Fountain Gate but there was not enough room for my mount to pass through, so I rode up the outside valley instead,

*13 Nehemiah returned in twelve years time (Nehemiah 3:12).

*14 Trans-Euphrates was the Persian name for the general area south of the Euphrates river which included Judah.

NEHEMIAH 2

examining the wall as I went. ²³Finally I turned back and again re-entered the city through the Valley Gate.”

Nehemiah inspires the Jews to rebuild the wall

²⁴“Then I said to the leaders of the people and to the priests, ‘Let us rebuild the wall of Jerusalem so that we will no longer be ashamed.’”

²⁵“I also told them of the gracious hand of God upon me and what the king had agreed to do.”

²⁶“They replied, ‘Let us start rebuilding.’ So we began the good work.”

2

Samaritan officials mock the Jews

¹“When Sanballat the governor, Tobiah the Ammonite and Geshem the Arab heard of it, they mocked us and said, ‘What is this you are doing? Are you planning to rebel against the king?’”

²“I answered them saying, ‘The God of heaven will give us success for we are his servants, but you have no share in Jerusalem.’”

The task of rebuilding is divided among the people of Judah

³Nehemiah divided up the work and assigned each gate, and sections of the wall to the families living in Jerusalem. He included Eliashib the high priest and his fellow priests, and also all the families who came to Jerusalem from the districts of Judah to help with the work.

The gates of Jerusalem rebuilt

⁴The exiles rebuilt all the gates of Jerusalem and the Temple fortress area in the City of David.^{F*} ⁵They repaired the Sheep Gate, the Fish Gate, the Old Gate, the Valley Gate, the Dung Gate, the Fountain Gate, the Horse Gate and the East Gate, putting in place all the doors, bolts, bars and roofs.

⁶They also began rebuilding the wall of the city, and the wall of the Pool of Siloam by the King’s Garden, as far as the steps going down from the City of David.

The Samaritan officials ridicule their efforts

⁷“When Sanballat the governor of Trans-Euphrates heard we had begun rebuilding the wall he was enraged, and ridiculed us to his officials and the army of Samaria. ⁸He said to them, ‘What are those feeble Jews doing? Do they really think they can restore their wall? ⁹How can they recover enough stones from those heaps of burned rubble?’”

¹⁰“Tobiah who was at his side said, ‘This wall they are rebuilding, if a fox climbed up on it he would break it down.’”

Nehemiah curses the Samaritan officials

¹¹“Hear us O God, for we are despised. Turn

their insults back upon their own heads. Send them into captivity and exile.”



The disused Golden Gate in the walls of Jerusalem.

The people work with all their heart

¹²“We worked on the wall and soon it was half completed, for the people worked with all their heart.”

Their enemies plot to kill them

¹³“When Sanballat and our other enemies heard that the repairs were proceeding well and that the gaps were closing, they plotted together to kill us. They said, ‘Before they see us we shall be among them and will kill them. We will put a stop to this work.’”

Guards posted

¹⁴“But we prayed to our God and posted guards day and night to meet this threat. I also stationed men at the exposed places to protect their families with swords, spears and bows.”

Some of the Jews begin to murmur

¹⁵“During this time some of our own people began to murmur saying ‘The strength of the stone bearers is giving out’ and ‘Too much of the stone is only rubble, how can we complete the wall?’”

Nehemiah inspires the people

¹⁶“But I said to the people, ‘Fear not. Remember Jehovah who is great and awesome. Fight for your families and your homes.’”

Half the work force guard the other half

¹⁷“From that day on, half of my men did the work while the other half stood guard. And each of the workers wore his sword at his side as he worked, and those who carried stone held a weapon in one hand.”

Nehemiah sets up a warning system

¹⁸“Then I said to the people, ‘The work is extensive and spread out, and we are widely separated from each other along the wall. Therefore if you hear the sound of the trumpet, gather to it and our God will fight for us.’”

*4 The City of David was the high part of Jerusalem where the king’s palace and the temple were located. It was also known as Zion.

19“The man who sounded the trumpet stayed with me.”

All the men to remain at night in Jerusalem for guard duty

20“I also said to the people, ‘Have every man remain in Jerusalem at night and take turns to guard the city.’”

Work continues from dawn until dark

21“So we continued the work from first light of dawn until the stars came out in the evening. 22Neither I nor my men removed our clothing except for washing.”

3

Outcry by the poor Jews over oppression by the Jewish nobles and officials

1“Now about this time there arose an outcry among the poorer people against their Jewish brothers saying, “We are having to mortgage our fields, our vineyards and our homes to borrow money at interest from our countrymen to buy grain during this famine, and to pay the king’s tax. 2Already some of us have had to sell our daughters into slavery. 3We are becoming powerless because our property belongs to others.”

Nehemiah forbids the charging of interest and taking security

4“When I heard this outcry and these charges, I was angry and pondered them in my mind. Then I called an assembly to deal with the matter.”

5“I accused the nobles and officials and said to them, ‘Why are you charging interest and taking property as security from your own countrymen? You are selling your own brothers.’”

6“They were silent for they could find nothing to say.”

Nehemiah uses his own kindness to the poor as an example

7“So I continued and said, ‘What you are doing is not right. I and my brothers and my men are also lending money and grain to the poor, but we are not charging interest nor taking their property.’”

The nobles ordered to return the property of the poor and the interest

8“Now return to them their fields, vineyards, olive groves and houses immediately, and also the interest you are charging them, the hundredth part of the money, grain, new wine and oil each month.” F*

9“‘The nobles and officials replied, ‘We will do as you say.’”

10“Then in the presence of the priests I made them swear an oath to do as they had promised.”

11“I then shook out the folds of my robe and said, ‘In this way may God shake every man out of his house and possessions who does not keep his oath.’”

The people not taxed while Nehemiah governor

12“From the twentieth year of King Artaxerxes when I was appointed governor of Judah, until his thirty-second year, neither I nor my brothers ate the food allotted to the governor and his officials. 13But the governors who had preceded me had placed a tax burden on the people and paid themselves 40 shekels of silver daily^{F*} in addition to their food and wine.”

14“‘The officials also lorded it over the people, but out of reverence for God I did not act like that, instead I devoted myself to the rebuilding of the wall and did not acquire any land.’”

Nehemiah feeds 150 people daily

15“Furthermore, 150 people ate at my table daily, as well as those who came to visit us from the surrounding nations. 16Each day I provided one ox and six choice sheep and poultry, and every ten days an abundant supply of wine.”

17“‘In spite of all this, I never demanded the food allotted to the governor, for the demands were heavy on these people.’”

18“Remember me with favour O my God for all that I have done for these people.”

4

Sanballat tries to lure Nehemiah away to harm him

1“‘When word came to Sanballat and the rest of our enemies that there were no more gaps in the wall, although I had not yet set all the doors in the gates, Sanballat sent me this message. ‘Let us meet together down in one of the villages on the west plains near the sea.’ But I knew they were plotting to harm me.”

2“‘So I sent this reply: ‘I am carrying on a great work and cannot come down.’”

3“‘Four times they sent me the same message and each time I gave the same answer.’”

Sanballat invents a falsehood about Nehemiah becoming king

4“Then a fifth time, Sanballat sent me the same message, but this time his aide also brought me a letter which said:”

5“‘It is reported among the nations that you and the Jews are plotting to rebel against the king and this is why you are rebuilding the wall.’”

6“‘According to these reports you are also about to become king of the Jews and have appointed prophets to make this proclamation in Jerusalem.’”

7“‘Now this report will get back to the king, so let us confer together.’”

8“‘I sent him this reply:

“‘What you say is completely untrue. You are merely inventing it out of your own mind.’”

*8 Equivalent to 12% interest per annum.

*13 A shekel of silver was about a days wage for a labourer.

NEHEMIAH 5

Nehemiah prays for strength

⁹“They were trying to intimidate us and were thinking, ‘Their resolve will become too weak for the work and it will not be completed.’ So I prayed, ‘Strengthen my hands O God.’”

Nehemiah’s enemies bribe a priest to lure him unlawfully into the Temple

¹⁰“One day I went into the house of Shemaiah the priest and he prophesied to me saying, ‘Let us meet together inside the Temple and close the Temple doors, for men are coming by night to kill you.’”

¹¹“But I replied, ‘Should a man like me who is not a priest enter into the Temple to save his life? I will not do it.’” F*

¹²“I discerned that God had not spoken to him and that he had prophesied falsely, for Sanballat and Tobiah had bribed him. ¹³They wanted me to commit a sin by entering the Temple so they could discredit me.”

Some Jewish nobles corresponding with enemy

¹⁴“Also in those days, some of the nobles of Judah were writing to Tobiah the Ammonite, and replies were coming back from him to them, for Tobiah’s son had married the daughter of a Jewish noble.”

¹⁵“Moreover they kept reporting to me his good deeds, and then repeating back to him what I said. Tobiah himself also sent letters to intimidate me.”

Other prophets and a prophetess have also tried to intimidate Nehemiah

¹⁶“Remember them O my God because of what they have done. Also the prophetess Noadiah and the other prophets who have been trying to intimidate me.”

The wall is completed in 52 days

¹⁷“The wall was completed during the sixth month, after 52 days.”

¹⁸“When our enemies heard this, they and all the surrounding nations feared, for they realised that this work had been done with the help of our God.”

Gate keepers appointed

¹⁹“I put my brother Hanani in charge of the gates of Jerusalem and Hananiah in charge of the gates of the Temple, for he was a man of integrity and revered God more than most men.”

The gates not to be opened until sun up

²⁰“I said to them, ‘The gates of Jerusalem are not to be opened until sunrise, and the gatekeepers are to shut the doors and bar them before nightfall.’”

Watchmen appointed

²¹“Also appoint residents of Jerusalem as watchmen. Some on the watchtowers and some near their own houses.”

The wall is dedicated with sacrifices and much joy and song

²²“On the day of the dedication of the wall of

*11 Only ordained priests were permitted to enter the temple proper or the inner courtyard of the temple.

Jerusalem, the leaders and the people offered great sacrifices and rejoiced with music and song in processions along the top of the wall, for God had given them great joy.”

²³“The women and children also rejoiced. The sound of rejoicing in Jerusalem could be heard far away.”



Section of Jerusalem city wall.

Few people living in Jerusalem

²⁴“Now the city of Jerusalem was large and spacious, but there were few people living in it and the houses had not yet been rebuilt.”

²⁵“It was in my heart to assemble the people for a census but I found the genealogical record of those who had been the first to return.”

5

The Feast of Trumpets celebrated

¹When the seventh month^{F*} came, the whole people gathered as one for the Feast of Trumpets, in the square near the Water Gate.

Ezra the priest reads the Law of Moses to the people

²Ezra the priest stood on a high wooden platform built for the occasion. Beside him stood the leaders of the people and the priests and the Levites.

³When he opened the book of the Law of God given through Moses, all the people stood up. Ezra praised the Lord and the people lifted their hands and responded, “Amen!” and then they bowed and worshipped with their faces to the ground.

⁴From daybreak until noon Ezra read aloud from the book of the Law of God and the people listened attentively.

The Levites also instruct the people

⁵The Levites also instructed the people by

*1 The seventh month Tishri (Sept-Oct) was the beginning of the Jewish civil year, and also the month of several important festivals. The Jewish sacred year commenced in the first month (Mar-April).

reading from the book of the Law of God and making it clear so that the people would understand.

Nehemiah dismisses the people to eat and drink instructing them to be joyful

⁶Then Nehemiah the governor spoke to the people saying, “This day is sacred to Jehovah our God, do not weep. (For the people had been weeping as they listened to the words of the Law.) ⁷Go now and enjoy choice food and sweet wine, and share with those who have nothing prepared. For the joy of the Lord is your strength.”

⁸So the people went away to eat and drink and to celebrate with great joy, for they now understood the Law.

The people learn of the Feast of Tabernacles

⁹The next day the heads of the families along with the priests and the Levites gathered around Ezra to give more attention to the words of the Law.

¹⁰They found written in the Law that the Israelites were to live in booths during the Feast of Tabernacles.^{F*}

The Jews live in booths for a week

¹¹So when the people returned home they went out into the hill country and brought back branches from trees and built themselves booths and lived in them during the week of the Feast of Tabernacles. ¹²Some built them on their own roofs, some in their own courtyards, some in the courtyards of the Temple and others in the squares at the Water Gate and the Gate of Ephraim.

¹³From the days of Joshua, the Israelites had not celebrated the feast like this and their joy was very great.

Prescribed burnt offerings offered each day

¹⁴They celebrated the feast for the seven days, and in accordance with what is written the priests in Jerusalem offered the required number of burnt offerings each day.

¹⁵Every day Ezra the priest read from the book of the Law of God.

The people repent and enter a new covenant to keep the Law of God

¹⁶On the twenty-fourth day of the same month, the Israelites again gathered in Jerusalem. This time they fasted and wore sackcloth and had dust on their heads.

¹⁷Those who had separated themselves from their foreign wives for the sake of the Law of God came together and confessed their sins and the wickedness of their fathers. ¹⁸They read from the book of the Law of God for a quarter of the day and spent another quarter in confession and in worshipping Jehovah their God.

¹⁹Then the rest of the people joined them and bound themselves by covenant to follow the

*10 The Feast of Tabernacles was due to be held during the third week of that same seventh month.

Law of God given through Moses, and to carefully obey all the commandments of the Lord. This is what they promised:

Eight covenant promises of the people

²⁰“We promise not to intermarry with the peoples around us.”

²¹“We promise not to buy merchandise or grain from neighbouring peoples on the Sabbath or any holy day.”

²²“We promise that every seventh year we will let the land lie fallow and will cancel all debts.”

²³“We promise to give a third of a shekel each year for the upkeep of the house of our God.”

²⁴“We promise to bring to the Temple, wood to burn on the altar of the Lord our God, at set times each year according to lot.”

²⁵“We promise to bring the first fruits of our crops and fruit trees each year to provide for the priests at the Temple.”

²⁶“We promise to bring the firstborn of our sons and of our cattle and our flocks, to the priests ministering at the Temple.”

²⁷“We promise to give a tithe of our crops to support the Levites.”

Ammonites and Moabites excluded from the assembly

²⁸It was found written in the book of the Law of God that no Ammonite or Moabite should ever be admitted into the assembly of God. For they had not met the Israelites with food and water but had hired Balaam to call down a curse on them.

²⁹When the people heard this law, they excluded from the assembly all who were of this foreign descent.

The leaders and every tenth family assigned to live in Jerusalem

³⁰Now the leaders of the people agreed to settle and live in Jerusalem. ³¹The rest of the people cast lots to assign one of every ten families to also live in Jerusalem. The others were to remain in their own towns.

³²The people blessed all those who willingly offered to live in Jerusalem.

6

Nehemiah returns to Artaxerxes after 12 years as promised

¹“While all this was going on, I Nehemiah was not in Jerusalem for in the thirty-second year of Artaxerxes I had returned to the king.”

Nehemiah returns again to Jerusalem and finds an Ammonite given a room in the Temple

²“However some time later I asked his permission and returned again to Jerusalem.

³When I arrived I learned of an evil thing Eliashib the high priest had done. He had provided Tobiah the Ammonite with a storage room in the courtyard of the Temple.”

⁴“I was greatly displeased at this and threw all of Tobiah’s household goods out of the room.”

NEHEMIAH 6

⁵“I also gave orders to clear out and reconsecrate all the other rooms. Then I put back into them the things of the house of God, with the grain offerings and the incense.”

Food tithes had not been given to the Levites

⁶“I also learned that the food tithes assigned to the Levites had not been given to them. And that the Levites and singers responsible for serving at the Temple had returned to their fields.”

⁷“I rebuked the leaders and said to them, ‘Why is the house of God neglected?’”

⁸“I called the Levites back and stationed them at their posts. Then all Judah brought their tithes of grain, wine, and oil into the storerooms.”

Nehemiah asks God to remember his faithfulness

⁹“Remember me for this O my God, and do not blot out what I have faithfully done for the house of my God and its services.”

Sabbath breaking in Jerusalem

¹⁰“Also in those days, I saw men in Judah treading winepresses on the Sabbath, and others loading grain, wine, grapes, figs and other loads upon donkeys and bringing them into Jerusalem to sell on the Sabbath.”

¹¹“Men from Tyre were also bringing in fish and all other kinds of merchandise and selling them on the Sabbath to the people of Judah.”

Nehemiah enforces Sabbath restrictions

¹²“I rebuked the leaders of Judah and said to them, ‘Why are you allowing this wicked thing and desecrating the Sabbath day? ¹³Did not your forefathers do the same thing? Was that not why our God brought calamity upon us and upon this city? You are again stirring up wrath against Israel.’”

¹⁴“So on the eve of the next Sabbath, when the evening shadows fell upon the gates of Jerusalem, I ordered them shut and not to be opened until the Sabbath was over.”

¹⁵“I stationed some of my own men at the gates to make sure that no load would be brought in on the Sabbath day.”

Nehemiah threatens the merchants

¹⁶“Once or twice the merchants with their goods spent the night outside Jerusalem, but I warned them and said, ‘If you do this again I will lay hands upon you.’”

¹⁷“From that time onward they no longer came on the Sabbath. Then I commanded the Levites to guard the gates in order to keep the Sabbath holy.”

Non-Israelite wives found among men of Judah

¹⁸“Also in those days I found men of Judah who had married non-Israelite women. Women from Ashdod, Ammon and Moab. ¹⁹Half of their children did not even know how to speak the language of Judah.”

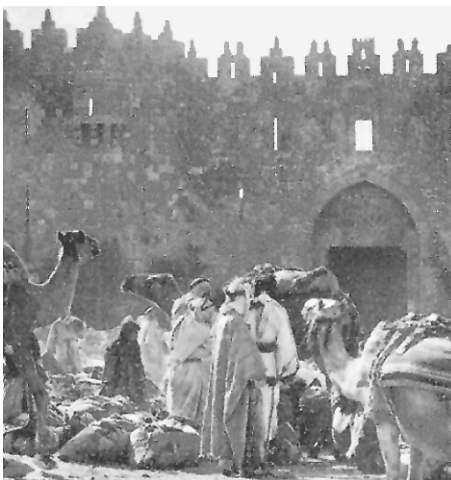
Those who intermarried cursed and beaten by Nehemiah and made to repent

²⁰“I rebuked them and called down curses upon them. I even beat some of the men and pulled out their hair.”

²¹“I made them take an oath to repent in God’s name and said to them, ‘Was it not because of marriages like these that Solomon king of Israel sinned? ²²Among the many nations there was no king like him, but even he was led into sin by foreign women.’”

²³“Even one of the grandsons of Eliashib the high priest had married the daughter of Sanballat, the governor of Trans-Euphrates. I drove him away from me. ²⁴Remember him O God for he has defiled the covenant of the priesthood.”

²⁵“So I purified the priests and the Levites of everything foreign and assigned them their duties.”



Merchants at the gates of Jerusalem selling wheat.

MALACHI

In this book of Malachi, who was the last of the Old Testament prophets, the re-established Jews are severely rebuked by the Lord for many sins, particularly the men.

These sins were – taking advantage of one another, marrying foreign women, adultery, divorce, offering blemished animals in sacrifice, corruption in the priesthood, neglect of giving tithes, calling evil good, and murmuring at the apparent lack of justice of God.

Idolatry is however not mentioned. There is no evidence that this serious sin has ever troubled the Jews again since their return from Babylonian exile.

Morale among the Jews was low at this time. It appears that they had expected the Messiah to appear soon after their return from exile and to immediately usher in the golden age of the millennium as prophesied by Isaiah, Ezekiel, Zechariah and other prophets. They did not realise that this glorious period still lay many years into the future, and that before that day a more humble appearance of the Messiah would take place.

Nevertheless, through Malachi, the Lord reaffirms by prophecy that the great day of his glorious appearance would surely arrive, but first a messenger was to come and prepare the way for his first appearance (Malachi 3:1). Jesus quoted this prophecy and identified John the Baptist as this messenger (Matt-Mark-Luke 12:7).

No personal details are known about Malachi the prophet.

AUTHOR Malachi the prophet.

“Bring your full tithe into the storehouse that there be food in my house. Prove me, and see if I will not open the windows of heaven and pour you out a blessing so great there will not be room enough to receive it.” Malachi 3:12-13.

CONTENTS

Chapter

The Lord has blessed Israel but cursed Esau	1	And those who doubt his justice	2
Curse to remain on Edom	1	A messenger to prepare the way before the Lord	3
Judah's priests dishonour the Lord	1	Malachi prophesies of the second coming	3
Blemished animals offered	1	The Levites to be purified when the Lord comes	3
Try offering blemished animals to your governor	1	A day of judgement for sinners	3
Lord has no pleasure in Israel's offerings	1	Lord pleads with his people to return to him	3
All nations will one day offer pure offerings to Lord ..	1	Withholding tithes is robbing God	3
Sacrifices to Lord a burden to Israel	1	Withholding tithes has brought a curse on Israel	3
Cursed be the man who offers a blemished animal ..	1	Test the blessings of the Lord by giving a full tithe ...	3
Priests will also be cursed	1	You have said it is futile to serve God	3
Levi the forefather of the Levites a righteous man	1	Look how evildoers prosper	3
A priest ought to speak with knowledge and wisdom ..	1	Names of those who continue to pray recorded	3
Priests despised because of their false teachings	1	Names written in Lord's book of remembrance	3
The Jews have broken God's covenant	2	Reward of the righteous seen at second coming	3
Those who marry foreign women to be cut off	2	Second coming a day of burning for the wicked	3
Unfaithful husbands condemned	2	The righteous to leap joyously	3
The Lord hates divorce	2	Like calves released from the stall	3
Lord wearied by evil being called good	2	Elijah the prophet to be sent before second coming ..	3

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

The Lord has blessed Israel but cursed Esau

¹The word of the Lord to Israel through Malachi the prophet. ²**Jehovah says, I have blessed Israel. But you say, 'How have I**

blessed you?"

³**“Was not Esau the brother of Israel? I have blessed Israel, but Esau I have cursed.**

MALACHI 2

I have laid waste his mountains of Edom. His inheritance has become a home for the jackals of the desert.”

The curse to remain on Edom

⁴“Though Edom may say, ‘We will rebuild.’ I shall again lay them waste. They will be called the Cursed Land, a people always under the wrath of Jehovah.”

Judah’s priests dishonour the Lord by offering blemished animals

⁵“A son honours his father. I am your Father. Where is the honour due to me?”

⁶“Hear O priests, you dishonour my name. Yet you say, ‘How have we dishonoured your name?’”

⁷“By offering defiled food on my altar when you bring blind, crippled or diseased animals for sacrifice. Is that not wrong?”

Try offering blemished animals to your governor

⁸“If you offered them to your governor, would he be pleased with you?”

Lord has no pleasure in Israel’s offerings

⁹“You implore me to be gracious to you, but with offerings such as these how can I accept you?”

¹⁰“O that you would close the Temple doors and no longer light meaningless fires on my altar. I have no pleasure in you and will not accept your offerings.”

All nations will one day honour and offer pure offerings to Lord

¹¹“I am a great King, and my name is to be great among all nations, from the rising to the setting of the sun. In every place, pure offerings will be made to my name.”

Sacrifices to Lord a burden to Israel

¹²“But you profane my name and treat my altar with disdain. You say ‘These sacrifices are a burden’ and sniff contemptuously.”

¹³“Then you bring injured, crippled or diseased animals and offer them as sacrifices. Shall I accept them from your hand?”

Cursed be the man who offers a blemished animal

¹⁴“Cursed be he who vows to me an acceptable animal from his flock and then sacrifices a blemished animal.”

Priests will also be cursed

¹⁵“If you do not listen O priests and set your heart to honour my name, I will curse you blessings. Indeed I have already begun to curse them.”

¹⁶“I will cut off your sons and daughters and will spread on your faces the dung from your blemished animals, and you will be carried off with it.”

Levi the forefather of the Levites revered the Lord

¹⁷“My covenant of life and peace was made with your forefather Levi. He revered

me, and stood in awe of my name.”

¹⁸“No falsehood was found on his lips. He walked with me in peace and righteousness and turned many from their sins.”

A priest ought to speak with knowledge and wisdom

¹⁹“For the lips of a priest ought to speak knowledge and wisdom and give guidance to men who seek it. For a priest is a messenger of the Lord.”

Priests despised and humiliated because of their false teachings

²⁰“But you have turned away from me and your false teachings cause men to stumble.”

²¹“You have broken my covenant with Levi, therefore I have caused you to be despised and humiliated before the people.”

2

Malachi accuses the Jews of breaking God’s covenant

¹“Do we not all have one forefather? Did not one God create us all? Why then have we broken God’s covenant with our forefathers by dealing treacherously with one another?”

Those who marry foreign women to be cut off from Israel

²“And why have men of Judah broken the covenant by marrying women who serve a foreign god? ³May Jehovah cut off from Israel any man who does this, even though he bring offerings to the Lord.”

Unfaithful husbands condemned

⁴“Another thing you do, you weep and wail and flood the Lord’s altar with tears because he no longer pays attention to your offerings, and you ask ‘Why?’”

⁵“It is because the Lord was witness to the marriage covenant between you and the wife of your youth, and you have been unfaithful to her. Even though she is your companion and your wife by covenant.”

The Lord hates divorce

⁶“Did he not make you both one in flesh and spirit? For he was seeking godly offspring. So safeguard the offspring that belongs to him. Let no man be unfaithful to the wife of his youth.”

⁷“For the Lord says, ‘I hate divorce, and I hate the man who defiles his garment with injustice toward his wife. ⁸Safeguard the offspring that is not your own and do not be unfaithful to your wife.’”

The Lord wearied by evil being called good and those who doubt his justice

⁹“You have also wearied the Lord with your words. You say, ‘How have we wearied him?’”

¹⁰“By saying, ‘All who do evil are good in the eyes of the Lord’ or ‘Where is the God of justice?’”

3

**A messenger to prepare the way
before the Lord comes to his Temple**

¹"Jehovah says, 'I will send my messenger who shall prepare the way before me.'" ^{F*}

²"Then the Lord whom you seek will come suddenly to his Temple."

**Malachi prophesies of the
second coming of the Lord**

³"*But who will endure the great day when he comes? Who can stand when he appears?* ⁴*For he will be like a refiner's fire, or a launderer's soap. He shall sit as a refiner and purifier.*"

**The Levites to be purified
when the Lord comes**

⁵"*He will purify the Levites and refine them like gold and silver. Then shall they present offerings to the Lord in righteousness.*

⁶"*Then shall the offerings of Judah be acceptable to him, as in days gone by.*"

A day of judgement for sinners

⁷"*For Jehovah says, 'I am coming in judgement and will be quick to testify against sorcerers, adulterers, and perjurers, and against those who defraud labourers of their wages, who exploit widows and the fatherless and turn away foreigners, and revere me not.'*"

**The Lord pleads with his people
to return to him**

⁸"I Jehovah do not change, but ever since the time of your forefathers you have turned away from me and have not kept my commandments. ⁹Therefore return to me and I will return to you. But you say, 'How shall we return?'"

**Withholding tithes is robbing God
has brought whole nation under a curse**

¹⁰"Will a man rob God? Yet you rob me. But you say, 'How do we rob you?'"

¹¹"In tithes and offerings. This whole nation is under a curse because you are robbing me."

**Test the great blessings of the Lord
by giving a full tithe**

¹²"Bring your full tithe into the storehouse that there be food in my house. ¹³Prove me, and see if I will not open the windows of heaven and pour you out a blessing so great there will not be room enough to receive it."

¹⁴"And I will stay the devourer from destroying your crops, and your vines shall

not cast their fruit before their time."

¹⁵"Then all nations shall call you blessed, for yours will be a delightful land."

**You have said it is futile to serve God
– look how evildoers prosper**

¹⁶"You have said harsh things against me. Yet you say, 'What have we said against you?'"

¹⁷"You have said, 'It is futile to serve God. What have we gained by keeping his laws and humbling ourselves before him?' ¹⁸See how the arrogant are blessed and evildoers prosper. Even those who mock God escape."

**Names of those who continue to pray are
written in Lord's book of remembrance**

¹⁹"I the Lord hear the prayers of those who revere me, and continue to pray. And a book of remembrance is written in my presence with the names of all those who honour my name."

²⁰"They will be mine on that great day when I come to take possession of my jewels. I will spare them as a loving father spares a son who serves him faithfully."

**The reward of the righteous will be clearly
seen at the second coming of the Lord**

²¹"In that day you will see clearly the distinction between the righteous and the wicked, between those who serve God and those who do not."

**The second coming to be
a day of burning for the wicked**

²²"That great day is surely coming. It will blaze as a furnace and all the arrogant and every evildoer will burn like dry straw. Neither root nor branch will be left them."

**The righteous to leap joyously like
calves released from the stall**

²³"But for you who reverence my name, it shall come as a glorious sunrise, with healing in its wings. You shall go forth leaping joyously, like a calf released from the stall, and the wicked shall be ashes under your feet."

²⁴"Therefore obey the Law of my servant Moses."

**Elijah the prophet to be sent
before the second coming**

²⁵"I will send you the prophet Elijah before that great and dreadful day. ²⁶He will turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the hearts of the children to their fathers lest the whole earth be destroyed when I come."

*1 Jesus quoted this passage in reference to John the Baptist (Matt-Mark-Luke 12:7).

JOB

This book is a poetical account of man named Job, who was very upright and also very wealthy. He was a man in whom God (Jehovah) took great delight, and one day God shared his delight with Satan.

Satan argued with God however that Job was only righteous because he had blessed him with great wealth. He then challenged God to, *“Stretch out your hand and strike everything he has and he will curse you to your face.”*

God therefore permits Satan to afflict Job to test his integrity. Satan begins by taking away all Job’s wealth and also the lives of his ten children. When this fails to achieve the desired result Satan is further permitted to afflict Job with a severe disease, believed to be a type of leprosy, and if that were not enough, Job’s wife and his brothers are turned against him.

To make matters worse, Job’s three friends who come to comfort him take the view that Job must have sinned in order to deserve such severe punishment.

AUTHOR Unknown.

“The Lord has given and the Lord has taken away, blessed be the name of the Lord.” Job 1:16.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Job a blameless and upright man	1	Job again proclaims his innocence	4
The family and wealth of Job	1	Job declares he will eventually be justified by God	4
Job would offer sacrifices on behalf of his children	1	Bildad also accuses Job of wickedness	4
The Lord expresses pride in Job to Satan	1	Job rebukes his friends for tormenting him	4
Satan says Job is only righteous because of wealth	1	Job pleads for pity	4
Satan permitted to destroy Job’s possessions	1	Job loathsome to his brothers and household	4
Job loses his family and his wealth	1	Job affirms his belief in the resurrection	4
Job mourns but continues to worship God	1	Job affirms his belief in the day of judgement	4
Satan given permission to destroy Job’s health	1	Zophar: The wicked never prosper for long	4
Satan afflicts Job with festering sores	1	Job: The wicked often prosper all their life	4
Job’s wife turns against him	1	The wicked say to God, leave us alone	4
Job’s three friends come to comfort him	1	Worms devour both the rich and poor	4
They are appalled at his appearance	1	Evil men are honoured even in death	4
Job tells his friends he yearns for death	2	Eliphaz: If Job blameless why does God punish him?	5
Eliphaz: Trouble comes to those who sow trouble	2	Job: If only I could state my case to God	5
Eliphaz shares a revelation from a spirit	2	Job: God does not punish all the wicked on earth	5
Man cannot be blameless before God	2	Job will not deny his integrity	5
Eliphaz: Foolish men lose their families and wealth	2	Job longs for the happy days of past	5
Eliphaz: Trouble is discipline from God	2	Job: I helped the poor and widows	5
Job: I want sympathy not condemnation	2	Job now mocked by young men	5
Job denies he has done wrong	2	Job’s pain and suffering	5
Job describes his suffering	2	Job’s vow of chastity	5
Job pleads with God to leave him alone	2	Job’s just treatment of his servants and tenants	5
Job asks God why he is being afflicted	2	Job’s generosity to the poor	5
Bildad accuses Job’s children of sin	3	Job: I did not trust in my wealth	5
Job maintains his innocence	3	Elihu a bystander angry with Job and his friends	6
How can he contend with God	3	Elihu: God punishes a man to turn him from wrong	6
Job: God afflicts both the innocent and the wicked	3	Elihu: God’s eyes upon all men	6
Job wishes for a mediator between God and himself	3	Elihu accuses Job of rebellion against God	6
Job accuses God of unfairness	3	Elihu: God slow to answer prayers of the proud	6
Zophar also accuses Job of sin	3	Elihu: God hears the prayer of a repentant man	6
Job rebukes his friends	3	Jehovah suddenly appears to Job	7
Job reaffirms his trust in God	3	Jehovah questions Job on the creation	7
Job prays for God to stop punishing him	3	Job is questioned on the dawn and the oceans	7
Job asks God to show him what wrong he has done	3	Questions on Sheol and the expanse of the earth	7
Eliphaz accuses Job of lack of wisdom	3	Questions on light, darkness, snow, hail	7
Eliphaz: Only the wicked suffer torment	3	Questions on frost, ice, lightning, winds, rain, dew	7
Job tells his friends they are miserable comforters	4	Questions on the stars, man’s mind	7
Job describes his gaunt appearance	4	Questions on lions, birds, goats, deer, oxen, horses	7

Job cannot answer the Lord 8
 Lord questions Job further 8
 Job challenged to speak in a voice of thunder 8
 Job challenged to glorify himself 8
 Job challenged to crush the wicked 8
 Hippopotamus first animal created by God 8

Job challenged to capture a crocodile 8
 Who then is able to stand against Jehovah 8
 Job humbles himself before the Lord 8
 Lord rebukes Job's friends 8
 Job's prosperity restored double 8
 Job fathers ten more children and lives 140 years ... 8
 departed from the presence of the Lord.

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

1

Job a blameless and upright man

¹In the land of Uz^{F*} there lived a man whose name was Job.^{F*} He revered God, shunned evil, and was blameless and upright.

The family and wealth of Job

²Job had seven sons and three daughters. He also owned 7000 sheep, 3000 camels, 500 yoke of oxen, 500 donkeys and a large number of servants. He was the greatest man among all the people of the east.

Job would offer sacrifices on behalf of his children

³Job's sons would hold feasts in each others homes, and would also invite their sisters to eat and drink with them.

⁴When a period of feasting had run its course, Job would send for them and early in the morning he would sacrifice a burnt offering on behalf of each of them. For he thought, "Perhaps my children have sinned." This was Job's regular custom.

The Lord expresses his delight in Job to Satan

⁵Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before Jehovah,^{F*} and Satan came with them. The Lord said to Satan, "**Where have you come from?**"

⁶Satan replied, "From roaming to and fro throughout the earth."

⁷The Lord said to Satan, "**You will have seen my righteous servant Job. There is no one on earth like him.**"

Satan claims that Job is only righteous because of his great wealth

⁸Satan answered, "Does Job revere God for nothing? Have you not protected him and his household and everything he has? Have you not blessed the work of his hands so that his flocks and herds are spread throughout the land? ⁹Stretch out your hand and strike everything he has and he will curse you to your face."

Satan permitted to destroy Job's possessions

¹⁰The Lord said to Satan, "**Very well, all that Job has is in your power. But on the man himself lay not a finger.**" Then Satan

Job loses his family and his wealth

¹¹Now Job's sons and daughters were feasting at the elder brother's house when a servant came running to Job and said, "Arabians have attacked and carried off all your oxen and donkeys and have put your servants who were with them to the sword. I am the only one who survived!"

¹²While he was still speaking, one of Job's shepherds came running and said, "Fire of God fell from the sky and burned up the sheep and the shepherds. I am the only one who escaped to tell you!"

¹³Then came another servant who said, "Three Babylonian raiding parties swept down on your camels and carried them off. They killed all the other servants but me!"

¹⁴While he was still speaking, yet another servant came to Job and said, "As your sons and daughters were feasting at the eldest brother's house a mighty wind swept in from the desert and collapsed the house upon them. They are all dead!"

Job mourns but continues to worship God

¹⁵At this Job arose and tore his robe and shaved his head. Then he fell to the ground and worshipped God saying, "Naked I came from my mother's womb and naked I will depart. ¹⁶The Lord has given and the Lord has taken away, blessed be the name of the Lord."

Satan given permission to destroy Job's health

¹⁷Again the sons of God came to present themselves before Jehovah, and again Satan came with them.

¹⁸The Lord said to Satan, "**What do you think now of my servant Job? He still maintains his integrity, even though you provoked me to allow you to ruin him without reason.**"

¹⁹Satan replied, "Flesh must suffer first. All that a man has he will give for his health. Strike his flesh and bones and he shall surely curse you."

²⁰The Lord said, "**Very well then, he is in your power, but spare his life.**"

Satan afflicts Job with festering sores

²¹So Satan went out from the presence of the Lord and afflicted Job greatly from head to toe with festering sores. Job would take a piece of broken pottery and scrape himself as he sat among the ashes.

*1 Believed to be the region east of the river Jordan, later known as Gilead.

*1 Normally pronounced 'Jobe.'

*5 Traditional Israelite belief is that the spirits of all mankind had an existence prior to this mortal life as the offspring of God. These 'sons of God' (see also Job 7:4) therefore may represent the spirits of men yet to be born. See also Deuteronomy 9:16, Jeremiah 1:3, Ezekiel 17:367, Ecclesiastes 5:31, Psalms 77:4, John 9:1 and 19:16.

Job's wife turns against him

²²Then Job's wife said to him, "Are you still maintaining your innocence? God has done this to you. Curse him and die."

²³Job replied, "You speak as a foolish woman would speak. Should we accept only the good from God and not the trouble?"

²⁴In all his suffering Job did not sin with his lips.

Job's three friends are appalled at his appearance when they come to comfort him

²⁵When Job's three friends Eliphaz, Bildad, and Zophar heard of his troubles, they met together and came to sympathise with Job and to comfort him.

²⁶When they saw him from a distance they did not recognise him. They wept aloud and tore their robes, and sprinkled dust on their heads.

²⁷Then they sat with Job for seven days and said not a word, for they saw that his suffering was great.



Job's three friends would probably have been clothed in a similar fashion to these three men.

2

Job tells his friends he yearns for death to release him from his suffering

¹Then Job spoke and said, "Why did I not die at birth, for now I would be at peace. In death the weary are at rest. Even captives enjoy ease, they no longer hear the slave driver's shout."

²"Why is life given to those in misery? Why does death not come to those who long for it? Why does God give life to a man he has afflicted? ³Groans pour out of me like water. What I dreaded has happened. I have no peace, only troubles."

Eliphaz: Trouble comes only to those who sow trouble

⁴Eliphaz said to Job, "If I venture a word with you, will you hear me? But who can keep from speaking? You have instructed many in your days. Your words have strengthened the faltering. But now trouble comes to you and you are dismayed. Should not your righteousness be your hope?"

⁵"Consider now, when was a righteous man ever destroyed by God? As I have observed, only those who sow trouble, reap trouble."

Eliphaz shares a night revelation from a spirit – man cannot be blameless before God

⁶"A word once came secretly to me during disquieting dreams in the night. Fear seized me and the hair on my body bristled as a spirit glided past my face."

⁷"Then a form stood before me and I heard a voice whisper, 'Can a man be more righteous than God? If God charges the angels with error, how much more men who live in bodies of clay and who are crushed as easily as a moth.'"

Eliphaz: Foolish men eventually lose their families and wealth

⁸"Resentment and envy slay fools. I myself have seen a fool taking root, but suddenly his household was cursed and his children were crushed in court without a defender. ⁹Hungry men consumed his harvest and schemers devoured his wealth."

Eliphaz: Trouble is discipline from God

¹⁰"Trouble does not grow unsown from the ground, yet man is born to trouble as surely as sparks fly upward."

¹¹"If I were you, I would trust in God for blessed is the man whom God corrects. So despise not the discipline of the Almighty, for he wounds, but he also binds up the wound."

Job: I want sympathy from my friends not condemnation

¹²Job replied, "If only my sorrow could be weighed in the scales, it would surely outweigh all the sands of the sea. It is no wonder my words are rash. The arrows of the Almighty are in me and my spirit drinks in their poison."

¹³"Does a donkey Bray when it has grass to eat?"

¹⁴"O that God would crush me, I would at least have the consolation that I had not denied the words of the Holy One."

¹⁵"What future have I that I should still hope? Success has been driven from me and I have no power to help myself."

¹⁶"A despairing man like me should at least have the sympathy of his family and friends, even though I am forsaken by the Almighty. ¹⁷But even my own brothers are like streams that cease to flow in the dry season, like those the travelling merchants of Sheba look forward to in hope of finding water, but arrive and find them dry. Now you too are proving to be the same."

Job denies that he has done wrong

¹⁸"Show me my wrong and I will be silent. Would I lie to your face? Reconsider your words for my integrity is at stake. Is my tongue speaking wrongly?"

Job describes his suffering

¹⁹"I have been condemned to months of

emptiness and nights of misery. When I lie down I think, ‘How long before I arise?’ The nights drag and I toss until dawn.”

²⁰“My body is clothed with maggots and scabs. My skin is broken and festering. My days are swiftly flowing to an end. My eyes shall never see happy times again. You will look for me but see me no more.”

Job pleads with God to leave him alone

²¹“O my God, a man who goes down to Sheol^{F*} is like a vanishing cloud. He never returns to his house again. Therefore I speak out in the anguish of my spirit.”

²²“When I think my bed will comfort me, you terrify me with dreams and visions. O I despise my life. I prefer death rather than this body of mine. Leave me alone. My days have no meaning.”

Job asks God why he is being afflicted

²³“Who am I that you give me so much attention, that you afflict me continually? If I have sinned, what have I done? Why have you made me your target? Why have I become a burden to you?”

3

Bildad accuses Job’s children of sin

¹Then Bildad spoke, “How long will you speak such things? Your words are like blustering wind. ²Does the Almighty pervert that which is right? Your children must have sinned against him and have paid the penalty of their sin.”

³“If you are pure and upright, plead with God. Even now he will restore you to your rightful place. Your beginning may seem humble, but your future shall be prosperous.”

⁴“Look to past generations. Learn what our fathers learned.”

⁵“Can reeds grow tall where there is no water? Such is the destiny of all who forget God. But he does not reject a blameless man, he will yet fill your mouth with laughter.”

Job maintains his innocence but how can he contend with God

⁶Job replied, “I know this to be so. But how can a man contend with God? A man could not answer him one time out of a thousand. God’s power and wisdom is profound. Who has resisted him and come forth unscathed?”

⁷“He moves mountains in his anger. He shakes the earth and makes its pillars tremble. He commands the sun and it ceases to shine. He made the constellations of the heavens. ⁸If he takes away, who can stop him? Who can say to him, ‘What are you doing?’”

⁹“How then can I dispute with him? Though I am innocent I could not answer him, I could only plead for mercy.”

Job: God afflicts both the innocent and the wicked

¹⁰“Even if I summoned him and he came, I do

not believe he would give me a hearing, though I am blameless.”

¹¹“That is why I say, ‘He destroys both the innocent and the wicked.’ For when a scourge brings sudden death he is heedless to the despair of the innocent. ¹²When land falls into the hands of wicked men, he blindfolds the judges. If not him, then who?”

Job wishes for a mediator between God and himself

¹³“If I should say, ‘I shall forget my complaint and will smile instead,’ I still dread my sufferings for I know my friends will hold me guilty.”

¹⁴“If only there were someone to mediate between God and myself and to remove God’s rod from me that his terrors frighten me no more. Then I would speak up without fear, but I cannot.”

Job accuses God of unfairness

¹⁵“I loathe my life, therefore I give free rein to the bitterness of my soul. I say to God, ‘State the charges you have against me! Does it please you to oppress me, while you smile on the schemes of the wicked? ¹⁶You know I am not guilty, yet there is no one who can rescue me from your hand.”

¹⁷“Are not my few days almost over? Turn away from me that I may have a little season of comfort before I go to the place of no return, to the land of the darkness of death.”^{F*}

Zophar also accuses Job of sin

¹⁸Then Zophar spoke, “Are these words to go unchallenged? Will no one rebuke you when you mock the Almighty, when you say to God, ‘I am pure in your sight?’”

¹⁹“O how I wish that God would speak to you and disclose his wisdom, then you would know he has even forgotten some of your sins.”

²⁰“The sins of deceitful men are not hidden from God. Yet, if you redevote your heart to him and put away your sins, you shall lift up your face without fear. You will surely forget your trouble, recalling it only as waters gone by. ²¹Life will be brighter than noonday. You shall sleep peacefully and many will court your favour.”

Job rebukes his friends

²²Job replied, “Doubtless you know all things and wisdom will die with you. But I also have a mind, and am not inferior to you. What you know I also know. ²³But I desire to argue my case with God. You however smear me with lies.”

²⁴“You are worthless physicians, all of you. If only you would be silent, that would be wisdom.”

²⁵Would it turn out well if God examined you? Could you deceive him as you might deceive men?

*¹⁷ Sheol the spirit world of the dead, was anciently believed to be located under the earth, and therefore dark because it was hidden from the sun. The Hebrew conception of the afterlife was that of a restful but shadowy existence, awaiting the time of the resurrection and judgement when their spirits would again reunite with their physical body and live again on earth under the reign of the Messiah.

*²¹ Sheol is the Hebrew name for the spirit world of the dead.

JOB 4

²⁶Your proverbs are ashes. Your defences are clay. Remain silent and let me speak then let come upon me what will."

Job reaffirms his trust in God

²⁷"For though God slay me, yet will I hope in him for then I shall be able to defend myself to his face. This will bring about my deliverance, for a godless man would not dare go before God."

²⁸"I have prepared my case and know I will be vindicated. Can any man bring charges against me? If so, I will be silent and die."

Job prays for God to stop punishing him and show him what wrong he has done

²⁹"Grant me these two things O God: Cease to frighten me with your terrors, and let me speak and you reply."

³⁰"How many wrongs have I committed? Show me my sin. Why hide your face and treat me as an enemy, and make me reap the sins of my youth?"

Eliphaz accuses Job of lack of wisdom

³¹Then Eliphaz said, "Would a wise man speak with such empty knowledge? You undermine righteousness and devotion to God."

³²"Your sin prompts your mouth and you speak with the tongue of the deceitful. Your own words condemn you."

³³"Were you the first man ever born? Do you listen in on God's councils? Do you limit wisdom to yourself? What insights have you that we have not?"

³⁴"The grey-haired and elderly are on our side. Men even older than your father."

³⁵"Are God's gentle consolations not enough for you? Why does your heart carry you away so that your eyes flash and you vent your rage against God?"

Eliphaz: Only the wicked suffer torment

³⁶"What is man that he can be pure and righteous? If even the holy ones in heaven are impure in God's eyes, how much less man who is corrupt and drinks up evil like water?"

³⁷"Let me tell you what wise men have declared: 'All his days the wicked man suffers torment. When all seems well, raiders attack him. He is marked for the sword. Distress and anguish fill him with terror for he shakes his fist at God.'"

³⁸"Though his waist bulge with fat, he shall inhabit a ruined town and a crumbling house. His wealth will not endure. The breath of God's mouth shall carry him away. He will be like a vine stripped of its unripe grapes."

4

Job tells his friends they are miserable comforters

¹Job replied, "I have heard many words like these. You are miserable comforters, all of you. Will your long-winded speeches never end?"

²"I also could make fine speeches against

you, and shake my head, if I were in your place. But instead I would comfort you and encourage you to bring you relief. Yet my pain is not relieved, it will not go away."

Job describes his gaunt appearance to God and again proclaims his innocence

³"O God, you have worn me out. My gauntness testifies against me. I wear sackcloth over my skin and bury my brow in the dust. ⁴My face is red with weeping. Dark shadows ring my eyes. Yet my hands have been free of violence and my prayer is pure."

⁵"O earth, cover not my blood. May my cry of innocence ever be heard."

Although wicked men jeer him Job declares he will eventually be justified by God

⁶"Wicked men jeer and gather against me, their minds closed to understanding. O God, let them not triumph."

⁷"But my witness is in heaven and he will vouch for me. ⁸Only a few years will pass before I go on my journey of no return."

Bildad also accuses Job of wickedness

⁹Bildad said, "When will you end such speeches? Why do you regard us as fools, you who tear yourself to pieces in your anger? Is the whole earth to be abandoned for your sake?"

¹⁰"The lamp of the wicked man is always snuffed out. The vigour of his step is weakened. A snare holds him fast. Terrors meet him on every side."

¹¹"He is torn from the security of his home and marched off to the king of terrors. Then the memory of him fades from the earth."

Job rebukes his friends for tormenting him

¹²Job replied, "How long will you torment me, and crush me with such words? Ten times now you have shamelessly wronged me."

¹³"Even if I had sinned, my error would be mine alone. Why exalt yourselves above me and use my humiliation against me?"

Job pleads for pity

¹⁴"I am nothing but skin and bones. Have pity on me my friends. Have pity, for the hand of God has struck me. ¹⁵Why do you pursue me as God does? Will you never get enough of my flesh?"

Job is loathsome to his brothers and all his household

¹⁶"Though I cry out to God saying, 'I have been wronged!' I get no response. Though I call for help, there is no justice. He has stripped me of my honour and removed the crown from my head. His anger burns against me."

¹⁷"He has turned my brothers from me. I am loathsome to them. My guests and my maidservants look upon me as a foreigner. I summon my servant and he will not come."

¹⁸"My breath is offensive to my wife. Even young boys ridicule me. And now, you my friends turn against me."

**Job's affirms his belief in the resurrection
and the day of judgement**

¹⁹"O that my words were recorded on a scroll, or engraven in rock."

²⁰"For I know that my Redeemer lives, and in the latter days he shall stand upon the earth.

²¹And after my skin has been destroyed, yet in my flesh will I see God with my own eyes."

²²"But you say, 'We will persecute him for the root of the trouble lies within him.'"

²³"You should fear for yourselves. You know there is a day of judgement."

Zophar: The wicked never prosper for long

²⁴Zophar spoke, "I am greatly disturbed. I hear a rebuke that dishonours me."

²⁵"Surely you know how it has been ever since man was placed upon the earth, that the joy of the godless man lasts but a moment.

²⁶Though his pride reaches to the heavens, he shall perish forever like his own dung."

²⁷"He will not enjoy the streams and the meadows flowing with honey and cream. He will not enjoy the profit from his trading."

²⁸"Like a dream he vanishes, no more to be found. In the midst of his plenty distress overtakes him, and the full force of misery comes upon him."

²⁹"His children must make restitution and return his wealth to the poor whom he oppressed and left destitute. For he seized houses he did not build. Such is the fate God allots the wicked."

**Job: On the contrary the wicked
often prosper all their life**

³⁰Job said, "Bear with me while I speak and after I have spoken, mock on."

³¹"My complaint is not directed to mortals. Why should I not be impatient with God? ³²Look at me and be appalled. Trembling seizes my body. Yet the wicked live on, growing old and increasing in power."

³³"They see their children established around them. Their homes are safe and free from fear. The rod of God is not upon them. ³⁴Their little ones dance about and sing to the music of the tambourine, and harp, and flute. ³⁵Their bulls fail not to breed, their cows calve and do not miscarry. They spend their years in prosperity and then go down to Sheol in peace."

The wicked say to God, leave us alone

³⁶"Yet on earth they say to God, 'Leave us alone. We have no desire to know your ways. Who is the Almighty that we should serve him? What would we gain by praying to him?'"

³⁷"How rarely is the lamp of the wicked snuffed out? How rarely does calamity come upon them?'"

³⁸"It is said, 'God stores up a man's punishment for his sons.' But why does God not repay the man himself? ³⁹Let his own eyes see the wrath of the Almighty. What does he care about those he leaves behind when his allotted span of months comes to an end?'"

Worms devour both the rich and poor

⁴⁰"One man dies in full vigour, secure and at ease, his body well nourished, his bones rich with marrow. Another man dies in poverty, having never enjoyed anything good. ⁴¹Side by side their bodies lie in the dust and worms devour them both."

Evil men are honoured even in death

⁴²"I know you are thinking of arguments to prove me wrong. You will say, 'Show us a house in which a wicked man once lived?' ⁴³Have you not questioned those who travel widely? Have you not listened to their accounts of how evil men are spared from calamity?"

⁴⁴"Who dares denounce a wicked man's conduct to his face? Who repays him for what he has done? ⁴⁵Rather he is carried to the grave and a watch kept over his tomb. Other wicked men follow after and a countless throng have gone before."

⁴⁶"So how can you console me with your nonsense? Your answers are nothing but falsehood."

5

**Eliphaz: What would God gain by
punishing Job if he was blameless**

¹Eliphaz spoke, "Can a man benefit God? Even a wise man? What pleasure would it give the Almighty if you were righteous, and what would he gain by rebuking you? ²Surely it is not for your righteousness that he is punishing you? Must it not then be for your great wickedness?"

³"Must not your sins be endless? Did you demand security from your fellow men for no reason, depriving them of their clothing? Have you withheld water from the weary, or food from the hungry?"

⁴"Though you were a rich man, owning land, did you send widows away empty-handed? This must be why sudden peril has come upon you."

⁵"Will you walk the godless path that men of old walked when they were carried off by the flood. They who said to God, 'Leave us alone. What can the Almighty do for us?' Yet it was he who filled their houses with good things."

⁶"Therefore submit to God and be at peace with him. Then prosperity will return to you. Accept his words in your heart."

⁷"If you return to the Almighty you will be restored. If you remove wickedness far from your house, when you pray to him he will hear you."

Job: If only I could state my case to God

⁸Job replied, "God's hand is heavy on me, in spite of my groaning. If only I knew where to find him, I would state my case before him and hear what he had to say."

⁹"Would he oppose me with great power? No! To God an upright man could present his case and be delivered forever."

¹⁰"But if I go to the east he is not there. If I go

JOB 5

to the west I find him not. Nor do I find him to the north or to the south.”

11“*But he knows where I am, and when he has tested me I will come forth as refined gold. For my feet have followed his steps. I have kept his commandments and treasured them, more than my daily bread.*”

12“*But who can oppose him? He does whatever he pleases. He is carrying out his decree against me. 13When I think of all this I fear him, yet I am not silenced by my fear.*”

14“*Why does the Almighty not reveal the time of judgement? Why do we look in vain for that day?*”

Job: God does not punish all the wicked on earth

15“*Men move boundary stones. They pasture stolen flocks. They drive away the orphan’s donkey and take the widow’s ox in pledge. 16They cause the poor to hide and to forage in the fields and glean in the vineyards for food for their children. 17And spend the nights cold and lightly clad, drenched by rain as they crouch amid the rocks for shelter. Their children are seized for debt.*”

18“*The groans of the dying and wounded rise from the city, crying out for help, but God charges no one with wrongdoing.*”

19“*After dark the murderer arises to kill the poor. The adulterer goes forth thinking, ‘Now no eye will see me.’ Thieves break into houses.*”

20“*But you claim, ‘God drags away the wicked by his power. They have no assurance of life. They are cut off like heads of grain.’ But this is not so. Who can prove me wrong?*”

Job will not deny his integrity

21“*As surely as God lives, who has denied me a hearing, and as long as I have life within me, my lips shall not speak wickedness, nor utter deceit.*”

22“*I will not deny my integrity. I shall maintain my righteousness. My conscience will not reproach me as long as I live. I will never admit you are right. 23For what hope has the evil man when God takes away his life?*”

24“*To revere the Lord brings wisdom and to shun evil brings understanding.*”

Job longs for the happy days of the past

25“*How I long for the days when God watched over me, when his friendship blessed my home and my children were around me. When my fields gave abundant cream and my ground poured forth streams of olive oil.*”

26“*When I went to the gate of the city to take my seat in the square, the young men would withdraw and the elders would rise to their feet. 27The chief men would refrain from speaking and all would listen expectantly for my counsel.*”

28“*After I had spoken they would speak no more, for my words fell gently on their ears. They drank them in like the spring rain. 29When I smiled at them they scarcely believed it, for the light of my face was precious to them.*”

Job: I helped the poor and widows

30“*I made decisions for them and sat as their chief, like a king among his troops. I was like one who comforts mourners.*”

31“*Whoever heard me spoke well of me, for I rescued the poor who cried for help, and the fatherless who had none to assist them. 32The dying man blessed me and I made the widow’s heart to sing again.*”

33“*I wore righteousness and justice as my clothing. I was as eyes to the blind and feet to the lame. I was a father to the needy and I took up the case of the stranger.*”

34“*I thought, ‘I will die in my own house and my days will be as numerous as the grains of sand.’*”

Job now mocked by young men

35“*But now men younger than I whose fathers I would have disdained to put with my sheep dogs, mock me in song. They spit in my face.*”

36“*Now that God has unstrung my bow and afflicted me, they throw off all restraint in my presence.*”

Job’s pain and suffering

37“*My life ebbs away and days of suffering grip me. Night racks my bones and my gnawing pains never cease.*”

38“*I cry out to you O God but you refuse to answer. Instead you turn on me ruthlessly. You toss me about in the storm. 39Surely no one lays a hand on a broken man when he cries for help in his distress.*”

40“*Have I not wept for the troubled? Has not my soul grieved for the poor? Yet when I hoped for good, evil came. When I looked for light there came darkness.*”

41“*The churning inside me never ceases. Days of suffering confront me. I go about darkened, but not by the sun. My skin grows black and peels and my body burns with fever.*”^{F*}

Job’s vow of chastity

42“*I made a vow never to look lustfully at a woman. For what is a man’s portion from God above? Is it not ruin for those who sin?*”

43“*Let God weigh me in honest scales. He will know that I am blameless.*”

44“*If my heart has been enticed by a woman, or I have lurked at my neighbour’s door, then may my wife grind another man’s grain. May other men lie with her, for that would be a sin to be judged. I would have uprooted my harvest.*”

Job’s just treatment of his servants and tenants

45“*I have not denied justice to my servants, for he who made me in the womb made them also.*”

46“*If my land has cried out against me because I have consumed its yield without paying wages or broken the spirit of its tenants, then let briars and weeds come up instead of wheat and barley.*”

^{F*}41 Job’s affliction has some of the symptoms of a type of leprosy known as elephantiasis but there appears to be no agreement among the medical profession as to its exact nature.

Job's generosity to the poor

47¹"I have not ignored the needs of the poor, nor the widows. Nor have I kept my bread to myself and failed to share it with the fatherless. From my youth I have reared orphans as would a father."

48¹"I have not seen a man suffering for lack of clothing and his heart did not bless me for warming him with a fleece from my flocks."

49¹"No man of my household ever lacked his fill of Job's meat and no stranger has had to spend the night in the street, for my door was always open to the traveller."

50¹"I have not rejoiced at my enemy's misfortune, or sinned by invoking a curse against him."

Job: I did not trust in my wealth

51¹"I have not put my trust in gold saying, 'You are my security.' For had I rejoiced over my great wealth that would have been a sin to be judged. I would have been unfaithful to God on high."

52¹"O that I had someone to hear me. Let the Almighty answer me. Let my accuser put his charges in writing. I would give him an account of my every step. I would confront him with the boldness of a prince."

6

Elihu, a bystander, is angry with Job and his friends

1¹The three men stopped answering Job. But Elihu, a bystander was angry with Job for justifying himself rather than God. 2¹He was also angry with Job's three friends for they had found no way to prove Job wrong.

3¹Elihu had waited before speaking for the other men were older than him, but when he saw that the three men had nothing more to say he could no longer hold himself back.

4¹He said to them, "I am young in years and you are old, that is why I held back, not daring to tell you what I know, for I thought, 'Advanced years should teach wisdom.'"

5¹"But it is the spirit in a man, the spirit from the Almighty that gives him understanding. It is not only the elderly who are wise. Therefore hear me and I will tell you what I know."

6¹"I listened to your reasoning. I gave you my full attention, but not one of you has proved Job wrong. None of you have answered his arguments, so I too will have my say."

7¹"The spirit within compels me. My words are like bottled-up wine ready to burst. I must speak and find relief."

Elihu: God punishes a man only to turn him from wrong

8¹Now Job, hear my words. Answer me if you can. My words come from an upright heart and I am just like you, I too have been made from clay."

9¹"You have said, 'I am pure and without sin, yet God treats me as his enemy. And you

complain that he answers none of man's words."

10¹"But God does speak to man, he speaks in dreams, terrifying a man with warnings, to turn him from wrongdoing and to keep him from pride."

11¹"Or he may chasten a man on a bed of sickness so that he finds food repulsive and his flesh wastes away."

12¹"Yet if an angel is at his side to whisper what is right for him, he may pray to God and find favour with him and be restored to his righteous state. Then his flesh will be renewed as in the days of his youth."

13¹"God does all these things to a man, twice, even three times to turn back his soul from Sheol."

14¹"Hear my words you men of learning, for the ear tests words as the tongue tastes food. Let us learn wisdom together."

15¹"Job says, 'I am innocent but God denies me justice. His arrow inflicts an incurable wound. It profits a man nothing when he tries to please God.'"

Elihu: God's eyes are upon all men

16¹"Listen to me you men of understanding, far be it from God to do wrong. He brings upon a man what his conduct deserves. It is unthinkable that God would pervert justice."

17¹"He rules over the whole world. If he withdrew his Spirit all mankind would perish together and man would return again to clay."

18¹"Can he who hates justice govern? Is God not the one who says to kings 'You are unjust!' 19¹He does not favour the rich over the poor for they are all the work of his hands."

20¹"His eyes are upon all men. He sees their every step. There is no dark place where evildoers can hide. He punishes them where all can see."

Elihu accuses Job of rebellion against God

21¹"Job speaks without knowledge. His words lack insight. Job should be tried to the limit for speaking as a wicked man."

22¹"To his sins he adds rebellion against God, for he says, 'I will be vindicated by God.' Yet he also says, 'How am I better off here on earth by not sinning?'"

23¹"Gaze up to the heavens. If you sin, how does that affect God? If you are righteous what do you give him? Your wickedness or your righteousness affects only men like yourself."

Elihu: God slow to answer prayers of the proud

24¹"Proud men cry out to God when troubles come. But when all goes well none say, 'Thanks be to my God who gives us songs in the night, who teaches us more than the beasts of the earth, and makes us wiser than the birds of the air.'"

25¹"Therefore God is slow to answer when they cry out in trouble, because of their pride. He hears not their empty plea. 26¹How much

JOB 7

less then will he listen when you say that his anger never punishes and he takes no notice of wickedness?"

Elihu: God hears the prayer of a repentant man

27"Bear with me a little longer. I will show you that there is more to be said on God's behalf. My words are not false. One perfect in knowledge is with you."

28"God is mighty but he does not despise men. He destroys the wicked and exalts the righteous."

29"When men are held fast by cords of affliction he makes known to them what they have done wrong and commands them to repent of their sin. 30If they obey and serve him, they spend the rest of their days in prosperity and their years in contentment."

31"But if they listen not, for the godless harbour resentment, they shall perish and die without knowledge."

7

Jehovah suddenly appears to Job in the midst of a whirlwind

1Then suddenly, Jehovah appeared to the men in the midst of a whirlwind.

2He rebuked Job saying, "Who is this that darkens counsel by words without knowledge? Brace yourself like a man. I will question you and you shall answer me."

Jehovah questions Job on the creation

3"Where were you when I laid the foundation of the earth? Tell me if you have understanding. Surely you know."

4"Who stretched the measuring line across it? Who laid the cornerstone, while the morning stars sang together and all the sons of God^F* shouted for joy?"

5"Who set the boundaries of the sea when it burst forth from the womb. Who made thick darkness its garment and uttered, 'Thus far your proud waves may come, but no further?'"

Job questioned on the dawn, the oceans, Sheol and the vast expanse of the earth

6"Since your days began have you commanded the dawn to remove the earth's covering of darkness, and clothe the sky in red to drive away the wicked?"

7"Have you journeyed to the springs of the sea or walked in the recesses of the great deep?"

8"Have you seen the gates of Sheol?"

9"Have you comprehended the vast expanse of the earth? Declare it if you know all this."

Job questioned on light, darkness, snow, hail, frost, ice, lightning, winds, rain and dew

10"Where is the way to the source of light? Where does darkness reside? Surely you know for you have lived so many years."

11"Have you entered the store house of the snows, or seen where hail is made?"

12"From whose womb comes the ice? Who gives birth to the frost from the heavens?"

13"Where is the way to the place where lightning is dispersed, or where the wind is sent forth over the earth?"

14"Who sends torrents of rain to satisfy a thirsty desert and make it spring forth with grass? Who fathers the drops of dew?"

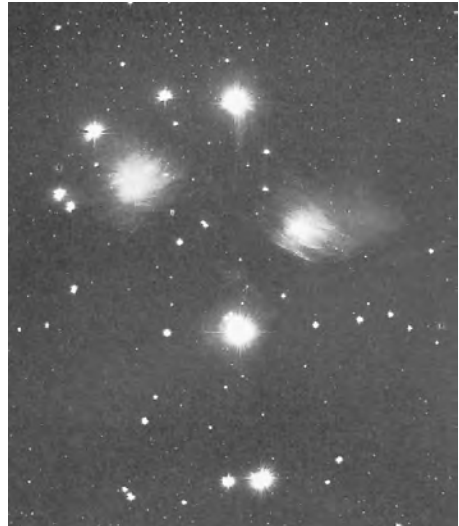
15"Do you know the laws of the heavens? Can you raise your voice to the clouds and call down rain?"

16"Can you send lightning bolts forth. Do they return to you and await your direction?"

Job questioned on the stars and mind of man

17"Can you bind the beautiful Pleiades, or loose the cords of Orion? Can you bring forth the constellations of stars in their seasons?"

18"Who endowed man's heart with wisdom? Who gave his mind understanding?"



The Pleiades star group. "Can you bind the beautiful Pleiades?" Job 7:17

Job is questioned on lions, birds, mountain goats, deer, wild oxen and horses

19"Can you hunt prey like the lioness, to satisfy the hunger of her cubs?"

20"Can you provide food for the ravens when their young cry out in hunger?"

21"Do you know how the mountain goat gives birth? Do you watch when the doe bears her fawn? Do you know the hour they will give birth?"

22"Will the wild ox consent to serve you? Can you harness his great strength? Can you hold him to plough a furrow? Will he stay by your feeding manger at night?"

23"Did you give the horse his strength or

*4 See note on Job 1:5.

clothe his neck with a flowing mane? Did you make him leap like the locust, striking terror with his proud snorting? ²⁴In frenzied excitement he eats up the ground. He cannot stand still when the war trumpet sounds."

²⁵"Does the hawk spread his wings and take flight by your wisdom? Does the eagle soar and build his nest on a rocky crag at your command? His eyes detecting food from afar."

²⁶"Will the one who contends with the Almighty correct him? Let him who accuses God answer now."

8

Job cannot answer the Lord

¹Job replied to the Lord, "How can I answer you? I put my hand over my mouth. I will say no more."

The Lord questions Job further

²The Lord spoke again to Job: "Brace yourself like a man. I shall question you further and you will answer me. ³You who would discredit my justice and condemn me, to justify yourself."

Job is challenged to speak in a voice of thunder, and to glorify himself and crush the wicked

⁴"Have you an arm like God? Can your voice thunder like his?"

⁵"Clothe yourself now with glory and splendour."

⁶Unleash the fury of your wrath and bring every proud man low. Crush the wicked where they stand and bury them in the ground together. ⁷Then I will admit to you that your own hand can save you."

The mighty hippopotamus – the first animal created by God

⁸"Behold the hippopotamus which I have made, along with you, and which feeds on grass like an ox. What strength he has in his loins. What power in the muscles of his belly. ⁹His tail is stiff as cedar wood. The sinews of his thighs are close-knit. His bones are tubes of bronze and his limbs like rods of iron."

¹⁰"He was the first among the creations of God. Under the lotus plants he lies, hidden among the reeds in the marsh and the poplars by the stream. ¹¹When the river rages he is unconcerned. He is secure, though the Jordan surge against his mouth. ¹²Can you capture him by hooks, or pierce his nose?"

Job challenged to capture a crocodile

¹³"Or can you pull in the crocodile with a fishhook, or tie his mouth with a rope? Will he be gentle with you?"

¹⁴"Will he agree to be your slave for life? Can you make a pet of him like a bird, and put him on a leash for your daughters?"

¹⁵"If you lay a hand on him you will remember the struggle and not do it again. Any hope of subduing him is vain."

¹⁶"The mere sight of him is overpowering. No one is fierce enough to rouse him."

¹⁷"Who can strip off his outer coat? Who would approach him with a bride? Who dares open his mouth, ringed about with fearsome teeth?"

¹⁸"His back has rows of shields that cling close together."

¹⁹"His sneezing sparkles the water and his eyes are like the red of dawn."

²⁰"Flashing sparks appear from his mouth and steam comes from his nostrils like from a boiling pot."

²¹"Strength resides in his neck and his heart is hard as rock. When he rears up the mighty are terrified. They retreat before his thrashing."

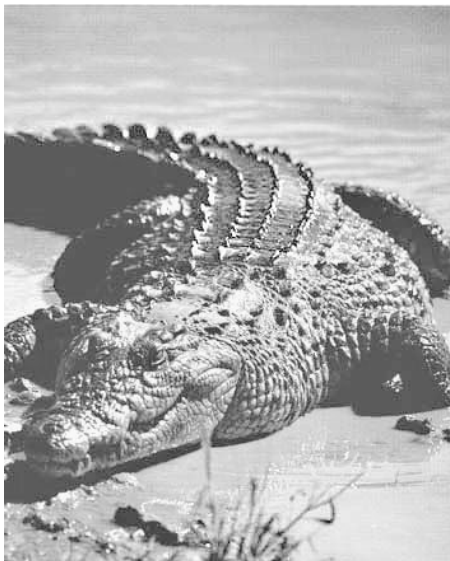
²²"The sword that reaches him has no effect. He does not flee from arrows. Slingstones are like chaff to him. A club but a piece of straw."

²³"His undersides are jagged potsherds, leaving a trail in the mud like a threshing sledge. ²⁴He makes the depths churn like a boiling cauldron and stirs up the water, leaving behind him a glistening wake."

²⁵"Nothing on earth is his equal. A creature without fear."

Who then is able to stand against Jehovah?

²⁶"Who then is able to stand against me? Who has a claim that I must pay? All that is under heaven belongs to me."



The Nile crocodile, "Nothing on earth his equal" (Job 8:23).

JOB 8

Job humbles himself before the Lord

²⁷Job replied to the Lord, "I know you can do all things. No plan of God can be thwarted. ²⁸Surely I spoke of things I did not understand, things too wonderful for me to know. My ears had heard of you, but now my eyes have beheld."

²⁹"Therefore I despise myself and repent in dust and ashes."

The Lord rebukes Job's friends

³⁰Jehovah then rebuked Eliphaz. He said to him, "**My anger is aroused with you and your two friends, for you have not spoken of me that which is right, as has my servant Job.**"

³¹"**So now, take seven bulls and seven rams and sacrifice a burnt offering for yourselves. ³²My servant Job shall pray for you and I will accept his prayer and not deal with you according to your folly.**"

³³So Eliphaz, Bildad and Zophar did as the Lord commanded and the Lord accepted Job's prayer.

Job's prosperity restored double

³⁴When Job had prayed for his friends, the Lord restored his prosperity. He gave him twice as much as before.

³⁵His brothers and sisters and all who had known him before, came and ate with him in his house. ³⁶They comforted and consoled him over all the trouble the Lord had brought upon him, and each one gave Job a piece of silver and a gold ring.

³⁷So the Lord blessed the latter part of Job's life more than the first. He had 14,000 sheep, 6000 camels, 1000 yoke of oxen and 1000 donkeys.

Job fathers ten more children and lives 140 years

³⁸Job also fathered seven more sons and three more daughters. Nowhere in the land were there found women as beautiful as Job's daughters.

³⁹After this Job lived to the age of 140 years and saw his sons, and their sons, to the fourth generation.

PSALMS

The book of Psalms has been loved by Jews and Christians alike for thousands of years. It is widely regarded as the most inspiring and uplifting book in the entire Bible, and for good reason, the language is passionate and rich in imagery and the subject matter ranges from the depths of life's sorrows to the heights of joy and exultation in praising God. In the Jewish Bible the book is called Praises (*Tehillim*).

The psalms have the ability like no other literature, to touch and comfort the human soul, especially when humbled by sorrow or tragedy.

Some of the psalms are prayers. Some contain revelations from the Lord. Mostly they are laments of sorrow or songs of praise, originally intended to be sung to musical accompaniment.

The majority of psalms were composed by the spiritually inspired and musically gifted David, who like other great men achieved his finest inspiration during the emotional highs and lows of life. Other psalms were later composed by Asaph (there may have been two psalmists by this name) and other devout men, mostly Levites.

For centuries the Psalms have inspired musical composers. The 23rd psalm (15th in this Condensed Bible) is now the well loved hymn '*The Lord is my Shepherd.*' The chorus of the song '*By the Rivers of Babylon*' is also taken from a psalm (81st in this Bible).

NOTE As with other books in this Condensed Bible, the Psalms have been arranged in chronological order as best can be determined by content and original headings. Duplicate and obscure psalms which are already well represented have been omitted to save space.

AUTHOR

Psalm 1 is by Moses, psalms 2 to 60 are attributed to David, 61 to 71 are anonymous, 72 to 80 are by Asaph, 81 to 99 are anonymous or attributed to the sons of Korah (a later term for the Levites). Psalm 84 is by Ethan who was also believed to have been a Levite.

Day after day, night after night, the heavens proclaim the glory of God. Their voice pours out to all the earth. There is no land where their praise is not heard.

Psalm 36:1.

CONTENTS

Psalm

Many of these headings are provided by the Psalms themselves

Swiftly flow our lives – a psalm of Moses	1	David's unshaken trust in the Lord	22
The all-knowingness of the Lord – a psalm of David	2	Psalm of David after his sin with Bathsheba	23
I will shun evil – a psalm of David	3	David's plea to Lord for forgiveness	24
David's integrity	4	David's prayer to be healed from his illness	25
Prayer of David when Saul sent men to kill him	5	David's ill health because of guilt	26
David's prayer when surrounded by Saul's army	6	Show me the number of my days O Lord	27
Psalm against Doeg when he betrayed David	7	The need to confess sin	28
Psalm of David following recovery from sickness	8	David's inability to refrain from speaking good	29
Save me from evil – a prayer of David	9	Trust in the Lord at all times	30
Psalm of David when he was pursued by Saul	10	Love of Lord like that of a father for his children	31
Psalm of David when he was made king	11	Psalm of David when he fled from Absalom	32
Protect the helpless against the wicked O Lord	12	Psalm of David when fleeing in the desert	33
Lord to arise and protect the needy	13	The honour bestowed on man by God	34
David the Lord's chosen king	14	Righteous suffer when the wicked rule	35
The Lord is my shepherd	15	The heavens proclaim the glory of God	36
Jehovah Almighty the King of glory	16	Keeping the commandments brings joy to the heart	37
David's faith in Eternal Life	17	Who may dwell in the presence of the Lord?	38
How pleasant when brothers live together in unity	18	Sing joyfully to the Lord and praise him	39
The miraculous creations of the Lord	19	If you desire to see good days trust in the Lord	40
Plea for help when David fought against Syria	20	No reverence of God in the heart of a wicked man	41
May the Lord answer all your prayers	21	The greatness of the Lord's love	42
		The ingratitude of David's enemies	43
		Prayer for relief from persecution	44

PSALMS 1

My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?	45
Blessed of the Lord is the land around Jerusalem ..	46
Jerusalem	47
Lord has refined us like silver	48
The promised land	49
David's desire of the Lord	50
Mount Zion	51
Lord hears the afflicted who cry out to him	52
David's psalm of the soon to be built Temple	53
Second coming of the Messiah (the Christ)	54
The righteous have no fear of bad news	55
Humility of David	56
A psalm of David in his later years	57
The righteous and the wicked	58
David's blessing upon his son Solomon	59
Royal wedding song	60
Shout for joy all you nations	61
Sheol awaits all men	62
Blessed is he who reveres the Lord	63
Song sung by Levites on pilgrimages to Temple ...	64
Clean hands and a pure heart	65
Psalm for those who minister in the Temple	66
Our eyes look up to our Lord	67
The great day of the Lord	68
Lord requires thanksgiving as an offering	69
Plea to the Lord from the Levites	70
Warning to the wicked	71
Psalm of Asaph who envied the wicked	72

The vine of Israel	73
Asaph's history of the unfaithfulness of Israel	74
Those who trust in the Lord cannot be shaken	75
Revelation from the Lord to Israel through Asaph ...	76
Revelation from the Lord through Asaph	77
Prayer of Asaph at destruction of the Temple	78
Second prayer at the destruction of Jerusalem	79
Asaph's time of distress	80
By the rivers of Babylon	81
Prayer of an afflicted man in exile	82
History of Lord's covenant with Abraham	83
Plea of Ethan for the restoring of David's throne ...	84
Let those whom the Lord rescues give thanks	85
Returned Babylonian exiles filled with songs of joy	86
Let us bow in worship and humble our hearts	87
Blessed is he who delights in Law of the Lord	88
Serve the Lord with gladness and joyful songs	89
They who take refuge in the Lord are protected	90
The Lord forgives sins	91
I will trust only in the Lord not man	92
Take refuge in the Lord and live	93
Other nation's gods are idols made by men	94
Stone the builders rejected	95
This is the day that the Lord has made	96
Praise the Lord	97
Praise God with music	98
Burst into jubilant song	99

Bold The Lord speaking.

Bold italics A psalmist speaking under inspiration.

1

Swiftly flow our lives – a psalm of Moses

- ¹Before the mountains were O Lord, before you brought forth the earth, from everlasting to everlasting you were God.
²A thousand years in your sight is but one day.
³Swiftly you bear our lives away saying, **“Return to dust O sons of men.”** Like the new grass of the morning that springs up and by evening is withered.
⁴The length of our days is but seventy years or eighty with strength,^{F*} and they are mostly toil and trouble.
⁵Teach us to know the shortness of our days O Lord, that we may gain a heart of wisdom. ⁶Have compassion on your servants and satisfy us with your love, that we may sing for joy and be glad all our days.

2

The all-knowingness of the Lord – a psalm of David

- ¹O Lord you have searched me and you know me.
²You know when I sit and when I arise. You

know when I go out and when I lay down to sleep. You know all my ways. ³Before a word is on my tongue you know it. O Lord you know my every thought.

- ⁴Such knowledge is too wonderful for me. ⁵Where can I go from your Spirit? If I rise to the heavens you are there. If I descend to Sheol^{F*} you are there. If I sail on the wings of dawn to a distant shore, your hand will guide me.
⁶I praise you Lord, for I am wonderfully made. You did form my inward parts and knit me together in my mother's womb. ⁷Nor was I hidden from you when I was made in secret, in Sheol for your eyes beheld my spirit. ⁸And all my days were written in your book before I was born.
⁹How vast are your thoughts O God. Were I to count them they would outnumber the grains of sand.
¹⁰Search me O Lord. Know my heart. Test me and see if there is anything offensive in me. Lead me in the way of eternity .

3

I will shun evil - a psalm of David

- ¹To you O Lord I sing praise. I sing of your love and justice.

*4 There are several instances in the Bible since the days of Moses of humans living past 80 but these are exceptions such as we have today. The death age of a mature man has not varied much from the 70 year average throughout the past 5000 years. Life expectancy at birth tables are heavily influenced by infant and child death rates. Under the law of Moses the redeeming price for a male reduced after 60 years of age (Leviticus 8:8).

*5 Sheol is the Hebrew name for the spirit world where the dead reside.

- ²I will be careful to lead a blameless life. I shall set before my eyes no vile thing. I will shun evil.
- ³The deeds of faithless men shall be far from me. Whoever slanders his neighbour I will silence. He who has a proud heart I will not tolerate.
- ⁴I shall search out the faithful in the land to dwell among them. He who practices deceit or speaks falsehood will not stand in my presence.

4

David's integrity

- ¹Vindicate me O Lord, for I am living a blameless life. I trust in you without wavering. Examine my heart for I walk continually in your truth.
- ²I refuse to sit with wicked and deceitful men. I wash my hands in innocence and go before your altar with songs of thanksgiving.
- ³I love the Tabernacle where your glory dwells. O Lord I give praise unto you.

5

A prayer of David when Saul sent men to kill him

- ¹O Lord, protect me from those who have risen up against me. Save me from blood-thirsty men.
- ²See how they lie in wait for me. They return at evening, snarling like dogs and prowling about. I have done no wrong yet they are ready to kill me.
- ³Arise and help me O God, for you are my fortress, and a loving God who will go before me and cause me to triumph over those who slander me.
- ⁴But do not slay them yet O Lord, lest my people forget. First scatter them and bring them low for the curses and lies they utter. Then consume them until they are no more.
- ⁵Then shall it be known to the ends of the earth that God rules over Israel.

6

David's prayer when he was surrounded by Saul's army

- ¹Hear my prayer O Lord, for it arises not from deceitful lips. Though you probe my heart you will find no wrong, for I have resolved that my lips will not sin. And I have kept myself from the ways of the wicked. My steps have stayed in your path.
- ²I call on you O God for you will answer me. Show me your great love. Keep me as the apple of your eye.
- ³Hide me from the violent men who have surrounded me, for they have tracked me down to throw me to the ground. They are

like a lion hungry for its prey, and their mouths speak with arrogance.

- ⁴O Lord save me from such men. From men who belong to this world and whose reward is in this life.
- ⁵But as for me, when I am resurrected in righteousness I will see your face and have joy in your presence.

7

A psalm against Doeg when he betrayed David to Saul

- ¹Why do you boast, you man mighty in evil? You who are a disgrace in the eyes of God. Your tongue is like a sharpened razor, it plots destruction. You love falsehood rather than good.
- ²Surely God will bring you down to everlasting ruin. He will uproot you from the land of the living.
- ³Then will the righteous say, "Here is a man who did not make God his stronghold but trusted in his wealth. He grew strong by destroying others."
- ⁴But I am like an olive tree, flourishing in the house of God. I trust in his unfailing love and shall praise him forever.

8

A psalm of David following his recovery from sickness

- ¹I exalt you O Lord, for you lifted me out of the depths and did not allow my enemies to gloat over me.
- ²O Lord my God, I called for your help and you healed me. You spared me from going down to Sheol.
- ³Sing you saints of the Lord. Praise his holy name. For his anger lasts but a moment yet his favour lasts forever.
- ⁴When I felt secure I said, "I will never be shaken." Then you hid your face from me and I was dismayed. So I cried out for mercy for what gain was there in my destruction.
- ⁵Then O Lord you turned my wailing to gladness. You removed my sackcloth and clothed me with joy, so that my heart could sing to you again and not be silent. O Lord, I give thanks unto you forever.

9

Save me from evil – a prayer of David

- ¹O Lord I call unto you. Come to me quickly. Set a guard over my mouth. Let my heart not be drawn to evil.
- ²Let a righteous man rebuke me for it is kindness. I will not refuse it.
- ³Yet my prayer is ever against the wicked. Keep me from the snares they have laid for me. Let them fall into their own nets while I pass by in safety.

10

A psalm of David when he was pursued by Saul

- ¹O Lord my God, save and deliver me from all who pursue me, or they will tear me like a lion.
- ²Yet O Lord, if there is guilt on my hands, if I have done evil to one at peace with me, then let my enemy overtake me and trample my life to the ground.
- ³Arise O Lord in your anger. Bring to an end the violence of the wicked, and keep safe the righteous.

11

A psalm David sang when the Lord delivered him from Saul and made him king

- ¹I love you O Jehovah my strength. You are my rock, my fortress, and my deliverer. In you I take refuge.
- ²The cords of death entangled me. Destruction overwhelmed me. In my distress I cried out to my God for help, and he heard me.
- ³The earth trembled and shook for he was angry. He parted the heavens and descended, a dark cloud his covering. He mounted the cherubim^{F*} and flew, soaring on the wings of the wind.
- ⁴He thundered from heaven and cast hailstones and great bolts of lightning and rescued me from my enemy who was too strong for me.
- ⁵The Lord dealt with me according to my righteousness, for I have kept his ways and not turned from his commandments.
- ⁶O Lord, you save the humble and bring low the proud. For who is the Rock but our God. It is you who arms me with strength and makes my way perfect. ⁷You make my feet agile, like those of a deer and my arms strong to bend a bow of bronze.
- ⁸I pursued my enemies and overtook them. I turned not back until they were all destroyed. They cried for help but there was no one to save them. You did not answer them.
- ⁹You have made me the head of nations. People I did not know are subject to me. As soon as I speak they obey. Foreigners cringe before me. They come trembling from their strongholds.
- ¹⁰The Lord lives! Praise be to my Rock! Exalted be my Saviour! He gives his anointed king great victories. He shows unailing kindness to his anointed, to David and his descendants forever.

12

Protect the helpless against the wicked O Lord

- ¹O Lord, why do you stand far off in our time of trouble?

- ²In arrogance the wicked man hunts down the weak. He boasts of the greed in his heart and reviles your holy name.
- ³In his proud thoughts there is no room for God. He prospers in his ways and sneers at his enemies. He says to himself, "Nothing will harm me. I will glut myself and never be called to judgement."
- ⁴His tongue utters curses, lies, and threats. He lies in wait near villages, watching from his hiding place to murder the innocent. He says to himself, "God is not concerned. He does not see."
- ⁵Arise O Lord! Forget not the helpless. Why should a wicked man revile you and say to himself, "He will not call me to judgement." For you O God are the helper of the fatherless.
- ⁶Hear their cry O Lord. Call the wicked man to account that he may terrify no more.

13

The Lord to arise and protect the needy

- ¹Help us O Lord, for the godly are vanishing from among men. Every man speaks lies to his neighbour.
- ²The wicked strut about freely and that which is vile is honoured among men. Cut off all flattering lips and boastful tongues O Lord. Protect us from such men.
- ³Jehovah says, "**Because of the oppression of the weak and the groaning of the needy, I will now arise and protect them from their oppressors.**"

14

David the Lord's chosen king

- ¹Why do the nations conspire and plot in vain? Kings of the earth rise up against the Lord and against his anointed king.
- ²They say, "Let us break our bondage and throw off our chains." But he who is enthroned in heaven laughs at their threats.
- ³Then he rebukes them in his anger saying, "**I have installed my king on my holy mountain Zion.**"^{F*}
- ⁴I will proclaim a decree of Jehovah. He said to me, "**You are my son. Today I have become your Father. Ask of me and I will make all nations your inheritance, and you will break them with a rod of iron.**"
- ⁵Therefore you kings be warned. Serve Jehovah with reverence and trembling. Honour his son the king, lest he be angry and you be destroyed. ⁶But blessed are all who take refuge in him.

*3 Cherubim are winged, heavenly creatures. For a fuller description see Ezekiel 1:4-15.

*3 Zion is the hill in Jerusalem where the temple and king's palace were located.

15

The Lord is my shepherd

- ¹The Lord is my shepherd I shall not want. I lie down in green pastures, by still waters he leads me.
- ²He restores my soul, in paths of righteousness he leads me.
- ³Though I walk the dark valley, no evil I fear. For you are with me and your rod^{F*} and staff do comfort me.
- ⁴You spread my table in the midst of my enemies, you anoint my head and my cup overflows.
- ⁵Goodness and mercy shall follow me all my days, then shall I dwell forever in the house of the Lord.



“By still waters he leads me.” Psalm 15 (23 in traditional Bibles) “The Lord is my Shepherd” is the best loved of all the Psalms.

16

Jehovah Almighty the King of glory

- ¹Lift up your heads O gates, be lifted up you ancient doors that the King may enter in.
- ²Who is he this King, strong and majestic? He is Jehovah Almighty the King of glory.

17

David’s faith in Eternal Life

- ¹Keep me safe O Lord, for in you is my refuge, in you is all my hope.
- ²As for the saints^{F*} in the land, they are my delight, but of men who run after other gods I will not have their name on my lips. Their sorrows will increase.
- ³O Lord, you have made my lot secure. The boundary lines have fallen for me in pleasant places. Surely I have a delightful inheritance.
- ⁴Therefore I praise you O Lord, you who enlighten my understanding at night. My heart is glad and my tongue rejoices. I will not be shaken.
- ⁵And my body shall rest secure, for you will

*3 A shepherd’s protective stick or club.

*2 The saints in Biblical times were the faithful believers.

- not leave my soul in Sheol, you will not let your faithful one be destroyed.
- ⁶You have shown me the pathway to Eternal Life and will fill me with eternal joy at your right hand.

18

How pleasant when brothers live together in unity

- ¹How good and pleasant when brothers live together in harmony.
- ²Like precious oil poured on the head until it runs down on the beard, even the beard of Aaron, even to the hem of his robe.
- ³Like the dew of Mount Hermon descending upon Mount Zion.



Mount Hermon (Psalm 18:3).

19

The miraculous creations of the Lord

- ¹O Lord my God, you who radiate great glory and are clothed with light as a garment.
- ²You stretched out the heavens like the canopy of a tent and set the earth upon its foundations.
- ³You covered it with great waters, high as the mountains, but at your command the waters fled to the lowlands, to the places assigned for them. ⁴Never again will they cover the whole earth.
- ⁵You caused springs to well up in the valleys and streams to flow in the mountains, to give water to the beasts of the field and the birds of the air who nest and sing among the branches.
- ⁶You sent rain upon the hills to bring forth grass for the cattle and plants for man to cultivate for food, wine to gladden his heart. ⁷Oil to make his face shine and bread to sustain his strength.
- ⁸The moon marks off the seasons and the sun goes down to bring darkness. Night falls and the beasts of the forest prowl, lions roar for their prey. ⁹The sun arises and they steal away to sleep in their dens. Then man goes out to his work to labour until evening.

PSALMS 20

- ¹⁰How great are your works O Lord. In wisdom you made them all. The earth is full of your creatures and the vast and spacious sea teems with fish beyond number, both large and small.
- ¹¹All creation look to you for their food at the proper time, and when you give it to them they are satisfied.
- ¹²When you take away their spirit they die and return to the dust. But when you send forth your spirit, life is again created and you renew the face of the earth.
- ¹³May the glory of the Lord endure forever. I will sing to the Lord all my days. I shall sing praise as long as I live. Praise the Lord O my soul. Praise the Lord.

20

A plea for help when David fought against Syria

- ¹You have been angry with us O God. You have shaken the land and torn it open. You have shown your people desperate times. You have given us wine that makes us stagger.
- ²Save us and help us with your right hand that the people you love may be delivered. For you have said from your Tabernacle, "**Gilead is mine, Manasseh is mine. Ephraim is my helmet and Judah my sceptre.**"
- ³O God why have you rejected us and no longer go out with our armies? Give us help against our enemies, for the aid of man is worthless.
- ⁴With our God we will gain victory. He will trample down our enemies.

21

May the Lord answer all your prayers

- ¹May the Lord answer your prayer of distress. May he send you help from his holy place.
- ²May he remember all your sacrifices and accept your offerings.
- ³May he give you the desire of your heart and make all your plans succeed.

22

David's unshaken trust in the Lord

- ¹Now we know that the Lord saves his anointed king. He answers him from his holy heaven with the power of his right hand.
- ²Some men trust in chariots and some in horses, but we trust in the name of Jehovah our God.
- ³O Lord, the king rejoices in your strength. You have granted him the desire of his heart. He asked for life and you gave it to him, for ever and ever.
- ⁴You have bestowed upon him splendour and majesty. Surely you have granted him

eternal blessings. ⁵For the king trusts in you and will not be shaken.

23

A psalm of David after his sin against Uriah and his wife Bathsheba

- ¹Have mercy on me O God, according to your great compassion. Blot out my transgression. Wash away my guilt and cleanse me from my sin.
- ²My wrong is ever before me. I have sinned and done what is evil in your sight. You are justified when you judge me.
- ³Surely I was sinful at birth, from the time my mother conceived me. I know you desire a pure heart, for you teach me truth.
- ⁴Cleanse me now and I will be clean. Wash me and I will be whiter than snow.
- ⁵Create in me a pure heart O God. Renew a faithful spirit in me.
- ⁶Cast me not from your presence or take your Holy Spirit from me. Restore to me the joy of my salvation and grant in me a steadfast spirit to sustain me.
- ⁷Then will I teach transgressors your ways, and sinners shall turn back to you.
- ⁸Save me from blood guilt O Lord, and my tongue will sing your praises. Open my lips and my mouth will honour you.
- ⁹You do not want sacrifice or I would bring it. You would not take pleasure in my burnt offering.
- ¹⁰The sacrifice you want from me is a broken heart and a contrite spirit.

24

David's plea to the Lord for forgiveness

- ¹In you I trust O my God, therefore I will not be put to shame.
- ²No one whose hope is in you is ever put to shame O Lord, only they who transgress your laws.
- ³Show me your ways O Jehovah, guide me in your truth and teach me, for you are my God and my hope is in you.
- ⁴Remember not the sins of my youth and my rebellious ways.
- ⁵Good and upright is Jehovah, therefore he instructs sinners in his ways. He guides the humble in what is right.
- ⁶Therefore forgive my sin O Lord, though it is great. Turn to me and be gracious, for I am lonely and afflicted.
- ⁷The ways of the Lord are faithful for those who obey his laws. They will spend their days in prosperity and their children will inherit the land.

25

David's prayer to be healed from his illness

- ¹Blessed is he who has regard for the weak, the Lord will deliver him in times of

trouble. He will bless him on his sickbed and restore him to health.

²Therefore I prayed, "O Lord have mercy on me and heal me, for I have sinned against you."

³My enemies say of me, "When will he die and his name perish?" They whisper together and imagine the worst for me saying, "A vile disease has afflicted him. He will never arise from the place where he lies."

⁴Even my friend in whom I trusted has lifted his heel against me.

⁵O Lord have mercy on me. Raise me up that I may avenge my enemies. Then will I know that you are pleased with me.

26

David's ill health because of guilt

¹O Lord, rebuke me not in your anger. Be merciful for I am weak. My bones are in agony. My soul is in anguish. How long O Lord, how long?

²Because of your wrath there is no health in my body. My bones have no soundness because of my sin. My guilt has overwhelmed me like a burden too heavy to bear.

³My wounds fester and are loathsome because of my sins. I am bowed down and brought low.

⁴All day long I go about mourning. My back is filled with searing pain. There is no health in my body.

⁵All night long I flood my bed with tears. My eyes grow weak with sorrow.

⁶I am feeble and utterly crushed. I groan in anguish of spirit. My heart pounds, my strength fails me. The light has gone from my eyes.

⁷My friends and companions avoid me. Those who seek my life set their traps and plot deception.

⁸Turn O Lord and deliver me. Save me through your unfailing love.

⁹Away from me all you who do evil, for the Lord has heard my weeping. He has heard my cry for mercy. He has accepted my prayer.

¹⁰Now all my enemies shall be ashamed. They will turn back in sudden disgrace.

27

Show me the number of my days O Lord

¹Show me O Lord my life's end. Show me the number of my days. Let me know how fleeting is my life.

²You have made my days a mere handbreadth. My span of years is nothing before you.

³Every man's life is but a breath. He is a mere shadow as he goes to and fro, bustling

about, but all in vain. He heaps up wealth not knowing who will inherit it.

28

The need to confess sin

¹Blessed is he whose wrongs are forgiven. Blessed is he whose sins the Lord does not hold against him and in whose spirit there is no deceit.

²When I hid my sin my bones wasted away and I groaned all day long. Day and night your hand was heavy upon me. My strength was sapped, as in the heat of summer.

³Then I confessed my sin to you. I no longer hid my transgression, and you forgave my guilt.

⁴Many are the pangs of the wicked, but the Lord's unfailing love surrounds the man who trusts in him.

29

David's inability to refrain from speaking good

¹I said to myself, "To keep my tongue from evil I will put a muzzle on my mouth when the wicked are in my presence."

²But when I was silent, not saying anything good, my anguish increased. My heart grew hot within me, so I no longer remained silent.

30

Trust in the Lord at all times

¹My soul finds rest only in God. In him is my salvation. ²He is my rock, my refuge, my fortress. I shall not be moved.

³My hope comes from him. My honour comes from him. I will not be shaken.

⁴Trust in the Lord at all times O people. Pour out your hearts to him, for he is our refuge.

⁵Both the low and the high born are but a breath. When weighed in the balance they are nothing.

⁶O Lord you are strong and you are loving. Surely you will reward each person according to what they have done.

31

The love of the Lord like that of a father for his children

¹Praise the Lord O my soul. Praise the Lord my innermost being.

²Praise him who forgives your sins and restores your health.

³Praise him who preserves your life and crowns you with love and compassion.

⁴Praise him who satisfies your desires with good things, that your youth be renewed like the eagles.

⁵For the Lord is compassionate and gracious, slow to anger and abounding in love. He

PSALMS 32

will not rebuke forever. He does not punish us as our sins deserve.

⁶As high as the heavens is his great love for those who honour him.

⁷As a father's love for his children is the Lord's love for those who revere him.

⁸As for man, his days are like grass. He flourishes briefly then is gone.

⁹But from everlasting to everlasting is the Lord's love for those who revere him and for their children's children who obey his laws.

¹⁰Praise the Lord you angels who do his bidding. Praise the Lord all his works everywhere.

32

A psalm of David when he fled from his son Absalom

¹O Lord, how many are my foes. How many have risen up against me. They are saying, "God will not deliver him."

²But you are a shield around me O Lord. You glorify me and lift up my head. I cry out aloud, and you answer me from your holy hill.

³Therefore I will fear not the tens of thousands risen up against me. Arise and deliver me O my God. Strike all my enemies.

33

A psalm of David when he was fleeing in the desert

¹O my God I earnestly seek you. My soul thirsts for you. My body longs for you in this dry and weary land.

²I have seen you in the sanctuary of the Tabernacle. I have beheld your power and glory.

³Because your love is better than life, my lips will glorify you. I shall praise you as long as I live.

⁴In your name I shall lift up my hands. In you my soul will be satisfied.

⁵On my bed through all the watches of the night I think of you. My soul clings to you.

⁶They who seek the life of the king will be destroyed, but I will rejoice in my God.

34

The honour bestowed on man by God

¹O Jehovah our Lord, how majestic is your name in the earth. Your glory is above all the heavens. ²The mouths of infants and little children praise you.

³When I behold the heavens, the work of your hands, the moon and the stars, what is man that you are mindful of him, that you care for him? ⁴You have made him little lower than God and crowned him with glory and honour, subjecting all things under his feet.

⁵You have given him dominion over the works of your hands, the flocks, herds, and beasts of the field, the birds of the air and the fish of the sea.

35

The righteous suffer when the wicked rule

¹In the Lord I take refuge, why then say to me "Flee like a bird to the hills."

²When the foundations are being destroyed what can the righteous do? The wicked bend their bows and shoot at the upright from the shadows.

³But the Lord is in his sanctuary. His eyes examine all men. On the wicked he will rain fiery coals.

⁴Jehovah is righteous and loves justice. Therefore righteous men will see his face.

36

The heavens proclaim the glory of God

¹Day after day, night after night, the heavens proclaim the glory of God. Their voice pours out to all the earth. There is no land where their praise is not heard.

²The sun comes forth each morning, like a groom from his bridal chamber. He exults and runs his course like a champion. Nothing is hidden from his light.

37

Keeping the commandments of the Lord brings joy to the heart

¹The commandments of the Lord are perfect. They revive the soul and bring joy to the heart.

²They give light to the eyes and are more precious than pure gold.

³They are sweeter than honey from the comb. In keeping them there is great reward.

38

Who may dwell in the presence of the Lord?

¹Who may dwell in your presence O Lord?

He who does what is right.

²He who speaks truth from his heart.

He who does his neighbour no wrong.

³He who honours those who revere the Lord.

He who lends his money without usury.*

⁴He who does not accept a bribe.

He who keeps his word even when it hurts.

39

Sing joyfully to the Lord and praise him

¹Sing joyfully to the Lord you righteous, for it is fitting for the upright to praise him.

²Praise him with the harp. Make music upon the ten-stringed lyre. Play skilfully and shout for joy, for the Lord is faithful in all he does.

*3 Excessive interest.

- ³Let all the earth revere him. Blessed is the nation whose God is Jehovah.
- ⁴From on high he beholds all mankind. He who made the hearts of all sees everything they do.
- ⁵His eyes are upon those who revere him and whose hope is in his love. He delivers them from death and keeps them alive in famine.
- ⁶In him our hearts rejoice, for we trust on his holy name.
- ⁷May your everlasting love rest upon us O Lord.

40

**If you desire to see many good days
trust in the Lord**

- ¹I will praise the Lord all day long. My soul will honour him forever .
- ²Let the troubled hear and rejoice. Glorify the Lord with me, let us exalt his name together.
- ³For this poor man sought the Lord and he answered him. He saved him from all his troubles. He delivered him from all his fears.
- ⁴Those who look to the Lord are radiant. Their faces never blush with shame. The angel of the Lord encamps around them and delivers them.
- ⁵Taste and see that the Lord is good. Blessed is the man who takes refuge in him.
- ⁶Revere the Lord you his saints, for those who honour him lack for nothing. Lions may grow hungry and weak, but they who seek the Lord lack no good thing.
- ⁷Come my children and hear me. If you love life and desire to see many good days, keep your tongue from untruths, turn from evil and do good, seek peace and pursue it.
- ⁸For the eyes of the Lord are upon the righteous and his ears are attentive to their prayers. They cry out and the Lord hears them. He delivers them from their troubles.
- ⁹A righteous man may have many afflictions, but the Lord delivers him from them all.
- ¹⁰The Lord is close to him who is broken hearted and crushed in spirit. He protects all his bones, not one of them will be broken.
- ¹¹No one who takes refuge in the Lord will be condemned.

41

No reverence of God in the heart of a wicked man

- ¹There is no reverence of God in the heart of a wicked man. In his own eyes he flatters himself too much to see his sin.
- ²The words of his mouth are deceitful. He has ceased to be wise and no longer does good. On his bed he plans evil and plots a sinful course.

42

The greatness of the Lord's love

- ¹O Lord, your love reaches the skies. Like mighty mountains is your righteousness and like the great ocean is your justice.
- ²Both the high and low among men find refuge in your wings.
- ³They feast on the abundance of your house and drink from your river of delights. For you are the fountain of life and the source of light.
- ⁴Continue your love to those who know you, to the upright in heart.

43

The ingratitude of David's enemies

- ¹O Lord arise and come to my aid. Put to shame those who seek my life. May they be like chaff before the wind with the angel of the Lord driving them. May their paths be dark and slippery.



The ten-stringed lyre or Kinnor. Most of the Psalms were intended to be sung to musical accompaniment.

- ²They repay me evil for good and leave my heart forlorn. When they were ill I clothed myself in sackcloth, and humbled myself with fasting. ³I poured forth my prayers and went about mourning, as though weeping for my mother.
- ⁴But when I stumbled they gathered in glee. Now they slander me without ceasing.

PSALMS 44

⁵O Lord how long will you look on? Rescue my life from their ravages and I will praise you with thanksgiving amid throngs of people.

44

A prayer for relief from persecution

¹Save me O Lord, for waters have come up to my neck. I am sinking in the quicksand and my throat is parched from calling for help.

²Those who hate me without reason outnumber the hairs of my head. But you know my folly O God. My guilt is not hidden from you.

³I endure scorn for your sake. I am a stranger to my brothers.

⁴Zeal for your house consumes me, and the insults of those who insult you fall on me.

⁵When I weep and fast I must endure shame. People mock me and I am the song of drunkards.

⁶You know how I am scorned and disgraced. It has broken my heart and left me helpless.

⁷I looked for sympathy but there was none. They put gall^{F*} in my food and gave me vinegar for my thirst.

⁸But I pray to you O Lord. Answer me with your sure salvation. Rescue me, do not let me sink. Deliver me from those who hate me.

⁹May they be blotted out of the Book of Life^{F*} and not be listed with the righteous.

¹⁰O God protect me and I will praise your name in song and glorify you with thanksgiving. This will please you more than an ox, more than a bull with its horns and hooves.

¹¹The Lord hears the needy and will save Jerusalem and rebuild the cities of Judah. Those who love his name will dwell there and inherit it.

45

My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?

¹My God, my God, why have you forsaken me? I cry out day and night but you do not answer me.

²Our fathers cried out to you and were saved. They were not disappointed.

³But I am a worm, not a man. I am despised by the people.

⁴All who see me mock and shake their heads. They say, "He trusts in the Lord. Let the Lord rescue him."

⁵From my mother's womb you have been my God. Do not forsake me now when trouble is near.

⁶Many bulls surround me, like roaring lions ready to tear their prey.

⁷I am poured out like water and all my bones are racked. My heart has melted within me.

⁸My strength is dried up and my tongue cleaves to the roof of my mouth.

⁹Dogs have surrounded me, a company of evildoers. Like a lion they have torn my hands and feet. I can count all my bones.

¹⁰People stare and gloat over me. They divide my spoils among them and cast lots for my clothing.

¹¹O my Lord, be not far off, O my Strength, come quickly to help me. Deliver my life from the sword. Save me from the horns of the bulls. Rescue me from the mouths of the lions.

46

Blessed of the Lord is the land around Jerusalem

¹We praise you in Jerusalem O Lord, you who hear our prayers. For when we were overwhelmed by our sins you forgave us.

²Blessed are we whom you have chosen to live near your holy Tabernacle.

³You care for the land and water it. You enrich it abundantly and soften it with showers and bless our crops. Our carts overflow with abundance.

⁴The streams are filled with water. The grasslands of the desert overflow. The hills are clothed with gladness.

⁵The meadows are full of sheep and the valleys are mantled with grain. All shout and sing together for joy.

47

Jerusalem

¹I rejoiced with those who said to me, "Let us go up to the house of the Lord."

²Jerusalem is a city closely compacted together, where all Israel go to praise the name of Jehovah.

³There the throne of the house of David stands.

⁴Pray for the peace of Jerusalem.

48

The Lord has refined us like silver

¹All the earth, shout with joy to the Lord! Sing to the glory of his name! Make his praise glorious!

²O God, how awesome are your deeds. How great is your power. All the earth bows to you. They sing praise to your holy name.

³Come and see what God has done! How awesome are his works!

⁴O Lord you tested us, you refined us like silver. You brought us into captivity and laid burdens on our backs.

⁵You let men ride over our heads and we went through fire and water.

⁶But you turned the sea into dry land and we passed through on foot. You brought us to this place of abundance. Come, let us rejoice in him.

*7 Gall is a sour-tasting herbal extract.

*9 The Book of Life is spoken of throughout the Bible. See note on Revelation 2:36.

49

The promised land

- ¹Sing to God, sing praise to his name. Extol him who rides upon the clouds. His name is Jehovah.
- ²Rejoice before him. He is father to the fatherless, the defender of widows.
- ³He went before his people when they marched through the desert.
- ⁴The mountain shook and the heavens poured down rain when the God of Israel descended on Sinai.
- ⁵You gave abundant rain also O God to refresh this land of our inheritance, to provide for the poor.
- ⁶Great was the company of Israel who marched in your name. You commanded and kings and their armies fled before them.
- ⁷Israel divided the spoil. See the women who remained among the sheepfolds, clothed with silver like the feathers of doves with talons of shining gold.

50

David's desire of the Lord

- ¹The Lord is my light and my salvation, so whom shall I fear? He is my strength and my refuge.
- ²This is what I desire of the Lord; that I may dwell in his Tabernacle all the days of my life to gaze upon his beauty.
- ³There I will sacrifice with shouts of joy. There I will sing and make music to the Lord.
- ⁴Though my father and mother forsake me the Lord will never forsake me.
- ⁵I know that I will yet see the goodness of the Lord in the land of the living.

51

Mount Zion

- ¹O mountains of Bashan, rugged and majestic, gaze in envy at Zion. For is not Mount Zion from where Jehovah himself has chosen to reign?

52

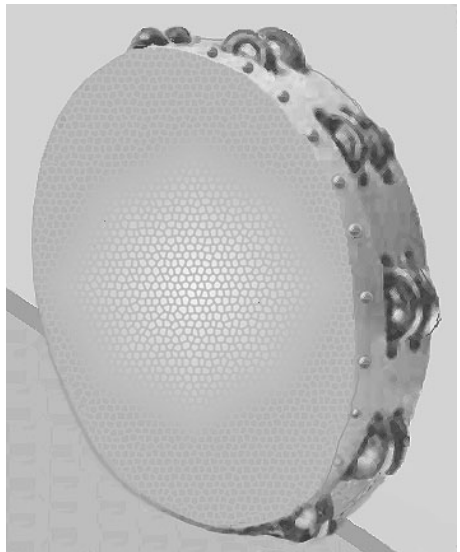
The Lord hears the afflicted who cry out to him

- ¹I give thanks to you O Lord with all my heart. I will tell of your wonders. I will be glad and rejoice in you and sing praise to your holy name O Most High.
- ²My enemies stumble, for you upheld my cause, judging righteously as you sat on your throne.
- ³For all who know your name trust in you, for you O Lord have never forsaken those who seek you.
- ⁴Sing praises to Jehovah enthroned in Zion. Proclaim among the nations what he has done for he does not ignore the cry of the afflicted.

53

David's psalm of the soon to be built Temple

- ¹Your procession to the Tabernacle has come into view O God. In front are the singers and behind them the musicians, then the maidens playing tambourines.
- ²See the little tribe of Benjamin leading them, next the great throng of Judah's princes. Then come the princes of Zebulun, and of Naphtali.
- ³O God, show us your strength as you have done before. When your Temple stands at Jerusalem kings will bring you gifts.
- ⁴Rebuke Egypt, the beast among the reeds, the herd of bulls among the calves of the nations. Humble her that she too may bring you gifts of silver.
- ⁵Sing to the Lord O kingdoms of the earth, sing praise to Jehovah, to him who rides the ancient skies, who thunders with a mighty voice.
- ⁶Proclaim the power of God whose majesty is over Israel.



Israelite tambourine (Psalms 53:1).

54

The coming of the Messiah (The Christ)

- ¹Jehovah said to my Lord, "Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet." F*
- ²"I will extend your mighty throne from Jerusalem and you will rule in the midst of your enemies."

*5 The words of Psalm 54 are those of God the Father, to the Messiah (his son Jesus Christ). Jesus quoted the first verse of this psalm and stated that these words pertained to him and were given to David by the Holy Spirit (Matt-Mark-Luke 27:22-25). The name/title Jehovah meaning 'Eternal' can apply to both the Father and the Son (see 1 Corinthians 4:13 and note, also John 5:29, 12:12, 15:22).

PSALMS 55

³“Your followers will be willing on your day of power, arrayed in holy splendour and descending with you from the direction of the rising sun, like dew from the heavens.”

⁴“I have sworn and will not change my mind. You are a priest forever after the order of Melchizedek.”^{F*}

⁵“God is at your side and he will crush kings on the day of his wrath.”

⁶“He will judge the nations, heaping up the dead and destroying the rulers of the whole earth.”

55

The righteous have no fear of bad news

¹Blessed are they who revere the Lord, who delight in keeping his commandments.

²Their descendants shall be mighty in the land and will possess wealth and riches. Their righteousness will endure forever.

³Even in darkness, light dawns for the gracious and the compassionate. Good comes to them who are generous and lend freely, who conduct their affairs with justice.

⁴For the righteous shall be remembered forever. They have no fear of bad news. Their hearts trust in the Lord.

⁵In the end they will look in triumph upon their foes and be lifted high in honour.

⁶But the wicked will grind their teeth and waste away, for the desires of the wicked come to nothing.

56

The humility of David

¹My heart is not proud O Lord. I do not concern myself with matters too wonderful for me.

²I have stilled and quieted my soul, like a little child with his mother.

57

A psalm of David in his later years

¹Deliver me O my God from the grasp of evil and cruel men.

²You have been my hope O Lord since my youth. From my mother's womb I have trusted in you. Every day my mouth has been filled with your praise.

³Cast me not away when I am old. Forsake me not when my strength is gone. For my enemies conspire together to take my life.

⁴They say, “God has forsaken him. Let us seize him now. No one will rescue him.”

⁵Be not far from me O God. May scorn and disgrace be heaped on those who would harm me.

⁶But as for me I shall always have hope, and praise you more and more.

⁷Forsake me not when I am old and grey. Let

me declare your power to the next generation.

⁸Though you have made me see many bitter troubles, you will restore my life again.

⁹From the depths of the earth you shall raise me up. You will increase my honour and comfort me once again.

¹⁰Then I will praise you with the harp O Holy One of Israel. Then shall I sing praise to you with the lyre.

¹¹My lips will shout for joy, for those who would harm me will have been put to shame and confusion.

58

The righteous and the wicked

¹Be not envious of evil men, for like grass they soon wither and die away.

²Trust in the Lord and do good and you will dwell in the land and enjoy safety.

³Take delight in the Lord and he will grant you the desires of your heart. Your righteousness shall shine as the noon day sun.

⁴Be still before the Lord. Wait patiently for him. Be not envious when men succeed in wickedness.

⁵Refrain from anger for it leads only to evil. Better the little that the righteous have than the wealth of the wicked.

⁶A little while and the wicked shall be no more, but the humble will inherit the earth. They shall enjoy peace and their inheritance will endure in the age to come.

⁷The wicked borrow and repay not, but the righteous are generous and lend freely. Therefore their children will be blessed.

⁸The mouth of a righteous man speaks wisdom and justice for the law of God is in his heart.

⁹I was young and now I am old, yet I have never seen the righteous forsaken or their children begging bread.

¹⁰So turn from evil and do good, then you will live in the land for all time.

¹¹For the Lord loves the just and will not forsake them, but the offspring of the wicked shall be cut off.

¹²I have seen a wicked and ruthless man flourishing like a green tree in fertile soil, but soon he passed away and was no more.

¹³Observe the upright. There is a future for the man of peace but all sinners will be destroyed.

59

David's blessing upon his son Solomon

¹Confer upon the royal son your righteousness O God. May he judge your people with justice.

²May he endure as long as the sun and the

*4 Melchizedek was a high priest to whom Abraham paid tithes.

moon.

- ³May he be like the rain that falls and waters the earth.
- ⁴May the righteous flourish and prosperity abound in his days.
- ⁵May he rule from sea to sea, and from the Euphrates to the ends of the earth.
- ⁶May the desert tribes bow low before him and his enemies lick the dust.
- ⁷May the kings of Tarshish and other distant shores bring tribute to him.
- ⁸May the kings of Sheba and Seba bring him gifts, and all kings bow down to him and serve him.
- ⁹May gold from Sheba be given him.
- ¹⁰May he deliver the weak and needy who cry out and the afflicted who have no one to help them.
- ¹¹May he live long and the people ever pray for him and bless him.
- ¹²May grain abound throughout the land.
- ¹³May his name be honoured forever and all nations be blessed through him.

60

The royal wedding song

- ¹You are the most excellent of men O king. Your lips have been anointed with grace, therefore God has blessed you for ever.
- ²Gird on your sword O mighty one. Clothe yourself with splendour and majesty.
- ³Ride forth victoriously on behalf of truth, humility and righteousness.
- ⁴Let your right hand do awesome deeds and nations fall beneath your feet.
- ⁵Your throne is a throne of God and shall endure forever.
- ⁶The royal sceptre of your kingdom will be justice, for you love righteousness and hate wickedness.
- ⁷Therefore God has set you above your fellow men and anointed you with oil of gladness.
- ⁸Your robes are fragrant with myrrh, aloes and cassia.
- ⁹The music of strings will make you glad in your palace adorned with ivory.
- ¹⁰Daughters of kings are among your maids of honour and at your right hand is the royal bride, her gown interwoven with gold of Ophir.
- ¹¹Hear O bride, the king is enthralled by your beauty. Honour him for he is your lord.
- ¹²Tyre shall bring you gifts. Men of wealth will seek your favour.
- ¹²Your sons will become princes throughout the land.

61

Shout for joy all you nations

- ¹Clap your hands all you nations! Shout to the Lord with cries of joy! How awesome is Jehovah the Most High God, the great

King over all the earth.

- ²He subdued nations under our feet and chose our inheritance for us, the pride of Israel whom he loved.
- ³Sing praises to the Lord! Sing a psalm of praise to our King! Sing praises! For God is the King of all the earth.

62

Sheol awaits all men

- ¹Hear this, all you who live in the world, both rich and poor, I will speak to you words of wisdom:
- ²Why should you fear when evil days arrive and wicked men surround you, men who trust in their wealth and boast of their riches?
- ³No man can prolong his life forever and not see Sheol. All know that the wise man and the foolish man both perish alike, and leave their wealth to others.
- ⁴Their innermost thoughts will be their dwelling place for endless generations, though they named lands their own.
- ⁵For men do not endure, despite their riches. Like sheep they perish and are appointed for Sheol.
- ⁶Death is their shepherd. Down to Sheol they descend while their bodies decay in the grave, far from their mansions.
- ⁷But God will ransom my soul from Sheol. He will surely take me to himself.
- ⁸Therefore be not overawed when a man grows rich, when the splendour of his house increases. For he will carry nothing with him when he dies.
- ⁹His splendour will not descend with him. He will join his fathers who never see the sun.^{F*}

63

Blessed is he who reveres the Lord

- ¹Blessed are you who revere the Lord and walk in his ways. You will eat the fruit of your labour. Blessings and prosperity shall be yours.
- ²Your wife will be like a fruitful tree within your house and your sons like olive shoots around your table.

64

A song sung by the Levites on pilgrimages to the Temple

- ¹O Lord, how beloved is your Temple. How my soul yearns for the courts of your holy house. My heart cries out for the living God.
- ²Even the sparrow has found a nest for herself near your altar O Lord, a place where she

^{*9} Sheol, the spirit world of the dead was believed by the Israelites to be located under the earth, and therefore dark as it was hidden from the sun. Their concept of the afterlife was that of a restful but shadowy existence, awaiting the time of the resurrection and judgement when the righteous spirits would again reunite with their physical body and live again on earth under the reign of the Messiah.

PSALMS 65

may raise her young.

³Happy are they who dwell in your house, ever singing your praise.

⁴Happy are they who have set their hearts on pilgrimage. As they pass through the Valley of Baca among pools from the autumn rains.

⁵They go from strength to strength until each appears before the Lord in Zion.

⁶Better one day in your courts O Lord than a thousand days elsewhere.

⁷I would rather be a doorkeeper in the house of my God than live among the tents of the wicked.

⁸For Jehovah is a sun and a shield. He bestows favour and honour, and withholds no good thing from those who walk uprightly before him.

65

Clean hands and a pure heart required to stand in the Temple

¹Who are worthy to ascend the hill of the Lord? Who may stand in his holy place?

²They who have clean hands and a pure heart, who set their minds to truth.

³These will receive a blessing from the Lord.

66

A psalm for those who minister in the Temple

¹Praise the Lord all you servants of Jehovah who minister by night in the house of the Lord.

²Lift up your hands in the Sanctuary and praise him. May the maker of the heavens and earth bless you.

67

Our eyes look up to our Lord

¹We lift up our eyes to him whose throne is in heaven.

²The eyes of a slave look to his master. The eyes of a maid to her mistress. But our eyes look to Jehovah our God, until he shows us mercy.

³Have mercy on us O Lord for we have endured much contempt. We have suffered much ridicule from the proud.

68

The great day of the Lord

¹**God is our refuge and our strength, our help in time of trouble.**

²**We will fear not, even though the earth fall, even though the mountains fall into the sea and its waters roar and foam.**

³**The Lord Almighty is with us. The God of Jacob is our fortress.**

⁴**See the works of the Lord, and the desolation he will bring on the earth.**

⁵**He will make war to cease on the earth. He will break the bow and shatter the**

spear and burn the shields with fire.

⁶**“Be still, and know that I am God. I will be exalted among all nations on earth.”**

69

The Lord requires thanksgiving as an offering

¹**“The Mighty One, Jehovah the Lord, speaks and summons the earth, from the rising of the sun in the east to its setting in the west.”**

²**“He is coming and will not be silent. A fire burns before him and around him a raging storm. He calls to the heavens and the earth that he may judge his people.”**

³**Jehovah says, “Gather to me my faithful ones who made a covenant with me by sacrifice.”**

⁴**“Now hear O Israel, for I am your God and testify against you. Not for your sacrifices which are ever before me; for every animal of the forest is mine and the cattle on a thousand hills, and I know every bird for all the earth is mine. ⁵Do I eat the flesh of bulls or drink the blood of goats?”**

⁶**“Rather I require an offering of thanksgiving as your sacrifice, and that you fulfil your vows to the Most High God.**

⁷**Then when you call upon me in your day of trouble I will deliver you.”**

⁸**To the wicked Jehovah says, “What right have you to take my laws upon your lips, you who despise my commandments?”**

⁹**“When you see a thief you join with him. You mix with adulterers. You use your tongue for evil and deceit and even slander your own brother.”**

¹⁰**“These things you have done and I have remained silent, but now I rebuke you to your face.”**

¹¹**“Now hear this, you who forget God, or I will tear you to pieces with none to rescue you. He who offers thanksgiving honours me, and prepares the way for me to show him my salvation.”**

70

A plea to the Lord from the Levites

¹O God, our forebears have told us what you did in days long ago, how you drove out the nations and planted our fathers. It was not their sword that won the land it was your right arm, for you loved them.

²And you are still our King and God who decrees victories for Israel, for we have pushed back enemies and trampled foes.

³But now O God you have rejected and humbled us. You no longer go out with our armies. You have made us retreat before the enemy and they have plundered us.

- ⁴The nations around us scorn and deride Israel.
Our disgrace is before us all day long.
⁵Yet we have not forgotten you or been false
to your covenant. We have not raised our
hands to a foreign god.

71

A warning to the wicked

- ¹Rise up O Judge of the earth. Give the proud
what they deserve.
²How long will the wicked be jubilant O Lord?
They pour out arrogant words and are full
of boasting.
³They slay the widow and foreigner. They
murder the fatherless and say “Jehovah
does not see.”
⁴O fools, when will you become wise? Does
he who formed the ear not hear? Does he
who made the eye not see?
⁵Does he who chastises nations not punish?
Does he who teaches man wisdom lack
knowledge?
⁶Blessed are those whom you discipline O
Lord, for you grant them relief from days
of trouble.

72

A psalm of Asaph^{F*} who envied the wicked

- ¹God is good to those who are pure in heart.
But as for me my feet almost slipped. For
I envied the wicked when I saw them
prosper.
²They have no pain. Their bodies are healthy
and strong. They are free from the
burdens common to man.
³Pride is their necklace, and they clothe
themselves with injustice.
⁴Their eyes bulge with fatness and their
callous hearts conceive sin.
⁵They scoff and speak with malice. Their
mouths utter words against heaven and
they gain possessions by falsehood.
⁶The people turn to them and praise them and
give to them in abundance.
⁷This is what the wicked are like. Carefree
they increase in wealth.
⁸I thought to myself, “Surely I have kept my
heart pure in vain, for day after day I
suffer afflictions.”
⁹When I tried to understand all this it was
difficult for me, until I entered the
Sanctuary of God. Then I understood the
final destiny of the wicked.
¹⁰God casts them down to ruin. Suddenly they
are destroyed, completely swept away by
terrors.
¹¹O Lord, when my spirit was embittered I was
senseless and ignorant, like a beast
before you.
¹²Now I am always with you, and you lead me

by my right hand.

- ¹³You guide me with your counsel, and
afterward you will take me into your glory.
¹⁴Earth has nothing I desire. I have made the
Lord Jehovah my refuge.

73

The vine of Israel

- ¹Hear us O Shepherd of Israel. Awaken your
might and save us. Restore us O God
and let your face shine upon us again.
²O Lord how long will your anger smoulder
and you not heed the prayers of your
people? You have fed us with the bread
of sorrow. You have made us drink tears
by the bowlful. Our enemies mock us.
³You brought a vine out of Egypt and drove
out the nations and planted it. The vine
took root and filled the land. The
mountains were covered with its shade. It
sent out boughs to the sea and branches
as far as the Euphrates.
⁴But now you have broken down your wall so
that all who pass by pick its grapes.
Boars from the forest ravage it and the
creatures of the field feed upon it.
⁵Return to us O God Almighty. Watch over
your vine.

74

Asaph's history of the unfaithfulness of Israel

- ¹O my people, hear the words of my mouth. I
will speak of things from long ago, the
wonders our fathers spoke about.
²Let us not hide from our children the powerful
deeds of Jehovah.
³He established the Law in Israel and
commanded our forefathers to teach it to
their children, that they in turn would
teach it to their children. ⁴So they would
remember his deeds and keep his
commandments and not be like their
forefathers, a stubborn and rebellious
generation whose hearts were disloyal to
God.
⁵For our forefathers forgot the wonders he
showed them in Egypt, where he guided
them with a cloud by day and a pillar of
fire by night. Where he divided the sea
and led them through.
⁶He split rocks in the desert and made water
flow like a river, but they continued to
rebel against him. ⁷Yet he commanded
the skies above and rained down manna
for the people to eat, grain from heaven.
Men ate the bread of angels, all they
could eat.
⁸Then they put the Most High to the test by
demanding food they craved. So he
rained down meat upon them, quail like
the sands on the seashore. ⁹They ate
until they had more than enough, but
God's anger rose against them and he
put to death the sturdiest among them,

*HEADER PSALM 72. Little is known of the psalmist Asaph. He is believed to have been a devout Levite who lived in Jerusalem before the exile to Babylon and apparently witnessed the destruction of the city (see Psalms 78 and 79).

PSALMS 75

- cutting down the young men of Israel.
- ¹⁰Despite this they kept on sinning, so he ended their days in futility.
- ¹¹Whenever God slew them, they quickly turned back to him again, but their hearts were not loyal, they were unfaithful to his covenant.
- ¹²Yet he was merciful. Time after time he restrained his anger. He remembered they were only flesh. ¹³But again and again they put God to the test, not remembering his power and how he displayed his miraculous signs in Egypt.
- ¹⁴How he turned their rivers to blood so they could not drink from their streams. How he sent swarms of flies that tormented them, and frogs that devastated them. ¹⁵How he gave their crops to the locust, and destroyed their vines and cattle with hail and bolts of lightning.
- ¹⁶Nor did he spare the people from death but sent a plague to strike down the firstborn of Egypt, the first fruits of manhood of the descendants of Ham.
- ¹⁷But his own people he led out through the desert like sheep, and the sea engulfed their enemies.
- ¹⁸This way he brought them to his holy land and drove out the nations before them. He allotted the tribes of Israel lands for an inheritance.
- ¹⁹But again they rebelled against the Most High. They kept not his commandments. Like their fathers they were as faithless and unreliable as a faulty bow. They aroused his jealousy with idols.
- ²⁰So he rejected Israel completely. He abandoned the Tabernacle and sent the Ark into captivity and gave his people over to the sword. Then he relented and beat back their enemies, putting them to shame.
- ²¹But he rejected the tribes of Joseph and chose the tribe of Judah, whom he loved, and built his sanctuary on the height of Mount Zion in Jerusalem.
- ²²He took David from tending sheep to be the shepherd of Israel, and David shepherded them with integrity of heart and skilful hands.

75

Those who trust in the Lord cannot be shaken

- ¹Those who trust in the Lord are like Mount Zion which cannot be shaken.
- ²As the mountains surround Jerusalem, so the Lord surrounds his people, both now and forever.

76

A revelation from the Lord to Israel through Asaph

- ¹Sing joyfully to the Lord who is our strength!

- Shout aloud to the God of Israel!
- ²Begin the music! Strike the tambourine! Play the melodious harp and the lyre! Sound the ram's horn at New Moon, on the day of our Feast!
- ³For we have received a revelation from Jehovah.
- ⁴Jehovah says, "In your distress in Egypt you called to me, and I rescued you. Unseen, I answered you out of a thundercloud. Then I tested you, at the waters of Meribah."
- ⁵"I said, 'Hear O my people and I will warn you if you will but listen to me. You shall have no foreign gods among you.'"
- ⁶"But my people did not listen, so I gave them up to their stubborn hearts."
- ⁷"If my people would but listen to me, how quickly would I subdue their enemies."
- ⁸"You would be fed with honey and the finest of wheat."



A ram's horn trumpet which was often blown before important announcements.

77

A revelation from the Lord through Asaph to the rulers of Israel

- ¹God presides in the Heavenly Council and gives this judgement to his rulers from on high:
- ²"How long will you defend the unjust and show partiality to the wicked? Rather, defend the cause of the helpless and the fatherless. Maintain the rights of the poor and the oppressed. Rescue the weak and the needy from the hands of the wicked."
- ³"But my rulers understand nothing. They walk around blindly, while the foundations of the nation crumble."
- ⁴"Yet you are gods, all of you. You are sons of the Most High God. Nevertheless you will die like men, like every other ruler."

78

A prayer of Asaph at the destruction of the Temple

- ¹Why have you rejected us O God? Why does your anger smoulder against the sheep of your pasture?
- ²Remember us, the people you purchased of old, the tribe of your inheritance whom you redeemed, and Jerusalem where you dwelt.
- ³Turn again toward these ruins. See this destruction the enemy has wrought upon the Temple.
- ⁴Your foes roared in the holy place where you met with us. They smashed all the carved panelling with their axes, like axemen cutting down trees. ⁵They set your sanctuary on fire, defiling the Temple of your name, and burned every place where you were worshipped in the land.
- ⁶The prophets are no more. We are given no miraculous signs. None of us knows how long this will last. ⁷How long will the enemy mock you O God? Will they mock your name forever?
- ⁸Why do you withhold your hand? Raise it and destroy them! Remember how they have mocked you O Lord. Do not forget the lives of your afflicted people forever.

79

A second prayer of Asaph at the destruction of Jerusalem

- ¹O God, the nations have defiled your holy Temple and reduced Jerusalem to rubble. ²The dead bodies of your saints are left as food for the birds of the air and beasts of the earth.
- ³The enemy have shed blood like water all around Jerusalem and there is no one to bury our dead. We are objects of scorn to our neighbours.
- ⁴O Lord will you be angry forever? How long will your jealousy burn? Pour out your wrath upon the nation which has destroyed Israel.
- ⁵Hold not against us the sins of our fathers for we are in desperate need. Forgive our sins for your name's sake and deliver us. Why should the nations say, "Where is their God?"
- ⁶Hear the groans of the prisoners and save those condemned to die. Then we your people will ever praise you, from generation to generation.

80

Asaph's time of distress

- ¹When I was in distress I sought the Lord. I cried out for him to hear me.
- ²At night I stretched out untiring hands but my soul would not be comforted. Sleep fled

my eyes and I was too troubled to speak.

- ³I thought of the years of long ago, I remembered my psalms. Would the Lord reject us forever? ⁴Had his unfailing love vanished? Had God forgotten to be merciful?
- ⁵Then I thought, "I will remember the mighty deeds of the Lord. Yes, I will think on all his miracles of long ago. For what god is as great as our God?"

81

By the rivers of Babylon

- ¹By the rivers of Babylon, we sat down and wept when we remembered Zion.
- ²On the willows we hung our harps for our captors wanted songs of joy. They said, "Sing us the songs of Zion."
- ³But how can we sing songs of the Lord while in a foreign land?
- ⁴O Babylon doomed to destruction, blessed is he who repays you for what you have done to us.
- ⁵Remember also O Lord what the Edomites cried out on the day Jerusalem fell, "Tear it down to its foundations," they said.

82

The prayer of an afflicted man in exile

- ¹Hear my prayer O Lord. Let my cry for help come before you.
- ²I am in distress for my days vanish like smoke. My bones burn like glowing embers and my heart is withered like grass.
- ³I forget to eat my food and am reduced to skin and bone.
- ⁴I lie awake at night and have become like a bird alone on a roof, like an owl among ruins.
- ⁵All day long my enemies taunt me and use my name as a curse.
- ⁶I eat ashes with my food and mingle my drink with tears. I wither away O Lord.
- ⁷But you O Jehovah, your renown endures forever. You will have compassion on Jerusalem for the appointed time has come to show favour to Zion.
- ⁸Her stones are dear to us your people, even her dust we honour.
- ⁹All nations will revere the name of Jehovah, for the Lord will rebuild Jerusalem and appear in his glory.
- ¹⁰Let these words be written for a future generation, that a people not yet born may praise the Lord: "**The name of Jehovah shall be declared in Jerusalem when the kingdoms of the world assemble to worship the Lord.**"

83

History of Lord's covenant with Abraham

- ¹Give thanks to the Lord and call upon his name. Recall the wonders he has done O

PSALMS 84

- you descendants of Abraham.
- ²He has not forgotten the covenant he made with Abraham when he said, **“To you I will give the land of Canaan as an inheritance.”**
- ³When our people were few in number they wandered from nation to nation, but he allowed no one to oppress them. He rebuked kings for their sake.
- ⁴He called down famine upon the land, but sent Joseph ahead of his people, sold as a slave.
- ⁵Joseph suffered prison shackles until what he foretold by the word of the Lord came to pass. Then the ruler of Egypt set him free and made him master over all he possessed.
- ⁶Israel entered Egypt a foreigner but the Lord made his people too numerous for the Egyptians. He turned their hearts against his people.
- ⁷He sent Moses and Aaron whom he had chosen to perform miraculous signs. He turned their waters to blood causing the fish to die.
- ⁸The land teemed with frogs which entered the bedrooms of the rulers. Swarms of flies and lice infested the land.
- ⁹The Lord sent hail, and lightning flashed throughout Egypt, striking down their vines and trees.
- ¹⁰The locusts came and ate up every green thing, and the Lord sent darkness over the land, for the Egyptians had rebelled against his words.
- ¹¹Then he struck down all the firstborn in Egypt, the first fruits of their manhood, and brought out his people laden with silver and gold.
- ¹²Egypt was glad when they went, for the dread of Israel had fallen upon them.
- ¹³The Lord spread a cloud as a covering by day and a fire to give light by night.
- ¹⁴He commanded the sea and it dried up. He led them through the depths as if on dry land. The waters returned and covered their enemies. Not one of them survived.
- ¹⁵The people asked for food and he fed them with manna from heaven. He opened the rock and water gushed out, a river flowing in the desert.
- ¹⁶Jehovah remembered his promise given to Abraham and brought out his people with rejoicing. He wanted to give them the land he had promised that they might keep his commandments.
- ¹⁷But they soon forgot what he had done. They did not heed his counsel.
- ¹⁸At Sinai they made a calf. They worshipped an idol cast from metal, exchanging the glory of the Lord for an image of a bull which eats grass.
- ¹⁹He would have destroyed them all had not Moses pleaded before him.

- ²⁰In the desert they craved for meat and put God to the test. So he gave them what they wanted, he brought them quail, but sent a wasting disease upon them.
- ²¹Then they rejected the promised land, having no faith in his promise. They murmured in their tents. So God swore he would make them fall in the desert.
- ²²Then men grew envious of Moses and Aaron and the earth swallowed the households of Dathan and Abiram. Fire also blazed among others and consumed them.
- ²³By the waters of Meribah they again angered the Lord, and trouble came to Moses because of them. Rash words escaped Moses' lips.
- ²⁴After this Israel joined themselves to Baal and ate sacrifices offered to lifeless gods, provoking the Lord to anger by their wicked deeds. ²⁵Therefore a plague broke out among them, but Phinehas intervened and the plague was stopped.
- ²⁶Then they failed to destroy the peoples as the Lord had commanded them but mingled with the wicked nations and adopted their customs.
- ²⁷They worshipped the idols of Canaan and sacrificed their children to demons, defiling themselves and the land with innocent blood.
- ²⁸Therefore the Lord was angry with his people and handed them over to their enemies to rule over them.
- ²⁹Many times he delivered them, but they were bent on rebellion. Yet whenever he heard their cry he took note of their distress and caused them to be pitied by those who held them captive.
- ³⁰Save us O Lord. Gather us from the nations that we may praise your holy name. Let all the people say Amen!

84

A prayer of Ethan^F* pleading for the restoration of David's throne

- ¹I will sing of the Lord's great love. I will make his faithfulness known forever. For who is like you O Lord, among the heavenly beings?
- ²O Lord once you spoke in a vision to your people saying, **“I have bestowed strength on a young warrior. I have found David my servant and with my sacred oil I have anointed him.”**
- ³**“My hand will sustain him and I will crush his foes before him. No enemy shall subject him to tribute.”**
- ⁴**“My love will be with him, and through my name he shall be exalted. He will say of me, ‘You are my Father, my God, my Rock and my Redeemer.’”**

*Heading. Ethan was a Levite renowned for his wisdom.

⁵**"I will make him the firstborn, the highest of the kings of the earth. I will covenant with him to establish his throne for all time, even as the days of heaven."**

⁶**"If any of his sons fail to keep my commandments I will punish their sin with the rod, but I shall not withdraw my love from him or renounce my covenant."**

⁷But O Lord you have been very angry with your anointed one. You have renounced your covenant with David and have defiled his crown in the dust. You have reduced his strongholds to ruins.

⁸His throne has become the scorn of his neighbours. You have made his enemies rejoice and have put an end to his splendour.

⁹How long O Lord will your wrath burn like a fire? Where is your former great love? Remember O Lord how your servant has been mocked.

¹⁰Praise be to the Lord forever. Amen and Amen.

85

Let those whom he rescues give thanks to the Lord

¹Let those whom the Lord has redeemed from the hand of trouble give thanks with these words: "Give thanks to the Lord for he is good, his love endures forever."

²Some wandered in the wilderness, finding nowhere they could settle. They were hungry and thirsty and their lives ebbed away. ³Then they cried out to the Lord in their trouble and he led them by a straight path to a town where they could settle. ⁴Let them give thanks to the Lord for his unfailing love.

⁵Some sat in gloom, prisoners suffering in iron chains for they had rebelled against the word of God. Their hearts had become afflicted with bitter sorrow. ⁶Then they cried out to the Lord in their trouble and he saved them from their distress. ⁷He brought them out of the deepest gloom and broke their chains. ⁸Let them give thanks to the Lord for his unfailing love.

⁹Some became ill through their rebellious ways. They loathed all food and drew near the gates of death. ¹⁰Then they cried to the Lord in their trouble and he healed them, he rescued them from the grave. ¹¹Let them give thanks to the Lord for his unfailing love.

¹²Others went out on the sea in ships, merchants on the mighty waters. Then a storm lifted high the waves. They reeled and staggered like drunken men. In peril their courage melted away. ¹³Then they cried out to the Lord in their trouble, and he stilled the storm to a whisper. ¹⁴Let

them give thanks to the Lord for his unfailing love.

86

Returning Babylonian exiles filled with songs of joy

¹When the Lord brought the exiles back to Jerusalem we were like men who dreamed. We were filled with laughter and songs of joy, for the Lord had done great things.

²Now restore our fortunes O Lord, like rain in the desert. May they who sow seed in tears, reap with songs of joy.

87

Let us bow in worship and humble our hearts

¹Come, let us bow down in worship. Let us kneel before the Lord our maker, for he is our God and we are the flock under his care.

²That we would heed the voice of the Lord for he has said, "**Harden not your hearts as you did at Meribah in the desert where your fathers tested me, though they had seen what I did.**"

³**"For forty years I was angry with that generation. I declared in my anger, 'They shall not enter my rest.'"**

88

Blessed is the man who delights in the Law of the Lord

¹Blessed is the man who walks not in the way of the wicked, nor sits in the seat of mockers, but delights in the Law of the Lord and thinks upon it day and night.

²He is like a tree planted by a running stream, yielding its fruit in season and whose leaf withers not.

³In whatever he does he prospers, for the Lord watches over the way of the righteous.

⁴Not so the wicked. They are like chaff, blown away by the wind.

89

Serve the Lord with gladness and joyful songs

¹Make a joyful noise to the Lord of the earth. Serve him with gladness. Come to him with songs of joy, for we are his people, the sheep of his pasture.

²Enter his gates with thanksgiving and his courts with praise. Give unto him thanks. Praise his holy name. For the Lord is good. His love endures forever.

90

They who take refuge in the Lord are protected by him

¹When you dwell in the shelter of the Lord you will say, "He is my refuge, my fortress, my God in whom I trust."

PSALMS 91

- ²Under his wings you will find sanctuary. You shall fear not the terror of the night nor the plague that destroys by day. ³A thousand may fall at your side but you will be kept safe.
- ⁴See with your own eyes the punishment of the wicked. Yet no harm will befall you when you make the Lord your refuge.
- ⁵He will command his angels to guard you lest you so much as strike your foot against a stone. You will safely tread on the cobra and trample the lion underfoot.
- ⁶For the Lord will say of you, **“Because he loves me I will rescue him and protect him, for he calls upon my name. I will honour him and satisfy him with long life and show him my salvation.”**

91

The Lord forgives sins

- ¹Lord hear my cry for mercy. If you kept a record of all our sins who could stand? But with you O Lord there is forgiveness. In your word I put my hope.
- ²My soul awaits the Lord more than watchmen await the dawn.
- ³Put your hope in the Lord O Israel. He will redeem you from all your sins.

92

I will trust only in the Lord not man

- ¹I shall sing praise to my God as long as I live. I will not put my trust in mortal man who cannot save.
- ²For when their spirit departs from them they return to the dust. On that day their plans come to nothing.
- ³Blessed is he whose hope is in the Lord.
- ⁴For the Lord gives food to the hungry.
- ⁵He sets prisoners free.
- ⁶He gives sight to the blind.
- ⁷He lifts those who are bowed down.
- ⁸He loves the righteous.
- ⁹He sustains the fatherless and the widow.
- ¹⁰He watches over the foreigner.
- ¹¹He frustrates the way of the wicked.
- ¹²The Lord reigns forever.
- ¹³Praise the Lord.

93

Take refuge in the Lord and live

- ¹In my anguish I cried out to the Lord. He answered and set me free.
- ²The Lord is with me therefore I fear not, for what can man do?
- ³It is better to take refuge in the Lord than to trust in man.
- ⁴I will not die, but live, and will proclaim what the Lord has done.
- ⁵The Lord has chastened me severely but has not given me over to death.
- ⁶Open the gates of righteousness. I will enter and give thanks to the Lord.

94

Other nation's gods are idols made by men

- ¹Why do the nations say of us, “Where is their God?” Our God is in heaven and does as he pleases. But their gods are idols of silver and gold.
- ²They have mouths that cannot speak, eyes that cannot see, ears that cannot hear, noses that cannot smell, hands that cannot feel and feet that cannot walk.
- ³Those who make them are like them, and so are all who trust in them.

95

The stone the builders rejected

- ¹*The stone the builders rejected has become the capstone.*
- ²*Jehovah has done this and it is marvellous in our eyes.*
- ³*Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Jehovah.*

96

This is the day that the Lord has made

- ¹This is the day that the Lord has made. Let us rejoice and be glad in it.

97

Praise the Lord

- ¹Praise the Lord.
- ²Praise him you highest heavens.
- ³Praise him all his angels.
- ⁴Praise him sun and moon.
- ⁵Praise him all you shining stars.
- ⁶Praise him you earth.
- ⁷Praise him you great sea creatures.
- ⁸Praise him you ocean depths.
- ⁹Praise him lightning and hail.
- ¹⁰Praise him snow and clouds.
- ¹¹Praise him stormy winds.
- ¹²Praise him you mountains and hills.
- ¹³Praise him fruit trees and all cedars.
- ¹⁴Praise him wild animals and all cattle.
- ¹⁵Praise him small creatures and flying birds.
- ¹⁶Praise him kings and rulers of the earth.
- ¹⁷Praise him all nations.
- ¹⁸Praise him young men and maidens.
- ¹⁹Praise him old men and children.
- ²⁰Praise the name of the Lord for his splendour is above all the earth and the heavens.

98

Praise God with music

- ¹Praise God in his mighty heavens. Praise him for his acts of power and for his greatness.
- ²Praise him with the trumpet.
- ³Praise him with the harp and lyre.
- ⁴Praise him with tambourine and dancing.
- ⁵Praise him with strings and flute.
- ⁶Praise him with the clash of cymbals.
- ⁷Let everything alive praise the Lord.

99

Burst into jubilant song

- ¹Sing to the Lord a new song. Shout for joy to Jehovah! All the earth burst forth into jubilant song!
- ²Make joyful music to the Lord with harp and the sound of singing, with trumpets and the blast of the ram's horn!
- ³Shout for joy before Jehovah the King!
- ⁴Let the sea resound and everything in it, the earth and all who live in it!
- ⁵Let the rivers clap their hands! Let the mountains sing together for joy!
- ⁶Sing before the Lord, for he is coming to judge the whole earth!

PROVERBS

This book of Proverbs, like the book of Ecclesiastes is classed by the Jews as wisdom literature rather than sacred inspired writing. Nevertheless the book is highly interesting, full of practical and wise advice, and has been quoted widely from for centuries. It is made up mostly of pithy sayings relative to living a happy prosperous and upright life.

The term fool which is often used in the book generally refers to a person who is lacking in sense rather than one who is deficient in intellect.

NOTE Much of the original book of Proverbs follows the ancient Hebrew tradition of coupling together two contrasting proverbs, however in this Condensed Bible to enhance the usefulness of the book most coupled proverbs have been separated into two single proverbs and the proverbs grouped under subject headings such as sexual immorality, women and marriage, wealth and riches, the tongue, health and healing, etc.

AUTHOR

Chapters 1 to 20 are attributed to King Solomon, chapter 21 to King Lemuel's mother and chapter 22 to Agur.

"Trust in the Lord with all your heart and lean not to your own understanding."
Proverbs 11:2.

CONTENTS

	Chapter		
Introduction to the proverbs of Solomon	1	Proverbs on humility and patience	11
Solomon counsels his son	1	Proverbs on kingship and ruling	12
Proverbs on sexual immorality	2	Proverbs on planning	13
Proverbs on women and marriage	3	Proverbs on love, kindness and giving	14
A noble wife – her worth is far above rubies	3	Proverbs on care of the poor	15
Proverbs on wealth, riches and poverty	4	Proverbs on friendship and relationships	16
Proverbs on wisdom, knowledge and discernment ...	5	Proverbs on family and children	17
Proverbs on foolishness	6	Proverbs on neighbours	18
Proverbs on sinners	7	Proverbs on work and labour	19
Proverbs on righteousness and upright living	8	Proverbs on health and healing	20
Proverbs on the tongue	9	The wisdom of king Lemuel's mother	21
Proverbs on pride	10	The sayings of Agur	22

1

Introduction to the proverbs of Solomon

¹These are the proverbs of Solomon king of Israel.

²They are useful for acquiring wisdom and in conducting a just and disciplined life, and for giving knowledge and discretion to the young.

³Let the wise also listen and add to their learning, for to revere the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.

Solomon counsels his son

⁴"My son, do not forsake your father's commands and your mother's teaching, for they are a light that will guide you for ever and lead you to Eternal Life."

⁵"Hold these teachings in your heart. They will prolong your life many years and bring you prosperity."

2

On sexual immorality

¹"My son, stay away from the harlot, and from the smooth tongue of an adulterous wife. Lust not in your heart after her beauty or let her captivate you with her eyes. ²For an adulteress preys upon your very life, and a harlot reduces you to poverty."

³"Can a man scoop fire into his lap without his clothes being burned? ⁴Whoever lies with another man's wife will not go unpunished."

⁵"At twilight, as night was falling, I was at the window of my house. I looked out through the lattice and saw a simple young man who lacked judgement."

⁶"He passed down the street toward the house of the adulteress on the corner. She came out to meet him dressed like a harlot and with evil intent."

On women and marriage

7“She is a loud and wayward woman, her feet never stay at home. Now in the street, now in the square, at every corner she lurks.”

8“She embraces him and kisses him and with a bold face says, ‘I have food from peace offerings inside, for today I fulfilled my vows, now I have come out to meet you.’”

9“‘I have perfumed my bed and spread it with coloured linen. Come, let us take our fill of love until morning. Let us delight ourselves for my husband is away on a long journey.’”

10“‘And so she seduces him with her smooth talk. He follows her like a stag stepping into a noose, little knowing it will cost him his life.’”

11“‘Many are the victims she has brought down. Her house is a highway to Sheol,^{F*} leading down to the place of death.’”

12“‘A starving thief who steals to satisfy his hunger is not despised, yet if he is caught he must pay back sevenfold.’”

13“‘But a man who lies with his neighbour’s wife lacks judgement, and destroys himself. His shame is never wiped away. ¹⁴Jealousy arouses a husband’s fury and he will show no mercy when he takes revenge. He will refuse a bribe, however great it is.’”

15A harlot and an adulterous wife are deep pits. They multiply the faithless among men.

16He who keeps company with harlots squanders his wealth.

17A wicked woman is loud and undisciplined. She is without wisdom. She sits at the door of her house and calls to those who pass by, to those who lack judgement, saying, “Come inside! Stolen food eaten in secret is sweet.”

18But little do they know that her former guests are in the depths of Sheol.

19“‘My son, the lips of an adulteress drip honey and her speech is smoother than oil. But in the end she is as bitter as gall,^{F*} as sharp as a two-edged sword. ²⁰Her steps lead straight down to Sheol. Her paths are crooked but she knows it not.’”

21“‘My son, do not go near her door, lest strangers feast on your wealth and your toil enrich another man. ²²And your life end with groans as disease consumes your body.’”

23“‘Drink water from your own well. Why should your offspring belong to the streets and the public squares? Let them be yours alone, never to be shared with strangers.’”

24“‘May your children be blessed. May you rejoice with the wife of your youth, a loving doe, a graceful deer. ²⁵May her breasts satisfy you always. May you ever be captivated by her love.’”

26“‘Why be snared in sin by an adulteress? Why embrace the bosom of another man’s wife?’”

1A wife of noble character is the crown of her husband.

2A prudent wife is a gift from the Lord.

3A kind hearted woman gains respect.

4A quarrelsome wife is like a leaking roof on a rainy day.

5Better to live on the corner of a roof top than to share the house with an argumentative wife.

6Better to live in a desert than with an ill-tempered woman.

7Restraining a quarrelsome woman is like trying to restrain the wind, or grasping oil with the hand.

8A wife who shames her husband is like decay to his bones.

9Like a ring of pure gold in a pig’s snout is a beautiful woman without discretion.

10A foolish woman tears down her house with her own hands.

A noble wife – her worth is far above rubies

11Who can find a noble wife? Her worth is far above rubies.

12The heart of her husband trusts in her. She brings him good all the days of her life.

13She rises before dawn, while it is still dark to provide for her household. She brings food from afar. She seeks wool and flax and works with willing hands.

14She appraises a field and buys it, and with the fruit of her hands she plants it. She sets about her work vigorously. Her arms are strong for the task.

15Her trading is profitable. She burns her lamp into the night, weaving and sewing. Linen garments she makes and sells to the merchants.

16She opens her arms to the poor and extends her hands to the needy.

17She fears not the snow, for her household are warmly clad.

18She herself is clothed in fine linen, and makes decorative coverings for her bed.

19Her husband is respected at the city gate. He takes his seat among the elders.

20She has strength and dignity and looks forward cheerfully to the days ahead.

21She speaks with wisdom. Kindly teaching is ever on her tongue.

22She watches over all the affairs of her household and is never idle.

23Her children rise up and call her blessed, her husband also, and he praises her saying, “Many women have done noble things, but you excel them all.”

24Charm is deceptive and beauty is fleeting,

*11 The spirit world of the dead.

*19 Gall is a sour-tasting herbal extract.

PROVERBS 4

but a woman who reveres the Lord is to be praised. Give her the reward she deserves.

4

On wealth, riches and poverty

¹“My son, if you have put up security for your neighbour you have been trapped by the words of your mouth. You have fallen into his power.

²Be wise and do this to free yourself: Go humble yourself before your neighbour. Allow your eyes no sleep until you free yourself from your pledge, like a bird freed from the hand of a hunter.”

³He who puts up security for another will surely suffer.

⁴The long term planning of the diligent leads to wealth, but all who are hasty come to poverty.

⁵The diligent man will obtain many possessions.

⁶Diligent hands bring wealth, but lazy hands bring poverty.

⁷Money quickly obtained dwindles away, but he who gathers money little by little retains it.

⁸A generous man will prosper.

⁹Give careful attention to your flocks, for riches do not endure for all generations.

¹⁰From the strength of an ox comes an abundant harvest.

¹¹When the Lord blesses a man with wealth, he adds no sorrow with it.

¹²The crown of the wise is their wealth.

¹³He who cherishes wisdom prospers.

¹⁴He who pursues righteousness and love will find prosperity and honour.

¹⁵Prosperity is the reward of the righteous.

¹⁶The rich rule over the poor.

¹⁷The borrower is servant to the lender.

¹⁸Honour the Lord with your wealth, and with the first fruits of all your crops. Then your barns will be filled and your vats will brim over with new wine.

¹⁹A good name is more desirable than silver or gold.

²⁰Wealth will be worthless in the day of the Lord’s wrath.

²¹Whoever trusts in riches will fall.

²²Do not wear yourself out to get rich. Cast but a glance at riches and they are gone. They sprout wings and fly off like a bird.

²³One man pretends to be rich and yet has nothing, another pretends to be poor yet has great wealth.

²⁴Wealth brings a man many friends, but when he becomes poor they desert him.

²⁵A man eager to get rich will not go unpunished.

²⁶Ill-gotten wealth will not be retained.

²⁷A fortune made by a lying tongue is a fleeting bubble.

²⁸He who increases his wealth by excessive interest amasses it for another man.

²⁹A sinner’s wealth is stored up for the righteous.

³⁰Of what use is wealth in the hand of a miserly man?

³¹It is not fitting for a fool to live in luxury.

³²Better a little gain with righteousness than much gain with injustice.

³³Better a little with reverence of the Lord, than great wealth with sorrow and trouble.

³⁴Rich and poor have this in common, the Lord made them both.

³⁵A man’s riches may ransom his life, but a poor man hears no threat.

³⁶Better to be a labourer and support yourself than to pretend to be a rich man and have no food.

³⁷One man gives freely and gains even more. Another withholds unduly and becomes even poorer.

³⁸Poverty awaits a miserly man eager to get rich.

³⁹He who oppresses the poor and he who only gives gifts to the rich will both come to poverty.

⁴⁰He who will not discipline himself will come to poverty and shame.

⁴¹He who loves wine and rich food will never be wealthy.

⁴²He who loves pleasure will become poor.

⁴³The sluggard craves wealth and gets nothing.

⁴⁴How long will you lie there you sluggard? When will you rise from your bed? A little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to rest, and poverty comes upon you like a robber.

⁴⁵Join not those who drink much wine or gorge themselves on food, for drowsiness will clothe them in rags.

⁴⁶The poor man pleads for mercy, but the rich man answers harshly.

⁴⁷The rich have many friends, but the poor are shunned, even by their neighbours.

5

**Proverbs on wisdom, knowledge
and discernment**

- 1“My son, blessed is the man who finds wisdom, for wisdom is better than gold, more precious than rubies. Nothing can compare with her. ²Long life is in her right hand, riches and honour in her left. ³Wisdom’s ways are pleasant and her paths peaceful. He who embraces her will be blessed.”
- 4“I wisdom, live together with prudence. I possess knowledge and discretion. I hate pride and arrogance, evil deeds and perverse speech.”
- 5“Sound judgement and power is mine. By me kings reign and make laws that are just.”
- 6“I love those who love me. On them I bestow riches and honour, lasting wealth and prosperity.”
- 7“Those who seek me find me. My fruit is better than fine gold.”
- 8“I walk in the paths of righteousness and justice, bestowing wealth on those who love me.”
- 9“Jehovah brought me forth as the first of his works. Before his creations of old, I was appointed, from before the world began.”
- 10“I was there when he set the heavens in place and when he marked out the horizon on the face of the deep.”
- 11“I was the craftsman at his side, filled with delight day after day, rejoicing in his presence and delighting in mankind.”
- 12“Blessed are those who listen to me, waiting at my doorway. For whoever finds me finds Eternal Life and receives favour from the Lord.”
- 13“My son, wisdom will also save you from the adulteress with her seductive words. She who has left the husband of her youth and broken the marriage covenant she made before God.”
- 14“Her house leads down to death, to the spirits of the dead. None who go to her regain the path of Eternal Life.”
- 15How much better to get wisdom than gold.
- 16He who gets wisdom loves his own soul.
- 17To revere the Lord is the beginning of wisdom. And knowledge of the Holy One brings understanding.
- 18Knowledge comes easily to the discerning.
- 19A rich man may be wise in his own eyes but a poor man of discernment will see through him.
- 20Rebuke a discerning man and he will gain wisdom.
- 21The advice of the wicked is deceitful, but the mouth of the righteous brings forth wisdom.
- 22A rebuke goes deeper into a man of discernment than a hundred lashes into a fool.
- 23The wise in heart accept commands.
- 24A wise son heeds his father’s instruction.
- 25He who scorns instruction will suffer.
- 26Apply your heart to instruction and your ears to words of knowledge.
- 27He who walks with the wise grows wise.
- 28Listen to advice and accept instruction and you will soon become wise.
- 29Wisdom is found in those who take advice.
- 30Punish a mocker and others will gain wisdom.
- 31Whoever corrects a wicked man will incur abuse, but rebuke a wise man and he will be wiser still and will love you.
- 32He who heeds correction will be honoured.
- 33Wise is he who trusts in the Lord.
- 34A wise man reveres the Lord and shuns evil.
- 35The Lord works out all things for his own purpose.
- 36The wisdom of the prudent is in giving thought to their ways.
- 37The thoughts of a man’s heart are deep, but a man of wisdom can draw them out.
- 38In the house of the wise are stores of food and oil, but the foolish man eats all he has.
- 39Like one who seizes a dog by the ears is a passer-by who meddles in a quarrel not his own.
- 40A man of understanding maintains a straight course.
- 41A wise man considers carefully what he hears, but a fool believes anything.
- 42A wise man sees danger and takes refuge, but a foolish man keeps going and suffers.
- 43Speak not wisdom to a fool, he will scorn you.
- 44Wisdom is too high for a fool, when men assemble at the city gate he has nothing to say.
- 45Like cutting off one’s feet is the sending of a message by the hand of a foolish man.
- 46A man of understanding delights in wisdom, but a wicked man delights in evil.
- 47A prudent man overlooks an insult, but a fool shows his anger at once.
- 48A wise man keeps his temper under control, but a fool gives full vent to his anger.

PROVERBS 6

- 49A man of understanding is even-tempered.
50A man is praised according to his wisdom.
51If you are wise your wisdom will reward you.
52The path of life leads ever upward for the wise.
53A wise man has great power.
54Wisdom is a fountain of life to those who possess it.
55A man of wisdom and knowledge increases in strength.
56A wise man will bring down the strongholds of the mighty in strength.
57By wisdom a house is built and by wisdom its rooms are filled with pleasing possessions.
58Wisdom is sweet to the soul, like honey from a honeycomb.
59Wisdom will save you from the ways of the wicked, who delight in doing wrong and whose paths are dark and crooked.
60A prudent man acts out of knowledge.
61He who welcomes correction loves knowledge.
62It is not good to have zeal without knowledge.
63Wise men store up knowledge.
64“My son, if your heart is wise I will be glad and my spirit will rejoice.”

6

Proverbs on foolishness

- 1A companion of fools will become a fool himself.
2Leave the presence of a foolish man for you will not find wisdom on his lips.
3The foolish man will be servant to the wise.
4A whip for the horse and a rod for the backs of fools.
5He who follows idle pursuits lacks judgement.
6He who trusts in himself alone is a fool.
7He who hates correction is a fool.
8Fools mock at making amends for sin.
9When a wise man goes to court with a fool, the fool scoffs and rages.
10Better to meet a bear robbed of her cubs than a fool in his folly.
11He who answers before hearing is foolish.
12A hot-headed and reckless man is a fool.
13A hot-tempered man must suffer the consequences. If you rescue him from his folly you will only have to do it again.

- 14A hot-tempered man commits many sins.
15As a dog returns to its vomit, so a fool repeats his foolishness.
16The way of a foolish man seems right to him.
17The foolish man is wiser in his own eyes than seven men of good sense.

7

Proverbs on sinners

- 1“My son, if sinners entice you, do not give in to them. If they say, ‘Come with us and lie in wait. We will ambush an innocent passerby and gain wealth. 2We will fill our houses with treasure. Join with us and share the spoils.’
3“My son, do not go along with them. For their feet rush into sin and they are swift to shed blood. These men waylay only themselves.
4Such is the fate of all who go after ill-gotten gain. It takes away the lives of those who acquire it.”
5There are seven things the Lord hates: Haughty eyes, a lying tongue, hands that shed innocent blood, a heart that plans wickedness, feet that are quick to rush into evil, a false witness who lies, and a man who stirs up discord.
6Who has woe? Who has sorrow? Who has strife? Who has complaints? Who has wounds? Who has bloodshot eyes? Those who linger over wine. 7Look not with desire at wine as it sparkles red in the cup. In the end it will bite like a poisonous viper.
8A scoundrel goes about with a corrupt mouth. He winks his eye, signals with his feet and motions with his fingers. His heart is deceitful and he stirs up dissension. 9Disaster will overtake him and he will suddenly be destroyed.
10The wicked flee though none pursue.
11Evil comes to him who searches for it.
12He who winks maliciously causes trouble.
13He who winks is plotting perversity.
14He who compresses his lips is bent on evil.
15A wicked man will accept a bribe to pervert the course of justice.
16A wicked man listens to evil lips.
17The wicked put up a bold front.
18Those who have abandoned the Law of God praise the wicked.
19The upright detest the wicked and the wicked detest the upright.
20An evil man has no understanding of justice.
21The righteous care about justice for the poor, but the wicked have no such concern.

- 22He whose ways are devious despises the Lord.
- 23The heart of the wicked is of little value.
- 24Whoever ignores correction leads others astray.
- 25The rod of discipline drives away evil and purges the spirit.
- 26A man who remains wicked after many rebukes will suddenly be destroyed.
- 27The eyes of the Lord are everywhere, keeping watch on both the wicked and the good.
- 28The hearts of all men lie open before the Lord.
- 29The Lord detests the sacrifice of the wicked.
- 30The Lord abhors dishonest scales but accurate weights are his delight.
- 31There is a way that seems right to a man, but in the end it leads to Death.
- 32A man's ways seem right to him, but his motives are weighed by the Lord.
- 33He who digs a pit for another will fall into it.
- 34What the wicked dread will overtake them.
- 35If the righteous receive chastisement on earth, how much more the ungodly.
- 36A curse of the Lord is on the house of the wicked.
- 37The wicked are trapped by their evil desires.
- 38If a man returns evil for good, evil will never depart his house.
- 39Misfortune dogs the sinner.
- 40Stern discipline awaits him who leaves the straight path.
- 41An evil man is snared by his own sins.
- 42The way of the wicked is deep darkness, they cannot see what makes them stumble.
- 43When a wicked man dies, his hope perishes.
- 44Wicked men are eventually overthrown.
- 45When calamity comes, the wicked are struck down.
- 46The Lord brings the house of the wicked to ruin.
- 47The wicked are brought to shame but the wise inherit honour.
- 48The hopes of the wicked come to nothing.
- 49Be sure of this, the wicked will not go unpunished.
- 50The name of the wicked will rot.
- 51The ungodly man will be fully repaid for his ways, and the godly man rewarded for his righteousness.
- 52When the wicked perish there are shouts of joy.
- 53Evil men will bow down in the presence of the good.
- 54He who hides his sins will not prosper, but whoever confesses and renounces them finds mercy.
- 55The wicked are brought down by their own wrong doing.
- 56Food obtained by deceit at first tastes sweet but soon turns to gravel in the mouth.
- 57A man tormented by the guilt of murder is a fugitive until death.
- 58Envy not the wicked for they have no hope for the future.
- 59The Lord is far from the wicked, but hears the prayer of the righteous.
- 60Bloodthirsty men seek to kill the upright.
- 61The Lord detests a violent man. Do not envy him or choose any of his ways.

8

Proverbs on righteousness and upright living

- 1The way of the righteous is like the first hint of dawn, growing ever brighter until the full glory of sunrise.
- 2He who reveres the Lord can rest content, unconcerned by trouble.
- 3The Lord blesses the household of a righteous man.
- 4The righteous give and spare not.
- 5A righteous man cares for his animals.
- 6Though a righteous man fall seven times, he will rise again.
- 7The righteous flourish like green branches.
- 8The upright hate what is false.
- 9The man of integrity walks securely.
- 10He whose walk is upright reveres the Lord.
- 11The righteous can sing and rejoice.
- 12When the righteous prosper the city rejoices.
- 13Through the blessing of the upright a city is exalted.
- 14What the righteous desire will be granted.
- 15The desires of the righteous end only in good.
- 16The path is straight for the righteous.
- 17Blessings crown the head of a righteous man.
- 18The house of the righteous stands firm.
- 19A righteous man is bold as a lion.

PROVERBS 9

- ²⁰The future of the righteous is joy.
- ²¹When the storm sweeps by, the wicked are taken, but the righteous stand firm forever.
- ²²The memory of a righteous man is a blessing.
- ²³The righteous will never be uprooted.
- ²⁴The lamp of the righteous shines brightly but that of the wicked is soon snuffed out.
- ²⁵Like a fouled spring is a righteous man who gives in to the wicked.
- ²⁶The righteous are rescued from trouble, it comes upon the wicked instead.
- ²⁷No great ill befalls the righteous, but the wicked have their fill of trouble.
- ²⁸The Lord does not let the righteous go hungry.
- ²⁹He who sows seeds of righteousness reaps a sure reward.
- ³⁰The Lord delights in those whose ways are blameless.
- ³¹A good man obtains favour from the Lord.
- ³²A good man leaves an inheritance for his children's children.
- ³³The name of the Lord is a strong tower. The righteous run to it and are safe.
- ³⁴To do what is just is more pleasing to the Lord than to offer sacrifices.
- ³⁵The prayer of the upright pleases the Lord.
- ³⁶When the ways of a man are pleasing to the Lord he makes his enemies to be at peace with him.
- ³⁷Silver hair is a crown of glory if attained in a righteous life.
- ³⁸The truly righteous man attains Eternal Life.
- ¹¹A word aptly spoken is like apples of gold in a setting of silver.
- ¹²A man finds pleasure in giving an apt reply.
- ¹³Drive out the mocker and out goes strife.
- ¹⁴The words of a gossip are like tasty morsels of food. They go down into the innermost parts.
- ¹⁵For lack of wood a fire goes out, and without gossip quarrelling ceases.
- ¹⁶A gossip separates close friends.
- ¹⁷A gossip keeps no secrets.
- ¹⁸A liar listens to a malicious tongue.
- ¹⁹A babbling fool comes to ruin.
- ²⁰A fool delights in airing his opinions.
- ²¹"No good. No good." says the buyer, then goes off and boasts about his purchase.
- ²²See a man who speaks in haste, there is more hope for a fool than for him.
- ²³A fool is quick to quarrel.
- ²⁴The lips of a foolish man blurt out his foolishness.
- ²⁵An evil man is trapped by his talk.
- ²⁶By the mouths of the wicked a city is destroyed.
- ²⁷The Lord frustrates the words of a sinner.
- ²⁸As the north wind brings rain, so a backbiting tongue brings frowns.
- ²⁹Men detest a mocker.
- ³⁰Harsh words stir up anger.
- ³¹Rash words pierce like a sword.
- ³²A hot-tempered man stirs up contention.
- ³³Starting a quarrel is like breaking a dam.
- ³⁴He who loves to quarrel loves sin.
- ³⁵Avoid the man who talks too much.
- ³⁶When words are many, sin is not absent.
- ³⁷Like clouds without rain is he who fails to keep promises.
- ³⁸A malicious man disguises his intent with his lips. Though his speech charms, evil fills his heart.
- ³⁹Like a coating of fine glaze over a clay pot, are eloquent lips with an evil heart.
- ⁴⁰The mouths of the wicked know only what is perverse.
- ⁴¹He who conceals his malice has lying lips.
- ⁴²The Lord detests lying lips.
- ⁴³The Lord delights in a man whose lips speak truth.
- ⁴⁴A false witness will not go unpunished.

9

Proverbs on the tongue

- ¹A soft answer turns away wrath.
- ²By patience a ruler can be persuaded for a gentle tongue can break a bone.
- ³A patient man calms a quarrel.
- ⁴Even a fool is thought wise if he remains silent.
- ⁵The mouth of the righteous is a fountain of life.
- ⁶He who guards his tongue keeps himself from trouble.
- ⁷He who holds his tongue is wise.
- ⁸He who guards his lips guards his life.
- ⁹The tongue has power over life and death.
- ¹⁰Gold and precious stones are found in abundance, but lips that speak wisdom are a rare jewel.

- 45It is a trap for a man to make a rash vow to the Lord.
- 46Better an open rebuke than hidden love.
- 47He who rebukes a man will in the end gain more favour than he who flatters him.
- 48The heart of a righteous man weighs carefully his answers.
- 49The lips of the wise spread knowledge.
- 50The mouth of a wise man is guided by his mind.
- 51The tongue of the righteous is choice silver.
- 52The lips of the righteous nourish many.
- 53The lips of the righteous know fitting words to speak.
- 54The teaching of the righteous is a fountain of life.
- 55There is joy in the heart of those who promote peace.
- 56A prudent man does not reveal all that he knows.
- 57A man of knowledge uses words with restraint.
- 58The tongue of a wise man brings healing.
- 59From the fruit of his lips a man receives good things as surely as from the work of his hands.
- 60He who has a pure heart and whose speech is gracious, will have the king as his friend.
- 61Truthful lips endure forever.
- 62An honest answer is like a kiss on the lips.
- 63The lamp of him who curses his father or mother will soon be snuffed out.
- 64Like a fluttering sparrow an undeserved curse does not come to rest.
- 65He who speaks rashly will come to ruin.
- 66A perverse tongue crushes the spirit.
- 67Let another praise you, not your own lips.

10

Proverbs on pride

- 1Pride goes before a fall.
- 2Do not sit in an honoured place in the king's presence. Far better for him to say to you, "Come up higher," than for him to humiliate you before nobles.
- 3It is not good to eat too much honey, nor is it good to seek one's own honour.
- 4After pride comes disgrace.
- 5Pride breeds quarrels.
- 6The Lord tears down the proud man's house, but he protects the widow's boundaries.

- 7Gloat not when your enemy falls or the Lord will be displeased and turn his wrath away from him.
- 8See a man who is wise in his own eyes, there is more hope for a fool than for him.
- 9Boast not of tomorrow for you know not what each day will bring.
- 10A man is tested by the praise he receives.

11

Proverbs on humility and patience

- 1"My son, despise not the Lord's chastisement for the Lord disciplines those he loves."
- 2"Trust in the Lord with all your heart and lean not to your own understanding. In all your ways acknowledge him and he will direct your paths for good."
- 3Humility comes before honour.
- 4With humility comes wisdom.
- 5Say not, "I will repay you for this wrong." Wait patiently on the Lord. He will avenge you.
- 6Better to be lowly and poor than to share ill-gotten gain with the proud.
- 7A man's wisdom gives him patience.
- 8Better a patient man than a warrior.
- 9It is to a man's glory to overlook an offence.
- 10Humility and reverence of the Lord bring wealth and honour.

12

Proverbs on kingship and ruling

- 1Righteousness exalts a nation.
- 2Where there is no vision the people perish.
- 3For lack of guidance a nation perishes, but in an abundance of advisers there is safety.
- 4The lips of a king speak as if from God, therefore his mouth should uphold justice.
- 5A large population is a king's glory.
- 6The first to present his case seems right until another comes forward and questions him.
- 7Casting a lot settles disputes and keeps strong opponents apart.
- 8When justice is done it brings joy to the righteous, but terror to evildoers.
- 9To show partiality in judging is not right. Whoever says to the guilty, "You are innocent," will be cursed.
- 10By justice a king gives a nation stability.
- 11When a king sits upon his throne to judge he detects evil with his eyes.
- 12A king's heart is in the hand of the Lord, he directs it wherever he pleases.

PROVERBS 13

- ¹³A wise king winnows out the wicked.
- ¹⁴Remove the dross from the silver and there is fine material for the silversmith. Remove the wicked from the king's presence and his reign will be righteous.
- ¹⁵A crown is not secure for all generations.
- ¹⁶Better is he who controls his temper than he who captures a city.
- ¹⁷When a king judges the poor with fairness his throne will ever be secure.
- ¹⁸A king's favour is like rain in the spring.
- ¹⁹A king's rage is like the roar of a lion.
- ²⁰A king's wrath brings death. A wise man will appease it.
- ²¹Many seek the favour of a ruler.
- ²²Unless the Lord protects the city the watchmen watch in vain.
- ²³A ruler greedy for bribes tears down his nation.
- ²⁴Kings of a rebellious nation have short reigns.
- ²⁵A ruler who oppresses the poor is like driving rain that destroys crops.
- ²⁶When a king listens to lies his officials become corrupt.
- ²⁷When the wicked rule, the people mourn.
- ²⁸Better a poor but wise youth, than an old but foolish king who no longer takes advice.
- ²⁹Pampering a servant from his youth breeds disrespect.
- ³⁰A wise servant will rule over a dishonourable son.
- ³¹A king delights in a wise servant.
- ³²Servants cannot be disciplined by words alone. Though they understand they will not give heed.
- ³³It is not fitting for a servant to rule over princes.

13

Proverbs on planning

- ¹Plans fail for lack of good advice, but with many advisers they succeed.
- ²For victory when waging war you need many advisers.
- ³Commit to the Lord whatever you do and your plans will succeed.
- ⁴The lot is cast but the decision is from the Lord.
- ⁵Many are the plans in a man's heart, but it is the will of the Lord that prevails.
- ⁶No plan can succeed against the will of the Lord.

14

Proverbs on love, kindness and giving

- ¹Through love and faithfulness a king's throne is made secure.
- ²He who seeks the good of others receives goodwill in return.
- ³Love atones for all offences.
- ⁴Love and faithfulness atone for sin.
- ⁵A true friend loves at all times.
- ⁶He who forgives an offence promotes love.
- ⁷If your enemy hungers give him food to eat. If he thirsts, give him water to drink. The Lord will reward you for this, and you will heap burning coals upon the head of your enemy.
- ⁸Like cool water to a weary soul is good news from a distance.
- ⁹An anxious heart weighs a man down but a kind word cheers his soul.
- ¹⁰A man who is kind to others also benefits himself.
- ¹¹A friend can be closer than a brother.
- ¹²He who refreshes others will at the same time be refreshed himself.
- ¹³A gift is a charm to the one who gives it. Wherever he turns he succeeds.
- ¹⁴Everybody is the friend of a man who gives gifts.
- ¹⁵A gift opens the way for the giver into the presence of the great.

15

Proverbs on care of the poor

- ¹Blessed is he who is kind to the needy.
- ²Whoever is kind to the needy honours God.
- ³He who is kind to the poor lends to the Lord, and the Lord will reward him for what he has done.
- ⁴He who gives to the poor shall not want.
- ⁵If a man shuts his ears to the cry of the poor, the day will come when he too will cry out and not be heard.
- ⁶He who closes his eyes to the poor receives many curses.
- ⁷He who oppresses the poor shows contempt for the Lord their maker.
- ⁸Do not move a boundary stone on the fields of the fatherless, for Jehovah their defender is strong.

16

Proverbs on friendship and relationships

- ¹As iron sharpens iron, so one man sharpens another.
- ²Forsake not your friend nor the friend of your father.
- ³What is desirable in a man is unfailing loyalty.
- ⁴Anger is cruel, but who is able to withstand jealousy?
- ⁵Ruthless men gain only wealth.
- ⁶An unfriendly man pursues selfishness.
- ⁷Whoever gloats over disaster will not go unpunished.
- ⁸Wounds from a friend can be trusted, but the kisses of an enemy are deceitful.
- ⁹Many men claim to be loyal, but who can find a truly faithful man.
- ¹⁰A crafty man is despised.
- ¹¹Even a child is known by his actions.
- ¹²The people curse the man who withholds grain.

17

Proverbs on family and children

- ¹Train up a child in the way he should go and when he is old he will not depart from it.
- ²He who spares the rod cares not for his son.
- ³Discipline your son, for in that there is hope.
- ⁴Foolishness is in the heart of a young man, but the rod of discipline will drive it far from him.
- ⁵Do not withhold discipline from your son. You will save his soul from Death.
- ⁶A child left to himself without correction disgraces his mother.
- ⁷He who loves his son is careful to discipline him.
- ⁸Discipline your son and he will give you peace and delight.
- ⁹A foolish son brings grief to his mother.
- ¹⁰A son who brings trouble on his family will inherit only wind.
- ¹¹The father of a righteous son has great joy.
- ¹²He who reveres the Lord has a secure fortress. It will be a refuge for his children.
- ¹³Blessed are the children of a man who has led a blameless life.
- ¹⁴A greedy man brings trouble upon his family.
- ¹⁵Grandchildren are a crown to the aged.

- ¹⁶A brother is born to help in adversity.
- ¹⁷An offended brother is more unyielding than a fortified city.
- ¹⁸Sons are a gift from the Lord, like arrows in the hands of a warrior. Blessed is the man whose quiver is full of them.
- ¹⁹“Be wise my son and bring joy to my heart. Then I can answer anyone who treats me with contempt.”

18

Proverbs on neighbours

- ¹Go not hastily to court to testify what you have seen with your eyes. You may be mistaken and be shamed by your neighbour. ²First speak with your neighbour before dishonouring him, or you may lose your own good name forever.
- ³Do not withhold good from those who deserve it, when it is in your power to act. And do not say to your neighbour, “Come back tomorrow,” when you have what he wants there with you.
- ⁴Set not foot in your neighbour’s house too often, lest he become weary of you.
- ⁵A righteous man cares for his neighbour.
- ⁶Like a madman shooting arrows, is he who deceives his neighbour and then says, “I was only joking.”
- ⁷If a man loudly blesses his neighbour early in the morning, it will be taken for a curse.
- ⁸Better a neighbour close by, than a brother far away.
- ⁹A man who lacks judgement belittles his neighbour.

19

Proverbs on work and labour

- ¹A man skilled in his work will serve before kings.
- ²Sow your fields first, then build your house.
- ³The desires of the diligent will be fully satisfied.
- ⁴He who tends a fig tree will eat its fruit.
- ⁵He who works his land will have abundant food.
- ⁶Hard work brings a profit, but talk brings only poverty.
- ⁷I passed by the field of the sluggard and saw the ground covered with weeds and the wall broken down.
- ⁸Go to the ant you sluggard. Consider her ways and be wise. She has no ruler yet she stores up provisions in summer for a time of need.

PROVERBS 20

- ⁹Like a door turns on its hinges, so a sluggard turns on his bed.
- ¹⁰He who loves sleep will grow poor.
- ¹¹Laziness ends in servitude.
- ¹²One who is slack in his work is brother to one who destroys.
- ¹³Like an archer who wounds at random is he who hires a drunkard.
- ¹⁴The labourer's hunger drives him on.
- ¹⁵He who is sated spurns honey, but to a hungry man even what is bitter tastes sweet.
- ¹⁶It is not needful to arise early and stay up late at night toiling anxiously for your needs. The Lord allows time to sleep for those he loves.

20

Proverbs on health and healing

- ¹"My son, be not wise in your own eyes, but revere the Lord and shun evil. This will bring health to your body and marrow to your bones.
- ²You will walk in safety and not stumble, and when you lie down you will not be anxious and your sleep will be sweet.
- ³You will have no fear of the sudden disaster that overtakes the wicked."
- ⁴Reverence of the Lord is the fountain of life.
- ⁵To revere the Lord adds length to life, but the years of the wicked are cut short.
- ⁶A heart at peace gives health to the body.
- ⁷A cheerful heart is good medicine.
- ⁸A cheerful smile brings joy to the heart.
- ⁹A man's spirit sustains him in sickness.
- ¹⁰An anxious heart weighs a man down.
- ¹¹Hope deferred makes the heart sick.
- ¹²A longing fulfilled is satisfying to the soul.
- ¹³An envious heart wastes the bones.
- ¹⁴A gentle tongue is a tree of life.
- ¹⁵Pleasant words are like a honeycomb, sweet to the soul and healing to the bones.
- ¹⁶A glad heart makes a cheerful countenance.
- ¹⁷Good news gives health to the bones.

- ¹⁸Better a dish of vegetables with love, than a fattened calf with hatred.
- ¹⁹Better a dry crust with peace and quiet, than a house full of feasting with strife.

21

Wisdom that the mother of king Lemuel^F * taught him

- ¹"O son of my womb, spend not your strength on women."
- ²"Nor is it for kings, O my son vowed to God, to drink wine or strong drink lest they forget the Law of God and deny the poor their rights."
- ³"Give strong drink to those who are dying, and wine to those who sorrow. Let them drink and forget their misery.
- ⁴But you my son, speak up and judge fairly. Defend the rights of the poor and the needy."

22

The sayings of Agur

- ¹"I am the most ignorant of men. I have not learned wisdom nor have I knowledge of the Holy One. For who has gone up to heaven and come down again? ²What is the name of God and the name of his son? Tell me if you know."
- ³"Nevertheless, every word of God is true and he is a shield to those who take refuge in him."
- ⁴"Two things I ask of you O Lord before I die. Keep falsehood far from me, and give me neither poverty nor riches. ⁵Otherwise I may have too much and disown you, or I may become poor and steal and dishonour your name."
- ⁶"There are four things that are never satisfied. The grave, the barren womb, thirsty dry land, and fire."
- ⁷"Under four things the earth trembles. A servant who becomes a king, a fool who is full of food, an unloved married woman, and a maidservant who displaces her mistress."
- ⁸"There are four things that move with a stately bearing. A lion, a strutting rooster, a he-goat, and a king with his army."
- ⁹"The eye that mocks a father and disobeys a mother will be pecked out by ravens of the valley."
- ¹⁰"This is the way of an adulteress. She afterward cleanses herself and says, 'I have done no wrong.'"

*Heading. The identity of King Lemuel is not known. Some Bible scholars believe it to be a poetic name for King Solomon.

Between the Testaments

Over 400 years separate the Old and New Testaments. The last book of the Old Testament is that of the prophet Malachi who lived about 440 BC.

In Malachi's day which was about a century after the exiles began returning from Babylonia, the Jews were settled in and around Jerusalem. They were governed by a high priest, an inherited Levite office, under the benign rule of the Persian empire.

After a further 100 years had passed, in 332 BC, Alexander the Great, a young Greek warrior-prince conquered the Persian empire and created the short lived Greek (or Hellenistic) empire. Nine years later he died at the age of 32 and his empire was divided into four large regions or kingdoms, Northern, Southern, Eastern, and Western, each ruled over by one of his four generals. Judea was part of the Northern kingdom also known as Syria and was ruled over by Alexander's former general Seleucus, now King Seleucus.

King Seleucus and his successors over the next 300 years strongly promoted Greek culture and idol worship throughout the Northern (Syrian) kingdom. This policy was remarkably successful, except among the Jews who had learnt their lesson regarding idolatry. Most resisted the policy and clung tightly to their own Jewish customs and worshipped Jehovah, especially the priests.

Things came to a head in 168 BC under the infamous rule of the Syrian king Antiochus IV who attempted to force Judea to give up her Jewish religion and submit to Greek idolatry, ie to worship the god Zeus.

Antiochus IV sent an army to plunder the Jerusalem Temple and to establish a garrison in the city. This army destroyed Jewish scriptures, forbade circumcision, forced the Jews to eat pork and built a pagan altar to the Greek god Zeus over the top of the Lord's altar and sacrificed a pig on it. Any Jew who resisted was put to death and many died.

Finally in desperation, an aged Jewish priest named Mattathias tore down a Greek altar in a small town of Judea and killed a fellow Jew who was encouraging other Jews to submit and adopt the Greek method of worship. Mattathias also killed one of the Syrian king's messengers then fled into the hills, taking with him his five sons.

Mattathias died soon afterward, but under the inspired leadership of his warrior son Judas, nick-named Maccabee ('the hammer') and two other surviving sons, plus the help of thousands of faithful Jews who gathered to them, they commenced guerrilla warfare against Syrian rule, and so began the famous Maccabean revolt.

Four years later, after much bloodshed, the Jews regained control of Jerusalem and re-consecrated the Temple. Twenty-two years later in 142 BC, after many battles Judea eventually gained their independence from Syrian rule.

Judas Maccabee and his two brothers, each in turn ruled Judea as governing high priests, expanding Jewish territory until eventually all of historic Israel (as in Solomon's day) was again under their control.^{F*}

Things deteriorated after the death of these three brothers and in 67 BC a Jewish monarchy was again set up. But it did not last long, the mighty Roman empire was on the rise and all the land of Israel fell to Rome four years later in 63 BC.

* This whole eventful period is covered by what are known as the apocryphal (meaning of doubtful authenticity) books 1st and 2nd Maccabees which are included in some Bibles, mostly Catholic translations. These two interesting books are independent accounts of the same events. However because of apparent exaggerations they are not regarded as inspired scripture by modern Bible scholars and are therefore excluded from most Protestant translations.

After some years of intrigue involving the Egyptian queen Cleopatra and the Roman emperor Julius Caesar, the skillful but ruthless Herod the Great (an Edomite not a Jew) was crowned vassal-king of Israel by Rome.

Herod the Great reigned as king for 37 years, erecting many magnificent buildings throughout Israel including a greatly enlarged Temple at Jerusalem. Unfortunately his mental health deteriorated in later years, leading to his tragic order to kill all the baby boys in the Bethlehem region at the time of the birth of Jesus in a vain attempt to destroy the long awaited Messiah-King.

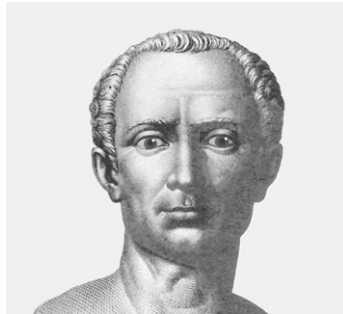
Herod died in 1 AD soon after the birth of Jesus Christ.^{F*} The land of Israel was then divided among Herod's three sons – Archelaus, Herod and Phillip.

Archelaus ruled over Judea in the south, Herod over Galilee in the north and Phillip over the region east of the Jordan river.

Like their father, all three kings were answerable to the Roman emperor who was now Caesar Augustus. Thus the scene is set for the notable events of the life of Jesus Christ, or more correctly Jesus the Christ, Christ being the Greek word for Messiah meaning '*the Anointed One*'.



Cleopatra queen of Egypt and lover of Julius Caesar.



Julius Caesar 102-44 BC, the most prominent of the Roman emperors.

* The best modern historical and astronomical research places the birth of Jesus in early April, 1 BC (there is no 0 BC). The account by Jewish historian Josephus of King Herod dying in 4 BC was evidently an error of calculation based on a misunderstanding of the historic documents he used as a resource.

MATTHEW-MARK-LUKE

The three gospels (gospel means 'good news') of Matthew, Mark and Luke, which are all similar, have been combined into one narrative in this Condensed Bible. However the gospel of John which is quite different has been left separate. Each of the four gospels gives an account of the life of Jesus Christ from a different man's viewpoint.

Mark's short account is widely believed to have been the first of the three Greek gospels written, but early traditions maintain that Matthew was the first to write a short gospel, in Aramaic (a sister language of Hebrew and the spoken language that Jesus used) as early as six years after the resurrection of Jesus. This gospel was said to contain much dialogue of Jesus and that many years later it was translated by an unknown writer into the Greek version we have today. At the same time it was enlarged by including many of the events from Mark's gospel.

If this tradition is correct, Mark borrowed from Matthew's original Aramaic version and used it as a resource for his own gospel, especially the dialogue of Jesus. Luke and the later translator of Matthew's Aramaic gospel into Greek in turn appear to have taken material from Mark and other sources. This was an acceptable custom of their day and also during Old Testament times. Today an author would feel obliged to completely rewrite any previously published material.

Matthew's intended readership is clearly Jewish. His main emphasis is on proving from the Old Testament which he quotes often, that Jesus was the promised Messiah (or Christ). His gospel includes many of the words Jesus spoke whereas Mark and Luke dwell more on what Jesus did.

Mark's intended readership appears to have been the Gentiles (non-Jews) as he takes time to explain Jewish customs. His account, though the shortest of all the gospels is full of action and contains vivid details that could only have come from an eye witness, ie *"Jesus was asleep on a cushion in the stern."* According to tradition his gospel was written ten years after the resurrection, the apostle Peter being his main source.

Luke's elegant and descriptive gospel, a companion book to Acts and according to tradition, written 24 years after the resurrection is addressed to Theophilus, a Greek or Roman individual of some importance. In the traditional Bible account Luke introduces his gospel with these words, *"Since many have set down an account of the events that have occurred among us, as they were handed on to us by those who were eyewitnesses from the beginning, I too have decided, having investigated everything carefully from the very first, to write an orderly account for you most excellent Theophilus, so that you may know the truth concerning the things about which you have been taught."*

Luke then proceeds to do exactly that, and the result is a literary masterpiece. Luke also appears to have been a very compassionate man, he exalts women in his writings and softens or omits the faults of the apostles that are found in the other gospels. He also emphasises the importance of prayer and of taking care of the poor.

AUTHOR

Matthew was primarily written by the apostle Matthew, a former tax collector.

Mark was written by John Mark, a close friend of the apostle Peter whom he used as a resource.

Luke was written by Luke, a Syrian of Antioch, a physician and missionary companion of Paul.

Also, demons came out of many people, shouting, "You are the Son of God!"
But Jesus rebuked them and forbade them to speak for they knew
he was the Christ. Matthew-Mark-Luke 5:24.

“If someone strikes you on the right cheek, turn to him the other also.”

Matthew-Mark-Luke 8:3.

“Come unto me all you who are weary and heavy laden, and I will give you rest.” Matthew-Mark-Luke 12:19.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Parents of John the Baptist	1	Jesus fasts for forty days	4
Angel appears to Zechariah in the Temple	1	Jesus tempted with fleshly desire	4
Zechariah's wife Elizabeth to bear him a son	1	Jesus tempted to proudly test God	4
Son to be named John	1	Jesus tempted with worldly power and wealth	4
John to avoid alcoholic drink	1	Angels visit Jesus	4
John to prepare Israel for coming of the Lord	1	Herod imprisons John the Baptist	5
Zechariah struck dumb for disbelieving the angel	1	Herod's wife Herodias wants John killed	5
Zechariah's wife Elizabeth conceives	1	Jesus returns to Galilee	5
Angel Gabriel sent to Mary a virgin in Nazareth	1	Jesus teaches in his home town synagogue	5
Mary to give birth to a son and name him Jesus	1	No prophet accepted in his home town	5
Jesus to reign as king over Israel forever	1	Elijah and Elisha of old sent to non-Israelites	5
Jesus to be conceived by the power of God	1	Men of Nazareth become enraged at Jesus	5
Nothing impossible with God	1	Try to push him over a cliff	5
Mary goes to visit Elizabeth	1	Jesus returns to Capernaum	5
Elizabeth and Mary prophesy	1	Demons recognise Jesus as the Holy One of God	5
Elizabeth's son is born	1	Jesus orders demons out of the man	5
The naming of John	1	People bring many sick and possessed people	5
Zechariah is able to speak again	1	Jesus heals them all	5
Zechariah prophesies about John and the Christ	1	Jesus teaches from Peter's fishing boat	5
Mary is found to be with child	2	Jesus tells Peter and Andrew to let down their nets	5
Joseph decides to divorce Mary	2	They catch so many fish their net begins to break	5
Angel instructs Joseph to take Mary as his wife	2	Peter humbles himself before Jesus	5
Joseph and Mary travel to Bethlehem	2	Jesus calls Peter to be a fisher of men	5
Jesus born in a stable at Bethlehem	2	Jesus also calls Andrew, James and John	5
Angel appears to shepherds in a nearby field	2	Jesus asked to heal a Roman centurion's servant	6
Great multitude of angels appear, praising God	2	Centurion asks Jesus to just say the word	6
Shepherds go into Bethlehem to find the child	2	Jesus marvels at the Roman centurion's faith	6
Jesus circumcised and named on eighth day	2	Many non-Israelites will enter the kingdom of God	6
Jesus redeemed at Temple in Jerusalem	2	The centurion's servant is healed	6
Simeon proclaims Jesus the long awaited Christ	2	Great crowds come to hear and be healed by Jesus	6
Simeon prophesies regarding Jesus and Mary	2	Jesus often withdrew to pray	6
Anna the prophetess also testifies of Jesus	2	Paralysed man lowered through the roof	6
Joseph and Mary return to Nazareth	2	Jesus forgives sins of the paralysed man	6
Wise men of the east come searching	3	Jesus thought guilty of blasphemy	6
Herod is disturbed and inquirers regarding the Christ	3	Jesus commands the paralysed man to walk home	6
Herod instructs the wise men to report back to him	3	Proof that Jesus can forgive sins	6
A star leads the wise men to Jesus	3	Matthew the tax collector called to be a disciple	6
Wise men worship Jesus and give gifts	3	Matthew holds a feast for Jesus and his disciples	6
Wise men warned not to return to Herod	3	Pharisees murmur at Jesus eating with sinners	6
Angel warns Joseph to flee to Egypt	3	Jesus came to call sinners to repentance	6
Herod orders all infant boys in Bethlehem area killed	3	Jesus is asked why his disciples do not fast	6
Herod dies and Joseph returns to Nazareth	3	Days of fasting will come	6
Jesus grows strong and is filled with wisdom	3	New wineskins needed for new wine	6
Jesus stays behind in Jerusalem after Passover	3	Jesus prays all night on a mountain	7
Jesus now twelve years old	3	Jesus chooses his twelve apostles	7
Joseph and Mary find Jesus in a Temple courtyard	3	Names of the Twelve	7
Jesus conversing with teachers of the Law	3	Jesus heals on the mountain	7
Jesus returns to Nazareth with his parents	3	Jesus begins his 'sermon on the mount'	7
John the Baptist begins his ministry	4	Love and pray for your enemies	7
John's clothes and food	4	Do not demand back what is taken from you	7
Many confess their sins and are baptised	4	The golden rule	7
John rebukes the Pharisees and Sadducees	4	Even sinners love those who love them	7
John teaches the people how to live righteously	4	Act with love and kindness	7
John preparing the way for one more powerful	4	Act without expecting a reward in this life	7
Jesus baptised by John	4	Be merciful and perfect as your Father in heaven	7
Spirit of God descends upon Jesus	4	You are the salt of the earth	7
The Spirit in likeness of a dove	4	Let your light shine before others	7
God the Father acknowledges Jesus as his Son	4	Your eye is the lamp of the body	7

Be not angry with another	7	Jesus goes to heal the daughter of Jairus	10
Reconcile your brother before offering a gift to God	7	A woman touches Jesus and is healed of bleeding ...	10
To look lustfully is adultery	7	Jesus asks who touched him	10
Remarrying after divorce is adultery	7	Woman's faith healed her	10
Unless divorced spouse was unfaithful	7	Jairus told that his daughter is dead	10
Do not swear oaths	8	Mourners laugh at words of Jesus	10
Turn the other cheek	8	Jesus raises daughter of Jairus to life	10
Give double if someone would sue you	8	Jesus heals two blind men	10
Go the extra mile	8	Mute demon driven out	10
Give to one who would beg or borrow from you	8	Jesus has compassion on the crowds	11
Do not do acts of kindness to be seen of others	8	Jesus gives apostles authority to preach and heal ..	11
Give to the needy in secret	8	Apostles to be sent to lost sheep of Israel	11
Pray in secret	8	Apostles to be cared for by the people	11
Do not repeat the same words when praying	8	To shake dust off their feet when not welcomed	11
The Lord's prayer	8	Apostles going out like sheep among wolves	11
Forgive others or your own sins will not be forgiven.....	8	Not a sparrow falls without the will of the Father	11
Ask and you shall receive	8	Jesus to acknowledge faithful before the Father	11
Fast in secret	8	Charitable believers will not lose their reward	11
Do not store up treasures on earth	8	Whoever loves family more is unworthy of Jesus ...	11
You cannot serve both God and wealth	8	Whoever loses his life for Jesus sake will find it	11
Do not worry about food or drink	8	The Twelve sent out on their missions two by two...11	
Do not worry about clothing	8	Jesus visits the town of Nain	11
First seek the kingdom of God	8	Jesus raises a widow's son to life	11
Then all these things will be yours	8	John the Baptist sends two disciples to Jesus	12
Do not worry about tomorrow	8	Jesus sends John's disciples back	12
Judge not others	9	John's disciples to report what they have seen	12
Forgive and you will be forgiven	9	Jesus speaks of John the Baptist	12
First remove the log from your own eye	9	Forceful men will grasp the kingdom of God	12
Then take the speck from another's eye	9	John the Baptist is the Elijah who was to come.....	12
Give generously to receive	9	Both John and Jesus criticised by this generation ..	12
Cast not pearls before swine	9	Jesus denounces three cities	12
Wide is the gate that leads to Death	9	Truth hidden from the self-wise and learned	12
Narrow the way that leads to Eternal Life	9	Truth revealed to the humble	12
Jesus came to fulfil the scriptures	9	Jesus truly knows the Father and can reveal him ...	12
Those who will be least in the kingdom of God	9	Come unto me all you weary and heavy laden.....	12
Those who will be great in the kingdom of God	9	Jesus goes to dine with a Pharisee	12
Your righteousness must exceed that of Pharisees ..	9	Sabbath made for man not man for the Sabbath	13
False prophets known by their fruits	9	Man with a shrivelled hand healed on the Sabbath .	13
Out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks ..	9	The Pharisees are incensed and plot to kill Jesus ..	13
Not all known to Lord who do miracles in his name ..	9	Jesus returns to Capernaum	13
Man who built his house upon the rock	9	Great crowds push to touch Jesus	13
Man who built his house upon the sand	9	Jesus unable to eat because of the crowds	13
Golden rule sums up the scriptures	9	Family of Jesus set out to take charge of him	13
Crowds amazed at the authority of Jesus	9	His family think Jesus out of his mind	13
Weeping sinful woman anoints feet of Jesus	9	Jesus said to be possessed by Satan	13
Pharisee critical of Jesus for allowing woman	9	Pharisees ask for a sign from heaven	13
Parable of the forgiving moneylender	9	Only the sign of the prophet Jonah to be given	13
Jesus forgives the woman her sins	9	Men of Nineveh will condemn this generation	13
Jesus heals Peter's mother-in-law of a high fever ..	10	Also the Queen of Sheba	13
Jesus arises while still dark to pray alone	10	How can Satan drive out Satan?.....	13
Jesus must preach the good news to other towns ..	10	Demons are driven out by the Holy Spirit	13
Jesus teaches and heals throughout Galilee	10	Blasphemy against Holy Spirit an eternal sin	13
Great crowds begin to follow Jesus everywhere	10	A tree known by its fruit	13
Jesus heals a leper	10	Every careless word to be accounted for	13
Healed leper spreads news of his healing	10	Final state of this generation worse than at first ..	13
Jesus has to stay mostly in the countryside	10	Blessed are they who obey the word of God	13
Jesus and his disciples try to escape the crowds ..	10	Mother and brothers of Jesus arrive	13
Son of Man has no place to lay his head	10	All who do will of the Father are family to Jesus....	13
Let the spiritually dead bury the dead	10	Jesus again teaches from a boat	14
Anyone who looks back is unfit for the kingdom	10	Parable of the sower	14
Jesus calms the storm	10	Why Jesus spoke in parables	14
Naked and demon possessed man	10	Many prophets longed to see what disciples see	14
Head demon recognises Jesus	10	Meaning of the parable of the sower	14
Jesus permits demons to enter a herd of pigs	10	Parable of the seeds and the grain harvest	14
Pigs drown in the lake	10	Parable of the wheat and the tares	14
Local people fear Jesus and beg him to leave	10	Parable of the mustard seed	14
Jesus sends delivered man home to tell others.....	10	Parable of the yeast and the dough	14
Jesus returns to Capernaum	10	Jesus always used parables	14

MATT-MARK-LUKE

Meaning of parable of wheat and tares	14	Peter will find the coin in a fish's mouth	18
Parable of treasure hidden in a field	14	Apostles argue as to which of them is greatest	18
Parable of the pearl of great price	14	Apostles must humble themselves as little children ...	18
Parable of the catch of all kinds of fish	14	Woe to whoever leads a little child into sin	18
Knowledge of the kingdom like a new treasure	14	Angels of little children behold the Father's face	18
Jesus again visits Nazareth	14	Parable of the lost sheep	18
Brothers of Jesus named	14	Try to reconcile with those who sin against you	18
Few miracles done in Nazareth due to lack of faith	14	Avoid a person who refuses to reconcile	18
Herodias has John the Baptist beheaded	15	Forgive seventy times seven	18
The Twelve return from their missions	15	Parable of the unmerciful servant	18
Jesus desires to take Twelve to a quiet place	15	Whoever is not against apostles is for them	18
A great crowd await their arrival	15	Jesus begins to journey toward Jerusalem	19
First miracle of the loaves and fishes	15	Samaritan village does not welcome him	19
5000 men plus women and children fed	15	James and John propose calling down fire	19
Apostles leave by boat without Jesus	15	Jesus rebukes James and John	19
Jesus dismisses crowd then prays alone	15	Ten lepers healed	19
Jesus walks on the water	15	Only one leper returns to thank Jesus	19
Peter also walks on water	15	Jesus sends seventy disciples out on missions	19
Sick healed at Bethesda by touching Jesus	15	Instructions to the seventy	19
Who is this man Jesus?	16	Jesus continues town by town toward Jerusalem	19
Pharisees critical of disciples of Jesus	16	Jesus asked what one must do to gain Eternal Life ...	19
They do not wash their hands before eating	16	Love God with all your heart	19
Jesus condemns traditions of the Pharisees	16	Love neighbour as yourself	19
What comes out of the mouth defiles	16	Parable of the good Samaritan	19
Pharisees are blind guides	16	The seventy return with great joy	19
Disciples not to be called Rabbi, Father, or Master	16	Jesus watched as Satan was cast out of heaven ...	19
Teaching on defilement explained	16	Jesus full of joy praises the Father	19
Sins that defile	16	Mary and Martha	19
Jesus visits region of Tyre	16	Jesus teaches in the towns around Jerusalem	20
A Greek woman comes to Jesus for help	16	Disciples ask Jesus to teach them to pray	20
Woman's daughter demon-possessed	16	Be persistent in prayer	20
Jesus sent only to the Israelites	16	Ask and you shall receive	20
Jesus commends Greek woman's great faith	16	Parable of the widow and unjust judge	20
Her daughter delivered from the demon	16	Jesus goes to eat at home of a Pharisee	20
Jesus visits the cities east of Lake Galilee	16	Jesus rebukes hypocrisy of the Pharisees	20
Jesus heals on the mountain side	16	Teachers of the Law also rebuked	20
Deaf man with a speech impediment healed	16	Pharisees and teachers of Law oppose Jesus	20
Second miracle of loaves and fishes	16	A great crowd of many thousands gather	21
4000 men plus women and children fed	16	Jesus warns his disciples against hypocrisy	21
Jesus visits Magdala	16	All hidden things will one day be revealed	21
Jesus again asked for a sign from heaven	16	Jesus warns crowd against greed	21
Disciples warned against false teaching	16	Parable of the foolish rich man	21
Hypocrisy of the Pharisees and Sadducees	16	Disciples told to sell their possessions	21
Blind man healed	17	Where your treasure is your heart will be also	21
Jesus goes north to Caesarea Philippi	17	Parable of the dishonest steward	21
Peter acknowledges Jesus is the Christ	17	Worldly people shrewder than those of kingdom	21
Peter given keys to seal on earth and in heaven	17	One honest with little can be trusted with much	21
Disciples not to reveal that Jesus is the Christ	17	Cannot serve both God and money	21
Jesus reveals that he must die at Jerusalem	17	Parable of Lazarus and the rich man	21
After three days he will rise again	17	Parable of the prepared and faithful servants	21
Never Lord says Peter	17	Son of Man to return unexpectedly	21
Jesus rebukes Peter	17	Parable of faithful and unfaithful servant	21
Whoever loses his life for Jesus sake will find it	17	Jesus anguished about his coming crucifixion	21
What does it profit a man to gain the whole world ..	17	Jesus to bring division on earth until he returns	21
Jesus to be ashamed of anyone ashamed of him ..	17	Those killed accidentally not worse sinners	22
Some present will soon see Jesus in his glory	17	Parable of fertilising a barren fig tree	22
Jesus transfigured before Peter, James and John ..	17	Bent over woman healed on Sabbath	22
Moses and Elijah appear	17	Synagogue ruler indignant	22
God the Father speaks from within a cloud	17	Jesus rebukes the synagogue ruler	22
Apostles not yet to reveal what they have seen	17	Jesus asked if only a few will be saved	22
John the Baptist a type of Elijah	17	Many non-Israelites will enter the kingdom	22
Disciples unable to drive out a demon	17	Many Israelites will be thrust out	22
All things can be done for one who believes	17	Jesus dines in house of a prominent Pharisee	22
Jesus drives out the demon	17	Jesus heals a man with dropsy on the Sabbath	22
Disciples ask why they could not drive it out	17	Take the lowest place at a feast	22
Faith can move a mountain	17	Invite the poor to your feasts	22
Prayer and fasting required to cast out that kind ..	17	Parable of the great feast	22
Jesus tells Peter to pay the annual Temple tax	18	Be prepared to give up all to follow Jesus	23

Two parables of counting the cost	23	Do what they teach but not what they do	27
Parable of the lost sheep	23	Hypocrites strongly rebuked	27
Joy in heaven when a sinner repents	23	Pharisee converts become twice as bad as before ...	27
Parable of the lost coin	23	Woe to you blind fools	27
Parable of the prodigal son	23	This generation to suffer for blood of prophets	27
Forgive seven times in one day if necessary	23	The poor widow's offering	27
Faith small as a mustard seed results in miracles ...	23	Jesus prophesies destruction of the Temple	28
Where two apostles agree it will be done for them ..	23	Apostles ask Jesus when this will happen	28
Necessary to do more than duty alone	23	What will be sign of his return	28
Kingdom of God is here among you now	24	Apostles to suffer	28
Jesus speaks of his second coming	24	Apostles to testify before leaders of nations	28
Second coming will be like the days of Noah	24	Holy Spirit to give apostles words to speak	28
One person will be taken and one left	24	Enduring to end will bring Eternal Life	28
Jesus wonders if he will then find faith on the earth ..	24	Destruction of Jerusalem during this generation	28
Parable of the Pharisee and the tax collector	24	Surviving Jews to be scattered to all nations	28
Why Moses allowed divorce	24	Jerusalem to be trampled on by Gentiles	28
Remarrying after divorce adultery	24	False Christs to arise	28
Jesus blesses the little children	24	Nation to war against nation	28
Jesus told that Herod wants to kill him	24	Earthquakes famines and plagues	28
Jesus mourns over the wickedness of Jerusalem ..	24	False prophets to arise	28
The wealthy young ruler	24	Family members to take one another's lives	28
Hard for rich to enter the kingdom of God	24	Wickedness to increase	28
What is impossible for men is possible with God ...	24	Love of most will grow cold	28
The Twelve to judge the twelve tribes of Israel ...	24	Gospel to again be preached in all the world	28
They who give up all will receive a hundred fold ...	24	Great tribulation to come in final days	28
The faithful to gain Eternal Life	24	Sun and moon will be darkened	28
Parable of paying workers in the vineyard	24	Great waves of the sea will roar	28
Jesus tells Twelve of his coming death	24	Distress and terror	28
Jesus to be resurrected	24	All nations will then see Son of Man coming	28
The request of mother of James and John	24	With power and great glory in clouds of heaven ...	28
To sit at his right or left not for Jesus to grant ...	24	Angels to gather elect with a loud trumpet call ...	28
Other apostles indignant with James and John	24	Parable of signs of the fig tree	28
Whoever would be great must serve	24	To occur in generation in which all signs seen	28
Zacchaeus the wealthy tax collector	25	No one knows the day only the Father	28
Jesus tells Zacchaeus he must stay at his house ...	25	One will be taken and the other left	28
Zacchaeus repents and gives to the poor	25	Parable of the thief in the night	28
Blind man named Bartimaeus healed	25	Parable of the wise and foolish virgins	29
Jesus sends two disciples to fetch a donkey	25	Parable of the talents	29
Jesus' triumphal entry into Jerusalem	25	The day of judgement	29
Jesus rode a donkey to fulfil scripture	25	People to be separated like sheep from goats	29
Jesus weeps over Jerusalem	25	Caring people will inherit the kingdom of God	29
Jesus prophesies the destruction of Jerusalem ...	25	Uncaring people will inherit Eternal Punishment ...	29
Jesus heals in the Temple	26	Jesus to be crucified during the Passover	30
Jewish leaders indignant at praising of Jesus	26	The leaders plot to arrest Jesus stealthily	30
Jesus and Twelve stay the night at Bethany	26	Jesus teaches daily at the Temple	30
Jesus curses a fig tree	26	Mary anoints Jesus with perfumed oil	30
Jesus drives merchants from the Temple courts ...	26	Judas critical of the waste of money	30
Jewish leaders look for way to kill Jesus	26	Jesus rebukes Judas for bothering the woman	30
Next morning the fig tree has withered	26	Judas goes to priests to betray Jesus	30
With faith a mountain can be ordered into the sea ..	26	Chief priests pay Judas thirty silver coins	30
When praying believe and it will be yours	26	Peter and John prepare the Passover supper	31
But first forgive all others	26	The last supper	31
City leaders and priests challenge Jesus' authority ...	26	Jesus tells the Twelve that one will betray him	31
Jesus questions them about John the Baptist	26	Judas goes out into the night	31
Parable of the two sons	26	Jesus gives bread and wine to his apostles	31
Parable of the unrighteous vineyard tenants	26	In remembrance of his body and blood	31
Priests want to arrest Jesus but fear the crowd	26	Jesus to drink new wine with apostles in kingdom ...	31
Parable of the wedding feast	26	The greatest to be one who serves	31
Pharisees plan to trap Jesus in his words	27	Apostles to sit on thrones	31
Jesus asked if it is right to pay taxes to Caesar	27	Peter to strengthen the other apostles	31
Give to Caesar the things that are Caesars	27	When he is truly converted	31
Sadducees question Jesus about the resurrection ..	27	Peter told he will deny Jesus three times that night ...	31
Jesus corrects false belief of the Sadducees	27	Protection to be withdrawn from apostles for a time..	31
The two most important commandments	27	Jesus and the apostles go out to Gethsemane	31
Jesus commends a teacher of the Law	27	Jesus is sorrowful and troubled	31
Jesus corrects a false belief of the Pharisees	27	Jesus prays that his Father remove the suffering ...	31
No one dares ask Jesus any more questions	27	Yet not my will but yours be done	31
Hypocritical teachers receive greater condemnation ..	27	An angel comes to strengthen Jesus	31

MATT-MARK-LUKE 1

Jesus in great anguish sweats blood	31
The apostles cannot remain awake	31
Judas arrives with an armed force to arrest Jesus	31
Judas identifies Jesus with a kiss	31
Peter attacks and cuts off ear of a servant	31
Jesus rebukes Peter and restores the ear	31
Darkness reigns that prophecy be fulfilled	31
Apostles flee	31
Jesus taken before the high priest and leaders	32
Peter follows at a distance	32
Jewish leaders look for testimony against Jesus	32
Jesus remains silent	32
Jesus ordered to reveal if he is the Christ	32
Jesus confirms that he is the Christ	32
High priest accuses Jesus of blasphemy	32
Leaders and guards mock and beat Jesus	32
Peter denies Jesus three times	32
Peter goes out and weeps bitterly	32
Jesus officially condemned to death	32
Judas is filled with remorse	32
Judas returns the silver coins then hangs himself ..	32
The priests use the money to buy a burial field	32
Jesus accused before Pilate the Roman governor ..	33
Jesus makes no reply to the charges	33
Pilate finds no basis for charges	33
Pilate sends Jesus to Herod	33
Jesus refuses to speak to Herod	33
Herod and his soldiers mock Jesus	33
Jesus returned to Pilate	33
Pilate tries to free Jesus	33
Dream of Pilate's wife	33
Pilate threatens to release Barabbas a criminal	33
Crowd chooses Barabbas over Jesus	33
Crucify him!	33
Pilate has Jesus flogged	33
Roman soldiers mock Jesus	33
Pilate tries again in vain to release Jesus	33
Pilate yields to demands of the people	33
Pilate washes his hands of innocent blood	33
Jesus handed over to soldiers to be crucified	33
Simon of Cyrene carries the cross	33
Weeping women follow Jesus	33
Jesus prophesies of troubled times to come	33
Two criminals also led out to be crucified	33
Jesus is crucified	34
Jesus prays that the Roman soldiers be forgiven ...	34
The soldiers divide up his clothes	34

Leaders, soldiers and passer-by's mock Jesus	34
One of the two criminals believes in Jesus	34
Jesus says 'Today you will be with me in Paradise' ...	34
Three hours of darkness	34
Jesus cries out to the Father	34
Jesus dies	34
Veil of the Temple split	34
An earthquake	34
Many holy saints resurrected	34
Resurrected saints later show themselves	34
Onlookers are awed	34
Followers of Jesus watch from a distance	34
Joseph a ruler asks Pilate for body of Jesus	34
Joseph takes down body of Jesus	34
Joseph wraps it and lays it in his own tomb	34
Women buy anointing spices	34
Women rest on the Sabbath day	34
Jewish leaders have tomb sealed and guarded	35
Women set out Sunday morning to embalm Jesus....	35
Jesus is resurrected	35
Roman guards run and report what happened	35
Chief priests bribe the guards to lie	35
Two angels speak to the women at the tomb	35
The women are filled with joy	35
They hurry back to tell the apostles	35
The women are not believed	35
Peter and John run out to the tomb	35
Mary Magdalene returns again to the tomb	35
Mary Magdalene sees the resurrected Jesus	35
Jesus appears and walks with two disciples	35
Jesus explains the scriptures concerning himself ...	35
The two disciples suddenly recognise Jesus	35
Jesus also appears to Peter	35
Jesus appears in the midst of all his disciples	35
Disciples think he is a spirit	35
Jesus eats in front of his disciples	35
Jesus explains scriptures about the Christ	35
Jesus sends his disciples to preach to all the world ...	35
Whoever believes and is baptised shall be saved	35
Miraculous signs to accompany those who believe...35	
Disciples to await the Holy Spirit in Jerusalem	35
Jesus taken up to God the Father	35
The disciples rejoice in the Temple daily	35
The apostles see and worship Jesus in Galilee	35
Apostles to baptise and teach all nations	35
Miraculous signs attend the apostles preaching	35

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

The parents of John the Baptist

¹In the days of Herod^{F*} king of Israel there was a Levite priest named Zechariah. Both he and his wife Elizabeth were upright in the sight of God and kept his commandments blamelessly. ²But they had no children, for Elizabeth was barren and they were both advanced in years.

*1 Herod the Great, 73 BC - 4 BC. Not an anointed king as was David but an appointed vassal-king answerable to the Roman emperor. He was not a Jew but an Edomite.

An angel appears to Zechariah in the Temple

³Now it happened one day that Zechariah was chosen by lot to do his duty as priest and burn incense in the Temple, while the assembled worshipers prayed outside. ⁴As Zechariah did so, an angel of the Lord appeared to him, standing at the right hand side of the altar of incense.

Zechariah's wife Elizabeth to bear him a son and name him John

⁵Zechariah was afraid when he saw him, but the angel said, "**Fear not Zechariah, your**

prayer has been heard. Your wife Elizabeth will bear you a son and you are to name him John. ⁶He shall be a delight to you and many will rejoice because of his birth, for he shall be great in the sight of the Lord.”

John to avoid alcoholic drink

⁷“He is never to drink wine or strong drink.^{F*} And he shall be filled with the Holy Spirit, even from his mother’s womb.”

John to prepare Israel for the coming of the Lord

⁸“Many of Israel will he turn back to Jehovah their God.”

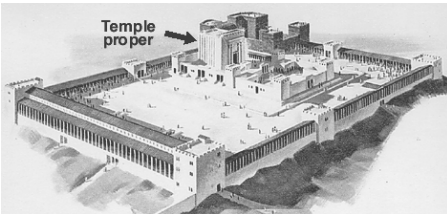
⁹“In the spirit and power of Elijah he shall go forth to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and sinners to righteousness to prepare the people for the coming of the Lord.”

Zechariah struck dumb for disbelieving the angel

¹⁰Zechariah said to the angel, “How can this be? I and my wife are well advanced in years.”

¹¹The angel answered, “**I am Gabriel^{F*} and stand in the presence of God. I have been sent to tell you this good news, but as you have disbelieved my words you shall be struck dumb until the day they are fulfilled.**”

¹²Meanwhile the worshippers outside were wondering why Zechariah was so long in the Temple. When at last he came out he could not speak, but made signs to them showing that he had seen a vision.



A model of Herod’s magnificent Temple complex in Jerusalem. The Temple proper where the angel Gabriel appeared to Zechariah, father of John the Baptist is the comparatively small building indicated by the arrow.

Zechariah’s wife Elizabeth conceives

¹³In due course Zechariah’s wife Elizabeth conceived. She said, “The Lord has taken away my disgrace.”

The angel Gabriel sent to Mary a virgin in Nazareth

¹⁴Six months later, God sent the angel Gabriel to Nazareth, a town in the district of Galilee to a virgin whose name was Mary.

¹⁵The angel said to her, “**Rejoice O highly favoured one, for the Lord is with you.**”

Mary to give birth to a son and name him Jesus

¹⁶Mary was troubled at his words but the angel said to her, “**Be not afraid Mary, for**

you have found favour with God and will become with child and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus.”

Jesus to reign as king over Israel forever

¹⁷“He will be great and will be called the Son of the Most High.”

¹⁸“The Lord God will give him the throne of your forefather David^{F*} and he will reign over the house of Israel for ever.”

Jesus to be conceived by the power of the Most High God

¹⁹Mary asked, “How can this be, since I have no husband?”

²⁰The angel answered, “**The Holy Spirit will come upon you and the power of the Most High shall overshadow you. Therefore the Holy One to be born of you will be called the Son of God.**”

Nothing is impossible with God

²²“**Know also that your relative Elizabeth has conceived a child in her old age. She who was barren is now in her sixth month.**”

²³Mary answered, “I am the Lord’s servant, may it be to me as you say.”

Mary goes to visit Elizabeth

²⁴Then Mary set out and travelled to the home of Zechariah and Elizabeth in Judea.

Elizabeth and Mary both prophesy

²⁵When Elizabeth heard Mary’s voice, her child leapt for joy in her womb and she was filled with the Holy Spirit.

²⁶In a loud voice she prophesied to Mary saying, “**Blessed are you among women, and blessed is the fruit of your womb.**”

²⁷Then she said, “Why am I so blessed that the mother of my Lord should come to me?”

²⁸Then Mary also prophesied saying, “**My spirit rejoices in God my Saviour, for he has been mindful of his humble servant. Surely all generations will call me blessed, for he who is mighty has done great things for me. Holy is his name.**”

²⁹Mary stayed with Elizabeth three months, then she returned home.

Elizabeth’s son is born

³⁰When Elizabeth’s time came to give birth, she bore a son. Her neighbours and relatives shared her joy and on the eighth day they gathered to name and circumcise the child.

The naming of John

³¹They were going to name him Zechariah after his father, but Elizabeth said to them, “He is to be called John.”

³²They said to her, “There is no one of that name in your family,” and they made signs to Zechariah to find out what he wished to name the child.^{F*}

*7 ie John was to be a Nazarite as was Samuel and Samson. See Judges 9:1-3 and Samuel 1:7 and accompanying notes.

*11 Gabriel also appeared to Daniel (Daniel 6:12 and 9:7).

*18 Mary was a descendant of King David.

*32 Zechariah was apparently struck deaf as well as dumb.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 2

Zechariah is able to speak again

³³Zechariah motioned for a writing tablet, and he wrote, "His name is John." Immediately his tongue was loosed and he began to speak and praise God.

Zechariah prophesies about his son John and the coming Christ

³⁴Then Zechariah, filled with the Holy Spirit prophesied saying, "**Praise be to Jehovah the God of Israel, for he has looked with favour upon his people, to redeem them as he promised by his holy prophets long ago.**"

³⁵"**He has raised up a Saviour for us in the house of David to save us from our enemies, that we may serve him without fear.**"

³⁶"**And you my son, will be called a prophet of the Most High, for you will go before the Lord and prepare the way for him, and teach his people the way of salvation through the forgiveness of their sins.**"

³⁷"**The day is dawning that shall give light to those living in the darkness of death and guide our feet to the way of peace.**"

³⁸All those present were filled with awe, and throughout the hill country of Judea all who heard these things wondered and asked, "What will this child be?"

³⁹John grew and became strong in spirit and lived in the desert until he appeared publicly in Judea.

2

Joseph decides to divorce Mary when she is found to be with child

¹Now Mary was betrothed to be married to a man named Joseph, a carpenter, and also a descendant of David, but before they came together she was found to be with child, through the Holy Spirit.

²Because Joseph was a righteous man and also because he did not want to expose her to public disgrace, he decided to divorce her quietly.^{F*}

An angel instructs Joseph to take Mary home as his wife

³But an angel appeared to him in a dream and said, "**Joseph, do not fear to take Mary as your wife, for what is conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit. She shall give birth to a son and you are to name him Jesus,^{F*} for he will save his people from their sins.**"

⁴So Joseph did as the angel commanded him and took Mary to his home as his wife. But he did not lie with her until after she had given birth.

Joseph and Mary travel to Bethlehem to register in a Roman census

⁵In those days, Caesar Augustus decreed that a census should be taken of the entire Roman

*2 A betrothal was more binding than a modern engagement and could only be broken by divorce.

*3 Jesus is the Greek version of the Hebrew name Joshua (usually pronounced 'Yehoshua') and means 'Jehovah saves.'

empire, therefore all the people went to their ancestral towns to register. ⁶Joseph and Mary went to Bethlehem^{F*} as they belonged to the house of David.



Caesar Augustus the Roman emperor who reigned when Jesus was born.

Jesus is born in a stable at Bethlehem

⁷While they were there, the time came for the child to be born, and Mary gave birth to her firstborn son. ⁸She wrapped him in swaddling cloth^{F*} and placed him in a manger,^{F*} for there was no room for them in the inn.



Stable in Israel showing a manger (animal feeding trough).

An angel appears to shepherds in a nearby field

⁹That same night there were shepherds staying out in the fields nearby, watching over their flocks. An angel of the Lord appeared to them and glory shone all around them and they were afraid.

*6 Bethlehem is approx 150 kms by road from Nazareth, about five day journey by foot.

*8 Long strips of linen cloth.

*8 A manger is a feeding trough for animals. Justin Martyr who lived in Israel about 100 AD wrote that the manger was located inside a cave which was used as the stable of an inn.

¹⁰But the angel said to them, “**Fear not, I bring you good news of great joy to all people. For this day in Bethlehem, a Saviour has been born to you.** ¹¹**He is the Christ,^{F*} the Lord. As a sign you will find the child wrapped in swaddling cloth and lying in a manger.**”

The shepherds see a great multitude of angels praising God

¹²Suddenly a great multitude of angels were seen, praising God and proclaiming, “**Glory to God in the highest heaven, and on earth peace to men of good will.**”

The shepherds go into Bethlehem to find the child

¹³When the angels left them, the shepherds said, “Let us go into Bethlehem and see this thing that has happened.”

¹⁴So they hastened into the town and found Mary and Joseph, and the baby lying in a manger just as the angel had said, and they went and told many others.

¹⁵All were amazed at what the shepherds told them. Then the shepherds returned to their fields, praising God for all the things they had heard and seen.



Shepherds watching their flocks by night in fields near Bethlehem.

Jesus is circumcised and named on the eighth day

¹⁶On the eighth day, the child was circumcised and given the name Jesus.

Jesus is redeemed at the Temple in Jerusalem

¹⁷A month later, when Mary’s purification had been completed, Joseph and Mary took the child Jesus to Jerusalem to present him at the Temple. ¹⁸For it is written in the Law, “**Every firstborn male is to be consecrated holy to Jehovah and is to be redeemed by sacrificing a pair of doves or two young pigeons.**”

Simeon proclaims Jesus to be the long awaited Christ the Saviour

¹⁹Now there was a devout man in Jerusalem named Simeon. He was looking for the Saviour of Israel to come. The Holy Spirit was with him

and had revealed to him that he would not die until he had seen the Christ.

²⁰When Joseph and Mary brought Jesus into the Temple court, Simeon took the child in his arms and praised God saying, “**Most High God, you have kept your promise. Now dismiss your servant in peace, for my eyes have seen your Saviour, a light for the Gentiles^{F*} and glory for your people Israel.**”

²¹The parents marvelled at what was said about Jesus.

Simeon prophesies regarding Jesus and Mary

²²Then Simeon blessed them and prophesied to Mary saying, “**This child is destined for the fall and rise of many in Israel, and will be spoken against.** ²³**Through him the inner thoughts of many hearts will be laid bare, and your own heart will be pierced by a sword of sorrow.**”

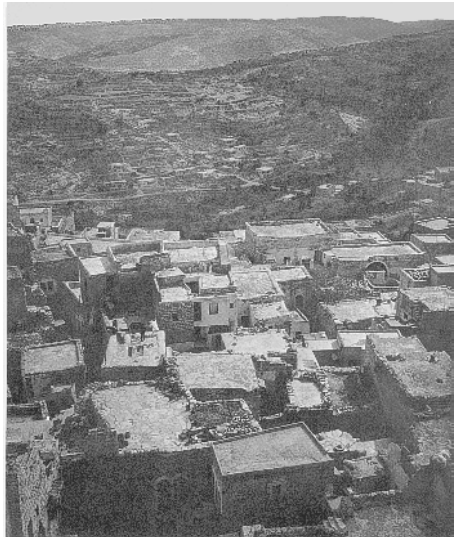
Anna the prophetess testifies of Jesus

²⁴There was also a prophetess in Jerusalem, Anna of the tribe of Asher. She was eighty-four years of age and never left the Temple courts, but worshipped day and night, fasting and praying.

²⁵She also came up to Joseph and Mary and after giving thanks to God she prophesied of the child Jesus to all who were looking forward to the deliverance of Jerusalem.

Joseph and Mary return to Nazareth

²⁶When Joseph and Mary had done all that was required by the Law, they left Jerusalem and returned to Galilee, to their home town of Nazareth.



Bethlehem where Jesus was born.

*11 Christ is the Greek equivalent of the Hebrew ‘Messiah’ meaning ‘Anointed one.’ The Jews had long awaited his coming.

*20 A Gentile was any non-Israelite. In biblical times the term was normally applied to those of non-Semite stock who did not practise circumcision. Nowadays the Jews define a Gentile as any person not born of a Jewish mother.

Wise men of the east come searching for the new-born king of the Jews

¹Soon afterward, certain wise men of the east^{F*} came to Jerusalem and asked, "Where is he who has been born king of the Jews? For we saw his star^{F*} in the east and have come to worship him."



Travellers from the east near Jerusalem.

King Herod is disturbed and enquires regarding the Christ

²When Herod the king heard this, he was disturbed,^{F*} and calling together the chief priests and teachers of the Law he enquired of them as to where the Christ was to be born.

³They replied, "At Bethlehem in Judea, for the prophet Micah has written, "**And you Bethlehem, though you are little among the towns of Judah, out of you will come the one who is to rule over Israel, whose origins are from the very beginning, from ancient times.**"

Herod instructs the wise men to report back to him when they find the Christ

⁴So Herod summoned the wise men secretly to discover the exact date the star had appeared. Then he sent them to Bethlehem saying, "Make a careful search for the child. When you find him, report back to me so that I too may worship him."

The star reappears and leads the wise men to Jesus

⁵The wise men went on their way and were overjoyed when the star they had seen in the east appeared again and went ahead of them, leading them to the place where the child was.^{F*}

The wise men worship the child Jesus and give him gifts

⁶On entering the house they saw Jesus with his mother Mary, and bowed down and

*1 The wise men are traditionally believed to have come from Babylonia.

*1 Modern astronomy has calculated that there was a rare unusually bright conjunction (only once in 4000 years) of Venus and Jupiter in the constellation of Leo (the Lion), traditionally associated with Judah (Genesis 31:21, Revelation 3:15). This occurred both about the conception and the birth of Jesus.

*2 At this time, in the last years of his reign Herod the Great was suffering from mental instability.

*5 Unless this incident occurred before verse 26 of the previous chapter, the town would be Nazareth not Bethlehem.

worshipped him. Then they opened their treasures and presented the child with gifts of gold, incense, and myrrh.^{F*}

The wise men warned not to return to Herod

⁷The wise men were then warned in a dream not to return to Herod, so they went back to their own land.

An angel warns Joseph to flee to Egypt

⁸When they had gone, an angel appeared to Joseph in a dream and said, "**Take the child and his mother and flee to Egypt. Remain there until I give you word, for Herod is about to search for the child to kill him.**"

⁹So Joseph arose during the night and taking Jesus and his mother Mary he departed for Egypt.



A donkey was often taken along when Israelite women travelled.

Herod orders all the infant boys in the Bethlehem district killed

¹⁰When Herod realised that the wise men had deceived him, he was enraged and gave orders to kill all the infant boys in Bethlehem and the surrounding district who were two years old and under.

King Herod dies and Joseph is told to return his family to Israel

¹¹After Herod died the angel again appeared in a dream to Joseph in Egypt and said, "**Return to the land of Israel for he who was trying to take the life of the child is dead.**" So Joseph arose and returned with his family to Nazareth.^{F*}

Jesus grows strong and is filled with wisdom

¹²Jesus grew and became strong and was filled with wisdom, for the grace of God was upon him.

*6 Myrrh was a solidified, dark red aromatic gum used as a spice and a medicine.

*11 Herod the Great died about a year after Jesus' birth, in 4 BC. Israel was then split into three regions, north, south, and east and ruled over by his three sons Archelaus, Herod, and Phillip. All were answerable to Rome.

Jesus stays behind in Jerusalem after the Passover when twelve years old

¹³Now every year Joseph and Mary would go to Jerusalem for the Feast of the Passover. When Jesus was twelve years old they again went to the Feast as was their custom. ^{F*}

¹⁴After the Feast was over, the boy Jesus stayed behind in Jerusalem and his parents, unaware of it, started for home thinking he was in their company. ¹⁵After travelling for a day they began looking for him among their relatives and friends.

Joseph and Mary find Jesus in a Temple courtyard conversing with the teachers of the Law

¹⁶When they did not find him they returned to Jerusalem. On the third day they found him in a courtyard of the Temple, sitting among the teachers of the Law, listening to them and asking them questions. ¹⁷All who heard him were amazed at his understanding and answers.

¹⁸Joseph and Mary were astonished. His mother said to him, "My son, why have you treated us like this? Your father and I have been searching for you with great anxiety."

¹⁹Jesus replied, "**Why did you search? Did you not know that I would be in my Father's house?**" But they did not comprehend what he was saying to them.

Jesus returns to Nazareth with his parents

²⁰Jesus returned to Nazareth with his parents and was obedient to them. He continued to grow in wisdom and stature and in favour with God and man.

4

John the Baptist begins his ministry

¹Now the word of God came to John^{F*} the son of Zechariah, in the desert. He began going throughout the countryside along the Jordan river preaching a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins. ²For it is written by Isaiah the prophet, "**A voice will cry out in the desert, 'Prepare the way of the Lord. Make straight the way of our God.'**"

John's clothes and food

³John's clothes were made of camel hair cloth and he wore a leather belt around his waist. His food was locusts and wild honey.

Many confess their sins and are baptised

⁴People went out to John from Jerusalem, Judea and the region along the river, confessing their sins and being baptised^{F*} by him in the Jordan.

John rebukes the Pharisees and Sadducees for failing to repent

⁵But when John saw many Pharisees and

^{*13} Jerusalem was about 135 kms from Nazareth, about a four day journey by foot.

^{*1} John was now about 30 years old, the age at which a Levite priest begins to serve.

^{*4} Baptism (immersion in water) was not a new rite, it had been practiced by Jews in past ages. It is still a requirement today, along with male circumcision for converts to traditional Judaism.

Sadducees^{F*} coming out to be baptised he said to them, "**You brood of vipers. Who warned you to flee from the coming wrath? First bear fruit worthy of repentance.**"

⁶"**Think not to yourselves, 'We have Abraham as our father.' Truly I say to you, out of these very stones God can raise up children of Abraham.**"

Parable of the axe at the foot of the tree

⁷"**The axe lies at the root of the tree. Every tree that bears not good fruit will be cut down and thrown into the fire.**"

John teaches the people how to live righteously

⁸The crowd said to John, "What then should we do?"

⁹John answered, "**He who has two coats should share with him who has none, and whoever has food should do the same.**"

¹⁰Even tax collectors came out to be baptised and asked, "Teacher, what should we do?"

¹¹He answered, "**Collect no more tax than you are required to.**"

¹²Soldiers also asked him, "And what should we do?"

¹³John replied, "**Do not extort money, and be content with your pay.**"



Baptising in the river Jordan.

John preparing the way for one more powerful

¹⁴The people all wondered if John might be the Christ, but John answered them saying, "**I baptise you with water, but one more powerful than I is coming whose sandals I am not worthy to untie.**" ¹⁵**He will baptise you with the Holy Spirit and with fire.**"

¹⁶"**He shall thresh the grain and gather the wheat into his barn, but will burn the husks with unquenchable fire.**"

¹⁷And with many other words John exhorted

^{*5} The Pharisees and Sadducees were priestly sects noted for living the letter of the Law of Moses rather than the spirit of the Law. The Pharisees were stricter than the more worldly, ruling-class Sadducees.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 5

the people and preached the good news to them.

Jesus is baptised by John

¹⁸When Jesus was about thirty years of age, he came from Galilee to the Jordan to be baptised by John. But John protested saying, "***I have need to be baptised by you, why do you come to me?***"

¹⁹Jesus replied, "**Let it be so, for it is proper for us to do this to fulfil the Law.**" So John baptised Jesus.

The Spirit of God in the likeness of a dove descends upon Jesus when he prays

²⁰When Jesus came up out of the water he prayed and John saw the heavens open and the Spirit of God descend upon Jesus, in the likeness of a dove.

God the Father acknowledges Jesus as his Son

²¹And a voice was heard from heaven saying, "**This is my beloved Son in whom I am well pleased.**"

Jesus fasts for forty days

²²Then Jesus, full of the Holy Spirit was led by the Spirit into the desert, to be tempted by the devil. For forty days Jesus fasted, eating nothing at all.

Jesus tempted with fleshly desire

²³At the end of this time he was very hungry, and the tempter came and said to him, "If you are the Son of God, command these stones to become bread."

²⁴Jesus answered him, "**It is written, 'Man does not live by bread alone but by every word that comes from the mouth of God.'**"

Jesus tempted to proudly test God

²⁵Then the devil took Jesus to Jerusalem and set him upon the highest point of the Temple and said to him, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down. For it is written, '**He will command his angels to guard you, lest you as much as strike your foot against a stone.**'"

²⁶Jesus answered, "**It is also written, 'Do not try Jehovah your God.'**"

Jesus tempted with worldly power and wealth

²⁷Again the devil took Jesus to a very high mountain and showed him all the kingdoms of the world and their splendour and said, "All these shall I give to you if you will bow down and worship me."

²⁸Jesus said to him, "**Away from me Satan. For it is written, 'Worship Jehovah your God and serve him only.'**"

Angels visit Jesus

²⁹Then the devil left him, and angels visited Jesus. ³⁰News about Jesus now began to spread throughout the whole countryside.

Herod the king of Galilee^{F*} because of Herodias his brother's wife whom he had unlawfully married. He said to him, "***It is not lawful for you to have Herodias your brother's wife.***"

²So adding to all the other evil things Herod had done, he locked John in prison.

Herod's wife Herodias wants to kill John

³Herodias was furious with John and looked for a way to kill him, but she was unable to do so for Herod feared John and protected him knowing him to be a righteous and holy man.

⁴Whenever Herod heard John speak he would become greatly disturbed, yet he continued to listen to him.

Jesus returns to Galilee

⁵When Jesus heard that John had been imprisoned, he returned to Galilee, with the power of the Holy Spirit. ⁶He stayed in the city of Capernaum^{F*} which was by the lake of Galilee and taught in the synagogues,^{F*} and everybody praised him.

Jesus teaches in his home town synagogue

⁷Then Jesus returned to his home town Nazareth. On the Sabbath day he went into the synagogue as was his custom. ⁸He stood to read and the scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him.

⁹Jesus unrolled it and read where it is written, "**The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me, for he has anointed me to preach good news to the poor, to heal the broken hearted, to proclaim release for the prisoners and to declare the year of Jehovah's favour.**"

¹⁰Then he rolled up the scroll and handed it back to the attendant and sat down. The eyes of all in the synagogue were upon him. ¹¹He said to them, "**Today this scripture is fulfilled in your hearing.**"

¹²All spoke well of him and wondered at the gracious words that fell from his lips and said, "Is not this Joseph's son?"

No prophet accepted in his home town

¹³Jesus continued, "**No doubt you will quote this proverb to me, 'Physician heal your own.' Do here in your home town the miracles we have heard that you do in Capernaum. But truly I say to you, no prophet is accepted in his home town.**"

Elijah and Elisha of old sent to non-Israelites

¹⁵"There were many widows in Israel during the days of Elijah when the severe famine shut the heavens for three and a half years. Yet Elijah was not sent to any of them, but to a widow in Zarephath in the land of the Sidonians."

¹⁶"And there were many lepers in Israel in

*1 Herod was one of the three sons of the now dead king Herod the Great.

*6 Jesus used the lakeside city of Capernaum as his base throughout his ministry in Galilee.

*6 Synagogues were Jewish places of worship, similar to churches.

the days of Elisha the prophet, yet not one of them was cleansed, only Naaman the Syrian.”

The men of Nazareth became enraged and try to push Jesus over a cliff

¹⁷At these words the men in the synagogue became enraged with anger. Arising they thrust Jesus before them and pushed him to the cliff edge of the hill on which the town was built to cast him over. But he passed through them and went his way.



Nazareth where Jesus was raised and then rejected.

Jesus returns to Capernaum

¹⁸Jesus returned to Capernaum and on the following Sabbath went into a synagogue there to teach the people. ¹⁹They were amazed at his teaching for his words had authority.

Demons recognise Jesus as the Holy One of God

²⁰In the synagogue was a man possessed by demons. These unclean spirits caused him to shout loudly saying, “What do you want with us Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to destroy us? We know who you are, the Holy One of God.”

Jesus orders the demons out of the possessed man

²¹But Jesus commanded them saying, “**Be silent and come out of him!**” At these words the demons threw the man on the floor and came out without harming him.

²²All the people were amazed and said to one other, “What power there is in his words. He commands unclean spirits and they come out.”

That evening people bring many sick and possessed people to be healed

²³Later that day as the sun was setting,^{F*} the people of the town brought to Jesus all who had various kinds of sickness and he laid his hands on each one and healed them all. ²⁴For as it was spoken by the prophet Isaiah, “**He will heal our sicknesses and remove our pains.**”

²⁵Demons also came out of many people shouting, “You are the Son of God!” But Jesus

rebuked them and forbade them to speak for they knew he was the Christ.

Jesus teaches the people from Peter’s fishing boat

²⁶One day, as Jesus was standing by the lake with the people crowding around him to hear the word of God, he saw at the water’s edge two boats, left there by fishermen who were cleaning their nets.

²⁷He stepped into a boat belonging to a fisherman named Simon, whom Jesus had surnamed Peter.^{F*} He then asked Peter to push the boat out a little from shore and Jesus sat and taught the people from the boat.

Jesus tells Peter and Andrew to let down their nets

²⁸When Jesus had finished speaking he said to Peter and his brother Andrew, “**Put out into deep water and let down your net for a catch.**”

²⁹Peter said, “Master, we fished all night and took nothing, but we will do as you say.”



Fishermen on the lake of Galilee.

They catch so many fish their net begins to break

³⁰When they let down the net they caught such a large number of fish that the net began to break. So they signalled their partners in the other boat to come out and help them.

³¹They filled both boats so full that they almost sank.

Peter humbles himself before Jesus

³²Peter came ashore and fell down at the knees of Jesus and said to him, “Depart from me Lord, for I am a sinful man.”

Jesus calls Peter to be a fisher of men

³³Jesus said to Peter, “**Fear not, from now on you will be a fisher of men.**”

Jesus also calls Peter’s brother Andrew and the two brothers James and John

³³When Peter’s brother Andrew and James and his brother John had pulled their boats up on the shore, Jesus said to them all, “**Come follow me.**”

³⁴So they left everything and followed Jesus.

*23 The Jewish Sabbath ended at sunset.

*27 Peter means ‘a large rock.’

6

Jesus asked to heal the servant of a Roman centurion

¹Now in Capernaum there was a Roman centurion^{F*} who had a servant whom he valued highly. But he was paralysed and suffering terribly and was about to die. The centurion heard of Jesus and sent some elders of the Jews to him asking him to heal his servant.

²When the elders came to Jesus they pleaded with him saying, "He is worthy of having you do this for him, for he loves our people and it was he who built our synagogue for us." So Jesus went with them.

The centurion asks Jesus to just say the word and his servant will be healed

³He was not far from the centurion's house when the centurion sent friends to Jesus with this message: "Lord, do not trouble yourself to come for I feel unworthy to have you under my roof, or even to come to you, but just say the word and my servant will be healed." ⁴For I am a man under authority, and with soldiers under me. I need only say to one, 'Do this,' and he does it."

Jesus marvels at the Roman centurion's faith

⁵When Jesus heard these words he was amazed. Turning to the crowd following him he said, "Never have I found such great faith, not even among the Israelites."

Many non-Israelites will enter the kingdom of God

⁶"Truly I say to you, many will come from other nations and find a place at the feast in the kingdom of God with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, while the sons of the kingdom will be thrown outside in outer darkness where they will weep and grind their teeth."

The centurion's servant is healed

⁷Jesus said to the messengers, "Say to him, 'It is done according to your faith.'" And the centurion's servant was healed at that very moment.

Great crowds of people come to hear and to be healed by Jesus

⁸News about Jesus spread further and further and soon great crowds of people came to hear him and to be healed of their sicknesses.

Jesus often withdrew to pray

⁹But Jesus often withdrew to lonely places and prayed.

A paralysed man lowered through the roof

¹⁰One day Jesus was teaching in a crowded house in Capernaum. Sitting with him were Pharisees^{F*} and teachers of the Law who had come from Jerusalem, Judea and from all over Galilee, and the power of God was present for

him to heal the sick.

¹¹Some men arrived carrying a paralysed man on a bed and tried to take him into the house to lay him before Jesus, but they could not enter because of the crowd. ¹²So they went up on the roof and removed tiles and lowered him down through the roof, right in front of Jesus.

Jesus forgives the sins of the paralysed man

¹³When Jesus saw their faith he said to the paralysed man, "My friend, your sins are forgiven you."

Jesus thought guilty of blasphemy

¹⁴When the Pharisees and the teachers of the Law heard these words they thought to themselves, "This man speaks blasphemy. Only God can forgive sins."

As proof that he can forgive sins Jesus commands the paralysed man to walk home

¹⁵Jesus knew what they were thinking and said to them, "Which is easier to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you,' or 'Take up your bed and walk?'"

¹⁶"That you may know the Son of Man^{F*} has authority on earth to forgive sins," he said to the paralysed man, "Arise, take up your bed and walk home."

¹⁷Immediately the man stood up in front of them, picked up the bed he had been lying on, and walked home, praising God.

¹⁸Everyone was amazed and glorified God. Filled with awe they said, "We have seen great things this day."

Matthew the tax collector called to be a disciple

¹⁹After this, Jesus saw a tax collector by the name of Matthew sitting at his tax booth. He said to him, "Follow me," and Matthew left everything and followed Jesus.

Matthew holds a feast for Jesus and his disciples

²⁰Then Matthew held a feast at his house for Jesus and his disciples.^{F*} A large crowd of tax collectors^{F*} and others ate with them.

The Pharisees murmur at Jesus and his disciples eating with sinners

²¹The Pharisees murmured at this and said to the disciples of Jesus, "Why do you eat and drink with tax collectors and sinners?"

Jesus came to call sinners to repentance

²²Jesus answered them saying, "It is not the well who need a physician but the sick. I have not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."

*16 Jesus often referred to himself as the 'Son of Man.' Daniel used the same description in one of his visions (Daniel 5:16). Ezekiel also received this title from the Lord during his revelations and visions (Ezekiel 1:20).

*20 A disciple is a dedicated follower and learner of a noted person. In the New Testament the term is sometimes applied to the twelve apostles and other times to the other followers of Jesus numbering well over 100 who constantly accompanied him.

*20 Tax collectors, also known as publicans were highly paid Jews who collected taxes imposed by the Romans. They were despised and considered traitors by most of their fellow Jews.

*1 A centurion was a Roman army officer in command of 100 soldiers.

*10 The Pharisees were the predominant religious sect of the day. See also note on Matt-Mark-Luke 4:5.

Jesus asked why his disciples do not fast

²³The Pharisees also said to Jesus, “The disciples of John often fast and pray and so do our followers, but your disciples carry on eating and drinking.”

Days of fasting will come

²⁴Jesus answered, “Do the guests of the bridegroom fast while he is with them? Nevertheless the days are coming when the bridegroom will be taken from them. In those days they will fast.”

New wineskins needed for new wine

²⁵“No one tears a patch from a new garment and sews it on an old one. If he does he will have ruined the new garment, and the patch from the new will not match the old.”

²⁶“And no one pours new wine into old wineskins, for the new wine will burst the old skins. New wine must be poured into new wineskins.”



Capernaum on the shores of Lake Galilee was the base town of Jesus during his ministry in Galilee.

7

Jesus prays all night on a mountain then chooses his twelve apostles

¹Then Jesus went up a mountain and spent the whole night praying to God.

²When morning came, he called his disciples to him and chose twelve of them whom he designated apostles.^{F*}

The names of the Twelve

³They were Simon (whom Jesus renamed Peter), his brother Andrew, James and his brother John (whom Jesus named Sons of Thunder), Philip, Nathanael, Matthew, Thomas, James (son of Alphaeus), Simon, Thaddeus, and Judas Iscariot.

Jesus heals on the mountain

⁴Then they went a little way down the mountain, to a level place where a large crowd of people had gathered from as far away as Judea, Tyre, Sidon and beyond the Jordan.

⁵They had come to hear Jesus and be healed of their diseases. For news about him had spread

all over and people brought to him all who were ill with various diseases, also those suffering severe pain, the demon-possessed, those having seizures and the paralysed, and he healed them all.

⁶Many people tried to touch Jesus, for power was coming from him and healing them all.

Jesus begins his sermon on the mount

⁷Then Jesus sat down and began to teach them saying:

⁸“Blessed are the poor in spirit,^{F*} for theirs is the kingdom of God.”

⁹“Blessed are those who are full of sorrow, for they shall be comforted.”

¹⁰“Blessed are the humble, for they shall inherit the earth.”

¹¹“Blessed are those who hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled.”

¹²“Blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.”

¹³“Blessed are the pure in heart, for they shall see God.”

¹⁴“Blessed are the peacemakers, for they shall be called sons of God.”

¹⁵“Blessed are they who are persecuted because of righteousness, for theirs is the kingdom of God.”

¹⁶“Blessed are you when people insult you, persecute you, and falsely speak evil of you, because of me. Rejoice and be glad, for great is your reward in the kingdom of God, for so persecuted they the prophets before you.”

Love and pray for your enemies

¹⁷“You have heard it said, ‘Love your neighbour and hate your enemy.’ But I say to you, ‘Love your enemies. Do good to those who hate you. Bless those who curse you, and pray for those who mistreat you.’”

Do not demand back what is taken from you

¹⁸“And if anyone takes what belongs to you, do not demand it back.”

The golden rule

¹⁹“Do unto others as you would have others do unto you.”

Even sinners love those who love them

²⁰“For if you love those who love you, what credit is that to you? Even sinners love those who love them.”

²¹“And if you do good to those who do good to you, what credit is that to you? Even sinners do the same.”

²²“And if you lend to those from whom you expect to be repaid, what credit is that to you? Even sinners lend to sinners, expecting to be repaid in full.”

Act with love and kindness without expecting a reward in this life

²³“But I say to you, ‘Love your enemies

*2 The term apostle means ‘one chosen and sent forth with a message.’

*8 Generally understood to be those who are naturally shy and lacking in confidence.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 8

and be kind to them. Lend to them without expecting anything in return.”

²⁴“Then your reward shall be great, and you will be sons of the Most High God. For he also is kind to the ungrateful and the wicked, for he causes the sun to rise and the rain to fall on both the wicked and the good.”

Be merciful and perfect as your Father in heaven

²⁵“So be merciful, as your Father in heaven is merciful. ²⁶Be perfect, as your Father in heaven is perfect.” F*

You are the salt of the earth

²⁷“You are the salt of the earth, F* but if salt has lost its taste how can it be made salty again? It is no longer good for anything, except to be thrown out and trampled on.”

Let your light shine before others

²⁸“You are the light of the world. A city on a hill cannot be hidden. Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a bowl, instead they put it up on a lampstand to give light to all the household.”

²⁹“In the same way let your light so shine before others, that they may see your goodness in the way you act, and praise your Father in heaven.”

Your eye is the lamp of the body

³⁰“Your eye is the lamp of the body. If your eye is healthy your whole body is full of light, but if your eye is unhealthy, your body is full of darkness.”

³¹“See to it then, that there is light within you and not darkness.”

Be not angry with another

³²“You have heard it said, ‘Do not murder. Anyone who murders will be subject to judgement.’ But I say to you, Anyone who is angry with another is subject to judgement, and he who says, ‘You fool!’ is in danger of the fires of Gehenna.” F*

Reconcile unkind feelings before offering a gift to God

³³“Therefore if you are offering a gift at the altar and know that your brother has something against you, first go and be reconciled to your brother and then come and offer your gift.”

³⁴“For do you not settle matters quickly with him to whom you owe a debt and who is about to take you to court? For the judge

may hand you over to be thrown into prison and you will not get out until the last copper coin has been paid.”



The valley of Hinnom below the city of Jerusalem also known as Gehenna. Because of its gruesome history Jesus used it as a symbol of the future emotional torment of the wicked.

To look lustfully is adultery

³⁵“You have heard it said, ‘Do not commit adultery.’ But I say to you, He who looks upon a woman lustfully has already committed adultery with her in his heart.”

³⁶“Therefore if your right eye causes you to sin, pluck it out and throw it away, or if your right hand causes you to sin, cut it off. It is better for you to lose one part of your body than for your whole body to be thrown into Gehenna.”

Remarrying after divorce is adultery unless divorced spouse was unfaithful

³⁷“It has been said, ‘He who divorces his wife must give her a certificate of divorce.’ But I say to you, ‘He who divorces his wife, except on the grounds of unchastity, causes her to commit adultery. ³⁸And whoever marries the divorced woman commits adultery.”

8

Do not swear oaths

¹“Again you have heard it said, ‘Keep the oaths you have sworn to Jehovah.’ But I say to you, Do not swear at all, neither by heaven for it is God’s throne, nor by the earth for it is his footstool, nor by Jerusalem for it is the city of the Great King.”

²“And do not swear by your head, for you cannot turn one hair white or black. Simply let your yes be yes and your no be no. Anything more than this comes from the evil one.”

Turn the other cheek

³“You have heard it said, ‘An eye for eye and a tooth for a tooth.’ But I say to you, Resist not a violent person. If someone strikes you on the right cheek, turn to him the other also.”

Give double if someone would sue you

⁴“And if one would sue you and take your coat, let him have your cloak also.”

*25 The word ‘perfect’ is from the Greek word ‘*te leios*’ meaning to be complete in every way attainable.

*27 In the sense that, just as a sprinkling of salt can enhance the taste of food, so too can a sprinkling of loving and caring people enhance a community.

*32 The word Gehenna is translated Hell in some Bibles. Gehenna was the Greek name for the valley of Hinnom outside the city of Jerusalem. This valley was earlier notorious for idolatrous child sacrifice and as a mass burial place for thousands of inhabitants of Jerusalem who died during the Babylonian siege. In the days of Jesus it was the site of a continuously burning rubbish dump, and along with its gruesome history was an apt symbol for Jesus to use in describing the future emotional torment of the wicked.

Go the extra mile

5⁴“If someone forces you to go one mile^{F*}, go with him two miles.”

Give to one who would beg or borrow from you

6⁴“Give to one who begs of you and turn not away him who would borrow from you.”



The Mount of Beatitudes, rising up from the shore of Lake Galilee, traditional site of the Sermon on the Mount.

Do not do acts of kindness just to be seen of others

7⁴“Do not do your acts of kindness before men to be praised by them, for you will have no reward from your Father in heaven.”

8⁴“And when you give to the needy do not announce it with trumpets as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and on the streets to be honoured of men. Truly they have received their reward.”

Give to the needy in secret

9⁴“Rather, when you give to the needy let not your left hand know what your right hand is doing. ¹⁰Let your giving be in secret, then your Father who sees what is done in secret will reward you openly.”

Pray in secret

11⁴“And when you pray, be not like the hypocrites, for they love to pray standing in the synagogues and on the street corners, to be seen of men. Truly they have had their reward.”

12⁴“But when you pray, go into your room and close the door and pray to your Father in secret. Then your Father who sees what is done in secret will reward you openly.”

Do not repeat the same words over and over when praying

13⁴“And when you pray, repeat not the same words over and over as the Gentiles do, for they think they will be heard because of their many words. ¹⁴Be not like them, for your Father in heaven knows what you need before you ask him.”

The Lord’s prayer

15⁴“After this manner then, should you pray, ‘Our Father in heaven, hallowed be your name. Your kingdom come, and your

will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

¹⁶Give us this day our daily bread, and forgive us our sins as we forgive those who sin against us. ¹⁷Let us not be led into temptation but deliver us from all evil.” ^{F*}

Forgive others and your own sins will be forgiven

18⁴“If you forgive others when they sin against you, your heavenly Father will also forgive you. But if you do not forgive others their sins, your Father will not forgive you your sins.”

Ask and you shall receive

19⁴“Ask and you shall receive, seek and you will find, knock and the door shall be opened. For he who asks, receives, and he who seeks finds, and to him who knocks, the door is opened.”

20⁴“For which one of you if his son asks him for bread, will give him a stone? Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake?”

21⁴“If you then, though you sin, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give good gifts to those who ask him?”

Fast in secret

22⁴“And when you fast, do not look dismal as the hypocrites do, for they put on a mournful face to show others they are fasting. Truly they have had their reward.”

23⁴“But I say to you, When you fast, groom your hair and wash your face so that you will not be seen by men to be fasting, only by your Father in heaven. Then your Father who sees what is done in secret will reward you openly.”

Do not store up treasures on earth

24⁴“Store not up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy and where thieves break in and steal.”

25⁴“But store up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where moth and rust do not destroy and where thieves do not break in and steal.”

26⁴“For where your treasure is there will your heart be also.”

You cannot serve both God and wealth

27⁴“No man can serve two masters, for you will be devoted to one and despise the other. ²⁸You cannot serve both God and wealth.” ^{F*}

Do not worry about food and drink

29⁴“Therefore do not be anxious about your life, and worry about how you will eat or drink. Is not life more than food?”

30⁴“Behold the birds of the air, they do not sow, neither do they reap or store away in barns, yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not of more value than they?”

31⁴“And who of you by worrying can add a single hour to your span of life?”

*17 Later manuscripts add: “For yours is the kingdom, the power and the glory forever.”

*28 Wealth, literally ‘*mammon*,’ an Aramaic word personifying riches and greed.

*5 The word used here for mile (*Million*) was a thousand paces.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 9

Do not worry about clothing

32“**And why worry about how you will clothe yourself? Is not your body more than clothing?**”

33“**Behold the flowers of the field, how they grow, and they neither labour nor spin yet not even Solomon in all his glory was arrayed like one of these.**”

34“**If God so clothes the grass of the field which is here today and tomorrow burned in the fire^{F*} will he not much more clothe you, O you of little faith?**”

35“**So do not be anxious saying, ‘What are we to eat?’ or ‘What are we to drink?’ or ‘What are we to wear?’ for the Gentiles strive after all these things. Your heavenly Father knows that you need them.**”

First seek the kingdom of God and all these things will be yours

36“**Rather, seek first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be yours as well.**”

Do not worry about tomorrow

37“**Therefore do not worry about tomorrow for tomorrow will take care of itself. Each day has sufficient trouble of its own.**”

9

Judge not others

1“**Judge not others and you will not be judged. For with the same judgement you judge others, you also will be judged.**”

Forgive and you will be forgiven

2“**Therefore forgive, and you too will be forgiven.**”



“...here today and tomorrow burned in the fire” (Matt-Mark-Luke 8:34). Dry grass being burnt as fuel in an oven.

First remove the log from your own eye then take the speck from another's eye

3“**Why do you see the speck in another's eye and not see the log in your own eye?**”

Why do you say to your neighbour, ‘Let me take the speck out of your eye?’”

4“**You hypocrite, first take the log out of your own eye then you will see clearly to remove the speck from your neighbour's eye.**”

Give generously to receive

5“**Give and it will be given you, good measure, pressed down, shaken, and running over will be poured into your lap.**”

6“**For the measure you give will be the measure you get, and still more will be given you. For to those that have, more shall be given.**”

7“**But from those who have not, even the little they have shall be taken away.**”

Do not cast pearls before swine

8“**Give not that which is sacred to dogs, nor cast your pearls before swine, for they may trample them under their feet and then turn on you.**”

Wide is the gate that leads to Death

9“**Enter through the narrow gate, for wide is the gate and broad the way that leads to Death,^{F*} and many enter through it.**”

Narrow the way that leads to Eternal Life

10“**But small is the gate and narrow the way that leads to Eternal Life, and few there be that find it.**”

Jesus came to fulfil the scriptures

11“**Think not that I have come to abolish the Law and the Prophets.^{F*} I have not come to abolish the scriptures but to fulfil them.**”

12“**Truly I say to you, Until the heavens and earth pass away, not one dot will disappear from the scriptures until all is fulfilled.**”

Those who will be least in the kingdom of God

13“**Therefore whoever breaks one of the least of these commandments and teaches others to do the same, will be called least in the kingdom of God.**”

Those who will be great in the kingdom of God

14“**But whoever keeps and teaches these commandments will be called great in the kingdom of God.**”

Righteousness must exceed that of the Pharisees to enter the kingdom of God

15“**For unless your righteousness exceeds that of the Pharisees and the teachers of the Law, you will not enter the kingdom of God.**”

False prophets known by their fruits

16“**Beware of false prophets who come to you in sheep's clothing but inwardly are hungry wolves. By their fruits you shall know them.**”

17“**Are grapes picked from thorns or figs**

*9 ie The Second Death or Eternal Death (in contrast to Eternal Life) which is to be cut off forever from the presence of God. See note on Revelation 16:19.

*11 The Law and the Prophets are the Jewish scriptures, ie the Old Testament.

*34 Dry grass was used to fuel cooking fires.

from thistles? A good tree bears good fruit but a bad tree bears bad fruit. ¹⁸Every tree that bears not good fruit will be cut down and thrown into the fire."

Out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks

¹⁹"For a righteous man brings forth good from the good stored in his heart, but a wicked man brings forth evil from the evil stored in his heart."

²⁰"Out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks."

Not all who do miracles in the name of Jesus are known to the Lord

²¹"Not everyone who says to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter the kingdom of God, but only they who do the will of my Father in heaven."

²²"Many shall say to me on the day of judgement, 'Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in your name and drive out demons in your name and do many miracles?'"

²³Then will I declare to them, 'I never knew you. Away from me you evil doers.'

²⁴"Why call me 'Lord, Lord,' and yet not do what I say?"

Parable of man who built his house upon the rock

²⁵"Everyone who hears my words and puts them into practice, is like the wise man who built his house upon the rock."

²⁶"The rains came down and the floods rose up and the winds beat against that house, yet it did not fall, for its foundation was on the rock."

The man who built his house upon the sand

²⁷"But everyone who hears my words and does them not, is like the foolish man who built his house upon the sand."

²⁸"The rains came down and the floods rose up and the winds beat against that house and it fell, and great was its fall."

The golden rule sums up the scriptures

²⁹"So in all things, do unto others what you would have others do unto you, for this sums up the scriptures."

The crowds amazed at the authority of Jesus

³⁰When Jesus had finished his teaching the crowds were amazed, for he taught as one who had authority and not as their teachers of the Law.

Weeping repentant sinful woman anoints feet of Jesus with perfumed oil

³¹One of the Pharisees invited Jesus to eat in his home. As Jesus reclined at the table, a woman who had lived a sinful life in the town came in to him. She brought with her an alabaster jar of perfumed oil.

³²She stood behind Jesus at his feet, weeping and wetting his feet with her tears. Then she wiped his feet with her hair and kissed them and anointed them with the perfumed oil.

The Pharisee critical of Jesus for allowing such a woman to touch him

³³Now the Pharisee who had invited Jesus to his home saw what the woman was doing and thought to himself, "If this man were a prophet he would know what kind of woman is touching him."

Parable of the forgiving moneylender

³⁴Jesus said to him, "Simon, I have something to say to you."

He said, "Speak teacher."

³⁵Jesus said, "Two men owed money to a certain money lender. One owed him 500 denarii* and the other 50 denarii. Neither of them had the money to pay him back so he cancelled the debts of both of them. Now which of the two do you think will love him more?"

³⁶Simon replied, "I suppose the one who had the greater debt cancelled."

³⁷Jesus said, "You have judged correctly."

Then turning toward the woman he said to him, "Behold this woman, when I came into your house you did not give me water for my feet, but she has washed my feet with her tears and wiped them with her hair."

³⁸"You did not give me a kiss, but she has not stopped kissing my feet. You did not give me oil for my head, but she has anointed my feet and head with perfumed oil."

³⁹"Therefore I say to you her sins which are many have been forgiven, for she has shown great love. But one to whom little is forgiven, loves little."

Jesus forgives the woman her sins

⁴⁰Then Jesus said to the woman, "Your sins are forgiven. Your faith has saved you. Go in peace."

⁴¹The other guests said among themselves, "Who is this who even forgives sins?"

10

Jesus heals Peter's mother-in-law of a high fever

¹Jesus then went to the home of Peter. Now Peter's mother-in-law was suffering from a high fever and they told Jesus about her. ²Jesus stood over her and rebuked the fever and it left her, then Jesus took her by the hand and she arose at once and began to serve them.

Jesus arises while still dark to pray in a solitary place

³Very early the next morning, while it was still dark Jesus arose and left the house and went off to a solitary place where he prayed.

⁴Later Peter and his companions went looking for him. When they found him they said, "Everybody is looking for you."

Jesus to preach the good news in other towns

⁵They tried to prevent Jesus from leaving

*17 A denarius (denarii is plural) was a Roman silver coin worth about a day's wage.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 10

Capernaum but he said to them, **“I must preach the good news of the kingdom of God to the other towns also, for that is why I was sent.”**

Jesus travels throughout Galilee teaching and healing

⁶So Jesus went throughout Galilee, preaching the good news of the kingdom, teaching in the synagogues and healing every disease and sickness among the people.

Vast crowds begin to follow Jesus

⁷Soon vast crowds, from Galilee, Jerusalem, Judea and from across the Jordan began to follow Jesus wherever he went.

Jesus heals a leper

⁸While Jesus was teaching in one of the towns, there came a man who was covered with leprosy. He fell with his face to the ground and pleaded with Jesus saying, “Lord, if you are willing, you can make me clean.”

⁹Jesus said, **“I am willing,”** and he reached out his hand and touched the man saying, **“Be clean.”** And immediately the leprosy left him.

The healed leper disobeys Jesus and spreads news of his healing

¹⁰Jesus then commanded him saying, **“Tell nobody, but go up to Jerusalem and show yourself to the priests. Then offer the sacrifice that Moses commanded for your cleansing, as a testimony to them.”**

¹¹But the man went about speaking freely of his healing.

Jesus has to stay mostly in the countryside because of the crowds

¹²Because of this, Jesus could no longer openly enter a town. So he stayed mostly out in the countryside.

Jesus and his disciples try to escape the crowds

¹³Jesus returned to Capernaum, but because of the crowds around him he said to his disciples, **“Let us cross to the other side of the lake.”**

The Son of Man has no place to lay his head

¹⁴A teacher of the Law came up to Jesus and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.”

¹⁵Jesus replied, **“Foxes have holes and birds have nests, but the Son of Man has no place to lay his head.”**

Let the spiritually dead bury the dead

¹⁶One of his disciples said to him, “Lord, first let me go and bury my father.”

¹⁷Jesus replied, **“Follow me. Let the dead bury the dead.”** ^{F*}

Anyone who looks back is unfit to serve in the kingdom of God

¹⁸Another disciple said, “I will follow you Lord, but first let me go back and say goodbye to my family.”

¹⁹Jesus replied, **“Any man who puts his hand to the plow and looks back is not fit**

for service in the kingdom of God.”

Jesus calms the storm

²⁰When evening came, Jesus got into a boat with his disciples. Other boats also followed. As they were crossing the lake a furious storm arose without warning and waves began to break over the boat so that it was almost swamped. They were in great danger.

²¹But Jesus was asleep on a cushion in the stern. The disciples awoke him crying out, “Master save us! Do you not care that we perish!”

²²Jesus replied, **“O you of little faith, why do you fear?”** Then rising up he rebuked the wind and the waves saying, **“Peace! Be still!”** And the lake became completely calm.

²³The disciples were awed and said, “What kind of man is this, who even the wind and waves obey?”

A naked and demon possessed man

²⁴When they arrived at the other side of the lake, as Jesus stepped out of the boat, a naked man possessed by an unclean spirit came running from the tombs and fell on his knees in front of Jesus.



A sudden storm on the Lake of Galilee.

²⁵This man lived in the tombs and was so violent that no one could pass that way, nor could they bind him any more, not even with chains, for he had been chained hand and foot, but had torn the chains apart and broken the irons on his feet.

²⁶No one was strong enough to subdue this man and for a long time he had gone naked and lived in the tombs. Night and day he would cry out and cut himself with stones.

The head demon recognises Jesus

²⁷Now as he knelt before Jesus the demon shouted at the top of his voice, “What do you want with me Jesus son of the Most High God? Have you come here to torment me before the appointed time?”

²⁸For Jesus had said to him, **“Come out of this man you unclean spirit.”**

²⁹Jesus said to him, **“What is your name?”** He replied, “My name is Legion, for we are

*17 In the sense of ‘Let the spiritually dead bury the physically dead.’

many.^{F*} ³⁰Then he begged Jesus over and over not to send them to the Pit.^{F*}

Jesus permits demons to enter a large herd of pigs

³¹Now a large herd of pigs was feeding on the hillside nearby. So the demon begged Jesus saying, "Allow us to go into the pigs."

³²Jesus gave them permission and the spirits came out and entered the pigs.

The pigs drown in the lake

³³Immediately the herd of pigs, about 2000 in number, rushed down the steep bank into the lake and were drowned.

The local people fear Jesus and plead with him to leave their region

³⁴Those tending the pigs ran off and reported what had happened in the town and countryside and the people came out to see for themselves.

³⁵They saw the man who had been possessed, sitting at the feet of Jesus, dressed and in his right mind. But they were fearful and pleaded with Jesus to leave their region.

Jesus sends the delivered man back home to tell others what happened

³⁶As Jesus was getting back into the boat the man who had been delivered^{F*} begged to go with him. But Jesus said, "**Return home to your family and friends and tell them how the Lord has had mercy on you.**"

³⁷So the man went away and began to tell the people in the towns round about what Jesus had done for him, and all the people were amazed.

Jesus returns to Capernaum

³⁸When Jesus returned by boat to Capernaum, a huge crowd gathered around him while he was still by the lake edge.

Jesus goes to heal the daughter of Jairus

³⁹Then one of the synagogue rulers named Jairus fell at his feet and pleaded earnestly with him saying, "My young daughter is dying. Please come and lay your hands on her so she will be healed and live."

⁴⁰She was his only daughter, aged about twelve years. So Jesus went with Jairus and the huge crowd followed and pressed around him.

A woman touches cloak of Jesus and is healed of her bleeding

⁴¹There was a woman in the crowd who had been suffering from bleeding for twelve years. She had endured much under the care of many doctors and had spent all her money, yet instead of getting better she had got worse.

⁴²She came up behind Jesus in the crowd and touched his cloak, for she thought, "If I just touch him I will be healed." Immediately her bleeding stopped and she knew within her body

*29 A legion was an army division of approx 6000 soldiers.

*30 The Pit was believed to be the darkest region of the spirit world of the dead as opposed to Paradise, the most glorious region.

*18 Delivered means to have cast out an unclean spirit.

that she had been healed.

Jesus asks who touched him

⁴³Jesus felt power go out from him and turned around in the crowd and said, "**Who touched me?**"

⁴⁴His disciples replied, "The crowd presses against you and you ask, 'Who touched me?'"

⁴⁵Jesus said, "**Power has gone out from me,**" and he kept looking around to see who had done it.

The woman's faith healed her

⁴⁶The woman came and fell down at his feet, trembling with fear, and told him what she had done.

⁴⁷Jesus said to her, "**Courage daughter, your faith has healed you. Go in peace and be freed from your suffering.**"

Jairus told his daughter is dead

⁴⁸While Jesus was still speaking, some men came and said to Jairus, "Your daughter has died. Do not bother the teacher any more."

⁴⁹But Jesus said to Jarius, "**Fear not, just believe.**" And he did not let anyone else follow him except Peter, James and John.

The mourners laugh at the words of Jesus

⁵⁰When they came to the house of Jairus there was a noisy crowd outside with flute players and people crying and wailing loudly.

⁵¹Jesus entered the house and said, "**Why all this noise and wailing? The girl is not dead, she is sleeping.**" But they laughed at him.

Jesus raises the daughter of Jairus to life

⁵²Jesus sent them all outside, and taking the girl's father and mother and the three apostles who were with him, he went in to where the girl lay. Then he took her by the hand and said to her, "**Young women, I say to you, arise.**"

⁵³Immediately the girl stood on her feet and began to walk around. At this they were astonished.

⁵⁴Jesus gave strict orders not to let anyone know about this, and told them to give her something to eat.

Jesus heals two blind men

⁵⁵As Jesus went on from there, two blind men followed him calling out, "Have mercy on us Son of David!"^{F*}

⁵⁶When Jesus reached the house where he stayed, the blind men followed him in. Jesus said to them, "**Do you believe I am able to do this?**"

⁵⁷They replied, "Yes Lord."

⁵⁸So he touched their eyes and said, "**According to your faith it will be done to you,**" and their sight was restored.

⁵⁹Then Jesus warned them sternly, "**See that no one hears about this.**" (But they later spread the news over all that region.)

A mute demon driven out

⁶⁰As the two men were leaving, a man who

*55 'Son of David' was another title among the Jews for the Christ or Messiah.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 11

was demon-possessed and could not speak, was brought into Jesus. When the unclean spirit was driven out, the man who had been dumb spoke.

⁶¹All were amazed and said, "Nothing like this has ever been seen in Israel."

11

Jesus has compassion on the crowds

¹Jesus continued going through all the towns and villages of Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, preaching the good news of the kingdom and healing every disease and sickness.

²When he saw the crowds he had compassion on them for they were harassed and helpless, like sheep without a shepherd.

Jesus gives his twelve apostles authority to preach and heal also

³Jesus said to his disciples, "The harvest is great but the workers are few. Therefore ask the Lord of the harvest to send more workers into the field." ⁴And calling his twelve apostles to him, he gave them authority to drive out unclean spirits, and to heal every disease and sickness.

The twelve apostles sent out to the lost sheep of Israel

⁵Then he commanded them to go out two by two and instructed them saying, "Go not among the Gentiles, nor enter any town of the Samaritans. Go rather to the lost sheep of Israel and preach this message, 'The kingdom of God is near you.'"

Apostles given power

⁶"Heal the sick, raise the dead, cleanse those who have leprosy, drive out demons. Freely you have received, freely give."

The Twelve to be cared for by the people

⁷"Take no money with you, or bag for your journey, nor spare tunic or sandals. Only a staff, for the labourer is worthy of his keep."

⁸"In whatever town or village you enter search for a worthy person and stay at his home until you leave. ⁹As you enter his home give it your blessing. If the home is deserving, your peace will descend upon it. If it is not your peace will return to you."

Apostles to shake the dust off their feet when not welcomed

¹⁰"If any will not welcome you or hear your words, shake the dust off your feet when you leave that home or town. I say to you, it will be more bearable for Sodom and Gomorrah on the day of judgement than for that town."

The twelve apostles going out like sheep among wolves

¹¹"I am sending you out like sheep among wolves. Be as wise as serpents and innocent as doves."

¹²"A servant is not superior to his master, but a servant who is perfect can become

like his master. ¹³However the master of the house has been called Satan, therefore how much more those of his household."

¹⁴"But fear not those who can only destroy the body. Rather fear the One who is able to destroy both body and soul in Gehenna." ^{F*}

Not a sparrow falls to the ground without the will of the Father

¹⁵"Are not two sparrows sold for a copper coin? Yet not one of them falls to the ground without the will of your Father."

¹⁶"So fear not, you are of more value than many sparrows. Even the very hairs of your head are numbered."

Jesus will acknowledge before the Father all who acknowledge him before men

¹⁷"Whoever acknowledges me before men, I will acknowledge also before my Father in heaven. But whoever disowns me before men, I too will disown them before my Father in heaven."

¹⁸"He who receives you receives me, and he who receives me, receives the one who sent me."

Charitable believers will not lose their reward

¹⁹"Truly I say to you, anyone who believes in me, who gives even a cup of cold water to a little child in your name, shall not lose his reward."

Whoever loves his family more than Jesus is not worthy of him

²⁰"But anyone who loves his father, mother, son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me. And anyone who does not take up his cross^{F*} and follow me is not worthy of me."

Whoever loses his life for Jesus sake will find it

²¹"Whoever seeks to save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for my sake will find it."

The twelve apostles sent out on their missions two by two

²²Then Jesus sent out the Twelve two by two on their missions. They preached repentance, cast out many demons and anointed many sick people with oil and healed them.

Jesus visits the town of Nain

²³Soon afterward Jesus went to a town called Nain.^{F*} His remaining disciples and a great crowd went with him.

Jesus raises a widow's son to life

²⁴As Jesus approached the town gate the body of a young man who had died was being carried out. He was the only son of his mother who was a widow. A large crowd from the town was with her.

²⁵When Jesus saw the widow his heart went

*13 See note regarding Gehenna, Matt-Mark-Luke 7:32.

*20 To 'carry ones cross' was a figure of speech even in the days of Jesus. It means to willingly shoulder a burden. See also (Matt-Mark-Luke 17:18.)

*23 Nain was about 35 km south of Capernaum.

out to her and he said, **“Weep not.”** Then he touched the bier and those carrying it stood still. He said, **“Young man, I say to you arise.”**

²⁶The young man sat up and began to speak and Jesus gave him back to his mother.

²⁷All were filled with awe and praised God saying, **“A mighty prophet has come among us.”** Some said, **“God himself has come among his people.”**

12

John the Baptist sends disciples to Jesus

¹News about Jesus had now spread throughout Judea. The disciples of John the Baptist's also told him about these things in prison. So John sent two of them to enquire of Jesus.

²When John's disciples came to Jesus they said, **“John the Baptist sent us to say to you, ‘Are you the one who was to come or should we look for another?’”**

Jesus sends John's disciples back to John to report what they have seen

³Now that day in the presence of John's two disciples Jesus had healed many who had sicknesses and unclean spirits and had given sight to many who were blind.

⁴So he said to them, **“Return and report to John what you have seen and heard. The blind receive sight, the lame walk, they who have leprosy are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are raised and the good news is preached to the poor.”**

⁵**“Blessed is he who believes in me.”**

Jesus speaks of John the Baptist

⁶After John's messengers left, Jesus spoke to the crowd about John the Baptist saying, **“What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed swayed by the wind? A man dressed in fine clothes? Those who wear fine clothes and live in luxury are found in palaces.”**

⁷**“What then did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, and I say to you he is more than a prophet. He is the one about whom it is written, ‘I will send my messenger who will prepare the way before me.’”** ^{F*}

⁸**“Truly I say to you, among those born of women there has not risen one greater than John, yet he who is meekest in the kingdom of God is greater than him.”** ^{F*}

Forceful men will grasp the kingdom of God

⁹**“From the early days of John until now, men have been crowding toward the kingdom of God, and forceful ones will grasp hold of it.”**

John the Baptist is the Elijah who was to come

¹⁰**“The prophets prophesied of John, and if**

you are willing to accept it, he is the who was to come. ^{F*} **He who has ears let him hear.”**

Both John the Baptist and Jesus criticised by this generation

¹¹**“But the people of this generation are like children in the marketplace who say to one another, ‘We played the flute and you did not dance,’ or ‘we wailed and you did not weep.’”**

¹²**“For John the Baptist came neither eating bread nor drinking wine and they said, ‘He has a demon.’ The Son of Man came eating and drinking and they say, ‘Here is a glutton and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners.’”**

¹³**“But truth is proved by her fruits in time.”**

Jesus denounces the cities of Chorazin, Bethsaida and Capernaum

¹⁴Then Jesus began to denounce the cities in which most of his miracles had been done, for they had not repented.

¹⁵**“Woe to you Chorazin. Woe to you Bethsaida. If the miracles performed in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon they would have repented long ago. It will be more bearable for Tyre and Sidon on the day of judgement than for you.”**

¹⁶**“And you Capernaum, will you be lifted up to the skies? No, you will go down to Hades.”** ^{F*} **For if the miracles performed in you had been performed in Sodom, it would have remained to this day. It will be more bearable for Sodom on the day of judgement than for you.”**

Truth hidden from the self-wise and learned but revealed to the humble

¹⁷At that time Jesus prayed saying, **“I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth, for you have hidden these things from the self-wise and the learned, and revealed them to the humble in heart. Yes Father for such was your gracious will.”**

Jesus truly knows the Father and can reveal him

¹⁸Then Jesus said to the people, **“All things have been entrusted to me by my Father. No one truly knows the Son except the Father, and no one truly knows the Father except the Son, and anyone to whom the Son chooses to reveal him.”**

Come unto me all you weary and heavy laden

¹⁹**“Come unto me all you who are weary and heavy laden, and I will give you rest.”**

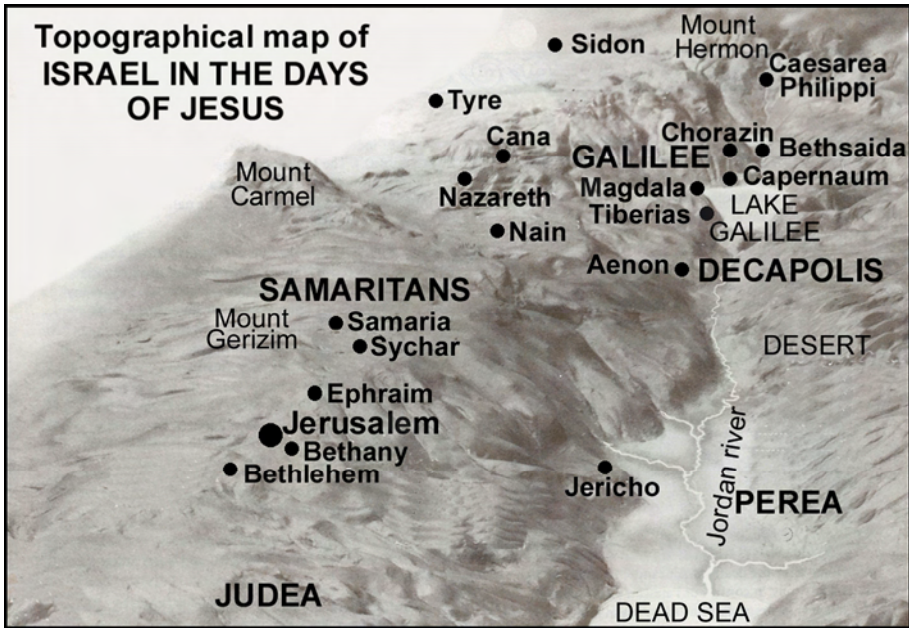
²⁰**“Take my yoke upon you and learn from me, for I am meek and humble in heart and you will find rest for your souls. For my yoke is easy and my burden is light.”**

^{*10} John denied that he was the literal Elijah. See explanatory note on Matt-Mark-Luke 17:37.

^{*16} Hades was the Greek term for the spirit world of the dead which was believed to be located inside the earth. It was equivalent to the Hebrew term ‘Sheol’ of the Old Testament (Ecclesiastes 4:18).

^{*7} This prophecy is found in Malachi 3:1.

^{*8} Jesus was most likely referring to himself. See verse 20 of this chapter and also verses 24-25 in the following chapter.



Topographical map of Israel showing the great variation in elevation of the land.

13

The Sabbath made for man not man for the Sabbath

¹One Sabbath day Jesus and his disciples passed through some grain fields. The disciples were hungry and began to pluck some of the heads of grain and eat them.

²When the Pharisees saw this they said to Jesus, "Look your disciples are doing what is unlawful on the Sabbath." F*

³Jesus answered, "Have you not read what David did when he was hungry? How he entered the Tabernacle and gave his men consecrated bread which was not lawful for them to eat, only for the priests."

⁴"Or have you not read in the Law how on the Sabbath the priests in the Temple break the Sabbath rest, yet are innocent before God? ⁵I tell you, one greater than the Temple is here."

⁶"If you had known what these words mean, 'I desire mercy, not sacrifice,' you would not have condemned the innocent."

⁷"The Sabbath is made for man, not man for the Sabbath. The Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath."

A man with a shrivelled hand healed on the Sabbath

⁸That same day Jesus went into their synagogue and a man with a shrivelled hand was there. Looking for a reason to accuse Jesus the Pharisees said to him, "Is it lawful to

heal on the Sabbath?"

⁹Jesus said to the man, "Stand up here in front of everybody." The man did so, then Jesus said to them, "What is lawful on the Sabbath, to do good or to do evil, to save life or to destroy it?"

¹⁰"If any of you had a sheep and it fell into a pit on the Sabbath day would you not lift it out? How much more valuable is a man than a sheep? Therefore it is lawful to do good on the Sabbath."

¹¹And he looked around at them indignantly, grieved at the hardness of their hearts. ¹²Then he said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." The man stretched it out and it became perfectly restored, as sound as the other.

Pharisees incensed, plot to kill Jesus

¹³The Pharisees were incensed at this and went out and plotted with the Herodians as to how they might kill Jesus.

Jesus returns to Capernaum

¹⁴Aware of this, Jesus withdrew from that place and returned to Capernaum. Many followed him there and he healed all their sick.

Great crowds push to touch Jesus

¹⁵Because of the crowds, Jesus asked his disciples to have a small boat ready for him to prevent the people from crowding him. For he had healed so many that those with diseases kept pushing forward to touch him.

Jesus and his disciples unable to eat because of the crowds

¹⁶Then Jesus entered a house, but again

*2 ie Harvesting grain.

such a great crowd gathered that he and his disciples were not even able to eat.

The family of Jesus set out to take charge of him thinking he is out of his mind

¹⁷When the family of Jesus heard about all these things they set out to take charge of him saying, "He is out of his mind."

Jesus said to be possessed by Satan

¹⁸About that time Jesus delivered and healed a demon-possessed man who was blind and dumb so that he could both see and speak. The people were astonished and said, "Could this be the Christ?"



Jesus sometimes taught large crowds while sitting in a fishing boat like these on Lake Galilee.

¹⁹Now whenever a possessed person saw Jesus they would fall down before him and the demons would cry out, "You are the Son of God." But always Jesus gave them strict orders to be silent and not reveal who he was.

²⁰But the teachers of the Law who had come from Jerusalem said of Jesus, "He is possessed by Satan. It is by the prince of demons that he drives out demons."

The Pharisees ask for a sign from heaven

²¹Some Pharisees said to him, "Teacher, show us a sign from heaven."

²²Jesus answered, "A wicked and adulterous generation ask for a sign."

Only the sign of the prophet Jonah to be given

²³"But none will be given, except the sign of the prophet Jonah. For as Jonah was three days and nights in the belly of a huge fish, so the Son of Man will be three days and nights in the heart of the earth."

The men of Nineveh will condemn this generation

²⁴"The men of Nineveh will rise on the day of judgement and condemn this generation, for they repented at the preaching of Jonah, and now one greater than Jonah is here."

The queen of Sheba will also condemn this generation

²⁵"The queen of Sheba will also condemn this generation. For she came from the ends of the earth to hear Solomon's wisdom and now one greater than Solomon is here."

How can Satan drive out Satan?

²⁶Then Jesus called the teachers of the Law to him and said, "How can Satan drive out Satan? A kingdom divided against itself cannot stand. If Satan opposes himself he is divided and his end has come."

²⁷"And if I drive out demons by Satan, by whom do your own people drive them out? Let them be your judges."

Demons are driven out by the power of the Holy Spirit

²⁸"No one can enter a strong man's house and carry off his goods unless he first ties up the strong man. Then he can rob his house."

²⁹"But if I drive out demons by the power of the Holy Spirit, then the kingdom of God has come among you."

Blasphemy against the Holy Spirit an eternal sin

³⁰"Truly I say to you, all sins and blasphemies of men will be forgiven, but whoever blasphemes against the Holy Spirit will never be forgiven, neither in this age nor in the age to come. ³¹He has committed an eternal sin."

³²Jesus said this because they had said, "He has an unclean spirit."

A tree is known by its fruit

³³"A tree is known by its fruit. A good tree brings forth good fruit, and a bad tree bad fruit."

³⁴"You brood of vipers, how can you who are evil say anything good? For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks."

Every careless word to be accounted for on the day of judgement

³⁵"On the day of judgement men will give an account for every careless word they have uttered. By your words you will be either justified or condemned."

The final state of this generation who reject Jesus will be worse than at first

³⁶"When an unclean spirit is driven out of a man it goes through arid places seeking rest, but does not find it. Then it says, 'I will return to my house which I left.'"

³⁷"When it arrives it finds the house unoccupied, swept clean, and put in order. Then it goes and brings along seven other spirits more evil than itself and they go in and live there. ³⁸Therefore the final state of that man is worse than the first. That is how it will be with this wicked generation."

Blessed are they who obey the word of God

³⁹As Jesus was saying these things a woman in the crowd called out, "Blessed is the mother who gave you birth and the breast you sucked."

⁴⁰Jesus replied, "Blessed rather are those who hear the word of God and obey it."

The mother and brothers of Jesus arrive

⁴¹Then the mother of Jesus and his brothers

MATT-MARK-LUKE 14

arrived. But they were unable to get near him because of the crowd. So they stood outside the house and sent someone to call him out.

⁴²A crowd was sitting around Jesus when they told him, "Your mother and brothers are outside wanting to speak to you."

All who do the will of the Father are family to Jesus

⁴³Jesus said, "Who is my mother? Who are my brothers?" Then pointing to his disciples sitting around him he said, "Here are my mother and my brothers. ⁴³For whoever does the will of my Father in heaven is my brother and sister and mother."

14

Jesus again teaches from a boat

¹That same day Jesus left the house and sat by the lake. But again such a vast crowd gathered around him that he got into a boat and sat there to teach, while the people stood on the beach.

²Jesus taught them many things in parables.

The parable of the sower

³"A sower went out to sow seed. As he scattered the seed, some fell along the pathway and the birds came and ate it up."

⁴"Some fell on rocky places where there was little soil. It sprang up quickly, but when the sun became hot the seedlings withered, for they had no root in the shallow soil."

⁵"Other seed fell among thorns, which grew up and choked the plants."

⁶"Still other seed fell on good soil where it produced thirty, sixty, or a hundred times what was sown."

⁷"He who has ears let him hear."



A sower sowing seed.

Why Jesus spoke in parables

⁸The disciples said to Jesus, "Why do you speak to the crowd in parables?"

⁹Jesus answered, "It is given to you to

understand the secrets of the kingdom of God, but not to them. For whoever has, will be given more, but to whoever has not, even what he has will be taken from him. That is why I speak to them in parables."

¹⁰"In them is fulfilled the prophecy of Isaiah, 'You will hear but never understand. You will see but never perceive. For the hearts of this people are hardened, and their ears dull, and their eyes unseeing, otherwise they would understand, and repent and be healed.'"

Many prophets and righteous men longed to see what the disciples see

¹¹"But blessed are your eyes and ears, for they see and hear. ¹²Many prophets and righteous men have longed to see what you see and hear, but did not."

The meaning of the parable of the sower

¹³"Did you not understand this parable? How then will you understand any parable?"

¹⁴"This is the meaning of the parable. The sower is sowing the word of God. The seed that fell on the path and was eaten by birds represents those who hear but do not understand. ¹⁵Then the devil comes and snatches away the word from their hearts so they might not believe and be saved."

¹⁶"The seed that fell on rocky places represents those who receive the word with joy when they first hear it, but because they are shallow and have no root, when temptation comes they fall away."

¹⁷"The seed that fell among thorns represents those who hear, but their progress is choked by the worries, riches, and pleasures of life, therefore they do not mature."

¹⁸"But the seed on good soil represents those with honest and good hearts, who hearing the word, hold it fast and by enduring produce a crop. Some thirty-fold, some sixty-fold, and some a hundred fold."

The parable of the seeds and the grain harvest

¹⁹Jesus again spoke to the people in parables. ²⁰"This is what the kingdom of God is like: A man sows grain in the ground and the seed sprouts and grows all by itself, though the man does not know how."

²¹"As soon as the grain is ripe the man puts the sickle to it, for the harvest has come."

The parable of the wheat and the tares

²²"Again, the kingdom of God is like a man who sowed good seed in his field, but while he was sleeping an enemy came and sowed tares^{F*} among the wheat. When the wheat sprouted the tares also appeared."

²³"The man's servants came to him and said, 'Sir did you not sow good seed in your field? Where then did these weeds come from?'"

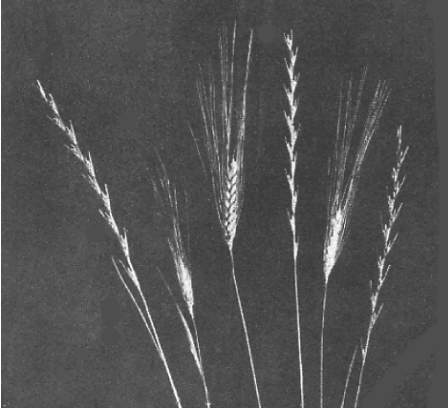
*22 Tares are a type of rye grass called Darnel that resembles wheat when growing.

²⁴“He replied, ‘An enemy has done this.’”

²⁵“The servants said, ‘Shall we go and pull up the weeds?’”

²⁶“He answered, ‘No, for while you are pulling up the tares you may pull up the wheat with them.’”

²⁷“Let them both grow together until the day of harvest. At that time I will order the harvesters to first collect the tares and tie them in bundles to be burned. Then they will gather the wheat into my barn.”



Fully grown tares and wheat (with grain heads). Both look similar as young seedlings.

The parable of the mustard seed

²⁸Jesus told them another parable. “The kingdom of God is like a mustard seed which a man took and planted in his field. ²⁹Though it is the smallest of all your seeds, when it grows it is the largest of garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and perch in its branches.”

The parable of the yeast and the dough

³⁰He told them still another parable: “The kingdom of God is like yeast that a woman took and mixed into a large amount of dough, until it worked all the way through.”

Jesus always used parables

³¹With many similar parables Jesus taught the people as much as they could understand. He did not teach anything to them without also using a parable. ³²But when he was alone with his disciples he explained everything fully.

The meaning of the parable of the wheat and the tares

³³Then Jesus left the crowd and went back into the house. His disciples came to him and said, “Explain to us the parable of the tares in the field.”

³⁴Jesus answered, “The one who sowed the good seed is the Son of Man, and the field is the world.”

³⁵“The good seed represents the sons of the kingdom, and the weeds are the sons of



The mustard tree of Israel.

the evil one and the enemy who sows them is the devil. ³⁶The harvest is the end of the age, and the harvesters are the angels.”

³⁷“Just as the tares are pulled up and burned in the fire, so will it be at the end of the age. ³⁸The Son of Man will send out his angels and they will weed out of his kingdom all who cause sin and do evil, and will throw them into the furnace of fire where they will weep and grind their teeth.”

³⁹“Then the righteous will shine like the sun in the kingdom of their Father.”

⁴⁰“He who has ears let him hear.”

The parable of treasure hidden in a field

⁴¹“The kingdom of God is like treasure hidden in a field. When a man found the treasure, he hid it again. Then in his joy he went and sold all that he had and bought the field.”

The parable of the pearl of great price

⁴²“Again, the kingdom of God is like a merchant searching for fine pearls. When he found one of great price he went away and sold all that he had and bought it.”

The parable of the catch of all kinds of fish

⁴³“Once again, the kingdom of God is like a net that is let down into the lake and catches all kinds of fish. When it is full the fishermen drag it up on the shore then sit down and sort the good fish into baskets, but throw the worthless fish away.”

⁴⁴“So will it be at the end of the age. The angels will come and separate the wicked

MATT-MARK-LUKE 15

from the righteous, and cast the wicked into the furnace of fire where they will weep and grind their teeth.”

Knowledge of the kingdom of God like new treasure added to old

⁴⁵Jesus said to his disciples, “Have you understood all these things?”

They replied, “We have.”

⁴⁶So he said to them, “Every teacher of the Law who becomes instructed regarding the kingdom of God is like the owner of a house who can bring out of his storeroom new treasures as well as old.”

Jesus again visits Nazareth

⁴⁷When Jesus had finished these parables he returned again to his home town of Nazareth and went to teach the people in their synagogue.

The brothers of Jesus named

⁴⁸The people of Nazareth were astonished and asked, “Where did this man get his wisdom and these miraculous powers? ⁴⁹Is not this the carpenter, the son of Mary,^{F*} and are not his brothers James, Joseph, Simon and Jude? And are not all his sisters with us? ⁵⁰Where then did he get all these powers?” And they took offence at him.

Few miracles done in Nazareth due to lack of faith

⁵¹Jesus said to them, “Only in his home town and in his own house is a prophet without honour.”

⁵²Jesus did few miracles in Nazareth because of their lack of faith except to lay his hands on a few who were sick and heal them.

15

Herodias has John the Baptist beheaded

¹Now an opportune time arose for Herodias, the wife of Herod to carry out her desire to kill John the Baptist.

²Herod gave a feast on his birthday for his officials and commanders and the leading men of Galilee. The daughter of Herodias came in and danced for them.

³She so pleased the king and his guests that Herod said to her, “Ask me for anything you want and I will give it to you, up to half my kingdom.”

⁴She went out and said to her mother, “What shall I ask for?”

⁵Herodius said to her, “Ask for the head of John the Baptist.”

⁶She returned to the king and said, “I want the head of John the Baptist, on a plate right now.”

⁷The king was greatly distressed at this but because of his promise before his guests he did not refuse her. ⁸An executioner went and beheaded John in the prison and brought back

his head on a plate. He presented it to the daughter of Herodias and she took it to her mother.

⁹When John’s disciples heard what had happened they came and took his body and laid it in a tomb.

The Twelve return from their missions

¹⁰About this time, the Twelve returned from their missions. They reported to Jesus all that they had done and taught, and also what had happened to John.

Jesus desires to take the Twelve to a quiet place by boat for rest

¹¹Because so many people were coming and going and they did not even have a chance to eat, Jesus said to his apostles, “Come with me to a quiet place and get some rest.”

¹²So they went away by themselves in a boat to a solitary place.

A great crowd await their arrival

¹³But many saw them depart, and ran on foot around the lake to where they were headed, gathering others from towns as they went, and they got there ahead of them. ¹⁴When Jesus and his apostles landed they saw a great crowd waiting for them.

¹⁵Jesus had compassion on them, for they were like sheep without a shepherd. So he began to teach them many things.

The first miracle of the loaves and fishes

¹⁶When it was late in the day the apostles said to Jesus, “This is a remote place and it is already very late. Send the people away now so they can go to the villages and buy themselves food to eat.”

¹⁷Jesus said, “You give them something to eat.”

¹⁸They said, “It would cost about 200 denarii^{F*} to feed all these! Are we to go and spend that much on bread for them to eat?”

¹⁹Jesus asked, “How many loaves have you? Go and see.”

²⁰They came back and said, “We have five loaves of bread, and two fishes.”

²¹Jesus directed the Twelve to have all the people sit in groups on the green grass. So the people sat down in groups of hundreds and fifties. ²²Then taking the five loaves and the two fishes, Jesus looked up to heaven, gave thanks, and broke the loaves. He then gave them to his apostles to hand out to the people. He also divided the two fish among them all.

²³All the people ate and were satisfied, and afterward the apostles picked up twelve basketfuls of broken pieces of bread and fish.

5000 men, plus women and children fed

²⁴The number of men who had eaten was about 5000, besides women and children.

The apostles leave by boat while Jesus dismisses the crowd and then prays alone

²⁵Then Jesus told his apostles to get into the

*49 It is believed that Joseph had died by this time.

*18 About eight months wages for a labourer.

boat and go on ahead of him to Bethsaida while he dismissed the crowd.

²⁶After the crowd had departed, Jesus went up into the hills alone to pray.

Jesus walks on the water

²⁷After darkness had fallen, Jesus was alone on the land and the boat was far out on the lake, battered by waves. ²⁸The apostles were straining at the oars, for the wind was against them.

²⁹About the fourth watch of the night,^{F*} Jesus went out to them, walking on the lake and made as if to pass by them.

³⁰When the apostles saw him walking on the water they were terrified and cried out in fear saying, "It is a spirit!" But Jesus called to them and said, "**Take courage. It is I. Fear not.**"



Artist's view of Jesus walking on the water.

Peter also walks on the water

³¹Peter called back, "Lord, if it be you, command me to come to you on the water!"

³²Jesus replied, "**Come!**"

³³So Peter stepped out of the boat and began to walk upon the water toward Jesus. But when he felt the strong wind he feared and began to sink and cried out, "Lord save me!"

³⁴Immediately Jesus reached out his hand and caught him, saying, "**O you of little faith, why did you doubt?**"

³⁵As soon as they got into the boat the wind ceased. Then those in the boat worshipped

Jesus saying, "Truly you are the Son of God."

All the sick are healed at Bethsaida even by touching his garment

³⁶When they had crossed over they landed near Bethsaida. The men of that place recognised Jesus and sent word to all the surrounding countryside.

³⁷The people carried all their sick to Jesus on beds and begged him to let the sick just touch the edge of his garment. And all who touched him were healed.

16

Who is this man Jesus?

¹Jesus was now well known in Galilee, but some were saying, "He is Elijah," others claimed, "He is a prophet, like one of the prophets of old." ²Still others said, "John the Baptist has been raised from the dead, that is why miraculous powers are at work in him."

³When Herod heard these things he said, "John I beheaded, who then is this man," and tried to see him.

The Pharisees ask Jesus why his disciples break tradition by not washing their hands before eating

⁴Now some Pharisees and teachers of the Law who had come from Jerusalem saw disciples of Jesus eating food without first washing their hands.

⁵The Pharisees never eat without first washing their hands, holding to the tradition of the elders. They also observe many other traditions.

⁶So they said to Jesus, "Why do your disciples break the tradition of the elders by eating food with defiled hands?"

Jesus condemns traditions of the Pharisees

⁷Jesus replied, "Why do you break the commandments of God for the sake of your traditions? ⁸For God said 'Honour your father and your mother' and 'Anyone who curses his father or mother must be put to death.'

⁹"But you teach, if a man says to his father or mother 'Whatever help you might have received from me is now a gift devoted to God' he need no longer do anything more for his parents."

¹⁰"Therefore you nullify the word of God for the sake of your traditions, and you teach many other things like that."

¹¹"You hypocrites, Isaiah was right when he prophesied about you 'This people draw near to me with their lips but their hearts are far from me. Their fear toward me is taught by the traditions of men.'

¹²"You have let go of the commandments of God, and are holding on to the commandments of men."

What comes out of the mouth defiles

¹³Jesus called the crowd to him and said, "Hear and understand. It is not what goes into the mouth that defiles a person, but what comes out of the mouth."

*29 The fourth watch began at 3am.

Pharisees are blind guides

¹⁴Afterward the disciples said to Jesus, “The Pharisees were offended by your words.”

¹⁵Jesus replied, “Every plant that my Father has not planted will be pulled up by the roots. Let them be. Everything they do is done for men to see. ¹⁶They are blind guides. If one blind man leads another blind man both will fall into a pit.”

Disciples of Jesus not to be called Rabbi, Father or Master

¹⁷“They love being called Rabbi,^{F*} but you are not to be called Rabbi, for you have only one teacher, and you are all brothers.”

¹⁸“And do not call anyone on earth Father, for you have only one Father and he is in heaven.”

¹⁹“Nor are you to be called Master, for you have but one Master, the Christ.”

The teaching on defilement explained

²⁰When Jesus had left the crowd and entered the house, Peter said to him, “Explain the teaching on defilement to us.”

²¹Jesus said to them, “Are you still without understanding? Do you not see that whatever enters the mouth goes into the stomach and then passes out of the body?

²²But the things that come out of the mouth come from the heart, and these are what make a person unclean.”

Sins that defile

²³“For out of the heart come evil thoughts, murder, adultery, fornication, lewdness, theft, false witness, slander, greed, malice, deceit, pride, and envy. These are what defile a person, not eating with unwashed hands.”

Jesus visits the region of Tyre

²⁴Leaving Galilee, Jesus withdrew to the region of Tyre. He did not want anyone to know he was there and stayed in a house. Yet he could not keep his presence secret.

A Greek woman asks Jesus to deliver her demon-possessed daughter

²⁵A Greek woman born in Phoenicia^{F*} heard that Jesus was there and she came to him. Falling at his feet she cried out, “O Lord, Son of David, have mercy on me! My little daughter is being tormented terribly by a demon!”

²⁶Jesus would not answer her. Then his disciples came to him and said, “Send her away for she keeps crying after us.”

Jesus explains that he was sent only to the Israelites

²⁷The woman came again to Jesus, and kneeling before him pleaded saying, “Lord, please help me.”

²⁸Jesus said to her, “I was sent only to the lost sheep of Israel. It is not right to take the children’s bread and toss it to the dogs.”

Jesus commends the great faith of the Greek woman and delivers her daughter

²⁹She answered, “Yes Lord, but even the dogs eat the scraps that fall from their masters’ table.”

³⁰Jesus said, “O woman, great is your faith. Your request is granted.” And she went home and found her daughter lying on the bed and the demon gone.

Jesus visits the cities east of Lake Galilee

³¹Jesus left Tyre and went up through Sidon and then down around the lake of Galilee into the eastern region, the Decapolis.^{F*}



Tyre, in the region where the Greek woman pleaded with Jesus to heal her demon-possessed daughter.

Jesus heals on the mountain side

³²There he sat down on a mountain side and great crowds came to him bringing their lame, blind, crippled, dumb, and many others and laid them at his feet. And Jesus healed them.

A deaf man with a speech impediment healed

³³A man was brought to him who was deaf and had a speech impediment. They begged Jesus to lay his hands on the man.

³⁴Jesus took the man aside, away from the crowd and put his fingers into the man’s ears. Then he spat and touched the man’s tongue. He looked up to heaven and with a deep sigh said, “Be opened.”

³⁵The man’s ears were opened, his tongue was loosened, and he began to speak plainly.

³⁶Jesus ordered the people not to tell anyone of these things, but the more he ordered them not to speak, the more they talked about it.

³⁷The crowd was overwhelmed with amazement. “He can do anything!” they said. “He even makes the deaf hear and the dumb speak,” and they praised the God of Israel.

The second miracle of the loaves and fishes

³⁸Now the great crowd that had gathered had nothing to eat so Jesus called his disciples to him and said, “I have compassion for these people. They have been with me three days now and have nothing left to eat. ³⁹If I send them home hungry they may faint on the way, for some have come long distances.”

⁴⁰His disciples answered, “There is nowhere in this remote place where we can buy enough bread to feed all these.”

*17 Rabbi means ‘teacher.’

* 25 ie She was not an Israelite.

*31 The Decapolis was a region of ten cities east of Lake Galilee.

⁴¹Jesus said, “How many loaves have you?”

They replied, “Seven loaves and a few small fishes.”

⁴²So Jesus told the crowd to sit down on the ground. Then he took the seven loaves and fishes and after giving thanks he broke them and gave them to his disciples to hand out to the people.

⁴³The people ate and were satisfied and afterward the disciples picked up seven basketfuls of broken pieces that were left over.

4000 men, plus women and children fed

⁴⁴About 4000 men were present, besides women and children.

Jesus visits Magdala

⁴⁵After he had sent them away Jesus got into a boat with his disciples and landed at the town of Magdala.^{F*}

Jesus is again asked for a sign from heaven

⁴⁶While he was there some Pharisees and Sadducees^{F*} came to Jesus and tested him by asking him to show them a sign.

⁴⁷Jesus replied, “When evening comes you say, ‘Tomorrow will be fair weather for the sky is red,’ and in the morning, ‘Today it will be stormy for the sky is red and overcast.’
⁴⁸You know how to read the signs of the sky but you cannot read the signs of the times.”

⁴⁹“A wicked and adulterous generation asks for a miraculous sign but none will be given it except the sign of Jonah.”

⁵⁰Then Jesus left them and departed from that place.

Disciples warned against the false teaching and hypocrisy of the Pharisees and Sadducees

⁵¹As they were crossing the lake Jesus said to his disciples, “Beware the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.”

⁵²They did not understand what he meant and discussed it among themselves saying, “Is it because we brought no bread except this one loaf in the boat.”

⁵³Aware of their discussion Jesus said, “O you of little understanding, why do you speak about having no bread? Do you not remember the five loaves for the 5000 and the seven loaves for the 4000? Why is it that you do not understand that I am not speaking to you about bread?”

⁵⁴“Are your hearts still hardened? Do you also have eyes that fail to see and ears that fail to hear?”

⁵⁵Then they understood that he was not referring to yeast used in bread but warning them against the false teaching and hypocrisy of the Pharisees and Sadducees.

*45 Magdala was the home town of Mary Magdalene, the first person Jesus showed himself to after his resurrection.

*46 The Sadducees were a priestly, religious sect, predominantly of the wealthy ruling class. They did not believe in a life immediately following death, nor were they as zealous in obeying the letter of the Law as were the Pharisees.

A blind man healed

¹When they came to Bethsaida, some people brought a blind man to Jesus and begged him to heal him. Jesus took the blind man by the hand and led him outside the town. ²Then he spat on the man’s eyes and laid his hands on him and asked, “Do you see anything?”

³The man said, “I see people, but they look like trees walking around.”

⁴Once more Jesus put his hands on the man’s eyes and then the man’s sight was fully restored and he saw everything clearly. ⁵Jesus sent him home saying, “Go not back into the town nor tell anybody what happened.”

Jesus goes north to Caesarea Philippi

⁶Jesus and his disciples then journeyed to the towns around Caesarea Philippi.^{F*}

Peter acknowledges that Jesus is the Christ

⁷On the way Jesus said to his disciples, “Who do people say that I am?”

⁸They replied, “Some say you are John the Baptist, others say Elijah. Still others say Jeremiah or one of the prophets.”

⁹Jesus asked them, “But what about all of you? Who do you say I am?”



The town of Caesarea Philippi on the lower slopes of Mount Hermon.

¹⁰Peter answered, “You are the Christ, the Son of the living God.”

¹¹Jesus replied, “Blessed are you Peter, for this was not revealed to you by man but by my Father in heaven.”

Peter given keys to seal and to dissolve both on earth and in heaven

¹²“And I say to you, that you are Peter,^{F*} and upon this rock I will build my church and the gates of Hades^{F*} shall not overcome it.”

*6 Caesarea Philippi was about 50 kms north of Lake Galilee.

*12 In Greek, the language in which the gospels have come down to us, Peter (or Petros) means ‘a large rock.’ The actual name that Jesus gave Peter was Cephas, which in the everyday Aramaic language that Jesus spoke also means ‘a large rock.’ Aramaic (or Syrian) was a common spoken language of the day in Israel and was similar to the Old Testament Hebrew.

*12 Hades was the Greek word for the spirit world of the dead, and the term ‘gates of Hades’ was a figure of speech for death of the body in general. The coming resurrection of Jesus would make possible the future resurrection of all the dead and overcome the power of death over the body.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 17

13**“To you I will give the keys of the kingdom of God. Whatever you seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven, and whatever you dissolve on earth shall be dissolved in heaven.”**

Disciples not to reveal that Jesus is the Christ

14Jesus warned his disciples not to tell anyone that he was the Christ.

Jesus reveals that he must die at Jerusalem and after three days rise again

15Then Jesus revealed to them that he must go to Jerusalem and suffer many things, and be rejected by the elders, chief priests and teachers of the Law. Also that he must be put to death and after three days rise again.

Never Lord, says Peter

16He spoke plainly about this, but Peter took Jesus aside and said, “Never Lord! This shall never happen to you!”

Jesus rebukes Peter

17Jesus rebuked Peter saying, “Get behind me Satan. You are a stumbling block to me. Your thinking is that of man, not of God.”

Jesus tells the crowd that whoever loses their life for his sake will find Eternal Life

18Then Jesus called the crowd to him along with his disciples and said to them, “If any of you would be my follower, you must deny yourself, take up your cross and follow me.”

19**“Whoever tries to save his life in this world will lose it in the world to come, but whoever loses his life in this world, for my sake and for the gospel will find Eternal Life in the world to come.”**

What does it profit a man to gain the whole world yet lose his own soul

20**“For what does it profit a man if he gains the whole world, yet loses his own soul? What can a man give in exchange for his soul?”**

When he comes again, Jesus will be ashamed of anyone who is ashamed of him

21**“If anyone be ashamed of me and my words in this adulterous and sinful generation, so will the Son of Man be ashamed of him when he comes in his Father’s glory with the holy angels, to reward each person according to his works.”**

Some present will soon see Jesus as he will come in his glory

22Then he said to them, “There are some standing here who will not taste of death before they see the Son of Man as he will come in the glory of the kingdom of God.”^{F*}

Jesus is transfigured before Peter, James and John

23Six days later Jesus took Peter, James and John and led them up a high mountain.^{F*} When they were all alone, as Jesus was praying, he became transfigured before them.

*22 Peter, James and John would witness the glorious transfiguration of Jesus six days later (see following verses).

*23 Believed to be Mount Hermon which was close by.

24His face shone like the sun and his garments became dazzling white.

Moses and Elijah appear

25Then appeared Moses and Elijah^{F*} in glorious splendour, and they spoke with Jesus about his death and resurrection which he was to bring to fulfilment in Jerusalem.

26Peter, James and John were heavy with sleep at first, but when they became fully awake they saw the glory of Jesus and the two prophets standing with him.

27As the prophets were about to depart, Peter said, “Master it is good for us to be here. Let us build three shelters, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah.”

28Peter did not know what else to say for they were overcome with awe.

God the Father speaks from within a cloud

29Then a bright cloud appeared and enveloped them, and a voice from within the cloud spoke saying, “**This is my beloved Son whom I have chosen and with whom I am well pleased. Hear him.**”

30When the apostles heard this they fell face down to the ground, overcome with fear. Then Jesus touched them and said “**Arise. Be not afraid.**”

31When they looked up they saw no one except Jesus.



Mount Hermon across Lake Galilee, the ‘high mountain’ of the transfiguration (Matt-Mark-Luke 17:23).

Apostles not to reveal what they have seen until Jesus is risen from the dead

32As they were coming back down the mountain Jesus ordered them not to tell anyone what they had seen, until he had risen from the dead. ³³So they kept the matter to themselves but discussed as to what rising from the dead might mean.

*25 Both Moses and Elijah had been translated, ie taken bodily from the earth without dying a mortal death (see Deuteronomy 10:30 and Elijah 8:33).

John the Baptist a type of Elijah

³⁴They said to Jesus, "Why do the teachers of the Law say that Elijah must come before the Christ?"

³⁵Jesus replied, "It is true that Elijah does come first, to prepare all things. But I say to you Elijah has come, and they did to him what they pleased, just as is written about him."

³⁶"In the same way the Son of Man will suffer at their hands."

³⁷Then the three apostles understood that he was talking to them of John the Baptist.^{F*}

Disciples unable to drive out a demon

³⁸When they came to the other disciples they saw a large crowd gathered and the teachers of the Law arguing with them. As soon as the people saw Jesus they ran to greet him.

³⁹He said to them, "What are you arguing about?"

⁴⁰A man in the crowd answered, "Teacher, I brought you my son who is possessed of a demon that has robbed him of speech. Whenever it seizes him it throws him to the ground and he foams at the mouth and grinds his teeth and becomes rigid. ⁴¹I asked your disciples to drive out the spirit but they could not."

⁴²Jesus replied, "O you faithless generation. How much longer must I be with you? How much longer must I put up with you? Bring the boy to me."

⁴³So they brought the boy to Jesus. When the spirit saw Jesus, it immediately threw the boy into a convulsion. He fell to the ground and rolled around, foaming at the mouth.

All things can be done for one who believes

⁴⁴Jesus said to the boy's father, "How long has this been happening to him?"

⁴⁵He answered, "From childhood. It has often thrown him into fire or water to destroy him. If you are able to do anything, take pity on us and help us."

⁴⁶Jesus replied, "If you are able.^{F*} All things can be done for him who believes."

⁴⁷The boy's father cried out in tears, "I do believe! Help me in my unbelief!"

Jesus drives out the demon

⁴⁸When Jesus saw that an even larger crowd was gathering around, he rebuked the unclean spirit saying, "You deaf and dumb spirit, I command you, come out of him and never enter him again!"

*³⁷ John the Baptist denied that he was the reincarnated Elijah (John 1:11-12) besides which, Elijah had been translated, ie taken alive from the earth (Elijah 8:33). Also Elijah had recently appeared with Moses to Jesus and three apostles on the high mountain (Matt-Mark-Luke 17:23-25). However some scholars have pointed out the unusual personality strength of both John and Elijah, the similar garb and the roles played in their lives by evil women (Jezebel and Herodias) and believe that John came as a 'type' of Elijah. Also supporting this view are the words of the angel Gabriel to Zechariah the father of John the Baptist informing him that his son would go forth in the 'spirit and power of Elijah' (Matt-Mark-Luke 1:9).

*⁴⁶ In other words, "The deliverance of your son is in your hands. If you believe that I can heal him, it can be done."

⁴⁹The spirit shrieked and convulsed the boy violently and came out. The boy lay so still that many said, "He is dead." But Jesus took him by the hand and lifted him up and he stood on his feet.

The disciples ask Jesus why they could not drive out the unclean spirit

⁵⁰After Jesus had gone indoors, his disciples said to him privately, "Why could we not drive it out?"

Faith can move a mountain

⁵¹Jesus replied, "Because you have so little faith. Truly I say to you, if you have faith, though it be small as a mustard seed, you can say to this mountain, 'Move from here to there' and it will move. Nothing will be impossible for you."

Prayer and fasting also required to drive out that kind of demon

⁵²"But this kind does not come out, except by prayer and fasting."

18

Jesus tells Peter to pay the annual Temple tax with a coin he will find in mouth of fish

¹When Jesus and his disciples arrived back in Capernaum, the collectors of the annual half shekel Temple tax came up to Peter and said, "Does your teacher not pay the Temple tax?" He replied, "He does."

²When Peter entered the house Jesus was the first to speak. He said, "What do you think Peter? From whom do the kings of the earth collect taxes, from their own sons or from others?"

Peter answered, "From others."

³Jesus said to him, "Then the sons are exempt. But that we not offend them, go to the lake and cast a line. Take the first fish you catch and in its mouth you will find a shekel coin.^{F*} Take it and give it to them for my tax and for yours."

The apostles argue over which of them is the greatest

⁴Peter did so and afterward returned. Jesus then said to the Twelve, "What were you arguing about on the road earlier today?" But the apostles remained silent, for they had been arguing about which of them was the greatest.

Apostles must humble themselves as little children

⁵Jesus sat down, and calling the Twelve around him said, "He who would be first must be the very last, and a servant of all."

⁶And calling to a little child Jesus had him come and stand in the midst of them. Then taking the child in his arms Jesus said to them, "Truly I say to you, unless you repent and become like little children you will never enter the kingdom of God. ⁷Therefore,

*³ A shekel in new Testament times was a silver coin also called a drachma and worth about a days wages.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 18

whoever humbles himself and becomes like this little child, the same is great in the kingdom of God.”



“Go to the lake and cast a line,” Lake Galilee where Peter caught a fish with a shekel coin in its mouth.

Woe to whoever leads a little child into sin

8“And whoever welcomes a little child like this in my name welcomes me, and whoever welcomes me welcomes him who sent me.”

9“**But anyone who leads one of these little ones who believe in me, to sin, it would be better for that person to have a great millstone fastened around his neck and be drowned in the depths of the sea.**”

10“**Woe to the world for temptations that lead people to sin. Such things must be, but woe to the person by whom they come.**”

The angels of little children always behold the face of the Father

11“**Therefore see that you respect these little ones. For truly I say to you that in heaven their angels^{F*} always behold the face of my Father.**”



“Unless you repent and become like little children you will never enter the kingdom of God” (Matt-Mark-Luke 18:6). Jesus used a little child to illustrate the humility that is pleasing to God.

The parable of the lost sheep

12“**The Son of Man came to save the lost. What do you think? If a shepherd has a hundred sheep and one of them wanders away, will he not leave the ninety-nine and go to look for the one that is lost?**”

13“**And when he finds it, is he not happier about that one sheep than the ninety-nine that did not wander away?**”

14“**In the same way your Father in heaven is not willing that one of these little ones should be lost.**”

Try and reconcile with those who sin against you

15“**If your brother sins against you, go to him alone and show him his fault. If he hears you then you have won your brother over.**”

16“**But if he will not listen to you, take one or two witnesses along, so that every word may be confirmed by the testimony of two or three witnesses.**”

Avoid a person who refuses to reconcile

17“**If he still refuses to listen, tell it to the church. If he refuses to listen even to the church, treat him as you would a Gentile or a tax collector.**”

Forgive seventy times seven

18Peter said to Jesus, “Lord, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? Up to seven times?”

19Jesus answered, “I say to you, not seven times, but seventy times seven.”

The parable of the unmerciful servant

20Then he told this parable. “The kingdom of God is like a master who wanted to settle accounts with his servants. A servant who owed him 10,000 talents of silver^{F*} was brought to him. 21Since he was unable to pay, his master ordered that he and his wife and his children, and all that he had be sold to help repay the debt.”

22“**However the servant fell on his knees before the master and begged him saying, ‘Be patient with me and I will repay everything.’ The master took pity on him and cancelled the debt and let him go.**”

23“**But when that servant went out, he found one of his fellow servants who owed him a 100 denarii.^{F*} He seized him by the throat and demanded, ‘Pay back what you owe me!’**”

24“**His fellow servant fell to his knees and begged him saying, ‘Be patient with me and I will pay you back.’ But he refused and had the man thrown into prison until the debt was paid.**”

25“**When the other servants saw what had happened they were indignant and went and told their master. The master called the servant in and said, ‘You wicked servant, I cancelled that great debt of yours because you begged me. Should you not therefore have had mercy on your fellow servant?’** 26**And in anger he turned him over to the**

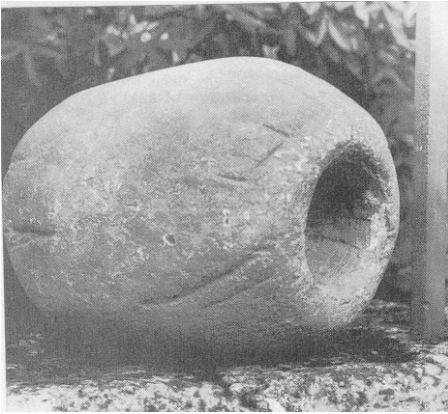
*20 This debt of 10,000 talents of silver (about 340 tonnes) was enormous, equivalent to millions of dollars.

*23 About three months wages or 1/30th of a talent, a tiny debt in comparison to the first which was 300,000 times larger.

*11 Generally understood to mean guardian angels.

jailers until he should pay back all that he owed.”

²⁷“So too will my heavenly Father treat each one of you, unless you forgive your brother from your heart.”



A talent measuring weight (34kg).

Whoever is not against apostles is for them

²⁸Then John said, “Master we saw a man driving out demons in your name, and we tried to stop him for he is not one of us.”

²⁹Jesus said, “Do not stop him, for whoever does a miracle in my name will not afterward be able to speak evil of me. Whoever is not against us is for us.”

³⁰“Truly I say to you, whoever gives you a cup of water to drink because you belong to Christ, shall not fail to be rewarded.”

19

Jesus begins his journey toward Jerusalem

¹At this time Jesus began to make his way toward Jerusalem.

A Samaritan town does not welcome him

²He sent messengers ahead of him into a Samaritan town to obtain shelter for himself and his disciples. But the Samaritans there did not welcome him because he was headed towards Jerusalem.^{F*}

James and John propose calling down fire from heaven to destroy the town

³When the apostles James and John heard this they said, “Lord, do you want us to call down fire from heaven to destroy them?”

Jesus rebukes James and John

⁴But Jesus rebuked them saying, “You do not understand the Spirit you share, for the Son of Man came to save lives not to

*2 There was much ill feeling between the Samaritans and the Jews, especially over the temple in Jerusalem from which they were barred as unclean. The Samaritans were of mixed blood, descendants of non-Israelites who had been exiled to Israel from their native lands by the Assyrians 800 years ago and who had over the years interbred with the remnant Israelites of the former northern kingdom of Israel.

destroy them.” So they went to another town.

Ten lepers healed

⁵On his way to Jerusalem, Jesus travelled along the border between Samaria and Galilee. As he was entering a town, ten lepers came to him and stood at a distance. They called out in a loud voice, “Jesus, Lord, have pity on us!”

⁶When Jesus saw them he said, “Go show yourselves to the priests.” And as they went they were cleansed.

Only one leper returns to thank Jesus

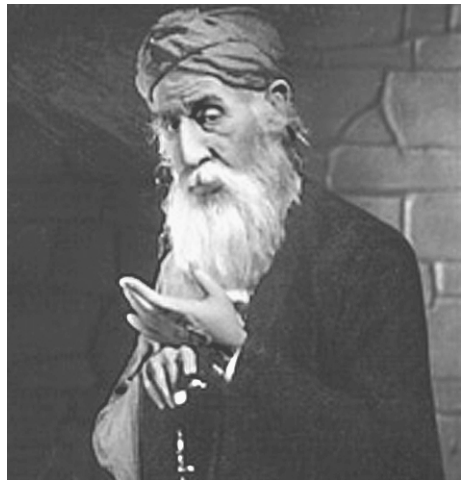
⁷One of them, a Samaritan, when he saw he was healed returned to Jesus praising God in a loud voice. He threw himself down at his feet and thanked him.

⁸Jesus said, “Were not all ten cleansed? Where are the other nine? Was no one found to return and give praise to God except this Samaritan?”

⁹Then he said to him, “Arise and depart. Your faith has healed you.”

Jesus sends seventy more disciples out on missions

¹⁰Then Jesus appointed seventy disciples, and sent them on ahead of him, two by two to every place he was about to go.



A Samaritan.

Instructions to the seventy

¹¹He instructed them saying, “The harvest is great but the labourers are few. I am sending you out like lambs among wolves. Take no money with you, or bag, or spare sandals and do not stop to converse with anyone on the road.”

¹²“When you enter a house, first say, ‘Peace to this house.’ If a man of peace be there, your peace will rest upon him, if not, it will return to you. ¹³Stay in that house and eat and drink whatever they give you, for the labourer is worthy of his keep. Do not

MATT-MARK-LUKE 19

move from house to house.”

¹⁴“When you enter a town and the people welcome you, eat what is set before you. Heal the sick who are there, and say to them, ‘The kingdom of God is near you.’”

¹⁵“But if you enter a town and they welcome you not, go into its streets and say, ‘Even the dust of your town that clings to our feet, we shake off against you. Yet be sure of this, the kingdom of God is near.’”

¹⁶“Truly I say to you it will be more bearable for Sodom on the day of judgement than for that town.”

¹⁷“He who hears you, hears me, and he who rejects you, rejects me, and rejects him who sent me.”

Jesus continues from town to town toward Jerusalem

¹⁸When the seventy had departed, Jesus continued on from town to town, teaching as he made his way to Jerusalem.

Jesus is asked what one must do to gain Eternal Life?

¹⁹On one occasion a teacher of the Law stood up to test Jesus. He said, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit Eternal Life?”

²⁰Jesus replied, “What is written in the Law? How do you read it?”

Love God with all your heart and love your neighbour as yourself

²¹He answered, “You shall love Jehovah your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your might, and love your neighbour as yourself.”

²²Jesus replied, “You have answered correctly. Do this and you shall live.”

The parable of the good Samaritan

²³But wanting to justify his question he said to Jesus, “And who is my neighbour?”

²⁴In reply Jesus told this parable. “A man was travelling from Jerusalem to Jericho when he fell among robbers. They stripped him of his clothes, beat him, and left him lying half dead.”

²⁵“Now it happened that a priest^{F*} was travelling along the same road, but when he saw the man lying there, he passed by him on the other side. So also a Levite,^{F*} when he saw him, he too passed by on the other side.”

²⁶“But then a Samaritan came to where the man was, and when he saw him he took pity on him. He bound up his wounds pouring on oil and wine. Then he put the man on his own donkey and carried him to an inn and took care of him.”

²⁷“The next day he took out two silver coins^{F*} and gave them to the innkeeper

*25 Priests were direct descendants of Aaron and had charge of the temple sacrifices.

*25 The Levites were a tribe set apart to assist the priests (who were also Levites) and were meant to be supported by the tithes of the people.

*27 About two days wages for a labourer.

saying, ‘Take care of him. When I return I will pay you for any extra expense you may incur.’”

²⁸“Which of these three do you think was a neighbour to the man who fell into the hands of robbers?”

²⁹The teacher of the Law replied, “The one who had mercy on him.”

³⁰Jesus said to him, “Go and do likewise.”

The seventy return from their missions with great joy

³¹When the seventy returned to Jesus they came with great joy and said, “Lord, even the demons submit to us in your name.”

Jesus watched as Satan was cast out of heaven

³²Jesus said, “I watched when Satan was cast down like lightning from heaven. ³³You see that I have given you power to tread on those snakes and scorpions and to overcome all his forces. They shall never harm you.”

³⁴“However, do not rejoice that his spirits submit to you, rejoice rather that your names are written ^{F*} in heaven.”



An inn on the Jerusalem-Jericho road, the setting of the parable of the Good Samaritan.

Jesus, full of joy praises the Father

³⁵Then Jesus full of joy through the Holy Spirit prayed saying, “I thank you Father, Lord of heaven and earth for you have hidden these things from the self-wise and the learned, and revealed them to those who are humble like little children. Yes Father, for this was pleasing to you.”

Mary and Martha

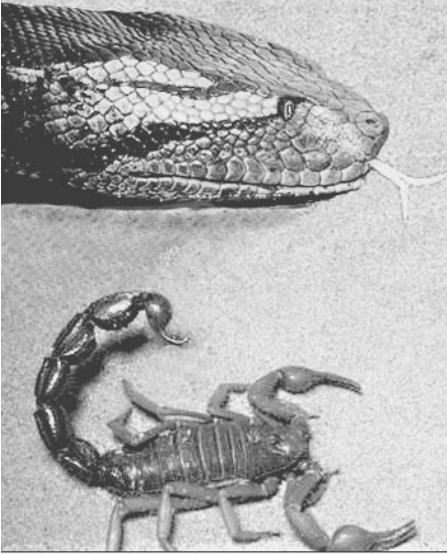
³⁶As Jesus and his disciples neared Jerusalem they came to the village of Bethany on the Mount of Olives. There a woman named Martha welcomed Jesus into her home.

³⁷Now Martha had a sister named Mary, and she sat at the feet of Jesus listening to what he taught.

*34 ie Written in the Book of Life. See note on Revelation 2:36.

³⁸But Martha was anxious about the many tasks of food preparation and serving that had to be done. So she came to Jesus and said, "Lord do you not care that my sister has left me to do all the work alone? Tell her to help me."

³⁹But Jesus answered her saying, "**Martha, Martha, you are anxious and troubled about many things, but only one thing is of importance and Mary has chosen rightly. It will not be taken from her.**"



Jesus likened Satan and his forces to snakes and scorpions.

20

Jesus teaches in the towns around Jerusalem

¹Then Jesus taught in the towns of Judea.

The disciples ask Jesus to teach them to pray

²At a certain place after Jesus had prayed, one of his disciples said to him, "Lord teach us to pray as John taught his disciples."

Be persistent in prayer

³Jesus said to them, "Suppose one of you has a friend and you go to him at midnight and say, 'My friend, lend me three loaves of bread, for someone on a journey has come to visit me and I have nothing to set before him.'"

⁴"Your friend may answer from within, 'Do not bother me now. My door is already locked and my children are with me in bed. I cannot get up now and give you food.'"

⁵"But I say to you, though he may not at first get up and give you bread, because he is your friend and because of your insistence he will eventually get up and give you as much as you need."

Ask and you shall receive

⁶"So it is also with your Father in heaven.

Ask and you shall receive, seek and you shall find, knock and the door will be opened to you."

⁷"For which of you, who are fathers if your son asks you for bread will give him a stone instead? Or if he asks you for a fish will give him a snake?"

⁸"If you, though you sin, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him."

The parable of the persistent widow and the unjust judge

⁹Then Jesus told his disciples another parable to show them that they should pray always and not lose heart.

¹⁰"In a certain city there was a judge who neither feared God nor cared about people. In that same city was a widow who kept coming to him saying, 'Grant me justice against my oppressor.'"

¹¹"Many times the judge refused, but finally he said to himself, 'Though I fear not God nor care about people, I shall see that this widow gets justice for she will wear me out with her constant coming.'"

¹²Jesus said, "Hear what the unjust judge says. Will not God therefore grant justice to his chosen ones, who cry out to him day and night? Will he keep putting them off? I say to you, he will see that they get justice, and quickly."

Jesus goes to eat at the home of a Pharisee

¹³When Jesus had finished speaking, a Pharisee invited him to eat with him, so Jesus went to his house and reclined at the table.

Jesus rebukes the hypocrisy of the Pharisees

¹⁴The Pharisee was surprised that Jesus did not first wash before eating.

¹⁵Jesus said to him, "You Pharisees are content to clean the outside of the cup and the dish, while inside you are full of greed and wickedness."

¹⁶"You foolish men, did not he who made the outside make the inside also? Give to the poor and then what is inside the dish will be clean for you."

The teachers of the Law also rebuked

¹⁷Hearing these words one of the teachers of the Law said to him, "Teacher, when you say these things you insult us also."

¹⁸Jesus replied, "And woe to you teachers of the Law, for you load people with burdens that are hard to bear, yet you yourselves will not lift a finger to ease them."

¹⁹"Woe to you teachers of the Law, for you have taken away the key of knowledge and you neither enter yourselves nor let others enter."

²⁰"Woe to you teachers of the Law, for you build tombs for the prophets, and it was your own fathers who killed them."

The Pharisees and teachers of the Law begin to oppose Jesus fiercely

²¹Therefore from that time on the Pharisees and the teachers of the Law began to oppose Jesus fiercely, and to ply him with questions trying to catch him in something he might say.

21

A vast crowd of many thousands gather

¹Now a vast crowd of many thousands had gathered to Jesus so that they were trampling on one another.

Jesus warns his disciples against hypocrisy for all hidden things will one day be revealed

²Jesus said to his disciples, "Beware the yeast of the Pharisees which is hypocrisy. For there is nothing hidden that will not be made known. What is now whispered in inner rooms will one day be shouted from the roof tops."

Jesus warns the crowd against greed

³Then someone in the crowd said to Jesus, "Teacher tell my brother to divide the inheritance with me."

⁴Jesus replied, "Who made me a judge between you?" And he said to the crowd, "Beware of greed. A man's life does not consist of an abundance of possessions."

The parable of the foolish rich man

⁵Then he told this parable. "The fields of a rich man produced abundantly. He thought to himself, 'What shall I do? I have no place large enough to store my crops.'"

⁶"Then he said, 'This is what I will do. I shall tear down my barns and build bigger ones and in them I will store all my grain and my goods. Then I shall have plenty of wealth laid up for many years and I will take life easy. I will eat, drink and be merry.'"

⁷"But God said to him, 'You foolish man, this very night your life is required of you. Then who will get what you have prepared for yourself?'"

⁸"So it is with anyone who stores up treasure for himself, but is not rich toward God."

Disciples told to sell their possessions

⁹Jesus said to his disciples, "Fear not little flock, for your Father is pleased to give you the kingdom. Sell your possessions and give to the poor."

Where your treasure is there will your heart be also

¹⁰"Provide for yourself treasure in heaven that will not wear out, and where no thief comes near and no moth destroys. ¹¹For where your treasure is there will your heart be also."

The parable of the dishonest steward

¹²Then Jesus told this parable. "There was a rich man whose steward^{f*} was charged

with wasting his goods. So he called him in and said to him, 'What is this I hear about you? Settle up your stewardship. You can no longer be my steward.'

¹³"The steward said to himself, 'What shall I do now? My master is taking away my job. I am not strong enough to dig and am ashamed to beg.'

¹⁴"I know what I shall do, so that when I lose my job here people will welcome me into their homes."

¹⁵"So he called in his master's debtors, one by one and said to the first, 'How much do you owe my master?'"

"He replied, '800 measures of olive oil.'"

¹⁶"The steward told him, 'Take your bill, sit down quickly and make it 400 measures.'"

¹⁷"He then said to the second, 'And how much do you owe?'"

"He replied, '100 measures of wheat.'"

¹⁸"He told him, 'Take your bill and make it 80 measures.'"

Worldly people more shrewd than those of the kingdom

¹⁹"The master had to admire the shrewdness of the dishonest steward, for the people of this world are more shrewd in dealing with their own kind than are those of the kingdom of God."

²⁰"Therefore use your worldly wealth to gain friends for yourselves, so that when it is gone they will welcome you into their eternal homes."

Whoever is honest with little can be trusted with much

²¹"Whoever is honest with little can be trusted with much, but whoever is dishonest with little will also be dishonest with much."

²²"If you have been untrustworthy in handling worldly wealth, who will trust you with true riches? And if you have been untrustworthy with the property of others, who will give you property of your own?"

You cannot serve both God and money

²³"No servant can serve two masters, for he will despise one and love the other. You cannot serve both God and money."

²⁴The Pharisees who were lovers of money heard these words and ridiculed Jesus. But he said to them, "You justify yourselves in the eyes of men but God knows your hearts. ²⁵What is highly valued among men is an abomination in the sight of God."

The parable of Lazarus and the rich man

²⁶He then told them another parable. "There was a rich man who dressed in purple and fine linen and lived in luxury every day. ²⁷At his gate lay a beggar named Lazarus. He was covered with sores and longed to eat what fell from the rich man's table. Even the dogs would come and lick his sores."

²⁸"In time the beggar died and the angels

*12 A steward is one who administers the personal finances and property of another.

carried him to Abraham's side." F*

²⁹"The rich man also died, and in Hades^{F*} where he was in torment he looked up and saw Abraham far away with Lazarus by his side."

³⁰"So he called to him saying, 'Father Abraham have pity on me. Send Lazarus to dip the tip of his finger in water and refresh my tongue, for I am in anguish in this flame.'

³¹"But Abraham replied, 'My son, remember that in your lifetime you received good things while Lazarus received bad things. Now he is comforted here and you are in anguish. ³²Besides, a great chasm has been fixed between us so that we cannot go from here to you, nor can anyone cross over from you to us.'

³³"The rich man answered, 'Then I beg you father Abraham, send Lazarus to my father's house for I have five brothers. Let him warn them that they not also come to this place of torment.'

³⁴"Abraham replied, 'They have the scriptures, let them take heed of them.'

³⁵"The rich man said, 'They will not do so father Abraham, but if one from the dead appears to them they will repent.'

³⁶"Abraham said to him, 'If they will not heed the words of Moses and the Prophets they will not be convinced even if one returns from the dead.'

Parable of the prepared faithful servants

³⁷"Therefore, be dressed and ready with your lamps burning, like servants awaiting their master's return from a wedding banquet. So that even if he comes after midnight they can immediately open the door for him."

³⁸"Blessed be those servants. Their master will dress himself to attend them and will serve them at the table."

The Son of Man to return unexpectedly

³⁹"You must be ready, for the Son of Man will return in an hour when you expect him not. ⁴⁰For if the owner of the house had known at what hour the thief was coming he would not have let his house be broken into."

Parable of the faithful and unfaithful servant

⁴¹Peter said, "Lord, are you telling this parable to us or to everyone?"

⁴²Jesus answered Peter saying, "A master will place a servant who is faithful and wise over all his other servants. And it will be good for that servant when the master returns and finds him still faithful. He will place him in charge of all his possessions."

⁴³"But suppose that servant says to himself, 'My master is a long time coming'

and he begins to beat the other servants and to eat and drink and get drunk. ⁴⁴The master of that servant will return when he least expects him and will beat him with a heavy beating, and cut him off and assign him a place with the hypocrites where their will be weeping and grinding of teeth."

⁴⁵"But a servant who has not this greater responsibility but also does things deserving of punishment will receive only a light beating."

⁴⁶"For from him who is given much, much is expected."

Jesus anguished about his coming crucifixion

⁴⁷"I have come to bring fire on the earth, and how I wish it were already kindled. But I have a baptism to undergo and how distressed I am until it is completed."

Jesus to bring division on earth until he returns

⁴⁸"Do you think I have come to bring peace on earth? No, but division. From now on there will be five in one house divided against each other. Father against son and son against father, mother against daughter and daughter against mother, in-laws against in-laws. ⁴⁹A man's enemies will be those of his own household"

22

Those who are killed accidentally not worse sinners than others

¹Now there were some present at that time who told Jesus about the Galileans whose blood Pilate had shed while they were offering sacrifices.

²Jesus said to them, "Do you think that those Galileans were worse sinners than other Galileans because they suffered this way?"

³"Or the eighteen who died when the tower in Siloam fell upon them. Were they more guilty than all the others living in Jerusalem? I say to you, no. But unless you repent you will all perish."

The parable of fertilising a barren fig tree

⁴Then he told this parable, "A man had a fig tree in his vineyard and went to look for fruit on it but found none. So he said to his servant who took care of the vineyard, 'For three years now I have been coming to look for fruit on this fig tree and have not found any. Cut it down. Why should it cumber the ground?'"

⁵"But the servant replied, 'Master, leave it alone for one more year. I will dig around it and fertilise it. If it bears fruit next year well and good. If not then cut it down.'

A woman bent over by an unclean spirit for eighteen years is healed on the Sabbath

⁶On the Sabbath, Jesus taught in one of the synagogues and a woman was there who had been crippled by an unclean spirit for eighteen

*28 Literally 'the bosom of Abraham,' also known as 'Paradise,' the blissful, garden-like area of the spirit world where the righteous spirits of the dead dwell in God's presence, awaiting the resurrection.

*29 The spirit world of the unrighteous dead.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 22

years. She was bent over and could not straighten up at all.

⁷When Jesus saw her he called her forward and said, **“Woman, you are set free from your infirmity.”** Then he laid his hands upon her and immediately she straightened up and praised God.

The synagogue ruler indignant that Jesus healed on the Sabbath

⁸However the synagogue ruler was indignant that Jesus had healed on the Sabbath. He said to the people, **“There are six days for work so come and be healed on those days, not on the Sabbath.”**

Jesus rebukes the synagogue ruler

⁹Jesus said to him, **“You hypocrite. Do not each of you on the Sabbath untie your ox or donkey from the stall and lead it out to water?”**

¹⁰**“Why then should this woman, a daughter of Abraham whom Satan has kept bound for eighteen long years, not be freed on the Sabbath day?”**

¹¹When Jesus said this his opponents were humiliated, but the crowds were delighted with all that he was doing.

Jesus is asked if only a few people will be saved

¹²Someone said to him, **“Lord, will only a few people be saved?”**

¹³Jesus answered, **“Strive to enter through the narrow door, for many shall try to enter but not be able. ¹⁴For once the owner of the house arises and closes the door, you will be left standing outside, knocking and calling, ‘Lord, open the door to us! We ate and drank with you, and you taught us in our streets.’”**

¹⁴**“But he will answer, ‘I do not know you. Depart from me you sinners.’”**

Many non-Israelites will enter the kingdom of God and many Israelites will be thrust out

¹⁵**“There will be weeping and grinding of teeth when you see Abraham, Isaac and Jacob and all the prophets in the kingdom of God but you yourselves thrust out.”**

¹⁶**“People will come from nations east, west, north and south, and take their places at the feast in the kingdom of God. ¹⁷Indeed some who are now last shall be first, and some are now first shall be last.”**

Jesus dines in the house of a prominent Pharisee

¹⁸On a Sabbath day Jesus went to dine in the house of a prominent Pharisee. He was being carefully watched and in front of him was a man suffering from dropsy.^{F*}

Jesus heals the man with dropsy on the Sabbath

¹⁹Jesus said to the Pharisees and teachers of the Law, **“Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath**

or not?” But they remained silent.

²⁰So Jesus healed the man with dropsy and sent him away. Then he said to them, **“Which one of you, if he had a son or an ox fall into a well on the Sabbath day would not immediately pull him out?”**

²¹And they could not answer him.

Take the lowest place at a feast

²²When Jesus noticed how the guests desired the places of honour at the table, he taught them saying, ²³**“When someone invites you to a wedding feast, do not take the place of honour, for a person more distinguished than you may have been invited. Then the host may come and say to you, ‘Give this man your seat,’ and humiliated, you will have to take the lowest place.”**

²⁴**“But when you are invited, take the lowest place, so that when your host sees you he will say to you, ‘My friend, move up to a better place.’ Then you will be honoured in the presence of your fellow guests.”**

²⁵**“For he who exalts himself will be humbled, and he who humbles himself will be exalted.”**

Invite the poor to your feasts and those who cannot invite you back

²⁶Then Jesus said to his host, **“When you give a dinner or banquet, do not invite your friends and your relatives, or the rich. For if you do they may invite you back and so you will be repaid.”**

²⁷**“But rather, invite the poor, the crippled, the lame and the blind. Then you will be blessed, for they cannot repay you. ²⁸You will be repaid at the resurrection of the righteous.”**

The parable of the great feast

²⁹When one of those at the table heard this he said to Jesus, **“Blessed is the man who shall eat bread in the kingdom of God.”**

³⁰Jesus replied, **“A certain man was preparing a great feast and invited many guests. On the day of the feast he sent his servant to say to those who had been invited, ‘Come, everything is now ready.’”**

³¹**“But they all alike began to make excuses. The first said, ‘I have just bought a field and must go and inspect it.’ Another said, ‘I have just bought five yoke of oxen and am on my way to try them out.’ Still another said, ‘I have just got married so I cannot come.’”**

³²**“The servant reported this back to his master. Then the master became angry and said to the servant, ‘Go quickly into the streets and alleys of the town. Bring in the poor, the crippled, the blind and the lame.’”**

³³**“Later the servant said to his master, ‘I have done as you ordered but there is still room.’”**

³⁴**“The master said, ‘Go out then into the country roads and lanes and bring them in, so that my house will be full. ³⁵Truly I say to**

*18 A disorder (also known as edema) that causes excess fluid retention to swell the body.

you, not one of those who were first invited will taste of my feast.”



“When you give a dinner...do not invite your friends... but rather, invite the poor, the crippled, the lame and the blind” (Matt-Mark-Luke 22:26-27).

23

Anyone not prepared to give up all cannot be a disciple of Jesus

¹Great crowds travelled everywhere with Jesus. Turning to them one day he said, “If any man comes to me and does not love me more than his father and mother, his wife and children, his brothers and sisters, even his own life, he cannot be my disciple.”

²“Anyone who will not carry his cross and follow me, cannot be my disciple.”

Two parables of counting the cost

³“Suppose one of you decides to build a tower. Will he not first sit down and estimate the cost to see if he has enough money to complete it?”

⁴“For if he lays the foundation and is not able to finish it, all who see will ridicule him saying, ‘This man began to build and was not able to finish.’”

⁵“Or suppose a king is about to go to war against another king. Will he not first sit down and consider whether he is able with 10,000 men to oppose the one coming against him with 20,000 men?”

⁶“In the same way, any one of you who is not prepared to give up everything he has cannot be my disciple.”

The parable of the lost sheep

⁷Tax collectors and sinners also came to hear Jesus. The Pharisees and teachers of the Law saw this and murmured among themselves saying, “This man welcomes sinners and eats with them.”

⁸Jesus told them this parable. “Suppose a man among you has a hundred sheep and loses one of them. Will he not leave the ninety-nine and go after the lost sheep until he finds it?”

⁹“And when he finds it will he not joyfully lift it onto his shoulders and carry it home. Then he will call his friends together and say, ‘Rejoice with me for I have found my lost sheep.’”

Joy in heaven when a sinner repents

¹⁰“In the same way there is more rejoicing in heaven over one sinner who repents, than over ninety-nine righteous persons who need no repentance.”

The parable of the lost coin

¹¹“Or suppose a woman has ten silver coins and loses one. Does she not light a lamp and sweep the house and search carefully until she finds it? ¹²And when she finds it she calls her friends together and says, ‘Rejoice with me for I have found my lost coin.’”

¹³“Truly I say to you, there is much rejoicing in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner who repents.”

The parable of the prodigal son

¹⁴Jesus told another parable. “There was a man who had two sons. One day the younger said to his father, ‘Give me my share of the estate now.’ So the father divided his property between his two sons.”

¹⁵“Soon afterward the younger son took all that he had and set off for a distant land. There he squandered his wealth in wild living.”

¹⁶“After he had spent everything, there came a severe famine in that land and he began to be in need. ¹⁷So he went and hired himself to a man of that land who sent him into his fields to help feed the pigs. ¹⁸He would gladly have filled his stomach with the pods that the pigs were eating but no one gave him anything.”

¹⁹“Then he came to his senses and thought, ‘My father’s hired men have food to spare, and here I am perishing with hunger. I will return to my father and say to him, ‘Father, I have sinned against God and against you. I am no longer worthy to be called your son. Make me as one of your hired men.’”

²⁰“So he arose and returned to his father. While he was still a long way off his father saw him coming and was filled with love and compassion for him. He ran to meet his son and threw his arms around him and kissed him.”

²¹“The son said to him, ‘Father, I have sinned against God and against you. I am no longer worthy to be called your son.’”

²²“But the father said to his servants, ‘Bring the best robe and place it upon him. Put a ring on his finger and sandals on his feet. ²³Kill the fattened calf, let us have a feast and celebrate. For this son of mine was dead and is alive again. He was lost and is found.’”

²⁴“Meanwhile the elder son returned from

the fields. When he came near the house and heard the music and dancing he called one of the servants and asked him what it meant."

²⁵"The servant replied, 'Your brother has returned home and your father has killed the fattened calf, for he has him back safe and sound.'"

²⁶"When he heard this the older brother became angry and refused to go into the house. So his father came out and pleaded with him."

²⁷"But he said to his father, 'All these years I have served you and never disobeyed you, yet you never gave me even as much as a young goat so that I could celebrate with my friends. ²⁸But when this son of yours who has squandered your property with harlots returns home, you kill the fattened calf for him.'"

²⁹"The father said, 'My son, you are always with me and everything I have is yours. But we had to celebrate and be glad, for this brother of yours was dead and is alive again, he was lost and is found.'"

Forgive your brother if he repents, seven times in one day if necessary

³⁰Then Jesus said to his disciples, "If your brother sins rebuke him, and if he repents forgive him, even if he sins against you seven times in one day and seven times returns to you and says, 'I repent,' forgive him."

Faith even small as a mustard seed will result in miracles

³¹The apostles said to Jesus, "Increase our faith."

³²Jesus replied, "If you had faith as a grain of mustard seed you could say to this sycamore tree, 'Be uprooted and planted in the sea' and it would obey you."

Where two apostles on earth agree about anything asked for, it will be done

³³"Again I say to you, if two of you on earth agree about anything you ask for, it will be done for you by my Father in heaven."

Need for apostles to do more than duty alone to be rewarded

³⁴"However, suppose one of you had a servant who plowed your field or looked after your sheep. Would you say to that servant when he came in from the field, 'Come sit down and eat?'"

³⁵"Rather you would say, 'Prepare my meal and serve me while I eat and drink and after that you may eat and drink. ³⁶And would you thank your servant just because he did as you told him to do?'"

³⁷"So you too, when you have done everything God tells you to do should say, 'I am an unworthy servant. I have only done my duty.'"

The kingdom of God is here among you now

¹Once when asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was to come, Jesus said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with signs to be seen, nor will people say, 'Here it is' or 'There it is.' ²In truth the kingdom of God is here among you now." F*

Jesus speaks of his second coming

³Then Jesus said to his disciples, "The time is coming when you will long to see the Son of Man, but you will not."

⁴"Some will say, 'There he is!' or 'Here he is!' But do not go running off after them, for the Son of Man on the day he returns will be like the lightning which flashes and lights up the sky from one side to the other."

⁵"But first he must suffer many things and be rejected by this generation."

Day of second coming will be as it was in the days of Noah and Lot

⁶"Just as it was in the days of Noah, so will it be in the days when the Son of Man returns. ⁷People were eating, drinking and marrying up to the day Noah entered the ark. Then the flood came and destroyed them all."

⁸"It was the same in the days of Lot. People were eating, drinking, buying, selling, planting and building. But the day Lot left Sodom, fire and sulphur rained down from heaven and destroyed them all."

One person will be taken and one left

⁹"So shall it be on the day that the Son of Man is revealed. ¹⁰On that night two will be sleeping in one bed and one shall be taken and the other left. ¹¹Two women shall be grinding grain together and one shall be taken and the other left."

Jesus wonders if he will find faith on the earth when he returns?

¹²The disciples said, "Taken where Lord?"

¹³Jesus replied, "Where the carcass is, there the vultures gather. ¹⁴However when the Son of Man comes again will he find faith on the earth?"

Parable of the Pharisee and the tax collector

¹⁵Jesus told this parable to some who were self-righteousness and looked down upon others.

¹⁶"Two men went to the Temple to pray, one was a Pharisee and the other a tax collector. ¹⁷The Pharisee stood with his head erect and prayed saying, 'O God, I thank you that I am not like other men, robbers, evildoers, adulterers, or even like this tax collector here. I fast twice a week and give a tithe of all I get.'"

¹⁸"But the tax collector stood off at a

*2 ie In the authority and power of Jesus himself (see Matt-Mark-Luke 13:29).

distance and would not even lift his eyes to heaven, but he beat his breast and said, 'O God have mercy on me a sinner.'

¹⁹"I say to you, this man rather than the other went home justified before God. ²⁰For every one who exalts himself will be humbled, but he who humbles himself will be exalted."

Is it lawful for a man to divorce his wife?

²¹Jesus then crossed the Jordan into the region of Perea. Great crowds followed him and he healed them there.

²²Some Pharisees came to test him. They asked, "Is it lawful for a man to divorce his wife for any reason?"

²³Jesus answered, "Have you not read that from the beginning the Creator made them male and female and said, 'A man will leave his father and mother and be joined to his wife and the two shall become one flesh.' ²⁴So they are no longer two but one. Therefore what God has joined together let no man put apart."

Why Moses allowed divorce

²⁵They said to him, "Why then did Moses allow a man to give his wife a certificate of divorce and send her away?"

²⁶Jesus replied, "Moses permitted you to divorce your wives because of the hardness of your hearts, but from the beginning it was not so."

Remarrying after divorce adultery unless divorced spouse unfaithful

²⁷"And I say to you that he who divorces his wife, except on grounds of unchastity and marries another, commits adultery against her, and if she divorces her husband and marries another, she commits adultery."

²⁸The disciples said to him, "If such is the case between a man and his wife it is better not to marry."

²⁹Jesus replied, "Not everyone can accept this word, only those to whom it is given."

³⁰For some are eunuchs because they were born that way, others were made that way by men and some have made themselves eunuchs for the sake of the kingdom of God. ³¹He who can accept this should accept it."

Jesus blesses the little children

³²Parents also brought their little children to Jesus to have him lay his hands upon them, but the disciples sternly rebuked them.

³³When Jesus saw this he was indignant and said to them, "Let the little children come to me. Hinder them not, for to such as these belongs the kingdom of God. ³⁴Truly I say to you, anyone who will not receive the kingdom of God like a little child shall not enter it."

³⁵Then he took them in his arms and blessed them and laid his hands upon them.

Jesus told that Herod wants to kill him

³⁶Some Pharisees came to Jesus and said, "Leave this place and go elsewhere for Herod wants to kill you."

³⁷Jesus replied, "Go tell that fox, 'I will drive out demons and heal the people today and tomorrow, and on the third day I will enter Jerusalem. ³⁸For surely no prophet can die outside of Jerusalem."

Jesus mourns the wickedness of Jerusalem

³⁹"O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, you who kill the prophets and stone those who are sent to you. ⁴⁰How often have I longed to gather your children together as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you would not."

⁴¹"Therefore your house will be left deserted. You will not see me again until you say, 'Blessed is he who comes in the name of Jehovah.'"

The wealthy young ruler

⁴²As Jesus started on his way a young ruler ran up to him and falling on his knees said to him, "Good teacher, what must I do to inherit Eternal Life?"

⁴³Jesus said, "Why do you call me good? No one is good except God alone."

⁴⁴"You know the commandments, 'Do not murder. Do not commit adultery. Do not steal. Do not give false testimony. Honour your father and mother. Love your neighbour as yourself.'"

⁴⁵He replied, "All these I have kept since my youth."

⁴⁶Jesus looked on him and loved him, then he said, "There is still one thing you lack. Sell all that you have and give to the poor. Then you will have treasure in heaven, and come follow me."

⁴⁷When the young ruler heard this he was dismayed for he had great wealth. His face fell and he went away.

Hard for the rich to enter the kingdom of God

⁴⁸Jesus looked around and said to his apostles, "How hard it is for those who have riches to enter the kingdom of God. ⁴⁹Indeed, it is easier for a camel to pass through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God."

What is impossible for men is possible with God

⁵⁰The Twelve were amazed when they heard this and asked, "Who then can be saved?"

⁵¹Jesus replied, "What is impossible for men is possible with God."

The Twelve to judge the twelve tribes of Israel

⁵²Peter said to him, "We have left all to follow you. What will there be for us?"

⁵³Jesus said to the Twelve, "In the new world when the Son of Man sits on his glorious throne, you who have followed me will also sit on twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel."

The faithful who give up all will receive a hundred fold in new world and Eternal Life

⁵⁴“And everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or fields for my sake will receive a hundred times as much, and will inherit Eternal Life.”

⁵⁵But many who are first shall be last, and many who are last shall be first.”

The parable of paying the workers in the vineyard

⁵⁶Then he told them this parable. “For the kingdom of God is like a landowner who went out early in the morning to hire men to work. He agreed to pay them a denarius^{F*} for the day and sent them into his vineyard.”

⁵⁷“About the third hour^{F*} he went out and saw other men standing in the marketplace doing nothing. So he said to them, ‘You also go and work in my vineyard and I will pay you a fair wage.’ So they went.”

⁵⁸“He went out again about the sixth hour, and the ninth hour and did the same thing.”

⁵⁹“About the eleventh hour he went out and found still others standing around. He said to them, ‘Why have you been standing here all day doing nothing?’”

⁶⁰“They answered, ‘No one has hired us.’”

⁶¹“He said to them, ‘You also go and work in my vineyard.’”

⁶²“When evening came, the owner of the vineyard said to his foreman, ‘Call the workers and pay them their wages, beginning with the last ones hired.’”

⁶³“The workers who were hired at the eleventh hour came and each received a denarius. So when those who had been hired first came they expected to receive more. But they too received a denarius.”

⁶⁴“At this they began to grumble against the landowner saying, ‘These men who were hired last worked only one hour, and you have paid them equal to us who have borne the burden of the work and the heat of the day.’”

⁶⁵“The landowner replied, ‘Friend, I am not being unfair to you. Did you not agree to work for a denarius?’”

⁶⁶“Take your pay and go. Do I not have the right to do what I want with my own money? Are you envious because of my generosity?”

⁶⁷“So the last shall be first and the first shall be last.”

Jesus tells the Twelve of his coming death and resurrection

⁶⁸Then Jesus took the Twelve aside and said to them, “We are going up^{F*} to Jerusalem and all that is written by the prophets about the Son of Man shall be fulfilled.”

⁶⁹“He will be betrayed to the chief priests

*56 A denarius was a Roman silver coin and a normal days wage for a labourer.

*57 9am, the Jewish first hour began at 6am.

*68 ‘Up to Jerusalem’ was a common term, because of the height of the city which is built on a mountain ridge 800 metres high.

and teachers of the Law. They will condemn him to death and hand him over to the Gentiles who will mock him, insult him, spit on him, flog him and kill him. And on the third day he shall rise again.”

⁷⁰But the apostles did not understand what Jesus was saying.

The request of the mother of James and John

⁷¹Later that day the mother of the apostles James and John came to Jesus with her two sons, and kneeling down she asked a favour of him saying, “Grant that these two sons of mine may sit at your right and left hand in your kingdom.”

⁷²Jesus said to them, “You do not know what you are asking. Can you drink the cup I am going to drink?”

⁷³James and John answered, “We can.”

To sit at the right or left of Jesus not for him to grant only the Father

⁷⁴Jesus said to them, “You shall indeed drink from my cup, but to sit at my right or left hand is not mine to grant. Those places belong to them for whom they have been prepared by my Father.”

The other apostles indignant with James and John

⁷⁵When the other ten apostles heard of this they were indignant with James and John.

Whoever would be great must serve

⁷⁶But Jesus called them together and said, “You know that the rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them, but it is not to be so among you.”

⁷⁷“Rather, whoever wishes to be great among you must be your servant, just as the Son of Man came to serve and to give his life as a ransom for many.”

⁷⁸Then Jesus set out for Jerusalem.

25

Zacchaeus the wealthy tax collector

¹As Jesus entered Jericho there was a man there by the name of Zacchaeus. He was a chief tax collector and very wealthy. He wanted to see Jesus but being a short man he could not see him because of the crowd. ²So he ran ahead and climbed a sycamore tree as Jesus was coming that way.

Jesus tells Zacchaeus he must stay at his house today

³When Jesus reached the spot he looked up and said to him, “Zacchaeus, come down immediately. I must stay at your house today.”

⁴Zacchaeus climbed down at once and welcomed Jesus gladly. But the people began to murmur saying, “He is going to stay at the house of a sinner”

Zacchaeus repents and agrees to give half his possessions to the poor

⁵But Zacchaeus said to Jesus, “Lord, here and now I vow to give half of my possessions

to the poor, and if I have cheated anybody I will repay them four fold.”

⁶Jesus said to the people, **“Today salvation has come to this house. For this man too is a son of Abraham. The Son of Man came to search out and save the lost.”**

A blind man named Bartimaeus healed

⁷When Jesus and his disciples along with a great crowd were leaving Jericho, a blind man named Bartimaeus was sitting by the roadside begging. ⁸When he was told that it was Jesus of Nazareth he began to shout, “Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me!”

⁹Many rebuked him and told him to be quiet but he shouted all the louder.

¹⁰Jesus stopped and said, **“Call him to me.”**

¹¹They said to the blind man, “Take heart. He is calling you. Up on your feet.” So throwing his cloak aside he jumped to his feet and made his way through the crowd to Jesus.

¹²Jesus said to him, **“What is it you want me to do for you?”**

¹³The blind man answered, “Rabbi, I want to see.”

¹⁴Jesus said, **“Go, your faith has healed you.”** And immediately the blind man received his sight and followed Jesus along the road.

Jesus sends two disciples into Bethany to fetch the colt of a donkey

¹⁵As they neared Jerusalem and approached Bethany on the Mount of Olives, Jesus sent two of his disciples before him saying, **“Go into the village ahead. As you enter you will see a donkey tied, with her colt alongside of her which no one has ever ridden. Untie them both and bring them to me.”**

¹⁶“If anyone says to you, ‘Why are you doing this?’ say to them, ‘The Lord has need of them and will return them shortly.’”

¹⁷So the two disciples went and found the donkey and her colt outside in the street, tied at a doorway. As they were untying them some people standing there said, “What are you doing?”

¹⁸They answered as Jesus had instructed them and the people let them go.

The triumphal entry into Jerusalem

¹⁹When they brought the donkey and colt to Jesus they threw their cloaks over the colt and Jesus rode it into Jerusalem.

²⁰As he entered the city many of the crowd spread their cloaks on the road while others spread branches they had cut from trees.

²¹Those who went ahead of him and those who followed behind shouted, ²²**“Hosanna!^f* Blessed is he who comes in the name of Jehovah! Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David! Hosanna in the highest!”**

²³Some of the Pharisees in the crowd said to

Jesus, “Teacher, rebuke your disciples!”

²⁴But he replied, **“If they were to remain silent, the very stones would cry out.”**

Jesus rode a donkey to fulfil scripture

²⁵This took place to fulfil what was spoken through the prophet Zechariah, **“Rejoice greatly O Jerusalem. Your King is coming to you, righteous and having salvation, humble and riding on the foal of a donkey.”^f***

Jesus weeps over Jerusalem and prophesies of its destruction

²⁶When Jesus saw the city he wept over it and prophesied, **“O Jerusalem, if you had only known what would bring you peace, but now it is hidden from your eyes.”**

²⁷**“The days are coming when your enemies will build a siege against you and encircle you on every side. They will dash you to the ground, you and the children within your walls. ²⁸They will not leave within you one stone upon another, for you did not recognise the time of your visitation.”**



To fulfil prophecy Jesus rode a previously unriden donkey colt on his triumphal entry into Jerusalem.

26

Jesus heals in the Temple

¹Jesus entered Jerusalem and went to the Temple. The blind and the lame came to him there and he healed them.

The Jewish leaders indignant at the praising of Jesus by the children

²When the chief priests and teachers of the Law saw the wonderful things Jesus did, and heard the children shouting in the Temple area, **“Hosanna to the Son of David,”^f*** they were indignant. ³They said to him, “Do you hear what these children are saying?”

⁴Jesus replied, **“Have you not read, ‘The mouths of infants and little children praise you?’”**

^{*}22 Hosanna was a Hebrew word, originally meaning ‘save me now I pray’ but it is believed to have lost its original meaning among the Jews and to have become a general exclamation of praise as it is today.

^{*}25 This prophecy is found in Zechariah 4:6.

^{*}2 The ‘Son of David’ was another term for the Messiah or Christ. However Jesus rejected this title as being inaccurate. See Matt-Mark-Luke 27:22-25.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 26

Jesus and the Twelve leave the city to stay the night at Bethany

⁵Since it was already late, Jesus left them and went out of the city with the Twelve to Bethany^{F*} where he stayed the night.

Jesus curses a fig tree

⁶The next day,^{F*} early in the morning as they were again going into the city, Jesus was hungry and seeing in the distance a fig tree in leaf he went to see if it had any fruit on it.

⁷But he found nothing but leaves for it was not yet the season for figs. ⁸So he cursed the tree saying, “**May no one eat fruit from you again.**” And his apostles heard him.

Jesus drives out the merchants and money changers from the Temple courtyards

⁸Jesus entered Jerusalem and went into the outer courtyards of the Temple and began to drive out those who were buying and selling there. ⁹He overturned the tables of the currency changers and the benches of those selling doves and would not allow anyone carrying goods for sale to walk through the Temple courtyards.

¹⁰He said to them, “**Is it not written, ‘My house will be a house of prayer for all nations?’ But you have made it a den of thieves.**”

Jewish leaders look for a way to kill Jesus

¹¹The chief priests and teachers of the Law heard of this and began looking for a way to kill Jesus for they feared him, as the whole crowd was amazed at his teaching.

¹²When evening came Jesus and his apostles again went out of the city and stayed at Bethany.

Next morning the fig tree has withered

¹³In the morning as they returned they saw the fig tree withered from its roots. Peter said to Jesus, “Look Rabbi, the fig tree you cursed has withered.”

With faith in God a mountain can be ordered to be cast into the sea

¹⁴Jesus said to his apostles, “**Have faith in God. Truly if any of you say to this mountain, ‘Be taken up and cast into the sea’ and doubt not in your heart but believe it will happen, it will be done for you.**”

When praying believe that you have received it and it will be yours

¹⁵“**Therefore I say to you, whatever you ask for in prayer, believe that you have received it and it shall be yours.**”

But first forgive all others

¹⁶“**But whenever you stand praying, if you hold anything against anyone, first forgive them so that your Father in heaven may forgive you your sins.** ¹⁷For if you forgive

not those who sin against you, neither will your Father in heaven forgive you your sins.”



Bethany where Jesus stayed when he visited Jerusalem.

The city leaders and priests challenge the authority of Jesus

¹⁸They again entered Jerusalem and while Jesus was walking in the Temple courtyards, the chief priests, teachers of the Law and the elders came to him and questioned him saying, “By what authority are you doing these things?”

Jesus questions them about John the Baptist instead

¹⁹Jesus replied, “**I also will ask you a question. Answer me and I will tell you by what authority I do these things. Was the baptism of John from God, or from man?**”

²⁰They discussed this among themselves saying, “If we say ‘From God,’ he will say, ‘Why then did you not believe him?’ But if we say, ‘From man,’ then the people will stone us, for they believe that John was a prophet.”

²¹So they said to Jesus, “We do not know where it came from.”

The parable of the two sons

²²Jesus said, “**Then neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things.**” And he told them this parable:

²³“**What do you think? There was a man who had two sons. He went to the first and said, ‘Son, go work today in the vineyard.’**”

²⁴“**His son answered, ‘I will not go’ but later he repented and went. Then the father went to his other son and said the same thing. That son answered, ‘I will go,’ but did not go.** ²⁵**Which of the two sons did the will of the father?**”

They answered, “The first.”

²⁶Jesus said to them, “**Truly I say to you, tax collectors and harlots will enter the kingdom of God before you do.** ²⁷**For John came to show you the way of righteousness and you believed him not, but tax collectors and harlots did. And even after you saw this you failed to repent and believe in him.**”

*5 Bethany was a small village about 3 kms east of Jerusalem on the road to Jericho. Lazarus and his sisters Martha and Mary lived there.

*6 This was Monday morning. Jesus would die later this same week on Friday afternoon, the day of the Passover, and rise from the dead Sunday morning.

Parable of the unrighteous vineyard tenants

²⁸Jesus told them another parable. “A landowner planted a vineyard. He built a wall around it, dug a pit for the winepress, and erected a watchtower. Then he rented out the vineyard and departed to another land.”

²⁹“At harvest time he sent a servant to the tenants to collect some of the fruit of the vineyard. But they seized the servant and beat him and sent him away empty-handed.”

³⁰“Then the landowner sent a second servant to them. They struck this servant on the head and treated him shamefully.”

³¹“He sent a third and that one they killed. He also sent many others, some of them they beat and others they killed.”

³²“He had one left to send, a son whom he loved. So he sent him last of all thinking, ‘They will surely respect my son.’”

³³“But the tenants said to one another, ‘This is the heir. Let us kill him and the vineyard will be ours.’ ³⁴So they took the son and killed him and threw him out of the vineyard.”

³⁵“What then will the owner of the vineyard do? Will he not come and put all those tenants to a miserable death and rent his vineyard to others who will give him of its fruit?”

³⁶“Have you not read this scripture, ‘The stone the builders rejected has become the capstone?’”

³⁷“Therefore the kingdom of God will be taken from you and given to a people who will produce its fruit.”

The chief priests want to arrest Jesus but fear the crowd

³⁸When the chief priests and the Pharisees heard these parables they perceived that Jesus was speaking of them. ³⁹So they looked for a way to arrest him but were afraid of the crowd, for the people believed that Jesus was a prophet.

The parable of the wedding feast

⁴⁰Jesus told them yet another parable. “The kingdom of God is like a king who prepared a wedding feast for his son. ⁴¹He sent his servants to those who had been invited to the feast, to tell them to come, but they refused.”

⁴²“So he sent more servants and said, ‘Tell those who have been invited that my fattened calves have been killed and everything is ready. Come now to the wedding feast.’”

⁴³“But they paid no attention to them and went off, one to his field, another to his business. Others seized his servants and mistreated them and killed them.”

⁴⁴“The king was enraged at this and sent an army to destroy those murderers and burn their city.”

⁴⁵“Then he said to his servants, ‘The wedding feast is ready but those I invited were not worthy to come. Go out to the street corners and invite to the feast anyone you find.’”

⁴⁶“The servants went out into the streets and gathered all the people they could find, both good and bad and the wedding hall was filled with guests.”

⁴⁷“But when the king came in to see the guests he saw a man there who was not wearing a wedding garment. ⁴⁸So he said to him, ‘My friend, how did you get in here without a wedding garment?’ The man was speechless.”

⁴⁹“So the king said to his servants, ‘Tie him hand and foot and throw him out into the darkness where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.’”

⁵⁰“For many were invited but few were worthy.”



Vineyard watchtower.

27

The Pharisees plan to trap Jesus in his words

¹The Pharisees then went and took counsel as to how they could trap Jesus in his words.

The Pharisees ask Jesus if it is right to pay taxes to Caesar?

²They sent some of their followers to Jesus along with some of the Herodians* and said to him, “Teacher, we know you are a man of integrity and that you teach the way of God in accordance with the truth and are not swayed by man. ³Tell us then, what do you think? Is it right to pay taxes to Caesar?”

⁴But Jesus, knowing their evil intent said, “You hypocrites, why do you try to trap me? Show me the coin used for paying the tax.”

⁵They gave him a denarius and he said to them, “Whose portrait is this, and whose inscription?”

They replied, “Caesar’s.”

Give to Caesar the things that are Caesar’s

⁶Jesus said to them, “Give therefore to

*3 The Herodians were those loyal to the Roman appointed kings and to Caesar.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 27

Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's."

⁷They were amazed at his answer and left him and went away.

The Sadducees question Jesus about the resurrection

⁸Then the Sadducees, who say there is no life after death, came to him with a question.

⁹They said, "Teacher, Moses wrote for us that if a man's brother dies and leaves a wife but no children, he must marry the widow and raise up children for his brother."

¹⁰"Now there were seven brothers. The first one married and died without leaving any children. The second one married the widow but he also died, leaving no child. It was the same with the third and so on down to the seventh, none of them left any children."

¹¹"Last of all the woman died. At the resurrection whose wife will she be, since all seven were married to her?"

¹²Jesus replied, "**You are in error, for you know not the scriptures, nor the power of God? When the dead are resurrected they will neither marry nor be given in marriage, but are like the angels in heaven.**"



The Roman silver denarius, with a portrait of Caesar. It was about the size of a ten cent piece and worth about a day's wages.

Jesus corrects the false belief of the Sadducees concerning life after death

¹³"**And concerning the dead, that they live on,**^{F*} have you not read in the scriptures in the account of the burning bush how God said to Moses, 'I am the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob?'"

¹⁴"**He is not God of the dead but of the living. You are quite mistaken in your belief.**"

*13 'Live on,' is a translation of the Greek word 'egeiro' which means 'to regain mental awareness' such as when awakening from sleep. Jesus appears to be confirming that the spirit survives death prior to the resurrection. According to Josephus the Sadducees believed that the spirit died with the body (Josephus, Antiquities, 18:1,4). See also the parable of Lazarus and the rich man (Matt-Mark-Luke 21:26-36).

The two most important commandment

¹⁵One of the teachers of the Law, hearing that Jesus had given the Sadducees a good answer asked him, "Of all the commandments, which is the most important?"

¹⁶Jesus answered, "**The most important commandment is this. 'Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, mind and strength. This is the first and most important commandment.'**"

¹⁸"**The second most important is like unto it. 'Love your neighbour as yourself.'**"

¹⁹"**There are no commandments greater than these. On these two commandments are based all the scriptures.**"

Jesus commends the teacher of the Law

²⁰The man replied, "Well said teacher. To love God and to love your neighbour as yourself are more important than burnt offerings and sacrifices."

²¹Jesus saw that he had spoken wisely and said to him, "**You are not far from the kingdom of God.**"

Jesus corrects the Pharisees' false belief concerning the Christ

²²While the Pharisees were gathered together Jesus asked them this question, "**What do you think about the Christ? Whose son is he?**"

They replied, "The son of David."

²³Jesus said to them, "**How is it then, that David speaking by the Holy Spirit calls him Lord? For he said, 'Jehovah said to my Lord, 'Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet.'**"^{F*}

²⁵"**If David called him Lord, how can he be his son?**"

No one dares ask Jesus any more questions

²⁶Not one of the Pharisees could say a word in reply, and from that day on none dared ask Jesus any more questions. But great crowds heard him gladly.

Hypocritical teachers of the Law will receive the greater condemnation

²⁷As Jesus taught the people he said, "**Beware the teachers of the Law and the Pharisees. For they love to walk around in flowing robes^{F*} and have people call them Rabbi in the marketplaces and to have the most important seats in synagogues, and places of honour at feasts. They defraud widows of their possessions, and for show say long prayers.**"

²⁹"**Such men will receive the greater condemnation.**"

Do what they teach, not what they do

³⁰Then he said to the crowds and his disciples, "**The teachers of the Law and the Pharisees sit on Moses' seat, therefore do whatever they teach you, but not what they do, for they do not practice what they teach.**"

*24 Psalm 54:1.

*27 Teachers of the Law who were also mostly Pharisees, usually wore long white flowing robes. They were also known as Rabbis, Scribes and Lawyers.

Jesus strongly rebukes the hypocritical teachers of the Law and Pharisees

³¹“Woe to you teachers of the Law and Pharisees! Hypocrites! For you give God a tithe of your mint, rue, and other garden herbs, but you neglect justice and the love of God. These you should do without neglecting the other.”

³²“Woe to you teachers of the Law and Pharisees! Hypocrites! For you love the most important seats in the synagogues, and to be greeted with respect in the marketplace.”

³³“Woe to you teachers of the Law and Pharisees! Hypocrites! You are like white-washed tombs, which appear outwardly beautiful but inside are full of dead men’s bones and all manner of corruption.”

Converts become twice as bad as before

³⁴“Woe to you teachers of the Law and Pharisees! Hypocrites! You travel land and sea to win a single convert and when he becomes one you make him twice as much a son of Gehenna as you are.”

Woe to you blind fools

³⁵“Woe to you blind guides! You say, ‘If a man swears by the Temple it means nothing. But if he swears by the gold of the Temple he is bound by his oath.’”

³⁶“Blind fools! Which is greater, the gold, or the Temple that makes the gold sacred?”

This generation to suffer for the blood of all the prophets of old

³⁷“God in his wisdom has said, ‘I will send them prophets and apostles, some of whom they will kill and others they will persecute.’”

³⁸Therefore this generation will be held accountable for the blood of all the prophets since the beginning of the world. From the blood of Abel to the blood of Zechariah who was killed between the altar and the Temple.”*F*

³⁹“Truly I say to you, all this will come upon this generation.” F*

The poor widow’s offering

⁴⁰Then Jesus sat down in the Temple courtyard opposite the treasury and watched the crowd putting in their offerings. Many who were wealthy put in large amounts of money.

⁴¹But a poor widow came by and put in two small copper coins.

⁴²Jesus called his disciples to him and said, “This poor widow has put more into the treasury than all the others. ⁴³For they gave out of their abundance, but she in her poverty gave from all that she had to live on.”



The widow’s coin, a one cent size lepton. The lowest value coin of the day, crudely made from bronze or copper.

28

Jesus prophesies the destruction of the Temple

¹As Jesus was leaving the Temple one of his disciples said to him, “Look Teacher. What massive stones! What magnificent buildings!”

²Jesus replied, “You see all these great buildings. The time is coming when not one stone here will be left upon another, all will be thrown down.” F*

The apostles ask Jesus when this will happen and what will be the sign of his return

³Later when Jesus was sitting on the Mount of Olives, Peter, James, John and Andrew enquired of him privately, “Tell us when these things will happen, and what will be the sign that they are about to take place?”

⁴“Also, what will be the sign of your return, and of the end of the age?”

The apostles to suffer and testify before kings

⁵Jesus answered his apostles, “As for yourselves, beware, for you will be hated by men for my sake. ⁶They will lay hands upon you and persecute you and will deliver you to synagogues and prisons to be flogged. ⁷You will stand before kings and governors for my sake, and testimony to them of me.”

The Holy Spirit to give the apostles words to speak

⁸“When they bring you to trial, do not concern yourself beforehand with what to say. For at the right time you will be given words and wisdom they will not be able to resist or contradict. ⁹It shall be the Holy Spirit speaking through you.”

Enduring to the end will bring Eternal Life

¹⁰“But not a hair of your head will be lost. By enduring to the end you will gain Eternal Life.”

*38 Accounts of these deaths are found in Genesis 4:6 and 2 Kings 5:16.

*39 This prophecy of Jesus was fulfilled 40 years later in the destruction of Jerusalem by the Romans and the deaths of over 600,000 Jews in AD 70.

*2 This occurred in 70 AD when the temple and the buildings of its courtyards were burned and the stones of the temple dismantled by the Romans to retrieve the melted gold. Furthermore in AD 134 when a false Christ, Simon bar Kosiba led a second rebellion against Rome, most of Jerusalem was razed to the ground by the Romans and the city foundations ploughed up.

The destruction of Jerusalem to come within this generation

11“**And when you see Jerusalem being surrounded by armies and the abomination that causes defilement^{F*} set up where it does not belong, you will know that the destruction of Jerusalem is near.**”

12“**Then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains. Let those in Jerusalem escape from the city, and those out in the country not enter the city. ¹³Let no one on the roof of their house enter the house to take anything out, nor anyone out in the field return home to get their cloak. ¹⁴Flee and do not turn back. Remember Lot’s wife.**”

15“**Pray that your flight not take place in winter, nor on the Sabbath. For these will be days of wrath and distress in Judea and against this people unequalled from the beginning of time, and never to be equalled again.**” ^{F*}

16“**It will be a time of punishment in fulfillment of that which has been written. Woe to pregnant women and nursing mothers in those days. ¹⁷And if God had not decreed that those days be cut short, none would survive, but for the sake of the elect whom he has chosen he has shortened them.**”

18“**Truly all this will come upon this generation.**”

Surviving Jews to be scattered to all nations

19“**Judea shall fall by the sword and the survivors will be taken prisoner and scattered to all nations.**”

Jerusalem to be trampled on by the Gentiles

20“**Jerusalem will be trampled on by the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled.**” ^{F*}

False Christs will arise

21“**And after those days beware that you are not deceived, for men will come in my name and say, ‘I am he’ and will lead many astray.**”

22**If any say, ‘Here is the Christ!’ or ‘There he is!’ do not believe them. For false Christs will arise^{F*} and perform signs and miracles to deceive the very elect if possible. ²³Do not follow them. Be on guard. I have warned you ahead of time.**”

*11 The abomination that causes defilement is something that grossly defiles the temple. See Daniel 10:44 and footnote for a similar abomination where a pig was sacrificed to the god Zeus.

*15 This distress took place about 40 years later in 70 AD, when 600,000 Jews perished and 90,000 were taken captive following a siege of Jerusalem by the Romans. The situation inside the city was unbelievably horrific, with starvation, disease, internal fighting and cannibalism. The magnificent temple was completely destroyed soon after and has never been rebuilt. And 64 years later in AD 134, another 580,000 Jews were killed in a second and final Roman invasion.

*20 This time of fulfillment may have been accomplished at the time of the six day war in 1967 when the Jews regained control of Jerusalem for the first time since AD134.

*22 At least ten false Jewish Christs have arisen, Simon bar Kosiba, 2nd century AD; Moses, 5th century AD; Abu Isa al-Isphani, 9th century AD; Serene, 9th century AD; Yudghan, 9th century AD; David Alroy, 13th century AD; Abraham Abulafia, 14th century AD; David Reuveni, 17th century AD; Solomon Molko, 17th century AD and Shabbatai Tzevi in 1665 AD.

Nation to war against nation and earthquakes, famines and plagues

24“**When you hear of wars and the sound of war, do not fear, for these things must first take place. Nation will war against nation and there will be great earthquakes, famines and plagues in various places, and fearful events and great signs in the sky.**”

25“**All these are but the beginning of the birth pains.**”

False prophets to arise

26“**In those days many will turn from the faith and will betray and hate one another, and many false prophets will arise and deceive many.**”

Family members to take one others lives

27“**Brother will betray brother to death, and a father his child. Children will rebel against their parents and take their lives.**”

Wickedness to increase and the love of most will grow cold

28“**Because of increased wickedness the love of most will grow cold. But he who endures to the end will be saved.**”



The west foundation wall or ‘Wailing Wall’ of the Temple of Jesus’ day. This is all that remains of the original structure which was levelled by the Romans in 70 AD.

The gospel to again be preached in all the world

29“**And then this gospel of the kingdom will again be preached in all the world, as a testimony to all nations. Then the end will come.**”

Great tribulation to come in final days and the sun and moon will be darkened

30“**In the final days, immediately following great tribulation, ‘The rising sun shall be darkened and the moon will not shed its light, and the stars of the heavens will not be seen.’^{F*} ³¹And stars will fall from the heavens.**”

Great waves of the sea will roar and bring distress and terror

32“**Nations shall be in great distress at the roaring and great waves of the sea.**”

*30 Jesus is quoting a prophecy of Isaiah (Isaiah 8:4).

33 People will faint with terror, fearful of what is coming on the earth for the powers of the heavens will be shaken."

All nations will see the Son of Man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory

34 "Then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in the sky, and all nations of the earth shall mourn. **35** They will see the Son of Man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory."

Angels to gather the elect with loud trumpet call

36 "He will send his angels with a loud trumpet call and they will gather his elect from the four winds, from ends of the earth to the ends of the heavens."

Parable of the signs of the fig tree

37 "Learn this lesson from the fig tree. When its twigs become tender and leaves appear, you know that summer is near."

38 "Even so, when all these things begin to be seen, people shall know that the Son of Man is near, even at the door."

Christ's coming to occur in the generation in which all the signs are seen

39 "Truly I say to you, that generation will not pass away until all these things take place."

40 "The heavens and the earth shall pass away but my words will never pass away."

No one knows the day only the Father

41 "But that day or hour no one knows, neither the angels in heaven nor the Son, only the Father." ^{F*}

One will be taken and the other left

42 "Two men will be in the field, one shall be taken and the other left. Two women shall be grinding with a hand mill, one will be taken and the other left."

43 "Therefore keep watch, for you know not on what day your Lord will return."

The parable of the thief in the night

44 "For if the owner of the house had known what time of night the thief was coming, he would have kept watch and would not have let his house be broken into."

45 "So you too must be ready, for the Son of Man will come at an hour when you expect him not."

29

The parable of the wise and foolish virgins

1 "In those days the kingdom of God will be like ten virgins who took their lamps and went out to meet the bridegroom. **2** Five of them were foolish and five were wise."

3 "The foolish virgins took their lamps but had no spare oil. The wise however took spare oil in jars along with their lamps."

4 "The bridegroom was a long time in

coming and they all fell asleep. At midnight the cry rang out, 'The bridegroom is here! Come out to meet him!'"

5 "All the virgins awoke and trimmed their lamps. The foolish ones said to the wise, 'Give us some of your spare oil for our lamps are going out.'"

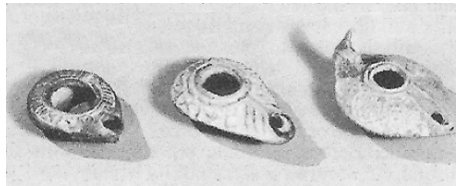
6 "But they replied, 'There may not be enough for both of us. Go rather to those who sell and buy for yourself.'"

7 "So they went to buy oil, but while they were away the bridegroom arrived. The five virgins who were prepared went in with him to the wedding banquet."

8 "Later the others came also and called out, 'Lord! Lord! Open the door for us.'"

9 "But he replied, 'I do not know you.'"

10 "Therefore keep watch, for you know not the day or hour of my return."



Israelite olive oil lamps.

The parable of the talents

11 "Again in that day it will be like a man going on a journey who called his servants and entrusted his property to them. To one he gave five talents of silver.^{F*} To another two talents, and to another one talent. Each according to his ability. Then he went on his journey."

12 "The man who was given five talents went at once and put his money to work and gained five more talents. So also the one with the two talents, he gained two more."

13 But the man who had been given one talent went and dug a hole in the ground and buried his master's money."

14 "After a long time the master of those servants returned. The man who had received five talents brought the other five and said, 'Master, you entrusted me with five talents. See I have gained five more.'"

15 "His master replied, 'Well done my good and faithful servant. As you have been faithful with a few things I will set you over many things. Come enter into the joy of your master.'"

16 "The man with the two talents also came forward and said, 'Master you entrusted me with two talents. See, I have gained two more.'"

17 "His master replied, 'Well done my good and faithful servant. As you have been faithful with a few things I will set you over many things. Come enter into the joy of your master.'"

*41 This remark by Jesus clearly reveals the superiority of God the Father. See also Revelation 1:1.

*11 A talent of silver was a large sum of money, approx 3000 shekels, about ten years wages for a labourer.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 30

18“Then the man who had received one talent came forward and said, ‘Master I knew you were a hard man, harvesting where you had not sown. So I feared and went out and buried your talent in the ground. See, here is what belongs to you.’”

19“His master replied, ‘You wicked and lazy servant! Why did you not at least invest my money with the bankers so that when I returned I would receive it back with interest?’”

20“Take the one talent from him and give it to him who has ten talents. For to everyone who has, more will be given and they will have in abundance. But whoever has not, even what they have shall be taken from them.”

21“**And throw that worthless servant into outer darkness where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.**”

At day of judgement people to be separated like sheep from goats

22“**When the Son of Man has come in his glory, and all the angels with him, he will sit upon his throne in heavenly glory.**”

23“**Then shall be gathered before him all the nations, and he will separate the people one from another as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats.** 24**He will put the sheep on his right hand and the goats on his left.**” F*

Caring people to inherit the kingdom of God

25“**The King will say to those on his right, ‘Come you blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the creation of the world.’**”

26“**For I was hungry and you fed me, I was thirsty and you gave me a drink, I was a stranger and you welcomed me in, I was naked and you clothed me, I was sick and you took care of me, I was in prison and you came to visit me.**”

27“**Then the righteous will answer, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you, or thirsty and give you a drink? When did we see you a stranger and welcome you in, or naked and clothed you? When did we care for you when sick or visit you in prison?’**”

28“**The King will reply, ‘Truly I say to you, whenever you did it for the least of these my brothers, you did it for me.’**”

Uncaring people to inherit Eternal Punishment

29“**Then he will say to those on his left, ‘Depart from me you cursed into the Eternal Fire’* prepared for the devil and his angels.**”

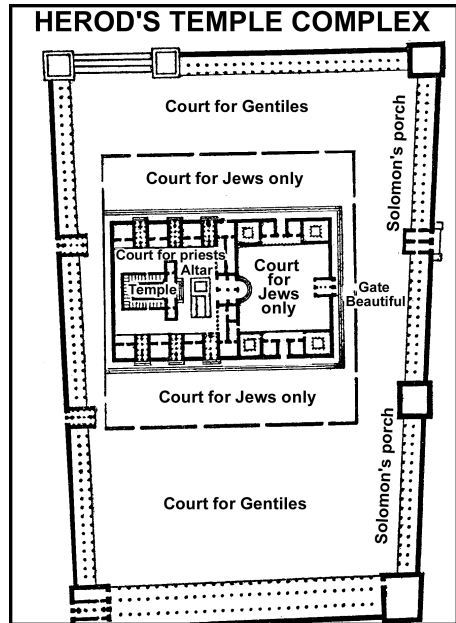
30“**For I was hungry and you would not**

feed me, I was thirsty and you gave me nothing to drink, I was a stranger and you did not welcome me in, I was naked and you did not clothe me, I was sick, and in prison, and you did not care for me.”

31“**They will answer, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry, or thirsty, or a stranger, or needing clothes, or sick, or in prison, and did not help you?’**”

32“**He will reply, ‘Truly I say to you, whenever you did it not for the least of these brothers of mine, you did it not for me.’**”

33“**Then shall they go away into Eternal Punishment, but the righteous into Eternal Life.**”



Floor plan of the Temple in the days of Jesus. Only the high priest was permitted to enter the Temple proper, and only priests the inner court.

30

Jesus to be crucified during the Passover in two days time

1When Jesus had finished saying all these things he said to his disciples, “**The Passover is two days away. At that time the Son of Man will be handed over to be crucified.**”

The leaders plot to arrest Jesus stealthily

2The chief priests and elders of the people had assembled in the palace of the high priest and plotted to arrest Jesus in some stealthy way and kill him. But they said, “**Not during the Feast of the Passover or there may be a riot among the people.**” F*

*2 The feast of the Passover lasted eight days and huge numbers of Jews gathered to Jerusalem. In AD 70 when Jerusalem was destroyed there were approx a million Jews gathered for Passover.

*24 This great day of judgement will not take place immediately after Jesus returns. The more detailed book of Revelation reveals that it will occur after the one thousand year reign of Christ on earth known as the Millennium when all of the wicked and also those born during the Millennium have been resurrected. However see Daniel 5:10-18 and footnote regarding a preliminary judgement just prior to the second coming of Jesus Christ.

*29 This Greek word for fire 'pur' is often used in a figurative sense such as when describing a severe trial or ordeal.

Jesus teaches daily at the Temple

³“Every day Jesus taught at the Temple, and every evening he would go out and stay the night in the town of Bethany, on the Mount of Olives.

⁴All the people would come early in the morning to hear him teach at the Temple.

Mary anoints Jesus with expensive perfumed oil

⁵While Jesus was at Bethany, in the house of Simon the Leper, a woman named Mary^{F*} came in. She brought with her an alabaster jar of very expensive perfumed oil, pure nard.^{F*}

⁶As Jesus reclined at the table she broke the jar and poured it on his head. ⁷Then she wiped his feet with her hair and kissed them and anointed them with the perfumed oil, and also his head. The fragrance filled the room.

Judas is critical of the waste of money

⁸Some of the disciples present were indignant at this and rebuked the woman harshly. ⁹Judas Iscariot one of the Twelve said, “Why this waste? This perfume could have been sold for 300 denarii^{F*} and the money given to the poor.”

Judas rebukes Judas and those bothering the woman

¹⁰But Jesus said, “Why are you bothering this woman? She has done a beautiful thing to me. ¹¹The poor you always have with you and can help them anytime you wish. But you will not always have me.”

¹²“She has done what she could. When she poured this perfumed oil on my body she did so to prepare me for burial.”

¹³“Truly, wherever this gospel is preached throughout the world what she has done will also be told, in memory of her.”

Judas goes to the chief priests to offer to hand Jesus over to them

¹⁴At this rebuke Satan entered into Judas Iscariot and he went out to find the chief priests, to offer to hand Jesus over.

The chief priests are pleased and pay Judas thirty silver coins

¹⁵Judas went to the chief priests and said to them, “What are you willing to pay me if I hand him over to you?”

¹⁶When the chief priests heard this they were pleased, and counted out for Judas thirty silver coins.^{F*}

¹⁷From then on Judas waited for an opportunity for them to arrest Jesus when no crowd was present.

Peter and John prepare the Passover supper

¹On the first day of the Feast,^{F*} when it was customary to sacrifice the Passover lamb Peter and John came to Jesus and said, “Where do you want us to prepare the Passover supper?”

²Jesus replied, “Go into Jerusalem. You will see a man carrying a jar of water. Follow him, and say to the owner of the house he enters, ‘The Teacher says, My appointed time is near. I am going to celebrate the Passover with my apostles at your house.’”

³“He will show you a large upper room, furnished and ready.”

⁴So the two apostles left and found things just as Jesus had told them and they prepared the Passover.



Traditional site of the upper room.

The last supper

⁵When it was dark^{F*} Jesus arrived with the rest of the Twelve.

⁶As they reclined at the table eating, Jesus said, “I have eagerly awaited the eating of this Passover with you before I suffer. For I will not eat it again until it finds fulfilment in the kingdom of God.”

The greatest to be one who serves

⁷During the meal a dispute again arose among the apostles as to which of them was the greatest. But Jesus said to them, “The kings of the Gentiles lord it over them, but you are not to be like that.”

⁸“Instead, the greatest among you should be as the youngest, and the one who rules like the one who serves. For I am among you as one who serves.”^{F*}

The apostles to sit on thrones and judge the twelve tribes of Israel

⁹“Nevertheless, you are they who have stood by me in my trials, and I confer upon

*5 The sister of Lazarus and Martha (see John 12:3).

*5 A highly fragrant rose-red oil extracted from the spikenard plant of India. It was normally kept in a sealed, long necked flask which contained just enough for one application.

*9 About a year's wages for a labourer.

*25 About 120 denarii, approx five month's wages. See also the prophecy of this event in Zechariah 4:33-34.

*1 The Passover.

*5 The daylight hours of this day would have been Thursday, but as the Jews start their following day at 6pm or sunset, it was now Friday. Jesus died during the daylight hours of the next day, the day observed by Christians as Good Friday.

*8 John in his gospel records that at this point Jesus demonstrated this law by washing the feet of his apostles (John 13:3-12).

MATT-MARK-LUKE 31

you a kingdom just as my Father conferred a kingdom upon me.”

¹⁰“You will eat and drink at my table in my kingdom and sit on thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel.”

Jesus tells the Twelve that one of them will betray him

¹¹Then Jesus said, “Truly one of you will betray me, one who is dipping bread in the bowl with me. ¹²The Son of Man will go as it is written but woe to he who betrays him. It would be better for that man never to have been born.”

¹³The apostles were dismayed at these words. They said to Jesus one after the other, “Surely not I Lord?” Judas also said, “Surely not I Rabbi?”

Judas goes out into the night

¹⁴Jesus answered Judas, “Your own lips have said it. What you are about to do, do quickly.” Judas immediately went out into the night.

Jesus gives bread and wine to his apostles in remembrance of his body and blood

¹⁵Then Jesus took bread and, gave thanks and broke it and gave it to his disciples saying, “This is my body given for you, do this in remembrance of me.”

¹⁶Then after taking a cup he gave thanks and said, “Take this and drink from it, all of you, for this is the blood of the covenant which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins.”

Jesus to one day drink new wine with his apostles in the kingdom of God

¹⁷“For I say to you I will not drink again of the fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new^{F*} with you in the kingdom of God.”

Peter to strengthen the other apostles when he is truly converted

¹⁸Then Jesus said, “Peter, Peter, Satan desires to sift you all as wheat, but I have prayed for you Peter that your faith will not fail. When you are converted, strengthen your brothers.”

¹⁹“This very night you will all fall away from me, for it is written, ‘I will smite the shepherd and the sheep will be scattered.’”

²⁰Peter replied, “Lord, I am ready to go with you to prison, and to death.”

Peter told that he will deny Jesus three times that night

²¹Jesus answered, “I say to you Peter, before the cock crows in the morning you will three times deny that you know me.”

²²Peter said, “Even if I must die with you I will never deny that I know you.” And all the others said the same.



The former Temple area of Jerusalem today. On part of the site is an Islamic mosque known as the Dome of the Rock.

Protection of Jesus to be withdrawn from the apostles for a time

²³Then Jesus said to the apostles, “When I sent you out without money, bag or sandals, did you lack for anything?”

²⁴They answered, “We lacked for nothing.”

²⁵Jesus said to them, “Now at this time, if you have money, take it and also a bag, and if you do not have a sword, sell your cloak and buy one. For it is written, ‘He will be numbered with the transgressors.’ ⁵²What is written of me is about to be fulfilled.”

²⁶One of the apostles said, “Lord, here are two swords.”

Jesus replied, “That is enough.”

They go out to an olive grove called Gethsemane

²⁷When they had sung a hymn, they left the city and went out to the Mount of Olives, to an olive grove called Gethsemane where Jesus often went with his apostles.

Jesus is sorrowful and troubled

²⁸On reaching Gethsemane, Jesus said to his apostles, “Sit here while I go over there and pray.”

²⁹And taking Peter, James and John with him Jesus began to be very sorrowful and troubled.

³⁰Then he said to them, “My soul is overwhelmed with sorrow, even to death. Stay here and keep watch with me.”

Jesus prays that his Father will remove the suffering if possible

³¹Going a little further, about a stone’s throw he fell with his face to the ground and prayed, “O Father if it be possible may this cup be taken from me.”

Yet not my will but yours be done

³²“Yet not my will but yours be done.”

An angel comes to strengthen Jesus

³³Then an angel from heaven appeared and strengthened Jesus.

Jesus sweats blood in great anguish

³⁴And Jesus being in great anguish, prayed more earnestly and his sweat became like drops of blood falling to the ground.^{F*}

*17 ‘new’ probably meaning fresh grape juice in its unfermented state. However the term ‘new wine’ can refer to both freshly extracted grape juice not yet fermented and newly fermented wine.

*34 This occurrence is known as hematidrosis where blood mingles with sweat in times of extreme anguish.



Painting of Jesus in Gethsemane.

The apostles cannot remain awake

³⁵Afterward Jesus returned to his three apostles and found them sleeping. He said to Peter, “**Could you not watch with me one hour?**”

³⁶“**Watch, and pray that you do not fall into temptation. The spirit is willing but the flesh is weak.**”

³⁷Jesus went away a second time and prayed, “**O Father if it be not possible for this cup to be taken away unless I drink it, your will be done.**”

³⁸When Jesus came back he again found the apostles asleep, for their eyes were heavy.

³⁹They did not know what to say to him. So he left them and went away once more and prayed the third time, saying the same words.



The olive grove of Gethsemane.

Judas arrives with an armed force to arrest Jesus

⁴⁰Then Jesus returned to his apostles and said to them, “**Are you still sleeping? Behold, the hour has come for the Son of Man to be betrayed into the hands of sinners. Arise, my betrayer is here.**”

⁴¹While he was still speaking, Judas one of the Twelve arrived. With him was a large force of men sent from the chief priests, the teachers of the Law and the elders of the people. They were armed with swords and clubs.

Judas identifies Jesus with a kiss

⁴²Judas had arranged a signal with them saying, “The one I kiss is the man to arrest.”

⁴³Going at once to Jesus, Judas said, “Greetings Rabbi,” and kissed him.

⁴⁴Jesus replied, “**Judas, why have you come? Are you betraying the Son of Man with a kiss?**”

Peter attacks the high priest’s servant and cuts off his ear

⁴⁵Then the men seized Jesus and arrested him. But Peter drew the sword and attacked the servant of the high priest, cutting off his ear.

Jesus rebukes Peter and restores the ear

⁴⁶But Jesus commanded, “**No more of this!**” And he touched the man’s ear and healed him.

⁴⁷Then he said to Peter, “**Put away the sword, for all who draw the sword perish by the sword.**”

⁴⁸“**Do you not think that I can call on my Father, and he would at once send me more than twelve legions of angels? ⁴⁹But how then would the scriptures be fulfilled, that say it must happen in this way?**”

Darkness reigns that prophecy be fulfilled

⁵⁰Then he said to the mob that had come for him, “**Am I leading a rebellion that you come out with swords and clubs to capture me? Every day I sat in the Temple courtyards teaching and you did not arrest me.**”

⁵¹“**But this is your hour, when darkness reigns. This is taking place that the writings of the prophets might be fulfilled.**”

The apostles flee

⁵²Then the apostles deserted Jesus and fled.

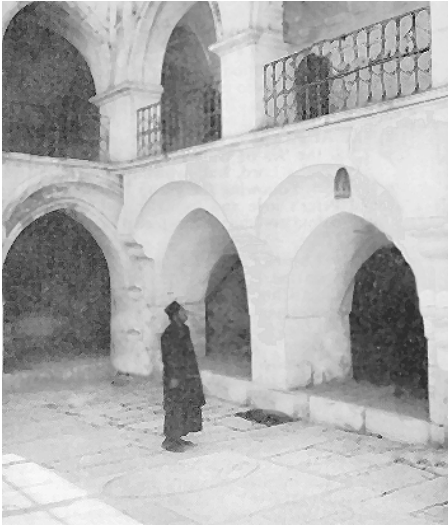
32

Jesus taken before high priest and Jewish leaders

¹Those who had arrested Jesus took him to Caiaphas the high priest, where the teachers of the Law and the elders had assembled.

Peter follows at a distance

²Peter followed at a distance, to the courtyard of the high priest. Then he entered the courtyard and sat down with the guards who were warming themselves at a fire to see what would happen.



The courtyard of the high priest's palace in Jerusalem.

The Jewish leaders look for testimony to put Jesus to death

³The chief priests and the whole of the Sanhedrin^{F*} were looking for testimony against Jesus to put him to death, but they did not find any. Many false witnesses came forward but their statements did not agree.

⁴Finally two came forward and said, "This man declared, 'Destroy this temple of God and I will rebuild it in three days.'" ^{F*}

Jesus remains silent

⁵The high priest stood up and said to Jesus, "Have you no answer to the testimony that these men are bringing against you?" But Jesus was silent.

The high priest orders Jesus to reveal if he is the Christ

⁶The high priest said to him, "I order you under oath in the name of the living God, tell us, are you the Christ, the Son of God?"

Jesus confirms he is the Christ

⁷Jesus replied, "I am, and I say to you all, the day is coming when you will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of the Almighty One, and coming in the clouds of heaven." ^{F*}

The high priest angrily accuses Jesus of blasphemy

⁸At these words the high priest tore his garment and said, "He has spoken blasphemy! Why do we need any more witnesses? You have all heard the blasphemy. What is your judgement?"

⁹They answered, "He deserves to die."

*3 The Sanhedrin was the Jewish governing body of seventy elders presided over by the high priest.

*4 The temple Jesus had referred to was his own body.

*7 This statement would appear to indicate that the Father is to accompany Jesus when he returns. See also Psalms 54:5, 1 Thessalonians 1:28, 2:11, Titus 1:25 and note on Revelation 1:4.

The Jewish leaders and guards mock and beat Jesus

¹⁰Then they spat in his face and punched him with their fists. Others blindfolded Jesus then slapped him and said, "Prophecy to us Christ. Who hit you?"

¹¹The guards then took Jesus and beat him further and said many insulting things to him.

Peter denies Jesus three times

¹²Now Peter was below in the courtyard with the guards and a servant girl of the high priest came up and peered closely at him and said, "You also were with Jesus of Galilee."

¹³But Peter denied it saying, "Woman, I do not know what you are talking about."

¹⁴Peter then went out and stood in the gateway. There the servant girl saw him again and said to the bystanders, "This man is one of them."

¹⁵Peter denied it again, this time with an oath and said, "I do not know the man!"

¹⁶About an hour later, those standing there said to Peter, "Surely you are one of them for your Galilean accent gives you away."

¹⁷At this Peter began to call down curses on himself and swore to them, "I do not know the man you are talking about!"

Peter goes out and weeps bitterly

¹⁸Immediately a rooster crowed and Jesus turned and looked out toward Peter. Then Peter remembered the words Jesus had spoken to him, "Before the cock crows in the morning you will three times deny that you know me."

¹⁹And he went outside and wept bitterly.

Jesus officially condemned to death

²⁰Very early in the morning the chief priests, teachers of the Law and the elders of the people met officially and confirmed the decision to put Jesus to death.

Judas is filled with remorse

²¹When Judas who had betrayed him heard that Jesus was condemned to death, he was filled with remorse.

Judas returns the silver coins then hangs himself

²²He took the thirty silver coins back to the chief priests and said, "I have sinned. I have betrayed innocent blood."

²³They replied, "What is that to us? It is your concern."

²⁴Judas threw the money into the Temple and then went away and hanged himself.

The priests use the money to buy potter's field as a burial field for foreigners

²⁵The chief priests picked up the coins and said, "It is against the Law to put this into the treasury for it is blood money."

²⁶(They eventually used the money to buy the potter's field as a burial place for strangers. That is why it is called the Field of Blood to this day.)



The potter's burial field in the valley of Hinnom (Gehenna) purchased with the blood money that Judas returned.

33

Jesus accused before Pilate the Roman governor

¹Early that morning^{F*} the Jewish leaders bound Jesus and led him before Pilate, the Roman governor.

²There they began to accuse him saying, "We have found this man subverting our nation. He opposes payment of taxes to Caesar and claims to be the Christ, a king."

³Pilate said to Jesus, "Are you the king of the Jews?"

⁴Jesus replied, "Your own lips have said it,"

⁵The chief priests continued to accused Jesus of many other things, but he remained silent.

Jesus makes no reply to the charges

⁶Pilate said to him, "Do you not hear the testimony they are bringing against you?"

⁷But Jesus made no reply, not even to a single charge, to the great amazement of the governor.

Pilate finds no basis for the charges against Jesus

⁸ Finally Pilate announced to the chief priests and the crowd, "I find no basis for the charges against this man."

⁹But they insisted saying, "He stirs up the people all over Judea by his teaching. He started in Galilee and has come all the way here."

*1 Before 6am (see John 17:28 and note), no doubt to avoid the crowds and opposition from those who believed Jesus to be a prophet. Pilate was probably roused from his bed which would explain the account of his wife's dream later that morning (Matt-Mark-Luke 33:20). Jesus was on the cross before 9-30am (Matt-Mark-Luke 34:4).

Pilate sends Jesus to Herod the governor of Galilee

¹⁰On hearing that Jesus was a Galilean and therefore under Herod's jurisdiction, Pilate sent him to Herod who was in Jerusalem for the Passover.

Jesus refuses to speak to Herod

¹¹When Herod saw Jesus, he was greatly pleased, for he had been wanting to see him for a long time and hoped to see him perform a miracle.

¹²He asked Jesus many questions but Jesus gave him no answer. ¹³All the time the chief priests and the teachers of the Law were standing there, vehemently accusing him.

Herod and his soldiers mock Jesus then return him to Pilate

¹⁴So Herod and his soldiers ridiculed and mocked Jesus, and after arraying him in a royal robe they returned him to Pilate.

¹⁵That day Herod and Pilate became friends. Before this they had been enemies.

Pilate tries to free Jesus

¹⁶Pilate called together the chief priests and the leaders and the people and said to them, "You brought me this man as one who was inciting the people to rebellion. I have examined him in your presence and have found no basis for your charges. ¹⁷Neither has Herod for he sent him back to me."

¹⁷"He has done nothing deserving of death. Therefore I will have him flogged and then release him."

¹⁸But with one voice they cried out, "Crucify this man!"

The dream of Pilate's wife

¹⁹Now Pilate knew that it was because of jealousy they had handed Jesus over to him.

²⁰Also, while Pilate was sitting on the judge's seat his wife had sent him this message, "Have nothing to do with that innocent man for I dreamed this morning that I will suffer much because of him." ^{F*}

Pilate threatens to release a violent criminal Barabbas

²¹Now it was the governor's custom at each Passover to release a prisoner, chosen by the crowd.

²²At that time there was a notorious prisoner called Barabbas who was in prison for causing a revolt in the city and for murder. So Pilate said to them, "Which one do you want me to release to you, Barabbas, or Jesus who is called the Christ?"

The crowd chooses Barabbas over Jesus

²³The chief priests and the elders persuaded the crowd to ask for Barabbas and to have Jesus put to death. So they answered, "Release Barabbas to us."

Crucify him!

²⁴Pilate replied, "What then shall I do with

*20 Pilate's political career ended six years later and according to historian Eusebius, 'wearied with misfortunes' he soon afterwards took his own life.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 34

Jesus who is called the Christ?"

²⁵They all shouted, "Crucify him!"

²⁶Wanting to release Jesus, Pilate appealed to them again saying, "Why? What crime has he committed?"

²⁷But they shouted all the louder, "Crucify him!"

Pilate has Jesus flogged

²⁸At this Pilate released Barabbas and handed Jesus over to his soldiers to be flogged.^{F*}

²⁹After the flogging the soldiers took Jesus into the governor's palace and gathered the whole company of soldiers around him.

The Roman soldiers mock Jesus

³⁰The soldiers stripped Jesus and then placed the royal robe back upon him.

³¹They also twisted together a crown of thorns and set it on his head and placing a staff in his right hand they knelt in front of him and mocked him saying, "Hail king of the Jews."

³²Then they took turns at spitting on Jesus and striking him on the head with the staff.

Pilate tries again in vain to release Jesus

³³After this, Pilate once more led Jesus out before the people. He was still wearing the thorns and the robe. But as soon as the chief priests and leaders saw him they again shouted, "Crucify him! Crucify him!"

³⁴For the third time Pilate said, "I have found in him no grounds for death. Therefore I will release him."



Roman soldiers.

Pilate yields to the demands of the people

³⁵But with loud shouts they insistently demanded that he be crucified. When Pilate saw that he was getting nowhere, but rather that a riot was starting he decided to yield to their demand.

Pilate washes his hands of innocent blood

³⁶But first he called for a bowl of water, and washing his hands before the crowd he said to them, "I am innocent of the blood of this man.

^{*27} The Romans flogged with a multi-thonged, leather whip embedded with bone and lead inserts at the tips. Sometimes victims did not survive the flogging.

The responsibility is yours."

³⁷The crowd answered, "His blood be upon us and upon our children!"

Pilate hands Jesus back over to his soldiers to be crucified

³⁸Then Pilate handed Jesus back to his soldiers to be crucified.

³⁹They removed the royal robe from Jesus and put his own clothes back upon him, then they led him away, carrying his own cross.

Simon of Cyrene carries the cross

⁴⁰As they were going out of the city they met a man named Simon from Cyrene,^{F*} coming into Jerusalem. They put the cross on him and made him carry it behind Jesus.

Jesus prophesies of troubled times to come to the weeping women

⁴¹A large crowd of people followed Jesus, including women who wept and wailed for him.

⁴²Jesus turned to them and said, "Daughters of Jerusalem, weep not for me, weep for yourselves and for your children. For the time will come when you will say, 'Blessed are the barren women.'" ^{F*}

⁴³"Then will come the day when your children will say to the mountains, 'Fall upon us! Cover us!'" ^{F*}

⁴⁴"For if men do these things when the tree is green, what will they do when it is dry?"

Two criminals also led out to be crucified

⁴⁵Two other men, both criminals were also led out with Jesus to be crucified.



Street through which Jesus probably carried his cross.

34

Jesus is crucified

¹They came to the place called Golgotha which means Place of the Skull, or Calvary to the Romans.

^{*40} A city of Libya in North Africa.

^{*42} Jesus is referring to the terrible siege and destruction of Jerusalem that would take place in about 40 years time.

^{*43} Jesus is referring to the time of his glorious second coming.

²There they offered Jesus wine mixed with gall,^{F*} but after tasting it he refused to drink it.

³Then they crucified him, along with the two criminals, one on his right and the other on his left. Above his head they placed the written charge against him which stated, *'This is Jesus, the King of the Jews.'*

⁴It was now the third hour.^{F*}



The hill site of the crucifixion known as Golgotha, Calvary or Place of the Skull. In the foreground is the tomb area where Jesus was buried.

Jesus prays that the Roman soldiers be forgiven

⁵As the soldiers were crucifying^{F*} him Jesus prayed, **“Father forgive them, for they know not what they do.”**

The soldiers divide up his clothes

⁶When they had crucified Jesus the soldiers divided up his clothes by casting lots, and then sitting down they kept watch over him.

Jewish leaders, soldiers and those passing by mock Jesus

⁷As the crowd stood by watching, the Jewish leaders scoffed saying, “He saved others, if he is the Christ of God, the Chosen One let him save himself.”

⁸The soldiers also mocked him saying, “If you are the king of the Jews, save yourself.”

⁹Those who passed by also insulted him, shaking their heads and saying, “You who were going to destroy the Temple and rebuild it in three days, come down from the cross and save yourself.”

¹⁰“Let this Christ, this King of Israel come down now from the cross that we may see and believe.”

One of the two criminals believes in Jesus

¹¹Even one of the criminals who hung there kept deriding him saying, “Are you not the Christ? Save yourself and us.”

¹²But the other criminal rebuked him saying, “Do you not fear God? We are punished justly, getting what our deeds deserve, but this man has done nothing wrong.”

¹³Then he said, “Jesus, remember me when you come into your kingdom.”

Jesus promises the criminal that he will be with him in Paradise that same day

¹⁴Jesus said to him, **“Truly I say to you, today you will be with me in Paradise.”^{F*}**

Three hours of darkness

¹⁵At about noon, darkness fell over the whole land until the ninth hour,^{F*} for the sun was darkened.

Jesus cries out to the Father

¹⁶About the ninth hour Jesus cried out in a loud voice saying, **“Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?”** which means in Aramaic, **“My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?”**

¹⁷When some of those standing there heard this they said, “He is calling Elijah.”

¹⁸Immediately one of them took a sponge and soaked it with sour wine^{F*} and put it on a stick and offered it to Jesus to drink.

¹⁹Others then said, “Now leave him alone, let us see if Elijah comes to save him.”

Jesus dies

²⁰Then Jesus cried out with a loud voice, **“Father, into your hands I commit my spirit.”** When he had said this, Jesus died.

The veil of the Temple splits, an earthquake, and many holy people resurrected

²¹At that moment the veil^{F*} of the Temple was torn in two from top to bottom. The earth shook and the rocks split. ²²Tombs broke open and the bodies of many holy saints^{F*} who had died arose to life and came out of the tombs.

The resurrected saints later show themselves to others

²³(After the resurrection of Jesus they appeared to many in Jerusalem.)

The onlookers are awed

²⁴When the Roman centurion and the soldiers with him felt the earthquake, and seeing all else that had happened, they feared greatly and said, “Surely this was a righteous man.”

²⁵The crowd who had gathered beat their breasts^{F*} and went away. Some said, “Surely he was the Son of God.”

The followers of Jesus watch from a distance

²⁶All those who knew Jesus, including the women who had followed him from Galilee to care for his needs from their own means stood at a distance, watching these things.

²⁷Among them were Mary Magdalene from whom seven demons had come out, Mary the mother of James and Jose, Salome the mother of the apostles James and John, and many other women who had come up with him to Jerusalem.

*14 Paradise was the blissful, garden-like area of the spirit world of the dead where the righteous dwelt awaiting the resurrection. It was also known as ‘The bosom of Abraham.’ See note on Matt-Mark-Luke 21:28.

*15 From 12pm until 3pm.

*18 An acidic wine drink, popular with soldiers and labourers.

*21 The curtain that concealed the Most Holy Place.

*22 The term ‘saints’ refers to faithful members of the church of God.

*25 A sign of grief.

*2 A pain-deadening narcotic.

*4 About 9am Friday morning.

*5 In crucifixion, thick wrought-iron nails were driven through the wrists and heel bones.

MATT-MARK-LUKE 35

Joseph a ruler asks Pilate for the body of Jesus

²⁸Now there was a man named Joseph who had become a disciple of Jesus. He was a member of the ruling Sanhedrin Council, a good and upright man who had not consented to their decision and action. Going boldly to Pilate he asked for the body of Jesus.

²⁹Pilate was surprised to hear that Jesus was already dead. When he confirmed with the centurion that it was so, he gave Joseph permission to take down his body.

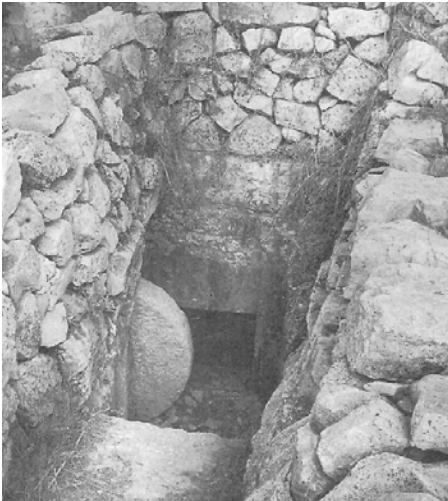
Joseph takes down the body of Jesus, wraps it and lays it in his own tomb

³⁰Joseph purchased some linen cloth and after taking down the body of Jesus from the cross he wrapped it in the linen and placed it in his own new tomb cut out of rock, in which no one had yet been laid.

³¹Then he rolled a very large stone against the entrance of the tomb.

The women buy anointing spices but rest on the Sabbath day

³²It was Preparation Day and the Sabbath was about to begin.^{F*} ³³The women who had come with Jesus from Galilee followed Joseph and saw the tomb and how his body was laid in it. ⁴Then they returned to where they were staying and purchased and prepared spices and perfumes but rested on the Sabbath in obedience to the commandment.



A tomb in Israel with a rolling stone.

35

The Jewish leaders seal the tomb and post Roman guards over it

¹The next day, on the Sabbath, the chief priests and Pharisees went to Pilate and said,

*32 Preparation Day was the Friday before the Sabbath. The Sabbath day began at sunset Friday evening and ended at sunset Saturday evening.

“Sir, we remember that while he was still alive that deceiver said, ‘After three days I will rise again.’”

²“Therefore command that the tomb be made secure until the third day. Otherwise his disciples may come and steal his body and then say to the people, ‘He has risen from the dead,’ and this last deception will be worse than the first.”

³Pilate answered, “Take a guard and make the tomb as secure as you know how.”

⁴So they went and made the tomb secure by placing a seal on the stone and posting Roman guards.

The women set out to the tomb early Sunday morning to embalm Jesus

⁵After the Sabbath, at dawn on the first day of the week^{F*} Mary Magdalene, the other Mary, and Salome took the spices and went to anoint the body of Jesus.

⁶As they walked to the tomb, just after sunrise, they said to one another, “Who will roll away the stone for us from the entrance?”

Jesus is resurrected

⁷About that same time there came a sudden violent shaking of the earth as an angel of the Lord came down from heaven to the tomb.

⁸He rolled back the stone and sat upon it. His appearance was like lightning and his clothes as white as snow.

⁹The guards at the tomb were terrified of him and trembled and fainted.

The Roman guards run and report what happened to the chief priests

¹⁰When they recovered they ran into the city and reported to the chief priests what had happened.

Chief priests bribe the guards to lie

¹¹The chief priests met with the elders and devised a plan. They gave the soldiers a large sum of money and said to them, “You are to say, ‘His disciples came during the night and stole him away while we were asleep.’ ¹²If this report gets to the governor we will satisfy him and keep you out of trouble.”

¹³So the soldiers took the money and did as they were instructed. (¹⁴This story has been widely circulated among the Jews to this very day.)

Two angels speak to the women at the tomb

¹⁵When the three women arrived at the tomb they saw that the stone which was very large had been rolled away.

¹⁶As they entered the tomb they saw two angels dressed in white robes sitting on the right side, and they became alarmed.

¹⁷But one of the angels spoke to them saying, “Be not afraid. Why do you look for the living among the dead? You are seeking Jesus of Nazareth who was crucified. He is not here, he has risen. See the place where they laid him.”

¹⁸“Now go and say to Peter and his disciples,

*5 Sunday, the Jewish Sabbath was a Saturday.

‘He will go ahead of you into Galilee and there you will see him.’

The women filled with joy hurry back to tell the apostles

¹⁹Trembling, the women went out from the tomb and hurried away to tell the apostles. They were bewildered yet filled with joy.

The women are not believed

²⁰When the women told the apostles and others what they had seen and heard, they were not believed for their words seemed like nonsense.

Peter and John run out to the tomb

²¹Peter and John however arose and ran out to the tomb. They saw the linen lying there and wondered deeply.

Mary Magdalene returns again to the tomb and sees the resurrected Jesus

²²Mary Magdalene returned again to the tomb. Suddenly Jesus met her. She went to him and fell down and clasped his feet and worshipped him.

²³Jesus said to her, **‘Be not afraid. Go and tell my brothers^{F*} to return to Galilee and there they will see me.’**



The actual tomb in which Jesus was resurrected.

Jesus appears and walks with two disciples on the way to Emmaus

²⁴Now that same day, two disciples of Jesus were going to a village called Emmaus, about sixty stadia^{F*} from Jerusalem. They were talking

*²³ Jesus often referred to his disciples as brothers, see Matt-Mark-Luke 13:43; 16:17 and 31:18.

*²⁴ Sixty stadia was about 11 kms.

with each other about all that had happened.

²⁵As they talked, Jesus himself came up and walked along with them, but they were kept from recognising him.

²⁶He said to them, **‘What is this you are discussing as you walk along?’**

²⁷They stood still, their faces downcast. One of them named Cleopas said to Jesus, ‘Are you a visitor to Jerusalem and know not the things that have happened?’

Jesus answered, **‘What things?’**

²⁸They replied, ‘About Jesus of Nazareth. He was a prophet, powerful in word and deed. But the chief priests and our leaders handed him over to be crucified.’

²⁹‘We had hoped that he was the one who was coming to redeem Israel, but it is now the third day since this took place.’

³¹‘In addition, some of our women amazed us. They went to his tomb early this morning but did not find his body. They came and told us they had seen an angel who said to them he was alive.’

³²‘Then some of our companions went to the tomb and found it just as the women had said, but they did not see Jesus.’

Jesus explains the scriptures concerning himself to the two disciples

³³Jesus said to them, **‘O foolish men, and slow to believe all that the prophets have spoken. Did not the Christ have to suffer these things and enter this way into his glory?’**

³⁴And beginning with Moses and then the Prophets he explained to them what was written in the scriptures concerning himself.



The road to the village of Emmaus to which Jesus walked with two disciples after his resurrection.

The two disciples suddenly recognise Jesus when he breaks bread

³⁵As they approached the village to which they were going, Jesus acted as if he were going further. But they urged him to remain saying, ‘Stay with us for it is nearly evening.’ So he went in to stay with them.

³⁶When he was at the table with them he took bread, gave thanks, broke it and began to give it to them. ³⁷Then their eyes were opened and they

MATT-MARK-LUKE 35

recognised him, but he vanished from their sight.

³⁸They said to one another, "Did not our hearts burn within us while he talked with us on the road and opened the scriptures to us?"

Jesus also appears to Peter

³⁹The two disciples at once arose and returned to Jerusalem.

⁴⁰When they arrived they found the apostles and those with them assembled together and were told, "It is true! The Lord has risen and has appeared to Peter!"

Jesus appears in the midst of all his disciples

⁴¹Then the two disciples told them what had happened on the road and how Jesus was recognised by them when he broke bread.

⁴²While they were still talking, Jesus himself appeared and stood in their midst and said to them, "**Peace be with you.**"

The disciples think he is a spirit

⁴³They were all startled and fearful, thinking they saw a spirit.

⁴⁴But Jesus said to them, "**Why are you troubled? Why is there doubt in your minds? It is I.** ⁴⁵**Touch me and see, a spirit has not flesh and bones as you see I have.**"

⁴⁶"**Behold my hands and my feet.**" And he showed them his hands and feet.

Jesus eats in front of his disciples to prove he has a body of flesh and bones

⁴⁷But they still could not believe, though they were filled with joy and amazement.

⁴⁸So Jesus said, "**Do you have anything here to eat?**"

⁴⁹They gave him a piece of baked fish and Jesus took it and ate it in front of them.

Jesus explains the scriptures about the Christ

⁵⁰Then he said to them, "**As I told you while I was still with you, all must be fulfilled that is written about me in the scriptures.**" ⁵¹And he opened their minds to understand the scriptures and said to them, "**It is written that the Christ should first suffer and then rise from the dead on the third day.** ⁵²**Then repentance and forgiveness of sins is to be preached in his name to all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.**"

Jesus sends his disciples to preach to all the world

⁵³"**You are witnesses of these things, therefore go into all the world and preach the good news to every person.**"

Whoever believes and is baptised shall be saved

⁵⁴"**Whoever believes and is baptised will be saved, but whoever believes not shall be condemned.**"

Miraculous signs to accompany those who believe

⁵⁵"**And these signs shall follow those who believe. In my name they shall drive out demons, they shall speak in new tongues, they will pick up snakes with their hands, and should they drink deadly poison it will**

not hurt them at all. ⁵⁶**They shall lay hands on the sick and they will recover.**"

Disciples to await the Holy Spirit in Jerusalem

⁵⁷"**I will send you that which my Father has promised.**" ⁵⁸**So remain in Jerusalem until you have been clothed with power from on high.**"

Jesus is taken up to God the Father

⁵⁸Then Jesus led them out to the vicinity of Bethany on the Mount of Olives. ⁵⁹There he lifted up his hands and blessed them. ⁵⁹While he was blessing them he left them and was taken up into heaven to sit at the right hand of God.

The disciples rejoice in the Temple daily

⁶⁰Then they worshipped him and returned to Jerusalem with great joy. They stayed daily in the courtyards of the Temple, praising God.

The apostles see and worship Jesus in Galilee

⁶¹After the day of Pentecost the apostles returned to Galilee to the mountain where Jesus had told them to go. There they saw him and worshipped him.

Jesus commands his apostles to baptise and teach all nations

⁶²Jesus said to them, "**All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.**"

⁶³"**Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptising them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, and teach them to obey everything I have commanded you.**"

⁶⁴"**And remember I am with you always, to the end of the age.**"

Miraculous signs attend the apostles preaching

⁶⁵The apostles went out and preached the good news everywhere, and the Lord worked with them and confirmed his word by the signs that followed.



View of Jerusalem from the Mount of Olives, where Jesus was taken up into heaven and to where he will return at his second coming.

⁵⁷ The Holy Spirit, which came seven weeks later on the day of Pentecost.

⁵⁸ The Mount of Olives is a rounded hill to the east of Jerusalem and higher than the Temple mount. It was used as a lookout and a park-like area by the residents of Jerusalem. The village of Bethany was on its slopes. It is to split in two when the feet of Jesus touch it at his return, see Zechariah 5:18.

JOHN

John's gospel is quite different from the other three gospels of Matthew, Mark and Luke. He writes as if the reader is already familiar with the basic story of Jesus.

His account which is the last gospel to be written, fills in many gaps of the other three gospels and is full of vivid eye-witness and ear-witness detail and contains more dialogue of Jesus than the other gospels.

John's gospel is also very spiritual and explains more clearly the relationship of God the Father to Jesus and to man. John has much to say about love and identifies himself as *'the disciple Jesus loved.'*

John was one of the three chief apostles of Jesus. The other two were John's brother James and Peter. John and James were probably cousins of Jesus as their mother Salome and Mary the mother of Jesus appear to have been sisters (Matt-Mark-Luke 34:27 and John 18:10).

Like their fellow apostle Peter, both John and James were fishermen before being called to follow Jesus. Their family is believed to have been well off as hired men assisted them in their fishing business (see Mark 1:20 traditional Bible) and their mother Salome was one of the women who provided for Jesus (Matt-Mark-Luke 34:27).

John and James evidently were impetuous in their early years as Jesus nick-named them 'sons of thunder' (Matt-Mark-Luke 7:3). Quite appropriately it seems, for on one occasion they suggested calling down fire on a Samaritan town that had rejected Jesus (Matt-Mark-Luke 19:3), and another time they along with their ambitious mother Salome went to Jesus with the request that they sit at his right and left hand in the kingdom of God (Matt-Mark-Luke 24:71).

However in later years John became well known among the churches in and around Ephesus for his gentleness, love, and spirituality. Tradition states that when he was asked to write this gospel by his Christian friends from these churches, he agreed to do so only if the churches fasted and prayed for him for three days.

John was last heard of at Ephesus where he spent much of his time. There is no record of his death and many believe he was translated as was Moses (see Deuteronomy 10:30) and Elijah. See also the words of Jesus to Peter in John 20:31.

AUTHOR

John the apostle, plus a short testimony attached to the end by a group of unknown Christians as to the truthfulness of John's words.

"For God so loved the world that he gave his only begotten Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have Eternal Life." John 3:12.

Though the doors were locked Jesus appeared and stood among them. John 19:25.

CONTENTS

	Chapter		
The Word (Jesus) made all things	1	Jesus drives out merchants and money changers 2	
John the Baptist came to testify of Jesus	1	Jewish leaders demand a miraculous sign	2
Jesus' own people did not believe in him	1	Many believe in Jesus because of his miracles	2
The apostle John's testimony	1	Nicodemus the ruler comes to Jesus by night	3
Jesus has made the Father known to us	1	Need to be born again from above	3
John the Baptist explains his role	1	Jesus came from heaven	3
John the Baptist sees Jesus	1	God loved the world	3
Testifies that Jesus is the Son of God	1	God gave his only begotten Son	3
Andrew, Simon and John become disciples of Jesus ..	1	Whoever does not believe stands condemned	3
Simon surnamed Peter by Jesus	1	Disciples of Jesus baptise	3
Philip and Nathanael become disciples of Jesus	1	John the Baptist to decrease but Jesus to increase ..	3
Jesus turns water into wine	2	John the Baptist prophesies of Jesus	3
Jesus goes to Jerusalem for the Passover	2	Jesus speaks to a Samaritan woman at Jacob's well ..	4

JOHN 35

Jesus can give her Living Water	4	The devil a murderer and a liar	8
Jesus tells the woman she has had five husbands ...	4	Jesus challenges anyone to prove him guilty of sin ..	8
Salvation is from the Jews	4	Jesus again accused of being demon-possessed	8
Worship Father in spirit and truth	4	Jesus says that Abraham saw his day.....	8
Jesus reveals to the woman that he is the Christ	4	Jesus claims he existed before Abraham was born ..	8
Disciples return with food	4	People try to stone Jesus for blasphemy	8
The fields ripe for missionary harvest	4	Jesus heals a man blind from birth	9
Jesus stays with the Samaritans two days	4	Healed man taken to the Pharisees	9
Many believe in him	4	Man's parents questioned	9
Jesus welcomed back to Galilee	4	Pharisees question the healed man	9
Heals an official's son from a distance	4	Healed man defends Jesus	9
Jesus again visits Jerusalem	5	The Pharisees scorn the man and thrust him out	9
Heals an invalid at the pool of Bethesda	5	Healed man worships Jesus	9
Jews rebuke healed man for breaking Sabbath	5	Pharisees guilty because they claim to see	9
Jesus tells the healed man to sin no more	5	Parable of the sheep pen	9
Or something worse may happen to him	5	Jesus explains parable of the sheep pen	9
Jesus persecuted for healing on the Sabbath	5	Jesus the good shepherd	9
Jesus does what he has seen his Father doing	5	Good shepherd lays down his life for his sheep.....	9
All judgement given to Jesus by the Father	5	Other sheep to also hear voice of Jesus	9
Whoever believes words of Jesus has Eternal Life ...	5	Jesus to lay down his life willingly	9
The dead also to hear the voice of Jesus	5	Some disbelieve Jesus but others believe	9
All who have died to be resurrected	5	Jesus asked outright if he is the Christ	10
The Pharisees challenge Jesus' testimony	5	Miracles speak for Jesus	10
Jesus cites John the Baptist's testimony	5	Unbelievers not Jesus' sheep	10
Jesus also cites the miracles he has done	5	Jesus says he is one with the Father	10
And the Father's testimony	5	Jews pick up stones to stone him	10
The scriptures also testify of Jesus	5	Jesus quotes scripture – men called Gods	10
Moses himself will be Pharisee's accuser	5	Miracles prove that Jesus speaks the truth	10
If you do not believe in me you will die in your sins ...	5	Jesus escapes and crosses the Jordan	10
Jesus testifies of the Father	5	John the Baptist testified truly about Jesus	10
A great crowd of people have no food	6	Lazarus becomes very sick	11
A boy has five loaves and two fishes	6	Jesus delays going to Lazarus for two days	11
Jesus miraculously feeds 5000 men	6	Jesus tells his disciples Lazarus is dead	11
Twelve baskets of food gathered up afterward	6	Martha goes out to meet Jesus	11
The people want to make Jesus king	6	Jesus tells Martha that he is the resurrection	11
Jesus walks on water	6	Jesus calls for Mary	11
The crowd search for Jesus next day	6	Mary falls down at the feet of Jesus	11
The people ask Jesus for a sign	6	Jesus weeps	11
The Father has sent Jesus – the True Bread	6	Jesus taken to the tomb	11
All whom the Father has given will come to Jesus ...	6	Lazarus raised from the dead by Jesus	11
I have come down from heaven	6	Many of the Jews believe in Jesus	11
The people murmur in disbelief	6	Jewish leaders call a meeting	11
Jesus the True Bread of Eternal Life	6	The high priest decides that Jesus must die	11
Many followers turn away from Jesus	6	Jesus withdraws to a remote desert town	11
Jesus asks the Twelve if they will also go away	6	Passover draws near.....	11
One of the Twelve a devil	6	Jesus arrives at Bethany	12
Jesus stays in Galilee for safety	7	Mary anoints Jesus with perfumed oil	12
Jesus' brothers tell him to return to Judea	7	Judas Iscariot objects	12
Even brothers of Jesus do not believe in him	7	Judas rebuked by Jesus	12
Jesus goes to Jerusalem secretly	7	Chief priests plan to kill Lazarus also	12
Jesus teaches in the Temple courtyards	7	Jesus' triumphal entry into Jerusalem	12
Jesus accused of being demon-possessed	7	The Pharisees become desperate	12
Jesus defends healing on the Sabbath	7	Some Greeks want to meet with Jesus	12
Testifies again that he has come from the Father	7	Jesus' hour has come to be glorified	12
Many believe in Jesus because of his miracles	7	Parable of the seed of wheat	12
Pharisees send Temple guards to arrest Jesus	7	He who loves his life shall lose it	12
Jesus speaks of his coming death	7	The Father speaks to Jesus	12
Jesus describes Holy Spirit as Living Water	7	Crowd hear the voice of the Father	12
The people are divided	7	Jesus to draw all unto him	12
Temple guards return without arresting Jesus	7	Is not the Christ to remain forever?	12
Nicodemus stands up for Jesus	7	Many who believe in Jesus afraid to confess it	12
An adulterous woman brought before Jesus	8	Jesus' words will condemn unbelievers on last day ...	12
He who is without sin to cast the first stone	8	Whoever sees Jesus sees the Father who sent him ..	12
Women's accusers depart, one by one	8	The Father commanded Jesus what to say	12
Woman told by Jesus to sin no more	8	The Last Supper	13
Jesus the light of Eternal Life	8	Jesus washes feet of his apostles	13
Truth will free you from the slavery of sin	8	Peter resists at first	13
Those who oppose Jesus are children of the devil ...	8	Apostles also to wash one another's feet	13

Jesus reveals who will betray him	13	Jesus arrested and taken to the high priest	16
Judas had charge of money bag	13	Peter and John follow Jesus into the courtyard	16
Judas departs into the night	13	Peter denies Jesus the first time	16
Apostles to love one another	13	High priest questions Jesus	16
Apostles to follow Jesus later	13	Jesus struck on the face by an official	16
Jesus tells Peter he will deny him three times	13	Peter denies Jesus two more times	16
Many mansions where my Father dwells	13	The cock crows	16
No one comes into the Father but by Jesus	13	Early that morning Jesus taken before Pilate	17
Anyone who has seen me has seen the Father	13	Pilate questions Jesus privately	17
Father does his work through me	13	Pilate finds Jesus innocent of charge	17
Anyone with faith shall do greater miracles	13	Pilate threatens to release Barabbas the murderer....	17
The Father will give you the Comforter	13	The Jews choose Barabbas	17
Comforter is the Holy Spirit	13	Pilate has Jesus flogged	17
The Father, Son, and believers all one	14	Roman soldiers mock and strike Jesus	17
To be understood in a day to come	14	Pilate tries to release Jesus	17
The obedient loved by the Father and Son	14	Priests and Pharisees cry out Crucify him!	17
Obedient will see Jesus	14	Pilate again questions Jesus privately	17
Holy Spirit to teach all things	14	Pilate again tries to set Jesus free	17
The Father is greater than Jesus	14	Pilate finally hands Jesus over to be crucified	17
Satan the ruler of this world is coming	14	Jesus crucified between two other men	18
Jesus the vine and the Father the gardener	14	Pilate orders a notice for the cross	18
Unfruitful branches to be cut off	14	Chief priests protest about wording	18
Fruitful branches to be pruned to bear more fruit ..	14	Clothes of Jesus divided among the soldiers	18
Father glorified when you bear much fruit	14	Jesus requests John to care for his mother	18
Keep commandments that your joy be complete	14	Jesus sips sour wine	18
Greatest love is to lay down our life for our friends .	14	Jesus dies	18
Jesus calls apostles his friends	14	Legs of the other two men are broken	18
Jesus made known what he heard from the Father ...	14	Jesus' side pierced with a spear	18
World will hate the apostles	14	Joseph and Nicodemus take down the body	18
Apostles to testify of truth by the Holy Spirit	14	Body of Jesus placed in nearby tomb	18
Apostles will be killed as a 'service to God'	14	Early Sunday morning the tomb is open and empty...19	
Comforter will not come unless Jesus goes away ..	14	Mary Magdalene runs to tell the disciples	19
Comforter will convict world of sin	14	Peter and John run out to the tomb	19
The Holy Spirit will teach you all truth	14	They see the burial linen	19
All that belongs to the Father is mine	14	Mary Magdalene returns to the tomb	19
Disciples to experience joy after Jesus' resurrection..	15	Mary sees two angels inside	19
Ask and you shall receive	15	Mary sees resurrected Jesus	19
Time coming when Jesus will speak plainly	15	Jesus sends Mary to his disciples with a message..	19
Apostles to be scattered and Jesus left alone	15	Jesus appears to disciples that same evening	19
In this world you shall have trouble	15	Disciples in a locked room	19
Jesus prays for the Father to glorify him	15	Disciples filled with joy	19
With the glory he had before the world began	15	Jesus says to his disciples 'Receive the Holy Spirit' ..	19
Eternal Life is to know Father and Jesus Christ	15	Thomas who was not with them doubts	19
Jesus prays for all whom the Father has given him ..	15	Thomas sees risen Jesus a week later	19
Jesus prays for a perfect oneness among believers ..	15	Blessed those who have not seen yet believed	19
As Jesus and the Father are one	15	Many miracles of Jesus not recorded in this book ..	19
Only the Son of Perdition has been lost	15	Seven apostles spend a fruitless night fishing	20
Jesus prays his followers be protected from evil	15	Jesus appears to them on the lake shore	20
Jesus prays that all believers will become one	15	Peter leaps into the water and wades ashore	20
Believers to be given the same glory as Jesus	15	Jesus prepares breakfast for his apostles	20
Love of Father and spirit of Jesus to be in believers...	15	Peter confirms his love for Jesus three times	20
Jesus and his disciples go out to an olive grove	15	Peter to die by crucifixion	20
Judas leads band of guards to Jesus	16	John to remain on earth until Jesus returns	20
Guards fall backwards at words of Jesus	16	John must still eventually die to be resurrected	20
Peter attacks with a sword	16	Testimony to the truthfulness of John's gospel	20

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

The Word (Jesus) made all things

¹*"In the beginning was the Word, and he was with God and of God. Through him all things were made."* ²*"In him is life,*

and the light of mankind. Light that shines in the darkness but the darkness sees it not." F*

*2 Verses 1 and 2 are the words of a hymn.

JOHN 1

John the Baptist came to testify of Jesus

³There came a man sent from God whose name was John,^{F*} to testify that the true light that gives light^{F*} to every man was coming into the world.

His own people did not believe in him

⁴He came into the world and even though the world was made through him,^{F*} the world knew him not.

⁵He came to his own^{F*} but his own believed him not, yet to all who did believe he gave the right to become the sons and daughters of God.

The apostle John's testimony

⁶The Word became flesh and lived among us and we have seen his glory, even the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father who is full of grace and truth.

⁷From his fullness we have received blessing after blessing. The Law was given through Moses but grace^{F*} and truth came through Jesus Christ.

Jesus has made the Father known to us

⁸No one has seen God the Father,^{F*} but the Only Begotten Son who sits at his side has made him known.

John the Baptist explains his role

⁹Now when John the Baptist was baptising at Bethany^{F*} on the other side of the Jordan he was asked, "Who are you?"

¹⁰He answered, "I am not the Christ." ^{F*}

¹¹They said to him, "Are you Elijah, or the Prophet?"^{F*}

¹²John replied, "I am not." Then he cried out, quoting the words of Isaiah, "***I am the voice of one calling in the desert 'Make straight the way of our God.'***"

¹³Some Pharisees said to him, "Why then do you baptise if you are not the Christ, nor Elijah, nor the Prophet?"

¹⁴John replied, "***I baptise with water but***

among you is one whom you know not who comes after me, whose sandals I am not worthy to untie."

¹⁵"***He ranks ahead of me for he was before me."***

John the Baptist sees Jesus and testifies that he is the Son of God

¹⁶The next day John saw Jesus coming toward him and prophesied saying, "***Behold the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world.***" ^{F*}

¹⁷"***I saw the Spirit of God come down upon him from heaven as a dove, and remain upon him. I would not have known him but the one who sent me to baptise with water said to me, 'The man on whom you see the Spirit come down and remain, is he who will baptise with the Holy Spirit.'***

¹⁸***I have seen and testify that this is the Son of God."***



The Jordan river where Jesus was baptised by John the Baptist.

Andrew, Simon and John become disciples of Jesus

¹⁹The next day John the Baptist was with two of his disciples.^{F*} When he saw Jesus pass by he said, "***Behold the Lamb^{F*} of God.***"

²⁰When the two disciples heard this they followed Jesus. He turned and saw them and said, "***What do you want?***"

²¹They said, "Rabbi (which means Teacher) where are you staying?"

²²Jesus replied, "***Come and you will see.***" So they remained with him all that day.

²³Then Andrew, one of the two, found his brother Simon and said to him, "We have found the Messiah," and he brought him to Jesus.

Simon is surnamed Peter by Jesus

²⁴Jesus looked at Simon and said, "***Simon, you will be called Cephas,***" which when translated is Peter.^{F*}

Philip and Nathanael become disciples of Jesus

²⁵The next day, before Jesus left for Galilee,

*16 The 'sin of the world' is believed to be death, brought about by the transgression of Adam (Genesis 2:8, 3:5 and 3:18-20).

*19 Andrew the brother of Peter, and John the writer of this gospel.

*19 The lamb sacrificed at the feast of the Passover since the days of Moses had long symbolised Jesus and foreshadowed his atonement. The death of Jesus also occurred on the feast of the Passover (John 17:29).

*24 Cephas means 'a large rock' in Aramaic the spoken language of the day. Peter is the Greek-English equivalent.

*3 John the Baptist.

*3 Light is here used in the sense of spiritual discernment and awareness such as found in the conscience of man.

*4 Jesus Christ created this world under the direction of the Father, see John 1:1 and Hebrews 1:1.

*5 The Jews.

*7 Grace is the free gift from a loving God, of divine help, divine power, or favour beyond the natural abilities of man.

*8 There are many instances recorded in the Bible of men seeing the God of the Old Testament, however Paul reveals that the God of the Old Testament who appeared face to face with Moses and others by the name of Jehovah was the pre-mortal Christ, not the Father (1 Corinthians 4:13, Zechariah 2:21-24). Christ appeared and spoke as Jehovah because the Father had given him his name (John 5:29, 12:12 and 15:22). Paul like John also wrote that no mortal man has ever seen God the Father (1 Timothy 3:32) however both Paul and John were probably referring to men in their normal earthly state, not those who were 'in the Spirit' or full of the Holy Spirit, for Stephen while 'full of the Spirit' saw both the Father and the Son in a vision for which he was shortly afterward stoned to death (Acts 6:48-9), and John himself while 'in the Spirit' saw the Father in his Revelation visions (Revelation 3:2). Even Paul himself was caught up to the 'third heaven' and saw things of which he was forbidden to speak (2 Corinthians 3:45).

*9 Not the Bethany on the outskirts of Jerusalem.

*10 Christ is the Greek equivalent of the Hebrew 'Messiah' meaning 'the Anointed One.' The Jews had long awaited his coming.

*11 Moses prophesied that the Lord would raise up a prophet like himself (Deuteronomy 4:1-4).

he found Philip and said to him, **“Follow me.”**

²⁶Philip, Andrew and Peter were all from the town of Bethsaida in Galilee.

²⁷Then Philip found Nathanael and said to him, “We have found the one whom the prophets wrote about, Jesus of Nazareth.”

²⁸Nathanael replied, “Can any good thing come out of Nazareth?”

Philip said, “Come and see.”

²⁹When Jesus saw Nathanael he said of him, **“Here is a true Israelite, in whom there is no guile.”**

³⁰Nathanael replied, “How do you know me?” Jesus answered, **“I saw you under the fig tree, before Philip called you.”**

³¹Nathanael said, “Rabbi, you are the Son of God, the King of Israel.”

³²Jesus said, **“You believe because I told you I saw you under the fig tree? You shall see greater things than this. ³³You shall see the heavens open and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of Man.”**

2

Jesus turns water into wine

¹On the third day, a wedding took place at Cana in Galilee and Mary the mother of Jesus was there. Jesus and his disciples were also invited.

²During the banquet the wine ran out and the mother of Jesus said to him, “They have no more wine.”

³Jesus replied, **“Why do you involve me? My hour has not yet come.”**

⁴But his mother said to the servants, “Do whatever he tells you.”

⁵Nearby stood six stone water jars used by the Jews for washing. Jesus instructed the servants saying, **“Fill these jars with water.”** So they filled them to the brim.

⁶Then he said to them, **“Draw some out and take it to the master of the banquet.”**

⁷The master of the banquet tasted the water which had now become wine. He called the bridegroom aside and said to him, “Everyone serves the best wine first and then the cheaper wine later when the guests have had much to drink. You have saved the best until last.”



Stone water jars similar to those used when Jesus changed water into wine.

Jesus goes to Jerusalem for the Passover

⁸After this, Jesus went to Capernaum^{F*} with his mother and brothers and his disciples. They stayed there for a few days and then went up^{F*} to Jerusalem for the Jewish Passover.

Jesus drives the merchants and money changers from the Temple

⁹In the Temple courtyards Jesus saw merchants selling cattle, sheep and doves, and money changers sitting at tables exchanging currency.

¹⁰So making a whip out of cords he drove them all from the Temple area along with their sheep and cattle. Then he scattered the coins of the money changers and overturned their tables.

¹¹To those who sold doves he said, **“Get these out of here! How dare you turn my Father’s house into a market place.”**



Money changer in Jerusalem.

The Jewish leaders demand a miraculous sign

¹²The Jewish leaders came up to Jesus and demanded, “What miraculous sign can you show us to prove your authority to do all this?”

¹³Jesus answered, **“Destroy this temple and I will raise it again in three days.”**

¹⁴The Jews said, “It has taken forty-six years to build this Temple and you say you can raise it in three days?” But the temple he spoke of was his own body.

Many believe in Jesus because of his miracles

¹⁵While Jesus was in Jerusalem many people saw the miracles he was doing and believed in him.

*8 Capernaum was an important town on the shore of Lake Galilee. Jesus used this town as a base during his ministry in Galilee.

*8 ‘Up to Jerusalem’ was a common term because of the height of the city which is built on a mountain ridge 800 metres high. Jerusalem was about a three to five day journey southward from Capernaum.

Nicodemus the ruler comes to Jesus by night

¹Now there was a Pharisee^{F*} named Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish ruling council. He came to Jesus by night and said to him, “Rabbi, you are a teacher who has come from God, for no man could do the miracles you do if God were not with him.”

The need to be born again from above

²Jesus said to him, “Truly, no one can see the kingdom of God unless he is born again from above.”

³Nicodemus asked, “How can a man be born again when he is grown? He cannot enter a second time into his mother’s womb.”

⁴Jesus answered, “No one can enter the kingdom of God unless he is born anew, of water and of the Spirit. ⁵Flesh gives birth to flesh, but the Spirit gives birth to spirit.”

⁶“You should not wonder at my saying, ‘You must be born anew.’ The wind blows wherever it pleases, and you hear its sound, but you cannot tell where it comes from or where it is going. So it is with everyone born of the Spirit.”^{F*}

⁷“How can such things happen?” Nicodemus asked.

⁸Jesus replied, “Are you a teacher in Israel and yet not understand these things? I speak of what I know and have seen, but you men^{F*} will not accept my testimony.”

⁹“I have spoken of earthly things and you do not believe, how then will you believe if I speak of heavenly things?”

No man has ever gone into heaven except Jesus who came from heaven

¹⁰“No man has ever entered into heaven except the Son of Man who came from heaven.”

¹¹“And just as Moses lifted up the snake in the desert,^{F*} so too must the Son of Man be lifted up that all who believe in him may have Eternal Life.”

God so loved the world that he gave his only begotten Son

¹²“For God so loved the world that he gave his only begotten Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have Eternal Life.”

Whoever does not believe in Jesus stands condemned

¹³“God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but to save the world. Whoever does not believe in me stands condemned.”

*1 The Pharisees were the predominant religious sect, and zealous guardians of the religious Law given through Moses. They tended however to obey the letter of the Law rather than the spirit.

*6 The word for wind, breath, and spirit is the same in Aramaic, the spoken language of the gospels.

*8 The Jewish rulers.

*11 The account of this incident, which involves a bronze snake, is found in Numbers 9:6-9.

¹⁴“Light has come into the world, but men love darkness instead of light, because their deeds are evil. ¹⁵All who do evil hate the light and will not come into it for fear that their deeds will be exposed. But whoever lives by truth will come into the light.”

The disciples of Jesus baptise

¹⁶After this, Jesus went out into the Judean countryside and his disciples baptised. John the Baptist was also baptising at Aenon^{F*} for there was much water there.

¹⁷Some Jews came to John the Baptist and said to him, “Teacher, that man whom you testified about is also baptising and everyone is going to him.” ¹⁸(Although Jesus did not baptise, but his disciples.)

John the Baptist to decrease but Jesus to increase

¹⁹John replied, “A man can receive only what is given him from heaven. You yourselves heard me testify that I am not the Christ but was sent ahead of him.”

²⁰“The best man who attends the bridegroom listens for him and is joyful when he hears his voice. That joy is now mine.”

²¹“He must increase and I decrease.”

John the Baptist prophesies of Jesus

²²Then John prophesied, “*He who has come from above is above all, and testifies to what he has seen and heard, but few accept his testimony.*”

²³“*Those who do accept, testify that God is truthful. For he whom God has sent speaks the words of God, for God gives him the Spirit without limit.*”

²⁴“*The Father loves the Son and has placed all things in his hands.* ²⁵*Whoever believes in the Son has Eternal Life, but whoever rejects the Son will not have Eternal Life, for God’s wrath remains upon him.*”



Caná of Galilee where Jesus did his first miracle, changing water into wine.

*16 Aenon was the site of a spring-fed pool approx midway between Judea and Galilee.

4

**Jesus speaks to a Samaritan woman
at Jacob's well**

¹Jesus left Judea to return again to Galilee. On the way he passed through Samaria and came to a town called Sychar.

²Jesus was weary from the journey and about noon he sat down by Jacob's well while his disciples went into the town to buy food.

³A Samaritan woman came out to the well to draw water. Jesus said to her, "**Will you give me a drink?**"

⁴The Samaritan woman replied, "How is it that you a Jew ask me for a drink?" (For the Jews do not socialise with the Samaritans.F*)

Jesus can give her Living Water

⁵Jesus answered her, "**If you knew who it was that asked you for a drink, you would have asked him, and he would have given you Living Water.**"

⁶The woman said, "You have nothing to draw with and the well is deep. Where can you get this Living Water?F* Are you greater than our father Jacob who gave us this well and drank from it himself?"

⁷Jesus answered, "**All who drink this water will thirst again, but whoever drinks the water I give will never thirst. It will become in them a spring, welling up unto Eternal Life.**"

⁸The woman said to Jesus, "Sir, give me this water that I may never again thirst and not have to keep coming here to this well."

Jesus tells the woman she has had five husbands

⁹Jesus said to her, "**Go and bring your husband.**"

The woman replied, "I have no husband."

¹⁰Jesus said, "**You are right in saying you have no husband. You have had five husbands and the man you now have is not your husband.**"

¹¹The woman said, "Sir, I perceive that you are a prophet. Our fathers worshipped on this mountain, but you Jews claim that the only place we can worship is in Jerusalem."

Salvation is from the Jews

¹²Jesus declared to her, "**Believe me womanF* the time is coming when you will worship the Father neither on this mountain nor in Jerusalem.**"

¹³"**You Samaritans worship what you do not know, but we worship what we do know, for salvation is from the Jews.**"

Worship Father in spirit and truth

¹⁴**Yet the time is coming and has now**

*4 There was much ill feeling between the Samaritans and the Jews. The Samaritans were of mixed blood, descendants of non-Israelites who had been exiled to Israel from their native lands by the Assyrians about 800 years ago and who had over the years interbred with remnant Israelites of the former northern kingdom of Israel.

*6 The Living Water Jesus referred to was the Holy Spirit. See John 7:35-36.

*12 To address a female as 'woman' meant no disrespect.

come when true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth. For God is spirit and that is what he seeks."

Jesus reveals to the woman that he is the Christ

¹⁵The woman said, "I know that the Christ is coming. When he comes he will explain everything to us."

¹⁶Jesus said, "**I who speak to you am he.**"



Samaritans celebrating the Passover on Mount Gerizim, 40 km north of Jerusalem.

The disciples return with food

¹⁷Just then the disciples of Jesus returned. They were surprised to find him talking with a woman.

¹⁸The woman left her water jar and hurried back into the town and said to the people, "Come and see a man who told me everything I ever did. Could this be the Christ?" So they came out of the town to see him.

¹⁹Meanwhile the disciples urged Jesus saying, "Teacher, eat something."

²⁰Jesus replied, "**I have food to eat that you know nothing about.**"

²¹His disciples said to one another, "Has someone brought him food?"

The fields are ripe for missionary harvest

²²Jesus said to them, "**My food is to do the will of him who sent me and to complete his work.** ²³**Open your eyes and look around you. The fields are ripe for harvest. Harvest the crop for Eternal Life so that the sower and the reaper may rejoice together.**"

²⁴"**I am sending you to reap what you have not sown. Others have done the sowing and you will reap the benefits of their labour.**"

**Jesus stays with the Samaritans two days
and many believe in him**

²⁵Many Samaritans from that town believed in

JOHN 5

Jesus because of the woman's testimony. They urged him to stay with them.

²⁶So Jesus stayed two days and because of his words many more became believers.

²⁷They said to the woman, "We no longer believe just because of your words. Now we have heard for ourselves and know that this man really is the Saviour of the world."



Jacob's well at Sychar where Jesus spoke with the Samaritan woman.

Jesus welcomed back to Galilee

²⁸When Jesus arrived back in Galilee he was welcomed, for many Galileans had seen all that he had done in Jerusalem at the Passover.

Jesus heals an official's son from a long distance

²⁹Once more Jesus visited Cana where he had turned water into wine. While there, an official whose son lay sick at Capernaum^{F*} came to Jesus begging him to return and heal his son who was close to death.

³⁰Jesus said to him, "**Unless you people see the miracle you never believe. Go, your son will live.**" The official believed and departed.

³¹On the journey home his servants met him with the news, "The fever left your son yesterday at the seventh hour."

³²This was the exact time at which Jesus had said to him, "**Your son will live.**" So he and all his household believed.

5

Jesus again visits Jerusalem

¹Some time later Jesus again went up to Jerusalem for a feast.

Jesus heals an invalid at the pool of Bethesda

²Now in Jerusalem there is a pool called

Bethesda which is surrounded by five covered porches. In these porches lay many invalids, blind, lame, and paralysed waiting for the moving of the water.

³For from time to time an angel would come and stir up the water. The first one into the pool after the disturbance would be cured of whatever disease he had.

⁴Now there was a man lying there who had been an invalid for thirty-eight years. When Jesus learned he had been in this condition for such a long time he said to him, "**Do you want to made well?**"

⁵The invalid replied, "Sir I have no one to help me into the pool when the water is stirred. While I am trying to get in, another goes down ahead of me."

⁶Jesus said to him, "**Arise, take up your mat and walk.**" At once the invalid was healed and he picked up his mat and walked.

The Jewish leaders rebuke the healed man for breaking the Sabbath

⁷Now this took place on the Sabbath day. Some of the teachers of the Law said to the man who had been healed, "The Law forbids you to carry your mat on the Sabbath."

⁸He replied, "The man who healed me told me to take up my mat and walk."

⁹They asked, "Who was he?" But the man did not know for Jesus had disappeared into the crowd.

Jesus tells the healed man to sin no more or something worse may happen to him

¹⁰Later Jesus saw the man at the Temple and said to him, "**See, you are well again. Sin no more or something worse may happen to you.**"

¹¹Then the man went and told the teachers of the Law that it was Jesus who had healed him.



Street in Jerusalem.

Jesus persecuted for healing on the Sabbath

¹²Because Jesus did such things on the Sabbath the chief priests and teachers of the Law persecuted him. But Jesus said to them, "**My Father is always at his work, so I too am working.**"

*²⁹ Capernaum was about 30 kms from Cana.

¹³For this reason they tried all the harder to kill him for not only was he breaking the Sabbath but he was even claiming God to be his own Father, making himself equal with God.

Jesus does what he has seen his Father doing

¹⁴Jesus said to them, "The Son does nothing of himself, only what he has seen his Father doing. Whatever the Father does the Son does also. For the Father loves the Son and shows him all that he does."

¹⁵"Yes, and even greater works than these shall he show him to your amazement, for just as the Father raises the dead and gives them Eternal Life, so too will the Son give Eternal Life to whomever he chooses."

All judgement given to Jesus by the Father

¹⁶"The Father judges no one but has given all judgement to the Son, that all may honour him just as they honour the Father.

¹⁷He who does not honour the Son does not honour the Father who sent him."

¹⁸"But of myself I do nothing. I judge only as I hear, but my judgement is just for I seek to please not myself but him who sent me."

Whoever believes the words of Jesus has Eternal Life

¹⁹"Whoever believes my words believes him who sent me and has Eternal Life. He will not be condemned. He has crossed over from Death to Life."

The dead also to hear the voice of Jesus

²⁰"The time is coming and has now come, when the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who heed it will Live." ^{F*}

All who have died to be resurrected

²¹"Be not amazed at this, for the day will come when all who are in their graves will hear my voice and come out. Those who have done good to Eternal Life, and those who have done evil to condemnation."

The Pharisees challenge Jesus' testimony

²²But the Pharisees challenged Jesus saying, "You are appearing as your own witness, therefore your testimony is not valid."

Jesus cites John the Baptist's testimony

²³Jesus answered, "If I testify of myself my testimony is not valid, but John has testified to the truth. ²⁴John was a lamp that burned and gave light and you chose for a time to enjoy his light."

Jesus also cites the miracles he has done and the Father's testimony

²⁵"However I have testimony greater than that of John, for the miracles that the Father has given me to do testify that he has sent me."

²⁶"Also the Father who sent me has himself

testified concerning me.^{F*} But his word does not dwell in you for you do not believe the one he sent."

The scriptures also testify of Jesus

²⁷"You study the scriptures, thinking that by them you will gain Eternal Life and the scriptures testify of me. Yet you refuse to come to me to have Eternal Life. ²⁸You have not the love of God in your hearts."

²⁹"I come in my Father's name and you accept me not, but if another comes in his own name you will accept him."

Moses himself will be Pharisee's accuser

³⁰"But think not that I will accuse you before the Father, your accuser will be Moses, on whom your hopes are set."

³¹"If you believed Moses you would believe me, for he wrote of me.^{F*} But since you disbelieve the words he wrote, how are you going to believe my words?"

If you do not believe in me you will die in your sins

³²"You are from below, I am from above. You are of this world, I am not of this world.

³³If you do not believe that I am who I claim to be, you will die in your sins."

Jesus testifies of the Father

³⁴The Pharisees demanded, "Tell us who you are."

Jesus answered, "I am who I have been claiming to be all along. He who sent me is trustworthy, and what I have heard from him I tell the world."

³⁵They did not understand that he was speaking of his Father so Jesus said, "When you have lifted up the Son of Man then you will know that I am who I claim to be. And that I do nothing of my own will but speak what the Father has taught me."

³⁶"He who sent me is with me and has not left me alone, for I always do what pleases him."

³⁷Even as he spoke, many believed in him.

6

A great crowd of people have no food

¹Jesus returned once more to Galilee. Soon afterward he crossed to the far shore of the lake and a great crowd of people followed him, for they had seen the miracles he had performed on the sick.

²Jesus went up on a hillside and sat down with his twelve disciples. Then he said to Philip, "Where shall we buy bread for all these people to eat?" (He said this only to test him.)

³Philip answered, "Even 200 denarii^{F*} would not buy enough bread for all these!"

*26 A voice from heaven was heard at the time Jesus was baptised (Matt-Mark-Luke 4:21).

*31 See Deuteronomy 4:1.

*33 About eight months wages.

*20 Peter revealed that Jesus visited and taught the spirits of the dead while his body lay in the tomb (1 Peter 2:15-16).

A boy has five loaves and two fishes

⁴Another of his disciples Andrew said, "Here is a boy with five small barley loaves and two small fishes, but what is that among so many?"

Jesus miraculously feeds 5000 men

⁵Jesus said, "Have the people sit down." There was much grass in that place and they all sat down, about 5000 men.

⁶Jesus took the loaves and gave thanks, then his disciples distributed them to those who were seated, as much as they wanted. He did the same with the fishes.

Twelve baskets of food gathered up afterward

⁷When they had all had enough to eat, Jesus said to his disciples, "Gather the pieces that are left over. Let nothing be wasted." ⁸So they gathered them up and filled twelve baskets with the pieces of the five barley loaves that were left over.

The people want to make Jesus king

⁹After the people saw this miracle they began to say, "Surely this is the Prophet who is to come into the world."

¹⁰When Jesus saw that they intended to make him king by force he withdrew into the hills by himself.

Jesus walks on water

¹¹When evening came, the disciples got into the boat and set off across the lake for Capernaum. It was dark and Jesus had not yet joined them.

¹²A strong wind was blowing and the waters grew rough. When they had rowed about 25 stadia^{F*} they saw Jesus approaching the boat walking on the water, and they feared greatly.

¹³But he called out to them saying, "It is I, fear not."

¹⁴Then they were willing to take him into the boat. Soon afterward the boat reached the shore where they were heading.



Lake Galilee where Jesus walked on the water.

The crowd search for Jesus next day

¹⁵The next day some boats from Tiberias landed near the place where the crowd had eaten the bread. Many who had been there the

previous day got into the boats and crossed to Capernaum in search of Jesus.

¹⁶They found him teaching in the synagogue at Capernaum and said to him, "Teacher when did you get here?"

¹⁷Jesus answered, "You are looking for me because you ate bread and had your fill. Seek not for food that spoils, but for food that endures unto Eternal Life. This the Son of Man will give you."

The people ask Jesus for a sign

¹⁸The people said to him, "What does God require of us?"

¹⁹Jesus replied, "To believe in the one he has sent."

²⁰They said, "What sign will you give us that we may believe in you? Our forefathers ate manna from heaven in the desert."

The Father has sent Jesus – the True Bread

²¹Jesus said to them, "Moses did not send you the bread from heaven, but my Father. Now he has sent the True Bread of heaven to give Eternal Life to the world."

²²They said, "Give us this True Bread."

²³Jesus declared, "I am the True Bread of Eternal Life. He who comes to me will never hunger or thirst."

All whom the Father has given will come to Jesus

²⁴"You have seen me and do not believe in me. Yet all whom the Father has given me will come to me.

I have come down from heaven

²⁵For I have come down from heaven, not to do my will but the will of him who sent me."

²⁶"This is his will, that I lose none of those whom he has given me but raise them up at the last day. ²⁷All who come to the Son and believe in him shall have Eternal Life." ^{F*}

The people murmur in disbelief

²⁸At this the people began to murmur saying, "Is this not Jesus the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know? How then can he say, 'I came down from heaven?'"

²⁹Jesus said, "Do not murmur among yourselves. No one can come to me unless the Father draws him, for it is written in the scriptures, 'They will all be taught by God.'"

³⁰"All who listen to the Father will come to me and find Eternal Life."

Jesus the True Bread of Eternal Life

³¹"I am the True Bread of Life. Your forefathers ate manna in the desert yet they died. But I am the True Bread that comes down from heaven which a man may eat and have Eternal Life. This bread is my flesh."

*27 The term 'Eternal Life' (or 'Life' or 'Live') is used frequently by Jesus and means for a person to live forever after death in glory with Jesus in the presence of God the Father. See John 15:29-31 and note on Revelation 2:13 for fuller explanation.

*12 About 5 kms.

³²The people again murmured saying, “How can this man give us his flesh to eat?”

³³Jesus said to them, “Truly I say, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you will not have Eternal Life. ³⁴Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has Eternal Life and I will raise him up at the last day. He will abide in me and I in him.”

³⁵“Just as the Eternal Father sent me, and I have Eternal Life because of the Father,^{F*} so anyone who feeds on this bread will have Eternal Life because of me.”

Many followers turn away from Jesus

³⁶On hearing these words, many of his disciples said, “This is a hard teaching, who can accept it?”

³⁷Aware that his disciples were murmuring about this, Jesus said to them, “Does this offend you? What if you see the Son of Man ascend to where he was before?”

³⁸“The Spirit gives life, but the flesh counts for nothing. The words I have spoken to you are Spirit and they will bring you Eternal Life.”

³⁹From that hour on, many of his disciples turned away and no longer followed Jesus.

Jesus asks the Twelve if they will go away also

⁴⁰Jesus turned to the Twelve and said, “Will you also go away?”

⁴¹Peter answered, “Lord, to whom shall we go? You have the words of Eternal Life. We know that you are the Holy One of God.”

One of the Twelve is a devil

⁴²Jesus said, “Did I not choose you Twelve? Yet one of you is a devil.” (He meant Judas Iscariot who was later to betray him.)

7

Jesus stays in Galilee for safety

¹After this, Jesus travelled around Galilee staying away from Judea for the Jewish leaders there wanted to kill him.

His brothers tell him to return to Jerusalem

²When the Feast of Tabernacles drew near his brothers said to Jesus, “Go to Judea so that your followers there can also see the miracles you do. ³For no man who wants to become well known acts in secret. Since you are doing these things show yourself to the world.”

Even brothers of Jesus do not believe in him

⁴Yet even his own brothers did not believe in him. ^{F*}

*35 The name/title of the Father is Jehovah (also shared by the pre-mortal Jesus) and means ‘Eternal.’ Therefore Eternal Life means ‘Life in the presence of God’ rather than merely existing forever, of which even the wicked seem assured, although they do suffer the Second Death which is to be cut off forever from the presence of God the Father (Revelation 17:8). For further information on the fate of the wicked see note on Revelation 16:19.

*4 After his resurrection at least two of his brothers, James and Jude believed in him. See introductions to the books of James and Jude.

⁵Jesus replied, “My time has not yet come. For you any time is right, for the world will not hate you, but it hates me for I testify that its works are evil. You go on up to the Feast.”

Jesus goes to Jerusalem secretly

⁶After his brothers had left for the Feast, Jesus went also but in secret.

⁷Now at the Feast the chief priests and Pharisees were watching for him and saying, “Where is he?” ⁸And among the crowds there was much debate about him. Some said, “He is a good man.” Others said, “He deceives the people.”

⁹But no one spoke openly for fear of the chief priests and Pharisees.

Jesus teaches in the Temple courtyards

¹⁰Halfway through the Feast, Jesus went up into the Temple courts and began to teach.

¹¹The Jews were amazed and said, “How did this man get such learning without having been taught?”

¹²Jesus answered, “My teaching is not my own, it comes from him who sent me. If anyone does God’s will he will know whether my teaching comes from God or whether I speak of myself.”

¹³“He who speaks of himself does so only to gain honour for himself, but he who seeks the honour of the one who sent him is a man of truth.”

Jesus accused of being demon-possessed

¹⁴“Did not Moses give you the Law? Yet not one of you keeps it. And why is it that you are trying to kill me?”

¹⁵The crowd replied, “You are possessed by a demon. Who is trying to kill you?”

Jesus defends his healing on the Sabbath

¹⁶Jesus said to them, “I do one miracle on the Sabbath and you are all astonished, yet you circumcise a child on the Sabbath.”

¹⁷“If a child can be circumcised on the Sabbath so that the Law of Moses not be broken, why are you angry with me for healing a whole man on the Sabbath?”

¹⁸Cease to judge superficially and make right judgements.”

Jesus testifies again that he has come from the Father

¹⁹Now some of the people were saying, “Is not this the man they are trying to kill? Yet here he is speaking openly. ²⁰Have the authorities decided that he really is the Christ? But we know where this man comes from. When the Christ comes no one will know where he is from.”

²¹Hearing this, Jesus cried out, “Yes, you know where I am from, but I have not come of my own accord. I was sent by one who has a right to send.”

²²“You do not know the Father, but I know him, for I am from him and he sent me.”

²³They said to him, “Where is your Father?”

JOHN 8

Jesus replied. **“If you knew me, you would know my Father also.”**

Many believe in Jesus because of his miracles

²⁴Some wanted to seize him but no one dared lay a hand on him, for his time had not yet come.

²⁵Yet many in the crowd believed in him and said, “When the Christ comes will he do more miracles than this man?”

The Pharisees send Temple guards to arrest Jesus

²⁶The chief priests and Pharisees heard what the crowd were saying therefore they sent Temple guards^{F*} to arrest Jesus.

Jesus speaks of his coming death

²⁷Jesus said, **“I am with you only a short time then I will return to him who sent me. You will look for me but not find me for where I am you cannot come.”**

²⁸The Jews said to one another, “Where does this man intend to go that we cannot find him or come to him? Will he kill himself?”

The Temple guards return without arresting Jesus

²⁹The Temple guards returned to the chief priests and Pharisees who said to them, “Why did you not arrest him?”

³⁰The guards answered, “No man ever spoke as this man does.”

³¹The Pharisees retorted, “Has he deceived you also? Have any of the rulers or the Pharisees believed in him? No!”^{F*}

³²“That mob out there know nothing of the Law. There is a curse on them.”

Nicodemus stands up for Jesus

³³Then Nicodemus, who had gone to Jesus by night and who was one of their own number said, “Does our Law condemn a man without first giving him a hearing?”

³⁴They sneered at him and said, “Are you from Galilee too? Search the scriptures, you will find that no prophet is to arise from Galilee.”^{F*}

Jesus describes the Holy Spirit as Living Water

³⁵On the last day of the Feast, the greatest day, Jesus stood up and cried out in a loud voice, **“If anyone thirsts let him come to me and drink. Whoever believes in me, streams of Living Water will flow from within him.”**

³⁶By this he meant the Holy Spirit whom his believers were later to receive. For as yet the Spirit had not been given them since Jesus had not yet been glorified.

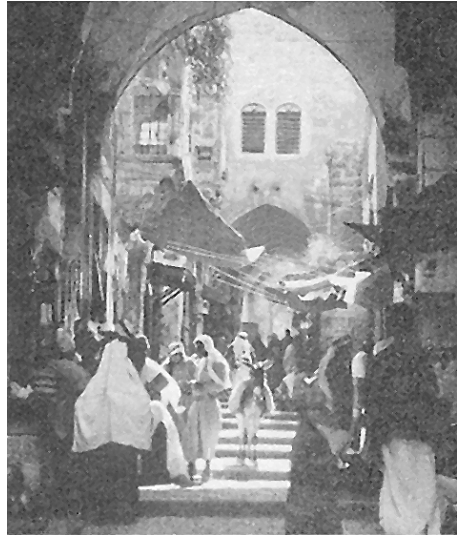
The people are divided

³⁷On hearing these words some of the people said, “Surely this man is the Prophet.” Others said, “He is the Christ.”

³⁸Still others said, “How can the Christ come

from Galilee? Does not the scripture say that the Christ will come from David’s family and from Bethlehem?”

³⁹And so the people were divided because of Jesus.



The streets of old Jerusalem, the setting for much of the gospel of John.

8

An adulterous woman brought before Jesus

¹At dawn the next day Jesus went again to the Temple courts. The people gathered around him and he sat down and began to teach them.

²Then the teachers of the Law and the Pharisees brought in a woman who had been caught in adultery. ³They made her stand before Jesus and said to him, “Teacher, this woman was caught in the very act of adultery. Moses commanded us to stone such a woman, but what do you say?”

He who is without sin to cast the first stone

⁴They were using this question as a trap in order to have grounds for accusing him.^{F*} But Jesus leaned over and wrote on the ground with his finger.

⁵When they kept on questioning him, Jesus sat up straight and said to them, **“Let him who is without sin among you cast the first stone at her.”** Then he leaned over again and wrote on the ground.

The women’s accusers depart, one by one

⁶At these words those who had brought in the woman began to depart, one by one beginning with the eldest, each being convicted by his conscience until they had all gone.

*²⁶ The temple guards were Jews not Romans.

*³¹ Not entirely correct. At least two of their own number Nicodemus and Joseph believed in him. See John 3:1; 7:33 and 18:22-26.

*³⁴ Josephus the Jewish historian commented that the Jewish rulers who were mostly Sadducees not Pharisees were noted for their rudeness to each other.

*⁴ Roman law did not permit the Jews to put to death one of their own and if Jesus excused the woman he would be violating the written Law of Moses.

The woman told by Jesus to sin no more

⁷Jesus then looked up and said to the woman, **“Woman, where are your accusers? Is there no one to condemn you?”**

She replied, “No one sir.”

⁸Jesus said, **“Then neither do I condemn you. Go now and sin no more.”**

Jesus the light of Eternal Life

⁹Jesus continued to teach the people saying, **“I am the light of the world. Whoever follows me will never walk in darkness but will have the light of Eternal Life.”**

The truth will free you from slavery of sin

¹⁰To those who believed in him Jesus said, **“If you continue in my teaching you are truly my disciples. ¹¹You will know the truth and the truth will make you free.”**

¹²Some of the Jews replied, “We are Abraham’s descendants and have never been slaves of anyone. How can you say, ‘We shall be made free?’”

¹³Jesus said, **“I know you are Abraham’s descendants, yet you are ready to kill me, for my words find no place in you.**

¹⁴**Everyone who sins is a slave to sin, therefore if the Son sets you free you will be free indeed.”**

Those who oppose Jesus are children of the devil

¹⁵**“I speak to you of what I have seen in the presence of the Father, but you do what your father tells you.”**

¹⁶They answered, “We are Abraham’s children.”

Jesus said, **“If you were Abraham’s children you would do the things Abraham did. ¹⁷Yet you are determined to kill me, a man who has told you the truth I heard from God. Abraham did not do such things. ¹⁸You are doing the things your own father does.”**

¹⁹They replied, “We are not illegitimate children. We have God himself for our Father.”

²⁰Jesus said to them, **“If God were your Father you would love me, for I came from God. ²¹You do not understand what I say because you are unable to bear my words.**

²²**You belong to your father the devil, and want to carry out your father’s desire.”**

The devil a murderer and a liar

²³**“He was a murderer from the beginning, not holding to the truth for there is no truth in him. When he lies he speaks according to his own nature for he is a liar and the father of lies.”**

Jesus challenges anyone to prove him guilty of sin

²⁴**“Can any of you prove me guilty of sin?”**

²⁵**“I am speaking the truth, why do you not believe me? He who belongs to God believes what God says. ²⁶The reason you do not believe is that you do not belong to God.”**

Jesus again accused of being demon-possessed

²⁷The Jews answered, **“You Samaritan! ^{F*} Are we not right in saying that you are possessed by a demon?”**

²⁸Jesus said, **“I am not possessed by a demon. I honour my Father, and you dishonour me. I am not seeking glory for myself.”**

²⁹**“Truly I say, whoever heeds my words will never see Death.” ^{F*}**

³⁰At this the Jews exclaimed, “Now we know you have a demon. Abraham died and so did the prophets yet you say, whoever heeds your words will never see death. ³¹Are you greater than our father Abraham? Who do you claim to be?”

Abraham saw Jesus

³²Jesus replied, **“Abraham rejoiced at the thought of seeing my day. He saw it and was glad.”**

³³The Jews said to him, “You who are not yet fifty years old, claim that Abraham has seen you?”

Jesus proclaims he existed before Abraham was born

³⁴Jesus answered, **“Truly I say to you, before Abraham was born, I existed.”**

The people try to stone Jesus for blasphemy

³⁵At this they picked up stones to stone him, but Jesus hid himself, then left the Temple courts.

9

Jesus heals a man blind from birth

¹Later as Jesus walked with his disciples he saw a man who had been blind from birth. His disciples said to him, “Teacher, who sinned, this man or his parents that he was born blind?” ^{F*}

²Jesus replied, **“Neither this man nor his parents sinned. He was born blind that a miracle of God might be displayed in his life.”**

³Having said this, Jesus spat on the ground and made some mud with his saliva and spread it on the man’s eyes. Then he said to him, **“Go wash in the Pool of Siloam.”** ⁴So the man went and washed and went home seeing.

⁵His neighbours said to one another, “Is not this the man who sat and begged?”

⁶Some said, “It is he.” Others said, “No, he only looks like him.”

⁷But he himself insisted, “I am the man.”

⁸They said to him, “How then were your eyes opened?”

⁹He replied, “The man they call Jesus made some mud and put it on my eyes. Then he told

*27 A term of abuse.

*29 Jesus is speaking of the Second Death (see Revelation 17:8 and note on Revelation 16:19) which is to be cut off forever from the presence of God.

*1 Traditional Jewish belief is that a person’s spirit existed prior to birth. See note on Job 1:5.

JOHN 9

me to go to Siloam and wash. So I went and washed and then I could see.”

The healed man taken to the Pharisees

¹⁰So they took the man who had been blind to the Pharisees. Now the day on which Jesus had opened the man’s eyes was the Sabbath therefore some of the Pharisees said, “This man is not of God, for he does not observe the Sabbath.”

¹¹But others said, “How could a sinner do such a miracle?”

¹²They turned to the man who had been blind and said, “What have you to say about him?”

¹³The man answered, “He is a prophet.”

The man’s parents questioned

¹⁴The Pharisees did not believe the man had been blind and called for his parents and said to them, “Is this your son whom you say was born blind? How is it that he now sees?”

¹⁵The parents answered, “We know that he is our son, and we know that he was born blind, but how it is that he now sees, we do not know. Ask him, for he is of age and can speak for himself.”

¹⁶His parents answered this way for fear of the Pharisees. For already they had decided that anyone who said that Jesus was the Christ would be expelled from the synagogue.



The pool of Siloam where the man blind from birth washed his eyes and regained his sight.

The Pharisees again question the healed man

¹⁷So a second time the Pharisees called the man who had been blind and said to him, “Give the glory to God for we know that this man is a sinner.”

¹⁸The man replied, “Whether he be a sinner or not, one thing I do know, I was blind and now I see.”

¹⁹Again they said to him, “What did he do to you? How did he open your eyes?”

²⁰He answered, “I have told you already. Why do you want to hear it again? Do you wish to become his disciples too?”

²¹At this they scorned him and said, “You may be this man’s disciple but we are disciples of Moses. We know that God spoke to Moses but as for this man we do not even know where he comes from.”

The healed man defends Jesus

²²The man said, “Now that is remarkable! You do not know where he comes from, yet he opened my eyes. ²³We all know that God does not listen to sinners, but to men who worship him and do his will. ²⁴Never before has it been heard of one opening the eyes of a man born blind. If this man were not from God he could not do such a thing.”

The Pharisees scorn the man and thrust him out

²⁵To these words the Pharisees replied angrily, “You who were steeped in sin at birth would lecture us?” And they thrust him out.

The healed man believes in Jesus

²⁶Jesus heard that they had thrust him out and when he found him he said, “**Do you believe in the Son of Man?**”

²⁷The man answered, “Tell me who he is that I may believe in him.”

²⁸Jesus replied, “**He is the one speaking with you.**”

²⁹The man said, “Lord I believe,” and he worshipped Jesus.

³⁰Jesus said, “**I have come into the world to judge it that the blind may see, and those who claim to see may become blind.**”

The Pharisees guilty because they claim to see

³¹Some Pharisees heard him say this and sneered at him saying, “What, are we blind too?”

³²Jesus said, “**If you were blind you would not be guilty of sin, but since you claim to see, your guilt remains.**”

The parable of the sheep pen

³³“**The man who does not enter a sheep pen^F by the gate but climbs in some other way is a thief. But he who enters by the gate is the shepherd of his flock.**”

³⁴“**The watchman opens the gate for him and the sheep hear his voice. He calls his own sheep by name and leads them out.**”

³⁵“**Then he walks ahead of them and the sheep follow him, for they know his voice.**”

³⁶“**They will not follow a stranger but will run from him, for they do not recognise his voice.**”

Jesus explains the parable of the sheep pen

³⁷They did not understand this parable so Jesus explained it saying, “**I am the gate for**

^{*33} A sheep pen was a large enclosure where shepherds kept their flocks overnight for protection under the care of an appointed watchman. In the morning the shepherds would return and call out their various flocks and lead them out to pasture.

the sheep. All others who enter in some other way are thieves, but the sheep do not listen to them.”

³⁸“I am the gate. Whoever enters through me will be saved. They will come in and go out and find pasture. ³⁹The thief comes only to steal and destroy, but I have come that they may have Eternal Life and have it abundantly.”

Jesus is the good shepherd who lays down his life for his sheep

⁴⁰“I am the good shepherd. The good shepherd lays down his life for his sheep. ⁴¹A hired hand is not the shepherd who owns the sheep. He cares nothing for them. When he sees the wolf coming he abandons the sheep and runs away. Then the wolf attacks the flock and scatters it.”

⁴²“But I am the good shepherd. I know my sheep and my sheep know me, just as the Father knows me and I know the Father, and I lay down my life for my sheep.”

Other sheep of a different fold to also hear the voice of Jesus

⁴³“And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold. Them also I must bring. They too will hear my voice, and there shall be one flock and one shepherd.”



The apt image of a shepherd leading his sheep is used throughout the Bible.

Jesus to lay down his life willingly

⁴⁴“For this reason the Father loves me, because I lay down my life that I may take it up again.”

⁴⁵“No one takes it from me, I lay it down of my own accord. I have power to lay it down and power to take it up again.”

Some disbelieve Jesus but others believe

⁴⁶At these words many of the people mocked him saying, “He is possessed of a demon and

raving mad. Why listen to him?”

⁴⁷But others said, “These are not the words of a man possessed by a demon. Can a demon open the eyes of the blind?”

10

Jesus asked outright if he is the Christ

¹When it was winter, at the time of the Feast of Lights,^{F*} Jesus was at the Temple in Jerusalem walking in Solomon’s Porch. ²The people gathered around him and said, “How long will you keep us in suspense? If you are the Christ, tell us plainly.”



Jerusalem in winter.

The miracles speak for Jesus

³Jesus answered, “I tell you but you do not believe. The miracles I do in my Father’s name speak for me.”

Unbelievers not Jesus’ sheep

⁴“You do not believe because you are not my sheep. My sheep heed my voice. I know them and they follow me and I will give them Eternal Life. No one can snatch them out of my hand.”

Jesus is one with the Father

⁵“My Father who has given them to me is greater than all. I and the Father are one.”^{F*}

The Jews pick up stones to stone Jesus for claiming to be as God

⁶Again the Jews picked up stones to stone him but Jesus said to them, “For which of the many miracles from the Father are you going to stone me?”

⁷They replied, “We are not going to stone you for miracles but for blasphemy, because you a mere man claim to be as God.”

*1 An 8 day mid-winter feast instituted by Judas Maccabee to commemorate the cleansing of the temple in 164 BC.

*5 This is a Semitic way of speaking and has caused some confusion among Christians. Jesus is not saying he and the Father are the same person, but that they are one in purpose, unity and love, just as devoted friends here on earth can be described as one. In a similar manner Jesus prays to the Father in John 15:22 and 15:28-29 that he and his apostles be one, as he and the Father are one. This is accomplished through the Holy Spirit (see 1 John 3:14). See also note on John 13:35.

Jesus quotes scripture – men called Gods

⁸Jesus said to them, “Is it not written in the scriptures, ‘Yet you are gods, all of you?’” ^{F*}

⁹“If those to whom the word of God came were called gods, and scripture is binding, why not the one whom the Father set apart as his very own and sent into the world?”

¹⁰“Why then accuse me of blasphemy because I say ‘I am the Son of God?’”

The miracles prove that Jesus speaks the truth

¹¹“Do not believe me unless I do what my Father does. Believe the miracles that you may know that the Father is in me and I in the Father.”

Jesus escapes and crosses the Jordan

¹²Again they tried to seize Jesus, but he escaped their grasp and crossed the Jordan to the place where John had been baptising in the early days and stayed there.

John the Baptist testified truly about Jesus

¹³Many people came to Jesus there saying, “Though John never performed a miracle, all he said about this man is true.” And in that place many believed in Jesus.

11

Lazarus becomes very sick

¹Now a certain man named Lazarus was very sick. He was the brother of Mary and Martha from the village of Bethany. So his sisters sent word to Jesus saying, “Lord the one whom you love is very sick.”

²When Jesus heard this he said, “The end of this sickness will not be death, but God’s glory and the glory of God’s Son.”

Jesus delays going to Lazarus for two days

³Jesus loved Lazarus and his two sisters, yet he remained where he was for two more days. Then he said to his disciples, “Let us return to Judea.”

⁴They said to him, “But Teacher only a short while ago the Jews tried to stone you.”

⁵Jesus answered, “Only he who walks in the dark stumbles. Our friend Lazarus has fallen asleep. I go to awaken him.”

Jesus tells his disciples Lazarus is dead

⁶His disciples replied, “Lord if he sleeps he will recover.”

⁷Jesus told them plainly, “Lazarus is dead, and for your sake I am glad I was not there so that you may believe. Let us go to him.”

⁸Thomas said to the rest of the disciples, “Let us also go that we may die with him.”

⁹When Jesus arrived he found that Lazarus had been in the tomb four days.

Martha goes out to meet Jesus

¹⁰Now Bethany was near to Jerusalem and many people had come out to Martha and Mary to comfort them in the loss of their brother.

¹¹When Martha heard that Jesus had come she went out to meet him, but Mary stayed in the house.

Jesus tells Martha that he is the resurrection

¹²Martha said to Jesus, “O Lord, if you had been here my brother would not have died, but I know that even now God will do for you whatever you ask.”

¹³Jesus said to her, “Your brother will rise again.”

Martha answered, “I know he will rise again in the resurrection at the last day.”

¹⁴Jesus said to her, “I am the resurrection and the Life. He who believes in me will Live even though he dies. Do you believe this?”

¹⁵She replied, “Yes Lord, I believe that you are the Christ, the Son of God who was to come into the world.”

Jesus calls for Mary

¹⁶Martha then went back to the house and called her sister Mary aside and said to her, “The Teacher is here and is asking for you.”

¹⁷Now Jesus had not yet entered the village but was still at the place where Martha had met him. When those who were with Mary in the house comforting her saw her go out they followed her, supposing she was going to the tomb to mourn there.

Mary falls down at the feet of Jesus

¹⁸As soon as Mary saw Jesus she fell at his feet and said, “Lord if you had been here my brother would not have died.”

Jesus weeps

¹⁹Jesus saw Mary weeping and heard the wailing of those who had come along with her and was deeply moved in spirit. He wept also.

Jesus is taken to the tomb

²⁰Then Jesus said, “Where have you laid him?”

Mary replied, “Come and see Lord.”

²¹The people said, “See how he loved him.” But some of them said, “Could not he who opened the eyes of the blind man have saved this man from dying?”

²²Jesus, still deeply moved came to the tomb. It was a cave with a stone sealing the entrance. He said, “Remove the stone.”

²³Martha said, “But Lord, by this time there will be a stench. He has been there four days.”

²⁴Jesus said, “Did I not tell you that if you believed you would see the glory of God?”

Jesus raises Lazarus from the dead

²⁵So they took away the stone. Then Jesus looked upward and said, “Father, I thank you that you have heard me. I know that you always hear me but I say this for the benefit of the people standing here, that they may believe that you sent me.”

²⁶Then he cried out in a loud voice, “Lazarus, come forth!”

²⁷The man who was dead came out. His hands and feet were bound with strips of linen

*8 This scripture is found in Psalms 77:4.

and his face was wrapped with cloth.

²⁸Jesus said to them, “**Unbind him.**”

Many of the Jews believe in Jesus

²⁹Seeing this, many of the Jews who had come to visit Mary believed in Jesus. Some of them went to the Pharisees and told them what Jesus had done.

The Jewish leaders call a meeting

³⁰The chief priests and Pharisees immediately called a meeting of the Sanhedrin^{F*} and said, “What are we to do? This man performs many miracles. ³¹If we let him go on like this soon all will believe in him and the Romans will come and destroy our Temple and our nation.”

The high priest decides that Jesus must die

³²Caiaphas the high priest said, “Do you not understand? It is better that one man die for the people than the whole nation perish?”

³³He did not say this of his own accord, but as high priest he was prophesying that Jesus would die for the Jewish nation and also for the scattered children of God, to bring them together and make them one.

³⁴So from that day on they plotted to take his life.

for Jesus and as they stood in the Temple courts they said to one another, “What do you think? Surely he will not come to the Feast will he?”



Towns mentioned in the gospel of John

12

Jesus arrives at Bethany

¹Six days before the Passover, Jesus arrived at Bethany where Lazarus lived, whom he had raised from the dead.

²A dinner was given in his honour and Martha served, while Lazarus was among those reclining with Jesus at the table.

Mary anoints Jesus with expensive perfumed oil

³Then Mary the sister of Lazarus took a jar of pure nard, an expensive perfumed oil and poured it on the feet of Jesus and wiped his feet with her hair.

⁴The house was filled with the fragrance of the perfume.

Judas Iscariot objects to waste of money

⁵But Judas Iscariot one of the Twelve who was to betray Jesus objected and said, “Why was this perfume not sold and the money given to the poor? It is worth about 300 denarii.”^{F*}

⁶Judas did not say this because he cared for the poor but because he was a thief. As keeper of the money bag he would help himself from what was put into it.

Judas is rebuked by Jesus

⁷But Jesus said, “**Do not bother this woman. She has kept it until now to anoint me in preparation for my burial.** ⁸You will always have the poor with you but you will not always have me.”

The chief priests plan to kill Lazarus also

⁹Meanwhile a large crowd heard that Jesus was at Bethany and came out to him and also



The tomb of Lazarus at Bethany.

Jesus and his disciples withdraw to a remote desert town

³⁵Jesus therefore no longer moved about publicly among the Jews, instead he withdrew to a town near the desert called Ephraim^{F*} where he stayed with his disciples.

³⁶The chief priests and Pharisees issued an announcement that if anyone knew where Jesus was they were to report it so they could arrest him.

The Passover draws near

³⁷When it was almost time for the Passover, many Jews went up to Jerusalem for their cleansing before the Feast. ³⁸They kept looking

*30 The Sanhedrin was a Jewish governing body of seventy elders, presided over by the high priest.

*35 The town of Ephraim was about 25 km north of Jerusalem.

*5 About a year's wages.

JOHN 12

to see Lazarus whom he had raised from the dead.

¹⁰Therefore the chief priests made plans to kill Lazarus also, for on account of him many of the people were believing in Jesus.

Jesus' triumphal entry into Jerusalem

¹¹The next day, the great crowd that had come for the Passover heard that Jesus was about to enter Jerusalem. ¹²So many took palm branches and went out to meet him shouting, **"Hosanna! Blessed is he who comes in the name of Jehovah! Blessed is the King of Israel!"**

¹³Jesus had found a young donkey and was riding upon it. ¹⁴Then still more people, having heard of the great miracle of raising Lazarus went out to meet him.



Crowd in Jerusalem waving palm branches re-enacting the triumphant entry by Jesus.

The Pharisees become desperate

¹⁵The Pharisees said to one another, "See, we are getting nowhere. Look how the whole world is going after him."

Some Greeks want to meet with Jesus

¹⁶There were some Greeks among those who had come up to worship at the Feast. They spoke to Philip who was from Bethsaida and said, ^{F*} "We would like to meet with Jesus."

Jesus' hour has come to be glorified

¹⁷Philip and Andrew went and told Jesus, but he replied, **"The hour has now come for the Son of Man to be glorified."**

Parable of seed of wheat

¹⁸**"Not until a seed of wheat falls to the ground and dies does it produce more seed."**

He who loves his earth life shall lose Eternal Life

¹⁹**"He who loves his life shall lose it, but he who detests his life in this world shall save it and gain Eternal Life. ²⁰Whoever serves**

me must follow me, and where I am, there will my servant be also. The Father will honour all who serve me."

The Father speaks to Jesus and the crowd hear his voice

²¹**"Now my spirit is troubled and what shall I say? 'Father save me from this hour?' No, for it was for this very hour that I came."**

²²**"O Father, glorify your name."**

²³Then came a voice from heaven saying, **"I have glorified it and will glorify it again."**

²⁴The crowd heard the voice and said it was thunder. Others said, "An angel has spoken to him."

²⁵Jesus said, **"The voice was for your sake, not mine."**

Jesus to draw all unto him

²⁶**"Now is the time for judgement on this world. Now the ruler of this world^{F*} shall be driven out. ²⁷And when I am lifted up from the earth I will draw all men unto me."** He said this to show by what manner of death he was to die.*

Is not the Christ to remain forever?

²⁸Someone in the crowd spoke up saying, "The scriptures say that the Christ is to remain forever, why then do you say 'The Son of Man must be lifted up?'"

²⁹Jesus answered, **"You will have the light with you only a little while longer. Walk while you have the light before darkness overtakes you. ³⁰Put your trust in the light while you have it so that you may become children of light."**

Many who believe in Jesus afraid to confess it

³¹When he had finished speaking Jesus hid himself from the crowd, for even though he had done many miracles in their presence, still they would not believe in him.

³²Yet many did believe in him, even among the leaders, but because of the Pharisees they would not confess their faith for fear they would be expelled from the synagogue. ³³For they loved the praise of men more than the praise of God.

The words of Jesus will condemn unbelievers on the day of judgement

³⁴Therefore Jesus had cried out to them saying, **"If anyone hears my words and does not obey them he will be condemned. I will not condemn him, for I came to save the world not to condemn it. The words I speak will condemn him at the last day."**

Whoever sees Jesus sees the Father who sent him

³⁵**"Anyone who believes in me does not believe in me only, but in the one who sent me. When he sees me he sees the one who sent me."**

*¹⁶ Bethsaida had a sizable Greek community and Philip, though a Jew, had a Greek name.

*²⁶ Satan, see also John 14:11 and 14:40.

*²⁷ ie To be lifted up on a cross in crucifixion.

The Father commanded Jesus what to say and how to say it

³⁶“The Father who sent me commanded me what to say and how to say it. His commandments lead to Eternal Life.”

13

Jesus washes the feet of his apostles at the Last Supper

¹It was now the night before the Passover and Jesus knew that the time had come for him to leave this world and return to the Father. ²Having loved his own who were in the world he now showed them the full extent of his love.

³As the Passover supper was being eaten Jesus arose from the meal and laid aside his outer clothing and wrapped a towel around his waist. ⁴He then poured water into a basin and began to wash the feet of his twelve disciples, drying them with the towel that was wrapped around him.

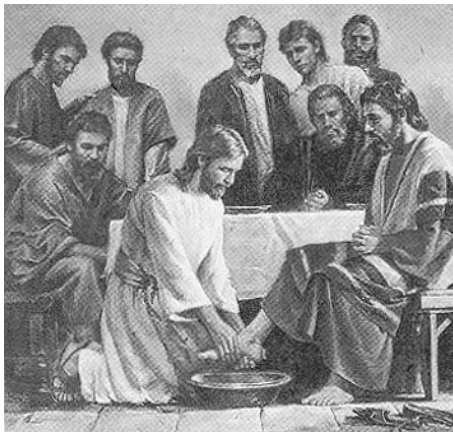
Peter resists at first

⁵He came to Peter who said to him, “No Lord, you shall never wash my feet.”

⁶Jesus answered, “**Unless I do, you have no part with me.**”

⁷Peter replied, “Then Lord, not just my feet but my hands and my head as well.”

⁸Jesus answered, “**He who has bathed needs only to wash his feet. And you are clean, though not all of you.**” For he knew who was going to betray him.



“He poured water into a basin and began to wash the feet of his twelve disciples” (John 13:4)

The apostles also to wash one another’s feet

⁹When Jesus had finished washing their feet, he again put on his outer clothing and returned to his place.

¹⁰He said to them, “Do you understand what I have done for you? You call me Teacher and Lord, and rightly so for that is what I am. Now if your Lord and Teacher

has washed your feet, you should also wash one another’s feet. ¹¹I have set you an example. You should do as I have done for you.”

¹²“No servant is greater than his master. Now that you know these things you will be blessed if you do them.”

Jesus reveals who will betray him

¹³After Jesus had said this he was troubled in spirit and declared, “**One of you will betray me.**”

¹⁴His disciples looked at one another. One of them, the disciple whom Jesus loved was reclining next to him. ^F* Peter motioned to this disciple and said, “Ask him which one of us he means.”

¹⁵So leaning back against Jesus he said to him, “Lord, who is it?”

¹⁶Jesus answered, “**It is he to whom I give this piece of bread.**” Then dipping the piece of bread in the dish he gave it to Judas Iscariot.

¹⁷As soon as Judas took the bread Satan entered into him. Jesus said to him, “**What you are about to do, do quickly.**”

Judas had charge of the money bag

¹⁸No one at the meal understood why Jesus said this to Judas. Since Judas had charge of the money bag some thought that Jesus was instructing him to go and buy what was needed for the coming Passover, or to give something to the poor.

Judas departs into the night

¹⁹As soon as Judas had eaten the bread he went out, and it was night.

²⁰When he was gone Jesus said, “**Now will the Son of Man be glorified, and in him is God glorified.**”

Apostles to love one another

²¹“My children I will be with you only a little longer. You will look for me but where I am going you cannot come.”

²²“This new commandment I give you, ‘Love one another.’ As I have loved you love one another. ²³By this shall men know that you are my disciples, if you have love one for another.”

Apostles to follow Jesus later

²⁴Peter said to him, “Lord, where are you going?” Jesus replied, “**Where I am going you cannot follow now, but you will follow later.**”

Jesus tells Peter ‘You will deny you know me three times’

²⁵Peter said, “Lord, why can I not follow you now? I will lay down my life for you.”

²⁶Jesus answered, “**Will you lay down your life for me? Truly I say, before the cock crows in the morning you will deny you know me, three times.**”

Many mansions where my Father dwells

²⁷“**But let not your hearts be troubled.**

*14 John himself, the author of this gospel. The Jews in his day reclined on cushions at a low table when eating.

Trust in God and trust in me also. For where my Father dwells there are many mansions. ²⁸I go to prepare a place for you. Then I will return and take you to be with me. ²⁹You know the way to the place where I am going.”

No one comes unto the Father but by me

³⁰Thomas said, “Lord we do not know where you are going. How can we know the way?”

³¹Jesus replied, “I am the way, the truth, and the Life. No one comes unto the Father but by me. If you really knew me you would know my Father also.”

Anyone who has seen me has seen the Father

³²Philip said, “Lord, show us the Father and we will be content.”

³³Jesus answered, “Do you not know me Philip, even after I have been among you all this time? ³⁴Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.”

The Father does his work through me

³⁵“Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father in me? The words I say to you are not my own, rather it is the Father living in me* who is doing his work.”

³⁶“Believe me when I say that I am in the Father and the Father in me, or at least believe in the evidence of the miracles.”

Anyone who has faith shall do even greater miracles than Jesus

³⁷“Truly anyone who has faith in me shall do what I have been doing, and will do even greater miracles than these.”

³⁸“Because I am going to the Father I will do whatever you ask in my name, so that the Son may bring glory to the Father. ³⁹You may ask anything in my name and I will do it.”

The Father will give you the Comforter who is the Holy Spirit

⁴⁰“If you love me you will keep my commandments, and I will ask the Father and he shall give you another Comforter to be with you forever, even the Spirit of truth.”

⁴¹The world cannot receive him for it neither sees him or knows him, but you will know him, for he shall abide with you and be in you.”

The oneness of the Father, Son and believers to be understood in a day to come

¹“I will not leave you as orphans, I will return to you. The world will not see me any more but you will see me. ²And because I Live you also will Live.”

³“In that day you will understand how I am in my Father and you are in me and I am in you.”

Whoever obeys the commandments will be loved by the Father and Son and see Jesus

⁴“Whoever obeys my commandments loves me, and he who loves me will be loved by my Father, and I too will love him and show myself to him.”

⁵Thaddeus said, “Lord why will you only show yourself to us and not to the world?”

⁶Jesus replied, “He who loves me will obey my words. My Father will love him and we shall both come to him and dwell* with him. ⁷But he who does not love me will not obey my words.”

The Comforter who is the Holy Spirit to teach all things

⁸“I say these things to you while I am still with you, but the Comforter, the Holy Spirit whom the Father will send in my name will teach you all things and will remind you of everything I have said to you.”

The Father is greater than Jesus

⁹“My peace I leave with you. Let not your hearts be troubled and do not fear. ¹⁰If you loved me you would be glad that I am going to the Father, for the Father is greater than I am.”

Satan the ruler of this world is coming

¹¹“I shall not speak with you much longer for the ruler of this world is coming. ¹²He has no power over me, but I do as my Father commands me so that the world may know that I love the Father.”

Jesus the vine and the Father the gardener

¹³“I am the vine, you are the branches, and my Father is the gardener. He who abides in me and I in him will bear much fruit, for apart from me you can do nothing.”

¹⁴“No branch can bear fruit of itself, it must remain on the vine, therefore you cannot bear fruit unless you abide in me. ¹⁵Abide in me and I will abide in you.”

Unfruitful branches cut off and fruitful branches pruned to bear more fruit

¹⁶“Every branch that fails to bear fruit, the Father cuts off and it withers. Such branches are cast into the fire and burned.”

¹⁷“But every branch that bears fruit the Father prunes, that it may become more fruitful.”

*³⁵ is Through the Holy Spirit which ‘proceeds from the Father’ (John 14:32). Jesus and the Father are not one and the same person (see note on John 10:5) for Jesus often prayed to his Father which he would hardly do if he were the same person. He also said, ‘The Son does nothing of himself, only what he has seen his Father doing’ (John 5:14), and ‘the Father is greater than I am,’ (John 14:10). The Father also came in a cloud (probably to shield his glory) on the mountain when Jesus was transfigured (Matt-Mark-Luke 17:23-30) and the three apostles present heard the Father speak. In addition Stephen in a vision for which he was shortly afterward stoned to death saw Jesus in heaven, standing at the right hand of the Father (Acts 6:48).

*⁶ Initially by means of the Holy Spirit, but eventually literally, in the future city of New Jerusalem which is to descend from heaven (Revelation chapter 17).



Jesus likened himself to a vine and those who follow his teachings to fruitful branches of the vine.

The Father glorified when you bear much fruit

¹⁸“If you abide in me and my words in you, you may ask whatever you will and it shall be given you.”

¹⁹“My Father is glorified when you bear much fruit, for you prove yourselves to be my disciples.”

Keep the commandments that your joy be complete

²⁰“As the Father has loved me, so have I loved you. Now abide in my love. If you keep my commandments you will abide in my love, just as I have kept my Father’s commandments and abide in his love.”

²¹“I have told you this that my joy may be in you, and that your joy may be complete.”

Greater love has no man than to lay down his life for his friends

²²“This is my commandment, that you love one another as I have loved you. ²³Greater love has no man than to lay down his life for his friends.”

Jesus calls the apostles his friends

²⁴“You are my friends if you do what I say. I no longer call you my servants for a servant knows not his master’s business.”

Jesus has made known to his apostles what he heard from his Father

²⁵“Instead I call you my friends, for all that I heard from my Father I have made known to you.”

The Father will give whatever they ask in Jesus’ name if they bear fruit

²⁶“You did not choose me but I chose you. I have appointed you to go and bear fruit that will endure. Then the Father will give you whatever you ask in my name.”

²⁷“Therefore this is my commandment: Love one another.”

The world will hate the apostles

²⁸“If the world hates you, know that it hated me first. If you belonged to the world it would love you as its own. But you do not belong to the world for I have chosen you out of the world and that is why the world hates you.”

²⁹“No servant is greater than his master. They have persecuted me so they will persecute you for they know not the One who sent me.”

³⁰“If I had not come and spoken to them and done among them what no one else has ever done, they would not be guilty of sin. ³¹But because they have seen the miracles they have no excuse for their sin. He who hates me hates my Father also.”

The apostles to testify of the truth by the power of the Holy Spirit

³²“When the Comforter comes whom I will send to you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth who proceeds from the Father, he will testify of me.”

³³“And you must also testify, for you have been with me from the beginning. ³⁴I tell you all these things that you will not go astray.”

Apostles will be killed as a `service to God’

³⁵“They will cast you out of the synagogues. Indeed the time is coming when whoever kills you will think he is offering a service to God.”

³⁶“They will do such things because they have not known the Father or me.”

Comforter will not come unless Jesus goes away

³⁷“I did not tell you these things at first, and now you are sorrowful in your hearts. ³⁸But truly it is for your good that I am going away. For unless I depart the Comforter will not come to you, but if I go I will send him to you.”

The Comforter will convict world of sin

³⁹“When the Comforter comes he will convict the world of sin, of righteousness and of judgement.”

⁴⁰“Of sin because men do not believe in me, of righteousness because I am going to the Father, and of judgement because the ruler of this world now stands condemned.”

The Holy Spirit will teach you all truth

⁴¹“I have much more to say to you, more than you can now bear, but when the Spirit of truth comes he will teach you all truth.”

⁴²“He will not speak of himself, but will speak what he hears from me and will tell you what is yet to come.”

All that belongs to the Father is mine

⁴³“He will bring glory to me by making known to you what is mine. All that belongs to the Father is mine.”

15

Jesus speaks of the joy his disciples will experience after his resurrection

¹Then Jesus said, “In a little while you will see me no more, and then after a little while you shall see me again.”

JOHN 15

²Some of the disciples said to one another, "What does he mean?"

³Jesus said to them, "You will weep and mourn while the world rejoices. But your grief will quickly turn to joy."

⁴"A woman giving birth suffers pain, for her hour has come, but when her child is born she forgets the suffering in her joy at having brought a child into the world."

⁵"So shall it be with you. Now is the time of your grief, but you shall see me again and will rejoice and no one can take your joy from you."

Ask and you shall receive

⁶"Then truly my Father will give you whatever you ask in my name. Ask and you shall receive, so that your joy may be complete."

Time coming when Jesus will speak plainly not figuratively

⁷"I have been speaking to you figuratively, but the time is coming when I shall no longer use this kind of language but will tell you plainly of the Father."

The apostles to be scattered and Jesus left alone

⁸"I came from the Father and entered the world. Now I am leaving the world and returning to the Father."

⁹The disciples said, "Now you are speaking plainly and without figures of speech. ¹⁰We know that you understand all things and we believe that you came from God."

¹¹Jesus answered, "Do you now believe? However the time has come for you to be scattered. ¹²You shall leave me all alone, yet I am not alone for my Father is with me."

In this world you shall have trouble

¹³"I tell you these things that in me you may have peace. In this world you shall have trouble but be of good cheer, I have overcome the world."

Jesus prays for the Father to glorify him with the glory he had before the world began

¹⁴Then Jesus looked up to heaven and prayed saying, "Father, the time has come to glorify your Son that your Son may glorify you. ¹⁵I have brought you glory upon the earth by completing the work you gave me to do. ¹⁶Now Father, glorify me in your presence with the glory I had with you before the world began."

Eternal Life is to know the Father and Jesus Christ

¹⁷"For you have allowed me to give Eternal Life to all those you have given me. ¹⁸This is Eternal Life, that they may know you the only true God and Jesus Christ whom you have sent."

Jesus prays for all those whom the Father has given him

¹⁹"I have revealed you to those whom you have given me, for I gave them the words

you gave me and they have obeyed your words."

²⁰"I pray for them for they are yours. All I have is yours and all you have is mine, and glory has come to me through them."

Jesus prays for a perfect oneness among his disciples just as he and the Father are one

²¹"I will not remain in the world for I am coming to you, but they will remain in the world. ²²O Holy Father protect them by the power of your name, the name you gave me, that they may be perfectly one as we are one."

Only the Son of Perdition has been lost

²³"While I was with them I protected them and kept them safe by the name you gave me. ²⁴None have been lost except the Son of Perdition,^{F*} that the scripture might be fulfilled."

Jesus prays that his followers be protected from the evil one

²⁵"My prayer is not that you take them out of the world, but that you protect them from the evil one."

²⁶"They are not of the world, even as I am not of the world. Sanctify them by the truth, for your word is truth."

²⁷"As you sent me into the world I have sent them into the world."

Jesus prays that all who shall yet believe become one with the Father and Son

²⁸"My prayer is not for them alone. I pray also for all those who shall believe in me through their words, that all of them may be one, Father, just as you are in me and I am in you. May they also be one in us."

Believers to be given the same glory as Jesus

²⁹"The glory you have given me I give unto them, that they too may be one as we are one. I in them and you in me, that they may be completely united."

³⁰"Then the world will know that you sent me, and that you also love them as you love me."

³¹"Father I desire that those you have given me be with me where I am, to behold my glory which you gave me because you loved me, before the world began."

Love of Father and spirit of Jesus to be in believers

³²"Righteous Father, the world does not know you, but I know you and have made you known to these whom you have given me. ³³And I will continue to make you known in order that the love you have for me may be in them, and that I myself may be in them."

Jesus and his disciples go out to an olive grove

³⁴When Jesus had finished praying he said to his disciples, "Come now, let us depart."

^{*}24 Perdition means 'spiritual damnation.' Jesus is speaking of Judas Iscariot.

³⁵Then they left the upper room and crossed the Kidron Valley to an olive grove.

16

Judas leads a band of guards to Jesus

¹Now Judas knew the place, for Jesus often went there with his disciples. ²So Judas came to the grove, leading a band of guards and officers from the chief priests and Pharisees. They were carrying burning torches, lanterns and weapons.

They fall backwards at the words of Jesus

³Although Jesus knew all that was about to happen he said to them, **“Who is it you want?”** Judas the traitor was standing there with them.

⁴They answered, “Jesus of Nazareth.”

⁵Jesus said, **“I am he,”** and immediately they fell backward to the ground.

Peter attacks with a sword

⁶Again Jesus said to them **“Who is it you want?”** and again they replied, “Jesus of Nazareth.”

⁷Jesus said, **“I told you that I am he. If you are looking for me, let these men go.”**

⁸But Peter who had a sword, drew it and struck a servant of the high priest whose name was Malchus, cutting off his right ear.

⁹But Jesus commanded Peter saying, **“Put away your sword. Must I not drink the cup that the Father has given me?”**

Jesus arrested and taken to the house of the high priest

¹⁰Then they arrested Jesus and bound him and took him to the house of the high priest.

Peter and John follow Jesus into the courtyard

¹¹Peter and one other disciple^{F*} followed Jesus. Because this other disciple was known to the high priest, he was able to go with Jesus into the courtyard of the high priest.

¹²Peter had to remain outside the gate, but the other disciple went out and spoke to the servant girl who kept the gate and brought Peter inside.

Peter denies Jesus the first time

¹³The servant girl who kept the gate said to Peter, “You are not one of his disciples are you?”

Peter replied, “I am not.”

¹⁴Now the night was cold and the servants and guards stood around a charcoal fire they had made to keep warm. Peter also stood with them warming himself.

The high priest questions Jesus

¹⁵Meanwhile inside the house the high priest questioned Jesus about his disciples and his teaching.

¹⁶Jesus answered, **“I have spoken openly to the world. I always taught in synagogues or at the Temple where all the people come**

together. I said nothing in secret. Why question me? Ask those who heard me. They know what I said.”

Jesus is struck on the face by an official

¹⁷When Jesus said these words one of the officials nearby struck him on the face saying, **“Is that how you answer the high priest?”**

¹⁸Jesus replied, **“If I have spoken wrongly testify of the wrong. If I have spoken truthfully why do you strike me?”**



The courtyard of the high priest's palace in Jerusalem.

Peter denies Jesus two more times

¹⁹Now while Peter stood outside warming himself, those who were there with him said to him, **“Are you not also one of his disciples?”**

²⁰He denied it again saying, **“I am not!”**

²¹Then a servant of the high priest, a relative of the man whose ear Peter had cut off challenged him saying, **“Did I not see you with him in the olive grove?”** and again Peter denied it.

The cock crows

²²At that moment a cock began to crow.

17

Very early in the morning Jesus is taken before Pilate

¹Very early in the morning,^{F*} the chief priests and Pharisees led Jesus from Caiaphas the high priest to the palace of the Roman governor Pilate.

²To avoid uncleanness the Jews did not enter, for they wanted to be able to eat the Passover.^{F*}

*1 Before 6am (see verse 29 of this chapter), no doubt to avoid the crowds and opposition from those who believed Jesus to be a prophet. Pilate was probably roused from his bed, explaining the account of his wife's later dream that morning (Matt-Mark-Luke 33:20). Jesus was on the cross less than four hours later, before 10am (Matt-Mark-Luke 34:4).

*2 Entering the house of a Gentile defiled a Jew. The first Passover meal (the Seder) had already been eaten the previous evening, however a second Passover meal, also called the Seder and requiring purification was eaten the following evening. See *'The Jewish Faith'* p210, D. Cohn-Sherbok, SPCK, UK 1993. The feast of the Passover lasted eight days.

*11 John himself.

JOHN 18

³So Pilate came out to them and said, "What charge do you bring against this man?"

⁴They replied, "If he were not a wrongdoer we would not bring him to you."

⁵Pilate said, "Take him yourselves and judge him by your own Law."

⁶But they objected saying, "We have no legal right to execute a man. This man opposes payment of taxes to Caesar and claims to be the Christ, a king."

Pilate questions Jesus privately

⁷Pilate then went back inside the palace and summoned Jesus and said to him, "Are you the king of the Jews?"

⁸Jesus answered, "**Do you ask this of yourself or because others say it to you of me?**"

⁹Pilate replied, "Am I a Jew? It was your own people who handed you over to me. What have you done?"

¹⁰Jesus said, "**My kingdom is not of this world. If it were, my followers would fight to prevent my arrest.**"

¹¹Pilate said, "You are a king then?"

¹²Jesus answered, "**You say that I am a king, and for this I was born. I came into the world to testify of truth. Everyone who is on the side of truth believes in me.**"

Pilate finds Jesus innocent of the charge

¹³Pilate replied, "What is truth?" Then he went out again to the Jews and said, "I find no basis for the charge against this man."

Pilate threatens to release instead Barabbas the murderer

¹⁴"However it is customary for me to release to you one prisoner at the time of the Passover. Do you want me to release 'the King of the Jews' or Barabbas." Now Barabbas was a murderer.

The Jews choose Barabbas

¹⁵They shouted in reply, "Give us Barabbas!"

Pilate has Jesus flogged

¹⁶Then Pilate took Jesus and had him flogged.

The Roman soldiers mock and strike Jesus

¹⁷After the Roman soldiers had flogged Jesus they twisted together a crown of thorns and placed it on his head, and clothing him in a royal purple robe they mocked him again and again saying, "Hail king of the Jews!" and slapped him on the face.

¹⁸Then they returned him to Pilate.

Pilate tries to release Jesus

¹⁹Once more Pilate went out to the Jews and said, "I am bringing him out to you again. I find no basis for the charge against him."

²⁰Jesus was brought out wearing the crown of thorns and the purple robe. Pilate said to them, "Here is the man."

Priests and Pharisees cry out, 'Crucify him!'

²¹But as soon as the chief priests and the

Pharisees saw him they shouted, "Crucify him! Crucify him!"

²²Pilate answered, "You take him and crucify him. As for me I find no basis for the charge against him."

²³The Jews replied, "According to our Law he must die for he claims to be the Son of God."F*

Pilate again questions Jesus privately

²⁴When Pilate heard this his fear increased. He took Jesus back inside the palace and said to him, "Where do you come from?" But Jesus gave him no answer.

²⁵Pilate said, "You refuse to speak to me? Do you not realise that I have power to free you or crucify you?"

²⁶Jesus answered, "**You would have no power over me were it not given you from above. Therefore he who handed me over to you is guilty of a greater sin.**"

Pilate again tries to set Jesus free

²⁷Hearing this Pilate sought to release Jesus, but the Jews kept shouting, "If you free this man you are no friend of Caesar. Anyone who claims to be a king opposes Caesar."

²⁸When Pilate heard this he brought Jesus out and sat down on the judgement seat. ²⁹It was the day of PreparationF* during Passover Week, about the sixth hour.F*

³⁰Pilate said to the Jews, "Here is your king."

³¹They shouted, "Take him away! Crucify him!"

³²Pilate replied, "Shall I crucify your king?"

³³The chief priests answered, "We have no king but Caesar."

Pilate finally hands Jesus over to his soldiers to be crucified

³⁴Finally Pilate gave in to their demands and handed Jesus over to his soldiers to be crucified.

18

Jesus is crucified between two other men

¹The soldiers took Jesus and led him out carrying his own cross to the place of the Skull, which is also called Golgotha.

²There they crucified him along with two other men, one on either side.

Pilate orders a notice for the cross

³Pilate ordered that a notice be written in Aramaic, LatinF* and Greek and be fastened to the cross. It read: '*Jesus of Nazareth, the King of the Jews.*'

⁴Many read the sign, for the place where Jesus was crucified was near to the city.

*23 The Jews would have been correct according to the Law of Moses if Jesus had not been telling the truth (Leviticus 7:12-13).

*29 The Day of Preparation was the Friday before a Sabbath.

*29 About 6am Friday morning Roman time which is measured from midnight. (Jewish time is measured from 6am). John who was writing mainly for Greek Christians under Roman rule used Roman time in his gospel.

*3 Latin was the language of the Romans.

The chief priests protest about the wording of the notice

⁵The chief priests protested to Pilate saying, "Do not write he is 'the King of the Jews' but that he claimed to be 'the King of the Jews.'"

⁶Pilate answered, "What I have written I have written."

The clothes of Jesus divided among the four soldiers

⁷When the soldiers had crucified Jesus they took his clothes and divided them into four shares, one for each of them, with the undergarment remaining. ⁸This garment was seamless, woven in one piece from top to bottom.

⁹They said, "Let us not tear it but decide by lot who will get it." This happened that the scripture might be fulfilled which said, "**They cast lots for my clothing.**"

Jesus requests John to care for his mother

¹⁰Near the cross of Jesus stood his mother and her sister,^{F*} also Mary the wife of Clopas and Mary Magdalene.

¹¹When Jesus saw his mother there and the disciple whom he loved standing nearby, he said to his mother, "**Mother, behold your son,**" and to the disciple, "**Behold your mother.**" ¹²From that time on this disciple took her into his care.

Jesus sips sour wine to fulfil scripture

¹³Later, knowing that all was now completed and in order that the scripture might be fulfilled, Jesus said, "**I thirst.**"

¹⁴A jar of sour wine was there, so they soaked a sponge in it and put it on a hyssop stalk and lifted it to his lips and Jesus received the drink.

Jesus dies

¹⁵Then Jesus cried out, "**It is finished!**" And he bowed his head and gave up his spirit.



Golgotha (the place of the Skull) also known as Calvary, where Jesus died on a cross.

The legs of the other two men are broken

¹⁶Now it was the day of Preparation and the

next day was a High Sabbath.^{F*} ¹⁷Because the Jews did not want bodies left on crosses during the Sabbath, they asked Pilate to have the legs of those who had been crucified broken^{F*} and the bodies taken down.

¹⁸The soldiers therefore broke the legs of the two men who had been crucified with Jesus.

Jesus' side pierced with a spear

¹⁹But when they came to Jesus and saw that he was already dead, they did not break his legs, instead one of the soldiers pierced his side with a spear bringing a sudden flow of blood and water.

²⁰This happened that the scripture, "**Not one of his bones will be broken**" would be fulfilled. ²¹Another scripture says, "**They will look on the one they have pierced.**"

Joseph and Nicodemus take down the body of Jesus and place it in a nearby tomb

²²Later that day Joseph of Arimathea asked Pilate for the body of Jesus. ²³Now Joseph was a disciple of Jesus, but secretly for he feared the Jews.

²⁴Pilate gave him permission and he came and took the body down. ²⁵With him was Nicodemus a ruler of the Jews who earlier had visited Jesus at night.

²⁶Nicodemus brought a mixture of myrrh and aloes and the two of them wrapped the body of Jesus in strips of linen along with the spices, in accordance with Jewish burial customs.

²⁷Near to the place where Jesus was crucified was a garden containing a new tomb in which no one had ever been laid. ²⁸Because it was the Jewish day of Preparation and since the tomb was close by, they laid Jesus there.

19

Early Sunday morning the tomb is found open and empty

¹Very early, on the first day of the week^{F*} while it was still dark, Mary Magdalene and some other women went out to the tomb, but they saw that the stone had been rolled back from the entrance.

Mary Magdalene runs to tell the disciples

²Mary Magdalene came running back and said to Peter and the disciple Jesus loved, "They have taken the Lord out of the tomb and we do not know where they have put him!"

Peter and John run out to the empty tomb, see the burial linen

³So Peter and the other disciple ran out to the tomb. ⁴The other disciple outran Peter and reached the tomb first. He bent over and looked in at the strips of linen lying there.

*16 A High Sabbath was a Sabbath that fell on the day or during the week of a Feast, in this case the Passover.

*17 The breaking of legs greatly hastened the death of crucifixion victims.

*1 Sunday, the day after the Jewish Sabbath.

*10 Salome, the mother of the apostles James and John (Matt-Mark-Luke 34:27).

JOHN 20

⁵Then Peter arrived and went into the tomb. He also saw the strips of linen lying there and the burial cloth that had been around the head of Jesus. The cloth was folded up by itself, separate from the linen.

⁶Then the other disciple who had reached the tomb first also went inside. He saw and he believed.

⁷Then the two disciples returned to where they were staying.

Mary Magdalene returns to the tomb and sees two angels inside

⁸But Mary Magdalene remained outside the tomb weeping. As she wept she bent over to look again into the tomb. She saw two angels in white seated where the body of Jesus had been, one at the head and the other at the foot.

⁹They said to her, **“Woman, why do you weep?”**

¹⁰Mary replied, “They have taken my Lord away and I do not know where they have put him.”

Mary Magdalene sees the resurrected Jesus

¹¹Then Mary became aware of a man standing behind her but did not realise that it was Jesus.

¹²He said to her, **“Woman, why are you weeping? Whom are you looking for?”**

¹³Thinking he was the gardener she said, “Sir if you have carried him away tell me where you have put him, that I may go to him.”

¹⁴Jesus said to her, **“Mary.”**

¹⁵Mary Magdalene turned around and then cried out **“Teacher!”**

Jesus sends Mary to his disciples with a message

¹⁶Jesus said, “Do not cling to me for I have not yet returned to the Father. Go instead to my brethren and say to them, **‘I am returning to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God.’**”

¹⁷So Mary ran back to the disciples with the news saying, “I have seen the Lord!” And she told them what Jesus had said to her.



The interior of the tomb in which Jesus was resurrected.

Jesus appears to his disciples inside a locked room that same evening

¹⁸That same evening of the first day of the week, when the disciples were together with the doors locked for fear of the Jews, Jesus

came and stood among them and said, **“Peace be with you.”** ^{F*}

The disciples are filled with joy

¹⁹After he said this Jesus showed them his hands and his side. They were filled with joy when they saw the Lord.

²⁰Again Jesus said, **“Peace be with you. As the Father has sent me, I am sending you.”**

Jesus prepares his disciples to receive the Holy Spirit

²¹Then he blew his breath upon them and said, **“Receive the Holy Spirit.”**

²²**“If you forgive the sins of any they are forgiven. If you do not forgive their sins they are not forgiven.”**

Thomas who was not with them doubts

²³Now Thomas one of the Twelve, was not with them at the time Jesus appeared. When the other disciples said to him, “We have seen the Lord!” he replied, “Unless I put my finger where the nails were and put my hand into his side, I will not believe.”

Thomas sees the risen Jesus a week later

²⁴A week later the disciples were in the house again and Thomas was with them.

²⁵Though the doors were locked Jesus appeared and stood among them and said, **“Peace be with you.”**

²⁶Then he said to Thomas, **“See my hands, put your finger here. Reach out your hand and put it into my side. Doubt not but believe.”**

²⁷Thomas said to him, “My Lord and my God.”

Blessed are those who have not seen yet believed

²⁸Then Jesus said to him, **“Because you have seen me you have believed. Blessed are those who have not seen and yet have believed.”**

Many miracles of Jesus not recorded in this book

²⁹Jesus did many other miracles which are not recorded in this book. But all that is recorded is written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God and that by believing you may have Eternal Life in his name.

20

Jesus appears on the shore of lake Galilee after seven apostles spend a fruitless night fishing

¹After these things Jesus showed himself again to his disciples by the Lake of Galilee.

²Peter, Thomas, Nathanael, the sons of Zebedee ^{F*}and two other disciples were together and Peter said to them, “I am going fishing.”

³They said, “We will go with you.” So they got into the boat and fished all night, but caught nothing.

*18 A standard greeting among the Jews.

*2 The apostles James and John.

⁴Early in the morning as they were returning, Jesus stood on the shore of the lake but the disciples did not realise that it was Jesus.

Miracle of large catch of fish

⁵He called out to them, “**Friends, have you any fish?**”

They called back, “No!”

⁶Jesus replied, “**Cast your net on the right side of the boat and you will find some.**”

⁷When they did so, they were unable to haul in the net because of the large number of fish.

Peter leaps into the water and wades ashore

⁸Then the disciple whom Jesus loved said to Peter, “It is the Lord.”

⁹Peter immediately put his outer garment back on, for he had stripped for work, and leapt into the water.

¹⁰The other disciples followed him in the boat, towing the net full of fish, for they were not far from shore.

Jesus prepares breakfast for his apostles

¹¹When they landed they saw a fire of burning coals with fish on it, and some bread.

¹²Jesus said to them, “**Bring some of the fish you have just caught.**”

¹³Peter dragged the net ashore. It was full of many large fish, 153 of them, but even with so many the net had not torn.

¹⁴Jesus said to them, “**Come and have breakfast.**”

¹⁵None dared ask, “Who are you?” for they knew it was the Lord.

¹⁶Jesus took the bread and gave it to them and he did the same with the fish.

¹⁷This was now the third time Jesus had appeared to his disciples after he was raised from the dead.

Peter confirms his love for Jesus three times

¹⁸When they had finished eating, Jesus said to Peter, “**Simon,^{F*} do you truly love me more than these?**”

¹⁹Peter said, “Yes Lord, you know I love you.”

²⁰Jesus said, “**Feed my lambs.**”

²¹Again Jesus said, “**Simon, do you truly love me?**”

²²Peter answered, “Yes Lord, you know that I love you.”

²³Jesus said, “**Take care of my sheep.**”

²⁴A third time Jesus said to him, “**Simon, do you love me?**”

²⁵Peter was hurt that Jesus asked him a third time.^{F*} He said, “Lord, you know all things. You know I love you.”

²⁶Jesus said, “**Feed my sheep.**”

Peter to die by crucifixion

²⁷“**Truly, when you were a young man you dressed yourself and went wherever you wanted. But when you grow old another shall dress you and lead you where you do not want to go, and you will stretch out your hands.**”

²⁸Jesus said this to indicate the kind of death by which Peter would glorify God.^{F*}

²⁹Then Jesus said to him, “**Follow me.**”

John to remain on earth until Jesus returns

³⁰Peter turned and saw the disciple whom Jesus loved, standing behind him. Peter said to Jesus, “Lord, what about him?”

³¹Jesus answered, “**If I want him to remain until I return, what is that to you? You must follow me.**”

John must still eventually die

³²Because of these words the rumour spread among the brethren that this disciple would not die. But Jesus did not say that he would not die, he only said, “**If I want him to remain until I return, what is that to you?**”^{F*}

³³This is the disciple who testifies to these things and who wrote them down.

A testimony to the truth of John's gospel

³⁴We know that his (John's) testimony is true. Jesus did many other things as well and if every one of them were written down we suppose that even the whole world would not have room for all the books that could be written.



Fish breakfast on the shore of Lake Galilee

*28 Peter was crucified by the Romans during the reign of the emperor Nero. He is said to have insisted on being crucified upside down, claiming he was unworthy to die as Jesus did.

*32 There is no record of the death or burial of John, and many believe he was translated as was Moses and Elijah, both of whom appeared to Jesus and his three apostles at the time of the transfiguration. To be translated is understood to be a temporary state in which the physical body has its life prolonged so that it is able to appear on earth at will, like an angel, in order to carry out a special mission on earth. However, a translated body must still eventually die in order to attain the higher state of full resurrection, hence John's statement that he must die. All of the other apostles were put to death.

*18 Simon was Peter's original name.

*25 Jesus was probably allowing Peter to atone for denying him three times.

ACTS

The book of Acts (full title 'The Acts of the Apostles') covers the first 30 years of the church of Jesus Christ. Its importance cannot be overstated, the New Testament would be extremely the poorer without it.

The first part of the book gives an account of the heady, early years in Jerusalem following the baptism of the Holy Spirit on the day of Pentecost and provides a fascinating insight into how the early church operated, ie, sharing of possessions, miraculous healings, apostles freed from prison by an angel, the shaking of buildings, etc.

Then comes the inevitable persecution. This commences in earnest with the stoning to death of Stephen. At his death scene we are introduced to Saul, later known as Paul. Saul, aged about 26, energetically steps up the persecution of the young church and imprisons many of the believers. However it is not long before Saul, in a dramatic vision on the road to Damascus is called by Jesus to become a powerful new apostle.

The second half of the book covers Paul's eventful life as a missionary as he takes the gospel to both Jews and Gentiles in other lands. Paul's indefatigable missions have inspired Christian missionaries for centuries.

Acts is an exciting, well written and fast moving book, full of variety and precise, clear detail, especially during the eyewitness accounts of the author Luke who at times was Paul's missionary companion. He was with Paul on the shipwreck which he graphically describes in chapter 24. Luke wrote this book in Rome about 62 AD.

AUTHOR

Luke, a Syrian of Antioch, a physician and missionary companion of Paul.

God did extraordinary miracles through Paul. Even handkerchiefs that had touched his skin were taken to the sick and their illnesses were cured and the unclean spirits left them. Acts 18:19.

CONTENTS

	Chapter		
Introduction by the author Luke	1	Peter and John released	4
Apostles to wait for baptism of the Holy Spirit	1	Believers pray and the building shakes	4
Holy Spirit to give the apostles power	1	All the believers filled with the Spirit	4
Jesus taken up from the Mount of Olives	1	Apostles continue to testify powerfully of Jesus	4
Jesus to one day return again the same way	1	All believers one in heart and mind	5
Apostles wait and pray in Jerusalem	1	Believers share everything they have	5
New apostle to be chosen to replace Judas	1	Ananias lies to the Holy Spirit	5
Matthias chosen by prayer and lot	1	Ananias and his wife die	5
Holy Spirit comes on the day of Pentecost	2	More believers than ever are added to the church	5
Foreign Jews hear apostles speak their languages	2	Peter healed all sick and those with demons	5
Some think the apostles drunk	2	Apostles imprisoned because of jealousy	5
Peter addresses the crowd	2	Apostles freed by an angel during the night	5
Peter testifies of Jesus	2	Sanhedrin assemble for the trial	5
The crowd ask apostles what they should do	2	Prison found empty	5
Peter replies 'Repent and be baptised'	2	Apostles brought before the Sanhedrin	5
3000 Jews baptised that day	2	Peter again testifies of Jesus	5
Many miracles done by apostles	2	Jewish leaders become enraged	5
Believers share everything in common	2	Decide to put the apostles to death	5
Peter heals a man crippled from birth	3	Gamaliel speaks up for the apostles	5
People come running to see the healed man	3	Apostles are flogged then released	5
Peter accuses the Jews of killing Jesus	3	Apostles rejoice at being worthy to suffer	5
The cripple healed by faith in Jesus	3	Care of the Greek Jewish widows neglected	6
Repent and turn to God	3	Seven spirit-filled men to be given the task	6
Jesus the prophet foretold by Moses	3	The Seven called and ordained	6
Peter and John arrested	4	Many Jewish priests join the Church	6
Peter and John brought before the Sanhedrin	4	Stephen one of the Seven does great miracles	6
Peter full of the Holy Spirit testifies of Jesus	4	Stephen arrested and put on trial	6
Sanhedrin astonished at apostles' boldness	4	Stephen's face glows like an angel	6
Apostles forbidden to speak in name of Jesus	4	Stephen relates the history of Israel	6

Abraham's descendants	6	Paul and Barnabas go on to Galatia	12
Israel in Egypt	6	Paul invited to speak in synagogue of Pisidian	12
Birth of Moses	6	Paul relates history of Israel	12
Idolatry in the desert	6	The Saviour Jesus a descendant of David	12
Building of the Temple	6	Paul tells of death and resurrection of Jesus	12
Stephen strongly rebukes Jewish leaders	6	Forgiveness of sins only possible through Jesus	12
Stephen sees Jesus in heaven	6	Paul and Barnabas invited back next week	12
Jesus standing at right hand of the Father	6	Jews jealous of Gentiles who listen to Paul	12
Stephen stoned to death for blasphemy	6	Paul and Barnabas turn to the Gentiles	12
Stephen prays for those who are stoning him	6	Many Gentiles believe	12
A young man Saul approves of Stephen's death	6	Jews stir up the people	12
Saul begins to destroy the church	7	The people drive out Paul and Barnabas	12
Believers scatter but preach wherever they go	7	Jews at Iconium also stir up the people	13
Philip does miracles in Samaria	7	Paul and Barnabas do miracles at Iconium	13
Simon the sorcerer	7	A plan devised to stone Paul and Barnabas	13
Simon astonished at miracles of Philip	7	Man crippled from birth healed in Lystra by Paul	13
Peter and John sent to Samaritans	7	Paul and Barnabas proclaimed gods	13
That Samaritans might receive the Holy Spirit	7	Paul stoned and dragged outside city as dead	13
Simon offers money for power to give Holy Spirit	7	Believers revive Paul	13
Peter rebukes Simon	7	Large number of believers won in Derbe	13
Philip sent to teach an Ethiopian eunuch	7	Former cities revisited and strengthened	13
Philip tells eunuch the good news about Jesus	7	Elders appointed in the churches	13
Philip baptises the eunuch	7	Paul and Barnabas complete their first mission	13
The Spirit carries Philip away	7	Some Jews teach Gentiles must be circumcised	14
Saul goes to Damascus to persecute believers	8	Paul and Barnabas sent to Jerusalem for a ruling	14
Jesus appears to Saul in a bright light on the way	8	Pharisees say Gentiles should obey Law of Moses	14
Saul stricken with blindness	8	Peter says it is by grace of Jesus we are saved	14
Lord appears to Ananias	8	Not by the Law of Moses	14
Ananias visits Saul and heals his blindness	8	James gives his decision	14
Saul begins to preach about Jesus	8	Gentiles to abstain from sexual immorality	14
Saul's life threatened	8	Also to abstain from defiled food and blood	14
Saul escapes and returns to Jerusalem	8	The written decision sent by Judas and Silas	14
Barnabas introduces Saul to the apostles	8	Judas and Silas prophets	14
Greek Jews in Jerusalem try to kill Saul	8	Paul and Barnabas decide on a second mission	14
Saul returns to his home city Tarsus	8	They plan to revisit first mission converts	14
Church in Israel enjoys peace and grows	8	Paul refuses to take Mark	14
Peter heals a paralysed man in Lydda	8	Barnabas takes Mark and Paul takes Silas	14
Peter raises a dead woman in Joppa	8	Paul meets Timothy at Lystra	15
Many people in Joppa believe in Lord	8	Timothy is circumcised and joins Paul	15
Cornelius a God-revering Roman centurion	9	The churches are strengthened and grow	15
Angel in shining clothes appears to Cornelius	9	Holy Spirit guides the missionaries	15
Cornelius told by the angel to send for Peter	9	Paul has a vision to go to Macedonia	15
Peter shown a vision of unclean animals	9	Lydia believes and all her household are baptised	15
God can make the unclean clean	9	Slave girl has spirit of fortune-telling	15
Peter goes to teach Cornelius in Caesarea	9	She follows Paul and Silas testifying about them	15
Cornelius gathers his Gentile relatives and friends	9	Paul casts out the spirit	15
God accepts people from all nations	9	Owners of the slave girl seize Paul and Silas	15
Holy Spirit falls on the Gentiles as Peter speaks	9	Paul and Silas flogged and imprisoned	15
The Gentiles are baptised	9	Prison doors open miraculously	15
Peter tells the Jerusalem brethren what happened	10	Paul stops jailer from taking his own life	15
The gospel spreads wider afield	10	Jailer and his family baptised that night	15
Barnabas sent to Antioch	10	Judges apologise to Paul and Silas	15
Barnabas brings Saul to Antioch to assist him	10	Paul and Silas leave for Thessalonica	15
Agabus prophesies a famine	10	Paul and Silas try to reason with the Jews	16
Believers at Antioch assist those in Judea	10	Jealous Jews form a mob and start a riot	16
King Herod kills the apostle James	11	Jason and other believers dragged before officials	16
Peter imprisoned by Herod	11	Paul and Silas escape	16
Peter freed from prison by an angel	11	Many Jews and Greeks at Berea believe	16
Peter goes to the house of the mother of Mark	11	Thessalonian Jews come and stir up the people	16
Believers astonished to see Peter	11	Paul taken to Athens for safety	16
Uproar among prison guards	11	Paul dismayed to see Athens full of idols	16
King Herod dies because of pride	11	Philosophers take Paul to speak to the Areopagus	16
Barnabas and Saul called on a mission	12	Paul speaks of the unknown God	16
Barnabas and Saul go to Cyprus	12	God does not live in man-made Temples	16
Opposition from Elymas the sorcerer	12	God hopes that men will seek him	16
Elymas struck blind	12	We are the offspring of God	16
Governor of Cyprus believes	12	Repent for God will judge the world by Jesus	16
Mark returns to Jerusalem	12	Some philosophers scoff at resurrection	16

ACTS

A few philosophers believe	16	Paul struck on the mouth by order of high priest	21
Paul leaves Athens and goes to Corinth	17	Paul divides the Sanhedrin	21
Paul works for a time at his trade of tent maker.....	17	Paul taken back into barracks	21
Silas and Timothy rejoin Paul	17	Lord appears to Paul	21
Jews again oppose Paul and he rejects them	17	Lord tells Paul he must testify in Rome	21
Lord appears to Paul and encourages him	17	Forty Jews take an oath to kill Paul	21
Jews charge Paul before the Roman governor.....	17	Paul's nephew informs him of plot	21
Governor rejects the charge	17	Commander decides to send Paul to Caesarea	21
Jews beat their own synagogue ruler	17	Commander's letter to Felix	21
Paul ends his second mission	17	Paul sent off to Caesarea that night	21
Paul shaves his head because of a vow	17	Jewish leaders travel down to Caesarea	22
Paul tells the Jews at Ephesus he hopes to return ..	17	Jewish leaders bring charges against Paul	22
Paul visits Jerusalem then returns to Antioch	17	Tertullus the lawyer praises Felix	22
Paul departs on his third mission	18	Paul accused of riots and desecrating the Temple ..	22
Apollos teaches at Ephesus	18	Paul denies charges	22
Way of God explained more fully to Apollos	18	Paul speaks of his beliefs	22
Apollos leaves Ephesus	18	Felix adjourns hearing without a decision	22
Apollos a powerful speaker	18	Paul kept under guard but given some freedom	22
Paul arrives in Ephesus	18	Felix and his Jewish wife hear Paul.....	22
Finds believers who have not heard of Holy Spirit ..	18	Paul speaks about his faith in Jesus Christ	22
Paul rebaptises the believers	18	Felix hopes Paul will bribe him for his release	22
The believers speak in tongues and prophesy	18	Felix succeeded as governor by Festus	22
Paul tries to persuade the Jews in Ephesus	18	Festus urged by Jews to return Paul to Jerusalem	23
Paul teaches daily for two years in a lecture hall	18	Jews plan to kill Paul	23
Great miracles done through Paul	18	Festus convenes a court in Caesarea	23
Jewish exorcists try to use name of Jesus	18	Jews unable to prove charges against Paul	23
Seven sons of Sceva violently attacked by demon ..	18	Paul appeals to Caesar	23
Valuable sorcery scrolls burned	18	King Agrippa and Bernice ask to hear Paul	23
Paul plans to return to Jerusalem then visit Rome ..	18	Hearing convened with great pomp	23
A maker of silver shrines creates a disturbance	18	Paul begins his defence	23
Whole city of Ephesus in an uproar	18	Paul speaks of his earlier persecution of church	23
The city scribe finally quietens crowd	18	Testifies of his vision on road to Damascus	23
Paul ends his third mission	18	Festus calls Paul mad	23
Paul sets out for Jerusalem	19	Agrippa surprised at Paul's haste to convert him	23
Stops at Macedonia on the way	19	Paul not deserving of imprisonment	23
Paul and his companions stay a week at Troas	19	Paul taken on ship for Rome	24
Boy falls from a third story window and dies	19	Difficult sailing conditions	24
Paul restores boy to life	19	Paul prophesies disaster if they continue sailing	24
Paul farewells Ephesian leaders at Miletus	19	Ship attempts to sail on to Phoenix	24
Ephesian leaders will not see Paul there again	19	Hurricane-force wind drives ship out to sea	24
Prophetic warning against false teachers	19	The storm continues for many days	24
More blessed to give than to receive	19	An angel visits Paul	24
All weep as they embrace and farewell Paul	19	Paul assured of safety of all on the ship	24
Paul stops a week at Tyre	20	The sailors sense land near by	24
Farewells on beach	20	The sailors plan to escape in the lifeboat	24
Paul stays with Philip at Caesarea	20	Soldiers cut the lifeboat free and let it go	24
Agabus prophesies Paul's imprisonment	20	Paul prophesies that no life will be lost	24
Paul prepared to die for Lord Jesus	20	276 people on board the ship	24
Paul and his companions arrive in Jerusalem	20	The sailors try to run ship aground on a beach	24
They report to James the presiding elder	20	Ship strikes a sandbar and begins to break up	24
Paul warned of ill feelings toward him	20	Prisoners lives spared	24
Paul advised to be seen obeying Law of Moses	20	All reach land safely	24
Paul seized by visiting Jews from Asia	20	Land is island of Malta	25
All Jerusalem aroused	20	Paul bitten by viper driven out of a fire on beach	25
Roman commander rescues Paul from death	20	Islanders awed when Paul unaffected by poison	25
Paul arrested and bound with chains	20	Publius the chief man of the island cares for Paul ..	25
Commander tries to obtain the truth	20	All sick on the island healed by Paul	25
Paul speaks to the crowd	20	Islanders honour Paul and his companions	25
Paul tells of his vision on the road to Damascus	20	Paul arrives in Rome	25
Lord appeared to him in Jerusalem	20	Paul allowed to live with one soldier to guard him ..	25
Jews angered when Paul mentions the Gentiles	20	Paul speaks with the Jewish leaders in Rome	25
Commander orders that Paul be flogged	20	Jewish leaders want to hear more	25
Paul informs commander he is a Roman citizen	20	Paul teaches large number of Jews about Jesus	25
Commander becomes alarmed, Paul not flogged	20	Some believe but most do not	25
Paul taken before the Sanhedrin	21	Paul stayed in Rome two years	25

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Introduction by the author Luke

¹In my first book Theophilus,^{F*} I wrote of all that Jesus did, until the day he was taken up into heaven after giving instructions to the apostles he had chosen.

Jesus tells his apostles to wait for the baptism of the Holy Spirit

²After his death he showed himself to these men over a period of forty days and gave many convincing proofs that he was alive. ³While eating with them in Jerusalem^{F*} he said, “**Do not leave Jerusalem but remain and await the gift my Father has promised. John baptised with water but in a few days you will be baptised with the Holy Spirit.**”

The Holy Spirit to give the apostles power

⁴They said to him, “Lord are you going to restore the kingdom to Israel at this time?”

⁵Jesus answered, “**It is not for you to know the times the Father has set. You will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes upon you and will be my witnesses in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.**”

Jesus taken up from the Mount of Olives

⁶After Jesus said this he was taken up from the Mount of Olives a short distance from Jerusalem before their very eyes, and a cloud hid him from sight.



The Mount of Olives from which Jesus was taken up into heaven and to where he will return at his second coming (Zechariah 5:18). Jerusalem is in the foreground.

Jesus to one day return again the same way he went

⁷The apostles were still gazing intently into the sky when two angels dressed in white suddenly stood beside them. ⁸They said, “**Men**

*1 Luke's gospel was also addressed to Theophilus.

*3 This appearance would have had to take place after the visit of Jesus to his apostles on the shore of Lake Galilee (Matt-Mark-Luke 35:18 and John chapter 20). The apostles must have returned again to Jerusalem from Galilee, probably to attend the Feast of Pentecost or Feast of Harvest as it is known in the Old Testament which all Jewish males were commanded to attend (Exodus 12:43-45 and Acts 19:11).

of Galilee why do you stand here looking up into the sky? This same Jesus who has been taken from you into heaven will return again in the same way in which you have seen him go.”^{F*}

The apostles and believers wait and pray in Jerusalem

⁹Then the apostles went back into Jerusalem, to the upper room where they were staying.

¹⁰They were Peter, James, John, Andrew, Philip, Thomas, Matthew, Nathanael, James (son of Alphaeus), Simon and Thaddeus.

¹¹They devoted themselves to prayer together with the women, including Mary the mother of Jesus and with his brothers. ^{F*}

A new apostle to be chosen to replace Judas

¹²In those days Peter stood up among the brethren (a group numbering about 120) and said, “Brethren, the scripture had to be fulfilled which the Holy Spirit spoke long ago through the mouth of David in the book of Psalms concerning Judas saying, ‘**May another take his place of leadership.**’ He was one of our number but he betrayed Jesus.”

¹³(Now the money Judas got for his wickedness was used to buy the field where he fell headlong and his body burst open and his intestines spilled out.^{F*} It is now called the Field of Blood.)

¹⁴“Therefore it is necessary to choose another, who has been with us the whole time the Lord Jesus was among us, to be a witness with us of his resurrection.”

Matthias chosen by prayer and lot

¹⁵So they put forward the names of two men, Joseph and Matthias then they prayed saying, “O Lord you who know the hearts of all men, show us which of these two you have chosen to take over the apostleship which Judas turned aside from to go where he belongs.”

¹⁶Then they cast lots and the lot fell to Matthias, so he was added to the eleven apostles.

2

The Holy Spirit comes on the day of Pentecost

¹When the day of Pentecost had come^{F*} they were all together in one place when suddenly there came a sound like the rush of a strong wind and it filled the whole house where they were sitting.

*8 Jesus is to return again to the Mount of Olives at his second coming (Zechariah 5:18).

*11 Although the four brothers of Jesus (Matt-Mark-Luke 14:49) did not believe in him while he was alive (John 7:4) at least two of them, James and Jude did after his resurrection. James (not the apostle James) became the presiding church leader or bishop in Jerusalem (Acts 14:11).

*13 Traditionally Judas hung himself on a tree, but the branch or rope broke and he fell heavily down into the valley of Hinnom causing his stomach to burst open.

*1 Pentecost (meaning fifty) was the Greek name for the Feast of the Harvest and came 50 days after Passover (Exodus 12:45) in this case on a Sunday.

ACTS 3

²And there appeared what looked to them like tongues of fire that separated to rest on each of them. And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other languages as the Spirit enabled them.

Jews from other nations hear the apostles speak their own languages

³Now staying in Jerusalem were devout Jews from every nation under heaven, and at the sound a large crowd gathered. But the Jews were bewildered for each one heard these men speaking in his own language.

⁴They said to one another in amazement, "Are not all these men who speak Galileans? How is it then that each one of us hears them in his own native language, Parthians, Medes, Mesopotamians, Asians, Egyptians, Libyans, Romans, Cretans and Arabians?" ⁵Both Jews and converts to Judaism, we hear them declaring the wonders of God in our own tongue. What does this mean?" ^{F*}

Some think the apostles are drunk

⁶However some mocked saying, "These men have had too much new wine."

Peter addresses the crowd

⁷Then Peter, standing with the other eleven apostles addressed the crowd saying, "Fellow Jews, hear what I have to say. These men are not drunk as it is only the third hour.^{F*} ⁸No, this is what was spoken of through the prophet Joel, 'And it shall come to pass in the last days that I will pour out my Spirit upon all mankind. Your sons and daughters will prophesy, your old men will dream dreams and your young men will see visions.'

Peter testifies of Jesus

⁹"Men of Israel, Jesus of Nazareth was a man sent from God to you, and proved himself by the miracles which God did through him as you yourselves know. Yet he was handed over to you and with God's foreknowledge and the help of lawless men, you put him to death by nailing him to a cross."

¹⁰"But God has raised him from the dead and we are his witnesses. He is exalted at the right hand of God and has received from the Father the promised Holy Spirit and has poured out upon us what you now see and hear."

The crowd ask the apostles what they should do

¹¹When the crowd heard this they were cut to the heart. Then they said to Peter and the other apostles, "Brethren what shall we do?"

Peter replies, 'Repent and be baptised'

¹²Peter replied, "Repent and be baptised in the name of Jesus Christ, every one of you for

the forgiveness of your sins and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit."

¹³"The promise is for you and your children and for all who are far off, all whom the Lord our God will call."

¹⁴And with many other words Peter warned them and pleaded with them saying, "Save yourselves from this corrupt generation."

3000 Jews baptised that day

¹⁵Those who accepted the message were baptised and about 3000 were added to the church that day.

¹⁶They devoted themselves to the teaching of the apostles and to fellowship and to the breaking of bread and prayer.

Many miracles done by the apostles

¹⁷Many miracles were done by the apostles and everyone was filled with awe.

All the believers are one and share everything in common

¹⁸All the believers were one, and shared everything in common, selling their possessions and giving to one another as each had need.

¹⁹Every day they continued to meet together in the Temple courtyards. And they broke bread together in their homes, eating with glad and sincere hearts, praising God and enjoying the favour of the people. ²⁰And the Lord added to their number daily.

3

Peter heals a man crippled from birth

¹Now when Peter and John were going up to the Temple at the ninth hour,^{F*} the time of prayer, a man crippled from birth was being carried to the Temple gate called Beautiful.

²He sat there every day to beg and seeing Peter and John he asked them for money. They looked intently at the man and then Peter said to him, "Look at us."

³The man did so, expecting to receive something but Peter said, "**Silver or gold I have not, but what I do have I give you. In the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, walk.**"

⁴And taking him by the right hand he helped him up. Immediately the man's feet and ankles became strong and he leapt to his feet and began to walk. Then he went with them into the Temple courtyard, walking and leaping and praising God.

The people come running to see the healed man

⁵All the people saw him and recognised him as the cripple who every day sat begging at the Temple gate. They were astonished at the miracle. ⁶As the beggar clung to Peter and John in Solomon's Porch all the people came running toward them.

Peter accuses the Jews of killing Jesus

⁷Peter said to the people, "Men of Israel, why

*5 Paul said with regard to this gift of the Holy Spirit of speaking in tongues in public that its main purpose was as a 'sign for unbelievers' (1 Corinthians 7:38). Its effectiveness is well demonstrated on this day of Pentecost when 3000 accepted Peter's message and were baptised.

*7 About 9 am. Jews normally fasted on festival days until after the morning synagogue service which usually began at 9 am.

*1 About 3 pm.

do you stare at us, as if by our own power or godliness we made this man walk?"

⁸"The God of our fathers glorified his son Jesus, yet you handed him over to be killed, and disowned him before Pilate, though he desired to free him."

⁹"You disowned the Holy One and preferred that a murderer be released to you. You killed the giver of Eternal Life. ¹⁰But God has raised him from the dead and we are witnesses of this."

The cripple healed by faith in Jesus

¹¹"And this man, whom you see and know has been completely healed by faith in the name of Jesus."

¹²"Now brethren I know that you acted in ignorance as did your leaders, for this was how God fulfilled what the prophets foretold, that his Christ would suffer."

Repent and turn to God

¹³"Repent then, and turn to God so that your sins may be wiped out, for a day of renewal is coming from God as promised long ago through his holy prophets."

¹⁴"He will again send the Christ, even Jesus who must remain in heaven until that day when God will restore all things."

Jesus is the prophet foretold by Moses

¹⁵"For Moses said to our fathers, *'Jehovah your God will raise up for you a prophet like me from among your own people. You must heed everything he tells you.* ¹⁶*Anyone who does not heed him, I myself will hold accountable.*"

¹⁷"Indeed all the prophets from Samuel onward have foretold these days."

4

Peter and John arrested

¹Then the priests and Sadducees^{F*} came with the captain of the Temple guard. They were greatly annoyed that Peter and John were proclaiming to the people that Jesus had been resurrected from the dead.

²They arrested Peter and John and imprisoned them. But many who had heard them believed and the number of men who were now believers grew to about 5000.

Peter and John brought before the Sanhedrin

³The next day the Sanhedrin^{F*} met and Peter and John were brought before them. They said to the apostles, "By what power or name was this man healed?"

Peter full of the Holy Spirit testifies of Jesus

⁴Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit said to them, "Rulers and elders of the people, it was by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth whom you crucified, but whom God raised from the dead,

that this cripple was healed."

⁵"This Jesus is *'The stone you builders rejected which has become the capstone.'*"^{F*}

⁶"Salvation is found in no one else for there is no other name given by which we can be saved."

The Sanhedrin are astonished at the boldness of Peter and John

⁷When the chief priests and elders heard the boldness of Peter and John, and knowing they were uneducated ordinary men, they were astonished. But since they could see the man who had been healed standing there, there was nothing they could say.

⁸They ordered Peter and John to withdraw from the room then they counselled together saying, "What are we to do with these men? All Jerusalem know they have done a great miracle. We cannot deny it. ⁹But to stop this thing from spreading further we must order these men to speak no longer in this name."

Apostles forbidden to speak any more in name of Jesus

¹⁰So they called Peter and John back in again and ordered them not to speak or teach any more in the name of Jesus.

¹¹But they replied, "Judge for yourselves whether it is right in God's eyes to obey you rather than God. We must speak of what we have seen and heard."

Peter and John released

¹²However after further threats they let them go for they could find no way to punish them. All the people were praising God because of what had happened. ¹³The man who had been healed was over forty years of age.

The believers pray and the building shakes and they are all filled with the Spirit

¹⁴After they were released, Peter and John returned to the believers and reported all that the chief priests and elders had said to them.

¹⁵When the believers heard, they raised their voices to God and prayed, "O Lord Almighty, hear their threats yet continue to allow your servants to speak your word with boldness. Stretch out your hand to perform miracles through the name of your holy son Jesus."

¹⁶After they had prayed, the building in which they were gathered was shaken and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and spoke the word of God boldly.

The apostles continue to testify powerfully of Jesus

¹⁷With great power and graciousness the apostles continued to testify of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus.

5

All the believers one in heart and mind and share everything they have

¹All the believers were one in heart and mind,

*1 The Sadducees were a priestly religious group, predominantly of the wealthy ruling class.

*3 The Sanhedrin was a Jewish governing body of seventy elders, presided over by the high priest.

*5 This prophecy Peter quoted is found in Psalms 95:1.

ACTS 5

and no one claimed his possessions as his own but all shared everything they had.

²There were no needy among them, for from time to time those who owned lands or houses sold them and brought the money from the sale and laid it at the apostles' feet and it was distributed to anyone who had need.

Ananias lies to the Holy Spirit

³Barnabas sold a field he owned and laid the money at the apostles' feet. ⁴And a man named Ananias together with his wife Sapphira also sold some land. But with his wife's knowledge Ananias secretly kept back part of the money for himself. He brought the rest and laid it at the apostles' feet.

⁵Peter said to him, "**Ananias, how is it that Satan has so filled your heart that you have lied to the Holy Spirit and have kept for yourself some of the money you received for the land?**"

⁶"**Did it not belong to you before it was sold? And after it was sold was not the money at your disposal? Why then did you lie? You have not lied to man but to God.**"

Ananias and his wife die

⁷When Ananias heard these words he fell down and died. And great fear came on all who heard what happened. ⁸Then the young men wrapped up his body and carried him out and buried him.

⁹About three hours later his wife came in not knowing what had happened. Peter said to her, "Is this the full price you and Ananias got for the land?"

She replied, "Yes that is the full price."

¹⁰Peter said to her, "**How could you have agreed together to put the Spirit of the Lord to the test? The feet of the young men who buried your husband are at the door. They will carry you out also.**"

¹¹At these words she also fell down at Peter's feet and died. Then the young men came in and carried her out and buried her beside her husband.

More believers than ever added to the church

¹²Many miracles were done among the people by the apostles, and all the believers would meet together in Solomon's Porch.^{F*}

¹³The rulers dared not join them but they were highly regarded by the people of Jerusalem. And more men and women than ever believed and great numbers were added to the Lord.

All the sick and those tormented by demons healed by Peter

¹⁴They would carry their sick into the streets on beds and mats so that at least Peter's shadow might fall on some of them as he passed by.

¹⁵A great many also came from towns around

Jerusalem bringing the sick and those tormented by demons, and all were healed.

The apostles are imprisoned by the Sadducees because of jealousy

¹⁶Soon the high priest and all those with him who were of the sect of the Sadducees were filled with jealousy. So they arrested the apostles and put them in prison.

The apostles freed by an angel during the night

¹⁷But during the night an angel opened the doors of the prison and brought the apostles out saying, "**Go into the Temple courtyards and teach the people the full message of Eternal Life.**"

¹⁸At daybreak the apostles entered the courtyards of the Temple as they had been told and began to teach the people.



Solomon's Porch is recreated in this model of Herod's Temple.

The Sanhedrin assemble for the trial but find the prison empty

¹⁹Meanwhile the Sanhedrin assembled and sent to the prison for the apostles. But the officers returned and reported, "We found the prison locked and the guards at the doors but when we opened them we found no one inside."

²⁰Then someone came in and announced, "The men you imprisoned are in the Temple courtyards teaching the people."

The apostles brought before the Sanhedrin

²¹The captain of the Temple guard immediately took his men and brought in the apostles, but not with force for they feared the people would stone them.

²²They had the apostles stand before the Sanhedrin to be questioned by the high priest. He said to them, "Did we not give you strict orders not to teach in this name? Yet you have filled Jerusalem with your teaching. ²³You are determined to make us guilty of this man's blood."

Peter again testifies of Jesus

²⁴But Peter and the apostles replied, "We must obey God rather than men. ²⁵The God of our forefathers raised Jesus from the dead whom you put to death on a tree. He has exalted him to his own right hand as Prince and Saviour that he might give repentance and

*12 Solomon's Porch was an impressive cedar-lined walkway along the eastern wall of the outer temple courtyard with the roof supported by rows of stone columns nine metres high.

forgiveness of sins to Israel.”

²⁶We are witnesses of these things and so is the Holy Spirit whom God has given to those who obey him.”

The Jewish leaders become enraged and want to put the apostles to death

²⁷When the Sanhedrin heard this they were enraged and decided to put the apostles to death.

Gamaliel speaks up for the apostles

²⁸But a Pharisee named Gamaliel, a teacher of the Law who was honoured by all the people stood up in the Sanhedrin and asked that the apostles be put outside for a while.

²⁹Then he said, “Men of Israel, consider carefully what you intend doing to these men. Some time ago Theudas appeared, claiming to be someone of importance and about 400 men gathered to him. ³⁰He was slain and his followers dispersed and it all came to nothing.”

³¹“After him, Judas of Galilee appeared and drew away some of the people after him. He too perished and his followers scattered.”

³²“Therefore in this present case I advise you to leave these men alone. If their purpose is of human origin it will fail. But if it is from God you will be unable to stop them. You may even find yourselves fighting against God.”

The apostles are flogged then released

³³His speech persuaded them against putting the apostles to death, however they called the apostles back in and had them flogged. Then they again ordered them not to speak in the name of Jesus and let them go.

The apostles rejoice at being worthy to suffer

³⁴The apostles left the Sanhedrin rejoicing that they had been counted worthy of suffering disgrace for the name of Jesus.

³⁵And day after day in the Temple courtyards, and from house to house they never stopped teaching and proclaiming the good news that Jesus is the Christ.

6

Widows of the Greek Jews neglected

¹In those days when the believers were increasing rapidly, the Greek Jews complained that their widows were being neglected in the daily distribution of food.

The task of looking after the widows to be given to seven Spirit-filled men

²So the Twelve gathered the church together and said to them, “It is not right for us to neglect the ministry of the word of God in order to wait on tables.”

³“Therefore brethren, choose seven men from among you who are known to be full of the Spirit and of wisdom and we will turn this task over to them. ⁴Then we will be able to give our full attention to prayer and the ministry of the word.”

The Seven called and ordained

⁵This proposal pleased the church, so they chose Stephen a man full of faith and of the Holy Spirit, and also Philip, Procorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas and Nicolas, a convert to Judaism. ⁶They presented these men to the apostles who prayed and laid their hands upon them.

Many Jewish priests join the Church

⁷So the word of God spread and the number of believers in Jerusalem increased rapidly. A great number of priests also became obedient to the faith.

Stephen one of the Seven does great miracles

⁸Now Stephen, one of the Seven was a man full of God’s grace and power and he did great miracles among the people.

Stephen arrested and put on trial

⁹However opposition arose from members of the synagogue of Freedmen (as it was called). These men, who were Jews from other nations began to dispute with Stephen, but they could not prevail against his wisdom or the Spirit by which he spoke.

¹⁰So they stirred up the elders and teachers of the Law who arrested Stephen and brought him before the Sanhedrin.

¹¹False witnesses there testified against him saying, “This man never ceases to blaspheme. He says that Jesus of Nazareth is to destroy Jerusalem and change the customs that Moses handed down to us.”

¹²The high priest said to Stephen, “Are these things so?”

Stephen’s face glows like an angel

¹³Then all who sat in the Sanhedrin saw the face of Stephen glowing, like the face of an angel.

Stephen relates the history of Israel

¹⁴Stephen replied, “Brethren and fathers, hear me. The God of glory appeared to our father Abraham and said, ‘**Leave your country and people and go to the land I will show you.**’ And God sent him to Canaan to this land where we are now living.”

¹⁵“He gave Abraham no inheritance at that time but promised him that he and his descendants would possess the land, even though at that time Abraham was childless.”

Abraham’s descendants

¹⁶“God said to him, ‘**Your descendants will be strangers in Egypt and shall be enslaved and mistreated 400 years. But I will punish Egypt and they shall come out of that land and worship me in this place.**’ ¹⁷Then he gave Abraham the covenant of circumcision.”

¹⁹“Abraham became the father of Isaac. Isaac became the father of Jacob* who became the father of the twelve patriarchs.”

Israel in Egypt

¹⁸“Because the patriarchs were jealous of

*17 Jacob was also later known as Israel.

ACTS 6

their brother Joseph they sold him as a slave into Egypt. But God was with him and gave him wisdom and made him vizier over all Egypt and Pharaoh's palace."

²⁰"Then a famine struck both Egypt and Canaan and our fathers could not find food. ²¹When Jacob heard there was grain in Egypt he sent our fathers on their first visit. ²²On their second visit Joseph told his brothers who he was and Pharaoh learned of Joseph's family."

²³"After this Joseph sent for his father Jacob, and his whole household seventy-five in all went down to live in Egypt where he and our fathers died."

²⁴"As the time drew near for God to fulfil his promise to Abraham the number of our people in Egypt greatly increased.

²⁵Then another king who knew not Joseph became ruler of Egypt. He dealt treacherously with our people and oppressed them by forcing them to abandon their new born infants to die."

Birth of Moses

²⁶"At that time Moses was born. When he was exposed to the elements Pharaoh's daughter took him and raised him as her own son."

²⁷"Moses was educated in all the wisdom of Egypt and was powerful in word and deed. ²⁸When he was forty years old he saw one of his fellow Israelites being mistreated by an Egyptian and he killed the Egyptian. ²⁹Then Moses fled to Midian where he settled as a foreigner and had two sons."

³⁰"Forty years passed by, then an angel of Jehovah appeared to Moses in a flame of fire in a bush in the desert near Mount Sinai."

³¹"When Moses went to look more closely he heard the voice of Jehovah say to him, **'I have heard the groaning of my people in Egypt and have come down to set them free. I shall send you back to Egypt.'**

³²"Moses was sent to be their deliverer by God himself, through the angel who appeared in the bush."^{F*}

³³"Moses led them out of Egypt, doing wonders and miracles in Egypt and at the sea and for forty years in the desert."

³⁴"This is the Moses who said to the Israelites, **'God will raise up for you a prophet like me from your own people.'**

³⁵"But our fathers refused to obey Moses. They rejected him and in their hearts turned back to Egypt. ³⁶They said to Aaron, 'Make us a god who will go before us. As for this Moses who led us out of Egypt, we know not what has happened to him.'

Idolatry in the desert

³⁷"They made an idol in the form of a calf and held a celebration in honour of what their hands had made."

³⁸"So God turned away from them, and as is written in the book of the Prophets he said, **'Did you bring me sacrifices and offerings when you wandered forty years in the desert O Israel? ³⁹Because you have lifted up idols you made to worship I will send you into exile beyond Damascus.'**

The building of the Temple

⁴⁰"Having received the Tabernacle, our forefathers under the leadership of Joshua brought it with them when they took this land from the nations God drove out before them."

⁴¹"It remained in the land until the time of David who enjoyed God's favour and asked that he might build a house for God. But it was Solomon who built the Temple."

⁴²"However the Most High does not live in Temples made by men. As the Lord through the prophet says, **'Heaven is my throne and the earth is my footstool. Did not my hand make all these things?'**

Stephen strongly rebukes the Jewish leaders

⁴³"You stiff-necked men, uncircumcised in heart and ears, you are just like your fathers! You always resist the Holy Spirit!"

⁴⁴"Was there ever a prophet your fathers did not persecute? ⁴⁵They even killed those who foretold the coming of the Righteous One, and now you have betrayed and murdered him."

⁴⁶"You have received the Law but have not kept it."

Stephen sees Jesus in heaven standing at the right hand of the Father

⁴⁷"When the Sanhedrin heard these words they were enraged and ground their teeth.

⁴⁸But Stephen, full of the Holy Spirit looked up to heaven and saw a vision of the glory of God and Jesus standing at his right hand.

⁴⁹He cried out, **"I see the heavens open and the Son of Man standing at the right hand of God."**

The Jewish leaders stone Stephen to death for blasphemy

⁵⁰At this they covered their ears^{F*} and shouting at the top of their voices rushed at Stephen and dragged him out of the city and began to stone him.

Stephen prays for those who are stoning him

⁵¹While they were stoning him Stephen prayed saying, "Lord Jesus receive my spirit."

⁵²Then he fell to his knees and cried out, "Lord do not hold this sin against them." When he had said this he died.

A young man Saul approves of Stephen's death

⁵³The witnesses laid their clothes at the feet of a young man named Saul who gave his approval to the death of Stephen.

*32 Other scriptures reveal that the angel who appeared in the burning bush and who afterward spoke face to face with Moses as Jehovah, was the pre-mortal Jesus Christ speaking in the name of God the Father (for further details see note on John 1:8).

*50 They covered their ears in order not to hear what they considered to be blasphemy, the most serious charge of all in the Jewish courts.



St Stephen Gate at Jerusalem, near the spot where Stephen was stoned.

7

Saul begins to destroy the church

¹Godly men buried Stephen and mourned deeply for him. And on that day great persecution broke out against the believers at Jerusalem. ²Saul began to destroy the church. Going from house to house he dragged off both men and women and cast them into prison.

The believers scattered but preach the word wherever they go

³All the believers except the apostles were scattered throughout Judea and Samaria. ⁴However, those who were scattered preached the word wherever they went.

Philip does miracles in Samaria

⁵Philip, one of the Seven went to a city in Samaria and proclaimed the Christ there.

⁶When the crowds heard the words of Philip and saw the miracles he did, they heeded his teaching.

⁷With shrieks, demons came out of many and others who were paralysed or crippled were healed, so there was great joy in that city.

Simon the sorcerer

⁸Now for some time a man named Simon had practiced sorcery in that city and had amazed all the people of Samaria. ⁹He boasted he was somebody great and the people believed he had power from God.

Simon is astonished at the miracles of Philip

¹⁰But when Philip preached the good news of the kingdom of God and the name of Jesus Christ, the people were baptised, both men and women and Simon himself also believed and was baptised.

¹¹Afterward Simon followed Philip everywhere, astonished at the miracles he saw.

Peter and John sent that the Samaritans might receive the Holy Spirit

¹²When the apostles in Jerusalem heard that Samaria had accepted the word of God, they sent Peter and John to them.

¹³When Peter and John arrived they prayed that the people might receive the Holy Spirit, for as yet the Holy Spirit had not come upon any of them. ¹⁴Then they laid their hands on those who had been baptised and they received the Holy Spirit.

Simon offers money to apostles for power to give the Holy Spirit

¹⁵When Simon saw that the Spirit was given by the laying on of the apostles' hands he offered them money saying, "Give me this power also, that all upon whom I lay my hands will receive the Holy Spirit."

Peter rebukes Simon

¹⁶But Peter said to him, "May your money perish with you for thinking you could buy the gift of God."

¹⁷You have no part in this ministry for your heart is not right before God. ¹⁸Therefore repent of this wickedness and pray to the Lord. Perhaps he will forgive you for having such a thought in your heart, for I see that you are full of jealousy and still captive to sin."

¹⁹Simon said, "Pray to the Lord that none of what you have said will happen to me."

²⁰Peter and John then returned to Jerusalem preaching the gospel along the way in many other Samaritan towns.

Philip sent by angel to teach an Ethiopian eunuch

²¹Now an angel of the Lord said to Philip, "**Go south to the road leading to Gaza.**"

²²Philip did so and saw an Ethiopian eunuch, an important official in charge of the treasury of Candace queen of the Ethiopians. ²³This man had been to Jerusalem to worship and was on his way home. He was sitting in his chariot reading from the book of Isaiah the prophet.

²⁴The Spirit said to Philip, "**Go up to the chariot.**"

²⁵Philip ran up to the chariot and heard the man reading Isaiah the prophet. So he said to him, "Do you understand what you are reading?"

²⁶The eunuch replied, "How can I unless someone explain it to me?" And he invited Philip to come up and sit with him.

²⁷The eunuch was reading this passage of scripture, "**He shall be oppressed and afflicted yet not open his mouth. He will go like a lamb to the slaughter. ²⁸After arrest and judgement he shall be led away and no one will speak of his descendants, for he shall be cut off from the land of the living.**"

Philip tells the eunuch the good news about Jesus

²⁹The eunuch said to Philip, "Who is the prophet speaking about, himself or someone else?"

³⁰Then Philip beginning with that passage of scripture told him the good news about Jesus.

Philip baptises the eunuch

³¹As they travelled along they came to some

ACTS 8

water. The eunuch said, "Look, here is water. What is to prevent me from being baptised?"

³²So he gave orders to stop the chariot. Then both the eunuch and Philip went down into the water and Philip baptised him.

The Spirit carries Philip away

³³When they came up out of the water the Spirit of the Lord suddenly carried Philip away and the eunuch did not see him again, but he went on his way rejoicing.

³⁴Philip reappeared at Azotus^{F*} and travelled about the coast, preaching the gospel in all the towns round about until he reached Caesarea.

8

Saul departs for Damascus to persecute believers there

¹Meanwhile Saul was still breathing out murderous threats against the believers of the Lord.

²He went to the high priest and obtained letters to the synagogues in Damascus so that if he found any there who belonged to the Way,^{F*} whether men or women he might bring them back as prisoners to Jerusalem.

Jesus appears to Saul in a bright light on the road to Damascus

³As Saul neared Damascus on his journey he was suddenly enveloped in a bright light from heaven. He fell to the ground and heard a voice say to him, "**Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me?**"

⁴Saul answered, "Who are you Lord?"

⁵The Lord said, "**I am Jesus whom you are persecuting. Now arise and enter the city and you will be told what you must do.**"

⁶The men travelling with Saul stood there speechless, hearing the voice but seeing no one.^{F*}

Saul stricken with blindness

⁷Saul arose from the ground, and although his eyes were open he could not see. ⁸So they led him by the hand into Damascus and for three days he fasted, not eating or drinking anything.

The Lord appears to Ananias

⁹Now in Damascus there was a believer named Ananias. The Lord spoke to him in a vision saying, "**Ananias, go to the house of Judas on Straight Street and ask for a man named Saul. ¹⁰He is praying and in a vision has seen you come and lay your hands upon him to restore his sight.**"

¹¹Ananias answered, "O Lord, I have heard many reports about this man and the harm he has done to your saints^{F*} in Jerusalem. Now

he has come here with authority from the chief priests to arrest all who call on your name."

Ananias visits Saul and heals his blindness

¹²The Lord said, "**Go! This man is my chosen instrument to carry my name before the Gentiles and their kings and the people of Israel. ¹³He will suffer much for my name.**"

¹⁴So Ananias found the house and laying his hands upon Saul he said, "Brother Saul, Jesus who appeared to you on the road as you were coming here has sent me so that you may see again and be filled with the Holy Spirit."

¹⁵Immediately something like scales fell from Saul's eyes and he could see again. ¹⁶He arose and was baptised and after taking some food regained his strength.

Saul begins to preach Jesus

¹⁷Saul spent several days with the believers in Damascus and then began to preach Jesus in the synagogues proclaiming, "He is the Son of God."

¹⁸All those who heard him were astonished and said, "Is not this the man who created havoc in Jerusalem among those who call on this name?"

Saul's life threatened

¹⁹Yet Saul became more and more powerful and confounded the non-believing Jews in Damascus by proving that Jesus was the Christ.



Straight Street in Damascus where Ananias was sent by the Lord to restore Paul's sight.

²⁰However after many days the non-believing Jews in Damascus conspired to kill Saul and day and night they kept watch on the city gates.

Saul escapes and returns to Jerusalem

²¹But Saul learned of their plans, so his followers took him by night and lowered him in a basket through an opening in the city wall.

²²Saul returned to Jerusalem and attempted to join the believers there, but they were afraid of him and did not believe he was a disciple.

*34 Azotus was the former Philistine city of Ashdod on the Mediterranean coast of Israel.

*2 The church of Jesus Christ is several times referred to as 'the Way' from this point on.

*6 It appears that Saul actually saw Jesus, see the following verses 14 and 23.

*11 The term 'saints' refers to all who belonged to the early church.

Barnabas introduces Saul to the apostles

²³However Barnabas took Saul to the apostles and told them how on his journey to Damascus Saul had seen Jesus and the Lord had spoken to him, and how in Damascus he had preached fearlessly in the name of Jesus.

²⁴So from that time on Saul moved about the church freely in Jerusalem, speaking boldly in the name of the Lord.

Greek Jews in Jerusalem try to kill Saul

²⁵He also preached and disputed with the Greek Jews, but they resolved to kill him.

Saul returns to his home city Tarsus

²⁶When the brethren learned of this they took Saul to the seaport city of Caesarea and sent him off by ship to Tarsus.^{F*}

The church in Israel enjoys peace and grows in numbers

²⁷Meanwhile the church throughout Judea, Galilee and Samaria was enjoying a time of peace. It was strengthened and encouraged by the Holy Spirit and grew in numbers.

Peter heals a paralysed man in Lydda

²⁸Peter travelled about visiting the saints. ²⁹In Lydda he found a paralysed man named Aeneas who had been bedridden eight years. ³⁰Peter said to him, ***“Aeneas, Jesus Christ heals you. Arise and make your bed.”***

³¹Immediately Aeneas arose and was healed, and all who lived in Lydda saw him and turned to the Lord.

Peter raises a dead woman in Joppa

³²In Joppa there was a believing woman named Tabitha who was always doing good and helping the poor. ³³About this time she became sick and died and her body was washed and placed in an upper room.

³⁴When the church in Joppa heard that Peter was nearby in Lydda, they sent two men with the request, “Please come at once.” So he went with them.

³⁵When Peter arrived he was taken upstairs to the room. Widows were standing around wailing and they showed Peter the clothing that Tabitha had made while she was still alive.

³⁶But Peter sent them all out of the room and he knelt and prayed. Then he turned to the dead woman and said, ***“Tabitha arise!”***

³⁷The woman opened her eyes and seeing Peter she sat up. Peter took her by the hand and helped her to her feet. ³⁸Then he called in the believers and the widows and presented her to them alive.

Many people in Joppa believe in the Lord

³⁹This became known all over Joppa and many people believed in the Lord. Peter stayed in Joppa for many days with a tanner named Simon.

Cornelius a God-revering Roman centurion

¹At Caesarea^{F*} there was a Roman centurion^{F*} named Cornelius. He and all his family were devout and revered God.^{F*} ²He gave generously to those in need and prayed to God regularly.

An angel in shining clothes tells Cornelius to send for Peter

³One day about mid-afternoon Cornelius had a vision. He saw an angel of God in shining clothes who said to him, ***“Cornelius, your prayers and gifts to the poor have come up as an offering to God. Now send men to Joppa to bring back to you a man named Peter. He is staying with Simon the tanner whose house is by the sea.”***

⁵Cornelius immediately called two of his attendants and a devout soldier. He told them what had happened and sent them to Joppa.

Peter shown a vision of unclean animals

⁶About noon the next day, as the three men were approaching Joppa, Peter went up on the roof to pray. ⁷Then he felt hungry and desired something to eat.

⁸While food was being prepared, Peter fell into a trance and saw the heavens opened and something like a large sheet being let down to earth by its four corners. It contained all kinds of animals and reptiles and birds of prey.^{F*}

God can make the unclean clean

⁹Then a voice said, ***“Arise Peter, kill and eat.”***

¹⁰Peter replied, “Surely not Lord, I have never eaten anything unclean.”

¹¹The voice said, ***“Do not call unclean what God has made clean.”***

¹²This happened three times and the sheet was taken back up to heaven.



The roof top of Simon the Tanner in Joppa (now Jaffa) where Peter saw his vision.

*1 Caesarea was an important port city on the Mediterranean coast north of Joppa. It was the headquarters of the Roman military garrison and governor.

*1 A centurion was the commander of a hundred men in the Roman army.

*1 Most likely the Jewish God Jehovah, as the Romans were Polytheists, believers in multiple gods.

*8 Most animals, all reptiles, and all birds of prey were designated as unclean in the Old Testament and therefore not to be eaten (Leviticus 3:1-11).

*26 Tarsus was the principal city of Cilicia (now part of Turkey) and was the place of Saul's birth.

ACTS 10

Peter goes to teach Cornelius in Caesarea

¹³As Peter was pondering the meaning of the vision, the three men sent by Cornelius stopped outside the house and called out asking if Peter was staying there.

¹⁴The Holy Spirit said to Peter, “**Three men are looking for you. Go with them for I have sent them.**”

¹⁵Peter went down and said to the men, “I am the man you are looking for. Why have you come?”

¹⁶The men replied, “We have come from Cornelius the Roman centurion in Caesarea. He is a righteous and God-revering man who is respected by all the Jewish people. ¹⁷A holy angel told him to send for you to come to his house so he could hear what you have to say.”

¹⁸Peter invited the men to stay that night and the next day he started out with them for Caesarea. Some of the brethren from Joppa also went with him.



The street of Simon the Tanner in Joppa where Peter stayed.

Cornelius gathers his Gentile relatives and friends for Peter to teach

¹⁹The following day they arrived in Caesarea. Cornelius was expecting them and had called together all his Gentile relatives and friends.

²⁰As Peter entered the house Cornelius fell down at his feet in reverence. But Peter said, “Arise, I am only a man like yourself.”

God accepts people from all nations

²¹Then Peter addressed the large gathering of Gentiles saying, “You are aware that it is against our Jewish Law for a Jew to associate with a Gentile^{F*} or to enter his house. ²²But God has shown me that I should not call any man unclean. I now know that God shows no favouritism but accepts men from all nations who revere him and do what is right.”

²³Then Peter taught them the good news of

peace through Jesus Christ who is Lord of all.

The Holy Spirit falls on the Gentiles while Peter is still speaking

²⁴While Peter was still speaking, the Holy Spirit fell on all who heard the message. ²⁵The Jewish believers who had come with Peter were astonished that the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out even upon the Gentiles. ²⁶For they heard them speaking in tongues and praising God.

The Gentiles are baptised

²⁷Then Peter said, “What is to prevent these people from being baptised with water? They have received the Holy Spirit just as we have.”

²⁸So he commanded them to be baptised in the name of Jesus Christ. Then they asked Peter to remain with them a few days.

10

Peter relates to the Jerusalem brethren his vision and what happened afterward

¹Now the apostles and brethren in Jerusalem soon heard what had happened and when Peter returned to Jerusalem the circumcised believers^{F*} criticised him saying, “We heard that you entered the house of uncircumcised men and ate with them.”

²So Peter related to them his vision of the unclean creatures and what the Lord had said to him.

³Then Peter said, “As I pondered the vision, three men who had been sent to me from Caesarea came to the house where I was staying. ⁴The Spirit told me to go with them so I went, and these six brethren also went with me and we entered the man’s house.”

⁵“As I began to teach them the Holy Spirit fell upon them, just as it fell upon us at the beginning. So if God gave them the same gift he gave us who believed in the Lord Jesus Christ, who am I to oppose God?”

⁶When they heard this they had no further objections and praised God saying, “So God has granted even the Gentiles repentance unto Eternal Life.”

The gospel spreads wider afield

⁷Now the believers who had been scattered by the persecution at the time of Stephen had travelled as far as Tyre, Sidon, and the island of Cyprus and also to Antioch in Syria.

⁸They had spread the message of the Lord Jesus, but only to the Jews. Now some of the believers in Antioch began preaching the good news to the Greeks.

⁹The Lord’s hand was with them and large numbers believed and turned to the Lord.

Barnabas sent to Antioch

¹⁰News of this reached the church at Jerusalem, so they sent Barnabas to Antioch.

¹¹When he arrived and saw the evidence of

*²¹ Since the Babylonian exile a Gentile has been defined by Jews as any person not born of a Jewish mother.

*¹ ie Jewish believers.

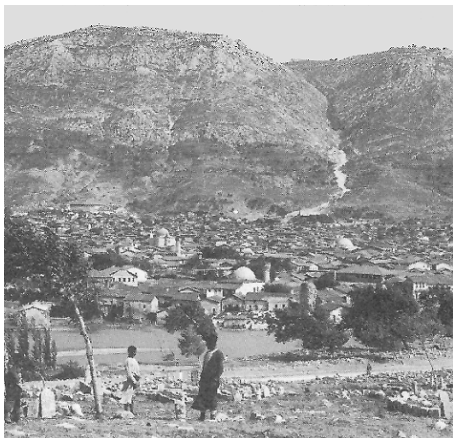
the grace of God he was glad, and encouraged them to remain true to the Lord with all their hearts.

Barnabas brings Saul to Antioch to assist him

¹²Barnabas was a good man, full of faith and the Holy Spirit and a great number of people were brought to the Lord.

¹³Then Barnabas went to the city of Tarsus to find Saul and brought him to Antioch. And for a whole year Barnabas and Saul stayed with the church at Antioch and taught great numbers of people. ^F*

¹⁴The believers were first called Christians at Antioch.



Antioch in Syria where large numbers joined the church.

Agabus prophesies a famine

¹⁵During this time a prophet named Agabus came from Jerusalem to Antioch and prophesied that a severe famine would soon spread over the entire Roman world. ^F*

The believers at Antioch assist those in Judea

¹⁶So the believers at Antioch decided to provide help for their brethren living in Judea by sending them money by Barnabas and Saul, each according to their means.

11

King Herod kills the apostle James

¹It was about this time that Herod^F* the king arrested some who belonged to the church, and he had the apostle James, the brother of John put to death with the sword.

*13 Luke the author of this book of Acts is believed to have been a native of Antioch.

*15 A local famine occurred in Judah soon after this prophecy, and a few years later in 46 AD a severe famine affected much of the Roman empire, and lasted three years.

*1 This was Herod Agrippa 1, grandson of the vassal-king Herod the Great who had governed all Israel at the time of the birth of Jesus, and nephew of the Herod who killed John the Baptist. By shrewd diplomacy Herod Agrippa 1 now reigned as king over all Israel but still under the supervision of a Roman governor.

Peter imprisoned by Herod

²When Herod saw that this pleased the Jewish leaders he also imprisoned Peter during the Passover feast. ³He intended bringing him out for public trial after the Passover but the church was earnestly praying for Peter.

Peter freed from prison by an angel

⁴The night before Herod was to bring him to trial, Peter was sleeping between two soldiers and bound with chains. There were also guards at the prison entrance.

⁵Suddenly a light shone in his prison cell and an angel appeared. The angel tapped Peter on his side and awoke him and said to him, **“Quickly, arise.”** And the chains fell off Peter’s wrists.

⁶The angel said, **“Put on your clothes and sandals.”** When Peter had done so the angel said, **“Wrap your cloak around yourself and follow me.”**

⁷Peter followed the angel out of the prison but it seemed to him as a dream. ⁸They passed by the first and second guards and came to the iron gate leading out into the city. It opened for them all by itself and they walked through. ⁹When they had walked the length of one street the angel disappeared.

Peter goes to the house of the mother of Mark

¹⁰Peter came to himself and went to the house of Mary the mother of Mark, where many believers had gathered and were praying.

¹¹He knocked at the door and a servant girl named Rhoda came to see who it was. ¹²When she recognised Peter’s voice she became so excited that she ran back to the others without opening the door and cried out, **“Peter is at the door!”**

¹³They said to her, **“You are out of your mind.”** But she kept insisting it was true. So they said, **“It must be his spirit.”**

The believers astonished to see Peter

¹⁴Peter kept on knocking, and when they opened the door and saw him they were all astonished.

¹⁵Peter motioned for silence and described to them how the Lord had brought him out of prison. ¹⁶Then he said, **“Tell James^F* and the other brethren about this,”** and he left for another place.

An uproar among the prison guards

¹⁷In the morning there was an uproar among the prison guards over what had become of Peter.

¹⁸After Herod had a thorough search made for him and did not find him he ordered that the guards be executed. ¹⁹Then he returned to his palace in Caesarea.

King Herod dies because of pride

²⁰Shortly afterward, Herod sat on his throne

*16 James was a brother of Jesus and author of the book of James. He appears to have been the presiding elder (or presiding bishop) of the church and stayed at Jerusalem, as opposed to the Twelve who travelled widely. James the apostle had previously been killed (Acts 11:1).

ACTS 12

wearing his royal robes and delivered a fine address to some people who had come to him from Tyre and Sidon.

²¹When he had finished speaking they cried out, "The voice of a god not of a man." ²²And immediately, because Herod did not give the honour to God, an angel struck him down and he was eaten by worms and died.^{F*}



Key towns of the early church based in Jerusalem.

12

Barnabas and Saul called on a mission from Antioch

¹The word of God continued to spread.

²After Barnabas and Saul had assisted the saints in Jerusalem they returned again to Antioch taking Mark^{F*} with them.

³In the church at Antioch there were prophets and teachers; Barnabas, Saul, Simeon, Lucius and Manaen. ⁴While they were fasting and worshipping the Lord, the Holy Spirit said to them, "**Set apart Barnabas and Saul for a mission to which I have called them.**"

Barnabas and Saul go to Cyprus

⁵So after fasting and praying they laid their

*21 The Jewish historian Josephus reports that king Herod was struck by a violent stomach pain immediately after his speech and had to be carried out of the hall. He died five days later at the age of 54.

*2 Author of the gospel of Mark.

hands on Barnabas and Saul and sent them off. ⁶Mark went with them as their helper.

⁷They sailed to Cyprus and there taught the word of God in the Jewish synagogues.

Opposition from Elymas the sorcerer

⁸They taught throughout the island until they came to Paphos. There they found a Jewish sorcerer named Elymas who was with the Roman governor Sergius Paulus.

⁹The governor was an intelligent man and had sent for Barnabas and Saul as he wanted to hear the word of God. ¹⁰But Elymas the sorcerer opposed them and tried to turn the governor from accepting the faith.

Elymas struck blind

¹¹Then Saul who is also called Paul,^{F*} filled with the Holy Spirit, looked intently at Elymas and said to him, "**You son of the devil and enemy of all that is right, full of all kinds of deceit and trickery, cease to pervert the ways of the Lord.**"

¹²"**Now the hand of the Lord is against you. You will be blind for a time, unable to see the sun.**"

¹³Immediately blindness came upon Elymas and he groped about seeking for someone to lead him by the hand.

The governor of Cyprus believes

¹⁴When the governor saw this he believed, for he was astonished at the teaching about the Lord.



A settlement on the island of Cyprus, the first place visited by Paul on his first mission.

Mark returns to Jerusalem but Paul and Barnabas go on to Galatia

¹⁵From there Paul and his two companions sailed to Perga in Pamphylia. Mark however left them at this point and returned to Jerusalem. ¹⁶But Paul and Barnabas continued overland to Pisidian in Galatia.

Paul invited to speak in the Jewish synagogue of Pisidian

¹⁷On the Sabbath they entered the synagogue and sat down. After the reading from the scriptures the synagogue officials sent a message to them saying, "Brethren if you have a word of encouragement for the people, speak up."

Paul relates the history of Israel

¹⁸So Paul stood and said, "Men of Israel and

*11 Paul was a name more acceptable to Greeks and Romans than Saul which was clearly Jewish. He is referred to as Paul from this point on in the Bible.

you Gentiles who worship God, hear me.”

¹⁹“The God of Israel chose our forefathers, and made our people prosper during their stay in Egypt, and with mighty power he led them out of that land.”

²⁰“He put up with them for forty years in the desert and then after overthrowing seven nations in Canaan, he gave that land to his people as their inheritance. ²¹All this took about 450 years.”

The Saviour Jesus a descendant of David

²²“After this, God gave them judges, until the time of Samuel the prophet.”

²³“Then the people asked for a king and he gave them Saul, who ruled for forty years.”

²⁴“After removing Saul he made David their king saying, ‘I have found in David a man after my own heart. He will do all I desire him to do.’”

²⁵“And now from a descendant of David, God has brought to Israel the Saviour Jesus, as he promised.

Paul tells of the death and resurrection of Jesus

²⁶“Brethren, descendants of Abraham and you God-revering Gentiles, it is to all of us that this message of salvation has been sent.”

²⁷“Because the people of Jerusalem and their rulers did not recognise Jesus, they killed him and fulfilled the words of the prophets that are read every Sabbath. ²⁸They insisted that Pilate put him to death, though he found no cause for a death sentence.”

²⁹“But God raised him from the dead and for many days he was seen by those who had been with him. ³⁰They are his witnesses and we bring you the good news that God promised our fathers.”

Forgiveness of sins only possible through Jesus, not Moses

³¹“Therefore my brethren, through Jesus the forgiveness of sins is proclaimed to you. Through Jesus, you who believe are set free from all that you could not be set free from by the Law of Moses.”

Paul and Barnabas invited back next week

³²As Paul and Barnabas were leaving the synagogue the people urged them to return again the next week and speak further of these things. Many also followed Paul and Barnabas, who spoke with them further.

The Jews become jealous of the large crowd of Gentiles who come to listen to Paul

³³On the next Sabbath almost the whole city of Pisidian gathered to hear the word of the Lord.

³⁴But when the Jews saw the vast crowd of Gentiles they became jealous^{F*} and argued blasphemously against the words of Paul.

Paul and Barnabas turn to the Gentiles

³⁵Paul and Barnabas answered them boldly. But finally they said to the Jews, “We had to speak the word of God to you first, but since you reject it and show yourselves unfit for Eternal Life, we now turn to the Gentiles. ³⁶For the Lord said through Isaiah, ‘I have made you a light for the Gentiles that you may bring salvation to the ends of the earth.’”

Many Gentiles believe

³⁷When the Gentiles heard this they were glad and honoured the word of the Lord, and all who were appointed for Eternal Life believed. ³⁸And the word of the Lord spread throughout all the region.

The Jews stir up the people to drive out Paul and Barnabas

³⁹But the Jews stirred up persecution against Paul and Barnabas by inciting the leading men and women of the city and they were driven out from Pisidian.

Paul and Barnabas go on to Iconium

⁴⁰Paul and Barnabas shook the dust from their feet in protest against them and went on to Iconium. ⁴¹However the believers in Pisidian were filled with joy and with the Holy Spirit.

13

The Jews at Iconium also stir up the people

¹At Iconium, Paul and Barnabas spoke so effectively in the synagogue that a great number of Jews and Gentiles believed.

²But the Jews who refused to believe, stirred up the Gentiles and poisoned their minds against them.

Paul and Barnabas do miracles at Iconium

³However they spent a long time there, speaking boldly for the Lord who confirmed their message by enabling them to do miracles.

A plan devised to stone Paul and Barnabas

⁴The people of Iconium were divided, some sided with the Jews and others with the apostles.^{F*}

⁵Then a plan was devised to stone Paul and Barnabas, but they heard of it and departed for Lystra where they continued to preach the good news.

A man crippled from birth healed in Lystra by Paul

⁶In Lystra there was a man crippled from birth in both feet who had never walked.

⁷He listened as Paul spoke and Paul saw that he had faith to be healed so he cried out, “**Stand up on your feet!**” And the man leapt up and began to walk.

Paul and Barnabas proclaimed gods

⁸When the crowd saw this miracle they

*34 The Jews had long regarded themselves as the chosen people of the Lord and therefore spiritually superior to the Gentiles. Apparently many of them found it difficult to accept Paul's message of equal salvation for all.

*4 Here Paul and Barnabas are first called apostles. It is not certain whether they replaced those of the Twelve who had been killed, or the term is used in a general missionary sense. Barnabas was very prominent in the early church and is reported to have been the author of the book of Hebrews.

ACTS 14

shouted, "The gods have come down to us in human form!"

⁹Barnabas they called Zeus, and Paul they called Hermes, as he was the chief speaker. ¹⁰Then the priest of Zeus whose temple was at that city brought bulls to the city gates to offer sacrifice to them.



Zeus, head of the Greek gods.

¹¹When the two apostles heard of this they tore their clothes and rushed into the crowd shouting, "Why are you doing this? We are only men like you! ¹²We are bringing you good news, telling you to turn away from worthless things like this, to the living God! To him who made the heavens and earth and everything in them!"

¹³But even with these words they had difficulty restraining the crowd from sacrificing to them.

Paul stoned and dragged outside the city as dead

¹⁴Then some Jews from Pisidian and Iconium arrived and turned the crowd against them.

¹⁵They stoned Paul and dragged him outside the city believing him to be dead.

The believers revive Paul

¹⁶But after the believers had gathered around Paul, he recovered and went back into the city.

A large number of believers won in Derbe

¹⁷The next day he and Barnabas left for Derbe. They preached the good news in that city and won a large number of believers.

Former cities revisited and strengthened

¹⁸Then they returned again through Lystra, Iconium and Pisidian to strengthen the believers and encourage them to remain true to the faith. ¹⁹They said to them, "We must all go through many persecutions to enter the kingdom of God."

Elders appointed in the churches

²⁰Paul and Barnabas appointed elders in the

churches and with prayer and fasting set them apart to the Lord.

Paul and Barnabas complete their first mission and return to Antioch

²¹Then they sailed back to Antioch where they had first been set apart for their mission which they had now completed.

²²On arriving back they gathered the church together and reported all that God had done through them and how he had opened the door to the Gentiles.



Paul's first mission.

14

Some Jewish believers teach that Gentile converts must be circumcised

¹Soon after this some Jewish believers came to Antioch from Judea and began teaching the brethren saying, "Unless you are circumcised as taught by Moses, you cannot be saved."

Paul and Barnabas sent to the church in Jerusalem for a ruling on this question

²Paul and Barnabas sharply disputed this teaching, and after much debate they were appointed by the church leaders in Antioch to travel to Jerusalem and consult with the apostles and elders^{F*} about this question.

³When Paul and Barnabas arrived in Jerusalem they were welcomed by the church and the apostles and elders. They reported everything God had done through them for the Gentiles.

Pharisee believers maintain that Gentiles should obey all the Laws of Moses

⁴But some of the believers who were Pharisees stood up and said, "The Gentile believers should be circumcised and obey the Law of Moses."

⁵So the apostles and elders met to consider this question.

Peter says it is by the grace of Jesus we are saved not the Law of Moses

⁶After much debate Peter stood up and said, "Brethren you know that God decided that the Gentiles should first hear the message of the gospel from my lips. ⁷He who knows all hearts showed that he accepted them by giving the

^{*}2 The elders in this cases were the leaders of the church in Jerusalem presided over by James the brother of Jesus Christ.

Holy Spirit to them just as he did to us. ⁸He made no distinction between us and them, for he purified their hearts by their belief.”

⁹“Now then, why question God’s judgement by putting on the necks of the Gentiles a yoke which neither we nor our fathers have been able to bear?”

¹⁰“It is through the grace of our Lord Jesus that we Jews are saved, and so also with the Gentiles.”

James the presiding elder of the church gives his decision

¹¹When they had all finished speaking James arose and gave his decision^{F*} saying, “It is my judgement that we should not make it difficult for the Gentiles who are turning to the Lord.”

Gentiles to abstain from sexual immorality and defiled food and blood

¹²“Let us write to them instructing them to abstain from sexual immorality, from food defiled by idols, and from the meat of unbled animals and from eating blood.”

A written decision sent to the Gentiles by Judas and Silas

¹³Then the apostles and elders chose Judas and Silas, two men who were leaders among the brethren, to return to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas. With them they also sent this following letter.

¹⁴“To the Gentile believers in Antioch, Syria and Cilicia: Greetings from the apostles and elders your brethren.”

¹⁵“We have heard that some went out from us without our authorisation and disturbed you, troubling your minds by what they said. So we have sent Judas and Silas to you with our dear friends Barnabas and Paul to confirm by word of mouth what we are writing.”

¹⁶“It seems good to the Holy Spirit and to us, not to burden you with anything beyond the following requirements. You are to abstain from food sacrificed to idols, from the meat of unbled animals, from blood, and from sexual immorality.”

¹⁷“If you keep yourselves from these you will do well. Farewell.”

¹⁸The men were sent off and after travelling to Antioch they gathered the church together and delivered the letter. ¹⁹The people heard it read and were pleased with the message.

Judas and Silas prophets

²⁰Judas and Silas who were prophets^{F*} also

*¹¹ James was the brother of Jesus and the presiding elder (or presiding bishop) of the whole church. Paul wrote that the resurrected Jesus personally appeared to James (1 Corinthians 8:4). By James giving the final decision on an important matter of church policy such as the one under discussion the authority of his office would appear to exceed that of Peter and the other apostles. However this can be explained by the differing duties of their callings. An apostle’s calling was to travel and establish new churches and build up existing ones, not to be tied down in church administration. Whereas the calling of the presiding elder (or presiding bishop) was to preside over and regulate the affairs of the church as a whole.

*²⁰ ie, They had the gift of prophecy by the power of the Holy Spirit.

said much to encourage and strengthen the brethren. Silas remained in Antioch.

Paul and Barnabas decide on a second mission to revisit their first mission converts

²¹Some time later Paul said to Barnabas, “Let us return and visit the brethren in the places where we preached the word of the Lord and see how they are doing.”

Paul refuses to take Mark

²²Barnabas desired to take Mark with them again, but Paul did not think it wise as he had deserted them in Pamphylia.

Barnabas takes Mark and Paul takes Silas

²³They had such a strong disagreement about this that they parted company. Barnabas took Mark and sailed for Cyprus and Paul took Silas and went by way of Cilicia to strengthen the churches in Galatia.

15

Paul meets Timothy at Lystra

¹Paul went first to Derbe, and then on to Lystra where a brother named Timothy lived. ²His mother was a Jew and a believer but his father was a Greek. The brethren at Lystra spoke well of him.

Timothy is circumcised and Paul takes him along with him

³Paul decided that Timothy should accompany them but first he took him and circumcised him because of the Jews in those places, for they knew that his father was a Greek.

The churches are strengthened and grow in numbers

⁴As they travelled from town to town they delivered the decision reached by the apostles and elders in Jerusalem for the Gentile believers to obey. ⁵So the churches were strengthened in the faith and grew daily in numbers.

The Holy Spirit guides the missionaries

⁶Paul and his two companions travelled throughout Galatia having been forbidden by the Holy Spirit from preaching the word in the province of Asia at that time.^{F*}

⁷Also when they tried to enter Bithynia the Spirit of Jesus^{F*} prevented them, so they went down to Troas.

Paul has a vision to go to Macedonia

⁸At Troas during the night Paul had a vision of a man standing and begging him saying, “Come over to Macedonia and help us.”

⁹So we^{F*} got ready at once to leave for Macedonia, believing that God had called us to preach the gospel to them.

*⁶ Paul did however later preach in the province of Asia, at Ephesus.

*⁷ The Spirit of Jesus is another term for the Holy Spirit.

*⁹ At this point Luke the author of Acts joins the group as the narration becomes ‘we’ rather than ‘they’ and more detail is included.

ACTS 16

Paul and Silas stay at Philippi in Macedonia

¹⁰We put out to sea and sailed to Neapolis and from there travelled overland to Philippi, the leading city of that part of Macedonia and stayed there several days.

Lydia believes and all her household are baptised

¹¹On the Sabbath we went outside the city gate to the river where we had been told there was a place of prayer. ¹²We sat down and began to speak to the women who had gathered there.

¹³The Lord opened the heart of a certain woman named Lydia, a dealer in purple cloth, who worshipped God. ¹⁴She believed Paul's message and all her household were baptised. ¹⁵She urged us to stay in her home and we accepted the invitation.

A slave girl with a spirit of fortune-telling follows Paul and Silas testifying about them

¹⁶Once when we were going out to the place of prayer we were met by a slave girl who had a spirit by which she foretold the future. ¹⁷She earned a great deal of money for her owners by fortune-telling.

¹⁸This girl followed Paul and the rest of us crying out, "These men are servants of the Most High God who will make known to you the way of salvation."

Paul casts out the spirit

¹⁹She kept this up for many days. Finally Paul became so annoyed that he turned around and said to the spirit, "In the name of Jesus Christ I command you to come out of her." ²⁰At that moment the spirit left her.

The owners of the slave girl seize Paul and Silas

²¹When the owners of the slave girl saw that their source of income was gone, they seized Paul and Silas and dragged them before the judges in the marketplace saying, "These men are Jews and are disturbing our city by teaching customs unlawful for Roman citizens to practice."

Paul and Silas flogged and imprisoned

²²The crowd joined in accusing them so the judges ordered them stripped and flogged.

²³After they had been severely flogged they were imprisoned and the jailer was commanded to guard them carefully. He put them in the inner cell and fastened their feet in stocks.

Prison doors miraculously open and chains come unfastened

²⁴About midnight Paul and Silas were praying and singing hymns and the other prisoners were listening to them.

²⁵Suddenly there came a violent earthquake and the foundations of the prison were shaken. At the same time all the prison doors flew open and every prisoner's chains came unfastened.

Paul stops the jailer from taking his own life

²⁶When the jailer awoke and saw all the prison doors open he drew his sword to kill himself thinking the prisoners had escaped.

²⁷But Paul shouted, "Do not harm yourself! We are all here!"

The jailer and his family are baptised that same night

²⁸The jailer called for lamps and rushing in he fell trembling before Paul and Silas. Then he took them outside and said, "What must I do to be saved?"

²⁹They replied, "Believe in the Lord Jesus and you will be saved, you and your household."

³⁰Then they taught the word of the Lord to him and to all the others in his house. ³¹The jailer then washed their wounds and that same night he and all his family were baptised.

³²He afterward took them up into his house and set a meal before them. ³³He was filled with joy for he had come to believe in God along with his whole family.

Paul and Silas apologised to and escorted from prison by the judges

³⁴When it was daylight the judges sent officers to the jailer saying, "Release those men."

³⁵But Paul said to the officers, "They flogged us publicly without a trial, we who are Roman citizens and threw us into prison. Now they want to release us secretly. No! Let them come themselves and escort us out."

³⁶When the officers reported this back to the judges and they heard that Paul and Silas were Roman citizens, they became alarmed, and came and apologised to them. ³⁷Then they escorted them from the prison asking them to leave the city.

Paul and Silas leave for Thessalonica

³⁸Paul and Silas returned to Lydia's house where they met with the brethren and encouraged them. Then they departed for the city of Thessalonica where there was a Jewish synagogue.

16

Paul and Silas try to reason with the Jews

¹As was his custom Paul went into the synagogue at Thessalonica and on three Sabbath days reasoned with them from the scriptures, proving that the Christ had to suffer and rise from the dead.

Jealous Jews formed a mob and start a riot

²Some of the Jews at Thessalonica were persuaded and joined Paul and Silas, as did a large number of Greeks and prominent women, but the rest of the Jews were jealous. ³They found some worthless men at the marketplace and formed a mob and started a riot in the city.

Jason and some other believers dragged before the city officials

⁴The Jews searched for Paul and Silas to hand them over to the crowd. ⁵When they could not find them, they instead dragged Jason and some of the other brethren before the city officials and shouted, "These men who

are causing trouble all over the world have now come here, and Jason has welcomed them into his house.”

6“They are defying Caesar’s decrees and say there is another king, one called Jesus.”

Paul and Silas escape to Berea

7The crowd and city officials were troubled when they heard this. They ordered Jason and the others to pay bail then released them.

8As soon as it was night the brethren assisted Paul and Silas to escape to Berea.

Many Jews and Greeks at Berea believe

9On arriving in Berea, Paul and Silas went into the Jewish synagogue.

10Now the Jews in Berea were of more noble character than those in Thessalonica for they received the message with eagerness and searched the scriptures every day to see if what Paul said was true.

11Therefore many of the Jews believed as did also many prominent Greek women and men.

Thessalonian Jews come to Berea and stir up the people against Paul

12However when the Jews in Thessalonica learned that Paul was preaching the word of God at Berea they went there too, inciting the crowds and stirring them up.

Paul taken to Athens for safety

13So the brethren immediately had men escort Paul to Athens.

Paul dismayed to see Athens full of idols

14While Paul waited in Athens for Silas and Timothy to join him he was dismayed to see the city full of idols.

15So he reasoned with the Jews in the synagogue, and also daily with those who happened to be in the marketplace.

Philosophers take Paul to speak at a meeting of the Areopagus

16A group of philosophers listened to Paul as he preached the good news about Jesus and the resurrection. 17Some of them said, “What is this babbler trying to say?” Others answered, “He seems to be a teacher of foreign gods.”

18They took him to a meeting of the Council of Areopagus^F where they said to him, “You are bringing some strange new teaching to our ears and we wish to know what it means.”

19(Now the men who lived in Athens spent most of their time just talking about and listening to new ideas.)

Paul speaks of the unknown God

20So Paul stood and spoke before the Council saying, “Men of Athens I see that you are very religious. As I walked around and looked at your objects of worship I saw an altar with this inscription, ‘To an unknown god.’ 21Therefore, what you worship as unknown I will make known to you.”

God does not live in man-made temples

22“The God who made this world and everything in it lives not in temples built by human hands, for he himself gives life to all creation.”

God hopes that men will seek him

23“From one man he made all the peoples that inhabit the earth and allotted the times for them to be born and the places where they should live.”

24“God did this in the hope that men would seek him and find him, as he is not far from us, for *‘Through him we live and have our being.’*”

We are the offspring of God therefore God is not like an idol

25“Or as some of your own poets have said, *‘We are his offspring.’*”

26Since we are God’s offspring we should not think he is like an idol, made by the design and skill of man.”

Repent for God has set a day when he will judge the world by Jesus

27“¹In the past God overlooked such ignorance but now he commands all people everywhere to repent. 28For he has set a day when he will judge the world by the man he has appointed. And he has given proof of this by raising that man from the dead.”

Some philosophers scoff at Paul’s teaching of the resurrection

29When the men of Athens heard Paul speak of raising the dead some scoffed, but others said, “We will hear you again on this subject.”

A few philosophers believe

30At that point Paul left them, but a few joined him and became believers including Dionysius and a woman named Damaris and others with them.



A view of Athens from Mars Hill.

Paul leaves Athens and goes to Corinth

1After this, Paul left Athens and went to Corinth. 2There he met a Jew named Aquila who had recently come from Rome with his wife Priscilla, for the emperor Claudius had decreed that all Jews must leave Rome.^{F*}

*18 The Council of Areopagus was a local Greek authority on religion and morals.

*2 This decree, made about AD 49 was later cancelled.

Paul works for a time at his trade of a tent maker

³Because Paul was a tent maker as they were, he stayed and worked with them. ⁴But each Sabbath he reasoned in the synagogue trying to persuade the Jews and the Greeks.

Silas and Timothy rejoin Paul

⁵However when Silas and Timothy rejoined him from Macedonia, Paul devoted himself entirely to preaching and testifying to the Jews that Jesus was the Christ.

The Jews again oppose Paul and he rejects them

⁶But the Jews again opposed Paul and abused him, so he shook the dust from off his clothes^{F*} and said to them, "Your blood be upon your own heads. I am clear of my responsibility. From now on I will only teach the Gentiles."

⁷Then he left the synagogue and went next door to the house of Titius Justus a worshipper of God.

⁸However the ruler of the synagogue, Crispus and his household believed in the Lord. Many of the Corinthians who heard him also believed and were baptised.

The Lord again appears to Paul and encourages him

⁹One night the Lord came to Paul in a vision and said to him, "Fear not, but speak out. For I am with you and no man will harm you, for I have many people in this city."

¹⁰So Paul stayed for a year and a half in Corinth, teaching them the word of God.

The Jews charge Paul before the Roman governor of Corinth

¹¹At one time the Corinth Jews made a united attack on Paul and brought him before Gallio the Roman governor of the province. They accused him saying, "This man is persuading our people to worship God in ways contrary to our Law."

The governor rejects the charge

¹²Paul was about to speak but Gallio said to the Jews, "If you Jews were making a complaint about a serious crime it would be reasonable for me to listen to you. ¹³But since it involves questions about your own religious Law, settle the matter yourselves. I will not be a judge of such things." And he had them ejected from the court.

The Jews beat their own synagogue ruler

¹⁴So the Jews turned on Sosthenes their synagogue ruler and beat him in front of the court house, but the governor paid no attention to this.

Paul decides to end his second mission and return to Antioch

¹⁵Paul stayed on in Corinth a little while longer and then decided to return to Antioch.

Paul shaves his head because of a vow

¹⁶However before he sailed, Paul had his hair shaved off because of a vow.^{F*}

Paul tells the Jews at Ephesus he hopes to return

¹⁷When the ship put in at Ephesus in the province of Asia, Paul visited the synagogue there and reasoned with the Jews.

¹⁸They asked Paul to spend more time with them but he declined. However as he left he said to them, "I will return if it is God's will."

Paul visits Jerusalem then returns home to Antioch

¹⁹Paul again set sail and after landing at Caesarea he went up to Jerusalem. After greeting the church there he returned to Antioch.



Paul's second mission. His third mission also covered the same areas

18

Paul departs on his third mission

¹After staying at Antioch for some time, Paul again departed and went again throughout Galatia and Phrygia, strengthening all the believers.

Apollos teaches at Ephesus

²Meanwhile a Jew named Apollos arrived at Ephesus in the province of Asia. ³He was a learned man with a thorough knowledge of the scriptures.

⁴He had been instructed in the way of the Lord and spoke with great fervour. He taught about Jesus accurately though he knew only the baptism of John.

The way of God explained more fully to Apollos by Aquila and Priscilla

⁵Aquila and Priscilla who had remained at Ephesus heard Apollos speak boldly in the synagogue and invited him to their home. There they explained to him the Way of God more fully.

Apollos leaves Ephesus

⁶Apollos then wished to go to Achaia, so the brethren wrote to the believers there asking them to welcome him.

*⁶ To shake off dust is a missionary sign of rejection. See instructions of Jesus in Matt-Mark-Luke 19:15.

*¹⁶ A vow is a favour asked of the Lord in return for which the asker agrees to make some kind of sacrifice. Shaving the head marked the completion of a vow (Leviticus 8:19-25).

Apollos a powerful speaker

⁷When Apollos arrived he was a great help to them for he vigorously refuted the Jews in public debate and proved from the scriptures that Jesus was the Christ.

Paul arrives in Ephesus

⁸Soon after Apollos left Ephesus, Paul arrived in that city.

Paul finds believers in Ephesus who have not heard of the Holy Spirit

⁹Paul found some believers there and said to them, "Did you receive the Holy Spirit when you believed?"

¹⁰They answered, "We have not even heard that there is a Holy Spirit."

Paul rebaptises the Ephesian believers

¹¹Paul asked, "Then what baptism did you receive?"

They replied, "The baptism of John."

¹²Paul said, "John's baptism was a baptism of repentance." So they were rebaptised in the name of the Lord Jesus.

The Ephesian believers speak in tongues and prophesy

¹³When Paul had laid his hands on them the Holy Spirit came upon them and they spoke in tongues and prophesied. ¹⁴There were about twelve men in all.

Paul tries to persuade the Jews in Ephesus

¹⁵Then Paul went to the synagogue and for three months afterward spoke boldly there, arguing persuasively about the kingdom of God.

¹⁶But some of the Jews refused to believe and publicly spoke ill of the Way.

Paul teaches daily for two years in a lecture hall

¹⁷So Paul left them and took the believers with him and met daily in the lecture hall of Tyrannus.

¹⁸This went on for two years so that all the Jews and Greeks who lived in the province of Asia^{F*} heard the word of the Lord.

Great miracles done through Paul

¹⁹God did extraordinary miracles through Paul. Even handkerchiefs that had touched his skin were taken to the sick and their illnesses were cured and the unclean spirits left them.

Jewish exorcists begin to use the name of Jesus to expel demons

²⁰Then some of the travelling Jewish exorcists began pronouncing the name of Jesus over those who were demon-possessed. They would say, "In the name of Jesus whom Paul preaches, I command you to come out."

Seven sons of Sceva violently attacked by a demon possessed man

²¹Seven sons of Sceva, a Jewish chief priest were doing this. But one demon answered

them saying, "Jesus I know and Paul I know, but who are you?"

²²Then the man possessed by the demon attacked them. He overpowered them so violently that they fled out of the house naked and bleeding.

²³When this became known to the Jews and Greeks in Ephesus they feared, and the name of the Lord Jesus was held in high honour.

Valuable sorcery scrolls burned

²⁴Also many who believed openly confessed their sins. Some who had practiced sorcery brought their scrolls and burnt them publicly.

²⁵The value of the scrolls amounted to 50,000 drachmas.^{F*}

²⁶In this way the word of the Lord spread widely and grew in power.

Paul decides to return to Jerusalem then visit Rome

²⁷Then Paul resolved to return again to Jerusalem and said, "After I have been there I must visit Rome also."

Demetrius a maker of silver shrines creates a great disturbance

²⁸About this time there arose a great disturbance in Ephesus about the Way. ²⁹A silversmith named Demetrius who made silver shrines of the goddess Diana^{F*} called together his craftsmen along with other craftsmen in the same trade.

³⁰He said to them, "Men, you know that from this trade we earn our living. But this man Paul has led large numbers of people to change their religion and teaches that gods made with hands are not gods at all."

³¹"Therefore there is a danger that our trade will not only lose its good name, but also that the temple of the great goddess Diana will be scorned and stripped of her majesty that brings all the world to worship her."

³²"When the craftsmen heard these words they were aroused to anger and began shouting, "Great is Diana!"

The whole city of Ephesus in an uproar

³³Soon the whole city was in an uproar, and the crowd rushed together to the public theatre dragging two of Paul's travelling companions with them. ³⁴Paul wanted to appear before the crowd but the believers prevented him.

³⁵The people were in confusion, some were shouting one thing and some another. Most of them did not even know why they were there.

³⁶Then the crowd all chanted in unison for about two hours, "Great is Diana of Ephesus!"

The city scribe finally quietens the crowd

³⁷Finally the city scribe quieted the crowd by saying, "Men of Ephesus, does not all the

*²⁵ The drachma was a silver coin worth about a days wages.

*²⁸ Diana, also known as Artemis, was a Greek fertility goddess whose immoral rites involved prostitution. Her magnificent temple in Ephesus was one of the seven wonders of the world and many visitors came to see it. The sale of silver shrines was evidently a lucrative business.

*¹⁸ The province of Asia was not the vast area known by that name today, but rather a portion of what is now Turkey.

ACTS 19

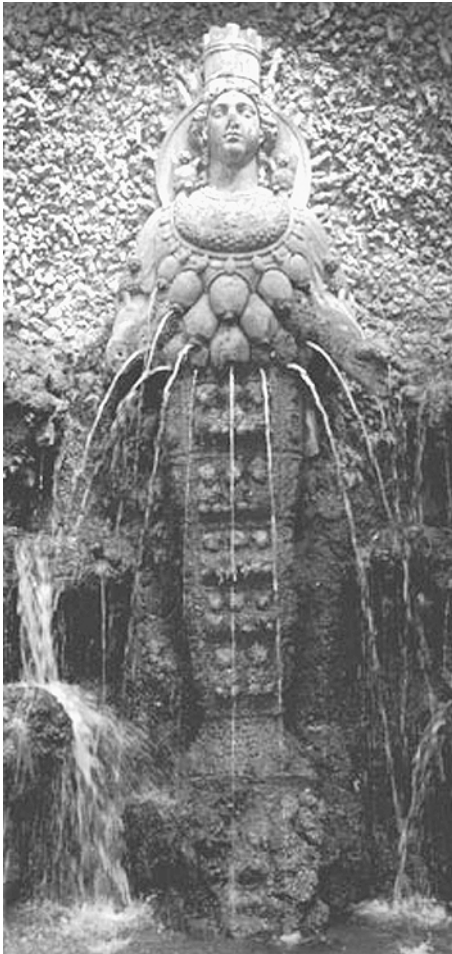
world know that the city of Ephesus is the guardian of the temple of the great Diana, and of her image which fell from the sky?

³⁸Therefore since these facts are true you ought to be quiet and not do anything rash.”

³⁹“You have brought these men here though they have neither robbed the temple nor blasphemed our goddess.”

⁴⁰“If Demetrius and his craftsmen have a grievance, the courts are open and there is the governor. They can lay charges.”

⁴¹“As it is we are in danger of being charged with rioting because of today’s events, and we would not be able to account for this commotion since there is no reason for it.” And having said this he dismissed the crowd.



The multi-breasted goddess Diana The raw material of the original carved image was said to have fallen from the sky. Her worship involved immoral rites.

19

Paul ends his third mission and sets out for Jerusalem

¹When the uproar had ended, Paul sent for the believers, and after encouraging them he departed for Jerusalem.

Paul stops at Macedonia on the way

²He travelled through Macedonia visiting and encouraging the believers on the way. Then he arrived in Greece where he stayed three months.

³But the Jews made a plot against him as he was about to sail for Syria, so he decided to go back through Macedonia.

Paul and his companions stay a week at Troas

⁴Paul was accompanied by Timothy and five other brethren. These men went ahead and waited for us at Troas.

⁵We sailed from Philippi after the Passover and five days later joined them at Troas, where we stayed seven days.

A boy falls from a third floor window and dies

⁶On the first day of the week^{F*} we met together in an upstairs room to break bread. ⁷Paul spoke to the believers and because he intended leaving the next day he carried on speaking until midnight, for there were many lamps in the room.

⁸Seated in a window was a boy named Eutychus, who sank into a deep sleep. Paul talked still longer, then the boy fell to the ground from the third story and was picked up dead.

Paul restores the boy to life

⁹Paul went down and threw himself on the young man and put his arms around him, and then said. “Do not be distressed. His spirit is in him.”

¹⁰Then Paul went upstairs again and broke bread and ate. After speaking until daylight he left. They took the boy home alive and were greatly comforted.

Paul farewells the Ephesian leaders at Miletus

¹¹Paul decided to sail past Ephesus, for he wanted to reach Jerusalem by the day of Pentecost if possible. ¹²So he sent a message for the elders of the church of Ephesus to meet him at the port of Miletus.^{F*}

¹³When they arrived he spoke to them saying, “You know how from the first day with you I served the Lord with humility and tears, though I was severely tested by the plots of the Jews.”

¹⁴“And you know that I have taught you publicly and from house to house, and have declared that all must turn to God in repentance and have faith in our Lord Jesus.”

*6 Sunday. This verse is one of several indicating that the early church held their church meetings on a Sunday, (or the Lord’s day as it appears to have been called) probably in honour of the resurrection of Jesus on that day, or perhaps by direct commandment. The Holy Spirit also came on a Sunday at Pentecost. The Jewish Sabbath was observed on a Saturday. See also John 19:18, I Corinthians 8:33, Revelation 1:11.

*12 Miletus was about 50 kms (a two day journey) south of Ephesus.

15“Now, compelled by the Holy Spirit I am returning to Jerusalem and I have been warned by that same Spirit that prison and hardships await me.”

The Ephesian leaders will not see Paul there again

16“However I consider my life worth nothing to me. I only wish to finish the race and complete the task the Lord Jesus has given me.”

17“*You will not see my face here again, therefore I declare to you today that I am innocent of the blood of all men.*”

A prophetic warning against false teachers

18“Keep watch over yourselves, and the flock of which the Holy Spirit has made you shepherds.”

19“*For after I leave, savage wolves will come in among you and will not spare the flock. Even from your own number, men will arise and distort the truth in order to draw away followers after themselves.*”

20“*So be on your guard. Remember that for three years I never stopped warning you day and night with tears.*”

More blessed to give than to receive

21“*I have not envied the silver, gold or clothing of any man. And you yourselves know that these hands of mine supplied my needs and the needs of my companions.*”

22“*I showed you that we must help the weak by hard toil.*” 23For the Lord Jesus himself said, **‘It is more blessed to give than to receive.’**

Ephesian leaders weep as they embrace and farewell Paul

24When Paul had said these words he knelt down with all of them and prayed, and they wept as they embraced him and kissed him.

25What grieved them most was his statement that they would not see his face there again.

20

Paul stops a week at Tyre

1After we had torn ourselves away, we put out to sea and sailed to Patara.

2Then we boarded another ship crossing to Phoenicia which stopped at Tyre to unload its cargo. 3Finding the believers there we stayed with them seven days. Because of what the Spirit revealed, they urged Paul not to go on to Jerusalem.

Farewells on the beach

4When our time was up, all the believers and their wives and children accompanied us out of the city to the beach where we knelt to pray.

5Then we continued our voyage from Tyre and landed at Ptolemais. We greeted the brethren there and stayed with them for a day.

Paul stays with Philip at Caesarea

6We departed the next day and reached Caesarea and stayed at the house of Philip the evangelist, one of the Seven. 7He had four unmarried daughters who prophesied.

Agabus the prophet prophesies of Paul's imprisonment at Jerusalem

8After we had been there a number of days the prophet Agabus came down from Judea. 9He took Paul's belt and tied his own hands and feet with it then said, “The Holy Spirit says, ***In this way the Jews of Jerusalem will bind the owner of this belt and will hand him over to the Gentiles.***”

Paul prepared to die for the name of the Lord Jesus

10When we heard this we pleaded with Paul not to go up to Jerusalem. But he answered, “Why are you weeping and breaking my heart?”

11I am ready not only to be bound, but also to die in Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus.”

Paul and his companions arrive in Jerusalem

12After this we set out for Jerusalem and some of the believers from Caesarea came up with us.

13When we arrived at Jerusalem the brethren received us warmly.

They report to James the presiding elder

14The next day we all went to see James.^{F*} All the elders were present with him.

15Paul greeted them and reported in detail what God had done among the Gentiles through his ministry. When they heard this they praised God.

Paul warned of ill feelings toward him

16Then they said to Paul, “You see brother how many thousands of Jews have believed, and all of them are zealous for the Law. 17But they have been informed that you teach the Jews who live among the Gentiles to turn away from the Law of Moses and not to circumcise their children or live according to our customs.”

Paul advised to be seen obeying the Law of Moses regarding purification

18“*So do as we advise you. There are four men with us who have made a vow. Take these men and purify yourself with them and pay their expenses so that they can have their heads shaved.*” 19Then all will know there is no truth in these reports about you but that you yourself live in obedience to the Law.”

Paul seized by Jews visiting Jerusalem from the province of Asia

20So the next day Paul took the men and purified himself along with them.

21When the seven days of purification were nearly over, some visiting Jews from the province of Asia saw Paul at the Temple. 22They immediately stirred up the whole crowd and seized him shouting, “Men of Israel help us! This is the man who teaches all men everywhere against our people and our Law, and this Temple. And besides he has brought a Greek into the Temple courtyard and defiled this holy place.”

*14 The presiding elder or bishop of the church. See note on Acts 11:16.

ACTS 20

²³They had previously seen Trophimus in the city with Paul and assumed that Paul had taken him into the Temple.

All Jerusalem aroused

²⁴The whole city was aroused and people came running from all directions. They dragged Paul from the Temple and immediately the gates were closed.

The Roman commander saves Paul from death

²⁵While they were trying to kill him, news reached the commander of the Roman garrison that the city was in an uproar. ²⁶He at once took some soldiers and ran into the crowd. When the Jews saw the commander and his soldiers they stopped beating Paul.

Paul arrested and bound with chains

²⁷The commander arrested Paul and ordered him bound with chains.

The commander tries to obtain the truth

²⁸Then he spoke to the crowd and asked who the man was and what he had done. Some in the crowd shouted one thing and some another.

²⁹The commander could not obtain the truth because of the uproar so he ordered that Paul be taken into the barracks.

³⁰When Paul reached the steps, the violence of the crowd became so great that he had to be carried by the soldiers. The crowd kept shouting, "Away with him!"

Paul speaks to the crowd

³¹As the soldiers were about to take Paul inside the barracks the commander said to him, "Are you the Egyptian who started a revolt and led 4000 terrorists out into the desert some time ago?"

³²Paul answered, "I am a Jew from Tarsus, a citizen of no mean city. Let me speak to the people."

³³So Paul stood on the steps and motioned for the crowd to be silent. When they quietened down he said to them in Hebrew,^{F*} "Brethren and fathers, hear my defence." ³⁴When they heard him speak in Hebrew they became silent.

He tells of his vision on the road to Damascus

³⁵Paul said, "I am a Jew, born in Tarsus but brought up in this city. I was trained thoroughly under Gamaliel^{F*} in the Law of our fathers, being as zealous for God as any of you."

³⁶"I persecuted the followers of the Way to their death, imprisoning both men and women as the high priest and all the Sanhedrin can testify. ³⁷I even obtained letters from them and went to Damascus to bring these people back to Jerusalem to be punished."

³⁸Paul then told how the Lord Jesus had appeared to him as he neared Damascus and

how he had been blinded and later healed at the hand of Ananias.

Paul tells of the Lord appearing to him in the Temple in Jerusalem

³⁹Then he said, "When I returned to Jerusalem and was praying at the Temple, I fell into a trance and saw the Lord."

⁴⁰"He said to me, 'Leave Jerusalem immediately for they will not accept your testimony about me. I will send you far away to the Gentiles.'

The Jews become angry again when Paul mentions the Gentiles

⁴¹The crowd had listened to Paul until he mentioned the Gentiles. Now they shouted, "Rid the earth of him! He is not fit to live!" and they waved their cloaks and flung dust in the air.

The commander orders that Paul be taken into the barracks and flogged

⁴²At this the commander ordered that Paul be taken inside the barracks to be flogged and questioned to find out why the Jews were shouting at him like this.



Military barracks in Jerusalem where Paul was confined.

Paul informs the commander that he is a Roman citizen

⁴³As they were tying Paul down to flog him he said to the centurion standing there, "Is it lawful for you to flog a Roman citizen without trial?"

⁴⁴The centurion went and reported this to his commander who came to Paul and said to him, "Are you a Roman citizen?"

Paul answered, "I am."

⁴⁵The commander said, "I had to pay a large price for my citizenship."

Paul replied, "I was born a citizen of Rome."

The commander becomes alarmed and Paul is not flogged

⁴⁶When those who were about to flog Paul

*33 Hebrew was the native language of the Jews, although the similar Aramaic (also known as Syriac) was the common spoken language of the day.

*35 Gamaliel was a well respected Pharisee and teacher of the Law of Moses.

heard this, they withdrew, and the commander became alarmed at having put a Roman citizen in chains.

21

Paul taken before the Sanhedrin

¹The next day the commander ordered the Sanhedrin to assemble and had Paul stand before them. For he wished to know why Paul was being accused by the Jews.

Paul struck on the mouth by order of the high priest

²Paul said to the Sanhedrin, “Brethren to this day I have fulfilled my duty to God in all good conscience.”

³At these words Ananias the high priest ordered those standing near Paul to strike him on the mouth.

⁴Paul said to him, “God will strike you, you hypocrite. You sit there to judge me according to the Law yet you yourself violate the Law by commanding that I be struck.”

⁵Those who were standing near Paul said, “You dare to insult God’s high priest?”

⁶Paul replied, “I did not realise he was the high priest for it is written, ‘**Do not curse the ruler of your people.**’”

Paul divides the Sanhedrin

⁷Then Paul, knowing that some of the Sanhedrin were Sadducees and the others Pharisees cried out, “Brethren, I am a Pharisee, the son of a Pharisee. I stand on trial today because of my hope in the rising of the dead.”

⁸When he said this, a dispute broke out between the Pharisees and the Sadducees, and the assembly was divided, for Sadducees say there is no life after death and no angel or spirit, but the Pharisees believe both of these things.

⁹There was a great uproar. Some of the teachers of the Law who were Pharisees stood up and argued vigorously. “We find nothing wrong with this man. What if a spirit or an angel has spoken to him?”

Paul taken back into the barracks

¹⁰The dispute became so violent that the commander feared that Paul would be torn to pieces so he ordered the soldiers to take him back to the barracks.

The Lord appears to Paul and tells him he must testify in Rome

¹¹The following night the Lord appeared to Paul and said to him, “**Take courage. For as you have testified about me in Jerusalem so also must you testify about me in Rome.**”

Forty Jews take an oath to kill Paul

¹²The next morning more than forty Jews bound themselves with a solemn oath not to eat or drink until they had killed Paul.

¹³Then they went to the chief priests and elders and said to them, “Have the commander

bring Paul before you again. We are ready to kill him before he gets here.”

Paul’s nephew informs him of the plot

¹⁴But the son of Paul’s sister heard of the plot and he went into the barracks and told Paul. Then Paul called a centurion and said, “Take this young man to the commander, he has something to tell him.”

¹⁵The young man told the commander how more than forty Jews were waiting in ambush for Paul.

The commander decides to send Paul off that night to the Roman governor Felix at Caesarea

¹⁶So the commander called two centurions and gave them orders saying, “Prepare 200 soldiers, 70 cavalry and a mount for Paul, that he may be taken safely to Governor Felix at Caesarea. Depart at the third hour tonight.” ^{F*}

The commander’s letter to Felix

¹⁷Then the commander wrote this letter.

“Claudius Lysias, to His Excellency Governor Felix. Greetings.”

¹⁸“This man was seized by the Jews who were about to kill him, but I came with my men and rescued him, having learned that he is a Roman citizen.”

¹⁹“I brought him before their Sanhedrin desiring to know why they were accusing him and found that the accusation had to do with questions about their religious law. But there was no charge against him that deserved death or imprisonment.”

²⁰“When I was informed of a death plot to be carried out against the man I sent him to you at once. I have also ordered his accusers to come to you and present their case against him.”

Paul taken to Caesarea and kept under guard until his accusers arrive

²¹So travelling by night, the soldiers took Paul as far as Antipatris.^{F*} The following day they let the cavalry go on with him while they returned to Jerusalem.

²²When the cavalry arrived in Caesarea they delivered the letter to the governor and handed Paul over to him.

²³The governor read the letter and said to Paul, “I will hear your case when your accusers arrive,” and he ordered that Paul be kept under guard in the palace.

22

The Jewish leaders travel down to Caesarea to bring charges against Paul

¹Five days later the high priest came down to Caesarea with some of the elders and a lawyer named Tertullus, to bring charges against Paul.

Tertullus the lawyer praises Felix

²When Paul was called in, Tertullus presented his case before Felix saying, “We have

^{*16} 9 pm.

^{*21} A military garrison about 50 km from Jerusalem.

ACTS 23

enjoyed a long period of peace under you, and your foresight has brought about reforms in this nation. ³Everywhere and in every way most excellent Felix, we acknowledge this with profound gratitude.”

⁴“But to weary you no further, I request that you hear us briefly with your customary graciousness.”

Paul accused of stirring up riots and desecrating the Temple

⁵“We have found this man to be a troublemaker, stirring up riots among the Jews all over the world. He is a ringleader of the Nazarene sect, and even tried to desecrate the Temple, but we seized him.”

⁶“By examining him yourself you will learn the truth about these charges.”

⁷The other Jews also joined in the accusations, asserting that these things were true.

Paul denies the charges

⁸The governor motioned for Paul to speak, so he said to Felix, “I cheerfully make my defence knowing that for many years you have been a judge over this nation.”

⁹“As you can easily verify, it is not more than twelve days since I went up to Jerusalem to worship. My accusers did not find me arguing with anyone or stirring up a crowd at the Temple, nor in the synagogues, nor anywhere else in the city. ¹⁰Neither can they prove the charges they are making against me.”

Paul speaks of his beliefs

¹¹“However I do admit that I worship the God of our fathers as a follower of the Way, which they call a sect.”

¹²“I believe everything laid down in the Law and all that is written in the Prophets, and I have the same hope in God as these men accept, that there will be a resurrection of both the righteous and the wicked. ¹³Therefore I do my best to keep my conscience clear before God and man.”

Felix adjourns the hearing without a decision

¹⁴Then Felix who was acquainted with the Way adjourned the hearing saying, “When Lysias the commander comes, I will decide your case.”

Paul kept under guard but given some freedom

¹⁵He ordered the centurion to keep Paul under guard but to give him some freedom and to allow his friends to take care of his needs.

Felix and his Jewish wife hear Paul speak about his faith in Jesus Christ

¹⁶Several days later, Felix again sent for Paul and he listened to him with his wife Drusilla who was a Jew. Paul spoke about his faith in Christ Jesus.

¹⁷However when Paul spoke of righteousness, self-control, and the judgement to come, Felix began to fear and said, “That is sufficient for now. When I find it convenient I will send for you again.”

Felix hopes that Paul will bribe him for his release

¹⁸At the same time he hoped that Paul would offer him a bribe so he sent for him often and talked with him.

Felix succeeded as governor by Festus

¹⁹Two years passed by and Felix was succeeded as governor by Festus. But as Felix wanted to grant a favour to the Jews he left Paul in prison.^{F*}

23

Festus urged by the Jewish leaders to send Paul to Jerusalem so they can kill him

¹Three days after arriving in Caesarea, Festus went up to Jerusalem. ²There the chief priests and Jewish leaders reported to Festus the charges against Paul and urgently requested him to have Paul transferred to Jerusalem, for they planned to kill him along the way.

³Festus answered, “If this man has done something wrong let some of your leaders return with me to Caesarea and accuse him there.”

Festus convenes a court in Caesarea

⁴After spending about ten days in Jerusalem, Festus returned to Caesarea and the next day convened a court and ordered that Paul be brought in.

The Jews unable to prove their charges against Paul

⁵The Jews who had travelled back with Festus from Jerusalem made many serious charges against Paul, but could not prove any of them.

Paul appeals to Caesar

⁶Then Paul made his defence saying, “I have done nothing wrong against the Law of the Jews, nor against the Temple, nor against Caesar.”

⁷Festus wishing to please the Jews said to Paul, “Are you willing to go up to Jerusalem and stand trial before me there on these charges?”

⁸Paul answered, “I am now standing before Caesar’s court where I ought to be tried. ⁹I have not wronged the Jews as you yourself know very well. If I were guilty of doing anything deserving death I would not refuse to die.”

¹⁰“If the charges brought against me by these Jews are false, then no one has the right to hand me over to them. I appeal to Caesar.”

¹¹Festus conferred with his council and then declared, “You have appealed to Caesar so to Caesar you shall go.”

King Agrippa and Bernice ask to hear Paul

¹²A few days later, King Agrippa and Bernice^{F*} arrived at Caesarea to pay their

^{*19} Felix had been recalled to Rome to answer allegations of misrule and was no doubt anxious not to antagonise the Jews in any way.

^{*12} Agrippa 2 was the last of the Herod vassal kings. He was the son of Herod Agrippa 1 who killed James the apostle. Bernice was his sister.

respects to Festus. ¹³Festus discussed Paul's case with the king. Agrippa said, "I would like to hear the man myself."

A hearing is convened with great pomp

¹⁴So the next day Agrippa and Bernice came with great pomp and entered the audience room with the leading men of the city, and Paul was brought in.

¹⁵Festus said, "King Agrippa and all present with us, you see this man, the whole Jewish community in Jerusalem want him put to death."

¹⁶"However I found that he had done nothing deserving of death, and as he made an appeal to the Emperor Caesar I have decided to send him to Rome. ¹⁷But I have nothing definite to write to His Majesty about him, therefore I have brought him before all of you and especially before you King Agrippa, that as a result of this investigation I may have something to write. ¹⁸For I think it unreasonable to send a prisoner without specifying the charges against him."

¹⁹King Agrippa then said to Paul, "You have permission to speak."

Paul begins his defence

²⁰Paul began his defence by saying, "King Agrippa, I am fortunate to stand before you today as you are well acquainted with Jewish customs and controversies. Therefore I beg of you to hear me patiently."

²¹"Ever since I was a child I have lived as a Pharisee, the strictest sect of our religion. ²²And now I stand here on trial today because of a promise of God made to our ancestors."

²³"Why should any of you consider it incredible that God raises the dead?"

Paul tells of his earlier persecution of the church

²⁴"I was convinced that I should do all possible to oppose the name of Jesus of Nazareth. I imprisoned many of the saints and when they were put to death I cast my vote against them."

²⁵"I went from synagogue to synagogue to have them punished. I tried to force them to blaspheme. In my obsession against them I even went to foreign cities to persecute them."

Paul speaks of his vision on the road to Damascus

²⁶"On one of these journeys, to Damascus, at about noon O king as I was on the road I saw a light from heaven brighter than the sun, shining around me and my companions."

²⁷"We all fell to the ground and I heard a voice say to me in Aramaic, 'Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It hurts to kick against the goads.'^{F*} ²⁸I am Jesus whom you are persecuting. I have appeared to you to appoint you a witness of what you have seen of me, and what I will yet show you."

²⁹"I will rescue you from your own people and from the Gentiles, for I am sending you

to them to open their eyes, and turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan to God, so that they may receive forgiveness of sins and a place among those who are sanctified by faith in me."

³⁰"Therefore O King Agrippa I have not been disobedient to the vision from heaven. That is why the Jews seized me in the Temple courts and tried to kill me."

³¹"But I have had the help of God to this very day and so I stand here and testify to small and great alike."

³²"I am saying nothing beyond what the prophets and Moses said would happen, that the Christ would suffer, and being the first to rise from the dead would proclaim truth to his own people and to the Gentiles."

The governor Festus calls Paul mad

³³At this point Festus interrupted and cried out, "You are mad Paul! Your great learning is turning you insane!"

³⁴Paul replied, "I am not insane most excellent Festus. What I am saying is true and reasonable."

Agrippa surprised Paul would think to quickly make him a Christian

³⁵"The king is familiar with these things and I can speak freely to him. King Agrippa do you believe the prophets? I know that you do."

³⁶The king said to Paul, "In a short time you think to make me a Christian?"

³⁷Paul replied, "Short time or long, I pray to God that not only you but all who are listening to me this day may become as I am, except for these chains."

Paul done nothing deserving imprisonment

³⁸Then the king arose and with him the governor and Bernice and all those sitting with them, and left the audience room. As they were leaving they said to one another, "This man is doing nothing deserving death or imprisonment."

³⁹King Agrippa said to Festus, "The man could have been set free had he not appealed to Caesar."

24

Paul taken on a ship for Rome

¹Now the time came for Paul to sail for Rome. He and some other prisoners were placed in the charge of a centurion named Julius and we boarded a ship and put out to sea.

²The next day we landed at Sidon, and Julius in kindness to Paul allowed him to visit his friends that they might provide for his needs.

³From there we put out to sea again and sailed above Cyprus as the winds were against us and landed at Myra. ⁴There the centurion found an Egyptian ship sailing for Italy and put us aboard.

Difficult sailing conditions

⁵We made slow headway for many days and when the wind did not allow us to hold our

*27 A goad is a long spiked stick for prodding oxen.

ACTS 24

course we sailed along the south coast of Crete, with difficulty, and came to Fair Havens.

⁶Much time had been lost and sailing had already become dangerous as by now it was after the Fast.^{F*}

Paul prophesies disaster if they continue sailing

⁷Then Paul prophesied saying, ***“Men, I can see that our voyage will be with danger and heavy loss, not only to the ship and cargo but also to our own lives.”***

⁸However the centurion heeded the advice of the pilot and owner of the ship rather than that of Paul.

The ship attempts to sail on to Phoenix

⁹Since the harbour of Fair Havens was not suitable to winter in, the majority decided that we should attempt to sail further along the coast of Crete to the more sheltered harbour at Phoenix and winter there.

¹⁰When a gentle south breeze began to blow they thought they had obtained the wind they needed and weighed anchor.

A hurricane-force wind catches the ship and drives it out to sea

¹¹However before long a wind of hurricane force known as the north-easter swept down from the island. ¹²The ship was caught by the storm and could not be headed into the wind. We were driven before it and were barely able to bring the lifeboat aboard.

¹³When the men had hoisted it aboard and made it secure, they passed ropes under the ship itself to hold it together, fearing they would run aground on the sandbars.

¹⁴Then they put out a sea anchor^{F*} and so we were driven along.

The storm continues for many days

¹⁵We took such a violent battering from the storm that the next day we began to throw the cargo overboard.^{F*}

¹⁶On the third day, we threw the ship’s tackle overboard.

¹⁷When neither sun nor stars appeared for many days, and the storm continued to rage, we gave up hope of being saved.

An angel visits Paul and assures him of the safety of all on the ship

¹⁸After the men had gone a long time without food, Paul stood before them and said, “Men, you should have taken my advice not to sail from Crete and spared yourselves this damage and loss.”

¹⁹Then he prophesied saying, ***“But now I urge you, keep up your courage. Not one of you will be lost, only the ship will be destroyed.”***

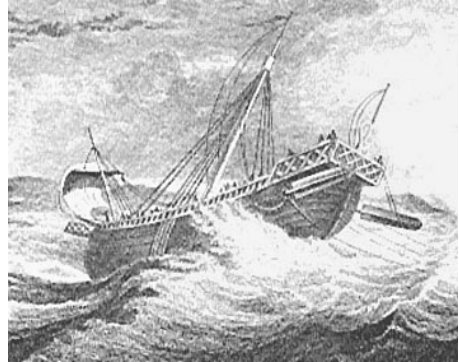
*6 The Jewish Day of Atonement in late Sept called Yom Kippur. Sailing was not recommended in the Mediterranean after mid-Sept.

*14 A sea anchor is a bucket-like device or any heavy object towed through the water from the bow of the boat not under power to create drag to keep the front headed into the wind and to slow the pace of wind drift.

*15 The ship’s cargo was grain (verse 31).

²⁰***“For last night an angel of the God whom I serve stood beside me and said, ‘Fear not Paul. You must stand trial before Caesar, therefore God has graciously given you the lives of all who sail with you.’”***

²¹***“So keep up your courage men for I have faith in God that it will be just as he has said. Nevertheless we will run aground on an island.”***



Ship typical of the kind on which Paul sailed.

The sailors sense land near by

²²On the fourteenth night we were still being driven, then about midnight the sailors sensed that we were approaching land.

²³They took soundings and found twenty fathoms. A short time later they found the water only fifteen fathoms deep.

²⁴Fearing that we would be dashed against rocks they dropped four anchors from the stern and prayed for daylight.

The sailors plan to escape in the lifeboat

²⁵In an attempt to escape from the ship the sailors let the lifeboat down into the sea on the pretence that they were going to lower some anchors from the bow.

The soldiers cut the lifeboat free and let it go

²⁶Paul said to the centurion and the soldiers, ***“Unless these sailors stay with the ship, you cannot be saved.”***

²⁷So the soldiers cut the ropes that held the lifeboat and let it go.

Paul urges everybody to eat and prophesies that no life will be lost

²⁸Just before dawn, Paul urged everyone to eat saying, “For the last fourteen days you have been in constant suspense and have gone without food. Now I urge you to take some food to survive.”

²⁹Then he prophesied saying, ***“Not one of you will lose a single hair from his head.”***

³⁰After Paul said this he took some bread and gave thanks to God in front of them all. Then he broke it and began to eat. They were all encouraged by this and ate some food themselves.

276 on board the ship

³¹Altogether there were 276 of us on board. When we had eaten we lightened the ship by throwing the rest of the grain into the sea.

The sailors try to run the ship aground on a sandy beach

³²When daylight came nobody recognised the land, but the sailors saw a bay with a sandy beach and decided to run the ship aground if they could.

³³So they cut loose the anchors and left them in the sea and at the same time untied the ropes that held the rudders. Then they hoisted the foresail to the wind and steered for the beach.

The ship strikes a sandbar and begins to break up

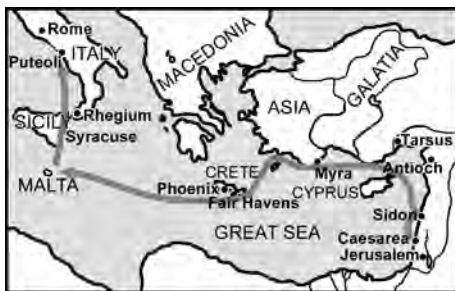
³⁴But the ship struck a sandbar and the bow stuck fast and soon the stern began to break up in the pounding surf.

The prisoner's lives spared

³⁵The soldiers had planned to kill the prisoners to prevent any of them from escaping, but the centurion wanting to spare Paul's life kept them from carrying out their plan.

All reach land safely

³⁶He ordered those who could swim to jump overboard and swim to land. The rest were to get there on planks or pieces of the wreckage. In this way all of us reached land safely.



Paul's sea voyage to Rome.

25

The land is the island of Malta

¹Once on shore we learned that the island was called Malta.

Paul bitten by a viper driven out of a fire on the beach

²The islanders showed us unusual kindness. They built a fire and welcomed us all, for it had begun to rain and was cold.

³Paul gathered a pile of brushwood, but as he put it on the fire a viper driven out by the heat fastened on to his hand.

The islanders awed when Paul is unaffected by the poison

⁴When the islanders saw the snake hanging from Paul's hand they said to one another,

"This man must be a murderer and although he escaped from the sea, justice is not allowing him to live." ⁵But Paul shook the snake off into the fire.

⁶The people expected to see Paul swell or suddenly fall down dead, but after waiting a long time and seeing nothing happen to him they changed their minds and said that he was a god.

Publius, the chief man cares for Paul and his companions

⁷There was an estate nearby that belonged to Publius the chief man of the island. He welcomed us into his home and for three days entertained us hospitably.

All the sick on the island healed by Paul

⁸His father was sick in bed suffering from fever and dysentery. Paul went in to see him, and after prayer, laid his hands on him and healed him. ⁹Then the rest of the sick on the island came and were also healed.

The islanders honour Paul and his companions

¹⁰The islanders honoured us in many ways, and when we were ready to sail they furnished us with the supplies we needed.



St Paul's Bay in Malta where Paul was shipwrecked.

Paul arrives in Rome

¹¹After three months we put out to sea in an Egyptian ship that had wintered at the island.

¹²It had the figurehead of the twin gods Castor and Pollux.

¹³We put in at Syracuse, Sicily for three days and then again set sail. We arrived at Rhegium on the coast of Italy and the next day reached Puteoli.^{F*} ¹⁴There we found some brethren who invited us to spend a week with them. After that we went on to Rome.

Paul allowed to live with just one soldier to guard him

¹⁵The brethren in Rome had heard we were coming and travelled out to meet us. ¹⁶At the sight of these men Paul thanked God and was encouraged.

¹⁷When we arrived in Rome, Paul was allowed to live by himself, with just one soldier to guard him.

*13 Puteoli was the chief sea port of Rome but the city itself was 125 kms further north.

ACTS 25

Paul speaks with the Jewish leaders in Rome

¹⁸Three days later Paul called together the leaders of the Jews in Rome and said to them, "My brethren, though I have done nothing against our people or the customs of our fathers, I was arrested in Jerusalem and handed over to the Romans."

¹⁹"They examined me and wished to release me for I was not guilty of any crime deserving death. ²⁰But when the Jews objected I was compelled to appeal to Caesar."

²¹"For this reason I have asked to speak with you. It is because of the Hope of Israel that I am bound with this chain."

The Jewish leaders want to hear more

²²They replied, "We have not received any word from Jerusalem concerning you, but we want to hear what your beliefs are. ²³We know that people everywhere speak against this sect."

Paul teaches a large number of Jews about Jesus

²⁴So they arranged to meet Paul on a certain day and came to his lodging in large numbers. ²⁵From morning until evening he taught them

regarding the kingdom of God and tried to convince them about Jesus from the scriptures.

Some believe but most do not

²⁶Some believed while others disbelieved, and they argued among themselves.

²⁷They departed when Paul made this final statement, "The Holy Spirit spoke the truth to your forefathers when he said through Isaiah the prophet, '**You will hear but never understand. You will see but never perceive.**' ²⁸**For the hearts of these people are hardened and their ears are dull and their eyes are unseeing, otherwise they would understand and repent and be healed.**"^{F*}

²⁹"Therefore I want you to know that God's salvation has been sent to the Gentiles, and they will listen."

Paul stayed in Rome two years

³⁰For two whole years Paul stayed in Rome in his own rented house and welcomed all who came to see him.

³¹Boldly and without hindrance he preached the kingdom of God and taught about the Lord Jesus Christ.^{F*}

*28 This scripture of Isaiah is found in Micah 1:24-25.

*31 Paul was released after two years (about AD 63) and went on a fourth mission which included a visit to Spain. Approx two years later he was again imprisoned in Rome and eventually beheaded by the emperor Nero about AD 66.

JAMES

The book of James is generally regarded as the plainest book in the New Testament and is a favourite of many Christians who appreciate its simple, practical nature.

It contains the core teachings of Jesus Christ especially those he taught during the Sermon on the Mount and also emphasises the need for good works.

The question as to whether good works are necessary to ensure Eternal Life after a believer has repented, been baptised and received the Holy Spirit has long divided Christians. Some of Paul's writings, if taken out of context can give the impression that a one-time sincere confession of faith that Jesus is the Christ is sufficient alone to gain Eternal Life (Romans 5:1). However James points out that even demons believe as much (James 2:13), and makes his well known statement "*faith without works is dead*" (James 2:11). Even Paul himself states that we are "*created to do good works which God prepared in advance for us to do*" (Ephesians 1:23) and the Holy Spirit in Revelation says, "*their deeds will follow them*" (Revelation 11:17).

In line with this, Jesus taught that only "*he who endures to the end will be saved*" (Matt-Mark-Luke 28:28). Jesus also taught the value of and need for good works in the parable of the talents (Matt-Mark-Luke 29:11-21). In this parable, two diligent servants who doubled their talents (a large amount of silver used as money) were highly commended, whereas a third fearful servant who buried his talent in the ground was condemned by his master who then commanded, "*Take the one talent from him and give it to him who has ten talents. For to everyone who has, more will be given*" (Matt-Mark-Luke 29:20).

Also in his parable of the sower, Jesus illustrates that those who at first believe and accept the gospel, can easily fall away, and that even among those who endure there are varying levels of performance, ie "*... by enduring produce a crop. Some thirty-fold, some sixty-fold, and some a hundred fold*" (Matt-Mark-Luke 14:3-18). That this variation in Christian performance has eternal consequences is shown in Revelation chapter 2 where the Lord in reporting on the condition of the seven churches around Ephesus harshly condemns lukewarm Christians saying, "*because you are lukewarm, neither hot nor cold, I will spew you out of my mouth.*"

Paul himself was a shining example of a Christian who did good works, obeyed the commandments, and endured to the end. He like Jesus also taught that there would be varying rewards or degrees of glory for believers in the resurrection of the dead, according to the deeds of each believer (1 Corinthians 8:24, Hebrews 4:27 and Revelation 2:26). The Lord will no doubt take into account each person's native ability and spiritual gifts for Jesus said, "*from him who is given much, much is expected*" (Matt-Mark-Luke 21:46).

The Bible therefore clearly teaches that none of us are 'saved' unless we endure faithfully to the end, (see also Hebrews 2:6, 22-27). And that a far greater reward awaits believers who do good works, keep all of the commandments and use their gifts of the Holy Spirit for the benefit of others, than for believers who just drift through life.

Love in action (ie charity) appears to be the bottom line of the gospel, rather than belief alone in Jesus Christ, for on the day of judgement Jesus will say to the righteous, "*Come you blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the creation of the world. For I was hungry and you fed me, I was thirsty and you gave me a drink, I was a stranger and you welcomed me in, etc,*" (Matt-Mark-Luke 29:25-26).

James the author of this book was a brother of Jesus, both he and Jesus being born of the same mother Mary, however James was conceived by Joseph the carpenter (Matt-Mark-Luke 14:49) not by God the Father as was his older brother.

James is also known as James the Just and was an important leader in the early church. He appears to have been the presiding elder or bishop over the entire church (see Acts 14:11 and note). All that is written about him reveals that he was highly respected. He was also favoured with a special appearance from his brother Jesus soon after his resurrection (1 Corinthians 8:4). He was put to death by the Jewish high priest in Jerusalem 62 AD.

JAMES 1

AUTHOR James, a brother of Jesus Christ.

Resist the devil and he will flee from you. Draw near to God and he will draw near to you. James 3:6.

CONTENTS

Chapter

James addresses the twelve tribes of Israel	1	Wisdom from above	2
Trials bring about spiritual maturity	1	Teachers to be judged more strictly	2
God does not tempt anyone	1	Coveting the cause of your feuds and disputes	3
If any lack wisdom let him ask of God in faith	1	Why you often do not receive when you ask of God ...	3
The lowly will be exalted and the rich laid low	1	Friendship with the world is opposition to God	3
Every good gift comes from above	1	Repent and humble yourselves before the Lord	3
Be quick to listen, slow to speak and slow to anger ..	1	Do not speak ill of one another	3
Reject evil and live the word	1	Say 'If it be the Lord's will' when planning the future ...	3
You will be blessed in all that you do	1	Not to do good is a sin	3
Pure religion is caring for orphans and widows	1	Woe to unjust rich men	3
Do not show favouritism to the rich	2	Be patient until the Lord returns	3
Love your neighbour as yourself	2	Let your yes be yes and your no be no	3
We will be judged according to the mercy we show ..	2	Do not complain about each other	3
Faith without works is dead	2	Let the sorrowful pray and the joyful sing praise	3
Even demons believe in one God	2	Heal the sick by anointing and prayer	3
Abraham and Rahab showed faith	2	Confess your sins to one another to be healed	3
Control of the tongue	2	The prayer of a righteous man has great power	3
Fresh and bad water cannot flow from same spring ..	2	Turn sinners from the error of their ways	3

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

James addresses the twelve tribes of Israel

¹James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ. To the twelve tribes scattered among the nations. Greetings.

Trials bring spiritual maturity

²Consider it pure joy my brethren whenever you face trials. ³For the testing of your faith develops endurance, and endurance brings spiritual maturity.

⁴When you have proven yourself you will receive the crown of Eternal Life that God has promised to those who love him.

God does not tempt anyone

⁵Let no one say when tempted, "God is tempting me" for God does not tempt anyone. But each one is lured and enticed by his own lustful desires.

⁶Then after desire has conceived it gives birth to sin, and when sin matures it gives birth to Death.^F* Be not deceived brethren.

If any lack wisdom let him ask of God in faith

⁷If any of you lack wisdom let him ask of God, who gives generously to all and it will be given him.

⁸But ask in belief, without doubt, for the man who doubts is like a wave of the ocean, blown and tossed by the wind. Such a man should not think he will receive anything from the Lord.

The lowly will be exalted and the rich laid low

⁹Let the brother who is lowly rejoice, for he will be exalted.

¹⁰But he who is rich takes pride in that which will bring him low. ¹¹The rich man will pass away like a wild flower whose beauty withers when the sun rises with scorching heat.

Every good gift comes from above

¹²Every good and perfect gift comes from above, from the Father of Light who changes not.

¹³By his will he brought us forth through his Word of Truth, that we might be a kind of first fruits of all his creatures.

Be quick to listen and slow to speak and anger

¹⁴My dear brothers, be quick to listen, slow to speak, and slow to anger. For anger does not bring about God's righteousness.

Reject evil and live the word

¹⁵Reject the immoral filth and evil that is all around you. Humbly accept the word planted in you, which can save you. ¹⁶But do not just hear the word, do as it says.

¹⁷For he who hears the word but does not do what it says is like a man who sees himself in a mirror for the first time, then immediately goes away and forgets what he looks like.

He who lives by the word will be blessed in all he does

¹⁸But the man who earnestly studies this

*⁶ The Second Death which is to be cut off forever from the presence of God (see Revelation 16:19 and note).

perfect law that gives freedom, and continues to live by it, will be blessed in all he does.

Pure religion is caring for orphans and widows

¹⁹Religion that God our Father accepts as pure and undefiled is this: to care for orphans and widows in their affliction, and to remain untainted by the world.

2

Do not show favouritism to the rich

¹Brethren, as believers in our glorious Lord Jesus Christ, do not show favouritism. ²If a rich man comes into your meeting wearing a gold ring and fine clothes, and a poor man in shabby clothes also comes in, and you say to the rich man, "Here is a good seat for you," but to the poor man you say, "Stand there," or "Sit on the floor," have you not discriminated and become unjust judges?

³Has not God chosen those who are poor in the eyes of the world, to be rich in faith and inherit the kingdom he promised to those who love him?

⁴Is it not the rich who exploit you and drag you into court? And is it not the rich who slander the noble name of him to whom you belong?

Love your neighbour as yourself

⁵If you are keeping the royal law found in scripture, "**Love your neighbour as yourself,**" you are doing right. ⁶But if you show favouritism, you sin and break the law.

⁷For whoever keeps the whole law but stumbles on just one point is guilty of breaking it all.

We will be judged according to the mercy we show

⁸So speak and act knowing that you will be judged by the law that frees us. For judgement will be without mercy to him who is unmerciful. Yet mercy triumphs over judgement.

Faith without works is dead

⁹What good is it brethren, if a man claims to have faith but does no good works? Will his faith alone save him?

¹⁰Suppose a brother lacked for clothing and daily food and one of you said to him, "Go in peace and be warm and well fed," but did not give him clothing or food, what good would that do? ¹¹Faith without works is dead. F*

¹²Says one, "You have faith and I have works." Show me your faith without good works. However I by my good works can show you my faith.

Even demons believe in one God

¹³You believe there is one God? You do well. But even the demons believe that, and shudder. ¹⁴Senseless man, do you require evidence that faith without good works is useless?

Abraham and Rahab showed faith

¹⁵Was not our ancestor Abraham considered righteous for offering his son Isaac on the

altar? You see how his faith and his works acted together. His faith was made complete by what he did. ¹⁶A man is justified^{F*} by his good works, not by his faith alone.

¹⁷In the same way was not Rahab the harlot considered righteous for what she did when she gave lodging and help to the spies in Jericho?

¹⁸As the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without good works is dead.

Control of the tongue

¹⁹Brethren, if anyone considers himself a servant of God yet does not control his tongue, he deceives himself. His religion is worthless.

²⁰For a man who is faultless in speech is a perfect man, able to keep his whole body in check.

²¹We put bits into the mouths of horses to make them obey us and thereby turn the whole animal. And ships, though large and driven by strong winds are steered by a small rudder.

²²Likewise the tongue, though a small part of the body, has a powerful effect. ²³A great forest is set afire by a small spark.

²⁴The tongue too can set on fire, and can corrupt the whole man, setting his whole life ablaze. ²⁵All creatures have been tamed by man, but who can tame the tongue? It is a restless evil, full of deadly poison.

²⁶With the tongue we both praise our Lord and Father, and curse men who have been created in God's likeness.

Both fresh and bad water cannot flow from the same spring

²⁷Out of the same mouth come praises and curses. ²⁸Brethren this should not be. Can fresh and bad water flow from the same spring? Can a fig tree bear olives?

The wisdom from above

²⁹Who is wise among you? Let him show it by his good works, done in the humility that comes with wisdom.

³⁰Let not the man who harbours envy and selfish ambition in his heart, boast of his wisdom. For such wisdom does not come from above, but is of the devil and brings disorder and evil.

³¹But the wisdom from above is pure and peaceable, considerate and submissive, full of mercy and good fruits, impartial and sincere. And he who sows in peace reaps a harvest of righteousness.

Teachers to be judged more strictly

³²Not too many of you should aspire to be teachers brethren. For we who teach will be judged more strictly.

3

Coveting is the cause of feuds and disputes

¹Where do the feuds and disputes among you

*11 See note on importance of good works in introduction.

*16 To be justified means to be purified from all guilt of sin.

JAMES 3

originate? Do they not come from the cravings that battle within you?

²You covet and cannot have, so you quarrel and fight. You desire and do not get, so you resort to murder.

Why you often do not receive when you ask of God

³Why do you not have? Because you do not ask of God. And why when you do ask do you not often receive? Because you ask with wrong intent, that you may consume what you get on your lusts.

Friendship with the world is opposition to God

⁴Adulterers! Do you not know that friendship with the world is opposition to God? ⁵Do you suppose the scripture says in vain, *“He yearns jealously over the Spirit he caused to live in us?”*

Resist the devil and he will flee from you

⁶Be submissive then to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you. Draw near to God and he will draw near to you.

Repent and humble yourselves before the Lord

⁷Wash your hands you who sin. Purify your hearts you double-minded men. Grieve, mourn and weep. Change your laughter to mourning, your joy to sorrow. ⁸Humble yourselves before the Lord and he will lift you up.

Do not speak ill of one another

⁹Brethren, do not speak ill of one another. He who speaks ill against his brother judges him.

¹⁰There is only one judge, the one who is able to save and destroy. Who are you to judge your neighbour?

Say, ‘If it be the Lord’s will’ when planning for the future

¹¹Now to you who say, “We will go to this or that town for a year to carry on business and make money.” Why you do not even know what lies ahead of you tomorrow. ¹²What is your life but a mist that appears for a short time and then vanishes.

¹³Instead you should say, “If it be the will of the Lord I will do this or that.” As it is you boast, and all such boasting is wrong.

Not to do good is a sin

¹⁴When a man knows the good he should do and does not do it, he sins.

Woe to unjust rich men

¹⁵Hear now you rich men, weep and wail because of the misery that will come upon you. Your wealth will rot and moths will eat your clothes. Your gold and silver will corrode and testify against you and devour your flesh like fire.

¹⁶The wages you failed to pay your harvesters are crying out against you and have reached the ears of the Lord Almighty. ¹⁷You have lived on the earth in luxury and self-indulgence and have murdered innocent men.

Be patient until the Lord returns

¹⁸Be patient brethren until the Lord returns. See how the farmer waits for the land to yield its crop. So you too be patient and stand firm, for the Lord’s return is near.^{F*}

¹⁹As an example of patience in the face of suffering consider the prophets of old who spoke in the name of the Lord.

²⁰You have heard of Job’s perseverance and how the Lord rewarded him. The Lord is full of compassion and mercy.

Let your yes be yes and your no be no

²¹Brethren, do not swear by heaven or earth, nor by anything else. Let your yes be yes and your no be no, or you will be condemned.

Do not complain about each other

²²Do not complain about each other or you will be judged. And the Judge is standing at the door.

Let the sorrowful pray and the joyful sing praise

²³Is any one among you sorrowful? Let him pray. Is anyone joyful? Let him sing songs of praise.

Heal the sick by anointing and prayer

²⁴Is any one of you sick? Let him call for the elders of the church to pray over him and to anoint him with oil in the name of the Lord.

²⁵And the prayer offered in faith will make the sick person well. The Lord shall raise him up, and if he has sinned he will be forgiven.

Confess your sins one to another to be healed

²⁶Therefore confess your sins one to another, and pray for each other that you may be healed.

The prayer of a righteous man has great power

²⁷For the fervent prayer of a righteous man has great power. ²⁸Elijah was a man just like us. He prayed fervently that it would not rain, and no rain fell for three and a half years. Again he prayed and the heavens gave rain.

Turn sinners from the error of their ways

²⁹My brethren, if one of you should wander from the truth and another bring him back, remember this: Whoever turns a sinner from the error of his ways will save him from Death and cover a multitude of sins.

*18 In the early days of the Church the return of Jesus was thought to be imminent. See also note on 1 Corinthians 3:18.

1 THESSALONIANS

This letter to the saints at Thessalonica is the earliest of Paul's surviving letters, dating about 51 AD.

Thessalonica was the largest city of Macedonia and was a busy seaport of about 200,000 people. Paul had to leave the city abruptly during his second mission due to the violence of unbelieving Jews (Acts 16:1-8). Apparently Paul feared the worse regarding the Greeks and Jews he had converted there, however after sending Timothy back to visit them and receiving from him a glowing report, Paul was overwhelmed with joy and promptly wrote this letter to them.

Paul clarifies some of the Thessalonians' concerns (probably brought back by Timothy) about the state of the righteous dead, and the second coming of Jesus Christ.

During these early days of the church it was widely believed that the return of Jesus was imminent. This is understandable as the prophecies of Jesus regarding the destruction of Jerusalem (which took place about 20 years after this letter was written) and his second coming were recorded in the gospels in such a way as to be easily confused as one event. Nowadays with the advantage of hindsight it is not difficult to separate the two prophecies.

NOTE: In this Condensed Bible the letters of Paul appear chronologically, whereas in the traditional Bible they are in no particular order and this letter is placed eighth.

AUTHOR

Paul the apostle. (Paul's letters were generally dictated to a scribe, see Romans 8:17.)

Then we who are still alive will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air, and to live with him forever. 1 Thessalonians 2:14.

CONTENTS

	Chapter		
Paul's introduction	1	Increase your brotherly love	2
God has chosen you	1	Lead a quiet life and work with your own hands	2
For the gospel came to you with power of the Spirit..	1	Jesus will bring the righteous spirits of the dead	2
You became a model for the other churches	1	Righteous dead to be resurrected first	2
You turned from idols to serve God	1	Resurrected and the alive to be lifted up in the air ...	2
We taught you despite strong opposition	1	Time and date of Lord's coming not known	2
We loved you like a mother with her little children ...	1	The day should not surprise you like a thief	2
You are our hope, our joy and our crown	1	We are not appointed to suffer wrath	2
You also suffered from your own countrymen	1	Respect and love those who lead you in the church ...	2
Satan has prevented us returning to you	1	Warn the idle, help the weak and be patient with all ...	2
So I sent Timothy instead	1	Always be kind to one another	2
Timothy has just returned to us with the good news..	1	Pray and give joyful thanks	2
We are comforted now	1	Do not quench the Spirit	2
We pray that we may see you again	1	Test everything and hold to the good	2
May your love increase	1	May you be blameless at the coming of our Lord	2
Do more to please God that you be sanctified	2	Pray for us and greet the brethren	2
Avoid all sexual immorality	2	Read this letter to them	2

1

Paul's introduction

¹Paul, Silas and Timothy, to the church of the Thessalonians, in God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ. Grace and peace be to you.

²We always thank God for you in our prayers and remember your good works, produced by faith and prompted by love. And also for your steadfastness inspired by hope in our Lord Jesus Christ.

God has chosen you because the gospel came to you with the power of the Holy Spirit

³We know brethren beloved of God, that he has chosen you, for the gospel came to you with the power and deep conviction of the Holy Spirit.

You became a model for the other churches

⁴You imitated us, and in spite of severe suffering you welcomed the message with the

1 THESSALONIANS 2

joy of the Holy Spirit. ⁵You became a model for all the churches throughout Macedonia and Achaia.^{F*}

You turned from idols to serve God

⁶In truth, your faith in God has become known everywhere, how you turned from idols to serve the living and true God. ⁷And to await the return of his Son Jesus from heaven whom he raised from the dead and who will rescue us from the coming wrath.

We taught you despite strong opposition

⁸Brethren our visit to you was not a failure. Although we had previously suffered in Philippi, we dared to teach you the gospel with the help of God, despite strong opposition.

⁹We never used flattery, nor a mask to disguise greed. Nor did we look for praise. God is our witness.

We loved you like a mother caring for her little children

¹⁰As apostles of Christ we could have been a burden to you, but we were gentle, like a mother caring for her little children.

¹¹We loved you so much that we were delighted to share with you not only the gospel, but our own selves as well.

¹²You remember our toil and hardship brethren, how we worked day and night in order not to be a burden to you. ¹³How we encouraged you and comforted you, and urged you to live lives worthy of God who has called you into his kingdom and glory.

You are our hope, our joy and our crown

¹⁴And you received our words, not as the word of men but as the word of God. You are our hope and our joy and the crown we will glory in when the Lord Jesus returns.

You also suffered from your own countrymen

¹⁵You also suffered from your own countrymen the same things that the churches in Judea suffered from the Jews. They who killed the Lord Jesus and the prophets of old also drove us out.

¹⁶These men displease God and hinder us from speaking to the Gentiles to save them.

¹⁷They heap up their sins to the limit, therefore the wrath of God will come upon them.

Satan has prevented us returning to you

¹⁸Brethren, when we were torn away from you we made every effort to return, but again and again Satan prevented us, so we thought it best to stay in Athens.

¹⁹We were destined for these trials. You remember when we were with you how we kept telling you that we would be persecuted.

So I sent Timothy instead

²⁰When I could wait no longer I sent Timothy our fellow worker to strengthen and encourage you and to enquire about your faith. ²¹For I was afraid that Satan may have tempted you and

our efforts had been in vain.

Timothy has just returned to us with the good news

²²But Timothy has just returned to us from you and brought us the good news about your faith and love. ²³He has told us of your pleasant memories of us and how you long to see us.

We are comforted now

²⁴Brethren, in all our distress we are now comforted. We really live now that we know you are standing firm in the Lord. ²⁵How can we thank God enough for the joy we have in you?

We pray that we may see you again

²⁶Day and night we pray that we may see you again and supply what may be lacking in your faith.

May your love increase

²⁷May the Lord make your love increase and overflow for each other, just as ours does for you. ²⁸May he strengthen your hearts that you be blameless and holy in the presence of our God the Father when our Lord Jesus returns with all his holy ones.^{F*}



Archway in Greek city of Thessalonica).

2

Do more to please God that you be sanctified

¹Finally brethren, we taught you by authority of the Lord Jesus how to live in order to please God, which is how you are now living. ²Now we urge you to do this more and more, for it is God's will that you be sanctified.^{F*}

Avoid all sexual immorality

³Therefore you must avoid all sexual immorality. ⁴Each of you must take a wife for himself in a way that is holy and honourable, not in passionate lust like the heathen who know not God.

⁵The Lord will punish men for all such sins, as we have already warned you. For God did not call us to be impure but to live a holy life.

^{*28} It appears that the Father will accompany Jesus when he returns. See also verse 11 of the next chapter and note on Revelation 1:4.

^{*2} To be sanctified means to become holy in God's eyes.

^{*5} Macedonia was the location of the Thessalonian and Phillipian churches, and Achaia the Corinthian church.

⁶He who rejects this instruction rejects God who gives you his Holy Spirit.

Increase your brotherly love

⁷Now about brotherly love, we need not write you about this, for you have been taught by God and you love all the brethren throughout Macedonia. ⁸Yet we urge you, do more and more.

Lead a quiet life and work with your own hands

⁹Lead a quiet life minding your own business and working with your hands, just as we taught you, so that you may win the respect of unbelievers and not lack for anything.

God will bring with Jesus the righteous spirits of those who have died

¹⁰Now brethren we desire that you not be ignorant about those who die. Nor to grieve over them like unbelieving men who have no hope. ¹¹For Jesus died and rose again, therefore we believe that God will bring with Jesus all those who have died in him.

The righteous dead to be resurrected first then the believers who are left alive

¹²According to the Lord's word, we who are left alive until the coming of the Lord will not take precedence over those who have died. ¹³For when the Lord comes down from heaven at the loud command from the voice of the archangel and the trumpet call of God, the dead in Christ will rise first.^{F*}

The newly resurrected and those still alive to be lifted up in the air to meet the Lord.

¹⁴Then we who are still alive shall be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air,^{F*} and to live with him forever.

The time and date not known – the Lord will come like a thief in the night

¹⁵As to the time and date of his coming, brethren we cannot inform you, for the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night. ¹⁶While people are saying, "Peace and safety," destruction will come upon them suddenly like labour pains to a pregnant woman, and they will not escape.

The day should not surprise you like a thief

¹⁷But you brethren, are not in darkness so that day should not surprise you like a thief.

¹⁸Since we are sons of light let us be self-disciplined, putting on faith and love as a breastplate and the hope of salvation as a helmet.

We are not appointed to suffer wrath

¹⁹For God has not appointed us to suffer

wrath but to be saved through our Lord Jesus Christ. ²⁰Therefore encourage one another and build each other up as you are doing.

Respect and love those who lead you in the church

²¹Now we plead with you brethren, respect those who are placed over you in the Lord and work hard in serving you. Hold them in the highest regard in love because of their work. Also live in peace with each other.

Warn the idle, help the weak and be patient with all

²²And we urge you brethren, warn those who are idle, encourage the timid, help the weak. Be patient with all.

Always be kind to one another

²³See that no one returns wrong for wrong but are always kind to one another, and to everyone else also.

Pray and give joyful thanks and do not quench the Spirit

²⁴Be joyful always, pray continually and give thanks in all circumstances. Do not quench the fire of the Spirit.

Test everything and hold to the good

²⁵Test everything, hold on to the good and avoid every kind of evil. Do not treat prophecies with contempt.

May you be blameless at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ

²⁶May the God of peace sanctify you wholly, that your spirit, soul and body be blameless at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

Pray for us, greet the brethren and read this letter to them

²⁷Brethren, pray for us and greet all the brethren with a holy kiss. Have this letter read to them all.

²⁸The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you.



The city walls of Thessalonica.

*13 ie The spirits of the righteous dead that Jesus is to bring with him from Paradise (see verse 11 above) will first unite with their newly resurrected bodies on earth (see Daniel 11:12-13) and then be lifted up again, along with the righteous living saints who are still alive on earth at that time (see following verse). Then after the destruction of the wicked the righteous will again descend upon the earth to reign with Christ (Zechariah chapter 5, Isaiah chapters 11 to 15 and Revelation chapter 15).

*14 Paul also speaks about the first resurrection in 1 Corinthians 8:29.

2 THESSALONIANS

It appears that Paul's first letter to the faithful Thessalonians, plus a second spurious letter or report had alarmed the Thessalonians into thinking that the second coming of Jesus Christ was about to arrive.

Paul in this follow up letter calms their apprehension and points out that the prophecies of an apostasy (a wholesale abandoning of religious belief) and the reign of the 'Man of Sin' or 'Antichrist' (see Revelation chapter 9) have yet to be fulfilled.

Also beginning with this letter, Paul closes with a special hand-written greeting (Paul dictated his letters to a scribe) as a distinguishing mark of this and his future letters to prove their authenticity.

AUTHOR Paul the apostle.

... this Man of Sin is being held back to be revealed at the end time. In that day the Antichrist will be revealed, but the Lord Jesus will destroy him by the breath of his mouth in the splendour of his coming. 2 Thessalonians 1:11-12.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Paul's introduction	1	Satan's power will be seen during rule of Antichrist ... 1
Your faith and love for one another keep on growing 1		But you will be saved to share the glory of the Lord ..1
We boast of your endurance to the other churches ..1		Pray for us brethren
God will repay those who trouble you	1	Avoid any brother who is idle
They will be shut out from the presence of the Lord ..1		If a man will not work he shall not eat
A great apostasy to occur before the Lord returns1		May the Lord grant you peace
The Antichrist to rule	1	I now write a greeting in my own hand
Jesus to destroy the Antichrist at his coming	1	This will be a distinguishing mark of all my letters2

1

Paul's introduction

¹Paul, Silas and Timothy to the church of the Thessalonians. Grace and peace be to you from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

Your faith and love for one another keep on growing

²Brethren we always thank God for you as your faith and love for one another keep on growing.

We boast of your endurance to the other churches

³We boast to the other churches about your endurance and faith amid your persecutions and trials. ⁴God's judgement of you was right, you are worthy of the kingdom of God.

God will repay those who trouble you when Jesus returns

⁵God is just, and when the Lord Jesus is revealed from heaven in blazing fire with his powerful angels, he will repay those who trouble you, and give you relief. Both you and us.

They will be shut out from the presence of the Lord

⁶They who know not God and reject the gospel of our Lord Jesus will suffer the punishment of Eternal Death, shut out from the majestic presence of the Lord.

A great apostasy to occur and the Antichrist to rule before the Lord returns

⁷Now concerning the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. Brethren be not alarmed by any prophecy, report or letter, supposedly from us, saying that the day of the Lord is at hand. ⁸Let no one deceive you in this matter, for that day will not come until the great apostasy^{F*} occurs and the Antichrist^{F*} is revealed, the man destined for destruction.

⁹He will oppose and exalt himself over everything that is called God or is worshipped. ¹⁰He will even take over the Temple, proclaiming himself God. Do you not recall that I told you of these things?

Jesus to destroy the Antichrist at his coming

¹¹The conspiracy of sin has already begun in the world, but this Man of Sin is being held back to be revealed at the end time. ¹²In those days the Antichrist will reveal himself, but the Lord Jesus will destroy him by the breath of his mouth in the splendour of his coming.

*8 Apostasy means abandonment of religious belief.

*8 The Anti-Christ, (also known as the Beast) is an arrogant and powerful world leader who will arise in the last days to oppose God and with the help of a false prophet shall perform great miracles that will deceive even believers (Revelation chapter 9). He is to be destroyed at the coming of Christ.

**Satan's power to be seen
during rule of the Antichrist**

¹³The works of Satan will be displayed with the coming of the Antichrist. There will be seen all kinds of counterfeit miracles and wonders.

¹⁴Those who refuse to open their hearts to the truth and be saved, will be deceived. ¹⁵All who delight in wickedness will be condemned.

**But you will be saved to share
in the glory of the Lord**

¹⁶But we thank God for you, brethren, who are loved by the Lord, for from the beginning God chose you to be saved through the sanctifying work of the Spirit and belief in the truth. ¹⁷He called you by the gospel we taught that you might share in the glory of our Lord Jesus Christ.

¹⁸So stand firm brethren. Hold fast to the teachings we passed on to you. The Lord is faithful and will strengthen you and protect you from the evil one.

Pray for us brethren

¹⁹Finally brethren, pray for us that the message of the Lord may spread rapidly and be honoured, just as it was with you. ²⁰And pray that we may be delivered from evil men for not all men have faith.

2

Avoid any brother who is idle

¹Now we command you brethren, avoid any brother who is idle and does not live the teachings you received from us.

²For we were not idle when we were with you, nor did we depend on you for our food. On the contrary we toiled day and night in order not to be a burden to you. ³Not that we do not have the right of support, but we wanted to be a model for you to follow.

If a man will not work he shall not eat

⁴That is why we gave you the rule, 'If a man will not work he shall not eat.'

⁵But we hear that some among you are still idle and are meddlers in the affairs of others.^{F*} Such brethren we command and urge in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ to earn the bread they eat.

⁶If any brother refuses to obey this instruction, cease to associate with him to shame him. Yet regard him not as an enemy but warn him as a brother.

May the Lord grant you peace

⁷Now may the Lord of peace be with you all, and grant you peace at all times and in every way.

**I will distinguish my letters from now on
with a hand written greeting**

⁸I Paul now write this greeting in my own hand which will be the distinguishing mark in all my letters.^{F*}

⁹The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you all.

*5 Many Greeks of this era disdained physical work, considering it the duty of slaves and beneath their dignity.

*8 The Thessalonians appear to have received a spurious letter purporting to have come from Paul. See verse 7 of chapter 1.

1 CORINTHIANS

First Corinthians is generally regarded as Paul's most informative letter. He clarifies matters which are of great interest to many Christians, especially the gifts of the Holy Spirit.

Actually this is Paul's second letter to the Corinthians, the first having been lost. At the time of Paul's writing of this letter a reply from the Corinthians to the lost letter had been brought to him in Ephesus by three of the Corinthian church members asking Paul's advice on a number of matters, including marriage, eating of meat offered to idols, speaking in tongues, and the resurrection.

At the same time Paul has heard worrying reports about the church at Corinth — that they have become divided, are conceited, have been taking one another to court, are tolerating incest, and that some of them have been criticising him personally. So Paul first addresses these concerns in this letter and then answers the questions from the Corinthians.

Corinth was the wealthiest and most commercially important city of the province called Achaia by the ruling Romans, but now known as Greece. In Paul's day Corinth had a population of about 600,000 of which about 250,000 were free citizens (mostly Greek), and the rest were slaves. It was a cosmopolitan port city, located on the neck of land that links the European mainland with the large, island-like portion of southern Greece.

The morals and drunkenness of the city were proverbial, as were the number of pagan temples. One of these temples, devoted to Aphrodite the goddess of love was reputed to have had over 1000 'sacred' prostitutes.

Paul spent one and a half years in Corinth on his second mission (Acts 17:10). The city was destroyed by an earthquake in 1858.

AUTHOR Paul the apostle.

Love is patient, love is kind, love does not envy, does not boast, is not proud. Love is not rude, nor self-seeking, nor easily angered, and keeps no record of wrongs. Love delights not in evil but rejoices in truth. Love always protects, always trusts, ever hopes, ever perseveres. Love never fails. 1 Corinthians 7:16-18.

CONTENTS

	Chapter
Paul's introduction	1
Corinthians not lacking any of the gifts of the Spirit ..	1
Divisions among the Corinthians	1
Is Christ divided?	1
The wisdom of man is foolishness	1
God chooses the weak and foolish of the world	1
I did not preach to you with worldly wisdom	1
Yet there is secret knowledge of God	1
We only teach it to the spiritually mature	1
God's secrets not understood without the Spirit	1
You Corinthians still not spiritually mature	1
We must build on the foundation of Jesus Christ	1
At the Lord's coming fire will test your works	1
No more boasting about mere men	1
Jesus will reward according to motives of the heart ..	1
Do not go beyond what is written	1
Faithful men will reign as kings in kingdom of God ...	1
Apostles suffer more than other men	1
Paul like a father to the Corinthians	1
Paul sending Timothy to the Corinthians	1
To remind them what he had taught them	1
Paul to return to Corinth	2
Will find out how much power the arrogant possess ..	2
A case of incest	2
You should have disfellowshipped the man	2
The man to be handed over to Satan	2
That his spirit may be saved	2
Obtain fresh yeast of sincerity and truth	2
Do not associate or eat with any sinful brother	2
Church leaders to only judge those of the church	2
How dare your disputes be judged before world	2
The saints are to judge the world and even angels ...	2
Why not rather suffer wrong than have lawsuits?	2
No sinner will inherit the kingdom of God	2
Former sinners among the Corinthians cleansed	2
I will not be enslaved by sexual immorality	2
He who unites with a harlot becomes one with her ...	2
Flee from sexual immorality	2
Your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit	2
Marriage desirable to avoid temptation to immorality ..	3
Do not deprive your spouse of conjugal rights	3
Paul wishes all men could be like him	3
Believers must not divorce	3
An unbeliever spouse not to be unwillingly divorced ..	3
Unbeliever spouse made holy by believing spouse ..	3
A believer not bound to an unbelieving spouse	3

A convert should remain in the situation he was in ... 3	A variety of spiritual gifts and manifestations 7
Circumcision not necessary 3	Gifts of the Spirit 7
Keeping the commandments is what counts 3	The gifts likened to different parts of the body 7
Single should not marry in view of impending crisis . 3	Gifts and callings ranked in importance 7
Appointed time for return of Christ has grown short . 3	The more excellent gift of love 7
The single able to give undivided devotion to Lord ... 3	Love defined 7
Better to marry than to burn with lust 3	Most gifts will be unnecessary in kingdom of God 7
A widow free to re-marry a believer 3	Only faith, hope and love will remain 7
Food sacrificed to idols 4	Eagerly desire the other spiritual gifts 7
Only one God for us – the Father 4	Especially the gift of prophecy 7
Only one Lord – Jesus Christ 4	What good to the church is speaking in tongues? 7
Food sacrificed to idols 4	Try to excel in gifts that build up the church 7
Food does not bring us near to God 4	Pray to interpret when you speak in a tongue 7
Do not wound the conscience of a weak brother..... 4	What if all spoke in tongues? 7
Knowledge puffs up but love builds up 4	Would not unbelievers say you are mad? 7
The God who accompanied Israelites was Christ 4	But if all prophecy unbelievers would be convicted .. 7
The Israelites of old suffered because of sin 4	Rules governing tongues in church meetings 7
You will not be tempted beyond what you can bear . 4	Rules governing prophecy in church meetings 7
Idolatry is worship of demons 4	See that everything is done in a orderly way 7
Do we want to arouse the Lord's jealousy? 4	Women should not speak in church 7
Rules for eating meat sold in the market 4	Corinthians reminded of the gospel Paul preached .. 8
Follow my example in seeking the good of others..... 4	Paul calls himself the least of the apostles 8
That others may be saved 4	But has worked harder than all the other apostles ... 8
Paul answers his critics 5	Paul answers those who doubt resurrection 8
Apostles have right of support 5	Your faith is in vain if there is no resurrection 8
Barnabas and I did not claim our right of support 5	The truth of the resurrection reaffirmed 8
I am all things to all men that I might save some 5	Christ to reign until all his enemies under his feet 8
I discipline and master myself to win the prize 5	Jesus to eventually hand over kingdom to Father 8
The head of a woman is her husband 6	Baptism for the dead 8
The head of the husband is Christ 6	Why do we risk our lives if there is no resurrection?... 8
A man should pray with his head uncovered 6	Varying degrees of glory in resurrected bodies 8
A woman should pray with her head veiled 6	The perishable body is raised in glory and power 8
Man the image of God and woman the glory of man .. 6	We shall bear the likeness of Jesus Christ 8
Long hair a disgrace to a man 6	Instant resurrection for righteous at last trumpet 8
Long hair an enhancement to a woman 6	O death where is your sting? 8
Corinthians doing more harm than good 6	Collection for the saints at Jerusalem 8
Divisions in the Corinthian church 6	Paul writing from Ephesus 8
Inconsiderate eating habits when met together 6	Take care of Timothy's needs when he arrives 9
The Lord's Supper clarified 6	Apollos to come when he has the opportunity 9
Partaking unworthily a cause of ill health 6	Stand firm and do everything in love 9
Eat at home first if very hungry 6	Greetings from those with Paul 9
Corinthians warned of false spirits 7	Paul writes a greeting with his own hand 9

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Paul's introduction

¹Paul an apostle of Jesus Christ to the church of God in Corinth, and to all those everywhere who call on the name of our Lord Jesus. ²Grace and peace to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

Corinthians not lacking any of the gifts of the Spirit

³I thank God always for you, for God is faithful, and through him you have been enriched in every way.

⁴Therefore you are not lacking any of the gifts of the Spirit as you eagerly await the return of our Lord Jesus. ⁵The Holy Spirit shall keep you strong so that you will be blameless on the day our Lord appears.

Divisions among the Corinthians

⁶Now brethren, I appeal to you that there be no divisions among you, that you all be of one mind. ⁷For some of Chloe's household have informed me there are divisions among you.

⁸One of you says, "I belong to Paul," another, "I belong to Apollos,"^{F*} another, "I belong to Peter," and still another, "I belong to Christ."

Is Christ divided?

⁹What? Is Christ divided? Was Paul crucified for you? Were you baptised in the name of Paul?

¹⁰I am thankful that I did not baptise any of you except Crispus and Gaius so that no one can say that I baptised you in my name. I also baptised the household of Stephanas.

^{*8} Apollos was a powerful preacher of the gospel and is spoken of in Acts 18:2-8.

1 CORINTHIANS 1

The wisdom of man is foolishness

¹¹Besides, Christ sent me not to baptise but to preach the gospel. Not with words of human wisdom lest the cross be emptied of its power for it is written, ***“I will destroy the wisdom of the wise.”***

¹²Where is the wise man and the scholar and the philosopher? Has not God made the wisdom of this world foolishness?

¹³For the world in all its wisdom knows not God. But God is pleased to save those who believe the ‘foolishness’ of what is preached.

¹⁴Jews demand signs and Greeks seek after wisdom, but we preach Christ crucified, a stumbling block to the Jews and foolishness to the Gentiles.

¹⁵But to those whom God has called, Christ is the power and wisdom of God. ¹⁶For the foolishness of God is wiser than the wisdom of man, and the weakness of God stronger than man’s strength.

¹⁷Be not deceived, if any of you regard yourselves as wise by the standards of the world, he should become a ‘fool,’ that he may become truly wise.

God chooses the weak and foolish of the world

¹⁸Brethren, think back to what you were before you were called. Not many of you were wise by human standards. Not many of you were influential or of noble birth. ¹⁹But God chose the foolish of the world to shame the wise, and the weak to shame the strong that no one might boast before him.

I did not preach to you with worldly wisdom but by the Spirit’s power

²⁰So when I came to you my brethren, I came not with persuasive words or superior wisdom, but with a demonstration of the Spirit’s power.

²¹I resolved to preach nothing but Jesus Christ and him crucified. ²²I came to you in weakness and with apprehension that your faith might not rest on man’s wisdom but on God’s power.

Yet there is secret knowledge of God that we only teach to the spiritually mature

²³Yet among the spiritually mature we teach a message of wisdom. Not the wisdom of this world which comes to nothing, but God’s secret knowledge that was hidden for our glory before time began.

²⁴For it is written, ***“Eye has not seen, nor ear heard, nor has it entered into the heart of man what God has prepared for those who love him.”***

²⁵But God has revealed it to us by his Spirit for the Holy Spirit knows all things even the thoughts of God.

God’s secret knowledge not understood without the Spirit

²⁶However to a man without the Holy Spirit it is foolishness. He cannot understand it. But with the Spirit we have the mind of Christ.

You Corinthians are still worldly and not yet spiritually mature

²⁷Brethren I am not yet able to speak to you as men who are spiritually mature. You are still worldly, mere infants in Christ. ²⁸I gave you milk for you were not ready for solid food. Indeed you are still not ready. ²⁹For if there is jealousy and division among you, are you not still worldly?

³⁰When one says, “I belong to Paul,” and another, “I belong to Apollos,” are you not mere men?

³¹Who is Apollos? Who is Paul? Only servants through whom you came to believe. I planted the seed, Apollos watered it, but God made it grow.

We must build on the foundation of Jesus Christ

³²We are only God’s workers, and you are his building. By the grace of God I laid a foundation and somebody else is building on it.

³³But each of you should be careful not to lay a foundation other than the one already laid, which is Jesus Christ. ³⁴If any man builds on this foundation his work will endure.

On the day of the Lord’s coming fire will test your works

³⁵For on the day of the Lord’s coming, fire will test the quality of each man’s work. ³⁶If what he has built survives, he will receive his reward. But if it is burned up he will suffer loss, although he himself may be saved but only as one escaping through flames.

So no more boasting about mere men

³⁷So then, no more boasting about mere men, whether Paul, Apollos or Peter. You are of Christ and Christ is of God.

³⁸We who teach you are servants of Christ and have been entrusted with the secret things of God.

³⁹I care little if I am judged by you, or by any human court, my conscience is clear. ⁴⁰But that does not make me innocent for it is the Lord who finally judges me.

When Jesus returns he will reward according to motives of the heart

⁴¹When the Lord returns he will bring to light all that is hidden and expose the motives of people’s hearts. At that time each will receive his reward from God.

Do not go beyond what is written

⁴²Now brethren, learn from Apollos and myself the meaning of this saying, ***“Go not beyond what is written.”*** Then you will not take pride in one man over another.

Faithful men to reign as kings in kingdom of God

⁴³You have become rich, you have become kings. How I wish you already reigned so that we might be kings with you.

We apostles suffer more than other men

⁴⁴It seems as if God has put we apostles at

the end of the procession, like men condemned to die in the arena. ⁴⁵We are made a spectacle of to angels and also to men.

⁴⁶We are fools for Christ. We are weak and dishonoured. We go hungry, thirsty and clothed in rags.

⁴⁷We are brutally treated and homeless. We work hard with our own hands.

⁴⁸When we are cursed, we bless. When we are persecuted, we endure. When we are slandered, we answer kindly.

⁴⁹Yet we are regarded as the scum of the earth.

Paul like a father to the Corinthians

⁵⁰I am not writing this to shame you but to warn you as my dear children. ⁵¹For though you may have ten thousand teachers of Christ you do not have many fathers. Through Jesus I became your father therefore I urge you to imitate me.

Paul sending Timothy to remind the Corinthians what he had taught them

⁵²For this reason I am sending you Timothy, my son in the gospel whom I love, who is faithful in the Lord.

⁵³He will remind you of my way of life in Christ Jesus which agrees with what I teach everywhere in the churches.

2

Paul to return and find out how much power the arrogant at Corinth possess

¹Now some of you have become arrogant, as if I were not returning to you. But I will return soon if the Lord be willing. ²Then I shall find out how much power these arrogant people have. For the kingdom of God is not a matter of talk but of power.

³What would you prefer? Am I to come with a whip or with a loving and gentle spirit?

A case of incest

⁴It is actually reported that there is sexual immorality among you, and of a kind that does not occur even among pagans. A man is living immorally with his father's wife.

You should have disfellowshipped the man

⁵And yet you are arrogant. Should you not rather be filled with grief and have disfellowshipped this man?

Hand this man over to Satan for destruction of his flesh that his spirit may be saved

⁶Even though I am not physically present I am with you in spirit and have passed judgement on this man as if I were present.

⁷When you next assemble in the name of our Lord Jesus, and I am with you in spirit and with the power of our Lord, hand this man over to Satan for the destruction of his flesh that his spirit may be saved on the day of the Lord.

Obtain fresh yeast of sincerity and truth

⁸Your boasting is not a good thing. A little yeast works through a whole batch of dough.

⁹Rid yourself of your old yeast of malice and evil. Make yourselves fresh dough with yeast of sincerity and truth.

Do not associate or eat with any sinful brother

¹⁰I previously wrote^{F*} instructing you not to associate with sexually immoral people. I did not mean the people of the world for to do that you would have to depart this world. I meant with anyone who calls himself a brother.

¹¹Also do not associate with nor even eat with any brother who is greedy, an idolater, a slanderer, a drunkard or a swindler.

Church leaders only to judge those of the church

¹²It is not for me to judge those outside of the church, we only judge those inside. God will judge those outside the church. ¹³So expel wicked men from among you.

How can you dare to take your disputes to be judged before the world?

¹⁴Also, when any of you have a dispute with another brother, how can you dare to take it before the world for judgement instead of before the saints?

The saints to judge the world and angels

¹⁵Do you not know that the saints are to judge the world? Surely you are competent to judge in trivial matters.

¹⁶Do you not also know that we shall judge angels? How much more then should you be able to judge the daily affairs of this life.

¹⁷I say this to shame you. ¹⁸Is there no one among you wise enough to judge a dispute among yourselves that one brother must go to a court of law against another, and in front of unbelievers?

Why not rather suffer wrong than have lawsuits among yourselves?

¹⁹The fact that you even have lawsuits among you demonstrates a defeat already. ²⁰Why not rather suffer wrong? Instead you yourselves wrong your brothers.

No sinner will inherit the kingdom of God

²¹Be not deceived, no fornicator, no idolater, no adulterer, no male prostitute, no sodomite, no thief, no greedy person, no drunkard, no slanderer, no swindler, will inherit the kingdom of God.

Former sinners among the Corinthians cleansed

²²And that is what some of you were, but you have been washed, sanctified,^{F*} and justified^{F*} in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the Spirit of our God.

I will not allow my body to be enslaved by sexual immorality

²³I have the freedom to do as I choose, but not everything is good. Therefore I will not allow myself to be enslaved by anything. ²⁴The

*¹⁰ This earlier letter from Paul to the Corinthians has been lost.

*²² To be sanctified means to become holy in God's eyes.

*²² To be justified means to be purified from all guilt of sin.

1 CORINTHIANS 3

body is not meant for sexual immorality but for the Lord.

²⁵By his power God raised Jesus from the dead and he will raise our bodies also.

He who unites himself with a harlot becomes one with her body

²⁶Do you not know that our bodies are members of Christ himself? Shall I then unite my body with a harlot? Never!

²⁷He who unites himself with a harlot becomes one with her in body for it is written, **“The two will become one flesh.”**

²⁸But he who unites himself with the Lord becomes one with him in spirit.

Flee from sexual immorality for your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit

²⁹Therefore flee from fornication.^{F*} All other sins a man commits are outside his body but he who sins sexually sins against his own body. ³⁰Do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit who is in you?

³¹You are not your own, you were bought for a price. Therefore honour God with your body.

3

Marry to avoid temptation to sexual immorality

¹Now for the matters you wrote about. It is well for a man not to touch a woman but because of temptation to immorality each man should have his own wife and each woman her own husband.

Do not deprive your spouse of conjugal rights

²The husband should allow his wife her conjugal rights, and likewise the wife her husband. For the wife's body belongs not only to her alone but also to her husband and in the same way the husband's body belongs to her.

³So do not deprive each other except perhaps by mutual agreement for a time in order to devote yourselves to prayer. Then come together again lest Satan tempt you because of your lack of self control.

Paul wishes all men could be like him

⁴I say this as a concession, not as a commandment. I wish that all were as I am but each man has his own calling from God.

Believers must not divorce

⁵To the married I give this commandment, (not I but the Lord): **“A wife should not leave her husband. But if she does she must remain single or else be reconciled to her husband. ⁶And a husband must not divorce his wife.”**

An unbelieving spouse willing to remain must not be divorced

⁷To the rest I say, (I, not the Lord): Any

^{*29} Fornication is a translation of the Greek word *'porneia'* which means any sexual relationship outside of marriage including adultery and incest. The city of Corinth was noted for its immorality. The temple of Aphrodite was located there, and was said by an historian of the day to have had over a thousand 'sacred' prostitutes.

believer, married to an unbeliever who is willing to remain with them, must not divorce.

An unbelieving spouse is made holy by the believing spouse

⁸For the unbelieving husband is made holy by the believing wife, and the unbelieving wife is made holy by the believing husband, otherwise your children would be unclean, but they are holy.



Aphrodite, Greek goddess of love whose worship in Corinth involved ritual prostitution on a large scale.

A believer is not bound to an unbelieving spouse if they leave

⁹However if an unbelieving spouse leaves, let them go. A believer is not bound in such circumstances for God has called us to live in peace. For how can you know if you will save your spouse?

A convert should remain in the situation he was in when God called him

¹⁰Now, every man should remain in the situation he was in when God called him. This is a rule I lay down in all the churches.

¹¹If you were a slave^{F*} when you were called let it not trouble you, but gain your freedom if you can, for you were bought at a price.

Circumcision not necessary – keeping the commandments is what counts

¹²If a man was uncircumcised when he was called, he should not seek to be circumcised. ¹³Circumcision is nothing. Keeping the commandments of God is what counts.

The single should not marry in view of impending crisis

¹⁴To those who are not yet married I have no command from the Lord, but I give you my opinion as one who is trustworthy by the Lord's

^{*11} More than half the population of Corinth were slaves.

mercy. ¹⁵Because of the impending crisis^{F*} I think it wise for you to remain single. But if you do marry you have not sinned. ¹⁶However those who marry will experience troubles and I want to spare you this.

The appointed time for the return of Christ has grown very short

¹⁷What I mean brethren is that the appointed time has grown very short. From now on even those who have wives should live as if they had none and also as if they had no possessions.

¹⁸Neither mourn nor rejoice, for this world in its present form is soon to pass away.^{F*} ¹⁹And I want you to be free of worries.

A single person is able to give undivided devotion to the Lord

²⁰Also, a single person is concerned about how they can please the Lord, but a married person is concerned about the affairs of this world and how they can please their spouse.

²¹I am saying this not to restrict you, but that you may live in undivided devotion to the Lord.

Better for a man to marry than to burn with lust

²²However if any man's passion is strong and he thinks he is acting improperly toward a virgin to whom he is betrothed and feels he ought to marry her, he should do so. It is better to marry than to burn with lust.

²³He who marries does right, but he who does not marry does even better.

A widow is free to re-marry but the man must be a believer

²⁴If a woman's husband dies she is free to marry another man, but that man must belong to the Lord.

²⁵However in my opinion she will be happier if she remains single and I think I have the Spirit of God.

4

Food sacrificed to idols

¹Now about food sacrificed to idols. An idol is of no account for it is written, **"there is no God but one."**

Only one God for us – the Father from whom all things are

²Even if there are so-called gods, both in heaven and on earth and there are many, yet for us there is only one God; the Father from whom all things are and for whom we exist.

*15 See note on verse 18 of this chapter.

*18 Paul's advice to the Corinthians on the inadvisability of marriage should be viewed in the light of the widespread belief at this time in the early church that the return of Christ with all of its associated trauma (see Revelation chapters 4 to 7) was imminent. It appears that the second coming of Jesus Christ had been linked with the coming destruction of Jerusalem and the temple which took place in AD 70, about 15 years after Paul wrote this letter. This is understandable as the gospel accounts mingle the prophecies Jesus made of these two major events. John's book of Revelation which sets out more clearly the events leading up to the second coming was still 40 years away. In Paul's letter to Timothy many years later he counseled young widows to marry and have children (1 Timothy 3:9).

Only one Lord – Jesus Christ through whom all things are

³And one Lord, Jesus Christ through whom all things are and through whom we exist.

Food sacrificed to idols

⁴But not all know this. Some when they eat food sacrificed to idols are so accustomed to idols that they think of it as having been sacrificed to an actual god, and since their conscience is weak, for them the food is defiled.

Food does not bring us near to God

⁵But food does not bring us near to God. We are no worse off if we eat, or better off if we do not eat.

But do not wound the conscience of a weak brother

⁶Be careful however that the exercise of your freedom does not become a stumbling block to the weak among you. ⁷A weak brother for whom Christ died can be destroyed by your knowledge.

⁸When you wound the weak conscience of a brother you sin against Christ. ⁹Therefore if the meat I eat causes my brother to fall I will never eat meat again.

Knowledge puffs up but love builds up

¹⁰Knowledge puffs up, but love builds up. ¹¹The man who thinks he is knowledgeable does not yet know what he ought to know.

The God who accompanied the Israelites of old was Christ the Rock

¹²Remember brethren, that our forefathers all passed through the sea and were with Moses under the cloud.^{F*} ¹³They all ate the same spiritual food^{F*} and drank from the spiritual rock that accompanied them, and that Rock was Christ.^{F*}

Paul reminds the Corinthians of how the Israelites of old suffered because of sin

¹⁴Nevertheless, God was not pleased with most of them and their bodies fell all over the desert. This occurred as an example to keep us from setting our hearts on evil things as they did.

¹⁵So do not be idolaters or sexually immoral as some of them were, for in one day 23,000 died.

¹⁶Do not test Christ as some of them did, and were killed by venomous snakes.

¹⁷Do not complain as some of them did and were killed by the destroying angel.

*12 The cloud that concealed the glory of the Lord as he led Moses and the Israelites out of Egypt.

*13 Manna, that miraculously descended six nights every week.

*13 Paul reveals here that Jehovah who led the Israelites in their exodus from Egypt was not God the Father (who is also named or titled Jehovah meaning Eternal) but the Christ, the pre-mortal Jesus (see also Jude 1:5). The words of Jesus also support this when he said, referring to himself, *"Blessed is he who comes in the name of Jehovah"* (Matt-Mark-Luke 24:41). This also removes the apparent contradiction in the statement of John, *"No one has seen God the Father, but the Only Begotten Son"* (John 1:8), for Moses, Joshua, Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and 70 elders of Israel all saw the pre-mortal Christ as Jehovah on Mount Horeb (Exodus 15:18) and all the Israelites saw him together at the dedication of the Tabernacle at Sinai (Leviticus 2:3).

1 CORINTHIANS 5

God will not allow you to be tempted beyond what you can bear

¹⁸Therefore if you think you are standing firm, watch that you do not fall. ¹⁹Yet no temptation will seize you but that which is common to all.

²⁰And God will not allow you to be tempted beyond what you can bear, he will provide a way for you to escape.

Idolatry is worship of demons

²¹Therefore my beloved, shun the worship of idols. I speak to a sensible people.

²²Is not the cup we bless and the bread we break a sharing in the blood and body of Christ? So it is with those who partake of sacrifices offered to idols.

²³I do not imply that idols are of any account, but I do imply that the sacrifices of idolaters are offered to demons.

Do we want to arouse the Lord's jealousy?

²⁴I do not want you to be sharers with demons. You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons also. ²⁵Do we want to arouse the Lord's jealousy? Are we stronger than he?

Rules for eating of meat that may have been offered to idols

²⁶However you may eat anything sold in the meat market for it is written ***"The earth is the Lord's and everything in it."*** ²⁷Therefore if an unbeliever invites you to a meal and you go, eat what is put before you.

²⁸But if some one warns you saying, "This food has been offered in sacrifice," then do not eat of it for the sake of the conscience of the person who warned you.

²⁹Whenever you eat or drink do so for the glory of God.

Follow my example by seeking the good of others that they may be saved

³⁰Do not cause anybody to stumble, even as I try to please everybody in every way. For I am not seeking my own good but the good of others that they may be saved. ³¹Follow my example as I follow the example of Christ.

³²I thank you for holding to the teachings, just as I passed them on to you.

5

Paul answers his critics

¹Now this is my defence to those of you who criticise me. Am I not free? Am I not an apostle and have seen Jesus our Lord? Are you not the result of my work in the Lord? ²Even though I may not be an apostle to others, I am to you. You are the seal of my apostleship.

Apostles have a right of support

³Do not all we apostles have the right to food and drink, and the right to take a wife along with us as do the other apostles and the Lord's brothers and Peter?

⁴Is it only Barnabas and I who must work for a living?

⁵Who serves as a soldier at his own expense? Who plants a vineyard and eats not of its grapes? Who tends a flock and does not drink the milk?

⁶It is written, ***"Do not muzzle an ox while it is treading the grain."*** Is it only oxen that God is concerned about? Surely he says this for us also?

⁷If I and my companions have sown spiritual seed among you, is it too much that we reap a material harvest from you? If others are supported by you, should not we have it all the more?

Barnabas and I did not claim our right of support

⁸But we did not claim this right. On the contrary we put up with anything rather than hinder the gospel of Christ.

⁹I am not writing this in the hope that you will do such things for me. ¹⁰I would rather die than be deprived of my boast, that although I am compelled to preach the gospel, and woe to me if I do not preach it, I preach it willingly and free of charge, not claiming my right of support.

I become all things to all men that I might save some

¹¹I am a free man but I make myself a slave to all to win as many as possible. To the Jews I become a Jew, to the Gentiles a Gentile. To the weak I become weak.

¹²I become all things to all men that by every possible means I might save some and share the blessings of the gospel.

I discipline and master myself to win the prize

¹³In a race all runners run, but only one wins the prize. ¹⁴Therefore I do not run aimlessly. I do not fight like a man punching the air. ¹⁵No I discipline and master my body, so that after I have preached to others I myself will not be disqualified from the prize.

6

The head of a woman is her husband and the head of the husband is Christ

¹Now I wish you to understand that the head of the woman is her husband, and the head of the husband is Christ, and the head of Christ is God.

A man should pray with his head uncovered and a woman with her head veiled

²A man dishonours his head if he prays or prophesies with his head covered, and a woman dishonours her head if she prays or prophesies with her head unveiled.

Man the image of God and woman the glory of man

³A man should not cover his head since he is the image and glory of God, but a woman is the glory of man. ⁴For man did not come from woman but woman from man. Neither was man created for woman, but woman for man.

⁵For this reason, and because of the angels a woman ought to wear a sign of her submissiveness on her head.

⁶However neither women nor men are independent of each other in the Lord, for although woman came from man, man is born of woman and both come from God.

**Long hair a disgrace to a man
but an enhancement for a woman**

⁷Judge for yourselves if it is proper for a woman to pray to God with her head unveiled. ⁸Does not nature itself teach you that long hair is a disgrace to a man? ⁹But if a woman has long hair it enhances her glory, for long hair is given to her as a covering.

¹⁰If anyone is disposed to disagree about this I say that we recognise no other practice, nor do the other churches of God.

**Corinthians doing more harm
than good when they meet together**

¹¹Now in the following directives I have no praise for you, for when you meet together you are doing more harm than good.

Divisions in the Corinthians church

¹²In the first place, I hear that when you meet together there are divisions among you, and to some extent I believe it. ¹³But no doubt there will be some divisions to distinguish which of you are approved of God.

**Inconsiderate eating habits
when met together as a church**

¹⁴Secondly, when you meet together prior to the Lord's Supper each of you hasten to eat your own food without consideration for anybody else.^{F*} One remains hungry while another gets drunk.

¹⁵Do you not have homes to eat and drink in? And why do you despise the church of God by humiliating those who bring nothing to eat? ¹⁶Shall I praise you for this? Certainly not.

The Lord's Supper clarified

¹⁷Now as regards the Lord's Supper, this is what I received from the Lord and passed on to you: ¹⁸On the night Jesus was betrayed he took bread, and when he had given thanks he broke it and said, "**This is my body, do this in remembrance of me.**"

¹⁹In the same way after the supper, he took the wine cup saying, "**This cup is the new covenant of my blood, drink it in remembrance of me.**"

²⁰So whenever you eat this bread and drink this wine you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

**Partaking of the Lord's Supper unworthily
a cause of ill health**

²¹Whoever partakes of the Lord's Supper unworthily is guilty of sinning against the body and blood of the Lord.

*14 The Corinthians would first eat together before a church service in what they called an Agape Feast, each family bringing their own food, and then afterwards they would hold the service during which they would partake of the broken bread and wine of the Lord's Supper.

²²Therefore you ought to examine yourselves first, for anyone who eats the bread and drinks of the cup unworthily, eats and drinks damnation not acknowledging the body of the Lord. ²³That is why many of you are weak and sick and some of you have died.

²⁴The Lord disciplines us in this way so that we will not be condemned with the world.

Eat at home first if very hungry

²⁵Brethren, when you assemble to eat together, wait for each other. ²⁶If anyone is very hungry he should eat at home first so that you will not be condemned.

²⁷When I come I will give you further directions on this matter.

7

Corinthians warned of false spirits

¹Now brethren, concerning spiritual gifts. When you were pagans you were led astray to dumb idols. ²Therefore I want you to understand that no one will ever say "Let Jesus be cursed," when speaking by the Spirit of God, nor will they say "Jesus is Lord," except by the Holy Spirit.^{F*}

**There are a variety of spiritual
gifts and manifestations**

³There are a variety of gifts but it is the same Spirit who manifests them, and there are a variety of manifestations but the same Lord. To each person is given a manifestation for the common good.

Gifts of the Spirit

⁴To one is given through the Spirit the teaching of wisdom, to another the teaching of knowledge, to another to have great faith, to another gifts of healing. ⁵To another the performing of miracles, to another prophecy, to another discerning between spirits, to another speaking in different tongues, and to still another the interpretation of tongues.^{F*}

**The various gifts likened to the different
uses of the parts of the body**

⁶Now the body is not made up of one part but of many. The foot or the ear cannot say, "I do not belong to the body," and if the whole body were an eye, where would the hearing be? Or an ear, where would the sense of smell be?

⁷God has so arranged the parts in the body that if one part suffers, every part suffers, and if one part is honoured, every part rejoices with it. ⁸And so it is with you who are parts of the body of Christ.

Gifts and callings ranked in importance

⁹God has appointed first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then workers of miracles, those having gifts of healing, those

*2 Paul is referring to utterances made under the influence of the Holy Spirit. A person in a normal state of mind could make either statement insincerely.

*5 This is not a complete list of the gifts of the Spirit. In his letter to the Romans, Paul also lists six other gifts, i.e. Service, Teaching, Encouraging, Giving, Leadership and Mercy (Romans 6:2-4) and in the following verses of this chapter Paul speaks of the greatest Holy Spirit gift of all, the gift of Love.

1 CORINTHIANS 7

having charity, those with gifts of administration, and those who speak in different kinds of tongues.

¹⁰Are all apostles? Are all prophets? Are all teachers? Do all work miracles? Do all have gifts of healing? ¹¹Do all speak in tongues? Do all interpret? No. But eagerly desire the greater gifts.

The more excellent gift of love

¹²Now I will reveal to you a still more excellent gift. ¹³If I speak in the tongues of men and of angels but have not love, I am only a noisy gong or a clanging cymbal.

¹⁴If I have the gift of prophecy and can understand all mysteries and all knowledge, and if I have faith that can move mountains but have not love, I am nothing.

¹⁵If I give all I have to the poor and sacrifice my body to be burned but have not love, I gain nothing.

Love defined

¹⁶Love is patient, love is kind, love does not envy, does not boast, is not proud. Love is not rude, nor self-seeking, nor easily angered, and keeps no record of wrongs.

¹⁷Love delights not in evil but rejoices in truth. Love always protects, always trusts, ever hopes, ever perseveres. ¹⁸Love never fails.

Most of the spiritual gifts will be unnecessary in kingdom of God

¹⁹When perfection comes^{F*} our prophecies will cease, our tongues will be stilled and our knowledge will pass away. ²⁰For our prophecies and our knowledge are imperfect, but when perfection comes, the imperfect disappears.

²¹When I was a child I thought like a child, but when I became a man I put childish ways behind me.

²²Now we see through a mirror darkly, but when perfection comes we shall see face to face. Now I know in part but then I shall know in full.

Only faith, hope and love will remain

²³When perfection comes, only these three will remain, faith, hope, and love and the greatest of these is love.

Eagerly desire the other spiritual gifts especially to prophesy

²⁴So follow the way of love, but eagerly desire the other spiritual gifts especially the gift of prophecy.

²⁵For he who speaks in a tongue does not speak to men, but to God. Indeed, no man understands him. He utters mysteries in the Spirit.

²⁶On the other hand, he who prophesies speaks to men for their strengthening, encouragement and comfort.

²⁷But he who speaks in a tongue edifies only himself, whereas he who prophesies edifies the

whole church.

What good is speaking in tongues in church if no one understands?

²⁸I would like every one of you to speak in tongues, but I would rather you all prophesy. ²⁹He who prophesies is greater than he who speaks in tongues, unless he interprets, so that the church may be edified.

³⁰If I come to you brethren and speak in tongues, what good will I be to you unless I bring you some revelation, or knowledge, or prophecy or word of instruction?

³¹If the trumpet sounds an unclear call, who will prepare himself for battle?

Pray that you may interpret what you say when you speak in a tongue

³²Anyone who speaks in a tongue should pray that he may interpret what he says.

³³For if I pray in a tongue my spirit prays but my mind is unfruitful. So what shall I do? I will pray with my spirit but I will also pray with my mind. ³⁴I will sing with my spirit but I will also sing with my mind.

³⁵And if you are praising God with your spirit, how can those who do not understand you say Amen to your prayer? ³⁶You may be praising well enough but they are not edified.

³⁷I thank God that I speak in tongues more than you all, but in the church I would rather speak five understandable words to instruct others, than ten thousand words in a tongue.

If all spoke in tongues, unbelievers who came in would say you are mad

³⁸Brethren, stop thinking like children except in regard to evil. Tongues are a sign for unbelievers^{F*} while prophecy is for believers. However, if when the church met together everybody spoke in tongues and some unbelievers came in, would they not say that you are all mad?

But if all prophesy, an unbeliever would be convicted that he is a sinner

³⁹But if everybody prophesied and an unbeliever came in he would be convicted that he is a sinner and be called to account, for the secrets of his heart would be laid bare. ⁴⁰He would fall down and worship God exclaiming, "God is really among you."

Try to excel in gifts that build up the church

⁴¹So it is with you. Unless you speak understandable words with your tongue how will anyone know what you are saying? You will just be speaking into the air.

⁴²Therefore since you are eager to have

*38 This verse may seem on the surface to be contradictory, but Paul is stating that the ultimate purpose of the gift of tongues is to prepare foreign language speaking unbelievers to receive the preaching of the gospel, as happened on the day of Pentecost. On that day 3000 joined the church (Acts chapter 2). It appears that when this gift is used properly, as was the case at Pentecost, it can be an undeniable sign of divine power to an unbeliever. Whereas in an uncontrolled situation such as Paul depicts, when an unbeliever walks into a church where everybody is speaking in tongues for their own gratification, the unbeliever could well regard them as all mad. (See also the note on the different manifestations of tongues on verse 45 of this chapter.)

*19 is The eventual perfection of the Kingdom of God, following the resurrection.

spiritual gifts, try to excel in gifts that build up the church.

Rules governing tongues in church meetings

⁴³What then shall we conclude brethren? When you meet together and one is given a hymn, a revelation, a tongue, or an interpretation, all is well and good for the strengthening of the church. ⁴⁴But if anyone speaks in a tongue, only two, or at the most three should speak, one at a time, and someone must interpret.

⁴⁵If there is no interpreter the speaker should remain silent in the church and pray only in his spirit to God. ^{F*}

Rules governing prophecy in church meetings

⁴⁶Also only two or three prophets should speak and the others weigh carefully what is said. ⁴⁷If a prophecy comes to another, the first speaker should cease. Prophecy in turn that all may be instructed and edified. ⁴⁸Prophets should have control over their gift for God is not a God of confusion but of order.

See that everything is done in a orderly way

⁴⁹Therefore my brethren, be eager to prophesy. Do not forbid speaking in tongues, but see that everything is done in a orderly way.

Women should not speak in church

⁵⁰And as in all the congregations of the saints, your women should not speak in church but be in submission as the Law requires. ⁵¹If they wish to inquire about something let them ask their husbands at home, for it is improper for a woman to speak in church.

8

Paul reminds the Corinthians of the gospel he preached to them

¹Now brethren I want to remind you of the gospel I preached to you. Only by this gospel are you saved, provided you hold firmly to the word. Otherwise you will have believed in vain.

²Christ died for our sins, was buried, and was raised on the third day, according to the

*45 The gift of tongues appears to manifest in two ways. Firstly, speaking fluently under the influence of the Holy Spirit one or more previously unlearned earth languages. Modern speakers in tongues report that they sometimes speak several different languages, eight in one particular instance, one after the other. Also the person speaking the unknown language typically does not understand the words flowing out of his or her mouth. On the day of Pentecost (Acts chapter 2) the apostles appeared to experience this first gift when they spoke fluently in many earth languages which they did not previously know. This was for a sign of power to the hearers, to facilitate conversion of unbelievers which Paul says is the ultimate purpose of tongues (1 Corinthians 7:38). The second manifestation of tongues is speaking, preaching, prophesying, praying, praising, or singing in the pure language of angels for personal or group edification. This second gift is the one manifested among the Corinthians which Paul is writing about. In this manifestation of tongues a person's spirit is in control, not the conscious mind, as Paul pointed out in verse 33 of this chapter. When both the gift of tongues and the gift of interpretation are combined, the effect is virtually the same as prophecy. Prophecy is any divinely inspired speaking in the normal language of the people, not just the foretelling of future events. Demons can of course easily mimic both the gift of tongues and prophecy. There is ample evidence of this from Paul's day down to our own.

scriptures. ³He appeared to Peter and then to the other apostles. After that he appeared to more than 500 brethren at the same time, most of whom are still alive.

⁴Then he appeared to his brother James and again to all the apostles. Last of all he appeared to me.

Paul calls himself the least of the apostles

⁵But I am the least of the apostles, and do not even deserve to be called an apostle, for I persecuted the church of God.

Paul has worked harder than all of the other apostles

⁶But by the grace of God I am what I am, and by his grace I have worked harder than all the other apostles.

Paul answers those who doubt resurrection of the dead

⁷Whether by them, or I, this is what we preach, that Christ has been raised from the dead. So how can some of you say there is no resurrection of the dead?

Your faith is in vain if there is no resurrection

⁸If there is no resurrection of the dead then not even Christ has been raised, and our preaching is in vain and so is your faith.

⁹More than that, we would be false witnesses for we have testified that God raised Christ from the dead.

¹⁰If Christ has not been raised you are still in your sins, and those among you who have died are lost.

Baptism for the dead

¹¹If there is no resurrection and the dead are not raised at all, why then are people baptised for the dead? ^{F*}

Why do we missionaries risk our lives if there is no resurrection?

¹²And as for us, why do we risk our lives every hour? I die every day. Did I fight wild beasts in Ephesus for merely human reasons?

¹³If the dead are not raised, "**Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die.**" ^{F*}

¹⁴Return to your senses and cease to sin, for there are some among you who are ignorant of God. I say this to your shame.

The truth of the resurrection reaffirmed

¹⁵But Christ has indeed been raised from the dead, the firstfruit of those who have died. For as through Adam all died, so through Christ will all be made alive. ¹⁶Christ the firstfruit, then when he returns, those who belong to him will be raised.

Christ to reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet

¹⁷Then the end will come and Christ will reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet. The last enemy to be destroyed will be death.

*11 In the early church, believers were baptised on behalf of those who had died without baptism.

*13 Paul is quoting from Isaiah 21:10.

1 CORINTHIANS 8

Jesus to eventually hand the kingdom over to God the Father

¹⁸After he has gained all dominion and power he will hand over the kingdom to God the Father. ¹⁹When he has done this, the Son himself will be subject to the Father that God may be all in all.

Varying degrees of glory in resurrected bodies

²⁰But one may ask, "How are the dead raised? And with what kind of body will they come forth?"

²¹Foolish questions. When you sow a seed it does not come to life unless it dies. ²²And you do not plant the body that will be, but the bare kernel. Then God returns to each seed its own kind of body. ²³So too with bodies of flesh. Men are of one kind, animals another, birds another and fish yet another.

²⁴And just as heavenly bodies vary in glory, for the sun has one degree of glory, the moon another, and the stars another, and star differs from star in glory, so too will it be in the resurrection of the dead.

The perishable body is raised in glory and power

²⁵The perishable body that is sown is raised imperishable. Although sown in dishonour and weakness, it is raised in glory and power.

²⁶It is sown an earthly body but raised a spiritual body,^{F*} for if there is an earthly body there is also a spiritual body.

We shall bear the likeness of Jesus Christ

²⁷And just as we have borne the likeness of Adam the first earthly man, so then shall we bear the likeness of him who came down from heaven. ²⁸For flesh and blood^{F*} cannot inherit the kingdom of God. That which is perishable cannot inherit the imperishable.

Instant resurrection for all the righteous at the last trumpet

²⁹I will reveal to you a mystery. We will not all sleep in the earth, but at the last trumpet^{F*} we shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye, for when the trumpet sounds the dead will be raised and we shall be changed. Our mortal body will be clothed with immortality.

O death where is your sting?

³⁰Then what is written will come to pass, "**Where O death is your victory? Where**

O death is your sting? Death has been swallowed up in victory."

³¹The sting of death is sin, but thanks be to God he has given us victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.

³²Therefore my dear brethren stand firm and give yourselves fully to the work of the Lord for it is not in vain.

The collection for the saints at Jerusalem

³³Now regarding the collection for God's people at Jerusalem. On the first day of every week^{F*} each one of you should contribute a sum of money in keeping with his income. Store it all up so that when I come no collection will have to be made. ³⁴I will send those whom you approve to take your gift to Jerusalem, and I might go with them.

Paul writing from Ephesus

³⁵But I may stay with you a while when I come or even spend the winter with you. ³⁵However I will remain here at Ephesus until Pentecost for a great door of effective work has opened to me. But there are many who oppose me.

Care for Timothy's needs when he arrives

³⁶When Timothy arrives, care for his needs and send him on his way in peace so that he may return to me.

Apollos to come when he has the opportunity

³⁷Now about our brother Apollos. I urged him to return to you with the other brethren but he was unwilling at this time. But he says that he will come to you when he has the opportunity.

Stand firm and do everything in love

³⁸Be ever on your guard. Stand firm in the faith. Be men of courage and strength, and do all things in love.

Paul acknowledges the three brethren who visited him from Corinth

³⁹I was glad when Stephanas and Fortunatus and Achaicus arrived^{F*} for they supplied what was lacking from you. ⁴⁰They refreshed my spirit. Such men deserve recognition.

Greetings from those with Paul

⁴¹The churches here in the province of Asia send you greetings. Aquila and Priscilla greet you warmly in the Lord, as does the church that meets in their house. ⁴²All the brethren here send you their greetings. Greet one another with a holy kiss.

Paul writes a greeting with his own hand

⁴³I Paul now write this greeting in my own hand.^{F*} If anyone has no love for the Lord a curse be upon him.

⁴⁴Come soon O Lord. The grace of the Lord Jesus be with you and my love to all of you. Amen.

*33 ie every Sunday when they meet.

*39 Probably the three men who brought the letter to Paul from Corinth.

*43 A security precaution to ensure authenticity, (see 2 Thessalonians 2:8). Paul normally dictated his letters to a scribe.

*26 A resurrected body is spiritual to the extent that it can pass through walls, but is nevertheless tangible flesh and can eat and drink for when Jesus appeared to his apostles in a closed room after his resurrection he invited them to touch him. He then deliberately ate food in front of them (Matt-Mark-Luke 35:41-44). Jesus also told his apostles at the last supper that he would drink new wine with them in the kingdom of God (Matt-Mark-Luke 30:26).

*28 The words 'flesh and blood' are used here to describe a mortal unresurrected person, however a resurrected person also has flesh and bone (blood is not mentioned) but of a higher imperishable order for Jesus said after his resurrection, "Touch me and see, a spirit has not flesh and bones as you see I have" (Matt-Mark-Luke 35:45).

*29 Trumpets are to herald the various events when Jesus returns, and the final trumpet will announce the first resurrection, that of the righteous dead. The unrighteous dead will not be resurrected until after the 1000 year reign of Christ upon the earth, known as the Millennium (Revelation 16:7).

2 CORINTHIANS

Since writing his earlier letter, 1 Corinthians approx a year ago, Paul is now on his second mission and has revisited the troublesome Corinthian church, a visit which he describes as *'painful'* (2 Corinthians 1:28). After this visit he sent them another letter (now lost) written in *'great anguish of heart and with many tears'* and informed the Corinthians that he planned to visit them again on his way to Macedonia.

However in his anxiety as to how his severe letter was received by the Corinthians, Paul could not bring himself to visit as intended and instead went directly to Macedonia. But Titus who probably delivered the severe letter to the Corinthians has brought back to Paul a favourable report.

A greatly relieved Paul now writes again, this time to cement home the repentance brought about by his previous letter, and to inform the Corinthians why he did not visit them as planned. He also reminds them of the collection for the Jerusalem saints and warns them again about false teachers, Jewish Pharisee converts to Christianity who were still clinging to the old Law of Moses and who were *'masquerading as apostles,'* preaching a false gospel and trying to discredit Paul.

2 Corinthians is a very emotional letter. Paul bares his soul and reveals the tremendous depth of his fatherly love for the Corinthians as he answers the charges made by his critics.

AUTHOR Paul the apostle.

For God loves a cheerful giver. 2 Corinthians 2:21.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Paul's introduction	1	We wage war with weapons of divine power	3
Suffering produces patient endurance	1	Disobedience among believers to be punished	3
God delivered us from hardships in Ephesus	1	I shall not be put to shame	3
Our fleeting troubles achieve everlasting glory	1	Some say my letters strong but my presence weak ..	3
All must appear before judgement seat of Christ.....	1	Some false apostles boast of themselves	3
Christ became sin for us	1	Only he whom the Lord commends is approved	3
Help us with your prayers	1	We can boast for we brought you the gospel	3
Let us boast of each other when Jesus returns	1	We also hope to preach in lands beyond you	3
Hardships Paul and his companions endure	1	Put up with my foolishness for I am jealous for you...3	3
You withheld your love from us	1	I fear you may be deceived by false preachers	3
Make room for us in your hearts	1	I am not the least inferior to these 'super apostles'...3	3
Why I did not visit as planned	1	Was I wrong to preach to you free of charge?	3
Why I wrote harshly in my last letter	1	These boasters masquerade as apostles	3
Forgive any among you who have caused pain	1	Satan himself masquerades as an angel of light	3
I had no peace of mind on my journey	1	Let me boast a little as a fool	3
My joy was great when I heard from Titus	1	I have worked harder than all these others	3
I do not now regret the sorrow my letter caused	1	Paul boasts of dangers he has passed through	3
Godly sorrow brings genuine repentance	1	I also carry the burden of all the churches	3
We were delighted to see how happy Titus was	1	I have been caught up to Paradise	3
You had repented	1	I will refrain from boasting further	3
Macedonia gave generously for Jerusalem saints.....	2	Let some think more of me than is warranted	3
A willing gift is an acceptable gift	2	I was given a messenger from Satan	3
We desire equality among the saints	2	To keep me from becoming conceited	3
You were first to give so bring it to completion	2	Three times I pleaded with Lord for it to leave me ...3	3
Titus and two other brothers are coming to you	2	I rejoice in my weaknesses	3
May you excel in your giving	2	That Christ's power may rest on me	3
We are taking pains to do right regarding this gift	2	I did miracles among you that mark a true apostle ...3	3
No real need for me to write to you about giving	2	I was never a burden to you	3
Have the donations ready when I come	2	I am ready to visit Corinth a third time	4
Let I be ashamed	2	Paul accused of being crafty	4
Whoever sows generously reaps generously	2	We are not defending ourselves	4
God loves a cheerful giver	2	I fear I still may find sin among you	4
God is able to provide your every need	2	When I come I will not spare these ones	4
Paul accused of worldliness	3	Test yourselves	4

2 CORINTHIANS 1

Be not yoked together with unbelievers4
We pray that you will do what is right4
Paul hopes that he will not need to be harsh4

Be of one mind and you will live in peace4
Greetings from the saints in Macedonia4

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Paul's introduction

¹Paul an apostle of Christ Jesus and Timothy our brother, to the church of God in Corinth and all the saints throughout Achaia.^{F*} ²Grace and peace to you all from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

Suffering produces patient endurance

³Praise be to the Father, the God of compassion who comforts us in our troubles so that we in turn can comfort others.

⁴We know that you too share in our suffering, which suffering produces patient endurance. You also share in our comfort.

God delivered us from severe hardships in Ephesus

⁵We want you to know brethren of the hardships we suffered in Ephesus. They were unbearable and in our hearts we felt the sentence of death.

⁶This happened that we might not trust in ourselves but trust in God. For we know that God who raised the Lord Jesus from the dead will also raise us by Jesus, and bring us with you into his presence.

Our fleeting troubles are achieving an incomparable everlasting glory

⁷Therefore we do not lose heart, for although our bodies are perishing, inwardly we are being renewed every day. ⁸Our fleeting troubles are achieving for us an incomparable everlasting glory.

We all must appear before the judgement seat of Christ

⁹We live in the body by faith not by sight, but would prefer to be at home with the Lord.

¹⁰Therefore we labour to please him, for we must all appear before the judgement seat of Christ to receive our due for the things we did in the flesh, whether good or bad.

Christ became sin for us

¹¹Therefore we implore you on Christ's behalf to be reconciled to God, for God made Christ who was without sin, to become sin for us that we might become righteous before God.

¹²He delivered us from the deadly peril and will continue to deliver us.

Help us with your prayers

¹³You also must help us with your prayers, so that many will give thanks for the blessings granted us through many prayers. ¹⁴For our conscience allows us to boast that we have conducted ourselves in all holiness before God, not in worldly wisdom but by God's grace.

Let us boast of each other when Jesus returns

¹⁵I hope that you can boast of us just as we will boast of you on the day that the Lord Jesus returns.

Hardships Paul and his companions endure

¹⁶We put no obstacle in anybody's way, rather in all that we do we strive to be servants of God, enduring great troubles, hardships and distress. ¹⁷Beatings, imprisonment, riots, hard toil, sleepless nights and hunger.

¹⁸In purity, understanding, patience and kindness. ¹⁹In the Holy Spirit and in sincere love. In truthful speech and in the power of God, with weapons of righteousness.

²⁰Through glory and dishonour, bad report and good report, being genuine yet treated as impostors, dying yet living on, being beaten but not killed. ²¹Sorrowful yet rejoicing, poor yet making many rich, having nothing yet possessing all things.

You withheld your love from us

²²We spoke freely to you Corinthians, and opened wide our hearts to you. ²³We did not withhold our love but you withheld yours from us.

Make room for us in your hearts

²⁴Make room for us in your hearts. We have not wronged or corrupted or exploited you. You have such a place in our hearts that we would die with you.

²⁵I have great confidence and pride in you. I am greatly encouraged. Despite all our troubles my joy knows no bounds.

Why I did not visit Corinth as planned

²⁶I had planned to visit you on my way to Macedonia and again on my return. ²⁷These plans were not made lightly, and I call upon God as my witness that it was only in order to spare you that I did not come as planned.

²⁸For I made up my mind not to make another painful visit. For if I cause you pain who is there left to bring me joy?

Why I wrote harshly in my last letter

²⁹I wrote as I did in my last letter so that when I came to you I would not suffer pain from those who ought to bring me joy. I wanted my joy to be the joy of you all.

³⁰I wrote to you out of great anguish of heart and with many tears, not to cause you pain but to let you know the depth of my love for you.

³¹The reason I wrote was to see if you would abide a test and be obedient in all things.

Forgive any among you who have caused pain

³²If any one has caused pain, he has caused

*1 Achaia was the Roman name for southern Greece.

it not only to me but to some extent to all of you. ³³For such a one the torment of the pain he has inflicted on the majority is sufficient punishment for him.

³⁴Now you should forgive and comfort such a one that he not be overwhelmed by excessive sorrow. Reaffirm your love for him.

³⁵If you forgive anyone I will also forgive him, in order that Satan might not gain the advantage over us. For we are not blind to his schemes.

I had no peace of mind on my journey to Macedonia

³⁶When we reached Troas I found the Lord had opened a door for me to preach the gospel there. ³⁷But I had no peace of mind for I did not find Titus there.^{F*} So we left Troas and went direct to Macedonia.

My joy was greater than ever when I heard the good news from Titus

³⁸When we got to Macedonia we still had no rest but were harassed at every turn.

³⁹But then God comforted us by the coming of Titus and by the comfort you had given him. He told us of your longing for me, of your deep sorrow and your ardent concern. ⁴⁰My joy was greater than ever before.

I do not now regret the sorrow my letter caused

⁴¹Even though I caused you sorrow by my letter, I do not regret it. Though for a short time I did. ⁴²Now I am happy for your sorrow has led you to repentance.

Godly sorrow brings genuine repentance

⁴³Godly sorrow brings repentance that leads to salvation and leaves no regret, but worldly sorrow leads to Death.

⁴⁴See what this godly sorrow has produced in you. What earnestness and eagerness to clear yourselves, what indignation, what alarm, what longing and concern and readiness to see justice done. ⁴⁵At every point you have proved yourselves innocent in this matter.

We were delighted to see how happy Titus was at your repentance

⁴⁶By all this we are encouraged. We were delighted to see how happy Titus was. His spirit has been refreshed by all of you.

⁴⁷I had boasted to him about you and you have not put me to shame. All I said about you has proved to be true. ⁴⁸And his love for you is all the greater for you received him with obedience, reverence, and trembling.

2

The churches here in Macedonia have given generously for the saints in Jerusalem

¹And now brethren, we want you to know of the grace God has given the churches here in

Macedonia. In the midst of severe trials their overflowing joy and deep poverty brought forth a rich generosity.

A willing gift is an acceptable gift

²For they donated as much as they were able, and beyond to give to the saints in Jerusalem. In fact they pleaded with us for the privilege of sharing in this giving. ³And when there is a willingness the gift is acceptable.

We desire equality among the saints

⁴Our desire is not that the Jerusalem saints might be relieved while others are burdened, but that there be equality.

⁵At the present time your plenty will supply what they need, and in time their plenty will supply what you need.

You were the first to give so bring it to completion

⁶Last year you were the first to give, and also the first to have a desire to do so. ⁷So we have urged Titus to bring to completion this act of love on your part. Finish the work according to your means.

Titus and two other brothers are coming to you

⁸I thank God, who has placed in the heart of Titus the same love I have for you. He is returning to you with much enthusiasm and on his own initiative.

⁹We are sending along with him the brother who is praised by all the churches for his service to the gospel. And also our brother who has often proved to us that he is zealous.^{F*}

¹⁰Show these men the proof of your love and the reason for our pride in you.

May you excel in your giving

¹¹Just as you excel in faith, and in speaking, and in knowledge and sincerity and in your love for us, may you also excel in this act of giving.

¹²I am not commanding you, rather I want to test the sincerity of your love by comparing it with the sincerity of others.

We are taking pains to do right regarding this gift

¹³To avoid any criticism of the way we administer this gift we are taking pains to do it right, not only in the eyes of the Lord but also in the eyes of men.

There is really no need for me to write to you about giving

¹⁴There is really no need for me to write to you about this gift to the saints. I know of your eagerness to donate. ¹⁵I have been boasting about it to the Macedonians telling them that you have been ready to give since last year. Your enthusiasm has stirred most of them to action.

Have the donations ready when I come lest I be ashamed

¹⁶So I am sending the brethren to visit you in advance to finish the arrangements for the

*³⁷ Titus probably delivered Paul's harsh letter to the Corinthians and Paul was no doubt anxious to know the outcome.

*⁹ These two men are believed to be Barnabas and Luke.

2 CORINTHIANS 3

generous donations you have promised, in order that our boasting about you not prove hollow.

¹⁷Then it will be ready as a generous gift and not as one grudgingly given. ¹⁸For if any Macedonians are with me when I come to collect the donations and find you unprepared, I should be ashamed.

Whoever sows generously reaps generously

¹⁹And remember this, "Whoever sows sparingly will reap sparingly, but whoever sows generously will reap generously."

God loves a cheerful giver

²⁰Each man should give what he feels in his heart to give, and not reluctantly or under compulsion. ²¹For God loves a cheerful giver.

God is able to provide your every need in abundance

²²And God is able to provide you every blessing in abundance so that you will always have sufficient for your own needs and be able to provide in abundance for every good cause.

²³You will be made rich in every way so that you can be generous on every occasion, and your generosity will be a thanksgiving to God.

²⁴And because of your generous giving others will praise God for your obedience in living the gospel of Christ and their hearts will go out in prayer for you.

3

Paul accused of worldliness

¹Now, in the meekness and gentleness of Christ, I appeal to you. ²I Paul, who am 'meek when face to face with you but bold when away,'* that when I come I will not need to show boldness to those of you who have accused us of acting by the standards of the world.

We live in the world but wage war with weapons of divine power

³For although we live in the world we do not wage war as the world does, but rather with weapons of divine power.

We are ready to punish disobedience among believers

⁴We demolish arguments and all proud obstacles to the knowledge of God in order to bring all in obedience to Christ.

⁵However, when your obedience is complete we are ready to punish every act of disobedience.

⁶If anyone is sure he belongs to Christ, he should also remember that we too belong to Christ just as much as he does.

I shall not be put to shame

⁷And even though I boast too much about the authority the Lord gave me for building you up, I shall not be put to shame.

Some say my letters are strong but my presence weak

⁸I do not wish to appear to be intimidating you by my letters for some of you say, "His letters are weighty and strong but in person his presence is weak, and his manner of speaking is of no account."

⁹Let such men realise that we will be as bold in our actions as I am in my letters when we come.

Some false apostles boast of themselves

¹⁰But we dare not compare ourselves with some false apostles who boast of themselves.

¹¹They judge themselves by their own standards and are therefore not wise. ¹²We however confine our boasting to the field God has assigned us.

Only he whom the Lord commends is approved

¹³For as it is written, "*Let he who boasts, boast in the Lord.*" It is not he who boasts of himself who is approved, but he whom the Lord commends.

We can boast for we brought you the gospel

¹⁴We do not go too far in our boasting, for it was us who brought you the gospel of Christ. So we are not boasting of work done by others.

We also hope to preach the gospel in the lands beyond you

¹⁵Our hope is that as your faith continues to grow our activity among you will also grow, so that we can preach the gospel in the lands beyond you.

Put up with my foolishness for I am jealous for you

¹⁶I hope you will put up with a little of my foolishness for I am jealous for you with a godly jealousy. ¹⁷I betrothed you as a bride to Christ and desire to present you to him as a pure virgin.

I fear you may be deceived by false preachers

¹⁸But I fear that just as Eve was deceived by the serpent's cunning, your minds may also be led astray from your pure devotion to Christ.

¹⁹For it seems that whenever anybody else comes along and preaches a Jesus other than the Jesus we preached, or a different gospel from the one you accepted, you believe them readily.

I am not the least inferior to these 'super-apostles'

²⁰I consider myself not the least inferior to these 'super apostles.' ²¹If I lack eloquence in speaking, I do have knowledge.

Was I wrong to preach to you free of charge?

²²Was it wrong of me to humble myself by preaching the gospel to you free of charge? ²³I robbed other churches by accepting support from them in order to serve you. ²⁴I kept myself from being a burden to you in any way and will continue to do so. Nobody among you can silence this boast of mine.

²⁵Would I do that if I did not love you? God knows that I do.

*2 Paul is paraphrasing his critic's words. See verse 8 of this chapter.

These boasters masquerade as apostles of Christ

²⁶And what I do for you I will continue to do in order to cut the ground from under those teachers who want to be recognised as equal with us. ²⁷Such boasters are false apostles, workers of deceit, masquerading as apostles of Christ.

Satan himself masquerades as an angel of light

²⁸And no wonder, for Satan himself masquerades as an angel of light.

²⁹Is it surprising then that his servants masquerade as servants of righteousness. Their end will be what their actions deserve.

Let me boast a little as a fool

³⁰Let no one take me for a fool. But if you do, accept me as a fool that I may boast a little. ³¹I do not say this by the Lord's authority but since many who come to you boast by human standards, I will also boast. Though it seems that you gladly bear with fools in your 'wisdom.' ³²You even put up with it when someone enslaves you or strikes you in the face. I admit we were too 'weak' for that. ³³I am speaking as a fool.

I have worked harder than all these others who come to you

³⁴Whatever any of these others who come to you boast about, I can boast of also. Are they Israelites? So am I. Are they descendants of Abraham? So am I. Are they servants of Christ? I am more so. ³⁵I am mad to talk like this.

³⁶I have worked harder, been in prison more frequently, been flogged more severely. I have been exposed to death again and again.

Paul boasts of the dangers he has passed through

³⁷Five times I received from the Jews the forty lashes minus one. Three times I was beaten with rods. Once I was stoned. Three times I have been shipwrecked.^F * I have spent a night and a day in the open sea.

³⁸I constantly travel and have been in danger from rivers, from robbers, from my own countrymen and from the Gentiles. In the city, in the country, at sea, and now in danger from false brethren.

³⁹I have laboured and toiled and have often gone sleepless. I have known hunger and thirst and have been cold and naked.

I also carry the burden of all the churches

⁴⁰Besides all that, I daily carry the burden of all the churches. For who in the church becomes weak and I do not feel weak? Who sins and I not suffer?

⁴¹If I must boast I will boast of the things that reveal my weakness. ⁴²The God and Father of the Lord Jesus who is to be praised forever knows that I am not lying.

⁴³In Damascus, to avoid arrest I was lowered in a basket from a window in the wall. ⁴⁴I must

continue this boasting though there is nothing to be gained.

I have been caught up to Paradise

⁴⁵I will now speak of visions and revelations. Fourteen years ago I was caught up to the third heaven, to Paradise, and I heard things that mortal man is forbidden to reveal. ⁴⁶Whether in my body or out of my body I could not tell.

I will refrain from boasting further so that no one will think more of me than is warranted

⁴⁷Even though I choose to boast I am not a fool, for I speak the truth. But I will now refrain that no one think more of me than is warranted.

I was given a messenger of Satan to keep me from becoming conceited

⁴⁸To keep me from becoming conceited because of my abundance of revelations there was given me a thorn in the flesh, a messenger of Satan to harass me.

Three times I pleaded with the Lord for it to leave me

⁴⁹Three times I pleaded with the Lord for it to leave me, but he said to me, "My grace is sufficient for you, for my power is made perfect in weakness."

I rejoice in my weakness that Christ's power may rest on me

⁵⁰Therefore I boast all the more gladly about my weaknesses, that Christ's power may rest upon me. ⁵¹This is why I delight in weakness, insults, hardships, persecutions and difficulties. For when I am weak I am strong.

I did among you miracles that mark a true apostle

⁵²I have made a fool of myself but you drove me to it. You should rather have commended me. ⁵³For I am not the least inferior to these 'super apostles' even though I am nothing.

⁵⁴The miracles that mark a true apostle I did among you.

I was never a burden to you

⁵⁵And in what way were you less favoured than the other churches, except that I was never a burden to you. Forgive me for this 'wrong.'

4

Paul to visit Corinth a third time

¹Now I am ready to visit you a third time and I will still not be a burden to you. ²For what I want is not your worldly possessions but you.

³After all, children should not have to support their parents, but parents their children. ⁴So I will gladly give you everything I have. If I love you more will you love me less?

Paul accused of being crafty

⁵Yet some of you have said, "He was crafty and got the better of us by guile."

⁶Have I exploited you through any of the men I sent you? Did Titus exploit you? Did we not all act in the same spirit and follow the same course?

*³⁷ Yet another shipwreck awaits Paul, the one described in Acts chapter 24 is yet to come.

2 CORINTHIANS 4

We are not defending ourselves

⁷Are you thinking that we have been defending ourselves to you? Rather we have been writing as brothers in Christ. ⁸Everything we do beloved is for your upbuilding.

I fear that when I come many of you will not have repented

⁹However my fear is that when I come I may not find you as I wish you to be. I fear there may be quarrelling, jealousy, anger, divisions, slander, gossip, arrogance and disorder.

¹⁰I fear that when I come, my God will humble me before you and I will be grieved over many who have sinned previously and have not repented of their sexual sin and debauchery.

I will not spare those who sinned earlier

¹¹I warned those who had sinned when I was with you last and I now warn them again. ¹²On my return I will not spare those who sinned earlier and have not repented. Nor any of the others, since you are demanding proof that Christ is speaking through me.

¹³Christ will not be weak in dealing with them, but powerful.

Test yourselves

¹⁴Test yourselves to see whether you are holding to the faith. ¹⁵Do you not realise that Jesus Christ is in you, unless of course you fail the test? ¹⁶I trust that you will find we have not failed the test.

Be not yoked together with unbelievers

¹⁷Brethren, be not yoked together with unbelievers. For what do righteousness and wickedness have in common? ¹⁸What fellowship has light with darkness? What harmony is there between Christ and Satan? ¹⁹What does a believer have in common with an unbeliever?

We pray that you will do what is right

²⁰Now we pray to God that you will not sin but do what is right, even though we may seem to some to have failed. ²¹But we cannot do anything against the truth, only for the truth.

Paul hopes he will not need to be harsh

²²I write like this while I am absent that when I come I may not have to be harsh in my use of

the authority the Lord has given me. ²³For he gave it to me to build you up, not to tear you down.

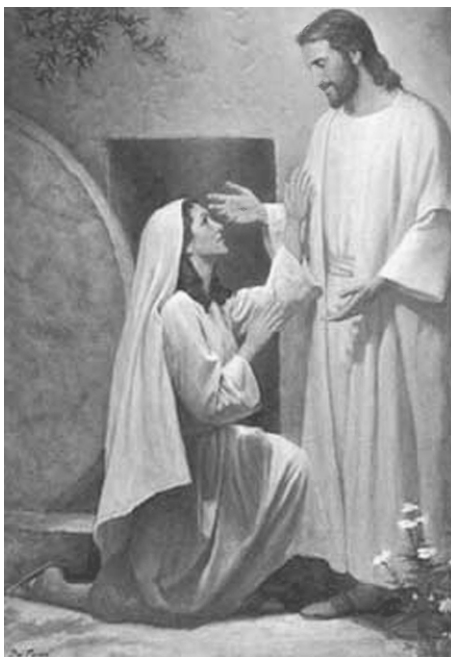
Be of one mind and you will live in peace

²⁴Finally my brothers good-bye. ²⁵Aim for perfection and heed my appeal. Be of one mind and live together in peace. The God of love and peace will be with you.

Greetings from the saints in Macedonia

²⁶Greet one another with a holy kiss. All the saints in Macedonia send their greetings.

²⁷May the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all.



Mary Magdalene at the tomb of Jesus after his resurrection.

GALATIANS

As with the Corinthian church in Paul's previous letter, the churches in Galatia had also been visited by self-styled apostles in the form of Jewish Pharisee converts to Christianity. These apostles had been teaching the predominantly non-Jewish Christians of Galatia that they could not be saved unless they also obeyed the old Law of Moses, and in particular the requirement of male circumcision.

Paul writes this blistering and masterful letter to demolish these false claims and to remind the Galatians that his authority as an apostle came direct from Jesus Christ himself. He summarises his argument with this statement: "*Neither circumcision nor uncircumcision has any value. The only thing that matters is to be born anew and to have faith in Jesus Christ, expressing itself through love*" (Galatians 2:32-33).

Paul founded the Galatian churches during his first mission. These churches are generally accepted as being Antioch, Iconium, Lystra and Derbe. The province of Galatia was under Roman rule in Paul's day – today it is part of Turkey.

AUTHOR Paul the apostle.

What has happened to all your joy? Galatians 2:22

CONTENTS

Chapter

Paul's introduction	1	How I wish I could be with you my dear children	2
I am astonished you are turning to a different gospel... 1	1	Christ has set us free from the Law.....	2
I received the gospel from Jesus Christ not a man ... 1	1	Circumcision is nothing	2
God set me apart to preach before I was born	1	Only thing that matters is to be born anew	2
James, Peter and John approve the gospel I preach... 1	1	And to have faith in Jesus Christ	2
Titus a Greek, was not compelled to be circumcised ... 1	1	They who are confusing you will pay the penalty	2
Later I opposed Peter when he acted hypocritically ... 1	1	Indulge not the flesh but serve each other in love	3
Why force Gentiles to live like Jews?	1	Love your neighbour as yourself	3
We cannot be justified by the Law of Moses	1	This commandment sums up the entire law of God... 3	3
Only by faith in Jesus Christ	1	The Spirit and flesh are in opposition to each other... 3	3
The Spirit works miracles among you	2	The sinful works of the flesh	3
Only because you believe the gospel	2	Yielders to the flesh will not inherit kingdom of God ... 3	3
Blessings of Abraham come through belief in Christ ... 2	2	Fruits of the Spirit	3
Not by observing the Law of Moses	2	The Holy Spirit crucifies sinful desires of flesh	3
What then was the purpose of the Law?	2	Whatever a man sows that will he reap	3
Believers no longer under supervision of the Law	2	Restore gently any who sin	3
Do you wish to be enslaved all over again?	2	We reap a harvest from our well-doing	3
What has happened to your joy?	2	I am now writing with my own hand	3
Have I become your enemy telling you the truth?	2	Let no one cause me any more distress	3

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Paul's introduction

¹Paul, called to be an apostle not by man but by Jesus Christ, and all the brethren with me, to the churches in Galatia.

²Grace and peace to you from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ who died for our sins to rescue us from this sinful age.

³Glory be to him for ever and ever. Amen.

I am astonished that you are so quickly turning to a different gospel

⁴I am astonished that you are so quickly turning from the gospel of Christ which we

preached to you, to a different gospel which is really no gospel at all.

⁵Evidently there are some who are confusing you and trying to pervert the true gospel of Christ. ⁶But even if we or an angel from heaven should preach a gospel other than the one we preached, let him be cursed. I say again, let him be cursed.

I received the gospel from Jesus Christ not from any man

⁷Brethren, the gospel I preached to you was

GALATIANS 2

not taught to me by any man, I received it by revelation from Jesus Christ.

God set me apart before I was born to preach to the Gentiles

⁸You know of my previous way of life, how I persecuted the church of God and tried to destroy it. ⁹Yet God who set me apart before I was born^{F*} revealed his Son to me, that I might preach him to the Gentiles.

¹⁰When he did so, I did not consult any man nor did I go to Jerusalem to see those who had been called as apostles before me, but I went at once into Arabia.

James, Peter and John approved the gospel I preach

¹¹It was not until three years later that I went up to Jerusalem to meet Peter. I stayed with him fifteen days. ¹²At that time I met none of the other apostles, only James the Lord's brother.^{F*}

¹³Again fourteen years later in response to a revelation I went to Jerusalem with Barnabas and Titus, and privately set before James and the apostles and elders the gospel that I preach to the Gentiles, for fear that I was running my race in vain. ¹⁴This matter arose because some false brethren had infiltrated the church.^{F*}

¹⁵But on the contrary, James and the apostles Peter and John, those reputed to be pillars of the church saw that I had been entrusted with the task of preaching the gospel to the Gentiles, just as Peter had been to the Jews and gave me and Barnabas the right hand of fellowship. ¹⁶They agreed that we should continue to teach the Gentiles and they the Jews.

¹⁷All they asked was that we continue to remember the poor, the very thing I was eager to do.

Titus, though a Greek, was not compelled to be circumcised

¹⁸Titus who was with me was not compelled to be circumcised, even though he was a Greek.

Later I opposed Peter when he acted hypocritically

¹⁹Later when Peter visited us at Antioch I opposed him to his face, for he was plainly in the wrong. ²⁰Certain Jews who belonged to the circumcision group^{F*} came to Antioch from James. Before they arrived Peter would eat with the Gentiles, but when they came he ate separately from the Gentiles for fear of what these visiting Jews would think.

*9 Isaiah and Jeremiah also claimed they were set apart before they were born (Isaiah 25:1 Jeremiah 1:3).

*12 James the brother of Jesus is the author of the book of James and was the presiding elder (or Bishop) of the whole church, and was based in Jerusalem. James the apostle had been killed by this time.

*14 Some Pharisees who had joined the church in Jerusalem believed that all male Gentile converts should be circumcised as were the Jews and live the full Law of Moses (see Acts chapter 14). This false teaching had now reached the Galatian churches and had prompted this letter from Paul.

*20 Jewish Christians who believed that Gentile converts should be circumcised.

²¹The other Jews in Antioch also joined him in this hypocrisy, even Barnabas was led astray.

Why force Gentiles to live like Jews?

²²When I saw that they were not acting true to the gospel, I said to Peter in front of them all, "If you being a Jew live like a Gentile, why force the Gentiles to live like Jews?"

We cannot be justified by the Law of Moses only by faith in Jesus Christ

²³We Jews know that a man is not justified^{F*} by observing the Law of Moses, but by faith in Jesus Christ.

²⁴My old self has died with Christ, but Christ lives in me. I live by faith in the Son of God who loved me and died for me. ²⁵If righteousness could be gained through the Law, Christ died for nothing.

2

The Spirit works miracles among you only because you believe the gospel

¹You foolish Galatians. Who has bewitched you? Does God give you the Holy Spirit and work miracles among you because you observe the Law of Moses, or is it because you believe the gospel?

²How can you be so foolish? After beginning with the Spirit you are now ending with the flesh. Have you suffered so much for nothing?

The blessings of Abraham come through belief in Christ not by observing the Law of Moses

³It is written of Abraham, "**He believed God and it was credited to him as righteousness.**" So also are those who believe children of Abraham.

⁴And the scriptures, foreseeing that God would justify the Gentiles by faith announced the gospel in advance when God said to Abraham, "**All nations will be blessed through you.**"

⁵So those who have faith are blessed along with Abraham the man of faith.

⁶But all who rely on the works of the Law are under a curse, for it is written, "**Cursed is everyone who does not do everything written in the Law.**"

⁷Clearly no one is justified by the Law for the scripture says, "**The righteous will live by faith.**" The Law is not based on faith.

⁸Christ redeemed us from the curse of the Law by becoming a curse for us, for it is written, "**Cursed is he who is hung on a tree.**" ⁹He redeemed us that the blessing promised to Abraham might come to the Gentiles.

What then was the purpose of the Law which was added 430 years after Abraham?

¹⁰What I mean is this, the Law of Moses which was added 430 years after Abraham, did not annul the covenant and promise previously made by God.

*23 To be justified means to be purified from all guilt of sin.

¹¹What then was the purpose of the Law? It was added because of transgression until the Christ on whom the promise given to Abraham was based, had come.

¹²Is the Law then opposed to the promises of God? Certainly not. If a Law could have been added that had the power to impart Eternal Life, then righteousness would certainly have come by the Law. ¹³But the scriptures declare that the whole world is a prisoner of sin. Therefore, what was promised Abraham could only come through faith in Jesus Christ.

Believers no longer under supervision of the Law

¹⁴So the Law was added to lead us to Christ that we might be justified by faith. ¹⁵Now that faith has come we are no longer under the supervision of the Law,^{F*} we are all sons of God through faith and baptism in Jesus Christ.

¹⁶There is neither Jew nor Greek, slave nor free, male nor female, we are all one in Christ. ¹⁷If we belong to Christ then we are Abraham's seed and heirs to the promise.

Do you wish to be enslaved all over again?

¹⁸So why are you turning back again to weak and miserable principles? Do you wish to be enslaved all over again? You are observing special days and months and seasons and years. ¹⁹I fear for you. Have I wasted my efforts?

What has happened to all your joy?

²⁰It was with an infirmity of the body that I first preached the gospel to you.^{F*} ²¹Yet despite my trial in the flesh you did not treat me with contempt. Instead you welcomed me as if I were an angel of God, as if I were the Christ Jesus himself.

²²What has happened to all your joy? ²³I testify that if you could have done so, you would have plucked out your own eyes and given them to me.

Have I become your enemy by telling you the truth about those Judaisers

²⁴Have I become your enemy by telling you the truth?

²⁵Those Judaisers^{F*} are zealous to win you over, but for no good. They want to alienate you from us that you may be zealous for them. ²⁶It is fine to be zealous but only if the purpose is good.

*¹⁵The new law of Christ did not do away with the personal behaviour commandments of the Law of Moses, rather it set higher standards (Matt-Mark-Luke Chapters 7 to 9). Jesus said that he came to fulfill the Law (Matt-Mark-Luke 9:11). It appears that only circumcision (at least for non-Jews) and the animal sacrifice laws were fulfilled, although animal sacrifice which has been practiced since Adam, will again be introduced, perhaps only for a time, in the future Millennial temple described by Ezekiel (Ezekiel chapters 14 to 16). What was lacking under the Law of Moses was the atonement of Jesus Christ and the availability to all believers of the purifying power and gifts of the Holy Spirit (Galatians 2:1).

*²⁰Paul had just come from Lystra where he been stoned and left for dead (see Acts 13:6). Evidently he was still suffering from eye injuries, see following verse 23.

*²⁵Judaisers were Jewish converts to Christianity who zealously preached that it was also necessary for Christians to obey the Law of Moses.

How I wish I could be

with you now my dear children

²⁷My dear children for whom I am again in the pains of childbirth until Christ is truly formed in you, how I wish I could be with you now and soften my tone of voice, for I am perplexed about you.

Christ has set us free from the Law

²⁸Christ has set us free, so stand firm and do not be again burdened by slavery to the Law.

²⁹Mark my words, if you become circumcised Christ will be of no value to you at all. ³⁰For every man who becomes circumcised is obligated to obey the whole Law.

³¹You who are trying to be justified by the Law have become alienated from Christ. You have fallen away from grace.^{F*}

Circumcision is nothing, the only thing that matters is to be born anew and have faith in Jesus Christ

³²Those who are trying to impress outwardly are compelling you to be circumcised. But in Jesus Christ neither circumcision nor uncircumcision has any value. ³³The only thing that matters is to be born anew and to have faith in Jesus Christ, expressing itself through love.

They who are confusing you will pay the penalty

³⁴You were running a good race. Who diverted you from the path of truth? Whoever they were they did not come from him who called you.

³⁵However I am confident in the Lord that you will now see the correct view. ³⁶They who are confusing you over circumcision, whoever they may be will pay the penalty. ³⁷I wish they would go all the way and castrate themselves.

3

Do not indulge the flesh but serve each other in love

¹Now brethren, you were called to be free, not to use your freedom to indulge the flesh but rather to serve one another in love.

Love your neighbour as yourself sums up the entire law of God

²The entire law of God is summed up in a single commandment, "Love your neighbour as yourself."

The Spirit and flesh are in opposition

³So live by the Holy Spirit and you will not yield to the desires of the flesh. ⁴For the flesh desires what is contrary to the Spirit, and the Spirit what is contrary to the flesh. They are in opposition to each other.

The sinful works of the flesh

⁵The works of the flesh are obvious; sexual immorality, impurity, debauchery, idolatry, sorcery, hatred, discord, jealousy, anger, selfishness, dissension, divisions, envy, drunkenness, orgies and the like.

*³¹Grace is the free gift from a loving God, of divine help, divine power or favour, beyond the natural abilities of man.

GALATIANS 3

Those who yield to the flesh will not inherit the kingdom of God

⁶I warn you again as I did before, those who live like this will not inherit the kingdom of God.

The fruits of the Spirit

⁷But the fruits of the Spirit are love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness and chastity.

The Holy Spirit crucifies sinful desires of the flesh

⁸Those who belong to Jesus Christ have crucified the sinful flesh with its passions and desires. ⁹Since we live by the Holy Spirit let us walk in the way of the Spirit. ¹⁰Let us not become conceited or envious of each other, nor provoke one another.

Whatever a man sows that will he also reap

¹¹Be not deceived, God will not be mocked, for whatever a man sows that will he also reap.

¹²He who sows to please his flesh, from his flesh will reap destruction. But he who sows to please the Spirit, from the Spirit will reap Eternal Life.

Restore gently any who sin

¹³Brethren if any among you be overcome by sin, you who have the Spirit should restore him gently. But be careful or you too may be tempted.

¹⁴Bear one another's burdens, by doing this you fulfil the Law of Christ.

We reap a harvest from our well-doing

¹⁵Let us not grow weary in well-doing for in due season we will reap a harvest, if we endure.

¹⁶Therefore let us take every opportunity to do good to all people, especially those who belong to the family of believers.

I am now writing with my own hand

¹⁷Note the larger letters as I now write to you with my own hand.^{F*}

Let no one cause me any more distress

¹⁸Now let no one cause me any more distress for I bear on my body the marks of my suffering for Jesus.

¹⁹Brethren the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit. Amen.

*¹⁷ Paul dictated his letters to a scribe, however to ensure authenticity he would close in his own handwriting (2 Thessalonians 2:8).

ROMANS

Paul has just completed his third mission and is about to take the offerings donated by churches he has founded to the poor among the saints in Jerusalem.

Before he sets off, Paul takes time to write this letter to the saints at Rome to edify and uplift them and teach them correct doctrine as an 'apostle to the Gentiles.' He wanted to defuse any "you must obey the Law of Moses" false doctrine they may have been exposed to from zealous but misguided Jewish converts such as had been corrupting churches geographically closer to Jerusalem. He does this by presenting lengthy, well reasoned arguments such as a lawyer would present in court in favour of taking the Holy Spirit as a guide rather than the letter of the Law of Moses.

Paul also wanted to let the Romans know that he planned to visit them on the way to his next mission in Spain. Paul eventually did visit Rome but as a prisoner, about three years after this letter was written (see Acts 25:13-31) for as the book of Acts records and the Holy Spirit at least partially revealed to Paul much trouble and imprisonment awaited him in Jerusalem (Acts chapters 20-23).

The population of Rome in Paul's day is thought to have exceeded one million. Eventually about 25% of the city became Christian.

Paul also visited Spain as planned during five years of missionary work that followed his release from prison. He later returned to Rome and was there beheaded by the emperor Nero about 67 AD.

AUTHOR Paul the apostle.

I am not ashamed of the gospel of Jesus Christ. It is the power of God that saves all who believe. Romans 1:7.

CONTENTS

	Chapter
Paul's introduction to the saints at Rome	1
Your faith is widely reported	1
I have been hindered from coming to you	1
I am not ashamed of the gospel of Jesus Christ	1
Gospel only received by belief	1
Godless men are without excuse	1
God's power is clearly seen in all creation	1
Minds of godless men become darkened	1
They foolishly turn to idolatry	1
They become inflamed with homosexual lust	1
Every kind of wickedness found among godless	1
A mere man should not pass judgement on sinners..	1
God's tolerance is to allow sinners time to repent ..	1
God will judge each person on what he has done ...	1
Eternal Life awaits the kindly	1
But wrath awaits the selfish	1
Only those under the Law to be judged by the Law...	2
A man is only a Jew if he is one inwardly	2
Many advantages in being a Jew	2
Yet Jews and Gentiles alike are sinners	2
But now there is a way to God apart from the Law ...	2
Belief in Jesus Christ is the way	2
Faith in Jesus fulfills the Law of Moses	2
Abraham blessed by his faith not by the Law	2
Our hope is to share the glory of God	2
Suffering develops endurance and character	2
Although we were sinners Christ died for us	3
Death and sin entered the world by Adam	3
But Eternal Life and righteousness came by Jesus...	3
Baptism a symbol of the burial of our old self	3
The birth of a new life	3
No longer be slaves to sin	3
The wages of sin is Death	3
The Law likened to civil marriage	3
The new way of the Spirit	3
The old Law was holy but enticed to sin	3
Jesus Christ rescues us from sin	3
The Holy Spirit brings Eternal Life and peace	3
The sinful mind is hostile to God	3
Those led by the Spirit are sons of God	4
Predestined sons of God co-heirs with Christ	4
Will share in his glory	4
Our sufferings nothing compared to awaiting glory ...	4
The Holy Spirit intercedes for us	4
Jesus also intercedes for us	4
All things work together for our good	4
Nothing can separate us from the love of Jesus	4
Paul sorrows for unbelieving Israel	4
God influences men for his own purposes	4
God is the potter and men the clay	4
The Gentiles have obtained righteousness by faith...	4
Israel tried to obtain righteousness by works alone...	4
They do not understand Christ is the end of the Law...	4
Christians who trust in Jesus as Lord will be saved ...	5
No difference between Jew and Gentile in Lord	5
Preachers of gospel necessary	5
Israel heard but did not understand	5
Not all Israelites are rejected by God	5
I myself am an Israelite	5
A remnant of Israel always remain faithful	5
Salvation came to Gentiles to make Israel envious ...	5
Even greater riches to come to Gentiles	5
When Israel becomes righteous	5
Gentiles like wild olive shoots.....	5

ROMANS 1

Will be grafted into the mother olive tree of Israel	5
Israel's natural branches broken off due to unbelief ..	5
Paul reveals a mystery	5
Eventually all Israel will be saved	5
Israel loved on account of the patriarchs	5
The rich depths of the wisdom of God	5
Be humble so as to discern God's will	5
Apply the various gifts of the Spirit diligently	6
Love sincerely, hate evil and cling to good	6
Honour each other rather than yourself	6
Be zealous in serving and ever joyful	6
Be hopeful, patient, prayerful and hospitable	6
Live in harmony and be humble and compassionate ..	6
Live in peace and seek not revenge	6
Overcome evil with good	6
Submit to your rulers	6
Pay all taxes and other debts when due	6
Love is the fulfilment of the Law	6

Behave decently – avoid orgies and drunkenness	6
Avoid immorality, quarrelling and jealousy	6
Judge not others	7
Do not offend another believer by the food you eat ...	7
Edify and build up each other	7
Be at one and be filled with joy, peace and hope	7
God has called me to be an apostle to the Gentiles .	7
I plan to visit you on my way to Spain	7
Paul to visit Jerusalem first	7
Pray for my rescue from unbelievers in Jerusalem ...	7
Paul asks the Roman saints to assist Phoebe	8
Greetings to those Paul knows at Rome	8
Greet one another with a holy kiss	8
Warning against false teachers	8
Greetings from those with Paul	8
Greeting from Paul's scribe Tertius	8
Glory to the only wise God	8

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Paul's introduction

¹From Paul, a servant of Jesus who is the Christ descended of David in the flesh but the Son of God as to his spirit. As promised by the prophets of old in the holy scriptures and resurrected from the dead.

²By whom I was called as an apostle, to announce the gospel^{F*} of God and to call all Gentiles to Jesus Christ in obedient faith.

To the saints at Rome

³To all in Rome who are loved by God and called to be saints,^{F*} grace and peace to you from God our Father and from the Lord Jesus Christ.

Your faith is widely reported

⁴First I thank my God through Jesus Christ for all of you, for your faith is widely reported.

I have been hindered from coming to you

⁵God whom I serve with all my heart is my witness that I always remember you in my prayers, and pray that the way be opened for me to come to you. For I long to see you and impart some spiritual gift to make you strong and to be encouraged by your faith.

⁶I intended many times to come to you that I might have a harvest among you but have been hindered from doing so.

I am not ashamed of the gospel of Jesus Christ

⁷I am eager to preach to you in Rome for I am not ashamed of the gospel of Jesus Christ. It is the power of God that saves all who believe.

Gospel only received by belief

⁸In the gospel of Jesus Christ the goodness of God is revealed, but it is only received by belief, for it is written, "***The righteous shall live by faith.***"

Godless men are without excuse for God's power is clearly seen in all creation

⁹The anger of God is upon godless men who suppress truth by wickedness. For since the creation of the world God's power can be clearly seen in that which has been created. Therefore men are without excuse.

The minds of godless men become darkened and foolish and they turn to idolatry

¹⁰Although they know of God, such men neither glorify him nor give thanks to him. Consequently their foolish minds are darkened. They think they are wise but in reality they are fools.

¹¹They exchange the glory of the immortal God for man-made idols, fashioned to look like earthly creatures. They worship man-made objects rather than their Creator.

They become inflamed with homosexual lust

¹²Therefore God gives them up to their sinful and shameful lusts and they sexually defile their bodies with one another. ¹³They abandon natural relations with women and become inflamed with lust for each other. Men committing indecent acts with other men^{F*} and receiving in their bodies the due penalty for their perversion.

¹⁴Even their women exchange natural relations for unnatural ones.

Every kind of wickedness found among godless

¹⁵They are full of every kind of wickedness; greed, depravity, envy, murder, strife, deceit and malice. They are gossips, slanderers, God-haters, insolent, arrogant, boastful and continually inventing new ways of doing evil.

¹⁶They disobey parents and are senseless, faithless, heartless and ruthless.

*1 Gospel is the Greek word for 'good news.'

*3 The term 'saints' as used here refers to all the members of the early church.

*14 Paul's missionary work was continually against a background of idolatry, usually involving depraved sexual rites.

**A mere man should not
pass judgement on sinners**

¹⁷But whoever passes judgement on such sinners is condemning himself, for he also sins.
¹⁸God's judgement against sinners is based on truth, but when you a mere man pass judgement upon them and yet sin also, do you think to escape God's judgement?

God's tolerance is to allow sinners time to repent

¹⁹Do not abuse God's tolerance and patience for it is to allow sinners time to repent.

God will judge each person on what he has done

²⁰But the stubborn who repent not, store up wrath against themselves on the day of judgement when God *"will reward each person according to what he has done."*

**Eternal Life awaits the kindly
but wrath awaits the selfish**

²¹To those who have continued in kindness, and have sought after glory, honour and immortality, God will give Eternal Life.

²²But to those who are selfish and reject the truth and follow after evil there will be wrath and anger, for God shows no favouritism.

²³This will all take place on the day God judges the secret acts of men, through Jesus Christ.

2

**Only those who live under the Law of Moses
to be judged by the Law**

¹All who sin under the Law of Moses will be judged by the Law. But all who sin without law will be judged apart from the Law. ²For it is not they who hear the Law who are righteous in God's sight, but they who obey the Law.

A man is only a Jew if he is one inwardly

³Now you who call yourself Jews and rely on the Law and boast about your relationship to God, why do you dishonour God by breaking the Law?

⁴Circumcision has value if you observe the Law but if you break the Law you have become as if you had not been circumcised.^{F*} One who is uncircumcised and yet obeys the Law will condemn you.

⁵A man is not a Jew by outward observance, but inwardly, by the Spirit.

Many advantages in being a Jew

⁶What advantage then is there in being a Jew? Much in every way. First of all the Jews have been entrusted with the words of God.

⁷What if some Jews have no faith, will that nullify God's words? Not at all. Our unrighteousness only highlights God's righteousness more clearly.

Yet Jews and Gentiles alike are sinners

⁸What shall we conclude then? That we Jews

are better than Gentiles? Not at all. Jews and Gentiles alike are all under sin. ⁹As it is written, *"There is no one righteous, not even one."*

**But now there is a way to God
apart from the Law**

¹⁰No one is righteous in God's sight by just observing the Law, although the Law makes us aware of sin. But now a way from God apart from the Law has been made known, to which the scriptures testify.

Belief in Jesus Christ is the way

¹¹This way is through belief in Jesus Christ. For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God. But all can be justified^{F*} freely by his grace^{F*} through the sacrifice of the Christ Jesus.

¹²God offered him as a sacrifice of atonement. Only by faith in Jesus is a man justified, not from observing the Law.

Faith in Jesus fulfils the Law of Moses

¹³Do we nullify the Law by this faith in Jesus? Not at all. Rather, we fulfil the Law.

Abraham blessed by his faith not by the Law

¹⁴It was not through the Law that Abraham received the promise that he would inherit the world but through his faith. ¹⁵For although his body was good as dead since he was about 100 years old, and Sarah's womb was also dead, he did not doubt. ¹⁶For it is written, *"Abraham believed in the promise of God and it was credited to him as righteousness."*

¹⁷Therefore God will also credit us with righteousness who believe in Jesus our Lord raised from the dead.

Our hope is to share the glory of God

¹⁸He died for our sins and was raised to life for our justification. ¹⁹We rejoice in our hope of sharing the glory of God.

Suffering develops endurance and character

²⁰We also rejoice in our sufferings, for we know that suffering develops endurance, and endurance character. ²¹And God has poured his love into our hearts by the Holy Spirit whom he has given us.

3

Although we were sinners Christ died for us

¹Very rarely will anyone give his life for a righteous man, yet God showed his love for us in that while we were still sinners, his Christ died for us.

**Death and sin entered world by Adam
but Eternal Life and righteousness by Jesus**

²Sin and death entered the world through one man, Adam. So also by Jesus Christ is Eternal Life available for all men.

³Through the disobedience of one man, many

*1 Jewish males are circumcised when 8 days old in obedience to the commandment given to Abraham (Genesis 11:17) as a sign of God's covenant to him and his descendants.

*11 To be justified means to be purified from all guilt of sin.

*12 Grace is the free gift from a loving God, of divine help, divine power or favour, beyond the natural abilities of man.

ROMANS 4

were made sinners. So also through the obedience of one man, many will be made righteous.

Baptism a symbol of the burial of our old self and the rebirth of the new

⁴All of us who have been baptised into Christ Jesus were baptised unto his death, buried with him by baptism.^{F*} So that just as Christ was raised from the dead, we too may live a new life. ⁵For if we have been joined with him in his death we will also be joined with him in his resurrection.

No longer be slaves to sin

⁶Our old self was crucified with him so that we would no longer be slaves to sin. Therefore let sin reign no more in your mortal body, but rather offer yourself to God as one who has been brought from death to life.

⁷Let sin be your master no more, for you are not now under the Law but under the grace of God. ⁸You have been set free from sin, therefore become slaves to righteousness.

The wages of sin is Death

⁹The wages of sin is Death.^{F*} ¹⁰I express myself in human terms because you are weak in your natural selves.

The Law likened to civil marriage

¹¹Do you not know brethren that the Law has authority over a man only as long as he lives? For example, by law a married woman is bound to her husband, but if he dies she is released from the law of marriage.

The new way of the Spirit

¹²In the same way you also died to the Law of Moses, through Christ, that you might belong to him who was raised from the dead and bear fruit to God.

¹³For when we were controlled by our sinful nature we bore fruit for Death. ¹⁴But now we have been released from the Law that we may serve in the new way of the Spirit.

The old Law was holy but enticed to sin

¹⁵Is the Law sin? Certainly not. Indeed I would not have known what sin was except through the Law. ¹⁶I would not have known what coveting was if the Law had not said, “**Do not covet.**” But sin, seizing the opportunity afforded by the commandment aroused in me every kind of covetous desire. ¹⁷The very commandment intended to bring Life^{F*} actually brought Death.

¹⁸But the Law is holy, and the commandments are holy. ¹⁹The Law is spiritual but I was unspiritual, a slave to sin. I had desire to do good but could not carry it out for evil was right

*4 The immersion in water during baptism symbolises both a burial of the old self and rebirth of the new, and the washing away of sins.

*9 Death in the sense used here by Paul is the ‘Second Death’ (in contrast to Eternal Life) a symbolic term meaning to be cut off forever from the presence of God. See also note on Revelation 16:19.

*17 The term ‘Life’ is a shortened form of ‘Eternal Life’ which means to live forever after death in the presence of God the Father. See also note on Revelation 2:13.

there with me.

²⁰In my spirit I delighted in God’s Law, but there was another law at work in my body waging war against my spirit.

Jesus Christ rescues us from sin

²¹What a wretched man I was. Who could rescue me from my body of death? Thanks be to God, Jesus Christ our Lord did.

²²Through Jesus Christ the Holy Spirit set me free from the Law of sin and death. ²³What the Law was powerless to do, weakened by my sinful nature, God did by sending his own Son to be a sin offering.

The mind controlled by the Holy Spirit brings Eternal Life and peace

²⁴Those who live by their sinful nature have their minds set on what that nature desires, but they who live by the Holy Spirit have their minds set on what the Spirit desires.

²⁵The mind of a sinful man brings Death, but the mind controlled by the Holy Spirit brings Eternal Life and peace.

The sinful mind is hostile to God

²⁶The sinful mind is hostile to God and does not submit to his commandments, nor can it do so. You however are controlled not by the sinful mind but by the Holy Spirit.

²⁷If anyone does not have the Spirit of Christ^{F*} he does not belong to Christ.



The Appian Way, a road leading into Rome that Paul would have travelled when he was taken to Rome as a prisoner.

4

Those led by the Spirit are sons of God

¹If the Spirit of him who raised Jesus from the dead is living within you, he will also give Eternal Life to your mortal bodies. For those who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God.

²For you did not receive a spirit that again makes you a slave to fear, but you received the Spirit of sonship and by him we cry out, ‘Father.’

Predestined sons of God co-heirs with Christ and will share in his glory

³The Holy Spirit testifies to our spirit that we

*27 Paul sometimes uses the terms ‘Spirit of Christ’ and ‘Spirit of God’ as alternate names for the Holy Spirit.

are God's sons. ⁴For God knew beforehand who would believe and he predestined them to conform to the likeness of his Son, that Jesus might be the firstborn among many brothers. Then he also will justify and glorify.

⁵Now if we are sons then we are heirs, heirs of God and co-heirs with Christ. We share in his sufferings that we may also share in his glory.

Our present sufferings nothing compared to the glory that awaits us

⁶However I consider that our present sufferings are nothing compared to the glory that awaits us.

The Holy Spirit intercedes for us

⁷The Holy Spirit helps us in our weakness for we know not what we ought to pray for. But the Spirit himself intercedes for us with longings that words cannot express.

⁸And God knows the mind of the Spirit for the Spirit intercedes as God wills.

Jesus also intercedes for us

⁹Jesus who is at the right hand of God also intercedes for us. For God who did not spare his own Son, will also graciously give us all things.

All things work together for our good

¹⁰Therefore all things work together for the good of those who love God.

Nothing can separate us from the love of Jesus

¹¹If God is for us who can be against us? Who can separate us from the love of Christ?

¹²Shall trouble, hardship, persecution, famine or sword? No, in all these things we are more than conquerors through the power of him who loved us.

¹³Neither death, demons, powers, nor anything else in all creation can separate us from the love of Jesus our Lord.

Yet I sorrow for unbelieving Israel

¹⁴Yet I have sorrow in my heart. I could even wish that I were cut off from Christ if it would save those of my own brethren, the people of Israel.

¹⁵Theirs was the adoption, the glory, the covenants, the Law, the Temple worship, the promises, the patriarchs and the human ancestry of Christ.

God influences men for his own purposes

¹⁶But God's word has not failed, for not all descended from Israel are truly Israel.

¹⁷In other words it is not the natural children who are God's children, but the children of promise. Not by their own works but by the will of God who calls them.

¹⁸For even before Rebekah's twins were born,^{F*} in order that God's purposes should come to pass she was told, "**The elder will serve the younger.**" And it is also written, "**I have blessed Jacob, but Esau I have cursed.**"

*18 Jacob and Esau. Jacob was later renamed Israel, and the twelve tribes of Israel which include the Jews (mostly from the royal tribe of Judah) were descended through him.

¹⁹Is then God unjust? Not at all. For he says to Moses, "**I will have mercy on whom I have mercy.**"

²⁰It does not therefore depend on man's desire or effort, but on God's mercy. ²¹For the scripture says of Pharaoh, "**I have preserved you for the purpose of displaying my power that my name might be proclaimed throughout the earth.**"

²²Therefore God has mercy on whom he decides to have mercy and hardens whom he decides to harden.

God is the potter and men the clay

²³One will say to me, "Why then does God blame us for sin if we cannot resist his will?"

²⁴But who are you O man to argue with God? For it is written, "**Shall what is formed say to him who formed it, 'Why did you make me like this?'**"

²⁵Does not the potter have the right to make from the same lump of clay, pottery for both noble and ignoble use?

The Gentiles have obtained righteousness by faith

²⁶Isaiah said concerning Israel, "**Though the number of the Israelites be like the sand on the seashore, only a remnant will be saved.**"

²⁷What then must we conclude? The Gentiles who did not pursue righteousness have obtained it by faith? But Israel who pursued righteousness by Law has not attained it?

Israel stumbled by trying to obtain righteousness by works alone

²⁸Yes, and why not? Because Israel pursued it by works not by faith. ²⁹They stumbled over the cornerstone. For it is written, "**I will lay a stone in Zion, a chosen cornerstone for a sure foundation. He who trusts in him shall never be put to shame.**" ^{F*}

They do not understand that Christ is the end of the Law

³⁰Brethren my heart's desire and prayer to God is that the Israelites may be saved, for I can testify of their zeal for God. ³¹But their zeal is not based on knowledge. They do not understand that Christ is the end of the Law.

5

Christians who trust in Jesus and confess he is Lord will be saved

¹It is the word of faith we are proclaiming. If you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and truly believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved.^{F*} ²As the

*29 This Old Testament prophecy, Isaiah 17:18 is referring to the Christ.

*1 This statement of Paul's has brought about some misunderstanding in recent years to the extent that many Christians today believe that full repentance and baptism is not really necessary, and that they are saved merely by a sincere confession of belief that 'Jesus Christ is Lord.' This is however clearly contrary to the teachings of Jesus Christ. It should be remembered that in this letter to the Romans, Paul is arguing against Jewish legalism and his remarks are addressed directly to members of the Roman church who like himself have already

ROMANS 5

scripture says, “He who trusts in him will never be put to shame.”

No difference between Jew and Gentile in Lord

³There is no difference between Jew and Gentile, the same Lord is Lord of them all. He richly blesses all who call on him.

Preachers of gospel necessary

⁴But how can they call on one in whom they have not believed? And how can they have faith in him of whom they have not heard? And how can they hear without someone preaching to them?

⁵As it is written, “*How beautiful are the feet of those who bring good news.*”

Israel heard but did not understand

⁶But the Israelites did not accept the good news. Faith comes from hearing and the message was of Christ. Did Israel hear? Of course they did, but they did not understand.

⁷For as the words spoken through Isaiah boldly say, “*I was found by those who did not seek me.*” ⁸But concerning Israel, “*All day long I have held out my hands to a disobedient and obstinate people.*”

Not all Israelites are rejected by God for I myself am an Israelite

⁹I ask then, did God reject every one of his people? By no means. I am an Israelite myself, from the tribe of Benjamin.

A remnant of Israel always remain faithful

¹⁰When Elijah appealed to God against Israel saying, “*Lord, they have killed your prophets. I am the only one left, and they are trying to kill me.*” what was the answer of God to him? “*I still have 7000 in Israel whose knees have not bowed to Baal.*”

¹¹So too even now there is a remnant, chosen by grace, not by works. If it were by works, grace would no longer be grace.

Salvation has come to the Gentiles to make Israel envious

¹²The righteousness Israel sought for earnestly it did not obtain. But the elect did, and the others were hardened.

¹³Did they stumble so as to fall beyond recovery? Not at all. Rather, because of their sin salvation has come to the Gentiles, to make Israel envious.

Even greater riches will come to the Gentiles when Israel becomes righteous

¹⁴Now if Israel's sin means riches for the Gentiles, what greater riches will her righteousness bring. ¹⁵I am speaking to you Gentiles in as much as I am the apostle to the Gentiles.

¹⁶I make much of my ministry in the hope that I may arouse some of my own people to envy and save them.

Wild olive shoots of Gentiles grafted into the mother olive tree of Israel

¹⁷For the root of the tree is still holy. Branches have been broken off and you Gentiles, though a wild olive shoot, have been grafted in among the others. You now share in the nourishing sap from the mother olive root.

Israel's natural branches broken off because of unbelief

¹⁸Israel's natural branches were broken off because of unbelief. But do not boast Gentiles, for you only stand by faith.

¹⁹If God did not spare the natural branches he will not spare the grafted branches either. ²⁰And when Israel again believes, they will be grafted back in, and how much more readily will these the natural branches be accepted by their mother tree.

Paul reveals a mystery – eventually all Israel will be saved

²¹I do not want you to be ignorant of a mystery brethren, and that you may not be conceited I reveal it to you. Israel has experienced a hardening in part, until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled. ²²But eventually all Israel will be saved, for it is written, “*Out of Jerusalem will come the deliverer and banish ungodliness from Israel. This will be my covenant with them when I take away their sins.*”

Israel loved on account of the patriarchs

²³As far as the gospel of Jesus is concerned, Israel are enemies to you, but concerning election^{F*} they are loved on account of the patriarchs. For God's gifts and his call are irrevocable.

The rich depths of the wisdom of God

²⁴Oh the rich depths of the wisdom and knowledge of God. How unsearchable his judgements. ²⁵As it is written, “*Who has ever given to God that God should repay him?*”

²⁶For from him and through him are all things. To him be the glory forever. Amen.

Be humble so as to discern God's will

²⁷Therefore I urge you brethren, offer your bodies as living sacrifices, holy and pleasing to God.

²⁸Do not conform to the ways of the world but be transformed by the renewing of your minds. Then you will be able to discern God's will.

²⁹Do not think of yourselves more highly than you ought. Rather, be humble.

repented and been baptised, both with water and by the fire of the Holy Spirit. If an intending Christian merely confesses belief in Jesus without full repentance and the divinely appointed ordinance of baptism, followed by the gift of the Holy Spirit by the laying on of hands (Acts 7:13-14) it is of no avail for Jesus declared, “*No one can enter the kingdom of God unless he is born anew, of water and of the Spirit*” (John 3:5). Jesus himself set the example by being baptised and Paul reaffirms the importance of baptism in this very letter (Romans 3:4), and in 1 Corinthians 8:1 he emphasises the importance of afterward continuing to obey all the commandments when he says, “*Only by this gospel are you saved, provided you hold firmly to the word. Otherwise you will have believed in vain.*” In refuting the doctrine that belief alone is enough to be saved James pointed out that even demons believe (James 2:13). And Jesus stated that only they “*who endure to the end will be saved*” (Matt-Mark-Luke 28:28). For even after repentance and baptism a Christian can still easily fall, for Judas was baptised, also Ananias and his wife (Acts 5:3-11) and they fell, and many others.

*23 Their status as the chosen people.

6

Apply the various gifts of the Spirit diligently

¹Each one of us has a body of many parts, each with different functions. So too in Christ we all form one body, each one of us belonging to all the others.

²We all have different gifts according to what the Spirit gives us. ³Therefore, if a man's gift is prophecy, let him use it according to his faith. If it is service, let him serve. If it is teaching, let him teach. If it is encouraging, let him encourage. ⁴If it is giving, let him give generously. If it is leadership, let him govern diligently. If it is to show mercy, let him do so cheerfully.

Love sincerely, hate evil and cling to good

⁵Your love must be sincere. Therefore hate what is evil and cling to what is good.

Honour each other rather than yourself

⁶Be devoted to one another in brotherly love. Bestow honour on each other rather than on yourself.

Be zealous in serving and ever joyful, hopeful, patient, prayerful and hospitable

⁷Never lack zeal in serving the Lord. ⁸Be joyful in hope, patient in affliction, faithful in prayer. Share with the saints who are in need and practice hospitality.

Live in harmony and be humble and compassionate

⁹Live in harmony one with another. Do not be proud but willingly mingle with people of low position. ¹⁰Rejoice with them who rejoice and mourn with those who mourn.

Live in peace and seek not revenge

¹¹Bless those who persecute you. Do not curse them and do not repay evil for evil. Do what is right in the eyes of all.

¹²If it be possible, as far as it depends upon you, live at peace with all. ¹³Do not take revenge. Allow room for God's own wrath for he has said, "**Vengeance is mine, I will repay.**"

Overcome evil with good

¹⁴Be not overcome by evil but overcome evil with good.

Submit to your rulers

¹⁵Submit yourselves to the governing authorities for they have been established by God. Rulers hold no terror for those who do right, only for those who do wrong.

¹⁶Do what is right and he will commend you for he is God's servant to do you good.

Pay all taxes and other debts when due

¹⁷That is why you pay taxes, for the authorities are God's servants who give their full time to governing. ¹⁸If you owe taxes pay taxes, if revenue then revenue, if respect then respect. ¹⁹Pay everybody what you owe. Let no debt remain outstanding.

Love is the fulfilment of the Law

²⁰Do not commit adultery, nor murder. Do not steal or covet. These and all the other commandments are summed up in this one rule. "**Love your neighbour as yourself.**" Therefore love is the fulfilling of the Law.

Behave decently – avoid orgies, drunkenness, immorality, quarrelling, jealousy

²¹So let us behave decently, not in orgies and drunkenness, not in sexual immorality and debauchery, not in quarrelling and jealousy.

²²Rather let us clothe ourselves with the Lord Jesus Christ and think not how we can gratify the desires of the flesh.

7

Judge not others

¹Welcome him whose faith is weak without passing judgement on him. ²One man believes he can eat any kind of food, while another of lesser faith eats only vegetables. Let them not condemn each other, for God has accepted them both.

³For who are we to judge the servant of another? He will stand or fall as to how he pleases his own master. And the Lord is able to make him stand.

⁴One man considers one day more holy than another and a second considers every day alike, each fully convinced in his own mind, and both give thanks to the same God.

⁵Why do you judge your brother? We will all one day stand before the judgement seat of God and give an account of ourselves.

⁶Therefore let us cease passing judgement upon each other. Let us not put a stumbling block in our brother's way.

Do not offend another believer by the food you eat

⁷I am convinced that no food is unclean in itself, but if any man regards a food as unclean then for him it is unclean. ⁸If you offend your brother by what you eat you are no longer acting in love. So do not by your eating harm your brother for whom Christ died.

Edify and build up each other

⁹The kingdom of God is not food and drink, but righteousness, peace and joy in the Holy Spirit. Let us therefore do what leads to peace and edification.

¹⁰Each of us should try to please our neighbour for his good and build him up. For Christ did not come to serve himself.

Have a spirit of oneness and be filled with joy, peace and hope

¹¹May the God who gives endurance and encouragement give you a spirit of oneness as you follow the Lord Jesus. So that with one heart you may glorify his Father.

¹²May God fill you with joy and peace as you trust in him, that you may overflow with hope by the Holy Spirit. ¹³I am convinced my brethren

ROMANS 8

that you are full of goodness and complete in knowledge, and able to teach one another.

God has called me to be a minister to the Gentiles

¹⁴I have written boldly on some points just to remind you of them again. ¹⁵For God has called me to be an apostle to the Gentiles, preaching Jesus by the power of signs and miracles through the Holy Spirit.

¹⁶I glory in Jesus in my service to God.

I plan to visit you on my way to Spain

¹⁷I have tried to preach the gospel where Christ was not known, so that I would not be building on another's foundation. This is why I have often been hindered from coming to you.

¹⁸But now there are no more places for me to work in these regions, and since I have been longing for many years to see you I plan to visit you on my way to Spain.

I am now on my way to Jerusalem

¹⁹Now however I am on my way to Jerusalem, for the saints in Macedonia and Achaia were pleased to make a contribution to the poor among the saints in Jerusalem.

²⁰As the Gentiles have shared in the spiritual blessings of the Jews, so they owe it to the Jews to share with them their material blessings.

²¹When I have completed this task I will come and visit you.

Pray that I may be rescued from unbelievers in Jerusalem

²²I urge you brethren to pray with me and for me that I may be rescued from the unbelievers in Jerusalem. So that God willing I will come to you with joy and together with you be refreshed.

8

Assist our sister Phoebe

I commend to you our sister Phoebe, a servant in the church at Corinth.^{F*} Receive her in the Lord and give her any assistance she may need. She has been a great help to many people including myself.

Greetings to those whom Paul knows at Rome

²Greet for me Priscilla and Aquila my fellow workers in Jesus. They risked their lives for me.

³Greet also my dear friend Epenetus who was the first convert to Christ in the province of Asia, and Mary who worked very hard for you.

⁴And Andronicus and Junias my relatives who have been in prison with me. They are held in high esteem among the apostles who were in Christ before I was.

⁵Greet Ampliatus whom I love in the Lord, and Urbanus, and my dear friend Stachys, also Apelles tested and approved in Christ. Greet those of Aristobulus.

⁶Greet Herodion my relative and those of Narcissus, also Tryphena, Tryphosa and Persis, women who work hard in the Lord. Rufus and his mother who has been a mother to me too. ⁷Asyncritus, Phlegon, Hermes, Patrobas, Hermas and the brethren with them. Philologus, Julia, Nereus and his sister and Olympas and all the saints with them.

Greet one another with a holy kiss

⁸Greet one another with a holy kiss. ⁹All the churches of Christ send greetings.

A warning against false teachers

¹⁰I urge you brethren, watch out for those who cause divisions and put obstacles in your way that are contrary to the teaching you have received. ¹¹Keep away from them for such people are not serving our Lord Jesus Christ but their own appetites.

¹²By smooth talk and flattery they deceive the minds of naive people. ¹³Be wise about what is good, and innocent about evil. ¹⁴The God of peace will soon crush Satan under your feet.

¹⁵The grace of our Lord Jesus be with you.

Greetings from those with Paul

¹⁶Timothy my fellow worker and Erastus and Quartus send their greetings to you, as do Lucius, Jason and Sosipater my relatives and Gaius whose hospitality I and the whole church here enjoy.

A greeting from Paul's scribe Tertius

¹⁷I Tertius the writer of this letter also greet you in the Lord.

Glory to the only wise God

¹⁸To the only wise God be glory forever through Jesus Christ. Amen.

*1 Paul probably entrusted Phoebe to deliver his letter to the Roman church from Corinth where he was staying.

COLOSSIANS

This is the first in a cluster of four letters (Colossians, Ephesians, Philippians and Philemon) that Paul wrote during his imprisonment in Rome after his shipwreck on Malta.

It is about four years since Paul's last known letter which was to the Romans. Most of which time he has been in captivity. These prison letters reveal a more mature and probably more relaxed Paul and are noted for their gentleness and love, as opposed to the fire of his earlier and later ones.

The purpose of this letter to the saints at Colosse (a neighbouring city of Ephesus) besides general encouragement was to counteract false doctrine. Epaphras a convert of Paul who had founded a church at Colosse had come to Rome to visit Paul. He was concerned about some false teachers influencing the Colossian church.

From what Paul mentions in his letter we can deduce that the false teaching had elements of Judaism, particularly concerning the old Law of Moses, and also elements of Greek philosophy and asceticism such as the adoration of wisdom, false humility, worship of angels, visions, restrictions on eating, and austere treatment of the body.

Paul points out the emptiness of such doctrine and reminds the Colossians of the headship of Christ and states that he is all that is necessary.

Colosse was an important city of Asia Minor (present day Turkey) due to its location on an east-west trade route. However in later centuries when the road system changed, the city dwindled in size and was eventually destroyed by the Turks in the 12th century.

AUTHOR Paul the apostle.

See that no one deceives you by empty and deceptive philosophies, drawn from human traditions and the elemental spirits of the universe rather than from Christ.
Colossians 2:9.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Paul's introduction	1	False humility and worship of angels disqualify you ..	2
We have heard of your faith and love	1	Those who teach this have lost touch with Christ	2
All over the world this gospel is growing	1	Such rules are based on the teachings of men	2
Epaphras who taught you told us of your love	1	They have an appearance of wisdom but lack power ..	2
You are qualified to inherit the kingdom of light	1	Set your hearts on things from above	2
Christ is the image of God	1	Put to death sexual immorality and lust	2
Christ the firstborn of all creation	1	Rid yourselves of anger, malice, lying and filthy talk ...	2
Christ created all things	1	Christ is all that is necessary	2
He is head of the church and first-raised of the dead ..	1	Clothe yourselves with kindness, humility, patience ..	3
You will remain holy if you continue firm in the faith ..	1	Forgive one another as the Lord forgave you	3
This is the gospel you had preached to you	1	Above all clothe yourselves with love	3
I rejoice in my sufferings	2	Sing psalms, hymns and songs of the spirit	3
I was called to preach the glorious mystery of Christ ..	2	Advice to husbands, wives and children	3
We desire to present everyone perfect in Christ	2	Advice to slaves and masters	3
I tell you all this that no one may deceive you	2	Devote yourselves to prayer and pray for us also	3
Be not deceived by empty philosophies	2	Act wisely toward unbelievers	3
In Christ is the fullness of the Godhead	2	Let your conversation be graceful	3
In Christ you put off the fleshly nature	2	Tychicus will tell you all the news	4
In Christ you were born again	2	Greetings from those with Paul	4
Christ fulfilled the old Law with its legal demands	2	Greet the brethren at Laodicea	4
The Law was only a shadow of things to come	2	I greet you in my own handwriting	4
The reality is Christ	2		

1

Paul's introduction

¹Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ by the will of God, and Timothy our brother, to the holy and faithful brethren at Colosse. ²Grace and peace to you from God our Father.

We have heard of your faith and love

³We always thank God the father of Jesus Christ when we pray for you, for we have heard of your faith and your love for all the saints.

COLOSSIANS 2

⁴This faith and love springs from the word of truth, the gospel.

All over the world this gospel is growing

⁵All over the world this gospel is growing and bearing fruit, just as it is among you.

Epaphras who taught you told us of your love

⁶You heard the gospel from our dear fellow servant Epaphras. He told us of your love and ever since we have prayed that God will fill you with his will. ⁷That you may live lives worthy of him and bear good fruit in your works and grow in the knowledge of God.

⁸Also that you will be strengthened with power to endure in patience and joy, giving thanks always to the Father.

You are qualified to inherit the kingdom of light

⁹For the Father has qualified you to share the inheritance of the saints in the kingdom of light. ¹⁰He has rescued us from darkness and brought us into the kingdom of the Son he loves, in whom we have forgiveness of sins.

Christ is the image of God and the firstborn of all creation

¹¹For Christ is the image of the invisible God, and the firstborn of all creation.

Christ created all things

¹²By Christ all things were created in the heavens and on earth, both visible and invisible, through him and for him. ¹³He was before all things and in him all things hold together.

He is the head of the church and first-raised of the dead

¹⁴He is the head of the body of the church and the first-raised from the dead. In all things he has supremacy.

¹⁵For God was pleased to have his fullness dwell in him that he might reconcile all things through his blood shed on the cross.

You will remain holy provided you continue firm in your faith

¹⁶Once you were alienated from God because of your sins, but now you are reconciled by the death of Christ's physical body.

¹⁷You have become holy in God's sight, without blemish and free from guilt, provided you continue firm in your faith.

This is the gospel you had preached to you

¹⁸This is the gospel you had preached to you, the gospel that is proclaimed to every creature under the heavens.

2

I rejoice in my sufferings

¹I Paul rejoice in my sufferings for the sake of the body of Christ, which is the church.

I was called to preach the glorious mystery of Christ

²For God has called me to be a servant of the

church, to preach his word in its fullness, even the glorious riches of the mystery of Christ. The mystery that has been kept hidden for generations but is now made known to the saints.

We desire to present everyone perfect in Christ

³We proclaim Christ, warning and teaching with all wisdom that we may present every saint perfect in him.

⁴To this end I labour, striving with his energy which so powerfully inspires me, both for you and for those at Laodicea^{F*} and for all who have not met me personally. ⁵That you may be encouraged and have the richness of understanding the mystery of Christ in whom is hidden all treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

I tell you all this that no one may deceive you

⁶I tell you all this, that no one may deceive you by false but fine-sounding arguments.

⁷I may be absent in body but I am present with you in spirit and delight to see how orderly you are, and how firm your faith is in Christ.

⁸Therefore just as you received Jesus Christ as Lord, continue to live in him, growing ever stronger in your faith and gratitude as you were taught.

Be not deceived by empty and deceptive philosophies

⁹But see that no one deceives you by empty and deceptive philosophies, drawn from human traditions and the elemental spirits of the universe^{F*} rather than from Christ.

In Christ is the fullness of the Godhead

¹⁰For in Christ the fullness of the Godhead dwells, and you share in his fullness for he is head over every power and authority.

In Christ you put off the fleshly nature and were born again

¹¹In Christ you were circumcised, not with the circumcision of men but by the putting off of your fleshly nature.

¹²And you were buried with him in baptism, being born again through your faith in the power of God who raised him from the dead.

Christ fulfilled the old Law with its legal demands

¹³God forgave us all our sins. For his Christ fulfilled the written Law with its legal demands and nailed it to the cross.

The Law was only a shadow of things to come – the reality is Christ

¹⁴Therefore let no one condemn you in matters concerning what you eat or drink or regarding religious festivals, New Moon celebrations or the Sabbath day.

¹⁵These were only a shadow of things to come. The reality is found in Christ.

*4 A nearby city about 10 km from Colosse.

*9 'elemental spirits of the universe' is a term for Satan and his demons.

They who teach false humility and the worship of angels have lost touch with Christ

¹⁶So let no one disqualify you by insisting on false humility and the worship of angels.

¹⁷Such people speculate in great detail about visions and their worldly minds puff them up with foolish notions.

¹⁸They have lost touch with Christ the Head from whom the whole body is supported and held together.

Such rules are based on the teachings of men?

¹⁹Since you died with Christ to worldly principles, why submit to their rules? "Do not handle! Do not taste! Do not touch!" ²⁰Such rules are based on the commandments and teachings of men.

Such rules have an appearance of wisdom but lack power

²¹Such rules indeed have an appearance of wisdom, with their worship, their false humility and their austere treatment of the body. But they have no power in restraining the indulgence of the flesh.

Set your hearts on things from above

²²Since you have been reborn in Christ, put on the new self. Set your hearts on things from above where Christ is seated at the right hand of God. Not on earthly things.

²³Then when Christ returns you will be gathered to him in glory.

Put to death sexual immorality and lust

²⁴Put to death whatever belongs to your fleshly nature: sexual immorality, impurity, lust, evil desires and coveting (which is idolatry). The wrath of God is coming upon all who do these things.

Rid yourselves of anger, malice, lying and filthy talk

²⁵You once walked in these sinful ways but now you must entirely rid yourselves of them. ²⁶Also anger, wrath, malice, slander, lying and filthy talk.

Christ is all that is necessary

²⁷There is no longer Greek or Jew, circumcised or uncircumcised, slave or free, but Christ is all and in all.

3

Clothe yourselves with kindness, humility and patience

¹Therefore as God's chosen people clothe yourselves with kindness, humility, patience, gentleness and compassion.

Forgive one another as the Lord forgave you

²Bear with each other and forgive whatever grievances you may have against one another. Forgive as the Lord forgave you.

Above all clothe yourselves with love

³And over all these virtues, clothe yourselves with love, which binds them all together in perfect harmony.

⁴Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts and be thankful.

⁵Let the words of Christ dwell in you richly as you teach and admonish one another with wisdom.

Sing psalms, hymns and songs of the spirit

⁶Sing psalms, hymns and songs of the spirit with gratitude in your hearts to God.

⁷And whatever you do whether in word or deed, do it all in the name of the Lord Jesus giving thanks to God the Father through him.

Advice to husbands, wives and children

⁸Wives, submit to your husbands as is fitting in the Lord.

⁹Husbands, love your wives. Be not harsh with them.

¹⁰Children, obey your parents for this is pleasing to the Lord.

¹¹Fathers, provoke not your children lest they become discouraged.

Advice to slaves and masters

¹²Slaves, obey your earthly masters in all things, not only when their eye is upon you but with sincerity of heart. ¹³Work as if you are working for the Lord and not for men.

¹⁴All who do wrong will pay for their wrongdoing. There is no favouritism with the Lord.

¹⁵Masters, treat your slaves with justice and fairness for you too have a master in heaven.

Devote yourselves to prayer and pray for us also

¹⁶Devote yourselves to prayer, being watchful and thankful. ¹⁷Pray for us also that God may open doors for us to proclaim the mystery of Christ for which I am in chains. Pray that I may proclaim it clearly, as I should.

Act wisely toward unbelievers and let your conversation be graceful

¹⁸Be wise in how you act toward unbelievers. Make the most of every opportunity. ¹⁹Let your conversation be graceful and interesting.

²⁰Know how to answer everyone.

4

Tychicus will tell you all the news

¹Tychicus will tell you all the news about me. He is a dear brother, a faithful minister and a fellow servant in the Lord. I am sending him to you that you may be aware of our circumstances and that he may encourage your hearts. ²He is coming with Onesimus our faithful and dear brother who is one of you.

Greetings from those with Paul

³My fellow prisoner Aristarchus sends you his greetings as does Mark* the cousin of Barnabas. Jesus who is called Justus also sends his greetings.

⁴These are the only Jews among my fellow workers and they have proved a comfort to me.

*3 The author of the gospel of Mark.

COLOSSIANS 4

⁵Epaphras who is one of you sends greetings. He is always wrestling in prayer for you that you will stand firm and become mature in the will of God. ⁶I vouch that he is working hard for you and for those at Laodicea and Hierapolis.

⁷Luke^{F*} the beloved physician and Demas send their greetings.

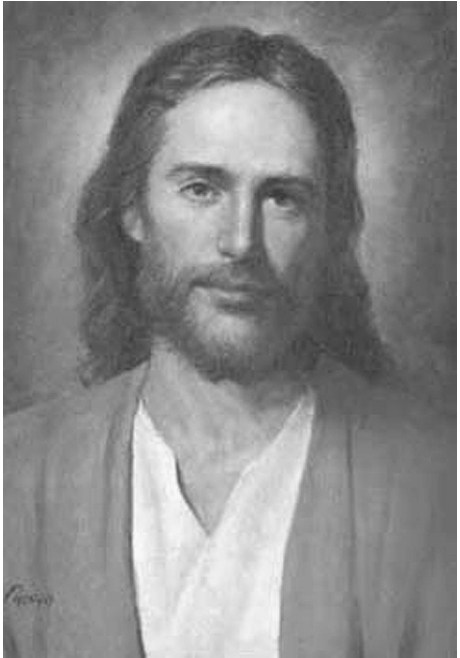
Greet the brethren at Laodicea

⁸Give my greetings to the brethren at Laodicea and to Nympha and the church that meets in her house.

⁹After this letter has been read to you, see that it is read also in the church of the Laodiceans. And that you in turn read the letter from Laodicea.^{F*}

I greet you in my own handwriting

¹⁰I Paul write this greeting in my own hand. Remember my chains. Grace be with you.



Jesus Christ by artist Del Parson.

*7 The author of the gospel of Luke and book of Acts.

*9 This letter has not survived unless it is the same one addressed to the Ephesians. See introduction to Ephesians.

PHILEMON

This short letter probably accompanied Paul's letter to the Colossians as it is addressed to a Colossian saint Philemon who was a friend of Paul.

Onesimus a runaway slave had become a Christian in Rome and had been assisting Paul in prison. However Paul is now returning him to his rightful owner Philemon with a personal appeal for love and forgiveness.

AUTHOR Paul the apostle.

Now although in Christ I could instruct you to do what is required, I Paul, an elder and a prisoner of Christ Jesus appeal instead to your love. Philemon 1:5.

CONTENTS

	Chapter		
Paul greets Philemon	1	If he owes you anything I will repay it	1
Your faith and love for the saints gives me great joy ...	1	I know you will do even more than I ask	1
I Paul appeal to your love	1	Prepare a room for me also	1
I am sending back your slave Onesimus	1	I hope to be restored to you	1
I would have been glad to have kept him	1	Greetings from those with Paul	1
Welcome him as you would welcome me	1	Paul's closing blessing	1

1

Paul greets Philemon

¹Paul, a prisoner of Jesus Christ, and Timothy our brother, to Philemon our dear friend and fellow worker and to the church that meet in your house^{F*} at Colosse. ²Grace and peace to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

Your faith and love for the saints gives me great joy

³I always thank my God as I remember you in my prayers, for I hear of your faith and your love for all the saints.

⁴You give me great joy and encouragement my brother, for you refresh the hearts of the saints. I pray that you may be active in sharing your faith.

I Paul appeal to your love

⁵Now although in Christ I could instruct you to do what is required, I Paul, an elder and a prisoner of Christ Jesus appeal instead to your love.

I am sending back your slave Onesimus

⁶I entreat you for Onesimus, who has become my son during my imprisonment.

⁷Formerly he was useless to you, but he has now become useful,^{F*} both to you and to me. Therefore I am sending him back to you.

I would have been glad to have kept him

⁸I would have been glad to have kept him with me so that he could continue to do what you would do for me yourself if you were here. But I preferred not to without your consent in order

that any good you do for me would be spontaneous.

Welcome him as you would welcome me

⁹Perhaps the reason you lost him for a little while was that you might have him back for good, no longer as a slave but as a close brother. ¹⁰Therefore if you regard me as a friend welcome him as you would me.

If he owes you anything I will repay it

¹¹If he has done you any wrong or owes you anything, charge it to me.

¹²I Paul write this with my own hand, "I will repay it." I do not mention that you owe me your very self. ¹³Yes my brother, let me have some benefit from you in the Lord.

I know you will do even more than I ask

¹⁴I am confident of your obedience and know that you will do even more than I ask.

Prepare a room for me also for I hope to be restored to you

¹⁵And one more thing, prepare a guest room for me as I hope to be restored to you in answer to your prayers.

Greetings from those with Paul

¹⁶Epaphras my fellow prisoner in Christ Jesus sends you greetings as do Mark, Aristarchus, Demas and Luke my fellow workers.

Paul's closing blessing

¹⁷The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit.

*1 It was a common practice for the early church to meet in homes. There is no evidence of any Christian church building before the third century.

*7 Onesimus means 'useful.'

EPHESIANS

Unlike most of Paul's letters, this one to the Ephesians does not address any particular problem among the saints at Ephesus. Rather it appears to be a loving and profound message written by a spiritually mature Paul, to edify and strengthen the church.

The letter is believed to have circulated further than Ephesus as three very old copies have been found that omit the words '*to the saints in Ephesus*' in the introduction.

Paul spent over two years in Ephesus during his third mission. This was the city where he stirred up the craftsmen who made silver shrines of the goddess Diana and where her world-famous temple was located. The craftsmen were concerned because Paul "*has led large numbers of people to change their religion*" (Acts 18:30).

Ephesus was located on the western Mediterranean coast of present day Turkey. It was a predominantly Greek city, the fourth largest in the Roman empire. However at the time Paul wrote, about 61 AD it was dwindling and dying due to silting up of the harbour. All that remains today is a maze of abandoned ruins over 10 kms from the sea.

AUTHOR Paul the apostle.

Let not even a hint of sexual immorality be among you, nor any kind of lewd conduct, or greed, for these are improper for God's holy people. Ephesians 2:20.

CONTENTS

		Chapter
Paul's introduction	1	Edify and build others up by your talk
We were predestined to become God's holy sons	1	Do not grieve the Holy Spirit
All things to be combined under Jesus Christ	1	Be kind, tender-hearted and forgiving
Our inheritance sealed by the Holy Spirit	1	Be imitators of God
I pray that you may know the Father better	1	Let not a hint of sexual immorality be among you
He has exalted Christ	1	Avoid suggestive talk and obscene joking
Christ appointed head over the church	1	No immoral person can inherit the kingdom of God ...
You were once dead in your sins	1	Live as children of light
We are saved by grace and faith not our works	1	Condemn deeds of darkness
God has exalted us as Christ	1	Make the best use of opportunities
You Gentiles once had no part in Christ or Israel	1	Do not get drunk
Christ broke down the dividing wall	1	Be filled with the Spirit
All people now have access to the Father	1	Uplift one another with psalms, hymns and songs ...
This mystery not revealed to former generations.....	1	Wives submit to your husband as to the Lord
I pray that your spirit be strengthened	1	Husbands love your wife as Christ loves the church..
I pray that you may comprehend the love of Christ....	1	He who loves his wife loves himself
God is able to do more than we can imagine	1	Children obey your parents
Be humble, gentle, patient and loving	2	Fathers provoke not your children
One church, one Spirit, one Lord, one faith	2	Slaves obey your masters
One baptism and one Father	2	Masters treat your slaves with respect
Each person given gifts to build up the church	2	Put on full armour of God to stand against devil
That we no more be blown by winds of doctrine	2	The armour of God
Indulge not in sensuality and impurity	2	Pray in the Spirit at every opportunity
Put off your old self and put on the new	2	Pray for me also
Speak truthfully	2	Tychicus will tell you all that has happened
Let not the sun go down on your anger	2	Paul's closing blessing
Steal no more	2	

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Paul's introduction

¹Paul an apostle of Jesus Christ by the will of God, to the saints in Ephesus and all the faithful. ²Grace and peace to you from God our Father and from the Lord Jesus Christ.

**We were predestined
to become God's holy sons**

³Praise be to God the Father who has blessed us with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly realms, through Christ.

⁴For he chose us from before the creation of the world to be holy in his sight.

⁵Because he loved us he predestined us to become his sons through Jesus Christ.

All things to be combined under Jesus Christ

⁶Praise his glorious grace which he freely gave us in Jesus Christ whom he loves, and through whose blood we have forgiveness of our sins.

⁷For now God has made known to us the mystery to come into effect in the fullness of time. To combine all things in heaven and on earth under one head, Jesus Christ.

**Our inheritance in the kingdom of God
sealed by the Holy Spirit**

⁸We who were predestined and chosen for his glory, having believed when we first heard the word of truth, were marked with a seal, even the promised Holy Spirit. ⁹Who assures our inheritance in the kingdom of God along with all others who belong to God.

I pray that you may know the Father better

¹⁰For this reason I have not stopped giving thanks for you and remembering you in my prayers.

¹¹I pray that God the glorious Father will give you spiritual gifts of wisdom and revelation so that you may know him better.

¹²I pray that the eyes of your understanding may be opened, to know the richness of his glorious inheritance for the saints, and his incomparably great power.

**He has exalted Christ and
appointed him head over the church**

¹³For he raised Christ from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly realms. ¹⁴He exalted him far above all rulers, power, and dominion, not only for this age but for ages to come. ¹⁵God has placed all things under his feet and appointed him head over the church.

**You were once dead in your sins
when you followed the ways of this world**

¹⁶And you whom he has made alive were once dead in your sins, when you followed the ways of this world. ¹⁷The ways of the ruler of the realms of the spirit,^{F*} which spirit is still at work in those who are disobedient.

¹⁸We all lived like them at one time, gratifying the cravings of our flesh. By nature we were objects of God's wrath.

¹⁹But because of his great love for us, God who is rich in mercy saved us with Christ, even though we were dead in our sins.

**We have been saved by grace and faith
not by our works**

²⁰It is by his grace^{F*} that we have been saved, through our faith, not by our works.

²¹This grace is a gift of God so that no one can boast that they have saved themselves.

God has exalted us as Christ

²²God has exalted us as Christ and seated us with him in heavenly places. So that in coming ages he may show the immeasurable richness of his grace and kindness. ²³For we are his workmanship, created to do good works which God has prepared in advance for us to do.

You Gentiles once had no part in Christ or Israel

²⁴Remember you who were Gentiles by birth,^{F*} that you once had no part in Christ and were excluded from Israel. You were strangers to the Covenant and its promise, without hope and without God in the world.

Christ broke down the dividing wall

²⁵But now you who were once far away have been brought near, through the blood of Christ. For he has made the two peoples one and has broken down the dividing wall of hostility between Gentile and Israel.

²⁶Christ fulfilled in his flesh the old law with its commands and regulations, and created one new people out of the two, thus making peace and reconciling both to God.

All people now have access to the Father

²⁷For through Jesus Christ we both have access to the Father, by one Spirit.

²⁸You are no longer strangers but fellow citizens with God's people. And members of his household which is built upon the foundation of apostles and prophets, with Jesus himself as the chief cornerstone.

²⁹In him the whole building is joined together and rises to become a holy temple in the Lord. And you by his Spirit become part of the temple in which God lives.

³⁰For this reason I Paul am a prisoner of Christ,^{F*} for the sake of you Gentiles.

**This mystery was not revealed
to former generations**

³¹Now this mystery of Christ of which I have written briefly, that through the gospel Gentiles are heirs together with Israel, was made known to me by the Holy Spirit. ³²It was not revealed to former generations.

³³I became a servant of this gospel by the gift and power of God's grace. ³⁴Though I am the least of all the saints, this grace was given to me to reveal to the Gentiles the full richness of the mystery of Christ.

³⁵God's intent was that his wisdom now be

*20 Grace is a free gift from a loving God, of divine help, divine power or favour, beyond the natural abilities of man.

*24 Gentiles are defined by Jews as any person not born of a Jewish mother.

*30 Paul wrote this letter from prison in Rome.

EPHESIANS 2

made known through the church to the rulers in the heavenly realms. F*

³⁶Now through Jesus Christ we can approach God with freedom and confidence. ³⁷Therefore be not discouraged because of my sufferings for you. It is for your glory.

I pray that your spirit be strengthened and that you may comprehend the love of Christ

³⁸For this reason I kneel before the Father from whom his whole family in heaven and on earth derive its name, and pray that he will strengthen your spirit with his Spirit that Christ may dwell within you.

³⁹I also pray that you may comprehend the vastness of the love of Christ and be filled with the fullness of God.

God is able to do more than we can imagine

⁴⁰For God is able to do immeasurably more than all we can ask or imagine, by his power working within us through the Holy Spirit.

⁴¹To him be glory for ever and ever. Amen.



Remains of the world-famous temple of the goddess Diana at Ephesus.

2

Be humble, gentle, patient and loving

¹Now as a prisoner for the Lord I urge you to live a life befitting your calling. ²Be humble, gentle and patient, bearing with one another in love.

³Maintain the unity that comes of the Holy Spirit, through peaceful living.

One church, one Spirit, one Lord, one faith, one baptism and one Father

⁴There is but one church, one Spirit, one Lord, one faith, one baptism, one God and Father of

*35 Paul appears to be saying that mysteries have been kept hidden by God from angels at certain levels of authority in the realms of heaven, as well as from man on earth (see also 1 Peter 1:11). We know there are degrees, or levels in heaven from Paul's statement in 2 Corinthians 3:45 about his being caught up to the third heaven, and the angel who appeared to Daniel (Daniel 10:9, 15:16) revealed varying degrees of authority among angels.

us all, who is over all, through all, and in all.

To each person is given gifts to build up the church

⁵But to each one of us is given gifts, by grace as Christ apportions them.

⁶He has called some to be apostles, some to be prophets, some to be evangelists. Some to be pastors and teachers. ⁷Each to do his part in good works, that the body of Christ may be built up until we all attain a oneness in the faith and become mature in the knowledge and fullness of Christ.

That we be no longer blown by every wind of doctrine

⁸Then we will no longer be as children, tossed to and fro and blown by every wind of doctrine by the craftiness of men in their scheming ways.

⁹Instead we will speak the truth in love, and grow up into Christ who is the head. For by him the whole body of the church is held together and grows in love as each part does its work.

Indulge not in sensuality and impurity

¹⁰Therefore I call upon you in the name of the Lord to no longer live in futility as do the Gentiles. For they have darkened their minds and separated themselves from God by their ignorance and hardness of heart.

¹¹Having lost their spiritual sensitivity they indulge in every kind of sensuality and impurity and continually lust for more.

Put off your old self and put on the new

¹²But you have been taught to put off your old corrupt self and to put on the new self, created to be like God in true righteousness.

Speak truthfully

¹³Put off falsehood and always speak truthfully to each other, for we are all members of one body.

Let not the sun go down on your anger

¹⁴Let not the sun go down on your anger. Do not give the devil a foothold.

Steal no more

¹⁵He who has stolen must steal no more, but must work with his own hands that he may give to those in need.

Edify and build others up by your talk

¹⁶Let not base talk come from your mouths, rather that which edifies and builds up according to the needs of those around you.

Do not grieve the Holy Spirit

¹⁷Do not grieve the Holy Spirit. Rid yourself of all bitterness, anger, brawling, slander and malice.

Be kind, tender-hearted and forgiving

¹⁸Be kind and tender-hearted, forgiving each another as Christ forgave you.

Be imitators of God

¹⁹Be imitators of God as his dearly loved children. Live a life of love, as Christ loved us and gave himself for us as an offering to God.

**Let not a hint of sexual immorality
be among you**

²⁰Let not even a hint of sexual immorality be among you, nor any kind of lewd conduct, or greed for these are improper for God's holy people.

Nor suggestive talk and obscene joking

²¹Nor should there be foolish or suggestive talk or obscene joking, but rather thanksgiving.

**No immoral person can
inherit the kingdom of God**

²²Of this you can be certain, no immoral, impure or greedy person (for such a person is an idolater^{F*}) has any inheritance in the kingdom of God.

²³Let no one deceive you in this matter for because of such things God's wrath comes upon the disobedient. Therefore do not associate with such people.

**Live as children of light and
condemn deeds of darkness**

²⁴For though you were once in darkness you are now in the light of the Lord.

²⁵So live as children of light, for the fruit of light is goodness, righteousness and truth.

²⁶Learn what pleases the Lord and have nothing to do with deeds of darkness, rather condemn them. ²⁷It is shameful even to mention what the evil do in secret.

Make the best use of opportunities

²⁸Be careful then how you live, for the times are evil. Be wise and make the best use of every opportunity.

Do not get drunk

²⁹Get not drunk on wine for it leads to debauchery.

**Be filled with the Spirit and uplift
one another with psalms, hymns and songs**

³⁰Instead be filled with the Spirit and uplift one another with psalms, hymns, and songs of the Spirit.

³¹Sing and offer melody to the Lord. And in your hearts continually give thanks to the Father for all things in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ.

3

Wives, submit to your husbands as to the Lord

¹Be submissive to one another, out of reverence for Christ.

²Wives, submit to your husbands as to the Lord, for the husband is head of the wife as Christ is head of the church. ³As the church submits to Christ so also should wives submit to their husbands in all things.

**Husbands, love your wives
as Christ loves the church**

⁴Husbands, love your wives, just as Christ loves the church and gave himself up for her to make her holy. And purified her by Living

Water^{F*} to present her to himself radiant and without blemish, holy and blameless.

**He who loves his wife loves himself
for both are one flesh**

⁵In this same way a husband ought to love his wife as if she were his own body. ⁶He who loves his wife loves himself, for it is written, "**A man will leave his father and mother and be united to his wife and the two shall become one flesh.**"

⁷There is a great mystery here, however I liken the marriage relationship to Christ and the church. ⁸So let each man love his wife as himself and each wife show respect for her husband.

Children obey your parents

⁹Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right. ¹⁰**Honour your father and mother that it may go well with you and that you may live long upon the earth.** This is the first commandment with a promise.

Fathers, provoke not your children

¹¹Fathers, provoke not your children to anger. Rather raise them in the teachings of the Lord.

Slaves, obey your masters

¹²Slaves, obey your earthly masters with respect and fear, just as you obey Christ. Not only when their eye is upon you, but from your heart. ¹³Serve wholeheartedly as if you were serving the Lord and not a man. ¹⁴For the Lord rewards everyone for whatever good they do, whether slave or free.

Masters, treat your slaves with respect

¹⁵And masters, treat your slaves the same way. Do not threaten them, for God who is both their master and yours is in heaven. And there is no distinction between either of you in his eyes.

**Put on the full armour of God
to stand against cunning of devil**

¹⁶Finally, be strong in the Lord. Put on the full armour of God to stand against the cunning of the devil. ¹⁷For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the powers of darkness, the spiritual forces of evil.

The armour of God

¹⁸Stand firm, with the belt of truth around your waist, with the breastplate of righteousness and your feet shod with preparedness. ¹⁹Take up the shield of faith, the helmet of salvation and the sword of the Spirit which is the word of God.

Pray in the Spirit at every opportunity

²⁰Take every opportunity to pray in the Spirit with prayers and requests of all kinds. Be attentive and always pray for the saints.

Pray for me also

²¹Pray for me also that whenever I speak, words shall be given me to fearlessly make

*22 The broader meaning of idolatry is when an earthly object or desire is of more importance to us than pleasing God.

*4 Living Water is another term for the Holy Spirit (John 7:29-30).

EPHESIANS 3

known the gospel, for which I am an ambassador in chains.

Tychicus will tell you all that has happened

²²Tychicus our dear brother and faithful servant in the Lord will tell you everything that has happened.^{F*} I am sending him to you for this purpose and also that he may encourage you.

Paul's closing blessing

²³Peace and grace to you brethren, and love and faith from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

*²³ Tychicus probably delivered this letter to the Ephesians.

PHILIPPIANS

The church at Phillipi appears to have been Paul's favourite, and with good reason. They had looked after his needs from the very beginning, when he first took the gospel to them on his second mission (Acts 15:10). Even now about twenty years later while Paul is imprisoned in Rome they are still caring for him. They sent Epaphroditus a Philippian church member to stay with him and attend to his needs. They also sent him gifts.

This letter which is Paul's most joyous is primarily a personal thank you. Paul sent it back with Epaphroditus who being homesick had fallen seriously ill, but had been healed.

Phillipi was a prosperous Greek city. It was here that Paul drove out the demon spirit of a fortune-telling slave girl (Acts 15:16-20) and was imprisoned as a result. When the prison doors miraculously flew open at midnight he ended up converting the jailer and his family (Acts 15:24-32).

AUTHOR Paul the apostle.

I know what it is like to be in need and what it is to have plenty. But I have learned to be content in whatever circumstances I find myself. Philippians 3:7.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Paul's introduction	1	I have sent Epaphroditus back to you	2
I pray for you with joy	1	He longs for all of you and almost died	2
How I long for all of you	1	Beware the false brethren who preach circumcision	2
May your love abound with knowledge and insight ..	1	I once regarded the Law as being to my good	2
My imprisonment encourages courageous preaching..	1	I consider all a loss compared to knowing Christ	2
Whatever motive I rejoice that Christ is preached	1	I am not yet made perfect but I press on to win	2
Whatever happens to me will turn out for my good ...	1	Let us live up to what we already know	2
Whether I live or die Christ will be honoured	1	Many live as enemies of Christ	2
I desire to die and be with Christ	1	At our Saviour's return he will transform our bodies ..	2
More needful that I remain	1	Our lowly bodies will become like his glorious body ..	2
Conduct yourselves in a manner worthy of gospel ...	1	Therefore my dear friends stand firm in the Lord	2
Fear not those who oppose you	1	Help Euodia and Syntyche be reconciled	3
You are now suffering for Christ as I did	1	Rejoice in the Lord	3
Have Christ-like love and unity among yourselves ...	1	Take your cares to God in prayer	3
Jesus had the nature of God but was obedient	1	The peace of God will dwell in your hearts always ...	3
God has exalted him	1	Think on excellent and praiseworthy things	3
Every tongue shall confess Jesus Christ is Lord	1	I rejoice greatly over your concern for me	3
Continue to be obedient and work out your salvation...	1	I have learned to be content in all circumstances	3
Hold fast to the words of Eternal Life	1	You were the only church that gave for my needs	3
That I may boast of you when Christ comes	1	My God will fully satisfy all your needs	3
I hope to send Timothy to you soon	2	Greetings to the saints	3
I also hope to come myself	2	Paul's closing blessing	3

1

Paul's introduction

¹Paul and Timothy, servants of Jesus Christ, to all the saints at Phillipi together with the bishops^{F*} and deacons. ²Grace and peace to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

I pray for you with joy

³I thank my God for you and pray with joy, confident that the Spirit who began the good work in you will carry it on to completion until the day Christ Jesus returns. ⁴I feel this way about you since I have you in my heart.

*1 The early churches were presided over by bishops, who were assisted by deacons

How I long for all of you

⁵God can testify how much I long for all of you with the love of Jesus Christ. ⁶Whether I am in chains or preaching the gospel you share in God's grace with me.

May your love abound with knowledge and insight

⁷I pray that your love may abound more and more, with knowledge and insight to discern what is best. So that you will remain pure and blameless until the day of Christ.

My imprisonment has encouraged the brethren to preach more courageously

⁸Brethren, what has happened to me has

PHILIPPIANS 2

served to advance the gospel. ⁹It has become clear to the palace guards and to everyone else that I am in chains for Christ. ¹⁰Therefore most of the brethren have been encouraged to speak the word of God more courageously.

Whether from false motives or true I rejoice that Christ is preached

¹¹It is true that some preach Christ out of envy and rivalry, but others out of goodwill and love.

¹²The former preach out of ambition and without sincerity, supposing they can stir up trouble for me while I am in prison.

¹³But what does it matter? Whether from false motives or true, Christ is preached. Because of this I rejoice and will continue to rejoice.

Whether I live or die Christ will be honoured

¹⁴I know that through your prayers and the Spirit of Jesus Christ, whatever happens to me will turn out for my good. I will not be put to shame. Whether I live or die Christ will be honoured.

I desire to die and be with Christ but it is more needful that I remain

¹⁵For me, to live is to have Christ, and to die is to have more of Christ. I am torn between the two.

¹⁶I desire to die and be with Christ which is better by far. But it is more needful that I remain in the body for your sake. ¹⁷Convinced of this I know I shall remain in the body for your progress and your overflowing joy in the faith.

Conduct yourselves in a manner worthy of the gospel

¹⁸Therefore conduct yourselves in a manner worthy of the gospel of Christ. Then whether I am able to come and see you or only hear about you, I will know that you stand firm in one spirit.

Fear not those who oppose you

¹⁹Fear not those who oppose you. Their opposition is a sign that they will be destroyed, but you will be saved by God.

You are now suffering for Christ as I did when I was with you

²⁰For God intends that you not only believe in Christ but that you suffer for him. ²¹You are now going through the same struggle that I had when I was with you and that I still have.

Make my joy complete by having Christ-like love and unity among yourselves

²²With the comfort, love, tenderness, compassion and fellowship you enjoy from being united with Christ and having the Holy Spirit, make my joy complete by having the same love among yourselves and being of one mind.

²³Do nothing out of selfishness or pride but in humility consider others better than yourselves.

²⁴Care for the needs of others, not only for your own needs.

Even though Jesus had the nature of God he was humble and obedient

²⁵Your caring should be like that of Jesus

Christ who though having the nature of God, did not covet the Godhead but rather emptied himself and took upon himself the nature of a servant.

²⁶Being born as a man he humbled himself in obedience, even unto death on a cross.

God has exalted him and every tongue shall confess that Jesus Christ is Lord

²⁷Therefore God has exalted him to the highest place, and given him a name which is above every other name, the name of Jesus.

²⁸And it is written, "**Before which name every knee in heaven and earth shall bow and every tongue confess, that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.**"

Therefore continue to be obedient and work out your salvation

²⁹Therefore my dear friends, continue to be obedient and work out your salvation with reverence and trembling.

³⁰Do all things without complaint or question that you may become blameless and pure, children of God without blemish in the midst of this crooked and depraved generation.

Hold fast to the words of Eternal Life that I may boast of you when Christ comes

³¹Shine like the stars in the night sky as you hold fast to the words of Eternal Life, that I may boast when Christ comes that I did not labour in vain.

³²I am glad and rejoice with all of you. You also should be glad and rejoice with me.

2

I hope to send Timothy to you soon

¹I hope to send Timothy to you as soon as I see how things go with me, that I may be cheered when I receive news back about you.

²I have no one else who takes as much genuine interest in your welfare. Others look out for their own interests not those of Jesus Christ. But Timothy has proved himself and serves with me like a son.

I also hope to come myself soon

³I am also confident in the Lord that I myself will come soon.

I have sent Epaphroditus back to you

⁴I have thought it necessary to send back to you Epaphroditus our fellow worker and soldier whom you sent to take care of my needs.

He longs for all of you and almost died

⁵He has been longing for all of you, and was distressed because you heard he was unwell. Indeed he almost died, but God healed him to spare me more sorrow.

⁶Welcome with great joy and honour such men as him, for he almost gave his life to give me the help you could not give me.

Watch out for the false brethren who preach circumcision

⁷Finally brethren, watch out for those dogs,

those workers of evil who would mutilate your flesh through circumcision. ⁸For we worship by the Spirit of God and glory in Jesus Christ. We do not put our trust in the flesh.

I once regarded the Law as being to my good

⁹If anyone has reason to put trust in the flesh, I have more. I am of Israel, of the tribe of Benjamin and in regard to the Law of Moses I was a Pharisee and was circumcised on the eighth day.

¹⁰As for zeal, I persecuted the church, but whereas I once regarded the Law as being to my profit, I now consider it loss for the sake of Christ.

I now consider everything a loss compared to the surpassing greatness of knowing Jesus Christ

¹¹I consider everything a loss compared to the surpassing greatness of knowing Jesus Christ as my Lord.

¹²I now have a righteousness not of my own efforts from the Law but from faith in Christ. ¹³I want to know him more and share in his sufferings and in the power of his resurrection.

I am not yet made perfect but I press on to win the prize

¹⁴Not that I have already been made perfect brethren, but I press on to win the prize. Forgetting what is behind me and straining toward what is ahead. For Jesus Christ has made me his own.

¹⁵All of us who are spiritually mature should take such a view of things.

Let us live up to what we already know

¹⁶If on some point you think differently God will make it clear to you, only let us live up to what we already know.

¹⁷Follow my example brethren and those who live according to the pattern we gave you.

For many live as enemies of Christ

¹⁸For I have said before and now say it again with tears, many live as enemies of Christ. Their destiny is destruction, their god is their stomach and their minds dwell on earthly things. They glory in their shame.

When our Saviour returns he will transform our lowly bodies to become like his glorious body

¹⁹But our hope dwells in heaven. We eagerly await our Saviour's return, the Lord Jesus Christ, who will transform our lowly bodies to become like his glorious body.

Therefore my dear friends stand firm in the Lord

²⁰Therefore my brethren my dear friends whom I love and long for, you who are my joy and my crown, stand firm in the Lord.

3

Help Euodia and Syntyche be reconciled

¹Now I plead with Euodia and Syntyche to be reconciled to each other in the Lord. Help these

women who have laboured at my side in the cause of the gospel, together with Clement and the rest of my fellow workers whose names are in the Book of Life.^{F*}

Rejoice in the Lord

²Rejoice in the Lord. Again I say rejoice. Let your gentleness be seen by all, for the Lord is near.

Take your cares to God in prayer and the peace of God will dwell in your hearts always

³Be not anxious in your minds, rather take your cares to God in prayer and gratitude. ⁴And the peace of God which surpasses all understanding will dwell in your hearts and watch over you always.

Think on excellent and praiseworthy things

⁵Finally brethren, whatever is true, noble, right, pure, lovely, and admirable. Whatever is excellent and praiseworthy, think on these things and the God of peace will be with you.

I rejoice greatly over your concern for me

⁶I rejoice greatly that you have again shown your concern for me. You have been concerned all along but had no opportunity to show it.

I have learned to be content in whatever circumstances I find myself

⁷I say this not because I am in need. I know what it is like to be in need and what it is to have plenty. But I have learned to be content in whatever circumstances I find myself.

⁸I can endure all things through him who gives me strength. ⁹Yet it was kind of you to share in my troubles.

You were the only church in the early days that gave for my needs

¹⁰In the early days of my preaching when I set out from Macedonia, not one church shared by giving me back something for what they had received except you Philippians. Even when I was in Thessalonica you sent me something for my needs again and again.

My God will fully satisfy all your needs

¹¹Not that I am looking for more gifts but I look for the reward you will receive for what you have done for me.

¹²I am amply supplied now that I have received the gifts you sent by Epaphroditus, a fragrant offering, a sacrifice acceptable and pleasing to God.

¹³And my God will fully satisfy all your needs through his glorious riches in Jesus Christ.

Greetings to the saints

¹³Greet every saint in Christ Jesus. All the saints here send you greetings especially those who belong to Caesar's household.

Paul's closing blessing

¹⁴To our God and Father be glory for ever and ever. The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit. Amen.

*1 The Book of Life (meaning Eternal Life). See note on Revelation 2:36.

TITUS

Paul has been released from his Rome prison for approx two years now and is again about his tireless missionary work.

He is believed to have visited Spain as planned (Romans 7:18), and then along with his capable Greek companion Titus, visited the island of Crete. At the time of this letter Paul has left Titus in Crete to help establish the new churches and appoint leaders while Paul continues his mission elsewhere, traditionally Philippi.

Paul now writes to Titus who is still in Crete, to give him some useful instruction on church leadership in general and to invite him to spend the winter with him in Nicopolis, a city on the west coast of Greece.

AUTHOR Paul the apostle.

A bishop should be hospitable, kind, discreet, upright, holy and self-disciplined.
Titus 1:6.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Paul greets Titus	1	Let no one treat you with disrespect	1
I left you in Crete to appoint bishops in every town ...	1	Remind saints to be obedient, honest and courteous ..	1
Qualities of a bishop	1	Avoid foolish controversies	1
False teachers must be silenced	1	Only warn a divisive man twice	1
Rebuke the people with sharpness	1	Once we too were sinners	2
Teach the older saints to be examples to the young .	1	But the loving kindness of God saved us	2
You yourself must be a model example	1	Try and come to me at Nicopolis for winter	2
Teach slaves to be subject to their masters	1	Help Zenas and Apollos on their way	2
Grace teaches us to say 'no' to worldly passions	1	Closing greetings and blessing	2

1

Paul greets Titus

¹Paul an apostle of Jesus Christ called to further the faith of God's elect. To Titus my true son in the faith we share.

²Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Saviour.

I left you in Crete to appoint bishops in every town

³The reason I left you in Crete was to put in order what remained to be done and to appoint bishops^{F*} in every town.

The qualities of a bishop

⁴Now a bishop should be blameless, have been married once only,^{F*} and be a man whose children believe and are not reckless or disobedient.

⁵Since he is entrusted with God's work he must be beyond reproach, not arrogant or quick-tempered, not given to drunkenness, not violent or greedy for gain.

⁶Rather a bishop should be hospitable, kind, discreet, upright, holy and self-disciplined.

*3 A bishop (sometimes translated elder or overseer) presided over a local church much as a pastor or parish priest does today.

*4 ie Not to be a man who has divorced and remarried. Having plural wives was mostly confined to Semitic peoples, ie Israelites, Arabs and some African tribes. It was forbidden among Romans and Greeks, however divorce was common.

⁷He must hold firmly to the gospel as it has been taught him so that he can preach sound doctrine and refute those who oppose it.

False teachers must be silenced

⁸For there are many who are rebellious, empty talkers and deceivers, especially Jews of the circumcision group. ⁹They must be silenced or they will bring ruin to whole households, teaching things that should not be taught.

¹⁰Although these teachers claim to know God, by their very actions they deny him. ¹¹They are detestable, rebellious and incapable of doing good. They teach for the sake of dishonest gain.

Rebuke the people with sharpness

¹²Now a man of Crete, one of their own prophets^{F*} has said, "Cretans are liars, evil beasts and lazy gluttons."

¹³There is truth in this, therefore rebuke the people with sharpness so they will remain sound in the faith, and pay no attention to Jewish myths, or the false teachings of those who have deviated from the truth.

¹⁴You must teach the saints sound doctrine.

*12 The Cretan poet Epimenides.

Teach the older saints to be a good example to the young

¹⁵Teach the older men to be temperate, respectable, self-disciplined and sound in faith, love and endurance.

¹⁶Likewise teach the older women to be reverent in their behaviour and not to gossip slanderously or be addicted to wine. ¹⁷Rather to teach by good example and to train the younger women to love their husbands and children. ¹⁸And to be sensible, chaste, busy at home, full of kindness and subject to their husbands, that the word of God may not fall into disrepute.

¹⁹Similarly encourage the younger men to be self-controlled.

You yourself must be a model example

²⁰In all things you yourself must be a model example. Show integrity, dignity and soundness of doctrine that cannot be criticised in all your teaching. ²¹Let those who oppose you be ashamed and not able to say anything bad about us.

Teach slaves to be subject to their masters

²²Teach slaves to be subject to their masters, to please them and not talk disrespectfully to them or steal from them. ²³That in every way they will make attractive the gospel of God our Saviour.

Grace teaches us to say 'no' to worldly passions

²⁴For the grace of God that saves has appeared and teaches us to say 'no' to worldly passions, and to live upright godly lives. ²⁵While we await the appearing in glory of the great God, and our Saviour Jesus Christ.^{F*}

Do not let anyone treat you with disrespect

²⁶Encourage and rebuke with authority. Let no one treat you with disrespect.

Remind the saints to be obedient, honest and courteous

²⁷Remind the saints to be subject to their rulers and to obey laws. Also to be ready to do honest work and not speak evil of anyone, but to be peaceable, considerate and courteous toward all.

And devote themselves to doing what is good

²⁸Stress these things so that those who trust in God will be careful to devote themselves to doing good. ²⁹Our people must learn to provide for their daily necessities and not live unproductive lives.

Avoid foolish controversies

³⁰Avoid foolish controversies, genealogies and arguments about the Law of Moses. These things are unprofitable and futile.

Only warn a divisive man twice

³¹Warn a divisive man once, and then a second time. After that have nothing more to do with him. You can be certain that such a man is perverse and sinful. He has condemned himself.

2

Once we too were sinners but the loving kindness of God saved us

¹At one time we too were foolish and disobedient, deceived and enslaved by all manner of passions and pleasures. ²We lived in malice, envy, and hate toward one another.

³But the loving kindness of God saved us, not because of any righteous works we had done, but because of his mercy.

⁴He saved us through the rebirth of baptism and renewal by the Holy Spirit, through Jesus Christ our Saviour.

⁵We have become heirs to the hope of Eternal Life.

Try and come to me at Nicopolis for winter

⁶When I send Artemas to you or Tychicus, try and come to me at Nicopolis for I have decided to winter there.

Help Zenas and Apollos on their way

⁷Do all you can to help Zenas the lawyer and Apollos on their way.^{F*} See that they have everything they need.

Closing greetings and blessing

⁸All here with me send you their greetings.

⁹Greet those with you who love us in the faith. Grace be with you all.



The island of Crete where Paul left Titus to establish the new churches and appoint leaders.

*²⁵ Both Jesus and Paul have made a statements such as this indicating that the Father is to accompany Jesus at his second coming. See also Matt-Mark-Luke 32:7 and note.

*⁷ Zenas and Apollos are believed to have delivered this letter to Titus in Crete.

1 TIMOTHY

Paul has left his young missionary companion Timothy in Ephesus to refute false teachers while he goes to visit the saints in Macedonia.

While in Macedonia Paul foresees a possible delay in his returning to Ephesus and writes this letter to Timothy giving him instructions to pass onto the saints.

Timothy was born of a devout Jewish mother (Eunice) and a Greek father. Paul converted Timothy during his second mission at Lystra and had him circumcised so that he would be accepted by the local Jews (Acts 15:1-3). Timothy appears to have been a very faithful young man but somewhat shy, more a follower than a leader. There is no doubt that Paul was very fond of him.

This letter contains much practical instruction. It is also noted for Paul's admission that he was the '*worst of all sinners*' and that the reason the Lord had mercy on him was to provide hope for other sinners. It also contains Paul's famous quote, "*The love of money is the root of all evil*" (1 Timothy 3:26).

AUTHOR Paul the apostle.

Here is a trustworthy saying, "***Jesus Christ came into the world to save sinners***" of whom I am the worst. 1 Timothy 1:11.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Paul greets Timothy	1	Let no one despise you because of your youth	2
Warn false teachers who promote controversy	1	Neglect not your spiritual gift	2
Our desire is to increase love among the saints	1	Treat older people with respect	2
Some men want to teach the old Law of Moses	1	Treat the young as brothers and sisters	2
The Law was given for sinners	1	Take care of widows who are genuinely in need	3
I thank Jesus Christ for appointing me to his service.....	1	A non-provider is worse than an unbeliever	3
I was also a sinner	1	Only worthy older widows to be supported by church	3
Jesus Christ came to save sinners	1	Younger widows should remarry	3
I the worst of sinners was shown mercy	1	Believing women should support widowed relatives	3
I was an example to others who would believe	1	Faithful bishops worthy of their keep	3
I give you the following instructions	1	Two or more witnesses required to accuse a bishop	3
Prayer to be offered for all men especially rulers	1	Do not ordain too hastily	3
Jesus the only mediator between God and man	1	Use a little wine for the sake of your stomach	3
Women should dress modestly	1	Slaves should respect their masters	3
Women not to have authority over men in church	1	The proud disagree with sound instruction	3
For Eve was formed after Adam	1	We brought nothing into this world	3
Eve was the one deceived not Adam	1	We take nothing out	3
Women are saved through child bearing	1	The love of money is the root of all evil	3
To aspire to be a bishop is noble	2	Advice to the rich in the church	3
The qualities of a bishop	2	Timothy to pursue godliness	3
The qualities of a deacon	2	Keep all these commands	3
I may be delayed in coming to you	2	Until the appearing of our Lord Jesus Christ	3
In later times some will depart from the faith	2	Honour to God who lives in unapproachable light	3
False teachers will forbid marriage and certain foods	2	Whom no mortal man has seen	3
All food can be purified by prayer	2	Reject the godless babble falsely called Knowledge	3
Train yourself in godliness	2	Paul's closing blessing	3

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Paul greets Timothy

¹Paul an apostle of Jesus Christ by the command of God, to Timothy my true son in the faith. ²Grace, mercy and peace to you from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.

Warn false teachers who promote controversy

³As I urged you before I left for Macedonia, stay there in Ephesus in order to warn certain men not to teach false doctrines any longer. Nor to devote themselves to myths and endless

genealogies. ⁴These things promote controversy rather than the building up of faith.

Our desire is to increase love among the saints

⁵Our desire is to increase love among the saints. Love which comes from a pure heart, a clear conscience and sincere faith.

Some men want to teach the old Law of Moses

⁶But some men have strayed from the faith and turned to meaningless talk. They desire to teach the old Law of Moses but do not know what they are talking about.

The Law was given not for the righteous but for sinners

⁷The Law is good if used properly, but the Law was not given for the righteous but for the ungodly and sinful. ⁸Murderers, adulterers, sodomites, slave traders, liars and all else contrary to the glorious gospel of the blessed God which he has entrusted me to teach.

I thank Jesus Christ for appointing me to his service though I was once a sinner

⁹I thank Jesus Christ our Lord who has given me grace and strength abundantly, and judged me as one who is faithful by appointing me to his service. ¹⁰Even though I was once a blasphemer, a persecutor and a violent man, he has shown me mercy. For I acted in ignorance.

Jesus Christ came to save sinners

¹¹Here is a trustworthy saying, "*Jesus Christ came into the world to save sinners*" of whom I am the worst.

I, the worst of sinners was shown mercy as an example to others who would believe

¹²The reason that I, the worst of sinners was shown mercy, was to enable Christ to display his unlimited patience in me, as an example to all those who would believe on him and receive Eternal Life.

I give you the following instructions

¹³Timothy my son I give you the following instructions in keeping with the prophecy once made over you, that you may fight a good fight and hold on to your faith and have a clear conscience.

¹⁴For some have rejected their conscience and shipwrecked their faith. Among these are Hymenaeus and Alexander whom I have handed over to Satan that they may learn not to blaspheme.

Prayer to be offered for all men, especially rulers

¹⁵First of all I desire that prayer and thanksgiving be offered for all men, especially for rulers^{F*} and others in authority, that we may live quiet peaceful lives in all holiness.

¹⁶This is good and pleases God who desires all men to be saved and to know the truth.

Jesus the only mediator between God and man

¹⁷There is but one God and one mediator between man and God, Christ Jesus who gave himself as a ransom for all.

¹⁸So let men everywhere lift up holy hands in prayer without anger or contention.

Women should dress modestly

¹⁹I also desire that women should dress modestly with decency and restraint. Not with braided hair or with gold, pearls, or expensive clothes, but with kindly deeds as befits women who profess to worship God.

Women not to teach or have authority over men in church

²⁰Women should learn in quietness and submission. I do not permit women to teach or to have authority over men in the church. They are to remain quiet.

For Eve was formed after Adam and she was the one deceived

²¹For Adam was formed first, then Eve. And Adam was not the one deceived, rather it was Eve who was deceived and transgressed.

Women are saved through child bearing

²²But women are saved through child bearing if they continue in faith, love, and holiness with chastity.

2

To aspire to be a bishop is noble

¹Here is another trustworthy saying, "*He who aspires to be a bishop desires a noble task.*"

The qualities of a bishop

²A bishop must be above reproach, have been married once only,^{F*} be temperate, self-controlled, respectable, hospitable, able to preach, not given to drunkenness, not violent but gentle, not quarrelsome nor a lover of money.

³He must manage his own family well and see that his children obey him with proper respect. For if a man cannot govern his own household how can he care for God's church?

⁴He must not be a recent convert or he may become puffed up and fall under the same condemnation as the devil.^{F*}

⁵Also he must have a good reputation with those outside the church that he not fall into disgrace, or a snare of the devil.

The qualities of a deacon

⁶Deacons^{F*} likewise are to be men worthy of respect. Sincere, not indulging in much wine and not eager for gain. ⁷Deacons must also have been married once only and govern their children and households well.

⁸In the same way their wives are to be women

*15 Timely advice, as Nero was now ruler of the Roman empire. Within two years the church would begin to suffer at his hands. Both Paul and Peter were put to death during his reign.

*2 ie Not divorced. See note on Titus 1:4.

*4 The devil and his angels are traditionally believed to have been cast out of heaven because of the sin of pride.

*6 Deacons were assistants to bishops.

1 TIMOTHY 3

worthy of respect, not malicious gossipers but temperate and trustworthy in all things.

⁹Deacons must hold to the deep truths of the faith with a clear conscience. ¹⁰Let them first be tested and if they prove themselves let them serve.

¹¹For they who serve well gain a good standing and great boldness in their faith in Jesus Christ.

I may be delayed in coming to you

¹²Although I hope to come to you soon, I write you these instructions, that if I am delayed you will know how the saints should conduct themselves in the church of God.

In later times some will depart from the faith

¹³For the Spirit clearly reveals to me, that in later times some will depart from the faith and give heed to deceiving spirits and doctrines of demons.

False teachers will forbid marriage and certain foods

¹⁴Such teachings will come through hypocritical liars whose consciences have been seared as if with a hot iron.

¹⁵They will forbid people to marry and require them to abstain from foods which God created to be used with thanksgiving by those who believe.

All food can be purified by prayer

¹⁶For everything God created is good and nothing is to be rejected if it is received with thanksgiving, for it is purified by the word of God and prayer.

¹⁷If you teach these things to the brethren you will be a good minister of Jesus Christ.

Train yourself in godliness

¹⁸Have nothing to do with godless myths and legends, rather train yourself in godliness. ¹⁹Physical training is of some value, but godliness has value for all things, both in this life and the life to come.

Let no one despise you because of your youth

²⁰So command and teach all these things to the people. ²¹Let no one despise you because of your youth. Set the believers an example in your speech and conduct and in your love, faith and purity.

Neglect not your spiritual gift

²²Until I return, attend to the public reading of scripture and to preaching and teaching. ²³Do not neglect your gift which was given you by prophecy when the elders laid their hands on you. ²⁴Be diligent in all these matters that all may see your progress.

Treat older people with respect and the young as brothers and sisters

²⁵Do not rebuke an older man, but exhort him as if he were your father. ²⁶Treat younger men as brothers, and older women as you would your mother, and younger women as sisters with total purity.

3

Take care of widows who are genuinely in need

¹Take care of widows who are genuinely in need. But if a widow has children or grandchildren, they should live their religion by caring for their own for this is pleasing to God.

²However a widow who is alone and genuinely in need places her hope in God and prays day and night for help.

³But a widow who lives for pleasure is spiritually dead even while she lives.

A non-provider worse than an unbeliever

⁴So warn the saints with this following instruction that none may incur guilt. ***"If anyone does not provide for his own, and especially his immediate family, he has denied the faith and is worse than an unbeliever."***

Only worthy older widows to be supported by church

⁵No widow is to be supported by the church unless she is over sixty years of age, has been married once only, and is known for her good works. ⁶And who has raised children, shown hospitality, washed the feet of the saints, assisted those in distress and devoted herself to doing good in every way.

Younger widows should remarry

⁷Do not put younger widows on the list, for when their sensual desires overcome their dedication to Christ they wish to marry again, bringing judgement upon themselves having broken their vow.^{F*}

⁸Besides that, they often become idle and go from house to house gossiping and being busybodies, saying things they should not.

⁹I counsel younger widows to remarry and to have children and manage their homes, thus giving our enemies no opportunity to criticise us. For some have already turned away to follow Satan.

Believing women should support widows who are their relatives

¹⁰If any believing woman has a relative who is a widow she should support her and not let her become a burden to the church. So that the church can help the widows who are truly in need.

Faithful bishops worthy of their keep

¹¹Bishops who rule faithfully in the church are worthy of double honour, especially those who preach and teach, for the scripture says, ***"The labourer is worthy of his hire."***^{F*}

Two or three witnesses required to accuse an bishop

¹²Do not act on an accusation against a bishop unless it is brought by two or three

^{*}7 It is believed that a widow supported by the church was expected to make a vow to the Lord to devote the rest of her life to serving him within the church. By remarrying after making such a vow she would incur guilt.

^{*}11 Paul here quotes the words of Jesus from the gospel of Luke.

witnesses. ¹³However a bishop who does sin is to be rebuked publicly, that the others may take warning.

¹⁴I command you to maintain these rules without partiality. Do nothing out of favouritism.

Do not ordain too hastily

¹⁵Be not too hasty in the laying on of hands, to avoid sharing in the guilt of other men's sins.

¹⁶The sins of some men are immediately obvious but the sins of others only come to light later.

¹⁷Good works are also obvious, but even when they are not, they cannot long be hidden.

Use a little wine for the sake of your stomach

¹⁸Keep yourself pure. No longer drink only water but use a little wine for the sake of your stomach and frequent ailments.

Slaves should respect their masters

¹⁹Slaves should respect their masters so that God's name and our teaching not be slandered.

²⁰Slaves who have believing masters should not show less respect for them because they are brothers in the gospel. Instead they should serve them even better for they are dear to them.

The proud disagree with sound instruction

²¹These are all the things you must teach the saints. If anyone teaches otherwise and disagrees with the sound instruction of our Lord Jesus Christ, he is puffed up with pride and understands nothing.

²²Such men also have an unhealthy interest in controversies that cause strife and constant friction between men of corrupt minds. They regard godliness as a means to financial gain.

We brought nothing into this world and we take nothing out

²³But we brought nothing into this world and we take nothing out of it.

²⁴If we have food and clothing we should be content with that. Godliness with contentment is great gain.

The love of money is the root of all evil

²⁵Men who desire to get rich fall into temptation. They are snared by foolish and

harmful desires that plunge them into ruin.

²⁶For the love of money is the root of all evil.

²⁷Some men eager for riches have wandered from the faith and pierced themselves with many sorrows.

Advice to the rich in the church

²⁸Therefore command those who are rich in this present world, not to be arrogant, nor to put their trust in uncertain wealth, but to put their trust in God who richly provides us with everything for our enjoyment.

²⁹Command them to be rich in good deeds, to be generous and willing to share. In this way they will lay up a firm foundation for the coming age so they may possess Life that is truly Eternal Life.

Timothy to pursue godliness

³⁰And you, man of God, pursue godliness, faith, love, endurance and gentleness. Fight the good fight of the faith and take hold of Eternal Life to which you were called.

Keep all these commands until the appearing of our Lord Jesus Christ

³¹Now, in the sight of God I charge you to keep all these commands without blame, until the appearing of our Lord Jesus Christ which God will bring about in his own time.

Honour to God who lives in unapproachable light and whom no mortal man has seen

³²Blessed be God the King of kings and Lord of lords, who alone has immortality and who lives in unapproachable light, whom no mortal man has seen or can see.^F* To him be honour and might forever. Amen.

Reject the godless babble falsely called Knowledge

³³O Timothy, guard well those who have been entrusted to your care. ³⁴Reject the godless babble and contradictions of what is falsely called Knowledge, which some have professed and in so doing have strayed from the faith.

Paul's closing blessing

³⁵Grace be with you all.

*³² There are many accounts in the Bible of men seeing God. For an explanation of this apparent contradiction see note on John 1:8.

2 TIMOTHY

This is Paul's final letter. He is again imprisoned at Rome but this time under the reign of the emperor Nero, a notorious persecutor of Christians. Nor is he living in a rented house as he did during his previous imprisonment but is chained in a cold dungeon.

Paul appears to feel lonely and somewhat abandoned by his old friends. He knows that his work on earth is done and that death awaits him, but he longs to see Timothy and also Mark before he dies. Twice in this letter he urges Timothy to come to him in Rome. Yet despite his circumstances, Paul still devotes most of his letter to uplifting and strengthening Timothy.

In this last letter Paul makes his triumphant statement, "*I have fought the good fight. I have finished the race. I have kept the faith.*"

Nero had Paul publicly beheaded not long after this letter was written.

AUTHOR Paul the apostle.

A servant of the Lord must not be quarrelsome but be kindly to all, able to teach and gently correct opponents without arousing resentment. 2 Timothy 2:4.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Paul greets Timothy	1	Ever instructed but never able to discern the truth	2
I remember your tears at our parting	1	Follow my way of life	2
I long to see you again	1	All who desire to live a godly life will be persecuted	2
The sincere faith of your grandmother lives in you ...	1	Hold to the scriptures	2
Fan into flame your gift of the Spirit	1	Scripture inspired by God	2
Be not ashamed of the Lord or of me	1	Scripture useful to a man of God in his work	2
Hold to my pattern of sound teaching	1	Preach, correct, rebuke and encourage	2
Onesiphorus refreshed me when he visited Rome ...	1	Men will surround themselves with false teachers	2
Be strong my son, choose reliable men as teachers ...	1	False teachers tell them what they want to hear	2
I am chained like a criminal	1	Remain steady and endure hardship	2
I endure all things for the elect	1	Time for my departure has come	2
If we endure we will reign with Christ	1	A crown of righteousness awaits me	2
Warn the brethren against disputations	1	Come to me soon	2
Some teach that the resurrection has already been ...	1	Only Luke is with me	2
The Lord knows those who belong to him	1	Bring Mark with you when you come	2
A cleansed man will be used by the Master	2	Also my cloak and scrolls	2
Flee the passions of youth	2	Guard against Alexander the coppersmith	2
Avoid foolish controversies	2	All deserted me at my first court hearing	2
A servant of the Lord must be kindly and gentle	2	The Lord will bring me to his heavenly kingdom	2
Gently correct without arousing resentment	2	Greetings	2
Sins of men in the last days	2	Paul's closing blessing	2

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Paul greets Timothy

¹Paul an apostle of Jesus Christ by the will of God, to Timothy my dear son. ²Grace, mercy and peace to you from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.

I remember your tears at our parting and long to see you again

³I thank God whom I serve with a clear conscience as I remember you in my prayers, recalling your tears as we parted. ⁴I long to see you again, that I may be filled with joy.

The sincere faith of your grandmother and mother lives in you

⁵I think often of your sincere faith which first lived in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice, and now lives in you.

Fan into flame your gift of the Spirit

⁶For this reason I remind you to fan into flame the gift of God bestowed upon you through the laying on of my hands. ⁷For God gave us not a Spirit of timidity, but a Spirit of boldness, love and wisdom.

Be not ashamed of the Lord nor of me

⁸Be not ashamed of the testimony of our Lord, nor of me his prisoner, but join with me in suffering for the gospel.

⁹God appointed me an apostle and teacher of this gospel and for this reason I am suffering.

¹⁰Yet I am not ashamed. I know in whom I believe, and I know that he is able to guard all whom I have entrusted to him until the day of his return.

Hold to my pattern of sound teaching

¹¹Hold firmly to the pattern of sound teaching you received from me, along with faith and love and the help of the Holy Spirit who lives in us.

Onesiphorus refreshed me when he visited Rome

¹³You know of those in the province of Asia^{F*} who have turned away from me including Phygelus and Hermogenes.

¹⁴But may the Lord on the day of his return show mercy to Onesiphorus and his household, for he refreshed me and was not ashamed of my chains.

¹⁵When he came to Rome he searched hard until he found me and you know how many ways he helped me in Ephesus.

Be strong my son and choose reliable men as teachers

¹⁶So you too my son, be strong in grace. Entrust to reliable men the things you have heard me teach, men who are qualified to teach others.

¹⁷Endure hardship with me as a good soldier of Jesus Christ. For a soldier does not become entangled in civilian affairs but seeks to please his commander. And likewise an athlete is not crowned unless he competes by the rules.

¹⁹Reflect on what I am saying and the Lord will give you insight.

I am chained like a criminal but I endure all things for the elect

²⁰Remember Jesus Christ, descended from David in the flesh^{F*} and raised from the dead. This is the gospel for which I am suffering, being chained like a criminal.

²¹But the word of God is not chained, therefore I endure all things for the sake of the elect that they may obtain the salvation and eternal glory that is in Christ.

If we endure we will reign with Christ

²²Here is a trustworthy saying, *"If we die with him we will live with him. If we endure we will reign with him. If we disown him he will disown us. ²³Yet if we are faithless he will still remain faithful."*

Warn the brethren against disputations

²⁴Keep reminding the brethren of these things. Warn them in the name of the Lord against disputations over words. ²⁵It is of no value and brings to ruin those who listen.

*13 Timothy was in the province of Asia in the city of Ephesus.

*20 Through Mary the mother of Jesus who was a descendant of David.

Charge them to avoid such godless babble.

²⁶Those who indulge in it become more and more ungodly. Their words eat away like gangrene.

Some teach that the resurrection has already taken place

²⁷Among such men are Hymenaeus and Philetus who have departed from the truth and say that the resurrection has already taken place. ²⁸They are destroying the faith of some.

The Lord knows those who belong to him

²⁹Nevertheless, God's solid foundation stands firm, sealed with this inscription: *"The Lord knows those who belong to him,"* and *"Let everyone who confesses the name of Christ turn from wickedness."*

2

A cleansed man will be used by the Master for noble purposes

¹In a large house are found many vessels, some for noble use and some for ignoble use. If a man cleanses himself from the ignoble he will become a vessel used for noble purposes, made holy and useful to the Master, ready for any good work.

Flee the passions of youth and avoid foolish controversies

²Flee the passions of youth. Pursue righteousness, faith, love and peace. ³Have nothing to do with foolish and senseless controversies for you know they breed quarrels.

A servant of the Lord must be kindly and able to gently correct without arousing resentment

⁴A servant of the Lord must not be quarrelsome but be kindly to all, able to teach and gently correct opponents without arousing resentment. ⁵And to do so in the hope that God will perhaps bring them to repentance, that they may know the truth and escape the snare of the devil who has taken them captive.

The sins of men in the last days

⁶For in the last days there will be perilous times. Men will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, boasters, proud, arrogant, abusive, disobedient to parents, ungrateful, unholy, inhuman, unforgiving, slanderous.

⁷Without self-control, brutal, haters of good, treacherous, rash, conceited, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God. ⁸Possessing a form of religion but denying its power.

⁹Avoid such men. They are the kind who worm their way into houses and captivate foolish women.

Ever being instructed but never able to discern the truth

¹⁰Such men are laden down with sins, driven by all kinds of desires. Ever being instructed but never able to discern the truth.

¹¹Just as Jannes and Jambres^{F*} opposed

*11 The Egyptian sorcerers who opposed Moses in Pharaoh's court (Exodus chapter 4).

2 TIMOTHY 2

Moses, so too do these men oppose the truth. They have corrupt minds and a counterfeit faith.

Follow my way of life

¹²You however know my teaching, my way of life, my purpose, my faith, my patience, my love and endurance and also my persecutions and sufferings. All that I endured in Antioch, Iconium and Lystra. And yet the Lord rescued me from all of them.

All who live a godly life will be persecuted

¹³Indeed all who desire to live a godly life in Jesus Christ will be persecuted. But the wicked go from bad to worse and deceive others and themselves.

Hold to the scriptures

¹⁴As for you, continue in what you have learned, for from infancy you have known the scriptures which are able to give you wisdom and lead you to salvation through faith in Christ Jesus.

Scripture is inspired by God and useful in equipping a man of God in his work

¹⁵All scripture is inspired by God and useful for teaching, rebuking, correcting, and training in righteousness. That a man of God may be equipped for his good work.

Preach, correct, rebuke and encourage with utmost patience and care

¹⁶Now in the presence of God and of Christ Jesus who will judge the living and the dead, I give you this charge. ¹⁷Persist in preaching the word of God, whether the time be favourable or unfavourable. Correct, rebuke, and encourage with the utmost patience in teaching.

Men will surround themselves with teachers who will tell them what they want to hear

¹⁸For the time is coming when men will not accept sound doctrine. Instead they will surround themselves with teachers who will tell them what their ears want to hear. ¹⁹They will turn away from hearing the truth and wander away into myths.

Remain steady and endure hardship

²⁰But as for you Timothy, remain steady in all situations. Endure hardship, preach the good message, and fulfil your ministry.

The time for my departure has come

²¹I am ready to be sacrificed. The time for my departure has come.^{F*} ²²I have fought the good fight. I have finished the race. I have kept the faith.

A crown of righteousness awaits me

²³Henceforth there awaits me a crown of righteousness which the Lord will award to me on the day of his appearing. ²⁴And not only me, but all who have longed for his coming.

Come to me soon

²⁵Do your best to come to me soon. Demas who is in love with this present world has deserted me and gone to Thessalonica.

Only Luke is with me

²⁶Crescens has gone to Galatia and Titus to Dalmatia.^{F*} I have sent Tychicus to Ephesus. Erastus stayed in Corinth and I left Trophimus sick in Miletus. Only Luke is with me.

Bring Mark with you when you come also my cloak and scrolls

²⁷Bring Mark with you when you come for he is helpful to me. ²⁸Also bring the cloak that I left with Carpus at Troas, and my scrolls especially the parchments.

Guard against Alexander the coppersmith

²⁹Alexander the coppersmith did me a great deal of harm. The Lord will repay him for what he has done.

³⁰You too should be on your guard against him for he strongly opposes our message.

All deserted me at my first court hearing

³¹At my first court hearing no one came to my defence. All deserted me. ³²May it not be held against them. ³³But the Lord gave me strength and I was delivered from the lion's mouth.

The Lord will bring me safely to his heavenly kingdom

³⁴I know the Lord will rescue me from all evil and bring me safely to his heavenly kingdom. To him be glory for ever and ever. Amen.

Greetings

³⁵Greet Priscilla and Aquila and the household of Onesiphorus.

³⁶Eubulus, Pudens, Linus, Claudia and all the brethren greet you. Do your best to get here before winter.

Paul's closing blessing

³⁷The Lord be with your spirit and grace be with you all.



The Mamertine prison in Rome where Paul was imprisoned.

*21 Paul died within months of writing of this letter.

*26 Present day Yugoslavia.

1 PETER

This elegant letter of Peter appears to have been written primarily to strengthen the saints in their trials under the persecution of the Roman emperor Nero.

He reminds the saints that Jesus himself also suffered and encourages them with clear uplifting gospel truths and down to earth wisdom.

Peter also reveals that while the physical body of Jesus lay in the tomb, Jesus went in his spirit body and taught the good news of the gospel to imprisoned spirits of the dead in the spirit world (Sheol), especially those who died over 2000 years ago during the flood of Noah. This teaching by Jesus to the dead is prophesied by Jesus himself in John 5:20 and is also prophesied in the Old Testament through the prophet Zechariah by the '*Spirit of Christ*' (1 Peter 1:9). ie "*Because of the blood of my covenant I shall set free the prisoners from Sheol. Wait in your stronghold O prisoners of hope, for I will restore you double* (Zechariah 4:8).

Not long after this letter and its companion letter 2 Peter were written, Peter was arrested at Rome and put to death by crucifixion. He is said to have insisted on being crucified upside down, claiming he was unworthy to die as Jesus had done.

AUTHOR Peter with the help of Silas (1 Peter 3:11).

Wives, be submissive to your husbands so that even if they do not at first believe, they may be won over by the purity and reverence of your lives. And let not your beauty be from outward adornment; braided hair, gold jewellery and fine clothes. Instead let it come from the unfading loveliness of a calm and gentle spirit, which is of great worth in the eyes of God. 1 Peter 2:1-2.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Peter's introduction	1	Repay not evil with evil	2
We have been born again to an unfading inheritance..	1	Who will harm you if you do good?	2
Trials have come to prove your faith genuine	1	Better to suffer for doing good than for doing evil	2
Rejoice with inexpressible joy	1	Answer all who ask you the reason for your hope	2
You are achieving the salvation of your souls	1	Christ preached in his spirit to the spirits in prison	2
Prophets of old spoke of Christ	1	To those who died in the days of Noah	2
The mystery of Christ has now been revealed	1	Noah's rescue from the flood symbolises baptism	2
Even angels longed to know	1	Christ is now at the right hand of God in heaven	2
Be as obedient children and holy	1	If you willingly suffer you have broken from sin	2
Live your lives in reverent fear	1	Unbelievers will have to account for their sins	2
You are redeemed with the precious blood of Christ ..	1	The gospel was preached to the dead	2
Love one another deeply and rid yourselves of sin ..	1	That they too might be judged	2
You are a chosen people, a royal priesthood	1	The end is drawing near	2
Live blameless lives	1	Love covers over a multitude of sins	2
Submit to rulers	1	Use your gifts of the Spirit to serve others	2
Slaves, submit yourselves to your masters	1	Rejoice that you too can suffer with Christ	2
Patiently endure unjust suffering	1	That you be filled with joy when he comes	2
You were all called to suffering by Christ's example ..	1	Do not be ashamed to suffer as a Christian	2
He bore our sins in his body on the tree	1	Judgement will begin with us who belong to God	2
Wives, be submissive to your husbands	2	Advice to church leaders	3
Let your beauty come from a calm and gentle spirit ..	2	All of you humble yourselves before God	3
Husbands, treat your wives with consideration	2	The devil prowls around like a roaring lion	3
Your prayers will not then be hindered	2	I have written this letter with the help of Silas	3
Live in harmony and love	2	Greetings and closing blessing	3

Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Peter's introduction

¹Peter an apostle of Jesus Christ, to God's elect, strangers in the world, chosen by the fore-knowledge of God the Father. ²Sanctified by the Spirit to a life of obedience in Jesus

1 PETER 2

Christ, being purified by his blood. ³Grace and peace be yours in abundance.

We have been born again to an inheritance that can never fade

⁴Praise to the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ. For in his great mercy we have been born again unto a living hope through his resurrection from the dead. ⁵An inheritance that can never fade, held in heaven to be revealed at the end times.

Trials have come to prove your faith genuine

⁶Rejoice greatly, even though for a short time you suffer distress through trials. ⁷These are to prove that your faith is genuine so that you will have glory and honour when Jesus Christ is revealed.

Rejoice with inexpressible joy for you are achieving the salvation of your souls

⁸Though you do not now see him, you love him and believe in him and rejoice with inexpressible joy. For you are achieving the goal of your faith which is the salvation of your souls.

The prophets of old spoke of Christ by the Spirit of Christ

⁹The prophets of old spoke of this salvation by the Spirit of Christ which was in them. They predicted the sufferings of Christ and the glories that would follow.

The mystery of Christ has now been revealed which even angels longed to know

¹⁰Now the mystery of Christ has been clearly revealed, by those who have preached the gospel to you through the Holy Spirit sent from heaven. ¹¹Even angels had longed to know these things.

Be as obedient holy children

¹²Therefore rid your minds of every encumbrance and prepare for the grace^{F*} to be given you when Jesus Christ returns.

¹³Be as obedient children and yield no longer to sinful desires as you did when you lived in ignorance. ¹⁴For he who called you is holy therefore you too must be holy in all that you do.

Live in reverent fear for you are redeemed with the precious blood of Christ

¹⁵Since you pray to a Father who judges the works of each man impartially, live your lives in reverent fear.

¹⁶For it was not with silver or gold that you were redeemed from the empty way of life of your forefathers, but with the precious blood of Christ. A lamb without blemish who was chosen from before the creation of the world.

¹⁷God raised him from the dead and glorified him, therefore your faith is in God.

Love one another deeply and rid yourselves of sin

¹⁸By your obedience to the truth you have purified yourselves, therefore love one another

deeply from the heart. ¹⁹Rid yourselves of all malice, deceit, hypocrisy, envy and lying of every kind.

²⁰Like new-born babies, crave pure spiritual milk that you may grow up to salvation. For you have tasted that the Lord is good.

You are a chosen people, a royal priesthood

²¹Come to the Living Stone, rejected by men but chosen by God. For you too are living stones, being built into a spiritual temple and a holy priesthood to offer spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God.

²²You are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy people who belong to God. That you may proclaim the glorious works of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light.

Live blameless lives

²³My dear friends I urge you to abstain from fleshly desires which war against your soul. Live blameless lives in the sight of unbelievers even though they may falsely accuse you of wrongdoing.

²⁴Let them see your good works so they will give glory to God on the day he comes.

Submit to rulers

²⁵For the sake of the Lord submit yourselves to rulers among men, to the emperor^{F*} and his governors. ²⁶Live as free men and servants of God. ²⁷Show proper respect to everyone. Love the brethren, revere God, and honour the emperor.

Slaves, submit yourselves to your masters and patiently endure unjust suffering

²⁸Slaves, submit yourselves to your masters with all respect, not only to those who treat you kindly but also to those who are harsh.

²⁹It is good that a man patiently endure unjust suffering when he has a knowledge of God. For what credit can you claim when you suffer for doing wrong?

You were all called to suffering by Christ's example

³⁰As for suffering, to this you were all called. Christ suffered for you as an example, therefore you should follow in his steps.

He bore our sins in his body on the tree

³¹He bore our sins in his body on the tree and by his wounds you have been healed.

³²You were like sheep going astray but now you have returned to the Shepherd of your souls.

2

Wives, be submissive to your husbands

¹Wives, be submissive to your husbands so that even if they do not at first believe, they may be won over by the purity and reverence of your lives.

*12 Grace is the free gift from a loving God, of divine help, divine power or favour, beyond the natural abilities of man.

*25 Most of the biblical world was under the rule of the Roman emperor at this time.

**Let your beauty come from
a calm and gentle spirit**

²And let not your beauty be from outward adornment; braided hair, gold jewellery and fine clothes. Instead let it come from the unfading loveliness of a calm and gentle spirit, which is of great worth in the eyes of God.

³For this is the way the holy women of old adorned themselves, living in obedience to their husbands.

⁴Sarah obeyed Abraham and called him her master. And you are her daughters if you do what is right and not be fearful.

**Husbands, treat your wives with consideration
and respect that your prayers be not hindered**

⁵Husbands, in the same way be considerate of your wives. Treat them with respect as the more tender partner and as heirs with you of the gift of Eternal Life. So that nothing will hinder your prayers.

**Live in harmony and love and
repay not evil with evil**

⁶Finally all of you, live in harmony and brotherly love. ⁷Be kind and humble and do not repay evil for evil, nor insult for insult. Rather, bless those who afflict you that you may be blessed.

Besides who will harm you if you do good?

⁸Besides, who will harm you if you are eager to do good? ⁹For it is written, *"If you love life and desire to see many good days, keep your tongue from untruths, turn from evil and do good, seek peace and pursue it."* ¹⁰*For the eyes of the Lord are upon the righteous and his ears are attentive to their prayers."*

**It is better to suffer for doing good
than for doing evil**

¹¹Even if you do suffer for doing good you will be blessed. ¹²For if God wills that you suffer, it is better that you suffer for doing good than for doing evil.

**Be prepared to answer all who ask you
the reason for the hope you have within you**

¹³So in your hearts accept Christ as Lord, and be prepared to give an answer to all who ask you the reason for the hope you have within you.

**Christ preached in his spirit to the spirits
in prison who died in the days of Noah**

¹⁴For Christ died for our sins, the righteous for the unrighteous, to reconcile us to God. ¹⁵His body was put to death but he was quickened in his spirit, by which he went and preached to the spirits in prison.^{F*} ¹⁶Those who disobeyed long ago in the days of Noah who built an ark in which only eight people were rescued from the water.

*15 Peter here reveals that during the two days that the body of Jesus lay dead in the tomb, Jesus went in his spirit and taught the gospel to spirits in Sheol, the spirit world of the dead (aptly called a prison by Peter), who had perished during the flood of Noah (see verse 22 of this chapter, also John 5:20 and Zechariah 4:8).

**Noah's rescue from the flood
a symbol of baptism**

¹⁷This rescue from water prefigured the baptism that now saves us, not as a symbol of washing the body, but as a seeking from God for a cleansing of guilt through the raising up of Jesus Christ from the grave.^{F*}

Christ is now at the right hand of God in heaven

¹⁸For Christ has ascended into heaven and is now at the right hand of God, with the angels and all spiritual powers in submission to him.

**If you willingly suffer in the flesh
you have broken away from sin**

¹⁹Since Christ suffered in the flesh, you too should take to yourselves the same spirit, for he who willingly suffers in the flesh has broken away from sin. He lives his earthly life submitting to the will of God rather than satisfying his sinful lusts of the flesh.

Unbelievers will have to account for their sins

²⁰For in the past you lived as unbelievers do, in sensuality, lust, drunkenness, orgies, carousing and shameful idolatry.

²¹Unbelievers now think it strange that you do not join with them and they heap abuse on you. But they will have to give an account to he who judges the living and the dead.

**The gospel was preached to the dead
that they too might be judged**

²²That is why the gospel was preached even to the dead,^{F*} that they too might be judged as men in the flesh, but live according to God in the spirit.

The end is drawing near

²³The end of all things is drawing near. Therefore be alert and prayerful.

Love covers over a multitude of sins

²⁴Above all love each other deeply, for love covers over a multitude of sins. Be hospitable to one another without complaining.

Use your gifts of the Spirit to serve others

²⁵Each one should use whatever gift of the Spirit he has received, to serve others.

²⁶The one who prophesies should do so as befits one who speaks the words of God.

²⁷The one who serves should do so with the full strength God provides. That in all things God may be glorified through Jesus Christ.

**Rejoice that you too can suffer with Christ that
you be filled with joy when he comes**

²⁸So my dear friends, be not surprised at the painful trials you are suffering as though it were something strange. ²⁹But rejoice that you too can share in the suffering of Christ, that you too may be filled with joy when his glory is revealed. ³⁰However if you suffer it should not be as a wrong doer.

*17 Baptism primarily symbolises a rebirth, an arising from burial in a grave of water to a reformed life (Romans 3:4). It probably also symbolises the washing away of past sins.

*22 See verse 15 of this chapter and footnote.

1 PETER 3

Do not be ashamed to suffer as a Christian

³¹Therefore be not ashamed to suffer as a Christian. Rather praise God that you bear that name.

³²Those who suffer by God's will should entrust their lives to their faithful Creator and continue to do good.

Judgement will begin with us who belong to God

³³For judgement will begin with those who belong to God. And if it begins with us, what will be the end for those who do not obey the gospel of God?

³⁴As it is written, ***"If it is hard for the righteous to be saved, what will become of the ungodly and the sinner?"***

3

Advice to church leaders

¹Now to the bishops among you, I appeal to you as a fellow shepherd and as an eyewitness of Christ's sufferings. Be shepherds of the flock of God under your care.

²Serve as leaders not by compulsion, but because you are willing. Not for gain but because you are eager to serve. Not lording it over those entrusted to you, but being examples to the flock.

³Then when the Chief Shepherd appears you shall win the crown of glory that will never fade.

All of you humble yourselves before God

⁴Young men, be submissive to those who are older. And all of you, be clothed with humility toward one another for it is written, ***"God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble."***

⁵Therefore humble yourselves before God's

mighty hand that he may lift you up in due time.
⁶Cast all your cares upon him, for he loves you.

Your enemy the devil prowls around like a roaring lion

⁷Be sober and alert for your enemy the devil prowls around like a roaring lion seeking to devour. ⁸Resist him and stand firm in the faith. Know that your brothers throughout the world are undergoing the same trials.

⁹After you have suffered a little while, the God who called you to his eternal glory in Christ will restore you, and make you strong and firm and steadfast. ¹⁰To God be the glory and the power for ever and ever. Amen.

I have written this letter with the help of Silas

¹¹I have written this letter to you with the help of Silas a faithful brother, to encourage you and to testify that this gospel is the true grace of God. Stand fast in it.

Greetings and closing blessing

¹²The church here in Babylon^{F*} sends you greetings as does my son Mark.^{F*}

¹³Greet one another with a kiss of love.

¹⁴Peace to all of you who are in Christ.



"Be shepherds of the flock of God under your care" 1 Peter 3:1. In his advice to bishops Peter uses the common Biblical imagery of a shepherd and his flock.

*12 Traditionally Rome. Peter is believed to have used the word Babylon symbolically, as it is used in chapter 13 of the book of Revelation. The ancient city of Babylon was destroyed 300 years before Jesus was born but still symbolised worldliness, wealth, power, domination and sin, all characteristics of the Rome of Peter's day.

*12 Author of the gospel of Mark and close companion of Peter, not his literal son.

2 PETER

This second letter of Peter was written in everyday vigorous Greek, as would be expected of a fisherman called to be an apostle of the Lord. Peter's first letter with the aid of the educated Silas was written in polished literary Greek (1 Peter 3:11).

However this letter is not lacking in power or truth. Peter informs the saints that he is writing "to stir up your memories of the words of the prophets and of us the apostles of the Lord and Saviour" (2 Peter 2:1).

Early in his letter Peter prophesies that he is soon to die, and then bears strong testimony of the transfiguration of Jesus on the mountain of which he was an eyewitness. He strongly warns the saints against false teachers as Paul often did in his letters. Also like Paul he touches on the mighty events to accompany the return of Jesus Christ.

AUTHOR Peter the apostle.

However there have been false prophets arisen in the past and there will be false teachers among you also. They will secretly introduce destructive heresies, even denying the Lord who redeemed them. 2 Peter 1:16.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Peter's introduction	1	Believers who return to sin worse off than before	1
Jesus Christ has called us to his own divine glory	1	Better to have not known the way of righteousness .	1
Therefore increase your faith, goodness, knowledge ..	1	I have written to arouse your memories of truth	2
Make your calling and election sure	1	Scoffers will arise and say, 'Where is his coming?' ..	2
I am soon to lay aside my body	1	The heavens and earth to be destroyed by fire	2
We were eyewitnesses of the transfiguration	1	One day is as a thousand years in eyes of Lord	2
The words of the prophets made more certain	1	The Lord is allowing us time for repentance	2
Prophecy originates in men moved by the Holy Spirit .	1	At Lord's coming the heavens will vanish with a roar ..	2
There have been false prophets in the past	1	The earth will burn with fire	2
There will be false teachers among you also	1	Therefore you ought to be holy and godly	2
Ungodly punished on day of judgement	1	New heavens and new earth promised by the Lord ..	2
The Lord will rescue godly men from trials	1	Paul also speaks of these things in his letters	2
The wicked indulge in sinful lusts of the flesh	1	Some things in Paul's letters hard to understand	2
They despise divine authority	1	Be on your guard against the error of wicked men ...	2
They follow the way of Balaam	1		

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

1

Peter's introduction

¹Peter, a servant and apostle of Jesus Christ, to those who have received the precious faith through our God and Saviour Jesus Christ.

²Grace and peace be yours in abundance.

Jesus Christ has called us to his own divine glory

³For God's divine power has given us all we need for Eternal Life and godliness, through Jesus Christ who called us to his own glory and goodness. ⁴That we may partake of the divine nature and escape from sin caused by evil desires.

Therefore increase your faith, goodness, knowledge, etc

⁵Therefore make every effort to increase your faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly kindness and

love. ⁶For when these things abound you will be productive in your knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.

⁷Whoever lacks these things is short sighted or blind. He has forgotten that he has been cleansed from his past sins.

Make your calling and election sure

⁸Therefore brethren be eager to make your calling and election sure. If you do this you will never fall, and you will receive a rich welcome into the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

I am soon to lay aside my body

⁹I feel I should refresh your memory of these things, even though you know them and are firmly established in the truth. ¹⁰For our Lord

2 PETER 2

Jesus Christ has made known to me that I will soon lay aside my body.^{F*}

¹¹Therefore I will do all that I can to ensure that after my departure you will always remember these things.

We were eyewitnesses of the transfiguration of Jesus Christ

¹²For we did not teach cleverly fabricated lies when we preached to you about the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but we were eyewitnesses of his glory.

¹³We^{F*} were with him on the sacred mountain when he was transfigured in honour and glory from God the Father and we heard the voice that came from heaven, from the Majestic Glory saying, **“This is my beloved Son whom I have chosen and with whom I am well pleased.”**

The words of the prophets made more certain

¹⁴Therefore the words of the prophets are made more certain and you will do well to take heed of them, for they are like a lamp that illuminates a dark place.

Prophecy in scripture has its origin in men speaking by the Holy Spirit

¹⁵No prophecy in scripture ever had its origin in the prophet’s own mind, but men spoke from God as they were moved by the Holy Spirit.

There have been false prophets in the past and there will be false teachers among you also

¹⁶However there have been false prophets arisen in the past and there will be false teachers among you also. They will secretly introduce destructive heresies, even denying the Lord who redeemed them.

¹⁷For the sake of greed these teachers will exploit you with falsehoods and bring swift destruction upon themselves. ¹⁸Yet many will follow their shameful ways and bring the way of truth into disrepute.

The Lord will punish the ungodly but will rescue godly men from trials

¹⁹However, if God spared not the angels who sinned,^{F*} but cast them down to hell^{F*} into the nether gloom to await judgement. ²⁰If he spared not the ancient world when he brought the flood upon its ungodly people, rescuing only righteous Noah and seven other persons. ²¹If he burned the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah to ashes as an example of what will happen to the ungodly, rescuing only Lot, a righteous man who was distressed by the filthy lives of wicked men.

²²These things being so, then the Lord knows

how to rescue godly men from trials, and to hold the ungodly until the day of judgement, to be punished.

The wicked indulge in the sinful lusts of the flesh and despise divine authority

²³This is especially true of those who indulge in the sinful lusts of the flesh, and despise divine authority.

²⁴These men are bold and arrogant and do not fear to slander the glorious ones. Yet even angels do not bring such accusations in the presence of the Lord.

²⁵But these sinful men blaspheme in matters they do not understand. They are like brute beasts, creatures of instinct born only to be caught and destroyed, and they too will perish.

²⁶Their idea of pleasure is to revel in broad daylight. They are blots and blemishes, revelling in their pleasures while they feast with you.

²⁷Their eyes are full of adultery. They seduce the unstable and never cease to sin.

They follow the way of Balaam

²⁸They follow the way of Balaam who loved the wealth of wickedness. He who was rebuked by a donkey, a beast without speech who spoke with the voice of a man and restrained the prophet in his madness.^{F*}

²⁹Such men are springs without water. The nether gloom of darkness is reserved for them.

Believers who return again to their sins are worse off than before

³⁰For if men escape the wickedness of the world by knowing our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ and then again become entangled in it, and are overcome. They are worse off than they were before they knew the Lord.

Better if they had not known the way of righteousness

³¹It would have been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness than to have known it and turned their backs on it.

³²Of such men these proverbs are true, “A dog returns to its vomit” and “A sow that is washed goes back to her wallowing in the mud.”

2

I have written to arouse your memories of truth

¹Beloved, this is now my second letter to you. I have written them both to stir up your memories of the words of the prophets and of us the apostles of the Lord and Saviour.

Scoffers will arise and say, ‘Where is his coming?’

²For in these last days, scoffers who walk in the sinful lusts of the flesh will arise and say, “Where is this coming he promised? For everything continues on as it has since the beginning of creation.”

*10 Peter was crucified at Rome not long after writing this letter.

*13 The apostles Peter, James and John (Matt-Mark-Luke 17:23-31).

*19 Peter may be referring to an account of lustful angels in the apocalyptic book of Enoch which was widely circulated at that time. Apocalyptic means ‘hidden revelation’ (see introduction to Jude).

*19 Tartarus, a Greek term for the wickedest, darkest part of Hades the spirit world of the dead.

*28 The account of Balaam and his donkey is found in Numbers chapter 10.

The heavens and earth to be destroyed by fire

³They choose to forget that long ago by God's word the earth was formed out of water. And also by his word water deluged and destroyed the world.

⁴By his same word the present heavens and earth are to be destroyed by fire, being reserved for the day of judgement and the destruction of ungodly men.

One day is as a thousand years in the eyes of the Lord

⁵And remember this beloved, in the eyes of the Lord one day is as a thousand years and a thousand years as one day.

The Lord is allowing us time for repentance

⁶The Lord is not slow in keeping his promise, rather he is patient, not wanting any person to perish but all to repent.

At the Lord's coming the heavens will vanish with a roar and the earth will burn with fire

⁷But the day of the Lord will come as a thief. The heavens will vanish with a loud roar, the elements^{F*} will melt with fire and the earth and all worldly things will be burned up.

Therefore you ought to be holy and godly, looking forward to the great day

⁸Since all things will be burned in this way, what kind of people ought you to be? You

should be holy and godly, looking forward to the great day of God and desiring to speed its coming.

The Lord has promised new heavens and a new earth

⁹For the Lord has promised new heavens, and a new earth in which righteousness dwells. ¹⁰So beloved make every effort to be found spotless and at peace with him. ¹¹Count our Lord's patience as a means of salvation.

Paul also speaks of these things in his letters

¹²Our dear brother Paul has also written to you with the wisdom that God gave him. He speaks of these things in his letters.

Some things in Paul's letters hard to understand

¹³There are some things in them that are hard to understand which the ignorant and unstable twist to their own destruction, as they do the other scriptures.

Be on your guard against the error of wicked men

¹⁴Therefore beloved friends, be on your guard so that you may not be carried away by the error of wicked men and fall from your secure place.

¹⁵But grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and forever. Amen.

*7 Not the natural elements of the earth but man-made structures. From the Greek word 'stoicheion' meaning 'orderly arrangements.'

JUDE

Jude, which can also be translated Judas (or Judah in Hebrew) was a half brother to Jesus Christ, both he and Jesus were born of the same mother, Mary. However Jude was conceived through Joseph the carpenter not by God the Father as with his older brother. James who was the author of the book of James was another half brother to Jesus (Matt-Mark-Luke 14:49).

Jude wrote this vigorous letter, drawing in part from Peter's second letter, to counter an unnamed false doctrine, probably Gnosticism that was spreading among Christians and justified sexual immorality (see introduction to 1 John).

As Paul prophesied in Acts 19:19, false doctrines and false teachers were to become a major problem in the church, and it has remained so even to modern times.

In his letter, Jude quotes from two books that were popular in his day and were regarded as scriptural; *The Book of Enoch* and *The Assumption of Moses*. These two Jewish apocalyptic books (apocalyptic means 'secret revelation') along with other apocryphal books (apocryphal means of doubtful authenticity) were written in the period between the Old and New Testaments, apparently to satisfy a hunger for revelation from the Lord, which had ceased. Such books were usually falsely attributed to a long dead prophet to give them authenticity.

Apocalyptic and apocryphal books contain much truth as they draw upon genuine history, scripture and prophets for basic material, but tend to embellish the truth with speculation.

AUTHOR Jude, a half brother of Jesus Christ.

These worldly men who divide you, who follow mere natural instincts do not have the Holy Spirit. Jude 1:17.

CONTENTS

	Chapter
Jude's introduction	1
I urge you to fight for the faith	1
Immoral men have secretly slipped in among you	1
These men are like those of Sodom and Gomorrah .	1
They speak abusively against the glorious ones	1
They follow the way of Cain, Balaam and Korah	1
	These men are fault finders, boasters and flatterers ...1
	The apostles have prophesied of such scoffers1
	These men do not have the Holy Spirit1
	Beloved, build up your faith and pray in the Spirit1
	Convince those who doubt1
	Glory, majesty, power and authority to God1

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

Jude's introduction

¹Jude, a servant of Jesus Christ and brother of James.^{F*} To those who have been called and loved by God the Father and set apart for Jesus Christ.

²Mercy, peace and love be yours in abundance.

I urge you to fight for the faith

³Beloved, I urge you to fight for the faith. I was eager to write to you about the salvation we share but felt I had to write and urge you to fight for the faith that was once delivered to the saints.

Immoral men have secretly slipped in among you

⁴For certain men have secretly slipped in among you, godless men who pervert the gospel of our God's grace into a licence for immorality. They even deny Jesus Christ our Master and Lord. ^{F*}

⁵Those who rebelled of old were destroyed by the Lord, and I remind you that although Jesus delivered his people out of Egypt^{F*} he later destroyed those who did not believe.

⁶And the angels who did not keep their due

^{*4} Jude is probably referring to Gnosticism which began about this time. See introduction to 1 John for more detail.

^{*5} The Jehovah of the Old Testament who appeared and spoke to Moses and delivered the Israelites out of Egypt was the pre-mortal Jesus who came in the name of the Father (see note on 1 Corinthians 4:13).

^{*1} Not the apostle James who was no longer alive at this time, but James the half brother of Jesus, who appears to have been the presiding elder or bishop over the entire church at Jerusalem.

order, are held by him in darkness for judgement on the great Day.^{F*}

**These immoral men are like those
of Sodom and Gomorrah**

⁷Also Sodom and Gomorrah, who likewise indulged in sexual immorality and perversion serve as an example of those who will suffer the punishment of Eternal Fire.

**They speak abusively
against the glorious ones**

⁸In the same manner these dreamers^{F*} defile their own bodies, reject authority and despise the glorious ones.

⁹Even the archangel Michael, when he was disputing with the devil about the body of Moses did not dare bring an accusation against him but said, "**The Lord rebuke you.**"^{F*}

¹⁰However these men speak abusively against whatever they do not understand. They do things by instinct, like unreasoning animals and so corrupt themselves.

**They follow the way of
Cain, Balaam and Korah**

¹¹Woe to them. They have taken the path of Cain. They have rushed into Balaam's error, and will perish as did Korah's rebellion.

¹²These men are blemishes at your love feasts. Shepherds who feed only themselves.

¹³They are like clouds without rain, like barren fruit trees in autumn. Like wild waves of the sea, foaming up their shame. Wandering stars for whom the nether gloom of darkness has been reserved forever.

¹⁴Enoch prophesied of such men saying, "**See, the Lord is coming with thousands upon**

thousands of his holy ones, to judge all people and to convict all the ungodly."^{F*}

**These men are fault finders,
boasters and flatterers**

¹⁵These men are complainers and fault finders. They follow their own evil desires, boasting of themselves and flattering others to gain advantage.

The apostles have prophesied of such scoffers

¹⁶Beloved, remember that the apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ have prophesied, "**In these last days scoffers who walk in the sinful lusts of the flesh will arise.**"^{F*}

These men do not have the Holy Spirit

¹⁷These worldly men who divide you, who follow mere natural instincts do not have the Holy Spirit.

**Beloved, build up your faith
and pray in the Spirit**

¹⁸But you beloved, build up your holy faith and pray in the Holy Spirit. Keep yourselves in God's love as you await the Eternal Life that the Lord Jesus Christ will bring you.

**Convince those who doubt and
snatch others from the fire**

¹⁹Convince those who doubt, and snatch others from the fire to save them, hating even the garment defiled by the flesh.

Glory, majesty, power, and authority to God

²⁰To him who is able to keep you from falling and to make you stand without blemish in the presence of his glory with rejoicing, to the only God our saviour be glory, majesty, power and authority through Jesus Christ our Lord, now and forever. Amen.

*6 Jude is apparently referring to an account of lustful angels in the apocalyptic book of Enoch which was widely circulated at that time. Apocalyptic means 'hidden revelation' (see introduction for more details).

*8 Dreamers in the sense of being conceited and vain.

*9 This refers to an account in the apocalyptic book *The Assumption of Moses*. The devil maintained that Moses belonged to him as he was a murderer (referring to the incident in Exodus 1:21). Michael was outraged by this claim but did not rebuke the devil directly. Old Testament Biblical evidence indicates that Moses was translated (see note on Deuteronomy 10:30).

*14 Quoted from the apocalyptic book of Enoch.

*16 Jude is quoting from 2 Peter 2:2.

HEBREWS

This profound and eloquent letter by an unnamed author appears to have been written for Hebrew (Jewish) converts to the early church to strengthen their faith during the persecution they were suffering at this time, and to prevent them from drifting back into the legalism of the Law of Moses.

The unnamed author (most likely Barnabas) displays a sound knowledge of the Old Testament and Christian doctrine in general and also a keen interest in the priesthood. His discourse on faith in chapter 4 is particularly inspiring.

AUTHOR

Unnamed, although Bibles translated between 400 and 1600 AD ascribe the letter to Paul, probably because of some of the ideas expressed and reference to Timothy at the close. However the style is altogether different from Pauls, and Paul was always particular to identify himself. The early church writer Tertullian (200 AD) names the author as Barnabas, '*an epistle to the Hebrews under the name of Barnabas*' (De Pudicitia, 20). Barnabas was a Levite (the priestly tribe of Israel) and a missionary companion and associate of Paul. He was also called an apostle by Luke (Acts 13:11).

Jesus Christ is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. So do not be led astray by strange teachings. Hebrews 5:16.

CONTENTS

Chapter

In the past God spoke through prophets	1	Jesus a priest forever after order of Melchizedek	2
But now by a Son	1	Old Law is now set aside for it was useless	2
The Son now sits at the right hand of God	1	Jesus able to save forever those who come to him ..	2
How then can we escape if we pay no heed?	1	Man-made sanctuary only a copy of the heavenly ..	2
God has testified to the truth of the gospel	1	Jesus sacrificed for sins once for all	2
By signs, miracles and gifts of the Holy Spirit	1	Man destined to die once and after that to be judged ..	2
God will make all things subject to us	1	Not possible for animal blood to take away sins	2
Jesus the pioneer of our salvation	1	We are made holy through sacrifice of Jesus Christ ..	2
He calls us his brothers	1	Body and blood of Jesus can cleanse us from guilt ..	3
He died to destroy the devil	1	Spur one another on to love and good works	3
Devil holds the power of death	1	Do not neglect meeting together	3
Jesus has become a merciful high priest	1	If we keep on sinning no sacrifice for sin is left	3
Jesus atones for sins of the people	1	We trample the Son of God under foot	3
Jesus worthy of greater honour than Moses	2	We are deserving of severe punishment	3
Harden not your hearts as our fathers did	2	Remember your persecution of early days	3
We must endure to the end in faith	2	How you cheerfully submitted	3
Word of God sharper than a two-edged sword	2	Endure in faith to receive what is promised	3
Nothing hidden from God's sight	2	Faith defined	4
Jesus able to sympathise with our weaknesses	2	Without faith it is impossible to please God	4
Jesus has also been tempted in every way	2	Men of faith – Abel, Enoch, and Noah	4
High priests among men also compassionate	2	Abraham's faith	4
A high priest must be called of God	2	All these were still living by faith when they died	4
Jesus learned obedience by what he suffered	2	God has prepared a heavenly city for them	4
This is hard to explain as you are slow to learn	2	Abraham had faith to offer Isaac as a sacrifice	4
Let us move on from the first truths of Christ	2	The faith of Isaac, Jacob, and Joseph	4
No repentance for sinning against the Holy Spirit	2	The faith of Moses	4
We are confident of better things in your case	2	The faith of the Israelites of old	4
Continue in diligence to the very end	2	The faith of Gideon, Barak, Samson, and Jephthah ..	4
Do not become slothful	2	The faith of David, Samuel, and the prophets	4
For Abraham patiently endured	2	They will all be made perfect together with us	4
Jesus has gone before us as a high priest	2	Therefore let us run the race with endurance	4
Jesus a priest after the order of Melchizedek	2	Let us fix our eyes on Jesus the pioneer	4
Melchizedek's order of priesthood continues forever ..	2	You have not yet resisted evil to shedding blood	4
Melchizedek was greater than Abraham	2	The Lord disciplines those he loves	4
Melchizedek's priesthood greater than Levitical	2	Submit to the discipline of the Father of our spirits ..	4
Perfection not attained through Levitical priesthood ..	2	Live in peace with all men	5
When the priesthood changes the law changes also ..	2	Avoid sexual immorality and godlessness	5

City of the living God lies before you	5	Offer to God a sacrifice of praise	5
Show hospitality to strangers	5	Do good and share with others	5
Some have entertained angels unawares	5	By grace we are strengthened, not by rules on food ...	5
Remember those in prison	5	Submit to your church leaders	5
Keep the marriage bed undefiled	5	Pray for us also	5
Do not love money, be content with what you have	5	Greetings	5
Imitate the faith of those who preached to you	5	Closing blessing	5
Christ the same yesterday, today, and forever	5		

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.
Bold italics A prophet speaking under inspiration.

1

**In the past God spoke through prophets
but now by a Son**

¹In the past, God spoke to our forefathers through the prophets, but in these last days he has spoken to us by a Son, whom he appointed heir of all things, and through whom he made the worlds.

The Son now sits at the right hand of God

²The Son reflects God’s glory and bears the stamp of his nature. He sustains all things by his powerful word.

³After he had provided the way to purify us from our sins, he sat down at the right hand of the greatness of God in heaven, as superior to the angels as is the name he has inherited.

⁴For to which angel did God ever say, **“You are my Son. Today I have become your Father.”** Or **“Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet.”**^{F*}

**How then can we escape if we pay no heed
to the message we have heard**

⁵Therefore we must pay closer attention to the message we have heard, lest we drift away from it. ⁶For if messages spoken by angels were binding and every disobedience received its just punishment, how shall we escape if we pay no heed to a salvation so great as this?

**For God has testified to the truth of the gospel
by signs, miracles and gifts of the Holy Spirit**

⁷The message of the gospel was first announced by the Lord himself and then confirmed to us by those who heard him. God has also testified to it by signs and miracles and by gifts of the Holy Spirit.

God will make all things subject to us

⁸It is not to angels that God will give control of the world to come, for it is testified somewhere, **“What is man that you are mindful of him, that you care for him? You have made him little lower than the angels^{F*} and crowned him with glory and honour, subjecting all things under his feet.”**

⁹In putting everything under his feet, God

*4 These scriptures are found in Psalms 14:4 and 54:1.
*8 This psalm of David (Psalms 34:3-4) clearly reads in the original Hebrew, ‘little lower than God’ (*Eloheim*). The quote above by the author of Hebrews is taken from the old Greek Septuagint translation which substitutes the word ‘angels’ for God.

made all things subject to him, although at present we do not see this.

¹⁰But we do see Jesus who for a little while was made lower than the angels, but is now crowned with glory and honour for he suffered death for everyone.

Jesus is the pioneer of our salvation

¹¹It was fitting, that God in bringing many of his sons to glory should make the pioneer of their salvation perfect through suffering.

He calls us his brothers

¹²We are of the same family, so Jesus is not ashamed to call us brothers. He said, **“I will proclaim your name to my brothers.”** And again, **“Here am I and the children God has given me.”**

**He died to destroy the devil
who holds the power of death**

¹³Since the children were flesh and blood, he also took upon himself flesh and blood, so that by his death he might destroy him who holds the power of death, who is the devil.

**Jesus has become a merciful high priest
to atone for the sins of the people**

¹⁴Therefore Jesus became a merciful and faithful high priest^{F*} to atone for the sins of the people.

2

Jesus worthy of greater honour than Moses

¹Therefore my holy brethren, fix your thoughts on Jesus, the apostle and high priest whom we confess. ²For he was faithful to the one who appointed him, just as Moses was faithful.

³But Jesus is worthy of greater honour than Moses, just as the builder of a house is worthy of greater honour than the house itself.

Harden not your hearts as our fathers did

⁴So as the Holy Spirit says through scripture, **“Harden not your hearts as you did when you rebelled in the desert where your fathers tested me. I declared in my anger, ‘They shall never enter my rest.’”**

⁵Therefore, see to it brethren that none of you

*14 Under the Law of Moses the high priest atoned for the sins of the people each year by animal sacrifice.

HEBREWS 2

have a sinful unbelieving heart that turns away from the living God. But encourage one another daily that none of you become hardened by sin.

We must endure to the end in faith

⁶For we will share in Christ only if we endure to the end.

⁷Those of old who disobeyed were not able to enter the promised land because of unbelief. The message they heard was of no value to them because they did not combine it with faith.

⁸We also have had a message preached to us just as they did, therefore be careful that none of you fall short of it.

Word of God sharper than a two-edged sword

⁹For the word of God is living and active, sharper than a two-edged sword. It penetrates even to dividing soul and spirit, joints and marrow and to discerning the thoughts and attitudes of the heart.

Nothing hidden from God's sight

¹⁰Nothing in all creation is hidden from God's sight. All is laid bare before the eyes of him to whom we must give account.

Jesus able to sympathise with our weaknesses for he has been tempted in every way

¹¹Therefore since we have a great high priest in Jesus the Son of God, exalted above the heavens, let us hold firmly to the faith we profess.

¹²Jesus is able to sympathise with our weaknesses, for he has been tempted in every way, just as we are, yet he did not sin.

High priests chosen among men also able to deal compassionately

¹³High priests chosen among men are appointed to offer sacrifice for sin. They too are able to deal compassionately with those who are ignorant and going astray, since they themselves are subject to sin.

¹⁴This is why they offer sacrifices for their own sins as well as for the sins of the people.

A high priest must be called of God

¹⁵No one takes upon himself the honour of a high priest, he must be called of God as was Aaron.

¹⁶So also Christ did not take upon himself the glory of becoming a high priest, but God said to him, "**You are a priest forever after the order of Melchizedek.**" ^{F*}

Jesus learned obedience by what he suffered

¹⁷During his life on earth Christ offered up prayers and requests with loud cries and tears to the one who could save him from death. And he was heard because of his godly submission.

¹⁸Although he was a son he learned obedience by that which he suffered.

¹⁹And being made perfect he became the source of Eternal Life for all who obey him. A high priest after the order of Melchizedek.



An artist's view of Aaron the first Levite high priest of Israel from whom the writer of Hebrews appears to have been descended.

This is hard to explain as you are slow to learn

²⁰We have much to say about this but it is difficult to explain as you are slow to learn.

²¹By now you should be teachers yourselves, but you need someone to instruct you in the first truths of God's word all over again. You need milk not solid food.

Let us move on from the first truths of Christ to maturity

²²Therefore let us move on from the first truths of Christ; repentance from sin, faith in God, instruction on baptism, laying on of hands, resurrection of the dead and eternal judgement, and go on to maturity.

Those who have shared in the Holy Spirit and fall away cannot be restored again by repentance

²³This we will do if God permits, but it is impossible for those who have shared in the Holy Spirit tasting the powers of the coming age and who then fall away, to be restored again by repentance.

²⁴For they have crucified the Son of God all over again and subjected him to public disgrace.

We are confident of better things in your case

²⁵Even though we speak like this beloved, we are confident of better things in your case. ²⁶God is not unjust. He will not forget your work and the love you show him as you continue to serve the saints.

Continue in diligence to the very end and do not become slothful

²⁷We want each of you to continue this same diligence to the very end and to make your hope sure, and not become slothful.

For Abraham patiently endured

²⁸For Abraham patiently endured and obtained this promise from God, "**I will surely bless you and multiply you.**"

*16 This scripture is found in Psalms 54:4.

**Jesus has gone before us as a high priest
after the order of Melchizedek**

²⁹And we have the hope as an anchor to our soul of entering the inner sanctuary behind the veil where Jesus has gone before us. He being made a high priest forever after the order of Melchizedek.

**Melchizedek's order of
priesthood continues forever**

³⁰Now Melchizedek was king of Salem^{F*} and a priest of God Most High. He met Abraham returning from the defeat of the kings and blessed him and Abraham gave him a tenth of everything.

³¹Melchizedek means 'king of righteousness' and his order of priesthood is not dependent on ancestry. It has no beginning or end. Like the Son of God he continues a priest forever.

Melchizedek was greater than Abraham

³²Consider how great Melchizedek was, for even Abraham gave him a tenth of the spoil.

³³The Law of Moses also required priests who are descendants of Levi to collect a tenth from the people. Melchizedek however did not trace his descent from Levi. Yet he collected a tithe from Abraham the patriarch who had the promises, and he blessed him.

**Melchizedek's priesthood greater than
the Levitical priesthood**

³⁴It is without doubt that the lesser person is blessed by the greater.

³⁵In the one case the tithe is collected by men whose priesthood dies with them, but in this other case, by him who is declared to be a priest forever.

³⁶One could even say that Levi paid the tithe through Abraham, for when Melchizedek met Abraham, Levi was still in his loins.

**Perfection not attained through
the Levitical priesthood**

³⁷If perfection could be attained through the Levitical priesthood why was there a need for another priest to come, one after the order of Melchizedek?

**When there is a change of priesthood
there is also a change of law**

³⁸Also when there is a change of priesthood there must also be a change of the law.^{F*} For Jesus belonged to a different tribe, he was descended from Judah.^{F*} No one from that tribe ever served at the altar.^{F*}

**Jesus a priest forever after
the order of Melchizedek**

³⁹This becomes more clear now. For another priest like Melchizedek has appeared, not on

the basis of his ancestry but on the basis of the power of a never ending life. For the scripture declares, "You are a priest forever, after the order of Melchizedek."

⁴⁰And this priesthood was confirmed with an oath, whereas others who became priests took their office without an oath.

**Jesus is able to save forever those
who come to God through him**

⁴¹There have been many Levitical high priests, for death prevented them from continuing in office. ⁴²But because Jesus lives eternally he has a permanent high priesthood. Therefore he is able to intercede and save forever those who come to God through him.

**The man-made Temple sanctuary only
a copy of the true one in heaven**

⁴³Such a high priest meets our need, one who is holy and pure, exalted above the heavens in the true sanctuary. Not a man-made sanctuary that is only a copy of the true one.

Jesus sacrificed for sins once for all

⁴⁴Unlike former high priests he does not need to offer sacrifices day after day, first for his own sins and then for the sins of the people. ⁴⁵This he did once for all, when he offered himself.

**The old Law is now set aside
for it was useless**

⁴⁶The old Law is now set aside for it was weak and useless and made nothing perfect.

⁴⁷On the other hand a better hope is introduced by which we can approach God. Jesus has become the guarantee of a better covenant.

**Man destined to die once and
after that to face judgement**

⁴⁸For just as man is destined to die once and after that to face judgement, so Christ was sacrificed once to take away the sins of many.

⁴⁹And he will come a second time, not to bear sin but to bring salvation to those who are waiting for him.

**Not possible for animal blood
to take away sins**

⁵⁰The Law of Moses was only a shadow of the good things that were to come, not the reality itself. It could never make perfect those who worshipped.

⁵¹If it could, sacrifices would have stopped being offered. But the sacrifices were an annual reminder of sins, and it is not possible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins.

**We have been made holy through the
sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ**

⁵²Therefore when Christ came into the world he said, "Here I am. I have come to do your will O God."

⁵³And by that will, we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ, once and for all.

*30 Salem means 'peace' and is believed by Jewish scholars to have been the ancient name of Jerusalem.

*38 The Levitical priesthood which commenced with Aaron the brother of Moses was passed on from father to son. This lesser priesthood and the temporary law of Moses appear to go hand in hand.

*38 Through his mother Mary.

*38 Only priests from the tribe of Levi were permitted to serve at the altar under the law of Moses.

The body and blood of Jesus can cleanse us from a guilty conscience

¹Therefore brethren, since we can enter the Most Holy Place by the blood of Jesus and the veil that is his body, let us approach God with a sincere heart in full faith. ²Being sprinkled with his blood to cleanse us from a guilty conscience, and having our bodies washed with pure water.

Spur one another on to love and good works

³Let us hold fast to the hope we profess, for he who promised is faithful. ⁴And let us consider how we might spur one another on toward love and good works.

Do not neglect meeting together

⁵Let us not neglect meeting together, as some are in the habit of doing but let us encourage one another, and all the more as you see the Great Day approaching.^{F*}

If we deliberately keep on sinning no sacrifice for sin is left, only judgement

⁶For if we deliberately keep on sinning after we have received knowledge of the truth, no sacrifice for sin is left. Only a fearful expectation of judgement and of the raging fire that will consume the enemies of God.

He who has trampled the Son of God under foot is deserving of severe punishment

⁷Anyone who violated the Law of Moses died without mercy on the testimony of two or three witnesses.

⁸Therefore how much more deserving of severe punishment do you think a man will be who has trampled the Son of God under foot and insulted the Holy Spirit?

⁹It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God.

Remember how you cheerfully submitted to persecution in the early days

¹⁰Remember how in the early days when you first received the light, you stood your ground in the face of suffering. ¹¹How you were publicly exposed to insult, persecution and prison, and cheerfully submitted to the confiscation of your property. For you knew you had better and lasting possessions.

Therefore endure in faith to receive what is promised

¹²Do not throw away that confidence, it will be richly rewarded, but you must endure in faith to receive what is promised.

Faith defined

¹Faith is to be confident in what we hope for, but do not see.

Without faith it is impossible to please God

²Without faith it is impossible to please God.

*5 In the early days of the church the return of Jesus was thought to be imminent. See note on 1 Corinthians 3:18.

³Anyone who comes to him must believe that he exists and that he rewards those who earnestly seek him.

Men of faith – Abel, Enoch and Noah

⁴By faith we understand that the worlds were formed at God’s command.

⁵By faith Abel offered God a better sacrifice than did Cain.

⁶By faith Enoch did not experience death, God took him away. And before he was taken he was commended as one who pleased God.

⁷By faith Noah when warned about things not seen, built an ark to save his family.

Abraham’s faith

⁸By faith Abraham when called to go to a land he would later receive as his inheritance, obeyed and went. ⁹By faith he lived in tents in the promised land as a stranger in a foreign country, so did his sons Isaac and Jacob.

¹⁰By faith Abraham even though he was past age, and Sarah was barren, became a father. For he trusted him as faithful who made the promise. ¹¹And so from this one man and he as good as dead, came descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky and as countless as the sand on the seashore.

All these people were still living by faith when they died

¹²All these people were still living by faith when they died. They had not yet received the things promised, they only saw them from a distance and admitted that they were pilgrims on earth.

Abraham has prepared a heavenly city for them

¹³They longed for a better homeland, a heavenly one, therefore God has prepared a city for them.^{F*}

Abraham had faith to offer Isaac as a sacrifice

¹⁴When God tested Abraham by commanding him to offer Isaac as a sacrifice, he was by faith prepared to sacrifice his one and only son, even though God had said to him, **“It is through Isaac that your offspring will be reckoned.”**

¹⁵But Abraham believed that God could raise the dead.

The faith of Isaac, Jacob and Joseph

¹⁶By faith Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau with regard to their future.

¹⁷By faith Jacob when he was dying blessed Joseph’s two sons as he leaned on his staff.

¹⁸By faith Joseph when his end was near prophesied of the exodus of the Israelites from Egypt and gave instructions regarding his bones.

The faith of Moses

¹⁹By faith the parents of Moses hid him for three months after he was born, for they saw that he was no ordinary child. They did not fear Pharaoh’s edict.

²⁰By faith Moses when he had grown up

*13 The New Jerusalem, see Revelation chapter 17.

refused to be known as the son of Pharaoh's daughter. He chose to be mistreated along with the people of God rather than enjoy the pleasures of sin for a short time.

²¹By faith he kept the Passover and the sprinkling of blood so that the destroying angel would not touch the firstborn of Israel.

The faith of the Israelites of old

²²By faith the Israelites passed through the Red Sea as if on dry land.

²³By faith the walls of Jericho fell after the people had marched around the city seven days.

²⁴And by faith the harlot Rahab was not put to death with those who were unbelieving, because she welcomed the spies.

The faith of Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David, Samuel and the prophets

²⁵And what more shall I say? I have not time to tell about Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David, Samuel and the prophets who through faith conquered kingdoms, administered justice, gained what was promised. ²⁶Shut the mouths of lions, quenched flames, escaped the sword, turned weakness to strength, became powerful in battle and routed armies.

²⁷Women received back their dead, raised to life again. Others were tortured, refusing deliverance that they might gain a better resurrection.

²⁸Some faced jeers and flogging, others were chained, imprisoned, stoned, sawn in two, and put to death by the sword. They went about in skins, poor, persecuted and mistreated.

²⁹The world was unworthy of them. They wandered in deserts and mountains and in caves and dens in the ground.

They will all be made perfect together with us

³⁰These were all commended for their faith, yet none of them received what had been promised. For God had planned something better for them, so that together with us they would be made perfect.

Therefore let us run with endurance the race marked out for us

³¹Therefore, since we are surrounded by such a great cloud of witnesses let us throw off all that hinders and the sin which so easily entangles us and run with endurance the race marked out for us.

Let us fix our eyes on Jesus the pioneer

³²Let us fix our eyes on Jesus, the pioneer and perfecter of our faith who for the sake of the joy set before him endured the cross, scorning its shame, and who has taken his seat at the right hand of the throne of God.

You have not yet resisted evil to the point of shedding your blood

³³Remember him who endured so much from sinful men. ³⁴So do not grow weary and lose heart, for in your struggle against evil you have not yet resisted to the point of shedding your blood.

The Lord disciplines those he loves

³⁵The Lord disciplines those he loves. Therefore endure hardship as a discipline.

³⁶God is treating you as sons. For what son is not disciplined by his father?

³⁷If you are not disciplined then you are not his true sons.

Submit to the discipline of the Father of our spirits

³⁸Moreover our human fathers disciplined us and we respected them. ³⁹How much more then should we submit to the Father of our spirits, and have Eternal Life.

⁴⁰God disciplines us for our good, that we may share in his holiness.

⁴⁰Discipline is painful at the time, but later yields fruit of righteousness and peace.

5

Live in peace with all men

¹Live in peace with all men and be holy. For without holiness no one will see the Lord. ²See to it that no one fails to obtain the grace of God. And that no bitterness arises to cause trouble and defilement.

Avoid sexual immorality and godlessness

³See that no one is sexually immoral, or godless like Esau who for a single meal sold his inheritance as the eldest son. ⁴For as you know, later when he desired to inherit this blessing he was rejected, though he sought it with tears.

The city of the living God lies before you

⁵You do not have before you a mountain burning with fire that can be touched, but you do have before you the heavenly Jerusalem, the city of the living God.

⁶You have before you thousands upon thousands of angels in joyful assembly, and the church of the Firstborn whose names are written in heaven.

⁷You have before you God the judge of all men, and the spirits of righteous men made perfect. ⁸And Jesus, the mediator of a new covenant and his sprinkled blood that speaks more graciously than the blood of Abel.

Show hospitality to strangers for some have entertained angels unawares

⁹Therefore continue to love one another as brothers. And do not neglect hospitality to strangers for by so doing some have entertained angels unawares.

Remember those in prison

¹⁰Remember those in prison as if you were their fellow prisoners. And those who are suffering as if you yourselves were suffering.

Keep the marriage bed undefiled

¹¹Marriage should be honoured by all and the marriage bed kept undefiled. For God will judge fornicators and adulterers.

HEBREWS 5

Do not love money, be content with what you have

¹²Keep your lives free from the love of money and be content with what you have. ¹³For God has promised, “**Never will I leave you. Never will I forsake you.**”

¹⁴So we say with confidence, “*The Lord is my helper, I will not fear. What can man do to me?*”

Imitate the faith of those who preached to you

¹⁵Remember those who preached the word of God to you. Consider the outcome of their way of life and imitate their faith.

Christ the same yesterday, today and forever

¹⁶Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, today, and forever. So do not be led astray by strange teachings.

Offer to God a sacrifice of praise

¹⁷Through Jesus then let us continually offer to God a sacrifice of praise, the fruit of lips that confess his name.

Do good and share with others

¹⁸And remember to do good and to share with others, for with such sacrifices God is pleased.

By grace we are strengthened not by rules on food

¹⁹And also remember that it is by grace we are strengthened. Not by rules regarding food,

which have not benefited those who observe them.

Submit to your church leaders

²⁰Obeys your leaders and submit to their authority, for they are keeping watch over your souls as men who must give an account. Let their work be a joy to them not a burden.

Pray for us also

²¹Pray for us also, in particular that I may come to you soon. ²²Our brother Timothy has been set free and if he arrives soon he will be with me when I come to you.

²³Brethren, I urge you to bear with my letter of exhortation.

Greetings

²⁴Greet all your leaders and all the saints. Those from Italy send you their greetings.

Closing blessing

²⁵May the God of peace who brought back from the dead our Lord Jesus bless you with everything good for doing his will.

²⁶May he work in us what is pleasing to him, through Jesus Christ to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.

²⁷Grace be with you all.

1 JOHN

This letter of the apostle John, like all of his writings, maintains a high spiritual tone and emphasises the great importance of love. It was written mainly to combat the false doctrine of Gnosticism which was spreading throughout the Roman empire and being taught to the saints, a term by which the early church members were known.

Gnosticism originated as an eastern religion. It taught that the human spirit was a pure creation of God, but that human flesh was a creation of Satan, and entirely evil. Therefore it did not matter how much we sinned with the flesh as it could not be contaminated further. It also taught that a person could only be saved through secret knowledge and by afflicting the flesh.

Like most of the popular false religions the attractive part was that it permitted sexual freedom, for since under Gnosticism the flesh was inherently evil, sins of the flesh did not really count and were inevitable.

Accepting Gnostic doctrine presented a difficult problem for believing Christians, for if flesh was a creation of Satan, Jesus Christ the Son of God could not have come in the flesh. Strange theories therefore had to be devised to get around this problem. One popular theory was that Jesus had only an illusory body.

John was an elderly man when he wrote this letter and evidently a very saintly person. He was much loved and respected by the church at Ephesus which had been his home since the fall of Jerusalem in 70 AD. He appears to have ministered to the seven churches in the area. Later during a period of severe persecution he was banished by the Roman authorities to the Island of Patmos where he received and wrote the book of Revelation.

AUTHOR The apostle John.

There is no fear in love. Perfect love drives out fear. 1 John 3:19.

CONTENTS

Chapter

John's testimony of Jesus Christ	1	If our conscience is at rest we receive from God	2
God is light	1	These are God's commandments	2
If we walk in the light the blood of Jesus purifies us .	1	To believe in Jesus and to love one another	2
We deceive ourselves if we claim not to have sinned ..	1	Test the spirits	3
Jesus the atoning sacrifice for sins	1	Many false prophets in the world	3
If we obey his commandments we will know him	1	Spirits from God proclaim Jesus is come in the flesh ..	3
Anyone who hates his brother walks in darkness	1	Holy Spirit greater than the spirits of the world	3
Whoever loves his brother lives in light	1	How to recognise spirits of falsehood	3
Do not love the world and its lusts	1	Let us love one another	3
We believe it is the last hour	1	How God showed his love for us	3
For antichrists have gone out from us	1	If we love not our brother we cannot love God	3
Whoever denies Jesus the Christ is an antichrist	1	When we love, God lives in us through his Spirit	3
Continue in the anointing you have received	1	God is love	3
We are children of God	2	Perfect love drives out fear	3
Anyone who continues to sin has not known Jesus ..	2	He who has faith in Jesus overcomes the world	3
The Son of God came to destroy the devil's work	2	God says, 'He who has the Son has Eternal Life'	3
Love one another	2	Whatever we ask according to God's will we obtain ..	3
Anyone who hates his brother is a murderer	2	Pray for a brother who commits a sin not unto Death ..	3
Be not surprised that the world hates you	2	Anyone who does not sin is protected from the devil ..	3
We ought to lay down our lives for our brothers	2	Whole world under control of the evil one	3
Do not love with words only but with actions	2		

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

1

John's testimony of Jesus Christ

¹He who was from the beginning, whom we have heard and seen and touched, who was

with the Father and who appeared to us, we proclaim to you, even the Word of Eternal Life.

1 JOHN 2

²That you too may have fellowship with the Father, and with his son Jesus Christ.

God is light

³We write this to make our joy complete. ⁴This is the message we proclaim to you from him, **“God is light, and in him there is no darkness at all.”**

If we walk in the light the blood of Jesus purifies us from all sin

⁵If we claim to have fellowship with him yet still walk in the darkness of sin, we lie and do not live by the truth. ⁶But if we walk in the light, the blood of Jesus purifies us from all sin.

We deceive ourselves if we claim to have never sinned

⁷If we claim to have never sinned, we deceive ourselves and the truth is not in us. We make him out to be a liar and his word has no place in our lives.

⁸But if we confess our sins he will forgive us and purify us from all unrighteousness.

Jesus is the atoning sacrifice for sins

⁹My dear children,^{F*} I write this to you so that you will not sin. ¹⁰But if anybody does sin we have one who speaks to the Father in our defence, Jesus Christ the Righteous One who is the atoning sacrifice for the sins of the whole world.

If we obey his commandments we will know him

¹¹By this we can be sure we know him; if we obey his commandments. ¹²For he who says “I know him” but does not obey his commandments, is a liar and the truth is not in him. ¹³But whoever obeys his word, God’s love is perfected in him. He should walk as Jesus did.

Anyone who hates his brother walks around in darkness

¹⁴Anyone who claims to be in the light but hates a brother, walks around in darkness. He does not know the way to go for darkness blinds him.

Whoever loves his brother lives in the light

¹⁵But whoever loves a brother lives in the light and will not stumble.

Do not love the world and its lusts

¹⁶Do not love the world or anything in the world. If anyone loves the world the love of the Father is not in him.

¹⁷For everything in the world, the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes and the foolish pride of life comes not from the Father but from the world.

¹⁸The world and its lusts will pass away, but the man who does the will of God has Eternal Life.

We believe it is the last hour for antichrists have gone out from us

¹⁹Dear children, this is the final hour,^{F*} and as

^{*9} John most likely referred to the saints as his children because he was now an elderly apostle, possibly over 90.

^{*19} In the early years of the church the return of Jesus was thought to be imminent. See note on 1 Corinthians 3:18.

you have heard the Antichrist^{F*} is coming.

²⁰We believe it to be the last hour for even now many antichrists have come. ²¹They went out from us but did not really belong to us or they would have remained with us. ^{F*}

²²But you have been anointed^{F*} by the Holy One and know the truth. No lie comes from the truth.

Whoever denies Jesus is the Christ is an antichrist

²³Who is a liar? Whoever denies that Jesus is the Christ. ²⁴Such a person is an antichrist for he denies both the Father and the Son. No one who denies the Son has the Father.

Continue in the anointing you have received

²⁵I am writing these things to you about those who are trying to lead you astray.^{F*}

²⁶Let that which was taught to you from the beginning abide in you. If it does, you will abide in the Son and in the Father and inherit what he has promised us, even Eternal Life.

²⁷If you continue in the anointing you have received, you will not need that anyone teach you, for his anointing teaches you all things and is true.

²⁸Therefore little children, abide in the Son so that when he comes we may not be ashamed.

2

We are children of God

¹O what great love the Father has bestowed upon us, that we should be called the children of God.

²Beloved, we are indeed children of God. What this means hereafter is not yet fully made known, but we do know that when he comes we shall be like him and shall see him as he is.

Anyone who continues to sin has not truly known Jesus

³Anyone who has this hope in him purifies himself just as Jesus is pure, and ceases to sin. ⁴Anyone who continues to sin has not truly known him, for no person born of God will continue to sin. For God’s nature lives within him. He cannot go on sinning.

⁵This is how we know who are the children of God and who are the children of the devil. Anyone who sins, or does not love his brother is not a child of God.

⁶So dear children let no one lead you astray. He who does what is right is righteous, and he who does what is sinful is of the devil.

^{*19} The Antichrist is a great evil world leader to arise in the last days, also known as the Beast, or Gog. He will have alongside of him a false prophet who will perform impressive miracles (see Revelation, chapters 9 and 10).

^{*21} John is referring to men who formerly belonged to the church but strayed from the teachings of Christ and became false teachers.

^{*22} Anointing is a term for receiving the Holy Spirit.

^{*25} The false teaching of Gnosticism was beginning to trouble the church at this time. It taught that the human spirit was a pure creation of God but that human flesh was a creation of Satan and therefore entirely evil. Therefore it did not matter how much we sinned with the flesh as it could not be contaminated further (see also introduction to this letter).

The Son of God came to destroy the devil's work

⁷For the devil was a sinner from the beginning. But the Son of God came to destroy the work of the devil.

Love one another

⁸The message you heard from the beginning was to love one another. Anyone who does not love remains in Death.^{F*}

Anyone who hates his brother is a murderer

⁹Anyone who hates his brother is a murderer, and you know that no murderer has Eternal Life abiding in him. ¹⁰Do not be like Cain who belonged to the evil one and murdered his brother Abel. Why? Because his own actions were evil and those of his brother righteous.

Be not surprised that the world hates you

¹¹So do not be surprised brethren that the world hates you.

We ought to lay down our lives for our brothers

¹²This is how we know what love is: Jesus Christ laid down his life for us. Therefore we ought to lay down our lives for our brothers.

Let us love not with words only but with actions

¹³If anyone has enough of the world's goods and sees his brother in need yet closes his heart to him, can the love of God be in him?

¹⁴Dear children, let us love not with words only, but with actions.

If our conscience is at rest we receive from God anything we ask

¹⁵This is how we know that we belong to the truth: when our conscience is at rest in the presence of God.

¹⁶If our conscience does not condemn us, we are confident before God and receive from him anything we ask.^{F*} For we obey his commandments and do what pleases him.

These are his commandments – to believe in Jesus and to love one another

¹⁷And these are God's commandments; to believe in the name of his son Jesus Christ and to love one another.

¹⁸Those who obey these commandments live in him and he in them through the Holy Spirit he gave us. ²¹And his commandments are not burdensome.

3

Test the spirits for many false prophets are in the world

¹Beloved, do not believe every spirit but test the spirits to see if they are of God. For many false prophets are in the world.

A spirit from God will proclaim that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh

²Every spirit that proclaims that Jesus Christ

has come in the flesh, is from God.^{F*} But a spirit that will not acknowledge that Jesus has come in the flesh is not of God. ³Rather it is the spirit of antichrist, which you have heard is coming and even now is already in the world.

The Holy Spirit in you is greater than the spirits of the world

⁴But you dear children are of God and have overcome such spirits. For the Holy Spirit who is in you is greater than the spirits of the world.

How to recognise spirits of falsehood

⁵Because these spirits are of the world, what they speak is of the world and the world listens to them.

⁶But we are of God. Whoever knows God listens to us, and whoever is not of God does not listen to us.

⁷This is how we recognise the Spirit of truth and the spirit of error.

Let us love one another

⁸Beloved, let us love one another, for love is of God. Whoever loves is born of God and knows him.

⁹Whoever does not love, does not know God, for God is love.

How God showed his love for us

¹⁰This is how God showed his love for us: he sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.

¹¹In this is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son as an atoning sacrifice for our sins.

If we love not our brother we cannot love God

¹²Beloved, since God so loved us we should also love one another. ¹³For whoever does not loves his brother whom he has seen, cannot love God whom he has not seen. And no man has seen God.^{F*}

When we love one another God lives in us through his Spirit

¹⁴If we love one another, God lives in us and we live in him, for he has given us his Spirit.

¹⁵We testify that the Father has sent his Son to be the Saviour of the world. ¹⁶God abides in those who acknowledge that Jesus is the Son of God, and they abide in God.

God is love

¹⁷God is love, and they who abide in love abide in God.

¹⁸In this way love is made perfect among us, so that we will have confidence on the day of judgement. For in this world we are like him.

Perfect love drives out fear

¹⁹There is no fear in love. Perfect love drives out fear.

²⁰For fear has to do with punishment, therefore

*8 ie Living in such a way as to inherit the Second Death, which is to be cut off forever from the presence of God (see Revelation 16:19 and note).

*16 1 John 3:26 adds 'according to his will.'

*2 Gnosticism taught that Jesus as Son of God could not have come in the flesh, for all flesh is evil.

*13 See note in the gospel of John, 1:8, for an explanation of this apparently contradictory statement.

1 JOHN 3

whoever fears is not perfect in love.

²¹We love because he first loved us.

He who has faith in Jesus overcomes the world

²²This is the victory that overcomes the world, even our faith. He who has faith that Jesus is the Son of God, overcomes the world. ²³He is the one who came by water and blood.^{F*}

God says, "He who has the Son has Eternal Life"

²⁴We accept man's testimony but God's testimony is greater. Here is the testimony God has given us. ²⁵**"Eternal Life is in his Son. Whoever has the Son has Eternal Life. Whoever has not the Son of God does not have Eternal Life."**

Whatever we ask according to God's will we obtain

²⁶This is the confidence we have in approaching God: if we ask anything according to his will, we know we have obtained it.

Pray for a brother who commits a sin that does not lead to Death

²⁷If you see your brother commit a sin you should pray for him. And God will still grant him Eternal Life.

²⁸I refer to those whose sin is not unto Death for there is a sin that leads to Spiritual Death.^{F*} I do not say that you should pray about that.

²⁹All wrongdoing is sin but there is sin that does not lead to Death.

Anyone born of God who does not sin is protected from the devil

³⁰Anyone born of God and who does not sin is protected. The devil cannot harm him.

The whole world under the control of the evil one

³¹We are children of God, but the whole world is under the control of the evil one.

³²Dear children, keep yourselves from idols.

*23 Elements of the flesh. John may be countering the false teaching of Gnosticism,

*28 John is probably referring to the sin of blaspheming against the Holy Spirit for which Jesus said there was no forgiveness (see Matt-Mark-Luke 13:30-31). Spiritual Death (or the Second Death) is the opposite of Eternal Life and means to be cut off forever from the presence of God (see note on Revelation 16:19).

2 JOHN

This short personal letter by John to a prominent but unnamed Christian woman and her children, and also the following letter, 3 John are both of a size that could conveniently be written on a single sheet of papyrus.

The two letters are thought to be typical of much of the personal correspondence of the early apostles and may have been preserved from oblivion only by becoming attached to 1 John early in church history.

In this letter John warns the unnamed woman, who probably allowed her house to be used for church meetings, to stay with the original Christian teachings she received in the beginning and not allow false teachers into her home.

AUTHOR The apostle John.

I am not writing you a new commandment but one we have had from the beginning.
That is, that we love one another. 2 John 1:4.

CONTENTS

	Chapter
John's greeting	1
Great joy that some of your children walk in truth	1
We must obey his commands as in the beginning ...	1
Many deceivers have gone forth into the world	1

1

John's greeting

¹The Elder,^{F*} to the elect lady and her children whom I love in the truth, not only I but all who know the truth.

²Grace, mercy and peace from God the Father and from Jesus Christ in truth and love.

Great joy that some of your children walk in truth

³It has given me great joy to find some of your children walking in the truth, just as the Father commanded us.

We must obey his commandments as received in the beginning

⁴And now dear lady, I am not writing you a new commandment but one we have had from the beginning. That is, that we love one another.

⁵And this is love, that we obey his commandments as we heard them in the beginning.

For many deceivers have gone forth into the world

⁶For many deceivers have gone forth into the world who do not proclaim that Jesus Christ

has come in the flesh. Such men are antichrists.

⁷Therefore be careful that you do not lose that which you have worked for, but win the full reward.

Forbid from your house any man who does not teach the doctrine of Christ

⁸Anyone who does not remain in the doctrine of Christ but goes beyond, has not the Father and the Son. ⁹Therefore if any man comes to you teaching a different doctrine do not take him into your house.

¹⁰For whoever welcomes such a man shares in his wicked work.

I hope to visit you soon and speak with you face to face

¹¹I have much to say to you but would rather not use paper and ink. Instead I hope to visit you soon and speak with you face to face that our joy may be complete.

John's closing greeting

¹²The children of your elect sister send their greetings.

*1 The apostle John.

3 JOHN

This personal letter of John to a faithful church member named Gaius is similar to that of the previous letter 2 John and was probably written at the same time. It provides an interesting glimpse into the inner problems of the early church, in this case the lack of hospitality of a church leader named Diotrephes.

The main purpose of the letter appears to have been to introduce and recommend Demetrius, a travelling missionary or believer. It was customary for such Christian travellers to stay with church members. Demetrius would probably have carried this letter to Gaius himself.

AUTHOR The apostle John.

Anyone who does what is good is of God, but anyone who does what is evil does not know God. 3 John 1:11.

CONTENTS

Chapter

John's greeting and blessing to Gaius	1	Imitate what is good	1
No greater joy than to hear my children walk in truth ...	1	Demetrius is well spoken of by all	1
The brethren have testified of your hospitality	1	I hope to see you soon and speak face to face	1
I have written to the church	1	Closing greetings	1
Diotrephes does not acknowledge our authority	1		

1

John's greeting and blessing to Gaius

¹The Elder, to my beloved Gaius whom I love in the truth.

²Beloved, I pray that you may enjoy good health and that all may go well with you. I know it is well with your spirit.

No greater joy than to hear that my children walk in the truth

³It gave me great joy to have some brethren come and tell how you continue to walk in the truth. ⁴I have no greater joy than to hear that my children are walking in the truth.

The brethren have testified of your hospitality

⁵Beloved, it is a loyal thing you do when you render hospitality to the brethren, even though they are strangers to you. They have testified of your love before the church.

⁶You do well to send them on their way in a manner worthy of God, for in his name they go out, receiving no help from unbelievers. ⁷We ought to support such men that we may work together for the truth.

I have written to the church but Diotrephes acknowledges not our authority

⁸I have written to the church but Diotrephes,

who loves to be first does not acknowledge our authority.

⁹So if I come I will bring up what he is doing and his maligning words about us, and how, not being content with that, he refuses to welcome the brethren.^{F*} ¹⁰He even prevents those who wish to do so and expels them from the church.

Beloved, imitate what is good

¹¹Beloved, do not imitate what is evil but what is good. Anyone who does what is good is of God, but anyone who does what is evil does not know God.

Demetrius is well spoken of by all

¹²Demetrius is well spoken of by all, and by Truth itself. I also testify of him and you know that my testimony is true.

I hope to see you soon and speak face to face

¹³I have much to say to you but would rather not write with pen and ink. I hope to see you soon and we will speak face to face.

John's closing blessing and greeting

¹⁴Peace to you. The friends here send their greetings. Greet the friends there by name.

*9 Traveling Christian preachers, such as Demetrius (see verse 12).

REVELATION

Reading the book of Revelation can be a frustrating experience to the western mind, which is used to having facts presented literally and logically instead of symbolically. But we should bear in mind that Revelation is an eastern book, originally revealed to and written for eastern peoples who as a rule delight in symbolic and picturesque writing. The book of Revelation therefore uses much symbolism to depict eternal truths and to reveal literal events that lie in the future.

The book is similar in many ways to the Old Testament book of Daniel which also employs symbolism to depict future real events. This kind of religious writing is called apocalyptic and the book of Revelation is named *'The Apocalypse of St John'* in some older translations of the Bible.

Having accepted that this book contains much symbolism we should not assume that the real future events described in the book are symbolic also, even if some may sound extreme. We must remember that they still lie in the future. Until recent years it was difficult to imagine how people might be prevented from buying or selling without a special name or number (Revelation 10:7-8), or how an image could be made to speak (Revelation 10:5-6) whereas nowadays the banking facilities and video technology are already in place. Bible prophecies have in the past been fulfilled to the letter.

The symbolic parts of Revelation are generally so bizarre as to leave no doubt that symbolism is intended, and the symbols are mostly explained in the book. The non-symbolic, real events described are those that will lead up to and follow the second coming of Jesus Christ.

Along with the rest of the early church in his day, John appears to have believed that the second coming was imminent, which is understandable for even Jesus admitted he did not know the day (Matt-Mark-Luke 28:41). Therefore this belief is reflected in John's writing which can create the impression that the prophecies were to be fulfilled in his day. Because of this, and also because the first three verses introducing the book (which are unlikely to have been written by John) state that the prophetic events described *'must soon take place'* some scholars take the view that the events described are now in the past, or entirely symbolic. However in taking such a view they are driven to very unconvincing historic explanations. For example no ocean catastrophe in the past 2000 years has destroyed a third of the fish and ships of the sea (Revelation 6:10).

Jesus himself also prophesied of the worldwide terrors to foreshadow his second coming, especially ocean disturbances. In Matt-Mark-Luke 28:32 he said, *"Nations shall be in great distress at the roaring and great waves of the sea. People will faint with terror, fearful of what is coming on the earth, for the powers of the heavens will be shaken."* Old Testament prophets have also predicted similar things (see introduction to Joel).

The majority view of Christians is that the cataclysmic events described in the book of Revelation still lie in the future and will commence approx seven years before the return of Jesus Christ (see Revelation 7:13-23 and 9:7, also Daniel 5:24-27).

Revelation commences with separate messages from Jesus to each of the seven churches which surrounded and included the city of Ephesus. This is the same region where John lived and ministered during the years prior to his exile on the island of Patmos.

John is then caught up into heaven and relates in thrilling detail his visions of the splendour of heaven and his marvellous visions of the future. Nor was John merely a passive watcher, he was totally involved. His sentences begin with "I saw..., I heard..., I wept..., I was given..., I ate..., He carried me..., etc."

John is first shown an overview of the events leading up to the second coming of Jesus Christ (the first six seals) and then sees the same events again in greater detail. He is then shown the thousand year Millennium and the final winding up scenes including the great day of judgement.

REVELATION

Finally John sees and attempts to describe the massive and beautiful crystalline city the New Jerusalem (which is to be our eventual heaven) as it descends to the new earth. This vast city is 2200 kms wide and 2200 kms long and covers such a huge area that more than 3000 cities the size of London could be encompassed within its walls.

AUTHOR The apostle John.

Behold, he will come in the clouds and every eye will see him, even those who pierced him, and the peoples and nations of the earth will wail because of him. Even so shall it be. Amen. Revelation 1:8.

CONTENTS

Chapter

Introduction

A revelation from God to Jesus of things to come1
Jesus made it known to John by sending his angel ..1

John's testimony

John greets the seven churches in province of Asia .1
Jesus will come in the clouds1
Every eye shall see him1
John banished to the island of Patmos1
John in the Spirit on the Lord's Day1
John hears a voice like a trumpet1
Sees a glorious angel1
The angel standing among seven lampstands1
Angel speaks on behalf of Jesus1
Meaning of the seven lampstands and stars1

To the Ephesian church

You are enduring patiently2
But you have forsaken the love you had at first2
Repent and do the works you did at first2
In your favour you hate the deeds of the Nicolaitans ...2
Whoever overcomes will eat from the Tree of Life2

To the Smyrna church

I know your poverty yet you are rich2
You are about to suffer but be faithful2

To the Pergamum church

You live where Satan has his throne, yet remain true .2
Some hold to teachings of Balaam and Nicolaitans .2
The Hidden Manna and the White Stone2

To the Thyatiran church

You are now doing more than you did at first2
Yet you tolerate the immoral woman Jezebel2
She will suffer intensely for she will not repent2
And all who have committed adultery with her2
Satan's so-called deep secrets2
He who does my will shall be as the Morning Star2

To the Sardis church

Awaken and repent for you are dead2
He who overcomes I will not blot out of Book of Life ...2

To the Philadelphian church

You have kept my word and not denied my name2
I will keep you safe from the world's hour of trial2
The New Jerusalem and the New Name2

To the Laodicean church

You are lukewarm, I will spew you out of my mouth2
You are not rich but poor, blind and naked2
I stand at the door and knock2
The faithful will sit with me on my throne2

John's vision

John taken up into heaven in spirit, sees God3
Twenty-four elders seated on thrones3
The seven spirits of God3
God's throne surrounded by a sea of crystal glass ...3
The four cherubim3
A scroll sealed with seven seals3
Lion of Judah worthy to open the scroll3
Jesus depicted as a slain lamb takes the scroll3
The elders bow before the Lamb and sing3
Myriads of angels join in the singing3
All of creation sing3

The First Seal

Rider on white horse – sent to conquer the earth4

The Second Seal

Rider on red horse – men to slay one another4

The Third Seal

Rider on black horse – famines on earth4

The Fourth Seal

Rider on green horse – power to kill fourth of earth4

The Fifth Seal

Saints slain for testifying word of God4

The Sixth Seal

Great earthquake darkens the sun4
Moon turns blood red4
Stars fall from the sky4
Sky recedes and mountains and islands move4
The Father and Son are seen4
Unbelievers on earth try to hide4
Servants of God marked with a seal5
Destroying angels given power to harm the earth5
12,000 from each tribe of Israel sealed – 144,000 ...5
John sees the saints who die in the Great Tribulation .5
The Lamb at the throne to be their shepherd5

The Seventh Seal

Plagues of the seven trumpets6
Fire from the altar hurled to earth6

The First Trumpet

Hail of fire falls upon the earth6
A third of the trees and all green vegetation burned .6

The Second Trumpet

A blazing mountain falls into the sea6
A third of the fish and ships destroyed6

The Third Trumpet

A blazing star falls on a third of the rivers6
A third of the rivers poisoned6

The Fourth Trumpet

Light on earth darkened by a third 6
 Woe to the inhabitants of the earth 6
 Because of last three trumpet blasts 6

The Fifth Trumpet

Locust-like creatures sting and torment men 6
 Those with the seal of God on foreheads not stung 6
 The stinging creatures described 6

The Sixth Trumpet

A third of mankind killed by an army of 200,000,000 ... 6
 Survivors still do not repent of their sins 6
 An angel descends from heaven holding a scroll 7
 Seven thunders prophesy 7
 John not permitted to write the prophecy 7
 No more delay 7
 John told to eat the scroll 7
 Prophecies of scroll bitter to John's stomach 7
 Jerusalem to be trampled three and a half years 7
 Two prophets to witness from Jerusalem 7
 The two prophets given great power 7
 The Beast to eventually kill the two prophets 7
 All nations will gaze on their dead bodies and rejoice . 7
 After three and a half days they will return to life 7
 They will ascend into heaven 7
 A severe earthquake at the same hour 7

The Seventh Trumpet

World to become kingdom of God and his Christ 8
 Time has come to reward the saints 8
 The corrupters of the earth to be destroyed 8
 An Ark seen in the heavenly temple 8
 On earth another earthquake and great hail 8
 Sign of a woman about to give birth 8
 Satan depicted as a great red dragon 8
 The male child caught up to God and the throne 8
 The church to be cared for during the final 3½ years .. 8
 Michael and his angels hurl Satan from the heavens .. 8
 Satan defeated by blood of the Lamb and martyrs ... 8
 Woe to the earth 8
 Satan is filled with fury and his time is short 8
 Church on earth escapes into the wilderness 8
 Satan tries to prevent church's escape by a flood 8
 Satan wages war against all who obey God 8
 The Beast (the Antichrist) arises from the sea 9
 An apparently fatal head wound healed 9
 Whole world worships Satan by following the Beast ... 9
 Beast to exercise authority for 3½ years 9
 Blasphemes God, given power over nations 9
 All who are not in Book of Life worship the Beast ... 9
 Many saints destined to be captured or killed 9
 A second beast rises up out of the earth 10
 Second beast the False Prophet 10
 False Prophet performs great miracles 10
 Image set up in honour of the Beast 10
 Image given power of speech 10
 All who refuse to worship image are put to death ... 10
 No one able to buy or sell without Beast's mark 10
 The name of the Beast adds up to 666 10
 The 144,000 sing a new song before the throne 11
 The 144,000 chaste and blameless men 11
 First fruits to God 11
 The hour of God's judgement has come 11
 The great Babylon is fallen 11
 Whoever worships the Beast will drink God's fury .. 11
 They will have no peace day or night 11
 Saints must endure and obey commandments 11
 Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord 11

Time to reap the harvest of the earth 11
 The grapes of God's wrath are gathered 11
 Grapes to be trampled in the winepress 11
 Blood flows high as a horse's bridle 11
 Seven last plagues 12
 John sees those who died resisting the Beast 12
 Standing on a sea of fiery glass 12
 They held harps and sang the song of Moses 12
 Seven angels with plagues come out of temple 12

The First Plague

Sores break out on those who have mark of Beast 12

The Second Plague

The sea becomes like blood 12
 Everything living in the sea dies 12

The Third Plague

The rivers and springs of water become blood 12

The Fourth Plague

Sun becomes scorching hot 12

The Fifth Plague

Kingdom of the Beast plunged into darkness 12

The Sixth Plague

Spirits of demons go out to gather the kings 12
 For great battle at Armageddon 12

The Seventh Plague

A tremendous earthquake collapses all cities 12
 Whole face of the earth changes 12
 Giant hail falls 12
 John carried away and shown the Great Harlot 13
 Sees a richly dressed woman on a scarlet beast ... 13
 The woman drunk with blood of martyred saints 13
 Mystery of the woman and of the Beast 13
 The Beast once lived, and now is dead 13
 But he will come again out of the Pit 13
 Beast's heads represent seven hills and kings 13
 Horns of the Beast are ten future kings 13
 The kings will give their power to the Beast 13
 The Beast and kings will wage war against Lamb .. 13
 The waters represent many nations 13
 The ten kings and Beast will bring the Harlot to ruin . 13
 Harlot is the great city that rules over kings 13
 The great Babylon has fallen 14
 Come out of her my people 14
 Her sins are piled up to heaven 14
 Babylon destroyed by plagues, famine, and fire 14
 The rulers of the earth will weep and mourn 14
 Merchants of the earth shall weep and mourn 14
 Seamen will weep and mourn 14
 The saints, apostles, and prophets will rejoice 14
 Great Babylon to be thrown down with violence 14
 No more will be heard the sound of music 14
 Or workman, or bride and groom 14
 The great Babylon led astray the nations 14
 Shed the blood of the saints and prophets 14
 Hallelujah sounded in heaven by great multitude ... 15
 Wedding of the Lamb 15
 Blessed are those invited to the wedding supper ... 15
 John forbidden to worship angel of the Lord 15
 Jesus returns to earth riding a white horse 15
 Jesus clothed in a blood red robe 15
 Armies of heaven follow Jesus on white horses 15
 Birds called to the great supper 15
 To eat flesh of those who fall at Armageddon 15
 Kings of the earth gather their armies 15
 Beast and False Prophet are captured 15

REVELATION 1

Cast alive into the Lake of Fire	15
Kings and their armies slain	15
Birds gorge on their flesh	15
Satan bound in the Pit for a thousand years	15
The faithful spirits are resurrected	16
They reign with Christ on earth a thousand years ...	16
Rest of the dead not yet resurrected	16
Until thousand years are ended	16
Satan then to be released from prison	16
To again deceive the nations	16
Nations again gather to attack the Holy City	16
Fire comes down from heaven and devours them	16
The final resurrection and day of judgement	16
The Book of Life	16
The Second Death	16
New heavens and a new earth	17
God to dwell on earth among men	17
Every tear to be wiped from their eyes	17
All things to be made new	17
Those who will inherit the Second Death	17
The New Jerusalem descends from heaven	17

Like a brilliant jewel clear as golden crystal	17
High crystalline walls with twelve pearl gates	17
Length and breadth of the city 12,000 stadia	17
City and streets like transparent gold	17
Glory of God and the Lamb its light	17
Only those written in Book of Life will enter city	17
The river of the Water of Life	17
The Tree of Life	17
All in the city will see the face of God	17
These words are trustworthy and true	18
John forbidden to worship the angel	18
Time draws near	18
Jesus coming soon	18
I will repay everyone according to their works	18
Blessed are they who keep the commandments	18
They will enter the New Jerusalem	18
Those who now sin to live outside the city	18
Jesus the bright Morning Star	18
Come and take free gift of Water of Life	18
Do not add or take away from this book	18
Jesus to come soon	18

Bold The Lord or an angel speaking.

1

INTRODUCTION

A revelation from God to Jesus of things to come

¹The revelation which God gave Jesus Christ to show his servants what must soon take place.^{F*}

Jesus made it known to John by sending his angel

²Jesus made it known by sending his angel to his servant John, who has testified of everything he saw and heard.

³Blessed is he who reads or hears the words of this prophecy and takes to heart what is written, for the time draws near.

JOHN'S TESTIMONY

John greets the seven churches in province of Asia

⁴John, to the seven churches in the province of Asia.^{F*} Grace and peace to you from he who is, who was, and who is to come.^{F*}

*1 The bulk of this book of Revelation pertains to events preceding the second coming of Jesus Christ, which in the early days of the Church was thought to soon take place (see note on 1 Corinthians 3:18 and John 28:41). The events of the first three chapters, including the messages to the seven churches that John ministered to, belong to John's day, but the events from chapter four onward, when the sixth seal is opened are yet to occur.

*4 The Roman province of Asia, especially the city of Ephesus in this province which had been John's home since the fall of Jerusalem in 70 AD. He is believed to have ministered to the seven churches mentioned. During a recent period of severe persecution he was exiled by the Roman authorities to a penal colony on the Island of Patmos where he received visions and wrote this book.

*4 John is here referring to the Father (see following verse where Jesus is mentioned separately) and by using the words 'who is to come' it appears that both the Father and the Son are to come at the return of Jesus Christ. This view is also supported by Revelation 4:16, 1 Peter 1:24, Titus 1:25, 1 Thessalonians 2:11, Matt-Mark-Luke 32:7 and Psalms 54:5. However the Father will not remain on earth to dwell with mankind as will Jesus (Revelation 15:27-29, 16:4-6) until after the thousand year Millennium when the New Jerusalem descends from heaven upon the new earth (Revelation chapter 17).

⁵Also from the seven Spirits before his throne, and from Jesus Christ who is the faithful witness, the firstborn from the dead and ruler of the kings of the earth. ⁶Who loves us and has freed us from our sins by his blood, and has made us kings and priests unto God his Father.

⁷To him be glory and power for ever and ever. Amen.

Jesus will come in the clouds and every eye shall see him

⁸Behold, he will come in the clouds and every eye shall see him, even those who pierced him, and the peoples and nations of the earth will wail because of him. Even so shall it be. Amen.

⁹**"I am the Alpha and the Omega^{F*} says the Lord God who is, who was, and who is to come, the Almighty."**

John banished to the island of Patmos

¹⁰John your brother, who shares with you in the suffering, the patient endurance, and the kingdom that is ours in Jesus, was on the island of Patmos^{F*} for proclaiming the word of God and testifying of Jesus.

John in the Spirit on the Lord's Day and hears a voice like a trumpet

¹¹I was in the Spirit on the Lord's Day^{F*} when I heard behind me a loud voice like a trumpet

*9 Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet.

*10 Patmos is a small, windswept island off the coast of Ephesus. John had been banished there by Roman authorities to prevent him from preaching. He is said to have lived in a cave.

*11 Sunday the day on which Jesus rose from the dead. Being 'in the Spirit' is a state of heightened spiritual consciousness brought about by the influence of the Holy Spirit.

saying, “Write what you see and send it to the seven churches, to Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamum, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia, and Laodicea.” F*

John sees a glorious angel standing among seven lampstands and holding seven stars

¹²I turned to see the voice that was speaking to me and saw seven golden lampstands. In the midst of the lampstands stood an angel, in appearance like the Son of Man.F* He was clothed in a long robe with a golden girdle around his chest.

¹³His hair was white as snow, like pure wool and his eyes blazed like fire. His feet were as bronze that glows in a furnace and his voice was like the sound of rushing waters.

¹⁴In his right hand he held seven stars, and from his mouth came a sharp two-edged sword.F*

¹⁵His face was like the sun shining in full brilliance.

The angel speaks on behalf of Jesus

¹⁶When I saw him I fell at his feet as if dead. He laid his right hand upon me and spoke saying, “Fear not, I am the First and the Last. I am the Living One. I was dead, and behold I am alive for ever more.F* ¹⁷I hold the keys of the grave and Hades.” F*

¹⁸“Now write what you see, what is and what will take place later.”

The meaning of the seven lampstands and stars

¹⁹“The meaning of the seven stars you saw in my right hand and the seven golden lampstands is this. The stars represent the leaders of the seven churches and the lampstands represent the churches.”

2

**TO THE EPHESIAN CHURCH
You are enduring patiently but have forsaken the love you had at first**

¹“To the leader of the church in Ephesus write, ‘The words of him who holds the seven stars in his right hand and walks among the seven golden lampstands:’

²“I know your works, your toil and endurance, and how you refuse to tolerate the wicked. ³And how you tested those who claimed to be apostles but were not and found them false. ⁴You are enduring patiently for my name and have not grown

*11 John would have been familiar with the seven churches referred to which are all within a 150 km radius of Ephesus. There were of course numerous other churches throughout the Roman empire.

*12 Not Jesus himself but his angel-messenger or Spirit (see Revelation 2:14 and 11:17). Also John was familiar with the resurrected Jesus and would have almost certainly identified him had he come in person.

*14 A two-edged sword is symbolic of the power of the word of God (Hebrews 2:9).

*16 Throughout the Bible, whenever an angel or the Holy Spirit brings a message from God, they almost always speak as if the Father or the Son were speaking in person.

*17 Hades is the Greek term for the spirit world of the dead. See also Revelation 16:14.

wear. Yet I hold this against you; you have forsaken the love you had at first.”

Repent and do the works you did at first

⁵“Consider the height from which you have fallen. Repent and do the works you did at first. ⁶If you do not repent I will remove your lampstand from its place.”

In your favour you hate the practices of the Nicolaitans

⁷“Yet you have this in your favour; you hate the practices of the NicolaitansF* which I also hate.”

Whoever overcomes will eat from the Tree of Life in the Paradise of God

⁸“He who has an ear let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. To him who overcomes I will give the right to eat from the Tree of Life in the Paradise of God.”



Patmos, a small crescent shaped island to which John was exiled for about 18 months.

TO THE SMYRNA CHURCH

I know your poverty yet you are rich

⁹“To the leader of the church in Smyrna write, ‘The words of him who is the First and the Last, who died and came to life again:’

¹⁰“I know your afflictions and your poverty. Yet you are rich. ¹¹I know the lies of those who claim to be Jews and are not, but are a synagogue of Satan.”

You are about to suffer, but be faithful

¹²“Be not afraid of what you are about to suffer. The devil will cast some of you in prison, that you may be tested, and you will suffer persecution for ten days. ¹³Be faithful even to the point of deathF* and I will give you the crown of Eternal Life.” F*

*7 A sect within the church which taught that there was sufficient leeway in their spiritual freedom for them to practice sexual immorality. They appear to have taught: ‘As long as you believe in Christ you can do what you like.’

*13 Polycarp the bishop of Smyrna was in fact eventually put to death.

*13 Eternal Life is to live forever in the presence of God the Father in the glorious New Jerusalem (Revelation chapters 17 and 18). Jehovah, the name/title of God also means ‘Eternal’ therefore Eternal Life means God’s Life or life in the presence of

REVELATION 2

14“He who has an ear let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. He who overcomes will not suffer the Second Death.” F*

TO THE PERGAMUM CHURCH You live where Satan has his throne yet remain true

15“To the leader of the church in Pergamum write, ‘The words of him who has the sharp, two-edged sword:”

16“‘I know where you live, where Satan has his throne, F* yet you remain true to my name. 17You did not renounce your faith in me, even in the days of Antipas my faithful witness who was put to death in your city where Satan lives.”

Yet some of you hold to the teachings of Balaam and the Nicolaitans

18“Nevertheless I have a few things against you; some among you hold to the teaching of Balaam, who taught Balak to entice the Israelites to sin by eating food sacrificed to idols and by committing sexual immorality. 19And you also have those who hold to the teaching of the Nicolaitans.” F*

20“Therefore you must repent. If you do not I will come and war against you with the sword of my mouth.”

The Hidden Manna, White Stone and New Name

21“He who has an ear let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. To him who overcomes I will give some of the Hidden Manna, F* and also a White Stone F* with a New Name F* written on it known only to him who receives it.”



Location of the seven churches
in Asia and the island of Patmos.

God. There is no literal death of the spirit as far as the scriptures reveal. All will be resurrected and exist forever (Revelation 16:7). However see note on the ‘Second Death’ and the ‘Lake of Fire’ Revelation 16:19.

*14 The ‘Second Death’ is a symbolic term meaning to be cut off forever from the presence of God. See note on Revelation 16:19.

*16 Pergamum was the chief city of the province of Asia and the centre of idolatry with many shrines and altars for the worship of pagan gods such as Zeus. A temple dedicated to Roman emperor-worship was also located there.

*19 The Nicolaitans were a sect. See note on Revelation 2:7.

*21 Jesus speaks of manna symbolically in John 6:30-31.

*21 The White Stone may be a type of Urim and Thummim. See note on Haggai 1:13.

*21 A New Name is also spoken of in Revelation 2:47 and 15:14.

TO THE THYATIRAN CHURCH

You are now doing more than you did at first

22“To the leader of the church in Thyatira write, ‘The words of the Son of God whose eyes are like blazing fire and whose feet are like burnished bronze:”

23“‘I know your works; your love, your faith, your service and patient endurance. You are now doing more than you did at first.”

Yet you tolerate the immoral woman Jezebel

24“Nevertheless I have this against you; you tolerate that woman Jezebel who calls herself a prophetess and misleads my servants into sexual immorality and the eating of food sacrificed to idols.”

**She and all who have committed adultery with her
will suffer intensely unless they repent**

25“‘I have given her time to repent of her immorality but she is unwilling. Therefore I will cast her on a bed of sickness and those who have committed adultery with her will also suffer intensely unless they repent.”

26“‘I will strike her children dead, then all the churches will know that I am he who searches hearts and minds and repays each of you according to your deeds.”

Satan’s so-called deep secrets

27“To the rest of you in Thyatira who do not hold to her teaching and have not learned Satan’s so-called deep secrets, F* I will impose no other burden upon you. 28Only hold on to what you have until I come.”

**He who does my will shall
be as the Morning Star**

29“To him who overcomes and does my will to the end, I will give authority over the peoples and nations to rule them with an iron sceptre, breaking them to pieces like pottery, just as I have received authority from my Father. And I shall make him as the Morning Star.” F*

30“‘He who has an ear let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches.”

TO THE SARDIS CHURCH

Awaken and repent for you are dead

31“To the leader of the church in Sardis write, ‘The words of him who has the seven Spirits of God and the seven stars:”

32“‘I know your deeds; you have a reputation of being alive but are dead. 33Awaken! Strengthen what remains and is about to die, for I have not found your works perfect in the sight of my God.”

34“Remember what you have received and heard, and obey and repent. If you do not awaken I will come like a thief at an hour you expect not.”

*27 Probably Gnosticism, a false doctrine teaching that ‘the sins of the flesh do not count as the flesh is inherently evil,’ and that ‘only secret knowledge can lead you to salvation.’

*29 Jesus himself is the Morning Star (Revelation 18:13).

He who overcomes I will not blot out of the Book of Life

³⁵“Yet you still have among you some who have not soiled their garments. They will walk with me dressed in white. ³⁶He who overcomes will be clothed in white and I will never blot out his name from the Book of Life^{F*} but will acknowledge his name before my Father and his angels.”

³⁷“He who has an ear let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches.”

TO THE PHILADELPHIAN CHURCH
You have kept my word and not denied my name

³⁸“To the leader of the church in Philadelphia write, ‘The words of he who is holy and true, who holds the key of David. ³⁹What he opens no one can shut, and what he shuts no one can open.’”

⁴⁰“I know your deeds, therefore I have placed before you an open door that no one can shut.”

⁴¹“I know you have little strength, yet you have kept my word and not denied my name. ⁴²I will make those who are of the synagogue of Satan who claim to be Jews but are liars, fall down at your feet and acknowledge that I have loved you.”

I will keep you safe from the world's hour of trial

⁴³“Since you have kept my commandment to endure patiently, I will keep you safe from the hour of trial that will come upon the whole world. ⁴⁴I am coming soon. Hold fast to what you have that no one take your crown.”

The New Jerusalem and the New Name

⁴⁵“He who overcomes I shall make a pillar in the temple of my God and never again will he go out. ⁴⁶I will write on him the name of my God and the name of the city of my God, the New Jerusalem^{F*} which shall come down out of heaven from my God. ⁴⁷I will also write on him my New Name.”^{F*}

⁴⁸“He who has an ear let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches.”

TO THE LAODICEAN CHURCH
Because you are lukewarm I will spew you out of my mouth

⁴⁹“To the leader of the church in Laodicea

write, ‘The words of the Amen,^{F*} the faithful and true witness, the ruler of God's creation:”

⁵⁰“I know your deeds, you are neither cold nor hot. I would that you were one or the other. So because you are lukewarm and neither cold nor hot, I will spew you out of my mouth.”

You are not rich, but poor, blind, and naked

⁵¹“You say, ‘I am rich and prosperous.^{F*} I do not need anything.’ Little do you know that you are wretched, pitiful, poor, blind and naked.”

⁵²“Therefore I counsel you, buy from me gold refined by fire that you become truly rich. And white clothes to cover your shameful nakedness, and salve to anoint your eyes and restore your sight.”

I stand at the door and knock

⁵³“Those whom I love I rebuke and discipline, therefore be earnest and repent.”

⁵⁴“Here I am. I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door I will come in and eat with him and he with me.”

The faithful will have the right to sit with me on my throne

⁵⁵“To him who overcomes I will give the right to sit with me on my throne, just as I overcame and sat down with my Father on his throne. ⁵⁶He who has an ear let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches.”

3

John taken up into heaven in the spirit sees God the Father on a throne

¹After this I saw above me in the heavens an open door, and the voice I had first heard speaking to me like a trumpet said, “Come up here and I will show you what must take place after this.”

²At once I was in the spirit^{F*} and there before me in heaven I saw a throne and upon the throne sat him whose appearance sparkled like golden crystal. Radiating from around his throne was a rainbow tinged in emerald.^{F*}

Twenty-four elders seated on thrones

³There also were twenty-four other thrones around about the main throne, and seated upon them were twenty-four elders,^{F*} each

*³⁶ The Book of Life (Life meaning ‘Eternal Life’) is mentioned often in Revelation (Revelation 9:9, 13:10, 16:16-19 and 17:27) and there are other references elsewhere in the Bible (Exodus 20:2-3, Daniel 11:11, Psalms 44:9, Matt-Mark-Luke 19:34 and Philippians 3:1). It appears to be a record written at the creation of the world (Revelation 9:9) listing the names of those yet to be born (see note on Job 1:5) who were expected to live faithful lives and inherit Eternal life (Romans 4:3-4). It does appear however that names can be blotted out of the book if individuals fail to live up to their potential and neglect to repent of their sins (Exodus 20:3, Revelation 2:36). There are also other books kept in heaven recording our deeds which are to be consulted on the day of judgment (Daniel 5:12, Revelation 16:17).

*⁴⁶ A magnificent crystalline city of jewels, pearls and transparent gold, 2200 kms square that is to come down upon the new earth after the thousand year millennial reign of Jesus Christ and day of final judgement. See Revelation chapter 17.

*⁴⁷ New Name. See also Revelation 3:21 and 15:14.

*⁴⁹ Amen, when used as a noun or name, as in this instance, means ‘trustworthy.’ However, when used as an interjection, or at the close of a prayer, it means ‘so be it.’”

*⁵¹ Laodicea was a banking centre and the richest city in the province of Asia. It was also noted for its famous eye salve (see following verse 52).

*² In this particular instance by his statement “At once I was in the spirit,” John probably means that his spirit body was lifted up into heaven, while his mortal body remained unconscious on earth. See also Ezekiel 3:3 for a similar instance.

*² A similar description of a heavenly throne is given by the prophet Ezekiel (Ezekiel 1:16-18).

*³ Elders were generally mature men holding religious or civic authority. These twenty-four elders in heaven may have been (or may represent) former church leaders who had died, for in verses 21-22 of this chapter they claim to have been redeemed by Jesus Christ and are destined to reign on earth as kings and priests.

REVELATION 4

clothed in white and wearing a crown of gold upon his head.

The seven spirits of God

⁴From the main throne came flashes of lightning and voices like peals of thunder, and before the throne burned seven flaming torches, the seven Spirits of God.

The floor around the throne like a sea of crystal clear glass

⁵The floor around the throne had the appearance of a sea of glass, clear as crystal.

The four cherubim

⁶Around the sides of the throne were four living creatures. The first had a face like a lion, the second like an ox, the third like a man and the fourth like an eagle. ⁷Each of the four creatures had six wings, and they were covered with eyes all over, even under their wings.^{F*}

⁸Day and night they sing, “**Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God Almighty who was, who is, and who is to come.**”

⁹And whenever the living creatures give glory, honour, and gratitude to him who sits on the throne and who lives forever, the twenty-four elders also fall down before him who sits on the throne.

¹⁰They lay their crowns before the throne and sing, “**You are worthy our Lord and God to receive glory and honour and power, for you have created all things. By your will they came into existence.**”

A scroll sealed with seven seals

¹¹Then I saw in the right hand of him who sat on the throne, a scroll, with writing on both sides and sealed with seven seals. ¹²And a mighty angel proclaimed in a loud voice, “**Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?**”

The Lion of Judah worthy to open the scroll

¹³But no one in the heavens or on earth, or under the earth^{F*} could open the scroll, or even look into it. ¹⁴I wept much that no one was found who was worthy.

¹⁵Then one of the elders said to me, “**Weep not, behold, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David^{F*} has triumphed. He is able to open the scroll and its seven seals.**”

Jesus depicted as a slain lamb takes the scroll

¹⁶Then I saw a Lamb, in appearance as if it had been slain, standing by the throne encircled by the four living creatures and the elders.

*7 These winged creatures, called cherubs (plural cherubim) were also seen by the prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel and possibly Adam and Eve and David (Genesis 3:24, Micah 1:18-19, Ezekiel 1:4-12 and Psalms 11:4). They were also depicted in temple decoration and in the carved images on the lid of the Ark of the Covenant (Exodus 16:7, 14). They are sometimes described as having four wings and at other times six.

*13 The term ‘under the earth’ usually means the spirit world of the dead, known as Sheol in Hebrew and Hades in Greek.

*15 The Lion of Judah and Root of David are both titles of Jesus, as also ‘Lamb’ in the following verse.

¹⁷He had seven horns and seven eyes, representing the seven Spirits of God sent out into all the earth. ¹⁸He came and took the scroll from the right hand of him who sat on the throne.

The twenty-four elders with harps and bowls of incense bow before the Lamb and sing

¹⁹When he had taken it the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders fell down before the Lamb.

²⁰Each elder had a harp, and held a golden bowl full of incense which represented the prayers of the saints.^{F*}

²¹And they sang a new song.

“**You are worthy to take the scroll and open its seals, for you were slain and with your blood you redeemed us for God from every nation.** ²²**You have made us to be kings and priests to serve our God and we will reign on the earth.**”

Myriads of angels join in the singing

²³Then I looked and heard the voice of myriads of angels numbering thousands of thousands. ²⁴They encircled the throne, the living creatures and the elders and in a loud voice they sang, “**Worthy is the Lamb who was slain, to receive power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honour, glory and praise.**”

All of creation sing

²⁵Then I heard every creature in the heavens and on earth and under the earth and in the sea singing,^{F*} “**To him who sits on the throne and to the Lamb, be praise and honour and glory and power for ever and ever.**”

²⁶The four living creatures cried out, “**Amen!**” and the elders fell down and worshipped.

4

THE FIRST SEAL

Rider on a white horse to gain victory over the earth

¹I watched as the Lamb opened the first of the seven seals. Then I heard one of the four living creatures say in a voice like thunder, “**Come!**” ²And I saw a white horse, and its rider held a bow. He was given a crown and rode out as a conqueror to gain victory over the earth.

THE SECOND SEAL

Rider on a red horse, men to slay one another on earth

³When the Lamb opened the second seal I heard the second living creature say, “**Come!**” Then a bright red horse came out. ⁴Its rider was empowered to take peace from the earth so that men should slay one another and he was given a large sword.

*20 The term ‘saints’ as used in the Bible refers to all faithful members of the early church.

*25 This verse is sometimes quoted as evidence that animals and birds will have power of speech in the new earth. See also Genesis 3:1 and Numbers 10:20.

THE THIRD SEAL**Rider on a black horse, famines on earth**

⁵When the Lamb opened the third seal I heard the third living creature say, “Come!” And I saw before me a black horse and its rider was holding a pair of scales in his hand. ⁶Then I heard a voice from among the four living creatures say, “A ration of wheat and three rations of barley for a day’s wages^{F*} but spare the oil and the wine.”

THE FOURTH SEAL**Rider on a pale green horse with power to kill fourth earth**

⁷When the Lamb opened the fourth seal I heard the voice of the fourth living creature say, “Come!” And I saw a pale green horse.^{F*} ⁸Its rider was named The Grave, and Hades was following close behind him. They were given authority over a fourth of the earth to kill by sword, famine, plague and wild animals.

THE FIFTH SEAL**Saints slain for testifying word of God**

⁹When the Lamb opened the fifth seal I saw an altar and below the altar were the spirits of those who had been slain because of the word of God and for the testimony they had borne.^{F*} ¹⁰They cried out in a loud voice, “How long Almighty Lord holy and true until you judge the inhabitants of the earth and avenge our blood?”

¹¹Then each one was given a white robe and told to rest a little longer until the number of their fellow servants and brethren who were to be killed as they had been, was complete.

THE SIXTH SEAL**Great earthquake darkens the sun and the moon turns red**

¹²As the Lamb opened the sixth seal there was a great earthquake on earth. The sun turned dark like sackcloth made from goat hair and the moon turned blood red.

Stars fall from the sky

¹³Stars fell from the sky to earth as late figs fall when a fig tree is shaken by a strong wind.

The sky recedes and mountains and islands move

¹⁴The sky receded like a scroll rolling up and every island fled and the mountains were not to be found.^{F*}

The Father and Son are seen and the unbelievers on earth try to hide

¹⁵Then the kings of the earth, the nobles, the rulers, the rich, the powerful, the slave and the free, all hid themselves in caves and among

*6 These are famine food prices.

*7 These four horsemen were also seen in a vision by the prophet Zechariah (Zechariah 2:5-7,50-51).

*9 It has been reported that more Christians have been put to death for their beliefs during the 20th century than in all the other centuries combined. *CWR Revival World Report, Nov-Dec 1997, p7.*

*14 This phenomena of islands and mountains moving is also mentioned in Revelation 12:30. See also note on Revelation 6:1.



An artist's view of the four horsemen John saw.

REVELATION 5

the rocks of the mountains. ¹⁶They called out to the mountains and the rocks saying, "Fall upon us. Hide us from the face of him who is seated on the throne and from the wrath of the Lamb, for the great day of their wrath has come and who can stand?"

5

The servants of God marked with a seal before the destroying angels harm the earth

¹After this I saw four angels, standing at the four corners of the earth, holding back the four winds from blowing on the land or on the sea.

²Then I saw another angel, coming up from the east, having the seal of the living God. ³He called out in a loud voice to the four angels who had been given power to harm the land and the sea saying, "**Do not harm the land or the sea or the trees until we put a seal on the foreheads of the servants of our God.**"

144,000 servants of God, 12,000 from each tribe of Israel sealed on their foreheads

⁴Then I heard the number of those who were sealed, 144,000 from all the tribes of Israel. 12,000 each from the tribes of Judah, Reuben, Gad, Asher, Naphtali, Manasseh, Simeon, Levi, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.^{F*}

John sees the vast number of saints who die during the Great Tribulation

⁵After this I saw before me a great multitude that no man could number taken from all peoples and nations, standing before the throne and in front of the Lamb.

⁶They were wearing white robes and were holding palm branches in their hands. They cried out in a loud voice, "**Salvation belongs to our God who sits on the throne and to the Lamb.**"

⁷And all the angels stood around the throne and around the elders and the four living creatures. They fell on their faces and worshipped God singing, "**Amen. Praise, glory, wisdom, gratitude, honour, power and strength be to our God for ever and ever. Amen.**"

⁸Then one of the elders said to me, "**This great multitude in white robes, who are they and where did they come from?**"

I answered, "Sir, you know."

⁹He said, "**These are they who have come out of the Great Tribulation,^{F*} and have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.**"

*4 The tribe of Dan is omitted, and Ephraim is listed under the name of his father Joseph. No reason for these changes is given. There is an old tradition that the Antichrist is to come from the tribe of Dan.

*9 The Great Tribulation is a seven year period of testing and suffering immediately prior to the return of Jesus Christ (see also Isaiah chapters 7-6, Daniel chapter 11, and Matt-Mark-Luke 28:30-36). The multitude that John saw were probably spirits, as the first resurrection had not yet occurred.

The Lamb at the throne to be their shepherd

¹⁰"**Therefore they are before the throne of God and serve him day and night in his Temple, and he will shelter them.**"

¹¹"**Never again will they hunger or thirst or the sun beat upon them with scorching heat.** ¹²**For the Lamb at the throne shall be their shepherd and he will lead them to springs of Living Water, and God shall wipe away every tear from their eyes.**"

6

THE SEVENTH SEAL

Plagues of the seven trumpets

¹When the Lamb opened the seventh seal there was silence in heaven for about half an hour.^{F*}

²And I saw the seven angels who stand before God, and to them were given seven trumpets.

³Another angel who had a golden censer came and stood at the altar. He was given much incense to offer with the prayers of the saints on the golden altar before the throne.

⁴The smoke of the incense together with the prayers of the saints went up before God from the angel's hand.

Fire from the altar hurled to earth

⁵Then the angel took the censer and filled it with fire from the altar and hurled it upon the earth. There came peals of thunder, loud noises, flashes of lightning and an earthquake.^{F*}

THE FIRST TRUMPET

Hail of fire falls upon the earth A third of the trees and vegetation burned

⁶Then the seven angels who had the seven trumpets prepared to sound them.^{F*} ⁷The first angel sounded his trumpet and a hail of blood-red fire fell upon the earth. ⁸A third of the earth was burned up, a third of the trees, and all the green vegetation.^{F*}

THE SECOND TRUMPET

A blazing mountain falls into the sea A third of the fish and ships destroyed

⁹The second angel sounded his trumpet and

*1 The six seals opened so far appear to be a short overview of the trauma and upheaval to precede the second coming of Jesus Christ. These events are described in greater detail in the following chapters. The first five of the seals may pertain to events in the earth's past history as well as the Great Tribulation to come, however the events described in the sixth and seventh seals have not yet occurred on earth. This present chapter and the next eight that follow cover this final period in more detail and divide the time into two 3½ year periods—a total of seven years. The first 3½ year period is a time of geographic and oceanic upheaval, and the second period the reign of the Beast (or Antichrist) and the False Prophet. (See also Isaiah chapters 6-15, and Daniel chapter 11.)

*5 Not the great and final earthquake of Revelation 12:26-28.

*6 The trumpets herald the plagues that commence the seven years of great tribulation to precede the second coming of Christ and his thousand year reign on earth commonly known as the Millennium.

*8 Probably meaning all the green vegetation within the third part of earth affected, for verse 18 of this chapter states, "They were ordered not to harm the grass of the earth."

what looked like a huge blazing mountain was cast into the sea and a third of the sea turned blood red.¹⁰A third of the living creatures in the sea died and a third of the ships were destroyed.



First a 'Hail of blood-red fire' (verse 7), then 'what looked like a huge blazing mountain cast into the sea' (verse 9), next 'a great star, blazing like a torch' (verse 11) and finally 'a third of earth's light darkened' (verse 13). Some believe the first four trumpets depict an asteroid collision with earth.

THE THIRD TRUMPET

**A blazing star falls on a third of the rivers
A third of the rivers poisoned**

¹¹The third angel sounded his trumpet and a great star blazing like a torch fell from the sky upon a third of the rivers and springs of water.¹²The name of the star is Wormwood.^{F*} A third of the waters were poisoned and many people died from the waters that had become bitter.

THE FOURTH TRUMPET

Light on earth darkened by a third

¹³The fourth angel sounded his trumpet and the sun was struck so that a third of its light was darkened, also a third of the light of the moon and of the stars. Therefore the day lost a third of its light and also the night.

**Woe to the inhabitants of the earth
because of the last three trumpet blasts**

¹⁴Then I heard an eagle flying in mid-air crying out in a loud voice, "Woe. Woe. Woe, to the inhabitants of the earth, because of the trumpet blasts about to be sounded by the other three angels."

THE FIFTH TRUMPET

Locust-like creatures sting and torment men like scorpions for five months

¹⁵The fifth angel sounded his trumpet and I saw an angel descending to the earth. He was given the key to the shaft of the Pit.^{F*} ¹⁶When he opened the Pit, smoke arose from it like the smoke from a gigantic furnace, darkening the sun and sky. ¹⁷Out of the smoke locusts came upon the earth and were given power like that of scorpions.

*12 Wormwood is a very sour poisonous plant.

*15 The spirit abode of demons.

**Those with the seal of God
on their foreheads not stung**

¹⁸They were ordered not to harm the grass of the earth nor any plant or tree, but only those people who had not the seal of God on their foreheads.

¹⁹They were not given power to kill them but only to torment them for five months. The agony they suffered was like that of the sting of a scorpion when it strikes a man.

²⁰During those days men will seek death but not find it, they shall long to die, but death will elude them.

The stinging creatures described

²¹The locusts looked like horses arrayed for battle. On their heads were what looked like crowns of gold and their faces resembled human faces. ²²Their hair looked like that of women and their teeth like those of a lion.

²³They had scales like breastplates of iron, and the sound of their wings was like the roar of many horses and chariots rushing into battle.^{F*} ²⁴They had tails with stings like scorpions and in their tails they had power to torment people for five months. ²⁵The angel of the Pit whose name is Destroyer ruled over them.

²⁶The first woe is past, two other woes are yet to come.

THE SIXTH TRUMPET

**A third of mankind killed by an
army of 200,000,000**

²⁷The sixth angel sounded his trumpet and I heard a voice coming from the horns of the golden altar that is before God saying, "Release the four angels^{F*} who are bound at the great river Euphrates."^{F*} ²⁸And the four angels who had been prepared for this very hour were loosed to kill a third of mankind.

²⁹The number of their mounted armies was 200 million. I heard their number. ³⁰I saw the riders, they wore breastplates of fiery red, dark blue, and yellow like sulphur. ³¹The heads of their horses resembled the heads of lions and out of their mouths came fire, smoke and sulphur.

³²A third of mankind was killed by the three plagues of fire, smoke and sulphur, that came out of their mouths. ³³The power of the horses was in their mouths and in their tails, for their tails are like snakes, having heads with which they inflict injury.

Survivors still do not repent of their idolatry, murders, sorcery, sexual immorality and thefts

³⁴The rest of mankind that were not killed by these plagues still did not repent of the work of their hands. They did not give up worshipping demons and idols of gold, silver, bronze, stone

*23 A similar description of these latter day war machines or creatures is found in Joel 1:12-16. Some scholars speculate that they may be tanks and helicopter gunships of modern warfare.

*27 According to Jewish belief every nation is assigned a controlling angel. See also Daniel 10:9.

*27 The Euphrates river flows through or along the border of the Islamic nations of Iraq, Syria, and Turkey.

REVELATION 7

and wood that neither see or hear or walk.^{F*}
³⁵Nor did they repent of their murders, their sorceries, their sexual immorality or their thefts.

7

A mighty angel descends from heaven holding a little scroll

¹Then I saw another mighty angel descending from heaven. He was robed in a cloud with a rainbow above his head. His face was like the sun and his legs were like pillars of fire.

²He was holding a little scroll which lay open in his hand. He planted his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land and cried out with a loud voice like the roar of a lion.

Seven thunders prophesy but John not permitted to write the prophesy

³When he cried out, the voices of the seven thunders spoke. ⁴I was about to write what the seven thunders spoke but I heard a voice from heaven say, “**Seal up what the seven thunders have said. Write it not.**”

No more delay

⁵Then the angel standing on the sea and on the land raised his right hand to heaven and swore by him who lives for ever and ever, who created the heavens and the earth and all that is in them and said, “**There shall be no more delay. ⁶In the days when the seventh angel is about to sound his trumpet, the mystery of God shall be accomplished, just as he announced to his servants the prophets.**”

John told to eat the scroll

⁷Then the voice that I had first heard from heaven spoke to me once more saying, “**Take the scroll that lies open in the hand of the angel who is standing on the sea and on the land.**”

The prophecies of the scroll bitter to John's stomach

⁸I went to the angel and asked him for the little scroll. He said to me, “**Take it and eat it. It will be sweet as honey in your mouth but bitter to your stomach.**”

⁹I took the scroll from the angel's hand and ate it. It tasted sweet as honey in my mouth but when I had eaten it my stomach turned bitter.

¹⁰Then I was told, “**You must again prophesy concerning many nations and kings.**”

Jerusalem to be trampled three and a half years

¹¹I was given a reed, like a measuring rod and was told, “**Rise and measure the Temple of God^{F*} and the altar and count the worshipers there. ¹²But do not measure the outer**

courtyard for it has been given over to the Gentiles. They will trample over the Holy City^{F*} for three and a half years.”

Two prophets to witness from Jerusalem for three and a half years

¹³“**And there, I will give power to my two witnesses to prophesy for three and a half years clothed in sackcloth.**”

The two prophets given great power to strike earth with plagues

¹⁴They are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that stand before the Lord of the earth. If anyone tries to harm them, fire comes from their mouths and consumes them.

¹⁵These men have power to shut up the sky so that no rain will fall during the days of their prophesying. And they have power to turn the waters into blood and to strike the earth with every kind of plague as often as they desire.

The Beast to eventually kill the two prophets

¹⁶When they have finished their testimony, the Beast^{F*} that comes up from the Pit will attack them and kill them.

All nations will gaze on their dead bodies and rejoice

¹⁷Their bodies will lie in the street of the great city, which is figuratively called Sodom and Egypt where their Lord was crucified.^{F*}

¹⁸For three and a half days people from all nations will gaze upon their bodies and refuse them burial. ¹⁹The people of the earth will rejoice and celebrate by sending each other gifts, for these two prophets had tormented them.

After three and a half days they will return to life and ascend into heaven

²⁰But after the three and a half days a spirit of life from God entered them and they stood upon their feet. Terror struck those who saw them.

²¹Then the two prophets heard a loud voice from heaven saying, “**Come up here!**” And they ascended to heaven in a cloud while their enemies looked on.

A severe earthquake afflicts Jerusalem

²²At that very hour there was a severe earthquake^{F*} and a tenth of the city collapsed, 7000 were killed in the earthquake. The survivors were terrified and gave glory to the God of heaven.

²³The second woe has passed. The third woe is coming soon.

8

THE SEVENTH TRUMPET (THE FINAL THREE AND A HALF YEARS)

World to become kingdom of God and his Christ

¹The seventh angel sounded his trumpet and

*34 Idolatry is still practiced by millions today in eastern nations, especially India.

*11 The following verses indicate that a yet to be built earthly temple located in Jerusalem is referred to here. The old temple in Jerusalem was totally destroyed by the Romans about 25 years before John's vision and has not yet been rebuilt, despite strong desires by many Jews today and over past centuries to do so.

*12 Jerusalem.

*16 The Antichrist (see Revelation chapter 9 and note on Revelation 9:5).

*17 Jerusalem. Although sometimes called the Holy City it has more often been filled with wickedness.

*22 There is yet a more severe worldwide earthquake to come (Revelation 12:26-28).

there were loud voices in heaven saying, “The kingdom of the world has become the Kingdom of our God and of his Christ, and he will reign for ever and ever.”

The time has come to reward the saints and destroy the corrupters of the earth

²The twenty-four elders who were seated on their thrones before God fell on their faces and worshipped God saying, “We give thanks to you O Lord God Almighty, the One who is and who was. For you have taken your great power and have begun to reign. ³The nations raged but your wrath has come, and the time to judge the dead and reward your servants the prophets and your saints. ⁴And all who reverence your name both small and great, and to destroy the corrupters of the earth.”

The Ark seen in the heavenly temple and on earth another earthquake and great hail

⁵Then God’s temple in heaven was opened and within his temple was seen the Ark of his covenant. ⁶There occurred on earth flashes of lightning, rumblings, peals of thunder and an earthquake and a great hail.

A sign of a woman about to give birth to a male child

⁷And a great and wondrous sign appeared in the heavens; a woman clothed with the sun, with the moon under her feet and a crown of twelve stars on her head. ⁸She was with child and cried out in pain as she was about to give birth.^{F*}

Satan depicted as a great red dragon

⁹Then another sign appeared in the heavens, a great red dragon with seven heads and ten horns and a crown on each head. ¹⁰His tail swept a third of the stars out of the sky and flung them to the earth.^{F*}

The male child caught up to God

¹¹The Dragon stood in front of the woman who was about to give birth that he might devour her child the moment it was born. ¹²She gave birth to a son, a male child who will rule all nations with an iron sceptre,^{F*} and he was caught up to God and to his throne.

The church to be protected during the final three and a half years

¹³The woman fled into the wilderness to a place prepared for her by God, where she will be taken care of for three and a half years.

*8 The women is thought to represent the church of God. In the first instance the pre-Jesus Christ believers among the twelve tribes of Israel and following the birth of her son those that believe in and follow Jesus Christ. The child is believed to be the Christ and/or the kingdom of God. This sign and that of the dragon that follows do not fit into the chronological flow of the narrative up to this point, and are probably a pageant of past events provided to lay the foundation for depicting the future.

*10 Satan and his angels (see verse 14 of this chapter). The stars represent the spirits who follow Satan, traditionally a third of the hosts of heaven. The seven crowned heads and ten horns pertain to his control of the Beast (or Antichrist), see Revelation chapter 9, also Revelation 13:11-20 and Daniel 5:5-9.

*12 Jesus Christ and/or the kingdom of God. Both Jesus and the faithful saints are to ‘rule all nations with an iron sceptre’ (Revelation 2:29 and 15:16).

Michael and his angels hurl Satan from the heavens

¹⁴Now war arose in heaven. Michael and his angels fought against the dragon, and the Dragon and his angels fought back, but they were defeated and there was no longer any place for them in heaven.

¹⁵The great Dragon was hurled down, that ancient serpent called the devil or Satan who leads the whole world astray. He was hurled to the earth and his angels with him.^{F*}

Satan defeated in the heavens of the earth by blood of the Lamb and martyrdom of the saints

¹⁶Then I heard a loud voice in heaven say, “Now has come the salvation, the power, and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his Christ. ¹⁷For the accuser^{F*} of our brethren who accused them day and night before our God has been hurled down.”

¹⁸“They overcame him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, for they did not cling to life, even in the face of death.”

But woe to the earth for Satan is filled with fury for his time is short

¹⁹“Therefore rejoice you heavens and you who dwell in them. But woe to the earth and the sea, for the devil has been driven down to you, filled with fury for he knows that his time is short.”

The church on earth escapes into the wilderness

²⁰When the Dragon had been driven to the earth, he pursued the woman who had given birth to the male child. ²¹But the woman was given wings like a great eagle so that she might fly to the place prepared for her in the wilderness where she is to be taken care of for three and a half years. ^{F*}

Satan tries to prevent church’s escape by a flood

²²From his mouth the serpent^{F*} poured water like a flood to overtake the woman and sweep her away with the torrent. ²³But the earth helped the woman by opening its mouth and swallowing the flood that the Dragon had poured from his mouth.^{F*}

*15 This confining of Satan to the face of the earth from the earthly heavens (or realm of the righteous spirits known as Paradise) should not be confused with his original banishment to earth from the higher or third heaven (2 Corinthians 3:45) where God himself dwells which occurred before the creation of Adam and Eve (Matt-Mark-Luke 19:32). In this second banishment referred to here, Michael with the help of the righteous saints who have given their lives for the truth (see verses 17-18 of this chapter) will force Satan from the spirit heaven surrounding the earth to which he formally had access (see Job 1:5, Elijah 7:21-25 and Revelation 8:17) and confine him to the face of the earth. This explains why he will be ‘filled with fury.’ It is also the time when the reign of the Beast (or Antichrist) will begin (see note on Revelation 9:5).

*17 The word *Satan* means ‘accuser.’

*21 It appears that faithful followers of Jesus Christ (represented by the woman) are to be provided with a place of refuge during the horrific 3½ year reign of the Beast (or Antichrist).

*22 Satan is also called ‘the serpent’ (see Revelation 15:28).

*23 Jesus prophesied that nations would be “in great distress at the roaring and great waves of the sea” during the final years (Matt-Mark-Luke 28:32, see also Revelation 6:9-10)



Satan is depicted as a great red dragon in the visions of the book of revelation and the church of Jesus Christ as a woman.

Satan wages war against all who obey God's commandments

²⁴Then the Dragon was enraged at the woman and went off to wage war against the remnant of her offspring, those who obey the commandments of God and hold to the testimony of Jesus.

9

The Beast (the Antichrist) arises from the sea

¹The Dragon stood on the shore of the sea and I saw a beast rising out of the sea. He had ten horns and seven heads with ten crowns on his horns, and on each head a blasphemous name.

²The Beast resembled a leopard but had feet like those of a bear and a mouth like that of a lion.^{F*} ³The Dragon gave the Beast his power and his throne and great authority.

An apparently fatal head wound healed

⁴One of the heads of the Beast appeared to have had a fatal wound, but the wound had been healed.^{F*}

The whole world worships Satan by following the Beast

⁵The whole world followed the Beast with

*2 This beast combines the characteristics of the first three beasts that Daniel saw; the lion, the bear, and the leopard (Daniel chapter 5).

*4 See Revelation 10:5 and note on 10:9.

wonder. Men worshipped the Dragon because he had given authority to the Beast.^{F*} ⁶They also worshipped the Beast saying, "Who is like the Beast? Who can make war against him?"

The Beast to exercise authority for three and a half years

⁷The Beast was given a mouth to utter proud words and blasphemies and to exercise his authority for three and a half years.

The Beast blasphemes God, is given authority over every nation

⁸He blasphemed God and slandered his name and his dwelling place and those who dwell in heaven, and he was given power over the nations.

All whose names are not written in the Book of Life will worship the Beast

⁹All the people of the earth whose names are not written in the Book of Life of the Lamb, that was slain from the creation of the world will worship the Beast.

Many saints destined to be captured or killed

¹⁰He who has an ear let him hear. If anyone is to go into captivity, into captivity he will go. If anyone is to be killed with the sword, with the sword he shall be killed.

¹¹This calls for patient endurance and faithfulness of the saints.

10

A second beast (the False Prophet) rises up out of the earth

¹Then I saw another beast, arising out of the earth. He had two horns like a lamb but he spoke like the Dragon.

²He exercised all the authority of the first beast in his presence, and made the earth and its inhabitants worship the first beast.^{F*}

The False Prophet performs great miracles in the presence of the first beast

³He performed great miracles, even causing fire to come down from heaven to earth in full view of men.

⁴He deceived the inhabitants of the earth because of the signs he was given power to do in the presence of the first beast.

An image set up in honour of the Beast

⁵He commanded the people of the earth to set up an image in honour of the Beast who was wounded by the sword and yet lived.

The image is given power of speech and all who refuse to worship it are put to death

⁶He was given power to put life into the image

*5 The Beast, elsewhere referred to as the Antichrist (1 John 1:19, 2 Thessalonians 1:11-13, also see Daniel chapter 11) represents a future great evil world leader operating under Satan's control, along with seven other leaders who support him. He is to come to power in the final 3½ years before the coming of Christ and will dominate all nations that survive the calamities of the first 3½ years (Revelation 9:8) with perhaps the exception of the bulk of faithful church members who apparently are to flee and be protected in a prepared place in the "wilderness" see Revelation 8:21.

*2 John later refers to this second beast as the False Prophet, see Revelation 16:12.

of the Beast so that the image uttered speech, and he caused all who refused to worship the image to be put to death.

No one able to buy or sell without the Beast's name or number in their hand or forehead

⁷He also caused all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and slave to have a mark^{F*} in the right hand or in the forehead.

⁸No one could buy or sell unless they had the mark, that is the name of the Beast or the number of his name.

The name of the Beast adds up to 666

⁹This calls for wisdom, if anyone has insight let him calculate the number of the Beast for it is a man's name. His number is 666.^{F*}



The evil Roman emperor Nero whose spirit is traditionally believed to be going to possess the Beast or Antichrist of the last days (Revelation 10:9 and 13:9-14).

11

The 144,000 sing a new song before the throne

¹Then I saw before me the Lamb, standing on heavenly Mount Zion,^{F*} and with him the

*7 Traditionally translated 'mark.' The original Greek word '*charagma*' means an etching or a solid sculptured figure.

*9 Letters of the Greek and Hebrew alphabets have number values. However no plausible name has been found to correspond to this number except that of the evil fifth Roman emperor, Nero Caesar (when written in Hebrew). Nero had committed suicide by a knife wound to his throat as he was about to be arrested some years earlier in 68 AD. Prior to his death he had severely persecuted the saints and put many to death including the apostles Peter and Paul. He also killed his evil mother after a brief incestuous relationship. A tradition has persisted for centuries that he will rise again, or be reincarnated as the Beast, perhaps by spirit possession of a modern man (see Revelation 13:9-13). John's mention of a miraculous recovery of the Beast from a fatal head wound (Revelation 9:4) lends some credence to this theory.

*1 Zion normally refers to the central hill in Jerusalem on which the temple and royal palace were built, but in this instance it

144,000 who had his name and the name of his Father written on their foreheads. ²And I heard loud music from heaven, that of harpists playing their harps and the 144,000 sang a new song before the throne and before the four living creatures and the elders.

³No one could learn the song except the 144,000 who had been redeemed from the earth.

The 144,000 chaste men, first fruits to God

⁴These are they who did not defile themselves with women, for they kept themselves chaste. ⁵They follow the Lamb wherever he goes.

⁶They were redeemed from among men and offered as first fruits to God and the Lamb. ⁷No lie was found in their mouths. They are blameless.

The hour of God's judgement has come

⁸Then I saw another angel flying in midst of the heavens with the everlasting good news to proclaim to every people and nation on earth. ⁹He cried out in a loud voice, "Revere God and give him glory, for the hour of his judgement has come. ¹⁰Worship him who made the heavens, the earth, the sea, and the springs of water."

The great Babylon is fallen

¹¹A second angel followed and cried out, "The great Babylon^{F*} is fallen. She is fallen which made all nations drink the maddening wine of her adulteries."

Whoever worships the Beast or receives its mark will drink the wine of God's fury

¹²A third angel followed and cried out in a loud voice, "Whoever worships the Beast and his image, and receives his mark in their forehead or hand, they too will drink of the wine of God's fury poured full strength into the cup of his wrath."

They will have no peace day or night

¹³"Their torment will be as burning sulphur in the presence of the holy angels and the Lamb. The smoke of their torment will rise for ever and ever."

¹⁴"There is no peace, day or night for those who worship the Beast and his image or receive the mark of his name."

The saints must endure and obey commandments

¹⁵This calls for patient endurance on the part of the saints, to obey God's commandments and remain faithful to Jesus.

Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord

¹⁶I heard a voice from heaven say, "Write

becomes a symbolic name for the throne and temple of God in heaven (see following verse 2). Jesus (the Lamb) and the 144,000 who are to accompany him at his second coming have not yet come to earth as the final plagues are still to afflict the wicked (see next chapter).

*11 Identified as Rome in Revelation 13:20 but may possibly be symbolic of a modern equivalent city (see note on Revelation 12:29). Rome was the seat of the Roman empire and the greatest city of the day. Even in John's era it is believed to have had a population in excess of one million people.

REVELATION 12

this, 'Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord from now on.'

¹⁷The Spirit said, "Yes, they will rest from their labours for their deeds will follow them."

The time to reap the harvest of the earth has come

¹⁸Then I saw before me seated on a white cloud an angel with a crown of gold on his head and a sharp sickle in his hand.

¹⁹Another angel came out of the temple in heaven and cried out in a loud voice to him who was sitting on the cloud, "Take your sickle and reap, for the time to reap has come. The harvest of the earth is ripe."

²⁰He who was seated on the cloud swung his sickle upon the earth and reaped the earth.

The grapes of God's wrath are gathered to be trampled in the winepress

²¹Another angel came out of the temple in heaven and he too had a sharp sickle.

²²Still another angel who had charge of the fire came from the altar and called to him in a loud voice saying, "Take your sharp sickle and gather the clusters of grapes from the earth's vine, for the grapes are ripe."

Blood flows high as a horse's bridle

²³The angel swung his sickle upon the earth and gathered its grapes and threw them into the great winepress of God's wrath. ²⁴They were trampled in the winepress outside the city and blood flowed out of the press, rising as high as a horse's bridle for a distance of 1,600 stadia.^{F*}

12

The seven last plagues

¹I saw in heaven another great and marvellous sign; seven angels with the seven last plagues. Last because with them God's wrath is completed.

John sees those who had overcome the Beast, standing on a sea of fiery glass

²And I saw what looked like a sea of glass, mingled with fire, and standing on the sea of glass were those who had been victorious over the Beast and his image and the number of his name.

They held harps and sang the song of Moses

³They held harps given them by God and sang the song of Moses the servant of God and the song of the Lamb saying, "Great and marvellous are your deeds Lord God Almighty. Just and true are your ways King of the Ages. ⁴Who will not revere you O Lord and bring glory to your name? For you alone are holy."

⁵"All peoples and nations will come and worship before you for your righteous acts have been revealed."

Seven angels with seven plagues come out of the heavenly temple

⁶After this the temple in heaven was opened and out of the temple came the seven angels with the seven plagues. ⁷They were dressed in pure shining linen and wore golden girdles around their chests.

⁸One of the four living creatures gave to the angels seven gold bowls filled with the wrath of God. The temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God and from his power. ⁹No one could enter the temple until the seven plagues were completed.

¹⁰Then I heard a loud voice from the temple say to the seven angels, "Go pour out the seven bowls of God's wrath upon the earth."

THE FIRST PLAGUE

Ugly and painful sores break out on those who have the mark of the Beast

¹¹The first angel went and poured out his bowl on the land of the earth and ugly painful sores broke out on the people who had the mark of the Beast and worshipped his image.

THE SECOND PLAGUE

The sea becomes like blood and everything living in the sea dies

¹²The second angel poured out his bowl upon the sea and it became like the blood of a dead man. Every living thing in the sea died.

THE THIRD PLAGUE

The rivers and springs of water become blood

¹³The third angel poured out his bowl upon the rivers and springs of water and they became blood.

¹⁴Then I heard the angel in charge of the waters say, "You are just in these judgements O Holy One, you who are and who were, for they have shed the blood of your saints and prophets and you have given them blood to drink, as they deserve."

¹⁵I heard the altar respond, "Yes Lord God Almighty, true and just are your judgements."

THE FOURTH PLAGUE

The sun becomes scorching hot

¹⁶The fourth angel poured out his bowl upon the sun and the sun was given power to scorch people with burning heat. ¹⁷They were seared by the intense heat and cursed the name of God who had control over these plagues, but they refused to repent and glorify him.

THE FIFTH PLAGUE

The kingdom of the Beast plunged into darkness

¹⁸The fifth angel poured out his bowl upon the throne of the Beast and his kingdom was plunged into darkness.

¹⁹Men gnawed their tongues in anguish and cursed the God of heaven because of their pains and their sores, but they refused to repent of what they had done.

*²⁴ About 300 km (the approx length of Israel).

THE SIXTH PLAGUE

The spirits of demons go out to gather the kings of the earth for the great battle at Armageddon

²⁰The sixth angel poured out his bowl upon the great river Euphrates and its water was dried up to prepare a path for the kings of the east.

²¹Then I saw three unclean spirits in appearance like frogs come from the mouths of the Dragon, the Beast, and the False Prophet. ²²These are demon spirits who perform miraculous signs and go out to the kings of the earth, to gather them for battle on the great day of God Almighty.

²³**“Behold I come like a thief. Blessed is he who keeps watch and keeps his clothes with him, that he may not go naked and be shamefully exposed.”^{F*}**

²⁴Then the unclean spirits gathered the kings together, to the place called Armageddon.^{F*}



The plain of Megiddo below Armageddon (Hebrew *Har-Magedon*, Mount Megiddo) reputed to be the site of more bloody battles than any other place on earth.

THE SEVENTH PLAGUE

A tremendous earthquake collapses the cities of the world

²⁵The seventh angel poured out his bowl into the air and out of the temple came a loud voice from the throne crying, **“It is done!”**

²⁶Then came flashes of lightning, rumblings, peals of thunder and a tremendous earthquake.

²⁷No earthquake like it has ever occurred since man has been on earth. ²⁸A third of the great city^{F*} fell and the other cities of the world collapsed. ²⁹God remembered great Babylon^{F*}

*23 The speaker of these words is not identified, but the words bear the stamp of the angel (speaking on behalf of Jesus) that first visited John and who speaks again to him at the end of the book, see Revelation 18:3-19.

*24 Armageddon, (more correctly *Har-Magedon* meaning Mountains of Megiddo) are mountains that overlook the valley of Megiddo, 90 kms north of Jerusalem. This valley has been the site of many decisive battles in Israel's history and perhaps more blood has been shed in this valley than any other spot on earth. The use of the name Armageddon may therefore in this instance be symbolic, like Babylon in Revelation 11:14 and following verses, for all other Bible prophecies place the scene of the great battle of the last days around Jerusalem itself, more especially in the valley of Jehoshaphat which is believed to be the Kidron valley on the east boundary of Jerusalem (Isaiah chapter 7 and Zechariah.5:1-4).

*28 The 'Babylon' of the following verse, ie Rome or its modern equivalent, see Revelation 13:20 and 14:10.

*29 Babylon (or the Harlot, see Revelation 13:1-6) is believed to specifically refer to the Rome of John's day (Revelation 13:20), and probably also to a resurgent Rome or comparable city of

and gave her the winecup of the fury of his wrath.

The whole face of the earth changes

³⁰Every island fled away and the mountains could not be found.

Giant hailstones fall

³¹Great hailstones of about a talent^{F*} each, fell upon men from the sky and they cursed God on account of the plague of hail, for the plague was terrible.

13

John carried away and shown the Great Harlot

¹One of the seven angels who had the seven bowls came and said to me, **“Come, I will show you the punishment of the Great Harlot who sits on many waters. ²With her the rulers of the earth committed adultery and the inhabitants of the earth were intoxicated with the wine of her fornication.”**

John sees a richly dressed woman sitting on a scarlet beast

³Then the angel carried me away in the spirit into a wilderness. There I saw a woman sitting upon a scarlet beast that was covered with blasphemous names and had seven heads and ten horns.

⁴The woman was dressed in purple and scarlet and was glittering with gold, precious stones and pearls. ⁵She held a golden cup in her hand filled with abominable things and the filth of her fornication.

⁶This mysterious name was written upon her forehead: **“Babylon the Great, mother of harlots and the abominations of the earth.”**

The woman drunk with the blood of the martyred saints

⁷I saw that the woman was drunk with the blood of the saints who were martyred for their testimony of Jesus.

The mystery of the woman and of the Beast explained

⁸When I saw her I was greatly astonished. The angel said to me, **“Why do you marvel? I will explain to you the mystery of the woman and of the Beast she rides which has seven heads and ten horns.”**

The Beast once lived and now is dead but he will come up again out of the Pit

⁹**“The Beast which you saw, once lived, yet now is dead. But he will again come up out of the Pit, and eventually go to his destruction.”**

¹⁰**“The inhabitants of the earth whose names have not been written in the Book of Life from the creation of the world will be astonished when they see the Beast, for he**

the latter days. The term Babylon symbolises worldly pride, power, wealth and sin wherever it is found.

*31 A talent weighed about 34kg (75lbs).

REVELATION 14

once lived yet now is dead, but will rise again.^{F*}

The seven heads of the Beast represent seven hills and seven kings

¹¹“This calls for a mind with wisdom. The seven heads represent seven hills upon which the woman sits.^{F*} They also represent seven kings. ¹²Five have fallen, one is, the other has not yet arisen.^{F*} but when he does come he must remain for a little while.”^{F*}

¹³“The Beast who once lived and now is dead, is an eighth king. He belonged to the seven^{F*} and is going to perdition.”^{F*}

The ten horns of the Beast are ten future kings who will give their power to the Beast

¹⁴“The ten horns you saw are ten kings who have not yet received a kingdom, but who for one hour will together receive authority as kings along with the Beast. ¹⁵They will have but one purpose and that is to give their power and authority to the Beast.”

The Beast and ten kings will wage war against the Lamb

¹⁶“They will wage war against the Lamb but the Lamb shall overcome them, for he is Lord of lords and King of kings. With him will be his called, chosen and faithful followers.”

The waters represent many nations

¹⁷Then the angel said to me, “The waters you saw where the Harlot sits, represent many peoples and nations.”

The ten kings and the Beast will bring the Harlot to ruin

¹⁸“The ten horns you saw, and the Beast, will hate the Harlot. They shall bring her to ruin and leave her naked. They will eat her flesh and burn her with fire. ¹⁹For God will put into their hearts to hand over their ruling power to the Beast, that God’s plan be accomplished and his word be fulfilled.”

The Harlot is the great city that rules over the kings of the earth

²⁰“The woman you saw is the great city that rules over the kings of the earth.”^{F*}

*10 See note on Revelation 10:9.

*11 Rome was originally built upon seven hills and was referred to as the city of seven hills by Roman writers.

*12 If the popular dating of Revelation at 95 AD is correct, ten Roman emperors (or kings) have fallen since Augustus first founded the empire rather than five. However five of these ten emperors did have short reigns, some of them merely a matter of months. All of the other five reigned nine years or longer.

*12 According to the popular dating of Revelation this would be Nerva, a Roman senator who ruled as an interim ruler from 96 to 98 AD.

*13 Believed by many to be the spirit of Nero who reigned as Roman emperor 54-68 AD (see note on Revelation 10:3). The angel does not say when the eighth king the Beast would reign. The next Roman emperor turned out to be Trajan, a popular and competent king who ruled from 98 to 117 AD and extended the Roman empire to its greatest extent. His reign in no way resembled the harsh world rule of the Beast.

*13 Perdition means everlasting spiritual ruin.

*20 The city of Rome.

14

The great Babylon has fallen

¹After this I saw another angel coming down from heaven. He had great authority and the earth was illuminated by his splendour.

²With a mighty voice he cried, “Fallen, fallen is the great Babylon. She has become a home for demons and a haunt for every unclean spirit and for every unclean and detestable bird. ³For all the nations have drunk the maddening wine of her fornication. The rulers of the earth committed adultery with her and the merchants of the earth grew rich from her excessive luxuries.”

Come out of her my people for her sins are piled up to heaven

⁴Then I heard another voice from heaven say, “Come out of her my people lest you share in her sins or any of her plagues. For her sins are heaped high as the heavens and God has remembered them.”

⁵“Pay her back two-fold for what she has done. Mix her a double portion from her own cup. ⁶Give her as much torture and grief, as the glory and luxury she gave herself.”

Babylon to be destroyed by plagues, famine and fire

⁷“In her heart she boasts, ‘I rule as a queen. I am not a widow and will never mourn.’ Therefore in one day her plagues will overtake her; death, mourning, and famine. ⁸She will be consumed by fire for mighty is the Lord God who judges her.”

The rulers of the earth will weep and mourn

⁹“When the rulers of the earth who committed adultery with her and shared her luxury see the smoke of her burning, they shall weep and mourn over her.”

¹⁰“They will stand afar off terrified at her torment and cry out, ‘Woe! Woe! O great city, O Babylon city of power. In one hour your doom has come.’”

The merchants of the earth shall weep and mourn

¹¹“The merchants of the earth shall weep and mourn over her, for no one buys their cargoes any more. ¹²Cargoes of gold, silver, precious stones and pearls, fine linen, purple, silk, and scarlet cloth. ¹³Every sort of rare timber and articles of ivory, fine wood, bronze, iron and marble. Cargoes of cinnamon, spice, incense, myrrh and frankincense. ¹⁴Wine, olive oil, fine flour and wheat. Cattle, sheep, horses and carriages, and slaves; human lives.”

¹⁵“They will say, ‘The fruit for which you longed for is gone from you. All your riches and splendour have vanished never to be recovered.’”

¹⁶“The merchants who sold these things

and gained their wealth from her will stand afar off, terrified at her torment and will weep and mourn and cry out, 'Woe! Woe! O great city, dressed in fine linen, purple and scarlet, glittering with gold, precious stones and pearls. In one hour your great wealth has been brought to ruin.'

Seamen will weep and mourn

17"Also every sea captain and all who travel by ship, the sailors and all who earn their living from the sea shall stand afar off.

18"When they see the smoke of her burning they will exclaim, 'Was there ever a city like this great city?'

19"They will throw dust on their heads and with weeping and mourning cry out, 'Woe! Woe! O great city, where all who had ships on the sea became rich through your wealth. In one hour you have been brought to ruin.'

The saints, apostles and prophets will rejoice

20"Rejoice over her O heaven. Rejoice saints and apostles and prophets. God has judged her for the way she treated you."

The great Babylon to be thrown down with violence

21"Then a mighty angel picked up a rock the size of a large millstone and threw it into the sea saying, "So shall the great city of Babylon be thrown down with violence never to be found again."

No more will be heard the sound of music, or workman or bride and groom

22"The music of harpists and musicians, flute players and trumpeters will never be heard in you again."

23"No workman of any trade shall ever be found in you again, nor will be heard the sound of a millstone, nor the voice of bridegroom and bride. 24The light of a lamp will never shine in you again."

The great Babylon led astray the nations and shed the blood of the saints and prophets

25"For your merchants were the lords of the earth, and by your sorcery all nations were led astray."

26"And in her was found the blood of prophets and of the saints and of all who have been slain on the earth."

15

Hallelujah sounded in heaven by a great multitude

1"After this I heard what sounded like the roar of a great multitude in heaven proclaiming, 'Hallelujah!F* Salvation and glory and power belong to our God, for true and just are his judgements.'

*1 Hallelujah is a Hebrew word meaning 'Glory to Yah.' Yah is a shortened version of the name or title of God, Yahweh, usually anglicised to Jehovah. It means 'Eternal.'

2"He has condemned the Great Harlot who corrupted the earth by her fornication. He has avenged on her the blood of his servants."

3"Again they proclaimed, "Hallelujah! The smoke from her goes up for ever and ever."

4"And the twenty-four elders and the four living creatures fell down and worshipped God who was seated on the throne. And they cried out, "Amen.F* Hallelujah!"



Rome, a traditional symbol of wealth, power and worldliness.

The wedding of the Lamb has come and the Bride is ready

5"Then came a voice from the throne saying, "Praise our God all you his servants and all who revere him, both small and great."

6"And I heard what sounded like the voice of a great multitude, like the roar of rushing waters and loud peals of thunder. The voices cried out, "Hallelujah! For our Lord God Almighty reigns. 7Let us rejoice and be glad and give him glory. For the wedding of the Lamb has come and his BrideF* has made herself ready, clothed in fine linen, bright and pure."

8The fine linen represents the righteous works of the saints.

Blessed are those who are invited to the wedding supper of the Lamb

9The angel said to me, "Write this, 'Blessed are those who are invited to the wedding supper of the Lamb.' Then he said, "These are the true words of God."

John forbidden to worship the angel of the Lord

10At this I fell at the angel's feet to worship him, but he said to me, "You must not do that. I am a fellow servant with you and with your brethren who hold to the testimony of Jesus. Worship God. 11For the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy."

Jesus returns to earth riding a white horse and clothed in a blood red robe

12Then I saw heaven standing open and a

*4 Amen is here used as a name (see note on Revelation 2:49).

*7 The city of New Jerusalem (Revelation 17:10).

REVELATION 16

white horse. He who sat upon it is called Faithful and True. ¹³With justice he judges and wages war. His eyes are like blazing fire and on his head are many crowns. ¹⁴A name is written on his forehead that no one knows but himself. ¹⁵He is clothed in a robe, dipped in blood^{F*} and his name is the Word of God.

¹⁶From his mouth comes a sharp sword with which to strike down the nations. He will rule them with an iron sceptre.

¹⁷He treads the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God Almighty. ¹⁸On his robe and on his thigh is written this name, King of kings and Lord of lords.

The armies of heaven follow Jesus, also riding white horses

¹⁹The armies of heaven followed him, riding on white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and pure.

The birds called to the great supper to eat the flesh of those who will fall at Armageddon

²⁰I saw an angel standing in the sun. He cried out in a loud voice to all the birds flying in mid-air saying, "Come gather together for the great supper of God, that you may eat the flesh of kings, captains and mighty men, of horses and their riders. ²¹And the flesh of all people, free and slave, small and great."

The kings of the earth gather their armies to wage war

²²Then I saw the Beast and the kings of the earth and their armies gathered together to wage war against the rider on the horse and his army.

The Beast and False Prophet captured and cast alive into the Lake of Fire

²³But the Beast was captured and with him the False Prophet who performed miracles in his presence. ²⁴With these miracles he had deceived those who had received the mark of the Beast and worshipped his image.

²⁵The two of them were cast alive into the fiery lake of burning sulphur.

The kings and their armies slain and the birds gorge on their flesh

²⁶The rest were slain by the sword that came out of the mouth of the rider on the horse, and all the birds gorged themselves on their flesh.^{F*}

Satan bound in the Pit for a thousand years

²⁷Then I saw an angel coming down out of heaven having the key to the Pit and holding in his hand a great chain. ²⁸He seized the Dragon, that ancient serpent who is the devil or Satan, and bound him for a thousand years.

²⁹He threw him into the Pit and locked and sealed it over him to keep him from deceiving the nations any more, until the thousand years are ended.^{F*}

*15 Isaiah also prophesied that the Lord would come clothed in red, blood-stained garments (Isaiah 11:3-4).

*26 For more details of this battle see Isaiah chapters 7-8, Daniel chapter 11 and Ezekiel chapter 13.

*29 This 1000 year period when Jesus Christ is to reign on earth (Isaiah 16:14-17, 22-23) is known as the Millennium.

³⁰After that he is to be set free for a short time.

16

The faithful spirits are resurrected and judged and reign with Christ on earth a thousand years

¹Then I saw thrones, on which were seated those who had been given authority to judge.^{F*}

²And I saw the spirits of those who had been beheaded because of their testimony of Jesus and of the word of God.

³They had not worshipped the Beast nor his image, and had not received his mark in their foreheads or their hands.

⁴They were resurrected^{F*} and reigned with Christ a thousand years.

⁵Blessed and holy are they who have part in the first resurrection. The Second Death^{F*} has no power over them. ⁶They shall be priests of God and of Christ and will reign with Christ for a thousand years.

The rest of the dead not resurrected until the thousand years are ended

⁷This is the first resurrection. The rest of the dead were not resurrected until the thousand years were ended.^{F*}

Satan will be released to again deceive the nations when the thousand years are over

⁸When the thousand years are over, Satan will be released from his prison and will again go out to deceive the nations in the four corners of the earth. ⁹As did Gog^{F*} of Magog, to gather them for battle.

The nations again gather to attack the Holy City

¹⁰I saw them, in number like the sand on the seashore. They marched across the breadth of the earth and surrounded the city of God's people, the city he loves.^{F*}

Fire comes down from heaven and devours them

¹¹But fire came down from heaven and devoured them. ¹²And the devil who deceived them was cast into the lake of burning sulphur where the Beast and the False Prophet were, and they will be in torment day and night for ever and ever.

*1 Jesus told his twelve apostles that when he returns they would sit on twelve thrones and judge the twelve tribes of Israel. This earlier judgement of the faithful is not the great day of judgement when the rest of mankind after being resurrected will stand before God (see verses 14-19 of this chapter).

*4 To be resurrected means that a person's spirit is reunited with the elements of their former decayed, physical body which has been raised back to life on earth as a new spiritual, but nevertheless tangible resurrected body, as was Jesus. (See also Isaiah 11:32, Ezekiel 12:1-10, Matt-Mark-Luke 35:40-49.)

*5 The Second Death is a symbolic term and means to be cut off forever from the presence of God (see Revelation 16:19 and note).

*7 ie The unrighteous, however all these dead will eventually be resurrected and judged in the final judgement (Acts 22:12, Revelation 16:14).

*9 Gog is the leader of the combined armies who will gather to attack Jerusalem prior to the coming of Christ (Ezekiel chapter 13, Revelation 15:22). He may also be the Beast spoken of in Revelation.

*10 The Millennial Jerusalem, probably the one described by the prophet Ezekiel (Ezekiel 17:20-25).

The final resurrection and day of judgement

¹³Then I saw a great white throne and he who sat upon it, from whose face earth and its heavens fled away, and there was no place found for them.

¹⁴The sea gave up the dead that were in it and the grave and Hades gave up their dead that were in them, and each person was judged according to what they had done. ¹⁵I saw the dead, great and small standing before the throne and books were opened.

The Book of Life

¹⁶And another book was opened which is the Book of Life.^{F*} ¹⁷The dead were judged according to what they had done as recorded in the books.

The Second Death

¹⁸Then death and Hades were cast into the Lake of Fire, which represents the Second Death.

¹⁹Anyone whose name was not found written in the Book of Life was cast into the Lake of Fire.^{F*}

17

New heavens and a new earth

¹Then I saw new heavens and a new earth, for the first heavens and the first earth had passed away, and there was no longer any sea.

God to dwell on earth among men

²And I heard a loud voice from the throne saying, “**Now the dwelling of God is among men and he will live with them. They shall be his people and he will be their God.**”

Every tear to be wiped from their eyes

³“**He will wipe away every tear from their eyes. And there shall be no more death, or mourning or weeping or pain. For the former things have passed away.**”

All things to be made new

⁴He who was seated on the throne said, “**Behold, I am making all things new.**” Also he said, “**Write this, for these words are trustworthy and true.**”

⁵Then he said, “**It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the Beginning and the End. ⁶To him who thirsts I will give to drink without cost from the fountain of the Water of Life.**”

⁷“**He who overcomes will inherit all and I will be his God and he will be my son.**”

Those who will inherit the Second Death

⁸“**But as for the cowardly, the unbelieving, the self-defiled, the murderers, the sexually**

immoral, the sorcerers, the idolaters and all liars, their place shall be in the fiery lake of burning sulphur. This is the Second Death.”^{F*}

New Jerusalem descends from heaven

⁹Then one of the seven angels, who had the seven bowls of last plagues said to me, “**Come, I will show you the Bride, the wife of the Lamb.**”

¹⁰And he carried me away in the spirit to a mountain great and high and showed me the Holy City, New Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared as a beautifully adorned bride for her husband.

Like a brilliant jewel clear as golden crystal

¹¹It shone with the glory of God and its brilliance was like that of a very precious jewel, clear as golden crystal.^{F*}

High crystalline walls with twelve gates, each a whole pearl

¹²It had a great high wall, with twelve gates and with twelve angels at the gates. ¹³On the gates were written the names of the twelve tribes of Israel.^{F*} There were three gates on each side; east, north, south and west.

¹⁴The wall of the city had twelve foundations and on them were written the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

¹⁵He measured the height of its wall. It was 144 cubits high^{F*} by man’s measure which the angel was using. ¹⁶The wall was made of golden crystal and the foundations were decorated with every kind of precious stone.

¹⁷The first foundation was golden crystal, the second sapphire, the third chalcedony, the fourth emerald, the fifth sardonyx, the sixth carnelian, the seventh chrysolite, the eighth beryl, the ninth topaz, the tenth chrysoprase, the eleventh jacinth and the twelfth amethyst.

¹⁸The twelve gates were twelve pearls, each gate a single pearl.

Both the length and breadth of the city 12,000 stadia

¹⁹The angel who spoke with me had a measuring rod of gold to measure the city and its gates and walls. ²⁰The city was laid out like a square, as long as it was wide.

²¹He measured the city with the rod. It was 12,000 stadia in length and width^{F*} and of uniform height.^{F*}

*8 Second Death, see note on Revelation 16:19.

*11 ‘Golden crystal,’ literally ‘jasper,’ an obscure Greek word, traditionally translated as ‘jasper,’ (also verse 16 of this chapter), however jasper is a type of crystal quartz that is opaque, whereas John appears to have seen a transparent, golden-hued substance, for he describes the city in verse 22 of this chapter as being made of ‘pure gold, like transparent glass.’

*13 Israelites will not be the only people to enter the city, Paul speaks of the Gentiles being grafted into the mother tree of Israel, see Romans 5:17.

*15 About 65 metres.

*21 About 2200 kms long and wide and over 4,800,000 square kilometres, or approx 2/3rds the size of the United States of America excluding Alaska.

*21 Because John describes the city as being of uniform, or equal height some Bible interpreters have imagined the city to be a cube, ie 2200 kms high. However this would appear to be extremely unlikely as the walls are only 65metres in height and

*16 More correctly, the Book of Eternal Life.

*19 The Lake of Fire symbolises the torment of the Second Death (Revelation 17:8), which is to be cut off forever from the presence of God as we now are temporarily. This should not be interpreted as literal fire. God is loving and just, not a sadist. Jesus used *Gehenna* (or Hell) the ever burning rubbish dump of Jerusalem as a similar symbol. Sinners and unbelievers who suffer the Second Death will be resurrected and live on the new earth (Revelation 17:27, 18:11) but they will be forever denied Eternal Life which means entry into and living within the beautiful and holy city of New Jerusalem (see following chapters 17 and 18) where God the Father and Jesus Christ and the righteous dwell in shining glory (Daniel 11:12-13, Matt-Mark-Luke 14:39,17:24, John 15:29). They will however enjoy varying, lesser degrees of glory (1 Corinthians 8:24, Hebrews 4:27).



An artist's impression of the New Jerusalem.

City and streets like transparent gold

²²The city and streets are pure gold, like transparent glass.^{F*}

The glory of God and the Lamb its light

²³I saw no temple in the city, for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are its temple. ²⁴Nor does the city need the sun or the moon to shine on it, for the glory of God gives it light and the Lamb is its lamp.

²⁵The gates will never be shut by day, and there shall be no night there.

Only those whose names are written in the Book of Life will enter the city

²⁶The nations will walk by its light and the kings of the earth shall bring their splendour into it; the glory and honour of the nations.

²⁷But nothing unclean will ever enter the city, nor will anyone who does what is shameful or deceitful. Only those whose names are written in the Lamb's Book of Life shall enter.

The river of the Water of Life

²⁸Then the angel showed me the river of the Water of Life, bright as crystal flowing from the throne of God and of the Lamb down the centre of the great main street of the city.

The Tree of Life

²⁹Along both sides of the river grew the Tree of Life, bearing twelve kinds of fruit, yielding fruit every month.^{F*} And the leaves are for the healing of the nations.

All in the city will see the face of God

³⁰Nothing accursed will be found there. The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in the city and God's servants shall worship him.

³¹They shall see his face and his name will be on their foreheads.

John describes them as 'great and high.' Also John saw a main street in which water flowed and trees grew (verses 28-29 of this chapter). Uniform or equal height in the context used would more likely mean the buildings were all of a similar height.

*²² The Lord also spoke of this beautiful city through the prophet Isaiah (Isaiah 16:22).

*²⁹ The rebuilt Jerusalem of the Millennium, although tiny by comparison has similarities to the New Jerusalem such as trees which bear fruit monthly growing either side of a river flowing out from under the temple (see Ezekiel chapter 17).

³²And there will be no more night, they shall not need the light of a lamp nor of the sun for the Lord God will give them light. And God and the Lamb shall reign for ever and ever.

18

These words are trustworthy and true

¹The angel said to me, "These words are trustworthy and true. The Lord who is the God of the spirits of the prophets sent his angel to show his servants the things that must soon take place."

²"He says, 'Behold, I am coming soon. Blessed is he who believes in the words of prophecy in this book.'"

John forbidden to worship the angel

³John am the one who heard and saw these things. ⁴After I had seen and heard them I fell down to worship at the feet of the angel who had been showing them to me.

⁵But he said to me, "You must not do that. I am a fellow servant with you and with your brethren the prophets and of all who keep the words of this book. Worship God."

The time draws near

⁶Then he said to me, "Do not seal up the words of the prophecy of this book for the time draws near. ⁷Let him who does evil and is filthy, continue to do evil and be filthy. Let him who does right and is holy, continue to be righteous and holy."

Jesus is coming soon and shall repay everyone according to their works

⁸"Behold, I am coming soon.^{F*} My reward comes with me and I shall repay everyone according to their works. ⁹I am Alpha and Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End."

*⁸ The angel is again speaking on behalf of Jesus Christ, as he did when he first appeared to John (Revelation 1:16).

**They who keep the commandments
will enter the New Jerusalem**

¹⁰“Blessed are they who keep the commandments, that they may partake of the Tree of Life and enter through the gates into the city.”

Those who now sin to live outside the city

¹¹“Outside are the dogs;^{F*} sorcerers,^{F*} fornicators, murderers, idolaters and everyone who loves and practices falsehood.”

Jesus the bright Morning Star

¹²“I Jesus have sent my angel to give you this testimony for the churches. ¹³I am the Root and the offspring of David and the bright Morning Star.”

**Come and take the free gift
of the Water of Life**

¹⁴The Spirit and the Bride say, “Come.” And let him who hears say, “Come.” ¹⁵Whoever is

thirsty let him come and take the free gift of the Water of Life.

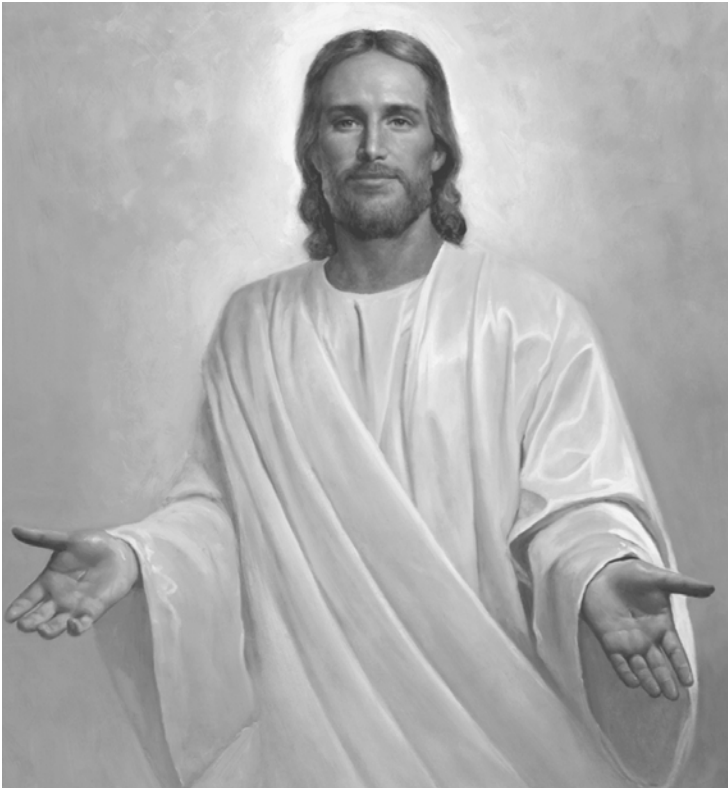
**Do not add or take away from this
book of Revelation**

¹⁶I warn everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book. If anyone adds to them, God will add to him the plagues described in this book. ¹⁷And if anyone takes away from them, God will take away from him his share in the Tree of Life and in the Holy City which are described in this book.^{F*}

Jesus to come soon

¹⁸He who testifies to these things says, “Yes, I am coming soon.”

¹⁹Amen! Come Lord Jesus and the grace of the Lord Jesus be with God’s people. Amen.



Jesus welcoming the faithful. Painting by Del Parson.

*11 A dog is an Old Testament term for a male prostitute, however in this instance it appears to mean all those who practice the evils listed in the rest of this verse.

*11 Sorcerers are those who obtain power from evil occult forces.

*17 John’s warning applies to this book of Revelation, not to the whole Bible, which was not finally compiled into one book until 397 AD, over 400 years after the book of Revelation was written. Moses wrote a similar warning in the book of Deuteronomy (Deuteronomy.6:13) The book of Revelation has not been condensed for it is already a highly condensed account of what John saw and heard.

CONCORDANCE (INDEX)

References are listed by verse number (v) and then the page number (in **bold**) on which the verse is found.

144,000 John sees 144,000 servants of God sealed, 12,000 from each tribe of Israel v4:**688**; 144,000 sing a new song in heaven before the throne v2:**693**; 144,000 are chaste men, redeemed from the earth, first fruits to God v4-6:**693**; 144,000 follow the Lamb wherever he goes v6:**693**

Aaron (See also priests) brother of Moses, can speak well v32:**51**; meets Moses at Mount Sinai v5:**52**; 83 years old v6:**52**; to speak for Moses v32:**52**; staff turns into snake v4:**53**; staff swallows up sorcerer's staffs v5:**53**; four sons to be priests v1:**71**; Urim and Thummim a means of Aaron receiving revelation v14:**71**; makes golden calf at request of Israelites v3:**73**; angrily rebuked by Moses v16:**74**; Aaron and sons consecrated priests v27:**76**; sons Nadab and Abihu consumed by fire from Jehovah v6:**80**; Aaron not permitted to mourn v10:**80**; not to go behind veil unless commanded v16:**80**; rebuked by Lord for jealousy v9:**95**; Lord causes staff of to blossom as sign of his priesthood v6-12:**98**; not to enter promised land for failing to honour Lord v9:**100**; dies aged 123 on Mt Hor v17:**100**

Abel birth of v2:**16**; kept flocks, offering accepted by Lord v3-4:**16**; murdered by his brother Cain v6:**16**; where is your brother Abel? v7:**16**; offered God a better sacrifice than Cain v5:**670**

Abiathar priest, escapes slaughter of Nob, flees to David with Ephod v30:**173**; high priest during reign of David v6:**187**

Abigail intelligent and beautiful wife of Nabal v4:**174**; appeases David's anger when her husband Nabal refuses to give his men food v17:**175**; marries David when husband Nabal dies v26-32:**175**

Abihu son of Aaron, sees God of Israel on mountain v8-9:**68**; called to serve Lord as a priest v1:**71**; dies when he offers unlawful incense v7:**80**

Abijah son of Rehoboam, becomes king of Judah v18:**261**; marches against king Jeroboam of Israel v20:**261**; accuses Israel of rebellion before battle v21:**261**; Israel flees before army of v29:**262**; dies and son Asa becomes king v33:**262**

Abimelech (Philistine king) king of Gerar, takes Sarah to be his wife v1:**25**; God appears to in dream v2:**25**; returns Sarah to Abraham v12:**26**; Isaac stays with v16:**29**; makes peace treaty with Isaac v28:**29**

Abimelech son of Gideon's concubine, murders all but one of his 70 brothers, crowned king of Israel by people of Shechem v11-14:**139**; rules Israel three years, ill feeling arises between him and Shechem v1:**140**; puts Gaal and followers to flight v10:**140**; puts Shechem to sword and razes city v12-18:**140**; attacks city of Thebez, mortally wounded by millstone dropped by woman v19-20:**140**; cursed by younger brother Jotham v23:**140**; has his armour bearer kill him v21:**141**

Abiram rebels against Moses v9:**97**; swallowed up by earth with his household v27:**98**

Abishai David's nephew, prevented from killing Saul v6:**175**; David prevents from killing Shimei v38:**194**; killed 300 men at one time v15:**200**

Abner Saul's commander, taunted by David v9:**175**; kills younger brother of Joab v38:**183**; lies with concubine of Saul v3:**184**; rebuked by King Ish-Bosheth v4:**184**; becomes angry, vows to hand kingdom over to David v5:**184**; David puts on feast for v14:**184**; murdered treacherously by Joab v17:**184**

Abram See Abraham

Abraham original name Abram, son of Terah, maries Sarai v10-12:**20**; called by Jehovah and commanded to leave Ur v15:**20**; blessed by covenant to become a great nation v16:**20**; departs Haran aged 75 years with nephew Lot v19:**20**; given land of Canaan by Jehovah v20:**20**; goes to live in Egypt v22:**20**; Sarai taken by Pharaoh to be his wife v25:**20**; Abram acquires wealth from Pharaoh v26:**20**; promised a son as heir by

Lord v2-3:**21**; returns to land of Canaan v1:**20**; separates from Lot v4-7:**21**; believes the Lord v4:**21**; asks Lord for sign v6:**21**; covenant renewed by Lord v8:**21**; routs kings of north v16-17:**21**; blessed by Melchizedek the priest of God v19:**21**; gives title of plunder to Melchizedek v21:**21**; Lord prophesies Egyptian captivity of descendants v11:**22**; covenant reconfirmed by Lord when Abram 99 years old v14:**22**; Lord defines boundaries of promised land v16:**22**; Jehovah and two angels appear to v1-2:**23**; Abram prepares meal for Jehovah and angels v3:**23**; Lord changes Abram's name to Abraham v15:**23**; Abraham to circumcise all male descendants v17-18:**23**; Sarah to bear him a son Isaac in old age v20-23:**23**; Abraham circumcises his household v26:**23**; will direct his children to do right v16:**24**; pleads with Lord for Sodom v19:**24**; rebuked by King Abimelech v9:**25**; Isaac is born v15:**26**; Abraham now 100 years old v17:**26**; tested by God, told to sacrifice Isaac v1:**26**; stopped by angel from killing Isaac v9:**26**; sacrifices ram in place of son v10:**27**; covenant again reaffirmed by Lord v11-12:**27**; Sarah dies aged 127 v13:**27**; buys a field and cave to bury Sarah v14:**27**; sends servant to Haran to obtain wife for Isaac v2:**27**; marries Keturah who bears him six sons v39:**28**; sends his six sons away to land of east v40:**28**; dies aged 175 v41:**28**; Abraham a wandering Syrian v4:**114**; beggar carried by angels to Abraham's side v28:**515**; will be seen in kingdom of God v15:**516**; saw day of Jesus and was glad v32:**551**; Abraham a man of faith v5:**624**; blessed by his faith, not by the Law v14:**629**; patiently endured, obtained promise from God v28:**668**; descendants numerous as sand on seashore v11:**670**; had faith to offer son Isaac as a sacrifice v14:**670**

Absalom third son of David v2:**184**; kills his brother Amnon for raping his sister Tamar v18-24:**191**; a handsome man, conspires to be king v1-5:**192**; made king of Israel without David's knowledge v8:**193**; musters army and crosses Jordan to destroy David v27:**195**; David's men defeat Absalom's army v1:**195**; killed by Joab and his men when found hanging alive in a tree v3-9:**195**; body thrown into a pit v11:**196**

abuse See oppression

Achan confesses to theft of spoil from Jericho v11:**124**; stoned and burned along with household v14:**125**

Adam formed in God's image and likeness from the dust v14:**14**; becomes a living being when God breathes into him the spirit of life v15:**14**; commanded to multiply and rule over every creature v16:**15**; his food to be seeds and fruit v17:**15**; names animals and birds v9:**15**; God creates a woman from Adam's rib v11:**15**; Adam naked but felt no shame v14:**15**; given forbidden fruit by his wife Eve, becomes aware of nakedness v5:**15**; sews an apron out of fig leaves v6:**15**; cursed by Jehovah to till ground for food v18:**16**; to die, dust you are and to dust you shall return v20:**16**; the man has become as one of us, knowing good and evil v22:**16**; banished with his wife Eve from Garden of Eden v23:**16**; had sons and daughters, dies aged 930 v2:**17**; through Adam all died v15:**615**; sin and death entered world through v2:**629**; not the one deceived, rather Eve was deceived and transgressed v21:**651**; was formed first, then Eve v21:**651**

Adonijah fourth son of David v2:**184**; proclaims himself king without David's knowledge v7:**201**; clings to horns of altar in fear of Solomon v23:**202**; life spared by Solomon v26:**202**; asks Solomon to give him Abishag as wife v1:**202**; Solomon angry at Adonijah's request, puts him to death v9:**203**

adultery (See also sexual immorality, fornication)

seventh commandment, you shall not commit adultery v25:**64**; adulterers to be put to death v41:**67**; test for suspected v26-32:**87**; David commits with Bathsheba ch6:**189**; Lord coming in judgement against adulterers v7:**431**; stay away from smooth tongue of adulterous wife v1:**464**; shame never wiped away v13:**465**; jealousy arouses a husband's fury v14:**465**; steps of adultery lead straight down to Sheol v20:**465**; why be snared in sin by adultery v26:**465**; wisdom will save you from the adulteress v13:**467**; he who looks upon a woman lustfully commits in his heart v35:**492**; he who divorces his wife except for unchastity causes her to commit adultery, and whoever

marries the divorced woman commits adultery v37-38:**492**; a wicked and adulterous generation ask for sign v22:**501**; whoever divorces spouse and marries another, commits adultery against former spouse v27:**519**; adulterous woman brought before Jesus v2:**550**; no adulterer will inherit kingdom of God v21:**609**; commit not adultery v20:**633**; adulterers ungodly and sinful v7:**651**; with eyes full of adultery they seduce the unstable and never cease to sin v27:**662**; God will judge adulterers v11:**671**; keep the marriage bed undefiled v11:**671**; those who have committed adultery with prophetess Jezebel will suffer intensely v25:**684**

Agabus prophet, prophesies severe famine v15:**579**

Ahab son of Omri, becomes king of Israel v17:**226**; most wicked king yet, builds temple to Baal v18:**226**; wife Jezebel, daughter of king of Sidonians v18:**226**; makes Asherah pole v19:**226**; Elijah the prophet prophesies to, no rain for next few years v21:**226**; searches for pasture to keep horses alive v3:**227**; gathers all Israel to Elijah at Mount Carmel v11:**227**; fire blazes down from heaven at prayer of Elijah v29:**228**; false Baal prophets of Ahab put to sword v32:**228**; Elijah predicts rain that same day to Ahab v1:**228**; Lord promises Ahab will defeat Ben-Hadad king of Syria v11:**230**; Syrians flee before Ahab's young men, heavy losses inflicted v16:**230**; Ahab spares Ben-Hadad's life which displeases Lord v31:**230**; Naboth refuses to sell his vineyard to v1:**231**; Jezebel wife of Ahab arranges murder of Naboth v7:**231**; Ahab's family cursed by Lord for murder of Naboth, dogs to lick up Ahab's blood v15:**231**; character of Ahab v17:**231**; urged on by his wife Jezebel to do evil v18:**231**; Ahab humbles himself, Lord postpones curse v19:**231**; Jehoshaphat king of Judah comes to visit v1:**231**; Jehoshaphat agrees to join Ahab in recapturing Ramoth v4:**231**; Micaiah prophesies death of Ahab v19:**232**; Ahab shot by archer, dies in chariot at sunset v33:**232**; dogs lick up the king's blood as prophesied v38:**233**; achievements of Ahab v39:**233**; 70 sons of beheaded, rest of family killed by Jehu v11-15:**244**

Ahaz son of Jotham, becomes king of Judah v1:**281**; leads Judah back into idolatry v2:**281**; sacrifices sons in fire v3:**281**; Lord reveals Ahaz able to withstand an invasion if he not lose courage v7:**281**; Ahaz loses courage, unable to withstand invasion v19:**282**; Ahaz becomes even more unfaithful v28:**282**; bribes Assyria to attack Syria v29:**282**; travels to Syria to meet Assyrian king v34:**282**; replaces Lord's altar with one of Syrian design v37:**283**; closes Temple and locks doors v40:**283**; erects idolatrous altars and high places v41:**283**; dies, son Hezekiah becomes king v1:**284**

Ahaziah (king of Israel) son of Ahab, becomes king of Israel v1:**233**; falls through lattice, injures himself v2:**233**; consults Philistine god Zebub v3:**233**; Lord rebukes Ahaziah v4:**233**; Elijah prophesies death of v15:**233**; dies, his brother Joram becomes king v16:**233**

Ahaziah (king of Judah) son of Jehoram, becomes king of Judah v18:**265**; follows evil ways of his mother Athaliah v20:**266**; visits Joram king of Israel v33:**243**; killed by Jehu v44:**243**

Ahijah prophet, calls Jeroboam to be king of Israel v16:**211**; not deceived by Jeroboam's wife v32-35:**225**

Ahithophel David's adviser, joins conspiracy of Absalom v9:**193**; Hushai to counter advice of v25-29:**193**; Ahithophel's counsel like a prophet of God v8:**194**; counsels Absalom to destroy David that night, Hushai counters advice v9:**194**; when advice not followed, returns home and takes own life v26:**195**
altars Noah builds an altar to the Lord v19:**18**; Abram builds altar in Canaan v20:**20**; Abram builds altar at oaks of Hebron v11:**21**; Abram builds altar to sacrifice his son v7:**26**; Isaac builds altar at Beersheba v27:**29**; Jacob builds altar near Shechem v36:**36**; Israel builds altar at Bethel v21:**37**; commandments regarding altars v21-23:**64**; an altar defiled if a tool used in making v22:**64**; no steps going up to v23:**64**; Moses builds altar at foot of mountain v3:**68**; Tabernacle altar of incense v27:**70**; bronze altar of sacrifice v35:**70**; altars of Canaanites to be demolished v9:**75**; fire on Tabernacle altar to be kept burning v16:**79**; dead bodies of Israelites to be heaped upon idolatrous altars v22:**88**; altar of uncut stones to be built on Mt Ebal v2:**115**; altar built on Mt Ebal v1:**125**; an altar erected by eastern tribes as memorial by Jordan river v5-

14:**129**; Gideon tears down father's altar to Baal v20-23:**137**; Saul builds altar to Lord v5:**165**; David commanded by God the prophet to build an altar v17:**199**; bronze altar of Solomon's Temple v33:**206**; altar splits apart at prophet's command v9-12:**224**; ruined altar built up by Elijah v24:**228**; idolatrous altars removed by king Asa v1:**262**; Asa renovates Temple altar v13:**263**; Ahaz erects idolatrous altars on streets of Jerusalem v41:**283**; calf altar at Bethel demolished by Josiah v11:**311**; altar rebuilt by returning exiles and daily sacrifice again offered v16:**398**

Amalekites attack Israelites in desert v8:**61**; defeated by Israelites v13:**61**; to be blotted out v13:**62**; Balaam's prophesy concerning, will come to ruin v14:**103**; Saul ordered by Lord to destroy v19:**166**; remaining Amalekites wiped out by Hezekiah v3:**307**

Amasa appointed army commander in place of Joab v3:**196**; ordered by David to gather all men of Judah within three days, is delayed v3:**197**; murdered by Joab v7:**198**

Amaziah son of Joash, becomes king of Judah v9:**267**; hires 100,000 soldiers from Israel to help attack Edom v23:**267**; warned by prophet not to use soldiers from Israel, sends them home v24:**267**; army of kills 20,000 men of Edom v28:**267**; Amaziah brings back Edomite idols and worships them v29:**267**; Lord angry with his idolatry, sends prophet to rebuke him v30:**268**; Amaziah orders prophet to cease speaking v31:**268**; Amaziah to be destroyed for not hearing prophet v32:**268**; challenges Israel to battle but is defeated v33-36:**268**; killed by officials and his 16 year old son Uziah made king v38:**268**

Ammonites descendants of Lot's son Ben-Ammi v28:**25**; oppress Israelites 18 years v3:**141**; oppress Israelites of Gilead by gouging out right eyes v13:**162**; slaughtered by Saul v23:**163**; Ammonite king humiliates David's officials v1:**188**; Ammonites flee before Israel v12:**189**; king and officials to go into exile v7:**254**; army of attacks Israel v21:**264**; to be punished by Lord v14:**315**; to be destroyed for rejoicing over Jerusalem's downfall v10:**365**; Babylon to scatter and exile v27:**335**; will return from exile v30:**335**; excluded from holy assemblies of Jews v28:**427**

Amnon firstborn son of David v2:**184**; rapes his half sister Tamar v1-11:**191**; killed by his half brother Absalom v24:**191**

Amon son of Manasseh, becomes king of Judah v11:**309**; does evil and is assassinated, his son Josiah made king v12-15:**309**

Amorites Canaanite tribe v7:**51**; destroyed by Israelites v14:**101**

Amos prophet from Judah, shepherd of Tekoa v1:**254**; sees vision of judgement by fire v12:**256**; sees vision of locust swarm v9:**256**; sees vision of Lord with plumb line in his hand v13:**256**; told to return to Judah by priest of Bethel v16:**256**; prophesies to priest that his wife will become a harlot and his children die by sword v19:**256**; condemns dishonest Sabbath-breaking merchants v22:**256**

Amram father of Moses v10:**50**

Anakim (See also Nephilim) exceptionally tall race of people, seen by explorers in promised land v22:**96**; we felt like grasshoppers before them v24:**96**; King Og a remnant of, bed nine cubits long v17:**101**; who can stand against the Anakim? v2:**110**; no Anakim left in Israelite territory, only in the Philistine cities v7:**127**; Goliath an Anakim, six cubits and a hand span tall v26:**168**, v4:**200**; both were descendants of the Anakim v4:**200**; a huge man with six fingers on each hand, descended from the Anakim v5:**200**; Ishbi-benob who was of great height, a descendant of the Anakim v1:**200**

Ananias lies to Holy Spirit, he and wife fall down dead v3-11:**572**

Ananias believer of Damascus, Lord instructs to restore Saul's sight v9:**576**

Ananias high priest, orders Paul struck on mouth v3:**591**

Ancient of Days clothing and hair pure white, on blazing throne, presides over judgement of millions v10-13:**387**; delivers authority, glory, and kingship to one like Son of Man v17:**388**

Andrew takes his brother Peter (Simon) to Jesus v23:**542**;

fisherman, called as disciple by Jesus v33:489; leaves everything and follows Jesus v34:489; chosen as one of twelve apostles v3:491

angel (See also angel of Lord/Jehovah/God, angel destroying, Gabriel) angel speaks to Hagar near a spring v7:22; Jehovah and two angels visit Abraham v1:23; two angels sent to destroy Sodom v1-20:24; angel appears to Jacob in a dream v8:33; angel wrestles with Jacob until daybreak, dislocates hip, renames him Israel v11-16:35; angel, commander of Lord's army appears to Joshua v1:123; angel feeds Elijah bread and water v12-14:228; with them was an angel in white with a writing kit at his side v24:359; the angel stood beside the wheel, and a cherubim took some of the fire v34:360; Ezekiel sees a glowing angel with a measuring rod and cord v3:371; angel shows Ezekiel future millennial Temple ch14-17:371; angel protects Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego from fire of furnace v16:385; angel in Nebuchadnezzar's dream announces his mind to be that of an animal v8-11:386; voice of angel prophesies to Daniel about reconsecration of Temple v10:389; angel Gabriel helps Daniel understand vision v2:389; angel sent to protect Daniel from lions v14:391; Gabriel comes in swift flight to answer Daniel's prayer v7-17:392; the angel of Persian kingdom opposed Gabriel twenty-one days v9:393; Daniel unable to speak until strengthened by angel v11:393; Gabriel to return to oppose angel of Persia v15:393; angel of Greece to come v15:393; Gabriel protected Darius in first year of reign v16:393; angel Michael protects Daniel's people v10:396; Daniel sees two angels v15:396; praise the Lord you angels, who do his bidding, Psalm 31 v10:450, Psalm 97 v3:462; he will command his angels to guard you, lest you strike your foot against a stone, Psalm 90 v5:462, v25:488; angel Gabriel appears to Zechariah in Temple v4-11:482; angel speaks to shepherds at birth of Jesus, multitudes of angels seen praising God v9-12:484; angel warns Joseph in dream to flee to Egypt v8:486; angels visit Jesus in desert v29:488; angels to be harvesters at end of age v36-38:503, v44:503, v36:527; in heaven angels of little children always behold face of Father v11:510; angels carried the beggar to Abraham's side v28:515; is rejoicing in presence of angels over one sinner who repents v13:517; resurrected dead become like the angels in heaven v12:524; angels in heaven do not know time of second coming v41:527; all the angels to be with Jesus at second coming v22:528, v5:604; angel would stir water of pool, first person to enter cured of disease v3:546; an angel comes to strengthen Jesus v33:530; would not my Father send me more than twelve legions of angels v48:531; violent shaking of earth as angel comes down to tomb v7:536; appearance like lightning, clothes white as snow, guards tremble and faint v8:536; two angels speak to women at tomb of Jesus v16:536; Mary Magdalene sees two angels in empty tomb of Jesus v8:564; two angels stand beside apostles as Jesus taken up into heaven v7:569; apostles freed by an angel during night v17:572; angel sends Philip to teach Ethiopian eunuch v21:575; angel in shining clothes tells Cornelius to send for Peter v3:577; angel frees Peter from prison v5:579; angel strikes down Herod because of pride v7:580; angel visits Paul, assures him of safety of all on ship v19-21:594; Lord to come down from heaven at loud command of archangel (Michael) v13:603; do you not know we shall judge angels? v16:609; Satan masquerades as an angel of light v28:621; let no one disqualify you by insisting on worship of angels v16:637; even angels longed to know mystery of Christ v11:658; angels in submission to Christ in heaven v18:659, v3:667; God did not spare the angels who sinned v19:622, v6:664; you have made him little lower than the angels v8-10:667; thousands upon thousands of angels in joyful assembly v6:671, v23:686; some have entertained angels unawares v9:671; Jesus sent his angel to his servant John v2:682, v12:701; John describes glorious angel standing among lampstands v12-15:683; angel speaks to John on behalf of Jesus v16:683, v10:697; I saw four angels, standing at the corners of the earth v1:688; angels around the throne fell on their faces and worshipped God singing v7:688; I saw the seven angels who stand before God v2-6:688; an angel with a golden censer came and stood at the altar v3:688; seven angels sound trumpets and seven plagues follow v6-35:688, v1:690; an angel stands on the sea, John takes scroll from v5-9:690; Michael and his angels fight against devil and his angels, hurl them to earth v14:691; John sees angel flying in

midst of heaven, proclaims everlasting good news to every nation on earth v8:693; John sees seven angels in pure shining linen and golden girdles around chests v7:694; angel seated on white cloud, crown of gold on head and sickle in hand v18:694; seven angels pour out seven last plagues v10-31:694; angel carries John away in the spirit to a wilderness v3:695; angel with great authority descends from heaven, earth illuminated by splendour v1:696; John forbidden to worship angel v10:697, I v5:700; I saw an angel standing in the sun v20:698; an angel seized the devil, and bound him for a thousand years v28:698; angel shows John the New Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven v10:699; twelve gates with twelve angels at the gates v12:699; angel measures city with rod of gold v19:699; the angel sent to John by Jesus v12:710

angel of the Lord/Jehovah/God (See also angel) finds Hagar in desert v7-9:26; prevents Abraham from killing his son Isaac v9:26; appears to Moses in a burning bush v2:51; to lead Israelites instead of Lord himself v6:74; sent to warn Balaam v16-27:102; sent to rebuke Israelites for disobedience, Lord to no longer drive out Canaanites v21-23:134; calls Gideon to save Israel from Midianites v7:136; Gideon prepares food for, fire consumes offering v14-16:136; appears twice to parents of Samson v1-15:142, v7:143; name of angel beyond understanding v14:143; hand of stayed, Jerusalem spared plague v13:198; gives Elijah the prophet a message for King Ahaziah v4-14:233; speaks to Zechariah during visions v6-51:403

John forbidden to worship v10:697, I v5:700; sent to John by Jesus v12:710

angel destroying not allowed to enter houses marked with Passover blood v10:56; David sees the destroying angel with a drawn sword v14:199; commands David through Gad the prophet to build an altar v17:199; puts to death 185,000 men in Assyrian camp v33:300; Ezekiel sees six angels each with a weapon of slaughter in his hand v23:359; Lord said to destroying angels, follow him through the city and kill without pity v27:359; some of them complained and were killed by the destroying angel v17:611

anger (See also anger of the Lord) Cain becomes angry when Lord does not accept offering, King Abner Abel v4-6:16; stay with Laban until your brother's anger subsides v35:31; Jacob angry with Laban v28:34; when Israel's sons heard what happened they burned with anger v4:36; Potiphar angry with Joseph, casts him into prison v10:39; cursed be the fierce anger of Simeon and Levi v19:45; Moses hot with anger left Pharaoh's presence v28:56; Moses angry burned hot when he saw the calf and the dancing v15:74; Moses aroused to anger at these words v18:97; Balaam becomes angry with his donkey and beats her v19:102; the kings anger burned against Balaam and he struck his hands together v8:103; Moses angrily orders all Midianite captives put to death v8-9:105; men of Ephraim angry with Gideon v28:138; Samson burns with anger toward Philistines, burns crops, strikes them down with great slaughter v11-21:144; do not argue or some of our hot-tempered men will kill you v22:147; Spirit of God came upon Saul in power and he burned with anger v19:163; David's oldest brother becomes angry with him v8:168; Saul angry and jealous of David v5:169; Saul's anger flared up at his son Jonathan v20:171; Jonathan rose from the table in fierce anger v23:171; Naaman walks away angry at Elisha's refusal to come out to him v11-12:239; Jonah angry at Lord's compassion v10:248; their anger smoulders all night and in the morning blazes like flaming fire v13:251; hired soldiers furious at being dismissed and left in a great rage v27:267; king turned in anger on priests, as he did so leprosy broke out on his forehead v11:275; Nebuchadnezzar angrily orders all wise men executed v9:383; king burned with anger when Queen Vashti refused to come v10:412; Haman's anger burned toward Mordecai v6:413, v20:415; king arose in anger and went out to walk among the trees in palace garden v44:416; anger of king subsided when Haman hanged on gallows v48:416; officials angry with Jeremiah, beat him and imprison in dungeon v4:435; you tear yourself to pieces in your anger v9:436; why do your eyes flash and you vent your rage against God? v35:436; Eilihu angry with Job for justifying himself rather than God v1:439; refrain from anger it leads only to evil, Psalm 58 v5:454; better to live in a desert than with an ill-tempered woman v6:465; a prudent man overlooks an insult, a fool shows his anger at once v47-48:467;

a hot-tempered man must suffer consequences v13:468; a hot-tempered man commits many sins v14:468; a soft answer turns away wrath v1:470; harsh words stir up anger v30:470; a hot-tempered man stirs up contention v32:470; better he who controls his temper than he who captures a city v16:472; a wise man will appease a king's wrath v20:472; men of Nazareth enraged at words of Jesus, try to push him over a cliff v17:489; anyone angry with another is subject to judgement v32:492; master of feast becomes angry v32:516; older brother became angry and refused to go into the house v26:518; why are you angry with me for healing a man on the Sabbath? v17:549; craftsmen of silver shrines aroused in anger toward Paul v32:587; be quick to listen, slow to speak and slow to anger v14:598; anger does not bring about God's righteousness v14:598; love is not easily angered v16:614; anger a work of flesh, not of the Holy Spirit v5:625; entirely rid yourselves of anger v26:637; let not the sun go down on your anger, do not give devil a foothold v14:642; fathers, provoke not your children to anger v1:643

anger of the Lord the Lord began to be angry with Moses v32:52; my anger will be aroused and I will take your life v14:64; leave me alone that my anger may burn against them v8:73; turn from your fierce anger O Jehovah, do not bring disaster on your people v10:73; Jehovah, compassionate and gracious God, slow to anger v9:75, v1:96; in my anger I will punish you for your sins a further seven times over v20:88; Lord's anger aroused, sent fire among them v10:94; anger of Lord kindled against the people, struck them with a great plague v3:95; O God, will you be angry with all when only one man sins? v22:98; Lord angrily commands guilty Israelite leaders be killed v3:104; Phinehas has turned my anger away from the Israelites v10:104; Israel so aroused Lord's anger that he made them wander in the desert forty years v11:106; never forget how you provoked the Lord to anger in the desert v5:110; anger of Lord aroused by theft v1:124; Israelites provoked Lord to anger by worshipping Baal and Ashoreth v3:134; anger of Lord burned against Uzzah for putting his hand to the Ark v21:186; Jehovah broke out in anger against us because the Levites did not bring up Ark v30:186; what David had done with Bathsheba and her husband angered the Lord v3:190, v17:190; Lord angry with Israel, permits Satan to tempt David v1:197; Lord angry with Solomon for his heart had turned away from him v6:210; you have made gods of metal and provoked me to anger v38:225; Ahab provoked the God of Israel to more anger than all the kings of Israel before him v19:226, v15:231; let all give up their evil ways, God may yet turn from his fierce anger v7:248; I knew you were a gracious loving God, slow to anger v11:248, v20:272; throw out your calf-idol Samaria, my anger burns against it v23:251; my compassion will be aroused and I shall no longer execute my fierce anger v20:252; king of Assyria the rod of Lord's anger v8:287; in a surge of anger I hid my face from you, but with everlasting kindness I will bring you back v20:297; I was angry with my people and exiled them v11:303; for my name's sake I have delayed my wrath v22:304; Manasseh did much evil and provoked the Lord to anger v4:308, v24:311; great must be Jehovah's anger, our fathers have not obeyed all that is written here v21:311; I am merciful and shall not be angry forever v5:323; Jeremiah so full of words of Lord's wrath he cannot hold them in v23:325; no one shall be safe from the fierce anger of the Lord v15:329; deal with them in the day of your anger Lord v26:332; take from my hand this winecup of my anger v10:333, v17:334; wrath of Lord so aroused against his people there was no remedy v3:344; the houses and royal palace will soon be filled with corpses of men I will slay in my anger v11:346; why are you provoking me to anger by burning incense to the gods of Egypt? v5:349; I felt wrath within my spirit for the strong hand of the Lord was upon me v32:357; I will vent my fury upon you, then my anger against you will be appeased v40-41:358; I will bring upon you the blood vengeance of my jealous anger v24:362; I strike my hands together in anger at your dishonest gain and shed blood v20:365; you shall know that it is I Jehovah who have poured out my wrath upon you v23:365; have you totally rejected us, is your anger that great toward us? v72:380; the vision concerns an appointed time of wrath v13:389; I was only a little angry with my people, but the nations added to their afflictions v10:403; my anger burns against the shepherds of my people v16:407; Edom to be ever under wrath of Jehovah v4:430; my

anger is aroused with you, for you have not spoken right of me as has Job v28:442; because of your wrath there is no health in my body, Psalm 26 v2:449; Jehovah is slow to anger but great in power v2:312, Psalm 31 v5:449; O Lord how long will your anger smoulder and you not heed the prayers of your people? Psalm 73 v2:457; yet the Lord was merciful, time after time he restrained his anger, Psalm 74 v12:458; the Lord was angry with his people and handed them over to their enemies to rule over them, Psalm 83 v28:460; for forty years I was angry with that generation, Psalm 87 v3:461; anger of God upon godless men who suppress truth by wickedness v9:628; who warned you to flee from the coming wrath? v5:487; these will be days of wrath against this people unequalled from the beginning of time v15:526; whoever rejects the Son will not have Eternal Life, for God's wrath remains upon him v25:544, v17:602; they who repent not store up wrath against themselves on the day of judgement v20:629, v23:643; allow room for God's wrath, for he has said vengeance is mine, I will repay v13:633; hide us from the face of him who is seated on the throne and the wrath of the Lamb v16:688; they too will drink the wine of God's fury, poured full strength v12:693; earth in last days to be the great winepress of God's wrath v23:694, v17:698; God's wrath completed with seven last plagues v1-31:694; I will make the heavens tremble and the earth shake in the day of my burning anger v6:289, v1:315; I will take vengeance in anger upon nations that have not obeyed me v8:277, v8:288, v24:288; on day of Lord's wrath the whole earth shall be consumed v5:315; my fierce anger will not turn back until I fully accomplish the purposes of my heart v7:343; when Gog attacks, my hot anger will be aroused and there shall come a great earthquake in Israel v10:370; there will be wrath and anger to those who reject the truth and follow after evil v22:629; I trampled the nations in my anger and their blood has stained my garments v4:292, v6:295; his anger lasts but a moment, yet his favour lasts forever, Psalm 8 v3:445

animals (See also animals clean/unclean) all animals created by God v13:14, v16:341; animals named by Adam v9:15; pairs of every kind saved in ark v2:18; God to demand an accounting for the shedding of blood of any animal v23:18; Laban agrees to Jacob having all speckled and black animals v27:33; Joseph buys up all livestock of Egypt v20:44; no animals belonging to Israelites die during fifth plague of Egypt v40:54; boils to break out on men and animals throughout Egypt v42:54; Egyptians warned to shelter animals v50:55; all animals left out in fields destroyed by hail v53:55; firstborn of your animals will belong to me v7:58; firstborn Egyptian animals die v9:58; animals not to be worked on Sabbath day v22:64; commandments on v1-13:67; commandment on firstborn cattle and sheep v29:65, v24-26:99; compensation for injury by an animal v13-18:66; compensation for loss of v1-13:67; law regarding straying of v4:67; sexual acts with an animal an abomination v43:67, v12:115; flesh not to be eaten if torn by wild beasts v34:68; blood to be drained before eating v35:68, v38:79; do not interbreed different kinds of animals v37:68; animals used for sacrifice to be without defect v1:78; mother and her young not to be killed on same day v2:78; hand of offerer to be laid on animal's head as slaughtered v3:78; fat of an animal not to be eaten v36:79; clean and unclean animals defined by Lord v1-10:81; firstborn male of unclean animals must be redeemed v24:99; herds and flocks to increase if commandments obeyed v20:116; slaughter the animals properly on this stone before eating them v3:165; a sin against Lord to eating meat without first draining blood v4:165, v12:583; who knows if the spirit of an animal goes down into the earth v22:218; they roasted the animals over a fire as prescribed v35:312; even animals, birds and fish will die when I cut off the wicked v2:314, v12:328; can a leopard change its spots? v27:329; Nebuchadnezzar will examine the liver of an animal v3:364; flesh torn by wild animals not to be eaten v40:374; Nebuchadnezzar given mind of an animal, ate grass like an ox v13:390; you offer injured, crippled or diseased animals as sacrifices v13:430; cursed be he who vows an acceptable animal then sacrifices a blemished one v14:430; every forest animal is mine and the cattle on a thousand hills, Psalm 69 v4:456; praise the Lord wild animals and all cattle, Psalm 97 v14:462; a righteous man cares for his animals v5:469; Peter shown vision of unclean animals, told to kill and eat v8-9:577; rider given authority in last days to kill by sword, famine, plague and wild animals v8:467; birds and wild animals

to eat flesh of slain (at second coming) v27:371; I will rid the land of wild animals that my people may sleep in the forests in safety (during millennium) v29:369; the lion will eat grass as the ox (during millennium) v5:296; meat-eating animals to eat grass (during millennium) v22:293, v6:296

animals clean/unclean seven pairs of every clean animal and one pair every unclean animal taken into ark v2:18; Noah offers clean animals in sacrifice v19:18; clean and unclean animals defined by Lord v1-10:81; I saw portrey on the wall all kinds of crawling things and unclean animals v11:359; Peter shown vision of unclean animals, God can make unclean clean v7:9:577

Anna prophetess, testifies of Jesus v24:485

anointing I am the God of Bethel where you anointed a pillar v9:33; ingredients of fragrant anointing oil v40:70; anointing oil sacred v43:70; anointing of priests v1-3:72; take the anointing oil and anoint everything and it will be holy v25:76; do not leave Tabernacle or you will die, Jehovah's anointing oil is upon you v10:80, v3:84; Samuel took a flask of oil and poured it on Saul's head v30:162; David anointed king by Samuel in presence of brothers v14:167; I should not have done such a thing to my master, he is the Lord's anointed v2:173, v6:175, v8:182; David anointed king over tribe of Judah v22:183; David anointed king over all Israel v34:185; with my sacred oil I have anointed David my servant, Psalm 84 v2:460; I anointed you king over Israel and delivered you from Saul v10:190; should not Shimei be put to death, he cursed the Lord's anointed v8:197; David a man anointed by God, a composer of sweet psalms v20:201; Solomon anointed king over Israel by Zadok the high priest v17:201; be clothed in white and anoint your head with oil v16:219; anoint Jehu king over Israel, and Elisha to succeed you as prophet v25:229; Jehu anointed king v16:242; Joash anointed king v34:266; Lord calls yet to be born king Cyrus his anointed servant v4:303; Jesus anointed by Spirit of Lord God v25:306, v9:488; king of Tyre formerly anointed a beautiful cherubim in God's garden v17:367; 49 years until an anointed priest in Jerusalem v10:392; two olive branches two men anointed to serve the Lord v38:404; your lips have been anointed with grace, Psalm 60 v1:455; God has anointed you with oil of gladness, Psalm 60 v7:455; sinful woman anoints feet of Jesus with perfumed oil v32:495; Mary anoints Jesus with expensive perfumed oil v5-7:529, v7:555; you have been anointed by the Holy One and know the truth v22-27:674; Son's anointing teaches you all things v27:674

anointing the sick the Twelve anointed many sick people with oil and healed them v22:498; pray over and anoint sick with oil in name of the Lord, and the Lord shall raise him up v24-25:600

Antichrist See **Beast, Gog**

anxiety See **worry**

apollis Learned Jew with thorough knowledge of scriptures v2:586; knew only baptism of John v4:586; way of God explained more fully to v5:586; refuted Jews and proved from scriptures Jesus was Christ v7:587

apostles (See also disciples of Jesus) Jesus prays all night then chooses twelve apostles v2:491; names of the Twelve v3:491; apostles given authority to preach and heal v4:498; to be cared for by the people v7:498; to shake dust off feet when not welcomed v10:498; going out like sheep among wolves v11:498; apostles sent out on missions two by two v22:498; cast out demons and anoint sick with oil and heal them v22:498; apostles return from their missions v10:504; see Jesus walking on water, are terrified v30:505; not to be called Rabbi, Father or Master v19:506; not to reveal that Jesus is the Christ v14:508; saw glory of Jesus v6:542; Peter, James and John not to reveal transfiguration until Jesus risen from dead v33:508; apostles argue over which of them is greatest v4:509; saw man driving out demons in Jesus name and tried to stop him v28:511; whoever not against apostles is for them v29:511; given much, so much is expected v46:515; where two apostles on earth agree about anything asked for it will be done v33:518, v26:559; need to do more than duty alone to be rewarded v37:518; to judge twelve tribes of Israel v53:520; mother of James and John asks that her sons sit right and left of Jesus in his kingdom v71:520; not for Jesus to grant v74:520; other apostles indignant with James and John

v75:520; ask Jesus when Temple will be destroyed and what will be sign of his return v3-4:525; apostles to suffer and testify before kings v5:525; Holy Spirit to give them words to speak v9:525; to sit on thrones and judge twelve tribes of Israel v10:530; one to betray Jesus v12:530, v42:549; Jesus eats Last Supper with v3:557; Jesus to drink new wine with apostles in kingdom of God v17:530; Jesus washes feet of apostles at Last Supper v4:557; apostles also to wash one another's feet v11:557; to love one another as Jesus loved them v22:557; to follow Jesus later v24:557; world will hate v28:559; to testify of truth by power of Holy Spirit v34:559; will be killed by men who think they are offering a service to God v35:559; ask and you shall receive v6:560; cannot remain awake with Jesus v35:531; desert Jesus and flee v52:531; Peter and John find tomb empty v21:537; Jesus appears to apostles inside locked room v18:564; Thomas doubts resurrection of Jesus v23:564; Jesus shows himself to apostles on shore of lake Galilee v1:564; apostles unable to haul in net because of large number of fish v7:565; Jesus prepares breakfast for apostles v11:565; apostles to receive power from Holy Spirit v5:569; devote themselves to prayer v11:569; Matthias chosen to replace Judas v16:569; Holy Spirit descends on v1-2:569; speak in other languages as Spirit enables v2:570; some think apostles drunk v6:570; Peter testifies boldly of Jesus v7:570; crowd ask what they should do, Peter replies repent and be baptised v11-12:570; 3000 baptised and added to church that day v15:570; many miracles done by apostles v17:570; apostles worship Jesus on mountain in Galilee v61:538; preach good news everywhere, miraculous signs attend v65:538; Peter and John arrested, brought before Sanhedrin v2:571; ordered not to speak any more in name of Jesus v10:571; continue to testify powerfully of Jesus v17:571; imprisoned by Sadducees because of jealousy v16:572; freed by angel during night v17:572; brought before Sanhedrin, Peter testifies of Jesus v21-26:572; Jewish leaders enraged, want to put apostles to death v27:573; Gamaliel speaks up for apostles v28-32:573; apostles flogged then released v33:573; rejoice at being worthy to suffer v34:573; Peter and John sent that Samaritans might receive Holy Spirit v12:575; Barnabas introduces Saul to v23:577; we apostles suffer more than other men v44-49:608; Paul an apostle and has seen Jesus v1:612; apostles have right to food and drink v3:612; have right to take a wife along as do other apostles v3:612; God appointed first apostles, second prophets v9:613; Paul calls himself least of apostles v5:615; Paul worked harder than all other apostles v6:615; these boasters masquerade as apostles of Christ v26:621; church built on foundation of apostles and prophets v28:641

Arabs (See also Ishmael) God to make Abraham's son Ishmael into a great nation v25:26; Abraham gave gifts to his other six sons and sent them away to the land of the east v40:28; Ishmael had twelve sons and they settled east of Egypt v43:29; Solomon received revenues from all the Arabian kings v30:210; I am dark, like the tents of the Arabians v3:213; Arabs brought to Jehoshaphat 7700 rams and 7700 goats v6:263; Arabs raid Judah and carry off possessions and family of Jehoram v14:265; look to the Arabs of the desert v7:322; Arabian desert kingdoms to be attacked by Babylon v43:336; Arabia does business with you in lambs, rams and goats v32:367; Arabians have carried off your oxen and donkeys and put your servants to the sword v11:433; Paul preached in Arabia first v10:624

Ararat ark comes to rest on mountains of v11:18

Archangel See **Michael**
arguments See **quarrel**

ark (of Noah) (See also Noah) Noah commanded to build, description of v20-21:17; floated high above the earth v8:18; comes to rest on mountains of Ararat v11:18; people were eating, drinking and marrying up to day Noah entered the ark v7:518; by faith Noah built an ark to save his family v7:670

Ark of the Covenant Moses commanded to build Ark, dimensions of v12:69; carrying poles of v13:69; solid gold lid with winged angels v14:69; stone tablets of Law to be kept in v15:69; Lord to meet with Moses above Ark v16:69; Aaron's blossomed staff to be kept in front of v12:98; written copy of Law to be kept beside v2:117; Ark captured by the Philistines v8:158; placed in temple of Philistine god Dagon, image of Dagon falls and breaks v20-22:158; Philistines suffer severe

plagues because of Ark v23-28:159; Ark returned to Israel on cart pulled by two cows v29-36:159; cart stops in Levite field v5:159; Ark remains at Kiriath Jearim twenty years v10:160; David prepares to bring Ark to Jerusalem v16:186; transported by cart, Uzzah steadies Ark and is struck dead v18-21:186; David afraid to take Ark into City of David, takes to house of Levite v23:186; Levite's household blessed by Ark v25:186; David assigns Levites to carry Ark the way the Lord commanded v28:186; David sets up inside a tent in City of David v37:186; Ark carried up to newly built Temple v3:207; placed in Sanctuary of Temple v6:207; nothing in Ark but two tablets of stone v7:207; no Ark in Israel in days to come v8:323; seen in God's heavenly Temple v5:691

Armageddon demons gather kings of earth for great battle at v24:695; birds to eat flesh of those who fall v26:698

Artaxerxes son of Xerxes, becomes king of Persia v1:418; Samaritans write to Artaxerxes opposing returned Jewish exiles rebuilding walls of Jerusalem v3:418; Artaxerxes orders work to stop v12:419; Ezra the priest wins support of Artaxerxes v14:419; permits more exiles to return to Judah, provides money and food v17-27:419; appoints Nehemiah governor of Judah v15:423

Asa son of Abijah, becomes king of Judah v33:262; a righteous king, removes idolatrous altars, pillars and poles v1:262; prays to Lord for help when a million strong Ethiopian army invades Judah v6:262; a million Ethiopians killed by Asa's army v7:262; removes all idols from Judah v11:262; deposes queen mother because of her idolatry v12:263; replaces silver and gold and articles taken from Temple v13:263; summons all Judah to Jerusalem to offer sacrifice v14:263; Baasha king of Israel declares war on Asa v19:263; Asa goes to Syria for help instead of to Lord v20:263; Asa rebuked by Lord through Hanani the prophet v24:263; from now on will be at war v27:263; casts prophet Hanani into prison, inflicts cruelty on others v28:263; Asa afflicted with severe foot disorder v29:263; Asa dies and son Jehoshaphat becomes king v30:263; huge fire burned in his honour v31:263

Asaph Asaph and his kinsmen Levite singers and musicians v8:207; psalmist of Judah, psalm regarding envy of the wicked, Psalm 72:457; psalm of history of unfaithfulness of Israel, Psalm 74:457; Asaph's time of personal distress, Psalm 80 v1:459; revelation from Lord to Israel by, Psalm 76 v4-8:458; revelation from Lord to rulers of Israel, Psalm 77:458; prayers at destruction of the Temple Psalms 78-79:459

Asenath Egyptian wife of Joseph v21:41

Asher tribe of Israel's dying blessing upon – to be rich in food v28:45; first census of 41,500 v11:92; second census 53,400 v4:105; Moses' blessing upon – most blessed, strength will endure v28:119; land in Canaan assigned to by lot v11:129; 12,000 servants of God to be sealed from in last days v4:688

Asherah demon goddess, poles of among Canaanites to be cut down v9:75; bring the 400 prophets of Asherah who eat at Jezebel's table v11:227

Asherah poles All those among Canaanites to be cut down by Israelites v9:75; Gideon commanded to burn v21:137; Ahab makes v19:226; Asherah pole remained in Samaria v9:245; v20:258; Judah builds Asherah poles on hills and under green trees v7:261; Asherah pole made by queen mother, removed by King Asa v12:262; Jehoshaphat removed every Asherah pole from high places throughout Judah v3:263, v16:264; again worshipped by Judah after death of Jehoiaada v14:267; Lord to destroy witchcraft, images and idols and uproot Asherah poles v7:277; Hezekiah smashed the sacred stones and cut down the Asherah poles v6:285, v13:286; Manasseh sets up Asherah pole in Temple of the Lord v5:308; Manasseh removes pole from Temple v8:309; priests grind Asherah pole to dust and scatter over graves v4:311

Ashtoreth demon goddess, Israelites begin to worship v3:134; the Israelites put away their Ashtoreths v12:160; Solomon's has forsaken me and worshipped Ashtoreth v18:211; goddess of Sidon v10:311

Assyria Balaam's prophesy concerning v17:104; invades Israel, appeased with huge amount of silver v7:257; conquers regions of Gilead and Galilee, takes people into exile v12:257; allows Israel's king to remain in Samaria but must pay tribute

each year v13:257; Israel stops paying tribute to v16:257; besieges Samaria, royal city of Israel v17:258, v1:286; Samaria captured after three year siege, all survivors exiled to Assyria v18:258; settles other peoples in Samaria and other cities of Israel v23:258; bribed by Ahaz to attack Syria v29:282; conquers Syria and exiles people of Damascus v30:282; woe to king of, because of pride v8:287; Assyrian army to be punished by devastating plague v11:287; Sennacherib king of, captures many cities of Judah v1:298; Assyrians blaspheme Jehovah v6:299; Hezekiah pays huge ransom of gold for Assyrians to withdraw from Jerusalem v9:299; Lord rebukes king of Assyria, 185,000 Assyrian soldiers die during the night v29-33:300; Sennacherib returns home, put to death by his sons v34:300; capital Nineveh to be destroyed v9:312; Assyria to be punished by Lord v16:315; highway from Assyria to Egypt when Lord returns v16:291; Egyptians and Assyrians to worship together (during millennium) v16:291; Egypt, Assyria and Israel to be centres of worship of Jehovah (during millennium) v17:291

astrology sorcerers and astrologers will not save Babylon v14-16:304; each astrologer goes on in his error v16:304; the king summoned his magicians, enchanters, sorcerers, and astrologers v2:383, v6:390

Athaliah daughter of Ahab and Jezebel, mother of king Ahaziah of Judah v19, 266; sets about to kill entire royal family of Judah v24:266; rules Judah as queen mother v27:266; slain with the sword at Jehoiaada's command v39:266

atonement (See also gospel) I will go before the Lord, perhaps I can make atonement v1:74; atonement for unintentional sins v17:79; atonement for the Ark v20:80; for the high priest v20:80; for the people and Tabernacle v25:81; for uncleanness after childbirth v25:82; for menstrual and sexual uncleanness v28-40:82; atonement by Aaron halts plague v4-5:98; action of Phinehas makes atonement for Israelites v11:104; we have brought good articles to make atonement for ourselves v6:106; atonement for bloodshed must be made by the blood of the person who shed it v32:107; atonement for unsolved murder v23-26:113; guilt of Eli's house will never be atoned for by sacrifice or offering v16:158; Isaiah's sin atoned for by a hot ember to his lips v22:275; until your dying day this sin will not be atoned for v11:302; seventy years of tribulation are decreed to atone for wickedness v9:392; love and faithfulness atone for sin v3-4:472; God offered Jesus as a sacrifice of atonement v12:629; Jesus became a merciful high priest to atone for the sins of the people v14:667

Atonement day of on tenth day of seventh month each year v17:80; commandments regarding v18:80; a day of fasting and no work v33:81

avenger of blood laws regarding v24-32:107; appoint cities of refuge for protection against avenger of blood v15:129; is the king able to prevent the avenger of blood from destroying my son? v35:192

Azariah former name of Daniel's companion Abednego v5:383

Azariah (prophet) prophet, prophesies to Asa and men of Judah v9:262

Azariah (high priest)

high priest, confronts King Uzziah's when he unlawfully enters sanctuary of Temple v9:275

Baal demon god or gods, Midianite women invite Israelite men to attend sacrifices to v1:104; 24,000 Israelites die of plague for worshipping Baal v9:104, Psalm 83 v25:460; Balaam's advice turned Israel to Baal v8:105; Israelites begin to worship v3:134; Gideon commanded to tear down father's altar to Baal v21:137; if Baal is a god let him take his own vengeance v25:137; Israelites set up Baal as their god and regard Jehovah v9:139, v20:340; Israelites put away their Baals and Ashtoreths v12:160; Ahab builds temple to Baal in Samaria v18:226; 450 prophets of Baal challenged by Elijah to call down fire v13:227; prophets of Baal shout louder and cut themselves v21:227; put to sword at command of Elijah v31:228; still 7000 in Israel who have not bowed to Baal v26:229, v10:632; Joram got rid of Baal image his father made v18:233; all ministers of Baal put to death by Jehu v28:244; temple of Baal torn down and turned into latrine v30:244; Israel to be punished for days she burned incense to the Baals v19:250, v20:258; temple of

Baal torn down by Jehoiada and priest killed v41:266; Ahaz makes idols to worship Baal v2:281; Manasseh erects altars to Baal v5:308; I will cut off every person who has worshipped Baal v3:314; your prophets prophesied by Baal v5:322, v16:340; you worship Baal then stand before me in my house and say, we are safe v6:326; you have provoked me to anger by burning incense to Baal v5:328

Baasha kills Nadab and entire family of Jeroboam and becomes king of Israel v2:225; Baasha declares war on Judah v19:263; attack Baasha so he will withdraw from me v21:263; reigns twenty-four years then dies, son Elah becomes king v8:225; entire family Baasha of killed by Zimri v10:225; I will make your house like that of Jeroboam and of Baasha v15:231

Babel account of city and tower of v12-18:19; Lord confuses language of whole world at v18:20

Babylon (See also Babylon/Harlot (symbolic title of Rome)) city founded by Nimrod v11:19; Haran dies in Ur of Babylonia v11:20; Abram brought out of Ur of Babylonia by Jehovah v5:21; Israel in bondage to king of Babylon eight years v5:134; write like a woman in labour O Jerusalem, you will be exiled to Babylon v15:277; messengers from Babylon visit Hezekiah v22:301; Hezekiah's children to become eunuchs in palace of king of Babylon v27:301; sit in the dust O city of Babylon, no more to be called Queen of Kingdoms v8:303; taunt against king of v1-8:304; will show no mercy toward Judean exiles v11:304; sorcerers and astrologers will not save Babylon v14-16:304; Cyrus to overthrow Babylon like Sodom and Gomorrah v23-27:304; great brutality of Medes toward Babylon v31-33:304; King Manasseh taken prisoner to Babylon with hook in his nose v5:309; I am arousing the Babylonians, that ruthless, impetuous nation v3:316; a fearsome and dreaded people, gathering prisoners like sand v4:316; Babylonians are puffed up with pride and will perish v13-16:316; Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon invades Judah v1:329; Judah and surrounding nations to serve Babylon seventy years v7:333; afterward Babylon to be ruined v8:333; Egyptian army defeated by Babylonians v1:334; Babylon to invade and exile Egypt v7:334; Babylon to destroy Philistines v15:334; Babylon to lay waste and exile Moab v17:334; Babylon to scatter and exile Ammonites v27:335; Babylon to defeat Damascus of Syria v42:335; eventual capture of Babylon described v1-7:336; Babylon to have done to her as she has done to others v9-11:336; Babylon to attack Arabian desert kingdoms of east v43:336; city of Babylon to become uninhabited forever v14:337; flee from Babylon, remember Jehovah in distant Jerusalem v17:337; Judah surrenders to Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar v26:340; first exile to Babylon, 10,000 persons, Jehoiachin, his officials, nobles, craftsmen and army v28:341; by the rivers of Babylon we sat down and wept, Psalm 81 v1:459; exiles whom I sent away to Babylon are like these good figs v7:341; serve the king of Babylon and you will live v12:341; Jeremiah writes letter to first exiles in Babylon v2-13:342; nations can escape exile if they serve king of Babylon v22:342; Ezekiel called as a prophet in Babylonia v1:355; Daniel and his companions in Babylon trained for king's service v5:383; Daniel made governor over province of Babylon and head of all wise men v34:384; Daniel a counsellor to kings of Babylon for 66 years v36:384; Babylon will sink to rise no more v22:343; King Zedekiah of Judah rebels against Babylon v1:344; Babylonian armies of Nebuchadnezzar besiege Jerusalem v4:344; Babylonian armies temporarily withdraw to fight Egyptian army v16:344; armies of Babylon return and again besiege Jerusalem v1:346; Babylonians break through city wall, begin putting survivors to sword v2:347; Babylonians pursue Zedekiah and capture him v5:347; Jerusalem plundered, Temple, palace and houses burned v9-12:347; second exile, 832 survivors of Jerusalem taken to Babylon v13:348; people of Judah exiled in eleventh year of Zedekiah v2:322; all surrounding nations handed over to Babylon v17:341; Babylonians to next invade Egypt v28:349, v3:377; parable of two eagles v1-10:363; is not this the great Babylon I have built by my mighty power v18:386; Babylon overthrown by Persians, Darius becomes king v17:390; Babylonian exiles return to Judah v12:398; Darius reigns 35 years and dies, son Xerxes becomes king, rules over 127 nations v1:412; Babylonian raiding parties swept down and carried off your camels v13:433

Babylon/Harlot (symbolic title of Rome) John shown

Great Harlot who sits on many waters v1:695; Harlot the great city that rules over kings of earth v20:696; sits upon seven hills v11:696; waters represent many nations v17:696; Babylon the Great written on her forehead v6:695; drunk with blood of martyred saints v7:695; to receive fury of God's wrath v29:695; great Babylon to fall and become home for demons v2:696; merchants of earth grew rich from her luxuries v3:696; come out of her my people lest you share her sins v4:696; to be destroyed by plagues, famine and fire v8:696; rulers, merchants and seamen of earth will mourn over her v9-19:696; the Beast and kings will hate her, bring her to ruin v18:696; led astray the nations and shed blood of saints and prophets v25:697

Balaam non-Israelite prophet hired by Balak to curse Israel v1-14:101; forbidden by God to go with Moabites v8:102; when offered reward enquires of God a second time v11-13:102; no power to go beyond command of Jehovah v12:102; permitted by God to go v14:102; Lord displeased Balaam eager to go, sends angel to oppose him v16:102; donkey sees angel and turns aside v17:102; beats donkey in anger v19:102; Lord causes donkey to speak v20:102, v28:662; sees angel, warned to speak only words Lord tells him v23-27:102; first prophecy, offers sacrifice then blesses Israel v9-13:103; second prophecy, blesses Israel v20-25:103; third prophecy, Israel blessed v4-7:103; Balak angrily dismisses Balaam v8:103; prophesies regarding Moab and other nations v11-17:103; killed by Israelites in Midianite war v6:105; Balaam's advice turned Israel to Baal v8:105, v18:684; loved wealth of wickedness v28:662

Balak king of Moab, fears Israel, sends for Balaam the prophet v1-6:101; takes Balaam to a high place to curse Israel v3:102; angrily dismisses Balaam when he blesses Israel v8:103; people of follow Balaam's advice, turn Israel to Baal v8:105, v18:684

baptism people go to John the Baptist confessing their sins and being baptised v4:487; Jesus baptised by John in Jordan river v18:488; proper for us to do this to fulfil the Law v19:488; no one can see kingdom of God unless born again v2:544; disciples of Jesus baptise but not Jesus v16-18:544; apostles commanded to baptise and teach all nations v63:538; 3000 baptised in one day v15:570; Philip baptises Ethiopian eunuch v21-33:575; jailer and family baptised that same night v31:584; baptism for dead practised v11:615; symbol of burial of old self, and rebirth of new v4:630; you were buried with Christ in baptism v12:636; Noah's rescue from flood a symbol of v17:659

Barak called by Lord to defeat Sisera v4-17:135; will not go without prophetess Deborah v6:135; rebuked by Deborah for lack of faith, to be dishonoured by Lord v7:135; Lord gives army of Sisera into hands of Barak, but Sisera killed by a woman v9-17:135

Barnabas introduces Saul to apostles v23:577; a good man, full of faith and the Holy Spirit v12:579; brings Saul to Antioch to assist him v13:579; called on mission with Saul by Holy Spirit v4:580; proclaimed a god by people of Lystra v8:582; takes Mark as companion v23:583; praised by the churches for his service to gospel v9:619; cousin of Mark v3:637

barrenness Abram's wife Sarai was barren v1:22, v10:670; Isaac prayed to Lord on behalf of his wife Rebekah for she was barren v1:29; Jacob's wife Rachel was barren v1:32; no woman will miscarry or be barren if you worship Jehovah your God v10:75, v27:110; his other wife would tease Hannah because of her barrenness v4:156; Hannah makes a vow to the Lord to grant her a son v7:156; a barren womb is never satisfied v6:474; Elizabeth barren and advanced in years, gives birth to John the Baptist v2-30:482; the time will come when you will say, blessed are the barren women v42:534

Baruch scribe to Jeremiah v3:337, v24:338; reads Jeremiah's words to people when Jeremiah banned from speaking v4:337; becomes sorrowful and weary v7:337; Lord promises to protect life v8:337; city officials have Baruch read scroll of Jeremiah to them v12:338; ordered arrested by king but cannot be found v20:338; taken to Egypt with Jeremiah the prophet and the king's daughters v24:349

Bathsheba wife of Uriah the Hittite v2:189; David commits adultery with, becomes pregnant v3-4:189; David murders

husband of Bathsheba v13-18:189; David marries Bathsheba and a son is born, but dies soon after v2-17:190; gives birth to a second son, Solomon v27:190; informs David that Adonijah has become king instead of Solomon v11:201

battle See war

beard do not shape the edges of your beard v36:35; on the seventh day of purification he must shave his hair, eyebrows and beard v21:83; Hanun seized David's officials and shaved off each man's beard v4:188; Mephibosheth had not trimmed his beard from the day the king left v11:197; Joab took Amasa by the beard with his right hand to kiss him v7:198; cities of Moab shall be ruined, every head shaved, every beard cut off v1:290; I give my cheeks to those who pull out my beard v5:305; son of man, take a sharp sword and shave off your hair and your beard v25:358; Ezra is appalled and tears his clothes and pulls hair from his head and beard v3:420; like precious oil poured on the head, until it runs down on the beard, Psalm 18 v2:447

Beast (See also Antichrist, Gog) Beast of the sea to be destroyed at second coming of Lord v10:289; seen as boastful horn in Daniel's vision v9:387; boastful horn destroyed v14:388; a blasphemous oppressive ruler, to arise in last days v24:388; Desolator to arise during last seven years of age v15:392; mighty king of end days, will blaspheme God of gods v1:395; to be successful until decreed wrath completed v2:395; power and wealth will be his god v3:396; will distribute land to make wealthy those who acknowledge him v4:396; to attack Egypt with chariots, cavalry and great fleet of ships and invade many lands en route, like a flood v6:396; he and his armies to be destroyed as they camp near Jerusalem v9:396; will oppose and exalt himself over God v9:604; will even take over Temple, proclaiming himself God v10:604; to be revealed at end time v11:604; Jesus to destroy in splendour of his coming v12:604; will work counterfeit miracles and wonders v13:605; whoever closes heart to truth will be deceived by v14:605; you have heard the Antichrist is coming v20:674; the Dragon (Satan) gave the Beast power and great authority v3:692; fatal head wound healed v4:692; image with power of speech set up in honour of v5-6:692; whole world worships Satan by following Beast v5:692; the Beast to exercise authority for three and a half years v7:692; blasphemes God v8:692; given power over the nations v8:692; all whose names not written in Book of Life will worship Beast v10:692; no one able to buy or sell without name or number of Beast in hand or forehead v8:693; name of the Beast adds up to 666 v9:693; whoever worships or receives mark of Beast will bear God's fury v12:693; the Beast once lived but now is dead, will rise again out of Pit v9:695; unclean spirit comes from mouth of Beast to gather kings for great battle at Armageddon v22-24:695; seven heads of the Beast represent seven hills and seven kings v11:696; ten horns are ten future kings who will give their power to Beast v14:696; Beast and False Prophet captured and cast into Lake of Fire v23:698; the Beast, devil and False Prophet to be in torment day and night forever v12:698

Beatitudes See Sermon on the Mount

bed Reuben no longer to excel, for he defiled his father's bed (by adultery) v17:45; frogs will come into your bedroom and leap on your bed v15:53; any bed he lies on, or anything he sits on will be unclean v29:82, v38:82; iron bed of King Og nine cubits long v17:101; Michal assists David's escape by putting an image in his bed v28:170; bring David to me in his bed if necessary, that I may kill him v30:170; they stabbed the king in the stomach as he was lying on his bed v27:185, v31:185; all night long on my bed my heart desired the one I loved v7:214; Elijah carried the boy to the upper room and laid him on his bed v33:227; Ahab sullen and angry and lay on his bed and refused to eat v3:231; Jehovah says you will not leave the bed you are lying on and will surely die v5:233; Elisha saw the boy lying dead on his bed v24:239; you lie on beds inlaid with ivory and lounge on your couches v25:255; two servants of Joash killed him on his bed v20:267; woe to men who plan evil on their beds and at morning's light carry it out v26:27, Psalm 41 v2:132; forsaking me you share your bed with the gods you love v17:308; in you are those who dishonour their fathers' bed v14:364; I Daniel saw a vision as I lay on my bed at night v1:387; she would leave the harem and spend the night in the king's bed-chamber v11:413; when I think my bed will comfort

me, you terrify me with dreams and visions v22:435; I have perfumed my bed and spread it with coloured linen, come, let us take our fill of love until morning v9:465; qualities of a noble wife, she makes decorative coverings for her bed v18:465; how long will you lie there you sluggard, when will you rise from your bed? v44:466, v9:474; arise, take up your bed and walk home v16:490; my door is already locked and my children are with me in bed v4:513; on that night (of second coming) two will be sleeping in one bed, one shall be taken and the other left v10:518; they carried their sick into the streets on beds so that Peter's shadow might fall on some as he passed by v14:572; Jesus Christ heals you, arise and make your bed v30:577; marriage should be honoured by all and the marriage bed kept undefiled v11:671; I will cast her on a bed of sickness and those who have committed adultery with her will also suffer intensely v25:684

bells embroider pomegranates around lower hem with gold bells between them v16:71; the bells will be heard when Aaron enters the Holy Place v17:71; in those days Holy to Jehovah will be inscribed on the bells of the horses v30:409

Belshazzar last king of Babylon, gives a great banquet v1:390; uses goblets from Lord's Temple to drink wine v2:390; hand appears and writes on wall v4:390; wise men cannot read writing v7:390; Belshazzar becomes more fearful and face grows paler v7:390; Daniel brought in to read writing v10:390; rebukes Belshazzar for his arrogance and idolatry v12-15:390; Babylon overthrown that night, Belshazzar slain, Darius takes over kingdom v17:390

Benaiah commander over David's bodyguards v5:187; valiant warrior, struck down two of Moab's best men and killed a lion v16:200; struck down an Egyptian five cubits tall v17:201; remains loyal to David v6:201; assists in anointing Solomon king of Israel v17:210; puts Adonijah to death on Solomon's orders v9:203; puts Joab to death on Solomon's orders, becomes commander of army in his place v15:203; puts Shimei to death on Solomon's orders v21:203

Ben-Hadad king of Syria, invades Israel v1:229; swears to destroy Samaria v8:230; Ahab's men inflict heavy losses on v17:230; Ben-Hadad again invades Israel with vast army v21:230; Lord again defeats the Syrians for saying he was not a God of the plains v23-25:230; Ahab spares life of Ben-Hadad v26-31:230; sends to Elisha to ask if he will recover from his illness v4:242; murdered by Hazael v12:242

Benjamin second son of Jacob (Israel) and Rachel, birth of v23:37; Joseph demands Benjamin be brought to Egypt v10:41; food portion five times greater v11:42; Joseph's cup found in grain sack v19:42; accompanies brothers on second trip to Egypt v31:42; Joseph throws his arms around and weeps v31:43

Benjamin tribe of Israel's dying blessing upon – a ravenous wolf v35:45; first census of 35,400 v11:92; second census 45,600 v4:105; Moses' blessing upon – loved and shielded by Lord v19:119; land in Canaan assigned to by lot v6:129; unable to dislodge Jebusites from fortified part of Jerusalem v6:133; support men of Gibeah who raped and murdered a concubine v25:148; cut down 40,000 Israelites in battle v29-31:148; finally defeated by rest of Israelites, all but 600 die v23-42:148; wives found for 600 survivors ch14:149; great sorrow in Israel for loss of v1:149; King Saul a Benjamite v21:161; tribe not included in census taken by Joab v7:198; Judah and Benjamin gathered to war against Israel v38:212; Asa had army of 280,000 Benjamites v14:262; families of Judah, Benjamin and Levites return to Jerusalem from exile v4:398; Mordecai and Esther Benjamites v4:413; Paul a Benjamite v9:632, v9:47; 12,000 servants of God to be sealed from tribe in last days v4:688

Bethel Abram builds altar near v21:20; Jacob anoints a stone pillar at Luz and renames the town Bethel v11:31; I am the God of Bethel where you anointed a pillar v9:33; Mordecai commanded to return to Bethel and build an altar to God v17:37, v21:37; God Almighty appeared to me at Bethel and blessed me v6:44; Bethel taken from Canaanites and put to sword v13-15:133; Ark of God kept at Bethel v27:148; Jeroboam sins by setting up a golden calf at Bethel v3:223; prophet from Judah curses king and false priests at Bethel v8-13:224; the old prophet picked up the prophet's body and brought him back to Bethel to bury v29:224; school of prophets located at v21:233; Elisha mocked by young boys on road leading into v5:236; fine houses of,

adorned with ivory will be destroyed v16:255; go to Bethel and sin for this is what you love to do v24:255; Bethel will be reduced to nothing v6:255; go away you seer, do not prophesy any more at Bethel v17:256; Bethel calf altar worshippers to be destroyed v26:257; priest sent from exile in Assyria to teach new settlers how to worship Jehovah v26:258; Bethel calf altar demolished by King Josiah v11:311; Israel became ashamed of Bethel v24:335

Bethlehem Israel's wife Rachael dies near and is buried 25:37; Naomi and Ruth return to Bethlehem v9:151; Samuel sent to Bethlehem to anoint David king v2:167; three of David's warriors break through Philistine lines to draw water from well at Bethlehem v12:200; out of you Bethlehem will come one who is to rule over Israel 1:277; Joseph and Mary went to Bethlehem as they belonged to house of David v6:484, v3:486; Jesus born in stable at 7:484; Herod orders all infant boys in Bethlehem district killed v10:486; does not the scripture say Christ will come from Bethlehem? v38:550

Bildad one of three friends of Job v25:434; gives opinions as to why Job is suffering v1:435, v9:436; Jehovah rebukes v30:442

Bilham maidservant of Rachael given to Jacob as wife v8:32; bears Jacob two sons Dan and Naphtali v9:10:32; Reuben commits adultery with v26:37

birds birds created by God on fifth day v10:14; green plants food for v18:15; seven pairs of every kind to be kept alive in ark v23:17, v2:18; laws regarding bird offerings v7:8:78; blood of birds not to be eaten v39:79; clean and unclean birds defined v9:81; used in cleansing of infectious person v17:83; mother bird not to be killed with her young v25:114; Rizpah would not let birds near the bodies of her sons v13:187; ravens feed Elijah the prophet v23:226; Lord knows every bird, all the earth is his, Psalm 69 v4:456; behold the birds of the air, they do not sow, reap or store away in barns v30:493; no sparrow falls to the ground without will of the Father v15:498; Peter sees large sheet let down to earth containing birds of prey v8:577; birds to eat flesh of those who fall at Armageddon in last days v15:371, v26:371, v20-26:698; there will be peace between my people and birds of the air (during millennium) v24:250

birthright (See also firstborn) Esau sells to Jacob v10-12:29, v28:31

bishop presiding leader of a church, Titus instructed to appoint in every town v3:648; to aspire to be a bishop is noble v1:651; qualities of listed v4-5:648; not to be a lover of money v2:651; must manage own family well v3:651; not to be recent convert v4:651; must have good reputation with those outside church v5:651; faithful bishops worthy of their keep v11:652; two or three witnesses required to accuse v13:652; bishop who sins to be rebuked publicly v13:653; bishops to be shepherds of flock v1:660; not to serve for gain v2:660

blasphemy blasphemer stoned to death outside camp v14:85; all day long my name is blasphemed v12:297; underlings of the Assyrian king blaspheme the Lord v19:299; this man (Jesus) speaks blasphemy, only God can forgive sins v14:490; whoever blasphemes against the Holy Spirit will never be forgiven 30:501; we are going to stone you for blasphemy for you claim to be as God v7:554, v10:554; false witnesses testify against Jesus saying, this man never ceases to blaspheme v11:573; high priest angrily accuses Jesus of blasphemy v8:532; Paul formally tried to force saints to blaspheme v25:593; I handed these men over to Satan that they may learn not to blaspheme v14:651; these sinful men blaspheme in matters they do not understand v25:662; blasphemous oppressive ruler to arise in last days v25:388, v1:395; the Beast had seven heads and on each head a blasphemous name v1:692; Beast blasphemed God and those in heaven v8:692; the woman sat upon a scarlet beast covered with blasphemous names v3:695

blessings (specific) God blessed Adam and Eve saying, be fruitful and multiply v2:14, v16:15; God blessed the seventh day and made it holy v20:15; God blessed Noah and his sons saying, be fruitful and multiply v20:18; Noah blesses his sons Shem and Japheth v4:19; Abraham is blessed to bear a son in his old age v20:23; Ishmael is blessed to become a great nation v24:23; the Lord blesses Abraham that all nations on earth be blessed through him v17:20, v15:24; Abraham is

blessed by Melchizedek priest of God v19:21; Rebekah blessed by her family to increase to thousands upon thousands v33:28; Lord reaffirms to Isaac his father Abraham's blessing v14:29; Jacob steals his brother Esau's blessing from his father Isaac v2-22:30; Isaac blesses Esau with a lesser blessing v31:31; Lord affirms Abraham's blessing on Jacob v8:31, v6:44; an angel blesses Jacob, changes his name to Israel v14-17:35; Israel blesses Joseph's sons Ephraim and Manasseh v12-13:44; Israel blesses the twelve tribes v17-35:45; tribe of Levi blessed and set apart to Lord v23:74; Israelites blessed with health and long life if obedient to Jehovah v10:75; Balaam blesses Israelites v9-26:103; Moses blesses twelve tribes v13-28:119; Eli blesses barren Hannah to bear children v20:157; Jesus blesses his apostles v53:519

blessings (general) all nations on earth blessed through Abraham v17:20, v15:24, v15:29; Isaac planted crops and reaped a hundred fold for the Lord blessed him v21:29; Laban kissed his grandchildren and daughters and blessed them v40:34; the Lord blessed the Egyptian both in house and field because of Joseph v3:39; Israel then blessed Pharaoh v15:44; God blessed the midwives and gave them families of their own v8:50; Pharaoh asks Moses and Aaron to bless him v17:57; make me an altar to sacrifice offerings and I will bless you v21:64; I will send you such a blessing in sixth year that the land will yield enough for three years v41:65; the priests will put my name on the Israelites and I will bless them v32:73; list of blessings from the Lord if commandments kept v1-7:87; Balaam told not to curse Israel for they are blessed v8:102; God has blessed them and I cannot revoke it v21:103; if you cannot curse them at least do not bless them v26:103; Moses lists blessings if Israel fully obeys commandments v15-25:116; most blessed of all women who dwell in tents is Jael v22:136; may Jehovah bless you v4:152; David blesses Abigail for her good judgement v22:175; Lord blesses household of Obed-Edom while Ark in his house v24:186; Solomon stood and blessed the people in a loud voice v30:208; the people blessed king Solomon and went away joyful v35:208; blessed is he who trusts in the Lord, he will never fail to bear fruit v2:331; blessed is the man who keeps the Sabbath day holy and does no wrong v13:294; blessed are all who wait for Jehovah, a God of justice v22:298; blessed is he who trusts in the Lord, he shall be like a tree planted beside water v2:331; from this day forward I will bless you v32:400; I have blessed Israel, but Esau I have cursed v3:429; if you do not honour my name O priests I will curse your blessings v15:430; prove me and see if I will not pour you out a blessing so great there will not be room enough to receive it (full tithe) v13:431; all nations shall call you blessed, for yours will be a delightful land v15:431; see how the arrogant are blessed and evildoers prosper v18:431; have you not blessed Job, that his flocks and herds are spread throughout the land? v8:433; the Lord has given and the Lord has taken away, blessed be the name of the Lord v16:433; blessed is the man whom God corrects v11:434; the Lord blessed the latter part of Job's life more than the first v37:442; blessed are all who take refuge in Jehovah, Psalm 14 v6:446; blessed he who has regard for the weak, the Lord will deliver him from trouble and bless him on his sickness, Psalm 25 v1:448; blessed is he in whose spirit there is no deceit, Psalm 28 v1:449; blessed is the nation whose God is Jehovah, Psalm 39 v3:451; the righteous are generous, therefore their children will be blessed, Psalm 58 v7:454; blessings and prosperity are yours if you revere the Lord, Psalm 63 1:455; blessed is he whose hope is in the Lord, Psalm 92 v3:462; when the Lord blesses a man with wealth he adds no sorrow with it v11:466; my son, blessed is the man who finds wisdom v1:467; the Lord blesses the household of a righteous man v3:469, v17:469; blessed are the children of a man who has led a blameless life v13:473; sons are a gift from the Lord, blessed the man who has a quiver full v18:473; Sermon on the Mount, those who are blessed v7-16:491; as you enter the home give it your blessing v9:498; blessed is he who believes in me v5:499; blessed are those who hear the word of God and obey v40:501; invite the poor, lame and blind, then you will be blessed at the resurrection of the righteous v27:516; blessed is he who comes in the name of Jehovah v22:521, v12:556; the King will say to those on his right, come you blessed of my Father v25:528; Jesus lifted up his hands and blessed his disciples v58:538; we have received blessing after blessing from the fullness of Jesus Christ v7:542; blessed are those who have not seen, yet have

BLINDNESS

believed v28:564; it is more blessed to give than to receive v23:589; God is able to provide you every blessing in abundance v22:620; those who have faith are blessed along with Abraham, the man of faith v5:624; all things work together for good for those who love God v10:631; the Lord richly blesses all who call on him v3:632; bless those who persecute you v11:633, v7:659; the Father has blessed us with every spiritual blessing in heaven, through Christ v3:641; even if you do suffer for doing good, you will be blessed v11:659; blessed are the dead who die in the Lord v16:694; blessed and holy are they who have part in the first resurrection v5:698; blessed is he who believes in book of Revelation v2:700; Israel will come trembling to Jehovah and his blessings in the latter days v29:250; Israel will a blessing on the earth, along with Egypt and Assyria (during millennium) v17:291; my chosen ones shall be a people blessed by the Lord (during millennium) v20:293, v30:369, v19:370

blindness sexual deviants in Sodom struck with a blindness v10:24; Isaac was now old and had become blind v2:30; do not put a stumbling block in front of the blind v12:64; do not offer a blind animal as a sacrifice v31:79, v7:430; a blind man not to serve as a priest v8:85; cursed is the person who leads the blind astray on the road v7:115; Eli was now ninety-eight years old and blind v13:158; Lord blinds Syrian army to reality v11:241; eyesight of wild donkeys failing for lack of pasture v4:329; Nebuchadnezzar blinds Zedekiah's eyes v7:347; Lord gives sight to the blind, Psalm 92 v6:462; Jesus heals two blind men v58:497; Jesus heals a blind and dumb demon-possessed man v18:501; Jesus heals a blind man v5:507; the blind and the lame came to Jesus and he healed them v1:521; Jesus heals a blind man named Bartimaeus v14:521; Jesus heals a man blind from birth, Pharisees disbelieve ch9:551; who sinned, this man or his parents that he was born blind? v1:551; can a demon open the eyes of the blind? v47:553; Paul stricken with blindness v7:576; Ananias heals Saul's blindness v16:576; Elymas the sorcerer struck blind for opposing word of God v9:580; then will the eyes of the blind be opened (during millennium) v20:295

blindness spiritual those who make idols are blind and ignorant v10:303; Israel's watchmen are blind and lack knowledge v10:308; my rulers walk around blindly while the nation crumbles, Psalm 77 v3:458; they are blind guides, if one blind man leads another blind man, both will fall into a pit v15:506; woe to you blind guides v35:525; blind fools v36:525; I have come into the world that the blind may see and those who claim to see may become blind v30:552; we are not blind to Satan's schemes v35:619; he who claims to be in the light but hates a brother is blinded by darkness v14:674; you say, I am rich and prosperous, but you are wretched, pitiful, poor, blind and naked v51:685

blood of Jesus because of the blood of my covenant I shall set free the prisoners from Sheol v8:407; whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has Eternal Life v34:549, v6:674, v6:682; Jesus gives wine to apostles in remembrance of his blood and the forgiveness of sins v16:530, v19:613; Jesus sweats blood in great anguish v34:530; I am innocent of the blood of this man v36:534; his blood be upon us and upon our children v37:534; a soldier pierced Jesus with a spear, bringing a sudden flow of blood and water v19:563; is not the cup we bless a sharing in the blood of Christ? v22:612; whoever partakes of Lord's Supper unworthily guilty of sinning against blood of the Lord v21:613; Jesus reconciled all things through his blood shed on the cross v15:636; we have forgiveness of our sins through blood of Jesus v6:641, v2:670; purified by blood of Jesus Christ v2:658, v16:658, v2:670; Jesus took upon himself flesh and blood v13:667; not possible for animal blood to take away sins v51:669; with your blood you redeemed us for God from every nation v21:686; these are they who have washed their robes white in the blood of the Lamb v9:688; blood will stain Lord's garments at second coming v14:292, v15:698

blood (see also bloodshed, blood of Jesus) your brother Abel's blood cries to me from the ground v9:16; blood must be drained from meat before eating v22:18, v35:68, v38:40:79; after all he is our own flesh and blood v23:38, v11:139; Joseph's brothers dip his coat in goat's blood v26:38; all water in Egypt turned to blood v10:53, Psalm 83 v7:460; blood of Passover lamb to be sprinkled on door frames v10:12:56,

CONCORDANCE

v21:671; blood of adulterer and adulteress will be on own heads when put to death v41:47; blood of covenant made with Lord sprinkled on people by Moses v7:68; altar and priests purified by blood of bull v4-16:72; only priests to sprinkle blood v4:78; penalty for consuming blood v39:79; the Tabernacle, Ark and sins of people atoned for by blood of goat v24-26:81; infectious person cleansed by blood of bird v18:83; contaminated house cleansed by blood of a bird v10:84; Saul orders his men not to sin against Lord by eating meat without draining blood v2:165; is not this water the blood of these men who went at the peril of their lives? v13:200; priests sprinkle the blood of slaughtered lambs that Levites passed to them from the people v4:286; I shall make your oppressors drunk with their own blood v24:306; I passed by and saw you lying there, kicking in your blood (parable) v9:362; Jesus sweats blood in great anguish v34:530; I have betrayed innocent blood v22:532; it is against the Law to put this into the treasury, for it is blood money v25:532; potter's burial field bought with money of Judas called Field of Blood v26:532, v13:569; abstain from blood and sexual immorality v16:583; your blood be upon your own heads, from now on I will only teach the Gentiles v6:586; I am innocent of the blood of all men v17:589; flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God v28:616; our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against powers of darkness, the spiritual forces of evil v17:643; a third of the sea turned blood red v9:689; two prophets of last days have power to turn water into blood v15:690; sea became like the blood of a dead man, every living thing in the sea died v12:694; rivers and springs of water became blood v13:694; they have shed the blood of your saints and you have given them blood to drink v14:694; woman drunk with blood of the saints who were martyred v7:695, v26:697; blood will stain Lord's garments at second coming v14:292, v15:698; birds and wild animals to drink blood of leaders of earth v27:371; blood flowed out of the press, rising as high as a horse's bridle v24:694; blood to be sprinkled against altar in millennial Temple v11:373; only Levite priests descended of Zadok permitted to offer blood sacrifices in millennial Temple v30:374

bloodshed I shall demand an accounting for your own blood, and from every animal v23:18, v2:357; blood of a man guilty of murder to be shed v25:18, v32:107; you shall not murder (sixth commandment) v24:64, v4:326, v2:338, v12:339; whoever kills a thief during daylight guilty of bloodshed v27:67; avenger of blood may kill without guilt of murder v2-28:107, v15:129, v35:192; a murderer must be put to death v30:107; bloodshed pollutes the land v31:107; build a protective railing around your roof so as not to incur blood guilt v7:113; my lord will not have the burden of needless bloodshed on his conscience v21:175; your blood be upon your own head, your own mouth has testified against you v8:182; Joab stabbed him in the stomach to avenge blood of his younger brother Asahel, v17:184; get out you man of blood, you scoundrel v36:194; Amasa lay in his blood in the middle of the road v9:198; David not to build Temple as he has shed much blood v28:199; send Joab's grey head down to Sheol in blood v33:202; prophets of Baal shout and cut themselves until blood flows v21:227; where the dogs licked up Naboth's blood, dogs will lick up your blood also v14:231, v38:233; the water looked red, like blood to the Moabites at a distance v18:237; destroy the house of Ahab to avenge the blood of my prophets v17:242; blood of Jezebel spattered the wall as the chariot horses trampled her to death v5:243; bloodshed follows bloodshed v1:250; I will pardon their blood guilt v21:273; men lie in wait to shed blood, not one upright man remains v7:276; your hands are full of blood v6:283; Jehovah looked for justice but saw bloodshed v16:283; Manasseh shed so much innocent blood he filled Jerusalem 8:308; if you put me to death you will bring guilt of innocent blood upon yourselves v14:326; you have filled this valley with the blood of innocent children v29:332; the sword will devour until it has quenched its thirst with blood v5:334, v13:407; a curse on him who is lax in doing the work of the Lord and keeps his sword from blood v19:334; Jerusalem, city of bloodshed v9:364; in Jerusalem are lying men, eager to shed blood v17:365; exiled priests wander aimlessly through foreign streets, so defiled with blood no one dare touch them v43:379; O Lord, protect me from bloodthirsty men, Psalm 5 v1:445; save me from blood guilt O Lord, Psalm 23 v8:448; do I drink the blood of goats? Psalm 69 v5:456; the Lord hates hands

that shed innocent blood v5:468; some told Jesus about the Galileans whose blood Pilate shed v1:515; this generation accountable for blood of all prophets, from Abel to Zechariah v38:525; Pilate washes hands of innocent blood of Jesus v36:534; blood of Jesus upon Jews v37:534; you have not yet resisted to the shedding of your blood v34:671; how long Almighty Lord until you avenge our blood? v10:687; mountains to be soaked with blood of invaders (at second coming) v31:289; I will bring distress upon all peoples, their blood shall be poured out like dust v4:315; I shall execute my judgement with plague and bloodshed v14:371

Boaz owner of barley field in which Ruth gleaned v3:152; shows kindness to Ruth v7:152; asked by Ruth to marry her v23:152; negotiates for Ruth at town gate v1:153; marries Ruth v9:153

body Rachel shapely in body and beautiful v22:32; Joseph's body embalmed and kept in a coffin in Egypt v47:46; cutting and tattooing of body forbidden v36:65; whoever touches body of dead person will be unclean seven days v18:82, v3:92, v6:92; commandments on bodily injury v4:15:66; hanging body offensive to God v6:113; his arms are rods of gold, his body polished ivory v5:214; remember God before silver cord is severed and your body returns to dust v31:221; lion had not eaten prophet's body v28:224; he stretched himself out upon him and the dead boy's body grew warm v25:239; beneath his robes the king wore sackcloth on his body v23:241, v21:287; maggots now the covering of your body v5:305, v20:435; his body glowed like a golden gem v3:393; I prefer death than this body of mine v22:435; my skin grows black and peels, my body burns with fever v41:438; reverse the Lord and shun evil, this will bring health to your body v1:474; a heart at peace gives health to the body v6:474; better to lose one part of your body than for your whole body to be thrown into Gehenna v36:492; fear not those who can only destroy the body v14:498; this is my body given for you, do this in remembrance of me v15:530, v18:613; the temple he spoke of was his own body v14:543; the body of Judas burst open and his intestines spilled out v13:569; they went to the tomb but did not find body of Jesus v31:537; the body without the spirit is dead v18:599; body not meant for sexual immorality, but for the Lord v24:610; shall I unite my body with a harlot, never v26:610; your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit v30:610; a wife's body belongs also to her husband, and the husband's to his wife v2:610; I discipline and master my body v15:610; the foot or ear cannot say, I do not belong to the body v6:613; varying degrees of glory in resurrected bodies v20:24:616; if there is an earthly body there is also a spiritual body v26:616; our mortal body will be clothed with immortality v29:616; whether in my body or out of my body I could not tell v46:621; my body waged war against my spirit v20:630; a husband ought to love his wife as if she were his own body v5:643; Jesus will transform our lowly bodies to become like his glorious body v19:647; Jesus bore our sins in his body on the tree v31:658; I will soon lay aside my body v10:662

bones Eve created from Adam's rib bone v11:15; not one bone of Passover lamb to be broken v7:56, v20:563; anyone who touches a human bone unclean seven days v20:82, v20:84; dead man came back to life when his body touched Elisha's bones v22:245; idolatrous hilltop shrines defiled with human bones v10:311; the word of the Lord like fire in Jeremiah's bones, cannot hold it in v46:333; Ezekiel sees valley of dry bones resurrected back to life v1-10:369; the lions immediately overpowered them and crushed their bones v16:391; David's bones in agony because of his sin, Psalm 26 v1-2:449; a wife who shames her husband is like decay to his bones v8:465; reverse the Lord and shun evil, this will bring you health, and marrow to your bones v1:474; an envious heart wastes the bones v13:474; pleasant words are healing to the bones v15:474, v17:474; hypocrites, you are like whitewashed tombs, outwardly beautiful but inside full of dead men's bones v33:525; touch me and see, a spirit has not flesh and bones as you see I have v45:538; not one of Jesus' bones broken v20:563; searchers of human bones for burial to be sent out after second coming v25:371

book of Law future kings of Israel to write out Law and study it daily v16:111; Moses writes commandments on scroll (becomes book of Law) v1:117; book of Law kept beside the Ark v2:117; Law to be read out to people every seven years

v4:117; Joshua commanded to study book of Law day and night, if so he will have success in all he does v3:121; Joshua read out every word of the Law in the presence of all the people v4:126; Israelites to be very careful to obey all that is written in book of Law of Moses v5:130; priests and Levites teach book of Law to people in towns of Judah. v4:263; Joash anointed king and copy of the Law placed in his hand v34:266; compare what mediums say, to the written Law of God, no light in their words v6:284; book of Law found by high priest in Temple, read to king Josiah v18:311; book of Law read to people by Josiah v27:312; returned exiles organise priests and Levites as written in Law of Moses v4:409; when Ezra opened the book of Law all the people stood up v3:426; people weep as they listen to words of the Law v6:427; I have not come to abolish the Law, but to fulfil it v11:494, v31:631, v13:636; Jesus asks teacher of the Law, what is written in the Law? v20:512; did not Moses give you the Law, yet not one of you keeps it v14:549, v46:574

Book of Life Moses asks Lord to blot him out of, if Israelites not forgiven v2:74; names of those who continue to pray written in v19:431; may they who hate me be blotted out of, Psalm 44 v9:452; my fellow workers whose names are in Book of Life v1:647; I will never blot out his name from v36:685; all whose names not written in will worship Beast in last days v10:692; another book opened, the Book of Life v16:699; anyone whose name not found in, cast into Lake of Fire v19:699; only those whose names written in Book of Life will enter New Jerusalem v27:700

books of making many books there is no end v4:221; court of judgement was seated and the books were opened v12:388; the dead were judged according to what they had done, as recorded in the books v15-17:699

booths Israelites to live in booths during feast of Tabernacles v6:85, v10:427; the people built themselves booths from tree branches and lived in them during the week of the Feast of Tabernacles v11:427

boundary stone cursed is he who moves a boundary stone v6:115, v8:472

Branch the I am going to utilise my servant the Branch v31:404; Zerubbabel the Branch v55:406

bread (See also manna, Holy Bread, Unleavened Bread feast of) Melchizedek brought bread and wine out to Abram v18:21; Abraham prepares bread for the Lord and two angels v5:23; Lot baked bread without yeast for the two angels, v4:24; Jacob gives Esau some bread and lentil stew v12:29; Israelites to eat bread made without yeast during Passover v5:56, v24:57; feast of Unleavened Bread celebrated during Passover v2:58, v44:65; make bread of fine wheat flour and olive oil, without yeast v4:72; cake of bread made with yeast to be brought for the priest when making a peace offering v32:79; I shall so diminish your bread supply that ten women will bake their loaves in one oven v19:88; man does not live by bread alone v31:110, v24:488; Gibeonites took with them bread that had gone dry and mouldy v6:126; Gideon quickly made bread without yeast and offered it to the angel v14:136; Abigail hastened and took 200 loaves of bread for David and his men v14:174; David gave all who were present a loaf of bread v38:187; Ziba had donkeys loaded with 200 loaves of bread for David v30:14; cast your bread upon the waters and after many days you will find it again v23:220; ravens brought Elijah bread, morning and evening v23:226; Elijah asks widow to bring him a little water and piece of bread v25:226; Elijah awakened by an angel, sees loaf of bread baked over hot stones by his head v12:228; Elisha miraculously feeds 100 men with 20 small barley loaves v35-38:239; Jeremiah gives small loaf from bakers each day while bread lasted v9:345; make bread for yourself from a flour of wheat, barley, millet and beans v18:357; children's lives ebbed away in their mothers' arms as they cried out, where is my bread? v16:378; I have not kept my bread to myself and failed to share it with the fatherless v47:439; bread to sustain his strength, Psalm 19 v7:447; if you are the Son of God, command these stones to become bread v23:488; give us this day our daily bread v16:493; if your son asks you for bread, will you give him a stone? v20:493, v7:513; Jesus feeds 5000 men plus women and children with five loaves of bread v16-24:504, v2-7:547; Jesus feeds 4000 men plus women and children with seven loaves of bread v38-

43:506, v53:507; blessed the man who shall eat bread in the kingdom of God v29:516; Jesus breaks bread and gives to apostles in remembrance of his body v15:530, v36:537; Jesus the True Bread of Eternal Life v23-35:548; Jesus prepares for his apostles burning coals with fish on them and some bread v11:565; newly baptised believers break bread and pray v16:570, v19:570; we met together in an upstairs room to break bread v6:588; is not the bread we break a sharing in the body of Christ? v22:612; anyone who eats the bread unworthily eats and drinks damnation, not acknowledging the body of the Lord v22:613

breastplate of high priest, used to receive revelations, description of v3-14:71; let us put on faith and love as a breastplate v18:603; stand firm with the breastplate of righteousness v18:643

breeding Jacob's breeding methods for his sheep v31-33:33; do not interbreed different kinds of animals v37:68

bribe do not accept a bribe v22:67; Delilah bribed with silver to betray Samson v5:145; Samuel sons dishonest and accepted bribes v2:160; you take bribes and deprive the poor of justice in the courts v17:255, v24:284, v15:468; the judge accepts bribes v8:276; everyone loves a bribe and runs after gifts v11:283; who may dwell in your presence O Lord, he who does not accept a bribe, Psalm 38 v4:450; jealousy arouses a husband's fury, he will refuse a bribe however great it is v14:465; a ruler greedy for bribes tears down his nation v23:472; priests bribe guards to lie about resurrection of Jesus v11:536; Felix hoped Paul would offer him a bribe v18:592

bulls (See also oxen) commandments regarding injury from bulls v13-18:66; Moses orders young bulls to be sacrificed to Lord v4:68; Aaron and his sons purified by blood of a bull v1:72, v23:72, v6-13:93; two young bulls to be sacrificed at each new moon v30:72; Israelites make golden bull calf to represent Jehovah v3:73, Psalm 83 v18:460; bull of sin offering sacrificed at Tabernacle v28:76; bull to be offered as sin offering for priest or community who sin unintentionally v20-24:79, v18:80, v2:85; bulls sacrificed by King Balak for Balaam to curse Israelites ch11-12:102; Gideon commanded to sacrifice his father's bull v12:137; Samuel's parents sacrifice a bull then hand Samuel over to Eli v16:157; the people rejoice and sacrifice 1000 bulls v37:200; Hiram cast a large bronze basin on the backs of twelve bull oxen v36:207; Elijah cut the bull into pieces and laid them on top of the wood v24:228; King Solomon and his officials provide 2000 bulls for people to sacrifice v11:286; Apis your bull shall not stand, I Jehovah will push him down v7:334; Babylonians break up large basin and the twelve bronze bulls under it v10:347; returned exiles dedicate Temple with you, sacrifice 100 bulls v3:409; Job's friends commanded by Lord to offer seven bulls to appease his anger v29:442; I will praise your name in song and thanksgiving, this will please you more than a bull, Psalm 44 v10:452; priest of Zeus brought bulls to the city gates to sacrifice to apostles v10:582; not possible for blood of bulls to take away sins v51:669; young bull to be offered to purify altar in millennial Temple v14:373; millennial king to offer bull every day, as sin offering v17:375

burial See tomb

burning bush angel of Lord appears to Moses in v2-3:51, v20:119, v13:524, v30:574

Caesar Caesar decrees a census be taken of Roman empire v5:484; Jesus asked if it is right to pay taxes to Caesar v3:523; give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's v6:524; Jesus accused of opposing payment of taxes to Caesar v2:533; anyone who claims to be a king opposes Caesar v27:562, v6:585; Paul appeals to Caesar v10:592, v16:593; the man could have been freed had he not appealed to Caesar v39:593, v20:594

Cain birth of v2:16; offering not accepted by Lord v4:16; kills his brother Abel v6:16, v10:675; cursed to be a fugitive v10:16; mark put on v12:16; woe to them, they have taken the path of Cain v11:665; by faith Abel offered God a better sacrifice than did Cain v5:670

Caleb explorer-leader of tribe of Judah, encourages Israelites to enter promised land v2:96, v23:96; not one of you will enter land except Caleb and Joshua v15:96, v21:96; not one of them was left, except Caleb and Joshua v6:105; Joshua blessed

Caleb and gave him city of Hebron v21:128; Caleb promises daughter in marriage to man who captures city of Debir v8:133

calf idol calf idol made by Aaron v3:73, Psalm 83 v18:460, v37:574; ground to powder by Moses v16:74; calf altars set up by King Jeroboam of Israel v3:223; Lord's anger burns against calf idol v23:251; calf altar demolished by Josiah v11:311

Canaan (promised land of) Abram sets out for land of Canaan v18:20; to be given to descendants of Abram v20:20, v8:21; boundaries of Promised Land v16:22, v14:75; flowing with milk and honey v4:74; twelve Israelite leaders sent to explore v18:95; bring back fearful report, people also fear v24:96; Lord angry, not one disobedient Israelite will see v13:96; some Israelites try to enter but are beaten back v25:97; Canaan described by Moses v7-9:109; given to Israelites because of wickedness of inhabitants v4:110; well watered by rain v11:110; Israelites to put to death everything that breathes in cities of v14:112; Moses permitted to view v2:118; Israelites enter the promised land ch2:122

Canaan (son of Ham) cursed to be lowest of servants v3:19

Canaanites people of Canaan v19:20; wickedness of not yet reached full measure v13:22; Lord to completely destroy v7:75; to be destroyed little by little v13:75; places of idolatry to be destroyed v18:106; must be totally destroyed v16:109; strong and tall v2:110; Israelites able to annihilate them quickly v3:110; all idols of to be destroyed by fire v21:110; hold Israelites in dread v11:122; not completely destroyed v24:128; to severely afflict Israelites if intermarried with v6:130; Israelites fail to destroy v19:133; new generation of Israelites begin to intermarry with v2:134; conscripted as labourers by king Solomon v9:205

cancer Philistines suffer from tumours of the groin because of the Ark v2:23-28; Israelites to suffer from tumours if commandments not obeyed v33:116; king's tumour healed with a poultice of figs v16:301

cannibalism Israelites to eat flesh of own children as punishment for sins v20:88, v5:117; people of Jerusalem to eat flesh of their children during Babylonian siege v35-39:335; parents shall eat their own children and children shall eat their own parents v33:358; report of cannibalism horrifies king v22:241; mothers ate their own children v20:379

Capernaum city on shores of lake Galilee where Jesus stayed v6:488; do here in your home town the miracles you do in Capernaum v13:488; more bearable for Sodom on day of judgement than for Capernaum v16:499

censers (See also incense) censers of rebellious Levites who died, hammered into bronze sheets v32:98; leprosy breaks out on king who held censer in his hand ready to unlawfully burn incense v11:275; censers from Temple carried off to Babylon v9:347; each elder had a censer in his hand and a cloud of incense was rising v12:359; the angel took the censer and filled it with fire from the altar v5:688

census tax to be paid whenever a census taken to avoid plague v33:73; census taken of all men able to go to war v9-12:92; totals of tribes excluding Levites v11-12:92; firstborn Israelite males numbered v29:93; Levite males numbered v29:93; second census of Israelites before entering promised land v1-7:104; totals of tribes excluding Levites v4:104; Levite males numbered v7:105; David tempted to pride takes a census of his nation's fighting men v6:198; Solomon takes a census of all Canaanite men not destroyed by Israelites v8:205; Joseph and Mary travel to Bethlehem to register in Roman census v6:484

chariot of fire chariot and horses of fire separate Elijah and Elisha v32:234; Elisha's servant sees hills full of horses and chariots of fire v9:241; Lord is coming with fire, his chariots like the whirlwind v6:295

chariot Joseph ordered his chariot ready and went out to meet his father v5:43; all chariots of Egypt used in pursuit of Israelites v15:58; Pharaoh's chariots covered by Red Sea v30:59; Galilean kings come with a huge number of chariots v1:127; Philistines have iron chariots v27:128, v11:133; Sisera had 900 iron chariots and cruelly oppressed Israelites v2:135; Sisera chariots captured and entire army destroyed v11:135; Philistines gathered to fight Israel with 3000 chariots and 6000 charioters v3:164; Absalom provided himself a chariot and horses and fifty men in rear ahead

of him v2:192, v5:201; Solomon would import chariots from Egypt and export them to northern kings v25:209; Solomon himself had 1400 chariots and 12,000 horses v26:210; Elijah outruns chariot of Ahab v7:228; battle all day raged while Ahab stood propped up in his chariot, died at sunset v35:233; Ahab's chariot washed and dogs licked up his blood v38:233; the chariot driving is like that of Jehu, he drives like a madman v31:243; only 10 chariots left of army of Jehoahaz v8:245; Egypt attack Jerusalem with 1200 chariots v9:261; Ethiopians invade Judah with vast army of 1,000,000 men and 300 chariots v5:262; no end to number of chariots in Israel v16:287; clatter of wheels, galloping horses, jolting chariots, charging horsemen v14:312; soon will come sound of galloping hooves of stallions and rumble of chariot wheels v15:334; Tyre's walls will tremble at noise of horses and chariots entering gates v5:366; mighty king of last days (see Beast) to storm down against Egypt with chariots, cavalry and great fleet of ships v5:396; I will overthrow chariots, horses and riders (in last days), each man will fall by the sword of his brother v34:400; Zechariah sees four chariots coming from between two bronze mountains v50:405; Phillip teaches eunuch sitting in his chariot reading book of Isaiah v21:26-575; they will bring your brothers from all nations to Jerusalem, in chariots and wagons (at second coming) v11:295

charity See love

chastity Job's vow of chastity v42:438; a fruit of the Holy Spirit v7:626; train the younger women to be chaste, v17:649; women saved through child bearing if they continue in holiness with chastity v22:651; these 144,000 are they who kept themselves chaste v4:693

cheating See dishonesty

cheek David was rosy cheeked with clear eyes and handsome features v12:167, v20:169; your cheeks glow within your veil, like two halves of a pomegranate v8:214; my beloved is radiant and rosy cheeked v1:214; Zedekiah slapped Micaiah on the cheek v26:232; I give my cheeks to those who pull out my beard v5:305; how bitterly she weeps at night, with tears upon her cheeks v2:378; let him offer his cheek to one who would strike him v4:380; turn the other cheek v3:492

Chemosh possess what your god Chemosh has given you v20:141; Solomon built a shrine for Chemosh v4:210; Chemosh, the god of the Moabites v18:211, v10:311; Moab will become ashamed of her god Chemosh v24:335

cherubim (winged angels) guard way to Garden of Eden v24:16; Tabernacle curtains embroidered with v7:69; two cherubim to be made of one piece with lid of Ark v14:69; Jehovah would speak to Moses from between cherubim on Ark v15:80; inner Temple cedar walls carved with cherubim v22:206; two carved images in inner Sanctuary of Temple v25:206; cherubim on engraved bronze basins v39:207; seen in Temple by Isaiah, described by v19:275; one of the cherubs flew to me with a live ember in his hand v22:275, v34:360; cherubim described by Ezekiel v4:356; each cherub had four faces, a man, lion, ox and eagle v7:356; each had four wings v9:356; whenever the cherubim moved I heard the sound of their wings v10:356, v31:357; bodies glowed brightly, full of eyes v12:356; sparkling intersecting wheels below v13:356; the cherubim spread their wings and hovered above Mount of Olives v45:360; I ordained and anointed you one of the guarding cherubim v18:367; he mounted the cherubim and flew, soaring on wings of the wind, Psalm 11 v3:446; each had six wings and were covered with eyes all over v7:686; John sees four cherubim around throne of God v6-10:686; sing day and night v8:686; engraved in wood panelling of millennial Temple v45:373

child bearing Lord to greatly increase pain of v16:16; Sarah to bear a child at age 90 v21:23; if the woman has not defiled herself she will be able to bear children v32:87; none of you will be childless v27:110; you know not how the spirit enters the child being formed in a mother's womb v25:220; can a mother forget the child of her womb? v18:306; Elizabeth has conceived a child in her old age v22:483; when Elizabeth heard Mary's voice her child leapt for joy in her womb v25:483; Mary found to be with child through the Holy Spirit v1:484; Mary gave birth to her firstborn son v7:484; a woman giving birth suffers pain, but when her child is born she forgets the suffering in her joy v4:560; women saved through v22:651; the Dragon stood before the woman who was about to give birth that he might devour her child v11:691

child sacrifice an abomination to Lord v22:111; king of Moab sacrifices his firstborn son on the city wall v23:237; Israel sacrificed their children in fire v20:258; Ahaz sacrifices his sons in fire v3:281; Manasseh even sacrificed own sons by fire v7:308; you sacrifice your children in the valleys v15:308; valley of Hinnom defiled so no man could sacrifice his children there v8:311; you have burned your children in fire to Molech v30:332; did you have to slaughter my children and sacrifice them to idols? v16:362; they sacrificed their children to demons, defiling themselves and the land with innocent blood, Psalm 83 v27:460

children (See also sons, daughters) Abraham will direct his children to do what is right and just v16:24; on the seventh day you shall do no work, neither you nor your children v22:64; if they would keep my commandments it would go well with them and their children always v4:64; Jehovah punishes unrepentant and their children to third and fourth generation v10:75; write his commandments upon your hearts and teach them to your children v5:109, Psalm 74 v3:457; fathers not to be put to death for crimes of their children, nor children for crimes of fathers v29:114; Nineveh has more than a 120,000 children v20:248; Jeremiah told to pour out Lord's words upon children in the street v24:325; the fathers have eaten sour grapes and the children's teeth are set on edge v16:343, v14:363; half their children did not even know how to speak the language of Judah v19:428; Elijah to turn hearts of fathers to children, and hearts of the children to their fathers in last days v25:431; Job would offer sacrifice on behalf of each of his children v4:433; the mouths of infants and little children praise you, Psalm 34 v2:450; the righteous are generous therefore their children will be blessed, Psalm 58 v7:454, v13:473; I have never seen the children of the righteous begging bread, Psalm 58 v9:454; her children rise up and call her blessed v23:465; a good man leaves an inheritance for his children's children v32:470; train up child in way he should go and when he is old he will not depart from it v1:473; a child left without correction disgraces his mother v6:473; grandchildren a crown to the aged v15:473; whoever gives even a cup of cold water to a little child in your name, shall not lose his reward v19:498, v8:510; unless you repent and become like little children you will never enter the kingdom of God v6:509; whoever humbles himself as a little child, is greatest in kingdom of God v7:510; woe to whoever leads a little child into sin v9:510; angels of little children always behold the face of my Father in heaven v11:510; you have revealed these things to those who are humble like little children v35:512; to such belongs the kingdom of God v33:519; Jesus takes little children in his arms and blesses them v35:519; everyone who has left father, mother or children for my sake will receive a hundred times as much v54:520; chief priests and teachers indignant at children shouting praises to Jesus in Temple area v2:521; have you not read, mouths of infants and little children praise you? v4:521; otherwise your children would be unclean, but they are holy v8:610; children should not support their parents, but parents their children v3:621; children obey your parents, for this is pleasing to Lord v10:637, v9:643; fathers, provoke not your children lest they become discouraged v11:637, v11:643; raise children in teachings of the Lord v11:643; children of a bishop should believe, and not be reckless or disobedient v4:648, v3-7:651; children to rebel against parents in latter days v27:526; the calf and lion shall browse together with a little child to lead them (during millennium) v5:295; a young child will safely put his hand into the viper's nest (during millennium) v7:296

chosen people Abraham chosen of the Lord v16:24; if you will obey me fully, you shall be my chosen people v3:62; you are a people holy to Jehovah, he has chosen you out of all nations on earth v22:110; O Israel whom I have chosen, descendants of Abraham, I have not rejected you v14:292; my chosen ones shall be a people blessed by the Lord v20:293, v16:303; many non-Israelites will enter kingdom of God and many Israelites be thrust out v15:516; many who are first shall be last v55:520; as God's chosen people clothe yourselves with kindness v1:637; we who were predestined and chosen for his glory v8:641; to God's elect, chosen by the fore-knowledge of God v1:657; you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy people who belong to God v22:658

Christ (See also Jesus Christ) Peter acknowledges that Jesus is the Christ v10:507; Jesus explains scriptures about

Christ to disciples v51:538; Jesus reveals he is the Christ to a Samaritan woman v16:545; will the Christ do more miracles than this man v25:550; does not the scripture say Christ will come from Bethlehem v38:550; Jesus asked by the people if he is the Christ v2:553; Jesus ordered to tell high priest if he is the Christ v6:532; Jesus confirms he is the Christ v7:532; the God who accompanied the Israelites of old was Christ v13:611; through Christ will all be made alive v15:615

Christians believers first called Christians at Antioch v14:579; in a short time you think to make me a Christian? v36:593; be not ashamed to suffer as a Christian v31:660; praise God that you bear that name v31:660

church upon this rock I will build my church v12:507; if he refuses to listen tell it to the church v17:510; 3000 baptised and added to the church that day v15:570; all believers are one and share everything in common v18:570; Lord added to number daily v19:570; church meet in Temple courtyards, and break bread together in homes v19:570; number of men believers now about 5000 v2:571; believers pray and building shakes, all filled with Spirit v16:571; believers one in heart and mind, share everything they have v1 v572; no needy among church members v2:572; more believers than ever added to church v13:572; believers highly regarded by people v13:572; seven spirit-filled men called to look after church widows v4:573; many Jewish priests join Church v7:573; Saul begins to destroy church going from house to house dragging men and women off to prison v2:575; believers scatter but preach word wherever they go v4:575; Jesus appears to Saul on road to Damascus, Saul baptised into church v3-15:576; Holy Spirit falls on Cornelius a devout Roman and other Gentiles v1-28:577; Peter shown vision of unclean animals, told that God can make unclean clean v7-9:577; church enjoys peace in Israel, grows in numbers v27:577; gospel spreads wider afield v7:578; gospel preached to Greeks for first time v8:578; believers first called Christians at Antioch v14:579; word of God continues to spread v1:580; some Jewish believers teach that Gentile converts must be circumcised v1:582; Paul and Barnabas sent to church leaders in Jerusalem for ruling v2:582; Paul sets apart elders in churches with prayer and fasting v20:582; church believers to abstain from sexual immorality, defiled food and blood v12:583; church strengthened in faith, grows daily in numbers v4:583; circumcision not necessary for Gentiles v11-18:583; church meet on first day of week (Sunday) to break bread v6:588; hold church leaders in highest regard in love v21:603; respect those placed over you in Lord who work hard v21:603; divisions among Corinthian church v7:607; secret knowledge of God taught to spiritually mature v23:608; church should have disfellowshipped this man (case of incest) v5:609; not to associate or eat with a sinful brother v11:609; expel wicked men from among you v13:609; how can church take disputes to be judged before world v14:609; better to suffer wrong than have lawsuits among church members v19:609; convert should remain in situation he was in when God called him v11:610; men should pray in church with head uncovered and women with head veiled v2:612; apostles have right of support by church v3:612; gifts of Spirit explained ch7:613; he who prophesies edifies whole church v27:614; in church I would rather speak five understandable words than ten thousand words in a tongue v37:614; people baptised for the dead v11:615; rules governing tongues in church meetings v43:615; rules governing prophecy in church meetings v46:615; women should not speak in church v49:615; see that everything is done in an orderly way v51:615; church members should contribute money on first day of every week v33:616; be not yoked together with unbelievers v17:622; we are all one in Christ v16:625; restore gently any who sin v13:626; believers are heirs of God and co-heirs with Christ v5:631; preachers of gospel necessary in church v4:632; all believers have different gifts of the Spirit v2:633; gospel growing all over world v5:636; Jesus Christ head of the church v14:636; you will remain holy provided you continue firm in faith v17:636; let your conversation be graceful and interesting v19:637; church built upon foundation of apostles and prophets v28:641; Jesus himself is the chief cornerstone v28:641; be humble, gentle, and patient, bearing with one another in love v1:642; there is but one church, one Spirit, one Lord, one faith, one baptism and one Father v4:642; Christ has called some to be apostles, some prophets, some evangelists, some pastors and teachers

v6:642; Christ to present church radiant, without blemish, holy and blameless v4:643; do not associate with disobedient people v23:643; uplift one another with psalms, hymns, and songs of the Spirit v30:643; be of one mind v22:646; qualities of a bishop v4-5:648; false teachers must be silenced v9:648; be peaceable, considerate and courteous toward all v27:649; be subject to rulers and obey laws v27:649; do not live unproductive lives v29:649; our desire is to increase love among the saints v5:651; fight a good fight, hold on to your faith v13:651; I do not permit women to teach or have authority over men in church v20:651; whoever disagrees with instruction of Lord is puffed up with pride v21:653; be rich in good deeds v29:653; be not ashamed of the testimony of our Lord v8:655; warn the brethren against disputations v24:655; you are a royal priesthood, a holy people v22:658; live blameless lives in sight of unbelievers v23:658; increase your faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly kindness and love v5:661; make your calling and election sure and you will never fall v8:661; there have been false prophets in past, there will be false teachers among you also v16:662; believers who return again to sins worse off than before v30:662; convince those who doubt, snatch others from fire to save them v19:665; encourage one another that none become hardened by sin v5:668; let us move on from first truths of Christ and go on to maturity v22:668; those who have shared in Holy Spirit and fall away cannot be restored again by repentance v23:668; spur one another on toward love and good works v4:670; let us not neglect meeting together v5:670; be not surprised brethren that the world hates you v11:675; God's commandments are to believe in the name of his son Jesus Christ and to love one another v17:675; lampstands in John's vision represent churches v19:683; hold on to what you have until I come v28:684; you have a reputation of being alive but you are dead (Sardis church) v32:684; because you are lukewarm, neither cold nor hot, I will spew you out of my mouth v50:685; church to be protected during final three and a half years of last days v13:691; Satan tries to prevent church's escape by a flood v22:691

church leadership See leaders (church)

circumcision sign of Abrahamic covenant v17:23; Abraham and his household circumcised v26:23; men of Shechem agree to v12:36; no uncircumcised male to eat unleavened bread of Passover v3:58; Lord about to take Moses' life for not circumcising his son v3:52; uncircumcised Israelite males circumcised at Gilgal v16:123; who is this uncircumcised Philistine that defies the armies of the living God? v7:168; no foreigner, uncircumcised in heart and flesh is to enter my Temple v27:374; John the Baptist circumcised on eighth day v30:483; Jesus circumcised on eighth day v16:485; Jewish believers insist Gentile converts be circumcised v1:582; Timothy circumcised for sake of Jews v3:583; James gives his decision, circumcision not necessary, keeping commandments is what counts v13:610; Titus not compelled to be circumcised, though a Greek v18:624; neither circumcision nor uncircumcision has value v32:625; watch out for those dogs who would mutilate your flesh v7:647

cities let us build a city with a tower that reaches high to the heavens v13:19; the outcry against Sodom is so great Jehovah has sent us to destroy it v11:24; Lord to turn cities into ruins if commandments not kept v23:88; Israelites to march around Jericho once a day for next six days v6:123; army give a mighty shout and immediately walls of Jericho collapse v15:124; Nineveh was a very large city, to walk through it took three days v3:247; I shall burn your cities, I will destroy your fortresses v1:251, v7:277; my exiled people Israel will return and rebuild their ruined cities v33:257; city of Samaria falls, Assyrians exile survivors of Israel v18:258; Tyre to be forgotten for seventy years v15:305; this city Jerusalem has so aroused my anger I must remove it from my sight v8:346; city of Jerusalem destroyed by Babylonians v12:347; city of Babylon overthrown by Darius v17:390; Jerusalem to be trampled on by Gentiles v20:526, v12:690; the woman you saw is the great city that rules over the kings of the earth v20:696; was there ever a city like this great city? v18:697; ruined cities lie empty, doorways of houses are barred (vision of last days) v6:288; Damascus to become a heap of ruins in last days v17:290; great earthquake to collapse cities of the world in last days

v28:695; five cities in Egypt to worship Jehovah during millennium v14:291; Jerusalem to dispossess nations and settle in empty cities during millennium v18:297; Holy City of millennium described v5:375, v25:376; John sees the New Jerusalem coming down out of heaven from God v10:699

cities of refuge to be set apart in Promised Land v22:107; towns to which a man who has unintentionally caused death of another may flee v23:107; appointed on both sides of Jordan v15-17:129

City of David (See also Jerusalem) fortress area of Jerusalem, David moves his residence to v5:185; David brings Ark into v34:186; David buried in v34:202; Temple erected in v3:207; walls of rebuilt and heightened v10:309; returned exiles rebuild Temple fortress area v4:424

cleansing See **purity**

clothing the Lord made garments of skin for Adam and his wife to clothe them v21:16; commandments on v39:68; the smell of my son's clothes is like the fragrance of a field v19:30, v14:214; Israel tore his clothes, put on sackcloth and mourned many days v29:38, v20:184, v14:199; Tamar changed her widow's clothes v9:39; Joseph gave Benjamin five sets of clothes v36:43, v2:143, v5:239; clothing not to be woven of two kinds of cloth v39:68; priestly garments described v2-21:70; cleansing of contaminated clothing v1:83; Israelites clothes did not wear out during forty years of wandering v32:110; be joyful and clothed in white v16:219; Elijah wore a hair garment and leather belt v8:233; Lord to return robed in splendour, his garments stained crimson v1:292; with them was an angel clothed in white v24:359, v16:536; I clothed you with fine embroidered clothing v12:362; priests not wear any woollen garment v32:374; I saw a man clothed in white with a belt of finest gold around his waist v2:393; Mordecai wore royal garments of blue and white and a purple robe v11:416; God clothed with light as a garment, Psalm 19 v1:447; they cast lots for my clothing (prophecy), Psalm 45 v10:452, v7:563; John the Baptist clothes made of camel hair cloth v3:487; why worry about clothing, behold the flowers of the field v32:494; garments of Jesus became dazzling white v24:508; how did you get in here without a wedding garment? v47:523; they love to walk around in flowing robes and have people call them Rabbi v27:524; I was naked and you clothed me v26:528; garment of Jesus seamless, woven in one piece v8:563; women should dress modestly with decency and restraint v19:651; 144,000 men wearing white robes v6:688

cloud of the Lord Jehovah leads Israelites out of Egypt in a pillar of cloud v11:58; stands between Israel and armies of Egypt v23:59; the people see the glory of the Lord appearing in the cloud v8:60; cloud would descend and Jehovah would speak with Moses face to face v16:62; Jehovah tells Moses he will stand before him in a dense cloud and the people will hear his voice v6:62; Moses approached the thick cloud to speak with the Lord v3:64; Moses and Joshua entered the cloud on Mount Sinai v13:68; glory of Jehovah looked like fire on top of the mountain v14:68; cloud descends and glory of Jehovah fills the Tabernacle v29:76; cloud seen over Tabernacle by day and fire seen in cloud by night v30:76; cloud lifts from Tabernacle and Israelites prepared to move from Sinai v1:93; goes before the Israelites out of Sinai v8:94; remained with Israelites during 40 years wandering v3:97

coat of many colours made for Joseph by his father Israel v6:37; Joseph's brothers strip him of his coat and throw him in a pit v21:38; brothers dip Joseph's coat in blood and take it back to their father v26:38

Colossians Paul writes to, Col:635; you have faith and love for all saints v3:636; see that no one deceives you by empty and deceptive philosophies v9:636

Comforter See **Holy Spirit**

commandments (See also Ten Commandments, Law of Moses) first commandment, be fruitful and multiply v12:14; Adam and Eve commanded not to eat of Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil v8:15; commandment of circumcision given to Abraham and descendants v17:23; Abraham obeyed me and kept my commandments v15:29; commandment to keep Passover v1-14:56; how long will you refuse to keep my commands? v25:61; I Jehovah show love to a thousand generations of those who love me and keep my

commandments v20:64, v24:110; if they keep my commandments all will go well with Israelites always v4:64, v11:115; be careful to do everything I have commanded v6:64, v3:129; commandments on love v8-20:64; on age and authority v1-3:65; on altars v21-23:64; on sexuals and property v1-13:67; on breeding and sowing v37-38:68; on clothing v39:68; on festivals v43-46:65; on food v34-36:68; on idolatry v24-27:64; on justice v17-26:67; on marriage v20-28:66; on offerings, first fruits and tithes v28-33:65; on physical injury v4-18:65; on restitution v1-16:67; on sexual immorality v30-45:66; on slavery v27-32:68; on the occult v34-36:65; on the Sabbath v37-42:65; Moses writes down all the commandments Lord had given him v2:68; Moses reads out commandments to the people v6:68, v15:75, v1:109; I will meet with you above the Ark and give you my commandments for the Israelites v16:69; they have been quick to turn aside from what I commanded them v7:73; Moses would remove his veil and repeat to Israelites what Lord had commanded in Tabernacle v17:75; Aaron's sons offer incense when Lord did not command, die in his presence v6:80; priests to teach commandments to people v12:80; list of blessings if commandments kept v1-7:87, v11:110, v15:25:116; list of curses if commandments not kept v9-29:88, v13:111, v3-14:115, v26-53:116; Israelite garments to have tassels to remind people of commandments v8:97, v6:109; speak of the commandments to one another and teach them to your children v5:109; Moses writes all commandments on a scroll and gives to priests v1:117; they have violated my commandment and stolen spoil of Jericho v7:124; Joshua read out every word of the Law v4:126, v10:130; Joshua left nothing undone of all the Lord commanded v8:127; you have acted very foolishly, you did not keep my commandment from the Lord v13-14:164; Lord grieved that Saul again disobeyed his commandment v23:166, v34:166; if you obey my commandments I will lengthen your life v10:203; if you obey all my commandments I will establish your throne over Israel forever v10:209, v21:211; since you have not kept my commandments I will tear the kingdom away from you v7:210; reverse God and keep his commandments, this is the whole duty of man v5:221; I will punish the sins of Judah for they have not kept my commandments v10:254; Israel forsook the commandments of God, therefore were exiled into Assyria v20:258; woe to you who reject the commandments of Lord v25:284; he kept all the commandments of God therefore he was successful in all he undertook v9:285; blessed are those who keep the commandments v12:294, Psalm 55 v1:454; if only you had kept my commandments your peace would have been like a river v25:304; Jeremiah told to speak to people what Lord commands him v5:322, v15:322, v2:326; if you obey my commandments you will be my people v2:328; shall we again break your commandment, would you not be angry enough to destroy us completely? v9:420; O God, who keeps his covenant of love with those who obey his commandments v4:423; I kept his commandments and treasured them more than my daily bread v11:438; commandments of Lord are perfect, and bring joy to the heart, Psalm 37 v1:450; if his sons fail to keep my commandments I will punish their sin but not withdraw my love, Psalm 84 v6:461; John the Baptist's parents upright in sight of God and kept his commandments v1:482; whoever breaks least commandment and teaches others to do same, will be least in kingdom of God v13:494; whoever keeps and teaches the commandments will be great in kingdom of God v14:494; why do you break the commandments for the sake of your traditions? v7-505 v12:505; two greatest commandments, love God with all your heart and love your neighbour as yourself v21:512, v16-19:524, v2:625; you know the commandments v44:519; teach them to obey everything I have commanded you v63:538; Moses commanded us to stone such a woman, but what do you say v3:550; the Father who sent me commanded me what to say v36:557; a new commandment I give you, love one another v22:557, v22:559, v27:559; whoever obeys my commandments loves me and will be loved by my Father v4:558, v20:559; if you love me you will keep my commandments v40:558; keep the commandments that your joy be complete v21:559; I say this as a concession, not as a commandment v4:610; to the married I give this commandment v5:610; keeping the commandments of God is what counts v13:610; entire law of God summed up in commandment to love neighbour as yourself v2:625; the commandment aroused in me every kind of covetous desire

v16:630; this is the first commandment with a promise v10:643; we will know Jesus if we obey his commandments v11:674; God's commandments are to believe in his son Jesus Christ and to love one another v17:675; his commandments are not burdensome v21:675; since you have kept my commandment I will keep you safe from the hour of trial v43:685; Satan wages war against all who obey the commandments of God v24:692; they who keep the commandments may enter New Jerusalem v10:701

common See equality

compassion See love

compensation See restitution

concubine a wife of secondary rank, Reuben commits adultery with his father's concubine v26:37; Levite's concubine raped and abused all night, dies in doorway v16:19:148; Abner lies with concubine who had belonged to Saul v3:184; David took more wives and concubines in Jerusalem v8:185; Saul's concubine protects bodies of her slain sons v13:187; David leaves ten concubines to take care of palace v12:193; Absalom lay with his father's concubines in sight of all Israel v7:194; David's defiled concubines kept in confinement until death v1:197; Solomon had 700 wives and 300 concubines v2:210; 60 queens there be, and 80 concubines, but you my dove are unique v10:214; Rehoboam had 18 wives and 60 concubines v17:261

contentment (See also peace) I have brought contentment to your eyes v23:215; nothing better for a man than to eat, drink, do good and be content v18:217, v12:219; there was no end to his toil, he was not content with his wealth v5:218; he who reveres the Lord can rest content, unconcerned by trouble v2:469; be content with your pay v13:487; Lord, show us the Father and we will be content v32:558; I have learned to be content in whatever circumstances I find myself v7:647; Godliness with contentment is great gain v24:653; keep your lives free from love of money, be content with what you have v12:672

controversy See quarrel

Corinthians Paul spends year and a half teaching word of God to v10:586; divisions among v7:607; Paul writes to 1Cor:607; not lacking gifts of Spirit v3:607; still worldly, not yet spiritually mature v28:608; case of incest among v4:609; hand this man over to Satan for destruction of his flesh that his spirit be saved v7:609; why not rather suffer wrong than have lawsuits among you v19:609; Paul like father to v51:609; inconsiderate eating habits when met together as church v14:613; Paul's second letter to 2Cor:618; Paul did miracles among v54:621; Paul not to spare those who have not repented v12:622

Cornelius prayerful Roman who gave generously v1:577; sees angel who tells him to send for Peter v3:577; Holy Spirit falls on Cornelius while Peter is speaking v24:578; Peter teaches gospel to, and to other Gentiles v13-23:578; Cornelius speaks in tongues v26:578

cosmetics See perfume

covenant (See also oath, vow) God to flood earth, but will make a covenant with Noah v22:17; God's covenant of the rainbow with Noah, earth never to be flooded again v27:19; God covenants with Abram that he will become a great nation and bless the earth v8-9:21, v10-15:21; Lord reaffirms his covenant with Abram v14:23; circumcision a sign of the covenant v17-18:23; Lord reaffirms his covenant with Abraham v12:27; Lord reaffirms his covenant with Isaac v14:29; Lord reaffirms his covenant with Jacob v7:31; Laban and Jacob make a covenant v34-38:34; blood of the covenant v7:68; if Israelites keep commandments Lord will keep his covenant v6:88; if exiled Israelites humble themselves the Lord will remember his covenant v30:88; Jehovah keeps his covenant of love to a thousand generations of those who love him v24:110, v3:391; they will forsake me and break the covenant v8:117; Achan violates covenant of the Lord, stoned to death with his household v8-14:124; Joshua makes peace covenant with Gibeonites v15:126; three year famine due to Saul's breaking of Joshua's covenant to Gibeonites v8:187; conditional covenant with David by Lord, always to have a descendant on throne of Israel v29:202; Lord confirms conditional covenant

with David's son Solomon v10-12:209; Israelites have rejected Lord's covenant v17:229; all Judah joyfully make covenant to serve Lord v16:263; earth defiled by its people in latter days, broken the everlasting covenant v3:288; Lord will renew his everlasting covenant if people come unto him v8:293, v34:363; Josiah and his people make a covenant to obey Lord's commandments v28:312; both Israel and Judah have broken covenant Lord made with forefathers v3:328; people free their slaves with a covenant but later enslave them again v22:345; dead bodies of slave owners who violated covenant to lie unburied v28:345; Zedekiah to die in exile for breaking his covenant by enlisting Egypt's aid v6:363; Lord renews his covenant with returning exiles v23:399, v19:427; Ezra places guilty Jews under covenant to send away foreign wives v14:420; eight covenant promises v20-27:427; why have we broken God's covenant with our forefathers? v1:430; priests have broken Lord's covenant with Levi v21:430; gather to me my faithful ones who made a covenant with me by sacrifice, Psalm 69 v3:456; history of Lord's covenant people, Psalm 83:460; Lord has renounced his covenant with David, Psalm 84 v7:461; new covenant to be made with Israel (during millennium) v16:344; Lord to make covenant of peace (in millennium) and rid land of wild animals v29:369

coveting tenth commandment, you shall not covet v28:64; do not covet silver and gold v21:101; I coveted them and took them v11:125; they covet fields and houses and take them by fraud v6:276; coveting a cause of feuds and disputes v2:600; the commandment aroused in me every kind of covetous desire v16:630; do not steal or covet v20:633; be content with what you have v12:672

cowards cowardly shall inherit Second Death v8:699

crime See justice criminal

crippled See lame

crops Isaac planted crops and reaped a hundred fold v21:29; you must give one fifth of your crop to Pharaoh v24:44; edges of crops and gleanings of vineyards to be left for poor v19:64; do not hold back from your God the tithes of your crops v33:65; land to lie fallow and unharvested during each seventh year v40:65; celebrate feast of Harvest when you gather first fruits of your crops v45:65; celebrate feast of Tabernacles when you have completed gathering your crops v46:65, v5:85; fields not to be planted with two kinds of seed v38:68; reduce price of land according to number of crops left before it reverts to original owner v21:86; ground shall yield abundantly if commandments kept v1-2:87, v15:88, v19:116; your crops will be devoured by locusts if commandments not kept v37:116; invading Midianites would camp on the land ruining crops v3:136; salt sowed over crop land of Shechem v18:140; Amos sees vision of swarms of locusts as main crop about to be harvested v9:256; Lord to begin blessing crops now that Temple being built v32:400, v11:406; we promise to give a tithe of our crops to support Levites v27:427; devourer shall not destroy crops if full tithes paid v14:431; you bless our crops and our carts overflow with abundance, Psalm 46 v3:452; honour the Lord with the first fruits of your crops and your barns will be filled v18:466; parable of the sower v3-8:502; parable of the foolish rich man v5-8:514; look, the fields are ripe for harvesting the crop for Eternal Life v23:545; Lord to provide abundant crops during millennium v31:369

cross deny yourself, take up your cross and follow me v18:508, v2:517; Jesus led away, carrying his own cross v39:534, v1:562; Simon of Cyrene made to carry cross behind Jesus v40:534; Jesus crucified on a cross v3:535, v2:562; come down from the cross that we may see and believe v10:535; Pilate orders notice for cross v3:562; Peter to die by crucifixion v27-28:565; you put him to death by nailing him to a cross v9:570; not with human wisdom lest the cross be emptied of its power v11:608; Jesus reconciled all things through his blood shed on the cross v15:636; Christ fulfilled Law of Moses and nailed it to the cross v13:636; he humbled himself in obedience, even unto death on a cross v26:646; he endured the cross, scorning its shame v32:671

crucifixion See cross

curse serpent cursed to crawl on belly v14:16; cursed is the ground for your sake, in toil you will eat of it v18:16; Cain cursed to be a fugitive and a wanderer v10:16; Noah curses

descendants of Canaan to be lowest of servants v3:19; I will bless those who bless you, and curse those who curse you v17:20, v22:30; my son, let the curse fall on me, just do as I say v8:30; anyone who curses his father or mother, to be put to death v1:65, v8:505; do not scorn or curse the ruler of your people v3:65, v6:591; may this water that curses cause your genitals to atrophy and womb to abort v29:87; Balaam forbidden by Jehovah to curse Israelites v8:102, v28:427; a list of curses to come upon Israel if commandments not kept v9-29:88, v3-14:115; more curses if commandments not kept v26-53:116; curse by Joshua on the man who rebuilds Jericho v20:124, v20:226; Joshua curses Gibeonites to be slaves v19:126; Jotham curses citizens of Shechem and his brother Abimelech v22-23:140; descendants of Eli the high priest cursed to die young v3:157; Saul curses any man who eats food before evening v34-38:165; Goliath curses David by his gods v21:169; David curses Joab for murdering Abner v18:184; David and his family cursed by Lord for murder of Uriah v13:190; Shimei a relative of Saul curses David v36-42:194, v6-7:197; Baasha cursed to die for idolatry v7:225; Jeroboam cursed for idolatry, his family to die unburies v39:225; Joshua's curse falls on the man who rebuilds Jericho v20:226; Ahab and wife Jezebel cursed by Lord for murder of Naboth and his sons v15:231; Lord postpones curse on Ahab's family when he humbles himself v19:231; Elisha curses youths who mock him, boys clawed by bears v6:236; Jehoram cursed by Lord with loss of family and a lingering disease of bowels v11:265; Lord curses people of Judah with blindness of understanding v25:275; steward of Hezekiah cursed by Lord for pride v1:300; cursed is he who trusts in man and makes flesh his strength v1:331; Jeremiah curses the day he was born v50:333; a curse on he who is lax in doing work of the Lord v19:334; Jehoiaikim cursed by Lord for burning scroll of Jeremiah v22:338; exiles of Judah to be objects of cursing and horror among nations where driven v11:342, v6:350; false prophet Hananiah cursed by Lord and dies v30-31:342; false prophet Shemaiah cursed by Lord to have no descendants v19:343; slave owners of Jerusalem cursed to become horror to all nations v27:345; Zechariah sees a large flying scroll with a curse written on it v44:405; Jews who had married foreign women cursed and beaten by Nehemiah v20:428; I have blessed Israel, but Esau I have cursed v3:429; Edom to be called the Cursed Land v4:430; cursed is he who sacrifices a blemished animal v14:430; Judah under a curse for withholding tithes v11:431; strike everything Job has, he will curse you to your face v9:433; strike his flesh and bones, he shall surely curse you v19:433; God has done this to you, curse him and die v22:434; Job has never sinned by invoking a curse against his enemy v50:439; the tongue of a wicked man utters curses, lies and threats, Psalm 12 v4:446; curse of the Lord is on house of the wicked v36:469; an undeserved curse does not come to rest v64:471; he who closes his eyes to the poor receives many curses v6:472; the people curse a man who withholds grain v12:473; bless those who curse you v17:491, v11:633; more bearable for Sodom on day of judgement than that town v10:498; fig tree that Jesus curses withers v6-13:522; he will say to those on his left, depart from me you cursed v29:528; Peter began to call down curses on himself v17:532; that mob out there know nothing of the Law, there is a curse on them v32:550; Paul shakes dust from feet and clothes against Jews, blood to be upon own heads v40:581, v6:586; out of same mouth come praises and curses v27:599; when we apostles are cursed, we bless v48:609; no one will say, let Jesus be cursed, when speaking by Spirit of God v2:613; Paul curses any who preach a false gospel v6:623; all who rely on works of the Law are under a curse v6:624; Christ redeemed us from the curse of the Law by becoming a curse for us v8:624; curse to ravage earth in last days, people will suffer for their guilt until few are left v4:288; they cursed God who had control over the plagues of the last days, but refused to repent v17-19:694, v13:695; nothing accursed to be found in New Jerusalem v30:700

crime See dishonesty

Cyrus yet to be born, Spirit of God to be put on v19-22, 1-7:303; shall subdue nations v4:303; will free Judean exiles to rebuild Jerusalem v7:303; will not acknowledge Lord v7:303; to overthrow Babylon v23:304; allows exiles of Judah to return v1:397; returns Temple articles v6:398

Dagon god of the Philistines v25:146; Ark placed in temple of,

image of Dagon falls and breaks v20-22:159

daily sacrifice See sacrifice daily

Dan tribe of son of Jacob (Israel), born to Bilhah v9:32; Israel's dying blessing upon—to be like a serpent that bites horse's heels v26:45; first census of 62,700 v11:92; second census 64,400 v4:105; Moses' blessing upon—a lion's cub v26:119; land in Canaan assigned to by lot v13:129; Danites search for a place to settle v8:147; steal Micah's goods and his Levite priest v16:147; put town of Laish to sword, rename it Dan and settle there v20:133, v24:147; Jonathan and his sons act as priests for tribe of Dan v27:147; millennial boundaries of v18:376

Dan northernmost town of Israel, formerly Laish, settled by tribe of Dan v20:133, v25:147; from Dan to Beersheba v23:148, v16:195, v12:198; Jeroboam sins by setting up golden calf in v3:223

Daniel young noble exiled from Jerusalem to Babylon v1-6:382; chosen for special training with three other young men, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah v3-6:383; Daniel given new name Belteshazzar v6:383; resolves not to defile himself with king's unclean food v7:383; he and companions tested with vegetarian food v9:383; Daniel given insight into visions and dreams v12:383; Nebuchadnezzar has a dream v1:383; wise men of Babylon unable to reveal dream v1-8:383; Nebuchadnezzar orders all wise men executed v9:383; Daniel reveals and interprets dream of King Nebuchadnezzar, a huge statue smashed by a rock cut from mountain v17-31:384; Daniel placed as head over all wise men v34:384; counsellor to kings of Babylon for 66 years v36:384; interprets Nebuchadnezzar's second dream, period of insanity to humble him v5-17:386; advises king to repent and be kind to poor v17:386; Daniel sees vision of four great symbolic beasts v1-6:387; also sees a boastful horn arise (Antichrist) v8-9:387; Ancient of Days seen presiding over court of judgement of millions v10-13:387; sees one like Son of Man come in clouds of heaven v16:388; asks meaning of visions v18:388; sees vision of a great two-horned ram trampled to ground by single-horned goat v1-4:389; angel Gabriel helps Daniel understand vision v12:389; Daniel deeply troubled by his thoughts v28:389; exhausted by his vision v22:390; summoned by king Belshazzar to read writing on wall v10:390; Babylon overthrown by Persians, Darius becomes king v17:390; Daniel appointed as administrator over Babylonia by Darius v1:390; other administrators jealous, plot to destroy Daniel v2-5:390; Darius beguiled into issuing decree forbidding prayer v4:391; Daniel prayed three times every day, reported to king v6-7:391; Daniel thrown into lions' den v9:391; angel sent to protect Daniel from lions v14:391; prospers during reign of Darius v20:391; fasts and prays for restoration of Jerusalem and Temple v1-6:391; Gabriel answers Daniel's prayer, prophesies future of Jerusalem and coming of Messiah v7-16:392; Daniel humbles himself three weeks, eats no rich food, meat or wine v1:393; a glorious being appears, his face bright as lightning and voice like roar of great multitude v2:393; Daniel overcome by presence of the being and faints v5:393; strengthened by an angel v11:393; Michael, protecting angel of Israel reveals future of Israel v10-16:393; Daniel to be resurrected and receive reward at end of age v22:396

Darius a Mede, overthrows king of Babylon, becomes king of Persian empire v17:390; appoints Daniel an administrator over Babylonia v1:390; beguiled into issuing decree forbidding prayer v4:391; tries in vain to save Daniel from lions' den v8:391; fasts for Daniel v11:391; commands Daniel's accusers and families be thrown to lions v16:391; issues decree supporting God of Daniel v17:391; protected by the angel Michael v16:393; receives letter challenging authority of Jews to rebuild Temple v2:402; allows Jews to rebuild Temple v12-18:402; asks Jewish priests to pray for well being of himself and sons v19:403; dies and son Xerxes becomes king of Persian empire v1:412

darkness darkness covered the waters, God divided the light from the darkness v2:14; a terrifying darkness descended upon Abram v10:22; darkness that could be felt covers Egypt for three days v17-18:55, Psalm 83 v10:460; a foot walks in v24:217; who made thick darkness the garment of the sea? v5:440; the way of the wicked is deep darkness v42:469; a day is dawning that shall give light to those living in the darkness of

death v37:484; sons of the kingdom will be thrown outside in outer darkness v6:490, v49:523, v21:528; if your eye is unhealthy your body is full of darkness v30:492; this is your hour, when darkness reigns v51:531; three hours of darkness while Jesus hung on cross v15:535; Jesus the light that shines in the darkness, but the darkness sees it not v2:541; light has come into the world, but men love darkness instead of light v14:544; whoever follows me will never walk in darkness v9:551, v29:556; what fellowship can light have with darkness? v18:622; the Father has rescued us from darkness v10:636; our struggle is against powers of darkness, spiritual forces of evil v17:643; have nothing to do with deeds of darkness v26:643; he called you out of darkness into his wonderful light v22:658; the nether gloom of darkness is reserved for such men v29:662, v13:665; no darkness at all in God v4:674; you still walk in darkness of sin v5:674; anyone who hates his brother walks around in darkness v14:674; earthquake and darkness to come over earth (at second coming) v23:256, v11:272, v3:315; it will be a unique day, without daylight, but when evening comes there will be light (at second coming) v20:409; darkness covers the earth, but the glory of Jehovah will appear above you (at second coming) v18:294; the Beast and his kingdom plunged into darkness (at second coming) v18:694

Dathan a rebel against Moses v9-17:97; Dathan and household swallowed by the earth v23-28:98, Psalm 83 v22:460

daughter of Zion See Zion daughter of

daughters Lot's two daughters conceive by their father v27:25; law of inheritance concerning v10:105; must marry within tribe of father to inherit land v12-13:105; Rehoboam had sixty daughters v17:261; King Zedekiah's daughters taken to Egypt v24:349; Israelites not to give daughters in marriage to non-Israelites v17:109, v1:210, v8:420; can you make a pet of him (Nile crocodile) and put him on a leash for your daughters? v14:441; no other women as beautiful as Job's daughters v38:442; to all who believe he gave the right to become sons and daughters of God v5:542; Philip had four unmarried daughters who prophesied v7:589; your daughters will prophesy (during millennium) v4:273, v8:570

David Ruth great grandmother of v10:153; youngest son of Jesse, rosy cheeked, clear eyed and handsome v12:167; anointed king by Samuel v14:167; enters Saul's service as a harpist and armour-bearer v19:167; evil spirit would depart from Saul when David played harp v20:167; takes food to brothers in army camp, hears Goliath's challenge v3-5:168; David stuns Goliath with a sling then beholds him v20-27:169; becomes close friend of Jonathan v2:169; women of Israel sing praises about, Saul becomes jealous of v3-6:169; Saul hurls spear at v8:169; all Israel loves David v11:169; Saul's promises daughter Merab to in marriage but gives to another man v12:169; David marries Saul's daughter Michal after paying bride price of 200 Philistine foreskins v14-19:170; again eludes spear thrown by Saul v28:170; flees to high priest Ahimelech at Nob, given Holy Bread to eat, and Goliath's sword v1-6:171; returns to friend Jonathan, weep together and say farewell v5-29:171; flees to Philistines but is recognised, feigns madness to escape v8-12:172; returns to Israel, lives in caves of Adullam v12:172; takes parents to Moab for safety v14:172; 400 men gather to v16:172; warned by prophet Gad to leave caves v17:172; saves town of Keilah from Philistines v6:173; secretly cuts off part of Saul's robe in a cave v20:173; Nabal rejects David's request for food v5:174; Nabal's wife Abigail appeases David's anger v17:175; Nabal's heart fails him when told what happened v26:175; David marries Abigail v33:175; also married Ahinoam v33:175; sneaks into Saul's camp with Abishai v4:175; again spares Saul's life v5:175; takes his 600 men to live among Philistines v20:176; given Philistine town of Ziklag v22:176; survives by raiding non-Israelite tribes v24:176; accompanies Philistine forces to attack Israel v1:176; Philistine commanders send David and his men back v4:176; find Ziklag burned and wives and children captured, men weep aloud v1-2:177; David inquires of Lord, answered to pursue raiders immediately v4-6:177; assists young Egyptian who leads them to raiders camp v8:177; David and men defeat raiders and capture great amount of spoil v14:177; spoil divided equally, David sends some to friends in Judea v18-20:178; young Amalekite brings news of Saul's death v3:182; David orders

news bearer put to death v8:182; David composes lament in honour of Saul and Jonathan v10:183; returns to Israel v21:183; anointed king of Judah v22:183; David's men defeat Ish-Bosheth's men v32:183; marries more wives, six sons born to in Hebron v2:184; Abner desires to hand over kingdom of Ish-Bosheth to v8:184; David demands return of his wife Michal v10:184; puts on feast for Abner and his men v14:184; Joab murders Abner v17:184; David curses Joab and mourns Abner v18-23:184; orders assassins of Ish-Bosheth killed v32:185; made king of all Israel v34:185; marches to take Jebusite-controlled fortress area of Jerusalem 1:185; challenges his men, Joab captures fortress v3-4:185; appoints Joab commander-in-chief of all Israel v4:185; moves into fortress area of Jerusalem, renames it City of David v5:185; cedar palace built by Hiram king of Tyre v7:185; David becomes more and more powerful v8:185; marries more wives and concubines, eleven more sons born v8:185; admits his weakness before ruthless Joab and Abishai v24:185; defeats Philistines twice v12-15:186; brings Ark to Jerusalem on cart v16-18:186; fears Ark when Uzzah struck dead v22:186; assigns Levites to carry Ark the way Lord commanded v28:186; dances before Lord, wife Michal disapproves v34-36:186; sets up Ark inside a tent in city of David, offers sacrifices v37:186; blesses all present, gives each a gift v38:187; rebukes Michal, she bears no children to him v40:187; subdues Philistines, Moab, and Edom v1:187; obtains much gold and silver from subdued nations v4:187; inquires of Lord as to reason for three year famine v7:187; seven of Saul's descendants slain as atonement v12:187; king of Ammonites humiliates David's officials v1:188; David shows kindness to Mephibosheth son of Jonathan v20:188; David desires to build Temple to Lord v26:188; word of Lord comes to, through Nathan the prophet v28:188; promised his name will be made great v31:188; one of David's sons to build Temple v32:188; prays in thanksgiving before Lord v38:188; commits adultery with Bathsheba who conceives v1-4:189; sends for Uriah, Bathsheba's husband but he refuses to go home to his wife v5-12:189; arranges for Uriah to be murdered in battle v13:189; marries Bathsheba and a son born v2:190; Lord sends Nathan the prophet to relate parable of poor man's lamb v3-7:190; Lord charges David with adultery and murder v10:190; v3:190; curses David and his family v13:190; David fasts seven days for his son v19:190; son dies v22:190; another son Solomon born to Bathsheba v27:190; David's firstborn son Amnon rapes his sister Tamar v1-11:191; Amnon killed by David's son Absalom v18-24:191; Absalom flees Israel, David longs for him v28:191; David reconciled to his son Absalom v49:192; Absalom conspires to be king v1-5:192; David's adviser Ahithophel joins conspiracy v9:193; David and his supporters flee Jerusalem v11:193; David's friend Hushai to remain in Jerusalem to counter Ahithophel's advice v25-29:193; Absalom lies with David's concubines in view of all Jerusalem v7:194; Ziba provides David donkeys and provisions, rewarded by David v30-34:194; Shimei a relative of Saul, curses David v35-37:194; friends Barzillai, Shobi and Makir meet David with provisions v25:195; David's men march out to battle v31:195; David orders that Absalom be unharmed v32:195; Absalom's army defeated v1:195; Absalom found hanging alive in a tree, killed by Joab and his men v3-9:195; David grieves greatly for Absalom v26:196; David rebuked harshly by Joab, threatens desertion v28:196; David appoints Amasa his army commander in place of Joab v3:196; David returns to Jerusalem v5-28:196; defiled concubines kept in confinement for rest of lives v1:197; Shimei begs forgiveness, David spares life v6-10:197; David divides Saul's property between Ziba and Mephibosheth v15:197; Sheba rebels and the men of Israel desert David except men of Judah v28:197; David tempted to pride, orders Joab to take census of all fighting men v2:198; asks Lord to forgive his sin v8:198; David told to choose from three penalties to come upon Israel v10:198; David chooses three day plague, 70,000 die v11:198; David sees destroying angel with drawn sword v14:199; prays that Jerusalem be spared and his family suffer instead v15:199; builds an altar and sacrifices v24:199; Temple to be built on site of altar v26:199; David not to build Temple as he has shed much blood v28:199; David almost killed in battle due to exhaustion v1:200; exploits of David's mighty warriors v4-9:200; gives Solomon plans for Temple that the Spirit had put in his mind v38:200; becomes old and cannot keep warm v1:201; beautiful girl

Abishag found to warm and attend king v3:201; David's son Adonijah conspires to be king v4-5:201; David has Solomon anointed king v13-18:201; conditional covenant of Lord with David, to always have a descendant on throne v29:202; David's last instructions to Solomon v30:202; dies after reigning 40 years v34:202; fallen tent of David to be restored one day v31:257; throne to be overturned until Messiah comes in last days v8:364; a righteous branch (Messiah) to spring up from David's line v14:346; Jesus holds key of David v38:685; Jesus Christ root of David v15:686; descendants of to be as numberless as sand on seashore v17:347; king from house of David to be enthroned in days to come v11:290; David to be leader of gathered Israel (during millennium) v6:343, v28:369; David's royal line to continue (throughout millennium) v16:347; feeblest in Jerusalem shall be like David, (during millennium) v6:408; those of house of David shall be like God v7:408; God to give Jesus the throne of David forever v18:483

David psalms of David a composer of sweet psalms, last Psalm of v20-24:201; I will be careful to lead a blameless life, Psalm 3 v2:445; I trust in you Lord without wavering, Psalm 4 v1:445; I love the Tabernacle where your glory dwells, Psalm 4 v3:445; save me from blood-thirsty men, Psalm 5 v1:445; I have resolved my lips will not sin, Psalm 6 v1:445; when I am resurrected I will see your face and have joy in your presence, Psalm 6 v5:445; your tongue is like a sharpened razor (to Doeg), Psalm 7 v1:445; I called for your help and you healed me, Psalm 8 v2:445; you clothed me with joy, that my heart could sing to you again, Psalm 8 v5:445; let a righteous man rebuke me, it is kindness, Psalm 9 v2:445; Jehovah is my rock, my fortress, my deliverer, Psalm 11 v1:446; you O Lord make my feet agile, like a deer, Psalm 11 v7:446; as soon as I speak people obey, foreigners cringe before me, Psalm 11 v9:446; praise be to my Rock, exalted be my Saviour, Psalm 11 v10:446; ask of me and I will make all nations your inheritance, Psalm 14 v4:446; the Lord is my shepherd, Psalm 15 v1:447; the Lord will not leave my soul in Sheol, Psalm 17 v5:447; the Lord has shown me the pathway to Eternal Life, Psalm 17 v6:447; I will sing praise to the Lord all my days, Psalm 19 v13:448; with our God we will gain victory, Psalm 20 v4:448; the king trusts in the Lord and will not be shaken, Psalm 22 v5:448; wash away my guilt and cleanse me from my sin, Psalm 23 v1:448; renew a faithful spirit in me, Psalm 23 v5:448; take not your Holy Spirit from me, Psalm 23 v6:448; save me from blood guilt O Lord, Psalm 23 v8:448; the sacrifice you want from me is a broken heart and a contrite spirit, Psalm 23 v10:448; no one whose hope is in Lord is ever put to shame, Psalm 24 v2:448; forgive my sin O Lord, though it is great, Psalm 24 v6:448; my back is filled with searing pain, Psalm 26 v4:449; my bones have no soundness because of my sin, Psalm 26 v2:449; all night long I flood my bed with tears, Psalm 26 v5:449; the light has gone from my eyes, Psalm 26 v6:449; I am unable to refrain from speaking good, Psalm 29 v2:449; trust in the Lord at all times O people, Psalm 30 v4:449; the Lord is a shield around me, I fear not the tens of thousands risen up against me, Psalm 32 v2-3:450; I have beheld your power and glory in the Tabernacle, Psalm 33 v2:450; my soul clings to you, Psalm 33 v5:450; play music skillfully and shout for joy, Psalm 39 v2:450; praise the Lord with the harp, Psalm 39 v2:450; may paths of those who seek my life be dark and slippery, Psalm 43 v1:451; when they were ill I humbled myself with fasting, Psalm 43 v2:451; when I stumbled they gathered in glee, Psalm 43 v4:451; those who hate me without reason outnumber the hairs of my head, Psalm 44 v2:452; people mock me, I am the song of drunkards, Psalm 44 v5:452; may they who hate me be blotted out of the Book of Life, Psalm 44 v9:452; my God, my God, why have you forsaken me, Psalm 45 v1:452; the Lord is my light and salvation, whom shall I fear, Psalm 50 v1:453; I desire to dwell in the Tabernacle all the days of my life, to gaze upon Lord's beauty, Psalm 50 v2:453; I will sing and make music to Lord, Psalm 50 v3:453; David's blessing upon his son Solomon, Psalm 59:454; I have stilled my soul like a little child with his mother, Psalm 56 v2:454; Psalm of David in his later years, Psalm 57:454; forsake me not when I am old and grey, Psalm 57 v7:454; David taken from tending sheep to be shepherd of Israel, Psalm 74 v22:458; you are my Father, my God, my Rock and Redeemer, Psalm 84 v4:460; made highest of the kings of earth, Psalm 84 v5:461; covenant with David renounced by Lord, Psalm 84 v7:461

Day of Atonement See **Atonement Day of**

deacon (assistant to bishop) Paul writes to saints, bishops and deacons at Philippi v1:645; qualities of a deacon listed v6-11:651

dead (See also **death, dead raising of, resurrection**) there was not a house in Egypt where one was not dead v16:57; the living baby is my son, the dead baby is yours v14:204; the dead are happier than the living v2:218; all people have the same destiny, they join the dead v14:219; the dead soon forgotten v15:219; they are now dead, and their departed spirits have not risen v31:293; at your coming the spirits of the dead rise to greet you v4:305; let the dead bury the dead v17:496; the girl is not dead, she is sleeping v51:497; they will not be convinced, even if one returns from the dead v35:515; he is not God of the dead, but of the living v14:524; why do you look for the living among the dead? v17:536; to also hear the voice of Jesus v20:547; the body without the spirit is dead v18:599

dead body priests not to touch v1-5:84; Nazirite not to go near v21:87; soldiers who have touched a dead body to be purified v10:105; a hanging body offensive to God v6:113; they saw only vast numbers of dead men lying on the ground v28:264

dead consulting of any medium among you must be put to death v35:65; let no one become a medium or spiritist who consults the dead, an abominable practice v22:111; Saul asks a medium to bring up the spirit of Samuel v14-21:176; why consult the dead on behalf of the living, no light in words of mediums v6:284; Manasseh practiced sorcery and consulted mediums v7:308; Josiah rid the land of mediums v9:311

dead preached to by Jesus day dawning that shall give light to those living in darkness of death v37:484; Christ preached in his spirit to spirits in prison who died in days of Noah v14:659

dead raising of (See also **resurrection**) Elijah prays and widow's son raised from dead v35:227; Elisha prays and boy restored to life v24:239; bones of Elisha bring man back to life v22:245; apostles given power to raise dead v6:498; Jesus raises daughter of Jairus to life v53:497; the dead are raised v4:499; Jesus raises a widow's son from dead v26:499; Jesus raises Lazarus from dead v27:555, v9:556; Jesus raised from the dead v1-16:564, v17:565, v10:571; Peter raises dead woman in Joppa v37:577; believers revive Paul after stoning v16:582; Paul restores to life boy fallen from third floor window v9:588

Dead Sea columns of vast invading army of last days to stretch from Dead Sea to Western Sea v23:272; burial place of Gog and all his hordes to be in valley east of the Dead Sea v21:371; river to flow from (millennial) Temple in Jerusalem to Dead Sea and freshen it v5:376, v21:409; swarms of fish to live in Dead Sea (during millennium) v6:376

deaf (who makes a man deaf, dumb, seeing or blind, is it not I? v30:51; do not mock the deaf v12:64; report to John that the blind receive sight, the deaf hear v4:499; deaf man with speech impediment healed v34:506; he can do anything, he even makes the deaf hear v37:506; you deaf and dumb spirit, I command you, come out of him v48:509; ears of the deaf to be unstopped and the lame to leap like a deer (in millennium) v20:295

death (See also **dead, dead raising of, death execution, death life after, resurrection**) Joseph's own hand will close your eyes in death v4:43; may I die the death of the righteous v13:103; surely the bitterness of death is past v41:166; should anyone be put to death in Israel today? v9:197; love is as strong as death v21:215; the day of death better than the day of birth v27:219; death is the destiny of every man, and the living should take this to heart v28:219; there is death in the pot v33:239; no one regretted his death v16:265; Jehovah to swallow up death forever v25:293; angel of Lord puts to death 185,000 men in Assyrian camp v33:300; death is never satisfied v14:317; exiles will prefer death to life v27:327; I set before you a way of life and a way of death v9:344; in death the weary are at rest v1:434; why does death not come to those who long for it? v2:434; I prefer death than this body of mine v22:435; death is their shepherd, to Sheol they descend while their bodies decay in the grave, Psalm 62

DEATH BY EXECUTION

v6:455; the house of an adulteress leads to death, to the spirits of the dead v14:467; last enemy to be destroyed will be death v17:615; the sting of death is sin v31:616; death entered the world through Adam v2:629; Jesus suffered death for everyone, to destroy the power of the devil v10-11:667; devil holds power of death v13:667; Enoch did not experience death, God took him away v6:670; man destined to die once, and after that to face judgement v48:669; be faithful, even to the point of death v13:683, v18:691; during last days men shall long to live but death will elude them v20:689; death cast into Lake of Fire v18:699; there shall be no more death (in New Jerusalem) v3:699

death by execution you will surely die if you eat from Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil v8:15; Tamar ordered burned to death for harlotry v18:39; every firstborn male in Egypt to die v23:56; whoever touches mountain to be stoned or shot with arrows v10:63; he who sacrifices his child to Molech must be stoned to death by the people v26:64; he who strikes his parents must be put to death v4:65, v8:505; a murderer must be put to death on testimony of two or more witnesses v5:65, v29-30:107; any sorcerer, sorceress, medium or fortune teller must be stoned to death v35:65; anyone who kidnaps another must be put to death v7:66; if men are fighting and there is serious injury you are to take life for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth v12:66; if a man marries and lies with his sister, both must be put to death v21:66; both an adulterer and adulteress must be put to death v41:67; if a man lies with a man as one lies with a woman, both men must be put to death v24:67; any man or woman who has sexual relations with an animal must be put to death v43:67; whoever makes a perfume like it and anoints other than a priest, must die v43:71; whoever sacrifices an animal outside camp instead of at Tabernacle must die v41:79; priests not to drink wine before entering Tabernacle or they will die v11:80; Aaron not to go into Most Holy Place whenever he chooses or he will die v16:80; whoever blasphemes the name of Jehovah must be put to death v13:85; your bodies will fall in this desert and your children wander forty years v18:96; Moses commands that Sabbath breaker be taken outside camp and stoned v7:97; earth swallows up Dathan, Abiram and Korah at command of Moses v23-28:98; Korah and his 250 followers consumed by fire v30:98; Israelites must not go near Tabernacle or they will die v23:99; Moses commands that men of a town are to stone a rebellious son to death v5:113; men of a town to stone a woman who is promiscuous while living in her father's house v11:113; a man who rapes a betrothed virgin to be stoned to death, the virgin also if she did not scream for help v14:113; fathers not be put to death for crimes of their children v29:114; Jehovah commands that every Amalekite be put to death v20:166; any false prophet to be put to death v14:409

death life after (See also Sheol, Hades, Pit, Heaven, New Jerusalem, New Earth, Paradise) Israel to go down to Sheol, to his son Joseph v30:38; medium brings up spirit of Samuel for Saul v14-28:176; I will go to him, but he cannot return to me v26:190; at death the spirit of man returns to God who gave it v32:221; why in the prime of life must I go through the gates of Sheol v17:301; spirits of dead will rise to greet king of Babylon in Sheol v4:305; people of Tyre to dwell in world of Sheol below, and not return to land of living v9:366; hordes of Egypt to go down to Sheol v14:368; Messiah to set free prisoners from Sheol v8:407, v22:659; my body shall rest secure, for you will not leave my soul in Sheol, Psalm v5:447; no man can prolong his life forever and not see Sheol, Psalm 62 v3:455; down to Sheol they descend, while their bodies decay in the grave, Psalm 62 v6:455; parable of Lazarus and the rich man v26-36:514; they will not be convinced, even if one returns from the dead v36:515; Father into your hands I commit my spirit v20:535; Jesus bowed his head and gave up his spirit v15:563; the dead also to hear voice of Jesus v20:547; Sadducees say there is no life after death but Pharisees believe v8:591; God will bring with Jesus all who have died in him v11:603; eye has not seen, nor ear heard, nor entered into heart of man what God has prepared for those who love him v24:608; our present suffering is nothing compared to the glory that awaits us v6:631; I desire to die and be with Christ, but is more needful that I remain v16:646; the time for my departure has come v21:656; Jesus preached to spirits in prison who died in days of Noah v16:659; gospel was

CONCORDANCE

preached, even to the dead v22:659; even those who pierced Jesus will see his second coming v8:682; I will soon lay aside my body v10:662; slain saints to be given a white robe and told to rest a little longer v10:687; John sees 144,000 chaste men in heaven, redeemed from earth v1-6:693; John sees those who overcame Beast standing on sea of fiery glass v2:694; blessed are the dead who die in the Lord, their deeds follow them v16:694; I saw the spirits of those who had been beheaded v2:698

Death Second (See also Eternal Punishment, Lake of Fire) do I take pleasure in the Death of the wicked? v29:364, v35:364; there is a way that seems right to a man, but leads to Death v31:469; discipline your son and save his soul from Death v5:473; wide is gate that leads to Death, many enter v9:494; whoever heeds words of Jesus has crossed over from Death to Life v19:547, v29:551; when sin matures it gives birth to Death v6:598; whoever turns a sinner from his ways will save him from Death v29:600; Eternal Death is to be shut out from majestic presence of Lord v6:604; they who reject the gospel will suffer Eternal Death v6:604; Godly sorrow brings repentance, but worldly sorrow leads to Death v43:619; the wages of sin is Death v9:630; the mind of a sinful man brings Death v25:630; anyone who does not love remains in Death v8:675; there is a sin that leads to Spiritual Death v28:676; he who overcomes will not suffer the Second Death v14:684; Second Death has no power over those of the first resurrection v5:698; sins of those who will inherit the Second Death v8:699

Deborah prophetess and judge of Israel v3:135; rebukes Barak for lack of faith v7:135

debt do not take a millstone or cloak of a widow as security for debt v27:114; at the end of each seven years, in the year of cancelling debts v4:117, v22:427; all who were in debt or discontented gathered to David v16:172; go sell the oil and pay your debts v5:238; their children are seized for debt v17:438; he who puts up security for another will surely suffer v3:466; the borrower is servant to the lender v17:466; do you not settle a debt quickly with him who is about to take you to court? v34:492; parable of the forgiving moneylender v35-39:495; parable of the unmerciful servant v20-27:510; if you owe taxes pay taxes v18:633; pay everybody what you owe, let no debt remain v19:633

deception (See also lying, dishonesty, prophets false, teachers false) the serpent deceived me, and I did eat v13:16, v18:620; Jacob deceived Esau twice v28:31; Laban deceives Jacob v28:32; he cheated me by changing my wages ten times v6:33; do not lie or deceive one another in any way v18:67; Gibeonites deceive the leaders of Israel v5-13:126; the merchant cheats, using dishonest scales v9:251, v22:256; shall I acquit a man with a bag of false weights? v4:276; all the proud will be deceived v13:316; let not false prophets and diviners deceive you v5:342; be not deceived, for men will come in my name and say, I am he v21-22:526; false Christs will arise and perform signs and miracles to deceive the very elect; by smooth talk and flattery false teachers deceive naive people v12:634, v6-9:636; Adam was not the one deceived, rather it was Eve v21:651; rid yourselves of all deceit v19:658; False Prophet of Last days to deceive inhabitants of earth with great miracles v3-4:692, v24:698; Satan to be released from prison and again deceive nations (after millennium) v8:698

delegating Moses advised to delegate by Jethro v27:62; seventy elders called to assist Moses v16:94; harvest is great but workers are few v3:498; Jesus gives his twelve apostles authority to drive out unclean spirits and heal disease and sickness v4:498; Jesus appointed seventy disciples and sends them on ahead of him v10:511; choose seven men from among you and we will turn this task over to them v3:573

Delilah Philistine woman, lover and betrayer of Samson v4-23:145

Demetrius maker of silver shrines, opposes Paul v28-41:587

demons (unclean spirits) (See also Satan) sacrifice no longer to be offered to demons v42:79; Israel sacrificed to demons, gods that recently appeared v20:118; evil spirit permitted to torment king Saul v15:167, v7:169; evil spirit would depart when David played harp v20:167; lying spirit permitted to deceive 400 prophets of Asherah v23:232; mediums with familiar spirits who whisper and mutter v5:284; angel of Persian

kingdom opposed angel Gabriel twenty-one days v9:393; on that day I shall remove all prophets who prophesy by unclean spirits 13:408; they sacrificed their children to demons, Psalm 83 v27:460; demons recognise Jesus as Holy One of God v20:489; demon threw the man on the floor v21:489; what power in his words, he commands unclean spirits and they come out v22:482; in the synagogue was a man possessed by demons v20:489; demons came out of many people shouting, you are the Son of God v24:489, v19:501; Jesus forbids demons to speak and reveal he is Christ v24:489; naked possessed man runs to Jesus and falls on his knees, head demon recognises Jesus v27:496; unclean spirits came out and entered pigs v32:497; when unclean spirit driven out, the man who had been dumb spoke v60:498; it is by prince of demons that he drives out demons v20:501, v15:549; demons driven out by power of Holy Spirit v29:501; after being driven out a spirit can return with spirits more evil than itself v36-37:501; apostles given power to drive out v6:498; apostles cast out many v22:498; Greek woman asks Jesus to deliver her demon-possessed daughter v25:506; disciples unable to drive out epileptic demon from boy v41:509; Jesus drives out deaf and dumb epileptic demon v48:509; this kind comes out only by prayer and fasting v52:509; we saw a man driving out demons in your name and tried to stop him v28:511; even the demons submit to us in your name v31:512; do not rejoice that Satan's spirits submit to you v34:512; woman bent over eighteen years by demon spirit healed by Jesus v6-7:515; Eternal Fire prepared for devil and his angels v29:528; in my name they shall drive out demons v55:538; those tormented by demons healed by Peter v15:572; Philip casts out demons in Samaria v6:575; Paul casts out a fortune telling spirit from a slave girl v19:584; handkerchiefs from Paul would drive out unclean spirits v19:587; Jewish exorcists use name of Jesus to expel demons, violently attacked by demon v20-22:587; even demons believe in God v13:599; idolatry is worship of demons v23:612; deceptive philosophies from the elemental spirits of the universe v9:636, v15:641; our struggle is against the powers of darkness, the spiritual forces of evil v17:643; some will depart the faith giving heed to deceiving doctrines of demons v13:652; Satan and his angels hurled from the heavens by Michael and his angels v14-15:691; John sees frogs-like unclean spirits come from mouth of Dragon, Beast and False Prophet v22:695; demons gather kings of earth for great battle at Armageddon v24:695; devil seized by an angel and bound for a thousand years v28:698

desert Ishmael grew up in the desert v27:26; Lord appears to Moses in burning bush near Mount Horeb (Sinai) v2:51; Pharaoh will think the Israelites are wandering in confusion, hemmed in by the desert v12:58; Israelites enter desert of Sin, 31 days after leaving Egypt v6:60; you have brought us into this desert to die by starvation v7:60; thin flakes appeared on the desert floor v16:60; Israelites enter desert of Sinai v1:62; you know best how to camp in the desert, come with us v7:94; cloud came to rest in desert of Paran v9:94; Israelites cursed to wander 40 years in desert v18-19:96, v11:106; Israelites enter Desert of Zin, Miriam dies v1:99; 600 Benjamites fled into the desert v41:149; the three armies run out of water in desert v7:236; he who makes flesh his strength shall be like a stunted shrub in the desert v1:331; John the Baptist lived in the desert until he appeared publicly v39:484, v1:487; Jesus led by Spirit into the desert, fasts forty days v22:488; our forefathers ate manna from heaven in the desert v20:548; Jehovah appeared to Moses in a flame of fire in a bush in the desert v30:574; streams will gush forth in the desert, burning sands shall become pools of water and bubbling springs (during millennium) v14:295, v3:296; the desert shall blossom like the rose (during millennium) v15:295; Jehovah will make Jerusalem's deserts like the garden of Eden (during millennium) v1:296, v4:297

Desolator See Antichrist

devil See Satan, demons

Diana Greek fertility goddess, sale of shrines threatened by missionary success of Paul v29:587; the crowd chanted in unison for about two hours, great is Diana of Ephesus v36:587; Ephesus the guardian of the temple of Diana and her image which fell from the sky v37:588

Dinah daughter of Jacob and Leah v21:32; raped by the ruler

of Shechem's son v1-2:36

disciples of Jesus (See also apostles, disciples of

Jesus (women)) (followers) disciples of John fast and pray, but your disciples carry on eating and drinking v23:491; Jesus called his disciples to him and chose twelve v2:491; Jesus and his disciples try to escape the crowds v13:496; disciples awake Jesus crying, master save us v21:496; John's disciples come to question Jesus v2:499; look, your disciples are doing what is unlawful on the Sabbath v2:500; such a great crowd gathered that Jesus and his disciples were not even able to eat v16:510; disciples baptise but Jesus did not v16-18:544; disciples told to sell their possessions and give to poor v9:514; warned against false teaching and hypocrisy of Pharisees v55:507; not to reveal that Jesus is Christ v14:508; seventy disciples sent out two by two ahead of Jesus v10:511; ask Jesus to teach them to pray v2:513; must be prepared to give up all v1:517; teacher, rebuke your disciples v23:521; disciples surprised to find Jesus talking with Samaritan woman v17:545; many turn away and no longer follow Jesus v39:549; if you continue in my teaching you are truly my disciples v10:551; you may be his disciple but we are disciples of Moses v21:552; disciples to mourn while world rejoices, but grief will quickly turn to joy v3:560; men will know you are my disciples, if you love one another v23:557; you are not one of his disciples are you? v13-21:561; Joseph was a disciple of Jesus, but secretly v22:563; Jesus walks with two disciples to Emmaus following his resurrection v25:537; resurrected Jesus appears in midst of disciples v42:538, v18:564; disciples think resurrected Jesus a spirit v43:538; go and make disciples of all nations v53:538, v63:538; disciples rejoice in Temple daily, praising God v60:538; disciples filled with joy v19:564; Jesus prepares disciples to receive Holy Spirit v21:564

disciples of Jesus (women) Martha and Mary welcome Jesus into their home v36:512; Mary anoints Jesus with expensive perfumed oil v5-6:529, v3:555; brother of Martha and Mary raised by Jesus v1-29:554; women followed Jesus to care for his needs from their own means v26:535; Mary Magdalene, Mary mother of James, Salome and many other women v27:535; women saw the tomb and purchased and prepared spices and perfumes v33:536; Mary Magdalene and other women set out to tomb early Sunday morning to embalm Jesus v6:536, v1:563; angels speak to women at empty tomb v17:536, v31:537; bewildered yet filled with joy the women hurry back to tell apostles v19:537; Mary Magdalene returns to tomb and sees resurrected Jesus v22:537, v15:564; women devote themselves to prayer, including Mary the mother of Jesus v10:569; more women than ever believed, great numbers added to the Lord v13:572; Peter raises disciple Tabitha to life v37:577; Lydia and all her household baptised v13:584

discipline as a man disciplines his son so your God has disciplined you v29:110; Israel is corrupt, I will discipline all of you v5:250, v20:344; despise not the discipline of the Almighty, for he also binds the wound v11:434; blessed are those whom you discipline O Lord, Psalm 71 v6:457; a wicked woman is loud and undisciplined v17:465; he who will not discipline himself will come to poverty v40:466; the rod of discipline purges the spirit v25:469; stern discipline awaits him who leaves the straight path v40:469; Lord disciplines those he loves, therefore endure hardship as a discipline v1:471, v35:671, v53:685; servants cannot be disciplined by words alone v32:472; discipline your son, in that there is hope v3-9:473; since we are sons of light let us be self-disciplined v18:603; I discipline my body that I will not be disqualified from the prize v14:612; Lord disciplines us this way so we will not be condemned v24:613; a bishop should be self-disciplined v6:648; teach the older men to be self-disciplined v15:649; encourage the younger men to be self-controlled v19:649; make every effort to increase your self-control v5:661; if you are not disciplined, you are not God's true sons v37:671; God disciplines us for our good v40:671; discipline is painful at the time but later yields fruit of righteousness v41:671

disease See sickness

dishonesty (See also deception, lying, bribe) do not defraud v19:67; do not hold back wages v20:67; if a person cheats his neighbour he must repay in full, adding a fifth value to it v7:79; Samuel's sons were dishonest and accepted

DIVORCE

brides v2:160; you have deceived me, you are Saul v21:176; the merchant cheats, using dishonest scales v9:251, v22:256; shall I acquit a man with a bag of false weights? v4:276; they covet fields and houses and take them by fraud v6:276; Lord strikes his hands together in anger at dishonest gain v20:365; by your sins and dishonest trade you have desecrated your city v22:367; I am coming in judgement against those who defraud labourers v7:431; the Lord abhors dishonest scales v30:469; the master had to admire the shrewdness of the dishonest steward v19:514; whoever is dishonest with little will be dishonest with much v21:514; if you are untrustworthy in handling worldly wealth, who will trust you with true riches? v22:514; if I have cheated anybody I will repay them four fold v5:521; Pharisees defraud widows of their possessions v28:524; do not associate or eat with a swindler v11:609; no swindler will inherit kingdom of God v21:609; they teach for the sake of dishonest gain v11:648; everyone who loves and practices falsehood never permitted to enter New Jerusalem v11:701

disobedient See obedience

disputes See quarrel

divination See fortune telling

divorce a priest not to marry a divorced woman v6:84; Law of Moses regarding divorce v10-13:113; divorce not permitted where there is proof of virginity v10:113; first husband cannot remarry a twice divorced wife v13:113, v21:323; the Lord hates divorce v7:430; he who divorces his wife except for unchastity causes her to commit adultery v37:492, v27:519; what God has joined together let no man put apart v24:519; Moses permitted divorce because of the hardness of your hearts v26:519; from the beginning it was not so v26:519; whoever divorces spouse and marries another commits adultery against former spouse v27:519; a husband must not divorce his wife v6:610; an unbelieving spouse who is willing to remain must not be divorced v7:610; a believer not bound to an unbelieving spouse if they leave v9:610; bishops and deacons to have been married once only v4:648, v2-6:651; only once married widows to be supported by church v5:652

Doeg head shepherd of Saul, tells king how high priest helped David v18-20:172; kills 85 priests at Saul's orders, puts entire priest's town of Nob to sword v29:173

dog (male prostitute or degenerate sinner) must not bring earnings of a harlot or dog to Tabernacle v24:112; to live outside New Jerusalem v11:701

dogs meat of animals torn by wild beasts to be thrown to v34:68

am I a dog that you come at me with a stick? v21:169; I have become a dog in the eyes of Judah v5:184; why do you care about a dead dog such as I? v22:188; why should this dog curse my lord the king v38:194; dogs will eat those of your family who die in the city v40:225; dogs to lick up Naboth's blood v14:231, v38:233; what is your servant but a mere dog that he should do such great things v8:242; dogs to devour body of Jezebel v16:231, v18:242, v7:243; Israel's watchmen are like dogs that cannot bark and love to sleep v10:308; men mock me whose fathers I would have disdained to put with my sheep dogs v35:438; they return at evening, snarling like dogs and prowling about, Psalm 5 v2:445; a dog returns to its own vomit v15:468, v32:662; give not that which is sacred to dogs v8:494; even the dogs eat crumbs that fall from master's table v29:506; dogs would come and lick the sores of Lazarus v27:514

donkey every firstborn donkey to be redeemed with a sheep or have its neck broken v8:58; Balaam's donkey sees an angel and turns aside v17:102, v25:102; Balaam's donkey speaks v20-22:102, v28:662; Israelites capture 91,000 donkeys from the Midianites v4:106; Samson kills a thousand Philistines with jaw bone of a donkey v31:144; the donkeys you set out to look for have been found v31:162; the lion had neither eaten the body nor mauled the donkey v28:224; during famine a donkey's head sold for eighty shekels of silver v19:241; you are like a wild she-donkey, sniffing the wind in her craving v14:323; wild donkeys stand on barren hills and pant, their eyesight failing for lack of pasture v4:329; you shall have the burial of a donkey v14:339

Messiah to enter Jerusalem riding on v6:407, v25:521; Job had

CONCORDANCE

500 donkeys v2:433; Jesus rides donkey triumphantly into Jerusalem v19:521, v13:556

dove released from ark by Noah v14-16:18; Abram sacrifices v7:21; instructions to priest for sacrificing v7-8:78; the song of is heard v3:213; dove used as atonement in sin offerings v25:82, v40:82, v24:83; poor can substitute two doves for a lamb in sacrifice v26:82; your eyes are gentle, like doves v9:213, v5:214; the song of the dove is heard v3:213; dove droppings sold for five shekels during famine v19:241; I moaned like a dove v18:301, v11:312, v37:358; child Jesus redeemed by sacrificing a pair of doves v18:485; Spirit of God descends on Jesus in likeness of a dove v20:488, v17:542; be wise as serpents and innocent as a doves v11:498; Jesus overturns benches of those selling doves in the Temple v9:522, v11:543

dragon See Satan

dream God appears to Abimelech in a dream v2:25; Jacob dreams of a stairway to heaven v5:31; angel of God appears to Jacob in a dream v8:33; God appears to Laban in a dream v16:33; Joseph dreams of his family bowing down to him v8:37; here comes the dreamer, let us kill him v18:38; Joseph interprets dreams of cupbearer and baker v12-20:39; Joseph interprets Pharaoh's dream v4-14:40; I give a prophet revelations in visions or dreams v9:95; the dream of Midianite soldier boosts Gideon's courage v16-18:137; God no longer answers me by prophet or dream v26:177; Lord twice appears to Solomon in a dream v3:203, v9:209; your old men will dream dreams v4:273, v8:570; do not to listen to dreams of false prophets v20:340, v5:342, v15:407; Daniel given insight into visions and dreams v12:383; Daniel reveals Nebuchadnezzar's dream v17-31:384; Daniel reveals Nebuchadnezzar's second dream v-19:385; when I think my bed will comfort me, you terrify me with dreams v22:435; angel appears three times to Joseph in dreams v3:484, v8:486, v11:486; wise men warned in a dream not to return to Herod v7:486; it seemed to Peter as a dream v7:579; dream of Pilate's wife v20:533

drunkenness (See also wine) Noah becomes drunk and lies uncovered in tent v1:19; Lot's daughters get him drunk v25:25; Nabal in high spirits and very drunk v25:175; David gets Uriah drunk v12:189; Ben-Hadad and the 32 kings with him were in their tents getting drunk v14:230; Ephraim's drunkards will be trampled underfoot v21:286; people mock me, I am the song of drunkards, Psalm 44 v5:452; like an archer who wounds at random is he who hires a drunkard v13:474; these men are not drunk, it is only the third hour v7:570; do not associate with any brother who is a drunkard v11:609; no drunkard will inherit the kingdom of God v21:609; drunkenness a work of flesh, not of Holy Spirit v5:625; let us behave decently, not in drunkenness v21:633; drunkenness leads to debauchery v29:643

dumb who makes a man deaf, dumb, seeing or blind, is it not I? v30:51; Ezekiel struck dumb except for speaking word of God 4 9-10:357; Zechariah struck dumb for disbelieving angel Gabriel v11:483; man who had been dumb spoke when unclean spirit driven out v60:498; Jesus heals blind and dumb demon-possessed man v18:501; great crowds came, bringing their lame, blind, crippled and dumb, and Jesus healed them v32:506; he can do anything, the deaf hear and the dumb speak v37:506; a demon has robbed my son of speech v40:509; you deaf and dumb spirit, I command you, come out of him v48:509; tongue of the dumb shall shout for joy (in millennium) v20:295

dust God formed Adam from the dust of the earth; the serpent cursed to crawl and eat dust v14:16, v22:293; dust you are and to dust you shall return v20:16, v21:218; Abraham's offspring to be as uncountable as the dust v9:21, v7:31; dust on the head a sign of mourning v5:124, v10:158, v1:182; the silver cord is severed and your body returns to the dust v31:221; king of Nineveh clothed himself with sackcloth and sat in the dust v6:248; out of the dust your speech will whisper v17:288; shout for joy you who dwell in the dust, for earth will give birth to her dead v32:293, v12:396; sit in the dust O city of Babylon v8:303; Jehovah has trampled us in the dust v57:379; side by side their bodies lie in the dust and worms devour them both v4:1437; I despise myself and repent in dust and ashes v29:442; return to dust O sons of men, Psalm 1 v3:444; when you take away their spirit they die and return to the dust, Psalm 19 v12:448, Psalm

92 v2:462; may his enemies lick the dust, Psalm 59 v6:455; even her dust we honour (Jerusalem), Psalm 82 v8:459; if any will not hear your words, shake the dust off your feet when you leave v10:498, v15:512, v40:581; they waved their cloaks and flung dust in the air v41:590; nations will come to you trembling and lick the dust (at second coming) v10:277

earrings (See also ornaments) Aaron makes a golden calf out of v3:73; army officers donate gold earrings to Jehovah v6:106; custom of eastern people to wear gold v3:139

earth (See also world, ground) in the beginning God created the heavens and the earth v1:14, v23:21, v22:64; multiply and fill the earth, take control over it v16:15, v20:18; God to destroy corrupt mankind from face of the earth v17:17; whole earth flooded v3-9:18, Psalm 19 v3:447, v3:663; ark floated high above the earth v8:18; every living creature that moved on surface of the earth perished v9:18; flood never again to destroy earth v26:19, v21:297, Psalm 3 v4:447; the whole earth is mine v3:62; earth swallows up Dathan and Abiram v22:178; I saw a spirit like a god come up out of the earth v27:96; generations come and generations go, but the earth remains forever v4:217; the whole earth is full of his glory v19:275; earth cries out, woe is me v7:288; heaven is my throne and earth is my footstool v3:293, v1:492, v2:574; I will create new heavens and a new earth v16:293, v40:527, v9:663; earth will give birth to her dead v32-4:293, v12:396, v29:616; the silver and gold of the earth is mine v24:400; Messiah's dominion to extend over whole earth v7:407; have you comprehended the vast expanse of the earth? v9:440; every animal is mine and every bird and the cattle on a thousand hills, for all the earth is mine, Psalm 69 v4:456, v26:612; let the sea rejoice and everything in it, the earth and all who live in it, Psalm 99 v4:463; the humble shall inherit the earth v10:491; I heard every creature in the heavens, on earth and in the sea singing v25:686; Satan hurled to the earth and his angels with him v15:691; earth swallowing the flood that the Dragon had poured from his mouth v22:691; time to reap harvest of earth in last days v19:694; Lord to come and devastate the earth (in last days) v1:288, v24:526; a third of the earth was burned up, a third of the trees, and all the green vegetation v7:688; whole earth to be destroyed by fire v2-5:315, v4:663, v7:663; darkness to cover earth (at second coming) v18:294; Lord coming to shake the earth v23:288, v19:307, v34:400; earth to reel like a drunkard v8:289, v11:370; there was a great earthquake on earth v12:687, v5:688, v22:690, v26:695; earth shall come apart like an old garment and its people die like flies v6:297, v33:527; Lord's day of wrath coming to empty the earth v3:289, v6-8:289, v21:334; I did not create the earth to be empty but to be inhabited v20:292; earth and its heavens fled away from face of him who sat on throne v13:699; I saw new heavens and a new earth, for first heavens and earth had passed away v1:699

earthquake powerful earthquake to come upon Israel v22:256; great earthquake in land of Israel in last days on day Gog attacks v10:370; every wall shall fall to ground v11:370; every person on face of earth will tremble v12:370; great earthquake in last days, sun darkened and moon turned red v12:687; severe earthquake to afflict Jerusalem in last days, 7000 will die v22:690; tremendous earthquake in last days to collapse cities of world v26:695

Eden garden of God planted a garden, eastward in Eden v3:15; Adam placed in garden to take care of it v7:15; Adam banished from garden of Eden, cherubim guards way to v23-24:16; ahead of them land like the garden of Eden, to their rear a desert waste v13:272; you were in Eden, the garden of God v17:367; Judah to become like the garden of Eden (in millennium) v1:296

Edom (See also Esau) land where Esau brother of Israel settled v1:34, v34:36; king of Edom refuses Israel passage v10:13-100; Balaam's prophesy concerning, Israel to conquer v12:103; do not despise an Edomite, he is your brother v20:114; David struck down 18,000 Edomites v3:187; Hadad of Edom raised up as an enemy of Solomon v10-12:211; Edom joins with armies of Israel and Judah to fight Moab v6:236; Edom to be punished for sins v6:254; will again be ruled over by Israel one day v31:257; armies of attack Israel v21:264; Edom to become small and despised v36:335; downfall of prophesied by Obadiah v1:351; rebuked for gloating over fall of

Jerusalem v6:351; Esau's children to perish and be no more v34:335, v16:366; has become a home for jackals of desert v3:429; curse to remain on v4:430; to be empty after second coming of Lord v20:273; doomed to total destruction in last days v13:290; soil of to be set ablaze in last days v15:290

Egypt (See also plagues Egyptian); Egypt a grandson son of Noah through Ham v10:19; Abram goes to live in v22:20; Joseph sold into v1:39; seven years abundance to be followed by seven years drought v12:40; Joseph becomes vizier of v16:40, v30:43; other nations come to buy grain v27:41; Israel moves his family to Egypt v1:43; a new Pharaoh comes to power in Egypt v1:49; Egyptians begin to fear Israelites v4:49; Moses sent by Lord to bring Israelites out of Egypt v8:51; Egypt to be struck with wonders v17:51; plagues inflicted on ch5-6:53; all firstborn Egyptian males die v15:57; 600,000 Israelites depart v21:57; army of destroyed in Red Sea v29:59; drowned Egyptians washed up on the shore v1:59; Solomon makes alliance with Egypt, marries Pharaoh's daughter v28:204; Solomon imports chariots from Egypt v25:209; Egypt invades Judah, takes away treasures of Temple v9-15:261; from over the sea flows the grain harvest of the Nile v10:305; Pharaoh defeats Josiah king of Judah in battle v1-4:325; Egyptian army defeated when attacking Babylon v1:334; Babylon to invade and exile Egypt v7:334; Egypt to eventually return from exile v11:334; Egypt marches to support Judah against Babylonians v16:344; Jeremiah and remaining survivors of Judah taken to Egypt v23-25:349; King Zedekiah's daughters taken to Egypt v24:349; Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon to invade Egypt and demolish all temples v27-29:349, v8:368; parable of two eagles v1-10:363; Egypt a staff that splinters like a reed v4:365; Egypt to become an empty wasteland for forty years v5:365; never again to rule over the nations v8:365; Nile to no longer be muddied by hooves of cattle v10:368; Egypt a herd of bulls among calves of the nations, Psalm 53 v4:453; Joseph takes Jesus and his mother Mary to Egypt v9:486; Egypt to be ruined in last days v20:273; fierce king to rule over in last days v7:291; Nile to dry up in last days v8:291; Egypt to fear Judah in last days v11:291; (Antichrist) of end days to attack Egypt with chariots, cavalry and great fleet of ships v5:396; remnant of to come to Jerusalem in chains, (at second coming) bearing gifts v18:291; because I love you I will give other nations in exchange for you Egypt (at second coming) v1:302; Egypt to turn to Lord (at second coming) after he delivers them v13:291; five cities in Egypt to worship Jehovah (during millennium) v14:291; Egypt, Assyria and Israel to be centres of worship of Jehovah (during millennium) v17:291, v16:291, v16:291

Ehud Benjaminite, assassinate king of Moab, becomes judge of Israel v11-22:134

elderly (See also lifespan) show respect for the elderly and rise up in their presence v2:65; son to be born to Abraham aged 100 and Sarah aged 90 v21:23; she has no son and her husband is elderly v9:238; even on the aged you laid a heavy yoke v11:304, v2:347; elderly who had seen the former Temple wept aloud v4:399; the grey-haired and elderly are on our side v34:436; it is not only the elderly who are wise v5:439; grandchildren are a crown to the aged v15:473

elders (senior religious and community officials) Moses performs miraculous signs in presence of v5:52; water flowed from rock in sight of elders of Israel v6:61; seventy elders see God on Mt Sinai v8:68; elders to lay hands on bull's head as slaughtered v24:79; seventy elders called to assist Moses v16:94; seventy elders prophesy when Spirit of God rests upon them v23:94; at least honour me before the elders of my people v39:166; the elders of the town came out to meet Samuel v5:167; all the elders of Israel anoint David king v34:185; Ezekiel sees idolatry by seventy elders in a Temple room v9-14:359; elders are shown no respect v50:379; when Job took his seat in the square the elders would rise to their feet v26:438; her husband is respected at the city gate, he takes his seat among the elders v19:465; centurion sends Jewish elders to Jesus asking him to heal his servant v1:490; disciples accused of breaking tradition of elders by eating food with unwashed hands v5:505; Jesus to be rejected by elders, chief priests and teachers of the Law v15:508, v2:528; elders challenge authority of Jesus v18:522; elders meet officially and confirm decision to put Jesus to death v20:532, v23:533; Paul and Barnabas appoint elders in churches with prayer and fasting v20:582; Paul and Barnabas consult with church

apostles and elders regarding circumcision v2:582; all the elders were present with James v14:589; is any one sick, let him call for the elders of the church to pray over him and anoint him with oil v24:600; neglect not the spiritual gift given you when elders laid hands on you v23:652; John sees twenty-four elders seated on thrones in heaven v3:685; elders in heaven clothed in white, wearing crowns of gold v3:686; the elders in heaven to reign on earth as kings and priests v22:686

Eleazar son of Aaron, ordained a priest along with his brothers v1:71, v27:76; given charge of Tabernacle and everything in it v5:93; succeeds his father Aaron as high priest v15:100; instructs returning soldiers on need to purify themselves and their spoil v11:105; to obtain revelations for Joshua by Urim and Thummim v7:119; dies and is buried v15:130

elect Jerusalem's punishment shortened for sake of elect v17:526; false Christs will perform miracles to deceive the very elect v2:526; angels to gather elect with loud trumpet call in last days v36:527; elect sought for and obtained righteousness v12:632; Paul called to further faith of God's elect v1:648, v21:655; elect strangers in the world, chosen by fore-knowledge of God v1:657; make your calling and election sure, you will never fall v8:661; John addresses letter to elect lady and her children v1:677; the children of your elect sister send their greetings v12:677

Eli high priest, accuses Hannah of drunkenness v8:156; blesses Hannah that her prayer be answered v11:156; Samuel left in care of when weaned v16:157; Eli's two sons wicked priests, treat Lord's offerings with contempt, lie with women at Tabernacle v22-27:157; Eli rebuked his sons but they took no notice v28:157; Eli rebuked by Lord v1-7:157; guilt of Eli's house never to be atoned for by sacrifice v16:158; Eli's two sons die in battle v5:157, v9:158; Eli age 98 and blind dies when hears news that Ark captured v12-15:158; had been high priest forty years v16:158

Eliakim (See also Jehoiakim) son of Josiah, made king of Judah by Pharaoh Neco, name changed to Jehoiakim v11:326

Elijah prophet, prophesies no rain for next few years to Ahab v21:226, v15:488, v27:600; hides and is fed by ravens v22:226; sent to non-Israelite widow in Sidon v24:226; miracle of the never failing flour and oil v28:226; Elijah prays and widow's young son brought back to life v31-35:227; in third rainless year gathers all Israel to Mount Carmel v11:227; challenges 450 prophets of Baal v13-20:227; builds up Jehovah's ruined altar v23:228; drenches offering, wood and altar with water v25:228; fire blazes down from heaven v29:228; commands false prophets be put to death v31:228; predicts rain that very day, heavy rain falls v1-6:228; outruns Ahab's chariot v7:228; Jezebel swears to kill v9:228; Elijah flees into the desert, fed bread and water by an angel v10-15:228; walks forty days to Mount Horeb (Sinai) without eating further v15:228; Lord reveals his still quiet voice v22:229; Elijah complains of persecution to Lord v17:229, v10:632; sent to appoint two kings and call Elisha as prophet v24:229; Elijah calls Elisha to succeed him v27:229; curses Ahab and Jezebel for murder of Naboth and his sons v15:231; wore hair garment and a leather belt around his waist v8:233; twice calls down fire on a captain and fifty men v9-12:233; curses king Jehoram in name of Lord v11:265; Elijah to be taken to heaven in whirlwind v19:233; Elisha refuses to leave side of v20:233; divides river Jordan and crosses v28:234; asked for a double portion of his power by Elisha v29:234; chariot of fire separates Elijah and Elisha v32:234; Elijah carried upward in a whirlwind v33:234; to be sent before second coming of Lord v25:431; to turn hearts of fathers to children v25:431; John the Baptist to go forth in spirit and power of Elijah v9:483, v35:509; John the Baptist the Elijah who was to come v10:499; appears to Jesus, Peter, James and John v25:508

Elim (oasis) Israelites camp at for a time v5:60

Eliphaz one of three friends of Job v25:434; gives opinions as to why Job is suffering v4:434, v31:436, v1:437; Jehovah rebukes v30:442

Elisha called to succeed Elijah as prophet v24-31:229; asks for double portion of Elijah's power v29:234; chariot of fire separates Elijah and Elisha v32:234; Elisha divides Jordan river v37:234; heals bad water of Jericho v3:236; curses boys

who mock him, boys clawed by she bears v5-6:236; accompanies armies marching on Moab, harshly rebukes king Joram v10:237; calls for harpist to soothe him in order to obtain revelation v13:237; prophesies water will fill wadi v14:237; water flows into wadi next morning v16:237; widow's jar of oil keeps pouring, fills many jars v4:238; blesses hospitable woman to conceive a son v11:238; woman's son dies v14:238; Elisha prays and the boy restored to life v24:239; Elisha heals poisonous soup v34:239; Elisha feeds 100 men with 20 small loaves v37:239; Naaman healed of leprosy through v10-14:239, v16:488; Elisha refuses gift from Naaman v12:240; Elisha punishes Gehazi's greed with Naaman's leprosy v27:240; causes iron axe head to float v32:240; often warned king of Syria's plans v4:240; Syria sends army to capture Elisha v6:241; awakes to Syrian army surrounding town v7:241; causes his servant to see the hills full of chariots of fire v9:241; Syrian army blinded to reality, led by Elisha into Israel's royal city v10-13:241; instructs king of Israel to feed Syrian army v15:241; king orders Elisha beheaded v24:241; Elisha prophesies to king abundant food tomorrow v29:241; food obtained from abandoned camp of Syrians v43:242; goes to Syria to appoint Hazael king v1:242; prophesies that Ben-Hadad will be murdered v5:242; sends young prophet to anoint army commander Jehu as king of Israel v13:242; prophesies three defeats of Syria to king Jehoash using bow and arrows, later dies v14-20:245; bones of Elisha bring a man back to life v21:245

Eizabeth wife of Zechariah, barren and advanced in years v2:482; to bear a son and name him John v5:483; Elizabeth and Mary relatives, Mary visits, both prophesy v22-29:483; John the Baptist born to v30:483

Elymas sorcerer in Cyprus, opposes word of God, struck blind v8-13:580

enduring to end take courage, be strong and endure, and your works will be rewarded v10:262; blessed are they who endure until the end v21:396; parable of the sower v3-18:502; by enduring to the end you will gain Eternal Life v10:525; he who endures to the end will be saved v28:526; in due season we will reap a harvest, if we endure v15:626; you will be strengthened with power to endure in patience and joy v8:636; you will remain holy, provided you continue firm in faith v17:636; continue to live in Jesus Christ, growing ever stronger v8:636; I can endure all things through him who gives me strength v8:647; stand firm in the Lord v19:647; rebuke with sharpness so they will remain sound in the faith v13:648; live upright godly lives while we await Jesus Christ v24:649; fight a good fight, hold on to your faith v13:651; some will depart the faith, heeding deceiving doctrines of demons v13:652; some who are eager for riches have wandered from the faith v27:653; endure hardship as a good soldier of Jesus Christ v17:655; if we endure we will reign with him v22:655; men will turn from truth and wander into myths v19:656; make every effort to increase your endurance v5:661; believers who return again to their sins are worse off than before v30:662; better not to have known the way of righteousness than to turn back from it v31:662; will share in Christ only if we endure until end v6:668; continue in diligence to the very end v27:668; we must endure in faith to receive what is promised v12:670; run with endurance the race marked out for us v31:671; be careful you lose not that which you have worked for, but win the full reward v7:677; be faithful, even to the point of death v13:683; to him who does my will to the end I will give authority over nations v29:684; hold fast that no one take your crown v44:685; because you are lukewarm, neither cold nor hot, I will spew you out of my mouth v50:685; saints to patiently endure, obey the commandments and remain faithful to Jesus v15:693; he who overcomes will inherit all v7:699

enemies Abraham's enemies delivered into his hand by God Most High v20:21; descendants of Abraham to possess cities of their enemies v12:27; if you find the beast of your enemy, return it to him v20:64; I will send terror ahead of you, your enemies will turn their backs and run v11:75; if you keep my commandments five of you shall chase a hundred v5:87; you shall plant seed in vain, for your enemies will eat of it v11:88; I will turn your cities into ruins, even your enemies will be appalled v23:88; Israelites to be exiled and die in lands of their enemies because of sins v28-29:88; Jehovah your God will rescue you from your enemies v22:93; Jehovah is not with you,

you will be defeated by your enemies v23:97; I brought you here to curse my enemies, but you have blessed them v14:103, v8:103; the Lord goes with you to fight your enemies and give you victory v9:112; keep yourselves pure when encamped against your enemies v16:112; in hunger, thirst, nakedness and poverty you shall serve your enemies v2:116; it is mine to avenge the enemy, I will repay v26:118; are you for us, or for our enemies? v2:123; the sun stood still and the moon stopped until Israelites had destroyed their enemies v29:127; I drove your enemies before you, and gave you their land v6:136; the Israelites forgot Jehovah who had rescued them from all their enemies v9:139; Saul fought valiantly against Israel's enemies on every side v17:166; Lord gave David rest from all his enemies v25:188; Lord pleased Solomon did not ask for death of his enemies v7:203; Lord raised up two enemies against Solomon v10:211; so you have found me my enemy v12:231; a man's enemies are those of his own household v10:276; listen, it is the sound of the Lord repaying his enemies all they deserve v1:295; the enemy raised a shout in the Temple v28:379; your enemies gloat v32:379; O that the dream applied to your enemies my lord v13:386; Samaritans become enemies of men of Judah v8:399; the enemy is this wicked Haman v43:415; Jews kill 75,000 of their enemies v21:416; I was ashamed to ask the king for soldiers to protect us from the enemies v6:420; Job never rejoiced at his enemy's misfortune v50:439; you spread my table in the midst of my enemies, Psalm 15 v4:447, Psalm 54 v2:453; with our God we will gain victory, he will trample our enemies, Psalm 20 v4:448; O Lord, raise me up that I may avenge my enemies, Psalm 25 v5:449, Psalm 32 v3:450; sit at my right hand until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet, Psalm 54 v1:453, v2:524, v4:667; the Lord has accepted my prayer, now all my enemies shall be ashamed, Psalm 26 v9-10:449; Solomon blessed that his enemies lick the dust, Psalm 59 v6:455; if my people would but listen to me, how quickly would I subdue their enemies, Psalm 76 v7:458; all day long my enemies taunt me, Psalm 82 v5:459; when a man pleases the Lord he makes his enemies to be at peace with him v36:470; love your enemies, do good to those who hate you v17:491, v23:492; a man's enemies will be those of his own household v49:515; Christ will reign until he has put all enemies under his feet v17:615; day coming when Israel's many enemies will be like chaff before wind v18:288; though you search for your enemies you shall not find them (during millennium) v15:293

Enoch (son of Cain) birth of v14:16

Enoch (descendant of Seth) son of Jared, father of Methuselah v8:17; walked with God, did not experience death, taken by God at age 365 v8:17, v6:670; prophecies of second coming v14:665

envy See **jealousy**

Ephesians believers in city of Ephesus, Paul's first mission to, v8:587; disturbance in city by makers of shrines, income threatened by success of Paul v29:587; Paul warns leaders against false teachers v19:589; weep as they embrace and farewell Paul v24:589; Paul writes to, Eph:640; John receives revelation for v1:683; enduring patiently for my name, have not grown weary v4:683; will be removed if repent not v5:683; have forsaken love you had at first v5:683

Ephod sacred garment of high priest for receiving revelations, description of v4-13:71; Abiathar the priest flees to join David, taking ephod with him v30:173; David inquires of Lord through ephod v4:177; Israelites will live many days without v28:250

Ephraim second born son of Joseph v22:41; adopted by his grandfather Israel to become one of twelve tribes v7:44; Israel crosses arms when blessing him and his brother, puts right hand on Ephraim's head v9:44; descendants of Ephraim to become many nations v11:44

Ephraim tribe of blessing on by Israel, to become many nations v11:44; first census of 40,500 v11:92; second census 32,500 v4:105; ask Joshua for more land v24:128; not able to occupy all towns allotted to them v29:128, v16:133; men of Ephraim seize fords of Jordan for Gideon v26:138; anger of placated by Gideon v29:138; 42,000 Ephraimites fall in battle with Jephthah and men of Gilead v37:142; Ephraimites identified by speech, unable to pronounce word Shibboleth v35:142; Ephraim and other tribes split with Judah v35:212; guilt of Ephraim stored up, sins are recorded v6-7:251; what

can I do with you Ephraim? v17:252; within sixty-five years Ephraim shall be scattered v7:281; a time of distress, unlike any since Ephraim broke away from Judah v14:281; Ephraim, leader of the ten tribes sent into exile, become lost to history v18-19:258; Ephraim is my helmet and Judah my sceptre, Psalm 20 v2:448; Ephraim shall blossom as the rose (during millennium) v23:252; Ephraim no longer to be jealous of Judah, nor Judah hostile to Ephraim (during millennium) v14:296; tribes of Ephraim and Judah to be united (during millennium) v14:370; double portion of land for tribes of Joseph (during millennium) v11:376; in that day I shall bend Judah as my bow and make Ephraim my arrow (during millennium) v9:407; house of Joseph (Ephraim) to be saved and made mighty (during millennium) v18:407

equality spoil of conquest to be divided equally v2:129; David divides spoils equally v18:178; share your food with the hungry v30:300; you have paid these men who worked only one hour, equal to us v64:520; all believers are one and share everything in common v18:570; believers one in heart and mind, share everything they have v1:572; we desire equality among the saints v4:619; remember to share with others for with such sacrifices God is pleased v18:672

Esau (See also Edom) firstborn twin son of Isaac and Rebekah, red skinned and hairy v5:29; skillful hunter v7:29; sells birthright to his brother Jacob (later renamed Israel) v9-12:29, v3:671; marries two Canaanite women v1:30; commanded to bring his father Isaac wild game prior to being blessed v2:30; Jacob steals blessing of v11-19:30; weeps loudly when he discovers Jacob's deceit v26-30:30; receives lesser blessing, to live by sword and serve his brother Jacob v31-32:31; plans to kill Jacob who flees v33:31; marries daughter of Ishmael v3:31; Jacob sends messengers to Esau in his land of Edom when he returns home v1:34; Esau runs to Jacob and embraces him v23:35; accepts Jacob's gift v30:35; I am bringing disaster on Esau, his children shall perish and he will be no more v33-34:335, v11:351; every man in Esau's mountains will be slain v4:351; I have blessed Israel, but Esau I have cursed v3:429, v18:631

Esther Jewish virgin raised by Mordecai, wins king Xerxes favour, is made queen of Persia v14:413; Haman plans to exterminate Jews v6-7:413; Esther urged by Mordecai to plead with king for Jewish people v4-5:414; penalty for approaching king unsummoned is death v7:414; Esther calls for three day fast among Jews v11:414; king receives Esther favourably v14:414; Esther invites king and Haman to drink wine v16:415; Esther reveals her Jewish nationality to king and accuses Haman v40-43:415; Haman hanged on own gallows v48:416

Eternal Death See **Death Second**

Eternal Life (or to Live) whoever obeys my laws will Live v6:64, v8:293; man does not Live by bread alone but by every word that comes from mouth of God v31:110, v24:488; a righteous man will surely Live v21:363; a man who keeps all my commandments and does what is just and right shall surely Live v27:364; am I not pleased when they repent of their wicked ways and Live v29:364, v35:364; many who sleep in dust of earth will awaken to Eternal Life, others to Eternal Shame v12:396; Lord has shown me pathway to Eternal Life, Psalm 17 v6:447; teachings of Solomon lead to v4:464; whoever finds wisdom finds Eternal Life v12:467; the truly righteous man attains Eternal Life v38:470; small is the gate and narrow the way that leads to Eternal Life v10:494; whoever loses his life for sake of Jesus will find Eternal Life v19:508; what must I do to inherit Eternal Life? v19:512; love God with all your heart, love neighbour as yourself to inherit v21:512; faithful to receive hundred fold in new world and Eternal Life v54:520; enduring to the end will bring v10:525; righteous shall enter into v33:528; whoever believes in Jesus shall not perish but have v12:544; whoever believes words of Jesus has Eternal Life v19:547; whoever eats flesh and drinks blood of Jesus has Eternal Life v34:549; the words I have spoken are Spirit and will bring you Eternal Life v38:549; to whom shall we go, you have the words of Eternal Life v41:549; he who loves earth life shall lose Eternal Life v19:556; Eternal Life is to know the Father and Jesus Christ v18:560; teach the full message of Eternal Life v17:572; will receive the crown of Eternal Life when you have proven yourself v4:598; Eternal Life available for all men by Jesus Christ v2:629; Eternal Life awaits the kindly, but

wrath awaits the selfish v21:629; hold fast to words of Eternal Life v31:646; take hold of Eternal Life to which you were called v30:653; man who does will of God has Eternal Life v18:674; whoever has the Son has Eternal Life v25:676; be faithful and I will give you the crown of Eternal Life v13:683

Eternal Punishment (See also Lake of Fire, Eternal Shame, Death Second) then shall they go away into Eternal Punishment v33:528

Eternal Shame (See also Lake of Fire, Eternal Punishment, Death Second) others shall awaken to Eternal Shame v12:396

Eternity See forever

Ethiopia Moses criticised because of his Ethiopian wife v5:95; Ethiopian runs with news to David v14:196; are not you Israelites the same to me as the Ethiopians? v28:257; vast army of a million invading Ethiopians killed by army of Judah v7:262, v25:263; prophecy concerning Ethiopia in the last days v1:291; you too O Ethiopians will be slain by my sword v15:315; Ethiopian eunuch rescues Jeremiah from death, rewarded by Lord v14-17:346; angel sends Philip to teach Ethiopian eunuch, baptises him v21-33:575; Ethiopians to join with Gog in attacking Israel in last days v5:370, v7:396; because I love you I will give other nations in exchange for you Ethiopia (at second coming) v1:302; remnant of to come to Jerusalem in chains, bearing gifts (at second coming) v4:291, v18:291

Eunuch eunuchs throw Jezebel from window v5:243; do not let any eunuch say, I am just a dry tree v14:294; eunuchs who keep commandments to be rewarded by Lord v15:294; Hezekiah's children to become eunuchs in palace of king of Babylon v27:301; Ebed-Melech the eunuch rescues Jeremiah from death, rewarded by Lord v14-16:346; the eunuchs gagged and blindfolded Haman v46:416; some have made themselves eunuchs for sake of Kingdom of God v30:519; angel sends Philip to teach Ethiopian eunuch, baptises him v21-33:575

Eve created from rib of Adam v11:15; deceived by serpent, eats forbidden fruit v1-5:15, v18:620; becomes aware of her nakedness v6:15; Adam named his wife Eve v1:16; Eve and her posterity created by God with agony in child bearing and to be ruled over by husband v16-17:16; gives birth to Cain and Abel v2:16; was the one deceived, not Adam v21:651+

Evil See sin, wickedness

example come follow me v33:489; let your light so shine before others v29:492; whatever the Father does, the Son does also v14:547; I have set you an example, you should do as I have done v11:557, v30:658; as I have loved you love one another v22:557; follow my example, as I follow the example of Christ v31:612, v17:647; teach by good example v17:649, v21:652; in all things you must be a model example v20:649, v2:660; Paul, the worst of sinners shown mercy as an example to others who would believe v12:651; Sodom and Gomorrah an example of what will happen to ungodly v21:662, v7:665

exile when Israelites are exiled, if they humble their hearts the Lord will remember his covenant v30:88, v51:116; while you are exiled, your land will enjoy its Sabbath years as it lies empty v29:88, v31:349; you and your king will be driven to a foreign nation v52:116; Israelites to be scattered among all nations v9:117; exile of northern Israel foretold v44:225; exiled Israel to wander among the nations v5:251; punishment to continue in exile v7:251; exile of northern Israel to Assyria v12-18:257; why Israel was exiled v19-21:258; northern Israel never returned from exile v21:258; Judah also to be sent into exile v26:275, v26:301; Isaiah's vision of exile of Jerusalem by Babylonians v7-8:302; Judah's exile to come to an end v16:277, v7:300; Cyrus will free Judean exiles v7:303; a few of Israel will return from exile with Judah v6:323; Jeremiah laments over horrific vision of exile of Judah v32-36:327; survivors of this evil exiled nation shall prefer death to life v27:327; plague, starvation, sword and exile await Judah v16:330; pack your belongings for exile v8:334; faithful exiles to return after fall of Babylon v16:337; adult survivors exiled from Judah never to see native land again v6:339; first exile of Judah to Babylon v28:341; vision of good figs represent those of first exile v7:341; prophet Jeremiah writes to exiles in Babylon v1-13:342; second exile of Judah to Babylon ch22:347, v30:349; Ezekiel called as prophet to exiles in

Babylonia v1:355; prayer of an afflicted man in exile, Psalm 82:589; Cyrus allows exiles of Judah to return v1-2:397; Zerubbabel leads a large company to return to Judah v9-12:398; returning exiles filled with songs of joy, Psalm 86:461; Ezra and another company of exiles depart for Jerusalem v10:420; descendants of exiles of last days to fly home in ships v22:294; I will bring back my exiled people Israel, they will rebuild ruined cities (during millennium) v33:257, v9:292, v13:296

explorers twelve Israelite leaders sent to explore promised land v18:95; bring back fearful report v24:96; fearful explorers die of plague, Caleb and Joshua survive v21:96; Joshua sends out two men as spies to explore Jericho v6:121; spies report back to Joshua v20:122; Danite explorers discover people of Laish v12:147; explorers return and set out with 600 armed men v14:147; explorers steal image and take young Levite to be priest to tribe of Dan v15-19:147

eyes when you eat of that fruit your eyes will be opened v3:15; Leah the elder had tender eyes v22:32; Israel's eyes were failing because of old age v8:44; his eyes shall be darkened by wine v23:45; an eye for eye v6:66; a priest with defective eyesight not to make offerings to Lord v8:85; Lord opened Balaam's eyes, saw angel of the Lord v23:102; you will wear out your eyes watching, day after day v51:116; Moses was a 120 years old yet his eyes were not weak v31:119; Philistines gouge out Samson's eyes v23:146; Few of Eli's descendants spared, only to weep out eyes with tears and grief v4:157; Jonathan ate of the honeycomb and his eyes brightened v36:165; David was rosy cheeked with clear eyes v12:167; your eyes are gentle like doves v8:213; you have stolen my heart with one glance of your eyes v12:214; your eyes are like doves, washed in milk and mounted like jewels v3:214; avert your gaze for your eyes overwhelm me v9:214; Jezebel shadowed her eyes and adorned her hair v1:243; eyes of Jehovah range throughout earth v26:263; my eyes have seen the King, Jehovah Almighty v21:275; their ears are dull and their eyes unseeing v25:275; their heads high, flirting with their eyes v30:284; then will the eyes of the blind be opened v20:295; their eyes are plastered over so they cannot see v13:303; your eyes are too pure to behold evil v8:316; why do you shade your eyes with paint? v21:324; O that my eyes were a fountain of tears v35:327; eyesight of donkeys failing for lack of pasture v4:329; my eyes overflow with tears, night and day v11:330, v22:379; their bodies were full of eyes all over v11:356; they have eyes to see, but see not v1:360; I am about to take away from you your wife, the delight of your eyes v26:365; his eyes blazed like fire v3:393; their eyes shall rot in their sockets v24:409; your eyes flash and you vent your rage against God v35:436; dark shadows ring my eyes v4:436; in my flesh I will see God with my own eyes v21:437; his eyes are upon all men, he sees their every step v20:439; your eyes behold my spirit v7:44; the light has gone from my eyes, Psalm 26 v6:449; commandments of Lord give light to the eyes, Psalm 37 v2:450; their eyes bulge with fatness, Psalm 72 v4:457; let not an adulteress captivate you with her eyes v1:464; Lord hates haughty eyes v5:468; be not wise in your own eyes v1:474; the eye is the lamp of the body v30:492; if your right eye causes you to sin, pluck it out v36:492; first remove the log from your own eye, then take speck from another's eye v3:494; Jesus heals two blind men v55-57:497; man's sight fully restored and he saw everything clearly v4:507; Jesus heals a man blind from birth v1-3:551; can a demon open the eyes of the blind? v47:553; Ananias heals Saul's blindness, scales fell from Saul's eyes v15:576; you would have plucked out your own eyes and given them to me v23:625; Son of God whose eyes are like blazing fire v22:684; the cherubim were covered with eyes all over, even under their wings v7:686; the lamb had seven horns and seven eyes v17:686; God shall wipe away every tear from their eyes v12:688

Ezekiel prophet and priest in exile in Babylonia v1:355; describes vision of cherubim and Jehovah v2-18:355; God speaks to v20:356; given scroll containing words of woe to eat v25:356; to be held accountable if he does not warn wicked v2:357; glory of Jehovah appears to again v7:357; struck dumb for protection except to speak messages from Lord v10:357; commanded to enact coming siege of Jerusalem v12:357; commanded to eat starvation rations v19:357; transported by

Spirit of God v31:357; overwhelmed for seven days v33:357; objects to using human dung as fuel, permitted to use cow dung v22:358; to shave his hair v25:358; hair to symbolise fate of people in Jerusalem v26-30:358; taken in spirit to Temple in Jerusalem 1-4:359; sees idols and idolatry by elders in Temple room v9-12:359; sees women mourning for god Tammuz, men worshipping sun v17-19:359; sees wicked in Jerusalem symbolically slaughtered v29:359; commanded to act out Jerusalem going into exile v2:360; prophesies capture and blinding of fleeing king of Jerusalem v7:360; pleads for people of Judah v30:360; prophesies against leaders of Jerusalem v38:360; Spirit returns spirit of Ezekiel to Babylon v46:360; told by Lord that siege of Jerusalem has begun v24:365; Ezekiel's wife dies on evening of fall of Jerusalem v28:365; Ezekiel shows no sign of mourning as commanded by Lord v29:365; regains full powers of speech v2:368; taken by Spirit to valley of dry bones v1:369; told to command bones to come alive v4:369; flesh and skin cover bones, spirits enter bodies and they stand on their feet v5-7:369; exiles listen to Ezekiel but do not heed words v10:368; stick of Judah and stick of Ephraim joined as sign that both branches of Israel will one day reunite v12-16:370; taken to high mountain, sees future (millennial) Temple and city ch14:371; Ezekiel describes courtyards and buildings of Temple v12-47:371; sees Lord approach in glory and enter Temple through east gates v1-3:373; describes sacred Temple district v1-6:374; describes duties of king (millennial) v8-27:375; describes river and lakes flowing from Temple ch17:375; describes new boundaries of Israel (millennial) v11-15:376

Ezra Jewish priest in exile, wins support of King Artaxerxes v14:419; gathers 1496 men to return to Jerusalem v2:419; forty Levites and 220 Temple servants join them v4:420; calls a fast for Lord's protection on journey, ashamed to ask king for soldiers v5:420; arrives in Jerusalem four months later v11:420; appalled at sin of intermarriage by Jewish men v1-3:420; men agree to separate from foreign wives v22:421; reads Law of Moses to people v2:426

faith faith of Abraham greatly tested my Lord, commanded to offer his son Isaac v1-12:27, v14:670; Deborah rebukes Barak's lack of faith v7:135; some faithful northern Israelites move to Judah v4:260; Jotham grew powerful because he was faithful to the Lord his God v29:276; Hezekiah the most faithful of all kings of Judah v8:285; Lord commends faithfulness of the Recabites v21:339; David's faith in Eternal Life, Psalm 17:447; Israelites rejected the promised land, having no faith in Lord's promise, Psalm 83 v21:460; Jesus marvels at Roman centurion's faith v5:490; woman's faith healed her v47:497; parable of the mustard seed v28:503; parable of the yeast and dough v30:503; few miracles done in Nazareth due to lack of faith v52:504; O you of little faith, why did you doubt v34:505; Jesus commends faith of Greek woman, delivers her daughter from demon v30:506; O faithless generation, how much longer must I be with you v42:509; all things can be done for one who believes v46:509; faith can move a mountain v51:509; faithless will not be convinced, even if one returns from the dead v36:515; parable of the faithful and unfaithful servant v42-46:515; Jesus wonders if he will find faith on earth when he returns v14:518; faith even small as a mustard seed will uproot a tree v32:518; the faithful to receive a hundred fold in new world and Eternal Life v54:520; go, your faith has healed you v14:521; when praying, believe you have received it and it will be yours v15:522; anyone with faith able to do even greater miracles than Jesus v37:558; blessed are those who have not seen, yet believe v28:564; cripple healed by faith in name of Jesus v11:571; testing of faith develops endurance and spiritual maturity v3:598; do not just hear the word, do it v16:598; faith without works is dead v11:599; not all men have faith v20:605; faith should not rest on man's wisdom, but on God's power v22:608; when perfection comes, only faith, hope and love will remain v23:614; faith in vain if there is no resurrection v8:615; man is not justified by the Law of Moses, but by faith in Jesus Christ v23:624; Abraham blessed by his faith, not by the Law v13-16:629; faith a fruit of the Holy Spirit v7:626; Gentiles have obtained righteousness by faith v27:631; we have been saved by grace and faith, not by our works v20:641; one church, one Spirit, one Lord, one faith, one baptism, and one Father v4:642; in later times some will depart from the faith v13:652; the sincere faith of Timothy's

grandmother and mother lives in him v5:654; flee the passions of youth and pursue faith v2:655; trials have come to prove your faith genuine v7:658; increase your faith, goodness and knowledge v5:661, v7:668; fight for the faith v3:664, v18:665; Jesus faithful to the one who appointed him v2:667; message was of no value to them because they did not combine it with faith v7:668; faith in God a first truth of Christ v22:668; faith is to be confident of what we hope for, but do not see v1:670; without faith it is impossible to please God v2:670; hold fast to hope, for he who promised is faithful v3:670; you must endure in faith to receive what is promised v12:670; Abel, Enoch, Noah and Abraham men of faith v4-14:670; God has prepared a heavenly city for the faithful v13:670; faith of Isaac, Jacob, Joseph and Moses v16-21:670; by faith Israelites passed through Red Sea v22:671; by faith the walls of Jericho fell v23:671; faith of Rahab, Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David, Samuel and the prophets v24-30:671; Jesus, the pioneer and perfecter of our faith v32:671; be faithful, even to the point of death v13:683; obey God's commandments and remain faithful to Jesus v15:693; he who sat upon the white horse was called Faithful and True v12:698

false doctrine See teachers false, prophets false

False Prophet of last days (See also prophets false)

many false prophets will arise in last days and deceive many v26:526; False Prophet will make inhabitants of earth worship first beast v2:692; False Prophet to perform great miracles and deceive inhabitants of earth v3:692; unclean spirit comes from mouth of False Prophet, to gather kings for great battle at Armageddon v22-24:695; Beast and False Prophet to be captured and cast into Lake of Fire v23:698; will be in torment day and night forever v12:698

false witness (See also tongue, lying, gossip) ninth commandment, you shall not bear false witness 27:64, v44:519; do not spread false rumours v18:67; do not assist a wicked man by being a dishonest witness v21:67; witnesses falsely accuse Naboth, he and sons put to death v7-9:231; all who swear falsely shall be cut off v44:405; Lord hates those who swear falsely v12:406, v5:468; a false witness will not go unpunished v44:470; blessed are you when people falsely speak evil of you v16:491; bearing false witness a sin that defiles a person v23:506; false witnesses came forward but their statements did not agree v3:532; false witnesses testify against Stephen v11:573

famine Abraham goes to Egypt to escape famine v22:20; Joseph predicts seven years of in Egypt v11:40; Egypt and Canaan wasted by famine v17:44, v20:574; famine drives Naomi from Bethlehem to Moab v1:151; David inquires of Lord reason for three year famine v7:187; famine due to Elijah's word, severe in Samaria v3:227, v15:488; great famine in Samaria due to Syrian siege v19:241; famine of word of Lord coming upon earth v24:256; you Philistines I will destroy by famine and sword v3:284; people and their false prophets shall lie dead by sword and famine in streets of Jerusalem v10:330, v10:342, v10:345; famine in Jerusalem severe, no food at all to eat v1:347; those who died by sword in Jerusalem better off than those who died of famine v19:379; people mortgage their property to buy grain during famine v1:425; Lord keeps the righteous alive during times of famine, Psalm 39 v5:451; prodigal son driven home by famine v16:517; Agabus prophesies severe famine over entire Roman world v15:579; great earthquakes, famines and plagues in various places in last days v24:526, v8:687

fasting Moses neither eats nor drinks for forty days v12:75; Day of Atonement to be a day of fasting v33:81; Israelites fast and confess sins v14:160; King Saul orders the men of his army to fast v34:165; Jonathon violates father's fast v36:165; men of Jabesh fast seven days v11:178; Elijah walks 40 days without eating to Mount Sinai v15:229; Lord tells people to declare a holy fast v9:272; return to me with fasting v19:272; unrighteous fasting not acceptable to Lord v27:308; fasting that pleases the Lord is to care for the poor and honour the Sabbath v29-31:309; king fasts for Daniel while in lions' den v11:391; Lord asks people if their fasting was sincere v2:406; fasts of the fourth, fifth, seventh, and tenth months shall be joyful times v13:406; Esther calls for three day fast by all Jews v11:414; Ezra calls a fast for Lord's protection on journey to Jerusalem v5:420; I humbled myself with fasting, Psalm 43

v2:451; Anna worshiped day and night, fasting and praying v24:485; Jesus fasts forty days v22:488; days of fasting to come for disciples v24:491; fast in secret v23:493; this kind of demon comes out only by prayer and fasting v52:509; I fast twice a week v17:518; Paul fasts for three days v8:576; Holy Spirit spoke while they were fasting and worshipping Lord v4:580; leaders fast, pray, and lay hands on Saul and Barnabas v5:580; elders set apart in churches with prayer and fasting v20:582

fat Abel offers Lord fat portions of firstborn of his flock v3:16; do not keep the fat until morning (Passover lamb) v28:65; burn fat from liver and kidneys on altar v7:72; burn fat from tail of ram, inner parts, kidneys and right thigh on altar v17:72; do not eat the fat of cattle, sheep or goats, the fat is the Lords v36:79; wherever you live, you shall not eat fat or blood, a law for all generations v40:79

father (See also God the Father) fifth commandment—honour your father and mother v23:64; whoever curses—to be put to death v1:65; striker of to be put to death v4:65; person who dishonours cursed v5:115; forsake not the friend of your father v2:473; fathers, provoke not your children v11:637, v11:643

Father See God the Father

fatherless do not take advantage of widows and orphans or your own children will be fatherless v14:64; tithes to be used to support widows and fatherless v8:115; cursed the person who withholds justice from the fatherless v8:115; care for the fatherless v7:283; you O God are helper of the fatherless, Psalm 12 v5:446; the Lord is father to the fatherless, Psalm 49 v2:453; move not a boundary stone of the fatherless, Jehovah their defender is strong v8:472

fear Egyptians began to fear Israelites v4:49; people trembled with fear at sound of Jehovah's voice v1:64; hearts of the people are melting in fear because of us v21:122; fear not, be strong and courageous v35:127; do not fear this vast army, for the battle is not yours but mine v22:264; fear not, for I am your God and will strengthen you and help you v15:292; fear not men nor their insults, for the worms will soon devour them v18:302; fear no more for I am with you v12:334; fear seized me and the hair on my body bristled v6:434; though I walk the dark valley, no evil I fear , Psalm 15 v3:447; the Lord is my light, so whom shall I fear, Psalm 50 v1:453; fear not men, they are but grass v17:302; the Lord is with me therefore I fear not what can man do, Psalm 93 v2:462; O you of little faith, why do you fear v22:496; fear not, just believe v49:497; fear not those who can only destroy the body v14:498; live your lives in reverent fear v15:658; fear not those who oppose you, they will be destroyed v19:646; there is no fear in love, perfect love drives out fear v19:675; whoever fears is not perfect in love v20:676

feasts (See also Passover feast of, Pentecost day of) commandments on feasts of Passover, Unleavened Bread, Harvest, and Tabernacles v43-46:65; Feast of First Fruits v1:85; Feast of Trumpets v3:85; Feast of Tabernacles v5:85, v1:207, v2:549; Feasts detestable to Lord because of sin v20:255; the priests shall obey my appointed Feasts v38:374; no one comes to appointed Feasts of Jerusalem, the city lies empty v3:378; Feast of Tabernacles celebrated by returned exiles v17:398, v10:427; Feast of Trumpets celebrated by returned exiles v1:426; the Feast of Lights v1:53; appointed feasts to be held in millennial Temple v25:375, v28:409

figs his people were happy and lived in safety, every man under his fig tree v26:204; the fig tree and vine are yielding their riches v1:273; king's tumour healed with a poultice of figs; v16:301; Jeremiah's vision of good and bad figs v4-9:341; that day you will enjoy peace, sitting amid your vines and fig trees v33:404; Jesus curses fig tree which later withers v6-13:522; parable of the signs of the fig tree v37:527

fighting (See also war) Moses came across two Israelites fighting v22:50; the Egyptians began shouting, Jehovah is fighting for them v27:59; penalty for when men are fighting and injure a pregnant woman v11:66; the Lord goes with you to fight your enemies and give you victory v9:112, v4:130; men who are exempt from fighting in battle v10:112; wife not to seize assailant of husband by private parts v29:114; the hand of Jehovah was against Israel when they went out to fight

v4:134; these are the men for whom you expressed contempt, go out now and fight them v9:140; why did you not call on us to go and fight with you? v31:142; be men and fight v6:158; we want a king like other nations, to go out before us to fight our battles v10:161; Goliath challenges Israel, give me a man and let us fight each other v28:168; David fights Goliath with a sling v18-27:168; chosen young men of Ish-Bosheth and David fight hand to hand v30:183; be strong and let us fight bravely for our families v1:189; do not fight with anyone except Ahab king of Israel v31:232; do not fight against Jehovah for you will not succeed v27:262, v24:267; but I have paid 100 talents for these fighting men v25:267; we have Jehovah our God to help us and to fight our battles v6:298; you may even find yourselves fighting against God v32:573; you covet and cannot have, so you quarrel and fight v2:600; I do not fight like a man punching the air v14:612; I have fought the good fight, I have finished the race v22:656; Jehovah will gather the nations to Jerusalem to fight against her (in last days) v15:409; then Jehovah will appear, to fight against the nations (at second coming) v17:409

fire (See also fire heavenly, Lake of Fire) Abraham himself carried the fire; Israelites not to light fire in dwellings on Sabbath v39:65; restitution for property loss by v5:67; fire on altar must never go out v19:79; a harlot disgraces her father, she must be burned to death by fire v7:85; rejoice and present offerings to Jehovah by fire v7:85; Nazirite to shave off hair and burn it in fire v25:87; let no one burn his son or daughter in fire v22:111; exiled Israelites had sacrificed their children in fire v20:258; people burned a huge fire in King Aza's honour v31:263; before them fire devours, behind them a desert waste v13:272; Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego thrown into blazing furnace v10-18:385; is not this man a brand plucked from the fire? v26:404

fire heavenly (See also fire, Lake of Fire) Lord rained down burning sulphur on Sodom and Gomorrah v19:25; Jehovah went ahead of them by night in a pillar of fire v11:58; Jehovah looked like a fire on top of mountain v14:64; burnt offering on altar consumed by v4:80; Nadab and Abihu consumed by v7:80; consumed some Israelites on outskirts of camp v10:94; Korah and 250 followers consumed by v30:98; fire flared up from the rock and consumed Gideon's food offering v16:137; angel ascended upward in flame v15:143; Lord answers David with v25:199; Solomon's burnt offering consumed by v27:208; fire burnt up Elijah's sacrifice, even water in the trench v29:228; Elijah twice calls down fire on a captain and fifty men v9-12:233; chariot and horses of fire appear to Elijah and Elisha v32:234; servant of Elisha sees the hills full of horses and chariots of fire v9:241; fire burns up Job's sheep and shepherds v12:433; Jesus will baptise with the Holy Spirit and with fire v15:487; James and John propose calling down fire to destroy Samaritan town v3:511; I have come to bring fire on the earth v47:515; there appeared what looked like tongues of fire v2:570; Jesus to be revealed from heaven in blazing fire v5:604; angel's eyes blazed like fire v13:683; False Prophet to cause fire to come down from heaven in full view of men v3:692; John sees what looked like a sea of glass mingled with fire v2:694; blood, fire and columns of smoke on earth before coming of Lord v5:273; present heavens and earth to be destroyed by fire v4:663; elements will melt with fire and all worldly things be burned up v7:663; fire falls upon earth, third of vegetation burned v6:688; fire to be poured down on Gog's army in last days v14:371; fire to fall on northern nations (Magog) and coastlands in last days v16:301; fire devours nations attacking Holy City (after millennium) v11:698

first fruits commandments on v28-33:65; fourth year fruit of tree to be offered to Jehovah v31:65; Feast of First Fruits to be held v1:85; first fruits belong to the priests v18:99; declaration to Lord when offering v1-7:114; honour the Lord with the first fruits of your crops, then your barns will be filled v18:466; he brought us forth that we might be a kind of first fruits of all his creatures v13:598; John sees 144,000 chaste men in heaven, first fruits to God v6:693

firstborn (See also birthright) Abel offers fat portions of firstborn of his flock to Jehovah v3:16; I am Esau, your firstborn v12:30; Reuben, my firstborn, my might v17:45; firstborn Egyptian males die at midnight v15:57, Psalm 83 v11:460; firstborn males of both men and animals belong to Lord v7:58;

firstborn to be redeemed v8:58, v24:99; firstborn to be brought to Lord on eighth day v29:65, v18:485; Levites to take place of firstborn Israelite males v24:92; blood of clean firstborn animal to be sprinkled on altar and fat burnt as offering v26:99; firstborn of every clean animal belongs to Levites v24:99; firstborn son to inherit a double share v2:113; firstborn son the first fruit of his father's strength v3:113; David was greatly distressed, for Amnon was his firstborn son v17:191; king of Moab sacrifices his firstborn son v23:237; I am Israel's father and Ephraim is my firstborn son v11:343; Mary gave birth to her firstborn son, Jesus v7:484; Jesus the firstborn among many brothers v4:631; Jesus the firstborn of all creation v11:631; you have before you the church of the Firstborn (Jesus) v6:671; Jesus Christ, the firstborn from the dead v5:682

fish creation of v10:14; men given dominion over v16:15, Psalm 34 v5:450; all fish in Nile die, river stinks v11:53; clean and unclean fish defined v7:81; we remember the fish we ate in Egypt v12:94; Solomon would speak of trees, animals, birds, reptiles and fish v24:204; a huge fish swallows Jonah v18:247, v23:501; men from Tyre were bringing fish and selling them on the Sabbath v11:428; the spacious sea teems with fish beyond number, Psalm 19 v10:448; master, we fished all night and took nothing v29:489; such a large number of fish that the net began to break v30:489, v7:565; from now on you will be a fisher of men v33:489; which of you, if his son asks for a fish will give him a snake? v20:493, v7:513; the kingdom of God is like a net that catches all kinds of fish v43:503; Jesus multiplies two fish to feed thousands v20:504, v42:507, v6:548; take the first fish you catch and in its mouth you will find a shekel coin v3:509; resurrected Jesus eats a piece of baked fish in front of disciples v49:538; Jesus prepares a fish breakfast for his apostles v11:565; a third of fish to be destroyed in last days when blazing mountain falls into sea v9:689; swarms of fish to live in Dead Sea during millennium v6:376

fleece Gideon tests God with v3-5:137; Job warned those who lacked clothing with a fleece from his flocks v48:439

flesh cursed is he who makes flesh his strength v1:331, v8:647; flesh must suffer first, all a man has he will give for his health v19:433; after my skin has been destroyed, yet in my flesh will I see God v21:437; a man will be joined to his wife and the two shall become one flesh v23:519, v27:610, v6:643; the spirit is willing but the flesh is weak v36:531; a spirit has not flesh and bones as you see I have v45:538; the Word became flesh v6:542; how can this man give us his flesh to eat? v32:549; whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has Eternal Life v34:549; your gold and silver will devour your flesh like fire v15:600, v12:626; hand this man over to Satan for the destruction of his flesh that his spirit may be saved v7:609; flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God v28:616; there was given me a thorn in the flesh, a messenger of Satan to harass me v48:621; after beginning with the Spirit you are now ending with the flesh v2:624; live by the Holy Spirit and you will not yield to desires of the flesh v3:625, v22:633; flesh desires what is contrary to the Spirit v4:625; sinful works of the flesh listed v5:625; they who yield to the flesh will not inherit the kingdom of God v6:626, v22:633; Holy Spirit crucifies sinful desires of the flesh v10:626; he who sows to please the flesh will reap destruction from the flesh v12:626; in Christ you put off the fleshly nature v11:636; rules of men have no power in restraining flesh v21:637; put to death your fleshly nature v24:637; abstain from fleshly desires which war against your soul v23:658; he who willingly suffers in the flesh has broken away from sin v19:659

flies fourth plague of Egypt, dense swarms of flies v31:54, Psalm 74 v14:458, Psalm 83 v8:83; people will die like flies in last days v29:197

flogging (See also rod) commandments regarding beating of slaves v10:66; criminals to be flogged in presence of judge with number of lashes crime deserves v30:114; maximum number of lashes forty v31:114; Son of Man to be mocked, insulted, spat on, flogged, then killed v69:520; apostles to be imprisoned and flogged v6:525; Jesus is flogged v28:534, v16:562; apostles flogged by Sanhedrin v33:573; Paul and Silas flogged severely v22:584; Paul tied down to be flogged, informs commander he is a Roman citizen v43-44:590; Paul flogged more severely than other apostles v36:621

flood 120 years remaining until flood v17:17; Noah

commanded to build an ark v20:17; floodgates of the heavens open, rains forty days and nights v7:18; ark floats high above the earth v8:18; all mountains covered by water v9:18, Psalm 19 v3:447; earth covered in water 150 days v10:18; never again will water cover whole earth, Psalm 19 v4:447; men of old who were carried off by the flood walked a godless path v5:437, 20:662; people ate, drank and married up to day the flood came and destroyed them all v7:518; floodgates of heavens to open in last days v6:289; earth swallows flood the Dragon poured from his mouth v22:691

flowers cedar of Temple walls carved in flowers, overlaid in gold v22:206; clusters of flower garlands decorated base of each capital v32:206; the rains have ended, the flowers are appearing v3:213; we roam among the flowers until the shadows lengthen v5:213; look upon me as a rose of Sharon, as a lily of the valley v10:213; like a lily among thorns is my dearest among the maidens v11:213; his lips are like lilies, dripping with myrrh v4:214; my beloved has gone down to his garden to gather flowers v8:214; behold the flowers of the field, they neither labour nor spin v33:494

food seeds and fruit given as food for man v17:15; green plants food for birds and animals v18:15; ground cursed by God, food now to be obtained by sweat of brow v19:16; Noah commanded to store every kind of food on ark v24:17; after the flood Noah and sons permitted to eat meat v22:18; Esau sells his birthright for lentil stew and bread v12:29; prepare the savoury food I love and bring it to me to eat v3:30; Joseph stored up huge amounts of grain, beyond measure v23:41; Joseph exchanged food for their animals and land of Egypt v20-22:44; Asher's land blessed to be rich in food v28:45; Israelites complain for food in the desert v7:60; quail come and cover the ground v15:60; manna appears on desert floor each morning v16:60, v2:97; commandments on food v34-36:68; worship Jehovah your God and my blessing will be upon your food v10:75; do not sow or harvest during fiftieth year, your food to be what grows of itself v17:85; we remember the fish we ate in Egypt, and cucumbers, melons, leeks, onions and garlic v12:94; we never see any food but this manna v12:94; you will eat meat for a whole month until you loathe the smell of it v17:94, Psalm 74 v8:457; promised land a land of wheat, barley, vines, fig trees, pomegranates, olive oil, milk and honey v8:109; law regarding eating neighbour's produce v26:114; food to be cursed with blight and mildew if commandments not kept v36:116; manna stops day after Passover and Israelites eat food from land of Canaan v20:123; angel tells Manoah he will not eat his food, offer it to Jehovah v12:143; have some bread and dip it in the vinegar v11:152; Boaz gives Ruth roasted grain to eat v11:152; David given wheat, barley, flour, roasted grain, beans, lentils, honey, curds, sheep, and cheese made from cow's milk v24:195; eat your food with gladness for it pleases God that you do this v16:219; food is made to cheer v21:220; miracle of never failing flour and oil v27-30:226; Elijah fed bread and water by an angel, walks forty days v11-15:228; Elisha heals poison in soup v34:239; Elisha's miracle of 20 small loaves feeding 100 men v35-38:239; we have wheat, barley, oil and honey hidden in a field v10:348; Ezekiel commanded to make a bread from a flour of wheat, barley, millet and beans v18:357; Israelites to eat unclean food in Assyria v5:251, v20:357; woe to those of Samaria, bloated with rich food v20:286; over the sea flows the grain harvest of the Nile v10:305; share your food with the hungry v30:309, v18:363; severe starvation in Jerusalem during siege v1:347, v23:358; your food was choice flour, honey, and olive oil v13:362; after ten days eating sown food, Daniel and companions looked healthier than those eating king's food v10:383; Daniel humbles himself for three weeks, eats no rich food, meat or wine v1:393; Esther provided with special food as part of her beauty treatment v7:413; go now and enjoy choice food, and share with those who have nothing prepared v7:427; all creation look to Lord for their food, Psalm 19 v11:448, Psalm 92 v4:462; he who loves wine and rich food will never be wealthy v41:466; drowsiness will clothe in rags they who gorge themselves on food v45:466; the wise man stores food and oil, but the foolish man eats all he has v38:467; food obtained by deceit tastes sweet, but soon turns to gravel in the mouth v5:469; he who works his land will have abundant food v5:473; earth trembles under a fool who is full of food v7:474; better a dish of vegetables with love than a fattened calf with

hated v18:474; better a dry crust with peace than feasting with strife v19:474; locusts and wild honey the food of John the Baptist v3:487; whoever has food should share with him who has none v9:487; do not be anxious about how you will eat, is not life more than food? v29:493; miracles of the loaves and fishes v16-24:504, v42:507, v53:507, v5-7:548; Martha anxious about food preparation and serving to be done v38:513; my father's hired men have food to spare and I am perishing with hunger v19:517; I was hungry and you fed me v26:528; Jesus eats baked fish in front of disciples to prove he has body of flesh and bones v49:538; Jesus prepares a fish and bread breakfast for his apostles v11:565; Greek Jews complain their widows being neglected in daily distribution of food v1:573; abstain from meat of unbled animals and from eating blood v12:583; for fourteen days you have gone without food, now take some food to survive v26:594; food sacrificed to idols defiled to those who believe it to be v4:611, v28:612, v7:633; food does not bring us near to God v5:611; eat at home first (rules on Lord's Supper) v25:613; one man eats any food, while another eats only vegetables v1:633; do not by your eating harm your brother for whom Christ died v8:633; false teachers will forbid certain foods v15:652; all food can be purified by prayer v16:652; if we have food and clothing we should be content with that v24:653; by grace we are strengthened, not by rules regarding food v19:672; those who eat the flesh of pigs, rats and other abominable things to meet end when Lord returns v8:295; Jehovah to prepare feast of rich food and choice wines (at second coming) v24:293; dust shall be the serpent's food (during millennium) v22:293; food to grow rich and plentiful (during millennium) v4:294; east and west borders of sacred district to be for growing food (during millennium) v6:375

foolishness is this the way you repay Jehovah O foolish and unwise people? v14:118, v17:324; Saul foolish in not keeping commandment from the Lord v13:164; turn Ahiathophel's counsel into foolishness v25:193; laughter is foolish v13:217; the wise man has eyes that see, while the fool walks in darkness v24:217; fools are put in high positions while the noble occupy low ones v26:219; fools found in the house of pleasure v30:219; better to hear a wise man's rebuke than laughter of fools v1:220; a little foolishness spoils wisdom and honour v6:220; all nations believe foolish doctrines v44:328; woe to foolish prophets who follow their own spirit v17:361; Job accuses his wife of speaking foolishly v23:434; a foolish woman tears down her house with her own hands v10:465; a fool believes anything v41:467; a fool scorn wisdom v43:467; a fool gives full vent to his anger v48:467; a companion of fools will become a fool v1:468; you will not find wisdom on the lips of a fool v2:468; the foolish man will be servant to the wise v3:468; he who trusts in himself alone is a fool v6:468; he who hates correction is a fool v7:468; better to meet a bear robbed of her cubs than a fool in his folly v10:468; he who answers before hearing is foolish v11:468; a hot-headed reckless man is a fool v12:468; as a dog returns to its vomit so a fool repeats his foolishness v15:468; the way of a foolish man seems right to him v16:468; even a fool is thought wise if he remains silent v4:470; a fool delights in airing his opinions v20:470; a fool is quick to quarrel v23:470; a foolish man blurts out his foolishness v24:470; the rod of discipline will drive foolishness from the heart of a young man v4:473; a foolish son brings grief to his mother v9:473; earth trembles under a fool full of food v7:474; you foolish man, this very night your life is required of you v7:514; parable of man who built his house upon the sand v25:495; blind fools! v36:525; parable of the wise and foolish virgins v1-10:527; the foolishness of God wiser than the wisdom of man v15:608; God chose the foolish of the world to shame the wise v19:608; God's secret knowledge foolishness to a man without the Holy Spirit v26:608; apostles fools for Christ v46:609; Paul speaking as a fool v32:621, v52:621; how can you be so foolish? v2:624; they think they are wise, in reality they are fools v10:628; their worldly minds put them up with foolish notions v17:637; avoid foolish controversies v30:649, v3:655; men who worm their way into houses and captivate foolish women v9:655

forbidden fruit fruit of tree of knowledge of good and evil v8:15; Adam and Eve eat forbidden fruit v4:15; punished by Jehovah v9-23:16

forever (eternity) Adam must not eat from the Tree of Life

and live forever v22:16; this is the name by which I am to be remembered forever v13:51; the Lord he is good, his love endures forever v10:207, v26:264, v3:399; generations come and go, but the earth remains forever v4:217; God has placed eternity in heart of man v17:217; I will not give you up forever Israel v19:252; Jehovah will swallow up death forever v25:293; Lord to make the Israelites the pride and joy of all generations forever v26:294; my salvation shall last forever v6:297; the word of God stands forever v17:302; of his increase in power and peace there shall be no end v4:307; there is yet hope, the Lord will not reject forever v65:380, Psalm 31 v5:450; saints of the Most High will eventually obtain whole kingdom and possess it forever v19:388; those who led many to righteousness shall shine like the sun for all eternity v13:396; lead me in the way of eternity O Lord, Psalm 2 v10:444; Lord's anger lasts but a moment, yet his favour lasts forever, Psalm 8 v3:445; I shall dwell forever in the house of the Lord, Psalm, 15 v5:447; the righteous stand firm forever v21:470; the Father shall give you a Comforter to be with you forever v40:558; we shall meet the Lord in the air and live with him forever v14:603; wandering stars for whom the nether gloom of darkness has been reserved forever v13:665; you are a priest forever, after the order of Melchizedek v16:668, v29-31:669; Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, today and forever v16:672; to him who sits on the throne and who lives forever v9:686

foreigners not to be mistreated v10:64; may celebrate Passover 8:92; laws regarding v20:114; shall rise above you if commandments not kept v40:116; may the prayer of also be answered v23:208; foreigners who keep commandments accepted by Lord v14:294; Jewish men guilty of marrying foreign women v1:420; 111 men send away their foreign wives and children v26:421; Lord watches over the foreigner, Psalm 92 v10:462

forgiveness do not seek revenge or bear grudges v9:64; Jehovah slow to anger, abounds in love and forgives sin v11:96; perhaps they will turn from their wicked ways so I can forgive them v2:337; praise the Lord who forgives your sins, Psalm 31 v2:449; Jesus forgives sins of paralysed man v13:490; with you O Lord there is forgiveness, Psalm 91 v1:462; he who forgives an offence promotes love v6:472; Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins v16:490; do good to those who hate you, bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you v17:491; first be reconciled to your brother then come and offer your gift v33:492; forgive us our sins as we forgive those who sin against us v16:493; you must forgive others for your own sins to be forgiven v18:493; forgive and you will be forgiven v2:494; blasphemy against Holy Spirit never forgiven v30:501; parable of lost sheep v12:510, v8:517; try and reconcile with those who sin against you v15:510; avoid a person who refuses to reconcile v17:510; forgive seventy times seven v19:510; parable of unmerciful servant v27:510; parable of prodigal son v14-29:517; if brother repents forgive him, even seven times in one day v30:518; if you forgive not those who sin against you neither will the Father forgive you your sins v16:522; parable of forgiving moneylender v35:495; Jesus prays that Roman soldiers be forgiven v5:535; Stephen prays for those who are stoning him to death v51:574; if he has sinned he will be forgiven v25:600; forgive one another as Lord forgave you v2:637, v18:642; repay not evil for evil, rather bless those who afflict you v7:659

fornication (See also adultery, sexual immorality) penalty for fornication with virgin v38:66; penalty for fornication with slave woman v32:68; Eli's sons would lie with the women who served at the Tabernacle v27:157; fornication defiles a person v23:506; no fornicator will inherit kingdom of God v21:609; flee from fornication v29:610; God will judge fornicators v11:671; fornicators never permitted to enter New Jerusalem v11:701

fortune telling (See also mediums) fortune tellers not to be consulted v34:65; fortune tellers to be put to death v35:65; divination an abomination v22:111; Lord has abandoned Israel because of divination v16:287; woe to women who prophesy falsely out of own imagination v23-28:361; fortune tellers shall no longer see false visions or practice divination v28:361; Paul casts out fortune telling spirit from slave girl v16:584

forty days rains for v7:18; Moses and Joshua remain forty days with Lord on mountain v1:68; Moses remains with Lord on

mountain another forty days, without food v12:75; explorers return from promised land after v20:95; Elijah walks forty days to Mount Sinai v15:228; forty more days and Nineveh will be destroyed v4:248; Jesus fasts forty days v22:488; resurrected Jesus showed himself to men for forty days v2:569

forty years Israelites cursed to wander forty years v18:96, v11:106, v33:574; clothes and sandals of Israelites did not wear out during forty years v32:110; Israel has peace forty years until Othniel dies v8:134; land enjoyed peace for v31:136, v6:139; Israelites delivered into hands of Philistines for v42:142; Eli judged Israel forty years v16:158; David reigned forty years over Israel v34:202; Solomon reigned over all Israel forty years v24:211; Joash reigned forty years v21:267; Egypt's cities to lie empty forty years v6:365

fraud See dishonesty

friendship even if your closest friend entices you to idolatry put them to death v4:111; Jonathan loved his friend David as himself v1:169, v7:171; David sent some of the spoil to his friends v20:178; David's friend Hushai was there to meet v26:193; David's friends Barzillai, Shobi and Makir met them with provisions v24:195; he is my beloved, he is my friend v7:214; if one falls down, his friend can help him up v7:218; Jehovah calls Abraham his friend v14:292; Job's three friends come to comfort him v25:434; Job accuses his friends of turning against him v18:436; wealth brings a man many friends v24:466, v47:466; gossip separates close friends v16:470; a true friend loves at all times v5:472; a friend can be closer than a brother v11:472; everybody is the friend of a man who gives gifts v14:472; proverbs on friendship v1-9:473; forsake not your friend, nor the friend of your father v2:473; unfaithful loyalty desirable in a man v3:473; wounds from a friend can be trusted v8:473; parable of the persistent friend v3-5:513; when you give a dinner do not invite your friends, invite the poor v26:516; that day Herod and Pilate became friends v15:533; greater love has no man, than to lay down his life for his friends v22:559; Jesus calls his apostles his friends v24:559; if you regard me as a friend, welcome him as you would me v10:639

frogs Egyptian plague of v18:53; John sees three unclean spirits in appearance like frogs v21:695

fruit trees fruit of a newly planted tree not to be eaten for three years v31:65; fruit trees not to be cut down when besieging a city v15:112; Solomon planted all kinds of fruit trees v16:217; fruit trees stripped bare by locusts v8:272; a good tree bears good fruit, but a bad tree bears bad fruit v12:494; a tree known by its fruit v33:501; trees to grow along the banks of millennial Temple river (during millennium) v9:376; trees to bear fruit every month (during millennium) v10:376

futility See vanity

Gabriel angel, helps Daniel to understand vision v12:389; answers Daniel's prayer, prophesies future of Jerusalem and coming of Messiah v7-16:392; sent to Zechariah to announce birth of John the Baptist v11:483; sent to Mary to announce she will give birth to a son named Jesus v14:483

Gad (son of Jacob/Israel)

son of Jacob (Israel) and Zilpah v12:32, v5:37

Gad tribe of Israel's dying blessing upon – to be an attacker and attacked v27:45; first census of 45,650 v11:92; second census 40,500 v4:104; had large herds and flocks v8:106; assigned lands east of Jordan v8-17:106; Moses' blessing upon – commander's portion is his v25:119; 12,000 servants of God to be sealed from in last days v4:688; allocation of inheritance (during millennium) v22:376

Gad prophet, warns David to leave caves v17:172; David's seer v9:198; commands David to build an altar v17:199

Galatians Paul and Barnabas preach to v16:580; Paul and Silas strengthen churches Galatia v23:583, v1:586; Paul writes to, Gal:623; Galatians led astray by false teachers v4:623; you foolish Galatians, who has bewitched you? v1:624

Galilee kings of Galilee combine against Israelites, destroyed by Joshua v1-5:127; Solomon gives twenty towns in Galilee to Hiram v16:209; Messiah (or Christ) to come from Galilee v1:307; angel Gabriel sent to Mary in Nazareth of Galilee v14:483; Joseph, Mary and Jesus return to Galilee from Egypt v26:485; Jesus came from Galilee to be baptised by John v18:488; Herod the king of Galilee v1:488; Jesus returns to

Galilee in power of the Holy Spirit v5:488; Jesus preaches good news of the kingdom throughout Galilee v6:496, v1:498; Jesus welcomed back to Galilee from Jerusalem v28:546; Jesus stays in Galilee for safety v1:549; search the scriptures, no prophet is to arise from Galilee v34:550; how can the Christ come from Galilee? v38:550; you also were with Jesus of Galilee v12:532; he started in Galilee and has come all the way here v9:533; women followed Jesus from Galilee to care for his needs v26:535, v33:536; resurrected Jesus to meet his apostles in Galilee v18:537, v23:537; apostles see and worship Jesus in Galilee v61:538, v1:564; church in Galilee enjoys time of peace v27:577

Gamaliel respected Pharisee, speaks up for apostles v28-32:573; Paul trained thoroughly under Gamaliel v35:590

garden of Eden See Eden garden of

gathering of Israel exile and future regathering of Israel prophesied by Moses v14:117, v21:252, v2:277; Judah and Israel to be gathered together under one leader v11:250, v10:324; Lord to gather others to Israel besides those already gathered v17:294; descendants of exiles to fly home in ships in latter days v22:294; your sons and daughters will come from afar v19:294, v6:370, v6:423; I will bring your brothers from all nations to the holy mountain in Jerusalem v11:295, v9:340, v20:369; Lord to reclaim people of Judah a second time, and Israel from four quarters of earth v13:296; I will return your children from the ends of the earth v2:302, v16:306, v9:343; Gentiles to assist with gathering of Israel v22:306; Nile to dry up and sea to be subdued to assist the gathering v22:407; I who scattered Israel will gather them again and watch over my flock like a shepherd v11:292, v2:343, v8:406; a great company shall return v9:343; Israel to be gathered and honoured in the millennium v11-12:315; David to be leader of gathered Israel during millennium v6:343

Gedaliah Judean official, appointed by Babylon to govern the few poor remaining in Judah v19:348; governs from Mizpah v20:348; escaped guards return to v1:348; Jews from surrounding nations gather to Gedaliah v3:348; disbelieves warning of plot on his life v5:348; assassinated by Ishmael a former royal official v6:348

Gehazi servant of Elisha the prophet v17:238; sent by Elisha to revive dead boy but fails v21-23:238; greedy for gain, runs after Naaman and obtains silver and clothing v21:240; lies to Elisha, punished with Naaman's leprosy v26-28:240

Gehenna See Hinnom valley of

genitals discharge from penis makes a man unclean v28:82; woman's genitals cursed to atrophy if guilty of adultery v29:87

Gentiles Isaiah to be a light for the Gentiles v10:306, v36:581; Jews separate themselves from unclean practices of Gentiles v5:409; Jesus a light for the Gentiles and glory for Israel v20:485; when you pray repeat not the same words over and over as the Gentiles do v13:493; twelve apostles commanded not to go among the Gentiles v5:498; treat him as you would a Gentile or a tax collector v17:510; Jesus to be handed over to the Gentiles v69:520; Jerusalem to be trampled on by Gentiles until times of Gentiles fulfilled v20:526; Gentile kings lord it over them v7:529; Paul a chosen instrument to carry Lord's name to Gentiles v12:576; against Jewish Law for a Jew to associate with a Gentile v21:578; Peter given a vision to show that Gentiles also to receive gospel v8-27:577; Holy Spirit falls on Cornelius a devout Roman and other Gentiles v1-28:577; Gentiles baptised v28:578; Jews become jealous of Gentiles v34:581, v13:632; Paul and Barnabas turn to Gentiles v35:581, v6:586; many Gentiles believe v1:581, v37:581; Jews poison Gentiles minds against Paul and Barnabas v2:581; Jewish believers teach that Gentile converts must be circumcised v1:582; James rules that believing Gentiles only to abstain from sexual immorality, defiled food and blood v12:583; Paul reports on his ministry among Gentiles v15:589; Jews in Jerusalem angered when Paul mentions Gentiles v41:590; God's salvation sent to Gentiles v29:596; gospel of Christ regarded as foolishness by Gentiles v14:608; to Gentiles Paul becomes a Gentile v11:612; Paul set apart before he was born to preach to Gentiles v9:624, v15:624; Peter accused of acting hypocritically toward Gentiles v20:624; scriptures foresaw God would justify the Gentiles v4:624; why force Gentiles to live like Jews? v22:624; Jews and Gentiles alike all under sin v8:629;

Gentiles have obtained righteousness by faith v27:631; no difference between Jew and Gentile in Lord v3:632; greater riches will come to Gentiles when Israel becomes righteous v14:632; Paul an apostle to the Gentiles v14:632, v15:634; wild olive shoots of Gentiles grafted into mother olive tree of Israel v17:632; do not boast Gentiles, you only stand by faith v18:632; Israel to be saved when times of Gentiles fulfilled v21:632; Christ has made Gentile and Israel one people v25:641; through the gospel Gentiles are heirs together with Israel v31:641; Gentiles were separated from God by ignorance and hardness of heart v10:642; Gentiles to assist in gathering of Israel in latter days v22:306; Gentiles to trample Holy City for three and a half years in last days v12:690

giants See Nephilim and Anakim

Gibeah Benjaminite town where a concubine was raped and murdered leading to civil war v9-20:148; Benjaminites come out of Gibeah and cut down 22,000 Israelites on battlefield v29:148; Israelites ambush town of Gibeah v35:149

Gibeonites men of Gibeon, deceive Israelite leaders v5-20:126; attacked by hill country kings, call on Israel for help v21-23:126; Gibeonites rebuked by Joshua and cursed to be slaves to Israel v19-20:126; Joshua makes a peace covenant with Gibeonites v15:126; three year famine due to Saul's breaking of Joshua's covenant to Gibeonites v8:187

Gideon called by angel to save Israel v7-11:136; prepares food for angel v14:136; angel causes fire to consume food offering v16:137; gathers army of 32,000 men v2:137; tests God with a wool fleece v3-5:137; Lord reduces army to 300 men v7-13:137; Gideon's courage boosted by overhearing account of Midianite soldier's dream v14-18:137; commanded to destroy altar of Baal, does so at night v20-22:137; father protects him from men of town v25:137; surrounds Midianite army at midnight v19-20:138; his 300 men sound trumpets, hold up torches and shout, Midianite army panic and flee v21-24:138; pursues and defeats Midianites v25-44:138; placates anger of Ephraimites v29:138; punishes men of Succoth and Peniel who refuse to assist him v31-39:138; becomes judge of Israel v1:139; makes a medallion out of gold earrings v3-5:139; Gideon's wives bear him seventy sons v7:139; executes two Midianite kings v42-44:139

gifts Abraham's servant gives Rebekah and her family gifts v14-28:28; Jacob prepares a gift for Esau v7:35; Israel instructs his sons to return silver and take gifts to Egypt v28:42; Joseph's brothers return home from Egypt with gifts v36:43; Aaron and his sons given priesthood as a gift v15:99; Boaz sends Ruth home with a gift of barley v29:153; because of gift she gave to Lord, Hannah blessed to have more children v20:157; David gives each person present a gift v38:187; all who came to King Solomon brought gifts v35:210; Elisha refuses a gift from Naaman v16:240; Gehazi greedy for gain obtains gifts from Naaman v23:240; gift a charm to one who gives it v13:472; everybody the friend of a man who gives gifts v14:472; a gift opens the way into presence of the great v15:472; wise men worship the child Jesus and give him gifts v6:486; reconcile unkind feelings toward others before offering a gift to God v33:492; give to one who would beg or borrow from you v6:493; give generously to receive v5:494; Antioch believers to give money to help Judean brethren v16:579; more blessed to give than to receive v23:589; a willing gift is an acceptable gift v2:619; excel in your giving v1:619; your enthusiasm for giving has stirred others to action v15:619; whoever sows generously will reap generously v19:620; God loves a cheerful giver v21:620; share with saints in need and practice hospitality v8:633

gifts of the Spirit every good gift comes from above v12:598; Corinthians not lacking gifts of the Spirit v4:607; variety of gifts but same Spirit who manifests them v3:613; gifts of the Spirit listed v4-5:613; gifts likened to different uses of parts of body v6:613, v1:633; spiritual gifts and callings ranked in importance v9:613; the more excellent gift of love v12-23:614; spiritual gifts mostly unnecessary in kingdom of God v19:614; eagerly desire spiritual gifts, especially gift of prophecy v24:614; try to excel in gifts that build up church v42:615; each one of us given gifts as Christ apportions them v5:642; do not neglect your spiritual gift v23:652; fan into flame the gift of God I bestowed upon you v6:654; use gifts of the Spirit to serve others v25:659; gospel testified to by miracles

and gifts of Holy Spirit v7:667

Gilead land east of the Jordan, eastern tribes of Israel return to their homes in v2-4:129; Jephthah to be ruler over all who live in Gilead v14:141; Ephraimites mock men of Gilead, battle begins v33:142; land of Gilead lost to Syria v1:244; Gilead full of wicked men stained with blood v8:251; go to Gilead and get balm v6:334

Gilgal first camping place of Israelites in Canaan v14:123; twelve stones set up at Gilgal as memorial of Jordan crossing v15:123; all Israel go to Gilgal to confirm Saul as king v27:163; go to Gilgal and sin, this is what you love to do v24:255

giving See gifts

glory of man God made man little lower than God, and crowned him with glory, Psalm 34 v4:450, v3:612, v8-10:667; the righteousness shall shine like the sun for all eternity v13:396; Job challenged by Lord to clothe himself with glory and splendour v5:441; afterward you will take me into your glory, Psalm 72 v13:457; the righteous to shine like the sun in the kingdom of their Father v39:503; believers to be given same glory as Jesus v29-31:560, v17:605, v18:629; varying degrees of glory in resurrected bodies, likened to sun, moon and stars v24:616; mortal body dies in weakness, but is raised in glory and power v25:616; our fleeting troubles achieve an incomparable, everlasting glory v8:618, v6:631; we rejoice in our hope of sharing the glory of God v19:629, v11:667; we share in his sufferings that we may share in his glory v5:631, v21:655, v7:658; when Christ returns you will be gathered to him in glory v23:637, v7:658, v3:660; when our Saviour's returns he will transform our bodies to be like his glorious body v19:647; you shall win a crown of glory that will never fade v3:660; God to endow Israel with splendour (during millennium) v9:293; all nations shall see glory of Jerusalem (during millennium) v33:307

glory of the Lord who is like Jehovah, majestic in holiness, wondrous in glory v8:60, Psalm 16 v2:447; Israelites see glory of the Lord appearing in the cloud v8:60; to the people below, the glory of Jehovah looked like fire on top of the mountain v14:68; Moses asks Lord to show him his full glory v1:75; no man can see full glory of Lord's face and live v2:75; Moses sees full glory of back of Lord v3-8:75; the cloud descends and glory of Jehovah fills the Tabernacle v29:76; glory of Lord appears at Tabernacle, in sight of all the Israelites v3:80, v5:96, v20:98, v2:98; not one Israelite who has seen glory of Lord, yet disobeyed ten times will see promised land v13:96; glory of Lord appears to Moses and Aaron v4:98; all Israelites see glory of the Lord on the Temple at dedication by Solomon v11:207, v28:208; priests unable to enter Temple because of glory of Lord v29:208, v9:694; glory of God appears to Ezekiel v2-3:355, v7:357; God surrounded by a glow of light, shining brightly v3:355; a brilliant radiance surrounded him, with all colours of the rainbow, like the glory of Jehovah v18:356; the glory of Jehovah appeared before me again v7:357; from his waist up he glowed, bright as molten bronze, from his waist down he was like fire v2:358; Ezekiel sees millennial Temple, full of the radiant glory of Jehovah v25:359, v1-4:373, v25:374; angel's body glowed and his face shone bright as lightning v3:393; O Lord my God, who radiates great glory and is clothed with light as a garment, Psalm 19 v1:447; David beheld power and glory of Lord in Tabernacle, Psalm 33 v2:450; day after day, night after night, the heavens proclaim the glory of God, Psalm 36 v1:450; David desires to dwell in Tabernacle, all the days of his life to gaze upon Lord's beauty, Psalm 50 v2:453; splendour of Lord above all the earth and the heavens, Psalm 97 v20:462; angel of Lord appears to shepherds, glory shines all around them v9:484; Father, glorify me in your presence with the glory I had with you before the world began v16:560; Jesus transfigured in glory before Peter, James, and John v24:508, v13:662, v6:542; Jesus to bring glory to the Father v38:558, v15:560; the Father to bring glory to Jesus v43:559, v16:560; glory has come to Jesus through apostles v20:560; believers to be given same glory as Jesus v29-31:560, v17:605; Stephen sees vision of glory of God, and Jesus standing at his right hand v48:574; the Father glorified when you bear much fruit v19:559; I saw a light from heaven, brighter than the sun v26:593; the Son reflects God's glory v2:667; Jesus now crowned with glory and honour v10:667; angel's face like the sun shining in full brilliance v15:683; God worthy

to receive glory v10:**686**, v7:**688**; God and the Lamb worthy to receive glory v24-25:**686**; earth illuminated by splendour of angel v1:**696**; Son of Man to come in his Father's glory, with the holy angels in last days v21:**508**; Son of Man to come in the clouds of heaven with great glory in last days v35:**527**; all mankind to see glory of Lord at second coming v3:**294**, v9:**295**; men will hide from the brilliance of Lords glory at second coming v22-23:**288**, v15:**688**; Lord to come from east, robed in crimson splendour and strength v1:**292**, Psalm 54 v3:**454**; glory of Jehovah to appear above Jerusalem at second coming v18:**294**, Psalm 82 v9:**459**; Jesus to sit upon throne in heavenly glory (at second coming) v28:**528**; Lord to be a wall of fire around Jerusalem and its glory within (during millennium) v16:**295**, v10:**297**, v19:**404**; John sees New Jerusalem shining with glory of God (after millennium) v11:**699**; glory of God and Lamb to give New Jerusalem its light (after millennium) v24:**700**

goat Rebekah covered Jacob's hands and neck with skin from a goat v10:**30**; they killed a goat and dipped Joseph's coat in the blood v26:**38**; Judah agrees to pay harlot with a young goat v13:**39**; young male goat may be used for Passover instead of lamb v3:**56**; young goat not to be cooked in mother's milk v36:**68**; outer curtains of Tabernacle made of goat hair v9:**69**, v18:**76**; a male goat to be offered as sin offering and atonement v30:**72**, v21:**79**, v2:**85**, v16:**285**; mother and her young not to be killed on same day v2:**78**; fat of not to be eaten v36:**79**; scapegoat to carry away the sins of the people v29:**81**; firstborn goats not to be redeemed, they are holy v25:**99**; a young goat prepared for food v15:**143**; Nabal had 1000 goats and 3000 sheep v3:**174**; 120,000 sheep and goats sacrificed by Solomon v33:**208**; Arabs brought 7700 goats as tribute v6:**263**, v32:**367**; 7000 sheep and goats sacrificed by Asa v15:**263**; 17,000 sheep and goats sacrificed by Hezekiah v11:**286**; Josiah and officials provide 37,600 lambs and goats for Passover offerings v33:**312**; goat still to be offered as Passover sin offering in millennial Temple v17:**375**; Daniel's vision of single horned goat, represents Greek empire v4-6:**389**, v15:**389**; a he-goat, one of four things that move with a stately bearing v8:**474**; Lord to separate people on day of judgement, as a shepherd separates sheep from goats v23:**528**; not possible for blood of goats to take away sins v51:**669**

God (See also God the Father, Lord/Jehovah, Jesus Christ) in the beginning God created the heavens and the earth v1:**14**, v3:**663**, v4:**670**; God to make man in his own image and likeness v14:**1**, v26:**599**, v3:**612**; God forms Adam from the dust of the earth v14:**14**; God rests on and blesses the seventh day v20:**15**; plants a garden eastward in Eden v3:**15**; creates Eve from a rib of Adam v11:**15**; Adam and Eve hear voice of God walking in the garden in cool of evening v7:**17**; Adam and Eve disobey God v4-5:**15**; God banishes Adam from garden of Eden v23:**16**; Enoch walks with God 300 years, taken away by God v8:**17**; earth becomes corrupt in God's sight, filled with violence v17:**17**; God commands Noah to build an ark v20:**17**; God destroys all land based life with a flood v9:**18**; God's covenant of the rainbow, earth never again to be flooded v27:**19**; God makes a covenant with Abram (Abraham) v15-16:**20**, v14:**573**; appears to Abimelech in a dream v2:**25**; greatly tests Abraham, commands him to sacrifice son Isaac v1:**26**, v14:**670**; Jehovah the God of heaven and earth v2:**27**; God speaks to Laban in a dream v16:**33**; God appears to Israel in a night vision v3:**43**; the God of Israel seen by Aaron, his sons, and seventy elders of Israel v9:**68**; God forbids Balaam to curse Israelites v5-14:**101**; God to judge every person at the appointed time v20:**218**, v6:**221**, v5:**633**; God will eventually right all injustice v14:**218**; reverse God and keep his commandments v5:**221**; Jehovah, he is God! v30:**228**, v45:**328**; God gives Jonah a lesson in compassion v14:**248**; knowledge of God better than sacrifice v22:**251**; fear of God comes upon surrounding nations v32:**265**; Ezekiel sees visions of God v2-18:**355**; Ezekiel sees God as a glowing man, seated upon a throne, enveloped in fire v18:**356**, v2:**685**; God speaks to Ezekiel v20:**356**; blesses Daniel with great wisdom and insight v12:**383**; God reveals Nebuchadnezzar's dream to Daniel v13:**384**; Nebuchadnezzar acknowledges power of God v23:**386**; Messiah to be sent by Lord God Almighty v21:**404**; withholding of tithes robbing God v10-11:**431**; God permits Satan to test Job v10:**433**, v20:**433**; Job asks God why he is

being afflicted v23:**435**; God (Jehovah) appears to Job v1:**440**; man made little lower than God, Psalm 34 v4:**450**; the heavens proclaim the glory of God, Psalm 36 v1:**450**; blessed the nation whose God is Jehovah, Psalm 39 v3:**451**; no reverence of God in the heart of a wicked man, Psalm 41 v1:**451**; my God, my God, why have you forsaken me? Psalm 45 v1:**452**, v16:**535**; how awesome is Jehovah, the Most High God, Psalm 61 v1:**455**; be still and know that I am God, Psalm 68 v6:**456**; you are gods, all of you, sons of the Most High God, Psalm 77 v4:**458**, v9:**554**; even now God will do for you whatever you ask v12:**554**; God glorified in the Son of Man v20:**557**; trust in God, and trust in me also v27:**557**; every word of God is true v3:**474**; nothing impossible with God v22:**483**; great multitude of angels seen praising God v12:**485**; grace of God upon Jesus v12:**486**; Jesus continues to grow in favour with God v20:**487**; power of God present for Jesus to heal the sick v10:**490**; Jesus spends whole night praying to God v1:**491**; God causes sun to rise and rain to fall on both wicked and good v24:**492**; heaven God's throne and earth his footstool v1:**492**; you cannot serve both God and wealth v28:**493**, v23:**514**; your thinking is not of God, but of man v17:**508**; love God with all your heart, soul, and might v21:**512**, v16:**524**; what is highly valued among men is an abomination in sight of God v25:**514**; what God has joined together let no man put apart v24:**519**; why do you call me good, no one is good except God alone v43:**519**; what is impossible for men is possible with God v51:**519**; have faith in God, if you doubt not but believe, it will be done for you v14:**522**; give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's v6:**523**; you are in error for you know not the power of God v12:**524**; I am the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob v13:**524**; Jesus taken up into heaven to sit at right hand of God v59:**538**; the Word was with God, and of God v1:**541**; God so loved the world he gave his only begotten Son v12:**544**; God gave Jesus the Spirit, without limit v23:**544**; God is spirit v14:**545**; we have God himself for our Father v19:**551**; I came from God v20:**551**; he who belongs to God believes what God says v25:**551**; if this man were not from God he could not do such a thing v24:**552**; Jews to stone Jesus for claiming to be as God v6:**553**, v23:**562**; I am returning to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God v16:**564**; this is Eternal Life that they may know you, the only true God v18:**560**; Jesus a man sent from God v9:**570**; God has raised him from the dead v10:**570**; is it right in God's eyes to obey you rather than God? v11:**571**, v24:**572**; if it is from God you will be unable to stop them v32:**573**; Stephen sees vision of the glory of God v48:**574**; God shows no favouritism v22:**578**, v22:**629**; who am I to oppose God? v5:**578**; Herod did not give honour to God, struck down by an angel v21:**580**; why question God's judgement? v9:**583**; these men are servants of the Most High God v18:**584**; God does not live in man-made temples v22:**585**; since we are God's offspring he is not an idol v26:**585**; God has set a day when he will judge the world, by Jesus v28:**585**; all must turn to God in repentance, and have faith in our Lord Jesus v14:**588**; God does not tempt anyone v5:**598**, v20:**612**; if any of you lack wisdom let him ask of God v7:**598**; you believe in one God, even demons believe that v13:**599**; draw near to God and he will draw them to you v6:**600**; God to return with Jesus Christ v28:**602**, v11:**603**; God is faithful v3:**607**; the world in all its wisdom knows not God v13:**608**; foolishness of God wiser than wisdom of man v15:**608**; has not entered into heart of man what God has prepared for those who love him v24:**608**; Holy Spirit knows even the thoughts of God v25:**608**, v8:**631**; God raised Jesus from the dead, and will raise our bodies also v25:**610**; there are many gods, yet for us there is only one God v2:**611**; God is the head of Christ v1:**612**; both man and woman come from God v6:**613**; God is not a God of confusion, but of order v47:**615**; entire law of God summed up in commandment, love your neighbour as yourself v2:**625**; God will not be mocked v11:**626**; God's power clearly seen in that which has been created v9:**628**; do you think to escape God's judgement? v19:**629**; God's patience is to allow sinners time to repent v19:**629**; God will reward each person according to what he has done v20:**629**; we rejoice in our hope of sharing the glory of God v18:**629**; the sinful mind hostile to God v26:**630**; the Holy Spirit testifies we are God's sons v3:**630**, v1:**674**, v7:**699**; we are heirs of God, co-heirs with Christ v5:**631**, v9:**641**; God causes all things to work together for our good, if we love him v10:**631**; if God is for us, who can be against us? v11:**631**; God is the potter and men the clay v25:**631**; O the

rich depths of wisdom and knowledge of God v24:632; God will soon crush Satan under your feet v14:634; you have become hilly in God's sight v17:636; God made the world through his Son v1:667; Christ now seated at right hand of God v22:637, v18:659, v3:667; be imitators of God v19:642; God able to do immeasurably more than we can ask or imagine v40:642, v26:676; put on the full armour of God v16:643; word of God the sword of the Spirit v19:643; God has exalted Jesus to the highest place v27:646; take your cares to God in prayer v3:647; the peace of God which surpasses all understanding v4:647; the loving kindness of God saved us v3:649; there is but one God, and one mediator Jesus v17:651, v20:665; no mortal man has seen God who lives in unapproachable light v32:653, v13:675; all scripture inspired by God v15:656; God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble v4:660; to God be the glory and the power for ever v10:660; we heard the voice that came from heaven v13:662; one day as thousand years in eyes of v5:663; men speak from God when moved by the Holy Spirit v15:662, v1:667; keep yourselves in God's love as you await Eternal Life v18:665; God's glory reflected in the Son v2:667; the word of God is living and active v9:668; nothing in all creation hidden from God's sight v10:668; a fearful thing to fall into hands of the living God v9:670; impossible to please God without faith v2:670; Heavenly Jerusalem, the city of the living God v5:671, v46:685, v10:699; God will judge fornicators and adulterers v11:671; God has promised, never will I leave you v12:672; God pleased when we do good and share with others v18:672; God is light v3:674; God's nature lives within a person born of God, he cannot go on sinning v4:674; test the spirits to see if they are of God v1:675; God is love v9:675, v17:675; appearance of God sparkled like golden crystal v2:685; holy, holy, holy is the Lord God Almighty v8:686; John sees angels, elders, and living creatures worshipping God v7:688, v2:691, v4:697; God shall wipe away every tear from their eyes v21:688, v3:699; face of God be seen at second coming of Jesus Christ v16:688; God's temple in heaven opened v5:691; reverse God and give him glory v9:693; men to curse God because of plagues (in last days) v19:694, v31:695; God to dwell on earth among men v2:699; our light God v10:697, v5:700; glory of God gives New Jerusalem its light v24:700, v32:700; those of house of David shall be like God (during millennium) v9:408

God the Father (See also Lord/Jehovah, God, Jesus Christ) is not Jehovah your Father, your Creator? v14:118; I am your Father, where is the honour due to me? v5:430; you are my Father, my God, my Rock and Redeemer, Psalm 84 v4:460; be merciful and perfect, as your Father in heaven is merciful and perfect v25:492; voice of the Father acknowledges Jesus as his Son v21:488, v29:508, v26:547; give, pray, and fast in secret and your Father who sees in secret will reward you openly v10-12:493, v23:493; our Father in heaven, hallowed be your name v15:493; if you forgive others your heavenly Father will also forgive you v18:493, v27:511, v16:522; your Father in heaven will give good gifts to those who ask him v21:493, v6:513; birds of the air neither sow nor reap, yet your heavenly Father feeds them v30:493; be not anxious about food and clothing, your heavenly Father knows you need them v35:494; only they who do the will of my Father in heaven will enter the kingdom of God v21:495; not a sparrow falls to the ground without the will of Father v15:498; whoever acknowledges me, I will acknowledge also before my Father v17:498; I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth v17:499; all things entrusted to Jesus by the Father v18:499, v24:544; no one truly knows the Father except the Son v18:499, v22:549; whoever does the will of the Father are brother, sister and mother to Jesus v43:502; the righteous will shine like the sun in the kingdom of their Father v39:503; do not call anyone on earth Father, you have only one Father and he is in heaven v18:506; Son of Man to come in his Father's glory v21:508; Father speaks from within a cloud at the transfiguration of Jesus v29:508; angels of little children always behold the face of the Father v11:510; the Father not willing that one child should be lost v14:510; Jesus full of joy, praises the Father v35:512; your Father in heaven will give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him v8:513, v57:538, v8:558; if two of you agree about anything you ask for, it will be done for you by my Father v33:518; to sit at the right or left of Jesus granted only by the Father v74:520; only the Father knows the day Jesus will return v41:527; I confer upon you a kingdom as my

Father conferred a kingdom upon me v9:529; Jesus the Only Begotten of the Father v6:542; no mortal man has seen the Father but the Only Begotten Son v8:542, v15:551, v13:675; how dare you turn my Father's house into a market place v11:543; God so loved the world that he gave his only begotten Son v12:544; true worshippers worship the Father in spirit and truth v14:545; my Father is always at his work, so I too am working v12:546; the Son does only what he has seen his Father doing v14:547; the Father raises the dead and gives them Eternal Life v15:547; the Father has given all judgement to the Son v16:547; he who does not honour the Son does not honour the Father who sent him v17:547; the miracles the Father has given me to do testify that he has sent me v25:547, v3:553, v11:554; Jesus has come in his Father's name v29:547; I do nothing of my own will, but speak what the Father taught me v35:547, v36:557; no one can come to me unless the Father draws him v29:548; I have Eternal Life because of the Eternal Father v35:549; if you knew me you would know my Father also v23:550; I honour my Father v28:551; the Father loves me because I lay down my life v44:553; the Father is greater than Jesus v5:553, v10:558; I and the Father are one v5:553; for which of the many miracles from the Father are you going to stone me? v6:553; the Father is in me and I in the Father v11:554, v36:558; the Father will honour all who serve Jesus v20:556; crowd hear the voice of the Father speak to Jesus v23:556; whoever sees Jesus sees the Father who sent him v35:556, v34:558; oneness of the Father, Son and believers to be understood in a day to come v3:558; Father and Son to come and dwell with those that love them v6:558; my Father is the gardener, I am the vine, you are the branches v13-14:558; the Father prunes every fruitful branch that it may bear more fruit v17:558; many mansions where the Father dwells v27:558; no one comes unto the Father but by Jesus v31:558; the Father is glorified when you bear much fruit v19:559; if you are fruitful the Father will give you whatever you ask in my name v26:559, v6:560; all that belongs to the Father belongs to Jesus v43:559; time coming when Jesus will speak plainly of the Father v7:560; Father, the time has come to glorify your Son v14:560; Jesus prays for perfect oneness among his disciples as he and the Father are one v22:560, v28:560; Jesus prays in garden of Gethsemane that his Father will remove his suffering if possible v31:530; Jesus acknowledges to his Father, your will be done v37:531; Father would send twelve legions of angels if Jesus asked v48:531; Father forgive them for they know not what they do v5:535; Jesus cries out to the Father while on the cross v16:535; Father, into your hands I commit my spirit v20:535; I am returning to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God v16:564, v1:557; go and baptise all nations, in the name of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit v63:538; Jesus taken up to right hand of God v59:538, v18:659; the Holy Spirit promised from the Father has been poured out upon us v10:570; Stephen sees Jesus standing at right hand of the Father in heaven v48:574; the Father of Light who changes not v12:598; many gods in heaven and earth, yet for us only one God, the Father v2:611; Jesus to eventually hand over the kingdom to his Father v19:616; the God and Father of the Lord Jesus v41:621; give thanks always to the Father v8:636; Father chose us from before creation of world to be holy in his sight v4:641, v1:657; the Father's incomparably great power v12:641; the Father exalted Christ and appointed him head over the church v15:641; all people now have access to Father through Jesus Christ v27:641; one church, one Spirit, one Lord, one faith, one baptism, and one Father v4:642; every tongue shall confess Jesus Christ is Lord, to glory of the Father v28:646; the Father judges the works of each man impartially v15:658; the Father is patient, not wanting any person to perish but for all to repent v6:663; the Father disciplines those he loves v35:671; God the Father the father of our spirits v39:671; O what great love the Father has bestowed upon us v1:674; we are indeed children of God v2:674; showed his love for us by sending his only begotten Son into world v10:675; Jesus has made us kings and priests unto God his Father v6:682; John while in the spirit sees God the Father seated on his throne v2:685; I sat down with my Father on his throne v55:685; face of Father to be seen at second coming of Jesus Christ v16:688; 144,000 have name of Jesus and name of his Father written on foreheads v1:693; all nations will come and worship the Father (during millennium) v5:694; to him who overcomes, I will be his

God and he will be my son v7:699

godless godless men cast aside like thorns v24:201; everyone is ungodly, every mouth speaks villainous v5:287; I have sent Assyria against a godless nation to trample them down v8:287; godless prophets and priests have spread ungodliness throughout land v15-17:340; the joy of a godless man lasts but a moment v25:437; the godless harbour resentment v31:440; ungodly receive more chastisement on earth than righteous v35:469; the ungodly man will be fully repaid for his ways v51:469; anger of God upon godless men who suppress truth v9:628; godless men are without excuse, for God's power clearly seen in creation v9:628; become darkened and foolish, turn to idolatry v11:628; become inflamed with homosexual lust v12-14:628; every kind of wickedness found among godless v15:628; the ungodly – murderers, adulterers, sodomites, slave traders, liars v7:651; godless men who indulge in disputations become more and more ungodly v26:655; if hard for the righteous to be saved, what will become of the ungodly? v34:660; God spared not the ancient world when he brought the flood upon its ungodly people v20:662; the ungodly held until day of judgement to be punished v22:662, v4:663; godless men pervert the gospel into a licence for immorality v4:664; the Lord coming with thousands of his holy ones to convict the ungodly v14:665

godliness the godly man is rewarded for his righteousness v51:469; see what this godly sorrow has produced in you v44:619; I am jealous for you with a godly jealousy v16:620; godliness has value in this life, and in the life to come v19:652; godliness with contentment is great gain v24:653; train yourself in godliness v18:652, v30:653; all who live a godly life will be persecuted v13:656; make every effort to increase your godliness v5:661; you should be holy and godly, looking forward to the great day of God v8:663; Christ heard by God because of his godly submission v17:668

gods Jehovah is greater than all other gods v21:62; Jehovah, God of gods v9:130; you are gods, all of you, sons of the Most High God, Psalm 77 v4:458, v8:554; Jesus quotes scripture, men called gods v8:554; Paul and Barnabas proclaimed gods by people of Lystra v8:582; many gods in heaven and earth, yet for us only one God, the Father v2:611

gods false See idols, idolatry, household gods

Gog (See also Antichrist, Beast) future chief prince of Meshech and Tubal v1:370; to lead mighty army against Israel in last days v2:370; great earthquake in Israel on day Gog attacks v10:370; armies of to panic and turn on each other v13:371; hail and fire to be poured down on Gog's armies v14:371; armies shall fall on mountains and fields of Israel v15:371; bodies to be food for birds and wild animals v15:371; abandoned weaponry to provide Israel fuel for seven years v20:371; burial place of Gog and his hordes to be in valley of Hamon v21:371; seven months to bury the dead v22:371; Satan again to deceive the nations as did Gog v8:698

gold Pishon river wound through land of Havilah where there was gold v5:15; Abram now wealthy with silver and gold v1:20, v23:28; Abraham's servant takes out a gold ring and two gold bracelets v14:28, v28:28; Pharaoh places gold chain around Joseph's neck v19:41; Egyptians give departing Israelites silver and gold v19:37; Israelites donate gold for use in building Tabernacle v2:69, v18:76; gold used in framing and utensils of Tabernacle v6:28-29; priest's waistband and breastplate embroidered with gold v5:71; gold bells around lower hem of priest's robe v16:71; a pure gold plate on priest's turban v19:71; Aaron makes a golden calf from errings of the people v3:73; army commanders offer gold articles as tribute to Lord v6:106; your king must not accumulate large amounts of silver and gold v15:111; Achan confesses to stealing 50 shekels of gold v11:125; custom of eastern peoples to wear gold earrings v3:139; Gideon makes a large medallion of gold v5:139; gold images made of tumours v32:159; David obtained much gold and silver from nations he subdued v4:187; David captures gold shields from the Syrians v18:189; gold crown of king weighed a talent of gold v30:190; David provides 100,000 talents of gold for Temple v39:200; Hiram a man of great skill in working gold v6:205; Temple doors and floor overlaid with gold v16:205, v19:206; Temple interior walls overlaid with gold v22-27:206; two cherubim for inner Sanctuary overlaid with gold v25:206; Temple altar and utensils made from gold

v42:207; gold brought back by ship from distant lands to Solomon v21-24:209; Solomon's throne inlaid with ivory and overlaid with fine gold v27:210; all Solomon's goblets and palace articles of pure gold v31:210; silver and gold as common in Jerusalem as stones v36:210; queen of Sheba arrives at Jerusalem with 120 talents of gold v38:210; I will make for you ornaments of gold, inlaid with silver v6:213; Solomon's carriage roof made of gold v2:214; I amassed silver and gold v19:217; King Jeroboam makes two golden calves v3:223; Naaman takes with him 6000 shekels of gold v5:239; king of Egypt carries off gold shields Solomon made v15:261; Asa sends gold from Temple to Ben-Hadad, king of Syria v20:263; Assyria exacts 30 talents of gold v38:263; even had to strip gold from Temple doors v9:299; Medes have no delight in gold v33:304; Babylonians carry off all remaining gold from Temple v9:347; your silver and gold will not fill your stomachs v38:358; by your wisdom you have amassed gold but your heart has grown proud v14:366; head of statue was pure gold v21:384; Nebuchadnezzar makes a huge idol, overlaid with gold v1:385; angel had a belt of finest gold around his waist v2:393; god of the Antichrist in last days shall be power, gold and silver v3:396; Persians commanded to give gold to returning exiles v3:398; the silver and gold of the earth is mine v24:400; Cyrus returns gold articles taken from the Temple by Babylonians v8:402, v20:419; Tyre has heaped up silver and gold v2:406; couches of gold and silver on a mosaic pavement of marble v6:412; 100 talents of gold donated for house of God v8:420; when he has tested me I will come forth as refined gold v11:438; I have not put my trust in gold v51:439; like a ring of gold in a pig's snout is a beautiful woman without discretion v9:465; wisdom better than gold v1:467, v15:467; a word aptly spoken is like apples of gold in a setting of silver v11:470; wise men present child Jesus with gifts of gold, incense, and myrrh v6:486; blind fools, which is greater, the gold or the Temple that makes the gold sacred v36:525; your gold and silver will corrode and testify against you v15:600; let not your beauty be from braided hair, gold jewellery and fine clothes v2:659; John sees seven golden lampstands v12:683, v19:683; angel had a girdle of finest gold around his chest v12:683, v7:694; the twenty-four elders wore crowns of gold upon their heads v3:685; each elder held a golden bowl v20:686; angel had a golden censor v3:688; golden altar before the throne v3:688, v27:689; woman dressed in purple and scarlet, glittering with gold v4:695; angel had a measuring rod of gold to measure the city v19:699; city and streets of New Jerusalem of pure gold, like transparent glass v22:700; I shall make man scarcer than gold (in last days) v5:229; their gold will not save them on the day of the Lord's wrath (second coming) v5:315; gold of the nations shall be brought to adorn glorious Temple (during millennium) v21:294, v27:409

golden calf Aaron makes a golden calf from errings of the people v3:73, v37:574; Moses grinds up the golden calf and scatters it on the drinking water v16:74; King Jeroboam makes two golden calves v3:223

golden rule do unto others as you would have others do unto you v19:491; sums up the scriptures v29:495

Goliath exceptionally tall Philistine warrior, challenges ranks of Israel v23-28:168; David stuns with a sling, then beheads v20-27:169; sword of Goliath given to David by high priest v8:172; Elhanan killed brother of Goliath v4:200

good works be strong and endure and your works will be rewarded v10:262; Son of Man to come and reward each person according to his works v21:508; what good is it brethren if a man does no good works, will his faith alone save him? v9:599; faith without good works is dead v11:599, v18:599; show me your faith without good works v12:599; faith without good works is useless v14:599; you see how his faith and his works acted together v15:599; a man is justified by his good works, not by faith alone v16:599; we remember your good works, produced by faith and prompted by love v2:601; good works a fruit of the Holy Spirit v7:626; we are his workmanship, created to do good works v23:641; it is by his grace we have been saved, through our faith, not by our works v20:641; each do his part in good works, that the body of Christ be built up v7:642; only a widow known for her good works to be supported by church v5:652; good works cannot long be hidden v17:653; be rich in good deeds v29:653; let unbelievers

see your good works v24:658; spur one another on toward love and good works v4:670; remember to do good, with such sacrifices God is seeing v18:672; be careful you do not lose that which you have worked for, but win a full reward v7:677; I know your works, your love, your service, you are now doing more than at first v23:684; I have not found your works perfect in the sight of my God v33:684; the fine linen represents righteous works of the saints v8:697; I am coming soon, and shall repay everyone according to their works v8:700

Goshen land of settle your family in the best part of the land, in Goshen v11:43; in the land of Goshen where my people live, no swarms of flies will be found v30:54; the only place it did not hail was in Goshen v54:55

gospel (See also atonement) (good news of forgiveness of sin and resurrection through Jesus Christ) whoever loses life for gospel will find Eternal Life v19:508; to be again preached to all world in latter days v29:526; whoever lives this perfect law will be blessed in all he does v18:599; Paul not ashamed of the gospel of Jesus Christ v7:628; gospel the power of God that saves all who have faith v7:628; gospel only received by faith v8:628; preachers of necessary v4:632; faith and love springs from v4:636; all over the world this gospel is growing v5:636; God has testified to by miracles and gifts of Holy Spirit v7:667

gospel preaching of

those who lead many to righteousness shall shine like the sun for all eternity v13:396; parable of the sower v3-18:502; Jesus sends disciples to preach gospel to all world v53:538; apostles commanded to baptise and teach all nations v63:538; gospel spreads wider afield v7:578; Peter teaches gospel to Gentiles for first time v13-23:578; Paul called on first mission with Barnabas v4:580; Paul and Barnabas depart on second mission v21-23:583; Paul departs on third mission v1:586; some preach Christ out of rivalry, others out of love v11:646; gospel was preached even to dead v22:659

gossip (See also tongue, false witness, lying) words of a gossip are like tasty morsels of food v14:470; without gossip quarrelling ceases v15:470; a gossip separates close friends v16:470; a gossip keeps no secrets v17:470; I fear there may be quarrelling, jealousy, slander, gossip v9:622; they are gossips, slanderers v15:628; teach the older women not to gossip slanderously v16:649; wives of church leaders not to be malicious gossipers v8:652; widows often become idle and go from house to house gossiping v8:652

grace of God grace of God upon Jesus as he grows up v12:486; Jesus full of grace and truth v6:542; Stephen a man full of God's grace and power v8:573; Barnabas sees evidence of grace of God in church at Antioch v11:578; it is through grace of Jesus that Jews and Gentiles are saved v10:583; by the grace of God I have worked harder than all the other apostles v6:615; we have conducted ourselves by God's grace, not worldly wisdom v14:618; my grace is sufficient for you, my power is made perfect in weakness v49:621; you have fallen away from grace v31:625; you are not now under the Law, but under the grace of God v7:630; if it were by works, grace would no longer be grace v11:632; praise his glorious grace which he freely gave us in Jesus Christ v6:641; it is by his grace we have been saved, through our faith, not by our works v20:641; grace is a gift of God, so that no one can boast they have saved themselves v21:641; Paul a servant of the gospel by the gift of God's grace v32:641; by grace Christ apportions each one of us gifts of the Spirit v5:642; grace teaches us to say no to worldly passions v24:649; God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble v4:660; grow in the grace and knowledge of Jesus Christ v15:663; godless men pervert God's grace into a licence for immorality v4:664; see that no one fails to obtain the grace of God v2:671; it is by grace we are strengthened, not by rules regarding food v19:672

grain offerings commandments on v9:78; loosen her hair and place in her hands the grain offering v28:87; have them take a young bull with its grain offering v8:93; Manoah sacrificed a young goat together with a grain offering v15:143; eighty men arrived on their way to Jerusalem with grain offerings v8:348; a grain offering with oil to moisten flour part daily morning sacrifice v21:374; priests to eat the grain offerings v39:374; Nebuchadnezzar offers a grain offering to Daniel v32:384; grain offerings stored in house of God v5:428

grapes (See also wine, winepress, drunkenness) in my dream I saw three clusters of grapes v16:40; Judah will wash his clothes in the juice of grapes v23:45; Nazirite must not eat or drink anything that comes from the grapevine v19:87, v10:143; two explorers carried a pole between them on which hung a large cluster of grapes v20:95; you will plant vineyards but not gather the grapes v38:116, v5:276; the grape vine answered, should I give up my wine which cheers? v19:139; your wife must not eat anything that comes from the grapevine v10:143; your breasts are full, like clustered grapes v15:215; I looked for good grapes, why did it yield only wild grapes? v14:283; fathers have eaten sour grapes and the children's teeth are set on edge v16:343, v14:363; are grapes picked from thorns? v17:495; who plants a vineyard and eats not its grapes? v5:612; take your sickle and gather the clusters of grapes from the earth's vine v22:694; grapes thrown into great winepress of God's wrath v23:694; come trample the grapes, for the winepress is full v13:273; planter will be overtaken by one treading grapes (during millennium) v32:257

gratitude See thanksgiving

Great Sea (the Mediterranean) western border of promised land v14:75; western millennial border of Israel v12:376; Daniel sees four great beasts come up out of Great Sea v1:387; fish as varied as in Great Sea to be found in Dead Sea (during millennium) v6:376

Great Tribulation (See also last days) God's people to suffer much at hands of oppressive ruler (Antichrist) in last days v26:388; A Desolator to arise during last seven years of age v15:392; half way through seven years he will put an end to sacrifice and offerings v15:392; a time of great tribulation such as has never occurred since beginning of nations v10:396; to last three and a half years v15:396; pride of God's holy people to be finally broken v16:396; to commence when daily sacrifice abolished in Jerusalem in last days v20:396; vast number of saints to die during Great Tribulation of last days v9:688; these are they who have come out of the Great Tribulation v9:688; Jerusalem to be trampled three and a half years v12:690; two prophets to witness from Jerusalem for three and a half years v13-15:690; church to be protected during final three and a half years v13:691, v21:691; Beast (Antichrist) to exercise authority for three and a half years v7:692

greed See selfishness

Greeks the goat is the empire of Greece v15:389; the angel of Greece will come v15:393; warrior king to arise in Greece (Alexander the Great) v19:393; Greek empire to be divided four ways v20:394; Greek woman asks Jesus to deliver her demon-possessed daughter v25:506; Greeks among those who had come up to worship at the Feast v16:556; Pilate's notice on cross written in Aramaic, Latin and Greek v3:562; Greek Jews complain their widows being neglected v1:573; Greek Jews in Jerusalem try to kill Saul v25:577; gospel preached to Greeks for first time v8:578; Timothy's mother a Jew but his father a Greek v2:583; Paul has Timothy circumcised for Jews knew his father was a Greek v3:583; large number of Greeks join Paul and Silas v2:584; many prominent Greeks believe v11:585; all Greeks in province of Asia hear word of Lord v18:587; Paul accused of bringing a Greek into the Temple v22:589; Jews demand signs and Greeks seek after wisdom v14:608; Titus not compelled to be circumcised, even though he was a Greek v18:624; neither Jew nor Greek, male nor female, all are one in Christ v16:625, v27:637; Israelites to be like a warrior's sword against the sons of Greece on last day v9:407

ground (See also earth, land) mist from the earth moistened the whole face of the ground v2:15; cursed is the ground for your sake, in toil you will eat of it v18:16; thorns and thistles it shall bring forth v19:16; dust you are and to dust you shall return v20:16; Cain tilled the ground and Abel kept flocks v3:16; your brother's blood cries to me from the ground v9:16; ground produced plentifully during seven years of abundance v23:41; take off your sandals, you are standing on holy ground v3:51; locusts covered the ground until it was black v12:55; divide the water so the Israelites can go through on dry ground v21:59; bring me the best of the first fruits of your ground v30:65; ground to lie fallow every seventh year v40:42:65, v22:427; fields not to be planted with two kinds of seed v38:68; ground also to lie fallow during year of Jubilee v17:85; ground

shall yield its crops abundantly if commandments kept v1:87; shall fail to bear crops if commandments not kept v15:88; swallows v Dathan and Abiram v28:98; bloodshed pollutes the land v31:107; sins of Israel causing wasting of v2:250; the ground is cracked, farmers are dismayed v4:329; my fields gave abundant cream and poured forth streams of olive oil v25:438; he who works his land will have abundant food v5:473; parable of fertilising barren fig tree v4-5:515; parable of seed of wheat v18:556; food that grows will be rich and plentiful (during millennium) v4:294

Habakkuk prophet of Judah, complains to Lord about injustice in Judah v1-2:316; told that Babylonians soon to invade land v3:316; asks Lord how he can allow a wicked nation to punish Judah v8:316; Lord answers, Babylonians will in time be punished themselves v16:317

Hades (See also **Sheol**, **Pit**, **Paradise**) will you be lifted up to the skies, no you will go down to Hades v16:499; Greek name for spirit world of dead, Capernaum to go down to v16:500; gates of Hades (death) shall not overcome church v12:507; rich man in torment in Hades v29:515; grave and Hades gave up dead that were in them v14:699; I hold the keys of the grave and Hades v17:683; its rider was named The Grave and Hades was following close behind him v8:687; the grave and Hades gave up the dead that were in them v14:699; death and Hades were cast into the Lake of Fire v18:699

Hagar maidservant of barren Sarai, given to Abram as wife v1-2:22; conceives and treats Sarai with contempt v3:22; ill treated by Sarai, flees into desert v6:22; commanded by angel to return to Sarai, promised numerous descendants and son named Ishmael v7-12:22; Abraham sends away at Sarah's demand v19-22:26; wanders in desert with son Ishmael v22:26; no water, fears Ishmael will die v23:26; God reveals well of water to Hagar v26:26; takes wife for Ishmael from Egypt v27:26

Haggai prophet to returned exiles, book of p397; receives revelations from Lord regarding building of Temple v11-34:399; all the people obey word of v16:399; Jews prosper under teaching of v1:409

hail destroys men, animals and crops of Egypt v53:55, Psalm 74 v15:458, Psalm 83 v9:460; did not hail in land of Goshen where Israelites were v54:55; large hailstones destroy Canaanite armies v27:127; crops struck with blight, mildew and hail, yet people did not turn to Lord v31:400; have you seen where hail is made? v11:440; hail and fire to be poured down on Gog's army in last days v14:371; John sees a hail of blood-red fire fall upon the earth in last days v7:688; great hail on earth in last days v6:691; great hailstones of about a talent each to fall upon men from the sky (before second coming) v31:695

hair do not cut your hair at the sides of your temples v36:65; hair to be shaven on seventh day of purification v21:83; high priest not to let his hair become dishevelled v1:84; Nazirite to let hair of his head grow long v20:87; Samson's hair cut, breaking his Nazirite vow v21:146; Absalom's hair weighed about 200 shekels when cut each year v1:192; how lovely is your hair, falling softly around your neck v6:213; Ezekiel commanded to shave his hair v25:358; priests to keep hair trimmed v34:374; hair of Ancient of Days pure white like snow v11:388; I even beat some of the men and pulled out their hair v20:428; silver hair a crown of glory if attained in a righteous life v37:470; you cannot turn one hair white or black v2:492; when you fast, groom your hair and wash your face v23:493; she wiped the feet of Jesus with her hair and kissed them v32:495, v6:529; even the hairs of your head are numbered v16:498; not a hair of your head will be lost v10:525; Paul shaves hair off because of vow v16:586; long hair a disgrace to a man, but enhancement for a woman v8:613; let not your beauty be from outward adornment and braided hair v2:659; hair of angel white as snow, like pure wool v1:683

Ham son of Noah v11:17; dishonours his father v2:19; Noah curses descendants of Ham's son Canaan v3:19; sons of Ham listed v10:19; Egyptians descendants of Ham, Psalm 74 v16:458

Haman Grand Vizier of Persian court, appointed by Xerxes v3:413; angry with Mordecai, plans to exterminate all Jews throughout Persian empire v6-7:413; erects gallows to hang

Mordecai v25:415; ordered by Xerxes to honour Mordecai v35:415; accused by Queen Esther before king v43:415; hanged on own gallows v48:416

Hamor ruler of Shechem, asks for Dinah as wife for his son v2-6:36; persuades men of his town to be circumcised v12:36; killed by brothers of Dinah v13:36

Hanani prophet, rebukes king Asa v24:263; cast into prison by king v28:263

Hananiah false prophet, breaks Jeremiah's yoke v24-27:342; Lord curses, dies following month v30-31:342

Hannah barren wife of Elkanah v2:156; weeps much and makes vow to Lord that if given a son she will give him back as a Nazirite v6:156; blessed by Eli the high priest that her prayer be answered v11:156; conceives and son Samuel is born v14:157; leaves Samuel in care of the high priest when weaned v17:157; rewarded with more children v20:157

Haran father of Lot, dies in Ur v11:20

harem I acquired a harem, the delight of a man's heart v20:217; Esther and her maids moved into best place in harem v7:413

harlot (See also **adultery**, **sexual immorality**, **fornication**) should our sister be treated like a harlot? v16:37; harlotry forbidden, land will become full of wickedness v40:66; a priest not to marry a harlot v7:85; a harlot to be burned to death if daughter of a priest v7:85; no woman is to become a harlot v24:112; earnings of a harlot unclean v24:112; spies stay in house of Rahab, a harlot of Jericho v7:121, v24:671; Samson stays with a Philistine harlot v1:145; two harlots bring a disputed baby to Solomon v13:204; Israel given themselves to harlotry v18:251; father and son lie with the same woman beside altar v12:254; priest is cursed that his wife become a harlot v19:256; you still have the brazen look of a harlot v23:323; they thronged to houses of harlots v4:323; my son, stay away from the harlot, a harlot reduces you to poverty v1-2:464; a harlot and an adulterous wife are deep pits v15:465; repentant harlots to enter Kingdom of God before Jewish religious leaders v26:522; he who unites his body with a harlot becomes one with her v27:610; I will show you the punishment of the Great Harlot v1:695; Babylon the Great, mother of harlots v6:695

harmony See **peace**

harp Jubal the father of all who play the harp v17:17; singing to the music of tambourines and harps v18:33; you will meet a company of prophets with harps being played before them v34:162; David would play his harp and Saul would be soothed v20:167; David and Israelites celebrate with songs and harps v19:186; priests appoint Levite singers to sing joyful songs, accompanied by harps v31:186; Solomon used almsgood wood to make harps v23:209; you strum and play on your harps like David v26:255; as the harpist played, the word of the Lord came to Elisha v13:237; men assembled at the Temple with harps to give joyful praise to Lord v31:264; woe to you who have harps at your banquets, but no respect for the Lord v22:284; praise him with the harp, Psalm 39 v2:450, Psalm 57 v10:454, Psalm 98 v3:462; make joyful music to the Lord with harp and singing, Psalm 99 v2:463; music of harpists will never be heard in you again v22:697; each elder had a harp v20:686; I heard loud music from heaven, that of harpists playing their harps v2:693; they held harps given them by God v3:694

harvest edges of crops and gleanings of vineyards to be left for poor v19:64; fruit tree harvest will be increased if fourth year crop offered to Jehovah v32:65; land to lie fallow and unharvested every seventh year v40:65; land not to be sown or harvested each fiftieth year v17:85; first fruits of harvest belong to the priests v18:99; you will plant but not harvest v5:276; from over the sea flows the grain harvest of the Nile v10:305; your sins have kept away the rains and harvest v12:325; the harvest is past, the summer ended and they are not saved v33:327; you plant much but harvest little v12:399; from the strength of an ox comes an abundant harvest v10:466; the harvest is great but the workers are few v3:498 v11:511; the harvest is the end of the age and the harvesters are the angels v36:503; look around you, the fields are ripe for harvest v23:545

Harvest feast of (See also **Pentecost day of**) feast of Harvest when first fruits are gathered v45:65

hate Esau hated Jacob because of the blessing he had stolen v33:31; his older brothers hated Joseph and could not say a kind word to him v7:37; do not hate your brother in your heart v11:64; if you see donkey of someone who hates you fallen down, help him with it v20:64; we hate this miserable manna v5:101; Absalom hated his brother Amnon for disgracing his sister v18:191; a time to love and a time to hate v14:217; I hate and despise your religious festivals v20:255; I hate divorce v7:430; Lord loves righteousness and hates wickedness, Psalm 60 v6:455; he who hates correction is a fool v7:468; seven things the Lord hates v5:468; the upright hate what is false v8:469; do good to those who hate you v17:491; you will be hated by men for my sake v5:525; all who do evil hate the light v15:544; if the world hates you, know that it hated me first v29:559; hatred a work of flesh, not of Holy Spirit v5:625; he who hates a brother walks in darkness v14:674

Hazeal Elisha sent by Lord to Syria to appoint Hazeal king v24:229, v1:242; any who escape the sword of Hazeal will be put to death by Jehu v26:229; Jehovah has shown me you will become king of Syria v9:242; Hazeal suffocates King Ben-Hadad and becomes king of Syria v12:242; Israel under power of Hazeal for a long time v5:245; Hazeal dies and his son Ben-Hadad becomes king of Syria v23:245

healing (See also cancer, miracles, sickness, health, dead raising of) water healed and purified by tree v3:60; I am the Lord who heals you v4:60; those bitten by poisonous snakes who looked up at image healed v9:101; I wound and I heal v29:118; Elisha heals bad water of Jericho v3:236; Elisha heals poisonous soup v34:239; Naaman dips himself seven times in Jordan and is healed of leprosy v14:239; a poultice of figs heals Hezekiah's tumour v16:301; Messiah will heal our sicknesses v9:307; by Messiah's wounds we shall be healed v11:307, v31:658; I called for your help and you healed me, Psalm 8 v2:445; the Lord restores to health he who regards the weak, Psalm 25 v1:449; praise the Lord, who forgives your sins and restores your health, Psalm 31 v2:449; they cried to the Lord in their trouble and he healed them, Psalm 85 v9:461; the tongue of a wise man brings healing v58:471; a gentle tongue is a tree of life v15:474; pleasant words are healing to the bones v16:474; physician heal your own v13:488; Jesus laid his hands on each one and healed them v23:489; Jesus heals a centurion's servant at a distance v7:490; power of God present for Jesus to heal the sick v10:490; Jesus commands a paralysed man to walk home v16:490; Jesus healed all those suffering severe pain, demon-possessed, having seizures and paralysed v5:491; people try to touch Jesus, power coming from him and healing them all v6:491; Jesus heals Peter's mother-in-law of high fever v2:495; Jesus healed every disease and sickness among the people v6:495, v1:498; Jesus heals a leper v9:496; a woman touches the cloak of Jesus and is healed of her bleeding v42:497; apostles given power to heal v6:498; apostles anoint many sick people with oil and heal them v22:498; Jesus heals man with a shrivelled hand, on Sabbath v12:500; Jesus healed all their sick v14:500; blind and dumb demon-possessed man healed v18:501; all the sick who touched the garment of Jesus were healed v37:505; a deaf man with speech impediment healed v34:506; all who touched Jesus were healed v37:505; brought their lame, blind, crippled and dumb and Jesus healed them v32:506; blind man healed v5:507; ten lepers healed by Jesus v6:511; woman bent over by a demon spirit healed v7:516; Jesus heals a man with dropsy v20:516; blind man named Bartimaeus healed v14:521; Jesus restores servant's severed ear v46:531; angel would stir water, first into pool cured of disease v3:546; Jesus heals invalid at pool of Bethesda v6:546; Jesus tells healed man to sin no more lest something worse happen to him v10:546; Jesus heals official's son from distance v31:546; Jesus heals man blind from birth v3:551; believers shall lay hands on the sick and they will recover v56:538; Peter heals a man crippled from birth v1:570; sick healed even by Peter's shadow v14:572; Phillip heals paralysed and crippled in Samaria v6:575; Ananias heals Saul's blindness v16:576; Peter heals paralysed man in Lydda v30:577; Paul heals man crippled from birth v7:581; handkerchiefs from Paul cure the sick v19:587; Paul heals all sick on island of Malta v9:595; anointing with oil and prayer offered in faith will make sick person well v25:600; no more sickness, all infirmity to be healed (during millennium) v20-21:295; in that day no one will say I am sick (during

millennium) v21:295

health for your food I give you plants bearing seed and trees bearing fruit v17:15; I will take away sickness from among you v10:75; military camp hygiene v16-19:112; those who hope in the Lord will run and not be weary, walk and not faint v15:302; after ten days Daniel and companions looked healthier than those eating king's food v10:383; revere the Lord and shun evil, this will bring health to your body v1:474; a heart at peace gives health to the body v6:474; a cheerful heart is good medicine v7:474; good news gives health to the bones v17:474; better a dry crust with peace than feasting with strife v19:474; all food can be purified by prayer v16:652; use a little wine for the sake of your stomach and frequent ailments v18:653; I pray that you may enjoy good health v2:678

heaven (See also kingdom of God, New Jerusalem, New Earth, Paradise) Jacob dreams of a stairway to heaven v5:31; even the highest heaven cannot contain you v15:207; God sees all from heaven so your words need only be few v10:218; Elijah the prophet to be taken to v19:233; heaven is my throne and earth is my footstool v3:293; how you have fallen from heaven O morning star v6:305; there is a God in heaven who reveals mysteries v18:384; he does as he chooses with the hosts of heaven v23:386; these are the four spirits of heaven from the presence of Jehovah v51:405; see if I will not open the windows of heaven v13:431; for who has gone up to heaven and come down again? v1:474; Glory to God in the highest heaven v12:485; a voice was heard from heaven saying v21:488; praise your Father in heaven v29:492; our Father in heaven v15:493; store up for yourselves treasures in heaven v25:493; you have only one Father and he is in heaven v18:506; whatever you seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven v13:508; in heaven their angels always behold the face of my Father v11:510; Satan cast down like lightning from heaven v32:512; your names are written in heaven v34:512; parable of Lazarus and rich man v26-36:514; provide for yourself treasure in heaven v10:514, v46:519; more rejoicing in heaven over one sinner who repents, than ninety-nine righteous persons v10:517; Jesus taken up to heaven to sit at right hand of God v59:538, v18:659; no man has ever entered heaven except Jesus who came from heaven v10:544; I have come down from heaven v25:548; then came a voice from heaven saying v23:556; there are many mansions where my Father dwells, I go to prepare a place for you v27:558; Jesus to remain in heaven until day God restores all things v14:571; Stephen sees Jesus standing at right hand of Father in heaven v48:574; Jesus to be revealed from heaven in blazing fire with his powerful angels v5:604; eye has not seen, nor ear heard, nor entered into heart of man what God has prepared for those who love him v24:608; Paul caught up to the third heaven, to Paradise v45:621; every knee in heaven and earth shall bow v28:646; Holy Spirit sent from heaven v10:658; John sees God the Father sitting on a throne in heaven v2:685; silence in heaven for about half an hour v1:688; two prophets return to life and ascend into heaven v21:690; there were loud voices in heaven saying v1:691; God's temple in heaven opened v5:691; war arose in heaven v14:691; loud music from heaven v2:693; looked like a sea of glass, mingled with fire v2:694; the roar of great multitude in heaven proclaiming v1:697; armies of heaven followed him, riding on white horses v19:698; new heavens and new earth to be created v16:293; John sees New Jerusalem coming down out of heaven v10:699

Hebron Abram dwelt at great oaks near Hebron v19:20; Abraham visited by Jehovah and two angels near Hebron v1:23; Sarah dies and is buried at Hebron v13-37; Hebron given to Caleb as an inheritance v21:128; David anointed king at v22:183, v34:185; six sons born to David in Hebron v2:184

hell See Death Second, Eternal Punishment, Hinnoo valley of (Gehenna), Hades, Lake of Fire, Pit

Herd the Great disturbed when wise men come searching for Christ child v2:486; instructs wise men to report back when they find the Christ v4:486; orders all infant boys in Bethlehem district killed v10:486; dies v11:486

Herd (son of Herod the Great) king of Galilee, imprisons John the Baptist v2:488; fears John the Baptist and protects him, liked to listen to him v3:488; distressed at having to behead John the Baptist v7:504; wants to kill Jesus v36:519; called a fox by Jesus v37:519; Pilate sends Jesus to v10:533; Jesus refuses to speak to v12:533; Herod and his soldiers

mock Jesus, return him to Pilate v14:533; that day Herod and Pilate became friends v15:533; kills apostle James v1:579; imprisons Peter during Passover, angel frees v2:579; orders guards executed v18:579; struck down by angel for pride and dies v21:580

Herodias unlawful wife of Herod v1:488; furious at John's rebuke, looks for way to kill him v3:488; has John the Baptist beheaded v1-8:504

Hezekiah son of Ahaz, becomes king of Judah v1:284; a righteous king v5:284; reopens Temple and ends idol worship v6:285; instructs priests to purify Temple v10:285; invites all Israel to celebrate Passover in Jerusalem v23:285; prays for pardon of those who unlawfully eat Passover v6-7:286; prospers in everything he undertakes v19:286; pays attacking Assyrians huge ransom of gold to withdraw v9:299; seeks guidance from Lord when Assyrians return v17-18:299; 185,000 Assyrian soldiers die during night v33:300; steward of cursed by Lord for pride v1:300; Hezekiah becomes ill, told by Isaiah he is about to die v8:300; weeps bitterly, Lord hears his prayer, grants fifteen more years of life v9-11:301; sun's shadow goes back ten degrees as sign from Lord v14:301; poultice of figs heals king's tumour v16:301; writes in gratitude for his healing v17-20:301; grows proud because of riches v21:301; messengers from Babylon visit v22:301; Isaiah prophesies exile of Hezekiah's children to Babylon v26:301; Hezekiah repents of pride, Lord postpones Judah's punishment v29:301; dies and son Manasseh becomes king v1:307; all Judah honours Hezekiah v2:307

high priest head priest/s of the Israelites, Aaron called as first v1:171; ephod, breastplate and priestly clothing of v3-20:171; not to go behind veil unless commanded v16:80; to be tidily groomed and not go near a dead body v1:84; must marry a Levite virgin v4:84; Aaron's staff to blossom as sign of his priesthood authority v6-12:98; Aaron's son Eleazar to succeed him as high priest v15:100; high priest to address army prior to battle v9:112; Eli the high priest blesses Hannah that her prayer be answered v11:146; Eli cares for Samuel from boyhood v18:157; David flees to high priest Ahimelech at Nob who gives David Holy Bread to eat v1:171; high priests sent back to Jerusalem with Ark by David v21:193; Abiathar removed from office by Solomon v11:203; high priest Jehoiada keeps son of king Ahaziah hidden in Temple for six years v27:266; high priest finds copy of book of Law in Temple v18:311; high priest asked by king to enquire of Lord v21:311; an appointed one in Jerusalem 49 years after word to rebuild city v10:392; Jesus arrested and taken to house of v1:531, v10:561; high priest orders Jesus to reveal if he is the Christ v6:532; angrily accuses Jesus of blasphemy v8:532; decides Jesus must die v32:555; orders Paul struck on mouth v3:591; Jesus has become a merciful high priest v14:667; a high priest must be called of God as was Aaron v15:668; Jesus a high priest after the order of Melchizedek v29:669

Hinnom valley of (Gehenna) has been long prepared for battle of last days v27:289; you have burned your sons and daughters in v24:327, v9:346; a place of idolatry and child sacrifice v30:332; defiled so no man could use it to sacrifice his children by fire v8:311; he who says 'you fool' in danger of fires of Gehenna v32:492; better to lose one part of body than for whole body to be thrown into Gehenna v36:492; fear the One who is able to destroy both body and soul in Gehenna v14:498; you make him twice as much a son of Gehenna as you are v34:525

Hiram king of Tyre, builds David a cedar palace v7:185; provides Solomon timber for Temple v5:205; Solomon pays Hiram with wheat and olive oil v7:205; displeased with towns Solomon gave him v17:209; sends sailors to help man Solomon's ships v20:209

Hittites Canaanite tribe v17:22, v7:51; Abraham buys burial field from v14-21:27; Hittites to be driven out of Canaan by Israelites v16:109; Uriah the Hittite murdered by David ch6:189

Hivites Canaanite tribe v7:51; inhabitants of Lebanon mountains v25:134

Hobab brother-in-law of Moses, knows how to camp in the desert, goes with Israelites v5-7:94

holiness God blessed the seventh day and made it holy v20:15; take off your sandals, you are standing on holy ground

v3:51; Jehovah, majestic in holiness v8:60; you will be a kingdom of priests, a holy nation v3:62; fourth year fruit of a tree to be regarded as holy v31:65; keep holy the Sabbath day. v22:64, v38:65; you are to be my holy people v34:68; the altar and all that touches it will be holy v24:72; anoint everything and it will be holy v25:76; you must distinguish between holy and common v12:80; purify yourselves and be holy, for I am holy v1:81; a priest must remain holy v5:84; a Nazarite must remain holy until his separation to Jehovah is over v21:87; we have conducted ourselves in all holiness before God v14:618; live quiet peaceful lives, in all holiness v15:651; we have been made holy through the sacrifice of Jesus Christ v53:669; live in peace with all men and be holy v1:671; God disciplines us that we may share in his holiness v40:671; without holiness no one will see Lord v1:671

Holy Bread set out each week on Tabernacle table v34:81; David and his men given to eat v4:171

Holy City See Jerusalem millennium

Holy Ghost See Holy Spirit

Holy Place (See Most Holy Place)

Holy Spirit (Spirit of God/Lord/Jehovah) the Spirit of God watched over the waters v2:14; my Spirit will not strive with man forever v17:17; could we find anyone like this man (Joseph), in whom is the Spirit of God v15:40; I have filled Bezalel with the Spirit of God and with skill in craftsmanship v35:73; Lord to take of the Spirit that is upon Moses and put it upon seventy elders also v16:94; the Spirit rests upon seventy elders of Israel and they prophesy v22:94; Moses wishes Lord would put his Spirit on all his people v27:94; Spirit of God comes upon Balaam, prophesies v3:103; Joshua, a man in whom is the Spirit v5:119; Spirit of the Lord came upon Othniel v7:134; Spirit of the Lord comes upon Gideon v2-44:137; Spirit of the Lord comes upon Jephthah v22-24:141; Spirit of the Lord comes upon Samson with great power, does great feats of strength ch9-11:143, v26:143, v12:144; Spirit of God comes upon Saul, joins prophets in prophesying v38:162, v19-24:163; from that day the Spirit of the Lord came upon David in power v14:167; Spirit of the Lord departs from Saul, evil spirit permitted to torment v15:167; Spirit of God falls upon Saul's men in presence of Samuel, they prophesy v2:170; Spirit of God comes on Saul in presence of Samuel, prophesies v3:171; David gave Solomon plans for the Temple, all that the Spirit had put in his mind v38:200; David spoke by the Spirit of Jehovah, the Holy Spirit v21:201, v23:524, v12:569; I know not where the Spirit of the Lord may carry you v7:227, v39:234; a prophet with the Spirit of God is called a madman v16:251; Elisha asks for double portion of Spirit from Elijah v30:234; Spirit of the Lord comes upon prophet Azariah, prophesies v9:262; Spirit comes upon Jahaziel, a Levite, prophesies success in battle v22:264; Spirit comes upon Zechariah, prophesies, is stoned to death v15-17:267; Micah filled with the Spirit v1:276; Spirit of Jehovah to be upon Cyrus v22:303; Spirit of Jehovah to be upon the Messiah v25:306, v5:307, v9:488; cherubim turned wherever Spirit of God chose to go v8:356; Spirit of God enters into Ezekiel v21:356; Ezekiel transported by Spirit of God v31:357; Spirit comes again upon Ezekiel, prophesies v38:360; Spirit returns spirit of Ezekiel to Babylon v46:360; Spirit of God takes Ezekiel to valley of dry bones v1:369; fear not, for my Spirit abides among you v23:399; vision of Zechariah, four horses and chariots representing the four spirits of heaven v51:405; my people did not heed the words I sent by my Spirit through earlier prophets v4:406; if I rise to the heavens or descend to Sheol your Spirit is there, Psalm 2 v5:444; not by might, nor by power, but by my Spirit v39:404; those patrolling the north have given my Spirit rest in that land v53:405; if he withdrew his Spirit all mankind would perish v17:439; take not your Holy Spirit from me, Psalm 23 v6:448; John the Baptist to be filled with the Holy Spirit from his mother's womb v7:483; Elizabeth filled with the Holy Spirit, prophesies v25:483; Zechariah, filled with the Holy Spirit, prophesies v34:484; Mary found to be with child through the Holy Spirit v1-3:484; Holy Spirit was with Simeon v19:485; he will baptise you with the Holy Spirit and with fire v1:487; John sees the Spirit of God descend upon Jesus in likeness of a dove v20:488, v17:542; Jesus full of the Holy Spirit is led by the Spirit into the desert v22:488; the Spirit of the Lord God is upon me v9:488; Jesus drives out demons by power of the Holy

Spirit v29:501; blasphemy against Holy Spirit an unforgivable sin v30:501; Jesus full of joy through the Holy Spirit v35:512; your Father in heaven will give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him v8:513; Holy Spirit will give apostles words to speak v9:525; no one can enter the kingdom of God unless born anew of water, and the Spirit v4:544; Jesus given the Spirit without limit v23:544; as yet the Spirit had not been given them, since Jesus had not been glorified v36:550; the Father will send the Comforter, the Holy Spirit, in my name to teach you all things and remind you of my words v8:558, v40:558; the Comforter whom I will send to you, proceeds from the Father v32:559; Comforter will not come unless Jesus goes away v38:559; Comforter will convict world of sin v39:559; Spirit of truth will teach you all truth when he comes v41:559; Jesus blew his breath upon them and said, receive the Holy Spirit v21:564; you will be baptised with the Holy Spirit v3:569; apostles to receive power from the Holy Spirit v5:569; the Holy Spirit comes with a rush of wind and tongues of fire on day of Pentecost v1:2:569; apostles speak in other languages as Spirit enables v2:570; Jesus has received the Holy Spirit from the Father and poured out upon us what you see v10:570; repent of your sins and be baptised and receive the gift of the Holy Spirit v12:570; Peter filled with the Holy Spirit testifies of Jesus v4:571; the building was shaken and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit v16:571; Ananias and his wife lie to the Holy Spirit, both fall down dead v3:11:572; Stephen full of the Holy Spirit sees a vision of God, and Jesus standing at his right hand v48:574; Peter and John sent that Samaritans might receive the Holy Spirit v12:575; Peter and John lay their hands on those who had been baptised and they receive the Holy Spirit v14:575; Simon offers money to apostles for power to give the Holy Spirit v15:575; Spirit of the Lord carries Philip away v33:576; the Holy Spirit speaks to Peter v14:578; Holy Spirit falls on Cornelius and other Gentiles and they speak in tongues v24-28:578; Barnabas was a good man, full of the Holy Spirit v12:579; the Holy Spirit speaks to church leaders, calls Barnabas and Paul on a mission v4:580; the Holy Spirit forbids Paul and companions to preach in Asia v6:583; Spirit of Jesus prevents Paul entering Bithynia v7:583; we have not even heard that there is a Holy Spirit v10:587; when Paul had laid his hands on them, the Holy Spirit came upon them v13:587; the Holy Spirit spoke through Isaiah the prophet v27:596; gospel came with power and deep conviction of the Holy Spirit v3:601; you welcomed the message with the joy of the Holy Spirit v4:602; quench not the Spirit's fire v24:603; the Holy Spirit shall keep you strong v5:607; I came with demonstration of the Holy Spirit's power v20:608; the Holy Spirit knows all things, even the thoughts of God v25:608, v8:631; teachings of Christ foolishness to a man without the Holy Spirit v26:608; with the Spirit we have the mind of Christ v26:608; your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit v30:610; I think I have the Spirit of God v25:611; Paul lists the fruits of the Spirit v4-5:613, v7:626, v2-4:633; after beginning with the Spirit you are now ending with the flesh v2:624; the Holy Spirit desires what is contrary to the flesh v4:625; the Holy Spirit crucifies sinful desires of the flesh v10:626; God poured his love into our hearts by the Holy Spirit v21:629; a mind controlled by the Holy Spirit brings Eternal Life and peace v25:630; if anyone has not the Spirit he does not belong to Christ v27:630; the Spirit of him who raised Jesus is living within you v1:630; the Holy Spirit intercedes for us with longings words cannot express v7:631; the kingdom of God is righteousness, peace, joy and hope in the Holy Spirit v9:633, v12:633; Paul called to preach Jesus by signs and miracles through the Holy Spirit v15:634; our inheritance in the kingdom of God is sealed by the Holy Spirit v9:641; by the Spirit we have access to the Father v27:641; this mystery was made known to me by the Holy Spirit v31:641; maintain the unity of Holy Spirit through peaceful living v3:642; there is but one church, one Spirit, one Lord v4:642; do not grieve the Holy Spirit v17:642; the Holy Spirit will strengthen your spirit, that Christ may dwell within you v38:642; by the Holy Spirit God is able to do immeasurably more than we can ask or imagine v40:642; the sword of the Spirit is the word of God v19:643; pray in the Spirit at every opportunity v20:643, v18:665; uplift one another with psalms, hymns and songs of the Spirit v30:643; through your prayers and the Spirit of Jesus Christ, whatever happens to me will turn out for good v14:646; you enjoy comfort, love, tenderness, compassion and fellowship

from Christ and the Holy Spirit v22:646; we worship by the Spirit of God v8:647; the Spirit clearly reveals that some will depart from the faith v13:652; God gave us not a Spirit of timidity but of boldness, love and wisdom v7:654; prophets of old spoke by the Spirit of Christ which was in them v9:658; gospel preached through the Holy Spirit sent from heaven v10:658; scripture has its origin in prophets of God, moved by the Holy Spirit v15:662, v4:667; worldly men who follow natural instincts do not have the Holy Spirit v17:665; God has testified to truth of the gospel by signs, miracles, and gifts of the Holy Spirit v7:667; the Holy Spirit speaks through scripture v4:667; those who have shared in the Holy Spirit and fall away cannot be restored again by repentance v23:668, v8:670; they who obey God's commandments live in him, and he in them, through the Holy Spirit v18:675, v14:675; the Holy Spirit greater than the spirits of the world v4:675; God lives in us and we live in him, for he has given us of his Spirit v14:675; John in the Spirit on the Lord's Day v11:682; hear what the Spirit says to the churches v14:684, v21:684, v3:684; John sees seven Spirits of God burn before throne in heaven v31:684, v4:686, v17:686; the Spirit speaks to John v17:694; the Spirit and the Bride say, come v14:701; Lord to pour out his Spirit upon inhabitants of Jerusalem (at second coming) v10:408; the Holy Spirit to be poured out on house of Israel during millennium v17:303, v29:371; the Holy Spirit to be poured out upon all mankind during millennium v4:273, v8:570

Holy Spirit gifts of the Spirit of God filled Bezalel with skill in craftsmanship v35:73; the Spirit of the Lord fills Samson with great power, performs feats of strength ch9-11:143; from that day on the Spirit of the Lord came upon David in power v14:167; Elizabeth filled with the Holy Spirit prophesied v25:483; Mary prophesies by the Holy Spirit v28:483; Zechariah, filled with the Holy Spirit prophesies v34:484; they began to speak in other languages as the Spirit enabled them v2:570; every good and perfect gift comes from above v12:598; Corinthians not lacking any of the gifts of the Spirit v4:607; a variety of gifts, but the same Spirit who manifests them v3:613; gifts of the Spirit listed, wisdom, knowledge, faith, healing, miracles, prophecy, discerning of spirits, tongues v4-5:613; gifts likened to different uses of parts of body v6:613; gifts of the Spirit and callings ranked in importance v9-18:613; most gifts will be unnecessary in kingdom of God, only faith, hope and love v19-23:614; the gift of charity v9:614; eagerly desire the greater gifts v11:614; love, a more excellent gift v12-17:614; eagerly desire the gift of prophecy v24:614; excel in gifts that build up the church v42:615; have control over your gift, God not a God of confusion but of order v48:615; love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness and chastity v7:626; Paul longs to see Roman church and impart a spiritual gift v5:628; we all have different gifts, prophecy, service, teaching, encouraging, giving, leadership, mercy v2-4:633; I pray God will give you spiritual gifts of wisdom and revelation v11:641; to each one of us is given gifts, as Christ apportions them v5:642; neglect not the gift given you when the elders laid hands on you v23:652; fan into flame the gift of God bestowed upon you by laying on of hands v6:654; we should use whatever gift of the Spirit we have received to serve others v25:659

homosexual acts (See also sodomy, sexual immorality) sexual deviants struck with blindness in Sodom v10:24; to lie with a man as with a woman an abomination, both men to be put to death v42:67; no man is to become a sodomite v24:112; earnings of a harlot and sodomite (dog) unclean v24:112; evil men demand sex with Levite man v13:148; male shrine prostitutes in Judah v7:261; male prostitute quarters within Lord's Temple torn down v5:311; no male prostitute or sodomite will inherit the kingdom of God v21:609; godless men become inflamed with homosexual lust v13:628; men committing indecent acts with other men and receiving in their bodies due penalty for perversion v13:628

honesty select trustworthy men who hate dishonest gain v27:62; do not take advantage of a widow or an orphan, I will hear their cry v14:64; do not deceive one another in any way v18:67; do not defraud one another or use dishonest scales and weights v19:67; if you can find one person who deals honestly and seeks truth I shall forgive this city v1:324; a good name is more desirable than silver or gold v19:466; accurate weights are the Lord's delight v30:469; the Lord blesses the

household of a righteous man v3:469; the upright hate what is false v8:469; the man of integrity walks securely v9:469; the Lord delights in those whose ways are blameless v30:470; the seed on good soil represents those with honest hearts v18:502; whoever is honest with little can be trusted with much v21:514

honey promised land of Canaan flowing with milk and honey v7:51, v4:74; not to be added to grain offerings v15:78; we explored the land and it does flow with milk and honey v21:95; Samson finds honey in the carcass of a lion v27:143; Jonathan dipped his staff into the honeycomb and ate v36:165; your food was choice flour, honey, and olive oil v13:362; he will not enjoy meadows flowing with honey and cream v27:437; fed with honey and finest of wheat, Psalm 76 v8:458; it is not good to eat too much honey v3:471; he who is sated spurns honey, but to the hungry even bitter tastes sweet v15:474; John the Baptist's food was locusts and wild honey v3:487

honour now my husband will treat me with honour for I have borne him six sons v20:32; Joseph's brothers bow and pay him honour v7:42; Judah, your brothers will honour you v21:45; honour your father and your mother v23:64; sacred garments made so that priests may serve Lord with honour v2:71; because you failed to honour me you will not bring this people into the land v9:100; Phinehas was as zealous as I am for my honour v10:104; he will exalt you in fame and honour high above all other nations v12:115; honour Israel O nations, for Jehovah will avenge their blood v31:118; this path you are following will not lead to your honour v7:135; why do you honour your sons more than me v2:157; I honour those who honour me, but those who dishonour me are cursed v3:157; I have sinned, but at least honour me before the elders of my people v39:166; Saul has gone to set up a monument in his own honour v24:166; I will also give you what you did not ask for, riches and honour all your life v9:203; they burned a huge fire in the king's honour v31:263; Jehoshaphat gained great wealth and honour v7:263; you have not honoured me with your sacrifices v14:303; I shall change your shame to honour v12:315; Nebuchadnezzar bowed face down before Daniel and paid him honour v32:384; you may give that honour to another v11:390; build my house, that I may be honoured v13:399; Mordecai would not bow down or pay Haman honour v4:413; Haman ordered to honour Mordecai v30-36:415; Judah's priests dishonour Lord by offering blemished animals v5-8; my honour comes from the Lord, Psalm 30 v3:449; you have made man little lower than God and crowned him with glory and honour, Psalm 34 v4:450; those who honour the Lord lack for nothing, Psalm 40 v6:451; he who offers thanksgiving honours me, Psalm 69 v11:456; honour the Lord with your wealth v16:466; riches and honour bestowed on those who love wisdom v6:467; he who heeds correction will be honoured v32:467; wait until invited before sitting in honoured place v2:471, v23:516; not good to seek one's own honour v3:471; humility and reverence of the Lord bring honour v10:471; a wise servant will rule over a dishonourable son v30:472; whoever is kind to the needy honours God v2:472; first speak with your neighbour before dishonouring him v2:473; a prophet is without honour in his home town v5:504; he who does not honour the Son does not honour the Father v17:547; I honour my Father, and you dishonour me v28:551; the Father will honour all who serve me v20:556; Gamaliel honoured by all the people v28:573; because Herod did not give the honour to God, he was eaten by worms and died v2:580; we apostles are weak and dishonoured v46:609; a man dishonours his head by praying with it covered v2:612; a woman dishonours her head by praying with it unveiled v2:612; bestow honour on each other rather than on yourself v6:633; whether I live or die, Christ will be honoured v14:646; bishops who rule faithfully worthy of double honour v11:652; you will have glory and honour when Jesus Christ revealed v7:658; revere God and honour the emperor v27:658; Jesus worthy of greater honour than Moses v3:667; Antichrist of last days shall greatly honour and make wealthy those who acknowledge him v4:396

hope he who is among the living has hope v15:219; those who hope in the Lord shall soar as an eagle v14:302; false prophets fill you with false hope v18:340; we are like dried up bones, for our hope is gone v8:369; yet, because of Lord's great love, we have hope v60:380; the Lord is good to those who hope in him and seek him v61:380; there is yet hope, the Lord will not reject forever v65:380; wait in your stronghold, prisoners of hope v8:407; should not your righteousness be your hope? v4:434; though God slay me, yet will I hope in him v27:436; what hope has the evil man when God takes away his

life v23:438, v43:469; keep me safe O Lord, for in you is all my hope, Psalm 17 v1:447; no one whose hope is in you O Lord is ever put to shame, Psalm 24 v2:448; my hope comes from him, I will not be shaken, Psalm v3:449; you have been my hope O Lord since my youth, Psalm 57 v2:454; in your word O Lord I put my hope, Psalm 91 v1:462; blessed is he whose hope is in the Lord, Psalm 92 v3:462; when a wicked man dies his hope perishes v43:469; envy not the wicked, for they have no hope v58:469; hope deferred makes the heart sick v11:474; do not grieve, like unbelieving men who have no hope v10:603; love ever hopes v17:614; only these three will remain, faith, hope, and love v23:614; be joyful in hope v8:633; may you overflow with hope by the Holy Spirit v12:633; you were without hope and without God in the world v24:641; answer all who ask the reason for the hope within you v13:659; Israel's despair will change to hope (during millennium) v21:250

Hophni a wicked priest who had no regard for Lord v22:157; lay with women who served at Tabernacle v27:157; cursed by Lord to die in battle v5:157; killed in battle by Philistines v9:158

horses (horsemen) Joseph exchanged food for their horses v20:44; the sea covered Pharaoh's chariots, horses and drivers v29:59; your king must not acquire great numbers of horses for himself v14:111; they came with a huge number of horses and chariots, a vast army v1:127; you are to hamstring their horses and burn their chariots v2:127; Solomon would import horses from Cilicia v25:209; Solomon had 12,000 horses v26:210; maybe we can find enough grass to keep the horses alive v3:227; a chariot and horses of fire separate Elijah and Elisha v32:234; Elisha's servant sees the hills full of horses and chariots of fire v9:241; chariot horses trample Jezebel to death v5:243; horses are everywhere and no end to their chariots v16:287; I will give you 2000 horses if you can put riders on them v4:299; he removed the horse images from the entrance to the Temple v7:311; galloping horses, jolting chariots, charging horsemen v14:312; if running against men has wearied you, how will you contend with horses? v13:328; your walls will tremble at the noise of horses and chariots as they enter your gates v5:366; returning exiles take with them 736 horses v11:398; behind him were four horses, red, brown, white and black v6:403; Zechariah's vision of four horses and chariots v50:405; we put bits into mouths of horses to make them obey us v21:599; John's sees four horsemen in heaven v1-7:686; John sees Jesus return to earth riding a white horse v12-17:697; armies of heaven follow Jesus, also riding white horses v19:698; Holy to Jehovah will be inscribed on the bells of horses (during millennium) v30:409

Hosea prophet of Northern Israel, commanded to marry an unfaithful woman v1:249; marries Gomer who bears him a son, v2:249; first son named Jezreel v3:249; daughter named Unloved v6:249; second son born, named Not my People v9:250; Hosea commanded to take back his adulterous wife Gomer v26:250; Hosea prophesies against sins of people ch2:250

Hoshea assassinates Pekah and becomes king of Israel v14:257; stops paying tribute to Assyria v16:257; Assyrians take captive v18:258

hospitality See kindness

house you shall not covet your neighbour's house v28:64; cleansing of a contaminated house v1:83; houses in walled cities can be sold permanently unless owned by Levites v25-27:86; protective railing to be built around roof of a house v7:113; respect privacy of neighbour's house v27:114; you will build a house but not live in it, if commandments not kept v48:116; the rafters sag and a house leaks if a man is lazy v20:220; woe to you who accumulate house after house v17:283; though you have built mansions you will not live in them v28:255, v26:284; sheep will graze among the ruined mansions of the rich v29:284; exiles to build houses and settle down v2:342; Ezekiel commanded to dig through the wall of his house v2:360; is it time to be living in panelled houses while my house remains a ruin? v11:399; he shall be impaled on a beam and his house turned to a pile of rubble v20:403; a mighty wind swept in from the desert and collapsed the house of Job's children upon them v14:433; the house of a harlot or adulteress leads down Sheol, the place of death v11:465; your bodies decay in the grave, far from their mansions, Psalm 62 v6:455; better to live on a roof top than to share a house with an

argumentative wife v5:465; the house of the righteous stands firm v18:469; a curse of the Lord is on the house of the wicked v36:469; the Lord tears down the proud man's house v6:471; did you not know that I would be in my Father's house? v19:487; parable of the wise man who built his house on the rock v25:495; no one can carry off goods of a strong man's house unless he first ties up the strong man v28:501; the unclean spirit says, I will return to my house which I left v36:501; if the owner knew a thief was coming he would not have let his house be broken into v40:515, v44:527; all who have left houses for my sake will receive a hundred times as much v54:520; how dare you turn my Father's house into a market place v11:543; where my Father dwells there are many mansions v27:558; those who owned houses sold them and laid the money at the apostles' feet v2:572; the builder of a house is worthy of greater honour than the house itself v3:667

household gods Rachael steals her fathers household gods v13:33; Micah makes figurines to use as v4:146; Micah's household gods stolen by Danites v16:147; Josiah rids land of v9:311

Huldah prophetess of Judah, asked to enquire of Lord by high priest v22:311; declares disaster coming on Judah v23:311

humility (meekness) Moses the most humble man on earth v6:95; Ahab fasted, dressed in sackcloth and went around meekly v19:231; Lord requires his people to walk humbly v13:277; humble esteemed by Lord v4:293; Messiah to stand for meek of the earth v6:307; Lord with those who are humble in spirit v21:308; I will remove the proud but shall leave the meek and humble who trust in the Lord v8:315; the Lord guides the humble in what is right, Psalm 24 v5:448; sacrifice the Lord wants is a broken heart and a contrite spirit, Psalm 23 v10:448; Lord close to the broken hearted and crushed in spirit, Psalm 40 v10:451; the meek will inherit the earth, Psalm 58 v6:454; let us kneel before the Lord our maker, for he is our God, Psalm 87 v1:461; trust in the Lord with all your heart and lean not to own understanding v2:471; humility comes before honour v3:471; with humility comes wisdom v4:471; Peter humbles himself before Jesus v31:489; blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth v10:491; turn the other cheek v3:492; he who is meekest in the kingdom of God is greater than John the Baptist v8:499; truth hidden from self-wise and learned, but revealed to the humble v17:500; learn from me, for I am meek and humble in heart v20:500; whoever humbles himself like this little child, is greatest in the Kingdom of God v7:509; take the lowest place at a feast v24:516; he who humbles himself will be exalted v25:516; parable of the Pharisee and the tax collector v16-19:518; the greatest to be the one who serves v8:529; the lowly will be exalted v9:598; humble yourselves before the Lord and he will lift you up v8:600; in the meekness and gentleness of Christ I appeal to you v1:620; I Paul, who am meek when face to face with you, but bold when away v2:620; the Lord's power is made perfect in weakness v49:621; be humble, do not think of yourselves more highly than you ought v29:633; clothe yourselves with humility v1:637; wives, submit to your husbands as is fitting in Lord v8:637; Jesus humbled himself in obedience v26:646; be clothed with humility toward one another v4:660; young men, be submissive to those who are older v4:660; humble yourselves before God's mighty hand, that he may lift you up due time v5:660

Huram a man of great skill sent by king Hiram to Solomon v6:205; casts bronze pillars for entrance to the Temple v31:206; casts capitals, altar and large basin v32-34:206; smaller bronze objects also made v37:41:207

husband Eve gives forbidden fruit to her husband v5:15; your desire shall be to your husband and he will rule over you v17:16; my husband is old, how can I now have this pleasure? v10:23; surely my husband will love me now v2:32, v4:32; now my husband will treat me with honour for I have borne him six sons v20:32; truly you are a husband of blood to me v3:52; commandments on marriage v20-28:66; first husband not to remarry his divorced wife again, for she has been defiled v12:113; wife not to aid fighting husband by seizing his assailants private parts v28:114; may Jehovah find each of you another husband v4:151; I am too old to take another husband v6:151; I will return to my husband for I was better off then than

now v20:250; you adulterous wife, you prefer strangers to your own husband v22:362; women will look with contempt on the authority of their husbands v13:412; a husband not to be unfaithful to his wife v8:430; jealousy arouses a husband's fury v14:465; a wife of noble character the crown of her husband v1:465; a wife who shames her husband is like decay to his bones v8:465; worth of a noble wife to a husband far above rubies v11:465; she has left the husband of her youth and broken the marriage covenant she made before God v13:467; how can this be, since I have no husband? v19:483; a wife who divorces her husband and marries another commits adultery v27:519; you have had five husbands, and the man you now have is not your husband v10:545; the feet of the men who buried your husband are at the door v10:572; because of temptation to immorality each woman should have her own husband v1:610; body of husband belongs also to wife v2:610; do not deprive husband of conjugal rights v2:610; a wife should not leave her husband, but if she does she must remain single v5:610; a husband must not divorce his wife v6:610; the unbelieving husband made holy by the believing wife v8:610; if an unbelieving spouse leaves, let them go v9:610; a widow is free to re-marry, but the man must be a believer v24:611; the head of the woman is her husband and the head of the husband is Christ v1:612, v2:643; if they wish to inquire let them ask their husbands at home v51:615; by law a married woman is bound to her husband v11:630; wives, submit to your husbands as is fitting in the Lord v8:637, v2:643; husbands, love your wives, be not harsh with them v9:637; wives should submit to their husbands in all things v3:643, v18:649, v1:658; husbands, love your wives as Christ loves the church v4:643; a husband ought to love his wife as if she were his own body v5:643; let each wife show respect for her husband v8:643; train the younger women to love their husbands v17:649; women of old lived in obedience to their husbands v3:659; husbands, be considerate of your wives, treat them with respect, that nothing hinder your prayers v5:659; a wife heir with her husband to the gift of Eternal Life v5:659

Hushai David's friend and adviser, remains in Jerusalem to assist David v25-29:193; offers to act as adviser to Absalom v4:194; counters Athiophel's advice v12-18:194; sends warning message to David v20:195

hymns (See also music, songs) book of Psalms p443; Jesus and apostles sing a hymn v27:530; Paul and Silas sing hymns v24:584; hymns given by gift of tongues v43:615; sing hymns with gratitude to God v6:637; uplift one another with hymns v30:643

hypocrisy when you give do not announce it with trumpets as the hypocrites do v8:493; they love to pray on street corners to be seen of men, they have had their reward v11:493; when you fast, do not look dismal as the hypocrites do v22:493; you hypocrite, first take the log out of your own eye v4:494; you hypocrites, Isaiah was right when he prophesied about you v11:505; Jesus warns disciples against hypocrisy of Pharisees and Sadducees v55:507; they love to walk around in flowing robes and have people call them Rabbi in the marketplaces v27:524; hypocrisy of the Pharisees and teachers of the Law rebuked by Jesus v15-20:513; Jesus warns against hypocrisy, nothing hidden that will not one day be made known v2:514; hypocrites to be assigned a place of weeping and grinding of teeth v44:515; you hypocrite, do not each of you lead your donkey out to water on the Sabbath? v9:516; you hypocrites, why do you try to trap me? v4:523; woe to you teachers of the Law and Pharisees, hypocrites v31-36:525; God will strike you, you hypocrite v4:591; Peter accused of acting hypocritically v19:624; rid yourselves of all hypocrisy v19:658

idolatry (See also household gods) first commandment—you shall have no other gods before me v19:63, v14:109; you shall not make for yourself an idol v20:63; other commandments forbidding idolatry v24-27:64; Aaron makes a golden calf for the Israelites v3:73, v37:574; Israelite men seduced to idolatry and immorality by Midianite women v2:104, v18:684; 24,000 Israelites die from plague as a result v9:104, v15:611; Canaanite places of idolatry to be destroyed v18:106; Israelite idolaters to be put to death v4:111; any Israelite town practising idolatry to be destroyed v7:111; whoever makes an idol is cursed v4:115; Israelites begin to worship Baal and Ashtoreth, gods of the Canaanites v3:134; Israel made Jehovah jealous by gods who were not gods v19:118; Israel

sacrificed to demons, gods that recently appeared v20:118; Israelites again turn to idolatry after death of Gideon v9:139; idolatrous Israel oppressed by Ammonites for 18 years v3:141; cry out to the gods you have chosen, let them save you v7:141; Ark causes idol image of Dagon to repeatedly fall on face v22:159; Solomon's foreign wives lead him into idolatry, builds hilltop shrines v3-5:210; Jeroboam sins by setting up golden calves v3:223; Ahab builds temple to Baal, makes Asherah pole v18-19:226; Ahab behaved abominably by going after idols v18:231; you consult wooden idols and are unfaithful to your God v19:251; you offer human sacrifice, and kiss the calf-idols v23:251; my anger burns against your calf idol, it is not God, a craftsman has made it v23:251; Israel bowed to sun, moon and stars and worshipped Baal v19:258; Israel sacrificed children in fire, practiced divination and sorcery v20:258; Israel exiled to Assyria because of idolatry v20-21:258; foreign settlers in Israel set up idols v27:258; Judah abandons Lord and returns again to idolatry v7:261; Asa removes all loathsome idols from Judah v11:262; idolatrous queen mother deposed by Asa v12:263; Judah again worships idols v14:267; Amaziah worships Edomite idols v29:267; Hezekiah ends idol worship v6:285; idolatrous altars of Jerusalem thrown into Kidron Valley v3:286; land full of idolatry therefore all the people are debased v17:287; Lord's challenges worthless idols v8:302; he who chooses an idol is an abomination to Lord v9:303; foolishness of making and worshipping idols v11:303, v43:328; Manasseh returns Judah to idolatry v4:308; Lord likens idolatry to adultery v12:308; when you cry out for help, let your idols save you v19:308; my people have exchanged their Glory for worthless idols v8:322, v11:628; a craftsman shapes an idol with his chisel, then nails it so it will not totter v42:328; their idols cannot speak, and must be carried for they are unable to walk v43:328; you have set up abominable idols in the house that bears my name v24:327,v9:346; Jews in Egypt warned to repent of idolatry v1-7:349; because of your abominable idols, parents shall eat their own children v33:358; Judah to suffer and be ruined because of idolatry v42-46:358; I will slay your people in front of their idols v45:358; Ezekiel sees idol in Temple gateway v7:359; Ezekiel sees idolatry by seventy elders in closed Temple room v9-12:359; Ezekiel sees women mourning for god Tammuz and men worshipping sun v17-19:359; Lord refuses to be enquired of by idolaters v30:361; idolaters called upon to repent v34:361; did you have to slaughter my children and sacrifice them to idols? v16:362, Psalm 83 v27:460; house of Israel shall never again defile my holy name with lifeless idols v7:373; towns of Judah lie deserted and in ruins for provoking Lord to anger by idolatry v2:349; Nebuchadnezzar makes a huge idol, overlaid with gold v1:385; Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego refuse to worship idol v11:385; idols speak nonsense v15:407; the sorrows of men who run after other gods will increase, Psalm 17 v2:447; Paul dismayed to see Athens full of idols v14:585; no idolater will inherit kingdom of God v21:609, v22:643; an idol of no account, there is no God but one v1:611; idolatry is worship of demons v23:612; idolatry a work of the flesh, not of the Holy Spirit v5:625; coveting is idolatry v24:637; dear children, keep yourselves from idols v32:676; Egyptians to consult with idols and spirits of dead (in last days) v6:291; survivors of last days will not repent of idolatry v34:690; men will cast away idols of silver and gold, and flee to caves (at second coming) v23:288, v11:292; makers of idols everywhere in world shall be put to shame (at second coming) v19:292; idolaters to inherit Second Death v8:699; idolaters never permitted to enter New Jerusalem v11:701

Immanuel a young woman to give birth to a son named, as sign from Lord to Ahaz v12:281

immorality See sexual immorality

incense (See also censers) altar of incense described v27:70; incense to be burned in Tabernacle as lamps tended v29:70; ingredients of v44:71; two of Aaron's sons die for offering unlawful incense v6-7:80; Aaron halts plague by offering v5:98; Korah and 250 followers and families die after offering unlawfully incense v19-30:98; fragrant with incense from the spices of the merchant v1:214; leprosy breaks out on King Uzziah when about to burn unlawful incense v11:275; Lord provoked to anger by burning of incense to Baal v5:328; we shall continue to burn incense to the Queen of Heaven v9:350; Zechariah did his duty as priest, burning incense in

Temple v4:482; child Jesus presented with gifts of gold, incense, and myrrh v6:486; angel given much incense to offer with prayers of saints v3:688

incest Lot lies with his two daughters v23-26:25; commandments against v20-38:66; whoever commits cursed v9-11:115; Amnon rapes his half sister Tamar v11:191; case of among Corinthians, man living immorally with father's wife v4:609

infectious sores (See also leprosy) description of v1-11:83; infected person to cry out unclean, unclean v12:83; infected person to live outside camp v13:83

inheritance Abram's descendants to inherit land of Canaan v20:20, v20:581, v8:670; Ishmael is not to share the inheritance with my son Isaac v19:26; tithes given to Levites as an inheritance instead of land v19:99, v7:105; law concerning heiresses v9:105; no inheritance in Israel to pass from tribe to tribe v13:105; inheritances of the tribes in Canaan v9-21:129; Elisha asks to inherit a double portion of Elijah's spirit v30:234; ask of me and I will make all nations your inheritance, Psalm 14 v4:446; surely I have a delightful inheritance, Psalm 17 v3:447; a man heaps up wealth not knowing who will inherit it, Psalm 27 v3:449; the humble will inherit the earth in the age to come, Psalm 58 v6:454, v10:491; a good man leaves an inheritance for his children's children v32:470; Jesus warns of greed when dividing an inheritance v3-4:514; come you blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the creation of the world v25:528; Isaiah to be an apportioner of inheritances when Lord returns v11:306; millennial inheritances of Israel v18-22:376

injury See physical injury

injustice do not pervert justice by siding with a majority in doing wrong v23:67; do not deny justice to the poor, and do not be lenient with a man just because he is poor v25:67; cursed is the person who withholds justice from the sojourner, the fatherless and the widow v8:115; God will eventually right all injustice v14:218; woe to you who acquit the guilty for a bribe and deny justice to the innocent v24:284; woe to those who make unjust laws to deprive the poor v6:287; this is the fasting I choose, to put right injustice v29:309; are my ways unjust O house of Israel, it is not your ways that are unjust? v33:364; Job claims that he is innocent but God denies him justice v15:439; unthinkable that God would pervert justice v16:439; better a little gain with righteousness than much gain with injustice v32:466; an evil man has no understanding of justice v20:468; parable of the unjust judge v9-12:513; Jesus accuses Pharisees of neglecting justice v31:525; do not show favouritism to the rich v1-2:599; it is good that a man patiently endure unjust suffering v29:658

insects (See also locusts) let the earth bring forth living creatures that move along the ground v13:14; biting lice came upon men and animals throughout land of Egypt v25:53; dense swarms of flies poured into Pharaoh's palace and the houses of Egypt v31:54; clean and unclean insects defined v9:81

interest (See also loans) poor not to be charged interest v16:64, v30:86; a righteous man does not lend at excessive interest v19:363; an unrighteous man lends at excessive interest v22:364; taking excessive interest one of sins of Jerusalem v18:365; Nehemiah forbids charging interest to poor v5-8:425; he who lends money without usury may dwell in the presence of the Lord, Psalm 38 v3:450; he who increases wealth by excessive interest amasses it for another v28:466; why did you not invest my money with the bankers? v19:528

Isaac son of Abram, birth foretold by Lord v23:23; birth of v15:26; God commands Abraham to sacrifice Isaac v1:26, v15:599, v14:670; angel of Lord stops Abraham at last moment v9:26; Isaac marries Rebekah v38:28; twin sons Esau and Jacob born to v5:29; Lord confirms covenant he made with Abraham v13:29; Isaac stays with king Abimelech, claims Rebekah to be his sister v16-17:29; Abimelech discovers the deception v18:29; Isaac becomes wealthy v21:29; quarrels over water with Philistines v22:29; Lord appears to at Beersheba v27:29; becomes old and blind, commands his son Esau to bring him wild game prior to blessing him v2:30; Isaac receives Esau's blessing instead, by deception v19:30, v16:670; Isaac makes a peace treaty with Abimelech v30:30; Isaac commands his son Jacob to obtain a wife from Haran

v2:31; Isaac dies aged 180 v27-28:37; I am the God of your fathers Abraham, Isaac and Jacob v4:51; I am Jehovah, I appeared to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob v19:53; I will again remember my covenant with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob v30:88; many to find a place at the feast in the kingdom of God with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob v6:490; Isaac to be seen in the kingdom of God v15:516

Isaiah prophet, sees Lord in the Temple v17:275; lips cleansed by a live ember v22:275; Lord sends Isaiah with his son to speak to King Ahaz v6:281; Isaiah sings a song of the Lord's vineyard v13:283; new born son to be named Quick to the Spoil v1:284; Isaiah told not to fear his people v2:284; prophecies against Philistines v2-4:284; Isaiah and his children trust in the Lord v4:284; prophecies exile of Judah v26:284; prophecies fate of women of Jerusalem v32:284

prophecies exile of Northern Israel v4:287; prophecies while stripped that Assyria will take stripped captives from Egypt v22:287; prophecies of last days, second coming and millennium ch7-16:288; prophecies destruction of Moab v1:290; prophecies Lord will return in garments stained crimson v1:292; prayer of praise v6:292; prophecies of Isaiah like a sealed book to Judah v1:297; prophecies to be understood when great day of Lord comes v6:298; instructed to write for days to come v10:298; words of scoffed at v15:298; Lord rebukes king of Assyria through Isaiah, 185,000 men die that night v27-33:300; Lord curses King Hezekiah's steward through v1-5:300; king's tumour healed with a poultice of figs v16:301; prophecies exile of Judah by Babylon v26:301; vision of Babylonian capture and exile of Jerusalem v7-15:302; prophecies destruction of Babylon v25:304; Isaiah despised by his people v3:305; Isaiah given an eloquent tongue with which to teach v4:305; Isaiah mocked by his people v5:305; prophecies crushing of Tyre for 70 years v9-15:305; none obey word of Isaiah, all walk in light of own lamp v8:306; Isaiah a light for the Gentiles also v10:306; to be an apportioner of inheritances to Israel when Lord returns v12:306; people to be appalled at disfigured appearance of at death v15:306; greatly rejoices in Lord v31:306; prophecies coming of the Messiah (Christ); scroll of book of Isaiah handed to Jesus to read v8:488; you hypocrites, Isaiah was right when he prophesied about you v1:505; Philip sees Ethiopian official sitting in his chariot reading from book of Isaiah v23:575; Holy Spirit spoke truth through Isaiah the prophet v27:596

Ish-Bosheth son of Saul, made king of all Israel except Judah v25:183; rebukes Abner for lying with his father's concubine v4:184; returns David's wife Michal v11:184; stabbed to death by assassins v26:185; assassins of killed by David v32:185

Ishmael son of Abram (Abraham) and Hagar v10:22; to be a wild ass of a man v11:22; to become a great nation (Ishmaelites) v24:23, v20:26; rejected by Abraham's wife Sarah v19:26; weeps dying of thirst in desert with his mother Hagar v23:26; an angel reveals a well of water to Hagar v26:26; becomes an archer, takes wife from Egypt v27:26; helps bury his father Abraham v42:29; twelve sons born to, dies aged 137 v43:29; Joseph sold to Ishmaelite traders v24:38

Ishmael (royal official) assassinate Gedaliah v6:348; slaughters seventy others v9:348; takes captives and departs for Ammon v12:348; Johanan and his men pursue, rescue captives, Ishmael escapes v13:348

Israel (the man) See Jacob

Israel twelve tribes of Jacob's blessings on v16-35:45; Moses' blessings on v13-28:119; names engraven on high priest's breastplate v11:71; camping arrangements and marching order v16-21:92; twelve apostles to judge twelve tribes v10:530; 12,000 from each tribe (144,000) to be sealed in last days v4:688

Israelites (See also Israel (northern kingdom), Israel during millennium, judges of Israel, Judah (kingdom of), kings of Israel and Judah, kings of Northern Israel) descendants of Israel, Jacob's name changed to Israel v16:35; Israel's family move from Canaan to Egypt v1:43; Israelites become too numerous for Egyptians v2:49; made slaves by Egyptians v3:49; Pharaoh orders every baby boy thrown in Nile v9:50; Israelites groan in their slavery and cry out to God v1:51; Moses sent to lead Israelites to promised

land v6:51; Israelites ordered by Pharaoh to gather own straw v10:52; ten plagues of Egypt ch4-5:53; Israelites given silver, gold and clothing by Egyptians v20:57; 600,000 men, plus women and children leave Egypt v21:57; commanded to celebrate Passover v6:58; Jehovah leads in pillar of cloud v10:58; pursued by army of Pharaoh v15:58; pass through Red Sea v25:59; Pharaoh's army driven in Red Sea v30:59; Israelites sing and dance to the Lord v2:59; bitter water at Marah healed by tree v3:60; camp at Elim oasis v5:60; enter desert of Sin v6:60; complain for food v7:60; quail fly into camp v15:60; put Lord to test by complaining for water at Horeb v2:61; water flows out of rock v6:61; attacked by Amalekites v8:61; arrive at Mount Horeb (Sinai) v1:62; to be a chosen people if obedient to Lord v3:62; promise Moses they will obey Lord v6:62; commanded by Lord to purify themselves 7:63; not to touch Mount Sinai v9:63; Ten Commandments spoken by Lord in hearing of v19-28:63; tremble in fear at sound of Jehovah's voice v1:64; ask Moses to relay other commandments v2:64; Moses reads commandments to v6:68; blood sprinkled on people by Moses v7:68; Moses a long time on mountain v1:73; Aaron makes Israelites a golden calf to represent Jehovah v4:73; Israelites offer idolatrous sacrifice and indulge in revelry v6:73; Moses smashes tablets in anger v15:74; Moses makes the people drink the powdered calf v16:74; Moses attempts to atone for Israelites' sin v1:74; Israelites an obstinate people v4:74; Israelites to remove ornaments while Lord decides what to do with them v5:74; angel of Lord to lead the Israelites instead of Lord himself v6:74; Lord relents at Moses' pleading and agrees to accompany Israelites v19:75; Israelites see face of Moses shining v14:75; Israelites bring Moses materials and build a Tabernacle v18-21:76; Jehovah emerges from Tabernacle in glorious splendour v3:80; Israelites cry out and fall face down on ground v5:80; infectious and unclean Israelites to live outside camp v14:83; list of blessings if commandments kept v1-7:87; list of cursings if commandments not kept v9-29:88; Israelites will die in lands of enemies v28:88; shall not be rejected completely v31:88; census taken v9-12:92; Israelites set out from Sinai v1-4:93; Hobab brother-in-law of Moses goes with Israelites v7:94; cloud of the Lord goes before them v8:94; Israelites complain about hardship, Lord's anger aroused, sends fire among them v10:94; Israelites crave meat and other tasty foods v12:94; Israelites to eat meat for a whole month until they loath it v17:94; seventy elders called to assist Moses, given same Spirit, prophesy v22:94; huge flock of quail hover round camp, quail killed for two days v1-2:94; people struck with plague before quail all eaten v3:95; twelve leaders sent to explore promised land v18:95; leaders bring back fearful report, v24:96; Caleb and Joshua plead with people to trust Jehovah v23:96; people fear, want to return to Egypt, talk of stoning Caleb and Joshua v4:96; glory of Lord appears in sight of all Israelites v5:96; Lord intends to destroy Israelites for fearfulness v2:96; Moses pleads with Lord to forgive people v8:96; people forgiven but cursed to wander 40 years in desert v13-18:96; some try to enter promised land but are beaten back v25:97; account of 40 years wandering v1-4:97; rebellion of Korah and 250 Levites and Dathan and Abiram v9-32:97; people murmur against Moses and Aaron v1:98; glory of Lord appears, a plague begins v2-4:98; 14,700 Israelites die before plague halted by Aaron's atonement v5:98; Lord causes Aaron's staff to blossom as sign of his priesthood authority v6-12:98; people complain for water in Desert of Zin v2:99; water gushes from rock at Moses' command v7:100; place named Waters of Meribah v8:100; Edom refuses passage v10-13:100; Israelites attacked by Canaanites but defeat them v1-3:100; Aaron dies aged 123 on Mt Hor v17-18:100; Israelites complain about lack of water and the manna v5:101; venomous snakes sent among people, many die v6:101; Moses makes image of snake on a pole, all who look at it are healed v9:101; Balaam the prophet hired by king of Moab to curse Israel, blesses them instead, chs 10-11:101; 40 years of wandering end v10:101; Sihon and Amorite army put to sword, lands occupied v12-14:101; Og annihilated and land taken over v15-16:101; Israelites camp by Jordan river opposite Jericho v18:101; second census of Israelites v1-7:104; only Caleb and Joshua left alive from first census v6:105; Israelite men seduced to idolatry and immorality by Midianite women v1:104; Lord's anger burns against Israel, leaders to be put to death v3:104; Midianite woman brought into Israelite camp by Zimri v5:104;

CONCORDENCE

Phinehas the priest drives spear through Midianite woman and Zimri v6:104; 24,000 Israelites die of plague v9:104; Israelites commanded to take vengeance on Midianites, every Midianite man killed v1-4:105; no Israelite deaths in battle v5:106; Israelite army commanders offer gold as tribute to Jehovah v6:106; Canaanites to become like barbs and thorns to Israel if not driven out v19:106; Moses repeats all commandments to Israelites v1:109; Israelites a rebellious people v5:110; Israelites will have strength to take over promised land if commandments kept v7:110; Israelites a chosen people v22:110; forty years wandering a time of humbling and testing v28:110; Israel to be raised high above all other nations if commandments fully obeyed v16:116; to be exiled to a foreign nation if commandments not kept v52:116; will become an object of horror and scorn v53:116; Moses prophesies destruction by a nation from afar v3:117; Israelites will eat flesh of own children during sieges v5:117; unfaithfulness of Israel foreseen by Lord v7:117; to be scattered among all nations, live in constant suspense v9-11:117; Israelites taught a song from the Lord v11-31:117; Jehovah will again delight in Israelites if obedient to commandments v16:117; nations commanded to honour Israel v31:118; Israelites prepare to enter promised land v1:122; priests carrying Ark lead out v2:122; Jordan river stops flowing v7:122; Israelites camp at Gilgal v14:123; uncircumcised males circumcised v16:123; manna stops v21:123; angel appears to Joshua to instruct regarding taking of Jericho v1:123; Israelites march around Jericho seven days v9:123; walls of Jericho collapse v5:124; Rahab and family rescued v18:124; every living thing put to sword in Jericho and city burned v16:124; Israelites beaten back by men of Ai v4:124; Israel guilty of sin by stealing of some devoted spoil of Jericho v7:124; Achan the guilty man identified by Lord v9:124; Ai burned and entire population put to sword v9-12:125; Israelite leaders deceived by Gibeonites, make peace treaty with v5-20:126; Joshua learns of deceit and curses Gibeonites to be slaves v16-20:126; Gileadite kings combine against Israel but are destroyed v1-5:127; Israelites defeat armies of hill country kings v26:127; large halistones help destroy Canaanite armies v27:127; sun and moon stand still in answer to Joshua's prayer v28:127; Joshua destroys seven more Canaanite cities v38:127; Tabernacle set up at Shiloh v1:128; Joshua sends out men to survey remaining land of Canaan v3:128; land rests from war v9:128; large areas of land still to be taken over v10:128; lands allotted to remaining seven tribes v8-13:129; Levites allotted towns v18-20:129; cities of refuge appointed v15:129; eastern tribes return to homes across Jordan v1:129; memorial altar misconstrued as rebellion, Phinehas priest resolves v8-14:129; Joshua summons all Israel for final address v1:130; Israelites not to associate with or marry remaining Canaanites v5:130; Israelites unable to destroy all Canaanite tribes v12-21:133; angel sent to rebuke Israelites for disobedience, Jehovah no longer to drive out Canaanites v23:134; Israelites weep aloud at message from angel v24:134; new generation of Israelites begin to marry Canaanites and worship their gods v2-3:134; Israelites in bondage eight years to Babylon v5:134; land has forty years peace v8:134; Israel again does evil, subject to king of Moab v9:134; Ehud delivers Israel, becomes judge v11-22:134; Israelites again do evil, cruelly oppressed by Canaanite king Jabin v1:135; Barak called by Lord to defeat Jabin's army v4:135; land has peace for eighty years v22:135; Shamgar judges Israel, kills 600 Philistines with ox goad v23:135; land has forty years peace v31:136; Israelites again do evil, oppressed seven years by Midianites v1:136; Gideon called to save Israel v9:136; Gideon puts Midianites to flight with army of 300 men v7-24:137; Gideon becomes judge of Israel v1:139; land has forty years peace v6:139; Israel again turns to idolatry after death of Gideon v9:139; Abimelech crowned king by people of Shechem v14:139; Shechem destroyed by Abimelech v13-18:140; Tola judges Israel 23 years v1:141; Jair judges Israel 22 years v2:141; people turn to idolatry, oppressed by Ammonites 18 years v3:141; Israelites repent of idolatry v8-9:141; Jephthah defeats Ammonites v24:142; Jephthah sacrifices his only daughter to fulfil a vow v25-29:142; Jephthah mocked by men of Ephraim, 42,000 Ephraimites fall v31-37:142; Jephthah judges Israel 6 years v38:142; Ibban judges Israel 7 years v39:142; Elon judges Israel 8 years v40:142; Abdon judges Israel 8 years v41:142; Israelites again do evil, delivered into hands of Philistines 40 years v42:142;

Samson delivers Israel from Philistines ch9-11:142; 400,000 Israelite men gather at Mizpah to avenge murder of concubine by men of Benjamin v23:148; Benjamites put to death and towns burned v37-42:149; 600 Benjamin men survive v42:149; wives found for 600 survivors ch14:149; great sorrow for loss of tribe of Benjamin v1:149; Samuel the prophet raised by Eli v15-18:157; Israelites defeated by Philistines v1:158; army sends for Ark v2:158; Israelites again defeated by Philistines and Ark captured v8:158; Philistines suffer severe plague because of Ark v23-28:159; Philistines return Ark to Israel v29-36:159; Israelites repent of idolatry v12:160; Philistines prepare to attack Israel, thrown into panic by thunder from Lord v15-18:160; Israelites pursue and slaughter Philistines v19:160; Samuel becomes old, Israelites ask for a king v3:160; Samuel prophesies disadvantages of a king v6:161; elders persist in asking for king, Lord grants them a king v10-11:161; Lord rebukes Israelites for demanding a king v2:162; Saul anointed king by Samuel v29:162; Saul leads 300,000 men of Israel into battle, slaughters Ammonites v21:163; Israelites celebrate and reaffirm Saul as king v27:163; Jonathan son of Saul provokes Philistines, who gather to fight Israel v3:164; Israelite men flee and hide at enormity of Philistines forces v7:164; Saul's obedience tested by Lord v7:164; Saul offers unlawful sacrifice and fails test v10:164; Saul rebuked by Samuel, kingship not to endure, Lord has chosen another v13:164; no steel weapons among Israelites v16:164; God panics Philistines with earthquake, they strike one another with swords v27-32:164; Israelites come out of hiding and join Saul in striking down Philistines v33:165; Saul defeats all Israel's enemies v17:166; Saul given mission from Lord to destroy Amalekites v20:166; Saul disobeys, spares king and best livestock v22:166; Lord rejects Saul as king v33:166; David secretly anointed king by Samuel v14:167; David enters Saul's service as a harpist and armour-bearer v19:167; Philistines again invade Israel, challenge by Goliath v1-23:167; David kills Goliath v20-27:169; Philistines flee v28:169; Saul jealous of David, tries to kill him v3-7:169; David goes into years of hiding from Saul ch13:171; Philistines again attack Israel v11:176; Israel defeated, Saul and sons die in battle v1-6:178; David anointed king of Judah v22:183; Ish-Bosheth, son of Saul made king of Israel v25:183; young men of Ish-Bosheth and David fight hand to hand v31:183; Ish-Bosheth stabbed to death by assassins v26:185; David made king over all Israel v34:185; David captures fortress area of Jerusalem, renames it City of David v5:185; three year famine due to Saul's breaking of Joshua's covenant to Gibeonites v8:187; seven of Saul's descendants slain as atonement v12:187; David commits adultery with Bathsheba and murders her husband Uriah ch6:190; David and his family cursed by Lord v13:190; Absalom rebels against his father David and is made king ch9:192; David and his supporters flee Jerusalem v11:193; David's men defeat Absalom's army and kill Absalom v1-9:195; David returns to Jerusalem v5-28:196; rebellion of Sheba v28:197; David tempted to pride, takes census of nation's fighting men v1-6:198; David chooses three day plague as penalty from Lord v10:198; David becomes old v1:201; Adonijah son of David proclaims himself king v7:201; David orders his son Solomon be anointed king v13-17:201; David dies, reigned 40 years v34:202; Lord blesses Solomon with wisdom, riches and honour v8:203; all Israel hold Solomon in awe v22:204; kingdom of Solomon vast and happy v27:204; Solomon builds Temple v12-43:205; all Israel invited to Jerusalem for dedication of Temple v1:207; thousands of sheep and cattle sacrificed v5:207; Israelites see fire and glory of Jehovah on Temple v28:208; Solomon dies after reigning over Israel forty years, his son Rehoboam becomes king v24:211; Rehoboam rejected as king by other tribes v34:211; Jeroboam made king over all Israel except Judah v35:212 (See Judah (kingdom of) and Israel (northern kingdom) for further history); Israelites no different from other peoples v28:257; sins of Israel, coveting property and fraud v6:276; Israel will not listen to true prophets v8:276; widespread theft defiling the land v13:276; Israel to be abandoned by Lord from Messiah's day until gathered in latter days v2:277; Israel to become a wasteland of briars and thorns v15:283; Israelites have continually provoked Lord, full of hypocrisy v13:287; Israel full of superstition, divination, idolatry, treasures, no end of horses and chariots v16:287; Lord has not rejected Israel v14:292; house of Israel like clay in hands of potter to Lord v15:331; Israel devoured like lost sheep because

ISRAELITES

of false shepherds v18:337; though Lord often speaks against Israel his heart yearns for him v11:343; Lord will punish but not completely destroy v20:344; shepherds of Israel only take care of themselves v13:368; Lord to remove Israel's shepherds v17:368; Israel scattered for not listening to true prophets v5:406; uncaring shepherds led Israel astray v15:407; Lord pleads with his people to return to him v8:431; O God you have rejected and humbled us, Psalm 70 v3:456; history of the unfaithfulness of Israel, Psalm 74:457; our prophets are no more, we are given no miraculous signs, Psalm 78 v6:459; brief history of Israel, Psalm 83:460; many non-Israelites will enter kingdom of God v6:490; many Israelites to be thrust out of kingdom of God v15:516; Paul sorrows for unbelieving Israel v14:631; Israel stumbled trying to obtain righteousness by works alone v28:631; Israel heard gospel but did not understand v6:632; Israel a disobedient and obstinate people v8:632; not all Israel rejected by God, Paul an Israelite v9:632; a remnant of Israel always remain faithful v11:632; greater riches will come to Gentiles when Israel becomes righteous v14:632; wild olive shoots of Gentiles grafted into mother olive tree of Israel v17:632; nations who worship Lord to share future blessings of Israel v18:329; Paul reveals a mystery, eventually Israel will be saved v22:632; Israel loved on account of patriarchs v23:632; Christ has made Gentile and Israel one people v25:641; Israelites will have gathered to Israel from many nations in latter days v6:370; Israel to be land of unwallied towns in latter days v9:370; lost ones of Israel to eventually return v1:302; Judah and Israel to one day be reunited v10:324; stick of Judah and stick of Ephraim joined as that which both branches of Israel will one day reunite v12:16:370; distant nations to invade Israel in last days v13:288; great earthquake in Israel on day Gog attacks v10:370; two thirds to perish during time of distress in last days, one third to be refined as gold v6:408; Lord himself to become Israel's shepherd v19:369; Lord to eventually dwell among cleansed Israel forever v7:373; honour Israel O nations, for Jehovah will avenge their blood v31:118; Israelites to weep when they see pierce marks on their Messiah's body (at second coming) v8:408; Jehovah the only Saviour of Israel v4:302; the Lord's love for Israel like a mother's love v18:306

Israel during millennium Lord will gather Israel again and watch over them like a shepherd v2:343; David to be leader of gathered Israel during millennium v29:250, v6:343; Israel to be gathered and honoured v12:315; faithful descendants of Israel to sing for joy in latter days v12:288; Lord to make new covenant with Israel v16:344; millennial borders of Israel v11:376; millennial tribal boundaries v18-22:376; abandoned weaponry of Gog's armies to provide fuel for seven years in millennium v20:371; seven months to bury dead of Gog's armies v22:371; Israelites to gather from north, west and south v16:306, v9:343; Israel to be gathered and live in glory v12:296; Israel to return trembling to Lord v29:250; Israel will settle in own land and be served by other nations v14:289; nations will come to Israel trembling with fear v10:277; Israelites to be as young lions and triumph over enemies v5:277, v17:407; foreigners to rebuild and work fields, vineyards v23:294, v28:306; Israel never again to be an object of scorn v22:272; pleasant conditions following second coming of Lord v1-3:273; Israelites to be greatly blessed (during millennium) v29-32:369; Israel to be pride and joy of world v26:294; Israel to be too small for her lost children v20:306; borders to expand v9:277; Egypt, Assyria and Israel to be centres of worship of Jehovah v17:291; all who live in Israel shall be righteous v10:296; Israelites shall shine like jewels v12:407

Israel gathering of See Israelites

Israel (northern kingdom) Jeroboam made king over all Israel except Judah v35:212; sins by setting up golden calves v3:223; priests of Jeroboam cursed by a prophet from Judah v8:224; battle between Judah and Israel v20:261; Israel flees before Judah, 500,000 men of Israel slain v29:262; Jeroboam dies and son Nadab made king v47:225; Nadab killed by Baasha v3:225; Baasha cursed by Lord to die for idolatry v7:225; Baasha dies and son Elah becomes king v8:225; Elah killed by Zimri who becomes king v9:225; eventual exile of Israel foretold v44:225; Zimri burns palace around himself v13:226; Omri becomes king v15:226; Omri sins more than all those before him, dies and son Ahab reigns v17:226; Ahab the

most wicked king yet v18-19:226; Elijah the prophet prophesies no rain for next few years v21:226; in third year of no rain Elijah gathers all Israel to Mount Carmel v11:227; 450 prophets of Baal fail to call down fire from heaven v13:227; Elijah prays, fire blazes down from heaven and consumes drenched offering v29:228; 7000 in Israel who have not bowed to Baal v26:229; Ben-Hadad king of Syria invades Israel v1:229; Ahab's men inflict heavy losses on Syrians v17:230; Syrians again invade Israel with vast army v21:230; Lord defeats Syrians second time for saying he was not a God of the plains v23-25:230; Jezebel, wife of Ahab, murders Naboth to obtain a vineyard ch6:231; Ahab and Jezebel cursed to die by Lord through prophet Elijah v13-16; Ahab and king of Judah go to battle against Ramoth v30:232; Ahab shot by archer, dies in his chariot at sunset v33:232; Ahaziah son of Ahab becomes king v1:233; Ahaziah dies and his brother Joram becomes king v16:233; Joram marches on Moab with armies of Judah and Edom v4-6:236; armies run out of water in desert v7:236; water flows into a wadi next morning as predicted by Elisha v16:237; Moabites flee and their towns are destroyed v21:237; king of Moab sacrifices firstborn son on city wall, great fury comes upon Israel v23:237; Lord blinds Syrian army to reality, led by prophet Elisha into Israel's royal city v10-13:241; Syria besieges Samaria v18:241; great famine in city v19:241; report of cannibalism horrifies king v22:241; Elisha prophesies abundant food tomorrow v29:241; four lepers find Syrian camp deserted v33:241; people plunder Syrian camp for food v43:242; Jehu kills king Joram with an arrow v39:243; Jehu anointed king of Israel v16:242; Jezebel thrown from window and trampled to death, body eaten by dogs v3-7:243; Jehu dies and son Jehoahaz becomes king v2:245; Israel under power of Syria v5:245; Israel delivered from Syria v6:245; calf worship still practised v9:245; Jehoahaz dies, son Jehoash becomes king v10:245; Jehoash dies, son Jeroboam becomes king v1:246; Lord to put an end to northern kingdom of Israel v4:249; sins causing wasting of the land v2:250; Israel like an unfaithful wife v13-16:250; Israel to suffer until she returns to Lord v20:250; to be destroyed by sword and fire v1:251; survivors to be exiled and wander among nations v5:251; abominable sins of listed v8-11:251; father and son lie with same woman v12:254; Lord warned with famine, drought, blight, locusts, plagues and sword v2:255; your fine houses adorned with ivory will be destroyed v16:255; sins of Israel, lies, stealing, bribes, injustice v17:255; sinful women of Samaria to be led away by hooks v23:255; complacent rich men of Samaria first to go into exile v25:255; Israel to be spared no longer v15:256; bodies will be strewn everywhere v21:256; dishonest Sabbath-breaking merchants condemned v22:256; Jeroboam dies and son Zechariah becomes king v1:257; Zechariah assassinated by Shallum who becomes king v3:257; Shallum assassinated by Menahem who becomes king v4:257; Assyria invades land, appeased with huge amount of silver v7:257; silver exacted from wealthy men of Israel v8:257; Menahem dies and son Pekahiah becomes king v9:257; Pekahiah assassinated by Pekah who becomes king v11:257; regions of Gilead and Galilee conquered by Assyrians and people exiled v12:257; Pekah remains as king but pays tribute to Assyria v13:257; Pekah assassinated by Hoshea who becomes king v14:257; Hoshea stops paying tribute to Assyria v16:257; Assyria besieges royal city Samaria v17:258; Samaria captured after three year siege, king and all survivors exiled to Assyria v18:258; why Israel was exiled v19-21:258; bowed down to sun, moon and stars, worshiped Baal v19:258; sacrificed children in fire, practiced divination and sorcery v20:258; Israel (Northern) have never returned from exile v21:258; Assyrians settle other peoples in cities of Israel v23:258; Israel divorced by Lord for faithlessness v1:323; a few will return from exile with Judah v6:323, v16:337, v21:337; Judah and Israel to be reunited one day v10:324; broke covenant of their forefathers v3:328; survivors of northern Israel to be sifted among all nations v29:257; to one day be restored again v31:257; never again to be uprooted after gathering v34:257

Israel (Judah) exiled in Babylon (See also Judah, kingdom of) by the rivers of Babylon we sat down and wept, Psalm 81 v1:459; prayer of an afflicted man in exile, Psalm 82:459; Jeremiah writes to Judean exiles in Babylon v1-13:342; Lord commands exiles to build houses and settle down in Babylon v2:342; exiles to return to Judah after seventy years

v12:342; returned exiles will find the Lord if they seek him with all their heart v13:342; Ezekiel called to be a prophet to the exiles v22:356; Ezekiel taken in spirit from Babylon to Temple in Jerusalem v1-4:359; Ezekiel sees an idol in Temple gateway v7:359; sees idolatry by seventy elders in closed Temple room v9-12:359; pleads to Lord for people of Judah v30:360; exiles to see by conduct of Judean survivors that Lord's anger was justified v4:361; throne of David to be overturned until Messiah comes in last days v8:364; Israelites not to mourn loss of Temple and destruction of Jerusalem v33:365; exiles listen to Ezekiel but do not heed his words v10:368; daily shame of exile described v43-47:379; Daniel a counsellor to Kings of Babylon for 66 years v36:384; Daniel fasts and prays for the restoration of Jerusalem v1-6:391; Cyrus allows exiled Jews to return to Judah v1:397; those returning assisted with gifts v5:398; large company return to Judah v12:398; returning exiles filled with songs of joy, Psalm 86:461

Issachar tribe of birth of Issachar, son of Jacob (Israel) and Leah v19:32; Israel's blessing upon – to willingly serve his masters v25:45; first census of 54,400 v11:92; second census 64,300 v4:105; Moses blessing upon v23:119; 12,000 servants of God to be sealed from in last days v4:688

Ittai Philistine commander, pledges loyalty to David v14:193; commands one third of David's army v29:195

Jabesh Israelite town in Gilead, all except 400 virgin girls put to sword v7:149; virgin girls given to survivors of Benjamin for wives v10:150; men of saved by King Saul from having eyes gouged out v13-24:162; men of Jabesh bury Saul and his sons v10:178

Jacob second born twin son of Isaac and Rebekah v6:29; a quiet man who stayed among the tents v7:29; buys his brother Esau's birthright v9-12:29; induced by his mother Rebekah to steal his brother Esau's blessing v5:30; Esau plans to kill Jacob v33:31; commanded by his father to obtain a wife from his uncle Laban in Haran v2:31; Jehovah appears to in a dream, confirms covenant he made with Abraham v6:31; arrives in Haran, waters Laban's sheep for Rachel v14:31; agrees to work for Laban seven years in return for his daughter Rachael v21:31; Jacob deceived by Laban, required to marry both Leah and Rachael v27-30:32; wife Leah gives birth to six sons v1-20:32; Rachel bears Joseph v22:32; Jacob bargains with Laban to have all speckled animals as wages v27:33; Jacob grows exceedingly prosperous v35:33; Jacob departs Haran with his wives and children v11:33; pursued by Laban v14:33; Jacob becomes angry with Laban v28:34; Jacob makes a covenant with Laban v34:34; Jacob sends messengers to his brother Esau v1:34; hears that Esau is coming with 400 men and fears greatly v3:35; prays for protection from Esau v5:35; selects gift for Esau v7:35; wrestles with angel until daybreak v11:35; hip of Jacob dislocated by angel v12:35; Jacob's name changed to Israel v16:35; Esau runs to and embraces Jacob v23:35; Jacob buys land near Shechem v36:36; daughter Dinah raped by son of Hamor v2:36; Hamor asks for Dinah as wife for his son v6:36; Jacob's sons demand men of Shechem be circumcised v8:36; Jacob's sons Simeon and Levi kill all men of Shechem v13:36; twelve sons of Jacob (Israel) listed v1-5:37; Jacob loved Joseph more than his other sons, makes him a coat of many colours v6:37; Jacob returns to Bethel v21:37; decides to return to his father Isaac v22:37; wife Rachel gives birth to Benjamin then dies v24-25:37; Jacob's older sons jealous of Joseph, sell him into Egypt v24:38; Jacob mourns Joseph many days 29:38; Jacob sends sons to buy grain from Egypt, they unknowingly buy from Joseph v1:41; sends sons second time to Egypt with Benjamin v31:42; Jacob overwhelmed at news that Joseph is alive v41:43; Jacob departs for Egypt with all his household v1:43; God appears to Jacob at Beersheba v3:43; Jacob embraced by his son Joseph v5:43; Jacob speaks with Pharaoh and blesses him v13-15:43; Jacob adopts Joseph's sons Ephraim and Manasseh v7:44; crosses his arms when blessing Ephraim and Manasseh v9:44; Jacob blesses his twelve sons (twelve tribes of Israel) v16-35:45; dies aged 147 and is embalmed v36:45; buried by his sons and Pharaoh's officials in Canaan v39:45; I am the God of your fathers, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob v4:51; I appeared to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob as God Almighty v19:53; I will again remember my covenant with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob v30:88; the God of Jacob is our fortress, Psalm 68 v3:456; many from other nations to be at feast in kingdom of God with

Abraham, Isaac and Jacob v6:490, v15:516; are you greater than our father Jacob? v6:545; I have blessed Jacob, but Esau I have cursed v18:631; by faith Jacob blessed Joseph's two sons v17:670; in latter days Lord shall have compassion on Jacob v13:289; no longer will Jacob be ashamed when he looks upon his children v8:298; house of Jacob shall be a fire (during millennium) v10:351

Jael a Kenite woman, kills Sisera with tent peg v12-16:135

Jahaziel Levite prophet, prophesies Lord will save Judah from vast army v22:264

James (apostle) fisherman, called as a disciple by Jesus v33:489; chosen as one of twelve apostles v3:491, v10:569; he and his brother John named Sons of Thunder by Jesus v3:491; in presence of v14:508; present when Jesus transfigured and Moses and Elijah appear v25:508; proposes calling down fire from heaven to destroy Samaritan town v3:511; mother requests privileged place for James in kingdom of God v71:520; Salome the mother of v27:535; with Jesus in Gethsemane v29:530; put to death by Herod v1:579

James (brother of Jesus) are not his brothers James, Joseph, Simon and Jude v49:504, v1:664; Jesus appears to after resurrection v4:615; Peter instructs believers to tell James of his release v16:579; James gives his decision on circumcision v11-18:583; Paul and companions report to v14-15:589; approved gospel Paul preached v15:624; Jews of circumcision group came from Antioch v20:624; have right to take a wife along with us, as do other apostles and Lord's brothers v3:612; author of book of James p598

Japheth son of Noah v11:17; enters ark with Noah v6:18; covers his father Noah's nakedness v2:19; blessed by Noah v5:19; sons of listed v8:19

jealousy (envy) Cain jealous of Jehovah's acceptance of Abel's sacrifice v4:16; Philistines envy Isaac, fill his wells with earth v22:29; Rachel was not bearing children and envied her sister Leah v6:32; Laban's sons become jealous of Jacob v1:33; Joseph's brothers jealous of him, sell him into Egypt v24:38; I Jehovah am a jealous God v20:63; Joshua jealous for Moses sake v27:94; Miriam and Aaron jealous of Moses v5-16:95; Philistines envy Isaac's wealth v22:29; Joseph's dreams arouse great jealousy in his brothers v13:37; Saul jealous of David v6:169; jealousy when Daniel to be made sole administrator v2:390; resentment and envy slay fools v8:434; be not envious of evil men, they soon wither away, Psalm 58 v1:454; Levites jealous of Aaron's priesthood v9-32:97, Psalm 83 v22:460; a jealous husband will show no mercy v14:465; anger is cruel but who can stand before jealousy v4:473; an envious heart wastes the bones v13:474; envy defiles a person v23:506; Jesus handed over to Pilate because of jealousy v19:533; Sadducees imprison apostles because of jealousy v16:572; jealous Jews form a mob and start a riot v2:584; love does not envy v16:614; Paul jealous with a godly jealousy v16:620; jealousy and envy works of the flesh, not of Holy Spirit v5:625; rid yourselves of all envy v19:658

Jebusites Canaanite tribe v17:22, v7:51; Lord to completely destroy v7:74, v16:109; reoccupy Jerusalem v6:133; control fortress area of Jerusalem, taunt David, defeated by Joab v1-4:185

Jehoahaz (son of Jehu) becomes king of northern Israel v4:245; pleads with Lord and Israel delivered from Syria v6:245; dies and son Jehoash becomes king v10:245

Jehoahaz (son of Josiah) becomes king of Judah v9:326; did evil, deposed by Pharaoh Neco v10:326; taken in exile to Egypt v13:326

Jehoash king of northern Israel v10:245; visits dying prophet Elisha, who prophesies three defeats of Syria v12-19:245; defeats Syria three times as prophesied v25:245; dies and son Jeroboam becomes king v1:246

Jehoiachin son of Jehoiakim, becomes king of Judah, does evil v4:339; cursed by Lord to die in Babylon v7:340; surrenders to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon v26:340; exiled to Babylon v28:341

Jehoiada high priest of Judah, hides Joash son of king Ahaziah in Temple for six years v27:266; executes plan to make Joash king of Judah v28:266; dies aged 130 v12:267; Zechariah son of, stoned to death v15:267

Jehoiakim king of Judah, appointed by Neco of Egypt, name changed from Eliakim v11-14:326; puts to death Uriah the prophet v19:327; pays Nebuchadnezzar tribute for three years v2:329; Jeremiah gives commandments to and a warning v1:338; burns scroll of Jeremiah's prophecies piece by piece v18:338; orders Baruch and Jeremiah arrested v20:338; cursed by Lord for burning scroll v22:338; rebels against Babylon v1:339; rebuked by Lord for building a larger palace v8:339; to suffer the shameful burial of a donkey v14:339; dies during siege by Babylon v3:339

Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat, becomes king of Judah v4:265; marries daughter of Ahab, kills his six brothers v5:265; cursed by Lord v11:265; raiders carry off family and possessions, except son Ahaziah v14:265; dies in agony from incurable bowel disease v15:265

Jehoshaphat son of Asa, becomes king of Judah v32:263; teaches Law of Moses to people v4:263; rids Judah of male shrine prostitutes v3:263; grows in power, wealth and honour v5:263; has army of 1,160,000 men v8:264; allies himself with king Ahab by marriage v9:264; visits Ahab, agrees to go into battle with him, Ahab killed during fighting v12:264, v3:231; joins with Joram king of Israel to attack Moab v4:236; rebuked by Jehu the prophet for helping the wicked v15:264; calls a nation-wide fast when vast armies invade Judah v18:264; Lord causes invading armies to destroy each other v27:264; his fleet of trading ships destroyed v1:265; dies and son Jehoram becomes king v4:265

Jehoshaphat valley of surrounding nations to be punished in during last days v7:273

Jehu (prophet) curses Baasha to die for idolatry v7:225; rebukes king Jehoshaphat for helping the wicked v15:264

Jehu anointed king of Israel by Elisha's orders v13-16:242; kills King Joram with an arrow v39:243; kills all Ahab's family v15:244; puts to death all ministers of Baal v28:244; Lord rewards, descendants of to rule for four generations v32:244; dies and son Jehoahaz becomes king v2:245; Lord to punish house of Jehu for undue massacre v3:249

Jephthah son of a harlot, called to lead Israelites against Ammonites v12-16:141; vows to Lord first person to come out of his house v23:142; defeats Ammonites v24:142; his only daughter first to come out of his house v25:142; tears his clothes in grief v26:142; daughter sacrificed after two months of weeping with her friends v29:142; custom for young Israelite women to mourn daughter of Jephthah v30:142; leads battle against men of Ephraim, 42,000 Ephraimites fall v31-37:142

Jeremiah prophet during reign of five kings of Judah v1:322; set apart as prophet before born v3:322; feels inadequate because of his youth v4:322; ordered not to fear the people v6:322; called as prophet over other nations besides Judah v8:322; vision of almond tree branch and cauldron of boiling water v9-13:322; to be humiliated by Lord if he fears the people v15:322; people of Judah will turn against Jeremiah but not overcome him v17:322; Jeremiah unable to find one honest, truth-seeking person in Jerusalem v1-3:324; words of Jeremiah to be like fire to wood v8:324; distressed by vision of destruction of Judah v16:324; complains to Lord that no one listens v23:325; told to speak to the children v24:325; seized by priests and false prophets, threatened with death v10:326; priests and false prophets condemn Jeremiah before king's officials v11:326; Jeremiah defends himself before king's officials v13:326; supported by officials and people v15-18:327; Jeremiah not to pray for the people any longer v21:327; laments over a vision of exile of Judah v36:327; asks Lord to punish the wicked immediately v11:328; Jeremiah's weariness rebuked by Lord v13:328; prays for end to drought v3:329; ruined belt a symbol of Judah's soon to be ruined pride v20-24:329; sent to prophesy before King Jehoiakim and queen mother v25:329; exalts Jehovah as only true God v45:328; people of Jerusalem past praying for v7:330; told to prophesy a vision of sword and famine v12:330; makes final plea to Lord for mercy v14:330; complains to Lord of being fined cursed by the people, asks for vengeance v22:330; ordered to repent of such talk v23:330; Lord with Jeremiah v24:330; Jeremiah not to marry or have children v25:330; not to show sympathy or joy v27:330; Jeremiah asks Lord to intensify coming disaster, for the people mock his words v6:331; Jeremiah to call on people to keep Sabbath day holy v8:331; pleads with Lord for

vengeance on people plotting against him v26:332; people want to rid themselves of Jeremiah, prefer to listen to false prophets v21:332; smashes jar as symbol of fate of Judah v36:332; Pashhur the priest strikes Jeremiah, puts him in stocks v38:332; Jeremiah prophesies terror for Pashhur v39:332; sorrowful prayer of Jeremiah v43-51:332; Judah has not listened to Jeremiah v2-3:333; Jeremiah to warn other nations v10-16:333; told to write prophecies on a scroll v1:337; Baruch his scribe writes his words v3:337; Baruch reads words to people, as Jeremiah banned from speaking v4-6:337; city officials alarmed at prophecies on scroll v15:338; Jehoiakim burns scroll piece by piece v18:338; Jeremiah told by Lord to make another scroll v21:338; more words added to new scroll v24:338; gives king Jehoiakim commandments and a warning v1:338; Jeremiah's heart broken by wickedness around him v14:340; vision of good and bad figs v4-9:341; Jeremiah to wear wooden yoke, and prophesy to visiting envoys v15:341; writes to exiles in Babylon v1-13:342; false prophet Shemaiah among exiles sends letter to Jerusalem to silence Jeremiah v14-16:342; false prophet Hananiah breaks Jeremiah's wooden yoke v27:342; Jeremiah commanded to write his words in a book for future generations v1:343; Jeremiah sends Babylonian prophecies to Babylon v20:343; arrested in Jerusalem for treason v3:345; beaten and imprisoned in dungeon v4:345; pleads with king not to send him back to dungeon v7:345; confined in guard's quarters v9:345; king's officials seek Jeremiah's death for treason v11:345; Zedekiah fears his officials, Jeremiah left to die in underground water cistern v12-13:345; Ethiopian eunuch rescues Jeremiah v14:346; Lord rewards Ethiopian with his life v17:346; Jeremiah signs property deed as sign that life in Judah will one day return to normal v4-8:346; Jeremiah remains in prison until Jerusalem captured v26:347; Babylonian commander frees Jeremiah v18:348; Jeremiah remains with Gedaliah in Mizpah v20:348; Lord counsels people to stay in Judah v17:349; remaining people flee to Egypt and take Jeremiah with them v24:349; Jeremiah told by Lord to bury stones at Pharaoh's palace entrance v26:349; prophecies invasion of Egypt by Babylon v15:350; corrects Jews belief regarding Queen of Heaven v11:350; laments horrors of siege of Jerusalem v37-41:379; prophecy of Jeremiah read by Daniel v1:391

Jericho Canaanite city, Joshua sends two men to spy out v6:121; Rahab a harlot saves lives of two spies v9:122, v17:599; Israelite army march around seven days v9:123; walls collapse at mighty shout of Israel v14:124; every living thing in Jericho put to sword except Rahab's family v16-18:124; city burned v19:124; Joshua pronounces a curse on man who rebuilds v20:124; city rebuilt, Joshua's curse falls v20:226; Jesus stays at home of Zacchaeus in v3:520

Jerooboam capable young man v15:211; called by prophet Ahijah to be king over all Israel except Judah v20:211; promised a long dynasty if faithful v21:211; Solomon tries to kill v23:211; reigns over Israel from Shechem v1:223; fears his people will revert to Judah v2:223; sins by setting up golden calves v3:223; forbids people to worship in Jerusalem v4:224; appoints non-Levite priests v6:224; prophet from Judah rebukes v1:224; Jerooboam orders prophet seized, king's hand freezes v11:224; Judah inflicts huge losses on army of, 500,000 men slain v30:262; sends wife in disguise to enquire of prophet Ahijah regarding their ill son v32:224; the prophet not deceived v35:225; Lord curses for idolatry, his sons to die unburied, son dies v39-46:225; earthquake during the reign of v1:254; Jerooboam dies and son Nadab becomes king v47:225; Baasha kills Jerooboam's sons v3:225

Jerooboam son of Jehoahaz, becomes king of Israel v1:246; reigns forty-one years then dies, son Zechariah becomes king v1:257

Jerusalem (See also City of David, Zion daughter of, Jerusalem millennial, Jerusalem new) Canaanite king of Jerusalem and other hill country kings attack Israelites v21-22:126; Jerusalem put to sword and set on fire by Israelites v5:133; fortified part later reoccupied by Jebusites v6:133; David captures fortress area of Jerusalem, renames it City of David v1-5:185; David builds palace in v7:185; David prepares tent for Ark in v26:186; Ark set up inside tent in City of David v37:186; Solomon invites all Israel to Jerusalem for dedication of Temple v1:207; Micah prophesies to corrupt leaders of ch3:276; violence and bribery in v7-8:276; Jerusalem to

become a heap of rubble v14:277; has become a harlot but will be purged of her impurity v12:283; women of are haughty v30-31:284; shortage of men coming v34:284; out of the dust your speech will whisper v17:288; priests and rulers befuddled with wine v14:298; soon to be a wasteland v6:300; current warfare completed, sin atoned for v35:300; great distress coming upon v8:314; sins of v18-19:315; beautiful and delicate Jerusalem to be destroyed v19:325; people of to eat flesh of their children during Babylonian siege v35:335; Jerusalem has so aroused Lords anger he must remove it from his sight v8:346; will one day be restored as it was before v12:346; Jerusalem sieged by Babylonians, severe starvation v1:347; Babylonians break through city wall, begin putting survivors to sword v2:347; Babylonian's plunder Jerusalem, carry bronze back to Babylon v9-11:347; Jerusalem more rebellious than cities of surrounding nations v31:358; ruin of to be warning to nations v42:358; Jerusalem like her sisters Sodom and Samaria v28:362; Jerusalem likened to a baby Canaanite girl abandoned at birth who later becomes a harlot v5-36:362; parable of two eagles v1-10:363; Jerusalem to eventually be forgiven v36:363; sins of Jerusalem that angered Lord v9-20:364; sits deserted weeping like a widow v1:378; sinned greatly and became unclean v5:378; Jerusalem speaks of her suffering v8:378; horrors of Babylonian siege v11-59:378; to be rebuilt for 434 years in troubled times v11:392; to be destroyed soon after death of Messiah v13:392; Syrian king to send army to occupy Jerusalem and desecrate Temple v44:395; to be rebuilt by returned exiles v11:403; exiles return, begin to repair walls v2:418; gates rebuilt v4:424; wall completed in 52 days v17:426; leaders and every tenth family assigned to live in v31:427; Jerusalem a city closely compacted together where all Israel go to praise name of Jehovah, Psalm 47 v2:452; pray for the peace of Jerusalem, Psalm 47 v4:452; nations have reduced Jerusalem to rubble, Psalm 79 v1:459; surely no prophet can die outside of Jerusalem v38:519; Jesus mourns wickedness of Jerusalem v39:519; Jesus rides donkey triumphally into Jerusalem v19:521; prophecies destruction of Jerusalem within current generation v11-19:526; Jerusalem to be trampled on by Gentiles v20:526; Jerusalem again to be trampled by Gentiles for three and a half years in last days v12:690; two prophets to witness from in last days v13:690; Antichrist to set up abomination in, then be destroyed v17:393; severe earthquake to afflict Jerusalem in last days, 7000 to die v22:690; Jerusalem to be besieged and brought low in last days v17:288; nations who besiege Jerusalem in last days to suffer grievous hurt v1:408; armies besieging city to be destroyed v26:289; flesh of invaders shall rot as they stand, v22:409; Lord to suddenly come and save besieged Jerusalem v18:288; Lord to hover over like a bird (at second coming) v28:289; a day of joy coming, the glory of Jehovah will appear above you v18:294; Jerusalem to become holy during millennium v17:273, v9:351

Jerusalem millennial Jerusalem to be holy during millennium v17:273; never again will foreigners invade v17:273; to eventually rule the nations v19:277; tribute to be paid to v9:290; wealth of Egypt and Ethiopia to come to v18:291; lost exiles will return to worship at v9:292; no more will weeping be heard v17:293; great feast in when Lord returns v24:293; to be a peaceful city of broad rivers and streams v12:294; protective canopy of bright cloud to extend over v20:296; to become a crown of splendour v34:307; all nations shall gather to v9:323; to be renamed Throne of Jehovah v9:323; Lord God to plant a righteous leader in v11:363; dimensions of Temple district and Holy City v5:375; twelve gates of Holy City to be named after twelve tribes of Israel v23:376; Holy City to be named The City of Jehovah v26:376; Lord to become a wall of fire around and glory within v19:404; shall be called City of Truth v6:406; fresh water to flow from Jerusalem to Dead Sea v19:409; land around to become a plain, but Jerusalem to be raised up v21:409; survivors of nations to worship at each year v26:409; nations again to gather against after millennium v10:698

Jerusalem New city to come down out of heaven (after millennium) v46:685; John sees New Jerusalem descend from heaven, beautifully adorned v10:699; brilliance of like a jewel, clear as golden crystal v11:699; high crystalline walls with twelve gates, each a whole pearl v16:699; both length and breadth of city 12,000 stadia v21:699; city and streets like

transparent gold v22:700; to have walls of precious jewels v22:297; God has prepared a heavenly city for the faithful v13:670; the heavenly Jerusalem, city of living God v5:671; never again will faithful go out from v45:685; Bride of the Lamb v7:697; shall be no night there v25:700; nations will walk by its light, and kings of earth bring their splendour into v26:700; nothing unclean will ever enter v27:700; only those whose names written in Book of Life will enter v27:700; river of Water of Life flows down main street v28:700; Tree of Life grows along both sides of river v29:700; faithful will not need light of lamp nor sun v32:700; they who keep the commandments may enter the city v10:701

Jesse father of King David v1-12:167; youngest son David chosen as king v10-13:167; a shoot (Messiah) to spring up from the stump of Jesse v5:307; root of Jesse to stand as an ensign in last days v12:296

Jesus Christ (See also Son of Man, Christ, Messiah, blood of Jesus, Lord/Jehovah, God, God the Father) prophecy of birth of in Bethlehem v1:277; Spirit of Lord God to be upon to preach good news to poor v25:306; to come from Galilee v1:307; to be called Wonderful Counsellor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace; a man of sorrows v7:307; to be pierced v10:307; to be arrested, judged, and go like a lamb to slaughter v15:307; tomb of to be with rich v16:307; to be resurrected and see fruit of his suffering v18:307; to eventually slay the wicked on earth v19:307; will pardon many and bear their sins v21:307; a righteous King, to be raised up from David's line v11:340, v14:346; will be called by name of Jehovah v12:340; sent by Lord God Almighty (the Father) v21:404; after being glorified will punish the nations that plunder Israel v21:404; to enter Jerusalem riding on foal of donkey v6:407; to command peace and eventually have dominion over whole earth v7:407; to set free prisoners in Sheol (spirit world) v8:407; valued at thirty pieces of silver, silver thrown into Temple to potter v34:408; to be king over whole earth (during millennium) v2:409; birth of prophesied by angel to Mary, a virgin v14-16:483; to reign as king over Israel forever v17:483; called the Word, was with and of God, all things made through v1:541; Only Begotten of Father, full of grace and truth v6:542; conceived by power of Most High God v21:483; angel announces birth of to shepherds v11:485; shepherds find the baby Jesus lying in a manger v14:485; circumcised and named on eighth day v16:485; redeemed at Temple when a month old v17:485; Simeon a devout man proclaims Jesus the long awaited Christ v19:485; Anna a prophetess testifies of v24:485; wise men come to worship, give gifts v6:486; Joseph takes child Jesus to Egypt to avoid Herod's death decree v9:486; Joseph returns Jesus from Egypt to Nazareth v11:486; Jesus grows strong, filled with wisdom v12:486; stays behind in Jerusalem after Passover when twelve years old v14:487; found in Temple conversing with teachers of the Law v17:487; baptised by John the Baptist v18:488; God the Father testifies that Jesus is his beloved Son v21:488; fasts for forty days v22:488; tempted by the devil with fleshly desire v23:488; tempted to proudly test God v25:488; tempted with worldly power and wealth v27:488; angels visit v29:488; returns to Galilee with power of the Holy Spirit v5:488; God gave him the Spirit without limit v23:544; turns water into wine v5-7:543; teaches in home town synagogue, men become enraged, try to push him over a cliff v7-17:488; news of Jesus spreads through countryside v29:488; demons recognise Jesus as the Holy One of God v20:489; orders demons out of possessed man v21:489; sick and possessed people brought to be healed v23:489; forbids demons to reveal he is the Christ v24:489; surnames Simon, Peter v24:542; teaches from Peter's fishing boat v26:489; Jesus calls Peter to be a fisher of men v32:489; calls Andrew, James and John as disciples v33:489, v19-23:542; marvels at a Roman centurion's faith v5:490; great crowds of people come to hear Jesus and he is healed v8:490; Jesus goes to Jerusalem for Passover v8:543; drives merchants and money changers from Temple v10:543; Jewish leaders demand a miraculous sign from v12:543; many believe in Jesus because of his miracles v15:543; Philip and Nathanael become disciples of v25-32:543; Nicodemus, member of Jewish ruling council comes to Jesus by night v1:544; as Moses lifted up the snake in the desert, so too the Son of Man must be lifted up v11:544; whoever believes in Jesus shall not perish but have Eternal Life v12:544; speaks to

Samaritan woman at Jacob's well v13-14:545; stays with Samaritans two days, many believe v26:546; often withdrew to pray v9:490; paralysed man lowered through roof to v10:490; forgives sins of paralysed man v13:490; Jesus thought guilty of blasphemy v14:490; to prove he can forgive sins Jesus commands paralysed man to walk home v16:490; calls Matthew a tax collector to be a disciple v19:490; Matthew holds a feast for Jesus and disciples v20:490; Pharisees murmur at Jesus and disciples eating with sinners v21:490; came to call sinners to repentance v22:490; prays all night on a mountain then chooses twelve apostles v2:491; people try to touch, power coming from Jesus and healing them all v6:491; teaches Sermon on the Mount ch7-9:494; heals Peter's mother-in-law of high fever v2:495; arises while still dark to pray in solitary place v3:495; travels throughout Galilee teaching and healing v6:496; great crowds begin to follow v7:496; heals a leper v9:496; commands leper to tell nobody, but leper spreads news of healing v10:496; stays mostly in countryside because of crowds v12:496; no place to lay head v15:496; not all who do miracles in name of Jesus known to Lord v23:495; tells parable of man who built his house upon the rock v25:495; crowds amazed at authority of v30:495; weeping blind woman anoints feet of Jesus with perfumed oil v495:32; tells parable of forgiving moneylender v35:495; Jesus forgives sinful woman her sins v40:495; Jesus calms a storm v22:496; demon possessed man falls on knees before Jesus, head demon recognises Jesus v27:496; Jesus permits demons to enter herd of pigs, drown in lake v32:497; Jesus has compassion on crowds v1:498; gives twelve apostles authority to preach and heal v4:498; woman touches cloak of Jesus and is healed of her bleeding v42:497; heals two blind men v58:497; drives out mute demon v60:497; testifies of John the Baptist v6:498; raises widow's son to life v25:498; grieved at hardness of hearts of Pharisees v11:500; heals man with shrivelled hand on Sabbath v12:500; Pharisees incensed and plot to kill Jesus v13:500; denounces cities of Chorazin, Bethsaida and Capernaum v15:500; great crowds push to touch Jesus v15:500; knows the Father and can reveal him v18:500; says come unto me all you weary and heavy laden v19:500; family of Jesus think he is out of his mind v11:501; Jesus and disciples unable to eat because of crowds v16:501; heals blind and dumb demon-possessed man v18:501; demons cry out, you are the Son of God v19:501; gives demons strict orders to be silent v19:501; accused of being possessed by Satan v20:501; Jesus drives out demons by power of Holy Spirit v29:501; Jesus to be three days in heart of earth v23:501; again teaches from a boat v1:502; teaches many things in parables v2:502; tells parable of sower v3-18:502; why Jesus spoke in parables v9:502; tells parable of seeds and grain harvest v20:502; tells parable of the wheat and tares v22-27:502; mother and brothers of Jesus arrive v41:502; tells parable of mustard seed v28:503; tells parable of yeast and the dough v30:503; did not teach anything without a parable v31:503; tells parable of treasure hidden in a field v41:503; tells parable of pearl of great price v42:503; tells parable of catching all kinds of fish v43:503; again visits Nazareth v47:504; brothers of Jesus named, James, Joseph, Simon, and Jude v49:504; few miracles done in Nazareth due to lack of faith v52:504; Jesus again visits Jerusalem v1:546; heals invalid at pool of Bethesda v6:546; tells healed man to sin no more lest something worse happen to him v10:546; my Father is always at his work, so I too am working v12:546; persecuted for healing on Sabbath v12:546; heals official's son from distance v31:546; testifies of the Father v34-36:547; does what he has seen his Father doing v14:547; dead also to hear voice of Jesus v20:547; Pharisees challenge Jesus v22:547; Jesus cites John the Baptist's testimony of him v23:547; cites miracles he has done and Father's testimony v26:547; scriptures also testify of him v27:547; stays in Galilee for safety v1:549; first miracle of loaves and fishes, Jesus feeds about 5000 men v16-24:504, v6:548; twelve baskets of food gathered up afterward v7:548; people want to make Jesus king v10:548; Jesus walks on water v29:505, v12:548; Peter also walks on water to Jesus v33:505; crowd search for Jesus next day v15:548; people ask Jesus for a sign v20:548; Jesus the True Bread of heaven sent by the Father v23-25:548; the people murmur in disbelief v28:548; flesh of Jesus the True Bread of Eternal Life v31:548; even his own brothers did not believe in him v4:549; goes to Jerusalem secretly for Feast of Tabernacles v6:549; teaches in Temple courtyards v10:549;

Jews amazed at his learning of v11:549; my teaching is not my own v12:549; Jesus accused of being demon-possessed v15:549; defends his healing on the Sabbath v16-18:549; testifies again he has come from the Father v22:549; whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has Eternal Life v34:549; many disciples no longer follow Jesus at these words v36-39:549; adulterous woman brought before Jesus to trap him v2:550; he who is without sin cast the first stone v5:550; women's accusers depart one by one v6:550; tells woman to go, and to sin no more v8:551; Pharisees send Temple guards to arrest Jesus v26:550; Temple guards return without arresting him v29:550; no man ever spoke as this man does v30:550; Nicodemus stands up for Jesus v33:550; the people are divided v39:550; Jesus heals a man blind from birth v3:551; Jesus challenges anyone to prove him guilty of sin v24:551; Jesus again accused of being demon-possessed v27:551; people try to stone Jesus for blasphemy v35:551; man who was healed of blindness defends Jesus before Pharisees v22-24:552; Jesus tells parable of sheep pen v33-36:552; miracles speak for Jesus v3:553; Jews ready to stone Jesus for claiming to be as God v6:553; Jesus the good shepherd, who lays down his life for his sheep v40:553; other sheep of a different fold also to hear voice of Jesus v43:553; Jesus to lay down his life willingly v45:553; all who touch Jesus are healed v37:505; Jesus condemns traditions of Pharisees v10:505; calls Pharisees blind guides v16:506; visits region of Tyre v24:506; Greek woman asks Jesus to heal her demon-possessed daughter v25:506; Jesus refuses as he was sent only to the Israelites v28:506; The woman persists, Jesus commends her faith and heals her daughter v30:506; heals deaf man with a speech impediment v34:506; heals a blind man v1-4:507; Jesus gives Peter keys to seal on earth and in heaven v12:507; second miracle of loaves and fishes, about 4000 men fed v42:507; Jesus again asked to show a sign from heaven v46:507; warns disciples against false teaching and hypocrisy of Pharisees v55:507; Jesus reveals he must die at Jerusalem and after three days rise again v15:508; rebukes Peter v16:508; Jesus transfigured before Peter, James and John v24:508; Moses and Elijah appear to v25:508; God the Father acknowledges Jesus as his Son v29:508; disciples unable to drive out demon from a boy v41:509; boy's father pleads with Jesus v45:509; Jesus drives out the demon v48:509; tells parable of lost sheep v12:510; tells parable of unmerciful servant v27:510; begins his journey toward Jerusalem v1:511; Samaritan town does not welcome him v2:511; James and John suggest calling down fire from heaven to destroy town v3:511; Jesus rebukes James and John, they go to another town v4:511; heals ten lepers v6:511; sends seventy disciples out on missions v10:511; tells parable of good Samaritan v24-27:512; the Seventy return from their missions with great joy v31:512; Jesus watched as Satan was cast out of heaven v32:512; Jesus full of joy through the Holy Spirit praises the Father v35:512; teaches persistence in prayer, tells parable of persistent friend v3:513; tells parable of persistent widow and unjust judge v10:513; eats at home of a Pharisee v13:513; rebukes hypocrisy of Pharisees and teachers of the Law v15-20:513; a great crowd of many thousands gather to Jesus v1:514; Jesus warns against hypocrisy and greed v2-4:514; tells parable of foolish rich man v5:514; tells disciples to sell their possessions and give to the poor v9:514; tells parable of dishonest steward v12-22:514; Pharisees and teachers of Law begin to oppose Jesus fiercely v21:514; tells parable of Lazarus and the rich man v26-36:514; tells parable of fertilising the barren fig tree v4:515; tells parable of prepared faithful servants v37:515; tells parable of the faithful and unfaithful servant v42-46:515; Jesus to bring division on earth until he returns v48:515; heals woman bent over by a demon spirit v7:516; synagogue ruler indignant that Jesus healed on the Sabbath v8:516; Jesus rebukes the synagogue ruler v9:516; dines in house of prominent Pharisee v18:516; heals man with dropsy v20:516; tells parable of the great feast v30-34:516; tells parables of counting the cost, the tower, and two armies v3-6:517; tells parable of the lost sheep v8:517; tells parable of the lost coin v11:517; tells parable of prodigal son v14-29:517; Jesus must suffer many things and be rejected by this generation v5:518; speaks of his second coming v3-14:518; tells parable of Pharisee and tax collector v16-19:518; asked if lawful for a man to divorce his wife v22:519; blesses little children v35:519; told that Herod wants to kill him v36:519;

mourns wickedness of Jerusalem v39:519; lists commandments v44:519; wealthy young ruler comes to Jesus v42:519; goes away dismayed when told to sell his possessions and follow Jesus v47:519; tells parable of paying workers in vineyard v56-67:520; tells Twelve of his coming death and resurrection v68-70:520; do not believe me, believe the miracles v11:554; Jews try to seize Jesus v12:554; I am the resurrection v14:554; Lazarus dies, his sister Mary falls down at feet of Jesus v7-18:554; Jesus deeply moved in spirit weeps v19:554; raises Lazarus from dead v26:555; returns to Jerusalem for Passover v1:555; a dinner given in honour of Jesus with Lazarus and his sisters present v2:555; Mary anoints Jesus with expensive perfumed oil v3:555; Judas objects to waste of money v5:555; Jesus rebukes Judas v7:555; many Jews believe in Jesus v29:555; Jewish leaders call a meeting, decide that Jesus must die v30-34:555; Jesus withdraws to remote desert town v35:555; mother of James and John asks that her sons sit right and left of Jesus in his kingdom v71:520; not for Jesus to grant v74:520; whoever would be great must serve v77:520; Jesus stays at house of Zacchaeus, a wealthy tax collector v3:520; Zacchaeus repents and agrees to give half his possessions to poor v5:521; Jesus heals blind man Bartimaeus v14:521; sends disciples to fetch a donkey v15:521; Jesus rides the donkey triumphally into Jerusalem v19:521, v12:556; crowd spread their cloaks on the road v20:521; crowd shouts, blessed is he who comes in the name of Jehovah v22:521, v12:556; Pharisees tell Jesus to rebuke his disciples v23:521; Jesus rode the donkey to fulfil scripture v25:521; hour has come for Jesus to be glorified v17:556; weeps over Jerusalem and prophesies destruction of v26:521, v11-19:526; heals blind and lame in Temple v1:521; children shout praise to Jesus in Temple area v2:521; Jesus leaves the city to stay night at Bethany v5:522; next morning curses a fig tree v6:522; again drives out merchants and money changers from Temple v9:522; Jewish leaders look for a way to kill Jesus v11:522; next morning the cursed fig tree is withered v13:522; city leaders challenge authority of Jesus v18:522; Jesus questions them about John the Baptist, cannot answer him v19-22:522; tells parable of two sons v22-26:522; tax collectors and harlots to enter kingdom of God ahead of Jewish religious leaders v26:522; tells parable of seed of wheat v18:556; whoever serves me must follow me, and where I am you will be also v20:556; God the Father speaks to Jesus, crowd hear his voice v23:556; Satan to be driven out v26:556; Jesus to draw all men unto when lifted up (on the cross) v26:556; many who believe in Jesus afraid to confess it v32:556; words of Jesus to condemn unbelievers on day of judgement v34:556; Pharisees plan to trap Jesus in his words v1:523; Jesus asked if it is right to pay taxes to Caesar v3:523; give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's v6:524; tells parable of unrighteous vineyard tenants v28-37:523; priests and Pharisees want to arrest Jesus but fear crowd v38:523; tells parable of wedding feast v40-50:523; Sadducees question Jesus about resurrection, seven brothers and one wife v9:524; Jesus corrects false belief of Sadducees concerning life after death v13-14:524; Jesus asked which is the most important commandment v15:524; most important commandment is to love God v18:524; corrects Pharisees' false belief concerning the Christ v25:524; no one dares ask Jesus any more questions v26:524; prophesies destruction of Temple v2:525; prophesies suffering of apostles v5:525; strongly rebukes hypocrisy of Pharisees v31-36:525; prophesies that false Christs will arise and perform miracles to deceive elect if possible v22:526; tells parable of wise and foolish virgins v1-10:527; tells parable of the talents v11-20:527; tells parable of signs of the fig tree v37:527; tells parable of thief in the night v48:527; anointed with expensive perfumed oil by Mary, sister of Martha v7:529; Jesus rebukes Judas and others for bothering Mary v10:529; Judas goes to priests and offers to hand Jesus over v14:529; Jesus sends Peter and John to prepare Passover supper v2:529; Jesus teaching daily at the Temple v3:529; eats Last Supper with his apostles v5-27:529; washes feet of apostles at Last Supper v4:557; tells Twelve one of them will betray him v12:530, v16:557; gives bread and wine to apostles in remembrance of his body and blood v15-16:530; to one day drink new wine with apostles in kingdom of God v17:530; commands apostles to, love one another as I have loved you v22:557; prays that Peter's faith will not fail v18:530; tells Peter he will deny him three times that night

v21:530, v26:557; whoever sees Jesus sees the Father who sent him v35:557; oneness of Father, Son and believers to be understood in a day to come v3:558; Jesus to show himself to those who keep his commandments v4:558; whoever obeys commandments of Jesus and loves him will be loved by the Father v4:558; Holy Spirit to teach all things and remind apostles of words of Jesus v8:558, v41:559; God the Father greater than Jesus v10:558; Satan the ruler of this world coming v11:558; tells parable of Jesus as the vine and the Father as gardener v13-19:558; many mansions where my Father dwells, I go to prepare a place for you v27:558; I am the way, the truth, and the Life v31:558; no one comes unto the Father but by me v31:558; anyone who has seen me has seen the Father v34:558; I am in the Father and the Father in me v35:558; anyone with faith able to do even greater miracles than Jesus v37:558; Jesus calls his apostles his friends v24:559; Father to give apostles whatever they ask in his name v26:559; apostles will be killed by men who think they are offering a service to God v35:559; Comforter will not come unless Jesus goes away v38:559; all that belongs to the Father is mine v43:559; tells apostles their grief will quickly turn to joy v3:560; tells parable of woman giving birth v4:560; time coming when Jesus will speak plainly, not figuratively v7:560; Jesus has overcome the world v13:560; asks the Father to glorify him in his presence with glory he had before world began v16:560; prays for all those whom Father has given him v20:560; prays for a perfect oneness among disciples as he and Father are one v22:560; prays that his followers be protected from evil one v25:560; prays that future believers become one with the Father and Son v28:560; believers to be given same glory as Jesus v29:560; goes out with apostles to olive grove called Gethsemane v27:530, v35:561; is sorrowful and troubled v29:530; prays that the Father will remove his suffering if possible v31:530; yet not my will but yours be done v32:530; an angel comes to strengthen Jesus v33:530; sweats blood in great anguish v34:530; Judas arrives with armed force, identifies Jesus with a kiss v41-42:531, v1:561; armed force fall backwards at words of Jesus v5:561; Peter attacks high priest's servant and cuts off his ear v45:531, v8:561; Jesus rebukes Peter and restores the ear v46:531, v9:561; Jesus arrested and taken before high priest and leaders v1:531, v10:561; Jewish leaders look for testimony to put Jesus to death v3:532; Jesus remains silent v5:532; Jesus ordered to tell if he is the Christ v6:532; confirms he is the Christ v7:532; high priest angrily accuses Jesus of blasphemy v8:532, v15:561; Jewish leaders and guards mock and beat Jesus v10:532, v17:561; Peter denies Jesus three times v12-17:532, v13-21:561; Jesus accused before Pilate the Roman governor v2:533, v1:561; Pilate questions Jesus privately v7:562; Pilate finds no basis for charges v8:533, v13:562; sends Jesus to Herod governor of Galilee v10:533; Jesus refuses to speak to Herod v12:533; Herod and soldiers mock Jesus then return him to Pilate v14:533; Pilate tries to free Jesus v17:533, v19:562; crowd chooses violent criminal Barabbas over Jesus v22-23:533, v14-15:562; crowd shout crucify him v25:534, v21:562; Pilate again questions Jesus privately v24:562; Pilate has Jesus flogged v28:534, v16:562; Roman soldiers mock Jesus v30-32:534, v17:562; Pilate tries again to release Jesus v34:534, v27:562; Pilate washes his hands of innocent blood and yields to demands of crowd v35:534, v34:562; Jesus handed over to Roman soldiers to be crucified v38:534; Simon of Cyrene carries the cross v40:534; Jesus prophesies to weeping woman of troubled times to come v42:534; Jesus is crucified v3:535, v2:562; prays that Roman soldiers be forgiven v5:535; soldiers divide up his clothes v6:535, v7:563; Jesus requests John to care for his mother v11:563; criminal on cross believes in Jesus v13:535; Jesus promises criminal he will be with him in Paradise that very day v14:535; three hours of darkness v15:535; Jesus cries out to the Father v16:535; offered sponge soaked with sour wine v18:535; Jesus dies v20:535, v15:563; earthquake and veil of Temple splits v22:535; bodies of many holy saints who had died arise to life v22:535; later appear to many in Jerusalem after resurrection of Jesus v22:535; onlookers awed v24:535; side of Jesus pierced with a spear v19:563; Joseph takes down body of Jesus and lays it in his own nearby tomb v36:536, v25:563; Jewish leaders seal tomb and post guards v4:536; Jesus resurrected, early Sunday morning v5:536; guards at tomb terrified by angel, run into city v9:536; tomb of Jesus found

open and empty v1:563; angels speak to women arriving at tomb v16:536; women filled with joy hurry back to tell apostles v19:537; Peter and John run out to tomb v21:537; Mary Magdalene returns to tomb and sees resurrected Jesus v22:537, v15:564; Jesus appears and walks with two disciples v25:537; explains scriptures concerning himself v34:537, v51:538; two disciples recognise Jesus when he breaks bread v37:538; Jesus vanishes from their sight v37:538; Jesus appears to Peter v40:538; appears to disciples inside a locked room v42:538, v18:564; disciples think resurrected Jesus a spirit v43:538; Jesus eats in front of disciples to prove he has body of flesh and bones v49:538; blessed those who have not seen and yet believe v28:564; Jesus prepares his disciples to receive the Holy Spirit v21:564; Jesus appears to more than 500 brethren after resurrection v3:615; appears to his brother James v4:615; sends disciples to preach to all the world v53:538; those who believe shall drive out demons, speak in new tongues, heal sick v55-56:538; Jesus taken up to God the Father from Mount of Olives, to return same way v59:538, v6-8:569; apostles see Jesus on shore of lake Galilee when returning from fruitless night fishing v1:564, v61:538; miracle of large catch of fish v5-7:565; Jesus prepares breakfast for his apostles v11:565; allows Peter to confirm his loyalty three times v18:565; commands apostles to baptise and teach all nations v63:538; Jesus to be with apostles until end of age v64:538; tells apostles to wait in Jerusalem for baptism of Holy Spirit v3:569; Jesus sits at side of Father v8:542, v10:570, v3:667; Jesus a man sent from God v9:570; Peter heals a cripple in name of Jesus v11:571; Stephen sees Jesus standing at right hand of Father in heaven v48:574; Jesus appears to Saul in bright light on road to Damascus v3:576; forgiveness of sins only possible through Jesus v31:581; God has set a day to judge world by Jesus v28:585; Jesus again appears to Paul and encourages him v9:586; Jewish exorcists use name of Jesus to expel demons v20:587; Jesus appears to Paul in Temple v39:590; appears again to Paul, tells him he must testify in Rome v11:591; they who reject gospel of Lord Jesus will suffer punishment of Eternal Death v6:604; all things are through Jesus v3:611; God who accompanied the Israelites of old was Christ, the Rock v13:611; head of Christ is God v1:612; Son to eventually hand kingdom over to Father v18:616; Jesus will raise us from the dead v6:618; became sin for us v11: 618; died for our sins v3:623; descended of David in flesh, but Son of God as to his spirit v1:628; rescues us from sin v21:630; Jesus the firstborn among many brothers v4:631; intercedes with God for us v9:631; nothing can separate us from the love of Christ v13:631; came not to serve himself v10:633; Paul called to preach the glorious riches of Christ v2:636; all treasures of wisdom and knowledge hidden in Christ v5:636, v33:641; fullness of Godhead dwells in v10:636; head over every power and authority v10:636; firstborn of all creation v11:636; image of the invisible God v11:636; created all things v12:636; first-raised from the dead v14:636; head of the church v14:636; do whatever you do in name of v7:637; seated at right hand of God v22:637; is all that is necessary v27:637; to combine all things in heaven and on earth under one head v7:641; all people now have access to Father through v27:641; mystery of Christ not revealed to former generations v31:641; whole body of church held together by v9:642; I pray you may comprehend the vastness of love of Christ v39:642; to present the church radiant, without blemish, holy and blameless to the Father v4:643; humbled himself in obedience v26:646; every tongue shall confess that Jesus Christ is Lord v28:646; came into world to save sinners v11:651; only mediator between God and man v17:651; if we disown him he will disown us v22:655; even angels longed to know mystery of v11:658; chosen from before creation of world v16:658; God raised him from dead v17:658; by his wounds you have been healed v31:658; after resurrection preached to spirits in prison who died in days of Noah v16:659; cast all your cares upon him, for he loves you v6:660; made the world v1:667; sustains all things by his powerful word v2:667; worthy of greater honour than Moses v3:667; all things subject to v9:667; suffered death for everyone v10:667; died to destroy the devil who holds power of death v13:667, v7:675; has become a merciful high priest v14:667; tempted in every way yet did not sin v12:668; offered up prayers with loud cries and tears v17:668; learned obedience by what he suffered v18:668; source of Eternal Life for all who obey him v19:668; made a high priest forever after

order of Melchizedek v29:669; sacrificed for sins, once for all v44:669; we have been made holy through sacrifice of v53:669; blood of cleanses us from a guilty conscience v2:670; pioneer and perfecter of our faith v32:671; the same yesterday, today and forever v16:672; the Word of Eternal Life v1:673; if we obey his commandments we will know him v11:674; walk as Jesus did v13:674; anointing of Jesus teaches you all things v27:674; sent as atoning sacrifice for our sins v11:675; came by water and blood v23:676; has freed us from our sins by his blood v5:682; has made us kings and priests unto God his Father v5:682; ruler of the kings of earth v5:682; Alpha and Omega v9:682; First and the Last v16:683; the Living One v16:683; an angel speaks to John on behalf of Jesus v16:683; Jesus holds keys of grave and Hades v17:683; hates practices of Nicolaitans v7:683; angels eyes like blazing fire and feet like burnished bronze v22:684; he who overcomes will walk with Jesus, dressed in white v35:685; Jesus holds key of David v38:685; holy and true v38:685; ruler of God's creation v49:685; the Amen v49:685; the faithful and true witness v49:685; stands at the door and knocks v54:685; faithful have right to sit with on his throne v55:685; sat down with his Father on his throne v55:685; Lion of tribe of Judah v15:686; Root of David v15:686; John sees depicted as slain lamb v16:686; faithful saints to reign with Jesus for a thousand years v6:698; eyes like blazing fire v13:698; on head of are many crowns v13:698; name written on forehead, no one knows but himself v14:698; King of kings and Lord of lords v17:698; is coming soon to repay everyone according to their works v8:700

Jesus Christ brothers of Jesus goes to Capernaum with his mother and brothers v8:543; is not this the son of Mary, and are not his brothers, James, Joseph, Simon, and Jude v49:504; even his own brothers did not believe in him v4:549; mother of Jesus and his brothers arrive v41:502; Jesus appears to his brother James after resurrection v4:615; mother and brothers of Jesus devote themselves to prayer v11:569; James gives decision on circumcision v11-18:583; have right to take a wife along with us, as do other apostles and Lord's brothers v3:612; Paul and companions report to James, presiding elder of church, in Jerusalem v14-15:589

Jesus Christ, preached to spirits in prison

I shall set free the prisoners from Sheol v8:407; a day dawning that shall give light to those living in darkness of death v37:484; Christ preaches in his spirit to spirits in prison who died in days of Noah v14:659

Jesus Christ, prophecies of See Jesus Christ, Messiah, Christ

Jesus Christ, second coming of great day of the Lord surely coming v10:272, v4:277; a day of darkness and gloom v11:272; large and mighty army to invade Judah in last days v12:272; land like garden of Eden before army, behind them a desert v13:272; army to have appearance of locusts or horses v14:272; Lord to come with own mighty army v17:272; day of Lord to be great and dreadful v18:272; stench of dead of vast northern army will arise v23:272; blood and fire and columns of smoke on earth before second coming v5:273; sun to be darkened and moon turn red as blood before coming of Lord v5:273; mountains will melt before Lord, like wax before fire v2-3:276; earth to be almost empty of people v8:277; Lord to suddenly come and save besieged Jerusalem in last days v18:288; men will flee from brightness of Lord when he comes v23:288; men to hear Lord's majestic voice, raging in anger v25:288; Lord's day of wrath coming to empty the earth v3:289, v6-8:289, v21:334; heavens to tremble and earth shake v6:289; day of reckoning for Satan and his angels v9:289; Satan to be punished and Antichrist destroyed v10:289; those left alive on earth will shout for joy v11:289; armies besieging Jerusalem to be destroyed v26:289; Lord to hover over Jerusalem like a bird v28:289; all armies on earth to be destroyed v30:289; sky to roll up like a scroll v32:289; Lord's garments to be red v3:292; coming in power to tend his flock as a shepherd v11:292; to be seen and heard by all when he comes v13:292; makers of idols everywhere shall be put to shame v19:292; God will endow Israel with splendour v9:293; great feast in Jerusalem when Lord returns v24:293; Lord will wipe away tears from all faces v25:293; song to be sung in Judah that day v27-31:293; dead of Lord to be resurrected that day v32:293; all mankind will see glory of Lord v3:294; glory of Lord will appear above Jerusalem v18:294; a country will be born in a day v1:295; Lord to come

with fury and flames of fire v6:295; those who eat flesh of pigs, rats and other abominable things will meet end when Lord returns v8:295; heavens will vanish and people die like flies v6:297; shouts of joy when Lord returns to save Jerusalem v14:297; all nations to witness saving of Jerusalem v16:297; prophecies of Isaiah will be understood when great day of Lord comes v6:298; whole earth to be consumed by fire of Lord's jealous anger v2:315; a day of wrath, distress and anguish v3:315; cries of fear shall be heard, strong men will be like women in labour, faces deathly pale v4:343; a terrible day, but Israel will be rescued v5:343; all wicked to be destroyed from earth v8:343; great day of Lord coming upon all nations of earth v8:351; house of Jacob and house of Joseph shall be like a flame in that day v10:351; no survivors from house of Esau v11:351; mountains shall be thrown down, cliffs will crumble, every wall shall fall v11:370; every person on face of earth will tremble v11:370; great earthquake in Israel on day Gog attacks v10:370; armies of Gog to panic and turn on each other v13:371; hail and fire to be poured down on Gog's army v14:371; fire from heaven to fall on northern nations (Magog) and coastlands v16:371; holy name of Lord to no longer be profaned v17:371; Daniel sees one like Son of Man come in clouds of heaven v16:388; Antichrist to set up abomination in Jerusalem during end days, then be destroyed v17:393; Lord (Jesus) to be sent by Lord God Almighty (the Father) against nations that plundered Israel v21:404; Jehovah shall appear over invading armies and flash forth like lightning v10:407; Jews to weep when they see pierce marks on their Messiah's body v8:408; Mount of Olives to split in two when feet of Jehovah touch at second coming v18:409; all Holy Ones to be with v17:409; day to be dark and cold, yet light at evening v18:409; Lord to be like a refiner's fire, or a launderer's soap v4:431; a day of judgement for sinners v7:431; those who honour Lord will be his on that great day v20:431; distinction between righteous and wicked will be seen clearly on that day v21:431; a day of burning for the wicked v22:431; the righteous to leap joyously like calves released from stall v23:431; the great day to come as a glorious sunrise for the righteous v23:431; wicked to be ashes under feet of righteous v23:431; Elijah to be sent before great and dreadful day v25:431; second coming prophesied by David, Psalm 54 v1-6:453; followers arrayed in holy splendour to descend with Lord from direction of rising sun, Psalm 54 v3:454; Jehovah is at your side, he will crush kings on the day of his wrath, Psalm 54 v5:454; Jehovah to judge nations, heaping up dead, destroying rulers of whole earth, Psalm 54 v6:454; fire will burn before him, around him a raging storm, Psalm 69 v2:456; Lord coming to judge whole earth, Psalm 99 v6:463; Son of Man to return in hour when expected not v39:515; return to be like lightning which lights up sky from one side to other v4:518; will be as it was in days of Noah and Lot v7:518; one person shall be taken and another left v9:518, v44:527; parable of wise and foolish virgins v10:527; all nations to be seen Son of Man coming on clouds of heaven with power and great glory v35:527; angels to gather elect with a loud trumpet call v36:527; parable of signs of the fig tree v37:527; return of Jesus to occur in generation in which all signs seen v39:527; no one knows the day, only the Father v41:527; parable of the thief in the night v48:527; the day coming when you will see the Son of Man coming in the clouds of heaven v7:532; your children will say to the mountains, fall upon us, cover us v43:534; the day should not surprise you like a thief v17:603; you will not suffer wrath, but be saved by Jesus Christ v19:603; Jesus to be revealed from heaven in blazing fire with his powerful angels v5:604; will not come until great apostasy occurs and Antichrist revealed v8:604; on day of Lord's coming, fire will test quality of each man's work v35:608; when Christ returns you will be gathered to him in glory v23:637; he will transform our bodies to be like his glorious body v19:647; we eagerly await our Saviour's return v19:647; live upright godly lives while we await appearing in glory of Jesus Christ v24:649; Lord will award me crown of righteousness on day of his appearing v23:656; you will have glory and honour when Jesus Christ revealed v7:658; when the Chief Shepherd appears you shall win a crown of glory v3:660; heavens will vanish with a roar and earth burn with fire v7:663; when he comes we shall be like him v2:674; nations of earth will wail because of him v8:682; Jesus to come in the clouds, every eye shall see him v8:682; every island to flee, mountains not to be found v14:687; sky to roll up like a

scroll v14:687; faithful saints to reign with Christ a thousand years v6:698; John sees Jesus riding a white horse at second coming v12:698; faces of Father and Son to be seen, unbelievers to hide from v15:688; great day of wrath v15:688; to come clothed in robe dipped in blood v15:698; to rule nations with an iron sceptre v16:698; armies of heaven to follow, riding white horses, clothed in pure white v19:698; Beast and kings of earth gather to wage war against v22:698; Beast and False Prophet cast into Lake of Fire v23:698; birds to eat flesh of those who fall at Armageddon v26:698; Jesus coming soon to repay everyone according to their works v8:700

Jethro the priest of Midian v26:50; Moses marries daughter of v29:50; comes out to visit Moses in desert v18:62; praises Jehovah and offers sacrifice v21:62; advises Moses to delegate authority v26:62

Jews remaining 745 Jews exiled from Judah v31:349; to suffer war until end of age v14:392; pride of the holy people to finally be broken v16:396; Cyrus allows to return to Judah v1:397; outcry by poor Jews over oppression by Jewish nobles v1:425; leaders and every tenth family assigned to live in Jerusalem v31:427; repent and covenant to keep Law of God v19:427; Jews who had married foreign women cursed and beaten by Nehemiah v20:428; have broken God's covenant v1:430; Malachi curses Jews who marry foreign women v3:430; Lord pleads with his people to return to him v8:431; surviving Jews to be scattered to all nations v19:526; Jews shout for Jesus to be crucified v31:562; blood of Jesus be upon Jews v37:534; Jewish leaders mock Jesus on cross v7:535; 3000 Jews baptised and added to church that day v15:570; Jews from other nations hear apostles speak their own languages v5:570; Jewish leaders enraged, want apostles put to death v27:573; Stephen strongly rebukes Jewish leaders v43-46:574; Saul's life threatened by Jews in Damascus v19:576; jealous Jews at Thessalonica form a mob and start a riot v2:584; Apollos refutes Jews, proves from scriptures Jesus was Christ v7:587; forty Jews take oath to kill Paul v12:591; Paul teaches Jews in Rome about Jesus, some believe but most do not v18-29:596; Jews demand signs v14:608; Jews entrusted with words of God v6:629; many advantages in being a Jew v6:629; no difference between Jew and Gentile in Lord v3:632; pay no attention to Jewish myths v13:648; sin of the Jews to be forgiven (in millennium) v10:408

Jezebel foreign wife of Ahab v18:226; killing off Lord's prophets v2:227; sworn to kill Elijah v9:228; arranges murder of Naboth v7:231; cursed by Lord for murder of Naboth and his sons v15:231; urges her husband Ahab on in doing evil v18:231; thrown from window and trampled to death v5:243; body eaten by dogs v7:243; you tolerate that Jezebel who misleads my servants into sexual immorality v2:684

Joab nephew of David, commander of David's men v28:183; murders Abner treacherously v17:184; cursed by David v18:184; captures fortress of Jerusalem, made commander-in-chief of all Israel by David v4:185; uses guile to allow David's son Absalom to return v30:192; he and his men kill Absalom when they find him hanging alive in a tree v3-9:195; rebukes David harshly v28:196; tries to dissuade David from taking census of fighting men v3:198; murders rival Amasa v7:198; besieges town of Abel to capture rebel Sheba v12:198; supports Adonijah's conspiracy to be king v8:201; put to death at altar on Solomon's orders v15:203

Joash new born son of Ahaziah, kept hidden in Temple by high priest Jehoiada v25:266; anointed king of Judah v34:266; a righteous king while Jehoiada alive v1:266; decides to restore Temple v3:266; returns Judah to idolatry after death of Jehoiada v14:267; orders that Zechariah son of Jehoiada be stoned to death v17:267; wounded by Syrians then killed by his servants v20:267

Job a blameless and upright man of great wealth v1-2:433; offered sacrifice on behalf of his children v4:433; Jehovah expresses his delight in Job to Satan v7:433; Satan claims Job only righteous because of his great wealth v8:433; Satan permitted to afflict Job to test his integrity v10:433; Job loses all his children and wealth v11-14:433; Job mourns but continues to worship God v15:433; Satan permitted to destroy Job's health v17:433; Job afflicted with festering sores v21:433; years for death v1:434; wife turns against him v22:434; Job's three friends appalled at his appearance v25:434; Eliphaz

accuses Job of having sinned v5:434; Job asks for sympathy from his friends not condemnation v16:434; denies he has done wrong v18:434; Bildad accuses Job's children of having sinned v2:435; Job insists he is innocent v9:435; God afflicts both innocent and wicked v12:435; Job wishes for a mediator between God and himself v14:435; accuses God of unfairness v16:435; describes his suffering v19-20:435; Zophar also accuses Job of sin v19:435; Job pleads with God to leave him alone v22:435; asks God why he is being afflicted v23:435; Job rebukes his friends v24:435; you are miserable comforters v1:436; describes his gaunt appearance to God v3:436; proclaims his innocence v5:436; declares he will eventually be justified by God v7:436; Bildad also accuses Job of wickedness v9:436; Job again rebukes his friends for tormenting him v12:436; pleads for pity v14:436; Job loathsome to his brothers and household v17-18:436; reaffirms his trust in God v27:436; prays for God to stop punishing him v29:436; asks God to show him what wrong he has done v30:436; Eliphaz asks what God would gain by punishing Job if he was blameless v2:437; Job longs to state his case to God v8:437; Job affirms his belief in resurrection and day of judgement v21-23:437; Zophar claims the wicked never prosper for long v25-29:437; Job replies that the wicked often prosper all their life v33-35:437; the wicked even honoured in death v45:437; God does not punish all the wicked here on earth v20:438; Job's vow of chastity v42:438; Job will not deny his integrity v22:438; longs for happy days of past v25:438; helped poor and widows v31:438; now mocked by young men v35:438; describes his pain and suffering v37:438; treated his servants and tenants justly v46:438; Elihu angry with Job and his friends v1-2:439; accuses Job of rebellion against God v22:439; Job claims he was generous to the poor v47-49:439; did not trust in his wealth v51:439; Jehovah suddenly appears to Job v1:440; Job questioned by Jehovah on the creation v3:440; questioned on the dawn, oceans, Sheol, and earth v6-9:440; questioned on light, darkness, snow, hail, frost, ice, lightning, winds, rain and dew v10-16:440; questioned on stars and the mind of man v17-18:440; questioned on birds and animals v19-25:440; Job cannot answer Jehovah v1:441; Job questioned further v2:441; challenged to speak in a voice of thunder and glorify himself and crush the wicked v4-6:441; challenged to capture a crocodile v13:441; Job humbles himself before the Lord v27:442; Jehovah rebukes Job's friends v28:442; Job's prosperity restored double v34:442; Job fathers ten more children, his daughters the most beautiful in land v36-37:442

Jochabed Mother of Moses v10:50

Joel prophet, prophesies the great day of the Lord after a severe locust invasion, book of p271; prophecy of quoted by Peter v8:570

Johanah chief of Jerusalem guards, pursues assassin Ishmael and rescues captives v13:348; decides all survivors should flee to Egypt, asks Jeremiah for confirmation from Lord v14:348; ignores Lord's counsel to stay in Judah, takes all the people to Egypt v17-25:349

John (the Baptist) to prepare way before the Lord (prophecy) v1:431; angel Gabriel announces birth of John to Zechariah his father v5:483; John to never drink wine or strong drink v7:483; to prepare Israel for coming of Lord v9:483; v3:542; John is born and named v30-33:483; Grows and becomes strong in spirit, lives in desert v39:484; his clothes made of camel hair, his food locusts and wild honey v3:487; people go to John, confess their sins and are baptised v4:487; John rebukes Pharisees and Sadducees v5:487; tells parable of axe at foot of tree v7:487; teaches people how to live righteously v8-13:487; preparing the way for one more powerful v14:487; not worthy to untie sandals of he who is to come v14:542; baptises Jesus v18:488; sees Spirit of God come down upon Jesus from heaven as a dove v17:542; testifies that Jesus is the Son of God v18:542; John to decrease but Jesus to increase v21:544; prophesies concerning Jesus v22-24:544; rebukes King Herod for adultery with his brother's wife Herodias v1:488; imprisoned by Herod v2:488; sends disciples to enquire of Jesus v1:498; Jesus testifies of John v6:498; John the Elijah who was to come v10:499; John criticised by this generation v12:499; Herodias has John beheaded v1-8:504; John a type of Elijah v37:509; John denies being Elijah of old v12:542; Jesus questions Jewish leaders about John, cannot answer him v19-22:522; John the Baptist a lamp that burned

and gave light v24:547

John (the apostle) a fisherman, called as a disciple by Jesus v33:489; chosen as one of twelve apostles v3:491; present when Jesus transfigured and Moses and Elijah appear v25:508; proposes calling down fire from heaven to destroy Samaritan town v3:511; Salome the mother of v27:535; helps prepare Passover supper v4:529; with Jesus in Gethsemane v29:530; follows Jesus into courtyard of high priest v11:561; runs with Peter to tomb of Jesus v21:537, v3-6:563; Jesus gives care of his mother to v11:563; to remain on earth until Jesus returns v31:565; must still eventually die v32:565; arrested and imprisoned v2:571; approves gospel Paul preached v15:624; banished to island of Patmos v10:682; in Spirit on Lord's Day, hears voice like a trumpet v11:682; sees glorious angel standing among seven lampstands v12:683; receives revelation for the seven churches he ministers to v11:683; John's spirit taken up into heaven, to throne of God v1:685; sees God the Father seated on a throne v2:685; sees twenty-four elders seated on thrones in heaven v3:686; four cherubim around throne of God v6-10:686; Jesus depicted as a slain lamb v16:686; hears all creation sing v25:686; describes plagues of the seven trumpets ch6:688; sees the vast number of saints who will die during the Great Tribulation v9:688; sees a mighty angel descending from heaven holding a little scroll v1:690; hears seven thunders prophesy, but forbidden to write them v4:690; told to eat scroll v7:690; prophecies of the scroll bitter to John's stomach v9:690; sees sign of woman about to give birth to a male child v8:691; sees the Beast (Antichrist) arise from the sea, whole world to follow ch9:692; seven last plagues ch12:694; sees those who overcome the Beast standing on a sea of fiery glass v2:694; sees an angel with a crown of gold on head and sickle in hand v18:694; carried away and shown Babylon/Great Harlot v1:695; sees an angel with great authority, earth illuminated by his splendour v1:696; hears roar of a great multitude in heaven v1:697; John forbidden to worship angel of Lord v10:697; sees second coming of Jesus v12-22:698; Satan bound in the Pit for thousand years v27-30:698; sees faithful saints resurrected and reign with Christ a thousand years v4:698; Satan released to again deceive nations when thousand year millennium over v8:698; after millennium, nations again gather to attack city of God's people v10:698; fire from heaven devours attacking nations v11:698; John sees the beautiful New Jerusalem descending from heaven v9-32:699; describes glorious appearance of city v11-32:699; sees final resurrection v14:699; sees great day of judgement v15:699; again forbidden to worship an angel v5:700; Book of Revelation not to be added to or taken away from v16:701

Jonah prophet, called by Lord to warn city of Nineveh v5:247; fears, flees in a ship to Tarshish v6:247; terrible storm arises at sea v7:247; Jonah cast into the sea v16:247; huge fish swallows Jonah v18:247; Jonah prays to Lord v19-25:247; Jonah vomited onto dry land after three days v26:247; Lord again calls Jonah to preach to Nineveh v1:247; Jonah begins to preach, prophesies destruction of city v4:247; Ninevites believe Jonah, and fast and repent v6:248; Lord decides not to destroy city v9:248; Jonah displeased at Lord's compassion v10:248; God gives Jonah lesson in compassion using a vine v14:248; sign of the prophet Jonah, Jesus to be three days in heart of earth v23:501

Jonathan son of King Saul v1:163; provokes Philistines, who attack Israel v3:164; attacks Philistine outpost with armour-bearer, kills twenty men v18-26:164; breaches Saul's fast v36:165; Saul vows to kill Jonathan but his men prevent him v11-15:165; Jonathan becomes a close friend of David v1:169; intercedes with Saul for David's life v22:170; Jonathan and David weep together and say farewell v28:171; dies in battle along with his father v2:6:178

Joram king of northern Israel, son of Ahab v18:233; combines with kings of Judah and Edom to attack Moab v4-6:236; Jehu kills with an arrow v39:243; body thrown on Naboth's field v42:243

Jordan river Jacob and his family cross v20:35; Israelites camp alongside v18:101; Moses forbidden to cross v8:119; flow stops as priests enter water with Ark v7:122; all Israel pass over Jordan v8:123; memorial of twelve stones set up in bed of v11:123; eastern tribes erect a great altar by v5:129; Israelites

take control of Jordan fords v20:135, v26:138; Gileadites capture fords v34:142; waters divide for Elijah v28:234; waters divide for Elisha v37:234; Naaman dips himself seven times in Jordan and is healed v14:239; Elisha causes an iron axe head to float to surface v32:240; the hippopotamus is secure, though the Jordan surge against his mouth v11:441; John the Baptist baptises in v4:487; Jesus baptised in v18:488

Joseph (son of Jacob/Israel) firstborn son of Rachel to Jacob v22:33; loved by his father more than other sons v6:37; father makes him a coat of many colours v6:37; Joseph's dreams arouse jealousy of his brothers v8:37; his brothers propose killing him v18:38; Joseph thrown into a pit v21:38; sold to Ishmaelite traders v24:38; brothers dip his coat in goat blood v26:38; father mourns Joseph many days v29:38; Joseph sold to Potiphar in Egypt v1:39; Lord gives success in all he does v2:39; Joseph well built and handsome v4:39; Potiphar's wife attempts to seduce him v4:39; Joseph refuses to be with her v6:39; Potiphar's wife lies to husband about Joseph v8:39; Joseph cast into prison by Potiphar v10:39; put in charge of other prisoners v11:39; interprets dreams of cupbearer and baker v12:20:39; Joseph brought from prison to interpret Pharaoh's dreams v4:40; predicts seven years famine in Egypt v11:40; put in charge of all Egypt by Pharaoh v16:40; now 30 years old v20:41; marries Asenath who bears him two sons Manasseh and Ephraim v21:41; stores up huge amounts of grain v23:41; nations come to Egypt and buy grain from Joseph v27:41; Joseph's brothers also come and bow down before him v3:41; Joseph imprisons his brothers v4:9-41; demands Benjamin be brought to him v10:41; returns brother's silver to their sacks v15:41; brothers return with Benjamin v33:42; Joseph seats brothers according to age v10:42; puts silver cup in Benjamin's sack v13:42; Joseph weeps loudly, reveals his identity v26:27-43; kisses his brothers and weeps over them v3:43; sends for his father's family v32:43; sends his brothers home with gifts v36:43; all Joseph's family move to Egypt v1:43; Joseph throws his arms around his father and weeps v5:43; settles his father's family in Goshen v16:44; Joseph obtains all silver in Egypt and Canaan for Pharaoh v18:44; buys up all land in Egypt v22:44; his father Israel dies v36:45; brothers fear Joseph and ask his forgiveness v41:45; weeps and consoles his brothers v42:45; prophesies Israelite's exodus from Egypt v45-46:46; dies aged 110 years and is embalmed v47:46; bones of taken by Israelites when leaving Egypt v24:57; bones of buried at Shechem v14:130

Joseph tribe of Israel's dying blessing upon – to be a fruitful vine, a prince among his brothers v30-34:45; Moses' blessing upon – fullness of the earth and favour of Lord v20-22:119; house of to be saved and made mighty v18:407; 12,000 servants of God to be sealed from in last days v4:688

Joseph (step-father of Jesus) a carpenter and righteous man, betrothed to Mary v1:484; decides to divorce Mary when she is found with child v2:484; angel instructs him to marry Mary v3:484; angel warns Joseph to take child Jesus and flee to Egypt v8:486; told by angel to return his family to Israel v11:486

Joshua assistant to Moses, leads Israel against Amalekites v10:61; with Moses and the Lord forty days on the mountain v1:68; explorer leader of tribe of Ephraim, pleads with people to trust Jehovah v2:96; only Joshua and Caleb to enter promised land v14:96; a man in whom is the Spirit v5:119; appointed by Lord to succeed Moses v5-11:119; Lord gives instruction to v1:121; Joshua sends two men to spy out promised land v6:121; angel appears to instruct regarding taking of Jericho v1:123; burns city of Jericho v19:124; pronounces curse on man who rebuilds city v20:124; takes city of Ai by ambush v14:125; reads aloud Law of Moses in presence of people v3:126; deceived into making peace covenant with Gibeonites v15:126; curses Gibeonites to be slaves v16-20:126; defeats Galilean kings v1-5:127; defeats armies of hill country kings v26:127; sun and moon stand still in answer to prayer of v28:127; executes five hill country kings 33-37:127; sends out men to survey remaining land of Canaan v3:128; given town of Timnath Serah as inheritance v14:129; summons all Israel for final address v1:130; declares that he and his family will serve the Lord v8:130; repeats commandments to Israelites and updates the book of Law v11:130; sets up a stone as witness v12:130; dies aged 110 v13:130; curse of Joshua falls on man who rebuilds Jericho v20:226

Joshua (high priest) high priest of returned exiles in Judah v15:398; to be strong, for Lord is with v21:399; conditional promise by Lord, a place in his presence v30:404; saved from Satan v25:404; symbolically dressed in clean clothes v28:404; will rule the people in harmony if obedient v56:406

Josiah birth of prophesied v8:224; son of Amon, made king of Judah when eight years old v1:310; purges land of idolatry when 20 years old v2-16:311; tears robes and weeps when book of Law read to him v20:311; asks high priest to enquire of Lord, high priest goes to prophetess Huldah v21:311; Huldah declares disaster coming on Judah v23:311; faithful Josiah's eyes not to see the disaster v26:311; Josiah reads book of Law to people v27:312; makes covenant to obey Lord's commandments v28:312; commands Passover be celebrated v29:312; goes out to fight Pharaoh Neco, king of Egypt v1-9:325; dies of archery wound, son Jehoahaz becomes king v5:325; Josiah one of the great kings of Judah v7:326

Jotham (brother of Abimelech) shouts bitter fable to citizens of Shechem v15-21:139; curses Abimelech and citizens of Shechem to be destroyed v22-23:140; curse of comes to pass v23:141

Jotham (king) son of Uzziah, becomes king of Judah v13:275; grows powerful because he is faithful to Lord v29:276; dies and son Ahaz becomes king v1:281

joy Abraham fell on his face and rejoiced v21:23; a newly married man free of civic duty for a year to bring joy to his wife v13:113; women greet Saul with joyful songs and dancing v3:169; Levite singers appointed to sing joyful songs v31:186; Ark brought into the city with shouts and rejoicing v34:186; all Jerusalem followed Solomon, rejoicing so greatly the ground shook v19:201; the people ate and drank with great joy that day v37:200, v35:208; God gives wisdom, knowledge and joy to a man who pleases him v30:217; joy accompanies a man in his work v12:219; be happy young man and let your heart give you joy v27:221; Israelites celebrate Passover for seven days with great rejoicing v9:286; I will greatly rejoice in Jehovah v31:306; the righteous shall find joy in Jehovah v35:309; when tasted, the Lord's words become a joy to Jeremiah's heart v21:330; many elderly who had seen the former Temple wept aloud, but others shouted for joy v4:399; Zerubbabel shall place the capstone of the Temple to shouts of rejoicing v4:205; returned exiles celebrate dedication of Temple with joy v3:409; fasts of the fourth, fifth, seventh and tenth months shall be joyful times v13:406; for seven days the returned exiles celebrate the Passover with joy v6:410; in every city where the decree of the king came there was joy among the Jews v13:416; day of Purim a day of feasting and joy v22:417; wall of Jerusalem dedicated with much joy, the rejoicing could be heard far away v22-23:426; the joy of the Lord is your strength v7:427; the Jews celebrated with great joy, for they now understood the Law v8:427, v13:427; the joy of a goddess man lasts but a moment v25:437; all the sons of God shouted for joy v4:440; when I am resurrected I will see your face and have joy, Psalm 6 v5:445; you will fill me with eternal joy at your right hand, Psalm 17 v6:447; commandments of the Lord bring joy to the heart, Psalm 37 v1:450; sing joyfully to the Lord, for it is fitting for the upright to praise him, Psalm 39 v1:450; play music skilfully and shout for joy, Psalm 39 v2:450; all earth shout with joy to the Lord, Psalm 48 v1:452; I will sacrifice in the Tabernacle with shouts of joy, Psalm 50 v3:453; clap your hands all you nations, shout to Lord with cries of joy, Psalm 61 1:455; on the willows we hung our harps, for our captors wanted songs of joy, Psalm 81 v2:459; returning exiles filled with laughter and songs of joy, Psalm 86 v1:461; make a joyful noise to the Lord of the earth, Psalm 89:461; this is the day that the Lord has made, let us rejoice and be glad, Psalm 96:462; shout for joy to Jehovah, let the mountains sing together for joy, Psalm 99 v1-5:463; may you rejoice with the wife of your youth v24:465; the righteous can sing and rejoice v11:469; when the wicked perish there are shouts of joy v52:469; the future of the righteous is joy v20:470; justice done brings joy to the righteous v8:471; there is joy in the heart of those who promote peace v55:471; the father of a righteous son has great joy v11:473, v19:473; a cheerful smile brings joy to the heart v8:474; when Elizabeth heard Mary's voice her child leapt for joy in her womb v25:483; the angel said, I bring you good news of great joy to all people v10:485; the seventy return from their missions with great joy v31:512; rejoice that

your names are written in heaven v34:512; Jesus, full of joy through the Holy Spirit praises the Father v35:512; rejoice with me, for I have found my lost sheep v9:517; joy in heaven when a sinner repents v10-13:517; come enter into the joy of your master v15:527; keep my commandments, that my joy may be in you, and your joy may be complete v21:559; your grief will quickly turn to joy v3:560; no one can take your joy from you v5:560; a woman forgets her suffering in her joy at bringing a child into the world v4:560; the women were bewildered, yet filled with joy at resurrection of Jesus v19:537; apostles and disciples filled with joy and amazement at resurrection of Jesus v47:538, v60:538, v19:564; apostles rejoice they were worthy to suffer disgrace for name of Jesus v34:573; great joy in Samaria because of miracles of Phillip v7:575; the eunuch went on his way rejoicing v33:576; believers in Pisidian filled with joy and the Holy Spirit v40:581; the jailer was filled with joy, for he had come to believe in God with his whole family v32:584; consider it pure joy my brethren whenever you face trials v2:598; is anyone joyful, let him sing songs of praise v23:600; you welcomed the message with joy of the Holy Spirit v4:601; how can we thank God for the joy we have in you v25:602; be joyful always, pray continually and give thanks v24:603; Paul sorrowful yet rejoicing v21:618, v20:629, v1:636; despite all our troubles my joy knows no bounds v25:618; Paul desires his joy to be the joy of all v29:618; my joy was greater than ever before v40:619; what has happened to all your joy? v22:625; joy a fruit of the Holy Spirit v7:626; the kingdom of God is righteousness, peace and joy in the Holy Spirit v9:633; may God fill you with joy and peace as you trust in him v12:633; you give me great joy and encouragement my brother v4:639; rejoice in the Lord, again I say rejoice v2:647; I long to see you again that I may be filled with joy v4:654; you love Jesus Christ and rejoice with inexpressible joy v8:658; rejoice that you share the suffering of Christ, for you will be filled with joy v29:659; Jesus endured the cross for the sake of the joy set before him v32:671; you have before you thousands upon thousands of angels in joyful assembly v6:671; let your leader's work be a joy to them, not a burden v20:672; I have no greater joy than to hear that my children walk in truth v3:677, v4:678; awake and shout for joy you who dwell in the dust (at second coming) v32:293; those left alive on earth will shout for joy (at second coming) v11:289; righteous to leap joyously, like calves released from stall (at second coming) v23:431; Jerusalem's people to be a joy (during millennium) v17:293, v26:294; foreigners and eunuchs who love the Lord to have joy in the Temple (during millennium) v15:294; Jerusalem will be radiant and her heart throb and swell with joy (during millennium) v18:294, v17:297; deserts around Jerusalem to burst into bloom and shout for joy (during millennium) v15:295, v15:297; everlasting joy as ransomed of the Lord enter Jerusalem with singing (during millennium) v18:295, v21:296, v14:297; tongue of the dumb to shout for joy (during millennium) v20:295; sing for joy O heavens, shout aloud O earth (during millennium) v18:303, v16:306; rejoice with all your heart O Jerusalem, Jehovah is with you (during millennium) v10:315; Israelites to shout for joy on the heights of Zion (during millennium) v12:343; Maidens, young men and elderly will dance and be joyful (during millennium) v14:343, v23:344

Jubilee year of to be celebrated every fifty years v16:85; a time of rejoicing, people not to sow or harvest v17:85; family land to be reclaimed v19:85; Israelite slaves to be released v32:86; value of land set by amount of seed to sow it until year of Jubilee v13:86

Judah fourth son of Jacob (Israel) and Leah v5:32; proposes selling Joseph to Ishmaelite traders v22:38; marries Canaanite woman who bears him three sons Er, Onan, and Shelah v1:38; sons Er and Onan marry Tamar, but are put to death by Lord v2-6:38; does not give Tamar to his youngest son Shelah as promised v11:39; Judah lies with Tamar who becomes pregnant v14:39; offers to be a slave to Joseph v25:42

Judah tribe of Israel's dying blessing upon – a lion, royal sceptre not to depart from until Messiah comes v21-23:45; first census of 74,600 v11:92; second census 76,500 v4:105; Moses' blessing upon – to be restored to his place v15:119; Caleb leader of v15:128; land in Canaan assigned to by lot v15:128; combines with tribe of Simeon to destroy Canaanites v3:133; Jesus Christ Lion of v15:686; 12,000 servants of God to be sealed from in last days v4:688

Judah (kingdom of) Rehoboam rejected as king by other Israelite tribes, reigns over Judah only v34:211; sins of to be punished, Jerusalem to be burned v10:254; priests and Levites and faithful northern Israelites move to Judah v2-4:260; Judah abandons Lord and turns to idolatry v7:261; Egypt invades v9:261; king and elders of Judah humble themselves v12:261; Lord grants some deliverance v13:261; treasures of Temple and palace taken to Egypt v15:261; battle between Judah and Israel v20:261; Asa a righteous king, removes idolatrous altars, pillars and poles v1:262; a million strong Ethiopian army invades Judah v5:262; entire Ethiopian army killed by army of Judah v7:262; Israel flees before Judah, 500,000 men of Israel slain v29:262; all Judah joyfully make a covenant to serve Lord v18:263; a vast army invades Judah v17:264; Jehoshaphat the king calls a nation-wide fast v18:264; Lord causes invading armies to destroy each other v27:264; men of Judah see vast numbers of dead men lying on the ground v28:264; immense amount of spoil gathered v29:264; Jehoram an evil king, Edom puts army of Judah to flight v5-9:265; hearts of people not set fully on Lord v34:265; temple of Baal torn down v41:266; people pay Temple upkeep tax into chest at Temple v7:267; Temple of Lord restored as before v10:267; Temple of Lord abandoned, Judah worships idols v14:267; Syrian army attacks Jerusalem, king wounded and officials killed v18:267; angry hired soldiers raid Judean towns, kill 3000 people v27:267; army of Judah kill 20,000 Edomites v28:267; Judah defeated by Israel, city wall broken, treasures taken from Temple and palace v36-37:268; severe locust invasion v1:271; King Jotham righteous but his people still corrupt v16:275; because Judah hard hearted the Lord curses them with blindness of understanding v25:275; Uzziah becomes very powerful, with army of 307,500 men v3-6:275; violence and bribery in Jerusalem v7-8:276; widespread theft defiling the land v13:276; Lord pleads for justice, mercy and humility v13:277; Judah to be exiled, Jerusalem to become a heap of rubble v14:277; the exile will come to an end v16:277; Ahaz leads Judah back into idolatry v2:281; Judah invaded by Syria and Israel v4:281; Israel kill 120,000 men of Judah, take 200,000 women and children captive v20:282; Judah attacked by Edom and Philistines v31:282; Judah left deserted from invasions v4:283; offerings of Judah meaningless to Lord, prayers of not heeded v5-6:283; Lord commands Judah to cease doing evil and care for poor v7:283; the nine sins of Judah v17-25:283; Judah to suffer crop failure v26:284; eventually all Judah will die or go into exile v27-28:284; Hezekiah reopens Temple, ends idol worship v6:285; Hezekiah the most faithful of all kings of Judah v8:285; sacrifices and singing to the Lord v18:285; 3600 animals offered in sacrifice v20:285; the people of Judah rejoice v22:285; remaining idolatrous sites destroyed v13:286; people begin to tie again v14:286; Lord reveals that hearts of people are far from him v2:297; prophecies of Isaiah like a sealed book to Judah v1:297; Assyria captures many cities of Judah v1:298; words of Isaiah scoffed at v15:298; Lord longs to show compassion v21:298; Assyrians come again against Jerusalem v1:299; Assyrians blaspheme Jehovah v6:299; Hezekiah pays Assyrians huge ransom of gold to withdraw v9:299; Assyrian commander intimidates men of Judah sitting on the wall v9-12:299; Hezekiah seeks guidance from the Lord v17:299; 185,000 Assyrian soldiers die during night v33:300; Jerusalem's current warfare completed, her sin is atoned for v35:300; Isaiah prophesies exile of Judah to Babylon v26:301; king and people of Jerusalem repent of their pride, Lord postpones punishment v29:301; none obey word of Isaiah, all walk in light of own lamps v8:306; Manasseh does much evil, sorcery, returns Judah to idolatry v4-7:308; Asherah pole set up inside Temple of Lord v5:308; Judah's idolatry likened to adultery v12:308; disaster to come upon Judah because of Manasseh v2:309; Assyria attacks and Manasseh taken prisoner to Babylon v5:309; Josiah purges land of idolatry v2-16:311; high priest finds copy of book of Law in Temple v18:311; Josiah reads book of Law to people v27:312; people make covenant to obey Lord's commandments v28:312; Passover once again celebrated in Jerusalem v32:312; great distress coming on Jerusalem v8:314; Lord charges Judah with idolatry v5:322; apparent return of people to Lord only a pretence v4:323; spring rains withheld v22:323; Judah still has brazen look of a harlot v23:323; bitter disaster coming from the north v11-15:324; Judah's sins keeping away the rains v12:325; wicked men rich by evil deeds v13:325; prophet and

priest alike practice deception v16:325; Lord pleads for genuine reform v4:326; if Judah does not repent, both the Temple and Jerusalem will be ruins v8:326; dead bodies to lie like cut grain behind the reaper v37:327; Lord delights in kindness, justice and righteousness v40:327; people of Judah have broken the covenant of their forefathers v1-3:328; have provoked Lord to anger by idolatry v7:328; Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon invades land v1:329; Jehoiakim pays Nebuchadnezzar tribute for three years v2:329; people of Judah past praying for v7:330; false prophets lying to the people v9:330; people want to rid themselves of Jeremiah and listen to false prophets v21:332; Judah to be ruined and serve Babylon seventy years v7:333; people of Jerusalem to eat flesh of their children during Babylonian siege v35:335; faithful exiles to return after fall of Babylon v16:337; remnant of Judah spared will have their sins forgiven v22:337; King Jehoiakim burns scroll of Jeremiah piece by piece v18:338; Jehoiakim rebels against Nebuchadnezzar, Babylonians lay siege to Jerusalem v1:339; those exiled to never see their native land again v7:339; land of Judah parched, more disaster to come v15:340; Judah surrenders to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon v26:340; Nebuchadnezzar removes treasures from Temple and palace v27:340; first exile, nobles, skilled craftsmen and army taken to Babylon v28:341; Nebuchadnezzar appoints Zedekiah king of Judah v29:341; remaining people of Judah like rotten figs, so bad they cannot be eaten v10:342; Zedekiah rebels against Nebuchadnezzar v1:344; people of Judah now even more unfaithful v2:344; Nebuchadnezzar's armies come again and besiege Jerusalem v4:344; those who surrender to Babylonians will escape with lives v9:344; Egypt comes to help Judah, Babylonian armies temporarily withdraw v16:344; Jeremiah arrested, beaten, and imprisoned in dungeon v4:345; Zedekiah orders all Israelite slaves be freed v21:345; people free their slaves, but later enslave them again v23:345; Lord curses the slave owners of Jerusalem to become a horror to all nations v27:345; Babylonian armies return and renew siege v1:346; severe starvation in Jerusalem during siege v1:347; Babylonians break through city wall, begin putting survivors to sword v2:347; Jerusalem plundered v9-11:347; Temple, palace and houses burned v12:347; second exile, the 832 survivors of Jerusalem taken to Babylon v13:348; people of Jerusalem appalled at gaunt appearance of one another v24:358; parents ate own children during siege of Jerusalem v34:358; people died of plague, famine and sword v35:358; some of poorest people left to till the land v14:348; Gedaliah appointed to look after few remaining poor v18:348; Jews from surrounding nations gather to Gedaliah v3:348; Gedaliah assassinated by Ishmael, a former royal official v6:348; Jeremiah and remaining people of Judah taken to Egypt by Jehonah v23-25:349; empty land begins its seventy year Sabbath rest v31:349; ruin of Jerusalem to be warning to other nations v42:358; Judah suffered because of idolatry and defilement of Temple v42-46:358; survivors to be scattered among the nations v47:358; a few spared the sword so other nations could know of their abominations v9:360; sins of Jerusalem that angered the Lord v9-20:364; Judah to soon be an empty wasteland v7:368; Jerusalem sits deserted, weeping like a widow v1:378; horrors of the Babylonian siege v11-59:378; children died of thirst and hunger v15:378; eyes watched in vain for Egypt v21:379; skin of people shrivelled on bones like black dry wood v18:379; mothers even boiled and ate own children v20:379; the Lord destroyed his city and holy house v27:379; Judah the laughing stock of nations v56:379; because of the great love of the Lord, Judah yet has hope v60:380; in first year of reign, Cyrus allows exiled Jews to return to Judah v1:397; Judah is Lord's sceptre, Psalm 20 v2:448; prayers of Asaph at destruction of Temple, Psalms 78-79:459; no one to bury our dead, Psalm 79 v3:459; Judah and Israel to be reunited (during millennium) v11:250; Judah to be a land of wine, milk, and flowing water (during millennium) v18:273; Judah to be inhabited forever (during millennium) v20:273; Jerusalem to eventually rule the nations (during millennium) v19:277

Judas chosen as one of twelve apostles v3:491; had charge of money bag v18:557; critical of waste of money by Mary v9:529, v5:555; rebuked by Jesus for bothering Mary v10:529, v7:555; goes to priests, offers to hand Jesus over v14:529; priests pay Judas thirty silver coins v16:529; Jesus reveals to other apostles Judas will betray him v16:557; Judas goes out into night from last supper v14:530; arrives with armed force to

arrest Jesus in olive grove v41:531, v1:561; identifies Jesus with kiss v42:531; filled with remorse v21:532; returns money then hangs himself v24:532; fell, body burst open and intestines spilled out v13:569; priests use money of Judas to buy burial field for foreigners v26:532, v13:569; none have been lost except the Son of Perdition v24:560; new apostle chosen to replace Judas v12-16:569

judgement day when the day of judgement comes I will punish them for their sin v3:74; God to judge every person at appointed time v20:218; God will judge you for every deed, nothing is hidden from him v6:221; Lord to judge every person according to their ways v32:364; Job affirms belief in a day of judgement v23:437; Lord will surely reward each person according to what they have done, Psalm 30 v6:449, v20:629; axe laid at foot of tree v7:487; with the same judgement you judge others, you also will be judged v1:494; many shall say to me on the day of judgement v22:495; parable of forgiving moneylender v35:495; more bearable for Sodom on day of judgement than town that rejects apostles v10:498, v16:512; parable of the unmerciful servant v20-27:510; men of Nineveh will rise on day of judgement and condemn this generation v24:501; every careless word to be accounted for on day of judgement v35:501; twelve apostles to sit on thrones and judge twelve tribes of Israel v53:519, v10:530; all peoples to be separated, like sheep from goats v23:528; all judgement given to Jesus by the Father v16:547; words of Jesus will condemn unbelievers on day of judgement v34:556; repent, for God has set a day to judge the world by Jesus v28:585; we will be judged by the mercy we show others v8:599; Lord to expose motives of people's hearts v41:608; saints to judge the world and angels v15-16:609; we must all appear before judgement seat of Christ v10:618; Eternal Life awaits the kindly but wrath awaits the selfish v21:629; we will all one day stand before God and give an account of ourselves v5:633; all who do wrong will pay for their wrongdoing v14:637; unbelievers will have to account for their sins v21:659; judgement to begin with those who belong to God v33:660; ungodly held until day of judgement to be punished v22:662; hour of God's judgement to come in last days v9:693; John sees those given authority to judge seated on thrones v1:698; John sees vision of day of judgement v13-19:699; I saw the dead great and small, standing before the throne, and the books were opened v15:699

judges of Israel chief judge and priests to decide difficult cases 10:111; man who shows contempt for judges to be put to death v11:111; Othniel the first judge of Israel, judges 40 years v7:134; Ehud judges Israel v1-22:134; Deborah the prophetess judges Israel v3:135; Shamgar judges Israel v23:135; Gideon judges Israel 40 years 1-6:139; Abimelech judges Israel 3 years v1:140; Tola judges Israel 23 years v1:141; Jair judges Israel 22 years v2:141; Jephthah judges Israel 6 years v38:142; Izbaz judges Israel 7 years v39:142; Elon judges Israel 8 years v40:142; Abdon judges Israel 8 years v41:142; Samson judges Israel 20 years v35:146; Eli judges Israel 40 years v16:158; Samuel judges Israel all his life v1:160; Samuel appoints his two sons as judges, but they are dishonest v2:160

judging who made you a judge over us? v23:50; Moses advised to delegate judging of people v23-29:62; David blesses Abigail for her good judgement v22:175; a righteous man judges fairly v19:363; do not show partiality in judging v9:471; when a king judges the poor with fairness his throne is secure v17:472; a man who lacks judgement belittles his neighbour v9:473; speak up and judge fairly v4:474; with the same judgement you judge others, you also will be judged v1:494; cease to judge superficially v18:549; I will not be a judge of such things v13:586; how can you take your disputes to be judged before world v14:609; why not rather suffer wrong than have lawsuits among you v19:609; mere man should not pass judgement on sinners v18:629; welcome him whose faith is weak without passing judgement v1:633

justice (general) commandments on justice v17-33:67; do not be lenient with a man just because he is poor v25:67; whoever withholds justice from the weak is cursed v8:115; a just ruler is like the light of sunrise on a cloudless morning v22:201; the Lord requires his people to act justly v13:277; the Lord delights in justice v40:327; can he who hates justice govern? v14:329; a wicked man will accept bribe to pervert

justice v15:468; an evil man has no understanding of justice v40:468; Job treated his servants and tenants with justice v46:438; justice more pleasing to the Lord than offering sacrifice v34:470; the first to present his case seems right, until another questions him v6:471; justice brings joy to the righteous v8:471; do not go hastily to court to testify what you have seen, you may be mistaken v1:473

justice criminal have nothing to do with a false charge, and do not put an innocent person to death v24:67; an executed person not to remain hanging overnight v6:113; forty lashes maximum for a crime v31:114; a person to die for own crime only v30:114; when sentencing is not quickly carried out, the people do wrong v12:220; the first to present his case seems right, until another questions him v6:471; whoever says to the guilty, you are innocent, will be cursed v9:471

Kenites Balaam's prophesy concerning, to be destroyed by Assyria v16:103

Keturah Abraham's wife, bears him six sons v39:28

kidnapping a kidnapper to be put to death v7:66

kindness Boaz ever stopped showing kindness to living and dead v16:152; to whom I can show kindness for Jonathan's sake? V16:187; if you speak kind words to these people they will always be your servants v29:211; I led you with kindness and with love v19:252; the Lord delights in kindness v40:327; be kind to the poor, that your prosperity be prolonged v17:386; a kind hearted woman gains respect v3:465; kindly teaching is ever on her tongue v21:465; proverbs on kindness ch14:472; he who is kind to the poor lends to the Lord who will reward him v3:472; if your enemy hungers give him food, the Lord will reward you v7:472; a kind word cheers a man's soul v9:472; he who is kind to others benefits himself v10:472; do not say to your neighbour, come back tomorrow, when you have what he wants with you v3:473; love your enemies and be kind to them v23:492; God is kind to the ungrateful and the wicked v24:492; do your acts of kindness in secret v7:493; whoever gives you a cup of water shall be rewarded v30:511; parable of good Samaritan v24-27:512; caring people to inherit kingdom of God v25:528; I was a stranger and you welcomed me in v26:528; I was in prison and you visited me v26:528; whatever you do for least of my brothers you do for me v28:528; encourage the timid, help the weak v22:603; be kind to one another v23:603; when we are slandered we answer kindly v48:609; love is kind v16:614; kindness a fruit of the Holy Spirit v7:626; share with saints in need, practice hospitality v8:633; clothe yourselves with kindness v1:637; be kind and tender-hearted v18:642; be peaceable, considerate, and courteous toward all v27:649; be kind and humble v7:659; make every effort to increase your brotherly kindness v5:661; do not neglect hospitality to strangers v9:671; remember those in prison v10:671

King of kings above them all rules the King of the whole earth v14:218; my eyes have seen the King, Jehovah Almighty v21:275; Jehovah the King of Israel is with you v10:315; Jehovah is the true God the Eternal King v45:328; he shall even rise up against the King of kings v20:390; your King is coming to you, humble and riding on a donkey v6:407; in that day Jehovah will be King over the whole earth v22:409; all nations will go up to Jerusalem year after year to worship the King Jehovah Almighty v28:409; I am a great King and my name is to be great among all nations v11:430; who is this King strong and majestic, he is Jehovah Almighty the King of glory, Psalm 16 v2:447; God is King of all the earth, Psalm 61 v3:455; shout for joy before Jehovah the King, Psalm 99 v3:463; let this Christ, this King of Israel come down now from the cross v10:535; blessed be God, the King of kings v32:653; he is Lord of lords and King of Kings v16:696; on his robe and thigh is written this name, King of kings v17:698

kingdom of God (See also Heaven, New Jerusalem, New Earth, Paradise) to be established on earth during fourth empire (Roman) v29:384; a rock that is to fill the world v30:384; great is your reward in the kingdom of God when persecuted for righteousness v15:491; your righteousness must exceed that of Pharisees to enter v15:494; seek first the kingdom of God and all these things will be yours v36:494; not everyone who says to me Lord, Lord will enter the kingdom of God v21:495; anyone who looks back unfit to enter in v19:496; forceful men will grasp hold of the kingdom of God v9:499; given to you to understand secrets of the kingdom of God, but

not to them v9:502; parables of Jesus on the kingdom of God ch14:502, v20-27:510, v58-67:520, v40-50:523, ch29:527; knowledge of the kingdom of God like new treasure added to old v46:504; Peter given keys to the v13:508; Son of Man to come in the glory of the v22:508; you will never enter the kingdom of God unless you repent and become like little children v6:509; many non-Israelites will enter and many Israelites will be thrust out v15:516; blessed is man who shall eat bread in v29:516; the kingdom of God is here among you now v1:518; the kingdom of God belongs to little children v33:519; harlots to enter kingdom ahead of priests and teachers of the Law v26:522; easier for camel to pass through eye of needle than rich man to enter v49:519; you are not far from the kingdom of God v21:524; caring people to inherit the kingdom of God v25:528

Jesus to not eat Passover again with apostles until fulfillment in kingdom of God v6:529; no one can see, unless born again from above v2:544; Philip preached good news of v10:575; must go through many persecutions to enter v19:582; you are worthy of the Kingdom of God v4:604; no fornicator, idolater, adulterer, male prostitute, sodomite, thief, greedy person, drunkard, slanderer or swindler will inherit v21:609; flesh and blood cannot inherit v21:616; Kingdom of God is righteousness, peace, and joy in the Holy Spirit v9:633; the Lord will bring me safely to his heavenly kingdom v34:656; the world to become the kingdom of our God and his Christ in last days v1:691

kings (See also kings of Israel and Judah, kings of Northern Israel, rulers, King of kings) four kings from north attack five kings of Jordan valley v12:21; Melchizedek king of Salem v18:21, v30:669; kings to descend from Abram v14:23, v19:23; Israelite kings not to be foreigners, to be chosen by Jehovah v11-12:111; Israelite kings not to acquire many horses v14:111; Israelite kings not to take many wives or accumulate much wealth v15:111; Israelite kings to write out a copy of the Law and read it often v17:111; exile of Israelites and king foretold v52:116; Israelites ask Samuel for a king v3:160; Samuel prophesies disadvantages of a king v6-9:161; Samuel explains the rights and duties of a king v10:162; Saul anointed as first king of Israel v30:162; blessed the nation whose king is of noble birth v19:220; the king of Nineveh humbly repents v7:248; proverbs on kingship and ruling ch12:471; mouth of a king should uphold justice v4:471; a large population a king's glory v5:471; a just king gives a nation stability v10:471; the heart of a king is in the hand of the Lord v12:471; a wise king winnows out the wicked v13:472; remove the wicked from a king's presence and his reign will be righteous v14:472; when a king is fair to the poor, his throne is secure v17:472; a king's wrath brings death v20:472; kings of rebellious people have short reigns v24:472; not for kings to drink wine lest they forget the Law of God v2:474; people want to make Jesus king v10:548; you say that I am a king, for this I was born v12:562; shall I crucify your king? v32:562; notice fastened to cross read, Jesus of Nazareth, King of the Jews v3:562; faithful men to reign as kings in kingdom of God v43:608

kings of Israel and Judah Saul anointed as first king of Israel v30:162; David anointed king of Judah v22:183; Ish-Bosheth, son of Saul made king of all Israel except Judah v25:183; Ish-Bosheth assassinated and David made king of all Israel v27-34:185; Solomon anointed king of Israel v17:201; Rehoboam son of Solomon becomes king of Israel v24:211; northern tribes of Israel reject Rehoboam v34:211; Rehoboam remains king of Judah only v1:260; Abijah son of Rehoboam becomes king of Judah v18:261; Asa son of Abijah becomes king of Judah v33:262; Jehoshaphat son of Asa becomes king of Judah v32:263; Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat becomes king of Judah v4:265; Ahaziah son of Jehoram becomes king of Judah v18:266; Joash son of Ahaziah becomes king of Judah v34:266; Amaziah son of Joash becomes king of Judah v9:267; Uzziah son of Amaziah becomes king of Judah v1:275; Jotham son of Uzziah becomes king of Judah v13:275; Ahaz son of Jotham becomes king of Judah v1:281; Hezekiah son of Ahaz becomes king of Judah v1:284; Manasseh son of Hezekiah becomes king of Judah v1:307; Amon son of Manasseh becomes king of Judah v11:309; Josiah son of Amon made king of Judah v15:309; Jehoahaz, son of Josiah becomes king of Judah v9:326; Jehoahaz deposed by Pharaoh Neco and his brother Eliakim made king of Judah, name changed to

CONCORDENCE

KINGS OF NORTHERN ISRAEL

Jehoiachim v11:326; Jehoiachin son of Jehoiakim, becomes king of Judah v4:339; Zedekiah uncle of Jehoiachin appointed king of Judah by Nebuchadnezzar v29:341; Judah exiled to Babylon v13:348; Herod (the Great) king of Israel v1:482; Herod son of Herod (the Great) king of Galilee v1:488; Agrippa king of Judea v12:592

kings of Northern Israel Jeroboam made king over all Israel except Judah v36:212; Nadab son of Jeroboam becomes king of Northern Israel v47:225; Baasha kills Nadab and becomes king of Northern Israel v2:3:225; Elah son of Baasha becomes king v8:225; Elah's chariot commander Zimri becomes king v9:225; Zimri rejected and Omri made king v15:226; Ahab son of Omri becomes king v17:226; Ahaziah son of Ahab becomes king v1:233; Joram brother of Ahaziah becomes king v16:233; Jehu anointed king by Elisha's instruction to young prophet v13-16:242; Jehoahaz son of Jehu becomes king v4:245; Jehoash son of Jehoahaz becomes king v11:245; Jeroboam son of Jehoash, becomes king v1:246; Zechariah son of Jeroboam becomes king v1:257; Zechariah assassinated by Shallum who becomes king v3:257; Shallum assassinated by Menahem who becomes king v4:257; Pekahiah son of Menahem becomes king v9:257; Pekahiah assassinated by Pekah who becomes king v10:257; Pekah assassinated by Hoshea who becomes king v14:257; Hoshea taken captive by Assyria and Northern Israel exiled v18:258; exiled people of Northern Israel never return v21:258

knowledge (See also Tree of Knowledge, wisdom, secret knowledge) Adam commanded not to eat fruit of Tree of Knowledge v8:15; Eve eats the forbidden fruit and gives some to Adam v4-5:15; the man has become as one of us, knowing good and evil v22:16; Solomon acquires great knowledge v11:217; with much knowledge comes much sorrow v11:217; God gives knowledge to the man who pleases him v30:217; Israel's priests reject knowledge v3:250; Lord desires knowledge of God more than sacrifice v22:251; your knowledge misleads you v14:304; Israel's watchmen lack knowledge v10:308; both prophet and priest are without knowledge v12:330; to these four young men God gave knowledge, learning and wisdom v17:383; Daniel, I have come to give you knowledge and understanding v8:392; a priest ought to speak with knowledge v19:430; proverbs on wisdom and knowledge ch5:467; a prudent man acts out of knowledge v60:468; he who welcomes correction loves knowledge v61:468; not good to have zeal without knowledge v62:468, v33:631; wise men store up knowledge v63:468; the lips of the wise spread knowledge v49:471; a man of knowledge uses words with restraint v57:471; teachers of Law have taken away key of knowledge v19:513; there is secret knowledge of God, only taught to the spiritually mature v23:608; secret knowledge is not understood by a man without the Holy Spirit v26:608; knowledge puffs up, but love builds up v10:611; knowledge a gift of the Holy Spirit v4:613; if I lack eloquence in speaking, I do have knowledge v21:620; treasures of knowledge are hidden in Christ v5:636; may your love abound with knowledge v7:645; reject the godless babble falsely called Knowledge v33:653; make every effort to increase your knowledge v5:661

Korah leader of Levite rebellion v9:97; consumed by fire with 250 followers v30:98

Laban Abraham's grand-nephew and brother of Rebekah v18:28; agrees to give Jacob his daughter Rachel in return for seven years work v21:31; Laban deceives Jacob and gives him Leah instead v26:32; gives Rachel also, in return for another seven years work v30:32; Laban agrees to let Jacob have all speckled animals v28:33; removes all speckled animals from his flocks v30:33; Laban becomes jealous of Jacob v2:33; pursues Jacob when he secretly departs v14:33; God appears to Laban in a dream v16:33; Laban rebukes Jacob for departing secretly, accuses him of stealing v17:33; makes covenant with Jacob v34:34

Lake of Fire (See also Eternal Punishment, Death Second) depart from me you cursed into the Eternal Fire prepared for devil and his angels v29:528; Sodom and Gomorrah an example of those who will suffer punishment of Eternal Fire v7:665; Beast and False Prophet cast into Lake of Fire v23:698; death and Hades cast into Lake of Fire v18:699; Lake of Fire represents Second Death v18:699; anyone whose name not found in Book of Life cast into v19:699

Lamb (of God) God will provide the lamb my son v6:26; instructions from Lord regarding Passover lamb ch6:56; behold the Lamb of God who takes away sin of world v16-19:542; Christ a lamb without blemish, chosen from before creation of world v16:658; Jesus depicted as a lamb in visions of John v16:686; Beast will wage war against the Lamb v16:696; twenty-four elders fall down before the Lamb v19:686; Lamb to receive power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honour, glory, and praise v24:686; wedding of Lamb has come and Bride is ready v7:697; blessed those invited to wedding of Lamb v9:697; on foundations were written names of twelve apostles of the Lamb v14:699

lame priests who are lame not to make offerings to God v8:85; wrong to sacrifice crippled animals to Lord v7:430; the blind receive sight, the lame walk v4:498; great crowds came to Jesus bringing their lame v32:506; woman crippled by an unclean spirit healed by Jesus v6:515; rather, invite the poor, the crippled, the lame v27:516; Peter heals a man crippled from birth v4:570; Phillip heals those who were paralysed or crippled v7:575; a man crippled from birth healed by Paul v7:581; the lame shall leap like a deer (in millennium) v20:295

Lamech marries two wives, descendent of Cain v16:16; kills a young man v19:17

Lamech son of Methuselah, father of Noah v9:17

Lament David composes a lament in honour of Saul and Jonathan v10:183; David sings a lament at Abner's tomb v21:184; lament of Lord regarding fallen Israel v4-5:255; Jeremiah composed laments for Josiah v6:325; Lord's lament concerning king of Tyre v16:367; book of Lamentations by Jeremiah p378

lampstand seven branched lampstand to be made for Tabernacle v19:69; Solomon makes ten lampstands for Temple v42:207; Temple lampstands to be lit every evening v25:262; vision of golden lampstand by Zechariah v35:404; angel seen standing among seven lampstands v12:683; lampstands represent churches v19:683

land (See also ground) let the waters be gathered into one place and dry land appear v6:14; look north, south, east, and west, all the land you see I will give to your descendants v8:21; walk throughout the length and breadth of the land I am giving to you v10:21; give your father's family the best land of Egypt v45:33; there is nothing left for our lord except our bodies and our land v21:44; Joseph bought up all the land in Egypt v22:44; Asher's land will be rich in food v28:45; I have come down to bring them into a land flowing with milk and honey v6:51; during the seventh year let the land lie fallow and unharvested v40:65; in sixth year the land will yield enough for three years v41:65; if you defile the land it will vomit you out v45:67; land to have a year of rest in fiftieth year (Jubilee) v17:85; in year of Jubilee everyone is to reclaim his family land v19:85; reduce price of land according to number of crops left before land reverts to original owner v21:86; rural land not to be sold permanently v22:86; while you are exiled, your land will enjoy its Sabbath years v29:88; every daughter who inherits land must marry within her father's tribe v13:105; tribes of Reuben, Gad, and Manasseh assigned land east of Jordan v17:106; bloodshed pollutes the land v31:107; neighbour's produce can be eaten freely on his land v25:114; land in Canaan assigned by lot v12:128; Abimelech ruins crop land by sowing salt v18:140; empty land of Judah begins its 70 year Sabbath rest v30:349; you enrich the land abundantly and soften it with showers, Psalm 46 v3:452; you have kept some of the money you received for the land v5:572; Antichrist to distribute land for reward in last days v4:396; fertility and abundance of land (during millennium) v32-33:257, v18:273; a portion of land 25,000 cubits square set aside as a sacred district (during millennium) v1:374; land borders of Israel during millennium v11-15:376; land around Jerusalem to become like a plain (during millennium) v23:409

language (See also tongues speaking in) whole world had one language v12:19; God confuses language of whole world v18:20; a nation whose language you will not understand v3:117, v8:324; Daniel trained for three years in language of the Babylonians v3:383; king sends a decree to all parts of the empire in their own language v16:412, v12:414, v7:416; half their children cannot speak the language of Judah v19:428; the time coming when I shall no longer use this kind of language

but will tell you plainly of the Father v7:560; they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other languages v2:570; Jews bewildered, for each one heard apostles speaking in his own language v3-4:570

Last Supper See Lord's Supper

last days (See also latter days, Jesus Christ second coming of, Great Tribulation) Messiah to come again in last days and shepherd his flock v4:277; all things of war and idolatry to be destroyed in that day v7:277; earth to be almost empty of people in v8:277; Lord to come and devastate whole earth v1:288; will be few people on earth left alive v4:288; dead bodies will lie like refuse in streets v8:288; distant nations to invade Israel v13:288; invaders of Israel to roar like the sea v16:288; men's hearts to melt with terror v2:289; sinners of the world to be destroyed v3:289; darkness to come upon the earth v4:289; men to be scarcer than gold v5:289; great floods and earthquakes in last days v8:289; stars will fall from heaven v32:289, v31:526, v13:687; Egyptians to fear Judah in v11:291; multi-nation invading army to be destroyed in a night v21:291; whole earth to be consumed by fire v2:315; a day of wrath, distress and anguish v3:315; the guilty of the whole earth to be slain by the Lord v21:334, v8:343; every person on face of earth will tremble v11:370; Gog to lead a mighty army against Israel v2:370; great earthquake in Israel on day Gog attacks v10:370; every wall shall fall to the ground v11:370; armies of Gog to panic and turn on each other v13:371; blasphemous oppressive ruler (Antichrist) to arise v24:388; God's people to suffer much at hands of for three and a half years v26:388; Desolator (Antichrist) to arise during last seven years of age v15:392; half way through seven years he will put an end to sacrifice and offerings v15:392; Antichrist to set up abomination in Jerusalem, then be destroyed v17:393; a time of great tribulation such as has never occurred since beginning of nations v10:396; great tribulation to last three and a half years v15:396; pride of God's holy people to be finally broken v16:396; great tribulation to commence when daily sacrifice abolished in Jerusalem v21:396; Israelites to be like a warrior's sword against the sons of Greece on last day v9:407; nations who besiege Jerusalem in last days to suffer grievous hurt v1:408; cities of Judah to gain victory ahead of Jerusalem v5:408; two thirds of Israel to perish during time of distress, one third to be refined as silver and gold v6:408; Jews to weep when they see pierce marks on their Messiah's body v8:408; Zechariah's vision of second coming of Lord v15:409; day of second coming to be dark and cold, yet light at evening v18:409; flesh of invaders to rot as they stand v22:409; invading armies of Jerusalem to slay one another v24:409; a day of judgement for sinners v7:431; the righteous to leap joyously like calves released from stall (at second coming) v23:431; wicked to be ashes under feet of righteous v23:431; shall be great tribulation in final days, sun and moon darkened v31:526; great waves of the sea will roar and bring distress and terror v33:527; all nations will see Son of Man coming on clouds of heaven with power and great glory v35:527; angels to gather elect with loud trumpet call v36:527; sins of men in last days listed v6-8:655; men will possess a form of religion but deny its power v8:655; heavens and earth to be destroyed by fire v4:663; I will keep you safe from the hour of trial coming upon whole world v43:685; men to slay one another v4:686; famines on earth v5:687; fourth of earth to die by sword, famine, plague and wild animals v7:687; saints to be slain for testifying to the word of God v9:687; appointed number of saints to be killed v11:687; great earthquake to darken sun, turn moon blood red v12:687; vast number of saints to die during Great Tribulation of last days v9:688; faces of Father and Son to be seen, unbelievers to hide v15:688; plagues of the seven trumpets ch6:688; a blazing mountain falls into sea, one third of fish and ships destroyed v9:688; great day of wrath coming v15:688; blazing star falls on third of rivers, poisoning water v11:689; light on earth darkened by third v13:689; locust-like creatures sting men as scorpions for five months v15:689, v25:689; smoke from Pit to darken sun v16:689; men shall long to die but death shall elude them v20:689; a third of mankind killed by army of 200,000,000 v27:689; survivors still do not repent v34:689; Jerusalem to be trampled by Gentiles three and a half years and v12:690; two prophets to witness from Jerusalem for three and a half years v13:690; two prophets given great power to strike earth with plagues v15:690; Beast to eventually kill two

prophets v16:690; all nations to gaze on dead bodies of prophets and rejoice v19:690; the two prophets will return to life and ascend into heaven v21:690; severe earthquake to afflict Jerusalem, 7000 die v22:690; earthquake and a great hail on earth v6:691; church to be protected during final three and a half years of last days v13:691; Michael and his angels hurl Satan from heavens v15:691; John sees a Beast (the Antichrist) arise from sea ch9:692; a False Prophet performs great miracles, deceives inhabitants of earth v3:692; whole world worships Satan by following Beast v5:692; Beast to exercise authority for three and a half years v7:692; Beast blasphemes God, given power over the nations v8:692; many saints destined to be captured or killed v11:692; image of the Beast set up, all who refuse to worship put to death v6:693; no one able to buy or sell without name or number of Beast in their hand or forehead v8:693; whoever worships or receives mark of Beast will bear God's fury v12:693; seven last plagues ch12:694; first plague, painful sores break out on those who have mark of the Beast v11:694; second plague, sea becomes like blood, everything in sea dies v12:694; third plague, rivers and springs of water become blood v13:694; fourth plague, sun becomes scorching hot v16:694; fifth plague, kingdom of Beast plunged into darkness v18:694; sixth plague, demons gather the kings of earth for great battle at Armageddon v24:695; seventh plague, tremendous earthquake collapses cities of the world v26:695; giant hailstones to fall v31:695; Beast who once lived but is dead to rise again from Pit v9:695; ten horns of the Beast are ten future kings v14:696; the Beast and ten kings to wage war against the Lamb v16:696; wedding of the Lamb has come and the Bride is ready v7:697; John sees Jesus riding white horse at second coming v12:698; Jesus clothed in robe dipped in blood v15:698; armies of heaven follow riding white horses, clothed in pure white v19:698; Beast and kings of earth gather to wage war against Jesus and armies of heaven v22:698; Beast and False Prophet cast into Lake of Fire v23:698; birds eat flesh of those who fall at Armageddon v26:698

latter days (See also last days, Jesus Christ second coming of, Millennium) Israel to be gathered again in latter days v21:252, v33:257; Lord to take pity on his people in latter days v22:272; Israelites to be abandoned by Lord from Messiah's day until gathered in latter days v2:277; Gentiles to assist with gathering of Israel in latter days v23:306; no Ark in Israel in days to come v8:323; in latter days Israelites will have gathered to Israel from many nations v6:370; Israel to be land of unwalled towns v9:370; rest of the truth sealed up until latter days v14:396, v18:396; Redeemer shall stand upon the earth in latter days v20:437; nation to war against nation, earthquakes, famines and plagues in latter days v24:526; false prophets to arise and deceive many v26:526; children to rebel against parents and put them to death v27:526; wickedness to increase, love of most will grow cold v28:526; gospel to again be preached in all world in latter days v29:526; will be perilous times in latter days v6:655

Law of Moses (See also Commandments, Ten Commandments) given to Moses by Lord on Mount Sinai v11:68; Moses writes copy of Law on scroll and gives to priests v1:117; Law inscribed in plaster on rocks on Mt Ebal v2:125; Joshua reads aloud every word of Law in presence of people v3:126; Jehoshaphat teaches Law to people v4:263; Law changed by lying pens of scribes v31:327; blessed the man who delights in the Law of God, he is like a tree by a running stream, Psalm 88 v1:461; Joseph and Mary do all required by the Law v26:485; Jesus found in the Temple conversing with teachers of the Law v16:487; it is proper for us to do this to fulfil the Law (baptism of Jesus) v19:488; Law given through Moses, but grace and truth through Jesus Christ v7:542; not one of you keeps the Law v14:549; you could not be set free by the Law v31:581; we are saved by the grace of Jesus not the Law of Moses v10:583; thousands of Jews have believed and all are zealous for the Law v16:589; I believe everything laid down in the Law v12:592; man is not justified by the Law of Moses but by faith in Jesus Christ v23:624, v12:629, v23:624; the Law not based on faith v7:624; the Law was added to lead us to Christ v14:625; do not be again burdened by slavery to the Law v28:625; no one is righteous in God's sight by just observing the Law v10:629; you are not now under the Law but under the grace of God v7:630; you have been released from the Law that

we may serve in the new way of the Spirit v14:630; but the Law is holy, therefore love is the fulfilling of the Law v18-20:633; Jesus fulfilled the old Law v11:494, v13:636; the Law was added because of transgression, 430 years after Abraham v10-11:624; the Law likened to civil marriage v11:630; the Law was holy but enticed to sin v15-20:630; the Law only a shadow of things to come, the reality is Christ v15:636; avoid foolish arguments about the Law v30:649; the Law given not for the righteous but for sinners v7:651; the Law now set aside, for it was useless v46:669

lawsuits give double if someone sue you v4:492; settle matters quickly with him who is about to take you to court v34:492; if one sue you and take your coat, let him have your cloak also v4:493; is it not the rich who drag you into court? v4:599; how can you take your disputes to be judged before world? v14:609; why not rather suffer wrong than have lawsuits among yourselves v19:609

laying on of hands Israel puts right hand on Ephraim's head and left hand on Manasseh's v9:44; assemble all the Israelite men and have them each lay their hands on the Levites v9:93; Moses laid his hands on Joshua and appointed him before all the people v12:119; Jesus laid his hands on each one and healed them all v23:489; my daughter is dying, please come and lay your hands on her so she will live v39:497; the Twelve anointed many sick people with oil and healed them v22:498; Jesus did few miracles in Nazareth except to lay hands on a few and heal them v52:504; they begged Jesus to lay his hands on the man v33:506; Jesus spat on the man's eyes and laid his hands on him v2-4:507; Jesus laid his hands upon her and immediately she straightened up v7:516; parents brought their little children to Jesus to have him lay his hands upon them v32:519; those who believe shall lay hands on the sick and they will recover v6:538; the apostles prayed and laid their hands upon the seven v6:573; Peter and John laid their hands on those who had been baptised and they received the Holy Spirit v14:575; Simon the sorcerer asks to buy the power to lay on hands and give the Holy Spirit v15:575; Lord tells Ananias to lay his hands upon Saul to restore his sight v10:576; after fasting and praying they laid their hands on Barnabas and Saul and sent them off v5:580; when Paul laid his hands on them the Holy Spirit came upon them and they spoke in tongues and prophesied v13:587; after prayer Paul laid his hands on him and healed him v8:595; do not neglect the gift given when the elders laid their hands on you v23:652; be not too hasty in the laying on of hands v15:653; fan into flame the gift of God bestowed upon you through the laying on of my hands v6:654

Lazarus becomes sick and dies v1:554; in tomb four days when Jesus arrives v5-9:554; Jesus raises Lazarus from the dead v26:555; large crowd come out to see Lazarus v9:556; chief priests plan to kill v10:556

leaders (church) (See also priests) my people have been as lost sheep, their shepherds have led them astray v18:337; woe to the shepherds who are scattering my sheep v8:340, v16:407; my flock have become scattered for there are no caring shepherds v17:368; Peter told to strengthen his brothers when he is converted v18:530; I have set you an example, do as I have done v11:557; as I have loved you, love one another v22:557; apart from me you can do nothing v13:558; they have persecuted me so they will persecute you v29:559; feed my sheep v26:565; keep watch over the flock of which the Holy Spirit has made you shepherds v18:589; hold leaders in highest regard in love v21:603; church leaders only to judge those of church v12:609; Christ has called some to be apostles, some prophets, some evangelists, some pastors and teachers v6:642; Titus instructed to appoint bishops in every town v3:648; qualities of bishops and deacons v4-5:648, v2-11:651; must teach saints sound doctrine v14:648; teach older men to be a good example v15:649; teach older women to be reverent v16:649; train younger women to love husbands and children, to be sensible, chaste, busy, kind, subject to husbands v17:649; encourage younger men to be self-controlled v19:649; you must be a model example, show integrity, dignity and soundness of doctrine v20-21:649; rebuke with authority, let no one treat you with disrespect v26:649; if a man cannot govern his own household how can he care for God's church? v3:651; set believers an example in speech, conduct, love, faith and purity v21:652; do not rebuke an older

man but exhort him as if your father v25:652; treat older women as a mother, younger women as sisters v26:652; treat younger men as brothers v26:652; a servant of Lord must be kind to all and able to gently correct without arousing resentment v4:655; correct, rebuke and encourage with utmost patience v17:656; endure hardship, preach the good message and fulfil your ministry v20:656; bishops, be shepherds of the flock under your care 1:660; serve not for gain but because you are eager to serve v2:660; be examples to the flock v2:660; let your leaders work be a joy, not a burden v20:672; obey your leaders and submit to their authority v20:672; the seven stars in John's vision represent the leaders of seven churches v19:683

leadership See rulers, kings

Leah elder daughter of Laban, had tender eyes v22:32; Jacob marries Leah, believing she is Rachel v27:32; gives birth to six sons, Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar and Zebulun v1-20:32, v1:37; gives her maid servant Zilpah to Jacob as a wife v11:32; make this woman be like Rachel and Leah who built up the house of Israel v8:153

learning I have learned that with much knowledge comes much sorrow v11:217; I overthrew the learning of the wise and turn it into nonsense v2:303; God gave skill in all kinds of learning to these four young men v12:383; look to past generations, learn what our fathers learned v4:435; let the wise also listen and add to their learning v3:464; take my yoke upon you and learn from me, for I am meek and humble in heart v20:499; truth hidden from the self-wise and learned, but revealed to the humble v17:499; how did this man get such learning without having been taught? v11:549; Apollos was a learned man with a thorough knowledge of the scriptures v2:586; you are mad Paul, your great learning is turning you insane v33:593; continue in what you have learned, for from infancy you have known the scriptures v14:656; he learned obedience by that which he suffered v18:668

Leprosy (See also infectious sores) description of, infected person to be isolated v1-2:83; Miriam punished with leprosy for jealousy v12:95; Syrian army commander Naaman healed of leprosy v14:239; Gehazi and his descendants punished with leprosy v27:240; four lepers find Syrian camp deserted v33:241; Jesus heals a leper v9:496; heal the sick, cleanse those who have leprosy v6:498; they who have leprosy are cleansed v4:499; ten lepers healed by Jesus v6:511

Levi son of Jacob (Israel) and Leah v4:32; Levi and his brother Simeon kill the men of Shechem v13:36; descendants of Levi to be dispersed in Israel because of his fierce anger and cruelty v20:45; Levi revered the Lord v17:430

Levi tribe of Israel's dying blessing upon – to be dispersed in Israel v19-20:45; Moses' blessing upon – blessed with watching over and teaching of God's word v16:119; 12,000 servants of God to be sealed from in last days v4:688

Levites Levites kill 3000 rebellious Israelites v21:74; Levites blessed and set apart to Lord v22:74; houses of not to be sold permanently v27:86; to be in charge of Tabernacle v13:92; taken by Lord in place of firstborn Israelite males v24:92; purified, begin work at Tabernacle v6-13:93; only Levite men 30-50 years of age to serve at Tabernacle v14:93; census of taken at Mt Sinai v27:93; rebellion of Korah and 250 other Levites v9-32:97; Levites to bear responsibility for sins against Tabernacle v14:99; tithes of Israel to support Levites v19:99; only Levites to go near Tabernacle v23:99; second census of v7:105; towns and pasture lands to be allocated to v20:106; can minister anywhere in Israel v19:111; allotted towns in Canaan v18-20:129; Jonathan a Levite acts as priest to Micah v5-7:146; cart containing Ark stops in a Levite field v5:159; seventy Levites die after looking into Ark v8:160; Levites gather from northern Israel to live in Judah v2:260; Levites more conscientious than priests at purifying themselves v21:285; have enough to eat and plenty to spare due to tithes of people v17:286; not lawful to impose taxes upon any Levite v25:419; forty Levites return from exile to Jerusalem with Ezra v4:420; Levites instruct people from the book of the Law of God v5:426; assigned food tithes not given to Levites, Nehemiah rebukes leaders v6:428; a plea to the Lord from the Levites, Psalm 70:456; so also a Levite when he saw him, passed by on the other side v25:512; Levites to be purified when Lord returns v5:431; Levite priesthood to continue during millennium

v16:347; Levites to minister at Temple and again cook sacrifices during millennium v17:372; only Levites descended from Zadok to serve as priests during millennium v25:372, v30:374; descendants of ministering Levites to be as numberless as sand on the seashore (during millennium) v17:347

Libya joins with Egypt to attack Israel v9:261; to fall by hand of king of Babylon v9:368; Jews from Libya hear apostles in own language on day of Pentecost v5:570; to join with Gog in attacking Israel in last days v5:370, v7:396

life span (See also elderly) Adam dies aged 930 v3:17; Methuselah dies aged 969 v9:17; Abraham dies aged 175 v41:28; Jacob dies aged 147 v5:44; Eli was now 98 years old and blind v13:158; Jehoiada the high priest dies aged 130 v12:267; Israelites to enjoy long lives if commandments kept v3:109, v10:203; seventy years, the span of a king's life v15:305; our days are but 70 years, or 80 with strength, Psalm 1 v4:444; man's days like grass, he flourishes briefly then is gone, Psalm 31 v8:450; to reverse the Lord adds length to life, but the years of the wicked are cut short v5:474; Anna was 84 years of age v24:485; who by worry can add single hour to his span of life v31:493; he who dies at a 100 will be regarded as a young man (during millennium) v18:293; as the years of a tree will be the years of my people in that day (during millennium) v19:293

light God said, let there be light v2:14; the lights in the heavens to serve as signs and mark seasons v8:14; darkness covered Egypt three days, yet the Israelites had light v18:55; God is like the light of sunrise on a cloudless morning v22:201; no light in their words (mediums) v6:284; nations will come to your light v19:294; let us walk in the light of the Lord v3:295; the sun will no longer be your light for Jehovah will be your light v9:296; the law will go out from me as a light to the nations v5:297; none of you rely on God for his light, you all light your own lamps v8:306; the light of my face was precious to them v29:438; my God, clothed with light as a garment, Psalm 19 v1:447; the Lord is the fountain of life and source of light, Psalm 42 v3:451; the Lord is my light, Psalm 50 v1:453; the Saviour a light for the Gentiles v20:485; if your eye healthy your whole body is full of light v30:492; let your light so shine before others v29:492; Jesus, the light that shines in darkness v2:541; all who do evil hate the light v14:544; light has come into world, but men love darkness v14:544; whoever lives by truth will come into the light v15:544; Jesus the light of Eternal Life v9:551; every good gift comes from above, from the Father of Light v12:598; we are sons of light v18:603; Satan masquerades as an angel of light v28:621; what fellowship has light with darkness? v18:622; saints to inherit the kingdom of light v9:636; live as children of light v25:643; we have been called out of darkness into his wonderful light v22:658; God is light v4:674; walk in the light v6:674; whoever loves his brother lives in the light v15:674; day of second coming to be without daylight, but when evening comes there will be light v20:409

lion tribe of Judah likened to v21:45; Samson kills a lion with bare hands v26:143; David killed a lion when a shepherd v13:168; Benaiah killed lion in a pit on a snowy day v16:200; twelve lions on steps of Solomon's throne v28:210; a lion kills disobedient prophet v25:224; a lion kills disobedient prophet's assistant v33:230; Daniel thrown into the lions' den v9:391; a righteous man is as bold as a lion v19:469; the lion will eat grass as the ox (during millennium) v22:293, v5:295

lips See tongue Live See Eternal Life Living Water (See also Water of Life) Jesus able to give to Samaritan woman Living Water v5:545; by Living Water Jesus meant the Holy Spirit v36:550; church purified by Living Water v4:643; the Lamb shall be their shepherd, and lead them to springs of Living Water v11:688

loans (See also interest) poor not to be charged interest on loans v16:64; respect a person's privacy when taking security for a loan v27:114; not to take a widow's millstone or cloak as loan security v28:114; Israel will lend to many nations if commandments obeyed v22:116; Israel to borrow from foreigners if commandments not kept v41:116; he who puts up security for another will surely suffer v3:466; the borrower is servant to the lender v17:466; he who increases his wealth by excessive interest amasses it for another man v28:466; if you lend expecting to be repaid what credit is that to you v22:491;

lend without expecting anything in return v23:492; give to one who would beg or borrow from you v6:493; parable of the forgiving moneylender v35:495

locusts a plague of locusts invade Egypt v11:55; Moses prays and locusts blown into Red Sea v15:55; locusts may be eaten as food v10:81; to devour crops if commandments not kept v37:116; locusts devoured your trees, yet you did not return to me v2:255; Amos sees vision of locust swarm v9:256; severe locust invasion of Judah v1:271; fruit trees stripped bare v8:272; Lord to repay Israel for years the locusts ate v3:273; John's food locusts and wild honey v3:487; locust-like creatures to sting men as scorpions for five months in last days v15:689

Lord/Jehovah (See also God, God the Father, Jesus Christ, cloud of the Lord) Adam and Eve hear voice of Lord God Jehovah in the garden v7:16; men begin to call on name of the Lord Jehovah v2:17; Jehovah calls Abram v15:20; Lord visits Abraham with two angels v1:23; is anything too hard for the Lord? v11:24; Jehovah of the Lord appears to Moses in a burning bush v5:51; Jehovah the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob v12:51; Jehovah leads Israelites in a pillar of cloud v11:58; I am the Lord who heals you v4:60; Lord promises to speak to Moses in hearing of the people v6:62; Jehovah speaks with Moses face to face v16:62; Lord descends on Mount Sinai in presence of Israelites v15:63; Israelites tremble in fear at voice of Jehovah v1:64; the commandments of the Lord ch11-14:64; not to take name of Lord in vain v2:164; glory of Jehovah looked like fire on top of the mountain v14:68; Lord to meet with Moses above Ark v16:69; Lord gives Moses the two tablets of stone v37:73; reveals to Moses that the Israelites have made a calf idol v7:73; tells Moses he will destroy the Israelites v8:73; Jehovah to no longer lead Israelites himself but his angel v6:74; Lord relents at Moses' pleading v19:75; will take away sickness from Israelites if worshipped v10:75; Moses asks to see full glory of Lord v1:75; Jehovah proclaims his full name to Moses v9-10:75; Jehovah to show himself to Israelites v1:80; Jehovah emerges from Tabernacle in glorious splendour v3:80; fire from Jehovah consumes two of Aaron's sons v7:80; voice of Jehovah would speak with Moses from between two cherubim on Ark v15:80; Jehovah shall not reject Israelites completely v31:88; anger of Lord aroused by complaining of Israelites, sends fire among them v10:94; is the arm of the Lord too short? v20:94; Moses speaks face to face with Jehovah and sees his form v10:95; glory of Lord appears to all Israelites v5:96; Lord to destroy Israelites with plague for fearfulness v7:96; Lord curses Israelites to wander 40 years in desert v18:96; Lord remains with Israelites during 40 years wandering v3:97; fire flares out from Lord and consumes Korah and 250 followers v30:98; Lord commands Moses to speak to a rock and it will gush out water v5:99; commands Moses to make a bronze image of a snake on a pole v8:101; Lord angry with Israel for Baal worship, leaders to be put to death v3:104; love Jehovah with all your heart, soul and might v4:109; remember to praise the Lord for good land he has given you v10:109; Israel to be destroyed if they forget their God v13:109; Jehovah a jealous God v14:109; do not try Jehovah your God v15:109; Jehovah a great and awesome God v20:110; Jehovah a faithful God v24:110; Jehovah to raise up another prophet like Moses v1:112; no God besides Jehovah v29:118; Jehovah himself to go before Israelites into Promised Land v10:119; Lord speaks to Joshua, gives instruction to v1:121; anger of the Lord aroused by theft v1:124; leaders of Israel do not bother to enquire of the Lord and are deceived v14-16:126; love the Lord your God and serve him with all your heart and soul v3:129; as for me and my family we will serve the Lord v8:130; Lord will not now drive Canaanites before Israel v23:134; Lord speaks to Samuel v9:158; Lord tests obedience of king Saul v14:164; Lord grieved with Saul's disobedience v23:166; Lord rejects Saul as king v33:166; Lord looks upon the heart of a man, not the outward appearance v9:167; Lord angry with David, charges him with adultery and murder v3-12:190; Lord's conditional covenant with David, to always have a descendant on throne of Israel v29:202; Lord appears to Solomon in a dream, asks him to choose whatever he wants v4:203; blesses Solomon with wisdom, riches and honour v8:203; again appears to Solomon in a dream v10:209; Lord gives wisdom, knowledge and joy to the man who pleases him v30:217; Jehovah reveals his still quiet voice to Elijah on Mt

Sinai v18:229; Jehovah to defeat Syrians for saying he was not a God of the plains v23:230; Lord postpones curse upon Ahab when he humbles himself v20:231; Micahai sees Jehovah sitting on his throne v21:232; Lord blinds Syrian army to reality v10-13:241; seek the Lord and he shall show righteousness upon you v12:251; the anger of the Lord will not last forever v20:252; Lord does nothing without first revealing it to his prophets v14:255; seek good not evil then the Lord will be with you v7:256; Lord grants some deliverance to Judah when king and elders humble themselves v13:261; if sought, Jehovah will be found v9:262; Jehovah is with you when you are with him v9:262; the battle is not yours but Jehovah's v22:264; Lord causes invading armies to destroy each other v27:264; Lord angry with King Amaziah's idolatry v30:268; Lord tells the people to declare a holy fast v9:272; Jehovah your God is gracious and compassionate, slow to anger, abounding in love v20:272; Jehovah to take pity on his people in latter days v22:272; Jehovah will be a refuge for his people Israel in last days v15:273; Isaiah sees Jehovah in the Temple v17:275; Jehovah coming in power to tend his flock as a shepherd v11:292; Jehovah the only true God, there is no other v22:292; seek the Lord while he is near, he will freely pardon v10:293; thoughts of the Lord higher than man's thoughts v11:293; Lord longs to show Judah compassion v22:298; Jehovah a God of justice, blessed are all who wait for him v22:298; Jehovah Israel's only Saviour v4:302; Jehovah the Rock of Israel v7:302; those who hope in Jehovah will soar as an eagle v15:302; former prophecies of Jehovah have come to pass v23:303; Lord's love for Israel like a mother's love v18:306; Lord with those who are contrite and humble in spirit v21:308; punishes the guilty but cares for those who trust in him v2:312; pleads for genuine reform from Judah v4:326; Lord delights in kindness, justice and righteousness v40:327; blessed is he who trusts in the Lord, he will never fail to bear fruit v2:331; to the Lord the house of Israel is like clay in the hands of the potter v15:331; Lord will relent of a threatened disaster if a nation repents v17:331; the God of Israel made the earth and all on it v16:341; Lord rewards Ethiopian who saved Jeremiah v17:346; Ezekiel's vision of God, sees sapphire blue throne upon crystal expanse v16:356; Ezekiel sees glowing man seated upon the throne, enveloped in fire v18:356; glory of Jehovah again appears to Ezekiel v7:357; Jehovah will not be enquired of by idolaters v30:361; Lord is just, will judge every person according to their ways v32:364; Jehovah has destroyed his city and his holy house v28:379; Jehovah has done what he decreed v33:379; because of the Lord's great love exiled Judah yet have hope v60:380; Lord brings grief but is also compassionate v66:380; Jehovah displeased with the slothfulness of his people v11:399; Jehovah renews his covenant with returning exiles v23:399; Jehovah the Messiah to be glorified by Lord God Almighty (Jehovah the Father) v21:404; Jehovah the Messiah to be sent by the Lord God Almighty against nations that plundered Israel v21:404; Lord hates divorce v7:430; Lord wearied by evil being called good and his justice being doubted v9-10:430; Lord has no pleasure in Israel's offerings v10:430; will come suddenly to his Temple v2:431; pleads with Israel to return to him v8:431; Jehovah expresses his delight in Job to Satan v5:433; permits Satan to afflict Job to test his integrity v10:433; Jehovah suddenly appears to Job v1:440; rebukes Job and asks him unanswerable questions v3-26:440; restores Job's prosperity double v34:442; you know my every thought, Psalm 2 v2:444; you Jehovah are my rock, my fortress, my deliverer, Psalm 11 v1:446; my God mounted the cherubim and flew, soaring on wings of the wind, Psalm 11 v3:446; I have served him with reverence and trembling, Psalm 14 v5:446; Jehovah Almighty, the King of glory, Psalm 16 v2:447; no one whose hope is in the Lord ever put to shame, Psalm 24 v2:448; praise the Lord who forgives your sins and restores your health, Psalm 31 v2:449; trust in the Lord at all times O people, Psalm 30 v4:449; Lord is compassionate and gracious, slow to anger and abounding in love, Psalm 31 v5:449; Jehovah is righteous and loves justice, Psalm 35 v4:450; high as the heavens is his great love for those who honour him, Psalm 31 v6:450; from everlasting to everlasting is Lord's love for those who revere him, Psalm 31 v9:450; list of qualities of those who may dwell in presence of Lord, Psalm 38 v1:450; blessed is the nation whose God is Jehovah, Psalm 39 v3:451; Jehovah sees everything mankind does, Psalm 39 v4:451; those who look to

the Lord are radiant, Psalm 40 v4:451; blessed is he who takes refuge in the Lord, Psalm 40 v5:451; taste and see that the Lord is good, Psalm 40 v5:451; they who seek the Lord lack no good thing, Psalm 40 v6:451; Lord close to the broken hearted and crushed in spirit, Psalm 40 v10:451; Lord the fountain of life and source of light, Psalm 42 v3:451; sing praise to Jehovah, he who rides the ancient skies, Psalm 53 v5:453; Jehovah withholds no good thing from those who walk uprightly before him, Psalm 64 v8:456; Jehovah knows every bird, for all the earth is his, Psalm 69 v4:456; Jehovah says, if my people would listen to me I would subdue their enemies, Psalm 76 v7:458; O Lord, you have renounced your covenant with David, Psalm 84 v7:461; give thanks to the Lord for he is good, his love endures forever, Psalm 85 v1:461; give thanks to Lord for his unfailing love, Psalm 85 v4:461; make a joyful noise to the Lord of the earth, Psalm 89:461; Lord blesses the household of a righteous man v3:469; hearts of all men lie open before the Lord v28:469; Lord far from the wicked but hears prayers of the righteous v59:469; Lord disciplines those he loves v1:471; trust in the Lord with all your heart and lean not to your own understanding v2:471; commit to Lord what you do and your plans will succeed v3:472; no plan can succeed against the will of the Lord v6:472; John the Baptist to turn many back to Jehovah their God v8:483; Jehovah to redeem his people as he promised by his prophets long ago v34:484; why call me Lord and do not what I say v24:495; you shall love Jehovah your God with all your heart v21:512; crowd shout, blessed is he who comes in the name of Jehovah v22:521; when planning ahead say, if it be the will of the Lord v13:600; Lord full of compassion and mercy v20:600; to be shut out from majestic presence of Lord is Eternal Death v6:604; power of Lord made perfect in weakness v49:621; Lord rewards everyone for whatever good they do v14:643; one day is as a thousand years in eyes of the Lord v5:663; Jehovah to be seen and heard by all when he comes v13:292; all the Holy Ones to be with Jehovah at second coming v17:409; Jehovah Almighty to suddenly come and save besieged Jerusalem (at second coming) v18:288; Lord Almighty to hover over Jerusalem like a bird (at second coming) v28:289; every knee shall bow to Jehovah (during millennium) v23:292; holy name no longer to be profaned (during millennium) v17:371; Jehovah coming to live among his people (during millennium) v22:404; Jehovah to be with Jerusalem (during millennium) v10:315; Lord to reign over entire earth when he returns v5:297, v22:409; nations will come praising Jehovah (during millennium) v19:294; glory of Jehovah to replace sun in a time to come v9:296

Lord second coming of See Jesus Christ, second coming of

Lord's Supper Jesus eats the Last Supper Passover with his twelve apostles v6:529, v3:557; church meets on first day of week to break bread v6:588; the cup we bless and bread we break a sharing in the blood and body of Christ v22:612; significance of Lord's Supper explained by Paul v17-24:613; done in remembrance of Jesus v18:613; partaking of Lord's Supper unworthily a cause of ill health v21:613

Lot son of Haran v11:20; nephew of Abram (Abraham) v18:20; separates from Abraham and lives near Sodom v4:21; the two angels sent to destroy Sodom stay night with v1-4:24; offers his daughters to sexual deviants to protect angels v7:24; warns his sons-in-law to flee Sodom v12:24; urged by angels to flee Sodom v14-14; flees to Zoar v18:25; wife destroyed while lagging behind to watch destruction v20:25; daughters make Lot drunk and lie with him v25:25; descendants become Moabites and Ammonites v27-28:25; a righteous man distressed by filthy lives of wicked men v21:662

Lot's wife destroyed by burning sulphur during destruction of Sodom v20:25

love love the Lord your God v8:64; love your neighbour as yourself v9:64; commandments on love v8-20:64; be kind to your enemy v20:64; love Jehovah with all your heart, soul and might v4:109; love more delightful than wine v1:213; God gives Jonah a lesson in love v14:248; share your food with the hungry, shelter the homeless, clothe the naked v30:309; satisfy us with your love, that we may sing for joy, Psalm 1 v5:444; from everlasting to everlasting is the Lord's love for those who revere him, Psalm 31 v9:450; love covers all offences v3:472; love and faithfulness atone for sin v4:472; a true friend loves at

all times v5:472; he who forgives promotes love v6:472; he who refreshes others will at same time be refreshed v12:472; this is my beloved Son v21:488; love and pray for your enemies v17:491; if you love those who love you, what credit that to you v20:491; even sinners love those who love them v20:491; do unto others what you would have others do unto you v29:495; she has shown great love v39:495; parable of good Samaritan v24-27:512; anyone who loves family more than Jesus cannot be a disciple v1:517; the father was filled with love and compassion for son v20:517; the most important commandment is to love God with all your heart v16:524; second most important is to love your neighbour as yourself v18:524, v5:599, v20:633; God so loved the world that he gave his only begotten Son v12:544; the Father loves the Son v24:544, v14:547; Jesus loved Lazarus and his two sisters v3:554; the disciple whom Jesus loved was reclining next to him v14:557; as I have loved you, love one another v22:557; by this shall men know that you are my disciples v23:557; if you love me you will keep my commandments v40:558; he who loves me will obey my words v6:558; as the Father has loved me, so have I loved you v20:559; greater love has no man, than to lay down his life for his friends v22:559; Jesus shows love for his mother v11:563; Peter confirms his love for Jesus three times v18-25:565; we urge you to love more and more v7:603; knowledge puffs up, but love builds up v10:611; love is a more excellent gift of the Spirit v12-23:614; love defined by Paul v16-17:614; love never fails v18:614; do all things in love v38:616; serve one another in love v1:625; love a fruit of the Holy Spirit v7:626; bear one another's burdens v14:626; be devoted to one another in brotherly love v6:633; above all clothe yourselves with love v3:637; I appeal instead to your love v5:639; if he owes you anything, charge it to me v11:639; live a life of love, as Christ loved us v19:642; I pray you may comprehend the vastness of the love of Christ v39:642; I pray your love may abound more and more v7:645, v5:661; love comes from pure heart, clear conscience and sincere faith v5:651; our desire is to increase love among the saints v5:651; flee the passions of youth and pursue love v2:655; love one another deeply, from the heart v18:658; live in harmony and brotherly love v6:659; love covers a multitude of sins v24:659; spur one another on toward love and good works v4:670; O what great love the Father has bestowed upon us v1:674; love is of God v8:675; we ought to lay down our lives for our brothers v12:675; whoever closes his heart to his brother cannot love God v12:675; if we love one another, God lives in us v14:675; let us not love with words, only but with actions v14:675; God is love v17:675; perfect love drives out fear v19:675; whoever fears is not perfect in love v20:676; we love because he first loved us v21:676; this is love, that we obey his commandments v5:677; because of wickedness the love of most will grow cold in latter days v28:526

Luke author of gospel of Luke (traditional Bible); author of book of Acts, introduction by v1:569; Luke joins Paul on his second mission v9:583; often proved to us that he is zealous v9:619; Luke the beloved physician v7:638; only Luke is with me v26:656

lying (See also dishonesty, false witness, tongue) the serpent deceived me, and I did eat v13:16; Gibeonites deceive leaders of Israel v5-13:126; Gehazi's lies to prophet Elisha, punished with Naaman's leprosy v26:240; Jerusalem's people are liars v4:276; Lord coming in judgement against perjurers v7:431; if you desire to see many good days, keep your tongue from untruths, Psalm 40 v7:451; a fortune made by lying tongue is a fleeting bubble v27:466; a liar listens to a malicious tongue v16:470; Lord detests lying lips v42:470; the devil is a liar v23:551; Ananias and wife lie to the Holy Spirit, both fall down dead v3-11:572; do not associate or eat with a slanderer v11:609; no slanderer will inherit the kingdom of God v21:609; entirely rid yourselves of lying v26:637, v19:658; lying ungodly and sinful v7:651; whoever denies Jesus is the Christ is a liar v23:674; no lie to be found in mouths of 144,000 blameless men v7:693; all liars to suffer Second Death v8:699; anybody who loves falsehood never permitted to enter New Jerusalem v11:701

madness the sights you see will drive you mad v49:116; David feigns madness to escape Philistines v10:172; he is possessed of a demon and raving mad v46:553; you are mad Paul, your great learning is turning you insane v33:593; if unbelievers came in, would they not say you are all mad?

v38:614; I am mad to talk like this v35:621; Balaam's donkey restrained the prophet in his madness v28:662

magicians magicians could not interpret Pharaoh's dreams v1:40.; magicians could not interpret Nebuchadnezzar's dream v2-8:383; Daniel and his companions ten times better than all magicians in Nebuchadnezzar's kingdom v14:383; carry on with your magic spells and sorceries, perhaps you will succeed v15:304

Magog second son of Japheth son of Noah v8:19; future ruler of Meshech and Tubal in last days v1:370; fire to fall on land of Magog in last days v16:371; Satan to deceive nations after millennium, as did Gog of Magog v9:698

Malachi prophet, accuses people of breaking God's covenant v1:430; curses men who marry foreign women to be cut off from Israel v3:430; condemns unfaithful husbands v4:430; accuses people of withholding tithes v10:431; prophecies coming of Elijah and second coming of Lord ch3:431

man let us make man in our own image v14:14, v3:612; God forms Adam from dust of earth v15:14; not good for man to be alone v10:15; a man to join to his wife and the two become one flesh v13:15, v23:519; the man has become like one of us, knowing good and evil v22:16; whoever sheds the blood of man, to have his own blood shed v25:18; lot of man not happy v9:217; God has placed eternity in heart of man v17:217; nothing better for a man than to be content and do good while he lives v18:217, v23:218, v12:219; man made little lower than God, and crowned with glory and honour, Psalm 34 v4:450; man cannot serve both God and wealth v28:493; the Sabbath made for man v7:500; what does it profit a man if he gains the whole world yet loses his own soul v20:508; a man's life of does not consist of an abundance of possessions v4:514; a man has no greater love than to lay down his life for his friends v22:559; a man should pray with his head uncovered v2:612; man did not come from woman, but woman from man v4:612; man was not created for woman, but woman for man v4:612; neither women nor men independent of each other v6:613

Manasseh firstborn son of Joseph v22:41; adopted by his grandfather Israel (Jacob) v7:44

Manasseh tribe of Israel's dying blessing upon, to increase greatly on the earth v12:44; first census of 32,200 v11:92; second census 52,700 v4:105; Moses blessing upon, to gore nations, even at ends of the earth v22:119; half tribe of assigned lands east of Jordan v8-17:106; land in Canaan assigned to by lot v22:128; ask Joshua for more land v25:128; 12,000 servants of God to be sealed from in last days v4:688

Manasseh (king) does much evil, idolatry, sorcery, sheds much innocent blood v4-8:308; erects carved Asherah pole inside Lord's Temple v7:308; sacrifices own sons by fire v7:308; rebuked by Lord v9-22:308; has done more evil in land than Canaanites who preceded him v1:309; disaster to come upon v2:309; Assyria attacks and Manasseh taken prisoner to Babylon v5:309; Manasseh humbles himself greatly and is restored to his throne in Jerusalem v6:309; abandons idolatry and worships Lord v8:309; dies and son Amn becomes king v11:309

mandrake plants Reuben finds out in fields, gives to his mother Leah v14:32; Rachael obtains the mandrakes from Leah v17:32

manna thin flakes appear on ground in desert overnight v16:60; Lord gives instructions for gathering v12:60; not to be kept overnight except on sixth day v19:61; become full of maggots and stink when kept overnight v20:61; no manna found on Sabbath day v24:61; taste and appearance of v28:61; some kept to show future generations v29:61; Israelites complain about v5:101; manna ceases to fall the day after Passover in Canaan v21:123; manna sent from God the Father v21:548; to him who overcomes I will give some of the Hidden Manna v21:684

mansions though you have built mansions you will not live in them v28:255, v26:284; sheep will graze among the ruined mansions of the rich v29:284; their bodies decay in the grave, far from their mansions, Psalm 62 v6:455; where my Father dwells there are many mansions v27:558

Marah (oasis) water at Marah bitter, purified by a tree v2:60

Mark author of gospel of Mark (traditional Bible); Peter goes

CONCORDENCE

to house of Mary, mother of Mark v10:579; Mark goes with Saul and Barnabas on first mission as helper v6:580; Mark abandons mission and returns to Jerusalem v15:580; Paul refuses to take Mark on second mission, v22:583; goes on mission with Barnabas v22:583; has often proved he is zealous v9:619; cousin of Barnabas v3:637; bring Mark when you come v27:656; Peter refers to Mark as his son v12:660

marriage not good for man to be alone v10:15; a man to join to his wife and the two become one flesh v13:15, v23:519; Adam named his wife Eve v1:16; Lamech married two women v16:16; commandments on marriage v20:28-66; not to marry any close relative v20:66; not to marry both a woman and her daughter v26:66; intermarriage of Israelites with Canaanites forbidden by Lord v17:109, v5:130; laws regarding marriage of captive women v20:112; a man not to remarry his divorced wife after she has been married to another man v12:113; he who lies with an unbetrothed girl must marry her v16:113; newly married men exempt from military duty v14:113; a brother-in-law required to marry a sonless widow to raise sons for his dead brother v33:114; Israelites intermarry with Canaanites v2:134; seven day wedding feast of Samson v1-16:143; Ezra appalled at sin of intermarriage by Jewish men v1-3:420; men send away their foreign wives and children v26:421; returned exiles promise not to intermarry with the peoples around them v20:427; Nehemiah curses and beats Jews who had married foreign women v20:428; was it not because of marriages like these that Solomon sinned? v21:428; Malachi curses Jews who marry foreign women, to be cut off from Israel v2:430; unfaithful husbands condemned v4:430; Lord was witness to marriage covenant between you and the wife of your youth v5:430; Lord hates divorce v7:430; do not be unfaithful to your wife v8:430; royal wedding song of Solomon, Psalm 60:455; proverbs on women and marriage ch3:465; worth of a noble wife far above rubies v11-24:465; rejoice with the wife of your youth v24:465; avoid the adulteress who has broken her marriage covenant before God v13:467; earth trembles under an unloved married woman v7:474; whoever divorces their spouse and marries another, commits adultery against former spouse v27:519; what God has joined together let no man put apart v24:519; dead do not marry after resurrection v12:524; marry to avoid temptation to immorality v1:610, v22:611; wise that the single not marry, in view of impending crisis v16:611; man not created for woman, but woman for man v4:612; neither women nor men independent of each other v6:613; Paul's advice to widows on remarriage v24:611, v9:652; the head of the woman is her husband, the head of the husband is Christ v1:612, v3:643; wives, submit to your husbands as is fitting in Lord v8:637, v3:643; husbands love your wives, be not be harsh with them v9:637; husbands love your wives as Christ loves the church v4:643; a husband ought to love his wife as if she were his own body v5:643; let each man love his wife as himself and each wife show respect for her husband v8:643; false teachers will forbid marriage v15:652; the marriage bed should be kept undefiled, for God will judge fornicators and adulterers v11:671

Martha (sister of Mary) welcomes Jesus into her home v36:512; anxious about many tasks of food preparation v38:513; goes out to meet Jesus v11:554; sees her brother Lazarus raised from dead by Jesus v27:555

Mary (sister of Martha) sits at feet of Jesus listening to what he taught v37:512; commended by Jesus for choosing what is better v39:513; sees her brother Lazarus raised from dead by Jesus v27:555; anoints Jesus with expensive perfumed oil v3:555

Mary (mother of Jesus) virgin of Nazareth, angel visits, to give birth to a son and name him Jesus v14-16:483; visits Elizabeth v24:483; Elizabeth and Mary prophesy v28:483; betrothed to Joseph, he decides to divorce her v2:484; angel instructs Joseph to marry Mary v3:484; Jesus born in a stable at Bethlehem v7:484; sword of sorrow to pierce heart of Mary v22:485; went to Jerusalem each year for Feast of Passover v13:487; asks Jesus to provide more wine v2:543; sets out with sons to take charge of Jesus v17,41-42:501; Jesus commits to apostle John's care v11:563; devotes herself to prayer with apostles and her sons v11:569

Mary Magdalene one of a group of women at the cross who provided for Jesus v27:535; seven demons had come out from

MARRIAGE

v27:535; goes to tomb with other women early Sunday morning to embalm Jesus v6:536; finds tomb of Jesus open and empty, runs to tell disciples v1-2:563; returns again to tomb, sees two angels inside v22:537, v8:564; first to see and speak with resurrected Jesus v15:564

Massah name given by Moses to place at Horeb where Israelites rebelled v7:61

Matthew author of gospel of Matthew (traditional Bible); former tax collector, called to be a disciple by Jesus v19:490; holds feast for Jesus and disciples v20:490; chosen as one of twelve apostles v3:491

Matthias chosen to replace Judas as one of twelve apostles v15:569

meat eating of meat permitted after the flood, but must first drain blood v22:18, v35:68; meat not to be eaten if animal torn by wild beasts v34:68; do not eat the fat of cattle, sheep or goats, the fat is the Lords v36:79; wherever you live, you shall not eat fat or blood, a law for all generations v40:79; clean and unclean animals v1-13:81; Israelites crave meat in desert v12:94; Israelites kill quail for two days and dry meat v2:95; before meat all eaten Lord strikes people with plague v3:95; Daniel resolves not to defile himself with the royal meat v6:383; if the meat I eat causes my brother to fall I will never eat meat again v9:611

Medes I will stir up the Medes who care not for silver or gold v33:304; Babylon overthrown by Darius the Mede v17:390

mediums (See also fortune telling, sorcery) do not consult a medium, you will be defiled v34:65; mediums to be put to death v35:65; let no one among you become a medium or spiritist who consults the dead v22:111; Saul consults a medium v14-33:176; men say, consult mediums, who whisper and mutter v5:284; why consult the dead? v6:284; compare what mediums say to the written Law of God, there is no light in their words v6:284; I will bring their plans to nothing, though they consult with spirits of the dead v6:291; mediums consulted by Manasseh v7:308; Josiah rids land of mediums v9:311

meekness See humility

Melchizedek priest of God and king of Salem v18:21, v30:669; Abram gives a tithe of plunder to v21:21; Melchizedek blesses Abram v19:21; a priest forever after the order of Melchizedek, Psalm 54 v4:454; Jesus Christ a priest forever after order of Melchizedek v16:668; Melchizedek means king of righteousness v31:669; order of Melchizedek priesthood not dependent on ancestry v31:669; Melchizedek greater than Abraham v32:669; Melchizedek priesthood greater than Levitical priesthood v35:669; perfection not attained through Levitical priesthood but by order of Melchizedek priesthood v37:669; Melchizedek priesthood office confirmed with an oath v40:669

Menahem assassinates Shallum and becomes king v4:257; attacks city of Tiphshah, rips open all pregnant women v5:257; dies and his son Pekahiah becomes king v9:257

menstruation man not to lie with a woman during v28:66; laws on menstrual uncleanness v37-40:82; shall cast them away as you would a menstrual cloth v11:292

Mephibosheth son of Jonathan, David shows kindness to v20:188; Saul's servant Ziba to serve Mephibosheth v22:188; Mephibosheth accused of rebelling against David v33:194; Mephibosheth tells David his version of events v11:197; Mephibosheth to divide inheritance with Ziba v15:197

mercy let us fall into the hands of the Lord for his mercy is great v11:198; Lord desires mercy not sacrifice v22:251; love mercy v13:277; Lord delights to show mercy v12:277; the Lord will have mercy on them for he freely pardons v10:293; they are cruel and show no mercy v27:325; show mercy to one another v3:406; goodness and mercy shall follow me all my days, Psalm 15 v5:447; have mercy on me O God, blot out my transgression, Psalm 23 v1:448; he has heard my cry for mercy, Psalm 26 v9:449; the poor man pleads for mercy, but the rich man answers harshly v46:466; blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy v12:491; be merciful, as your Father in heaven is merciful v25:492; we will be judged according to the mercy we show v8:599; I will have mercy on whom I have mercy v19:631; I, the worst of sinners (Paul) was shown mercy v12:651

Meribah waters of place where water gushed from a rock in Desert of Zin v8:100

Messiah (See also Christ, Jesus Christ, Son of Man) sceptre not to depart from Judah until the Messiah (the Christ) comes v22:45; prophecy of birth in Bethlehem v1:277; Lord to come as Messiah, to preach good news on earth v25:306; Messiah to come from Galilee v1:307; to be descended of David v5:307; Messiah to be a man of sorrows v7:307; Messiah to be pierced v10:307; to be arrested, judged and go like a lamb to the slaughter v15:307; tomb of Messiah to be with the rich v16:307; to be resurrected and see fruit of his suffering v18:307; Messiah to eventually slay the wicked on earth v19:307; to pardon many and bear their sins v21:307; a righteous King, to be raised up from David's line v11:340, v14:346; will be called by name of Jehovah the Righteous v12:340; throne of David to be overturned until Messiah comes in last days v8:364; to be put to death and disowned by people v12:392; to come 490 years from Daniel v9:392; to be glorified by Lord God Almighty (the Father) v21:404; King to enter Jerusalem riding on foal of donkey v6:407; to set free prisoners in Sheol (spirit world) v8:407; to command peace and eventually have dominion over whole earth v7:407; to come again in last days in strength of Jehovah and shepherd his flock v4:277; Jews to weep when they see pierce marks on their Messiah's body (at second coming) v8:408

Methuselah son of Enoch v8:17; oldest person in Bible, dies aged 969 v9:17; grandfather of Noah v10:17

Micah man of Ephraim, asks Jonathan a Levite to act as his priest v1-6:146; men of Dan steal Micah's goods and his Levite priest v15-23:147; Micah pursues Danites but too strong for him v23:147

Micah (prophet) prophecies second coming of Lord v2:276; prophecies to corrupt leaders of Jerusalem ch3:276; prophecies birth of the Messiah (the Christ) in Bethlehem v1:277; prayer of gratitude v12-14:277; prophecies destruction and exile of Jerusalem v14-15:277; prophecies of last days and second coming of Messiah ch4:277

Micaiah prophet, summoned by Ahab when Jehoshaphat feels uneasy v10:232; advised to prophesy same as 400 false prophets v14:232; answers king sarcastically v17:232; prophecies death of Ahab v19:232; sees Jehovah sitting on a throne v21:232; angers false prophet Zedekiah by his words v26:232; put in prison v28:232

Michael a chief angel (archangel), assists angel Gabriel overcome opposing demon angel of Persia v9:393; Michael the protecting angel of Israel v16:393, v10:396; Jesus to come down from heaven at loud command of the archangel (Michael) v13:603; disputed with devil about body of Moses v9:665; Michael and his angels hurl Satan and his angels from heavens v14-15:691

Michal daughter of King Saul and wife of David v19:170; helps David escape capture by her father v27:170; given to another man by Saul v33:175; Michael returned to David by King Ish-Bosheth v11:184; disapproves of David's dancing v36:186; Michal rebuked by David, bears no children to him v40:187

Midianites Moses flees Egypt to land of Midian v25:50; Israelite men seduced to sexual immorality by Midianite women of Moab v1:104; Midianite woman brought into Israelite camp v5:104; the Midianite woman and Israelite man sinned by Phinehas the priest v6:104; Israelites commanded to kill every Midianite man v1-5:105; towns of Midianites burned v5:105; Moses orders Midianite captives put to death v9:105; Midianites oppress Israel seven years v1:136; defeated by Gideon ch5:137

Midwives tie a scarlet thread on wrist to mark first born of Tamar's twins v21:39; ordered to kill all Israelite boy babies born in Egypt v5:50; midwives fear God and do not do as ordered v6:50; God blesses the midwives with families of their own v8:50

mile go the extra mile v5:493

milk Abraham set cheese and milk before the men (angels) v7:23; Judah's descendant's teeth to be made white by milk v23:45; do not cook a young goat in its mother's milk v36:68; promised land of Canaan flowing with milk and honey v7:51, v4:74; we explored the land and it does flow with milk and

honey v21:95; he nourished them with curds and milk v18:118; Jael opened a skin of milk and gave him a drink v14:135; David's friends met them with cheese made from cow's milk v24:195; I have drunk my wine and my milk v17:214; come, obtain wine and milk without cost v7:293; I gave you milk for you were not ready for solid food v28:608; who tends a flock and does not drink the milk? v5:612; crave pure spiritual milk, like newborn babies v20:658; Judah to be a land of wine and milk after second coming of Lord v18:273

millennium (See also Jesus Christ second coming of, New Jerusalem) (the thousand years of peace after Jesus returns) Judah and Israel to be reunited during millennium v11:250; days of peace and happiness v25:250; Israel to return trembling to Lord in the latter days, resurrected David again to be king v29:250; the reaper will overtake the ploughman in those days v32:257; hills will drip with new wine v33:257; Jerusalem shall be holy v17:273; Israelites to be as young lions and triumph over enemies v5:277; Israel's borders to expand v9:277; nations will come to Israel trembling with fear v10:277; Jerusalem to eventually rule the nations v19:277; Israel to settle in own land (during millennium) and be served by other nations v14:289; five cities in Egypt to worship Jehovah (during millennium) v14:291; highway from Assyria to Egypt when Lord returns v16:291; Israel to bud and blossom (during millennium) v8:292; lost exiles will return to worship at Jerusalem v9:292; Lord Jehovah coming in power to tend his flock v11:292, v22:404; every knee shall bow to Jehovah v23:292; new heavens and a new earth to be created v16:293; people will again live long lives v18:293; prayers to be answered while still praying v20:293; meat-eating animals will eat grass v22:293; mountains and valleys surrounding Jerusalem to become plains v2:294; food to be rich and plentiful v4:294; streams of water everywhere v6:294; sun and moon to be seven times brighter v7:294; your eyes shall see the king in his beauty v9:294; nations will come praising Jehovah v19:294; riches to be brought to Jerusalem to adorn Lord's glorious Temple v21:294; descendants of exiles to fly home in ships v22:294; foreigners to serve Israelites v23:294; Israelites to be pride and joy of world v26:294; all nations will stream to Jerusalem and bow to Lord v1:295, v9:323; Lord's house shall be highest of mountains v2:295; Jerusalem to overflow with abundance during millennium v3:295; survivors to be sent out to all nations to teach people and gather Israelites v11:295; Jerusalem to be a peaceful city of broad rivers and streams v12:295; the desert will burst into bloom v14:295; all shall see the splendour of our God during millennium v16:295; a highway of Holiness shall lead to Jerusalem v17:295; no more sickness, all infirmity to be healed during millennium v20-21:295; jealousy between Judah and Ephraim to vanish v14:296; Judah to become like the garden of Eden v1:296; all animals to eat grass during millennium v5:296; an infant shall play safely near the hole of a cobra v7:296; the glory of Jehovah to replace the sun and moon in Jerusalem v9:296; all who live in Israel shall be righteous v10:296; the Euphrates river to dry up into seven small streams v16:296; a protective canopy of bright cloud to extend over Jerusalem v20:296; bubbling springs and abundant trees in former deserts v3:296; Lord to reign over the entire earth when he comes v5:297; the Lord will not be angry with Israel again v21:297; foreigners to rebuild, and to work fields and vineyards of Israel v28:306; Lord to comfort and shepherd his returning people v13:306; Israelites to gather from north, west and south v16:306; Israel to be too small for her lost children v20:306; only the humble will be left in Israel v8:315; rejoice Jerusalem for Jehovah the King is with you v10:315; Jerusalem to be renamed Throne of Jehovah v9:323; Israel to be gathered from ends of earth, a great company weeping and praying v9-10:343; Lord to appoint righteous shepherds when he restores his people v10:340; David to be king over Israel during millennium v6:343, v28:369; David's royal line and Levite priesthood to continue during millennium v16:347; Levites to again minister at the Temple v17:372; Isaiah to be an apportioner of inheritances to Israel when Lord returns v12:306; Israel shall be like a well-watered garden v12:343; people to shout for joy v12:343; dancing and gladness in Israel v14:343; Lord to make new covenant with Israel v16:344; virgin Israel to dance and sing with joy v23:344; great glory for Israel during millennium v15:347; Jerusalem shall be holy v9:351; Israel to be greatly blessed v29-32:369; holy name of the Lord to no longer be profaned v17:371; abandoned

weaponry of Gog's armies will provide Israel fuel for seven years v20:371; seven months to bury dead v22:371; Lord to reveal his face to Israel v29:371; Spirit of God to be poured out on house of Israel v29:371; Lord to dwell among a cleansed Israel forever v7:373; Ezekiel sees millennial Temple and city on a high mountain in Israel, describes ch14:371; whole mountain top surrounding millennial Temple to be most holy v10:373; priests to serve as judges v41:374; sacred Temple district to be set aside v1:374; fresh water from Jerusalem to flow to Dead Sea and Mediterranean v2:375, v19:409; dimensions of Temple district and Holy City v5:375; all people of Israel must give offerings v13:375; Passover to be observed v16:375; fruit trees to grow along river banks v9:376; trees to bear fruit every month v10:376; swarms of fish to live in Dead Sea v6:376; millennial borders of Israel v11-15:376; millennial tribal boundaries of Israel v18-22:376; God's people to eventually rule all kingdoms of earth v19:389; many nations to also become Lord's people in that day v23:404; ten men will take hold of one Jew and say, let us go with you v15:406; people of Israel shall shine like jewels v12:407; house of Joseph to be saved and made mighty v18:407; Nile to dry up and sea to be subdued to assist gathering of Israel v21:407; feeblest in Jerusalem shall be like David v6:408; those of house of David shall be like God v7:408; sin of the Jews to be forgiven v10:408; all false prophets who prophesy by unclean spirits to be removed v13:408; land around Jerusalem to become like a plain but Jerusalem to be raised up v21:409; survivors of the nations to worship at Jerusalem each year v26:409; nations who refuse to worship at Jerusalem will have no rain v27:409; Holy to Jehovah to be inscribed on bells in Jerusalem v28:409; sacrifice to be offered in millennial Temple v29:409; all nations to one day offer pure offerings to Lord v11:430; kingdoms of the world will assemble in Jerusalem to worship Lord, Psalm 82 v10:459; to everyone who has, more will be given v20:528; oneness of Father, Son, and believers to be understood in a day to come v3:558; time coming when Jesus will speak plainly not figuratively v7:560; Lord has promised new heavens and new earth v9:663; to him who does my will until the end, I will give authority over the nations v29:684; the clean will walk with me dressed in white v35:685; faithful saints to be resurrected and reign with Christ a thousand years v4:698; rest of the dead not resurrected until the thousand years ended v7:698; Satan bound in Pit for thousand years v27-30:698; Satan to be set free for short time when thousand years ended v30:698; nations will again gather after millennium, to attack Holy City v10:698; Satan to be cast into Lake of Fire after millennium, where Beast and the False Prophet are v12:698; beautiful vast city of New Jerusalem to replace millennial Jerusalem v22:297, ch17:699

minister See leaders (church), bishop, deacon, elder miracles (See also healing, dead raising of) God's creation of the earth and all living creatures ch1-2:14; pairs of all creatures come to Noah and enter ark v5:18; whole earth flooded ch6:18; Sarah bears a son Jacob, to Abraham in her old age v15:26; Jacob's flocks breed numerous speckled animals v31:33; Joseph interprets Pharaoh's dream and is made vizier over all Egypt v16:40; Aaron's staff turns into a snake, swallows up Egyptian sorcerer's staffs v5:53; all water in Egypt turned to blood, nine other plagues ch4-5:53; all firstborn males of Egypt die at midnight v15:57; Israelites fed with manna from heaven forty years v16:60; no manna falls on Sabbaths v19:61; water flows out of a rock at Horeb v6:61; Israelites prevail in battle as long as Moses holds up his staff v12:61; thunder, lightning, trumpet blasts and voice of Jehovah from Mt Sinai v13:63; Moses' face shines v13:75; fire from Jehovah consumes two of Aaron's sons v7:80; huge flock of quail hover round Israelite camp v11:94; Lord causes Aaron's staff to blossom v10:98; earth swallows up Dathan and Abiram and their households v23:98; water gushes from the rock at Moses' command v7:100; those bitten by poisonous snakes who look up at image are healed v9:101; Balaam's donkey speaks v20:102; 24,000 Israelites die from plague v9:104; not one Israelite death in battle with Midianites v5:106; clothing and sandals of Israelites did not wear out during forty years in desert v32:110; Jordan stops flowing to allow Israelites to cross v7:122; walls of Jericho collapse v15:124; Canaanite armies destroyed by large hailstones v27:127; sun and moon stand still v29:127; Gideon's fleece v4:137; fire consumes Gideon's

food offering v16:137; Samson's feats of great strength ch10-11:143; Philistines suffer severe plagues because of Ark v23-28:159; cows pull Ark directly to Israel v2:159; seventy Levites die after looking into Ark v8:160; Philistines thrown into panic by thunder from Lord v18:160; thunder and rain in dry season v36:163; God panics Philistines with an earthquake and they strike one another with swords v27-32:164; Uzah steadies the Ark and is struck dead v21:186; 70,000 die in Israel in three day plague v12:198; Lord answers David with fire from heaven v25:199; Solomon blessed by Lord with vast wisdom v8:203; Solomon's burnt offering consumed by fire from heaven v27:208; Israelites see glory of Jehovah on Temple v28:208; priests unable to enter Temple because of brightness of Lord's glory v29:208; Jeroboam's hand freezes in place and altar splits apart v1:224; widow's never failing flour and oil v27:226; Elijah prays and widow's son raised from the dead v35:227; fire blazes down from heaven at prayer of Elijah v29:228; Elijah and Elisha divide waters of river Jordan v28-37:234; Elisha heals bad water of Jericho v3:236; widow's jar of oil keeps pouring, fills many jars v4:238; Elisha prays and boy restored to life v24:239; Elisha heals poisonous soup v34:239; Elisha feeds 100 men with 20 small loaves v37:239; Elisha causes iron axe head to float to surface of water v32:240; Lord blinds Syrian army to reality and Elisha leads them into Israel's royal city v10-13:241; bones of Elisha bring man back to life v22:245; Lord causes three armies invading Judah to destroy each other v27:264; Hezekiah seeks Lord's help during Assyrian attack on Jerusalem, 185,000 Assyrian soldiers die during night v33:300; sun's shadow goes back ten degrees as sign to Hezekiah from Lord v15:301; Daniel reveals Nebuchadnezzar's dream v13-31:384; angel protects Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego in furnace v16:385; a hand appears and writes on wall of Belshazzar's banquet room v4:390; Daniel interprets writing on wall v16:390; Mary a virgin found to be with child v1:484; Jesus turns water into wine v5-7:543; Peter and Andrew catch so many fish their net begins to break v27:489; not all who do miracles in name of Jesus known to Lord v23:495; Jesus calms a storm v22:496; Jesus heals two blind men v58:497; Jesus raises daughter of Jairus to life v53:497; apostles given power to raise dead v6:498; Jesus raises a widow's son from dead v26:499; miracle of loaves and fishes, Jesus feeds 5000 men plus women and children v21:504, v6:548; Jesus walks on water v29:505; Peter walks on water v33:505; second miracle of loaves and fishes 4000 men fed plus women and children v42:507; many believe in Jesus because of his miracles v15:543; Jesus heals a man blind from birth v3:551; Jesus raises Lazarus from dead v27:555, v9:556; anyone with faith able to do even greater miracles than Jesus v37:558; Jesus restores a severed ear v46:531; Jesus raised from the dead v11-16:564, v17:565, v10:571; apostles unable to haul in net because of large number of fish v7:565; Peter heals man crippled from birth v1:570; many miracles done by apostles v17:570; believers pray and building shakes v16:571; Stephen does great miracles v8:573; great joy in Samaria because of miracles of Phillip v6:575; Peter raises dead woman in Joppa v37:577; Paul and Barnabas do miracles at Iconium v3:581; Paul heals man crippled from birth v7:581; believers revive Paul after stoning v16:582; prison doors miraculously open and chains come unfastened v25:584; great miracles done through Paul v19:587; Paul restores a boy to life who fell from a third floor window v9:588; Paul bitten by viper, unaffected by poison v3-6:595; miracles are mark of true apostle v54:621

Miriam sister of Moses v12:50; arranges for mother to nurse Moses for Pharaoh's daughter v15:50; a prophetess, leads Israelite women in singing and dancing v11:60; rebuked by Lord for jealousy, made white with leprosy v8-13:95; Aaron and Moses plead for her healing v13-14:95; healed but confined outside camp seven days v16:95; dies in Desert of Zin v2:99

miscarriage your sheep and goats have not miscarried v29:34; compensation for a woman who miscarries, if caused by men fighting v11:66; no woman will miscarry v10:75; the water is bad and our women miscarry v1:236; I will give your women wombs that miscarry v7:251

missionary work See gospel preaching of

Moab son of Lot, Moabites the descendants of v27:25; Moabites fear hoards of Israel v2:101; Balaam prophesies Israel will crush Moab v11:103; Israelites subject to Moab for eighteen years v10:134; David takes his parents to king of

MOLECH (DEMON-GOD)

Moab for safety v14:172; Moab rebels at paying tribute to Israel v2:236; Israel combines with Judah and Edom to attack Moab v4-6:236; Moabites think water stained with blood and attack invading armies v18:237; Moabites flee, towns of destroyed v21:237; royal city of Moab besieged v22:237; king of Moab sacrifices his firstborn son, great fury comes upon Israel, they return home v23:237; Moab to be punished for sins v9:254; armies of Moab attack Israel v21:264; Moab to be shorn of splendour within three years v12:290; Moab will be punished by Lord v14:314, v14:366; Babylon to lay waste and exile v17:334; to be ashamed of their god Chemosh v24:335; Moabites excluded from holy assemblies of Jews v28:427; fortunes of Moab to be restored in latter days v26:335; cities of to be destroyed in a night in last days v1:290; Judah the lion to come upon fugitives of v7:290

Molech (demon-god) whoever sacrifices his child to Molech, to be stoned v26:64; abominable god of Ammonites v4:210, v10:311; Israelites sacrificed sons and daughters to Molech in valley of Hinnom v9:346

money (See also wealth) no profit to be made on food sold to poor v30:86; whoever loves money never has enough v15:218; money answers every need v21:220; prophets of Jerusalem prophesy for money v2:276; why spend money on that which does not satisfy? v7:293; money dwindles away when quickly obtained v7:466; soldiers not to extort money, and to be content with their pay v13:487; apostles to take no money on their missions v7:498; cannot serve both God and money v23:514; Pharisees lovers of money v24:514; he put his money to work and gained five more talents v12:527; why did you not at least invest my money with the bankers v19:528; Judas critical of waste of money v8:529, v5:555; as keeper of the money bag, Judas would help himself v6:555; chief priest count out for Judas thirty silver coins v16:529; Judas throws the blood money into Temple v24:532; Ananius and his wife keep back some of money received for land, both die v5:572; she earned a great deal of money for her owners by fortunetelling v17:584; each should contribute a sum of money in keeping with his income v33:616; a bishop not to be a lover of money v2:651; love of money the root of all evil v26:653; in last days men will be lovers of money v6:655; keep your lives free from the love of money v12:672

moon to govern the night v9:14; land to be blessed by the best the sun and moon bring forth v20:119; sun and moon stand still in answer to Joshua's prayer v28:127; Israel bowed down to the sun, moon and stars v20:258, v3:314; Manasseh erects altars to sun and moon v6:308; moon marks off the seasons, Psalm 19 v8:447; the sun has one glory, the moon another, so also in the resurrection of the dead v24:616; moon to turn red as blood before coming of Lord in last days v5:273, v12:687; moon to be darkened before second coming v16:272, v30:526, v13:689; nor will the moon shine on you, Jehovah will be your light v9:296, v23:700; moon to be seven times brighter (during millennium) v7:294

Mordecai Jewish exile, guardian of Esther, appointed royal official in Persian court v4-17:413; reveals a plot to assassinate King Xerxes v2:413; refuses to bow to Haman the Grand vizier v4:413; Haman angry with Mordecai, plans to exterminate all Jews throughout empire v6-7:413; Mordecai urges Esther to plead with king for people v4-5:414; king orders Haman to honour Mordecai v35:415; Haman hanged on own gallows v48:416; Mordecai made Grand vizier in Haman's place v1:416; Mordecai issues overruling decree allowing Jews to counter-attack enemies v6:416; Mordecai second in rank only to king v24:417

Morning Star See stars

Moses (See also Plagues Egyptian) birth of, hidden in basket among reeds of the Nile v11:50; discovered and adopted by Pharaoh's daughter v13:50; given to natural mother to nurse v16:50; when a grown man, sees an Egyptian beating an Israelite v20:50; kills Egyptian and flees to Midian v21-25:50; becomes a shepherd for Jethro the priest v2:290; marries Zipporah daughter of Jethro v29:50; angel of Lord appears to Moses in a burning bush v3:51; called to lead Israelites out of Egypt v8:51; feels inadequate v9:51; given miraculous signs by Lord to prove authority v24-26:51; complains to Lord that he is slow to find speech, Lord rebukes Moses, his brother Aaron to speak for him v29-32:51; Moses

CONCORDANCE

meets Aaron at Mount Sinai v5:52; Moses now eighty years old v6:52; sets out for Egypt with wife and sons v1:52; Lord about to take Moses life for not circumcising his son v3:52; performs miraculous signs in Egypt in presence of elders of Israel v4:52; first meeting with Pharaoh, rejected v7-10:52; complains to Lord v16:52; ten plagues inflicted on Egypt ch4-5:53; Moses and Israelites leave Egypt v21:57; Red Sea parts for Moses v20-25:59; Moses heals bitter water at Marah v3:60; strikes rock at Horeb and water flows out v6:61; Israelites prevail in battle as long as Moses holds up his staff v10-12:61; goes up Mount Sinai and Lord speaks to v2:62; advised by father-in-law Jethro to delegate v18:62; commanded by Lord in a thunderous voice to come to top of mountain v16:63; Ten Commandments spoken by Lord in hearing of Israelites v19-28:63; Moses receives other commandments from Lord v7:64; writes down all commandments v2:68; builds altar and erects twelve stone pillars v3:68; reads commandments to Israelites v6:68; Moses, Aaron and seventy elders of Israel see the God of Israel v8-9:68; Moses returns up mountain with Joshua, remains with Lord 40 days v1:68; given two stone tablets of Law by Lord v3:73; told by Lord that Israelites have made a calf idol v7:73; pleads with Lord for lives of his people v9:73; anger burns hot when he sees the calf and dancing, smashes tablets of stone v14:74; grinds calf to powder and makes Israelites drink it v15:74; angrily rebukes Aaron v16:74; summons faithful Israelites to come outside the camp v19:74; orders Levites to kill all Israelites remaining in camp, 3000 Israelites die v20-21:74; attempts to atone for sin of Israelites v1:74; shown full glory of back of Lord v3-8:75; told by Lord to make new stone tablets v4:75; stays with Lord on mountain another forty days v12:75; face of Moses shines v13:75; Moses erects and anoints Tabernacle v27:76; seventy elders of Israel called to assist Moses v16:94; Moses questions Lord's ability to feed people meat for a month v19:94; distressed at complaining of Israelites, asks Lord to take his life v12-15:94; Moses more humble than anyone else on earth v6:95; spake face to face with and saw form of Jehovah v11:95; calls twelve leaders to explore promised land v18:95; pleads with Lord to forgive Israelite's fearfulness v8:96; Israelites cursed to wander 40 years v18:96; Korah and 250 Levites and Dathan and Abiram rebel against Moses v9-32:97; rash words escape Moses' lips, Psalm 83 v23:460; water gushes from rock at command of v7:100; not to enter promised land for failing to honour Lord v9:100; prays for relief from venomous snakes v7:101; told to make an image of a snake on a pole for bitten to look at and be healed v8:101; commanded to take vengeance on Midianites v1:105; repeats all commandments to Israelites v1:109; another prophet like Moses to be raised up v1:112; no one to add or take away from words of Moses v13:115; Moses prophesies Israel's destruction v1:116; writes all commandments on a scroll and gives to priests v1:117; permitted to view Promised Land v1:118; asks Jehovah to appoint new leader, Joshua chosen v4:119; Moses last words to Joshua v9-10:119; Moses dies or is translated on Mt Nebo v30:119; no one has found tomb Moses v30:119; Moses disappears when 120 years old, and in full vigour v31:119; no prophet has arisen in Israel like Moses v32:119; Moses appears to Jesus, Peter, James and John v25:508; Moses permitted divorce because of hardness of men's hearts v26:519; Moses will be accuser of Pharisees v30:547; foretold Jesus the prophet v15:571; sorcerers who opposed Moses named v11:656

Most Holy Place veiled off most holy section of Tabernacle and Temple v18:69; sound of the bells will be heard when Aaron enters v17:71; Aaron not to enter unless commanded v16:80; place for the Ark of the Lord in Temple v21:206

mother a man leaves his father and mother and joins to his wife v13:15, v23:519, v6:643; Eve the mother of all living v1:16; Sarah to be a mother of nations v19:23; Isaac comforted after the death of his mother v38:28; Reuben brings home mandrake plants to his mother Leah v14:32; mother of Moses takes back her baby and nurses him v18:50; honour your father and mother v23:64, v8:505, v44:519, v10:643; anyone who curses or strikes father or mother to be put to death v1:65; not to lie with own mother or uncover her nakedness v31:66; whoever dishonours their mother is cursed v5:115; each year his mother would make Samuel a little tunic and take it to him v19:157; David takes his father and mother to king of Moab for safety

v13:172; Ahaziah's mother encouraged him in doing wrong v20:266; as a mother comforts her child, so will I comfort Jerusalem v5:295; can a mother forget the baby at her breast, the child of her womb? v18:306; woe is me my mother, that you gave me birth v20:330; like mother like daughter v27:362; mothers even boiled and ate their own children v20:379; naked I came from my mother's womb and naked I will depart v15:433; a foolish son brings grief to his mother v9:473; on entering the house they saw Jesus with his mother Mary v6:486; the young man who had died sat up and Jesus gave him back to his mother v26:499; the mother of Jesus and his brothers arrived and stood outside the house v41:501; anyone who loves his father or mother more than Jesus is unworthy of him v20:498, v1:517; blessed is the mother who gave you birth v39:501; she said to her mother Herodias, what shall I ask for? v4:504; mother of Jesus asks him to provide more wine for wedding banquet v2:543; Jesus to bring division of mother against daughter, daughter against mother v48:515; mother of James and John asks a favour of Jesus for her two sons v71:520; Jesus requests John to care for his mother v11:563; Mary the mother of Jesus devoted herself to prayer v11:569; we were gentle, like a mother caring for her little children v10:602; faith of Timothy's grandmother and his mother now living in him v5:654

Mount Horeb (also called Mount Sinai) (See also Massah) Lord appears to Moses in burning bush near v2-4:51; Moses instructed to bring Israelites out of Egypt to Mount Horeb v10:51; Aaron meets Moses at v34:52; Moses leads Israelites towards Mount Horeb v1:61; water flows from a rock at Horeb when struck by Moses v6:61; Israelites arrive at camp in front of mountain v1:62; Israelites tremble under loud thunder, lightning, and trumpet blasts from v13:63; Lord descends on Horeb in fire, in sight of Israelites v15:63; Ten Commandments spoken from Mount Horeb by Lord in hearing of all Israelites v18:63; Elijah walks 40 days to Mount Horeb the mountain of God v15:228

Mount Hor Aaron dies on top of v17:100

Mount of Olives Ezekiel sees Jehovah hovering above v45:360; village of Bethany located on v36:512; Jesus speaks to apostles on v3:525; Jesus taken up into heaven from Mount of Olives, to return again the same way v59:538, v6-8:569; Mount to split in two when feet of Jehovah (Jesus) touch it (at second coming) v18:409

Mount Sinai See **Mount Horeb**

mountain all mountains under entire heavens covered by flood of Noah v9:18; ark comes to rest on mountains of Ararat v11:18; tops of mountains seen in tenth month after flood v12:18; glory of Lord looked like fire on top of mountain v14:68; Zion the holy mountain of Jehovah v16:273; Nebuchadnezzar's huge statue smashed by rock cut out of mountain v17-31:384; faith small as a mustard seed can move a mountain v51:509; with faith in God, a mountain can be ordered cast into the sea v14:522; let the mountains sing together for joy, Psalm 99 v5:463; Gog's armies to die on the mountains of Israel in last days v15:371; mountains of Jerusalem to be soaked with blood in last days v31:289; your children will say to the mountains, fall upon us, cover us, at second coming v43:534; mountains will melt beneath Lord Jehovah like wax before fire, at second coming v3:276; mountains to be thrown down at second coming v11:370, v14:687; Ezekiel sees millennial Temple and city on high mountain in Israel ch14:371; mountain of Lord's house to be highest of mountains (during millennium) v2:295, v23:409; mountains surrounding Jerusalem to become plains (during millennium) v2:294; Jehovah to prepare a feast for all peoples on his holy mountain after second coming v24:293

murder you shall not murder v24:64; murderers to be put to death on testimony of two witnesses v5:65, v28:107; bloodshed pollutes the land v31:107; atonement for unsolved murder v23-26:113; a man tormented by guilt of murder will be a fugitive until death v57:469; murder arises from evil thoughts of the heart v23:506; the devil a murderer from the beginning v23:551; you preferred a murderer be released to you v9:571; commit not murder v20:633; anyone who hates his brother is a murderer v9:675; no murderer has Eternal Life abiding in him v9:675; mankind of last days will not repent of their murders v35:690; murderers shall inherit the Second Death v8:699; murderers never permitted to enter New Jerusalem v11:701

music (See also hymns, singing, songs) Jubal was the father of all who play the harp and flute v17:17; I will sing and make music to the Lord v19:136; the evil spirit would depart from Saul when David played the harp v20:167; Levite singers accompanied by lyres, harps and cymbals v31:186; musicians stood by the Temple dressed in fine linen, playing cymbals, harps and lyres and 120 priests sounded trumpets v8-9:207; Elisha calls for a harpist to soothe him, in order to obtain revelation v13:237; Lord refuses to listen to Israel's music because of sin v20:255; you strum and play on your harps like David, and improvise on musical instruments v26:255; all the people rejoiced and sounded trumpets, singers with musical instruments led the praises v36:266; Ezekiel to them like one who sings love songs with a beautiful voice and plays a musical instrument well v11:368; when you hear the music you are to bow and worship the idol of gold v3:385; their little ones dance and sing to the music of tambourine, harp and flute v34:437; praise the Lord with the harp, make music on the ten-stringed lyre, play skillfully and shout for joy, Psalm 99 v2:450; I will sacrifice with shouts of joy, I will sing and make music to the Lord, Psalm 50 v3:453; maidens playing tambourines, Psalm 53 v1:453; begin the music, strike the tambourine, play the melodious harp and the lyre, Psalm 76 v2:458; praise God with the trumpet, Psalm 98 v2:462; praise God with harp and lyre, Psalm 98 v3:462; praise God with tambourine and dancing, Psalm 98 v4:462; praise God with strings and flute, Psalm 98 v5:462; praise God with the clash of cymbals, Psalm 98 v6:462; make joyful music to the Lord, Psalm 99 v2:463; there was a noisy crowd outside with flute players and people wailing loudly v50:497; when he came near the house and heard the music and dancing v24:518; I heard loud music from heaven, harpists playing their harps, and 144,000 sang a new song before the throne v2:693; every stroke of the Lord shall be to the music of tambourines and harps (at second coming) v26:289

myrrh ingredient of perfumed anointing oil v40:70; you are to me like a satchel of myrrh, resting between my breasts v7:213; Solomon's lips like lilies, dripping with myrrh v4:214; I have gathered my myrrh and my spice v17:214; your robes are fragrant with myrrh, Psalm 60 v8:455; wise men presented child Jesus with gifts of gold, incense and myrrh v6:486; body of Jesus wrapped with myrrh and aloes v26:563

Naaman Syrian army commander, goes to Elisha to be healed of leprosy v1-7:239; sent message to immerse himself seven times in Jordan, becomes angry v10-11 v239; dips himself in Jordan and is healed v14:239; proclaims Jehovah as only true God v15:239; receives approval from Elisha to bow to god Rimmon in course of duty v19:240

Nabal surly, mean, wealthy land owner, rejects David's request for food v4-5:174; wife Abigail appeases David's anger v17:175; heart fails him when told what happened v26:175; David marries widow of v30:175

Naboth refuses to sell King Ahab his vineyard v1:231; Ahab's wife Jezebel arranges murder of v8:231; Ahab's family cursed by Lord for murder of Naboth v15:231; body of Ahab's son thrown on field of v42:243

Nadab son of Aaron sees God of Israel on mountain v8-9:68; to serve Lord as priest v1:71; dies when he offers unlawful incense v7:80

Nadab son of Jeroboam becomes king of Israel v1:226; killed by Baasha v3:225

Nahor brother of Abraham v10:20, v4:27

Nahum prophet, prophesies destruction of Nineveh v6-16:312; describes vision of destruction v10-22:312

naked Adam and his wife were both naked, but felt no shame v4:15; Adam and Eve become aware of their nakedness v6:15; God asks, who told you that you were naked? v10:16; Ham mocks his father's nakedness v2:19; do not uncover the nakedness of a woman during her menstruation v28:66; do not uncover the nakedness of any close relative v30:66; shelter the homeless and clothe the naked v30:309; naked a man came from his mother's womb and naked he will depart v17:218, v15:433; you were naked and bare, kicking about in your blood v17:362; for a long time he had gone naked and lived in the tombs v26:496; I was naked and you clothed me v26:528; they fled the house naked and bleeding v22:587; you are wretched,

pitiful, poor, blind and naked v51:685

name of the Lord at that time men began to call on the name of the Lord Jehovah v2:17; shall not take the name of the Lord your God in vain v21:64; full name of Lord proclaimed to Moses v9:10;75; all who call on the name of the Lord will be saved v6:273; prophesy no more in the name of the Lord or you will die v9:328; the Lord has given and the Lord has taken away, blessed be the name of the Lord v16:433; blessed is he who comes in the name of Jehovah v21:521, v12:556; all nations shall gather to Jerusalem to honour he name of the Lord (during millennium)v9:323

Naomi famine drives Naomi and her husband to Moab v1:151; Naomi decides to return to Bethlehem when her husband dies v2:3:151; takes her widowed daughter-in-law Ruth with her v7-9:151; Naomi sends Ruth to Boaz at night v18:152

Naphtali tribe of birth of Naphtali, son of Jacob (Israel) and Bilhah v10:32; Israel's dying blessing upon – to be like a doe set free v29:45; first census of 53,40041,500 v11:92; second census 45,400 v4:105; Moses' blessing upon – to abound with plenty and favour of Lord v27:119; land in Canaan assigned to by lot v12:129; 12,000 servants of God to be sealed from in last days v4:688

Nathan prophet, word of Lord comes to David through v28:188; charges David with adultery and murder v3-14:190; remained loyal to David v6:201; anoints Solomon king over Israel v14:201

nations the nations scattered by confused languages in days of tower of Babel v17:19; nations divided in days of Peleg v4:20; all nations on earth to be blessed through Abraham v17:20; Abraham to be father of many nations v14:23, v6:44; Ishmael to become a great nation v24:23; two nations within Rebekah's womb v4:29; may nations serve you and bow down to you V21:30; Ephraim will be the greater, his descendants will become many nations v11:44; out of all the nations you shall be my chosen people v3:62, v22:110; Israelites to be scattered among all nations if they do not follow Jehovah v25:88, v9:117; to be an object of horror and scorn in nations where scattered v53:116, v13:209; honour Israel O nations, for Jehovah will avenge their blood v31:118; we want to be like other nations and have a king to rule us v10:161; all nations feared David v4:187; blessed is the nation whose God is Jehovah, Psalm 39 v3:451; my name is to be great among all nations v11:430, Psalm 68 v6:456; righteousness exalts a nation v1:471; for lack of guidance a nation perishes v3:471; kings of a rebellious nation have short reigns v24:472; better that one man die than the whole nation perish v32:555; go and make disciples of all nations v63:538; God shows no favouritism but accepts men from all nations v22:578; gospel will again be preached as a testimony to all nations v29:526; I will take vengeance upon nations that have not obeyed me v8:277, v24:288, v1:315; the great day of the Lord is coming upon all nations of the earth v8:351; I will shake all nations v24:400; nation will war against nation in latter days v24:526; Beast given power over the nations v8:692; people from all nations will gaze upon bodies of two prophets in Jerusalem v18:690; waters represent many peoples and nations v17:696; nations of the earth will gather to invade Jerusalem v2:408, v15:409; I saw a great multitude from all nations standing before the throne v5:688; I trampled the nations in my anger v4:292; Satan sealed in the Pit to keep from deceiving nations until 1000 years are ended v29:698; all nations will see Son of Man coming in clouds of heaven v34:527; Jesus to rule all nations with an iron sceptre v12:691; I will command peace to the nations v7:407; all nations shall see the glory of Jerusalem v33:307; all nations shall know that I am Jehovah v17:371; all nations to stream unto Lord's house (during millennium) v1:295; many nations will turn to me in that day and also become my people (during millennium) v23:404; all nations shall see my glory (during millennium) v9:295, v16:297; the nation that will not serve you shall perish (during millennium) v24:294; Satan to be released from prison and again deceive nations (at end of millennium) v8:698; all the nations shall then be gathered before him (day of judgement) v23:528; nation will never again take up sword against nation (after day of judgement) v2:293; nations will walk by the light of New Jerusalem v26:700

Nazareth home town of Mary, mother of Jesus v14:483;

Joseph and Mary return to v26:485; Jesus raised in Nazareth v11-12:486; what do you want with us Jesus of Nazareth? v20:489; men of Nazareth become enraged and try to push Jesus over a cliff v7-17:488; few miracles done in Nazareth due to lack of faith v52:504; can any good thing come out of Nazareth? v28:543; it read, Jesus of Nazareth, the King of the Jews v3:562

Nazirite person separated to Jehovah, laws regarding for both men and women v19-25:87; Samson set apart to God, hair of head not to be cut, to be a Nazirite from birth v2-3:142; Hannah vows to Lord that if blessed with a son he will be a lifelong Nazirite, Samuel born v7-17:156; Nazirites made to drink wine v19:255; John the Baptist never to drink wine or strong drink v7:483

Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, invades land of Judah v1:329; Judah rebel against Nebuchadnezzar, lays siege to Jerusalem v1:339; Judah surrenders to, nobles, skilled craftsmen and army taken into exile (first exile) v26-28:340; Nebuchadnezzar takes treasures from the Temple and palace back to Babylon v27:340; appoints Zedekiah king of Judah v29:341; Nebuchadnezzar to be like a yoke of iron on nations v29:342; armies of Nebuchadnezzar again besiege Jerusalem v4:344; armies of break through Jerusalem city wall, begin putting survivors to sword v2:347; pursues and captures Zedekiah, slaughters his sons then blinds the king v5:347; plunders city and burns Temple, palace and houses v12:347; frees Jeremiah, exiles 832 survivors of Jerusalem to Babylon v13-17:348; appoints Gedaliah to govern few poor remaining in Judah v19:348; Nebuchadnezzar to invade Egypt and demolish all temples v27-29:349; to seek omen at junction of two roads v3:364; siege of Tyre exhausting for armies of v2:377; spoils of Egypt to recompense v3:377; chooses Daniel and three other young Jewish exiles for special training v6:383; wise men of Babylon unable to reveal Nebuchadnezzar's dream v1-8:383; orders all wise men executed v9:383; Daniel reveals and interprets dream v17-31:384; Nebuchadnezzar bows to Daniel, makes him head over all wise men v32-34:384; Nebuchadnezzar makes a huge idol, invites officials to dedication v1-2:385; orders Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego thrown into blazing furnace v13-16:385; issues decree honouring God of Israel v20:385; Nebuchadnezzar writes to his empire explaining his temporary insanity v1-25:385; he became insane during a moment of pride v18:386; acknowledges power of God v23:386; restored as king, becomes greater than before v24:387

Nehemiah exiled Jew, cupbearer to Persian king Artaxerxes v1-8:423; weeps, fasts and prays for Jerusalem v3:423; asks king for permission to rebuild Jerusalem v9:423; departs for Jerusalem v17:423; incurs displeasure of Samaritan governor Sanballat v18:423; inspects walls of Jerusalem by night v19:423; inspires Jews to rebuild wall v24:424; curses mocking Samaritan officials v11:424; people work with all their heart v12:424; Samaritan enemies plot to kill v13:424; forbids Jewish nobles charging interest to poor v5:425; appointed governor, does not tax people v12:425; feeds 1500 people daily v15:425; Sanballat tries to harm Nehemiah v1-5:425; Nehemiah prays for strength v9:426; enemies bribe priest to lure Nehemiah unlawfully into Temple v10:426; prophets and a prophetess tried to intimidate v16:426; wall completed in 52 days v17:426; returns to Artaxerxes after 12 years v1:427; returns again to Jerusalem, throws Ammonite's goods out of Temple room v4:427; instructs people not to weep but to be joyful v7:427; rebukes lax leaders and enforces Sabbath restrictions v6-15:428; Jews who had married foreign women cursed and beaten by Nehemiah v20:428; forces Jewish men to make oath of repentance v21:428

neighbour love your neighbour as yourself v9:64, v5:599, v20:633; not to endanger the life of your neighbour v13:64; cloak of neighbour taken as security to be returned at sunset v17:64; do not covet anything that belongs to your neighbour v28:64; rebuke your neighbour frankly when he sins v26:67; you may eat the produce of your neighbour on his land v26:114; speak with your neighbour before dishonouring him v2:473; do not say come back tomorrow when you have what your neighbour wants with you v3:473; do not set foot in your neighbour's house too often v4:473; a righteous man cares for his neighbour v5:473; a man who lacks judgement belittles his neighbour v9:473; try to please your neighbour and build him

up v10:633; show proper respect to everyone v27:658

Nephilim (See also Anakim) exceptionally tall race of people v14:17

new earth (See also millennium) I will create new heavens and a new earth v16:293; I saw new heavens and a new earth v1:699; all things to be made new v4:699

New Jerusalem (See also heaven) a new city of turquoise, sapphires, rubies, gemstones and jewels, to eventually replace millennial Jerusalem v22:297; New Jerusalem to come down out of heaven (after millennium) v47:685; John sees huge city coming down out of heaven from God v10:699; description of New Jerusalem ch17:699

New Name whoever overcomes I will give a White Stone with a New Name written on it v21:684; I will write on him my New Name v47:685; Jesus to have a name written on his forehead that no one knows but himself v14:698

Nicodemus member of Jewish ruling council, came to Jesus by night v1:544; helps take down body of Jesus and place it in a nearby tomb v25:563

Nile every baby boy born to Hebrews to be thrown in Nile v9:50; Moses hidden in a basket among weeds of Nile v11:50; Nile turns to blood and all fish die v11:53; Egyptians dig along Nile to get water v13:53; down the Nile in papyrus boats to the sea v1:291; Nile to no longer be muddied by hooves of cattle v10:368; over the sea flows the grain harvest of the Nile v10:305; Nile will dry up to assist gathering of Israel (at second coming) v8:291, v21:407

Nimrod grandson of Noah, a mighty warrior who founded Babylon and built Nineveh v11:19

Nineveh city founded by Nimrod v11:19; a large city, to walk through took three days v3:247; Lord calls Jonah to preach against because of wickedness v5:247; people of Nineveh believe Jonah and fast and repent v5:248; king of Nineveh clothes himself with sackcloth and sits in dust v7:248; Lord decides not to destroy city v9:248; more than a 120,000 persons in Nineveh v20:248; Nahum's vision of eventual destruction of Nineveh v6-16:312; dead bodies heaped up without number v15:313; all nations to rejoice at fall of v22:313; men of Nineveh will condemn generation of Jesus, for they repented at preaching of Jonah v24:501

Noah (See also flood) father of Japheth, Shem and Ham v11:17; a righteous man v16:17; commanded to build an ark v20:17; enters ark with his family, whole earth flooded for 150 days v6:18; God commands him to come out of the ark over a year later v18:18; Noah builds an altar and sacrifices v19:18; God makes a covenant with Noah v27:19; Noah becomes drunk v1:19; dishonoured by his son Ham v2:19; curses Ham's son Canaan v3:19; dies aged 950 v6:19; Jesus preached to spirits in prison who died in days of Noah v16:659

Nob town where Tabernacle located in days of Saul v1:3:171; entire town put to sword at Saul's orders v29:173

oath (See also vow, covenant) Abram raises his hand to Jehovah and takes an oath v23:21; if the girl is unwilling to come I release you from this oath v3:27; my master made me swear an oath v25:28; Esau swore an oath to Jacob (giving him his birthright) v12:29; they swore an oath to each other v31:30; Joseph made his people swear an oath v46:46; dispute to be settled by taking oath before Jehovah v9:67; person must confess if he has made a rash oath v25:79; the oath will not be binding upon us unless this crimson rope tied in window v17:122; elders of Israel sealed the peace covenant with an oath v15:126; we cannot touch them or wrath will fall upon us for breaking the oath v18:126; they had taken a solemn oath v6:149; Saul had bound army under an oath that day v34:165; why did you not keep your oath to the Lord? v20:203; all Judah rejoiced, for they had sworn the oath with all their hearts v18:263; in the presence of the priests I made them swear an oath v10:425; I made them take an oath to repent in God's name v21:428; do not swear an oath, let your yes be yes, and your no be no v1:492, v21:600; I order you under oath, in the name of the living God v6:532; Peter denied it again, this time with an oath v15:532; forty Jews take an oath to kill Paul v12:591; Melchizedek priesthood office confirmed with an oath v40:669

Obadiah a faithful man, hid 100 prophets from Jezebel

v2:227; brings King Ahab to Elijah v8:277

Obadiah (prophet) prophesies downfall of Edom v1:351

obedience Abraham obeys Lord's command to sacrifice his son Isaac v1-10:26; because Abram obeyed the Lord all nations to be blessed through him v12:27, v15:29; who is Jehovah that I should obey him? v8:52; if you will obey me fully, you shall be my chosen people v3:62; whoever obeys my laws will Live v6:64; if you still will not obey me I shall punish your sins seven times over v14:88; not one of the Israelites who have disobeyed me, will ever see the promised land v13:96; do not disobey the Lord's command, you will not succeed v23:97; a disobedient son to be stoned to death v4:113; list of curses if Lord's commandments not obeyed v3-14:115; list of blessings if all commandments obeyed v15-25:116; more curses if commandments not obeyed v23-56:116; if you return and obey him with all your heart, God will have compassion on you v14:117; be careful to obey all the laws my servant Moses gave you v3:121, v5:130; the Lord has chosen another man to rule his people, for you did not obey his commandment v14:164; to obey is better than to sacrifice v31:166; if you obey my commandments I will lengthen your life v10:203; if you obey all my commandments you will never fail to have a descendant on the throne of Israel v10:209; because you have not obeyed the Lord a lion will take your life v33:230; this time Jonah obeyed the Lord and went to Nineveh v2:247; why do you disobey my commandments, you will not prosper in this v15:267; I will take vengeance in anger upon nations that have not obeyed me v8:277; great must be Jehovah's anger, our fathers have not obeyed all that is written here v21:311; if a nation does not obey me I will reconsider the good I had intended v17:331; we have obeyed all that our forefather commanded us v19:339; I have commanded you again and again and you have not obeyed me v22:339; obey Jehovah by doing what he says and it will go well with you v23:347; all this happened because your people did not obey him v17:348; we will obey the Lord so that all will go well with us v15:349; Queen Vashti disobeys the king v10:412; God keeps his covenant of love with all who honour him and obey his commandments v3:391, v4:423; if they obey God they spend their days in prosperity and contentment v30:440, Psalm 24 v7:448; everlasting is the Lord's love for those who revere him and obey his laws, Psalm 31 v9:450; what kind of man is this, who even the wind and waves obey? v23:496; Jesus replied, blessed are those who hear the word of God and obey v40:501; parable of obedient and disobedient son v22-26:522; not my will but yours be done v32:530; teach them to obey everything I have commanded you v63:538; if anyone hears my words and does not obey them he will be condemned v34:556; whoever obeys commandments of Jesus loves him v4-6:558; judge for yourselves whether it is right in God's eyes to obey you rather than God v11:571; we must obey God rather than men v24:572; if any brother refuses to obey, cease to associate with him to shame him v6:605; when your obedience is complete we are ready to punish disobedience v5:620; they disobey parents v16:628; through the obedience of one man, many will be made righteous v3:630; Jesus humbled himself in obedience v26:646; by your obedience to the truth you have purified yourselves v18:658; holy women of old lived in obedience to their husbands v3:659; he learned obedience by that which he suffered v18:668

occult (See also child sacrifice, dead consulting of, divination, mediums, sorcery) commandments forbidding involvement in v34-36:65; child sacrifice, divination, sorcery, witchcraft and consulting dead, all abominations to Lord v22:111

Oded prophet of Samaria, commands that Judean captives be returned v21:282

offerings make for me an altar of earth on which to sacrifice your offerings v21:64; commandments on offerings v28-33:65; the wave offering v18:72; offerings to be made every day at Tabernacle v27:72; vow and peace offerings v29:79; no priest who has a defect may make offerings v8:85; the Lord will take no delight in offerings if commandments not kept v24:88; portion of offerings belong to priests v17:99; the people build an altar and offer burnt offerings and peace offerings to Lord v3:149; David builds an altar to the Lord and sacrifices burnt offerings v24:199; Solomon offers a thousand burnt offerings

v2:203; altogether they offered 22,000 cattle and 120,000 sheep and goats v33:208; I will never again make offerings to any other god but Jehovah v18:240; I desire mercy and knowledge of God rather than burnt offerings v22:251; cease bringing me meaningless offerings v5:283; 600 bulls and 3000 sheep and goats offered as sacrifice v20:285; Josiah provided 37,600 lambs and goats for Passover offerings and 3800 cattle for sacrifice v33:312; priests in Jerusalem offer required number of burnt offerings each day v14:427; I have no pleasure in you and will not accept your offerings v10:430; this whole nation under a curse for robbing Lord of tithes and offerings v11:431; to love your neighbour as yourself more important than burnt offerings v20:524; half way through the seven years he will put an end to sacrifice and offerings v16:392; Levites to be purified and offer offerings when Lord returns (during millennium) v5:431; all nations to one day offer pure offerings to Lord (during millennium) v11:430

OG king of Bashan, army of annihilated and land taken over by Israel v15-16:101; one of the tall Anakim, bed nine cubits long v17:101

oil anointing Jacob sets up a stone as a pillar and pours oil upon it v11:31; ingredients of fragrant anointing oil v40:70; Aaron anointed by pouring oil on his head v37:72; sprinkle blood and anointing oil on garments of Aaron and his sons v15:72; anoint everything and it will be holy v25:76; Samuel took a flask of oil and poured it on Saul's head v30:162; Samuel told by Lord to fill his horn with oil and be on his way v2:167; Samuel took the horn of oil and anointed David king v14:167; Zadok took the horn of oil and anointed Solomon king v17:201; be clothed in white and anoint your head with oil v16:219; the young prophet poured oil on Jehu's head and anointed him king v16:242; like precious oil poured on the head, until it runs down on the beard. Psalm 18 v2:447; the apostles heal many sick by anointing them with oil v22:498; she wiped her tears from the feet of Jesus with her hair and anointed them with perfumed oil v32:495; v7:529, v3:555; elders of church to pray over the sick and anoint them with oil v24:600

oil olive (See also oil anointing) the manna tasted like wafers made with honey and olive oil v28:61; clear olive oil to be burned in lamps of Tabernacle v22:70; olive oil an ingredient of perfumed anointing oil v40:70; olive oil to be offered with lamb in daily sacrifice v26:72; to be poured on grain offering v9:78, v21:374; 20,000 baths of olive oil the annual payment for timber from king of Tyre v3:204, v7:205; the oil kept pouring until all jars were full v4:238; the jug of oil will not run dry v28:266; from Israel you obtain wheat, figs, honey, olive oil and balm v31:367; Zechariah sees a vision of two olive branches feeding oil to a lamp-stand v36:404; King Arteraxes authorises 100 baths of olive oil for Temple v23:419; Job's ground poured forth streams of olive oil v25:438; the Lord has given oil to make man's face shine, Psalm 19 v7:447; the Samaritan bound up his wounds, pouring on oil and wine v26:512; the foolish virgins took no spare oil for their lamps v3:527; soil of the earth to respond with abundant grain, new wine and oil (during millennium) v25:250; vats will overflow with new wine and oil (during millennium) v2:273

olive trees your olives will drop off the trees, if commandments not kept v39:116; the trees said to the olive tree, be our king v16:139; I am like an olive tree, flourishing in the house of God, Psalm 7 v4:445; wild olive shoots of Gentiles grafted into the mother olive tree of Israel v17:632; the two prophets of the last days like two olive trees before the Lord v14:690

Onan spills his semen to avoid producing offspring for his brother v4:38; Lord takes life of Onan v5:38

oneness I and the Father are one v5:553; oneness of the Father, Son and believers to be understood in a day to come v3:558; that they may be perfectly one as we are one v22:560; may they too be one, as we are one v28-29:560, v29:560; maintain unity of the Holy Spirit, through peaceful living v3:642; one church, one Spirit, one Lord, one faith, one baptism and one Father v4:642; be of one mind v22:646; God lives in us and we live in him, for he has given us of his Spirit v14:675, v18:675

oppression do not oppress a foreigner, love him as yourself v10:64, v4:326; Israelites cursed to be cruelly oppressed if they disobey commandments v44:116; Sisera cruelly oppressed

Israelites for twenty years v2:135; Ammonites oppress Israelites for eighteen years v4:141; again I looked and saw oppression under the sun v1:218; if you see the poor oppressed, be not over troubled by such things v14:218; Syria was severely oppressing Israel v6:245; I will punish Israel, for they deny justice to the oppressed v11:254; hear this you merchants who oppress the poor v22:256; care for the oppressed and fatherless v7:283; I shall make your oppressors eat their own flesh v24:306; he shall be oppressed and afflicted yet not open his mouth v13:307; this is the fasting I choose, to free the oppressed v29:309; repent of your sins by being kind to the poor and oppressed v17:386; ruler (the Antichrist) of last days to oppress the saints v25:388; Jehovah to arise and protect the oppressed, Psalm 13 v3:446; maintain the rights of the poor and oppressed, Psalm 77 v2:458; he who oppresses the poor will come to poverty v39:486; parable of oppressed widow v10:513; Lord coming in judgement against those who exploit the poor v7:431; Israel to rule over their oppressors (during millennium) v15:289, v11:315

ornaments (See also errings) Israelites to remove their ornaments while Lord decides what to do with them v5:74; no one wore ornaments from that time on v15:75; I will make you ornaments of gold, inlaid with silver v6:213; she shadowed her eyes and adorned her hair v1:243; tripping along with mincing steps, ornaments jingling on their ankles v30:284; not with braided hair or with gold or pearls v19:651; let not your beauty be from outward adornment v2:659

Othniel nephew of Caleb, wins his daughter Acsah in marriage v10:133; becomes judge of Israel, delivers nation from Babylonians v7:134; dies after forty years of peace v8:134

oxen (See also bulls) Simeon and Levi cursed by their father Israel for hamstringing oxen v19:45; firstborn of an ox cannot be redeemed, it is holy v25:99; Saul cuts two oxen into pieces to summon men to fight v20:163; Huram cast a large bronze basin on the backs of twelve oxen v36:207; Elisha slaughtered his yoke of oxen and gave a feast v30:229; Babylonians break up the large bronze basin and twelve oxen under it v10:347; Job owned 500 yoke of oxen v2:433; Lord blesses Job in latter part of his life with 1000 yoke of oxen v37:442; from the strength of an ox comes an abundant harvest v10:466; each cherub had four faces, one like an ox v7:356, v6:686

parables parable of the poor man's lamb v4-7:190; Jerusalem likened to an abandoned baby Canaanite girl who later becomes a harlot v5-36:362; parable of two eagles concerning Jerusalem, Babylon, and Egypt v1-4:363; why Jesus spoke in parables v8-9:502, v31:503; parable of axe laid at foot of tree v7:487; parable of sewing a patch from new garment on to old v25:491; parable of new wineskins for new wine v26:491; parable of casting pearls before swine v8:494; parable of man who built house upon rock v25:495; parable of forgiving moneylender v35:495; parable of the sower v3-18:502; parable of the seeds and the grain harvest v20:502; parable of wheat and the tares v22-27:502; parable of the mustard seed v28:503; parable of yeast and dough v30:503; parable of treasure hidden in a field v41:503; parable of pearl of great price v42:503; parable of the catch of all kinds of fish v43:503; parable of the lost sheep v12:510; parable of the unmerciful servant v20-27:510; parable of the good Samaritan v24-27:512; parable of the persistent friend v3:513; parable of persistent widow and unjust judge v10:513; parable of foolish rich man v5:514; parable of dishonest steward v12-22:514; parable of Lazarus and the rich man v26-36:514; parable of fertilising barren fig tree v4:515; parable of prepared faithful servants v37:515; parable of the faithful and unfaithful servant v42-46:515; parable of the great feast v30-34:516; parables of counting the cost, the tower, two armies v3-6:517; parable of the lost sheep v8:517; parable of lost coin v11:517; parable of the prodigal son v14-29:517; parable of Pharisee and the tax collector v16-19:518; parable of paying workers in the vineyard v56-67:520; parable of the two sons v22-26:522; parable of unrighteous vineyard tenants v28-37:523; parable of the wedding feast v40-50:523; parable of wise and foolish virgins v11-10:527; parable of the talents v11-20:527; parable of signs of the fig tree v37:527; parable of thief in the night v48:527; parable of the sheep pen v33:552; parable of the seed of wheat v18:556; Jesus is the vine, the Father the gardener v13-19:558; parable of woman giving birth v4:560

Paradise where Abraham now resides v26-36:514; today you will be with me in Paradise v14:535; Paul caught up to Paradise v45:621; whoever overcomes will eat from the Tree of Life, in the Paradise of God v8:683

Passover feast of instructions from Lord regarding feast of Passover ch6:56; all generations to come must celebrate Passover v1:57; no yeast to be eaten that week v4:58; no work on first or last day of Passover week v5:58; every Israelite must celebrate v6:58; foreign males must first be circumcised to celebrate v6:58, v8:92; must be celebrated at appointed time v44:65; second Passover celebrated in desert of Sinai v2:92; unclean persons to celebrate Passover following month v6:92; Passover celebrated at Gilgal in promised land v19:123; Hezekiah invites all Israel to celebrate Passover in Jerusalem v23:285; unpurified men unlawfully eat Passover, Hezekiah prays for their pardon v7:286; people celebrate an extra seven days of Passover v10:286; Passover once again celebrated in Jerusalem v32:312; no Passover like this since Samuel's day v38:312; Passover again celebrated in Jerusalem by returned exiles v5:409; Jesus stays behind in Jerusalem after Passover when twelve years old v15:487; Jesus goes to Jerusalem for Passover v8:543; Jesus to die on day of Passover v1:528; Peter and John prepare Passover supper v4:529; last supper on eve of Passover v6:529, v3:557; governor's custom at Passover to release a prisoner v21:533, v14:562; Jesus dies on day of Passover v29-34:562

Passover lamb one for each household v2:56; blood of Passover lamb to be sprinkled on door frames v4:56; cooking instructions v5:56; no bone to be broken v7:56; to be eaten in haste v8:56; symbol of Jesus who is called the Lamb of God v16:542, v17:658, v16:686

pastor See bishop, leaders (church), priests

patience enough that you try the patience of me, will you try the patience of God also? v11:281; let him shoulder it patiently, for the Lord has laid it upon him v63:380; why should I not be impatient with God? v31:437; be still and wait patiently before the Lord, Psalm 58 v4:454; by patience a ruler can be persuaded v2:470; a patient man calms a quarrel v3:470; wait patiently on the Lord, he will avenge you v5:471; a man's wisdom gives him patience v7:471; better a patient man than a warrior v8:471; be patient brethren, until the Lord returns v18:600; we urge you brethren, be patient with all v22:603; love is patient v16:614; suffering produces patient endurance v4:618; patience a fruit of the Holy Spirit v7:626; God's patience is to allow sinners time to repent v19:629, v11:663; be patient in affliction v7:633; clothe yourselves with patience v1:637; be humble, gentle and patient v1:642; it is good that a man patiently endure unjust suffering v29:658; I know your works, your service and patient endurance v23:684

Paul (original name Saul) approves Stephen's death v53:574; begins to destroy church, goes from house to house dragging men and women off to prison v2:575; departs for Damascus to persecute believers there v2:576; Jesus appears to Saul in a bright light on road to Damascus v3:576; Saul struck with blindness v7:576; fasts three days v8:576; Jesus heals Saul's blindness through Ananias v16:576; Saul begins to preach Jesus v17:576; Saul's life threatened by Jews in Damascus v19:576; escapes, returns to Jerusalem v21:577; introduced to apostles by Barnabas v23:577; Greek Jews in Jerusalem try to kill Saul v25:577; returns to home city Tarsus v26:577; called with Barnabas on first mission by Holy Spirit v4:580; opposition from Elymas the sorcerer, Saul curses him with blindness v9-12:580; Saul from now on referred to as Paul v11:580; governor of Cyprus astonished, believes teaching of Paul v14:580; Paul enabled to do miracles at Iconium v3:581; heals a man crippled from birth v7:581; testifies of Jesus in Jewish synagogue of Pisidian, v17-31:581; Paul turns to Gentiles v35:581; Jews drive out Paul and Barnabas v39:581; shakes dust from feet in protest against them v40:581; proclaimed a god by people of Lystra v8:582; Paul stoned and dragged outside city as dead v15:582; revived by believers v16:582; Paul revisits and strengthens former cities v18:582; sets apart elders in the churches with prayer and fasting v20:582; completes first mission v21:582; sent to visit church leaders in Jerusalem for ruling on circumcision v2:582; decides to go on a second mission v21:583; refuses to take Mark, sharp disagreement with Barnabas, takes Silas instead v22:583;

meets Timothy at Lystra, takes along on mission v1-3:583; vision to go to Macedonia v8:583; jealous Jews at Thessalonica form a mob and start a riot v2:584; stays in household of Lydia v13:584; fortune telling slave girl follows Paul and companions testifying about them v18:584; Paul casts out fortune telling spirit v19:584; owners of slave girl seize and imprison Paul v21:584; prison doors miraculously open and Paul's chains come unfastened v25:584; Paul stops jailer taking one life v27:584; jailer and family baptised that same night v31:584; Paul apologised to, being a Roman citizen and escorted from prison by judges v37:584; Paul and companions accused as men causing trouble all over the world v5:585; many Jews and prominent Greeks believe v11:585; Paul taken to Athens for safety v13:585; dismayed to see Athens full of idols v14:585; philosophers take Paul to speak at meeting of Areopagus v18:585; works for a time at his trade of tent maker v3:586; reasons in synagogue each Sabbath, Jews again oppose v4:586; Paul only to teach Gentiles from now on v6:586; Jesus again appears to Paul and encourages him v9:586; Paul decides to end second mission v15:586; shaves hair off because of vow v16:586; visits Jerusalem then returns to Antioch v19:586; Paul departs on third mission v1:586; rebaptises believers in Ephesus who had not heard of Holy Spirit v9-12:587; stays with Ephesians two years v18:587; handkerchiefs from Paul cure sick and drive out unclean spirits v19:587; Demetrius a maker of silver shrines opposes Paul v28-41:587; Paul ends third mission, sets out for Jerusalem v1:588; stays a week at Troas v4:588; boy falls from third floor window and dies while Paul speaks v8:588; Paul restores the boy to life v9:588; farewell Ephesian leaders, warns against false teachers v19:589; Ephesian leaders weep and embrace Paul v24:589; stays at house of Philip at Caesarea v6:589; prophet Agabus prophesies Paul's imprisonment v9:589; arrives in Jerusalem, reports to James the presiding elder v12-14:589; warned of ill feelings toward him, advised to be seen obeying Law of Moses v17:589; all Jerusalem become aroused against Paul, arrested and bound with chains v24-27:590; permitted to speak to crowd, tells of vision on road to Damascus v31-38:590; once saw Lord in the Temple at Jerusalem v39:590; Paul informs commander he is a Roman citizen and is not flogged v43-46:590; taken before Sanhedrin v1:591; divides Sanhedrin with doctrine v7-9:591; Lord appears to tell Paul he must testify in Rome v11:591; forty Jews take an oath to kill Paul, he is sent to Caesarea for safety v12-23:591; Jewish leaders travel to Caesarea to bring charges against Paul v1:591; accused of stirring up riots and desecrating Temple v5:592; Paul appeals to Caesar v10:592; further hearing before King Agrippa and Bernice v12-39:593; governor Festus calls Paul mad v33:593; Agrippa surprised Paul would think to quickly make him a Christian v36:593; Paul taken on ship for Rome v1:593; prophesies disaster if sailing continues v7:594; hurricane-force wind drives ship out to sea v11:594; angel visits Paul, assures him of safety of all on board v19-21:594; ship strikes sandbar and begins to break up, all reach land safely v34-36:595; Paul bitten by viper on beach, unaffected by poison v3-6:595; Paul heals all sick on island v8:595; islanders honour Paul and companions v10:595; Paul arrives in Rome v14:595; stays in Rome two years v30:596; writes greeting in own hand as distinguishing mark in all letters v8:605; writes to Corinthians, 1Cor:607; came with demonstration of Holy Spirit's power v20:608; teaches secret knowledge of God to spiritually mature v23:608, v38:608; I planted the seed, Apollous watered, but God made it grow v31:608; we apostles suffer more than other men v44-49:608; am I to come with a whip or a loving and gentle spirit v3:609; Paul like a father to Corinthians v51:609; Paul answers his critics ch5:612; woe to me if I do not preach gospel v10:612; I discipline and master myself v15:612; follow my example as I follow example of Christ v31:612; I speak in tongues more than you all v37:614; Paul the least of the apostles v5:615; I worked harder than all other apostles v6:615; writes second letter to Corinthians 2Cor:618; hardships Paul and his companions endure v16-21:618, v36:621; I wrote you out of great anguish of heart, with many tears v30:618; Paul's joy greater than ever before v40:619; ready to punish disobedience among believers v5:620; some say his letters strong but his presence weak v8:620; Paul boasts of dangers he has passed through v37:621; Paul caught up to third heaven, to Paradise v45:621; Paul given messenger of Satan to keep him from becoming

conceited v48:621; I rejoice in my weakness that Christ's power may rest on me v51:621, v1:636; I did among you miracles that mark a true apostle v54:621; Paul never a burden to Corinthians v55:621; Paul called to be an apostle by Jesus Christ himself v1-7:623; curses anybody who preaches a false gospel v5:623; Paul set apart by God to preach before he was born v9:624; opposed Peter when he acted hypocritically v19:624; bears on body marks of suffering for Jesus v18:626; writes to Romans, Rom:628; longs to see Roman church and impart a spiritual gift v5:628; not ashamed of gospel of Jesus Christ v7:628; not all Israel rejected by God, I am an Israelite v9:632, v9:647; reveals a mystery, eventually all Israel will be saved v22:632; preached gospel where Christ was not known v17:634; plans to visit Roman church on way to Spain v18:634; writes to Colossians, Col:635; energy of Christ powerfully inspires Paul v4:636; advice to husbands, wives, and children v8-11:637; advice to slaves and masters v12-15:637; writes to Philemon v1:639; writes to Ephesians, Eph:640; think on excellent and praiseworthy things v5:647; I was a Pharisee v9:647; Paul not yet made perfect but presses on to win the prize v14:647; follow my example brethren v17:647; writes to Titus, Tit:648; writes to Timothy, 1Tim:650; Paul once a blasphemer, persecutor and violent man, the worst sinner v10-11:651; Paul shown mercy by Christ as example to others v12:651; fight a good fight, hold on to your faith v13:651; I have handed them over to Satan to learn not to blaspheme v14:651; Paul does not permit women to teach or have authority over men in church v20:651; I counsel younger widows to remarry v9:652; writes to Timothy a second time, 2Tim:654; join with me in suffering for gospel v8:655; I am not ashamed, I know in whom I believe v10:655; time for Paul's departure from this life has come v21:656; I have fought the good fight, I have finished the race v22:656; Lord will award me crown of righteousness on the day of his appearing v23:656; some things in Paul's letters hard to understand v13:663

peace (See also contentment) Abram to be eventually gathered to his fathers in peace v14:22; go in peace v2:52, v11:156; Israelites to live in peace if commandments kept v3:87; terms of peace to be offered before attacking a non-Canaanite city v12:112; Gibeonites request a peace treaty with Israelites v8:126; you shall have a son who will be a man of peace v29:119; a time for war and a time for peace v15:217; better a handful with peace than two handfuls with trouble v4:218; how can there be peace while idolatry and witchcraft abound? v36:243; your eyes will see a peaceful abode v12:294; would have been peace and plenty if Judah had kept commandments v25:304; no peace for the wicked v26:304; he will be called Prince of Peace v3:307; those who walk uprightly enter into peace when they die v13:308; peace, peace, they say, when there is no peace v17:325; seek for the peace and prosperity of the city to which I have exiled you v4:342; this peaceful people, living without walls and gates v8:370; peace, be strong now, be strong v13:393; love peace and truth v12:406; why did I not die at birth, for now I would be at peace v1:434; pray for the peace of Jerusalem, Psalm 47 v4:452; there is a future for the man of peace, Psalm 58 v13:454; the Lord makes the enemies of a righteous man to be at peace with him v36:470; there is joy in the heart of those who promote peace v55:471; better a dry crust with peace than a house full of feasting with strife v19:474; on earth peace to men of good will v12:485; blessed are the peacemakers v14:491; peace, be still v22:496; if the home is deserving, peace will rest upon it v9:498; your faith has healed you, go in peace v40:495, v47:497; do you think I have come to bring peace on earth? v48:515; Jesus appeared and said to them, peace be with you v42:538, v18:464; my peace I leave with you v9:558; I tell you these things that in me you may have peace v13:560; wisdom from above is pure and peaceable v31:599; lead a quiet life, minding your own business v9:603; be of one mind and live together in peace v21:603, v25:622, v1:671; peace a fruit of the Holy Spirit v7:626, v25:630; the peace of God which surpasses all understanding v4:647; flee the passions of youth and pursue peace v2:655; all war to end when Lord returns v1:293; in that day I will make peace between my people and the beasts of the field (during millennium) v23:250; in that day the wolf shall live in peace with the lamb (during millennium) v5:295; weapons of war shall be abolished and I will command peace to the nations (during millennium) v7:407; in that day you will enjoy peace, sitting amid your vines and fig trees (during

millennium) v33:404

peace offerings See offerings

pearls on a mosaic pavement of marble and mother-of-pearl v6:412; do not cast pearls before swine v8:494; parable of the pearl of great price v42:503; not with braided hair, gold, pearls or expensive clothes v19:651; glittering with gold, precious stones and pearls v4:695; the twelve gates were twelve pearls, each gate a single pearl v18:699

Pekah assassinated Pekahiah and becomes king of northern Israel v10:257; Gilead and Galilee taken into exile during reign of v12:257; pays tribute to Assyria v13:257; assassinated by Hoshea who becomes king v14:257

Pekahiah son of Menahem, becomes king of Israel v9:257; assassinated by Pekah v10:257

Peleg nations divided in days of v4:20

Pentecost day of Old Testament Feast of Harvest v45:65; Holy Spirit comes on day of, a rush of wind and tongues of fire v1:569; Jews from other nations hear apostles speak their own languages v5:570; 3000 baptised and added to church that day v15:570

Perdition son of See Judas

perfection you my dove, my perfect one, are unique v10:214; you were the model of perfection, full of wisdom and beauty v17:367; the commandments of the Lord are perfect, Psalm 37 v1:450; be perfect, as your Father in heaven is perfect v26:492; a servant who is perfect can become like his master v12:498; that they may be perfectly one, as we are one v22:560; every perfect gift comes from above v12:598; a man flawless in speech is a perfect man, able to keep his whole body in check v20:599; we see through a mirror darkly, but when perfection comes we shall see face to face v22:614; aim for perfection v25:622; teaching with all wisdom that we may present every saint perfect in him v3:636; I am not yet made perfect, but I press on to win the prize v14:647; together with us they will be made perfect v30:671; Jesus the pioneer and perfecter of our faith v32:671; the spirits of righteous men made perfect v7:671; perfect love drives out fear v19:675; I have not found your works perfect in the sight of my God v33:684

perfume ingredients of perfumed anointing oil v40:70; ingredients of fragrant incense v44:71; wash and perfume yourself, put on your best clothes v19:152; his perfume spread its fragrance v7:213; more pleasing is the fragrance of your perfume than any spice v12:214; dead flies give fine perfume a bad smell v6:220; Esther completed twelve months of beauty treatments with perfumes and cosmetics v10:413; I have perfumed my bed and spread it with coloured linen v9:465; Jesus anointed with perfumed oil by a sinful woman v32:495; Jesus anointed with expensive perfumed oil by Mary, fragrance fills the room v7:529, v3:555; this perfume could have been sold for 300 denarii and the money given to the poor v9:529, v5:555; the women purchased and prepared spices and perfumes v34:536

Perizzites a Canaanite tribe v7:51

perjury See lying

persecution let my persecutors be put to shame v6:331; my persecutors will not succeed, they will be eternally dishonoured v47:333; blessed are those who are persecuted for righteousness v15:491; some they will kill, others they will persecute v37:525, v5:525; Jesus persecuted by chief priests for healing on the Sabbath v12:546; they persecuted me so they will persecute you v29:559; was there ever a prophet your fathers did not persecute? v44:574; great persecution broke out against believers at Jerusalem v1:575; Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? v3:576; believers scattered by persecution v7:578; we must all go through many persecutions to enter the kingdom of God v19:582; when we are persecuted we endure v48:609; I delight in persecutions and difficulties v51:621; bless those who persecute you v11:633; all who live a godly life in Jesus Christ will be persecuted v13:656; you have not yet resisted to the point of shedding your blood v34:671; be faithful, even to death v13:683; an appointed number of saints to be killed in last days v1:687

Persia Persia to join with Gog in attacking Israel in last days v5:370; two-horned ram represents empire of Persia v14:389;

Babylon overthrown by Persia v17:390; Persian law forbids a king's decree to be changed v8:391; Daniel prospers under reign of Cyrus the Persian v20:391; the angel of the Persian kingdom opposed me twenty-one days v9:393; four more kings to arise in Persia v17:393; Persian king Cyrus allows exiles of Judah to return home v1-3:397; Darius dies and son Xerxes becomes king of Persian empire v1:412; Xerxes replaces Vashti as queen of Persia ch1:412; Esther the Jew made queen of Persia v14:413; Mordecai the Jew replaces Haman as Grand Vizier of Persia v1:416; Xerxes dies and son Artaxerxes becomes king of Persia v1:418

Peter fisherman named Simon, surnamed Peter (Cephas) by Jesus v27:489, v24:542; catches so many fish the net begins to break v30:489; humbles himself before Jesus v31:489; Peter called by Jesus to be a fisher of men v32:489; walks on water to Jesus v33:505; acknowledges that Jesus is the Christ v10:507; you are Peter and upon this rock I will build my church v12:507; Peter given keys to seal on earth and in heaven v13:507; Peter rebuked by Jesus v16:508; present when Jesus transfigured and Moses and Elijah appear v25:508; Peter finds coin in mouth of a fish v4:509; helps prepare Passover supper v4:529; resists Jesus washing his feet v5:557; told by Jesus to strengthen the other apostles when truly converted v18:530; told at last supper he will deny Jesus three times that night v21:530, v26:557; asked by Jesus to sit near him in Gethsemane v29:530; attacks the high priest's servant and cuts off his ear v45:531, v8:561; rebuked by Jesus, servant's ear restored v46:531, v9:561; follows Jesus into courtyard of high priest v2:531, v11:561; denies Jesus three times v12-17:532, v13-21:561; weeps bitterly v19:532; runs out to tomb of Jesus with John, sees burial linen v21:537, v3-6:563; Jesus appears to after resurrection v40:538; leaps into water and wades ashore to Jesus v9:565; confirms his loyalty for Jesus three times v18:565; Peter to die by crucifixion v27-28:565; testifies boldly of Jesus on day of Pentecost, 3000 baptised v7:570; heals beggar crippled from birth v1:570; Peter arrested and imprisoned v2:571; full of Holy Spirit testifies of Jesus v4:571; Peter curses Ananias and his wife for lying to the Holy Spirit, both die v7-11:572; heals all sick and those tormented by demons v14-15:572; even the shadow of Peter brings healing to the sick v14:572; testifies of Jesus before Sanhedrin v24:572; Peter and John sent to Samaritans to give them the Holy Spirit v13:575; rebukes Simon the sorcerer v16:575; heals paralysed man in Lydda v30:577; raises dead woman in Joppa v37:577; stays in Joppa many days v39:577; shown vision of unclean animals, told that God can make unclean clean v7-9:577; teaches gospel to Cornelius and other Gentiles v13-23:578; Holy Spirit falls on Gentiles while Peter speaks v24:578; commands that Gentiles be baptised v28:578; Peter relates his vision and what happened to Jerusalem brethren v1:578; imprisoned by Herod during Passover v2:579; freed from prison by angel v5-9:579; goes to house of mother of Mark v10:579; believers astonished to see Peter v14:579; took his wife on travels v3:612; approves the gospel Paul preaches v15:624; Peter opposed by Paul for hypocrisy v19:624; writes to church 1Pet:658; wrote letter with help of Silas v11:660; writes second letter to church 2Pet:661; will soon lay aside body v10:662; an eyewitness of transfiguration of Jesus v13:662

Pharaoh (See also Egyptian plagues) (title of Egyptian kings) Pharaoh takes Abram's wife Sarai to be his wife v25:20; Pharaoh's household afflicted with diseases because of Sarai, returns her v27:20; Joseph interprets dreams of Pharaoh v1-14:40; Pharaoh puts Joseph in charge of all Egypt v16:40; Pharaoh blessed by Joseph's father Israel v13-15:43; Pharaoh gives district of Goshen to Israelites v11:43; Joseph buys up all land in Egypt for Pharaoh v22:44; a new Pharaoh arises who fears growing numbers of Israelites v1:49; orders every Israelite boy baby be thrown in Nile v9:50; daughter of Pharaoh raises Moses v19:50; Lord calls Moses to lead Israel out of Egypt v6:51; Pharaoh's heart to be hardened v19:51, v6:53; Pharaoh rejects Moses v8:52; Pharaoh orders Israelites to gather own straw v11:52; ten plagues inflicted on Egypt ch5-6:53; life of Pharaoh preserved for purpose of displaying Jehovah's power v48:54; officials plead with Pharaoh to let Israelites go v5:55; Pharaoh repents but again hardens his heart v14-16:55; orders Moses out of his sight v21:56; Pharaoh's eldest son dies v15:57; commands Israelites to

leave v17:57; Pharaoh's chariots and drivers pursue Israelites into Red Sea v26:59; army of Pharaoh drowned in the king v30:59; Solomon marries daughter of Pharaoh v28:204; King Josiah of Judah goes out to fight Pharaoh Neco and dies v1-5:325; Pharaoh Neco demands tribute of Judah v10-11:326; King Zedekiah calls on Pharaoh for help against Babylonians v18:345

Pharisees priestly sect noted for living letter of Law rather than spirit of Law, rebuked by John the Baptist for not repenting v4:487; accuse Jesus of blasphemy v14:490; murmur at Jesus and disciples eating with sinners v21:490; unless your righteousness exceeds that of the Pharisees you will not enter kingdom of God v15:494; incensed at Sabbath healing, plot to kill Jesus v13:500; ask Jesus for a sign from heaven v21:501, v46:507; ask Jesus why disciples do not wash hands before eating v4:505; Jesus condemns traditions of v10:505; Pharisees are blind guides v16:506; Jesus eats at home of a Pharisee v13:513, v18:516; Jesus rebukes hypocrisy of Pharisees v15:513; Pharisees content to clean outside of cup only v15:513; Pharisees begin to oppose Jesus fiercely v21:514; Pharisees lovers of money v24:514; parable of Pharisee and tax collector v16-19:518; Pharisees test Jesus by asking if lawful to divorce a wife v22:519; plan to trap Jesus in his words v1:523; again rebuked for hypocrisy by Jesus, told to give Caesar things that are Caesar's v6:523; parable of unrighteous vineyard tenants v28-37:523; Pharisees want to arrest Jesus but fear crowd v38:523; Jesus corrects false belief of Pharisees concerning the Christ v25:524; Pharisees love to walk around in flowing robes and have people call them Rabbi v27:524; do what Pharisees teach, not what they do v30:524; hypocrites, blind guides, blind fools v34-36:525; Pharisees critical of Jesus for allowing a sinful woman to touch him v33:495; challenge Jesus' testimony v22:547; have not love of God in hearts v28:547; are of this world v32:547; Moses himself will accuse the Pharisees v30:547; Pharisees take woman caught in adultery to Jesus to trap him v2:550; Nicodemus a Pharisee stands up for Jesus v33:550; Pharisees to expel from synagogue anyone who says Jesus is the Christ v16:552; man healed of blindness defends Jesus before Pharisees v22-24:552; Pharisees scorn healed man and thrust him out v25:552; Pharisees guilty of sin because they claim to see v31:552; Pharisees become desperate, all the people are going after Jesus v15:556; cry out for Jesus to be crucified v21:562; mock Jesus on cross v7:535; Pharisee converts insist that Gentile converts obey Law of Moses v4:582; Pharisees believe in life after death, angels and spirits v8:591; Paul raised as a Pharisee v21:593

Philip one of Seven Spirit-filled men v5:573; casts out demons and heals sick in Samaria v6:575; sent by angel to teach Ethiopian eunuch, baptises him v21-33:575; the Spirit carries Philip away v33:576; had four unmarried daughters who prophesied v6:589; Paul stays at house of v6:589

Philistines Isaac stays in land of the Philistines v16:29; Philistines envy Isaac's wealth, fill up his wells v22:29; Lord did not lead Israelites by shorter road through Philistine country v26:57; still regions of Philistines to west to be taken v10:128; have iron chariots v27:128; unable to be destroyed by Israelites v12:133; Israelites delivered into hands of for 40 years v42:142; Samson burns crops of v18:144; Samson kills 1000 Philistines with jaw bone v31:144; Philistines capture and blind Samson v22:146; Samson collapses temple, killing himself and thousands of Philistines v32:146; Philistines defeat Israelites, kill 4000 v1:158; Philistines again defeat Israel, kill 30,000, capture Ark v7:158; Philistines place Ark in temple of god Dagon, image of Dagon falls and breaks v20-22:159; Philistines suffer severe plagues because of Ark v23-28:159; return Ark to Israel v29-36:159; Philistines thrown into panic by thunder from Lord, slaughtered by Israelites v15-19:160; Jonathan provokes Philistines to attack Israel v3:164; God panics Philistines with earthquake, strike one another with swords v27:164; challenge by Goliath v21-23:167; David kills Goliath, Philistines flee pursued by Israelites v27-8:169; David brings Saul 200 Philistine foreskins v18:170; David feigns madness to escape Philistines v10:172; David takes his men to live among Philistines v20:176; David and his men join Philistines to attack Israel v1:176; army commanders send David and his men back v4:176; Philistines defeat Israel, Saul dies in the battle with his three sons v2-6:178; Philistines raid

Judah and carry off possessions of Jehoram v14:265; Uzziah king of Judah breaks down walls of Philistine cities v3:275; land of Philistines to be given to Judah v12:314; prophecy by Jeremiah, Philistines to be destroyed by Babylon; Philistines to be destroyed as a people v4:254, v15:334, v18:366; some Philistines shall survive and belong to the Lord v4:407

Phinehas (son of Eleazar) a priest, drives spear through idolatrous Midianite woman and Israelite man v6:104; commended by Lord, promised a lasting priesthood v11:104; resolves misunderstanding regarding altar erected by eastern tribes at Jordan v7-14:130; becomes high priest v27:148

Phinehas (son of Eli) wicked priest who had no regard for Lord v22:157; lay with women who served at Tabernacle v27:157; cursed by Lord to die in battle v5:157; killed in battle by Philistines v9:158

physical injury commandments on and compensation for v4-18:65

pig unclean animal, Israelites not to eat meat of v6:81; Israel an obstinate people who walk in evil ways and eat the flesh of pigs v13-14:287; those who eat the flesh of pigs will meet their end together v8:295; do not cast pearls before swine v8:494; Jesus permits demons to enter a large herd of pigs v32:497; prodigal son sent into fields to help feed pigs v17:517; do not call unclean what God has made clean v11:577; I am convinced that no food is unclean in itself v7:633

Pilate Roman governor, shed blood of Galileans who were offering sacrifices v1:515; Jesus accused before by Jewish leaders v1-2:533, v1:561; Pilate finds no basis for charges against Jesus v8:533, v13:562; sends Jesus to Herod, governor of Galilee v10:533; Herod and soldiers mock Jesus, return him to Pilate v14:533; Pilate tries to free Jesus v17:533, v19:562; priests and Pharisees cry out to Pilate to crucify him v21:562; dream of Pilate's wife v20:533; Pilate threatens to release murderer Barabbas v22:533, v14:562; crowd chooses Barabbas over Jesus v23:533, v15:562; has Jesus flogged v28:534, v16:562; tries again to release Jesus v34:534, v27:562; yields to demands of people v35:534, v34:562; washes hands of innocent blood v36:534; priests protest to Pilate about wording of charge on cross v5:563; authorises maximum security of tomb v3:536; Joseph asks Pilate for body of Jesus v28:536

Pit (See also Hades, Sheol) spirit world of dead, to Sheol I sank but you brought my life back up from the Pit v24:247; king of Babylon brought down to depths of Pit v7:305; begged Jesus over and over not to send them to the Pit v30:497; to be opened in last days, smoke to darken sun v16:689; the angel of the Pit whose name is Destroyer ruled over them v25:689; the Beast that comes up from the Pit will kill them v16:690; Beast (Antichrist) of last days to come again out of Pit v9:695; Satan bound in Pit for thousand years v27-30:698

plague (See also plagues Egyptian, plagues seven final of last days) Israelites struck with plague before quail all eaten v3:95; the ten explorers die of plague v21:96; 4,700 Israelites die before plague halted by Aaron's atonement v5:98; plague commences among Israelites due to Baal worship, 24,000 die v8-9:104; fearful plagues to come upon Israelites if all words of Law not obeyed v8:117; Philistines suffer bubonic plague because of Ark v25:159; David chooses a three day plague as Lord's punishment on Israel, 70,000 die v11:198; Assyrian army to be punished by a devastating plague v11:287; 185,000 Assyrian soldiers die during the night v33:300; those destined for plague, to plague v16:330; I will send sword, famine and plague against them until none are left v10:341, v27:345; I shall execute my judgement on Gog with plague and bloodshed v14:371; flesh of invaders of Jerusalem in last days to rot as they stand v22:409; famines and plagues prior to second coming v24:526; plagues of the seven trumpets ch6:688; blazing star to fall on a third of rivers in last days poisoning water v11:689; third of mankind to be killed in last days by three plagues of fire, smoke and sulphur v32:689; two prophets given power in last days to strike earth with plagues v15:690; seven final plagues of the last days ch12:694

plagues Egyptian first plague – water turned to blood v9:53; second plague – frogs v17:53; third plague – biting lice v24:53; fourth plague – dense swarms of flies v31:54; fifth plague – Egyptian animals die v40:54; sixth plague – festering boils

v43:54; eighth plague – locusts v11:55; seventh plague – heavy hailstorms v49:55; tenth plague – all firstborn Egyptian males die v15:57; purpose of plagues v1:55

plagues seven final of last days seven last plagues ch12:694; first plague – painful sores break out on those who have mark of Beast v11:694; second plague – sea becomes like blood, everything in sea dies v12:694; third plague – rivers and springs of water become blood v13:694; fourth plague – sun becomes scorching hot v16:694; fifth plague – kingdom of Beast plunged into darkness v18:694; sixth plague – demons gather kings of earth for great battle at Armageddon v24:695; seventh plague – tremendous earthquake collapses cities of world v26:695

plunder see spoil

poison bitter water at Marah oasis purified by a tree v3:60; Elisha heals bad water of Jericho v1-4:236; Elisha heals poison soup v33-34:239; deadly poison will not hurt them v55:538; blazing star to fall on a third of rivers in last days poisoning water v11:689

poor (poverty) when you lend money to the poor do not charge them interest v16:64; do not go over your vineyard twice, leave what remains for the poor v19:64; do not be lenient with justice just because a man is poor v25:67; poor Israelites to be assisted v29:86; no profit to be made on food sold to poor v30:86; a poor man's wisdom is despised v23:220; my poor will find food and shall lie down in safety v3:284; share your food with the hungry, shelter the homeless, clothe the naked v30:309; all went well with Josiah, for he defended the poor and needy v10:339; Babylonians left behind some of the poorest people v14:348; since we stopped worshipping the Queen of Heaven we have become poor v10:350; Sodom did not help the poor and needy v30:362; repent of your sins by being kind to the poor v17:386; poor Jews oppressed by Jewish officials v1:425; Lord coming in judgement against those who exploit the poor v7:431; Job speaks of his generosity to the poor v47:439; God does not favour rich over poor v19:439; because of groaning of the needy the Lord will arise and protect them, Psalm 13 v3:446; maintain the rights of the poor and oppressed, Psalm 78 v2:458; proverbs on poverty ch4:466; all who are hasty come to poverty v4:466; he who will not discipline himself will come to poverty v4:466; the rich rule over the poor v16:466; a man pretends to be poor, yet has great wealth v23:464; when a wealthy man becomes poor his friends desert him v24:466, v47:466; rich and poor have this in common, the Lord made them both v34:466; a man's riches may ransom his life but a poor man hears no threat v35:466; one man gives freely and gains more, another withholds and becomes poorer v37:466; he who oppresses the poor will come to poverty v39:466; he who loves pleasure will become poor v42:466; better to be poor than to share ill-gotten gain v6:471; he who is kind to the poor lends to the Lord who will reward him v3:472; he who gives to the poor shall not want v4:472; he who closes his eyes to the poor receives many curses v6:472; he who oppresses the poor shows contempt for their maker v7:472; when a king judges the poor with fairness his throne is secure v17:472; give me neither poverty nor riches v5:474; he who loves sleep will grow poor v10:474; give to the needy in secret v9:493; give to the poor, then what is inside the dish will be clean v16:513; disciples of Jesus told to sell their possessions and give to the poor v9:514; invite the poor to your feasts v27:516; bring in the poor, the crippled, the blind and the lame v32:516; sell all you have and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven v46:519; I vow to give half my possessions to the poor v5:521; this poor widow has put more into the treasury than all the others v42:525; this perfume could have been sold and the money given to the poor v9:529, v5:555; the poor you always have with you, you can help them any time v10:529; your prayers and gifts to the poor have come up as an offering to God v4:577; if I give all I have to the poor but have not love, I gain nothing v15:614

Potiphar the captain of Pharaoh's guard, buys Joseph as a slave v1:39; blessed by Lord because of Joseph v3:39; wife of Potiphar tempts Joseph day after day to lie with her v4:39; Potiphar's wife falsely accuses Joseph v8:39; Potiphar casts Joseph into prison v10:39

poverty See poor

praise (See also thanksgiving) praise Jehovah, he is

greater than all other gods v21:62; remember to praise the Lord for the good land he has given you v10:109; praise the greatness of your God v13:118; praise the Lord, the God of Israel v20:175; David the king rejoiced and praised the Lord v36:220; singers and trumpeters joined as one voice to give praise and thanks to the Lord v9:207; some of the Levites stood and praised Jehovah with very loud voices v24:264; march out with singing and praising v27:264; the men of Judah assemble at the Temple with harps, lutes and trumpets to praise the Lord v31:264; the Levites sang praises to the Lord with gladness v19:285; nations will come, proclaiming the praise of Jehovah v19:294; I will give you praise and renown among all the peoples of the earth O Israel v12:315; praise to the God of Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego v19:385; I praised the Most High God v23:386; the Levites took their places to praise the Lord as prescribed by King David of old v2:399; returned exiles shout praise to Lord at laying of new Temple foundation v3:399; Ezra praised the Lord and the people lifted their hands and responded, Amen v3:426; to you O Lord I sing praise, I sing of your love and justice, Psalm 3 v1:444; I trust his unfailing love and shall praise him forever, Psalm 7 v4:445; praise be to my Rock, exalted be my Saviour, Psalm 11 v10:446; praise the Lord O my soul, praise the Lord, Psalm 19 v13:448; praise the Lord, who forgives your sins and restores your health, Psalm 31 v2:449; praise the Lord you angels who do his bidding, Psalm 31 v10:450; the mouths of infants and little children praise you, Psalm 34 v2:450, v4:521; the heavens proclaim the glory of God, Psalm 36 v1:450; it is fitting for the upright to praise the Lord, Psalm 39 v1:450; praise the Lord with the harp and ten-stringed lyre, Psalm 39 v2:450; Jerusalem, where all Israel go to praise the name of Jehovah, Psalm 47 v2:452; make his praise glorious, Psalm 48 v1:452; sing praise to Jehovah who rides the ancient skies, Psalm 53 v5:453; I shall always have hope and praise you more and more, Psalm 57 v6:454; I will praise you with the harp, then I will sing praise to you with the lyre, Psalm 57 v10:454; clap your hands all you nations, shout to the Lord with cries of joy, Psalm 61:455; praise the Lord all you who minister by night in the house of the Lord, Psalm 66 v1:456; lift up your hands in the sanctuary and praise him, Psalm 66 v2:456; enter his gates with thanksgiving and his courts with praise, Psalm 89 v2:461; praise God for his acts of power and for his greatness, Psalm 98 v1:462; psalms of praise, Psalm 97,98,99:462; a man is praised according to his wisdom v50:468; those who have abandoned the Law of God praise the wicked v18:468; let another praise you, not your own lips v67:471; a man is tested by the praise he receives v10:471; immediately his tongue was loosed and he began to praise God v33:484; the shepherds see a great multitude of angels praising God v12:485; the shepherds return to their fields praising God v15:485; Simeon took the child in his arms and praised God v20:485; the healed man picked up his bed and walked home praising God v17:490; all were filled with awe and praised God v27:499; Jesus praises the Father v17:499; One of ten healed lepers returns to Jesus praising God in a loud voice v7:511; Jesus full of joy praises the Father v35:512; immediately she straightened up and praised God v7:516; children shout praise to Jesus v2:521; the disciples rejoice in the Temple daily, praising God v60:538; they loved the praise of men more than praise of God v33:556; the healed cripple went with them into the Temple, leaping and praising God v4:570; all the people praised God because of what had happened v12:571; they heard them speaking in tongues and praising God v26:578; is anyone joyful, let him sing songs of praise v23:600; shall I praise you for this, certainly not v16:613; praise be to the Father, the God of compassion v3:618; rejoice in the Lord, again I say rejoice v2:647; whatever is praiseworthy, think on these things v5:647; praise to the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ v4:658; offer God a sacrifice of praise v17:672; to him who sits on the throne and to the Lamb be praise and honour and glory v25:686; praise our God all you who reverence him, both small and great v5:697

prayer Abraham will pray for you and you will live v6:25; Abraham's servant prays for guidance v6:27; Lord answers the prayer of Isaac and Rebekah conceives v2:29; Jacob prays for protection from Esau v5:35; I will lift up my hands in prayer to the Lord v56:55; priest's prayer of blessing, given by Lord v31:73; consuming fire abated when Moses prayed to the Lord v11:94; Moses prays for relief from venomous snakes v7:101;

sun and moon stand still in answer to Joshua's prayer v29:127; Gideon prays for a sign with a wool fleece v3:137; Samson prays for his strength to be restored v30:146; Hannah prays for a son, Samuel is born v7-14:156; Samuel prays and the Philistines are thrown into panic v18:160; I would sin by failing to pray for you v38:163; Saul prays for the Lord to reveal where guilt lies v10:165; God again answered prayers in behalf of the land v15:187; David fasts and pleads with God for life of his son v19:190; David prays that Athithophel's counsel be foolishness v25:193; David prays for forgiveness v8:198; David prays that people of Jerusalem be spared plague v16:199; Solomon kneels and prays before the people v17:207; I have heard the prayer you made before me v10:209; words need only be few when praying, many words are vanity v10:218; the prophet prayed and the king's hand was restored v13:224; widow's son brought back to life at Elijah's prayer v35:227; Elijah prays and fire blazes from heaven v29:228; heavy rain falls in answer to Elijah's prayer v6:228; boy restored to life at Elisha's prayer v24:239; Elisha prays and his servant sees the hills full of chariots of fire v9:241; Lord blinds Syrian army to reality at prayer of Elisha v11:241; Jonah prays to Lord in gratitude from inside huge fish v19:247; 1,000,000 Ethiopians die in battle in answer to Asa's prayer v7:262; Lord causes invading armies to destroy each other in answer to Jehoshaphat's prayer v27:264; Micah's prayer of gratitude v12-14:277; prayers of Judah no longer heeded by Lord v6:283; Isaiah's prayer of praise v6:292; Lord shall answer when you call if living righteously v33:309; Lord tells Jeremiah the people of Judah are past praying for v7:330; the Lord shut out our prayers v54:379; Daniel prays for revelation concerning a dream v12:384; Daniel prayed on his knees three times every day, giving thanks to his God v6:391; Ezra offers a humble prayer to Lord v4-10:420; names of those who continue in prayer written in the Book of Life v19:431; Spirit of God descends on Jesus as he prays v20:488; Jesus often withdrew to lonely places and prayed v9:490; Jesus prays all night on a mountain before choosing his twelve apostles v2:491; pray for those who mistreat you v17:491; disciples of John often fast and pray v23:491; ask and you shall receive v19:493, v8:513; pray to your Father in secret v12:493; do not repeat the same words over and over when you pray v13:493; your Father in heaven knows what you need before you ask him v14:493; Lord's prayer given by Jesus as example v15:493; Jesus rose while it was still dark, to pray in a solitary place v3:495; Jesus becomes transfigured as he prays v23:508; this kind of demon comes out only by prayer and fasting v52:509; disciples ask Jesus to teach them to pray v2:513; Jesus tells parable of persistent friend to teach persistence in prayer v3:513; parable of persistent widow and unjust judge v10:513; when praying believe you have received and it will be yours v15:522; before praying, first forgive all others v16:522; Pharisees say long prayers for show v28:524; Jesus prays face down to the ground, that his suffering be removed v31:530; Jesus prayed more earnestly and his sweat became like drops of blood v34:530; Believers devote themselves to prayer together v11:569; the ninth hour, the time of prayer v1:570; after they had prayed the building was shaken v16:571; the apostles prayed and laid their hands upon them v6:573; Peter and John arrived and prayed that the people might receive the Holy Spirit v13:575; Peter sent them all out of the room and knelt and prayed v36:577; Cornelius gave generously and prayed to God regularly v2:587; the church was earnestly praying for Peter v3:579; leaders fast, pray, and lay hands on Saul and Barnabas v5:580; elders set apart in churches with prayer and fasting v20:582; Paul and Silas pray and sing hymns in prison v24:584; Paul knelt down with all of them and prayed v24:589; their wives and children accompanied us to the beach where we knelt to pray v4:589; ask in belief, without doubt v8:598; when praying at the Temple, Paul fell into a trance and saw the Lord v39:590; after prayer Paul laid his hands on him and healed him v8:595; you will not receive of God if you ask with wrong motives v3:600; is anyone among you sorrowful, let him pray v23:600; the prayer of faith, and anointing with oil, will make the sick person well v24-25:600; the prayer of a righteous man has great power v27:600; pray continually and give thanks in all circumstances v24:603; men should pray with heads uncovered, women with heads veiled v2:612; if I pray in a tongue, my spirit prays v33:614; I will pray with my spirit, but I will also pray with my mind v33:614; how can those who do not

understand you say amen to your prayer? v35:614; help us with your prayers v13:618; we know not what we ought to pray for, but the Spirit himself intercedes v7:631; devote yourselves to prayer v16:637; pray that God may open doors for us v17:637; Ephraim is always wrestling in prayer for you v5:638; I pray that God the Father will give you spiritual gifts v11:641; take every opportunity to pray in the Spirit v20:643; I thank my God for you and pray with joy v3:645; take your cares to God in prayer v3:647; offer prayer for all men, especially rulers v15:651; lift up holy hands in prayer, without anger or contention v18:651; all food can be purified by prayer v16:652; husbands, treat your wives with respect that nothing hinder your prayers v5:659; ears of Lord attentive to prayers of righteous v10:659; Christ offered up prayers with loud cries and tears v17:668; if we ask anything according to God's will, we know we have obtained it v26:676; if you see your brother commit a sin, you should pray for him v27:676; I pray that you may enjoy good health and all may go well with you v2:678; each elder held a golden bowl full of incense which represented the prayers of the saints v20:686; prayers will be answered while still speaking (during millennium) v20:293

precious stones breastplate of precious stones made for ephod v6-12:71; the king's crown weighed a talent of gold, set with precious stones v30:190; ships sailed to Ophir and brought Solomon back precious stones v22:209; queen of Sheba brought Solomon many precious stones v38:210; New Jerusalem to have walls of precious jewels v22:297; brilliance of New Jerusalem like that of a precious jewel v11:699; walls of New Jerusalem decorated with every kind of precious stone v16:699

predetermination of God (See also prophecy, pre-earth existence) I have hardened Pharaoh's heart that I may perform these miraculous signs v1:55; a lying spirit permitted by God to deceive prophets v21-25:232; before they call I shall answer v21:293; I will raise up Cyrus in righteousness v2:303; Cyrus destined to free Jewish exiles before he was born v3-7:303; I shall declare new things before they spring into being v23:303; I foretold things long ago and they came to pass v19:304; Jeremiah set apart as a prophet before born v3:322; I will send you the prophet Elijah before that great and dreadful day v25:431; all my days were written in your book before I was born, Psalm 2 v8:444; before Abraham was born I existed v34:551; God chose you from the beginning to be saved through the sanctifying work of the Spirit v16:605; God knew beforehand those who would believe v4:631; God influences men for his own purposes v18-22:631; Father chose us from before creation of world, to be holy in his sight v4:641; every knee shall bow and tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord v28:646; Lord knows those who belong to him v29:655; chosen by foreknowledge of God v1:657

pre-earth existence (See also predetermination by God) O God of the spirits of all mankind v22:98; you know not how the spirit enters the child being formed in a mother's womb v25:220; Cyrus destined to free Jewish exiles before he was born v3-7:303; Jeremiah set apart as a prophet before he was born v3:322; I ordained and anointed you one of the guarding cherubim v18:367; the Most High divided mankind according to the numbers of the sons of God v16:418, v5:433; who laid the cornerstone (of the earth) while all the sons of God shouted for joy? v4:440; Lord's eyes beheld David's spirit in Sheol before he was born, Psalm 2 v8:444; there came a man sent from God whose name was John v3:542; before Abraham was born I existed v34:551; Father, glorify me with the glory I had with you before the world began v16:560, v31:560; Jesus said, I am returning to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God v16:564; Paul set apart by God to preach before he was born v9:624

pride I will break your stubborn pride v14:88; Moses warns against pride v11:109; pride leads to Uzziah's downfall v8-12:275; woe to the king of Assyria because of pride v8:287; Jehovah to put an end to pride of the arrogant v5:289; I will remove all the proud from Jerusalem v8:315; the proud shall be deceived v13:316, v2:351; the proud to be brought low and the humble exalted v7:364; because of your wealth your heart has grown proud v14:366; your heart became proud on account of your beauty v21:367; Nebuchadnezzar becomes insane during moment of pride v18:386; God able to humble the proud v25:387; pride of the holy people to finally be broken v16:396; proud men cry out to God only when troubles come v24:439;

rash words escape Moses' lips, Psalm 83 v23:460; I will not tolerate he who has a proud heart, Psalm 3 v3:445; O Lord, you bring low the proud, Psalm 11 v6:446; in proud thoughts there is no room for God, Psalm 12 v3:446; my heart is not proud O Lord, Psalm 56 v1:454; we have suffered much ridicule from the proud, Psalm 67 v3:456; I wisdom hate pride and arrogance v4:467; proverbs on pride ch10:471; pride goes before a fall v1:471; after pride comes disgrace v4:471; pride breeds quarrels v5:471; the Lord tears down a proud man's house v6:471; more hope for a fool than a man wise in his own eyes v8:471; a man is tested by the praise he receives v10:471; Jesus tempted to proudly test God v25:488; truth hidden from the self-wise and learned v17:499; pride an evil thought of the heart v23:506; he who exalts himself will be humbled v25:516; parable of proud Pharisee and humble tax collector v16-19:518; they loved the praise of men more than praise of God v33:556; love is not proud v16:614; Paul given a messenger of Satan to keep from becoming conceited v48:621; be not proud, mingle with people of low position v9:633; do nothing out of selfishness or pride v23:646; whoever disagrees with instruction of the Lord is puffed up with pride v21:653; in the last days men will be proud v6:655; pride of men to be brought low when Lord comes (at second coming) v2:288, v21:288

priesthood (See also Melchizedek, high priest, priests) Melchizedek a priest of God Most High v19:21, v30:669; Aaron and his sons given a priesthood v3:72; rebellious Levites try to obtain priesthood of Aaron v15:97; Lord causes staff of Aaron to blossom as a sign of his priesthood v6-12:98; Aaron and sons given priesthood as gift v15:99; Phinehas and descendants to have a lasting priesthood v11:104; Solomon removed Abiathar from priesthood v11:203; high priest Eliashib defiled covenant of priesthood v23:428; you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood v22:658; order of Melchizedek's priesthood not dependent on ancestry v31:669; priesthood of Melchizedek greater than Levitical v35:669; perfection not attained through Levitical priesthood but by order of Melchizedek priesthood v37:669; whenever a priesthood changes, the law also changes v38:669; Jesus a priest forever, after order of Melchizedek v39:669

priestly garments description of ephod, breastplate, robe, tunic, turban, sash and under-garments v2-20:71

priests (See also priesthood, Melchizedek, high priest, leaders church) Melchizedek a priest of God Most High v19:21, v30:669; Jethro the priest of Midian v30:50; Israel to be a kingdom of priests, a holy nation v3:62; Aaron and his four sons ordained priests ch17-18:71; only priests to sprinkle blood v4:78; priests not to drink wine before entering Tabernacle or will die v11:80; priests to teach Israelites the commandments v12:80; laws pertaining to priests v5-13:84; not to touch dead v5:84; not to marry a harlot or divorced woman v6:84; no man with a bodily defect to serve as priest v8:85; offerings and first fruits belong to priests v17-18:99; a man who shows contempt for priests to be put to death v11:111; Moses gives priests a scroll containing the commandments to v1:117; Jordan stops flowing as priests enter water v7:123; Micah appoints a young Levite to act as his priest v6:146; Saul's guards refuse to strike down priests of Lord v27:173; 85 priests killed by Doeg v29:173; Abiathar the priest escapes slaughter, flees to David with Ephod v30:173; priests unable to enter Temple because of brightness of Lord's glory v29:208; Jeroboam appoints non-Levites as priests v6:224; prophet from Judah curses false priests v8:224; Israel's priests reject knowledge v3:250; priests rejected by Lord for ignoring his laws v4:250; Israelite priest sent from exile to teach Samaritans how to worship Jehovah v25:258; priests from northern Israel come to live in Judah v2:260; Jerusalem priests still observing requirements of Lord in days of king Abijah v24:262; Hezekiah instructs priests to purify Temple v10:285; too few priests purified so Levites help out v21:285; priests have enough to eat and to spare, due to tithes of people v17:286; Jerusalem destroyed because of sinful priests v42:379; some returned exile priests unable to prove genealogy v13:398; priests asked to pray for well being of king Darius and his sons v18:403; priests again organised as written in Law of Moses v4:409; priests dishonour Lord by offering blemished animals v6:430; priests ought to speak with knowledge and wisdom v19:430; priests despised and humiliated in days of Malachi because of their false teaching v21:430; Zechariah, father of John the Baptist a priest v1:482;

Herod enquires of chief priests where Christ to be born v2:486; Jesus tells healed lepers to show themselves to priests v10:496, v6:511; Jesus reveals he must be rejected by chief priests v15:508, v69:520; priest passes by an injured man on the road (parable of Good Samaritan) v25:512; chief priests challenge authority of Jesus v18:522; priests persecute Jesus for healing on the Sabbath v12:546; priests look for way to kill Jesus v11:522; priests plan to kill Lazarus also v10:556; priests want to arrest Jesus but fear crowd v38:523; pay Judas thirty silver coins v16:529; have Jesus arrested v41:531, v2:561; condemn Jesus to death v20:532; cry out to Pilate for Jesus to be crucified v21:562; protest to Pilate about wording of charge on cross v4:563; resurrection of Jesus reported to priests by tomb guards v10:536; guards bribed by priests to lie v11:536; priests arrest apostles Peter and John and forbid them to preach v2:571; priests filled with jealousy, imprison all apostles v16:572; many priests believe and join Church v7:573; priests arrest Stephen and put him on trial v10:573; priests stone Stephen to death for blasphemy v50:574; priests give Saul (Paul) authority to arrest all believers v11:576; faithful men in first resurrection to become priests of God and Christ v6:698; only Levites descended of Zadok to serve as priests in millennial Temple v30:374; priests to be supported by donations of people (during millennium) v39:374; priests to serve as judges (during millennium) v41:374

Promised Land See Canaan promised land of

prophecy commandments on v1-13:67

prophecy (See also predetermination of God) seventy elders prophesy v23:94; prophecies of Balaam ch11-12:102; Saul prophesies v38:162; Saul and his men prophesy in Samuel's presence v2:170; false prophets prophesy v11:232; there is Micahai but I dislike him, he never prophesies anything good about me v8:232; Micahai prophesies death of Ahab v19:232; Jonah prophesies destruction of Nineveh v4:247; priest forbids Amos to prophesy in Bethel v17:256; your sons and daughters will prophesy v4:273; if someone feeds them they prophesy all it is well v10:276; Jerusalem's prophets prophesy for money v2:276; Isaiah's prophecies of last days and Second Coming ch7-16:288; prophesy no more or you will die by our hands v9:328; they prophesy false visions and imaginations of their mind v9:330; O Lord, you persuaded me to prophesy, but I am ridiculed all day long v43:332; Ahab and Zedekiah are prophesying lies to you in my name v6:342; predictions of a true prophet come to pass v26:342; the days go by and every warning prophecy comes to nothing v12:361; days are near when every prophecy shall be fulfilled v13:361; if a prophet is enticed to prophesy for an idolater, both shall be destroyed v33:361; only the wise to understand this prophecy v19:396; Elizabeth and Mary prophesy v28:483; Zechariah prophesies regarding his son John and the coming Christ v34-37:484; Jesus prophesies events of last days and his Second Coming v20-45:526; Ephesian believers prophesy v13:587; Phillip had four unmarried daughters who prophesied v6:589; Agabus prophesies Paul's imprisonment v9:589; do not treat prophecies with contempt v25:603; prophecy a gift of the Spirit v5:613; a woman ought to veil her head when prophesying v2-5:613; eagerly desire gift of prophecy v24:614; he who prophesies edifies whole church v27:614; to prophesy greater than to speak in tongues v29:614; prophecy a sign for believers v38:614; if all prophesy an unbeliever would be convicted that he is a sinner v39:614; rules governing prophecy in church meetings v46:615; one who prophesies speaks words of God v26:659; no prophecy in scripture ever had its origin in the prophet's own mind v15:662; testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy v11:697

prophetess Miriam, sister of Moses a prophetess v11:60; Deborah a prophetess and judge of Israel v3:135; Huldah a prophetess of Judah v22:311; Anna a prophetess testifies of Jesus v24:485; Phillip had four unmarried daughters who prophesied v6:589; you tolerate that Jezebel who calls herself a prophetess v24:684

prophet (See also prophetess) would that all Lord's people were prophets v27:94; Lord spoke to Moses face to face, unlike other prophets v10:95; king of Moab summons Balaam the prophet to curse Israel v3:101; false prophets must be put to death v3:111; another prophet like Moses to be raised up v1:112; sign of a true prophet, his prophecies come to pass

v7:112; all Israel knew Samuel was a prophet of the Lord v19:158; God no longer answers me by prophet or by dream v26:177; old prophet tests obedience of prophet from Judah v16-25:224; prophet from Judah disobeys Lord, killed by lion v22-25:224; 100 prophets hidden in two caves v2:227; prophet's attendant killed by a lion for disobeying instruction v32:230; school of prophets prophesy that Elijah will be taken to heaven v21:233; the prophet considered a fool in Israel v16:251; the prophet is my watchman over Israel v17:251; the Lord does nothing without first revealing it to his prophets v14:255; the Lord warned Israel through his prophets but they would not listen v20:258; have faith in Jehovah and in his prophets and you will be successful v25:264; Lord fulfills the predictions of his prophets v2:303; Jeremiah set apart as a prophet before he was born v3:322; again and again I sent my servants the prophets to warn them v22:327, v3:349; predictions of a true prophet will come to pass v26:342; they shall soon know there has been a prophet among them v23:356; if a prophet is enticed to prophesy for an idolater, both shall be destroyed v33:361; did not my words I spoke to the prophets overtake your forefathers? v3:403; I will remove all prophets who prophesy by unclean spirits v13:408; I will send you the prophet Elijah before that great and dreadful day v25:431; our prophets are no more, we are given no miraculous signs, Psalm 78 v6:459; John the Baptist a prophet of the Most High v36:484; no prophet accepted in his home town v13:488, v5:504; so persecuted they the prophets before you v16:491; true or false prophets known by their fruits v16:494; there has not risen a greater prophet than John v8:498; many prophets longed to see what disciples of Jesus saw v11:502; surely no prophet can die outside of Jerusalem v38:519; this generation held accountable for blood of all the prophets v38:525; if this man were a prophet he would know what kind of woman is touching him v33:495; Jesus a prophet, powerful in word and deed v28:537; I perceive that you are a prophet v11:545; search the scriptures, no prophet is to arise from Galilee v34:550; prophets in church at Antioch v3:580; God appointed first apostles, second prophets v9:613; church built upon foundation of apostles and prophets v28:641; prophets of old spoke by Spirit of Christ v9:658; a prophet is one who speaks the words of God v26:659; words of a prophet like a lamp that illuminates a dark place v14:662; two prophets to witness from Jerusalem in last days v13:690; two prophets to be given power to strike earth with plagues v15:690; Beast to eventually kill v16:690; all nations will gaze on dead bodies and rejoice v19:690; to return to life and ascend into heaven v21:690

prophets false (See also False Prophet of last days, teachers false) false prophets will arise to test the people v2:111; false prophets must be put to death v5:112; bring with you the 450 prophets of Baal v11:227; lying spirit permitted to deceive 400 prophets of Asherah v23:232; false prophets leading the people astray v10:276; I foil the signs of false prophets and make fools of diviners v1:303; false prophets lying to the people v9:330; false prophets shall perish by sword and famine v10:330; both prophet and priest are without knowledge v12:330; people want to be rid of Jeremiah and listen to false prophets v21:332; both prophet and priest are godless v15:340; I see worse wickedness in prophets of Jerusalem, they commit adultery v16:340; false prophets have spread ungodliness throughout the land v17:340; do not listen to dreams and lies of false prophets v18-20:340; I am against prophets who steal my words from another v23:340; Ahab and Zedekiah are prophesying lies, they will be burnt to death v5:342; false prophet among exiles writes a letter to silence Jeremiah v14:342; Hananiah's prophecy false, cursed by Lord and dies v24:342, v30-31:342; prophesy against false prophets who prophesy out of their own imagination v16:361; my hand is against prophets who see false visions and utter lying prophecies v19:361; false prophecies like whitewash over a flimsy wall v21:361; Jerusalem destroyed because of false prophets v42:379; false prophets now wander aimlessly through foreign streets, so defiled with blood no one dare touch them v43:379; true or false prophets known by their fruits v16:494; false prophets to arise in last days and deceive many v26:526; test the spirits for many false prophets are in the world v1:675; False Prophet to perform miracles in presence of Beast v23:698; on that day I shall remove all prophets who prophesy by unclean spirits (at second coming) 13:408

prosperity (See also success) Jacob grew exceedingly prosperous v34:33; I set before you today life and prosperity, or death and destruction v17:117; you will prosper, if you obey the laws Moses gave you v26:110, v4:121, v28:202; why do you disobey my commandments, you will not prosper in this v15:267; he sought guidance from God then worked wholeheartedly and prospered v19:286; your sons shall be taught by the Lord and great shall be their prosperity v23:297; I Jehovah bring prosperity, and I create disaster v6:303; he who trusts in man shall be like a stunted shrub in the desert, he will not see prosperity v1:331; Jehoiachin is a man who shall not prosper in his days, nor his sons v7:340; seek for the prosperity of Babylon, for if Babylon prospers, you too will prosper v4:342; my plan is to prosper you not to harm you v12:342; we prospered when we worshipped the Queen of Heaven v10:350; consider whether you have prospered v12:399; the Jews prospered under the teaching of Haggai and Zechariah v1:409; your beginning may seem humble, but your future shall be prosperous v3:435; the Lord restored Job's prosperity and gave him twice as much as before v34:442; they who obey the laws of the Lord will spend their days in prosperity, Psalm 24 v7:448, Psalm 63:455, Psalm 88 v3:461; Asaph envied the wicked when he saw them prosper Psalm 67 v1:457; a righteous man prospers in whatever he does, Psalm 88 v3:461; holding to the proverbs of Solomon will lead to prosperity v5:464; a generous man will prosper v8:466; he who cherishes wisdom prospers v13:466; prosperity is the reward of the righteous v15:466; one man gives freely and gains more, another withholds and becomes poorer v37:466; he who hides his sins does not prosper v54:469; give generously to receive v5:494; you say, I am prosperous, little do you know you are wretched, pitiful and poor v51:685

prostitution See harlotry, homosexual acts, sodomy

purity Israel (Jacob) purifies his people v18:37; Moses purifies bitter water with a tree v3:60; Israelites to purify themselves for appearance of Lord on mountain v7:63; priests to be purified v1:72; purification of contaminated clothing v1:83; purification of contaminated houses v5:83; purification of a healed person who has been infectious v16:83; preparing Water of Cleansing v11-17:84; cleansing a tent in which a person has died v18:84; an unclean Israelite must purify himself or be cut off v23:84; soldiers and their spoil to be purified for seven days v10:105; when encamped against your enemies you must keep yourselves pure v16:112; Levites instructed to purify defiled Temple v10:285; Paul took the men and purified himself along with them v20:589; all food can be purified by prayer v16:652; blood of Jesus purifies us from all sin v6:674; Levites to be purified when Lord returns v5:431; create in me a pure heart O God, Psalm 23 v5:448; a pure heart required to stand in the Temple, Psalm 65 v2:456; God is good to those who are pure in heart, Psalm 72 v1:457; blessed are the pure in heart v13:491; increase love, which comes from a pure heart v5:651; keep yourself pure v18:653; anyone with this hope purifies himself as Jesus is pure v3:674; all nations to one day offer pure offerings to Lord (during millennium) v11:430

Purim day commemorating destruction of Jewish enemies in Persian empire v23:417

quail cover the ground v15:60; huge flock of hover round Israelite camp v1:94

quarrel quarrelling arose between herdsmen of Lot and Abram v3:21; herdsmen of Gerar quarrel with herdsmen of Isaac v24:29; Joseph tells his brothers not to quarrel on the way home v38:43; proverbs on a quarrelsome woman v4-7:465; like one who seizes a dog by ears is a passer-by who meddles in a quarrel v39:467; a patient man calms a quarrel v3:470; without gossip quarrelling ceases v15:470; a fool is quick to quarrel v23:470; starting a quarrel is like breaking a dam v33:470; he who loves to quarrel loves sin v34:470; pride breeds quarrels v5:471; casting a lot settles disputes v7:471; apostles argue over which of them is the greatest v4:509, v7:529; a dispute breaks out between Pharisees and Sadducees v8:591; you covet and cannot have so you quarrel and fight v2:600; let us behave decently, not quarrelling v21:633; have nothing to do with foolish controversies, they breed quarrels v3:655; a servant of Lord must not be quarrelsome v4:655; warn the brethren against disputations

v24:655

Queen of Heaven families of Judah worship the Queen of Heaven, an idolatrous goddess, v23:327; Jews in Egypt continue to worship Queen of Heaven despite warning from Lord v8:350; Jews blame their troubles on neglecting worship of Queen of Heaven v10:350; Jeremiah corrects Jew's view of Queen of Heaven v11:350

Queen of Sheba See Sheba queen of

Rachel younger daughter of Laban, shapely in body and beautiful v22:32; Jacob loves and marries Rachel v31:32; barren v1:32; gives maidservant Bilhah to Jacob as a wife v8:32; steals her father's household gods v13:33; gives birth to Benjamin then dies v24:37; make this woman be like Rachel and Leah who built up the house of Israel v8:153

Rahab harlot of Jericho, Israelite spies stay in house of v7:121; saves lives of spies v9:122, v17:599; asks that her family be spared by Israelites v13:122; Rahab rescued along with her family v17-18:124; Rahab considered righteous for what she did v7:17:599; not put to death because of her faith v24:671

rain God had not yet caused it to rain upon the earth v2:15; rain fell forty days and forty nights (flood of Noah) v7:18; promised land a land that drinks rain from heaven v9:110; rain to cease if Israelites worship other gods v4:111, v35:116; rain in season if commandments obeyed v19:116; miracle through Samuel of rain in the dry season v36:163; the rains have ended and the flowers are appearing v3:213; Elijah prophesies no rain for next few years v21:226; heavy rain falls at prayer of Elijah v6:228; I will command the clouds not to rain v15:283; spring rains withheld because of idolatry of Judah, likened to harlotry v22:323, v12:325; I will pour down torrential rain on Gog and the armies v14:371; people to be blessed with rain now that they are rebuilding Temple v11:406; men sitting in the courtyard of the Temple distressed by the heavy rain v18:421; men drank in Job's words like spring rain v28:438; can you raise your voice to the clouds and call down rain? v15:440; restore our fortunes O Lord, like rain in the desert, Psalm 86 v2:461; like clouds without rain is he who fails to keep promises v37:470; God causes the rain to fall on both wicked and good v24:492; the rains came down and the floods rose up, yet that house did not fall v26:495; these men are like clouds without rain v13:665; no rain to fall during days of the two prophets of the last days v15:690; nations who fail to worship at Jerusalem (during millennium) shall not have rain v29:409

rainbow rainbow a sign of God's covenant with Noah v27:19; a brilliant radiance surrounded him, with all the colours of a rainbow v18:356; radiating from around his throne was a rainbow, tinged in emerald v2:685; I saw another mighty angel descending, with a rainbow above his head v1:690

rape Dinah raped by ruler of Shechem's son v2:36; penalties for rape v14-16:113; the men raped and abused the young woman throughout the night v17:148; Amnon rapes Tamar v11:191; their wives will be raped v32:304; women of Jerusalem to be raped (in last days) v16:409

rats Philistines suffer from rats and bubonic plague because of Ark v25:159; Philistines make gold images of rats v32:159; those who eat flesh of pigs and rats will meet their end together v8:295

Rebekah grand-daughter of Abraham's brother Nahor v9:27; sister of Laban v18:28; Rebekah waters the camels of Abraham's servant v13:27; given gifts by the servant of Abraham v28:28; Rebekah departs Haran with Abraham's servant v34:28; Rebekah marries Isaac v38:28; gives birth to twins Esau and Jacob v5:6-29; induces her son Jacob to steal his brother's blessing v4-8:30; warns Jacob to flee to her brother Laban v35:31

rebuke Cain rebuked by Lord for not doing right v5:16; Abimelech rebukes Abraham for deception v9:25; Lord rebukes those who went to gather manna on Sabbath v25:61; Moses rebukes Joshua's jealousy for him v27:94; Joshua rebukes the Gibeonites for deception v19:126; angel rebukes Israelites for disobedience v22:134; Deborah rebukes Barak for lack of faith v7:135; prophet sent to rebuke Israel for idolatry v6:136; Eli rebukes his sons v28:157; prophet sent by Lord to rebuke Eli v1:157; Israel rebuked by Lord for asking for king v2:162; King

Ish-Bosheth rebukes Abner v4:184; David rebukes his wife Michal v40:187; Joab rebukes David harshly v28:196; Lord rebukes Ahaziah for consulting foreign god v5:233; Elisha harshly rebukes King Joram v10:237; Lord rebukes Asa for not trusting him v24:263; Jehoshaphat rebuked by Jehu the prophet for helping the wicked v15:264; Lord rebukes king of Assyria for blasphemy v29:300; Judah rebuked by Lord for lack of understanding v11:308; Jeremiah's weariness rebuked by Lord v13:328; Jehoiakim rebuked by Lord for building larger palace v8:339; Edom rebuked for gloating over fall of Jerusalem v6:351; Daniel rebukes Belshazzar for arrogance v12:15:390; Job rebukes his friends v24:435; Lord rebukes Job's friends v28:442; a rebuke goes deeper into man of discernment than a hundred lashes into a fool v22:467; rebuke a wise man and he will be wiser still, and will love you v31:467; John the Baptist rebukes Pharisees for failing to repent v5:487; John the Baptist rebukes Herod for unlawful marriage v1:488; Jesus rebukes Peter for thinking as a man v17:508; Jesus rebukes James and John for wanting to destroy lives v4:511; Jesus rebukes hypocrisy of Pharisees v15-16:513, v31-39:525; Jesus rebukes teachers of the Law v18-20:513; Jesus rebukes synagogue ruler for hypocrisy v9:15:6; if your brother sins, rebuke him v30:518; Jesus rebukes Peter for using a sword v47:531; Jewish leaders rebuke a man for being healed on Sabbath v7:546; Jesus rebukes Judas for bothering a woman v7:555; Stephen strongly rebukes Jewish leaders v43-46:574; Peter rebukes Simon the sorcerer v16-17:575; rebuke the people with sharpness so they will remain sound in the faith v13:648; rebuke with authority v26:649; only warn a divisive man twice v31:649; do not rebuke an older man, but exhort him as your father v25:652; a bishop who sins to be rebuked publicly v13:653; correct, rebuke and encourage with utmost patience v17:656

Recabite family offered wine but refuse to drink v15-19:339; Lord commends faithfulness of v22:339; blessed to serve Lord for all time v24:339

red heifer to be slaughtered when preparing Water of Cleansing v11:84

Red Sea strong westerly wind carried locusts into v15:55; God led people along desert road leading toward v26:67; Red Sea driven back by strong east wind, Israelites pass through v25:59; flows back over Egyptian army v29:59; dead Egyptians washed up on shore of v1:59; Israelites again camp on shore of Red Sea v6:60; Red Sea the southern border of promised land v14:75; Israelites travel back towards Red Sea from Mount Hor v4:101; we heard how Jehovah dried up the sea v11:122; Solomon built ships at Ezion Geber on tip of Red Sea v20:209; Jehovah will dry up the tongue of the Red Sea v16:296

Rehoboam king of Israel after death of Solomon v24:211; 41 years of age when he became king v1:260; leaders of Israel request Rehoboam to lighten their heavy yoke v26:211; king's older officials advise Rehoboam to speak kind words v28:211; younger officials advise harshness v30-31:211; Rehoboam answers leaders harshly and is rejected as king of Israel except by Judah v32-34:211; prepares to fight for the kingdom v38:212; Lord forbids Rehoboam to fight, obeys Lord v39:212; humbles himself when Egypt invades Judah v12:261; makes bronze shields to replace gold ones taken by Egyptians v16:261; Rehoboam dies and son Abijah becomes king v17:261

religion this man Paul has led large numbers to change their religion v30:587; pure religion is to care for orphans and widows, and to be untainted by the world v19:599; whoever does not control his tongue, his religion is worthless v19:599; widows should live their religion by caring for their own v1:652; they possess a form of religion, but deny its power v8:655

repentance (See also salvation) Lord punishes the unrepentant and their children to third and fourth generation v10:75; the hearts of this people are hardened, otherwise they would repent and be healed v25:275; the Lord says, in repentance is your salvation v20:298; return to me with all your heart v19:272; though your sins be red like scarlet, they can be white as snow v8:283; seek the Lord while he is near, he will freely pardon v10:293; only repentance will bring the help of the Lord v20:298; Hezekiah repented of his pride v29:301; Messiah to pardon many and bear their sins v21:307;

Manasseh humbled himself greatly and was restored again to his throne v6:309; in vain I punished you, but you did not repent v18:323; Lord willing to relent bringing disaster on Judah if the people repent v2:326; repent of such talk and you may serve me still v23:330; Lord will relent of a threatened disaster if a nation repents v13:326, v17:331; past sins not remembered when a person fully repents v28:364; the Lord is pleased when the wicked repent v29:364; repent and turn away from all your sins v34:364; repent and Live v35:364; let us examine our ways and return to the Lord v68:380; Daniel advises Nebuchadnezzar to repent and be kind to the poor v17:386; returned exiles repent and covenant to keep the Law of God v19:427; whoever confesses his sins finds mercy v54:469; people went out to John the Baptist, confessing their sins and being baptised v4:487; bear fruit worthy of repentance v5:487; I have not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance v22:490; Tyre and Sidon would have repented long ago v15:499; Nineveh repented at the preaching of Jonah v24:501; unless you repent and become like little children, you will never enter the kingdom of God v6:509; parable of fertilising barren fig tree v4:515; if one from the dead appears to them, they will still not repent v35-36:515; unless you repent, you will all perish v3:515; more rejoicing in heaven over one sinner who repents than 99 righteous persons v10:517, v13:517; parable of the lost coin v11:517; parable of the prodigal son v14-29:517; forgive your brother if he repents, seven times in one day if necessary v30:518; Zacchaeus repents and gives half his possessions to poor v5:521; parable of two sons v23-25:522; criminal on the cross believes in Jesus v13:535; crowd ask apostles what they should do, Peter replies repent and be baptised v11-12:570; repent and turn to God that your sins be wiped out v13:571; repentance only possible through Jesus v31:581; God commands all people everywhere to repent v27:585; repent, for God has set a day to judge world by Jesus v28:585; godly sorrow brings genuine repentance v43:619; Paul not to spare Corinthians who have not repented v12:622; restore gently any who sin v13:626; God's tolerance and patience is to allow sinners time to repent v19:629, v6:663; the stubborn who repent not, store up wrath on the day of judgement v20:629; we have forgiveness of our sins through the blood of Jesus v6:641; those who have shared in the Holy Spirit and fall away cannot be restored again by repentance v23:668; Ephesian church to be removed if they do not repent v5:683; all who have committed adultery with her will suffer intensely unless they repent v25:684; survivors of last days will not repent of idolatry, murder, sorcery, sexual immorality and thefts v34:689, v17-19:694

restitution restitution for personal injury v5-18:66; a thief must make restitution v3:67; when a person wrongs another they are to confess the sin and make full restitution v15:67; commandments on restitution v1-16:67; restitution to have a fifth value added v27:79; the Lord restored Job's prosperity and gave him twice as much as before v34:442; Zacchaeus repents and gives half his possessions to poor v5:521

resurrection shout for joy you who dwell in the dust, for the earth will give birth to her dead v32-34:293; Lord to resurrect all dead of Israel from their graves v9:369; many who sleep in the dust of earth will awaken to Eternal Life, others to Eternal Shame v12:396; Daniel to be resurrected at end of age v22:396; Zerubbabel to be raised up on last day v35:400; Job affirms his belief in the resurrection v21:437; when I am resurrected I will see your face and have joy in your presence, Psalm 6 v5:445; from the depths of the earth you shall raise me up, Psalm 57 v9:454; Jesus to die at Jerusalem and after three days rise again v15:508; Sadducees question Jesus about resurrection v12:524; no marriage after resurrection v12:524; I know he will rise again in the resurrection at the last day v13:554; bodies of many holy saints resurrected after resurrection of Jesus v22:535; Jesus resurrected early Sunday morning v5:536; tomb of Jesus found open and empty v1:563; angels speak to women at tomb of resurrected Jesus v16:536; Mary Magdalene returns to the tomb and sees the resurrected Jesus v22:537, v15:564; resurrected Jesus appears to Peter v40:538; Jesus appears and walks with two disciples after his resurrection v25:537; resurrected Jesus appears in the midst of his disciples v42:538; disciples think resurrected Jesus a spirit v43:538; Jesus eats to prove he has resurrected body of flesh and bones v49:538; all who have died to be resurrected

v21:547; those who have done evil will rise to condemnation v21:547; eye has not seen, nor ear heard, nor entered into heart of man what God has prepared for those who love him v24:608; God raised Jesus from dead and will raise our bodies also v25:610; Jesus appeared to apostles and more than 500 brethren after resurrection v3:615; Paul answers those who doubt resurrection v7:615; our faith in vain if there is no resurrection of the dead v8:615; varying degrees of glory in resurrected bodies, likened to sun, moon and stars v24:616; Jesus Christ the first-raised from dead v14:636; we eagerly await our Saviour's return, he will transform our bodies to be like his glorious body v19:647; some teach that the resurrection has already taken place v27:655; two prophets in last days to be resurrected from dead as enemies watch, and ascend into heaven v21:690; blessed and holy they who have part in first resurrection v5:698; spirits of faithful saints to be resurrected and reign with Christ a thousand years (at second coming) v4:698; immediate resurrection for righteous at last trumpet (at second coming) v29:616; at the trumpet call of God the dead in Christ will rise first (at second coming) v13:603; the newly resurrected and those still alive to be caught up to meet Lord in air (at second coming) v14:603; rest of the dead not resurrected until thousand years ended v7:698; John sees final resurrection and day of judgement v13-19:699; sea, grave and Hades gave up dead that were in them v14:699

Reuben first born son of Jacob (Israel) and Leah v1:32; finds mandrake plants and gives them to his mother Leah v14:32; lies with his father's concubine Bilhah v26:37; plans to rescue Joseph from his brothers v20:38; loses birthright and cursed along with his descendants because of his adultery v17:45

Reuben tribe of Israel's dying blessing upon – lose birthright, to no longer excel v17:45; first census of 46,500 v11:92; second census 43,730 v4:104; assigned lands east of Jordan v8-17:106; Moses' blessing upon – his men to increase v14:119; 12,000 servants of God to be sealed from in last days v4:688

revelation from God breastplate and Urim and Thummim to be for receiving revelation v7-14:71; I give a prophet revelations in visions or dreams v9:95; high priests to obtain revelation by inquiring of Urim and Thummim v7:119; Elisha calls for a harpist to soothe him in order to obtain revelation v13:237; Elisha the prophet knows every word you speak in private v4:240; God does nothing without first revealing it to his servants the prophets v14:255; revelation from God soon to cease in Israel v11:276; it is I (Jehovah) that have revealed, not some foreign god v5:302; write down the revelation, though it seem slow it will surely come to pass v12:316; if what a prophet proclaims does not come to pass, the Lord has not spoken v7:112, v26:342; the dream was revealed to Daniel in a vision v13:384; there is a God in heaven who reveals mysteries v18:384; I will reveal what will happen to your people in the latter days v10:393; we have received a revelation from Jehovah, Psalm 76 v3:458; this was revealed to you by my Father in heaven v11:507; you have revealed these things to the humble in heart v17:499, v35:512; David's revelations received through the Holy Spirit v23:524; the Holy Spirit knows all things even the thoughts of God v25:608; when one is given a revelation, all is well and good for the church v43:615; I will now speak of visions and revelations v45:621; I heard things that mortal man is forbidden to reveal v45:621; because of my abundance of revelations there was given me a thorn in the flesh v48:621; I received it by revelation from Jesus Christ v7:624; revelation a gift of the Holy Spirit v11:641; prophets of old spoke by the Spirit of Christ which was in them v9:658; book of Revelation a revelation of things to come v1:682; John given revelation for seven local churches v11:683

revenge (See also forgiveness) do not seek revenge but love your neighbour as yourself v9:64; it is mine to avenge the enemy, I will repay v26:118; destroy the house of Ahab to avenge the blood of my prophets v17:242; I will take vengeance on the nations that have not obeyed me v8:277, v4:292, v5:334; jealousy arouses a husband's fury, he will show no mercy when he takes revenge v14:465; wait patiently on the Lord, he will avenge you v5:471; he who forgives an offence promotes love v6:472; be kind to your enemies v23:491; if you forgive others, your heavenly Father will also forgive you v18:493, v2:494; repay not evil for evil, rather bless those who afflict you v11:633, v7:659; forgive whatever

grievances you have against one another v2:637

reverence take off your sandals, you are standing on holy ground v3:51, v5:123; have reverence for my Tabernacle v8:64; reverse Jehovah and serve him only v12:109; Joshua falls face down in reverence before angel v4:123; out of reverence for God I did not act like that v14:425; your forefather Levi revered me and stood in awe of my name v17:430; I the Lord hear the prayers of those who revere me v19:431; the day of the Lord shall come as a glorious sunrise for you who reverence my name v23:431; Job revered God v1:433; serve Jehovah with reverence and trembling, Psalm 14 v5:446; no reverence of God in the heart of a wicked man, Psalm 41 v1:451; blessed are they who revere the Lord, Psalm 55 v1:454, Psalm 63 v1:455; all nations will one day revere name of Jehovah, Psalm 82 v9:459; to revere the Lord is the beginning of wisdom v3:464; a woman who reveres the Lord is to be praised v24:465; God accepts men from all nations who revere him v22:578; work out your salvation with reverence and trembling v29:646; teach the older women to be reverent in their behaviour v16:649; love the brethren, revere God, and honour the emperor v27:658; unbelieving husbands can be won over by the purity and reverence of their wives v1:658; revere God and give him glory v9:693

riches See **wealth**

righteousness Noah was a righteous man v16:17; Abram's belief credited to him as righteousness v4:21; Lord to spare Sodom if ten righteous people found v27:24; Lord did not lead Israelites to promised land because of their righteousness v4:110; righteousness no guarantee of a long life v1:219; put not your trust in being over-righteous v2:219; righteousness rewarded on day of judgement v11:219; not a righteous man on earth who never sins v10:220; seek the Lord and he shall shower righteousness upon you v12:251; in Jehovah alone is righteousness v23:292; it is I who speak righteousness says the Lord v2:292; I will raise up Cyrus in righteousness v2:303; the righteous die to be spared from evil v12:308; blessings of righteous living v32-35:309; seek righteousness and humility v6:315; ask where the righteous way is and walk in it v26:325; Lord delights in righteousness v40:327; if a righteous man turns to evil, his righteous deeds are not remembered v4:357, v30:364; the righteous can only save themselves v1:361; definition of a righteous man v17-20:363; the righteous son of a wicked man will be saved v25:364; distinction between righteous and wicked to be clearly seen on day Lord returns v21:431; you will have seen my righteous servant Job v7:433; let a righteous man rebuke me, it is kindness, Psalm 9 v2:445; the Lord dealt with me according to my righteousness, Psalm 11 v5:446; Jehovah is righteous and loves justice, Psalm 35 v4:450; the Lord keeps the righteous alive in a famine, Psalm 39 v5:451, v28:470; the Lord delivers a righteous man from all his afflictions, Psalm 40 v9:451; the Lord's ears attentive to prayers of the righteous, Psalm 40 v8:451, v59:469; the righteous have no fear of bad news, Psalm 55 v4:454; the righteous lend freely, therefore their children will be blessed, Psalm 58 v7:454, v4:469; the mouth of a righteous man speaks wisdom and justice, Psalm 58 v8:454, v21:467; I have never seen the righteous forsaken or their children begging bread, Psalm 58 v9:454; God loves the righteous, Psalm 92 v8:462; prosperity the reward of the righteous v15:466; a sinner's wealth is stored up for the righteous v29:466; better a little gain with righteousness than much gain with injustice v32:466; the upright detest the wicked and wicked detest the upright v19:468; the righteous care about justice for the poor v21:468; way of the righteous is like the first hint of dawn, increasing to full glory of sunrise v1:469; the Lord blesses the household of a righteous man v3:469; a righteous man cares for his animals v5:469; though a righteous man fall seven times he will rise again v6:469; the righteous flourish like green branches v7:469; the upright hate what is false v8:469; the righteous can sing and rejoice v11:469; what the righteous desire will be granted v14:469; desires of the righteous end only in good v15:469; the path is straight for the righteous v16:469; blessings crown the head of a righteous man v17:469; a righteous man is bold as a lion v19:469; bloodthirsty men seek to kill the upright v80:469; the memory of a righteous man is a blessing v22:470; the righteous are rescued from trouble v26:470; no great ill befalls the righteous v27:470; he who sows seeds of righteousness reaps a sure reward v29:470; the

Lord makes the enemies of a righteous man to be at peace with him v36:470; silver hair a crown of glory if attained by a righteous life v37:470; the truly righteous man attains Eternal Life v38:470, v33:528; lips of the righteous know fitting words to speak v53:471; teaching of the righteous a fountain of life v54:471; righteousness exalts a nation v1:471; a righteous man cares for his neighbour v5:473; the righteous have no fear of sudden disaster v3:474; I have not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance v22:490; blessed are those who hunger and thirst after righteousness v11:491; blessed are they who are persecuted for righteousness v15:491; your righteousness must exceed that of the Pharisees to enter kingdom of God v15:494; the righteous will shine like the sun in the kingdom of their Father v39:503; angels to separate the wicked from the righteous in last days v44:504; you will be repaid at the resurrection of the righteous v28:516; many were invited but few were worthy v50:523; surely this was a righteous man v24:535; there will be a resurrection of both the righteous and the wicked v12:592; anger does not bring about God's righteousness v14:598; the prayer of a righteous man has great power v27:600; immediate resurrection for the righteous at last trumpet v29:616; what do righteousness and wickedness have in common? v17:622; if righteousness could be gained through the Law, Christ died for nothing v24:624; no one is righteous, not even one v9:629; flee the passions of youth and pursue righteousness v2:655; scripture useful for training in righteousness v15:656; better not to have known the way of righteousness than to have known it and turned away v31:662; the Lord has promised a new earth in which righteousness dwells v9:663; discipline is painful, but yields fruit of righteousness v40:671; you have before you the spirits of righteous men made perfect v7:671

River (Euphrates) name of the headwater of a river flowing into Garden of Eden (before flood) v6:15; great river Euphrates the northern border of promised land v18:22, v14:75, v8:110; Solomon ruled over all kings west of the Euphrates river v27:204; Israel to be scattered beyond the River v44:225; Jeremiah's prophecy tied to a stone thrown into v21:343; four angels bound at river Euphrates to be released in last days v27:689; Euphrates to dry up into seven small streams in last days v16:296, v20:695

robe Joseph arrayed in a robe of fine linen by Pharaoh v19:40; high priest to wear a robe of blue cloth v15:71; Achan steals a beautiful robe from spoil of Jericho v11:215; David gives his robe to Jonathan v2:169; David cuts off corner of Saul's robe v20:173; medium sees spirit of an elderly man clothed in a robe v23:177; Tamar tore the long ornamented robe that virgin daughters of the king wear v15:191; both kings were dressed in their royal robes v11:232; the people saw that beneath his robes the king wore sackcloth v23:241; bring out robes for all the priests of Baal v25:244; the king of Nineveh took off his royal robes and clothed himself with sackcloth v6:248; robes of Jesus to be stained crimson at second coming v1:292 v15:698; when Josiah heard the words of the book he tore his robes and wept v20:311; Mordecai honoured by being paraded in a royal robe v36:415; Job's friends went aloud and tore their robes v26:434; they love to walk around in flowing robes v27:524; the soldiers mocked Jesus and arrayed him in a royal robe v14:533, v17:562; the women saw two angels dressed in white robes v16:536; the angel was clothed in a long robe with a golden girdle around his chest v12:683; each spirit given a white robe v11:687; John sees a great multitude standing before the throne, wearing white robes v6:688; they washed their robes white in the blood of the Lamb v9:688

rock (See also stones pillars of, stone pillars, stone tablets, stones memorial) water flows out of a rock at Horeb v4:61; water gushes from rock at Meribah v7:100; rocks of promised land contain iron ore v9:109; food on the rock consumed by fire v15-16:137; God split the rock for Samson and a spring of water flowed forth v33:144; powerful wind from the Lord shattered rocks on the mountain v19:229; Jehovah to be a rock that causes men to stumble v3:284; Lord's word like a hammer that breaks a rock v22:340; rock cut out of the mountain filled the whole earth, represents kingdom of God v22-30:384; I will make Jerusalem an immovable rock v2:408; you are my rock, my fortress, Psalm 11 v1:446, Psalm 30 v1:449; parable of man who built his house on the rock v25:495; you are Peter and upon this rock I will build my church

v12:507; the rocks split and tombs broke open v21:535; body of Jesus placed in a new tomb cut out of rock v30:536

Rock the Joseph to be made strong by the Rock of Israel v31:45; Jehovah named as the Rock v13:118; Israel rejected the Rock v19:118; no other Rock besides Jehovah v7:302; who is the Rock but our God, Psalm 11 v6:446; you are my Father, my God, my Rock and my Redeemer, Psalm 84 v4:460; Rock who accompanied Israelites of old was Christ v13:611; come to the Living Stone, rejected by men v21:658

rod (See also flogging) I will punish him with the rod of men v33:188; the rod which struck you is broken v2:284; the king of Assyria the rod of the Lord's anger v8:287; Messiah to strike the earth with the rod of his mouth v19:307; if only there were someone to remove God's rod from me v14:435; ask me, and you will break all nations with a rod of iron, Psalm 14 v4:446; I will punish their sin with the rod, but I shall not withdraw my love, Psalm 84 v6:461; a rod for the backs of fools v4:468; the rod of discipline drives away evil v25:469; he who spares the rod cares not for his son v2-8:473

Romans a strong fourth empire (Roman) to arise and break all others v27:384; kingdom of God to be established on earth during Roman empire v29:384; ten kingdoms to arise from fourth beast (Roman empire) v20-23:388; Roman commander to put and end to insolence of Syria v32:394; census taken of entire Roman empire v5:484; Jesus marvels at Roman centurion's faith v5:490; Jesus accused before Roman governor Pilate v2:533; Roman soldiers flog and mock Jesus v30-32:534, v17:562; Roman soldiers crucify Jesus v3:535, v2:562; Holy Spirit falls on Cornelius a devout Roman v1-28:577; severe famine to spread over Roman world v15:579; Paul and Silas Roman citizens v35:584, v43:590

Paul writes to Romans, Rom:628; faith of Roman church widely reported v4:628; Paul plans to visit Romans on way to Spain v18:634; Paul arrives in Rome v14:595

rulers (See also kings) do not scorn or curse the ruler of your people v3:65; must not rule over fellow Israelites harshly v31:86; I will not rule over you, Jehovah will rule over you v2:139; we want to be like other nations and have a king to rule us v10:161; Lord has chosen another man after his own heart to rule his people v14:164; I took you from pasturing sheep to be ruler over my people Israel v29:188; he who rules with justice and reverence for God is like the light of sunrise on a cloudless morning v22:201; King Solomon ruled over all Israel, all his people were happy and lived in safety v26:204; above all officials rules the King of the whole earth v14:218; the people devour their rulers v13:251; a fierce king to rule over Egypt in last days v7:291; God has made Nebuchadnezzar to rule over all the earth v25:384; know that the Most High rules over the kingdoms of men v11:386; rulership of the whole earth will be handed over to the people of the Most High v27:389; my rulers understand nothing, they walk around blindly, Psalm 77 v3:458; by patience a ruler can be persuaded v2:470; where there is no vision the people perish v2:471; many seek the favour of a ruler v21:472; a ruler greedy for bribes tears down his nation v27:472; when the wicked rule the people mourn v27:472; rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them, it is not to be so among you v76:520; one who rules should be like the one who serves v8:529; the ruler of this world is coming, he has no power over me v11:558; submit to your ruler, he is God's servant to do you good v15:633; you were dead in your sins when you followed ruler of realms of the spirit v17:641; remind saints to be subject to rulers v27:649, v25:658; offer prayer and thanksgiving for all men, especially rulers v15:651; characteristics of the mighty king of the last days (Antichrist) v1-9:395

Ruth widowed daughter-in-law of Naomi, returns with her to Bethlehem v7-9:151; gleanings grain in barley field of Boaz v1-3:151; Ruth sent to Boaz at night by Naomi v18:152; Ruth asks Boaz to marry her v23:152; Boaz negotiates for Ruth at town gate v5:153; Ruth becomes wife of Boaz v9:153

Sabbath day God rests on the seventh day, blesses it to be holy v20:15; no manna found on Sabbath day v24:61; fourth commandment—remember to keep holy the Sabbath day v22:64; other commandments on Sabbath v37-42:65; fire not to be lit on Sabbath v39:65; double daily sacrifice to be offered on Sabbath v29:72; Sabbath breaker stoned to death v5:97; blessed is the man who keeps the Sabbath day holy v12:294, v15:294; call the Sabbath a delight, a holy day of the Lord,

honour it v31:309; Lord repeats commandment to keep the Sabbath day holy v8:331; my Sabbaths are desecrated v11:364; Sabbath breaking in Jerusalem v10-16:428; Levites to guard gates to keep Sabbath holy v17:428; Nehemiah threatens merchants attempting to sell on the Sabbath v12-16:428; the Sabbath made for man, not man for the Sabbath v7:500; the Son of Man is Lord of Sabbath v7:500; Jesus heals a man with a shrivelled hand on Sabbath v12:500; synagogue ruler indignant Jesus healed on Sabbath v8:516; do not each of you lead your ox or donkey out to water on the Sabbath? v9:516; who would not pull out a sheep (or ox) fallen in a pit or well on Sabbath day v10:500, v20:516; Jewish leaders rebuke healed man for carrying mat on Sabbath v7:546; Jesus defends healing on the Sabbath v16-18:549; the next day was a High Sabbath v16:563; Paul reasons in the synagogue each Sabbath v4:586; Sabbath to be observed during millennium v4:295

Sabbath year commandments on Sabbath year v40-42:65; land to lie fallow and unharvested every seventh year v40:65; sixth year to yield enough for three years v41:65; land to enjoy its Sabbath years while Israelites in exile v29:88; empty land of Judah begins its seventh year Sabbath rest v31:349

sackcloth See clothing

sacrifice Cain and Abel make offerings to the Lord v3:16; Noah builds an altar and offers sacrifice v19:18; Abram builds an altar at Hebron v20:20; Abraham commanded by Lord to sacrifice Isaac v1:26; animals used for sacrifice to be without defect v1:78; offerer's hand to be laid on animal's head as slaughtered v3:78; bird offerings v7:78; sacrifice to demons forbidden v42:79; 142,000 animals sacrificed at dedication of Temple by Solomon v33:208; king of Moab sacrifices his firstborn son on city wall, great fury comes upon Israel v23:237; Lord desires mercy and knowledge of God more than sacrifice v22:251; 700 cattle and 7000 sheep and goats sacrificed by all of Judah v15:263; Josiah and officials provide the people 41,400 animals to sacrifice at Passover v33:312; returned exiles offer sacrifice at rebuilt Temple v13:420; sacrifices regarded as a burden by Jews in days of Malachi v12:430; you bring injured, crippled, and diseased animals, shall I accept them v13:430; man who vows a good animal then offers blemished one cursed v14:430; Job would offer sacrifice on behalf of his children v4:433; justice more pleasing to Lord than offering sacrifice v34:470; do good, for with such sacrifices God is pleased v18:672; Levites to again minister at Temple and cook sacrifices during millennium v17:372

sacrifice daily a year old lamb to be offered morning and evening v25:72; double sacrifice to be offered on Sabbath day v29:72; offered regularly all the days of Jehoiada the high priest v11:267; again offered by returning exiles v16:398; king of North to abolish daily sacrifice v44:395; daily sacrifice to again be abolished in last days v20:396; daily sacrifice to be offered in millennial Temple v21:374

sacrifice monthly to be offered at each new moon v30:73

sacrifice self, See service

Sadducees (worldly ruling class sect, noted for living letter of Law only) rebuked by John the Baptist for not repenting v4:487; ask Jesus for sign from heaven v46:507; Jesus warns against false teaching and hypocrisy of v55:507; believe there is no life after death, and no angel or spirit v8:524, v8:591; question Jesus about resurrection v9-11:524; Jesus corrects false belief of Sadducees concerning life after death v13-14:524; Sadducees imprison apostles because of jealousy v16:572; Paul creates a dispute between Pharisees and Sadducees v8:591

saints (biblical term for church members) sing you saints of the Lord, praise his holy name, Psalm 8 v3:455; as for the saints, they are my delight, Psalm 17 v2:447; revere the Lord you his saints, Psalm 40 v6:451; many saints resurrected when Jesus resurrected v22:535; Peter travelled about visiting the saints v28:577; Paul imprisoned many saints v24:593; saints are to judge the world v15:609; share with saints who are in need v7:633; the mystery hidden for generations now made known to saints v2:636; saints to inherit kingdom of light v9:636; greet every saint in Christ Jesus v13:647; you must teach the saints sound doctrine v14:648; saints are to obey laws and be ready to do honest work v27:649; the horn waged

war against the saints v13:388, v19:388; slain saints given white robe and told to rest a little longer v11:687; seal to be put on foreheads of faithful saints in last days v3:688; vast number of saints to die during Great Tribulation of last days v9:688; blood of saints shed v14:694; Antichrist in last days to oppress the saints v25:388; Great Harlot drunk with the blood of martyred saints v7:695

salt Lot's wife becomes a pillar of salt v20:25; salt to be added to grain offerings v15:78; salt sowed over crop land of Shechem by Abimelech v18:140; Elisha heals bad water of Jericho with salt v1-4:236; to be sprinkled on animals used in burnt offerings v18:373, v18:403; provided to Ezra without limit v23:419; you are the salt of the earth v27:492

salvation (See also repentance) (to save from the effects of sin) my salvation is to be revealed v12:294, v5:297; my salvation shall last forever v6:297; all the earth shall see the salvation of our God v16:297; in repentance is your salvation v20:298; the Lord's salvation is to the ends of the earth v10:306; it is good to wait quietly for the salvation of the Lord v62:380; your King is coming to you, having salvation v6:407; restore to me the joy of my salvation, Psalm 23 v6:448; in God is my salvation, he is my rock, Psalm 30 v1:449; the Lord is my salvation, so whom shall I fear? Psalm 50 v1:453; John the Baptist to teach the way of salvation, through forgiveness of sins v36:484; today salvation has come to this house v6:521; salvation is from the Jews v13:545; no other name given by which we can be saved v6:571; God's salvation sent to the Gentiles v29:596; put on the hope of salvation, as a helmet v18:603; Godly sorrow brings repentance that leads to salvation v43:619; work out your salvation with reverence and trembling v29:646; scriptures able to lead you to salvation v14:656; rejoice with inexpressible joy because of the salvation of your souls v8:658; count our Lord's patience as a means of salvation v10:663; how shall we escape if we pay no heed to a salvation so great as this? v6:667; Jesus the pioneer of our salvation was made perfect through suffering v11:667; Jesus to come a second time, to bring salvation to those waiting for him v49:669; salvation belongs to our God and to the Lamb v6:688, v1:697; now has come the salvation of our God v16:691

Samaria city built by Omri in northern kingdom of Israel v16:226; Ben-Hadad of Syria swears to destroy v8:230; royal city of King Ahab and Jezebel v3-4:231; Elisha leads Syrian army into v12:241; Ben-Hadad besieges city, causes great famine v18-19:241; Syrians hear sound of a vast army and flee v34:241; people of Samaria to bear their guilt, have rebelled against God v2:251; sinful women of Samaria to be led away by hooks v22:255; complacent rich men of Samaria the first to go into exile v25:255; Samaria to become a heap of rubble v4:276; Assyria begins three year siege of v17:258, v1:286; falls after three year siege, survivors exiled to Assyria v18:258, v18:287; Samaria a younger sister to Jerusalem v35:363

Samaritans conquering Assyrians settle other peoples in Samaria and cities of Israel v23:258; Israelite priest sent from exile to teach Samaritans how to worship Jehovah v25:258; idolatry also practised by v27:258; want to help returned exiles rebuild Temple v6:399; Israelite leaders refuse help v7:399; become enemies of Jews, work on Temple stops v8:399; oppose work of rebuilding walls of Jerusalem, write to king Artaxerxes v3:418; mock Jew's plans to rebuild walls of Jerusalem v1:424; plot to kill Jewish leaders v13:424; Samaritan town does not welcome Jesus v2:511; healed Samaritan leper returns to thank Jesus v7:511; parable of the good Samaritan v24-27:512; Jesus speaks to Samaritan woman at Jacob's well v3-14:545; Jews do not socialise with Samaritans v4:545; Jesus stays with Samaritans two days, many believe v26:546; great joy in Samaria because of miracles of Phillip v6:575; Peter and John sent to give Samaritans gift of Holy Spirit v12-14:575; Peter and John preach gospel in other Samaritan towns v20:575

Samson birth of, a life-long Nazirite v1-19:142; Spirit of Lord begins to stir v19:143; desires a young Philistine woman as his wife v20:143; kills a lion with bare hands v25:143; later finds honey in carcass of the lion v27:143; poses riddle to Philistines during seven day wedding feast v2:143; Philistines threaten Samson's wife to find answer to riddle v5:144; Samson reveals answer to his wife who tells Philistines v9:144; strikes down thirty Philistines in anger, to obtain clothes v11-12:144; returns

later for his wife but finds she has been given to another v14:144; Samson afflicts Philistines by burning crops v17:144; Philistines burn Samson's wife and her father to death v20:144; slaughters Philistines greatly to avenge death of wife v21:144; men of Judah bind Samson and hand him over to Philistines v27:144; Samson snaps binding ropes and kills 1000 Philistines with a jaw bone v30:144; cries to Lord for water, a new spring flows v32:144; becomes judge of Israel v35:145; stays with a harlot in Gaza, leaves at midnight uprooting city gates v1-3:145; falls in love with a Philistine woman Delilah v4:145; Philistine rulers bribe Delilah to discover secret of Samson's strength v6-5:145; Samson snaps seven bowstrings v9:145; Samson snaps new ropes like threads v12:145; Delilah weaves Samson's hair into her loom v15:145; Samson becomes weary of nagging, reveals his secret to Delilah v18:145; Samson's hair is cut off, loses his strength, captured and blinded by Philistines v21:146; put to grinding at prison mill v24:146; brought in to entertain Philistines v26:146; prays to Jehovah for strength to be restored v30:146; collapses temple killing thousands of Philistines v32:146

Samuel prophet and judge of Israel, lifelong Nazirite, son of Hannah, v7-17:156; raised by high priest Eli v18:157; the Lord speaks to Samuel v9:158; Samuel's reputation as a prophet grows v19:158; Samuel judged Israel all his life v1:160; Samuel's two sons dishonest v2:160; elders of Israel ask Samuel to appoint them a king v3:160; Samuel enquires of the Lord v4:161; prophesies disadvantages of a king v6-9:161; anoints Saul king of Israel v30:162; Samuel testifies of his own honesty as judge v30:163; warns people and Saul to follow Jehovah v34:163; calls on Lord for a miracle, Lord sends thunder and rain in dry season v36:163; warns people against idolatry v39:163; pleads with Lord all night for Saul v24:166; executes king of Amalekites v24:166; mourns for Saul v44:166; Samuel sent to Bethlehem by Lord to anoint new king v1:167; anoints David king v14:167; Saul and his men prophesy in Samuel's presence v2-4:170; Samuel dies and all Israel mourns v1:174; Saul asks a medium to bring up the spirit of Samuel v2:176; Samuel prophesies Israel's defeat and Saul's death v27:177; even Samuel could not change Lord's intent to exile Judah v15:330

sanctified (to be made holy) sanctify them by the truth v26:560; Gentiles sanctified by faith in Jesus v29:593; brethren, it is God's will that you be sanctified v2:602; God chose you from the beginning to be saved through the sanctifying work of the Spirit v16:605; you have been sanctified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ v22:609

sanctuary Tabernacle to be a sanctuary for the Lord v3:69; only priests permitted to enter Sanctuary behind veil v15:99; description of inner Sanctuary of Temple v21:206; priests place the Ark in the Sanctuary, beneath wings of Cherubim v6:207; King Uzziah cursed with leprosy for unlawfully entering Sanctuary v8-12:275; they set your Sanctuary on fire, defiling the Temple, Psalm 78 v5:459; we have hope of entering the inner Sanctuary where Jesus has gone before us v29:669; man-made Temple Sanctuary only a copy of the true one in heaven v43:669; Sanctuary of millennial Temple measured by angel v41:372

Sanhedrin (Jewish governing body in Jerusalem) look for testimony to put Jesus to death v3:532; take Jesus before Pilate v1:533, v1:561; insist Jesus be crucified v18:533, v21:562; Joseph a member of the Sanhedrin asks for the body of Jesus v28:536; Peter and John arrested and brought before v3:571; the Sanhedrin astonished at boldness of Peter and John v7:571; Sanhedrin assemble for trial of apostles but find the prison empty v19:572; Sanhedrin enraged, decide to put apostles to death v27:573; calmed by Gamaliel v26-33:573; Sanhedrin see face of Stephen glowing like face of an angel v13:573; Sanhedrin enraged at rebuke of Stephen v47:574; stone Stephen to death for blasphemy v50:574; Paul taken before v1:591; Paul divides Sanhedrin v8:591

Sarah (Sarai) Sarai the wife of Abram v12:20; to say to Egyptians she is Abram's sister v23:20; taken by Pharaoh to be his wife v25:20; barren, gives her maidservant Hagar to Abram as wife v1:22; Sarai treated with contempt by Hagar v3:22; Sarai ill-treats Hagar v6:22; Lord changes Sarai's name to Sarah, to become a mother of nations v19:23; Sarah laughs when Lord says she shall bear a son when old v10:23; denies

laughing v12:24; King Abimelech takes Sarah to be his wife v1:25; Sarah bears a son Isaac in her old age v15:26; Sarah sends Hagar and her son away v19-22:26; dies aged 127 v13:27

Satan (devil) (See also demons) tempts Adam and Eve to disobedience through the serpent (traditional belief) v1-3:15; sin lurking at Cain's door, desires him v5:16; Satan permitted to tempt David into taking a census v1:198; angel of Persian kingdom opposes angel Gabriel twenty-one days v9:393; Zechariah shown vision of Satan accusing Joshua the high priest v25:404; Jehovah expresses his delight to Satan regarding Job v7:433; Satan claims Job only righteous because of his great wealth v8:433; Satan permitted to afflict Job to test his integrity v10:433; the devil tempts Jesus three times v22-29:488; Jesus accused of being possessed by Satan v20:501; how can Satan drive out Satan? v26:501; Satan snatches away word of God from hearts to prevent belief v15:502; Jesus watched as Satan was cast out of heaven v32:512; Satan and his forces likened to snakes and scorpions v33:512; this woman whom Satan has kept bound for eighteen long years v10:516; Eternal Fire prepared for devil and his angels v29:528; parable of the wheat and tares v35:528; Peter, Peter, Satan desires to sift you all as wheat, v18:530; the devil was a murderer from the beginning, no truth in him v23:551; Satan enters into Judas v14:529, v17:557; Satan the ruler of this world, to be driven out v26:556; ruler of this world coming, has no power over Jesus v11:558; ruler of this world now stands condemned v40:559; Jesus prays that his followers be protected from the evil one v25:560; Satan filled heart of Ananias to lie to Holy Spirit v5:572; envy and selfish ambition from the devil v30:599; resist the devil and he will flee from you v6:600; Satan has prevented us returning to you v18:602; Lord will strengthen and protect you from the evil one v18:605; Satan himself masquerades as an angel of light v28:621; Paul given a messenger of Satan to keep from becoming conceited v48:621; what harmony is there between Christ and Satan? v18:622; be not deceived by the elemental spirits of universe v9:636; Satan the ruler of the spirit realms v17:641; do not give devil a foothold through anger v14:642; put on the full armour of God to stand against the cunning of devil v16:643; our struggle is against the spiritual forces of evil v17:643; the condemnation of the devil is pride v4:651; I have handed them over to Satan to learn not to blaspheme v14:651; escaped the snare of the devil v5:655; the devil prowls around like a roaring lion seeking to devour v7:660; resist the devil, stand firm in the faith v8:660; the devil held the power of death v13:667; the devil a sinner from beginning v7:675; the devil cannot harm anyone born of God who does not sin v30:676; the whole world under control of the evil one v31:676; devil to cast some of Smyrna church into prison that they be tested v12:683; you live where Satan has his throne v16:684; so-called deep secrets of Satan v27:684; Satan depicted as a great red dragon v9:691; tail swept third of stars out of sky v10:691; Michael and his angels hurl Satan from heavens v15:691; the accuser of our brethren v17:691; to be defeated in last days by blood of Lamb and martyrdom of saints v17:691; Satan depicted as a serpent v22:691; will try to prevent church's escape by a flood v22:691; whole world to worship Satan by following the Beast v5:692; wages war against all who obey God's commandments v24:692; unclean spirit from mouth of Dragon to gather kings for great battle at Armageddon v22-24:695; to be punished at second coming v10:289; the Dragon, that ancient serpent who is the devil or Satan v28:698; Satan to be bound in Pit for thousand years v27-30:698; to be set free for short time to again deceive nations when thousand years ended v30:698, v8:698; cast into Lake of Fire after millennium, where Beast and the False Prophet are v12:698; to be in torment day and night forever v12:698

Saul apostle (See Paul) Saul King Saul a Benjamite of handsome appearance, a head taller than any other man v12:161; visits Samuel the prophet while searching for donkeys v13-20:161; told by Samuel he is to be king of Israel v22:161; Spirit of God comes upon Saul and he prophesies v38:162; fears being king, hides from the people v6-7:162; some support Saul, some despise him v11-12:162; Saul anointed king by Samuel v29:162; Saul 40 years old, chooses 3000 men for standing army v1:163; help requested from Israelites in Gilead from eye gouging Ammonites v19:163; Saul leads 300,000

men of Israel into battle, slaughters Ammonites v21-23:163; people celebrate and reaffirm Saul as king v27:163; obedience of Saul tested by Lord v7-14:164; Saul offers unlawful sacrifice, fails test v10:164; Saul rebuked by Samuel, his kingship not to endure, Lord has chosen another v13:164; Saul orders his men not to sin against Lord by eating meat with blood v2:165; builds altar to Lord v5:165; casts lot to discover guilty person, his son Jonathan chosen v11:165; Saul vows to kill Jonathan but his men prevent him v13-15:165; Saul defeats all of Israel's enemies v17:166; given mission from Lord to destroy Amalekites v19:166; Saul is disobedient, spares Amalekite king and best livestock, Lord grieved v22-23:166; Saul tries to excuse his disobedience v25:166; admits his sin and pleads with Samuel for forgiveness v34:166; Samuel mourns for Saul v44:166; Saul tormented by an evil spirit v15:167; servants suggest a harpist, David chosen v16-20:167; Saul offers a reward to the man who kills Goliath v6:168; David kills Goliath v27:169; Saul jealous of David v6:169; hurls a spear at David v8:169; plans to have David killed by Philistines v9:169; again hurls his spear at David v26:170; Saul and his men prophesy in Samuel's presence v3:171; Saul orders his guards to kill priests, guards refuse v25:172; Doeg the Edomite kills priests, 85 die v28:173; David secretly cuts off part of Saul's robe in a cave v19:173; Saul weeps aloud, admits David will be king v28:174; Saul again pursues David v11:175; David spares life of Saul but takes his spear and water jug v7:175; Saul confesses his sin, blesses David v13:175; Saul fears a huge Philistine army, enquires of Lord but no answer comes v12:176; asks medium to bring up spirit of Samuel v20:176; Samuel prophesies Saul's death next day by Philistines v25-28:177; Saul collapses on floor in fear v29:177; Saul dies in battle with his three sons v2-6:178; Bodies of Saul and his sons hung on a wall, taken and buried by men of Jabesh v8-10:178; three year famine, due to Saul's breaking of Joshua's covenant to Gibeonites v8:187; Gibeonites permitted to kill seven descendants of Saul to atone v12:187

save See salvation

scapegoat to carry away sins of the people, instructions regarding v27:81

scriptures Moses wrote down all the commandments the Lord had given him v2:68, v1:117; Joshua wrote in the book of the Law all that took place v11:130; Solomon was wise and wrote many proverbs v2:221; I wrote for you my commandments, but you regard them as alien v6:251; the word of God stands forever v17:302; Baruch wrote down all that the Lord had spoken to Jeremiah v3:337, v15:338, v24:338; Jeremiah wrote on a scroll all the disasters concerning Babylon v20:343; they had rebelled against the word of God, Psalm 85 v5:461; every word of God is true v3:474; Jesus resists temptations of the devil by quoting scripture v24-28:488; today this scripture is fulfilled in your hearing v11:488; Jesus came to fulfil the scriptures v11:494; not one dot will disappear from scripture until all is fulfilled v12:494; do unto others what you would have others do unto you, this sums up the scriptures v29:495; blessed are those who hear the word of God and obey it v40:502; you nullify the word of God for the sake of your traditions v10:505; they have the scriptures, let them take heed of them v34:515; have you not read this scripture? v36:523, v13:524; you are in error, for you know not the scriptures v12:524; how then would the scriptures be fulfilled, that say it must happen this way? v49:531; did not our hearts burn while he opened the scriptures to us? v38:538; all must be fulfilled that is written about me in the scriptures v50:538; Jesus explains what was written in the scriptures concerning himself v34:537, v51:538; you study the scriptures and the scriptures testify of me v27:547; if you believed Moses you would believe me, for he wrote of me v31:547; it is written in the scriptures v29:548, v8:554; search the scriptures, you will find no prophet is to arise from Galilee v34:550; scripture is binding v9:554; that the scripture might be fulfilled v24:560, v9:563, v13:563; this is the disciple who wrote them down (John) v33:565; I wrote of all that Jesus did, until he was taken up into heaven (Luke) v1:569; Paul reasoned with them from the scriptures v1:584, v25:596; they searched the scriptures every day to see if what Paul said was true v10:585; Apollos proved from the scriptures that Jesus was the Christ v7:587; love your neighbour as yourself, the royal law found in scripture v5:599; do not go beyond what is written v42:608; promised by you

prophets of old in the holy scriptures v1:628; attend to public reading of scripture v22:652; from infancy you have known the scriptures v14:656; the scriptures are able to give you wisdom and lead you to salvation v14:656; scripture is inspired by God and useful for training in righteousness v15:656; the words of the prophets are like a lamp that illuminates a dark place v14:662; prophecy in scripture has origin in men speaking by Holy Spirit v15:662; they twist Paul's letters to their own destruction, as they do the other scriptures v13:663; as the Holy Spirit says through scripture v4:667; the word of God is living and active, sharper than a two-edged sword v9:668; saints slain for testifying word of God v9:687, v2:698

sea (See also Red Sea) God orders the waters gathered into one place on third day of creation v6:14; springs of the sea burst forth and floodgates of the heavens open to create flood of Noah v7:18; all streams flow to the sea, then the water returns again to the streams v7:217; Jonah tells the sailors to cast him into the sea v14:247; from over the sea flows the grain harvest of the Nile v10:305; Daniel sees four great beasts in turn come up out of the sea v1:387; have you journeyed to the springs of the sea or walked in the recesses of the great deep? v7:440; the vast and spacious sea teems with fish beyond number, Psalm 19 v10:448; Jesus prophesies great waves of the sea to roar and bring distress and terror in last days v32:526; John hears every creature in the sea singing v25:686; John sees a blazing mountain fall into sea, a third of the ships and fish destroyed v9:689; woe to the earth and sea, for the devil has been driven down to you, filled with fury v19:691; I saw a beast rising out of the sea v1:692; sea becomes like blood, everything living in sea dies v12:694; sea to be subdued to assist gathering of Israel (in millennium) v21:407; the sea gave up the dead that were in it v14:699; there was no longer any sea v1:699

secret knowledge there is secret knowledge of God that we only teach to the spiritually mature v23:608; God's secret knowledge, hidden for our glory before time began v23:608, v2:636; secret knowledge not understood by man without the Holy Spirit v26:608; I gave you milk for you were not ready for solid food v28:608; we who teach you have been entrusted with the secret things of God v38:608; if I understand all mysteries and knowledge, but have not love, I am nothing v14:614; I will reveal to you a mystery v29:616, v21-22:632, v31:641; I heard things mortal man is forbidden to reveal v46:621; I labour that you may have the richness of understanding the mystery of Christ v4:636; become mature in the knowledge and fullness of Christ v7:642; the two shall become one flesh, there is a great mystery here v7:643; let us move on from first truths of Christ and go on to maturity v22:668

selfishness an unfriendly man pursues selfishness v6:473; give to one who would beg or borrow from you v6:493; parable of the good Samaritan v4-27:512; selfishness a work of the flesh, not of the Holy Spirit v5:625; God's anger awaits the selfish on day of judgement v21:629; do nothing out of selfishness or pride, but in humility v23:646

Sermon on the Mount Jesus teaches Sermon on the Mount ch7-9:491; love and pray for your enemies v17:491; pray for those who mistreat you v17:491; do to others as you would have others do unto you v19:491; new wineskins needed for new wine v26:491; turn the other cheek v3:492; give double if someone would sue you v4:492; lend without expecting in return v23:492; be merciful as your Father in heaven is merciful v25:492; be perfect as your Father in heaven is perfect v26:492; anyone who is angry with another is subject to judgement v32:492; first be reconciled to your brother then come and offer your gift v33:492; he who looks on a woman lustfully commits adultery in his heart v35:492; if your right eye causes you to sin, pluck it out v36:492; if your right hand causes you to sin, cut it off v36:492; he who divorces his wife except for unchastity causes her to commit adultery v37:492; go the extra mile v5:493; give to one who would beg or borrow from you v6:493; do your acts of kindness in secret v7:493; give to the needy in secret v9:493; pray to your Father in secret v12:493; when praying do not repeat same words over and over v13:493; the Lord's prayer v15:493; forgive others or your own sins will not be forgiven v18:493; ask and you shall receive v19:493; fast in secret v23:493; do not store up treasures on earth, but in heaven v25:493; where your treasure is your heart will be also v26:493; you cannot serve two masters, God and

wealth v28:493; do not worry about what to eat or drink v29:493; seek first the kingdom of God and all these things will be yours v36:494; do not worry about tomorrow, today's trouble is sufficient for today v37:494; judge not others, for you will be judged by the same judgement v1:494; forgive, and you will be forgiven v2:494; first take the log from your own eye, then you can take the speck from another's eye v3:494; give generously to receive v5:494; do not cast pearls before swine v8:494; wide is gate that leads to Death, many enter through it v9:494; narrow is the way that leads to Eternal Life v10:494; Jesus came to fulfil the scriptures v11:494; your righteousness must exceed the Pharisees to enter the kingdom of God v15:494; false prophets known by their fruits v16:494; out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks v20:495; not all who do miracles in name of Jesus know to the Lord v21-24:495; parable of man who built his house upon the rock v25-28:495; golden rule sums up the scriptures v29:495

serpent See snake

servants (See also slaves) Noah curses descendants of Canaan to be lowest of servants v3:19; Abram acquires servants from Pharaoh v26:20; I placed my servant in your arms and now she despises me v4:22; Abraham sends his chief servant to obtain a wife for Isaac v2:27; Philistines envy Isaac for his large number of servants v22:29; Jacob grew exceedingly prosperous and had many servants v34:33; household servants not to work on Sabbath day v22:64; your maid-servant is ready to wash the feet of my master's servants v31:175; if you will serve these people and speak kind words they will always be your servants v29:211; Job did not deny justice to his servants v45:438; pampering a servant his from youth breeds disrespect v29:472; a wise servant will rule over a dishonourable son v30:472; a king delights in a wise servant v31:472; a servant cannot be disciplined by words alone v32:472; just say the word and my servant will be healed v3:490; a servant who is perfect can become like his master v12:498; he who would be first, must be servant of all v5:509, v77:520; parable of the unmerciful servant v20-27:510; no servant can serve two masters v23:514; parable of the faithful and unfaithful servant v42-46:515; would you thank a servant just because he did as you told him? v36:518; well done my good and faithful servant v15:527; throw that worthless servant into outer darkness v21:528; where I am, there will my servant be also v20:556; no servant is greater than his master v12:557, v29:559; I no longer call you my servants, instead I call you my friends v24-25:559; a ruler is God's servant, to do you good v16:633; a servant will stand or fall as to how he pleases his master v3:633; Jesus Christ took upon himself the nature of a servant v25:646; John forbidden to worship the angel as he is fellow servant with John v10:697

service love the Lord your God and serve him with all your heart v3:129; choose this day whom you will serve, as for me and my family we will serve the Lord v7:130; serve these people and speak kind words when you answer them v29:211; lighten our heavy yoke and we will serve you v26:211; repent of such talk and you may serve me still v23:330; no man can serve two masters v27:493, v23:514; anyone who looks back is unfit for service in the kingdom of God v18:496; he who would be first, must be a servant of all v5:509, v77:520; the Son of Man came to serve v77:520; serve one another in love v1:625; God whom I serve with all my heart v5:628, v3:654; if a man's gift is service, let him serve v3:633; each should use whatever gift of the Spirit he has received to serve others v25:659

Seth son of Adam in likeness of his father v1:17; dies aged 930 v3:17

seven seals first seal, rider on a white horse to subdue earth v1:686; second seal, rider on a red horse, men to slay one another v4:686; third seal, rider on a black horse, famines on earth v5:687; fourth seal, rider on a pale green horse with power to kill a fourth of the earth v7:687; fifth seal, saints slain for testifying to word of God v9:687; sixth seal, a great earthquake darkens the sun, moon turns red v12:687; seventh seal, plagues of the seven trumpets ch6:688

seventy seventy elders of Israel see God v8:68; seventy elders of Israel called to assist Moses v16:94; Jesus calls seventy disciples to go on missions v10:511; Jesus gives instructions to the seventy v11-17:511; the seventy return from their missions with great joy v31:512

sexual acts with animals an abomination, both person and animal to be put to death v43:67; cursed the person who lies with any kind of animal v12:115

sexual acts with close relatives See incest

sexual acts with same sex See homosexual acts

sexual immorality (See also adultery, fornication, incest, harlotry, homosexual acts, sexual acts with animals, sodomy) commandments on sexuality immorality v30-45:66; penalty for fornication with a virgin v38:66; sexuality immorality defiles the land v44:67; penalty for homosexual acts v42:67; penalty for fornication with a slave woman v32:68; Israelite men seduced by Midianite women v2:104; a daughter promiscuous while living in father's house to be stoned v11:113; evil men demand sex with Levite man v13:148; concubine raped and abused all night then dies on doorstep v16-18:148; Eli's sons would lie with women who served at Tabernacle v27:157; David commits adultery with Bathsheba ch6:189; David's son Amnon rapes his sister Tamar v1-11:191; those who go into groves will meet end when Lord returns v8:295; proverbs on sexuality immorality ch2:464; reject the immoral filth that is all around you v15:598; you must avoid all sexual immorality v3:602; God did not call us to be impure, but to live a holy life v5:603; case of incest among Corinthians, man living immorally with father's wife v4:609; hand this man over to Satan for the destruction of his flesh, that his spirit be saved v7:609; it is well to marry to avoid temptation to immorality v1:610; the body is not meant for immorality, but for the Lord v24:610; he who sins sexually, sins against own body which is a temple of the Holy Spirit v29:610; sexual immorality is a work of the flesh, not of the Holy Spirit v5:625; let us behave decently, not in sexual immorality v21:633, v24:637, v3:671; let not a hint of sexual immorality be among you v20:643; there should be no suggestive talk and obscene joking v21:643; no immoral person can inherit the kingdom of God v22:643; godless men among you pervert the gospel into a licence for immorality v4:664; keep the marriage bed undefiled v11:671; immoral practices of the Nicolaitans hated by Jesus v7:683; you tolerate that Jezebel who leads my servants into sexual immorality v24:684; survivors of last days will not repent of sexual immorality v35:690; the sexually immoral shall inherit the Second Death v8:699

Shallum assassinate Zechariah, becomes king of Israel v3:257; assassinated by Menahem who becomes king v4:257

Sheba queen of visits king Solomon to test him, is overwhelmed v37-43:210; will condemn generation of Jesus v25:501

Sheba a Benjamite rebel, men of Israel follow and desert David v27:197; beheaded by citizens of Abel v16:198

Shechem son of ruler of Shechem rapes Dinah v2:36; men of Shechem killed by Dinah's brothers Simeon and Levi v13:36; Shechem given to Joseph by Israel v15:45; Joshua summons all Israel to, for his final address v1:130; Joseph's bones buried at Shechem v14:130; Abimelech crowned king by people of Shechem v14:139; citizens of Shechem cursed by brother of Abimelech v15-23:139; all citizens of killed by sword and fire by Abimelech and city razed v12-18:140

sheep See shepherd

Shem son of Noah v11:17; enters ark with Noah v6:18; covers father's nakedness v2:19; blessed by Noah v4:19; sons of Shem v9:19; dies aged 600 v1:20

Shemaiah false prophet among exiles, sends letter to Jerusalem to have Jeremiah silenced v14-16:342; cursed by Lord to have no descendants v19:343

Sheol (See also Pit, Hades, Paradise) (Hebrew name for spirit world of dead) Israel to go down to, to his son Joseph v30:38; Dathan and Abiram to go down alive to v26:98; send his grey head down to Sheol in blood v33:202; to Sheol I sank down, but you brought my life back up from the Pit v24:247; Sheol will open its mouth without limit, down will descend nobles and multitudes v28:284; why in the prime of my life must I go through the gates of Sheol v17:301; Sheol below is all astrir to meet you, the spirits of the dead rise to greet you v4:305; people of Tyre consigned to Sheol v8-9:366; hordes of Egypt to go down to Sheol v14:368; they have come down to the uncircumcised and those killed by the sword v16:368;

Assyria's vast army is also here, all who spread terror in the land of the living v17:368; Messiah to set free prisoners from Sheol v8:407; if I rise to the heavens or descend to Sheol your Spirit is there, Psalm 2 v5:444; nor was I hidden from you when I was made, in Sheol your eyes beheld my spirit, Psalm 2 v6:444; you will not leave my soul in Sheol, Psalm 17 v5:447; Psalm 62 v7:455; no man can prolong his life forever and not see Sheol, Psalm 62 v3:455; down to Sheol they descend, while their bodies decay in the grave, Psalm 62 v6:455; house of an adulteress a highway to Sheol v11:465; Jesus preached to spirits in prison who died in days of Noah v16:659

shepherd shepherd's work disliked by Egyptians v9:43; so they will not be like sheep without a shepherd v4:119; Lord Jehovah coming in power to tend his flock as a shepherd v11:292; Israel devoured like lost sheep because of false shepherds v18:337; Lord to punish Judah's uncaring and wicked shepherds v8:340; Lord to appoint righteous shepherds when he restores his people v10:340; shepherds of Israel only take care of themselves v13:368; Lord to remove Israel's shepherds v18:368; Lord himself to become Israel's shepherd v19:369; Lord to be a just shepherd v22-27:369; uncaring shepherds have led Israel astray v15:407; Zechariah commanded to become shepherd of sheep marked for slaughter v24:407; an uncaring shepherd about to be raised up over Judah v36:408; the Lord is my shepherd, Psalm 15 v1:447; David taken from tending sheep to be the shepherd of Israel, Psalm 74 v22:458; angels appear to shepherds at birth of Jesus v9:484; shepherds find the baby Jesus lying in a manger v14:485; they were like sheep without a shepherd v2:498, v15:504; I was sent only to the lost sheep of Israel v28:506; parable of the lost sheep v12-13:510; on day of judgement Jesus to separate people one from another as a shepherd separates sheep from goats v23:528; parable of the sheep pen v33-38:552; I am the good shepherd who lays down his life for his sheep v40:553; a hired hand cares nothing for the sheep v41:553; other sheep I have which are not of this fold, there shall be one flock and one shepherd v43:553; my sheep heed my voice and they follow me v4:553; Jesus says to Peter, feed my sheep v26:565

Shiloh Tabernacle set up at v1:128; Benjamites permitted to capture girls of Shiloh for wives v12:150; Shiloh became a ruin because of wickedness of the people v7:326, v10:326

Shimei relative of Saul, curses David v35-37:194; David prevents Abishai from killing v38:194; Shimei later begs David's forgiveness v6:197; ordered by Solomon never to leave Jerusalem v17:203; leaves Jerusalem and is put to death v19-21:203

ships tribe of Zebulun blessed to be a haven for ships at Sidon v24:45; Solomon builds ships to bring back treasures from distant lands v20:209; huge seas cease raging when Jonah thrown overboard v16:247; Jehoshaphat's fleet of trading ships destroyed v1:265; Tyre likened to a beautiful ship v23-36:367; Roman ships to oppose king of the north v42:395; Paul shipwrecked on a ship bound for Rome ch24:593; ships though large are steered by a small rudder v21:599; Paul shipwrecked three times v37:621; third of ships to be destroyed in last days v10:689; Antichrist to have a great fleet of ships in last days v5:396

shout walls of Jericho collapse at a mighty shout of Israel v14:124; shout, a sword for Jehovah and for Gideon v20:138; the Philistines raised a shout so loud the ground shook v4:158; the prophets of Baal shouted louder and cut themselves with knives v21:227; the people gave a great shout of praise to the Lord v3:399; many of the elderly wept aloud, but others shouted for joy v4:399; all the sons of God shouted for joy v4:440; clap your hands all you nations, shout to the Lord with cries of joy, Psalm 61 v1:455; demons came out of many people shouting, you are the Son of God v25:489; the demon knelt before Jesus and shouted at the top of his voice v27:496; they all shouted, crucify him v25:534, v21:562; shouting at the top of their voices they rushed at Stephen v50:574; those left alive on earth shall shout for joy v11:289; shout, see, Jehovah is coming with power v10:292; shout for joy you who dwell in the dust, the earth will give birth to her dead v32:293; the tongue of the dumb shall shout for joy v20:295

sickle swing the sickle, for the harvest is ripe v13:273; I saw an angel with a sharp sickle in his hand v18:694; take your

sickle and reap, the harvest of the earth is ripe v19:694; another angel came out of the temple in heaven, he too had a sharp sickle v21:694

sickness (See also healing, health) I will take away sickness from among you v10:75; wasting diseases to be brought on Israelites if commandments not kept v10:88; no disease if Lord's laws kept v26:110; your feet did not swell during those forty years v32:110; Israelites cursed to suffer from diseases if commandments not kept v33-34:116; Asa afflicted with severe foot disorder but does not seek help from Lord v29:263; Jehoram cursed by Lord with lingering disease of bowels v11:265; Messiah to heal sicknesses v9:307; the Lord restores to health he who regards the weak, Psalm 25 v1:449; he will bless him on his sickbed and restore him to health, Psalm 25 v1:449; my bones have no soundness because of my sin, Psalm 26 v2:449; when I hid my sin my bones wasted away, Psalm 28 v2:449; my back is filled with searing pain, Psalm 26 v4:449; a man's spirit sustains him in sickness v9:474; an envious heart wastes the bones v14:474; all who had sickness were brought to Jesus, he laid hands on each one and healed them all v23:489, v8:490, v6:496, v1:498; Jesus heals centurion's servant at distance v27:490; power of God present for Jesus to heal the sick v10:490; Jesus commands paralysed man to walk home v16:490; Jesus heals Peter's mother-in-law of high fever v2:495; Jesus heals a leper v9:496; woman touches cloak of Jesus, healed of her bleeding v42:497; apostles given power to heal sick v6:498; apostles anoint many sick people with oil and heal them v22:498; Jesus healed all their sick v14:500; all the sick who touched the garment of Jesus were healed v37:505; I was sick and you took care of me v26:528; believers shall lay hands on the sick and they will recover v56:538; sick healed even by Peter's shadow v14:572; Phillip heals paralysed and crippled in Samaria v6:575; handkerchiefs from Paul cure the sick v19:587; Paul heals all the sick on island of Malta v9:595; anointing with oil and prayer offered in faith will make the sick person well v25:600; partaking of Lord's Supper unworthy a cause of ill health v21:613; I will therefore cast her on bed of sickness v25:684; in that day no one will say, I am sick (in millennium) v21:295

Sidon tribe of Zebulun blessed to inherit Sidon, to be a haven for ships v24:45; Sidonians bring large numbers of cedar logs to David v42:200; none so skilled at cutting timber as you Sidonians v3:204; Jezebel the daughter of king of Sidon v18:226; Elijah sent to a widow in Sidon v24:226, v15:488; Sidon to be punished v1-3:367; returned exiles request cedar logs from Sidon, to rebuild Temple v20:398; if miracles of Jesus had been done in Sidon they would have repented long ago v15:499; more bearable for Sidon on day of judgement than cities of Israel v15:499; Jesus left Tyre and went up through Sidon v31:506

Sihon Amorite king, defeated by Israel and land occupied v12-13:101

Silas prophet and mission companion of Paul v20-22:583; Peter wrote his letter with help of v11:660

silver Joseph sold for twenty shekels of v24:38; Joseph hides each brother's silver in his grain sack v15:41; Joseph collected all the silver to be found in Egypt and Canaan v18:44; Egyptians give departing Israelites silver and gold v19:57; a king not to accumulate large amounts of silver and gold v15:111; David obtained much gold and silver from the nations he subdued v4:187; silver considered of little value in Solomon's day v32:210; king of Assyria appeased with a 1000 talents of silver v7:257, v9:299; Pharaoh demands 100 talents of silver as tribute from Judah v12:326; prophet Zechariah paid thirty pieces of silver v33:408; silver thrown into the Temple, to the potter v34:408; chief priests pay Judas thirty silver coins v16:529; silver coins thrown into the Temple by Judas v24:532; priests use the silver paid Judas to buy the potter's field v26:532; your gold and silver will corrode and testify against you v15:600

Simeon (son of Jacob) son of Jacob (Israel) and Leah v3:32; with his brother Levi kills all the men of Shechem v13:36; chosen by Joseph to remain in prison v14:41; descendants of Simeon and Levi to be dispersed in Israel because of their fierce anger and cruelty v20:45

Simeon tribe of Israel's dying blessing upon – to be

dispersed in Israel v19:20:45; first census of 59,300 v11:92; second census 22,200 v4:104; land in Canaan assigned to by lot v7:129; combine with tribe of Judah to destroy Canaanites v3:133; 12,000 servants of God to be sealed from in last days v4:68

Simeon (prophet) a devout man, proclaims Jesus the long awaited Christ v19:20:485; prophesies regarding Jesus and Mary his mother v22:485

Simon the sorcerer astonished at miracles of Philip, follows him everywhere v8-11:575; offers money to apostles for power to give Holy Spirit v15:575; Peter rebukes v16:575

sin (sinners) (See also wickedness, repentance) Eve eats forbidden fruit and gives some to Adam v4-5:15; sin lurking at Cain's door v5:16; men of Sodom wicked and sinning greatly v6:21; I kept you from sinning against me v5:25; how can I do such a wicked thing and sin against God? v5:39; sins of fathers punished to fourth generation of descendants who hate Lord v20:63; a sinner to make full restitution plus one fifth to person wronged v15:67, v27:79; what did the people do to you, that you allowed such a great sin? v17:74; Moses attempts to atone for Israelites sin v2:74; when day of judgement comes I will punish them for their sin v3:74; do not allow them to live or they will cause you to sin v8:75; Lord forgives sin and rebellion, yet does not leave guilty unpunished v10:75, v11:96; sin offerings for unintentional sins v20-28:79; annual Day of Atonement for sin v17:80; scapegoat to carry away sins v29:81; if you still will not obey me I shall punish your sins seven times over v14:88; if you still remain hostile, in my anger I will punish your sins a further seven times over v20:88; they will die in the lands of their enemies because of their sins v28:88; Lord will remember his covenant if Israelites confess their sins and make amends v30:88; Miriam struck with leprosy for sin of jealousy v12:95; the censurers have become holy at cost of lives of the men who sinned v31:98; here you are, a brood of sinners v12:106; Achan answered, it is I who have sinned against the God of Israel v11:125; the sin of Eli's sons was great in the Lord's eyes v2:157; if a man sins against the Lord, who can intercede? v28:157; I should sin by failing to pray for you v38:163; the men are sinning by eating meat with the blood still in it v2:165; rebellion is like the sin of sorcery v31:166; Saul admits his sin and pleads for forgiveness v34:166; David commits adultery and murder, he and his family cursed by Lord to suffer ch6-7:189; David to choose from three penalties for sin of pride v9-10:198; sinners gather wealth for the upright v31:217; one sinner destroys much good v5:220; there is not a righteous man on earth who never sins v10:220; your sins are recorded v6:251; the sins of my people keep coming up before me v7:251; I will punish your sins O Israel v1:251, v11:254; go and sin yet more, for this is what you love to do v24:255; the sinners among my people will all die by the sword v30:257; Isaiah's guilt is taken away, his sin is atoned for v22:275, v35:300; ah, sinful nation, a people laden with guilt, a brood of evildoers v2:283; though your sins be red like scarlet, they can be white as snow v8:283; I will pay you back in full for your sins, and the sins of your fathers v15:287; woe to those who hide their evil deeds and think, who will know? v4:298; Israel consigned to scorn because of sins v14:303; no peace for the wicked v26:304; Messiah will be pierced for our sins v10:307; by his suffering my Righteous One shall pardon many and bear their sins v21:307; no rest for the wicked v22:308; I will bring distress upon all peoples for they have sinned against the Lord v4:315; your sins have kept away the rain v12:325; those accustomed to doing evil cannot do good v27:329; each person will be punished for his own sins v16:343, v16:363; Ezekiel to be held accountable if he fails to warn the wicked v2:357; if a righteous man sins his righteous deeds will not be remembered v4:357, v30:364; the sins of Jerusalem that angered the Lord v9-20:364; when a person fully repents, his past sins are not remembered v28:364; Lord pleased when the wicked repent v29:364; by your sins and dishonest trade you have desecrated your city v22:367; why should we complain when punished for our sins v68:380; repent of your sins by being kind to the poor v17:386; 12 male goats sacrificed as a sin offering v3:409, v13:420; our sins are heaped higher than the heavens v4:420; they wanted me to commit a sin by entering the Temple v12:426; Solomon led into sin by foreign women v22:429; Lord wearied by evil being called good v9:430; the second coming a day of judgement for sinners

v7:431; in all his suffering Job did not sin with his lips v24:434; Psalm 6 v1:445; had I rejoiced over my great wealth that would be a sin to be judged v51:439; O God, remember not the sins of my youth, Psalm 24 v4:448; forgave my sin O Lord, though it is great, Psalm 24,v6:448; when I hid my sin my bones wasted away, Psalm 28 v2:449; I confessed my sin to you and you forgave my guilt, Psalm 28 v3:449; praise him who forgives your sins and restores your health, Psalm 31 v2:449; he does not punish us as our sins deserve, Psalm 31 v5:450; a wicked man flatters himself too much to see his sin, Psalm 41 v1:451; all sinners will be destroyed, Psalm 58 v13:454; I will punish their sin with the rod but I shall not withdraw my love, Psalm 84 v6:461; why be snared in sin by an adulteress? v26:465; a sinner's wealth is stored up for the righteous v26:466; proverbs on sinners ch7:468; fools mock at making amends for sin v8:468; seven sins the Lord hates v5:468; a hot-tempered man commits many sins v14:468; misfortune dogs the sinner v39:469; an evil man is snared by his own sins v14:469; the wicked will not go unpunished v49:469; he who hides his sins does not prosper v54:469; whoever confesses and renounces his sins finds mercy v54:469; the Lord frustrates the words of a sinner v27:470; he who loves to quarrel loves sin v34:470; when words are many, sin is not absent v36:470; love and faithfulness atone for sin v4:472; he shall go forth to turn sinners to righteousness v9:483; Jesus to save his people from their sins v3:484; John preached a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins v1:487; many confess their sins and are baptised v4:487; depart from me Lord for I am a sinful man v32:489; my friend, your sins are forgiven you v13:490; the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins v16:490; Pharisees murmur at Jesus and disciples eating with sinners v21:490; Jesus came to call sinners to repentance v22:490; what credit is that to you, even sinners do the same v21:491; if your right eye causes you to sin, pluck it out v36:492; if your right hand causes you to sin, cut it off v36:492; forgive us our sins, as we forgive those who sin against us v16:493; if you do not forgive others their sins, your Father will not forgive you your sins v18:493, v17:522; weeping, repentant, sinful woman anoints feet of Jesus v32:495; sins of blasphemy against the Holy Spirit never forgiven v30:501; sins that defile v23:506; woe to whoever leads a little child into sin, better that he be drowned in the sea v9:510; woe to person by whom temptation to sin comes v10:510; if your brother sins against you, go to him alone v15:510; those killed accidentally not worse sinners than others v2:515; on day of judgement the Lord will say to sinners, depart from me v14:516; if your brother sins rebuke him v30:518; people began to murmur saying, he is going to stay at the house of a sinner v4:520; I have sinned, I have betrayed innocent blood v22:532; behold the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world v16:542; sin no more, lest something worse happen to you v10:546; those who have done evil will rise to condemnation v21:547; if you do not believe in me, you will die in your sins v32:547; let he who is without sin cast the first stone v5:550; neither do I condemn you, go now and sin no more v8:551; who sinned, this man or his parents that he was born blind v1:551; everyone who sins is a slave to sin v14:551; you who were steeped in sin at birth would lecture us? v25:552; the Comforter to convict the world of sin v39:559; if apostles forgive sins they are forgiven v22:564; repent and turn to God, that your sins may be wiped out v13:571; Lord do not hold this sin against them v52:574; I see that you are full of jealousy and still captive to sin v18:575; forgiveness of sins only possible through Jesus v31:581; desire gives birth to sin, and when sin matures it gives birth to Death v6:598; not to do good is a sin v14:600; if the healed person has sinned he will be forgiven v25:600; confess your sins one to another v26:600; whoever turns a sinner from his ways will cover a multitude of sins v29:600; the Lord to punish men for all sins of sexual immorality v3-5:602; no sinner will inherit the kingdom of God v21:609; he who sins sexually sins against his own body, which is a temple of the Holy Spirit v29:610; whoever partakes of Lord's Supper unworthily, sins against the Lord v21:613; Christ died for our sins v2:615; the sting of death is sin v31:616; the whole world a prisoner of sin v13:625; restore gently any who sin v13:626; all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God v11:629; mere man should not pass judgement on sinners v18:629; God allows sinners time to repent v19:629; let sin be your master no more v7:630; the wages of sin is Death v9:630; the sinful mind is hostile to God v26:630; all who do wrong will

pay for their wrongdoing v14:637; a divisive man is perverse and sinful v31:649; Jesus Christ came into the world to save sinners v11:651; Paul was the worst of sinners v12:651; sins of some men only come to light later v16:653; sins of men in the last days listed v6-8:655; sinful men are ever being instructed but never able to discern truth v10:655; Jesus bore our sins in his body, on the tree v31:658; he who willingly suffers in the flesh has broken away from sin v19:659; unbelievers to account for their sins v21:659; love covers a multitude of sins v24:659; in last days scoffers who walk in sinful lusts of the flesh will arise v2:662; encourage one another that none of you become hardened by sin v5:668; if we deliberately keep on sinning after knowledge of truth, no sacrifice for sin is left v6:670; if we claim to have never sinned we deceive ourselves v7:674; no person born of God continues to sin v4:674; he who does what is sinful is of the devil v6:674; if we confess our sins he will forgive us v8:674; if you see your brother commit a sin pray for him v27:676; there is a sin that leads to Spiritual Death v28:676; anyone born of God who does not sin is protected from the devil v30:676; sinners of the world to be destroyed in last days v3:289; Lord coming to punish people of the earth for their sins v33:293; the guilty of the whole earth to be slain by Lord v21:334

sin offering a bull sacrificed at the Tabernacle for a sin offering v28:76; sin offering for a priest v20:79; sin offering for a leader v21:79; sin offering for an individual v22:79; sin offering for a whole community v23:79; other occasions when a sin offering required v25:79; 12 male goats sacrificed as a sin offering v3:409, v13:420

sin unforgivable blasphemy against the Holy Spirit an unforgivable eternal sin v30:501; those who have shared in the Holy Spirit and fall away cannot be restored again by repentance v23:668; if we deliberately keep on sinning after knowledge of truth, no sacrifice for sin is left v6:670; how more deserving of severe punishment is a man who has insulted the Holy Spirit v8:670; there is a sin that leads to Spiritual Death v28:676

Sinai See Mount Horeb

singing (see also hymns, songs, music) David had priests appoint Levite singers to sing joyful songs v31:186; Levite singers stood by the Temple dressed in fine linen v8:207; I acquired singers and a harem, the delights of a man's heart v20:217; Levites sing praises to Lord as army march to face invading armies v26:264; the singers sang and the music played v18:285; Levites sang praises to Lord with gladness v19:285; sing to God, sing praise to his name, Psalm 49 v1:453; sing and make music to the Lord in his Tabernacle, Psalm 50 v3:453; sing joyfully to the Lord, shout aloud, begin the music, Psalm 76 v1:458; our captors wanted songs of joy, but how can we sing in a foreign land, Psalm 81 v2-3:459; make a joyful noise to Lord of the earth, Psalm 89 v1:461; all the earth burst forth into jubilant song, Psalm 99 v1:463; Jesus and his apostles sing a hymn v27:530; is anyone joyful, let him sing songs of praise v23:600; John hears every creature in heaven and on earth singing to God and Lamb v25:686, v18:303, v16:306; elders and the four living creatures worship God singing v7:688; the 144,000 sang a new song before the throne v2:693; Jerusalem to burst into song and shout for joy (at second coming) v17:297

Sisera Canaanite army commander, cruelly oppressed Israelites v2:135; musters 900 chariots to fight Barak v8:135; all Sisera's troops fall by the sword v11:135; Sisera flees on foot to tent of woman Jael who kills him with a tent peg v12-16:135

slander See lying, false witness, gossip

slaves (See also servants) descendants of Ham's son Canaan to be slaves v4:19; Abram's descendants to be slaves in Egypt 400 years v11:22; get rid of that slave woman and her son v19:26; Joseph sold to Potiphar as a slave v1:39; Egyptians place slave masters over Israelites and force them to build cities v3:49; Israelites in Egypt groan in their slavery v1:51; Jehovah to free Israelites from being slaves to Egyptians v20:53; a slave permitted to eat Passover if circumcised v3:58; compensation to a slave for injury v9-10:66; commandments on slavery v27-32:68; marriage rights of slaves v31:68; penalty for fornication with a slave woman v32:68; Israelite slaves to be treated kindly and released in year of jubilee v31:86; non-

Israelite slaves can be kept for life and willed to children v37:86; a slave seeking refuge not to be handed over to master v23:114; Gibeonites cursed by Joshua to be slaves v16:126; Solomon acquired many male and female slaves v17:217; Zedekiah orders all Israelite slaves freed v21:345; people free their slaves, but later enslave them again v23:345; some of us have had to sell our daughters into slavery v2:425; fortune-telling slave girl follows Paul around v18:584; believing slaves to work as if working for Lord v13:637, v13:643, v22:649; believing masters to treat slaves with justice v15:637, v15:643; Paul returns runaway slave Onesimus to his rightful owner v7:639; trading in slaves ungodly and sinful v7:651; slaves should not show less respect for believing masters v20:653; slaves, submit yourselves to your masters, even those who are harsh v28:658

sleep God caused Adam to fall into a deep sleep v11:15; Abram fell into a deep sleep and a terrifying darkness descended v10:22; Delilah lulled Samson to sleep on her lap v21:146; when Boaz was asleep, Ruth approached quietly and lay down v21:152; no one awake, for a deep sleep from the Lord had come upon them v8:175; the sleep of a labourer is sweet v16:218; riches permit no restful sleep v16:218; maybe Baal is sleeping and must be awakened v20:227; Nebuchadnezzar's dream troubled him so much he could not sleep v1:383; a little sleep, a little slumber and poverty comes upon you v44:466, v10:474; Lord allows time to sleep for those he loves v16:474; reverse the Lord, shun evil and your sleep will be sweet v1-2:474; Jesus was asleep on a cushion in the stern v21:496; on that night (at second coming) two will be sleeping in one bed, and one shall be taken v10:518; Jesus returns to his three apostles and finds them sleeping v35:431; the boy sank into a deep sleep and fell to the ground from the third story v8:588; I have often gone sleepless v39:621

snake (serpent) the serpent most cunning of all creatures God had made v1:15; deceives Eve v1:15, v18:620; serpent cursed by Jehovah to crawl on belly and eat dust with food v14:16; enmity between serpents and mankind v15:16; Moses' staff turns into a snake before the Lord v24:51; Aaron's staff turns into a snake in Pharaoh's presence v4:53; Aaron's staff swallows up sorcerer's staffs v5:53; Israelites bitten by venomous snakes and many die v6:101; Moses makes bronze image of snake on a pole, all who look at it are healed v9:101; I will send the venom of vipers that glide in the dust v22:118; Hezekiah breaks the bronze image of snake into pieces v7:285; be wise as a serpent and innocent as a dove v11:498; they will pick up snakes with their hands v55:538; just as Moses lifted up snake in desert, Son of Man must be lifted up v11:544; Paul bitten by viper but unaffected by poison v3-6:595; the Dragon that ancient serpent who is the devil, or Satan v22:698; dust to be food of the serpent (during millennium) v22:293

Sodom men of Sodom wicked v6:21; Sodom plundered by kings of north v14:21; outcry against Sodom great v17:24; Sodom not to be destroyed if ten righteous people found there v27:24; men of Sodom surround Lot's house demanding sex v5:24; Lord destroys Sodom and Gomorrah by raining down burning sulphur v19:25; Abraham sees dense smoke rising from land of Sodom v21:25; Sodom a wasteland of weeds and salt pits v14:315; Sodom an older sister to Jerusalem v35:363; more bearable for Sodom on day of judgement than for towns that reject apostles v10:498; Sodom an example to those who will suffer punishment of Eternal Fire v7:665

sodomy (See also homosexual acts, sexual immorality) no man is to become a sodomite v24:112; the earnings of a male prostitute unclean v24:112; king ordered the male prostitute rooms in the Temple to be torn down v5:311; no male prostitute, no sodomite will inherit kingdom of God v21:609; sodomy ungodly and sinful v7:651

soil See ground, land, earth

Solomon

son of David to Bathsheba v27:190; Lord chooses to build Temple v29:199; given plans for Temple that Spirit of God had put in David's mind v38:200; Solomon anointed king of Israel v14-17:201; David's blessing upon Solomon, Psalm 59:454; royal wedding song of, Psalm 60:455; Solomon spares his brother Adonijah's life v26:202; Solomon offers 1000 sacrifices at Tabernacle v2:203; Lord appears to in dream, asks him to

choose whatever he wants v4:203; Solomon asks for wisdom in governing v5:203; Lord blesses Solomon with wisdom, riches and honour v8:203; Solomon angry at Adonijah for requesting Abishag, puts him to death v9:203; orders Joab put to death v15:203; orders Shimei put to death v21:203; makes alliance with Pharaoh, takes his daughter as wife v28:204; Solomon's wise judgement, two harlots and the disputed baby v13:204; Solomon held in awe by all Israel v22:204; God gave great wisdom and breadth of understanding v22:204; Solomon wiser than any other man, fame spreads v24:204; spoke 3000 proverbs and composed 1005 songs v25:204; all Solomon's people were happy and lived in safety v26:204; extent of Solomon's kingdom v28:204; his daily household provisions v29:204; Solomon conscripts 153,600 Canaanites as labourers v9:205; begins to build Temple v12:205; invites all Israel to Jerusalem for dedication v1:207; kneels and prays before people, dedicates Temple v12:26-207; fire from heaven consumes burnt offering of v27:208; Solomon blesses the people v30:208; Solomon builds a palace and other buildings v1:208; Lord again appears to Solomon in a dream, confirms David's conditional covenant v10-12:209; rebuilds many towns v18:209; builds ships and brings back treasures from distant lands v20-22:209; trades in chariots and horses v25:209; Solomon had 12,000 horses v26:210; Solomon's magnificent throne described v27:210; Solomon receives 666 talents of gold each year v30:210; silver considered of little value in Solomon's day v32:210; Solomon greater in riches and wisdom than all other kings of earth v33:210; visitors come from all over world to hear wisdom of Solomon v34:210; searched out and wrote many proverbs v2:221; proverbs of Solomon ch1-20:464; Solomon's counsel to his son on immortality ch2:464; Song of Solomon (book) Song:213; Solomon in his carriage, escorted by sixty warriors v1:214; poetic description of appearance v1-7:214; queen of Sheba visits Solomon, is overwhelmed v37-43:210; Solomon married women from forbidden nations v1:210; had 700 wives of royal status and 300 concubines v2:210; foreign wives lead Solomon into idolatry v3:210; Lord angry with Solomon's idolatry, to tear kingdom away from him v6:210; Lord raises up two enemies against Solomon v10:211; writes book of Ecclesiastes Eccl:217; Solomon greater by far than any man in Jerusalem before him v21:217; Solomon unable to find true wisdom v4:219; found only one upright man in a thousand v7:219; Solomon's son to rule over Judah only v19:211; Solomon tries to kill Jeroboam, for rebellion v23:211; Solomon dies after reigning over Israel forty years v24:211; Josiah defiles hilltop shrines Solomon built for his wives v10:311; because of marriages like these, Solomon king of Israel sinned v21:428; not even Solomon in all his glory was arrayed as a flower of the field v32:494; one greater than Solomon is here v25:501

Son of Man Daniel sees one like a Son of Man come in the clouds of heaven v16:388; Jesus refers to himself as the Son of Man v16:490, v15:496, v12:499; the Son of Man will send out his angels v38:503; the Son of Man came to save the lost v12:510; the Son of Man to return in an hour when expected not v39:515; sign of the Son of Man will appear in the sky v34:527; all nations to see the Son of Man coming on clouds of heaven, with power and great glory v35:527; you will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of the Almighty One v7:532; the Son of Man came from heaven v10:544; Stephen sees the Son of Man standing at the right hand of God v49:574; John sees angel in appearance like Son of Man v12:683

songs (See also singing, hymns, music) Miriam leads Israelite women in song and dancing after passing through Red Sea v11:60; Israelites taught a song from the Lord v11-31:118; song of victory by Deborah and Barak v18-29:136; women come out from the towns of Israel to greet Saul with joyful songs v3:169; Levite singers appointed to sing joyful songs v31:186; Solomon composed 1005 songs v25:204; when the song was raised, the glory of Jehovah filled the house of God v11:207; away with the noise of your songs, because of sin v20:255; they mock us in song all day long v56:379, v35:438; Psalm 44 v5:452; our captors wanted songs of joy, but how can we sing in a foreign land, Psalm 81 v2-3:459; returning exiles filled with laughter and songs of joy, Psalm 89 v1:461; uplift one another with songs of the Spirit v30:643; the 144,000 sang a new song before the throne v2:693; song to be sung in Judah

on day the Lord returns v27-32:293; Jerusalem to burst into song and shout for joy at second coming v17:297

sons Adam's son Cain kills his brother Abel v6:16; Adam has a son in his own likeness Seth v1:17; Adam lived 800 years and had other sons v3:17; Noah and his three sons enter ark v6:18; Noah blesses his sons v5:19; son to be born to 100 year old Abram v21:23, v15:26; I cannot watch my son die v23:26; Abraham commanded by God to sacrifice his son Isaac v1-9:26; Ishmael had twelve sons and they settled east of Egypt v43:29; Rebekah induces her son Jacob to steal his brother's blessing v2:30; now my husband will treat me with honour, for I have borne him six sons v20:32; Israel loved Joseph more than his other sons v6:37; Israel blesses his twelve sons v16-35:45; firstborn sons to be redeemed v6:58, v29:65; if a man dies and leaves no son, his inheritance is to be given to his daughter v10:105; firstborn son to inherit a double share v2:113; a rebellious son to be stoned to death v4-5:113; a brother-in-law required to marry a sonless widow v33:114; you will eat the flesh of your own sons and daughters v5:117; Gideon had seventy sons for he had many wives v7:139; Jair had thirty sons who rode thirty donkeys v2:141; Eli's wicked sons took no notice of their father's rebuke v29:157; Lord accuses Eli of honouring his sons more than him v2:157; Samuel's sons were dishonest and accepted bribes v2:160; all the king's sons mounted their mules and fled v24:191; King Ahaz even sacrificed his sons in fire v3:281; King Manasseh sacrificed his sons by fire v7:308; Jonadab's command to his sons not to drink wine has been kept to this day v21:339; none of his sons will prosper v7:340; all the sons of God shouted for joy v4:440; your sons will be like olive shoots around your table, Psalm 63 v2:455; you are all sons of the Most High God, Psalm 77 v4:458; he who spares the rod cares not for his son v2:473; discipline your son v3:473, v4:473; he who loves his son disciplines him v7:473; discipline your son and he will give you peace and delight v8:473; the father of a righteous son has great joy v11:473; sons are a gift from the Lord, blessed the man whose quiver is full of them v18:473; if your son asks for bread will you give him a stone v7:513; parable of the prodigal son v14-29:517; parable of the two sons v23-26:522; your sons and daughters will prophesy, your young men see visions (during millennium) v4:273; your sons shall be taught by the Lord (during millennium) v23:297

sorcery (See also occult, mediums) Jannes and Jambres Egyptian sorcerers oppose Moses v11:656; Egyptian sorcerers staffs turn into snakes v5:53; sorcerers turn water into blood v12:53; make frogs come up v18:53; sorcerers fail to produce lice v26:54; cannot stand before Moses because of boils v44:54; sorcerers to be stoned to death v35:65; sorcery an abomination v21-22:111; Israelites practiced sorcery v20:258; magic spells and sorceries will not save Babylon v14:304; Manasseh practiced sorcery v7:308; Josiah rids land of sorcerers v9:311; Lord coming in judgement against sorcerers v7:431; Peter rebukes Simon the sorcerer v17:575; Elymas the sorcerer struck blind for opposing word of God v9:580; valuable sorcery scrolls burned publicly v24:587; sorcery a work of flesh, not of Holy Spirit v5:625; survivors of last days do not repent of sorceries v35:690; sorcerers to inherit Second Death v8:699

sorrow (See also tears) with much knowledge comes much sorrow v11:217; sadness is good for the heart v29:219; Messiah to be despised and rejected by men, a man of sorrows v8:307; sorrow saddens my heart, I hear my people weeping in a land of exile far away v32:327; I came out of the womb only to see trouble, sorrow and shame v5:333; Jehovah adds sorrow upon sorrow to me v7:337; why does your face look so sad, this can only be sorrow of heart v8:423; David's eyes grow weak with sorrow, Psalm 26 v5:449; when the Lord blesses a man with wealth he adds no sorrow with it v11:466; who has sorrow, those who linger over wine v6:468; give wine to those who sorrow, let them drink and forget their misery v3:474; your own heart will be pierced by a sword of sorrow v23:485; blessed are those who are full of sorrow, for they shall be comforted v9:491; Jesus began to be very sorrowful and troubled v29:530; if any among you is sorrowful, let him pray v23:600; our fleeting troubles achieve an incomparable everlasting glory v8:618; godly sorrow brings genuine repentance v43:619; all sorrow shall flee away (during millennium) v19:295; I shall give them comfort and joy instead of sorrow (during millennium) v14:343

speech See **tongue**

spies Joseph accuses his brothers of being spies v6:41; Moses sends twelve explorers to spy out land of Canaan v18:95; Joshua sends two men to spy out promised land v6:121; the two spies stay with Rahab a harlot in Jericho v7:121; spies report back to Joshua v20:122

Spirit of God See **Holy Spirit**

Spirit of the Lord See **Holy Spirit**

spirit of man (See also **spirits**) God breathes into Adam's nostrils the spirit of life v15:14; O God of the spirits of all mankind v22:98, v4:119; consulting spirits of the dead an abomination v22:112; medium asked to bring up the spirit of Samuel v20:176; who knows if the spirit of man rises upward v22:218; you know not how the spirit enters the child being formed in the womb v25:220; at death the spirit returns to God who gave it v32:221; Elisha present in spirit when Naaman got down from his chariot to meet Gehazi v27:240; I will bring their plans to nothing, though they consult with spirits of the dead v6:291; their departed spirits have not risen v31:293; spirits of the dead will greet the king of Babylon in Sheol v4:305; spirit of Ezekiel carried from Babylon to the Temple in Jerusalem 1-4:358; spirits enter newly fleshed bodies at Ezekiel's command and they stand on their feet v7:369; I shall set free the prisoners from Sheol v8:407; the spirit in man, from the Almighty gives him his understanding v5:439; when I was made in secret in Sheol, your eyes beheld my spirit, Psalm 2 v6:444; you will not leave my soul in Sheol, Psalm 17 v5:447; when your spirit departs they return to the dust, Psalm 19 v12:448, Psalm 92 v2:462; her house leads down to death, to the spirits of the dead v14:467; Father into your hands I commit my spirit v20:535; Jesus bowed his head and gave up his spirit v15:563; disciples think resurrected Jesus a spirit v43:538; touch me and see, a spirit has not flesh and bones as you see I have v45:538, v26:616; Stephen prays as he dies, Lord Jesus receive my spirit v51:574; it must be his spirit v13:579; do not be distressed, his spirit is in him v9:588; Sadducees say there is no life after death and no spirit, but Pharisees believe both these things v8:591; the body without the spirit is dead v18:599; God will bring with Jesus all who have died in him v11:603; hand this man over to Satan for the destruction of his flesh, that his spirit may be saved v7:609; if I pray in a tongue, my spirit prays v33:614; if there is an earthly body, there is also a spiritual body v26:616; my body waged war against my spirit v20:630; the Holy Spirit will strengthen your spirit, that Christ may dwell within you v38:642; Jesus preached to spirits in prison after his resurrection v15:659; spirits of righteous men made perfect v7:671; God, the Father of our spirits v39:671; at once I was in the spirit v2:685; John sees spirits of 144,000 chaste men in heaven, redeemed from the earth v1-6:693; I saw the spirits of those who had been beheaded v2:698; he carried me away in the spirit to a mountain great and high v10:699

spirit world of dead See **Sheol, Hades, Pit, Paradise spiritists** See **mediums**

spirits (See also **spirit of man, Spirit of God, Holy Spirit**) lying spirit permitted to deceive 400 prophets of Asherah v23:232; body of Elishah bristled as a spirit glided past his face, heard a voice whisper v6-7:434; when the Lord takes away a creature's spirit they die and return to the dust, Psalm 19 v12:448; discerning between spirits a gift of the Holy Spirit v5:613; how to recognise spirits of falsehood v5-7:675; test the spirits to see if they are of God v1:675

spirits evil See **demons**

spirits familiar See **mediums, fortune telling**

spirits unclean See **demons**

spiritual gifts See **gifts of the spirit**

spoil Abram recovers plunder seized by kings of north v14:21; Abram gives Melchizedek a tenth of all the plunder v21:21; Israelite army take Midianite herds, flocks and goods as spoil v5:105; spoil to be divided fairly among all the people v1:105; one part out of every fifty of spoil to be given to Levites 3:106; Achan and his family stoned to death for stealing spoil from Jericho v14:125; David divides the spoil equally v18:178; huge amount of spoil captured from Ethiopians v8:262; three days needed to gather immense amount of spoil from invading

armies v30:264; wealth of Jerusalem to be carried away as spoil to Babylon v42:322; neither Nebuchadnezzar nor his army got any spoil from Tyre as recompense for the labour expended v2:377

stars (See also **Morning Star**) God also made the stars v9:14; look toward the heavens, number the stars if you can v3:21; I will make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the heavens v11:27, v14:29; they bowed down to the sun, moon and stars v20:258, v3:314; lift up your eyes to the starry heavens, who created all these and calls each by name? v20:302; can you bind the beautiful Pleiades, or loose the cords of Orion? v17:440; praise him all you shining stars, Psalm 97 v5:462; we saw his star in the east and have come to worship him v1:486; the star reappears and leads the wise men to Jesus v5:486; as star differs from star in glory, so too will it be in the resurrection of the dead v24:616; in his right hand he held seven stars, representing leaders of the seven churches v14-19:683; I shall make him as the Morning Star. v29:684; stars to no longer shine before second coming v16:272, v14:273, v4:289, v30:526; stars shall fall from the sky in last days v32:289, v31:526, v13:687; third of the light of the stars to be darkened in last days v13:689

stealing See **theft**

Stephen one of the Seven, a man full of God's Holy Spirit, does great miracles v5-8:573; arrested and put on trial before Sanhedrin v10:573; face glows like an angel v13:573; relates history of Israel v14-41:573; strongly rebukes Jewish leaders v43-46:574; sees vision of Jesus standing at right hand of the Father v48:574; Jewish leaders stone Stephen to death for blasphemy v50:574; Stephen prays for those who are stoning him v51:574

stone pillars (**Idolatrous**) sacred stones of Canaanites to smashed v9:75; Judah builds pillars on all high places v7:261; stone pillars removed by King Asa v1:262; sacred pillars in Egyptian temple of the sun to be demolished v29:349

stones memorial Jacob sets up a stone pillar v11:31; Jacob and Laban build a pillar of stones v35:34; Israel sets up a pillar over Rachael's tomb v25:37; Moses erects twelve stone pillars at foot of mountain v3:68; twelve stones taken from Jordan river and set up at Gilgal as a memorial v9-15:123; twelve stones also set up in bed of river Jordan v11:123; Joshua sets up a witness stone at Shechem v12:130; Samuel sets up a stone and names it Ebenezer v20:160

stone tablets I will give you tablets of stone on which I have written the Law v11:68; the stone tablets to be kept in the Ark v15:69; the Lord gives the tablets to Moses v37:73; Moses breaks the tablets to pieces in anger v14:74; Moses commanded to make two more tablets v4:75; nothing in the Ark except the two tablets of stone v7:207

stoning will the Egyptians not stone us? v33:54; what am I to do with these people, they are almost ready to stone me v3:61; whoever touches the mountain is to be stoned to death v10:63; whoever sacrifices his child to Molech must be stoned to death v26:64; sorcerers and mediums to be stoned to death v35:65; a bull who gores a person to death must be stoned v13:66; whoever blasphemers the name of Jehovah must be stoned to death v12:85; people talk of stoning Caleb and Joshua v4:96; Sabbath breaker stoned to death v7:97; a rebellious drunken son to be stoned to death v4:113; a woman to be stoned to death if promiscuous while living in her father's house v11:113; rape of a another man's betrothed wife punishable by stoning to death v14:113; Achan and all his household stoned for theft of devoted spoil v14:125; Israelites stone Rehoboam's official to death v37:212; elders of Jezreel stone Naboth and his sons to death v9:231; O Jerusalem, you who kill the prophets and stone those who are sent to you v39:519; Let him who is without sin among you, cast the first stone v5:550; people try to stone Jesus for blasphemy v35:551, v6:553; Jewish leaders stone Stephen to death for blasphemy v50:574; Paul stoned and dragged outside the city as dead v15:582

study a king to read the Law all the days of his life v17:111; Joshua to study the Law day and night, then he will be successful in all he does v3-4:121; I devoted myself to study v9:217; much study wearies the body v4:221; you study the scriptures, and the scriptures testify of me v27:547; you are mad Paul, your great learning is turning you insane v33:593

success the Lord was with Joseph and gave him success in everything he did v2:39; Joshua to study the Law day and night, then he will be successful in all he does v3:4-121; in everything David did he had great success v10:169; skill will bring success v15:220; have faith in Jehovah and in his prophets and you will be successful v25:264; because the Lord was with him, Hezekiah was successful in whatever he undertook v9:285; I (Jehovah) have called him and he shall succeed in his mission v23:304; the Antichrist to be successful until time of wrath is completed v2:395; with many advisers plans succeed v1:472; commit to the Lord whatever you do and your plans will succeed v3:472; no plan can succeed against the will of the Lord v6:472

suffering your children will wander forty years, suffering for your unfaithfulness v18:96; you will suffer a lingering disease until your bowels fall out v13:265; surely it was for my good that I suffered such anguish v19:310; Messiah to be a man of sorrows, familiar with suffering v8:307; by his suffering my Righteous One shall pardon many v21:307; because of our sins we have suffered the sword, captivity and humiliation v5:420; flesh must suffer first, all that a man has he will give for his health v19:433; in all his suffering, Job did not sin with his lips v24:434; my life ebbs away, days of suffering grip me v37:438; my skin grows black and peels, my body burns with fever v41:438; he who scorns instruction will suffer v25:467; go in peace and be freed from your suffering v47:497; the Son of man must suffer many things and be rejected by this generation v5:518; I dreamed this morning that I will suffer much because of him v20:533; did not Christ have to suffer these things, and enter this way into his glory? v33:537, v52:538, v1:584; a woman giving birth suffers pain, but when her child is born, in her joy she forgets the suffering v4:560; Paul to suffer much for the Lord v13:576; trials of your faith develop endurance and spiritual maturity v3:598; they who reject the gospel will suffer the punishment of Eternal Death v6:604; we apostles suffer more than other men v44-49:608; why not suffer wrong than have lawsuits among you? v20:609; if one part of the body suffers, every part suffers v7:613; who sins and I not suffer? v40:621; have you suffered so much for nothing? v2:624; I bear on my body the marks of my suffering for Jesus v16:626; suffering produces endurance and character v20:629; our present sufferings are nothing compared to the glory that awaits us v6:631, v37:642; be patient in affliction v8:633; I Paul rejoice in my sufferings v1:636; God intends that you not only believe in Christ, but suffer for him v20:646; join with me in suffering for the gospel v8:655; trials prove your faith genuine v6:658; patiently endure unjust suffering, for what credit can you claim when you suffer for doing wrong v29:658; Christ suffered for you as an example v30:658; suffer for doing good, rather than for evil v11:659, v30:659; he who willingly suffers in the flesh has broken away from sin v19:659; rejoice that you share the suffering of Christ, for you will be filled with joy v29:659; your brothers throughout the world are undergoing the same trials v8:660; after you have suffered a little while, God will restore you and make you strong v9:660; Jesus the pioneer of our salvation, made perfect through suffering v11:667; although God's son, he learned obedience by that which he suffered v18:668; those who have committed adultery with her will suffer intensely, unless they repent v25:684; in last days people of the earth will suffer for their guilt, until few are left v4:288

suing See lawsuits, judging

sun to govern the day v9:14; stands still in the sky in answer to Joshua's prayer v28-29:127; the sun rises, sets, then hastens back to rise again v5:217; nothing new under the sun v8:217; light is sweet and it pleases the eyes to see the sun v24:220; Israelites bowed to the sun, moon and stars v20:258; shadow of the sun goes back ten degrees as a sign to Hezekiah v15:301; King Manasseh erects altars to sun and moon v6:308; horse images dedicated to sun removed v7:311; sacred pillars in Egyptian temple of the sun to be demolished v29:349; I saw about twenty-five men bowing down to the sun v18:359; the righteousness shall shine like the splendour of the sun, for all eternity v13:396, v39:503, v24:616; praise the Lord sun and moon Psalm 97 v4:462; God causes the sun to rise on both the wicked and the good v24:492; the face of Jesus shone like the sun and his garments became dazzling white v24:508; sun darkened for three hours when Jesus dies v15:535; still of

sun's light to be darkened in last days v13:689; rising sun to be darkened in last days v4:289, v30:526; sun to be darkened before second coming v16:272, v5:273; sun to be darkened in last days after great earthquake v12:687; smoke from Pit to darken sun in last days v16:689; sun to scour people with burning heat during fourth plague of final days v16:694; angel's face like the sun v1:690; a great sign appeared in the heavens, a woman clothed with the sun v7:691; sun to be seven times brighter (during millennium) v7:294; Egyptian city to be called City of the Sun (during millennium) v14:291; sun will no longer be your light by day, for Jehovah will be your light (during millennium) v9:296, v24:700

Sunday worship Jesus resurrected on first day of the week (Sunday) v5:536, v1:563; Jesus appears to his disciples on evening of first day of the week v18:564; Holy Spirit comes when believers gathered together on day of Pentecost (Sunday) v1:569; on the first day of the week we met together to break bread v6:588; church members should contribute money for first day of every week v33:616; John in the Spirit on the Lord's Day v11:682

sword God set cherubim and a flaming sword to guard way to the Tree of Life v24:16; Esau to live by the sword and serve his brother Jacob v32:31; each man strap a sword to his side v21:74, v8:174; Israel put all people of Sihon to the sword v13:101; Balaam's donkey sees an angel standing in the road with a drawn sword v17:102; put all the men to the sword v13:112; Joshua sees an angel with a drawn sword in his hand v1:123; Joshua took the cities, putting to sword anything that breathed v4:127; Ehud drew the sword from his thigh and plunged it into the king's belly v15:135; shout, a sword for Jehovah and for Gideon v20:138; Lord causes Medianites to turn on each other with their swords v24:138; Israelites forbidden by Philistines to make swords v16:164; Philistines in total confusion, striking each other with swords v32:165; David cuts off Goliath's head with his own sword v27:169; David given Goliath's sword by priest v6:172; Doeg puts to sword the entire priest's town of Nob v29:173; Saul falls on his own sword v4:178; must the sword devour forever? v40:183; sword never to depart from David's house because he took the wife of Uriah v13:190; David sees the destroying angel with a drawn sword in his hand v14:199; Eleazar struck down Philistines until his hand could not unclasp his sword v8:200; prophets of Baal cut themselves with knives and swords as was their custom v21:227; swords will flash v1:251; I killed your young men with the sword yet you did not return to me v2:255; your sons and daughters will fall by the sword v19:256; the sinners among my people will all die by the sword v30:257; beat your plough blades into swords v11:273; Philistines to be destroyed by famine and sword v3:284; Assyrians to fall by a sword that is not of man v29:289; Lord made Isaiah's mouth like a sharpened sword v1:305; the sword will devour until it has quenched its thirst with blood v5:334; with your own eyes you will see your friends fall by the sword v40:332; whoever stays in this city shall die by the sword, famine or plague v9:344; Babylonian army begin putting survivors of Jerusalem to the sword v2:347; he shall come, bringing the sword to those destined for the sword v28:349, v10:692; the Lord to put his sword in the hand of the king of Babylon v7:368; each worker wore his sword at his side as he worked v17:424; rash words pierce like a sword v31:470; Mary's heart to be pierced by a sword of sorrow v23:485; if you do not have a sword, sell your cloak and buy one v25:530; Peter attacks high priest's servant with a sword, cutting off his ear v45:531, v8:561; all who draw the sword perish by sword v47:531; apostle James put to death with the sword v1:579; the sword of the Spirit which is the word of God v19:643; word of God is living and active, sharper than a two-edged sword v9:668; from the angel's mouth came a sharp two-edged sword v14:683; rider of the red horse given a large sword to take peace from the earth (in last days)v3:686; the Beast, who was wounded by the sword yet lived v5:692; from his mouth comes a sharp sword v16:698; sword of Jehovah will be bathed in blood (in last days) v14:290; with fire and his sword Jehovah shall execute judgement upon all men (in last days) v7:295, v26:698; Jehovah shall judge all mankind, the guilty will be put to the sword (in last days) v20:334; armies of Gog to each turn his sword against his brother (in last days) v13:371; they shall beat their swords into plough blades (during millennium) v1:293; nation will never again take up sword

against nation (during millennium) v2:293

synagogues (Jewish places of worship) Jesus taught in the synagogues v5:488, v7:488, v18:489; men in synagogue become enraged with anger v17:489; in the synagogue was a man possessed by demons v20:489; do not announce your giving with trumpets as hypocrites do in the synagogues v8:493; hypocrites love to pray, standing in synagogues to be seen of men v11:493; Jesus teaches in his home synagogue at Nazareth v47:504; synagogue ruler indignant that Jesus healed a woman on the Sabbath v8:516; Pharisees love to have the most important seats in synagogues v28:524, v32:525; anyone who said Jesus was the Christ, was to be expelled from the synagogue v16:552; they will cast you out of synagogues v35:559; Paul began to preach Jesus in the synagogues v17:576, v7:580, v17:580; Paul went into the synagogue and reasoned with them from the scriptures v1:584, v15:585, v4:586; Jews beat their synagogue ruler v14:586; I went from synagogue to synagogue to have them punished v25:593; they claim to be Jews but are a synagogue of Satan v10:683, v42:685

Syria Abraham a wandering Syrian v4:114; Syrians flee before Israel v12:189; Syrians gather reinforcements, but again flee v16:189; Syrians become subject to David v17:189; Rezon of Syria raised up as enemy of Solomon v13:211; king of Syria sends an army to capture Elisha the prophet v6:241; Lord blinds Syrian army to reality, led by Elisha into Israel's royal city v10:13:241; Ben-Hadad of Syria besieges city of Samaria v18:241; Elisha goes to appoint Hazael king of Syria v1:242; Hazael suffocates Ben-Hadad, becomes king of Syria v12:242; Lord causes Syrians to hear sound of a vast army, they flee v35:242; Israel under power of Syria v5:245; people of Syria to go into exile v3:254; Syria attacks Israel as King Asa asked v22:263; small Syrian army attack Jerusalem, kill officials and wound king v18:267; Syria invades Israel v4:281; Syria conquered by Assyria, people of Damascus exiled v30:282; Babylon to defeat Damascus v42:335; new Syrian king to tax Israel v33:394; contemptible deceitful Syrian king to arise v34:395; Syria to invade Egypt but be foiled by Roman ships v42:395; deceitful Syrian king to vent fury on Jews v43:395; Damascus to become a heap of ruins in last days v17:290; survivors of Syria will be as the Israelites (during millennium) v18:290

Tabernacle Israelites commanded to make a Tabernacle for the Lord v3:69; dimensions of Tabernacle v4-6:69; frames to be overlaid with gold v6:69; curtains of v7-9:69; exterior covering v10:69; entrance to v11:69; veil of v17:69; the gold lampstand v19:69; the seven oil lamps v20:69; lamps to burn every night until morning v23:70; the table v23:70; the gold jugs and bowls v26:70; the altar of incense v27:70; incense to be burned as lamps tended v29:70; the outer courtyard v31:70; bronze altar for burnt offerings v35:70; bronze altar utensils v37:70; bronze washing basin v38:70; perfumed anointing oil v40:70; ingredients of incense v44:71; census tax to be used for care of Tabernacle v33:73; craftsmen given skill by Lord v35-36:73; people bring Moses materials for Tabernacle v18:76; Tabernacle erected and consecrated v27:76; a cloud descends and glory of Jehovah fills Tabernacle v29:76; the cloud of the Lord over Tabernacle by day, fire seen in cloud by night v30:76; fire on Tabernacle altar to be kept burning v16:79; all Israelites see splendour of Jehovah emerge from Tabernacle v3:80, v5:96, v2:98; priests not to drink wine before entering Tabernacle or they will die v11:80; Moses would hear voice of Jehovah in the Tabernacle v15:80; Aaron not to go behind veil unless commanded or he will die v16:80; Holy Bread to be set out each week v36:81; Aaron to remain close to Tabernacle v3:84; anyone who approaches Sanctuary other than a priest to be put to death v23:92, v15-16:99; rules for transporting Tabernacle v1-4:93; Levites are purified and begin work at Tabernacle v13:93; only Levite men 25 to 50 years of age permitted to work at Tabernacle v16:93; when cloud lifted from above Tabernacle, the Israelites would set out v3:97; are we all to die, anyone who goes near the Tabernacle dies v13:99, v23:99; Levites to bear responsibility for sins against Tabernacle v14:99; Levites to retain tithes as wages for their work at the Tabernacle v22:99; gold placed in Tabernacle as a memorial before Lord, v17:106, v19:124; Tabernacle set up at Shiloh v1:128; Hannah weeps and prays before Lord at Tabernacle v6:156; Eli's sons lay with women who served at

entrance to Tabernacle v27:157; voice of the Lord calls to young Samuel sleeping in the Tabernacle v9:158; high priest gives David and his men holy bread from Tabernacle to eat v3:171, v3:500; Solomon offers 1000 sacrifices at Tabernacle v2:203; old Tabernacle carried up to the new Temple of the Lord v4:207; I love the Tabernacle where your glory dwells, Psalm 4 v3:445; I have beheld your power and glory in the sanctuary of the Tabernacle, Psalm 33 v2:450; I desire to dwell in his Tabernacle all the days of my life to gaze upon his beauty, Psalm 50 v2:453; your procession to the Tabernacle has come into view O God, Psalm 53 v1:453

Tabernacles feast of celebrated when last of crops are gathered v46:65; to be held fifteenth day of seventh month and last for seven days v5-6:85; Law to be read to people during v4:117; returned exiles celebrate v11:427; to be celebrated during millennium v28:409

Tamar widow of Er widow of Judah's eldest son Er v2:38; Judah's son Onan marries Tamar but spills his semen and dies v4:38; Judah promises Tamar his remaining son Shelah but fears he may also die v6:38; Tamar deceives Judah by pretending to be a harlot, becomes pregnant v9-15:39; names Judah as father of her child v19:39; gives birth to twin boys v21:39

Tamar daughter of David raped by her half brother Amnon v1-11:191; a grief-stricken and forlorn woman the rest of her life v16:191

Tattenai governor of Trans-Euphrates, challenges authority of Jews to rebuild Temple v2:402; sends letter to Darius v3:402; ordered by Darius to allow Jews to build Temple and pay their expenses v12-18:402

tattoos do not tattoo your bodies v36:65

tax a king will tax a tenth of your flocks, grain and wine to support his officials v8:161; go collect the tax money due to repair the Temple v4:266, v5:267; the people brought their Temple tax gladly v7:267; if this city is rebuilt, no more taxes will be paid and the royal revenues will suffer v6:419; governors who preceded Nehemiah placed a tax burden on the people v13:425; collect no more tax than you are required to v11:487; Jesus calls tax collector Matthew to be his disciple v19:490; a large crowd of tax collectors eat with Jesus v20:490; Peter pays annual Temple tax with a coin found in the mouth of a fish v1-3:509; parable of the Pharisee and tax collector v16-19:518; Zachaeus, a wealthy chief tax collector repents v1-7:520; show me the coin used for paying the tax v4:523; he opposes payment of taxes to Caesar and claims to be the Christ v2:533, v6:562; if you owe taxes, pay taxes v17:633

tax collectors Jesus calls tax collector Matthew to be his disciple v19:490; parable of the Pharisee and tax collector v16-19:518; tax collectors will enter the kingdom of God ahead of Jewish religious leaders v26:522

teachers false (See also prophets false) these boasters masquerade as apostles of Christ v26:621; Galatians led astray by false teachers v4:623; Paul curses anybody who preaches a false gospel v5:623; watch out for those who cause divisions v10:634; by smooth talk and flattery they deceive the minds of naive people v12:634; let no one deceive you by false but fine-sounding arguments v6:636; be not deceived by empty and deceptive philosophies v9:636; why submit to rules based on the teachings of men v20:637; no longer be as children, blown by every wind of doctrine v8:642; false teachers must be silenced or they will bring ruin on household v9:648; false teachers will forbid marriage and certain foods v15:652; reject the godless babble falsely called Knowledge v33:653; some teach that the resurrection has already taken place v27:655; there have been false prophets in past and will be false teachers among you also v16:662; many will follow false teachers v18:662; false teachers will bring truth into disrepute v18:662; godless men among you pervert the gospel into licence for immorality v4:664; be not led astray by strange teachings v16:672; whoever welcomes a false teacher shares in his wicked work v10:677

teachers of the Law Jesus found conversing with teachers of the Law in Temple when twelve years old v17:487; teachers of the Law think Jesus guilty of blasphemy v14:490; claim Jesus possessed by Satan v20:501; hypocrisy of teachers of the Law rebuked by Jesus v15:513; have taken away key of

knowledge v19:513; fathers of killed the prophets v20:513; teachers of the Law begin to oppose Jesus fiercely v21:514; look for a way to kill Jesus v11:522; challenge authority of Jesus v18:522; parable of unrighteous vineyard tenants v28:37:523; hypocritical teachers of the Law will receive a greater condemnation v27:524; love to walk around in flowing robes and have people call them Rabbi v27:524; do what they teach, not what they do v30:524; Jesus rebukes teachers of the Law as hypocrites, blind guides and blind fools v31:36:525; teachers of the Law mock Jesus on the cross v7:535

teaching Moses to be taught what to say by Lord v30:51; teach Jehovah's commandments to your children v5:109; I should sin by failing to teach you what is right v38:163; Jerusalem's priests teach for silver v2:276, v11:648; I am Jehovah your God who teaches you what is best for you v24:304; Isaiah given an eloquent tongue to teach words that sustain the weary v4:305; let us rid ourselves of Jeremiah, we have our priests to teach us the Law v21:332; Jews prosper under teaching of prophets Haggai and Zechariah v1:409; your false teachings cause men to stumble v20:430; advanced years should teach wisdom v4:439; my son do not forsake your father's commands and your mother's teaching v4:464; the teaching of the righteous is a fountain of life v54:471; they were amazed at his teaching for his words had authority v19:489, v11:522; Jesus did not teach anything without also using a parable v31:503; Jesus warns against the false teaching of Pharisees and Sadducees v55:507; teachers of the Law rebuked by Jesus v18:513, v31:39:525; have taken away the key of knowledge v19:513; do what they teach you but not what they do, for they do not practice what they teach v30:524; he stirs up the people all over Judea by his teaching v9:533; are you a teacher in Israel and yet not understand these things? v8:544; this is a hard teaching, who can accept it v36:549; my teaching is not my own, it comes from him who sent me v12:549; when the Spirit of truth comes he will teach you all truth v1:559; we who teach will be judged more strictly v32:599; among the spiritually mature we teach God's secret knowledge v23:608; teaching of knowledge a gift of the Spirit v4:613; teach and admonish one another with wisdom v5:637; Christ has called some to be teachers v6:642; fathers, raise your children in the teachings of the Lord v11:643; these teachers claim to know God, but their actions deny him v10:648; you must teach the saints sound doctrine v14:648; teach the older saints to be a good example to the young v15:19:649; in all your teaching show integrity, dignity, and sound doctrine that cannot be criticised v20:649; I do not permit women to teach men in the church v20:651; these are all the things you must teach the saints v21:653; hold firmly to my pattern of sound teaching v11:655; a servant of the Lord must be able to teach v4:655; all scripture is inspired by God and useful for teaching v15:656; correct, rebuke and encourage with utmost patience in teaching v17:656; time coming when men will surround themselves with teachers who will tell them what their ears want to hear v18:656; there have been false prophets in the past and there will be false teachers among you also v16:662; by now you should be teachers yourselves v21:668; the Son's anointing teaches you all things and is true v27:674; will be no longer needful for a man to teach another to know the Lord (during millennium) v19:344

tears (weeping) (See also sorrow) Hagar weeps as her son Ishmael lies dying v23:26; Abraham weeps over his wife v14:27; Jacob kisses Rachel and begins to weep aloud v19:31; Esau wept loudly v30:31; Esau ran to meet Jacob and they wept together v23:35; Joseph turned away from his brothers and wept v13:41, v8:42; Joseph wept so loudly the Egyptians heard him v26:43; Joseph kissed all his brothers and wept over them v31:43; Joseph threw his arms around his father and wept for a long time v6:43, v36:45; Israelites weep aloud at rejection by Lord v24:134; allow me two months to roam the hills and weep with my friends v27:142; Samson's wife wept and said, you do not love me v6:144; the Israelites returned to Bethel and sat weeping v32:148; Hannah why are you weeping? v5:156; a few of Eli's descendants to be spared only to weep out their eyes with tears and grief v4:157; Jonathan and David weep together v28:171; David and his men weep aloud v2:177, v7:182; David walked behind the bier and wept aloud v21:184; Tamar went away weeping aloud v15:191; the king and all his officials wept bitterly v27:191; David continued

up the Mount of Olives weeping as he went v23:193; Job is told, the king is weeping for Absalom v27:196; a time to weep and a time to laugh v6:217; return to me with all your heart, with fasting, weeping and mourning v10:272; the Lord weeps bitterly over his people v4:301; I have heard your prayer and seen your tears, so I will heal you v10:301; I wept and moaned like a dove v18:301; when Josiah heard the words of the Book of Law he tore his robes and wept v20:311; because your heart was responsive and you wept, you shall not see the disaster v25:26:311; I hear my people weeping in a land of exile v32:327; O that my head were a spring of water and my eyes a fountain of tears v35:327, v22:379; the eyes of Jehovah overflow with tears night and day because of wickedness v11:330; exiles shall seek the Lord their God in tears v16:337; how bitterly Jerusalem weeps at night, with tears upon her cheeks 2:101, v34:379; no one could distinguish the shouts of joy from the weeping v5:399; there was great mourning among the Jews, with weeping and wailing v16:414; Esther fell at the king's feet weeping v3:416; Ezra and all the people around him wept bitterly v11:420; Nehemiah weeps, fasts and prays v3:423; people weep as they listen to the words of the Law v6:427; when Job's friends saw him they wept aloud and tore their robes v26:434; my face is red with weeping, dark shadows ring my eyes v4:436; all night long I flood my bed with tears, Psalm 26 v5:449; the Lord has heard my weeping, he has accepted my prayer v9:449; you have made us drink tears by the bowlful, Psalm 73 v2:457; by the rivers of Babylon we sat down and wept, Psalm 81 v1:459; may they who sow seed in tears, reap with songs of joy, Psalm 86 v2:461; they will weep and grind their teeth in outer darkness v6:490, v38:503, v44:515; she stood behind Jesus, weeping and weeping his feet with her tears v32:495; she has washed my feet with her tears and wiped them with her hair v37:495; the boy's father cried out in tears, I do believe v47:509; when Jesus saw the city he wept over it v26:521; Peter went outside and wept bitterly v19:532; weep not for me, weep for yourselves and for your children v42:534; Jesus saw Mary weeping and wept also v19:554; I served the Lord with humility and tears v13:588; for three years I never stopped warning you day and night with tears v20:589; you will weep and mourn while the world rejoices v3:560; Mary Magdalene remained outside the tomb weeping v8:564; why are you weeping and breaking my heart? v10:589; Ephesian leaders weep as they embrace and farewell Paul v24:589; weep and wail you rich men, because of the misery that will come upon you v15:600; I wrote to you out of great anguish of heart and with many tears v30:618; I recall your tears as we parted v3:654; Jesus offered up prayers with loud cries and tears v17:668; merchants of the earth shall weep for Great Babylon (in last days) v11:696; Israel to be gathered and to come weeping and praying (at second coming) v10:343; on that day the weeping in Jerusalem will be very great (at second coming) v11:408; Lord to wipe away tears from all faces (at second coming) v25:293, v3:699; no more shall the sound of weeping be heard in Jerusalem (during millennium) v17:293

teeth blessing on Judah, descendants teeth to be made white by milk v23:45; an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth v6:66, v12:66, v3:492; your teeth are white and evenly matched, like a flock of sheep v6:214; the fathers have eaten sour grapes and the children's teeth are set on edge v16:343, v14:363; the fourth beast had great iron teeth v5:387; who dares open his mouth, ringed about with fearsome teeth? v17:441; the wicked will grind their teeth and waste away, Psalm 54 v6:454, v38:503; they will grind their teeth in outer darkness v6:490, v44:515; he foams at the mouth and grinds his teeth v41:509; they were enraged and ground their teeth v47:574; the locusts' teeth were like those of a lion v22:689

Temple (Solomon) David desires to build a temple to the Lord v26:188; David not permitted to build a temple as he has shed much blood v28:199; the Temple must be of great magnificence, fame and splendour v33:200; David's son Solomon given plans for the Temple that Spirit of God had put in David's mind v38:200; 130,000 Canaanites conscripted as labourers v8-11:205; Solomon builds the Temple, takes seven years to complete v12:205; dimensions of Temple v13:205; no hammer, chisel or other iron tool heard at Temple site v14:205; steps and entrance v16:205; interior v17:206; roof v20:206; inner Sanctuary v21:206; hall v23:206; the two cherubim

v25:206; the inner and outer courts v29:206; the two bronze pillars v31:206; the bronze altar v33:206; large bronze basin on backs of twelve oxen v35:207; wheeled bronze basins v37:207; gold altar, table, lamps, bowls etc v42:207; treasures of David placed in Temple v43:207; all Israel invited to Jerusalem for dedication of Temple v1:207; old Tabernacle carried up to Temple v4:207; music and singing by priests and Levites at dedication v8-10:207; glory of Jehovah fills the Temple v11:207; Solomon's prayer of dedication v12-26:208; priests unable to enter Temple because of brightness of Lord's glory v29:208; 142,000 animals sacrificed at dedication v33:208; Lord acknowledges Solomon's prayer and accepts Temple v9:209; Temple to become a ruin if Israel serve other gods v14:209; treasures of Temple captured by Egypt v15:261; Asa replaces the silver and gold and articles taken from Temple v13:263; king Joash decides to restore Temple v3:266; people pay upkeep tax into chest at Temple v7:267; Temple restored as before v10:267; Temple again abandoned by Judah, Asherah poles and idols worshipped v14:267; Zechariah stoned to death in courtyard of Temple v16:267, v38:525; King Uzziah struck with leprosy for unlawfully entering Temple v11:275; Isaiah sees Jehovah in the Temple v18:275; Ahaz replaces Lord's Temple altar with one of Syrian design v37:283; Ahaz removes basins and furnishings and locks doors v40:283; Hezekiah instructs priests to purify Temple v10:285; gold stripped from Temple doors v10:299; Manasseh erects carved Asherah pole inside Temple v7:308; Josiah orders idolatrous articles removed from Temple v3:311; male prostitute quarters within Temple torn down v5:311; Ezekiel taken in spirit from Babylon to Temple in Jerusalem 1-4:359; Ezekiel sees idolatry by seventy elders in closed Temple room v9-12:359; Belshazzar set himself against the Lord and drank wine from goblets of his Temple v14:390; better one day in your courts O Lord, than a thousand days elsewhere, Psalm 64 v6:456; clean hands and a pure heart required to stand in Temple, Psalm 65 v1:456; Babylonians remove treasures from Temple v27:340; Babylonians burn Temple v12:347; they set your sanctuary on fire, defiling the Temple, Psalm 78 v5:459; they smashed the carved paneling with axes, Psalm 78 v4:459; nations have defiled your holy Temple, Psalm 79 v1:459

Temple (rebuild, by returned exiles) work on rebuilding Temple begins v1:398; Temple articles returned by Cyrus v6:398; people shout praise to Lord at laying of Temple foundation, but many elderly weep v3-4:398; Samaritans want to help build Temple, Israelite leaders refuse v6-7:399; Samaritans become enemies, work on Temple stops v8:399; poor crops the result of failing to rebuild the Temple v15:399; people again commence rebuilding v18:399; people now to be blessed as they rebuild Temple v9:406; Temple to be protected during next invasion of Judah v5:407; Jews finish rebuilding the Temple v1:409; Temple dedicated with joy v3:409; Ezra takes Temple servants with him to Jerusalem with v4:420; Nehemiah's enemies try to lure him unlawfully into Temple v10-12:426; rebuilt Temple to be defiled v9:389, v44:395

Temple (Herod) to be destroyed after death of Messiah v13:392; angel Gabriel appears to Zechariah while burning incense in v4:482; devil sets Jesus on highest point of Temple v25:488; Jesus heals the blind and lame in the courts of the Temple v1:521; Jesus drives out merchants and money changers v8-9:522, v9-10:543; Jesus prophesies destruction of Temple v2:525; Jesus teaches at daily v3:529; veil of Temple splits at death of Jesus v21:535; disciples rejoice in Temple daily, praising God v60:538; Paul saw Lord in the Temple v39:590

Temple (millennial) the Lord will come suddenly to his Temple v2:431; riches to be brought to Jerusalem to adorn Lord's glorious Temple v21:294; Lord's house shall be highest of the mountains v2:295; Lord to put his Temple in Israel forever v19:370; Ezekiel sees future millennial Temple on high mountain in Israel ch14:371; only descendants of Zadok to minister as priests in v25:372; sacrifice to be offered in millennial Temple v17:372, v29:409; priests to wear holy garments v30:372; Ezekiel sees Lord enters in glory through east gates v1-3:373; to become the place of the Lord's throne v6:373; sacred Temple district to be set aside v1:374; outer east gate to remain closed v22:374; unworthy foreigners will not be permitted to enter Temple grounds v27:374; only Levites descended of Zadok may serve as priests v30:374; priests to be supported by donations of people v39:374; fresh water to

flow eastward from Temple to Dead Sea v2:375, v19:273, v21:409; priests and Levites to live around Temple v3:375; inner east gate to be opened each Sabbath and New Moon v18:375; people to worship in outer courtyard v20:375; king to attend and depart the appointed feasts with people v26:375; no one to return through the gate he entered v27:375; Temple to be filled with glory and treasure v24:400; to be greater than glory of former Temple v25:400

Temple (heavenly) the Most High does not live in temples made by men v42:574, v22:585; your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit who is in you v30:610, v29:641; you by his Spirit become part of the temple in which God lives v29:641, v21:658; he who overcomes I shall make a pillar in the temple of my God v45:685; multitude in white robes before throne of God, serve him day and night in his temple v10:688; John sees an Ark when God's temple in heaven opened v5:691; God's temple in heaven opened and out came seven angels v6:694, v19:694; God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of New Jerusalem v23:700

temptation although she tempted Joseph day after day, he refused to even be with her v6:39; David succumbs to temptation and commits adultery with Bathsheba ch6:189; David is tempted to pride, takes a census of his nation's fighting men v2:198; Jesus tempted by the devil with fleshly desire v23:488; Jesus tempted to proudly test God v25:488; Jesus tempted with worldly power and wealth v27:488; let us not be led into temptation but deliver us from all evil v17:493; because they are shallow and have no root, when temptation comes they fall away v16:502; temptations must be, but woe to that person by whom they come v10:510; watch and pray you do not fall into temptation, the spirit is willing but the flesh weak v36:531; God does not tempt anyone, each is enticed by his own lustful desires v5:598; because of temptation to immorality each man should have his own wife v1:610; do not deprive spouse of conjugal rights lest Satan tempt you v3:610; God will not allow you to be tempted beyond what you can bear v19:612; be careful when helping a sinner or you too may be tempted v13:626; Jesus was tempted in every way like we are, yet did not sin v12:668

Ten Commandments (See also commandments) Ten Commandments as spoken by Lord ch1:163; first commandment – you shall have no other gods v19:63; second – you shall not make idols v20:64; third – do not take name of Lord in vain v21:64; fourth – keep holy the Sabbath day v22:64; fifth – honour your father and mother v23:64; sixth – you shall not murder v24:64; seventh – you shall not commit adultery v25:64; eighth – you shall not steal v26:64; ninth – you shall not bear false witness v27:64; tenth – you shall not covet v28:64

Terah father of Abram (later renamed Abraham) v10:20; dies aged 205 v14:20

thanksgiving (See also praise) David prays in thanksgiving before the Lord v38:188; give thanks to the Lord, he is good v10:207, v3:399, Psalm 85 v1:461; Daniel thanks God for giving him wisdom and power v14:384; Daniel prayed three times every day, giving thanks to his God v6:391; I go before your altar with songs of thanksgiving, Psalm 4 v2:445; I will praise you with thanksgiving amid throngs of people, Psalm 43 v5:452; I require an offering of thanksgiving as your sacrifice, Psalm 69 v6:456; he who offers thanksgiving honours me, Psalm 69 v11:456; give thanks to the Lord and call upon his name, Psalm 83 v1:459; give thanks to Lord for his unfailing love, Psalm 85 v4:461; enter his gates with thanksgiving, Psalm 89 v2:461; Jesus looked up to heaven, gave thanks and broke the loaves v22:504, v42:507, v6:548; one of ten healed lepers returns to thank Jesus v7:511; Jesus took bread and wine and gave thanks v15-16:530, v36:537; we always thank God for you in our prayers v2:601, v2:604; be joyful always, give thanks in all circumstances v24:603; your generosity will be a thanksgiving to God v23:620; give thanks to God the Father through the Lord Jesus v7:637, v31:643; give thanks always to the Father v8:636, v30:643; I desire that prayer and thanksgiving be offered for all men, especially rulers v15:651; no food to be rejected if received with thanksgiving v16:652; twenty-four elders in heaven give thanks to God v2:691

theft eighth commandment – you shall not steal v26:64; commandments on compensation for theft v1-13:67; law

regarding killing of a thief caught in act v2:67; a thief if caught must pay back double v6:67; Lord's anger aroused by theft v1:124; Achan confesses to theft, is stoned and burned with his household v10:15:125; stealing is defiling the land v14:276; your rulers are friends of thieves v11:283; a thief is shamed when caught v17:325; all who steal shall be cut off v44:405; give me neither poverty nor riches, otherwise I may become poor and steal v5:474; if anyone takes what belongs to you, do not demand it back v18:491; store not up treasures on earth where thieves break in and steal v24:493; you have made my house a den of thieves v10:522; a thief comes only to steal and destroy v39:553; Judas a thief v6:555; no thief will inherit the kingdom of God v21:609; do not steal v44:519, v20:633; steal no more but work with your own hands v15:642; slaves to be subject to their masters and not steal from them v22:649; survivors of last days will not repent of their thefts v35:690

Thessalonians Paul and Silas visit Thessalonica v38:584; Thessalonian Jews oppose Paul v12:585; Paul's first letter to, 1 Thess:601; Thessalonian church a model for all the churches v5:602; Paul's second letter to, 2 Thess v1:604; faith and love for one another keep growing v2:604

Thomas called as an apostle by Jesus v3, 491; willing to die with Jesus v8:554; doubts that the risen Jesus has appeared to the other apostles v23:564; sees and touches risen Jesus a week later v24:564

throne of God prophet Micaiah sees Jehovah sitting on a throne with hosts of heaven standing around v21:232; Isaiah sees Jehovah in the Temple, seated on a throne, high and exalted v18:275; Ezekiel sees sapphire blue throne of God, upon a crystal expanse v16:356; God seen as a heavenly glowing man seated upon a throne, enveloped in fire v18:356; the Son of Man to sit on a glorious throne in new world v53:519, v22:528; apostles to also sit on twelve thrones, judging twelve tribes of Israel v53:519, v10:530, v1:698; Jesus has taken his seat at the right hand of the throne of God v32:671; John sees God seated on a throne v2:685; radiating around the throne was a rainbow, tinged in emerald v2:685; John sees twenty-four thrones surrounding main throne v3:685; faithful have the right to sit with me on my throne v5:685; I sat down with my Father on his throne v5:685; before the throne burned seven Spirits of God v4:686; the floor around the throne had appearance of a sea of glass v5:686; four cherubim around throne v6:10:686; river of Life, bright as crystal, flowing from the throne of God v28:700; Jerusalem to be renamed Throne of Jehovah in millennium v9:323

time the lights in the heavens to mark seasons, days and years v8:14; the sun stopped in the middle of the sky and delayed going down about a full day v30:127; either his time will come naturally or he will die in battle v6:175, v2:219; in the spring, at the time when kings go out to war v1:189; a time and a season for every purpose v1-15:217; God has made everything beautiful, in its time v16:217; God has placed eternity in the heart of man v17:217; no man knows what time will bring v20:220; Lord makes the shadow cast by the sun return ten degrees on the sundial v15:301; the time has come for the Lord to act v25:365; neither will get what he wants, for the appointed time is not yet v40:395; end of the age to come at appointed time v47:395; who knows but you have come to your royal position for such a time as this v10:414; a thousand years in God's sight is but one day, Psalm 1 v2:444, v5:663; the demon shouted, have you come to torment me before the appointed time? v27:496; my appointed time is near v2:529; my time has not yet come v5:549, v24:550; Peter and John go up to the Temple at the ninth hour, the time of prayer v1:570; in a short time you think to make me a Christian? v36:593; God's secret knowledge hidden before time began v23:608; the time for my departure has come v21:656

Timothy a believer at Lystra with a Jewish mother and Greek father v1:583; circumcised, becomes missionary companion of Paul v3:583; sent to strengthen and encourage Thessalonians v20:602; brings good news to Paul about Thessalonians v22:602; has proved himself to Paul, serves him like a son v2:646; Paul writes to Timothy, 1Tim:650; let no one despise you because of your youth v21:652; set believers an example v21:652; use a little wine for sake of your stomach and frequent ailments v18:653; fan into flame the gift of God bestowed upon you through the laying on of my hands v6:654; Paul writes to

Timothy a second time, 2Tim:654; our brother Timothy has been set free v21:672

tithes Abram gives tenth of plunder to Melchizedek v21:21, v33:669; Jacob vows to repay God a tenth of all he gives him v13:31; do not hold back from Jehovah the tithes of your crops v33:65; a tithe of livestock, grain and fruit belong to Lord v33:87; tithes to be given to Levites and the needy for food v19:99, v8:115, v8-9:115; Levites to give a tenth of tithes they receive from the people, to the priests v20:99; people of Judah begin to tithe again v14:286; priests and Levites have enough to eat and to spare due to tithes of the people v17:286; withholding of tithes is robbing God, the whole nation under a curse v10:431; prove me (pay a full tithe) and see if I will not pour you out a blessing so great there will not be room enough to receive it v13:431; all nations shall call you blessed (if you pay a full tithe) for you will be a delightful land v15:431; I fast twice a week and give a tithe of all I get v17:518; you give God a tithe, but you neglect justice and the love of God v31:525

Titus accompanies Paul to Jerusalem v13:624; not compelled to be circumcised, though a Greek v18:624; Paul writes to, Titus:648; instructed to appoint bishops in every town v3:648

tomb Abraham buys a field and cave as a burial site for his wife v14-21:27; Israel sets up a pillar over Rachel's tomb then continues journey v25:37; anyone who touches a tomb is unclean for seven days v20:82, v20:84; no one to this day has found the tomb of Moses v30:119; David weeps aloud at Abner's tomb and sings a lament v21:184; let me return to die in my own town, near the tomb of my father and mother v20:197; Elisha's bones bring a man back to life v21:245; an evil people who frequent tombs v14:287; who gave you permission to chisel out a fine tomb for yourself in the rock? v1:300; the Messiah's tomb to be with the rich v16:307; Josiah burned bones from the tombs on the hillside to defile the altar v12:311; put the tombs of your dead kings far away from the vicinity of my Temple v8:373; a naked possessed man came running to Jesus from the tombs v24:496; you build tombs for the prophets and it was your own fathers who killed them v20:513; you are like whitewashed tombs, outwardly beautiful but inside full of corruption v33:525; when Jesus arrived, Lazarus had been in the tomb four days v9:554; Joseph lays the body of Jesus in the tomb and rolls a large stone against entrance v31:536, v28:563; tomb of Jesus secured by placing a seal on the stone and posting Roman guards v4:536; sudden violent shaking of the earth as angel rolled back stone v7-8:536; guards at tomb of Jesus are terrified, tremble and faint v9:536; women enter tomb and see two angels dressed in white robes v16:536, v1:563; Peter and John run out to tomb of Jesus v21:537, v3:563; Mary Magdalene returns to the tomb, sees Jesus v22:537, v8-15:564

at resurrection of Jesus, tombs broke open and bodies of holy saints arose to life and came out v22:535

tongue (see also tongues, gift of, language, lying, false witness) O Lord I have never been eloquent, I am slow to find speech v29:51; let the book of the Law govern your speech v3:121; I am doomed, for I am a man of unclean lips v21:275; this people draw near to me with their lips, but their hearts are far from me v2:297, v10:368, v11:505; no falsehood was found on Levi's lips v18:430; the lips of a priest ought to speak knowledge and wisdom v19:430; in all his suffering Job did not sin with his lips v24:434; I have resolved that my lips will not sin, Psalm 6 v1:445; cut off all flattering lips and boastful tongues O Lord, Psalm 13 v2:446; the tongue of a wicked man utters curses, lies and threats, Psalm 12 v4:446; your lips have been anointed with grace, Psalm 6 v1:455; rash words escaped Moses' lips, Psalm 83 v23:460; the speech of an adulteress is smoother than oil v19:465; you will not find wisdom on the lips of a foolish man v2:468; a soft answer turns away wrath v1:470; a gentle tongue can break a bone v2:470; even a fool is thought wise if he remains silent v4:470; the mouth of the righteous is a fountain of life v5:470; he who guards his tongue keeps himself from trouble v6:470; he who holds his tongue is wise v7:470; he who guards his lips guards his life v8:470; the tongue has power over life and death v9:470; lips that speak wisdom are a rare jewel v10:470; a word aptly spoken is like apples of gold in a setting of silver v11:470; drive out the mocker and out goes strife v13:470; there is more hope for a fool than a man who speaks in haste

v22:470; a foolish man blurts out his foolishness v24:470; by the mouths of the wicked a city is destroyed v26:470; the Lord frustrates the words of a sinner v27:470; harsh words stir up anger v30:470; harsh words pierce like a sword v31:470; avoid the man who talks too much v35:470; when words are many, sin is not absent v36:470; though the speech of a malicious man charms, evil fills his heart v38:470, v41:470; the Lord detests lies v42:470; the Lord delights in a man who speaks truth v43:470; proverbs on the tongue ch9:470; a righteous man weighs carefully his answers v48:471; the lips of the wise spread knowledge v49:471; the lips of the righteous know fitting words to speak v53:471; a man of knowledge uses words with restraint v57:471; the tongue of a wise man brings healing v58:471; from the fruit of his lips a man receives good things v59:471; he who has gracious speech and a pure heart will have the king as his friend v60:471; a perverse tongue crushes the spirit v66:471; let another praise you not your own lips v67:471; a kind word cheers the soul v9:472; a gentle tongue is a tree of life v15:474; all wondered at the gracious words that fell from his lips v12:488; out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks v20:495; a deaf man with a speech impediment healed v34:506; a demon has robbed my son of speech v40:509; be quick to listen, slow to speak v14:598; religion is worthless if the tongue not controlled v19:599; he who is faultless in speech is a perfect man v20:599; though a small part of the body, the tongue has a powerful effect v22:599; can fresh and bad water flow from same spring v28:599; speak not ill of one another v9:600; let your yes be yes, and your no be no v21:600; let your conversation be graceful and interesting v19:637; entirely rid yourselves of filthy talk v26:637; edify and build others up by your talk v16:642; there should be no suggestive talk and obscene joking v21:643; do not speak evil of anyone v27:649

tongues gift of they shall speak in new tongues v55:538; Jews from other nations hear apostles speaking in their own languages v5:570; Cornelius and other Gentiles speak in tongues v26:578; Ephesian believers speak in tongues v13:587; tongues a gift of the Spirit v5:613; gift of tongues to be no longer necessary in kingdom of God v19:614; he who speaks in a tongue utters mysteries in the Spirit v25:614; he who speaks in a tongue edifies only himself, not the church v27:614; to prophesy is greater than to speak in tongues v29:614; pray to interpret when you speak in a tongue v32:614; if I pray in a tongue, my spirit prays v33:614; I will sing with my spirit v34:614; I thank God I speak in tongues more than you all v37:614; in church I would rather speak five understandable words than ten thousand words in a tongue v37:614; tongues a sign for unbelievers v38:614; rules governing tongues in church meetings v43:615; if no interpreter of tongues present, remain silent in church v45:615; do not forbid speaking in tongues, but do so in an orderly way v49:615

transfiguration Jesus is transfigured before Peter, James, and John v24:508; Peter an eyewitness of transfiguration of Jesus v13:662

Tree of Knowledge in Garden of Eden v4:15; Adam and Eve forbidden to eat from v8:15; Eve eats forbidden fruit and gives some to her husband v4:15; Adam not the one deceived v21:651

Tree of Life growing in centre of garden of Eden v4:15; after fall, Adam prevented from eating from and living forever v22:16; cherubim and a flaming sword guard way to v24:16; whoever overcomes will eat from the Tree of Life in the Paradise of God v8:683; John sees Tree of Life growing in New Jerusalem v29:700; they who keep the commandments may partake of v10:701

trouble See worry, sorrow, tears

trumpet trumpets to be sounded throughout the land on Day of Atonement v15:85; Moses commanded to make two silver trumpets for priests to summon the people v19:93; meaning of trumpet signals v20-21:93; sound trumpets at times of rejoicing, appointed feasts and over offerings v23:93; priests sound trumpets as Israelites march around Jericho v9:123; Gideon's men sound trumpets v22:138; Ark brought up with shouts, rejoicing, dancing and the sound of trumpets v34:186, v16:263; Ark placed in Sanctuary while 120 priests sound trumpets v9:207; if the trumpet sounds an unclear call who will prepare himself for battle? v31:614; voice of angel sounds like

a trumpet v11:683, v1:685

trumpet heavenly trumpet blasts of heard from Mount Sinai v13:63; sound of trumpet grew louder and louder v15:63; plaques of seven trumpets in last days ch6:688; first trumpet, fire falls upon earth, third of vegetation burned v6:688; second trumpet, blazing mountain falls into sea, third of fish and ships destroyed v9:688; third trumpet, blazing star falls on third of rivers, poisoning water v11:689; fourth trumpet, light on earth darkened by a third v13:689; fifth trumpet, locust-like creatures sting men like scorpions for five months v15:689; sixth trumpet, third of mankind killed by mounted army of 200,000,000 v27:689; seventh trumpet, the world to become kingdom of our God and his Christ v1:690; God shall sound trumpet at second coming v10:407; angels to gather elect with loud trumpet call in last days v36:527; all people of the earth to hear v2:291, v9:292; first resurrection of dead in last days signalled by v13-14:603, v29:616

Trumpets feast of to be held first day of seventh month v3:85; returned exiles gather as one for v1:426

truth I turned my mind to knowledge, to search out the truth of things v5:219; you despise him who tells the truth v17:255; if you can find one person who seeks the truth I shall forgive this city v1:324; I will tell you what is written in the Book of Truth v17:393; the rest of the truth is sealed up until the latter days v14:396, v18:396; love peace and truth v12:406; O Jehovah, guide me in your truth, Psalm 24 v3:448; the Lord delights in a man whose lips speak truth v43:470; truth proved by her fruits in time v13:499; truth hidden from the self-wise and learned, but revealed to the humble v17:499; the Only Begotten of the Father, who is full of truth v6:542; truth came through Jesus Christ v7:542, v12:562; whoever lives by truth will come into the light v15:544; John (the Baptist) has testified to the truth v23:547; the truth will make you free v11:551; I am the way, the truth, and the Life v31:558; he shall give you another Comforter, even the Spirit of truth v40:558, v32:559; the Spirit of truth will teach you all truth v41:559; Pilate replied, what is truth? v13:562; men will distort truth in order to draw away followers v19:589; love rejoices in truth v17:614; have I become your enemy by telling you the truth? v24:625; faith and love springs from the word of truth v4:636; always speak truthfully to each other v13:642; ever being instructed, but never able to discern truth v10:655; they will turn away from the truth and wander into myths v19:656; by obedience to truth you have purified yourselves v19:658; you need someone to instruct you in the first truths of God's word all over again v21:668; we know we belong to truth when our conscience is at rest v15:675; I have no greater joy than to hear my children are walking in truth v4:678; Jerusalem shall be called the City of Truth (during millennium) v6:406

tumour see cancer

turban to be made for high priest, description of v18-19:71; angel directs that a clean turban be put on Joshua's head v29:404; priests to wear linen turbans when they enter inner courtyard (of millennial Temple) v31:374

Tyre Hiram king of Tyre sends cedar logs, carpenters and stonemasons to build a palace for David v7:185, v42:200; Hiram supplies Solomon with all the cedar, pine and gold he wanted v16:209; Hiram sends sailors to help man Solomon's fleet v20:209; Tyre to be punished for her sins v5:254; Tyre soon to be a harbour no more v9:305; Tyre will no longer be the food market of the nations v10:305; pride of Tyre to be humbled by Jehovah v12:305; Tyre to revive after seventy years v15:305; Tyre to be destroyed for rejoicing over fate of Jerusalem v2:366; Tyre will be besieged by Babylon v3:366; Tyre to be put to sword and city demolished v6:366; inhabitants to dwell in world of Sheol below and not return to land of living v9:366; Tyre to become a bare rock v10:366; the pride and wealth of king of Tyre v12:366; lament to the fall of the king v16-36:367; Tyre likened to a beautiful ship, about to be shipwrecked v24-34:367; siege of Tyre exhausting for Nebuchadnezzar's armies v2:377; people of Tyre supply cedar logs for rebuilding Temple v20:398; Tyre has skillfully heaped up silver and gold, city to be burnt by fire v2:406; merchants of Tyre try to sell fish to people of Judah on Sabbath day v11:428; if miracles of Jesus had been done in Tyre they would have repented long ago v15:499; more bearable for Tyre on day of judgement than cities of Israel v15:499; Jesus withdraws to the

CONCORDENCE

region of Tyre v24:506; Pauls stays a week at Tyre while ship unloads cargo v2:589; riches of Tyre to go to Jerusalem (during millennium) v16:305

uncleaness one pair each of every unclean animal to be saved in ark v2:18; do not lie with a woman during uncleaness of her menstruation v28:66; sin offering required if a person has touched something unclean v25:79; meat that has touched an unclean thing not to be eaten v34:79; you must distinguish between the clean and unclean v12:80, v2:81, v41:374; clean and unclean creatures defined v1-10:81; things that can be contaminated by unclean creatures v14-17:82; uncleaness from touching a dead person v18:82; from touching a bone or tomb v20:82; after childbirth v21-27:82; from male discharge v28:82; from an emission of semen v34:82, v17:112; menstrual uncleaness v37:82; penalty for uncleaness v23:84; unclean persons can celebrate Passover the following month v6:92; I am a man of unclean lips and live among a people of unclean lips v21:275; those who were unclean ate the Passover v6:286; portrayed on the wall were all kinds of crawling things and unclean animals v1:359; a defiled person defiles all they touch v29:400; what comes out of the mouth defiles, not what goes in v13:505, v22:506; to avoid uncleaness the Jews did not enter the palace, for they wanted to eat the Passover v2:561; Peter commanded by God to eat unclean creatures v9:577; do not call unclean what God has made clean v11:577; God has shown me I should not call any man unclean v22:578; otherwise your children would be unclean, but they are holy v8:610; I am convinced that no food is unclean in itself v7:633; whoever regards a food as unclean, then for him it is unclean v7:633; the self-defiled shall inherit the Second Death v8:699; those who eat the flesh of pigs, rats and other abominable things will meet end when Lord returns v8:295; nothing unclean to enter New Jerusalem v27:700

unity See oneness

unclean spirits See demons

ungodly See godless

unleavened Bread feast of to be celebrated during Passover v2:58, v44:65

Uriah husband of Bathsheba with whom David committed adultery v2:189; refuses to go home to his wife v8:189; David arranges to be killed in battle v13-14:189; David cursed by Lord for murder of Uriah v13-14:190

Uriah the prophet put to death by king Jehoiakim v19:327

Urim and Thummim a means of receiving revelation, carried in pocket of high priest's breastplate v14:71; the high priest will obtain revelations for him by inquiring of the Urim v7:119; to Levi the tribe you favoured belongs the Urim and Thummim v16:119; no answer came to him, neither by dream nor by the Urim and Thummim v13:176; no high priest ministering with the Urim and Thummim among returned exiles v13:398

usury See interest

Uzziah son of Amaziah, made king of Judah v1:275; does right in eyes of Lord v2:275; becomes very powerful, has army of 307,500 men, builds fortifications and weapons v3-7:275; loved the soil v5:275; pride leads to downfall, cursed with leprosy for unlawfully entering Temple v8-12:275; dies a leper, son Jotham becomes king v13:275

vanity (in vain, futile) you shall not take the name of the Lord your God in vain v21:64; vanity, vanity, all is vanity v2:217; everything was vanity, a futile chasing after the wind v22:217; pleasures and worldly possessions all vanity v12-23:217; many words are vanity, rather revere God v10:218; in vain I punished you, but you did not repent v18:323; we watched in vain for a nation that could not save us v21:379; unless the Lord protects the city, the watchmen watch in vain, Psalm 12 v22:472; if there is no resurrection our preaching is in vain v8:615; no longer live in futility, as do the Gentiles v10:642; controversies, genealogies and arguments are futile v30:649

Vashti beautiful queen and wife of Xerxes king of Persia, disobeys king v9-10:412; Vashti never again to enter king's presence v14:412

veil Rebekah took her veil and covered herself v37:28; Judah

UNCLEANESS

thought she was a harlot, for she had covered her face v12:39; Moses veils his shining face v16:75; your eyes behind your veil are like doves v5:214; I am against your magic amulets and veils and will tear them off you v28:361; a woman dishonours her head if she sprays or prophesies with her head unveiled v2:612, v7:613

veil of Tabernacle a veil to screen Most Holy Place in Tabernacle v18:69; Ark placed behind the veil v23:76; high priest not to go behind veil unless commanded v16:80; the veil of the Temple Sanctuary v28:206; veil of Temple splits at death of Jesus v21:535; the narrow windows in outer walls (of millennium Temple) were veiled v7:373

vineyards Noah a man of the soil, plants a vineyard v1:19; do not go over your vineyard a second time, leave some for the poor v19:17, v40:65; you may eat from your neighbour's vineyard, but do not put any in a basket v25:114; worms to eat grapes if commandments not kept v38:116, v48:116; we will rise early and stroll among the vineyards v18:215; Jezebel murders Naboth to obtain his vineyard v8:231; I struck your vineyards with blight and mildew v2:255; King Uzziah worked his vineyards, for he loved the soil v5:275; Lord likens Israel to a vineyard v14-15:283; Babylonians left behind the poorest people of the land and gave them vineyards v14:348; parable of paying workers in the vineyard v56-57:520; parable of unrighteous vineyard tenants v28-37:523

violence the earth was filled with violence v15:17; Simeon and Levi brothers of violence v19:45; the men of Nineveh give up their evil ways and violence v7:248; Egypt and Edom to be ruined because of violence toward people of Judah v20:273; Jerusalem's rich men are violent v4:276; destruction and violence is all about me v2:316; this city to be punished, for it is filled with violence v20:325, v11:361; Edom to be shamed because of violence against their brother Israel v4:351; must they fill the land with violence and continually provoke me to anger? v19:359; suppose he has a violent son who sheds blood v21:364; violent men from among your own people will also join them v28:394; Job's hands have been free of violence v4:436; hide me from the violent men who have surrounded me, Psalm 6 v3:445; arise O Lord, bring to an end the violence of the wicked, Psalm 10 v3:446; the Lord detests a violent man v61:469; demon possessed man so violent no one could pass that way v25:496; the spirit shrieked and convulsed the boy violently and came out v49:509; demon possessed man overpowered them violently, they fled naked and bleeding v22:587; violence of crowd so great Paul had to be carried by soldiers v30:590, v10:591; a bishop not to be violent, but gentle v5:648, v2:651; Paul once a violent man v10:651; no longer will violence be in your land (during millennium) v27:294

virgin Lot offers his virgin daughters to sexual deviant mob, but angels protect v7-10:24; penalty for fornication with a virgin v39:66; a high priest must marry a Levite virgin v4:84; 48,000 Midianite virgins spared from death v4:106; laws regarding proof of virginity of a bride v8-11:113; 400 virgin girls of Jabesh spared sword v8:149; Tamar tore the robe that virgin daughters of the king wear v15:191; Abishag a beautiful virgin attends David in his old age v3:201; priests to marry only Israelite virgins, or widows of priests v35:374; King Xerxes searches his realm for beautiful virgins v1:412; Esther a beautiful Jewish virgin selected v6:413; angel Gabriel sent to Mary, a virgin in Nazareth v14:483; parable of wise and foolish virgins v1-10:527; if a man's passion is strong toward a virgin he is betrothed to, better to marry than to burn with lust v22:611; Paul desires to present Corinthian church to Christ as a pure virgin v17:620

visions word of the Lord comes to Abram in a vision v1:21; God appears to Israel (Jacob) in a vision at night v3:43; seventy elders of Israel see the God of Israel on a pavement of blue sapphire v9:68; Balaam and his donkey see an angel with drawn sword v17-23:102; prophecy of Balaam, who hears the word of God and sees visions v4:103; not many visions in days of Eli v8:158; Samuel sees Lord standing before him v13-17:158; Elisha sees in vision the harm Hazael will do to Israel v7:242; vision of Amos the prophet v9-14:256; Isaiah sees Jehovah in the Temple, seated on a throne, high and exalted v18:275; night is coming, when you will be without visions and revelation v11:276; this vision is to you like the words of a sealed book v1:297; Isaiah told to inscribe his vision in a book for days to come v10:298; false prophets prophecy false

visions v9:330, v17:361, v18:340; Jeremiah sees vision of fall of Jerusalem v24:347; Ezekiel sees visions of God ch1:355; I sat among them seven days, overwhelmed by my vision v33:357; Ezekiel sees visions of future millennial city and Temple ch14-17:371; Daniel given insight into visions and dreams v12:383; dream of Nebuchadnezzar revealed to Daniel in vision v13:384; Daniel sees vision of four great beasts v1-6:387; Daniel sees vision of ram and goat v1-8:389; this vision refers to many years from now v21:390; Daniel exhausted and appalled by the vision v22:390; a glorious being appears to Daniel v2:3393; Zechariah sees vision of four horsemen sent to patrol earth v4-8:403; Zechariah sees vision of four horns, (four kings) v13:403; other visions of Zechariah, four workmen with hammers v14:403; young man with measuring line v16:404; Joshua the high priest and Satan v25:404; golden lampstand (eyes of Lord), and two olive branches (Zerubbabel and Joshua) v34-37:404; flying scroll (a curse to those who steal and swear falsely) v43:405; guilty woman in a measuring container v47:405; four horses and chariots (four spirits of heaven) v51:405; Zechariah sees coming of Jehovah in last days v15:409; father of John the Baptist makes signs that he has seen a vision v12:483; Peter, James and John see Moses and Elijah v25:508; Stephen sees vision of God, with Jesus standing at his right hand v48:574; Lord speaks to Ananias in a vision v9:576; Cornelius sees an angel in shining clothes v3:577; Peter shown vision of unclean animals v7-9:577; Paul has a vision to go to Macedonia v8:583; Lord came to Paul in vision at night v9:586; Paul caught up to third heaven, to Paradise v45:621; John taken up into heaven, sees visions of events to come ch3-17:685; your young men will see visions (in latter days and during millennium) v4:273, v8:570

vow (See also oath, covenant) Jacob vows to God to pay a tithe if he is protected v12:13-31; an inferior animal not acceptable in fulfillment of vow v31:79, v14:430; a vow to Jehovah must not be broken v1:86, v24:114; laws regarding vows v1-25:86; the Nazirite vow v19-25:87; Israelites make a vow to Lord, in order to defeat Canaanites v2:100; immoral earnings not to be used to pay a vow v24:112; do not be slow to pay a vow v23:114; Jephthah vows to Lord first person to come out of his house v23-25:142; Hannah makes a vow to Lord that if given a son she will give him back as a Nazirite v7:156; fulfill vows without delay v12:218; Job made a vow never to look lustfully at a woman v42:438; a trap for a man to make a rash vow to the Lord v45:471; I vow to give half my possessions to the poor v5:520; Paul shaves his hair off because of a vow v16:586

walls cleansing procedure for mould on house walls v5:83; walls of Jericho collapse at a mighty shout of Israel v15:124; cursed be the man who rebuilds walls of Jericho v20:124; body of Saul and his sons are hung on the city wall v9:178; walls of Temple panelled in cedar, carved and overlaid with gold v23:206; walls of Aphek collapse on Syrians v25:230; king of Moab sacrifices his son on the city wall v23:237; Hezekiah builds another wall, outside the city wall of Jerusalem v2:298; Ezekiel in the spirit walks through a Temple room wall v9:359; while they are watching, dig through the wall of your house v2:360; city wall broken through and Babylonian army begin putting survivors of Jerusalem to sword v2:347; Zedekiah and city guards flee Jerusalem through gate between two city walls v3:347; Babylonians break down walls of Jerusalem v12:347; fingers appear and begin writing on plaster of banquet room wall v4:390; opposition by Samaritans to rebuilding walls of Jerusalem v5:419; Nehemiah inspects walls of Jerusalem by night v19:423; returned exiles rebuild walls of Jerusalem v26:424; wall completed after 52 days v17:426; Saul lowered in a basket through opening in city wall v21:576; Israel to be a land of unwallled cities in last days v8:370; every wall shall fall to the ground (at second coming) v11:370; angel measures walls of millennial Temple v5:371; Jerusalem will outgrow its walls v18:404; New Jerusalem to have walls of precious jewels v22:297; the great wall 144 cubits high of New Jerusalem described v12-15:699; wall made of golden crystal, foundations decorated with precious stone v16:699

war (See also fighting) the Israelites are becoming too numerous, in time of war they may join our enemies v2:49; take a census of all men twenty years and older able to go to war v9:92, v1:104; arm a thousand men from each tribe to war against Midianites v2:105; you expect your countrymen to go to

war while you sit here? v10:106; do not fear an army greater than your own, Jehovah is with you v8:112, v6:298; words the high priest is to speak to an army prior to battle v9:112; those who are exempt from battle v10:112; faint hearted men not to go to war v11:112; peace terms to be offered before attacking a non-Canaanite city v12:112; all men to be put to sword when Canaanite city captured v13:112; hygiene rules in a military camp v16-19:112; a recently married man not to be sent to war v13:113; if commandments obeyed, Israel will defeat all who rise against her v23:116; we want a king to go out before us to fight our battles v10:161; in the spring, the time when kings go out to war v1:189; because of wars, my father David could not build a Temple for Jehovah v2:204; there is a time for war and a time for peace v15:217; wisdom better than weapons of war v5:220; Jews to suffer war until end of age v14:392; king of south shall wage war with a powerful army v39:395; many advisers needed for victory when waging war v2:472; do not fear when you hear of wars and the sound of war v24:526; nation to war against nation v24:526; my body waged war against my spirit v20:630, v23:658; war arose in heaven, Michael and his angels fought against the dragon v14:691; dragon enraged at woman, waged war against her offspring v24:692; in last days Gog to invade Israel whose people have gathered from many nations v6:370; the horn waged war against the saints v13:388; Beast to wage war against the Lamb, but Lamb shall overcome v16:696, v22:698; Lord to abolish war when he returns v24:250, v2:293, v7:407; war to cease on earth (during millennium), Psalm 68 v5:456; nations shall beat their swords into plough blades (during millennium) v1:293

watchmen the watchmen found me as they made their rounds in the city v8:214; the watchmen relayed the news and it was reported to the palace v39:242; the prophet is my watchman over Israel v17:251; Israel's watchmen are blind and lack knowledge v10:308; I have made you a watchman for Israel, so speak my words of warning to them v1:357; my soul awaits the Lord more than watchmen await the dawn, Psalm 91 v2:462; unless the Lord protects the city the watchmen watch in vain v22:472; your watchmen shall shout for joy when Jehovah returns to Jerusalem v14:297

water (See also Living Water, Water of Life) the Spirit of God watched over the waters v2:14; let there be an expanse in the midst of the waters v4:14; the ark floated on the surface of the waters, high above the earth v8:18; never again shall a flood destroy the earth v26:19, v2:297; Lot chooses the Jordan river valley which was well watered v5:21; God opened Hagar's eyes and she saw a well of water v26:26; Rebekah said drink, and I will water your camels also v8:27; Jacob rolls away stone from the well and waters Rachel's sheep v18:31; Moses defends Jethro's daughters and waters the flock for them v26:50; all the water of Egypt was changed to blood v10:53; the Lord drives the Red Sea back with a strong wind, the waters a wall to them on left and right v25:59; bitter water at Marah purified by a tree v2:60; Israelites complain for water at Horeb by v2:61; water flows out of a rock v6:61; Moses grinds the gold calf to powder and scatters it on the water of the stream that ran down mountain v16:74; my blessing will be upon your food and water to take away sickness v10:75; immerse it in water and it will be clean by evening v14:82; Israelites complain for water in Desert of Zin v2:99; water gushes from rock at Moses' command, called Waters of Meribah v7:100; Israelites again complain about lack of water v5:101; Jordan stops flowing, water piles up in a heap a great distance away v7:123; Lord reduces Gideon's army by method of men drinking water v10:137; Samson cries to Lord for water and a new spring flows v32:144; three of David's men broke through Philistine lines, drew water from the well and carried it back to him v12:200; water flows to sea, yet returns again to the streams v7:217; I made gardens and parks and created ponds to water them v16:217; cast your bread upon the waters, after many days you will find it again v23:220; fire blazes down from heaven, and even burns up water in the trench v29:228; both Elijah and then Elisha strike river Jordan with mantle and the water divides v28:234, v37:234; Elisha heals bad water of Jericho v3:236; three armies run out of water in desert v7:236; water flows into the wadi as prophesied by Elisha v16:237; to Moabites at distance the water looked red, like blood v18:237; iron axe head floats to the surface of the water v32:240; Jonah

in distress in the water calls upon the Lord, who provides a huge fish to swallow him v18:247; Samaria will float away, like a twig on the waters v4:251; Hezekiah made a pool in Jerusalem and a tunnel to bring water v3:308; he who trusts in the Lord is like a tree planted beside water v2:331; Egypt's water will no longer be muddied by hooves of cattle v10:368; like the mighty floodwaters of the Euphrates he will sweep on into Judah, swirling over her v33:282; give us nothing but sown food to eat and water to drink, then compare our appearance v9:383; can needs grow tall where there is no water? v5:435; by still waters he leads me, Psalm 15 v1:447; John baptised at Aenon, for there was much water there v16:544; Jesus turns water into wine v7:543; whoever gives you a cup of cold water to drink shall not fail to be rewarded v19:498, v30:511; apostles see Jesus walking on the water v30:505, v12:548; Peter begins to walk upon the water toward Jesus v33:505; the demon has often thrown him into water to destroy him v45:509; an angel would stir the water and first into the pool would be cured v3:546; Jesus pours water into a basin and washes feet of his twelve disciples v4:557; Pilate takes a bowl of water and washes his hands of innocent blood v36:534; a soldier pierces the side of Jesus with a spear, blood and water flows v19:563; Peter recognises Jesus and leaps into the water v9:565; look, here is water, what is to prevent me from being baptised? v31:576; can fresh and bad water flow from the same spring? v28:599; no longer drink only water, but use a little wine for the sake of your stomach v18:653; the earth was formed out of water, and water deluged and destroyed the world v3:663; the Great Harlot who sits on many waters v2:695; the many waters represent many peoples and nations v17:696; a third of the waters of earth to be poisoned in last days v12:689; these two prophets have power to turn waters into blood in last days v15:690; earth opened its mouth and swallowed the flood the Dragon poured from his mouth v23:691; rivers and springs of water to become blood before second coming v13:694; waters of the Nile to dry up in last days v8:291; waters of river Euphrates to be dried up in last days v20:695; Judah to be a land of flowing water (during millennium) v18:273; water to flow out from under new Temple (during millennium) v19:273, v1:375; fresh water to flow from Jerusalem to Dead Sea (during millennium) v21:409; water in Dead Sea to become fresh (during millennium) v5:376; all the stream beds of Judah will flow with water (during millennium) v18:273, v6:294, v3:296; Jerusalem to be a place of broad rivers and streams (during millennium) v13-14:295; Israel shall be like a well-watered garden (during millennium) v13:343

water of cleansing prepared from ashes of a heifer v11-17:84; used to cleanse a person who has become unclean v20-22:84; used in test for suspected adultery v26-32:86; Levites purified with v6:93; Midianite spoil purified with v11:105

Water of Life (See also Living Water) drink without cost from the fountain of the Water of Life v6:699, v15:701; John sees river of Water of Life in New Jerusalem v28:700

wealth (See also money) parable of rich man and the poor man's lamb v4:190; I will give you what you did not ask for, riches and honour all your life v9:203; Solomon greater in riches than any other king on earth v33:210; a sinner gathers to hand over to a man who pleases God v31:217, v29:466; whoever loves money never has enough v15:218; the abundance of a rich man allows him no restful sleep v16:218; naked a man came from his mother's womb and naked he will depart v17:218, v23:653; enjoyment of wealth a gift of God v21:219; hoarded wealth often lost v22:219; money answers every need v21:220; sheep will graze among the ruined mansions of the rich v29:284; Hezekiah the king grew proud, for he had great riches v21:301; let not the rich man boast of his riches, rather that he acts in kindness, justice and righteousness v39:327; riches do not endure for all generations v9:466; one man pretends to be rich and has nothing, another pretends to be poor yet has great wealth v23:466; a man eager to get rich will not go unpunished v25:466; unjustly obtained wealth will be lost in mid-life v3:331, v26:466; Job did not trust in his wealth v51:439; men heap up wealth, not knowing who will inherit it, Psalm 27 v3:449; better the little that the righteous have, than the wealth of the wicked, Psalm 58 v5:454; man carries nothing with him when he dies, Psalm 62 v8:455; proverbs on wealth ch4:466; the planning of the diligent leads to wealth v4:466; money quickly obtained dwindles away

v7:466; a generous man will prosper v8:466; when the Lord blesses a man with wealth he adds no sorrow with it v11:466; the crown of the wise is their wealth v12:466; the rich rule over the poor v16:466; honour the Lord with your wealth then your barns will be filled v18:466; a good name is more desirable than silver or gold v19:466; wealth will be worthless in day of Lord's wrath v20:466; whoever trusts in riches will fall v21:466; riches sprout wings and fly off like a bird v22:466; wealth brings a man many friends, but when he is poor they desert him v24:466; a fortune made by lying tongue is a fleeting bubble v27:466; better a little with reverence of the Lord, than great wealth with sorrow v33:466; a man's riches may ransom his life v35:466; one man gives freely and gains more, another withholds and becomes poorer v37:466; he who loves wine and rich food will never be wealthy v41:466; humility and reverence of the Lord bring wealth v10:471; ruthless men gain only wealth v5:473; hard work brings profit, talk brings only poverty v6:473; give me neither poverty nor riches v4:474; Jesus tempted by the devil with worldly power and wealth v27:488; do not store up treasures on earth, but in heaven v25:493; where your treasure is, there will your heart be also v26:493, v11:514; you cannot serve two masters, God and wealth v27:493, v23:514; what does it profit a man to gain the whole world, yet lose his own soul v20:508; parable of the foolish rich man v5-8:514; parable of the dishonest steward v12--22:514; worldly people more shrewd than those of the kingdom v19:514; if you are untrustworthy handling worldly wealth, who will trust you with true riches? v22:514; parable of Lazarus and the rich man v26-36:514; easier for a camel to pass through the eye of a needle than a rich man to enter kingdom of God v49:519; the rich man will wither away like a wild flower in scorching heat v10:598; do not show favouritism to the rich v2:599; is it not the rich who drag you into court and slander the noble name of him to whom you belong? v4:599; wealth gained unjustly will devour your flesh like fire v15:600; you will be made rich in every way, so you can be generous v23:620; men who desire to get rich fall into temptation and wander from the faith v25:653; the love of money is the root of all evil v26:653; command the rich not to trust in wealth, but to trust in God v28:653; keep your lives free from the love of money v12:672; you say I am rich, but you are poor, blind and naked v51:685; the Beast caused all, both rich and poor to have a mark in the right hand v7:693; all your riches and splendour have vanished, never to be recovered v15:696

weeping See tears, sorrow

whirlwind Elijah carried upward in a whirlwind v33:234; they sow the wind and reap the whirlwind v10:251; Jehovah appears to Job and his friends in the midst of a whirlwind v1:440

White Stone whoever overcomes, I will give a White Stone with new name written on v21:684

wickedness (See also sin) the men of Sodom were wicked and sinning greatly against the Lord v6:21; Lot, a righteous man, was distressed by the filthy lives of wicked men v21:662; wickedness of the Canaanites has not yet reached full measure v13:22; Er was wicked so the Lord took his life v2:38; how can I do such a wicked thing and sin against God? v5:39; harlotry fills the land with wickedness v40:66; the Lord forgives wickedness, but punishes the unrepentant to third generation v10:75; because of the wickedness of these nations he is going to destroy them v4:110; Eli's two sons were wicked priests v22:157; I have seen both a righteous man perishing and a wicked man living long v1:219, v10:219; I saw the stupidity of wickedness v5:219; a wicked woman is a snare, her hands are chains v6:219; a man of God will avoid a wicked woman v6:219; the wickedness of the great city Nineveh has come up before me v5:247; Jehoshaphat allies himself with the wicked Ahab by marriage v9:264; should you make alliances with the wicked, who hate Jehovah? v15:264; Ahab promoted wickedness v27:282; every mouth speaks vileness and wickedness burns like a fire v5:287; if the wicked forsake evil and turn to the Lord he will freely pardon v10:293; there is no peace for the wicked v26:304; no rest for the wicked v22:308; how can the Lord allow a wicked nation to swallow up those more righteous than themselves? v8:316; Jerusalem keeps her wickedness fresh v15:325; why are you allowing the wicked to prosper and live in ease? v10:328; how long will the land lie parched because of wickedness? v12:328; perhaps they will

turn from their wicked ways so that I can forgive them v2:337; even in my Temple I find wickedness v15:340; I see wickedness in the prophets of Jerusalem, they commit adultery v16:340; all the wicked to be destroyed from earth in last days v7:343; these men have acted wickedly in what they have done to Jeremiah the prophet v14:346; again and again I sent my prophets, but they would not listen and turn from their wickedness v3:349; Ezekiel to be held accountable if he does not warn the wicked v2:357; a wicked man defined v21:364; a wicked son of a righteous man shall die v23:364; a righteous son of a wicked man will be saved v25:364; past sins not remembered when a wicked person fully repents v28:364; the wicked do not understand prophecy v19:396; the guilty woman in a measuring container a symbol of wickedness v47:405; the enemy is this wicked Haman v43:415; returned exiles confess their sins and the wickedness of their fathers v17:427; why are you allowing this wicked thing and desecrating the Sabbath? v12:428; the distinction between the righteous and wicked to be clearly seen on day Lord returns v21:431; David refused to sit with wicked and deceitful men, Psalm 4 v2:445; the wicked strut about freely, the vile is honoured among men, Psalm 13 v2:446; many are the pangs of the wicked, Psalm 28 v4:449; I will muzzle my mouth when the wicked are present, Psalm 29 v1:449; no reverence of God in the heart of a wicked man, Psalm 41 v1:451; the desires of the wicked come to nothing, Psalm 55 v6:454; evil men, like grass soon wither and die away, Psalm 58 v1:454; Asaph envied the wicked when he saw them prosper, Psalm 72 v1:457; blessed the man who walks not in the way of the wicked, Psalm 88 v1:461; the final destiny of the wicked is ruin, Psalm 72 v9-10:457; a warning Psalm to the wicked, Psalm 71 v4-5:457; the wicked are like chaff blown by the wind, Psalm 88 v4:461; the Lord frustrates the way of the wicked, Psalm 92 v1:462; a wicked woman is loud and undisciplined, without wisdom v17:465; advice of the wicked is deceitful v21:467; whoever corrects a wicked man will incur abuse v31:467; the wicked flee though none pursue v10:468; a wicked man will accept a bribe v15:468; a wicked man listens to evil lips v16:468; the wicked put up a bold front v17:468; those who have abandoned the Law of God praise the wicked v18:468; the upright detest the wicked and the wicked detest the upright v19:468; the wicked have no concern about justice for poor v21:468; a man who remains wicked after many rebukes will suddenly be destroyed v26:469; the eyes of the Lord watch both the wicked and the good v27:467; what the wicked dread overtakes them v34:469; the wicked are trapped by their evil desires v37:469; the way of the wicked is deep darkness v42:469; when a wicked man dies his hope perishes v43:469; wicked men are eventually overthrown v44:469; when calamity comes the wicked are struck down v45:469; v21:470; the wicked are brought to shame v47:469; the hopes of the wicked come to nothing v48:469; the wicked will not go unpunished v49:469; when the wicked perish there are shouts of joy v52:469; envy not the wicked, for they have no hope v58:469; the Lord is far from the wicked v59:469; the lamp of the wicked is soon snuffed out v24:470; a righteous man who gives in to the wicked is like a fouled spring v25:470; an evil man is trapped by his talk v25:470; the wicked have their fill of trouble v27:470; the mouths of the wicked know only what is perverse v40:470; when the wicked rule the people mourn v27:472; sudden disaster overtakes the wicked v3:474; the years of the wicked are cut short v5:474; God causes rain to fall on both the wicked and the good v24:492; a wicked and adulterous generation ask for a sign v22:501; v49:507; angels to separate the wicked from the righteous at end of age v44:504; wickedness to increase in latter days v28:526; expel wicked men from among you v13:609; what do righteousness and wickedness have in common? v17:622; the godless are full of every kind of wickedness v15:628; overcome evil with good v14:633; sins of men in the last days listed by Peter v6-8:655; anyone who does evil knows not God v11:678; the wicked go from bad to worse v13:656; the ungodly held until day of judgement to be punished v22:662; beware being carried away by the error of wicked men v14:663; Messiah to slay the wicked on earth (at second coming) v19:307; second coming to be a day of burning for the wicked v22:431; wicked to be ashes under feet of righteous (at second coming) v23:431; both the righteous and the wicked to be resurrected v12:592

widows (see also women) live as a widow until my youngest son grows up v6:38; the Lord will take the life of a

man who takes advantage of a widow v14:64; do not take the millstone or cloak of a widow as security for debt v27:114; a brother-in-law required to marry a sonless widow v32:114; v9:524; tithes to be used to help support widows v8:115; cursed is he who withholds justice from a widow v8:115; you also acquire our dead brother's widow Ruth v5:153; Elijah sent by Lord to be fed by a non-Israelite widow in Sidon v24:226; v15:488; widow's son brought back to life by prayer of Elijah v36:227; miracle of the widow's oil v4:238; I will make their widows as numerous as the sands of the sea v19:330; Jerusalem has become like a widow v1:378; I am coming in judgement against those who exploit widows v7:431; I made the widow's heart to sing again (Job) v32:438; the Lord protects the fatherless and widows, Psalm 92 v9:462; v6:471; Jesus raises a widow's son to life v24-26:498; parable of the persistent widow v10-12:513; Pharisees defraud widows of their possessions v28:524; the poor widow's offering v40:525; seven spirit-filled men called to look after widows v4:573; widows were standing around wailing v35:577; pure religion is to care for orphans and widows in their affliction v19:599; a widow is free to re-marry, but the man must be a believer v24:611; a widower will be happier if she remains single, in my opinion v25:611; take care of widows aged over sixty and genuinely in need v1-10:652; children or grandchildren should care for widows v1:652; a widow who lives for pleasure is spiritually dead v3:652; I counsel younger widows to remarry v9:652

wife a man leaves his father and mother and joins to his wife and they become one flesh v13:15; v6:643; Adam names his wife Eve, for she will be the mother of all living v1:16; Lamech confesses a murder to his wives v19:17; sons of God chose wives from among children of men v12:17; Noah and his three sons and their wives enter the ark v6:18; Abram's wife Sarah laughs at thought of bearing son in her old age v10:23; Abram instructs his wife to tell Egyptians/Abimelech she is his sister v23:20, v1:25; Lot's wife lags behind to watch destruction of Sodom, becomes a pillar of salt v20:25; do not take a wife for my son Isaac from among the Canaanites v2:27; Abraham took another wife Keturah who bore him six sons v39:28; Isaac prays for his barren wife Rebekah and she conceives v2:29; Isaac tells the Philistines his wife is his sister v17:14; if Jacob takes a wife from the women of this land my life will not be worth living v1:31; Jacob works seven years for his wife Rachel v24:32; not our custom to give a younger daughter in marriage before the elder v29:32; Jacob takes both Leah and Rachel as wives v30:32; Jacob later given maidservants Bilhah and Zilpah as wives v8-11:32; marry your brother's wife and fulfil your duty to produce offspring for your brother v3:38, v32:114, v9:524; Potiphar's wife falsely accuses Joseph of immorality v8:39; Moses' wife Zipporah circumcises her son to save her husband's life v3:52; do not lie with or uncover nakedness of wife during uncleanness of her menstruation v28:66; you shall not commit adultery v25:64, v41:66; you shall not covet your neighbour's wife v28:64; commandments on marriage v20-28:66; if a man commits adultery with another man's wife, both must be put to death v41:67; test for suspected adultery of a wife v26-32:87; Miriam and Aaron criticise Moses because of his Ethiopian wife v5:95; your king must not take many wives, for his heart will be led astray v15:111; laws regarding taking war captive women as wives v20:112; proof of virginity of a bride v8:113; a man forbidden to remarry his divorced wife after she has been married to another man v12:113; wife not to aid a fighting husband by seizing his assailant by private parts v28:114; Gideon had seventy sons for he had many wives v7:139; your wife must not eat anything that comes from the grapevine v10:143; must you go to the uncircumcised Philistines to get a wife? v21:143; Samson returns to claim his wife, finds she has been given to another man v15:144; when the girls come to dance, each of you seize a wife from among them v12:150; Boaz negotiates for Ruth at town gate v1-10:153; his other wife would tease and provoke Hannah because of her barrenness v4:156; Abigail his wife was intelligent and beautiful, but Nabal was surly and mean v4:174; David sends men to take Abigail to him as his wife v30:175; David's wife Michal given to another man v33:175; David orders the return of his wife Michal v10:184; David takes more wives and concubines in Jerusalem v8:185; David's wife Michal disapproves of his public dancing v36:186; David commits adultery with Bathsheba, wife of Uriah v3:189; David takes

Bathsheba as his wife after the murder of her husband v2:190; Lord curses David and his wives and children because of his sin v14:15:190; Lord to take David's wives from him v14:190; Solomon had 700 wives of royal status v2:210; enjoy life with your wife whom you love v17:219; come in wife of Jeroboam, why this pretence? v35:225; Jezebel, wife of Ahab was killing off the Lord's prophets v2:227; the fairest of your wives and children are mine v2:229; as for your wife Jezebel, dogs will devour her v16:231; Ahab did so much evil, urged on by Jezebel his wife v17:231; Hosea told to take an adulterous wife v1:249; your wife will become a harlot v19:256; Rehoboam had eighteen wives and sixty concubines v17:261; Abijah had fourteen wives v32:262; Jehovah is about to strike your sons, also your wives v13:265; before their eyes their wives will be raped v32:304; they are like lusty stallions each neighing for another man's wife v5:324; they are guilty of outrageous things, adultery with other men's wives v9:342, v16:364, v5:368; I am about to take away your wife, the delight of your eyes v26:365; they have taken (foreign) daughters as wives and mingled the holy race with them v1:420; returned exiles agree to separate from their foreign wives v21:421; the Lord was witness to the marriage covenant between you and the wife of your youth v5:430; let no man be unfaithful to the wife of his youth v6:430; the Lord hates a man who is unjust toward his wife v7:430; Job's wife turns against him v22:434; your wife will be like a fruitful tree, Psalm 63 v2:455; my son, stay away from the smooth tongue of an adulterous wife v1:464; whoever lies with another man's wife will not go unpunished v4:464; he who lies with his neighbour's wife destroys himself v13:465; a harlot and an adulterous wife are deep pits v15:465; rejoice with the wife of your youth v24:465; proverbs on women and marriage ch3:465; a wife of noble character is her husband's crown v1:465; a prudent wife is a gift from the Lord v2:465; a quarrelsome wife is like a leaking roof v4:465; better to live in a desert than with an ill-tempered woman v6:465; a wife who shames her husband is like decay to his bones v8:465; a foolish woman tears down her house with her own hands v10:465; the worth of a noble wife is far above rubies v11-24:465; how can this be, I and my wife are well advanced in years? v10:483; angel instructs Joseph to take Mary as his wife v3:484; it is not lawful for you to have your brother's wife v1:488; he who divorces his wife causes her to commit adultery v37:492; any man who does not love me more than his wife and children cannot be my disciple v1:517; Moses permitted you to divorce your wives, but from the beginning it was not so v26:519; he who divorces his wife and marries another commits adultery against her v27:519; at the resurrection whose wife will she be? v11:524; remember Lot's wife v14:526; the dream of Pilate's wife v20:533; wife of Ananias falls dead at Peter's feet v11:572; the believers and their wives and children accompanied us to the beach v4:589; take a wife in a holy and honourable way, not in passionate lust v4:602; each man should have his own wife v1:610; the wife's body belongs not only to her alone but also to her husband v2:610; do not deprive your spouse of conjugal rights v3:610; a wife must not divorce her husband v6:610; an unbelieving husband is made holy by his believing wife v8:610; if an unbelieving spouse leaves, let them go v9:610; the head of a woman is her husband, and the head of the husband is Christ v1:612; apostles have a right to take a wife along with them v3:612; the husband is head of the wife, as Christ is head of the church v8:637, v2:643; husbands love your wives, be not harsh with them v9:637, v4:643; he who loves his wife loves himself v6:643; each wife show respect for her husband v8:643; be submissive to your husbands, so they may be won over by the purity of your lives v1:658; let your beauty come from the un fading loveliness of a calm and gentle spirit v2:659; husbands be considerate of your wives, treat them with respect, that nothing hinder your prayers v5:659

wind God sent a wind over the earth and the waters began to recede v10:18; the Lord changed the wind to a strong westerly which carried the locusts into the Red Sea v15:55; all that night the Lord drove the sea back with a strong east wind v25:59; a wind drove a huge flock of quail in from the sea v1:94; awaken O wind, send a breeze upon my garden, let the fragrance waft to my beloved v16:214; the things men do under the sun are vanity, a chasing after the wind v10:217, v22:217, v31:217; whoever awaits the wind will not sow v24:220; there came a powerful wind on the mountain that shattered rocks v19:229;

they sow the wind and reap the whirlwind v10:251; your many enemies will be like chaff before the wind v18:288, v21:291; I will scatter you like chaff driven by the desert wind v28:329; scatter a third to the wind and immediately pursue it with a drawn sword v28:358; a mighty wind swept in from the desert and collapsed the house upon Job's sons and daughters v14:433; the wicked are like chaff, blown away by the wind, Psalm 88 v4:461; restraining a quarrelsome woman is like trying to restrain the wind v7:465; Jesus rebuked the wind and the waves saying, peace, be still v22:496; what kind of man is this, who even the wind and waves obey v23:496; when Peter felt the strong wind he feared and began to sink v33:505; as soon as Jesus got into the boat the wind ceased v35:505; you cannot tell where the wind comes from or where it is going, so it is with the Spirit v6:544; there came a sound like the rush of a strong wind and it filled the whole house v1:569; the man who doubts is like a wave of the ocean, blown and tossed by the wind v8:598; tossed to and fro, blown by every wind of doctrine v8:642; the day is coming when Jehovah will come with a storm of roaring wind, in a flame of devouring fire v18:288; with a scorching wind Jehovah will dry up the Euphrates river into seven small streams v16:296

wine (See also grapes, winepress, drunkenness) Noah plants a vineyard and drinks of its wine and becomes drunk v1:19; Melchizedek brings Abram bread and wine v18:21; let us get our father to drink wine, then lie with him v24:25; his eyes shall be darkened by wine v23:45; priests not to drink wine before entering Tabernacle or they will die v11:80; a Nazirite must abstain from wine and other fermented drink v19:87, v2:142; your wife must not drink any wine v10:143; your love is more delightful than wine v1:213, v12:214; I have drunk my wine and my milk v17:214; your lips are sweet, like fine wine v17:215; I tried cheering myself with wine v14:217; wine made to gladden v21:220; your leaders become inflamed with wine and mock v12:251; you have deserted Jehovah to give yourselves to harlotry and wine v18:251; you made Nazirites drink wine v19:255; you say to your husbands, bring us wine v22:255; a deceiver who preaches of wine would be the right preacher for this people v9:276; woe to you who stay up late at night inflamed with wine v21:284; woe to you who are champions at drinking wine and mixing drinks v23:284; who are your garments red, like those who tread the winepress? v3:292; I have trodden the winepress of the nations and their blood has stained my garments v4:292, v17:698; come, obtain wine and milk without cost v7:293; your priests and rulers are befuddled with wine v14:298; they cry, let us drink wine for tomorrow will be like today v11:308; wine deceives the drinker v13:316; neither we nor our wives and children have ever drunk wine v19:339; a priest not to drink wine before he enters the inner courtyard v33:374; Daniel resolves not to defile himself with the royal meat and wine v6:383; for three weeks no rich food or wine entered my mouth v1:393; king instructs wine servers to serve each man whatever he wishes v7:412; go now and enjoy choice food and sweet wine v7:427; my words are like bottled-up wine ready to burst v7:439; Lord gives wine to gladden man's heart, Psalm 19 v6:447; he who loves wine will never be wealthy v41:466; join not those who drink much wine v45:466; who has bloodshot eyes, those who linger over wine v6:468; in the end wine will bite like a poisonous viper v7:468; not for kings to drink wine my son, lest they forget the Law of God v2:474; give strong drink and wine to those who sorrow, let them forget their misery v3:474; John the Baptist never to drink wine v7:483; Jesus turns water into wine v5-7:543; new wineskins needed for new wine v26:491; the Samaritan bound up his wounds, pouring on oil and wine v26:512; Jesus gives wine to his apostles at last supper in remembrance of his blood v16:530, v19:613; Jesus when on the cross is offered a sponge soaked with sour wine v18:535, v14:563; get not drunk on wine for it leads to debauchery v29:643; teach the older women not to be addicted to wine v16:649; deacons should not indulge in much wine v6:651; use a little wine for the sake of your stomach and frequent ailments v18:653; Jehovah to prepare a feast of rich food and choice wines for all peoples (at second coming) v24:293; Jesus to one day drink new wine with apostles in kingdom of God (during millennium) v17:530; hills will drip with new wine (during millennium) v33:257, v2:273, v1:273

winepress (See also grapes) I saw men treading

winepresses on the Sabbath v10:428; the angel threw the grapes of the earth into the great winepress of God's wrath v23:694; the winepress is full and great is their wickedness v13:273; blood flowed out the winepress, high as a horse's bridle v24:694; why are your garments red, like those who tread the winepress? v3:292; I have trodden the winepress of the nations and their blood has stained my garments v4:292, v17:698

wisdom what you are doing is not wise, you will wear yourself out v26:62; the woman went to the people with her wise advice v16:198; Solomon is given a wiser mind than any other man before or after v9:203; Solomon's wisdom greater than all the wisdom of the East or Egypt v23:204; visitors come from all over world to hear Solomon's wisdom v34:210; God gives wisdom to the man who pleases him v30:217; neither be over-wise v2:219; Solomon unable to find true wisdom v4:219; even if a wise man claims he knows, he cannot truly comprehend v14:219; the heart of the wise will be found in the house of mourning v30:219; better to hear a wise man's rebuke than the laughter of fools v1:220; wisdom is a shelter, like money v2:220; wisdom brightens a man's face v4:220; the wisdom of a poor man is despised v22:220; wisdom is better than strength v23:220; woe to you who are wise in your own eyes v20:284; I overthrow the learning of the wise and turn it into nonsense v2:303; let not the wise man boast of his wisdom v39:327; by your wisdom you have gained wealth v14:366; you were the model of perfection, full of wisdom and beauty v17:367; all the wise men of Babylon are ordered executed v9:383; none equal in wisdom to Daniel and his companions v13:383, v14:383; praise God for he gives wisdom to the discerning v14:384; Daniel placed as head of all the wise men v34:384; none of the wise men could read the writing v7:390; some of the wise shall die, that they be refined v47:395; those who were wise shall shine like the sun for eternity v13:396; only the wise will understand this prophecy v19:396; a priest ought to speak with wisdom v19:430; if you would be silent, that would be wisdom v24:435; advanced years should teach wisdom v4:439; the mouth of a righteous man speaks wisdom, Psalm 58 v8:454, v21:467; a noble wife speaks with wisdom v21:465; the crown of the wise is their wealth v12:466; he who cherishes wisdom prospers v13:466; wisdom is better than gold v1:467, v15:467; wisdom hates pride, arrogance and evil deeds v1:467; wisdom's ways are pleasant and her paths peaceful v3:467; they who seek wisdom find her v7:467; wisdom walks in paths of righteousness v8:467; whoever finds wisdom finds Eternal Life v12:467; wisdom will save you from the adulteress v13:467; the beginning of wisdom is to revere the Lord v17:467; rebuke a discerning man and he will gain wisdom v20:467; the wise in heart accept commands v23:467; a wise son heeds his father's instruction v24:467; wisdom is found in those who take advice v24:467; he who walks with the wise grows wise v27:467; rebuke a wise man and he will be wiser still v31:467; wise is he who trusts in Lord v33:467; a wise man shuns evil v34:467; a man of wisdom draws out the deep thoughts of a man's heart v37:467; a wise man considers carefully what he hears v41:467; a wise man sees danger and takes refuge v42:467; a fool scorns wisdom v43:467, v2:468; a prudent man overlooks an insult v47:467; a wise man keeps his temper under control v48:467; proverbs on wisdom ch5:467; a man is praised according to his wisdom v50:468; life leads ever upward for the wise v52:468; a wise man has great power v53:468; wisdom is a fountain of life v54:468; a man of wisdom and knowledge increases in strength v55:468; wisdom is sweet to the soul, like honey v58:468; wisdom will save you from the ways of the wicked v59:468; even a fool is thought wise if he remains silent v4:470; he who holds his tongue is wise v7:470; lips that speak wisdom are a rare jewel v10:470; with humility comes wisdom v4:471, v29:599; a prudent man does not reveal all he knows v56:471; the tongue of a wise man brings healing v58:471; a wise man will appease a king's wrath v20:472; a wise servant will rule over a dishonourable son v30:472; be wise my son and bring joy to my heart v19:473; Jesus grew and was filled with wisdom v12:486, v20:487; be wise as serpents and innocent as doves v11:498; where did this man get his wisdom? v48:504; at the right time you will be given wisdom they cannot contradict v8:525; five were foolish and five were wise v2:527; Jews could not prevail against Stephen's wisdom v9:573; if any lack wisdom let him ask of God in faith v7:598; wisdom from above is pure and

peaceable v31:599; the wisdom of this world is foolishness v12:608; Jews demand signs and Greeks wisdom v14:608; the foolishness of God is wiser than the wisdom of man v16:608; God chose the foolish of the world to shame the wise v19:608; among the spiritually mature we teach a message of wisdom v23:608; is there no one among you wise enough to judge a dispute? v18:609; they think they are wise, but in reality they are fools v10:628; be wise about good, innocent about evil v13:634, v28:643; teaching of wisdom a gift of the Holy Spirit v4:613, v11:641; O the rich depths of the wisdom of God v24:632; all treasures of wisdom and knowledge hidden in Christ v5:636; teach and admonish one another with wisdom v5:637; such rules have the appearance of wisdom, but no power v21:637; scriptures able to give you wisdom v14:656; Paul has written to you with the wisdom God gave him v12:663; this calls for wisdom v9:693, v11:696

wise men of the East Solomon's wisdom greater than all the wisdom of the East or Egypt v23:204; come searching for new-born King of the Jews v1:486; Herod instructs them to report back when they find the King v4:486; the star reappears and leads wise men to Jesus v5:486; the wise men worship Jesus and give gifts of gold, incense and myrrh v6:486; wise men warned in dream not to return to Herod v7:486

witchcraft See mediums, sorcery

witnesses (See also false witness) do not bear false witness against your neighbour v27:64; testimony of two or more witnesses necessary to execute a murderer v29:107, v7:670; this stone will be a witness v12:130; a false witness will not go unpunished v44:470; every word to be confirmed by testimony of two or three witnesses v16:510, v12:653; many false witnesses came forward, but their statements did not agree v3:532; apostles to be witnesses of Jesus to the ends of the earth v5:569; are his witnesses v10:570, v10:571, v26:573; false witnesses testify against Stephen v11:573; we were eyewitnesses of his glory v12:662; two witnesses in last days to prophesy with power for three and a half years v13:690

women (see also daughters, widows, wife) God creates a woman from a rib of Adam v11:15; called woman for she was taken out of man v12:15; a man and woman become one flesh when married v13:15, v24:519; women cursed with agony in child birth, and to be ruled over by men v16:16; toward evening, the time when women go out to draw water v5:27; the way of women is upon me v26:30; Hebrew women are not like Egyptian women v7:50; the women followed Miriam with tambourines and dancing v11:60; a man not to marry both a woman and her daughter v26:66; do not uncover the nakedness of a woman during her menstruation v28:66; a woman is defiled by having sexual relations with an animal and must die v43:67; no woman will miscarry or be barren if people worship Jehovah v10:75; laws on purification following childbirth v21:24:82; laws on purification after menstruation v37:40:82; a vow made by a widow or divorced woman is binding v3:86; test for suspected adultery v26:32; no woman is to become a harlot v24:112; proof of virginity of a bride v8:11:113; even the most gentle woman will eat own afterbirth during siege v7:117, v22:241, v13:379; the prophetess Deborah judges Israel v3:135; Abimelech killed by millstone dropped by a woman v20:140; young women of Israel mourn the daughter of Jephthah four days each year v30:142; spare every woman who has never lain with a man v8:149; Boaz asks, whose young woman is that? v5:152; men of the town know you are a woman of noble character v25:152; find me a woman who is a medium v14:176; David sees a beautiful woman bathing herself v2:189; get this woman out of my house v14:191; Joab sends for a wise woman v30:192; a wise woman saves the town of Abel v13:17:198; Solomon married many foreign women v1:210; a wicked woman is a snare v6:219; I found not one upright woman among them all v7:219; the water is bad and our women miscarry v1:236; go bury that accursed woman v6:243; I will give your women wombs that miscarry and breasts that are dry v7:251; the women of Jerusalem are haughty, walking with heads high, flirting with their eyes v30:284; in that day seven women shall take hold of one man v34:284; pain shall grip you, like that of a woman in labour v26:329; you to women fortune-tellers who ensnare my people v24:361; Zechariah sees a vision of a guilty woman in a measuring container v46:405; because of the queen's conduct women will have contempt for authority of their husbands

v13:412; you have been unfaithful and married non-Israelite women v20:421, v18:428; you speak as a foolish woman would speak v23:434; proverbs on women and marriage ch3:465; a wicked woman is loud and undisciplined v17:465; a kind hearted woman gains respect v3:465; better to live in a desert than with an ill-tempered woman v6:465; a foolish woman tears down her house with her own hands v10:465; the worth of a noble wife is far above rubies v11-24:465; a woman who reveres the Lord is to be praised v24:466; earth trembles under an unloved married woman v7:474; Mary blessed among women v26:483; he who looks upon a woman lustfully has committed adultery with her in his heart v35:492; whoever marries a divorced woman commits adultery v38:492; a sinful woman anoints the feet of Jesus with perfumed oil v31-32:495; a woman touches the cloak of Jesus and is healed of her bleeding v42:497; Martha complains to Jesus about Mary not helping with the food v36-39:512; a woman bent over by an unclean spirit is healed by Jesus v6:515; Jesus speaks to a Samaritan woman at the well v1-16:545; an adulterous woman brought before Jesus v1-8:550; Mary anoints Jesus with expensive perfumed oil v5:529, v7:555; Jesus prophesies to weeping women v42:534; women named who followed Jesus to care for his needs v26:535; three women go out to tomb of Jesus v15:536, v1:563; woman why are you weeping? v12:564; Peter raises a dead woman Tabitha to life v36:577; Lord opened the heart of a woman named Lydia v13:584; because of temptation to immorality, each woman should have her own husband v1:610; head of the woman is her husband v1:612; a woman dishonours her head if she prays or prophesies unveiled v2:612, v2-5:613, v7:613; woman is the glory of man v3:612; man not created for woman, but woman for man v4:612; neither women nor men independent of each other v6:613; your women should not speak in church v50:615, v20:651; Paul greets women by name in the Corinthian church v2-7:634; teach older women to be reverent in their behaviour v16:649; train younger women to love their husbands and children v17:649; women should dress modestly, with decency and restraint v19:651; women saved through child bearing, if they continue faithful v22:651; deacon's wives to be women worthy of respect v8:651; treat older women as your mother and younger women as sisters, with total purity v26:652; believing women should support widows who are their relatives v10:652; sinful men, who worm their way into houses and captivate foolish women v9:655; let your beauty come from the unfading loveliness of a calm and gentle spirit v2:659; two women shall be grinding grain, one shall be taken, the other left (at second coming) v11:518

Word (title for Jesus) in the beginning was the Word v1:541; the Word became flesh v6:542; by his will he brought us forth through his Word of Truth v13:598; we proclaim to you the Word of Eternal Life v1:673; his name is the Word of God v15:698

word of God See scriptures

work by the seventh day God had finished his work v20:15; I will work seven years in return for your daughter v23:32; no work to be done on first and last day of Passover week v5:58; fourth commandment, six days you shall labour but on the Sabbath day you shall do no work v22:64; whoever works on Sabbath must be put to death v37:65; no work to be done on Day of Atonement v33:81; no work to be done on Feast of First Fruits v1:85; no work to be done on Feast of Trumpets v3:85; no work to be done on first and last day of Feast of Tabernacles v7-8:85; only Levite men aged 25 to 50 may work at the Tabernacle v16:93; when Solomon saw how well the young man worked, he made him one of his officials v15:211; nothing better for a man than to eat and drink and find satisfaction in his work v28:217, v18:218, v20:219; joy will accompany a man in his work v12:219; a fool's work wears him v17:220; in everything Hezekiah sought guidance from God, then worked wholeheartedly and prospered v19:286; carry no load through these gates, nor do any work on the Sabbath v8:331; a curse on him who is lax in doing the work of the Lord v19:334; the people begin work on the Temple v1:398; work on Temple comes to a standstill v8:399; people again begin work on the Temple v18:399; if they are defiled, whatever work they do with their hands will be defiled v29:400; I struck all the work of your hands with blight, mildew and hail v31:400; Mordecai worked for the good of his people v25:417;

the people worked on the wall with all their heart v12:424; each of the workers wore his sword as he worked v17:424; we worked from the first light of dawn, until the stars came out v21:425; she seeks wool and flax and works with willing hands v13:465; she sets about her work vigorously v14:465; the harvest is great but the workers are few v3:498; a man skilled in his work will serve kings v1:473; desires of the diligent will be fully satisfied v3:473; he who tends a fig tree will eat its fruit v4:473; hard work brings profit, talk brings poverty v6:473; I passed by the field of a sluggard and saw the ground covered with weeds v7:473; go to the ant you sluggard, consider her ways and be wise v8:473; he who loves sleep will grow poor v10:474; laziness ends in servitude v11:474; like an archer who wounds, is he who hires a drunkard v13:474; the Lord allows time to sleep for those he loves v16:474; the labourer is worthy of his keep v7:498; Lord do you not care that my sister has left me to do all the work alone? v38:513; parable of the workers in the vineyard v56-67:520; parable of the two sons v23-26:522; parable of the talents v11-21:527; my Father is always at his work, so I too am working v12:546; Paul stayed and worked with them as a tent maker v3:586; we worked day and night not to be a burden to you v12:602, v47:609, v4:612; lead a quiet life, minding your own business and working with your hands v9:603; respect those over you, who work hard in serving you v21:603, v20:672; warn those who are idle v22:603; avoid any brother who is idle v1:605; if a man will not work he shall not eat v4:605; are you not the result of my work in the Lord? v1:612; I worked harder than all the other apostles v6:615, v36:621; there are no more places for me to work in these regions v18:634; Paul commends women who work hard in the Lord v6:634; work as if you are working for the Lord, and not for men v13:637; since a bishop is entrusted with God's work he must be beyond reproach v5:648; be ready to do honest work v27:649; provide for daily necessities, do not live unproductive lives v29:649; a non-provider worse than an unbeliever v4:652

works See good works

world (See also worldliness) the whole world peopled by Noah's sons after the flood v7:19; whole world had one language v12:19; Lord confuses language of whole world v18:20; now I know there is no God in all the world except in Israel v16:240; I will bring justice to the entire world v5:297; I will punish the world for its evil v5:289; we have patrolled the earth and found the world at peace v8:403; if God withdrew his Spirit, all the world would perish together v17:439; believers are the light of the world v28:492; the good seed is the Son of Man, the field is the world v34:503; whoever tries to save his life in this world will lose it in the world to come v19:508; what does it profit a man if he gains the whole world yet loses his own soul v20:508; go into all the world and preach the good news to every person v53:538; world made through Jesus v4:542; the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world v16:542, v10:674; God so loved the world he gave his only begotten Son v12:544; light has come into the world, but men love darkness v14:544, v9:551; this man really is the Saviour of the world v27:546; I am the light of the world v9:551; I have come into the world to judge it v30:552; look how the whole world is going after him v15:556; now the ruler of this world (Satan) shall be driven out v26:556; I came to save the world not to condemn it v34:556; the ruler of this world is coming v11:558; if the world hates you, know that it hated me first v28:559, v11:675; be of good cheer, I have overcome the world v13:560; the comforter will convict the world of sin v39:599; ruler of this world now stands condemned v40:599; you will weep while the world rejoices v3:560; I am leaving the world and returning to the Father v8:560; in this world you shall have trouble but be of good cheer v13:560; my kingdom is not of this world v10:562; God has set a day when he will judge the world v28:585; saints are to judge the world v15:609; this world in its present form is soon to pass away v18:611; the whole world is a prisoner of sin v13:625; sin and death entered the world through Adam v2:629; we brought nothing into this world and take nothing out v25:653; Jesus, the Lamb chosen from before creation of the world v16:658, v9:692; God made the worlds through a Son v1:667; worlds formed at God's command v4:670; do not be surprised brethren that the world hates you v11:675; Holy Spirit greater than the spirits of the world v4:675; many deceivers have gone forth into the world v6:677; whole

world under control of evil one v31:676, v15:691; gospel will again be preached to all nations of world in last days v29:526; I shall gather the nations of the world together and pour out my fierce anger upon them v1:315; a tremendous earthquake to collapse cities of the world (in last days) v28:695; elements to melt with fire and all worldly things to be burned up (at second coming) v7:663

world new See millennium, New Jerusalem

worldliness (See also world) Lord save me from men who belong to this world, Psalm 6 v4:445; the devil tempts Jesus with worldly power and wealth v27:488; people of this world more shrewd than those of the kingdom of God v19:514; you are of this world, I am not of this world v32:547; the world hates me, for I testify that its works are evil v5:549; he who hates his life in this world, shall save it v19:556; they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world v26:560; my kingdom is not of this world v10:562; pure religion is to be untainted by the world v19:599; friendship with the world is opposition to God v4:600; the wisdom of this world is foolishness v12:608; you are still worldly, mere infants in Christ v27:608; Godly sorrow brings repentance, but worldly sorrow leads to death v43:619; conform not to the ways of world v28:632; their worldly minds puff them up with foolish notions v17:637; you died with Christ to worldly principles v19:637; you were dead in your sins when you followed the ways of the world v16:641; the grace of God teaches us to say no to worldly passions v24:649; Demas who is in love with this present world has deserted me v25:656; God's elect are strangers in the world v1:657; believers who again become entangled in the world are worse off than before v30:662; worldly men who divide you have not the Holy Spirit v17:665; do not love the world and its lusts v16:674; love of the Father is not in him who loves the world v16:674; he who has faith in Jesus overcomes the world v22:676; the whole world to follow the Beast (in last days) v5:692

worry Joseph's brothers anxiously awaited his arrival at noon v5:42; you will have an anxious mind and a despairing heart v10:117; what does a man gain for all his anxious striving under the sun? v27:217; banish anxiety from your heart v28:221; an anxious heart weighs down, but a kind word cheers the soul v9:472, v10:474; reverse the Lord, and when you lie down you will not be anxious v2:474; do not be anxious about your life and worry about how you will eat or drink v29:493, v35:494; your father and I have been searching for you with great anxiety v18:487; who by worry can add a single hour to his span of life v31:494; do not worry about tomorrow, tomorrow will take care of itself v37:494; come unto Jesus all you who are weary and heavy laden and he will give you rest v19:499; their progress is choked by the worries of life v17:502; Martha, you are anxious and troubled about many things v39:513; I want you to be free of worries v18:611; take your cares to God in prayer v3:647; cast all your cares upon God, for he loves you v6:660

wrath of God See anger of the Lord

Xerxes son of Darius, becomes king of Persian empire v1:412; gives two great feasts, palace garden described, unlimited wine served v3-7:412; commands Queen Vashti to display her beauty, Vashti refuses v9-10:412; king in anger consults his advisers, Vashti replaced as queen v10-13:412; Esther a Jew wins king's favour, made queen v14:413; Haman the Grand vizier angry with Mordecai, plans to exterminate all Jews v6-7:413; king learns that Mordecai saved him from assassination, orders Haman to honour Mordecai v27-35:415; king orders Haman hanged on own gallows v47:416; Xerxes dies and son Artaxerxes becomes king v1:418

yeast Lot prepares a meal for angels, baking bread without yeast v4:24; Passover bread to be made without yeast v5:56, v16:375; no yeast to be eaten during seven days of Passover v2-4:58, v44:65; do not offer blood sacrifice with anything containing yeast v28:65; no yeast to be in cakes of grain offerings or peace offerings v11:78, v32:79; Gideon makes bread without yeast and offers it to the angel v14:136; the woman baked bread without yeast for Saul and his officials v32:177; parable of yeast and dough v30:503; beware the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees v51-55:507, v2:514; rid yourself of the old yeast of evil, make yourselves fresh dough with yeast of truth v9:609

Zacchaeus a wealthy tax collector, climbs sycamore tree to see Jesus v1:520; Jesus tells him he will stay at his house today

v3:520; repents and gives half his possessions to poor v5:521

Zadok high priest during reign of David v6:187; ordered to bring Ark up to place David prepared v29:186; told by David to return Ark to city v21:193; remained loyal to David v6:201, v30:374; anoints Solomon king over Israel v17:201; only descendants of Zadok to minister as priests in millennial Temple v25:372, v14:373, v30:374

Zebulun tribe of birth of Zebulun, son of Jacob (Israel) and Leah v20:32; Israel's dying blessing upon – to dwell by the sea v24:45; first census of 57,400 v11:92; second census 60,500 v4:105; Moses' blessing upon – to feast on abundance of seas v23:119; land in Canaan assigned to by lot v9:129; 12,000 servants of God to be sealed from in last days v4:688

Zechariah (father of John the Baptist) a blameless and upright priest v1:482; angel appears to in Temple while burning incense v4:482; barren wife Elizabeth to bear him a son named John v5:483; struck dumb for disobeying angel v11:483; Elizabeth conceives and a son born v30:483; Zechariah names his son John and is able to speak again v33:484; prophecies of John and the coming Christ v34-37:484

Zechariah (king) becomes king of Israel v1:257; does wrong, assassinated by Shallum v3:257

Zechariah (son of high priest) son of Jehoiada the high priest, Spirit of God comes upon, prophecies to people v15:267; stoned to death in courtyard of the Temple v15:267

Zechariah (prophet) prophet to returned Jewish exiles, book of Zechariah p401; warns people not to be like forefathers v2:403; sees vision of four horsemen sent to patrol the earth v4-8:403; vision of four horns v13:403; vision of four workmen with hammers v14:403; vision of young man with measuring line v16:403; vision of golden lampstand and two olive branches v34-37:404; vision of flying scroll v43:405; vision of woman in a measuring container v47:405; vision of four horses and chariots v51:405; will rule the people in harmony if obedient v56:406; commanded to become a shepherd of sheep marked for slaughter v24:407; takes two staffs, calls one Favour the other Union v29:408; is paid thirty pieces of silver v33:408; throws silver into Temple, to potter v34:408; breaks second staff called Union v35:408; Jews prosper under teaching of v1:409; sees vision of second coming of Lord v15:409

Zedekiah (king) uncle of Jehoiachin, appointed king by Nebuchadnezzar v29:341; an unrighteous king v1:341; Zedekiah and those remaining in Judah like rotten figs v10:342; rebels against Babylon v1:344; asks Jeremiah to inquire of Lord v5:344; Lord replies that only sword, famine and plague lie ahead v6:344; to die peacefully in Babylon v11:344; asks Jeremiah if any further word from Lord v5:345; fears to oppose his officials, leaves Jeremiah to die in an underground water cistern v11-12:345; orders Israelite slaves freed v21:345; able to save Jerusalem by surrendering, fears to do so v21-22:347; escapes city by night with guards v3:347; Babylonians pursue and capture v5:347; sons slaughtered before his eyes v6:347; blinded and taken to Babylon v7:347; daughters of Zedekiah taken to Egypt v24:349

Zedekiah (false prophet) makes iron horns, opposes prophet Micaiah v12-27:232

Zedekiah (false prophet) false prophet to exiles, adulterer, liar, king of Babylon to put to death by fire v6-9:342

Zephaniah prophet of Judah, book of p314; prophecies destruction of Judah and surrounding nations v10:314; prophecies of second coming of Lord ch2:315; pleads for Judah to repent v6:315; prophecies gathering and honour of Israel during millennium v11-12:315

Zerubbabel appointed governor of Judah by Cyrus v7:398; begins to rebuild Temple v1:398; told to be strong by Lord, for Lord is with him v21:399; authority to rebuild Temple challenged by Tattenai, governor of province v2:402; hands of Zerubbabel to complete Temple v41:404; crown to be made for Zerubbabel v54:406; Zerubbabel the Branch v55:406; to be raised up on last day v35:400

Zeruah step-sister of David, mother of David's warriors Joab, Abishai, and Asahel v33:183; these sons of Zeruah are too ruthless for me v24:185; will you never cease you sons of Zeruah? v39:194; what do you and I have in common you sons of Zeruah? v9:197

Ziba Saul's former servant, appointed by David to serve Mephibosheth son of Jonathan v17:**188**; Ziba had fifteen sons and twenty servants v23:**188**; provides donkeys and provisions when David flees Jerusalem v30:**194**; accuses Mephibosheth of rebellion, David gives him all Mephibosheth's possessions v33-34:**194**; David reconsiders and divides possessions between Ziba and Mephibosheth v15:**197**

Zilpah maidservant of Leah, given to Jacob as a wife v11:**32**; bears Jacob two sons, Gad and Asher v12-13:**32**

Zion high fortress part of Jerusalem, David captures v4:**185**; David moves his residence to fortress of Zion v5:**185**; I have installed my king on my holy mountain Zion, Psalm 14 v3:**446**; like the dew of Mount Hermon descending upon Mount Zion, Psalm 18 v3:**447**; is not Mount Zion where Jehovah himself has chosen to reign?, Psalm 51 v1:**453**; the Most High has built his sanctuary on the height of Mount Zion in Jerusalem, Psalm 74 v21:**458**; Zion to be plowed as a field v14:**277**; Mount Zion sits deserted, wild jackals prowl over it v52:**379**; we wept when we remembered Zion, Psalm 81 v1:**459**; Jehovah says, I am exceedingly jealous for Jerusalem and Zion v10:**403**; appointed time has come to show favour to Zion, Psalm 82 v7:**459**; come to Zion, you who live among the daughters of Babylon v20:**404**; Messiah to be a cornerstone in Zion v18:**298**, v29:**631**; sound the alarm on Zion my holy hill, the day of the Lord is coming v11:**272**; Lord Almighty to do battle on heights of Mount Zion v28:**289**; shout for joy on the heights of Zion v12:**343**; Zion,

where Jehovah has chosen to reign forever, Psalm 51 v1:**453**; I will bestow on Zion a crown of beauty instead of ashes v26:**306**; you will lift up your eyes O Zion and rejoice as all your sons return to you v19:**306**; in that day no one living in Zion will say, I am sick (during millennium) v21:**295**; Tyre's riches will go to people of Zion (during millennium) v16:**305**; Jehovah to dwell in Zion, the holy mountain of God (during millennium) v16:**273**, v12:**289**; Zion to be called the Holy Mountain (during millennium) v6:**406**

Zion daughter of

(Jerusalem) the daughter of Zion is left like a hut in a vineyard v4:**283**; free yourself from the chains of your neck O captive daughter of Zion v11:**297**; O daughter of Zion, let your tears flow like a river, night and day v34:**379**; daughter of Zion to rise and break in pieces the nations v19:**277**; to be called Jerusalem, the City of Jehovah, Zion, of the Holy One of Israel (during millennium) v25:**294**

Zion heavenly; I saw before me the Lamb, standing on heavenly Mount Zion v1:**693**

Zipporah daughter of Jethro and wife of Moses v29:**50**; saves life of Moses by circumcising her son v3:**52**; Jethro brings Zipporah to Moses in desert v18:**62**

Zophar one of three friends of Job v25:**434**; gives his opinions as to why Job is suffering v18:**435**, v24:**437**; Jehovah rebukes v30:**442**

